

**THE BOOK OF
MORMON**

**TONGAN – ENGLISH
PARALLEL EDITION**

Version 1, published April 2023. bencrowder.net/book-of-mormon-parallel-edition/

This parallel edition © 2023 Benjamin Crowder. All rights reserved. You have permission to print this document for your own use. For other uses, send requests to ben.crowder@gmail.com.

Text of the Book of Mormon © 2023 Intellectual Reserve, Inc. All rights reserved.

The text of this edition is licensed from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints with the following disclaimer: *The Product offered by Benjamin Crowder is neither made, provided, approved, nor endorsed by, Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Any content or opinions expressed, implied, or included in or with the Product offered by Benjamin Crowder are solely those of Benjamin Crowder and not those of Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.*

Ko e Tohi ‘a Molomoná

Ko ha Fakamatala na‘e Hiki ‘e he Nima ‘o Molomoná ki he Ngaahi Peleti Na‘e to‘o Mei he Ngaahi Peleti ‘a Nīfaí

Ko ia, ko ha fakanounou ia ‘o e lekooti ‘o e kakai ‘o Nīfaí, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo e kau Leimaná—Na‘e tohi ki he kau Leimaná, ‘a ia ko ha toenga ‘o e fale ‘o ‘Isilelí; kae ‘uma‘ā foki ki he Siú mo e Senitailé—Na‘e tohi ia ‘i he fekau, pea ‘i he laumālie foki ‘o e kikité mo e fakahaá—Na‘e tohi mo fakama‘u hake, pea fufuu‘i hake ki he ‘Eikí, ke ‘oua na‘a faka‘auha—Ke toki ‘omai ‘i he foaki mo e māfimaí ‘o e ‘Otuá ke toki liliu ia—Na‘e fakama‘u ‘e he nima ‘o Moloná, pea fufuu‘i hake ki he ‘Eikí, ke toki ‘omai ‘i hono taimi totonú ‘o fou mai ‘i he kau Senitailé—Pea ‘e liliu ia ‘i he foaki ‘a e ‘Otuá.

‘Oku ‘i ai foki mo ha fakamatala nounou na‘e to‘o mei he Tohi ‘a ‘Etá, ‘a ia ko ha lekooti ‘o e kakai ‘o Sēletí, ‘a ia na‘e fakamovetevete ‘i he taimi na‘e veuveuki ai ‘e he ‘Eikí ‘a e lea ‘a e kakaí, lolotonga ‘enau langa ha taua ke a‘u ki he langí—Koe‘uhi ke fakahā ai ki he toenga ‘o e fale ‘o ‘Isilelí ‘a e ngaahi me‘a ma‘ongo‘onga kuo fai ‘e he ‘Eikí ma‘a ‘enau ngaahi tamaí; pea ke nau ‘ilo‘i ai ‘a e ngaahi fuakava ‘a e ‘Eikí, ke ‘oua na‘a kapusi atu ‘a kinautolu ‘o ta‘engata—Pea ki hono fakaloto‘i foki ‘o e Siú mo e Senitailé ko SĪSŪ ko e KALAISÍ, ko e ‘OTUA TA‘ENGATÁ, ‘okú Ne fakahā ia ‘e ia ki he ngaahi pulé‘anga kotoa pē—Pea ko ‘eni, kapau ‘oku ‘i ai ha ngaahi me‘a hala, ko e ngaahi fehālaaki ia ‘a e tangata; ko ia, ‘oua na‘a fakaanga ‘i ‘a e ngaahi me‘a ‘a e ‘Otuá, koe‘uhi ke lau ‘a kimoutolu ‘oku mou ta‘e-ha-mele ‘i he fakamaau‘anga ‘a Kalaisí.

The Book of Mormon

An Account Written by the Hand of Mormon upon Plates Taken from the Plates of Nephi

Wherefore, it is an abridgment of the record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites—Written to the Lamanites, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; and also to Jew and Gentile—Written by way of commandment, and also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation—Written and sealed up, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed—To come forth by the gift and power of God unto the interpretation thereof—Sealed by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentile—The interpretation thereof by the gift of God.

An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also, which is a record of the people of Jared, who were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven—Which is to show unto the remnant of the house of Israel what great things the Lord hath done for their fathers; and that they may know the covenants of the Lord, that they are not cast off forever—And also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that JESUS is the CHRIST, the ETERNAL GOD, manifesting himself unto all nations—And now, if there are faults they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that ye may be found spotless at the judgment-seat of Christ.

Ko e ‘Uluaki Tohi ‘a Nīfai

Ko ‘ene Pulé mo e Ngāue Fakafaifekau

Ko ha fakamatala kia Līhai mo hono uaifi ko Selaiá, pea mo hono ngaahi foha ‘e toko fā, na ‘e ui (‘o kamata mei be labi) ko Leimana, mo Lēmiuela, mo Samu, pea mo Nīfai. ‘Oku fakatokanga ‘a e ‘Eiki kia Līhai ke biki mei be fonua ko Selūsalemá, koe‘uhi ko ‘ene kikite ki he kakai ‘o kau ki he ‘enau angahalá, pea ‘oku nau feinga ke tāmata‘i ia. ‘Okú ne fononga ‘i ha ‘abo ‘e tolu ki he feitu‘u maomaonganoá mo hono fāmili. ‘Oku ‘ave ‘e Nīfai ‘a hono ngaahi tokouá, ‘o nau foki ki he fonua ko Selūsalemá ke ‘omai ‘a e lekooti ‘o e kau Siú. Ko e fakamatala ‘o ‘enau ngaahi faingata‘a iá. ‘Oku nau mali mo e ngaahi ‘ofefine ‘o Isimeli. ‘Oku nau ‘ave honau ngaahi fāmili ‘o nau ō ki he feitu‘u maomaonganoá. Ko honau ngaahi faingata‘a iá mo e ngaahi mamahi ‘i he feitu‘u maomaonganoá. Ko e hala ‘o ‘enau ngaahi fonongá. Ko ‘enau a‘u ki he ngaahi fu‘u vai labi. ‘Oku angatu‘u ‘a e ngaahi tokoua ‘o Nīfai kiate ia. ‘Okú ne valoki‘i ‘a kinautolu, pea ne fō‘u ha vaka. ‘Oku nau ui ‘a e potu ko iá ko Mahu. ‘Oku nau folau atu ‘i he fu‘u vai labi ki he fonua ‘o e tala‘ofá, mo e ngaahi fakamatala kehe. ‘Oku fakatatau ‘eni ki he fakamatala ‘a Nīfai; pe ko hono fakalea ‘e tabá, ko au, Nīfai na ‘á ku hiki ‘a e lekooti ko ‘eni.

I Nīfai I

- 1 Ko au, Nīfai, ko e me‘a ‘i he fanau‘i au ‘i he ongo mātu‘a lelei, ko ia na‘e akonekina ai au ‘i he ‘ilo kotoa ‘a ‘eku tamaí; pea ko e me‘a ‘i he ‘eku sio ki he ngaahi faingata‘a iá lahi lolotonga ‘a hoku ngaahi ‘ahó, ka neongo iá, kuo ‘ofeina lahi au ‘e he ‘Eiki ‘i hoku ngaahi ‘ahó kotoa pē; ‘io, ko e me‘a ‘i he ‘eku ma‘u ha ‘ilo lahi ki he angalelei pea mo e ngaahi me‘a lilo ‘a e ‘Otuá, ko ia ‘oku ou hiki ai ha lekooti ‘o ‘eku ngaahi ngāué ‘i hoku ngaahi ‘ahó.
- 2 ‘Io, ‘oku ou hiki ha lekooti ‘i he lea ‘a ‘eku tamaí, ‘a ia ‘oku kau ai ‘a e ‘ilo ‘a e kau Siú pea mo e lea ‘a e kau ‘Isipité.

The First Book of Nephi

His Reign and Ministry

An account of Lehi and his wife Sariah, and his four sons, being called, (beginning at the eldest) Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. The Lord warns Lehi to depart out of the land of Jerusalem, because he prophesieth unto the people concerning their iniquity and they seek to destroy his life. He taketh three days’ journey into the wilderness with his family. Nephi taketh his brethren and returneth to the land of Jerusalem after the record of the Jews. The account of their sufferings. They take the daughters of Ishmael to wife. They take their families and depart into the wilderness. Their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness. The course of their travels. They come to the large waters. Nephi’s brethren rebel against him. He confoundeth them, and buildeth a ship. They call the name of the place Bountiful. They cross the large waters into the promised land, and so forth. This is according to the account of Nephi; or in other words, I, Nephi, wrote this record.

I Nephi I

I, Nephi, having been born of goodly parents, therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father; and having seen many afflictions in the course of my days, nevertheless, having been highly favored of the Lord in all my days; yea, having had a great knowledge of the goodness and the mysteries of God, therefore I make a record of my proceedings in my days.

Yea, I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.

3 Pea 'oku ou 'ilo'i 'oku mo'oni 'a e lekooti 'oku ou hiki; pea 'oku ou hiki ia 'aki hoku nima pē 'o'okú; pea 'oku ou hiki ia 'o fakatatau ki he'eku 'iló.

4 He na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he kamata'anga 'o e 'uluaki ta'u 'o e pule 'a Setikia, ko e tu'i 'o Siutá, (ko 'eku tamai, ko Līhaí, kuo nofo ia 'i Selūsalema 'i hono ngaahi 'aho kotoa pē); pea 'i he ta'u pē ko iá na'e ha'u ha kau palōfita tokolahi, 'o kikite ki he kakaí kuo pau ke nau fakatomala, ka 'ikai 'e faka'auha 'a e fu'u kolo ko Selūsalemá.

5 Ko ia na'e hoko 'o pehē lolotonga 'a e 'alu atu 'a 'eku tamai, ko Līhaí, na'á ne lotu ki he 'Eikí, 'io, 'aki hono lotó kotoa, koe'uhi ko hono kakaí.

6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē, lolotonga 'ene lotu ki he 'Eikí, na'e ha'u ha pou afi 'o nofo 'i ha maka 'i mu'a 'iate ia; pea ne mamata mo fanongo ki ha ngaahi me'a lahi; pea koe'uhi ko e ngaahi me'a na'á ne mamata mo fanongo ki aí na'á ne manavahē mo tetetete lahi 'aupito.

7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne foki ki hono fale 'o'ona 'i Selūsalemá; 'o ne tō hifo ki hono mohengá, kuo fakavaivai 'i ia 'e he Laumālié pea mo e ngaahi me'a kuó ne mamata ki aí.

8 Pea lolotonga hono fakavaivai 'i pehē ia 'e he Laumālié, na'e 'ave ia 'i ha me'a-hā-mai, 'o a'u ki he'ene mamata ai ki hono fakaava mai 'o e ngaahi langí, pea na'á ne pehē na'á ne mamata ki he 'Otuá 'oku 'afio 'i hono 'afio'angá, kuo takatakai 'iate ia 'a e ha'oha'onga 'o e kau 'āngelo ta'efa'alaua 'oku nau tu'u 'o hangē 'oku nau hiva mo fakafeta 'i ki honau 'Otuá.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne mamata ki ha Tokotaha 'oku 'alu hifo mei he loto langí, 'o ne vakai na'e mahulu ange 'a hono ngingilá 'i he la'ā 'i he ho'atā mālīe.

10 Pea na'á ne mamata foki ki ha toko hongofulu mā ua kehe 'oku muimui 'iate ia, pea na'e lahi hake 'a honau ngingilá 'i he ngaahi fetu'u 'i he 'ataá.

11 Pea na'a nau ō hifo 'o 'alu atu 'i he funga 'o e māmaní; pea na'e ha'u 'a e 'uluakí 'o tu'u 'i mu'a 'i he'eku tamai; 'o ne 'oange kiate ia ha tohi, 'o fekau kiate ia ke ne lau.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga 'ene laú, na'e fakafonu 'aki ia 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí.

And I know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with mine own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge.

For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

Wherefore it came to pass that my father, Lehi, as he went forth prayed unto the Lord, yea, even with all his heart, in behalf of his people.

And it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire and dwelt upon a rock before him; and he saw and heard much; and because of the things which he saw and heard he did quake and tremble exceedingly.

And it came to pass that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem; and he cast himself upon his bed, being overcome with the Spirit and the things which he had seen.

And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.

And it came to pass that he saw One descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day.

And he also saw twelve others following him, and their brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament.

And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my father, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read.

And it came to pass that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

- 13 Pea ne lau, 'o pehē: 'E mala'ia, 'e mala'ia, 'a Selūsalema, he kuó u mamata ki ho' o ngaahi fakalieliá! 'Io, na' e lau 'e he'eku tamaí ha ngaahi me'a lahi na' e kau ki Selūsalema—'oku totonu ke faka'auha ia, pea mo hono kakai 'oku nofo aí; 'e tō 'a e tokolahi 'i he heletā; pea 'e 'ave pōpula 'a e tokolahi ki Pāpilone.
- 14 Pea na' e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi hono lau mo mamata 'a 'eku tamaí ki ha ngaahi me'a ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofo lahi, na' á ne kalanga 'aki ha ngaahi me'a lahi ki he 'Eikí; 'o hangē ko e: 'Oku ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofo 'a ho' o ngaahi ngāué, 'E 'Eiki ko e 'Otua Māfimaí! 'Oku mā'olunga ho 'afio'angá 'i he ngaahi langí, pea 'oku tōfuhia 'a e kakai kotoa pē 'o māmani 'i ho māfimaí, mo ho' o angalelé, mo ho' o 'alo'ofá; pea, koe' uhi 'okú ke 'alo'ofa, 'e 'ikai te ke tuku 'a kinautolu 'oku ha' u kiate koé ke 'auha.
- 15 Pea na' e pehē 'a e lea 'a 'eku tamaí 'i he'ene fakafeta' i ki hono 'Otuá; he na' e nēkeneka 'a hono laumālié, pea na' e fonu mo hono lotó kotoa, koe' uhi ko e ngaahi me'a kuó ne mamata ki aí, 'io, 'a ia kuo fakahā 'e he 'Eikí kiate iá.
- 16 Pea ko 'eni, ko au, Nifai, 'oku 'ikai te u fai ha fakamatala kakato ki he ngaahi me'a kuo tohi 'e he'eku tamaí, he kuó ne tohi ha ngaahi me'a lahi na' á ne mamata ki ai 'i ha ngaahi me'a-hā-mai mo ha ngaahi misi; pea kuó ne tohi foki mo ha ngaahi me'a lahi na' á ne kikite' i mo lea 'aki ki he'ene fānaú, 'a ia 'e 'ikai te u fai ha fakamatala kakato ki ai.
- 17 Ka te u hiki pē ha fakamatala 'o 'eku ngaahi ngāue 'i hoku ngaahi 'ahó. Vakai, 'oku ou fai hano hiki fakanounou 'o e lekooti 'a 'eku tamaí, 'i ha ngaahi peleti kuó u ngaohi 'aki hoku nima pē 'o'okú; ko ia, 'o ka hili 'eku hiki fakanounou 'a e lekooti 'a 'eku tamaí te u toki fai ha fakamatala ki he'eku mo'ui 'a'akú.
- 18 Ko ia, ko hoku lotó ke mou 'ilo' i 'i he hili hono fakahā mai 'e he 'Eikí ha ngaahi me'a fakaofo lahi pehē fau ki he'eku tamaí, ko Līháí, 'io, 'o kau ki he faka'auha 'o Selūsalemá, vakai na' á ne 'alu atu 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kakaí, 'o kamata ke kikite mo fakahā kiate kinautolu 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'a kuó ne fakatou mamata mo fanongo ki aí.

And he read, saying: Wo, wo, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yea, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.

And it came to pass that when my father had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he did exclaim many things unto the Lord; such as: Great and marvelous are thy works, O Lord God Almighty! Thy throne is high in the heavens, and thy power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth; and, because thou art merciful, thou wilt not suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish!

And after this manner was the language of my father in the praising of his God; for his soul did rejoice, and his whole heart was filled, because of the things which he had seen, yea, which the Lord had shown unto him.

And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he prophesied and spake unto his children, of which I shall not make a full account.

But I shall make an account of my proceedings in my days. Behold, I make an abridgment of the record of my father, upon plates which I have made with mine own hands; wherefore, after I have abridged the record of my father then will I make an account of mine own life.

Therefore, I would that ye should know, that after the Lord had shown so many marvelous things unto my father, Lehi, yea, concerning the destruction of Jerusalem, behold he went forth among the people, and began to prophesy and to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen and heard.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e manuki'i ia 'e he kau Siú
koe'uhi ko e ngaahi me'a na'á ne fakamo'oni'i 'o kau
kiate kinautolú; he na'á ne fakamo'oni'i totonu 'a 'enau
fai angahalá mo 'enau ngaahi anga-fakalieliá; pea na'á e
fakamo'oni'i 'oku fakahā 'o mahinongofua 'e he ngaahi
me'a na'á ne mamata mo fanongo aí, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e
ngaahi me'a na'á ne lau 'i he tohí 'e hā'ele mai ha Mīsaia,
kae 'uma'ā foki hono huhu'i 'o e māmaní.

20 Pea 'i he fanongo 'a e kau Siú ki he ngaahi me'a ní na'a
nau 'ita kiate ia; 'io, 'o hangē ki he kau palōfita 'i mu'á, 'a
ia na'a nau kapusi ki tu'a, mo tolomaka'i, mo tāmata'e;
pea na'a nau feinga foki ke to'o mo 'ene mo'uí. Kae
vakai, ko au, Nīfai, te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'oku 'i
he kakai kotoa pē kuo fili 'e he 'Eikí 'a 'ene ngaahi
'alo'ofa ongongofuá, koe'uhi ko 'enau tuí, ke fakaivi'i 'a
kinautolu 'o a'u ki he'enau ma'u 'a e mālohi 'o e
fakahaofí.

And it came to pass that the Jews did mock him be-
cause of the things which he testified of them; for he
truly testified of their wickedness and their abomina-
tions; and he testified that the things which he saw and
heard, and also the things which he read in the book,
manifested plainly of the coming of a Messiah, and also
the redemption of the world.

And when the Jews heard these things they were an-
gry with him; yea, even as with the prophets of old,
whom they had cast out, and stoned, and slain; and they
also sought his life, that they might take it away. But be-
hold, I, Nephi, will show unto you that the tender mer-
cies of the Lord are over all those whom he hath chosen,
because of their faith, to make them mighty even unto
the power of deliverance.

I Nīfai 2

- 1 He vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e folofola 'a e 'Eikí ki he'eku tamaí, 'io, 'i ha misi, 'o ne pehē kiate ia: 'Okú ke monū'ia koe 'e Lihai, koe'uhi ko e ngaahi me'a kuó ke faí; pea koe'uhi ko ho' o tui faivelenga mo tala ki he kakai ni 'a e ngaahi me'a na'á ku fekau kiate koé, vakai, 'oku nau feinga ke to' o 'a ho' o mo'uí.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'e he 'Eikí ki he'eku tamaí, 'io 'i ha misi, 'oku totonu ke ne 'ave hono fāmilí pea 'alu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne talangofua ki he folofola 'a e 'Eikí, ko ia na'á ne fai 'o hangē ko e fekau 'a e 'Eikí kiate íá.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne 'alu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá. Peá ne tuku hono falé, mo e fonua 'o hono tofi'á, mo 'ene koulá, mo 'ene silivá, mo 'ene ngaahi me'a mahu'ingá, pea 'ikai te ne 'ave mo ia ha me'a, ka ko hono fāmilí pē, pea mo e ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau, mo e ngaahi fale fehikitaki, peá ne 'alu atu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 5 Pea na'á ne a'u hifo ki he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'oku ofi ki he matātahi 'o e Tahi Kulokulá; pea na'á ne fononga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'oku ofi ange ki he Tahi Kulokulá; pea ne fononga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá mo hono fāmilí, 'a ia na'e kau ai 'a 'eku fa'ē ko Selaiá, mo hoku ngaahi ta'oketé, 'a ia ko Leimana, Lēmiuela, mo Samu.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili leva 'a e 'aho 'e tolu 'o 'ene fononga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, na'á ne fokotu'u hono fale fehikitaki 'i ha tele'a 'i ha ve'e vaitafe.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fokotu'u ha 'esi-feilaulau 'aki ha ngaahi maka, 'o ne fai ha feilaulau ki he 'Eikí mo 'oatu 'a e fakafeta 'i ki he 'Eiki ko hotau 'Otuá.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne ui 'a e hingoa 'o e vaitafé, ko Leimana, pea na'e tafe ia ki he Tahi Kulokulá; pea na'e tu'u 'a e tele'a 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'oku ofi ki he ngutu 'i vaitafé.
- 9 Pea 'i he vakai 'a 'eku tamaí 'oku tō 'a e vai 'o e vaitafé ki he matavai 'o e Tahi Kulokulá, na'e lea ia kia Leimana, 'o pehē: Taumaiá ke ke hangē ko e vaitafé ni, 'o tafe ma'u ai pē ki he matavai 'o e mā'oni'oni kotoa pē!

I Nephi 2

For behold, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream, and said unto him: Blessed art thou Lehi, because of the things which thou hast done; and because thou hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away thy life.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him.

And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mother, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God.

And it came to pass that he called the name of the river, Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

And when my father saw that the waters of the river emptied into the fountain of the Red Sea, he spake unto Laman, saying: O that thou mightest be like unto this river, continually running into the fountain of all righteousness!

10 Pea lea foki ia kia Lēmiuela: Taumaiā ke ke hangē ko e tele‘á ni, ‘o tu‘u ma‘u mo tu‘u ‘ali‘aliaki ta‘elava ke ue‘i ‘i he tauhi ‘o e ngaahi fekau ‘a e ‘Eikí!

11 Ko ‘eni na‘á ne lea ‘aki ‘a e ngaahi me‘á ni koe‘uhi ko e kia-kekeva ‘a Leimana mo Lēmiuelá; he vakai, na‘á na lāunga ‘i ha ngaahi me‘a lahi koe‘uhi ko ‘ena tamaí, koe‘uhi ko ha tangata fie mamata me‘a-hā-mai ia, pea kuó ne tataki ‘a kinaua mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, kae tuku ‘a e fonua ‘o hona tofi‘á, mo ‘ena koulá, mo ‘ena silivá, mo ‘ena ngaahi me‘a mahu‘ingá, ke na ‘auha ‘i he feitu‘u maomaonganoá. Pea na‘á na pehē kuó ne fai ia ko e tupu mei he ngaahi fakakaukau ngali vale ‘a hono lotó.

12 Pea na‘e pehē ‘a e lāunga ‘a Leimana mo Lēmiuela, ‘a ia na‘á na lalahí, ‘o kau ki he‘ena tamaí. Pea na‘á na lāunga koe‘uhi ko e ‘ikai te na ‘ilo‘i ‘a e ngaahi fengāue‘aki ‘a e tangatá mo e ‘Otuá ko ia na‘á ne fakatupu ‘a kinauá.

13 Pea na‘e ‘ikai foki te na tui ‘e lava ‘o faka‘auha ‘a Selūsalema, ‘a e fu‘u kolo lahi ko iá, ‘o fakatatau mo e ngaahi lea ‘a e kau palōfitá. Pea na‘á na tatau mo e kau Siu ‘i Selūsalemá, ‘a ia na‘a nau feinga ke to‘o ‘a e mo‘ui ‘a ‘eku tamaí.

14 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e lea ‘a ‘eku tamaí kiate kinaua ‘i he tele‘a ko Lēmiuelá, ‘i he mālohi, kuó ne fonu ‘i he Laumālié, ‘o ‘a u ki he tetetete hona sinó ‘i hono ‘aó. Pea na‘á ne ta‘ofi ‘a kinaua, ‘o na manavahē ai ke fakakikihi mo ia; ko ia na‘á na fai ‘o hangē ko ‘ene fekau kiate kinauá.

15 Pea na‘e nofo ‘a ‘eku tamaí ‘i ha fale fehikitaki.

16 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na‘á ku fu‘u ta‘u si‘i ‘aupito, ka neongo iá, na‘á ku sino lahi ‘aupito, pea na‘á ku ma‘u foki ha holi lahi ke u ‘ilo ki he ngaahi me‘a lilo ‘a e ‘Otuá, ko ia, na‘á ku tangi ai ki he ‘Eikí; pea vakai, na‘á ne ‘a‘ahi mai kiate au, ‘o ne fakamolū hoku lotó peá u tui ai ki he ngaahi lea kotoa pē kuo lea ‘aki ‘e he‘eku tamaí; ko ia na‘e ‘ikai te u angatu‘u kiate ia ‘o hangē ko hoku ongo tokouá.

17 Pea na‘á ku lea kia Samu, ‘o fakahā kiate ia ‘a e ngaahi me‘a kuo fakahā ‘e he ‘Eikí kiate au ‘aki hono Laumālie Mā‘oní‘oní. Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ne tui ki he‘eku ngaahi leá.

And he also spake unto Lemuel: O that thou mightest be like unto this valley, firm and steadfast, and immovable in keeping the commandments of the Lord!

Now this he spake because of the stiffneckedness of Laman and Lemuel; for behold they did murmur in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness. And this they said he had done because of the foolish imaginations of his heart.

And thus Laman and Lemuel, being the eldest, did murmur against their father. And they did murmur because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them.

Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my father.

And it came to pass that my father did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did shake before him. And he did confound them, that they durst not utter against him; wherefore, they did as he commanded them.

And my father dwelt in a tent.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, nevertheless being large in stature, and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers.

And I spake unto Sam, making known unto him the things which the Lord had manifested unto me by his Holy Spirit. And it came to pass that he believed in my words.

- 18 Kae vakai, na'e 'ikai fie tokanga 'a Leimana mo Lēmiuela ki he'eku ngaahi leá; pea ko e me'a 'i he'eku loto-mamahi koe'uhi ko e fefeka 'o hona lotó, na'á ku tangi ai ki he 'Eikí koe'uhi ko kinaua.
- 19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kiate au, 'o pehē: 'Okú ke monū'ia koe, 'e Nifai, koe'uhi ko ho'o tuí, he kuó ke fekumi faivelenga kiate au, 'i he loto-fakatōkilalo.
- 20 Pea fakatatau ki ho'o tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú, te ke tu'umālie, pea 'e tataki koe ki ha fonua 'o e tala'ofa; 'io, 'a ia ko ha fonua kuó u teuteu mo'ou; 'io, ko ha fonua 'oku mahu'inga lahi hake 'i he ngaahi fonua kehe kotoa pē.
- 21 Pea fakatatau ki he angatu'u kiate koe ho ongo tokouá, 'e motuhi atu 'a kinaua mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí.
- 22 Pea fakatatau ki ho'o tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú, 'e fokotu'u koe ko ha pule mo ha faiako ki ho ongo tokouá.
- 23 He vakai, 'i he 'aho ko ia te na angatu'u ai kiate aú, te u fakamala'ia 'i 'a kinaua 'io 'aki ha mala'ia lahi, pea 'e 'ikai te na ma'u ha mālohi ki ho hakó tuku kehe 'o kapau te nau angatu'u kiate au foki.
- 24 Pea kapau te nau angatu'u kiate au, te nau hoko ko e fakamamahi ki ho hakó, ke ue'i hake 'a kinautolu ke nau manatu.

But, behold, Laman and Lemuel would not hearken unto my words; and being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Blessed art thou, Nephi, because of thy faith, for thou hast sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart.

And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands.

And inasmuch as thy brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And inasmuch as thou shalt keep my commandments, thou shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over thy brethren.

For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against me also.

And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.

I Nīfai 3

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē, ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku foki mai mei he fefolofolai mo e 'Eikí ki he fale fehikitaki 'o 'eku tamaí.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne lea mai kiate au, 'o pehē: Vakai, kuó u misi 'i ha misi, pea kuo fekau 'i ai au 'e he 'Eikí ke ke foki mo ho ngaahi tokouá ki Selūsalema.
- 3 He vakai, 'oku ma'u 'e Lēpani 'a e lekooti 'o e kau Siú kae 'uma'ā foki ha tohi hohoko 'o 'eku ngaahi kuí, pea kuo tongitongi ia 'i ha ngaahi peleti 'o e palasa.
- 4 Ko ia, kuo fekau kiate au 'e he 'Eikí ke ke 'alu mo ho ngaahi tokouá ki he fale 'o Lēpaní, 'o kumi ki he ngaahi lekōtí, 'o 'omi ia ki heni ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 5 Pea ko 'eni, vakai 'oku lāunga 'a ho ongo tokouá, 'o pehē ko e me'a faingata'a kuó u fekau kiate kinauá; kae vakai, kuo 'ikai te u fekau ia kiate kinaua, kā ko ha fekau ia 'a e 'Eikí.
- 6 Ko ia 'alu, 'e hoku foha, pea 'e 'ofeina koe 'e he 'Eikí, koe'uhi kuo 'ikai te ke lāunga.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku pehē ange ki he'eku tamaí: Te u 'alu 'o fai 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo fekau 'e he 'Eikí, he 'oku ou 'ilo 'oku 'ikai tuku mai 'e he 'Eikí ha fekau ki he fānau 'a e tangatá kae 'ikai te ne teuteu ha hala ma'anautolu ke nau lava ai 'o fai 'a e me'a kuó ne fekau kiate kinautolú.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he fanongo 'a 'eku tamaí ki he ngaahi lea ní na'á ne fu'u fiefia 'aupito, he na'á ne 'ilo'i kuo tāpuaki'i au 'e he 'Eikí.
- 9 Pea ko au, Nīfai, na'e fai atu mo hoku ngaahi tokoua 'a 'emau fononga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, mo homau ngaahi fale fehikitakí, ke mau ō hake ki he fonua ko Selūsalemá.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'emau a'u hake ki he fonua ko Selūsalemá, na'á ku fealea'aki mo hoku ngaahi tokouá.
- 11 Pea mau talotalo—pe ko hai 'iate kimautolu 'e hū atu ki he fale 'o Lēpaní. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tō 'a e talotaló kia Leimana; pea na'e hū atu 'a Leimana ki he fale 'o Lēpani, peá na fetalanoa'aki mo ia lolotonga 'ene nofo 'i hono falé.

I Nephi 3

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, returned from speaking with the Lord, to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, saying: Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brethren shall return to Jerusalem.

For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.

And now, behold thy brothers murmur, saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them; but behold I have not required it of them, but it is a commandment of the Lord.

Therefore go, my son, and thou shalt be favored of the Lord, because thou hast not murmured.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto my father: I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, for I know that the Lord giveth no commandments unto the children of men, save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them.

And it came to pass that when my father had heard these words he was exceedingly glad, for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord.

And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that when we had gone up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brethren did consult one with another.

And we cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And it came to pass that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house.

- 12 Pea na'á ne kole meia Lēpani 'a e ngaahi lekooti kuo tongitongi 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá, 'a ia na'e 'i ai 'a e tohi hohoko 'o 'eku tamaí.
- 13 Pea vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ita 'a Lēpani, 'o ne kapusi ia ki tu 'a mei hono falé; 'o 'ikai te ne loto ke foaki kiate ia 'a e ngaahi lekōtí. Ko ia, na'á ne pehē kiate ia: Vakai ko ha kaiha 'a koe, pea te u tāmáté 'i koe.
- 14 Ka na'e hola 'a Leimana mei hono 'aó, 'o ne tala mai kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo fai 'e Lēpani. Pea na'á mau fu'u loto-mamahi 'aupito, pea na'e mei foki atu 'a hoku ngaahi tokouá ki he'eku tamaí 'i he feitu'u maomaongoá.
- 15 Kae vakai na'á ku pehē ange kiate kinautolu: Hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eikí, pea hangē 'oku tau mo'uí, 'e 'ikai te tau ō hifo ki he'etau tamaí 'i he feitu'u maomaongoá kae 'oua kuo tau fai 'a e me'a kuo fekau 'e he 'Eikí kiate kinautolú.
- 16 Ko ia, tau tui faivelenga mu'a 'i hono tauhi 'o e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí, ko ia tau ō hifo ki he fonua 'o e tofi 'a 'o 'etau tamaí, he vakai na'á ne tuku 'a e koulá mo e silivá mo e ngaahi koloa kehekehe kotoa pē. Pea kuó ne fai 'eni kotoa pē koe'uhi ko e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí.
- 17 He na'á ne 'ilo 'i kuo pau 'e faka'auha 'a Selūsalema, koe'uhi ko e fai angahala 'a e kakaí.
- 18 He vakai, kuo nau lí'aki 'a e ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfitá. Ko ia, ka ne nofo 'a 'eku tamaí 'i he fonuá 'i he hili hono fekau 'i ia ke hola mei he fonuá, vakai, te ne mate foki mo ia. Ko ia, 'oku 'aonga ke ne hola mei he fonuá.
- 19 Pea vakai, ko e finangalo poto 'o e 'Otuá ke tau ma'u 'a e ngaahi lekōtí ni, koe'uhi ke tau fakatolonga ma'a 'etau fānaú 'a e lea 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí;
- 20 Kae 'uma'ā foki ke tau lava ai 'o fakatolonga ma'anautolu 'a e ngaahi lea, 'a ia kuo lea 'aki 'i he ngutu 'o e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni kotoa pē, 'a ia kuo tuku kiate kinautolu 'i he Laumālie mo e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá, talu mei he kamata'anga 'o e māmaní, 'o a'u mai ki he taimi lolotonga ní.
- 21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku fakaloto 'i 'i he ngaahi lea pehē 'a hoku ngaahi tokouá, ke nau tui faivelenga 'i hono tauhi 'o e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá.

And he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, which contained the genealogy of my father.

And behold, it came to pass that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold thou art a robber, and I will slay thee.

But Laman fled out of his presence, and told the things which Laban had done, unto us. And we began to be exceedingly sorrowful, and my brethren were about to return unto my father in the wilderness.

But behold I said unto them that: As the Lord liveth, and as we live, we will not go down unto our father in the wilderness until we have accomplished the thing which the Lord hath commanded us.

Wherefore, let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; therefore let us go down to the land of our father's inheritance, for behold he left gold and silver, and all manner of riches. And all this he hath done because of the commandments of the Lord.

For he knew that Jerusalem must be destroyed, because of the wickedness of the people.

For behold, they have rejected the words of the prophets. Wherefore, if my father should dwell in the land after he hath been commanded to flee out of the land, behold, he would also perish. Wherefore, it must needs be that he flee out of the land.

And behold, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our fathers;

And also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, which have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God, since the world began, even down unto this present time.

And it came to pass that after this manner of language did I persuade my brethren, that they might be faithful in keeping the commandments of God.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau 'alu hifo ki he fonua 'o homau tofi'á, pea na'a mau tānaki fakataha 'a 'emau koulá, mo 'emau silivá, mo 'emau ngaahi me'a mahu'ingá.

23 Pea 'i he 'osi 'emau tānaki fakataha 'a e ngaahi me'a ní, na'a mau toe ō hake ki he fale 'o Lēpaní.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau hū atu kia Lēpani, 'o mau kole kiate ia ke ne 'omai ma'amautolu 'a e ngaahi lekooti kuo tongitongi 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá, ka mau 'oange kiate ia 'a 'emau koulá, mo 'emau silivá, mo 'emau ngaahi me'a mahu'ingá kotoa pē.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he mamata 'a Lēpani ki he 'emau koloá, pea na'e lahi 'aupito ia, na'á ne mānumanu ki ai, ko ia ai na'á ne kapusi 'a kimautolu ki tu'a, 'o ne fekau 'ene kau tamaio'eikí ke tāmata'e 'i 'a kimautolu, koe'uhi ka ne lava 'o ma'u 'a 'emau koloá.

26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau hola mei he kau tamaio'eiki 'a Lēpaní, pea na'e pau ke mau tuku 'emau koloá, 'o ma'u ia 'e Lēpani.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau hola ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, pea na'e 'ikai ma'u 'a kimautolu 'e he kau tamaio'eiki 'a Lēpaní, pea na'a mau toitoi 'i ha ava'i maka.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ita 'a Leimana kiate au, pea ki he'eku tamaí foki; pea na'e 'ita foki mo Lēmiuela, he na'á ne fanongo ki he ngaahi lea 'a Leimaná. Ko ia na'e lea 'aki 'e Leimana mo Lēmiuela ha ngaahi lea fefeka lahi kiate kimaua, ko hona ongo tehiná, pea na'á na taa'i 'a kimaua 'aki ha va'akau.

29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga 'ena taa'i 'a kimaua 'aki ha va'akaú, vakai, na'e ha'u ha 'āngelo 'a e 'Eikí 'o tu'u 'i hona 'aó, 'o ne lea kiate kinaua, 'o pehē: Ko e hā 'okú mo taa'i ai 'a homo tehiná 'aki 'a e va'akaú? 'Oku 'ikai te mo 'ilo kuo fili ia 'e he 'Eikí ke hoko ko e pule kiate kimoua, pea 'oku tupu ia 'i ho'omo ngaahi angahalá? Vakai, te mou toe ō hake ki Selūsalema, pea 'e tuku 'e he 'Eikí 'a Lēpani ki homou nimá.

30 Pea hili 'a e lea 'a e 'āngeló kiate kimautolú, na'á ne 'alu leva.

And it came to pass that we went down to the land of our inheritance, and we did gather together our gold, and our silver, and our precious things.

And after we had gathered these things together, we went up again unto the house of Laban.

And it came to pass that we went in unto Laban, and desired him that he would give unto us the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, for which we would give unto him our gold, and our silver, and all our precious things.

And it came to pass that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.

And it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban, and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.

And it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.

And it came to pass that Laman was angry with me, and also with my father; and also was Lemuel, for he hearkened unto the words of Laman. Wherefore Laman and Lemuel did speak many hard words unto us, their younger brothers, and they did smite us even with a rod.

And it came to pass as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them, saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? Behold ye shall go up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands.

And after the angel had spoken unto us, he departed.

31 Pea hili 'a e 'alu 'a e 'āngeló, na'e toe kamata ke lāunga
'a Leimana mo Lēmiuela, 'o na pehē: 'Oku lava fēfē 'e he
'Eikí ke tuku mai 'a Lēpani ki hotau nimá? Vakai, ko e
tangata mālohi ia, pea 'okú ne mafai ke fekau 'a e toko
nimangofulu, 'io, 'okú ne lava foki ke tāmata 'i 'a e toko
nimangofulú; kapau ko ia, ko e hā ai 'a kitautolu?

And after the angel had departed, Laman and
Lemuel again began to murmur, saying: How is it possi-
ble that the Lord will deliver Laban into our hands?
Behold, he is a mighty man, and he can command fifty,
yea, even he can slay fifty; then why not us?

I Nīfai 4

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku lea ange ki hoku ngaahi tokouá, 'o pehē: Tau toe ō hake ki Selūsalema, pea tau tui faivelenga 'i he tauhi 'o e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí; he vakai 'okú ne māfimaſi lahi ange 'i he māmaní kotoa, ko ia ko e hā 'oku 'ikai te ne māfimaſi lahi ange ai 'ia Lēpani mo 'ene toko nimangofulú, 'io, na'a mo 'ene toko lau manó?
- 2 Ko ia tau ō hake; tau mālohi 'o hangē ko Mōsesé; he ko e mo'oni na'á ne lea ki he ngaahi vai 'o e Tahi Kulokulá pea na'e mavaeua ia ki hē mo ē, pea na'e fononga mai 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí, mei he nofo pōpulá, 'i he kelekele mōmoa; kae muimui atu 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a Feló 'o nau melemo 'i he ngaahi vai 'o e Tahi Kulokulá.
- 3 Pea ko 'eni vakai 'okú mo 'ilo 'i 'oku mo'oni 'eni; pea 'okú mo 'ilo 'i foki kuo lea kiate kimoua ha 'āngelo; pea ko e hā 'okú mo kei ta'etui aí? Tau ō hake; 'oku lava 'e he 'Eiki ke fakahaofi 'a kitautolu, 'io, 'o hangē ko 'etau ngaahi tamaí, pea ke faka'auha 'a Lēpani, 'o hangē ko e kau 'Isipité.
- 4 Pea hili 'eku lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'á na kei 'ita pē, 'o na kei fai atu 'a e lāungá; ka neongo iá, na'á nau muimui pē 'iate au kae 'oua kuo mau 'a u ki he tu 'a 'ā 'o e ngaahi 'ā 'o Selūsalemá.
- 5 Pea kuo po'uli foki; ko ia na'a ku fekau ke nau toitoi 'i tu 'a 'i he ngaahi 'aá. Pea 'i he 'osi 'enau toitoi, ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku totolo atu ki he loto koló, 'o u 'alu atu ki he fale 'o Lēpaní.
- 6 Pea na'e tataki au 'e he Laumālié, 'o 'ikai te u tomu'a 'ilo 'a e me'a te u faí.
- 7 Ka na'a ku 'alu atu pē, pea 'i he 'eku fakaofi atu ki he fale 'o Lēpaní na'á ku mamata ki ha tangata, pea kuó ne tō ki he kelekelé 'i mu'a 'iate au, he kuo konā ia 'i he uaine.
- 8 Pea 'i he 'eku a'u atu kiate iá, na'á ku 'ilo 'i ko Lēpani ia.
- 9 Pea u mamata ki he 'ene heletaá, pea na'á ku unuhi ia mei hono 'ai'angá; pea ko hono kau na'e 'o e koula ma'a, pea na'e matu'aki lelei 'aupito 'a e anga 'o hono ngaohí, pea u mamata na'e 'o e ukamea mahu'inga 'aupito 'a hono matá.

I Nephi 4

And it came to pass that I spake unto my brethren, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem, and let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; for behold he is mightier than all the earth, then why not mightier than Laban and his fifty, yea, or even than his tens of thousands?

Therefore let us go up; let us be strong like unto Moses; for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither, and our fathers came through, out of captivity, on dry ground, and the armies of Pharaoh did follow and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea.

Now behold ye know that this is true; and ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you; wherefore can ye doubt? Let us go up; the Lord is able to deliver us, even as our fathers, and to destroy Laban, even as the Egyptians.

Now when I had spoken these words, they were yet wroth, and did still continue to murmur; nevertheless they did follow me up until we came without the walls of Jerusalem.

And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.

And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do.

Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine.

And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.

And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'i mālohi au 'e he Laumālié ke u tāmāte'i 'a Lēpani; ka na'á ku pehē 'i hoku lotó: 'Oku te'eki 'i ai ha taimi te u lilingi ha toto 'o ha tangata. Peá u tu'u sí'i ai 'o loto ke 'oua na'á ku tāmāte'i ia.

11 Pea toe folofola mai 'a e Laumālié kiate au: Vakai kuo tuku ia 'e he 'Eikí ki ho nimá. 'Io, pea na'á ku 'ilo'i foki kuó ne feinga ke to'o 'eku mo'ui 'a'akú; 'io, pea na'e 'ikai te ne fie tokanga ki he ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí; pea kuó ne fá'ao foki mo 'emau koloá.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe folofola mai 'e he Laumālié kiate au: Tāmāte'i ia, he kuo tuku ia 'e he 'Eikí ki ho nimá;

13 Vakai 'oku tāmāte'i 'e he 'Eikí 'a e kau fai angahalá koe'uhi ke fakahoko 'a hono ngaahi finangalo mā'oní'oní. 'Oku lelei ange 'a e mate 'a e tangata 'e toko tahá 'i he faka'au'au hifo mo e mole 'a ha pule'anga 'i he ta'etuí.

14 Pea ko 'eni, ko au, Nífaí, 'i he hili 'eku fanongo ki he ngaahi folofola ko 'ení, na'á ku manatu'i 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Eikí 'a ia na'á ne folofola 'aki kiate au 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'o pehē: Pea fakatatau ki he tauhi 'e ho hakó 'a 'eku ngaahi fekaú, te nau tu'umālie 'i he fonua 'o e tala'ofá.

15 'Io, peá u fakakaukau foki 'e 'ikai te nau lava 'o tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí 'o fakatatau ki he fono 'a Mōsesé, kae 'ikai te nau ma'u 'a e fonó.

16 Pea na'á ku 'ilo foki kuo tongitongi 'a e fonó 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá.

17 Pea ko e tahá foki, na'á ku 'ilo kuo tuku mai 'e he 'Eikí 'a Lēpani ki hoku nimá koe'uhi ko e 'uhingá ni— koe'uhi ke u lava 'o ma'u 'a e ngaahi lekōtí 'o fakatatau ki he'ene ngaahi fekaú.

18 Ko ia na'á ku talangofua ki he le'o 'o e Laumālié, 'o u puke 'a Lēpani 'i he lou'ulu 'o hono 'ulú, peá u tu'usi 'a hono 'ulú 'aki 'ene heletā pē 'a'aná.

19 Pea hili 'eku tu'usi hono 'ulú 'aki 'ene heletā 'a'aná, na'á ku to'o 'a e ngaahi kofu 'o Lēpaní 'o u tui ia ki hoku sino 'o'okú; 'io, 'a hono konga kotoa pē; pea na'á ku nono'o hono teunga taú ki hoku kongalotó.

And it came to pass that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him.

And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands. Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands;

Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.

And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.

Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.

And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.

And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.

Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.

And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins.

20 Pea hili 'eku fai 'enī, na'á ku 'alu atu leva ki he tuku'anga koloa 'a Lēpanī. Pea lolotonga 'eku 'alu atu ki he tuku'anga koloa 'a Lēpanī, vakai, na'á ku mamata ki he tamaio'eiki 'a Lēpanī, 'a ia na'á ne ma'u 'a e ngaahi kī 'o e tuku'anga koloá. Pea na'á ku fekau kiate ia 'i he le'ó 'o Lēpanī ke ne 'alu mo au ki he loto tuku'anga koloá.

21 Pea na'á ne mahalo ko Lēpani au, ko hono 'eikí, he na'á ne mamata ki he ngaahi kofú kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e heletā kuo nono'ó ki hoku kongalotó.

22 Pea na'á ne lea mai kiate au 'o kau ki he kau mātu 'a 'o e kau Siú, he na'á ne 'ilo kuo 'alu po'uli atu 'a hono 'eiki, ko Lēpanī, kiate kinautolu.

23 Pea na'á ku lea kiate ia 'o hangē pē ko Lēpanī.

24 Pea na'á ku pehē foki kiate ia 'oku totonu ke u 'ave 'a e ngaahi tohi tongitongi, 'a ia na'e 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá, ki hoku ngaahi ta'oketé, 'a ia na'a nau 'i tu'a 'i he ngaahi 'aá.

25 Pea na'á ku fekau foki kiate ia ke ne muimui mai 'iate au.

26 Pea 'i he'ene mahalo ko 'eku lau ki he kāinga 'o e siasí, pea ko e mo'oni ko Lēpani au 'a ia kuó u tāmata'í, ko ia na'á ne muimui ai kiate au.

27 Pea na'e tu'ó lahi 'ene lea kiate au 'o kau ki he kau mātu 'a 'o e kau Siú, lolotonga 'eku 'alu atu ki hoku ngaahi tokouá, 'a ia na'e 'i tu'a 'i he ngaahi 'aá.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he mamata 'a Leimana kiate aú, na'á ne fu'u ilifia 'aupito kae 'uma'ā foki 'a Lēmiuela mo Samu. Pea na'a nau hola mei hoku 'aó; he na'a nau mahalo ko Lēpani au, pea kuó ne tāmata'í au pea 'okú ne feinga ke to'ó mo 'enau mo'uí foki.

29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a ku ui atu kiate kinautolu, pea na'a nau ongo'i ko au; ko ia na'a nau tuku 'enau hola meiate aú.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he mamata 'e he tamaio'eiki 'a Lēpanī ki hoku ngaahi tokouá na'e kamata ke tetetete, pea ne mei hola meiate au 'o foki atu ki he kolo ko Selūsalemá.

31 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Nīfai, ko'e uhi ko e tangata sino lahi au, pea kuó u ma'u foki 'a e ivi lahi mei he 'Eikí, ko ia na'á ku puke 'a e tamaio'eiki 'a Lēpanī, pea u ta'ofi ia, ke 'oua na'á ne hola.

And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.

And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.

And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.

And I spake unto him as if it had been Laban.

And I also spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.

And I also bade him that he should follow me.

And he, supposing that I spake of the brethren of the church, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.

And he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews, as I went forth unto my brethren, who were without the walls.

And it came to pass that when Laman saw me he was exceedingly frightened, and also Lemuel and Sam. And they fled from before my presence; for they supposed it was Laban, and that he had slain me and had sought to take away their lives also.

And it came to pass that I called after them, and they did hear me; wherefore they did cease to flee from my presence.

And it came to pass that when the servant of Laban beheld my brethren he began to tremble, and was about to flee from before me and return to the city of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being a man large in stature, and also having received much strength of the Lord, therefore I did seize upon the servant of Laban, and held him, that he should not flee.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku lea kiate ia, kapau te ne tokanga ki he'eku ngaahi leá, 'o hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eikí, pea hangē 'oku ou mo'uí, kapau te ne tokanga ki he'emaui ngaahi leá, te mau fakamo'ui ia.

33 Pea na'á ku lea kiate ia, 'io 'i ha fakapapau, 'oku 'ikai fie ma'u ke ne manavahē; he te ne hoko ko ha tangata tau'atāina 'o hangē ko kimautilú 'e pehē kapau 'e 'alu hifo mo kimautilu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

34 Pea na'á ku lea foki kiate ia, 'o pehē ange: Ko e mo'oni kuo fekau 'i kimautilu 'e he 'Eikí ke fai 'a e me'á ni; pea he 'ikai koā ke tau faivelenga 'i he tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí? Ko ia, kapau te ke 'alu hifo ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá ki he'eku tamaí te ke kau fakataha mo kimautilu.

35 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ma'u 'e Sōlami ha loto-to'a 'i he ngaahi lea na'á ku lea 'akí. Ko 'eni ko e hingoa 'o e tamaio'eiki ko Sōlami; pea na'á ne fakapapau mai te ne 'alu hifo ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá ki he'eku tamaí. 'Io, pea na'á ne fai foki ha fuakava kiate kimautilu te ne nofo mo kimautilu 'o fai atu mei he taimi ko íá.

36 Ko 'eni na'a mau faka'amu ke ne nofo mo kimautilu koe'uhi ko e 'uhinga ko 'ení, ke 'oua na'a 'ilo 'e he kau Siú ki he'emaui hola ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, telia na'a nau tuli 'a kimautilu 'o tāmata'e 'i 'a kimautilu.

37 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e fai 'e Sōlami ha fakapapau kiate kimautilú, na'e 'osi 'emaui manavahē 'o kau kiate íá.

38 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau 'ave 'a e ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá mo e tamaio'eiki 'a Lēpaní, 'o mau ō atu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'o fononga atu ki he fale fehikitaki 'o 'emaui tamaí.

And it came to pass that I spake with him, that if he would hearken unto my words, as the Lord liveth, and as I live, even so that if he would hearken unto our words, we would spare his life.

And I spake unto him, even with an oath, that he need not fear; that he should be a free man like unto us if he would go down in the wilderness with us.

And I also spake unto him, saying: Surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing; and shall we not be diligent in keeping the commandments of the Lord? Therefore, if thou wilt go down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us.

And it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto our father. Yea, and he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth.

Now we were desirous that he should tarry with us for this cause, that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness, lest they should pursue us and destroy us.

And it came to pass that when Zoram had made an oath unto us, our fears did cease concerning him.

And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father.

I Nīfai 5

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'emau 'a'u hifo ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá ki he 'emau tamaí, vakai, na'e fonu ia 'i he fiefia, kae 'uma'ā foki mo 'eku fa'ē, ko Selaiá, na'e fiefia 'aupito, he na'á ne tangi lahi koe'uhi ko kimautilu.
- 2 He na'á ne mahalo kuo mau mate 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá; pea na'á ne lāunga foki ki he 'eku tamaí, 'o tala ange kiate ia ko e tangata fie mamata me'a-hā-mai ia; 'o ne pehē: Vakai, kuó ke taki mai 'a kimautilu mei he fonua 'o hotau tofi'á, pea kuo tāmata'i mo hoku ngaahi fohá, pea te tau mate 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 3 Pea na'e pehē 'a e anga 'o e lea 'a 'eku fa'ē 'i he'ene lāunga 'o kau ki he 'eku tamaí.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e lea kiate ia 'a 'eku tamaí, 'o pehē: 'Oku ou 'ilo ko e tangata fie mamata me'a-hā-mai au; he ka ne ta'e'oua 'a 'eku mamata 'i ha me'a-hā-mai ki he ngaahi me'a 'a e 'Otuá, pehē kuo 'ikai te u 'ilo 'i 'a e angalelei 'a e 'Otuá, ka kuó u nofo pē 'i Selūsalema, 'o mate fakataha mo hoku kāingá.
- 5 Kae vakai, kuó u ma'u ha fonua 'o e talá'ofa, 'a ia ko e ngaahi me'a ia 'oku ou fiefia ai; 'io, pea 'oku ou 'ilo 'e fakahaofi 'e he 'Eikí 'a hoku ngaahi fohá mei he nima 'o Lēpaní, pea toe 'omi 'a kinautilu kiate kitaua 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 6 Pea na'e pehē 'a e anga 'o e lea na'e fai 'e he 'eku tamai, ko Lihái, 'i hono fakafiemālie 'i 'eku fa'ē, ko Selaiá, koe'uhi ko kimautilu, lolotonga 'emau fononga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá ki he fonua ko Selūsalemá, ke ma'u 'a e lekooti 'o e kau Siú.
- 7 Pea hili 'emau foki ki he fale fehikitaki 'o 'eku tamaí, vakai, na'e kakato 'a 'ena fiefiá, pea na'e fiemālie 'a 'eku fa'ē.
- 8 Pea na'e lea ia 'o pehē: Ko 'eni, 'oku ou 'ilo 'i fakapapau kuo fekau 'e he 'Eikí ki hoku husepānití ke hola ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá; 'io, pea 'oku ou toe 'ilo 'i fakapapau foki kuo malu 'i 'e he 'Eikí 'a hoku ngaahi fohá, 'o fakahaofi kinautilu mei he nima 'o Lēpaní, 'o tuku kiate kinautilu 'a e mālohi ke nau lava ai 'o fai 'a e me'a kuo fekau 'e he 'Eikí kiate kinautilu. Pea na'e pehē 'a e anga 'o 'ene leá.

I Nephi 5

And it came to pass that after we had come down into the wilderness unto our father, behold, he was filled with joy, and also my mother, Sariah, was exceedingly glad, for she truly had mourned because of us.

For she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness; and she also had complained against my father, telling him that he was a visionary man; saying: Behold thou hast led us forth from the land of our inheritance, and my sons are no more, and we perish in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language had my mother complained against my father.

And it had come to pass that my father spake unto her, saying: I know that I am a visionary man; for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God, but had tarried at Jerusalem, and had perished with my brethren.

But behold, I have obtained a land of promise, in the which things I do rejoice; yea, and I know that the Lord will deliver my sons out of the hands of Laban, and bring them down again unto us in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language did my father, Lehi, comfort my mother, Sariah, concerning us, while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem, to obtain the record of the Jews.

And when we had returned to the tent of my father, behold their joy was full, and my mother was comforted.

And she spake, saying: Now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness; yea, and I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban, and given them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them. And after this manner of language did she speak.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á na fiefia lahi 'aupito, 'o na fai ha feilaulau mo e ngaahi feilaulau tutu ki he 'Eikí; pea na'á na 'oatu 'a e fakafeta 'i ki he 'Otua 'o 'Isilelí.

10 Pea hili 'ena 'oatu 'a e fakafeta 'i ki he 'Otua 'o 'Isilelí, na'e to' 'e he'eku tamaí, ko Līhai, 'a e ngaahi lekooti kuo tongitongi 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá, 'o ne fakatotolo 'i ai mei hono kamata'angá.

11 Pea na'á ne vakai na'e kau ai 'a e ngaahi tohi 'e nima 'a Mōsesé, 'a ia na'e fakamatala ki he fakatupu 'o māmani, kae 'uma'ā foki kia 'Ātama mo 'Ivi, 'a ia ko 'etau 'uluaki ongo mātu'á;

12 Kae 'uma'ā foki ha lekooti 'o e kau Siú 'o fai mei he kamata'angá, 'io, 'o a'u mai ki he kamata'anga 'o e pule 'a Setikia, ko e tu 'i 'o Siutá;

13 Kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e ngaahi kikite 'a e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni, mei he kamata'angá, 'o a'u mai ki he kamata'anga 'o e pule 'a Setikiá; kae 'uma'ā ha ngaahi kikite lahi 'a ia kuo lea 'aki 'e he ngutu 'o Selemaiá.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ilo 'i foki 'e he'eku tamaí, ko Līhai, 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá, ha tohi hohoko 'o 'ene ngaahi tamaí; ko ia na'á ne 'ilo 'i ai ko ha hako ia 'o Siosefa; 'io, 'a e Siosefa ko ia ko e foha 'o Sēkope, 'a ia na'e fakatau ki 'Isipité, pea na'e malu 'i ia 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí, koe'uhi ke ne lava 'o fakahaofi 'a 'ene tamaí, ko Sēkopé, mo hono falé kotoa pē mei he mate 'i he hongé.

15 Pea na'e tataki atu foki 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá pea mei he fonua ko 'Isipité, 'e he 'Otua pē ko ia kuó ne malu 'i 'a kinautolú.

16 Pea ko ia na'e anga pehē hono 'ilo 'i 'e he'eku tamaí, ko Līhai, 'a e tohi hohoko 'o 'ene ngaahi tamaí. Pea ko Lēpaní ko e hako foki ia 'o Siosefa, ko ia kuó ne tauhi ai mo 'ene ngaahi tamaí 'a e ngaahi lekōtí.

17 Pea ko 'eni 'i he mamata 'a 'eku tamaí ki he ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, na'e fonu ia 'i he Laumalié, 'o kamata ke ne kikite 'o kau ki hono hakó—

18 'Oku totonu ke 'oatu 'a e ngaahi peleti 'o e palasa ko 'ení ki he ngaahi pule'anga, mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga, mo e ngaahi lea, mo e kakai fulipē 'a ia 'oku kau ki hono hakó.

19 Ko ia, na'á ne pehē 'oku 'ikai ai pē totonu ke 'auha 'a e ngaahi peleti 'o e palasa ko 'ení; pea 'e 'ikai ai pē foki ke fakanenefu 'i ia 'i he 'alu 'a e taimí. Pea na'á ne kikite 'i ha ngaahi me'a lahi 'o kau ki hono hakó.

And it came to pass that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel.

And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.

And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world, and also of Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;

And also a record of the Jews from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah;

And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah.

And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine.

And they were also led out of captivity and out of the land of Egypt, by that same God who had preserved them.

And thus my father, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. And Laban also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his fathers had kept the records.

And now when my father saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed—

That these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed.

Wherefore, he said that these plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time. And he prophesied many things concerning his seed.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e a'u mai ki he taimi ko iá mo
'eku tauhi mo 'eku tamaí 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a ia kuo
fekau 'e he 'Eikí kiate kimauá.

21 Pea kuo mau ma'u 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'a ia na'e fekau 'e
he 'Eikí kiate kimautolú, 'o fakatotolo 'i ai 'o 'ilo 'i na'e
lelei ia; 'io, 'oku fu'u mahu'inga 'aupito ia kiate
kimautolu, he te mau lava ai 'o fakatolonga 'a e ngaahi
fekau 'a e 'Eikí ma'a 'emau fānaú.

22 Ko ia, ko e finangalo poto 'o e 'Eikí ke mau 'ave ia mo
kimautolu, 'i he 'emau fononga 'i he feitu'u
maomaonganoá ki he fonua 'o e tala'ofá.

And it came to pass that thus far I and my father had
kept the commandments wherewith the Lord had com-
manded us.

And we had obtained the records which the Lord
had commanded us, and searched them and found that
they were desirable; yea, even of great worth unto us, in-
somuch that we could preserve the commandments of
the Lord unto our children.

Wherefore, it was wisdom in the Lord that we should
carry them with us, as we journeyed in the wilderness
towards the land of promise.

I Nīfai 6

- 1 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Nīfai, 'oku 'ikai te u hiki 'a e tohi hohoko 'o 'eku ngaahi tamaí 'i he kongá ko 'eni 'o 'eku lekōtí; pea 'e 'ikai ai pē te u hiki ia 'amui 'i he ngaahi peletí ni 'a ia 'oku ou tohi aí; he 'oku tu' u ia 'i he lekooti kuo fai 'e he'eku tamaí; ko ia, 'oku 'ikai te u hiki ia 'i he tohí ni.
- 2 Ka 'oku fe'unga pē ke u pēhē, ko e hako 'a kimautolu 'o Siosefa.
- 3 Pea 'oku tatau ai pē kiate au pe 'oku ou fai ha fakamatala faka'āuliliki ki he ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'a 'eku tamaí; koe'uhí 'oku 'ikai lava ke tohi ia ki he ngaahi peleti ko 'ení, he 'oku ou fie ma'u 'a e kongá 'ata'atā kotoa pē ke u lava 'o hiki ai 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a e 'Otuá.
- 4 He ko hono kotoa 'eni 'o 'eku taumu'á ke u lava 'o fakaloto 'i 'a e kakaí ke nau ha'u ki he 'Otuá 'o 'Ēpalahamé, mo e 'Otuá 'o 'Aisaké, mo e 'Otuá 'o Sēkopé, 'o mo'ui.
- 5 Ko ia, ko e ngaahi me'a 'oku mālie ki he māmaní 'oku 'ikai te u tohi, ka ko e ngaahi me'a 'oku fakahōifua ki he 'Otuá pea kiate kinautolu 'oku 'ikai te nau 'o e māmaní.
- 6 Ko ia, te u fekau ki hoku hakó, ke 'oua na'a nau ngāue 'aki 'a e ngaahi peletí ni 'o hiki ki ai 'a e ngaahi me'a 'oku 'ikai mahu'inga ki he fānau 'a e tangatá.

I Nephi 6

And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my fathers in this part of my record; neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing; for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father; wherefore, I do not write it in this work.

For it sufficeth me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

And it mattereth not to me that I am particular to give a full account of all the things of my father, for they cannot be written upon these plates, for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God.

For the fulness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved.

Wherefore, the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write, but the things which are pleasing unto God and unto those who are not of the world.

Wherefore, I shall give commandment unto my seed, that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men.

I Nīfai 7

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou 'ilo'i, 'i he hili 'a e faka'osi 'e he'eku tamai, ko Līhai, 'a 'ene ngaahi kikite na'e kau ki hono hakó, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kiate ia, 'o pehē 'oku 'ikai lelei kiate ia, Līhai, ke ne 'ave 'a hono fāmílí pē taha ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá; ka 'oku totonu ke ma'u 'e hono ngaahi fohá ha ngaahi 'ofefine ke hoko ko honau ngaahi uaifi, koe'uhi ke nau lava 'o fakatupu hake ha hako ki he 'Eikí 'i he fonua 'o e tala'ofá.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau kiate ia 'e he 'Eikí ke u toe foki au, Nīfai, mo hoku ngaahi tokouá ki he fonua ko Selūsalemá, pea 'omi 'a 'Isimeli mo hono fāmílí ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku toe fononga atu 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, mo hoku ngaahi tokouá, ke mau 'alu hake ki Selūsalema.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau ō hake ki he fale 'o 'Isimelí, pea na'e 'ofeina 'a kimautilu 'i he 'ao 'o 'Isimeli, 'o tupu ai 'emau lea kiate ia 'i he ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Eikí.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakamolū 'e he 'Eikí 'a e loto 'o 'Isimelí, kae 'uma'ā foki hono falé, 'o tupu ai 'enau fononga hifo mo kimautilu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá ki he fale fehikitaki 'o 'emau tamaí.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga 'emau fononga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, vakai na'e angatu'u kiate kimautilu 'a Leimana mo Lēmiuela, mo e 'ofefine 'e toko ua 'o 'Isimeli, mo e foha 'e toko ua 'o 'Isimeli pea mo hona ongo fāmílí; 'io, kiate au, Nīfai, mo Samu, mo 'enau tamai ko 'Isimelí, mo hono uaifí, mo hono ngaahi 'ofefine 'e toko tolu kehe.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'enau angatu'u ko iá, na'a nau loto ke nau foki atu ki he fonua ko Selūsalemá.
- 8 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Nīfai, ko e me'a 'i he'eku loto-mamahi koe'uhi ko e fefeka 'o honau lotó, ko ia na'á ku lea ai kiate kinaua 'o pehē, 'io, kia Leimana pea kia Lēmiuela: Vakai, ko hoku ongo ta'okete 'a kimoua, pea ko e hā 'oku fefeka pehē ai homo lotó, pea fakapo'uli lahi pehē ai ho'omo fakakauká, 'oku fie ma'u ai ke u lea au, ko homo tehiná kiate kimoua, 'io, pea fokotu'u ha sīpinga mo'omoua?

I Nephi 7

And now I would that ye might know, that after my father, Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did again, with my brethren, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.

And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, therefore I spake unto them, saying, yea, even unto Laman and unto Lemuel: Behold ye are mine elder brethren, and how is it that ye are so hard in your hearts, and so blind in your minds, that ye have need that I, your younger brother, should speak unto you, yea, and set an example for you?

- 9 Ko e hā kuo 'ikai ai te mo tokanga ki he folofola 'a e 'Eiki?
- 10 Ko e hā kuo ngalo ai 'iate kimoua ho'omo mamata ki ha 'āngelo 'a e 'Eiki?
- 11 'Io, pea ko e hā kuo ngalo ai 'iate kimoua 'a e ngaahi me'a lalahi kuo fai 'e he 'Eiki ma'atautolu 'i he'ene fakahaofi 'a kitautolu mei he nima 'o Lēpaní, kae 'uma'ā foki mo 'etau lava 'o ma'u 'a e lekōtí?
- 12 'Io, pea ko e hā kuo ngalo ai 'iate kimoua 'oku lava 'e he 'Eiki ke fai 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'o fakatatau ki hono finangalo, ma'á e fānau 'a e tangatá, 'o kapau te nau ngāue 'aki 'a e tui kiate iá? Ko ia, tau tui faivelenga mu'a kiate ia.
- 13 Pea kapau te tau tui faivelenga kiate ia, kuo pau ke tau ma'u 'a e fonua 'o e tala'ofá; pea te mo 'ilo'í 'i ha taimi 'amui 'e fakahoko 'a e folofola 'a e 'Eiki 'a ia 'oku kau ki hono faka'auha 'o Selūsalemá; he ko e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuo folofola 'aki 'e he 'Eiki 'o kau ki hono faka'auha 'o Selūsalemá kuo pau ke fakahoko ia.
- 14 He vakai, 'oku vave ke tuku 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Eiki 'a 'ene feinga ke ue'i kinautolú; he vakai, kuo nau lí'aki 'a e kau palōfitá, pea kuo nau lí 'a Selemaia ki he fale fakapōpulá. Pea kuo nau feinga ke to'ó 'a e mo'uí 'a 'eku tamaí, 'o tupu ai 'enau kapusi ia mei he fonuá.
- 15 Ko 'eni vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau te mou foki ki Selūsalema te mou mate fakataha foki mo kinautolu. Pea ko 'eni, kapau ko ho'omou filí ia, pea mou 'alu atu ki he fonuá, kae manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia 'oku ou lea 'aki kiate kimoutolú, kapau te mou 'alu, te mou mate foki mo kimoutolu; he 'oku fekau 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Eiki kiate au ke u lea pehē.
- 16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nífaí, hili 'eku lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi leá ni ki hoku ongo tokouá, na'á na 'ita kiate au. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á na puke au, he vakai, kuó na fu'u 'ita 'aupito, pea na'á na ha'i au 'aki 'a e ngaahi afo, he na'á na feinga ke to'ó 'eku mo'uí, ko'e uhi ke na lí'aki au 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá ke keina 'e he fanga manu fekaí.
- 17 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku lotu ki he 'Eiki, 'o pehē: 'E 'Eiki, ke ke fakahaofi mu'a au mei he nima 'o hoku ongo tokouá, 'o fakatatau ki he'eku tui kiate koé; 'io, foaki mai mu'a kiate au ha mālohi ke u lava ai 'o motuhi 'a e ngaahi afó ni 'a ia kuo ha'i 'aki aú.

How is it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord?

How is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten what great things the Lord hath done for us, in delivering us out of the hands of Laban, and also that we should obtain the record?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will, for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him? Wherefore, let us be faithful to him.

And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise; and ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem; for all things which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them; for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my father, inso-much that they have driven him out of the land.

Now behold, I say unto you that if ye will return unto Jerusalem ye shall also perish with them. And now, if ye have choice, go up to the land, and remember the words which I speak unto you, that if ye go ye will also perish; for thus the Spirit of the Lord constraineth me that I should speak.

And it came to pass that when I, Nephi, had spoken these words unto my brethren, they were angry with me. And it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceedingly wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts.

But it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, according to my faith which is in thee, wilt thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren; yea, even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi pē 'eku lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ko 'ení, vakai na'e motu leva 'a e ngaahi afó mei hoku ongo nimá mo e ongo va'é, peá u tu'u 'i he 'ao 'o hoku ongo ta'oketé, peá u toe lea kiate kinaua.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á na toe 'ita kiate au, 'o na feinga ke puke au; kae vakai, na'e 'i ai ha toko taha 'o e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o 'Isimelí, 'io, kae 'uma'ā foki 'ene fa'éé, mo e toko taha 'o e ngaahi foha 'o 'Isimelí, na'a nau kole ki hoku ongo tokouá, pea tupu ai 'ena fakamolū hona lotó; pea na'e tuku ai 'ena feinga ke to'o 'eku mo'uí.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á na mamahi, ko'e'uhi ko 'ena fai angahalá, ko ia na'á na punou hifo ai 'i hoku 'aó, 'o kole kiate au ke u fakamolemole 'i 'a kinaua 'i he me'a kuó na fai kiate aú.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku fakamolemole 'i mo'oni 'a kinaua 'i he me'a kotoa pē kuó na faí, peá u na'ina'í kiate kinaua ke na lotu ki he 'Eiki ko hona 'Otuá ke na ma'u ha fakamolemole. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á na fai pehē. Pea 'i he 'osi 'ena lotu ki he 'Eiki na'e hoko atu leva 'emau fononga ki he fale fehikitaki 'o 'emau tamaí.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau a'u hifo ki he fale fehikitaki 'o 'emau tamaí. Pea hili 'emau a'u hifo mo hoku ngaahi tokouá mo e fale kotoa 'o 'Isimelí ki he fale fehikitaki 'o 'eku tamaí, na'a nau 'oatu 'a e fakafeta 'i ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá; pea na'a nau fai ha feilaulau mo e ngaahi feilaulau tutu kiate ia.

And it came to pass that when I had said these words, behold, the bands were loosed from off my hands and feet, and I stood before my brethren, and I spake unto them again.

And it came to pass that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but behold, one of the daughters of Ishmael, yea, and also her mother, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my brethren, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did cease striving to take away my life.

And it came to pass that they were sorrowful, because of their wickedness, insomuch that they did bow down before me, and did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me.

And it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done, and I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. And it came to pass that they did so. And after they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey towards the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father. And after I and my brethren and all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father, they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.

I Nīfai 8

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo mau tānaki fakataha 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e ngaahi tenga 'i 'akau kehekehé, ko e ngaahi tenga 'i kēleni 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e ngaahi tenga 'o e ngaahi fua 'i 'akau 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga 'a e nofo 'a 'eku tamaí 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá na'á ne lea kiate kimautilu, 'o pehē: Vakai, kuó u misi 'i ha misi; pe ko hono fakalea 'e tahá, kuó u mamata ki ha me'a-hā-mai.
- 3 Pea vakai, koe'uhi ko e me'a kuó u mamata ki aí, 'oku 'i ai ha 'uhinga ke u fiefia 'i he 'Eikí koe'uhi ko Nīfai pea mo Samu foki; he 'oku 'i ai ha 'uhinga ke u 'amanaki ai 'e fakamo'ui 'a kinaua, pea mo e tokolahi 'o hona hakó.
- 4 Kae vakai, 'e Leimana mo Lēmiuela, 'oku ou manavahē lahi koe'uhi ko kimoua; he vakai, 'oku hangē kiate au na'á ku mamata 'i he'eku misí ki ha feitu'u maomaonganoa fakapo'uli mo fakata'elata.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mamata ki ha tangata, pea na'á ne kofu 'aki ha pulupulu hinehina; pea na'e ha'u ia 'o tu'u 'i mu'a 'iate au.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne lea mai kiate au, 'o ne fekau ke u muimui ange 'iate ia.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he'eku muimui 'iate iá, na'á ku vakai 'oku ou 'i ha potu lala fakapo'uli mo fakata'elata.
- 8 Pea hili 'eku fononga 'i ha ngaahi houa lahi 'i he fakapo'ulí, na'á ku kamata ke lotu ki he 'Eikí ke ne 'alo'ofa mai kiate au, 'o fakatatau ki hono lahi fau 'o 'ene ngaahi 'alo'ofa ongongofuá.
- 9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'eku lotu ki he 'Eikí na'á ku mamata ki ha fu'u mala 'e 'ata'atā mo lahi.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mamata ki ha fu'u 'akau, 'a ia na'e lelei hono fuá ke ngaohi ha taha ke fiefia.
- 11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku 'alu atu 'o kai 'i hono fuá; peá u vakai 'oku melie 'aupito ia, 'o laka hake 'i he ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuó u kai ai 'i mu'a. 'Io, peá u vakai na'e hinehina hono fuá, 'o laka hake 'i he hinehina kotoa pē kuó u mamata ai 'i mu'a.

I Nephi 8

And it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind.

And it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spake unto us, saying: Behold, I have dreamed a dream; or, in other words, I have seen a vision.

And behold, because of the thing which I have seen, I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi and also of Sam; for I have reason to suppose that they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.

But behold, Laman and Lemuel, I fear exceedingly because of you; for behold, methought I saw in my dream, a dark and dreary wilderness.

And it came to pass that I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe; and he came and stood before me.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, and bade me follow him.

And it came to pass that as I followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark and dreary waste.

And after I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness, I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me, according to the multitude of his tender mercies.

And it came to pass after I had prayed unto the Lord I beheld a large and spacious field.

And it came to pass that I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy.

And it came to pass that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. Yea, and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.

12 Pea 'i he'eku kai 'i hono fuá na'e fakafonu 'e ia 'a hoku laumálié 'aki ha fu'u 'i fiefia lahi; ko ia, na'e kamata ke u faka'amu ke kai ai foki mo hoku fāmilí; he na'á ku 'ilo 'i 'oku lelei ange ia 'i he fua kehe kotoa pē.

13 Pea 'i he'eku siosio holo hoku matá, ke u lava 'apē 'o sio ki hoku fāmilí, na'á ku vakai ki ha vaitafe 'o e vai; pea na'e tafe atu ia, pea na'e ofi ia ki he fu'u 'akau 'a ia 'oku ou kai mei hono fuá.

14 Pea na'á ku vakai atu ke u sio pe 'oku tafe ia mei fē; pea u mamata ki hono matavaí na'e ki 'i mama 'o si 'i atu; pea na'á ku sio ki ho'omou fa'ē ko Selaiá, mo Samu, mo Nifai 'i hono matavaí; pea na'a nau tu'u 'o hangē 'oku 'ikai te nau 'ilo 'i pe te nau 'alu ki fē.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku ta'alo atu kiate kinautolu; pea u lea atu foki kiate kinautolu 'i ha le'o-lahi ke nau ha'u kiate au, 'o kai 'i he fuá, 'a ia 'oku lelei hake 'i he fua kehe kotoa pē.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau o mai kiate au 'o nau kai foki 'i he fuá.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a ku faka'amu ke ha'u mo Leimana mo Lēmiuela 'o kai 'i he fuá foki; ko ia, na'e hanga atu hoku matá ki he matavai 'o e vaitafé, ko'e uhi ke u lava 'apē 'o mamata kiate kinaua.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a ku mamata kiate kinaua, ka na'e 'ikai te na fie ha'u kiate au 'o kai 'i he fuá.

19 Pea na'á ku vakai ki ha va'a ukamea, pea na'e 'alu atu ia 'i he ve'e vaitafé, 'o a'u mai ki he fu'u 'akau 'a ia na'á ku tu'u 'o ofi ki aí.

20 Pea na'á ku vakai foki ki ha hala fāsi 'i mo lausi 'i, 'a ia na'e fou mai 'i he tafa'aki 'o e va'a ukameá, 'o a'u mai ki he fu'u 'akau na'á ku tu'u 'o ofi ki aí; pea na'e fou atu ia foki 'i he tafa'aki 'o e matavai 'o e vaitafé, ki ha mala'e 'ata'atā mo lahi, 'a ia na'e hangē ko ha māmaní.

21 Pea na'á ku mamata ki ha ngaahi ha'oha'onga kakai ta'efá'alaua, 'a ia na'e vivili atu hanau tokolahi, ke nau a'u atu ki he hala ko ia 'oku fakatau atu ki he fu'u 'akau, 'a ia na'á ku tu'u 'o ofi ki aí.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau o mai, 'o kamata 'alu 'i he hala 'a ia na'e fakatau atu ki he fu'u 'akau.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu hake ha 'ao fakapo'uli; 'io, ko ha 'ao fakapo'uli 'aupito, 'o tupu ai 'a e puli 'iate kinautolu kuo kamata 'i he halá 'a honau 'alu'angá, 'o nau hē atu 'o puli.

And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy; wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit.

And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.

And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mother Sariah, and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go.

And it came to pass that I beckoned unto them; and I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me, and partake of the fruit, which was desirable above all other fruit.

And it came to pass that they did come unto me and partake of the fruit also.

And it came to pass that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and partake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.

And it came to pass that I saw them, but they would not come unto me and partake of the fruit.

And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.

And I also beheld a strait and narrow path, which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.

And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path which led unto the tree by which I stood.

And it came to pass that they did come forth, and commence in the path which led to the tree.

And it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness; yea, even an exceedingly great mist of darkness, inasmuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku vakai ki ha ni'ihī kehe 'oku nau vivili mai, pea na'a nau ō mai 'o piki ki he mui'i va'a ukameá; pea na'a nau vivili mai 'i he 'ao fakapo'ulí mo pīkitai pē ki he va'a ukameá, kae 'oua kuo nau ō mai 'o kai 'i he fua 'o e fu'u 'akaú.

25 Pea hili 'enau kai 'i he fua 'o e fu'u 'akaú, na'e siosio holo honau matá 'o hangē 'oku nau maá.

26 Pea na'á ku siosio holo foki mo au, 'o u vakai atu, 'oku 'i he kauvai 'e taha 'o e vaitafē ha fu'u fale lahi mo 'ata'atā; pea na'e tu'u ia 'o hangē 'oku 'i he 'ataá, 'o mā'olunga mei he kekelelé.

27 Pea na'e fonu ia 'i he kakai, 'a e motu'a mo e talavou fakatou'osi, 'a e tangata pea mo e fefine; pea na'a nau tui ha ngaahi kofu matu'aki faka'ofa'ofa 'aupito; pea na'a nau tu'u 'i he founa 'o e manuki mo tuhu 'aki honau louhi'i nimá kiate kinautolu kuo nau a'u mai 'o nau lolotonga kai 'i he fuá.

28 Pea hili 'enau kai 'i he fuá, na'a nau mā, koe'uhi ko kinautolu na'e lolotonga manuki mai kiate kinautolú; pea na'a nau tō atu ki ha ngaahi hala tapu 'o puli.

29 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Nifai, 'oku 'ikai te u lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea kotoa pē 'a 'eku tamaí.

30 Kā, koe'uhi ke nounou 'a e tohí, vakai, na'á ne mamata ki ha ngaahi ha'ofanga kakai tokolahi kehe 'oku nau vivili mai; pea na'a nau ha'u 'o piki ki he mui'i va'a ukameá; pea nau vivili atu 'i honau halá 'o piki ma'u ma'u ai pē ki he va'a ukameá, kae 'oua kuo nau ō mai 'o tō ki lalo 'o kai mei he fua 'o e fu'u 'akaú.

31 Pea na'á ne mamata foki ki ha ngaahi ha'ofanga kakai tokolahi kehe 'oku nau taufā holo ke 'ilo honau hala ki he fu'u fale lahi mo 'ata'ataá.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e melemo 'a e tokolahi 'i he ngaahi potu loloto 'o e matavaí; pea na'e puli meiate ia 'a e tokolahi, 'o nau hē atu 'i ha ngaahi hala ngali kehe.

33 Pea na'e fu'u tokolahi 'aupito 'a e kakai na'a nau hū ki he fale matamata kehe ko iá. Pea hili 'enau hū ki he fale ko iá, na'a nau tuhu mai 'i he manuki kiate au mo kinautolu foki na'e lolotonga kai 'i he fuá; ka na'e 'ikai te mau tokanga kiate kinautolu.

34 Ko e ngaahi lea 'eni 'a 'eku tamaí: He ko kinautolu kotoa pē na'e tokanga kiate kinautolú, na'a nau tō atu.

And it came to pass that I beheld others pressing forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press forward through the mist of darkness, clinging to the rod of iron, even until they did come forth and partake of the fruit of the tree.

And after they had partaken of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed.

And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, a great and spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.

And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; and their manner of dress was exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were partaking of the fruit.

And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost.

And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of my father.

But, to be short in writing, behold, he saw other multitudes pressing forward; and they came and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press their way forward, continually holding fast to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell down and partook of the fruit of the tree.

And he also saw other multitudes feeling their way towards that great and spacious building.

And it came to pass that many were drowned in the depths of the fountain; and many were lost from his view, wandering in strange roads.

And great was the multitude that did enter into that strange building. And after they did enter into that building they did point the finger of scorn at me and those that were partaking of the fruit also; but we heeded them not.

These are the words of my father: For as many as heeded them, had fallen away.

- 35 Na'e pehē 'e he'eku tamaí, pea na'e 'ikai kai 'a
Leimana mo Lēmiuela 'i he fuá.
- 36 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono lea 'aki 'e he'eku
tamaí 'a e ngaahi lea kotoa pē 'o 'ene misí pe me'a-hā-
maí, 'a ia na'e lahi, na'á ne pehē mai kiate kimautilu,
'okú ne fu'u manavahē 'aupito koe'uhi ko Leimana mo
Lēmiuela; koe'uhi ko e ngaahi me'a ko ia na'á ne
mamata ki ai 'i he me'a-hā-maí; 'io, 'okú ne manavahē
telia na'a kapusi atu 'a kinaua mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí.
- 37 Pea na'á ne na'ina 'i kiate kinaua 'aki 'a e 'ofa kotoa 'a
ha mātu'a anga'ofa, ke na tokanga ki he'ene ngaahi leá,
koe'uhi ke 'alo'ofa 'apē 'a e 'Eikí kiate kinaua, 'o 'oua 'e
kapusi 'a kinaua; 'io, na'e malanga 'a 'eku tamaí kiate
kinaua.
- 38 Pea hili 'ene malanga kiate kinauá, kae 'uma'ā foki
'ene kikite 'i kiate kinaua ha ngaahi me'a lahi, na'á ne
fekau kiate kinaua ke na tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí;
peá ne faka'osi 'ene lea kiate kinauá.

And Laman and Lemuel partook not of the fruit,
said my father.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken all the
words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said
unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vi-
sion, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; yea,
he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence
of the Lord.

And he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a
tender parent, that they would hearken to his words,
that perhaps the Lord would be merciful to them, and
not cast them off; yea, my father did preach unto them.

And after he had preached unto them, and also
prophesied unto them of many things, he bade them to
keep the commandments of the Lord; and he did cease
speaking unto them.

I Nīfai 9

- 1 Pea ko e ngaahi me‘á ni kotoa na‘e mamata, mo fanongo, mo lea ‘aki, ‘e he‘eku tamaí, lolotonga ‘ene nofo ‘i ha fale fehikitaki, ‘i he tele‘a ko Lēmiuelá, kae ‘uma‘ā mo ha toe ngaahi me‘a lahi ange ‘aupito, ‘oku ‘ikai lava ‘o tohi ‘i he ngaahi peleti ko ‘ení.
- 2 Pea ko ‘ení, hangē ko ‘eku lau ‘o kau ki he ngaahi peleti ko ‘ení, vakai ‘oku ‘ikai ko e ngaahi peleti ia ‘a ia ‘oku ou hiki ai ha fakamatala kakato ‘o e hisitōlia ‘o hoku kakaí; he ko e ngaahi peleti ‘a ia ‘oku ou hiki ai ha fakamatala kakato ‘o hoku kakaí kuó u ‘ai ki ai ‘a e hingoa ko Nīfai; ko ia, ‘oku ou ui ia ko e ngaahi peleti ‘a Nīfai, ko e tauhingoa ki hoku hingoa ‘o ‘okú; pea ‘oku ui foki mo e ngaahi peleti ko ‘ení ko e ngaahi peleti ‘a Nīfai.
- 3 Ka neongo iá, kuó u ma‘u ha fekau mei he ‘Eikí ke u ngaohi ‘a e ngaahi peleti ko ‘ení, koe‘uhi ko e ‘uhinga pē taha ke ‘i ai ha tohi tongitongi ‘o e ngaahi ngāue fakalotu ‘a hoku kakaí.
- 4 Ko e ngaahi peleti ‘e tahá ‘e tongitongi ai ha fakamatala ki he pule ‘a e ngaahi tu‘í mo e ngaahi taú mo e ngaahi feke‘ike‘i ‘a hoku kakaí; ko ia kuo ngaohi ‘a e ngaahi peleti ko ‘ení koe‘uhi ke ‘i ai ‘a e kongā lahi ‘o e ngaahi me‘a fakalotú; pea ko e ngaahi peleti ‘e tahá kuo ngaohi ia koe‘uhi ke ‘i ai ha kongā lahi ‘o e pule ‘a e ngaahi tu‘í mo e ngaahi taú mo e ngaahi feke‘ike‘i ‘a hoku kakaí.
- 5 Ko ia, kuo fekau ai kiate au ‘e he ‘Eikí ke u ngaohi ‘a e ngaahi peleti ko ‘ení koe‘uhi ko ha taumu‘a fakapotopoto ‘okú ne ‘afio‘i, pea ko ha ‘uhinga ‘oku ‘ikai te u ‘ilo‘i.
- 6 Ka ‘oku ‘afio‘i ‘e he ‘Eikí ‘a e me‘a kotoa pē talu mei he kamata‘angá; ko ia, ‘okú ne teuteu‘i ‘a e founga ‘e lava ‘o fakahoko ai ‘a ‘ene ngaahi ngāue kotoa pē ‘i he fānau ‘a e tangatá; he vakai, ‘oku ‘iate ia ‘a e mālohi kotoa pē ke fakahoko ‘aki ‘a ‘ene ngaahi folofola kotoa pē. Pea ‘oku pehē pē. ‘Ēmeni.

I Nephi 9

And all these things did my father see, and hear, and speak, as he dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel, and also a great many more things, which cannot be written upon these plates.

And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates, behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after mine own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi.

Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my people.

Upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people; wherefore these plates are for the more part of the ministry; and the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the kings and the wars and contentions of my people.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him, which purpose I know not.

But the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning; wherefore, he prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men; for behold, he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words. And thus it is. Amen.

I Nīfai 10

- 1 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Nīfai, 'oku ou hoko atu ke fai ha fakamatala 'i he ngaahi peleti ko eni ki he 'eku ngaahi ngāue, mo 'eku pulé mo e ngāue fakafaifekau; ko ia, koe'uhi ke hoko atu 'a 'eku fakamatalá, kuo pau ke u ki'i lau si'i ki he ngaahi me'a 'a 'eku tamaí kae 'uma'ā foki hoku ngaahi tokouá.
- 2 He vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e faka'osi 'e he 'eku tamaí 'a hono fakamatala 'i 'o 'ene misí, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e na'ina 'i kiate kinautolu ke nau faivelengá, na'á ne lea kiate kinautolu 'o kau ki he kau Siú—
- 3 'O ka hili honau faka'auhá, 'io, na'a mo e kolo lahi ko Selūsalemá, pea mo hono 'ave pōpula 'o e tokolahi ki Pāpilone 'o fakatatau ki he taimi 'oku finangalo ki ai 'a e 'Eikí, te nau toe foki mai, 'io, 'e toe fakafoki mai 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá; pea hili honau fakafoki mei he nofo pōpulá 'o nau toe ma'u 'a e fonua 'o honau tofi'á.
- 4 'Io, 'o ka hili 'a e ta'u 'e onongeau mei he taimi na'e mavahe ai 'a 'eku tamaí mei Selūsalemá, 'e fokotu'u hake 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ha palōfita 'i he kau Siú—'io ko ha Mīsaia, pe ko hono fakalea 'e tahá, ko ha Fakamo'ui 'o e māmaní.
- 5 Pea na'á ne lea foki 'o kau ki he kau palōfitá, mo hono fu'u tokolahi 'o kinautolu kuo nau fakamo'oni ki he ngaahi me'á ni, 'a ia 'oku kau ki he Mīsaia ko iá, pe ko e Huhu'i ko ia 'o e māmani, 'a ia kuó ne lau ki aí.
- 6 Ko ia, kuo mole pea 'i he tu'unga tō ki lalo 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá, pea te nau pehē ai pē 'o ta'engata kae 'oua kuo nau falala ki he Huhu'i ko iá.
- 7 Pea na'á ne lea foki 'o kau ki ha palōfita 'a ia 'e ha'u ki mu'a 'i he Mīsaia, ke teuteu 'a e hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eiki—
- 8 'Io, te ne 'alu atu foki 'o kalanga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá: Mou teuteu 'a e hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eikí, pea fakatonutonu 'a hono ngaahi hā'ele'angá; he 'oku tu'u 'iate kimoutolu ha tokotaha 'oku 'ikai te mou 'ilo'i; pea 'oku lahi ia 'iate au, 'oku 'ikai taau mo au ke u vete 'a e nono'o 'o hono topuva'é. Pea na'e lahi 'a e lea 'a 'eku tamaí 'o kau ki he me'á ni.

I Nephi 10

And now I, Nephi, proceed to give an account upon these plates of my proceedings, and my reign and ministry; wherefore, to proceed with mine account, I must speak somewhat of the things of my father, and also of my brethren.

For behold, it came to pass after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them to all diligence, he spake unto them concerning the Jews—

That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.

Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.

And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.

Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.

And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—

Yea, even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for there standeth one among you whom ye know not; and he is mightier than I, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. And much spake my father concerning this thing.

- 9 Pea na'e pehē 'e he'eku tamaí te ne fai papitaiso 'i Petapala 'i tu'a Soatani; pea na'á ne pehē foki te ne fai papitaiso 'aki 'a e vai; 'io, te ne papitaiso foki 'a e Mīsaia 'aki 'a e vai.
- 10 Pea hili 'ene papitaiso 'a e Mīsaia 'i he vai, te ne vakai, pea fakamo'oni kuó ne papitaiso 'a e Lami 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia te ne to' 'a e ngaahi angahala 'a māmaní.
- 11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e lea 'aki 'e he'eku tamaí 'a e ngaahi lea ní na'á ne lea ki hoku ngaahi tokouá 'o kau ki he ongoongolelei ko ia 'e malanga 'aki 'i he kau Siú, kae 'uma'ā foki ki he faka'au'auhifo 'a e kau Siú 'i he ta'etuí. Pea hili 'enau fakapoongi 'a e Mīsaia, 'a ia 'e hā'ele maí, pea hili hono fakapōngí te ne toe tu'u hake mei he pekiá, pea te ne fakahā ia 'e ia, 'i he Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, ki he kau Senitailé.
- 12 'Io, na'e lahi foki 'a e lea 'a 'eku tamaí 'o kau ki he kau Senitailé, kae 'uma'ā foki ki he fale 'o 'Isilelí, 'oku totonu ke fakatautu 'a kinautolu ki he fu'u 'ōlive, 'a ia 'oku totonu ke fesi'i 'a hono ngaahi va'á, pea fakamovetevete 'i 'i he funga kotoa 'o e māmaní.
- 13 Ko ia, na'á ne pehē 'oku 'aonga ke tataki atu 'a kinautolu 'i he loto pē taha ki he fonua 'o e tala'ofá, koe'uhi ke fakahoko ai 'a e folofola 'a e 'Eiki, 'e fakamovetevete 'a kinautolu 'i he funga 'o e māmaní kotoa.
- 14 Pea hili hono fakamovetevete 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí 'e toe tānaki fakataha 'a kinautolu; pe ko e pehē, ka hili 'a e ma'u 'e he kau Senitailé 'a hono kakato 'o e ongoongolelei, 'e toe fakahoko 'a e ngaahi va'a totonu 'o e fu'u 'ōlive, pe ko e ngaahi toenga 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, pe ko 'enau ma'u 'a e 'ilo ki he Mīsaia mo'oni, ko honau 'Eiki mo honau Huhu'í.
- 15 Pea na'e pehē 'a e anga 'o e lea na'e kikite mo lea 'aki 'e he'eku tamaí ki hoku ngaahi tokouá, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e ngaahi me'a lahi kehe 'oku 'ikai te u tohi 'i he tohi ni; he kuó u tohi hono kotoa 'o e ngaahi me'a kehe na'e 'aongá 'i he'eku tohi 'e tahá.
- 16 Pea na'e fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, 'a ia kuó u lau ki aí, 'i he lolotonga nofo 'a 'eku tamaí 'i ha fale fehikitaki 'i he tele'a ko Lēmiuelá.

And my father said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.

And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.

Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord into the land of promise, unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.

And after this manner of language did my father prophesy and speak unto my brethren, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in mine other book.

And all these things, of which I have spoken, were done as my father dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, 'i he hili 'eku fanongo ki he ngaahi lea kotoa pē 'a 'eku tamaí, 'a ia na'e kau ki he ngaahi me'a na'á ne mamata ki ai 'i he me'a-hā-maí, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e ngaahi me'a na'á ne lea 'aki 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'a ia ko e mālohi na'á ne ma'u 'i he tui ki he 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá—pea ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá 'a e Mīsaia, 'a ia 'e hā'ele maí—ko au, Nīfai, na'a ku faka'amu foki ke u lava 'o mamata, mo fanongo, mo 'ilo 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a ko iá, 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'a ia ko e me'a-foaki 'a e 'Otuá kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku fekumi faivelenga kiate iá, 'o tatau ai pē 'i he ngaahi kuonga 'i mu'á pea hangē ko e taimi te ne fakahā ai ia ki he fānau 'a e tangatá.

18 He 'okú ne tatau 'i he 'aneafí, 'aho ní, mo e ta'engatá; pea kuo teuteu 'a e hala mo'ó e kakai fulipē talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní, 'o kapau te nau fakatomala pea ha'u kiate ia.

19 He ko ia 'oku kumi faivelengá te ne 'ilo 'i; pea 'e fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'a lilo 'a e 'Otuá kiate kinautolu, 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'o tatau pē 'i he ngaahi kuongá ni mo e ngaahi kuonga 'i mu'á, pea tatau pē 'i he ngaahi kuonga 'i mu'á mo e ngaahi kuonga 'e hoko maí; ko ia, 'e 'ikai liliu 'e he 'Eikí 'ene ngaahi founa ngāue 'o ta'engata.

20 Ko ia manatu, 'E tangata, 'e 'omi koe ki he fakamāú koe'uhi ko ho'o ngaahi ngāue kotoa pē.

21 Ko ia, kapau kuó ke holi ke fai angahalá 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o ho 'ahi'ahi'í, 'e toki lau koe ko e ta'ema'a 'i he 'ao 'o e fakamaau'anga 'o e 'Otuá, pea 'oku 'ikai ha me'a 'oku ta'ema'a 'e nofo mo e 'Otuá; ko ia, kuo pau ke kapusi atu koe 'o ta'engata.

22 Pea 'oku fakamafai 'i au 'e he Laumālie Mā'oni'oni ke u lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, pea 'oua 'e faka'ikai 'i ia.

And it came to pass after I, Nephi, having heard all the words of my father, concerning the things which he saw in a vision, and also the things which he spake by the power of the Holy Ghost, which power he received by faith on the Son of God—and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come—I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost, which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him, as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the children of men.

For he is the same yesterday, today, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.

For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.

Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment.

Wherefore, if ye have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation, then ye are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God; and no unclean thing can dwell with God; wherefore, ye must be cast off forever.

And the Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not.

I Nīfai I I

- 1 He na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'eku holi ke u 'ilo ki he ngaahi me'a kuo mamata ki ai 'a 'eku tamaí, pea 'i he 'eku tui 'oku lava 'e he 'Eikí 'o fakahā mai 'a e ngaahi me'a ko iá kiate au, na'e lolotonga 'eku nofo 'o fakalaulauloto 'i hoku lotó na'e 'ave au 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí, 'io, ki ha mo'unga mā'olunga 'aupito, 'a ia na'e te'eki ai te u mamata ai ki mu'a, pea na'e te'eki ke tu'u ai 'a hoku va'é ki mu'a.
- 2 Pea na'e folofola mai 'a e Laumālié kiate au: Vakai, ko e hā 'okú ke holi ki aí?
- 3 Pea na'á ku pehē ange: 'Okú ou fie vakai ki he ngaahi me'a 'a ia na'e mamata ki ai 'a 'eku tamaí.
- 4 Pea folofola mai 'a e Laumālié kiate au: 'Okú ke tui na'e mamata 'a ho'o tamaí ki he fu'u 'akau, 'a ia kuó ne lau ki aí?
- 5 Pea na'á ku pehē ange: 'Io, 'okú ke 'afio 'i 'oku ou tui ki he ngaahi lea kotoa pē 'a 'eku tamaí.
- 6 Pea 'i he 'osi 'a 'eku lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ko 'ení, na'e kaila 'a e Laumālié 'aki 'a e le'o lahi, 'o pehē: Hōsana ki he 'Eiki, ko e 'Otua fungani mā'olunga tahá; he ko e 'Otua aoniu ia ki he māmaní kotoa, 'io, 'o mā'olunga hake 'i he me'a kotoa pē. Pea 'okú ke monū 'ia koe, 'e Nīfai, koe'uhi ko ho'o tui ki he 'Alo 'o e 'Otua fungani mā'olunga tahá; ko ia, te ke mamata ki he ngaahi me'a kuó ke holi ki aí.
- 7 Pea vakai ko e me'á ní 'e tuku kiate koe ko ha faka'ilonga, 'o ka 'osi ho'o mamata ki he fu'u 'akau 'a ia na'e tupu ai 'a e fua na'e kai ai 'a ho'o tamaí, te ke mamata foki ki ha tangata 'oku hā'ele hifo mei he loto langí, pea te ke mamata kiate ia; pea 'o ka hili 'a ho'o mamata kiate iá, te ke fakamo'oni 'i ko e 'Alo ia 'o e 'Otua.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e folofola mai 'a e Laumālié kiate au: Vakai! Pea na'á ku sio 'o vakai ki ha fu'u 'akau; pea na'e tatau ia mo e fu'u 'akau kuo mamata ki ai 'a 'eku tamaí; pea ko hono faka'ofó'ofá na'e lahi 'aupito, 'io, 'o lahi ange 'i he faka'ofó'ofa kotoa pē; pea ko hono hinehiná na'e laka ia 'i he hinehina 'o e sinou 'oku vilingia.

I Nephi I I

For it came to pass after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceedingly high mountain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot.

And the Spirit said unto me: Behold, what desirest thou?

And I said: I desire to behold the things which my father saw.

And the Spirit said unto me: Believest thou that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken?

And I said: Yea, thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father.

And when I had spoken these words, the Spirit cried with a loud voice, saying: Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth, yea, even above all. And blessed art thou, Nephi, because thou believest in the Son of the most high God; wherefore, thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired.

And behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign, that after thou hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted, thou shalt also behold a man descending out of heaven, and him shall ye witness; and after ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'eku mamata ki he fu'u 'akaú, na'á ku pehē ange ki he Laumālié: 'Oku ou 'ilo kuó ke fakahā mai kiate au 'a e fu'u 'akau 'a ia 'oku mahu'inga hake 'i he me'a kotoa pē.

10 Pea na'á ne folofola mai kiate au: Ko e hā 'okú ke fie ma'ú?

11 Pea na'á ku pehē ange kiate ia: Ke u 'ilo 'i 'a hono 'uhingá—he na'á ku lea kiate ia 'o hangē ko ha lea 'a ha tangata; he na'á ku vakai 'okú ne 'i he tatau 'o ha tangata; ka neongo iá, na'á ku 'ilo ko e Laumālie ia 'o e 'Eikí; pea na'á ne folofola mai kiate au 'o hangē 'oku lea ha tangata 'e taha ki ha tangata 'e tahá.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne folofola mai kiate au: Vakai! Pea na'á ku tafoki 'o hangē ha'aku feinga ke sio kiate iá, pea na'e 'ikai te u sio kiate ia; he kuó ne 'alu mei hoku 'aó.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mamata 'o vakai ki he fu'u kolo lahi ko Selūsalemá, kae 'uma'ā mo ha ngaahi kolo kehe foki. Pea na'á ku vakai ki he kolo ko Nāsaletí; pea 'i he kolo ko Nāsaletí na'á ku vakai ki ha tāupo'ou, pea na'e fu'u hoihoifua 'aupito ia mo hinehina.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mamata ki he ngaahi langí 'oku matangaki; pea na'e 'alu hifo ha 'āngelo 'o tu'u 'i hoku 'aó; pea na'á ne pehē mai kiate au: 'E Nīfai, ko e hā 'okú ke vakai ki aí?

15 Pea na'á ku pehē ange kiate ia: Ko ha tāupo'ou 'oku fu'u faka'ofó'ofa mo hoihoifua lahi hake 'i he kau tāupo'ou kehe kotoa pē.

16 Pea na'á ne pehē mai kiate au: 'Okú ke 'ilo 'i 'a e āfeitaulalo 'a e 'Otuá?

17 Pea na'á ku pehē ange kiate ia: 'Oku ou 'ilo 'okú ne 'ofa ki he'ene fānaú; ka neongo iá, 'oku 'ikai te u 'ilo 'i hono 'uhinga 'o e me'a kotoa pē.

18 Pea na'á ne pehē mai kiate au: Vakai, ko e tāupo'ou 'okú ke sio ki aí ko e fa'ē ia 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, 'i he anga 'o e kakanó.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku vakai na'e 'ave ia 'e he Laumālié; pea hili hono 'ave ia 'e he Laumālié 'o fuofuoloa si'i na'e lea mai 'a e 'āngeló kiate au, 'o pehē: Vakai!

20 Pea na'á ku mamata 'o toe vakai ki he tāupo'ou, 'okú ne fua ha tamasi'i 'i hono nimá.

And it came to pass after I had seen the tree, I said unto the Spirit: I behold thou hast shown unto me the tree which is precious above all.

And he said unto me: What desirest thou?

And I said unto him: To know the interpretation thereof—for I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look! And I looked as if to look upon him, and I saw him not; for he had gone from before my presence.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly fair and white.

And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me; and he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou?

And I said unto him: A virgin, most beautiful and fair above all other virgins.

And he said unto me: Knowest thou the condescension of God?

And I said unto him: I know that he loveth his children; nevertheless, I do not know the meaning of all things.

And he said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the manner of the flesh.

And it came to pass that I beheld that she was carried away in the Spirit; and after she had been carried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.

21 Pea na'e pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au: Vakai ki he Lami 'a e 'Otuá, 'io, ko e 'Alo 'o e Tamai Tá'engatá! 'Okú ke 'ilo 'i koā 'a e 'uhinga 'o e fu 'u 'akau na'e sio ki ai 'a ho'o tamaí?

22 Pea na'á ku tali kiate ia, 'o pehē ange: 'Io ko e 'ofa ia 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia 'oku a'u atu ki he loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá; ko ia, 'oku lelei taha ia 'i he ngaahi me'a kotoa pē.

23 Pea na'á ne lea mai kiate au, 'o pehē: 'Io, pea 'oku fakafiefia taha ia ki he laumālié.

24 Pea hili 'ene lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'á ne pehē mai kiate au: Vakai! Pea na'á ku mamata, 'o vakai ki he 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá 'okú ne hā'ele atu 'i he lotolotonga 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá; pea na'á ku mamata ki he tokolahi 'oku fakatōmape 'e hifo 'i hono lalo va'é 'o hū kiate ia.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku vakai ko e va'a ukamea kuo mamata ki ai 'a 'eku tamaí, ko e folofola ia 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia na'e fakatau ki he matavai 'o e ngaahi vai mo'uí, pe ki he 'akau 'o e mo'uí; 'a ia ko e ngaahi vaí ko ha fakatātā ia 'o e 'ofa 'a e 'Otuá; pea na'á ku vakai foki ko e 'akau 'o e mo'uí ko ha fakatātā ia 'o e 'ofa 'a e 'Otuá.

26 Pea toe pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au: Mamata 'o vakai ki he āfēitaulalo 'a e 'Otuá!

27 Pea u mamata 'o vakai ki he Huhu 'i 'o e māmaní, 'a ia kuo lea 'a 'eku tamaí 'o kau ki ai; pea na'á ku vakai foki ki he palōfita 'a ia te ne teuteu 'a e hala ki mu'a 'iate iá. Pea na'e hā'ele atu 'a e Lami 'a e 'Otuá 'o papitaiso 'iate ia; pea hili 'a hono papitaisó, na'á ku vakai ki he matangaki 'a e ngaahi langí; pea hā'ele hifo 'a e Laumālie Mā'oní'oní mei he langí 'o nofó 'ia 'iate ia 'i he tatau 'o ha lupe.

28 Pea na'á ku vakai na'á ne hā'ele atu 'o ngāue ki he kakaí, 'i he mālohi mo e nāunau lahi; pea kuo fakataha mai 'a e ngaahi ha'ofanga kakai tokolahi ke fanongo kiate ia; pea na'á ku vakai na'a nau kapusi ia mei honau lotolotongá.

29 Pea na'á ku toe vakai foki ki he toko hongofulu mā ua kehe 'oku muimui 'iate ia. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ave 'a kinautolu 'e he Laumālié mei hoku 'aó, 'o 'ikai te u sio kiate kinautolu.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father! Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw?

And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things.

And he spake unto me, saying: Yea, and the most joyous to the soul.

And after he had said these words, he said unto me: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Son of God going forth among the children of men; and I saw many fall down at his feet and worship him.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of iron, which my father had seen, was the word of God, which led to the fountain of living waters, or to the tree of life; which waters are a representation of the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God.

And the angel said unto me again: Look and behold the condescension of God!

And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the world, of whom my father had spoken; and I also beheld the prophet who should prepare the way before him. And the Lamb of God went forth and was baptized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven and abide upon him in the form of a dove.

And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto the people, in power and great glory; and the multitudes were gathered together to hear him; and I beheld that they cast him out from among them.

And I also beheld twelve others following him. And it came to pass that they were carried away in the Spirit from before my face, and I saw them not.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe lea mai 'a e 'āngeló kiate au, 'o pehē: Vakai! Peá u mamata, 'o vakai ki he toe matangaki 'a e ngaahi langí, pea na'á ku mamata ki he kau 'āngelo 'oku 'alu hifo ki he fānau 'a e tangatá; pea na'a nau tauhi 'a kinautolu.

31 Pea toe lea ia kiate au, 'o pehē: Vakai! Pea na'á ku sio atu 'o vakai ki he Lami 'a e 'Otuá 'oku hā'ele atu 'i he lotolotonga 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá. Pea na'á ku vakai ki he ngaahi ha'ofanga kakai tokolahi na'e puke, pea nau mo'ua 'i he ngaahi fa'ahinga mahaki kehekehe kotoa pē mo e kau tēvolo pea mo e ngaahi laumālie 'uli; pea na'e lea 'a e 'āngeló 'o ne fakahā kiate au 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē. Pea na'e fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu 'i he mālohi 'o e Lami 'a e 'Otuá; pea na'e kapusi ki tu'a 'a e kau tēvoló mo e ngaahi laumālie 'ulí.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe lea mai 'a e 'āngelo kiate au, 'o ne pehē: Vakai! Pea na'á ku mamata 'o vakai ki he Lami 'a e 'Otuá, kuo puke ia 'e he kakai; 'io, 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá ta'engatá na'e fakamāu 'i 'e he māmaní; pea na'á ku mamata mo fakamo'oni ki ai.

33 Pea ko au, Nifai, na'á ku mamata 'oku hiki hake ia ki he kolosí 'o tāmāte 'i koe'uhi ko e ngaahi angahala 'a māmaní.

34 Pea hili hono tāmāte 'i na'á ku mamata ki he ngaahi fu'u kakai tokolahi 'o e māmaní, kuo nau fakataha kātoa koe'uhi ke tau 'i 'a e kau 'apostolo 'a e Lamí; he na'e ui pehē 'a e toko hongofulu mā uá 'e he 'āngelo 'a e 'Eikí.

35 Pea kuo fakataha kātoa 'a e fu'u kakai tokolahi 'o e māmani; pea na'á ku vakai 'oku nau 'i he fale lahi mo 'ata'ataá 'o hangē ko e fale na'e mamata ki ai 'a 'eku tamaí. Pea toe lea mai 'a e 'āngelo 'a e 'Eikí kiate au, 'o pehē: Vakai ki he māmaní mo hono potó; 'io, vakai, kuo fakataha kātoa 'a e fale 'o 'Isilelí ke tau 'i 'a e kau 'apostolo 'e toko hongofulu mā ua 'a e Lamí.

36 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mamata mo fakamo'oni, ko e fu'u fale lahi mo 'ata'ataá ko e loto-hīkisia ia 'a e māmaní; pea na'e tō ia, pea na'e lahi 'aupito 'a 'ene toó. Pea na'e toe lea mai 'a e 'āngelo 'a e 'Eikí kiate au, 'o pehē: 'E pehē pē hano faka'auha 'a e ngaahi pule'anga, mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga, mo e ngaahi lea, mo e kakai fulipē, 'a ia 'e tau 'i 'a e kau 'apostolo 'e toko hongofulu mā ua 'a e Lamí.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the heavens open again, and I saw angels descending upon the children of men; and they did minister unto them.

And he spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men. And I beheld multitudes of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean spirits; and the angel spake and showed all these things unto me. And they were healed by the power of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean spirits were cast out.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God, that he was taken by the people; yea, the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world; and I saw and bear record.

And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world.

And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord.

And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which my father saw. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; yea, behold the house of Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceedingly great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

I Nīfai 12

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au: Mamata, pea vakai ki ho hakó kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e hako 'o ho ngaahi tokouá. Pea na'á ku vakai atu 'o mamata ki he fonua 'o e tala'ofá; pea na'á ku vakai ki ha ngaahi fu'u kakai tokolahi, 'io, 'a ia na'e hangē honau tokolahi ko e 'one'one 'o e tahí.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mamata ki ha ngaahi fu'u kakai tokolahi kuo fakataha ke fetau'aki, 'iate kinautolu; pea u vakai ki ha ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi ongoongo 'o e ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi fu'u faka'auha lahi 'i he heletā 'i hoku kakaí.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku vakai ki he 'alu atu ha ngaahi to'u tangata lahi, 'i he founa 'o e ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi feke'ike'i 'i he fonuá; pea na'á ku vakai ki he ngaahi kolo lahi, 'io, na'e lahi fau 'o 'ikai ai te u lau ia.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mamata ki ha 'ao fakapo'uli 'i he funga 'o e fonua 'o e tala'ofá; pea na'á ku mamata ki he ngaahi 'uhila, pea u fanongo ki he ngaahi mana, mo e ngaahi mofuike, mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga 'u'ulu le'o-lahi kehekehe kotoa pē; pea u mamata ki he fonuá mo e ngaahi maká'oku mavaeua, pea u mamata ki he ngaahi mo'ungá'oku holo hifo 'o movete; pea u mamata ki ha ngaahi potu tokalelei 'o e fonuá, kuo mafahifahi; pea u mamata ki ha ngaahi kolo lahi kuo ngalo hifo; pea u mamata ki ha ngaahi kolo lahi kuo vela 'i he afi; pea u mamata ki ha ngaahi kolo lahi na'e hinga ki he kekelé koe'uhi ko e ngalulululu 'a e kekelé.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'eku mamata ki he ngaahi me'a ko iá, na'á ku sio ki he 'ao 'o e fakapo'uli matolú, na'e mahu'i atu ia mei he funga 'o e fonuá; pea vakai, na'á ku mamata ki he ngaahi fu'u kakai tokolahi kuo 'ikai tō koe'uhi ko e ngaahi tautea lalahi fakamanavahē 'a e 'Eikí.
- 6 Pea na'á ku mamata ki he ngaahi langí'oku matangaki; pea hā'ele hifo 'a e Lami 'a e 'Otuá mei he langí; pea na'e hā'ele hifo ia 'o fakahā ia kiate kinautolu.
- 7 Pea na'á ku mamata foki mo fakamo'oni'i na'e hā'ele hifo 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni ki he toko hongofulu mā ua kehé; pea na'e fakanofu mo fili 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Otuá.

I Nephi 12

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were in number as many as the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered together to battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars, and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

And it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away, after the manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities, yea, even that I did not number them.

And it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunders, and earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces; and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the quaking thereof.

And it came to pass after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I saw multitudes who had not fallen because of the great and terrible judgments of the Lord.

And I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God descending out of heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.

And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen.

8 Pea na'e lea mai 'a e 'āngeló kiate au, 'o pehē: Vakai ki he kau ākongā 'e toko hongofulu mā ua 'a e Lamí, 'a ia kuo fili ke nau ngāue ki ho hakó.

9 Pea na'á ne pehē mai kiate au: 'Okú ke manatu ki he kau 'apostolo 'e toko hongofulu mā ua 'a e Lamí? Vakai ko kinautolu ia te nau fakamāu 'i 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga 'e hongofulu mā ua 'o 'Isilelí; ko ia, ko e kau faifekau 'e toko hongofulu mā ua mei ho hakó, 'e fakamāu 'i 'e kinautolu mo kinautolu foki; he 'oku mou 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.

10 Pea ko e kau faifekau ko 'eni 'e toko hongofulu mā uá 'okú ke vakai ki ai te nau fakamāu 'i 'a ho hakó. Pea, vakai, 'oku nau mā'oni'oni 'o ta'engata; he ko e me'a 'i he'enu tui ki he Lami 'a e 'Otuá kuo fakahinehina 'i 'a honau ngaahi kofú 'i hono ta'ata'á.

11 Pea na'e pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au: Vakai! Pea na'á ku mamata, 'o u vakai ki ha to'u tangata 'e tolu na'á nau mo'ui 'i he mā'oni'oni; pea na'e hinehina 'a honau ngaahi kofú 'o hangē ko e Lami 'a e 'Otuá. Pea na'e pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au: Kuo fakahinehina 'i 'a kinautolu ní 'i he ta'ata'a 'o e Lamí, koe'uhi ko 'enu tui kiate iá.

12 Pea ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku mamata foki ki he tokolahi 'o e to'u tangata hono faá na'a nau 'alu atu 'i he mā'oni'oni.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mamata ki he ngaahi fu'u kakai tokolahi 'o e fonuá kuo nau fakataha kātoa.

14 Pea na'e pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au: Vakai ki ho hakó, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e hako 'o ho ngaahi tokouá.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mamata atu 'o vakai ki he kakai 'o hoku hakó kuo nau fakataha 'i ha ngaahi fu'u kakai tokolahi ke tau mo e hako 'o hoku ngaahi tokouá; pea kuo nau fakataha ke tau.

16 Pea lea mai 'a e 'āngeló kiate au, 'o pehē: Vakai ki he matavai 'o e vai 'uli 'a ia na'e mamata ki ai 'a ho'o tamaí; 'io, 'a e vaitafe 'a ia na'á ne lau ki aí; pea ko hono ngaahi loloto ko e ngaahi loloto ia 'o helí.

17 Pea ko e ngaahi 'ao fakapo'ulí ko e ngaahi 'ahi'ahi ia 'a e tēvoló 'a ia 'oku fakakuihi 'a e matá, mo fakafefeka 'a e loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá, mo tohoaki 'i atu 'a kinautolu ki he ngaahi hala fālahi, pea nau 'auha ai mo hē.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed.

And he said unto me: Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged of them; for ye are of the house of Israel.

And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed. And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.

And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.

And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away in righteousness.

And it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together.

And the angel said unto me: Behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the people of my seed gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my brethren; and they were gathered together to battle.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water which thy father saw; yea, even the river of which he spake; and the depths thereof are the depths of hell.

And the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blindeth the eyes, and hardeneth the hearts of the children of men, and leadeth them away into broad roads, that they perish and are lost.

- 18 Pea ko e fu'u fale lahi mo 'ata'atā, 'a ia na'e mamata ki ai 'a ho'o tamaí, ko e ngaahi mahalo laulaunoa mo e loto-híkisia ia 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá. Pea 'oku vahevahe 'a kinautolu 'e ha vanu lahi mo fakamanavahē; 'io, 'a e folofola 'o e fakamaau totonu 'a e 'Otua Ta'engatá, pea mo e Mísaiá, 'a ia ko e Lami 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia kuo fakamo'oni'i 'e he Laumālie Mā'oni'oní, talu mei he kamata'anga 'o māmaní 'o a'u mai ki he taimí ni, pea fai atu mei he taimí ni 'o ta'engata.
- 19 Pea lolotonga 'a e lea 'aki 'e he 'āngeló 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'á ku vakai atu 'o mamata ki he tau 'a e hako 'o hoku ngaahi tokouá mo hoku hakó, 'o hangē ko e lea 'a e 'āngeló; pea ko'e uhi ko e loto-híkisia 'a hoku hakó mo e ngaahi 'ahi'ahi 'a e tēvoló, na'á ku vakai na'e ikuna'i 'e he hako 'o hoku ngaahi tokouá 'a e kakai 'o hoku hakó.
- 20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku vakai atu, 'o mamata ki he kakai 'o e hako 'o hoku ngaahi tokouá, kuo nau ikuna'i 'a hoku hakó; pea nau 'alu atu 'i ha ngaahi fu'u kakai tokolahi 'i he funga 'o e fonuá.
- 21 Pea na'á ku mamata kiate kinautolu kuo nau fakataha 'i ha ngaahi fu'u kakai tokolahi; pea na'á ku mamata ki he ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi ongoongo 'o e ngaahi tau 'iate kinautolu; pea na'á ku mamata ki he 'osi atu ha ngaahi to'u tangata lahi 'i he ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi ongoongo 'o e ngaahi tau.
- 22 Pea na'e pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au: Vakai, ko kinautolu ní te nau faka'au'auhifo 'i he ta'etuí.
- 23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku vakai, na'e hili 'enua faka'au'au hifo 'i he ta'etuí, na'a nau hoko ko e kakai lanu fakapo'upo'uli mo fakalielia mo 'uli, pea fonu 'i he fakapikopiko mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia kehekehe kotoa pē.

And the large and spacious building, which thy father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men. And a great and a terrible gulf divideth them; yea, even the word of the justice of the Eternal God, and the Messiah who is the Lamb of God, of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record, from the beginning of the world until this time, and from this time henceforth and forever.

And while the angel spake these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my brethren did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my brethren did overpower the people of my seed.

And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land.

And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.

And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.

And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations.

I Nīfai 13

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e lea mai 'a e 'āngeló kiate au, 'o pehē; Vakai! Pea na'á ku mamata 'o vakai ki he ngaahi kakai mo e ngaahi pule'anga lahi.
- 2 Pea pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au: Ko e hā 'okú ke vakai ki ai? Pea na'á ku pehē ange: 'Oku ou vakai ki he ngaahi kakai mo e ngaahi pule'anga lahi.
- 3 Pea na'á ne pehē mai kiate au: Ko e ngaahi kakai mo e ngaahi pule'anga 'eni 'o e kau Senitailé.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mamata 'i he ngaahi pule'anga 'o e kau Senitailé, 'oku fokotu'u ai ha fu'u siasi lahi.
- 5 Pea pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au: Vakai ki he fokotu'u 'o ha siasi 'a ia 'oku fu'u fakalielia taha 'i he ngaahi siasi kehe kotoa pē, 'a ia 'okú ne tāmata'i 'a e kau mā'oni'oni 'a e 'Otuá, 'io, pea fakamamahi'i 'a kinautolu mo ha'i hifo 'a kinautolu, mo fakaha'amonga 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e ha'amonga 'o e ukamea, pea taki hifo 'a kinautolu ki he pōpula.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku vakai ki he fu'u siasi lahi mo fakalielia ko iá; pea na'á ku mamata ki he tēvoló pea ko ia na'á ne fokotu'u iá.
- 7 Pea na'á ku mamata foki ki he koula, mo e siliva, mo e ngaahi silika, mo e ngaahi kofu kula 'aho'aho, mo e līneni tu'ovalevale, pea mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e kofu mahu'ingá; pea na'á ku mamata ki he kau fe'auaki tokolahi.
- 8 Pea na'e lea mai 'a e 'āngeló kiate au, 'o pehē: Vakai ko e koulá, mo e silivá, mo e ngaahi siliká, mo e ngaahi kofu kula 'aho'ahó, mo e līneni tu'ovalevalé, mo e ngaahi kofu mahu'ingá, mo e kau fe'auakí, ko e ngaahi holi ia 'a e fu'u siasi lahi mo fakalielia ko iá.
- 9 Pea ko e 'uma'ā foki ko hono fakavīkiviki 'a e māmaní 'oku nau faka'auha ai 'a e kau mā'oni'oni 'a e 'Otuá, 'o 'ohifo ai 'a kinautolu ki he pōpulá.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mamata atu 'o vakai ki ha ngaahi vai lahi, pea na'e vahevahe 'e ia 'a e kau Senitailé mei he hako 'o hoku ngaahi tokouá.
- 11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au: Vakai 'oku tō 'a e houhau 'o e 'Otuá ki he hako 'o ho ngaahi tokouá.

I Nephi 13

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.

And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.

And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.

And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the formation of a great church.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the formation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it.

And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church.

And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren.

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of thy brethren.

12 Pea na'á ku vakai atu 'o mamata ki ha tangata 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kau Senitailé, 'a ia na'e fakamavahe'i mei he hako 'o hoku ngaahi tokouá 'e he ngaahi vai lahi; pea na'á ku vakai ki he Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá, na'e hā'ele hifo ia 'o ue'i hake 'a e tangatá; pea 'alu atu ia 'i he funga 'o e ngaahi vai lahi, 'o a'u atu ki he hako 'o hoku ngaahi tokouá, 'a ia na'a nau 'i he fonua 'o e tala'ofá.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku vakai ki he Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá, na'e ue'i hake ha kau Senitaille kehe; pea na'a nau 'alu atu mei he nofo pōpulá, 'i he funga 'o e ngaahi vai lahi.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku vakai ki he ngaahi fu'u kakai tokolahi 'o e kau Senitailé 'i he fonua 'o e tala'ofá; pea na'á ku vakai ki he houhau 'o e 'Otuá, 'oku tō ki he hako 'o hoku ngaahi tokouá; pea na'e fakamovetevete 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Senitailé pea fakamamahi 'i 'a kinautolu.

15 Pea na'á ku vakai ki he Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí, na'e 'i he kau Senitailé ia, pea na'a nau tu'umālie 'o nau ma'u 'a e fonuá 'o hoko ko honau tofi 'a; pea na'á ku vakai 'oku nau lanu-hinehina, pea hoihoifua mo faka'ofa'ofa 'aupito, 'o hangē ko hoku kakai 'i he te'eki faka'auha 'a kinautolú.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku vakai ko e kau Senitaille 'a ia kuo nau 'alu atu mei he nofo pōpulá na'a nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí; pea na'e 'iate kinautolu 'a e māfima'fi 'o e 'Eikí.

17 Pea na'á ku vakai kuo fakataha 'a honau 'uluaki kakai ko e kau Senitailé 'i he funga 'o e ngaahi vai, pea 'i he funga 'o e fonuá foki, ke tau 'i 'a kinautolu.

18 Pea na'á ku vakai na'e 'iate kinautolu 'a e māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e tō 'a e houhau 'o e 'Otuá kiate kinautolu kotoa pē kuo tānaki fakataha ke tau mo kinautolú.

19 Pea ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku vakai ko e kau Senitaille 'a ia kuo 'alu atu mei he nofo pōpulá, na'e fakahaofi 'i he māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá mei he nima 'o e ngaahi pulé'anga kehe kotoa pē.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku vakai kuo nau tu'umālie 'i he fonuá; pea na'á ku vakai ki ha tohi, pea na'e 'ave holo ia 'iate kinautolu.

21 Pea na'e pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au: 'Okú ke 'ilo'i 'a e 'uhinga 'o e tohi?

And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who was separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land.

And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.

And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.

And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them.

And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them.

And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle.

And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them.

And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the book?

22 Pea na 'á ku pehē ange kiate ia: 'Oku 'ikai te u 'ilo'i.

23 Peá ne pehē mai: Vakai 'oku 'alu atu ia mei he ngutu 'o ha Siu. Pea ko au, Nifai, na 'á ku vakai ki ai; pea na 'á ne pehē mai kiate au: Ko e tohi 'okú ke mamata ki ai ko e lekooti ia 'o e kau Siú, 'a ia 'oku 'i ai 'a e ngaahi fuakava 'a e 'Eikí, 'a ia kuó ne fai ki he fale 'o 'Isilelí; pea 'oku 'i ai foki mo ha ngaahi kikite lahi 'a e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni; pea ko e lekooti ia 'oku tatau mo e ngaahi tohi tongitongi 'a ia 'oku tu'u 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá, neongo 'oku 'ikai ke fu'u lahi; ka neongo íá, 'oku tu'u 'i ai 'a e ngaahi fuakava 'a e 'Eikí, 'a ia kuó ne fai ki he fale 'o 'Isilelí; ko ia, 'oku 'aonga lahi ia ki he kau Senitailé.

24 Pea na 'e pehē mai 'e he 'āngelo 'a e 'Eikí kiate au: Kuó ke vakai na 'e 'alu atu 'a e tohi mei he ngutu 'o ha Siu; pea 'i he 'ene 'alu atu mei he ngutu 'o ha Siú, na 'e 'i ai 'a hono kakato 'o e ongoongolelei 'a e 'Eikí, 'a ia 'oku fakamo'oni 'i 'e he kau 'apostolo 'e toko hongofulu mā uá; pea 'oku nau fakamo'oni 'o fakatatau ki he mo'oni 'a ia 'oku 'i he Lami 'a e 'Otuá.

25 Ko ia, ko e ngaahi me'a ko 'eni 'oku 'alu atu mei he kau Siú 'oku haohaoa ki he kau Senitailé, 'o fakatatau mo e mo'oni 'oku 'i he 'Otuá.

26 Pea hili 'enau 'alu atu 'i he nima 'o e kau 'apostolo 'e toko hongofulu mā ua 'a e Lamí, mei he kau Siú ki he kau Senitailé, 'okú ke mamata ki hono fokotu'u 'o ha fu'u siasi lahi mo fakalielia, 'a ia 'oku fu'u fakalielia lahi taha 'i he ngaahi siasi kehe kotoa pē; he vakai, kuo nau to'o mei he ongoongolelei 'a e Lamí ha ngaahi kongalahi 'a ia 'oku mahinongofua mo mahu'inga taha; kae 'uma'ā foki mo e ngaahi fuakava 'a e 'Eikí kuo nau to'o mei ai.

27 Pea kuo nau fai kotoa 'eni koe'uhí ke nau lava 'o fakakehe'i 'a e ngaahi hā'ele'anga totonu 'o e 'Eikí, koe'uhí ke nau fakakuihi 'a e matá mo fakafefeka 'a e loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá.

28 Ko ia, 'okú ke vakai 'i he hili ange 'a e 'alu atu 'a e tohi 'i he nima 'o e fu'u siasi lahi mo fakalieliá, 'oku 'i ai ha ngaahi kongalahi 'oku mahinongofua mo mahu'inga kuo to'o mei he tohi, 'a ia ko e tohi 'a e Lami 'a e 'Otuá.

And I said unto him: I know not.

And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.

And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.

Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.

And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the formation of that great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.

And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.

Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.

29 Pea hili hono to‘o‘o e ngaahi me‘a mahinongofua mo mahu‘inga ko iá, ‘e‘alu atu ia ki he ngaahi pulé‘anga kotoa pē‘o e kau Senitailé; pea hili ‘ene‘alu atu ki he ngaahi pulé‘anga kotoa pē‘o e kau Senitailé; ‘io, ki he kauvai foki ‘e taha ‘o e ngaahi vai lahi ‘a ia kuó ke mamata ki aí, ‘o fou ‘i he kau Senitaile ‘a ia kuo ‘alu atu mei he nofo pōpulá, ‘okú ke vakai—koe‘uhi ko e ngaahi me‘a lahi ‘oku mahinongofua mo mahu‘inga ‘a ia kuo to‘o mei he tohí, ‘a ia na‘e mahinongofua ki he fakakaukau ‘a e fānau ‘a e tangatá, ‘o fakatau mo hono mahinongofua ‘a ia ‘oku ‘i he Lami ‘a e ‘Otuá—koe‘uhi ko e ngaahi me‘a ko ia ‘a ia kuo to‘o mei he ongoongolelei ‘a e Lamí, ‘oku tūkia ai ha fu‘u kakai tokolahi ‘aupito, ‘io, ‘oku ma‘u ai ‘e Sētane ‘a e mālohi lahi kiate kinautolu.

30 Ka neongo iá, kuó ke vakai ko e kau Senitaile kuo nau ‘alu atu mei he nofo pōpulá, pea kuo hakeaki‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘i he māfimafi ‘o e ‘Otuá ‘o nau mā‘olunga ange ‘i he ngaahi pulé‘anga kehe kotoa pē, ‘i he funga ‘o e fonua ‘a ia ‘oku mahu‘inga lahi hake ‘i he ngaahi fonua kehe kotoa pē, ‘a ia ko e fonua kuo fuakava ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá mo ho‘o tamá ‘e ma‘u ia ‘e hono hakó ke hoko ko e fonua ‘o honau tofi‘á; ko ia, ‘okú ke mamata ‘e ‘ikai tuku ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá ke faka‘auha ‘o ‘osi‘osingamālie ‘e he kau Senitailé ‘a e fefiofi ‘o ho hakó, ‘a ia ‘oku ‘i ho kāingá.

31 Pea ‘e ‘ikai foki te ne tuku ‘e ia ke faka‘auha ‘e he kau Senitailé ‘a e hako ‘o ho ongo ta‘oketé.

32 Pea ‘e ‘ikai tuku ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá, ke nofo ta‘engata ‘a e kau Senitailé ‘i he tu‘unga fakapo‘uli fakamanavahē ko iá, ‘a ia ‘okú ke vakai ‘oku nau ‘i aí, ko e tupu mei he ngaahi konga mahinongofua mo mahu‘inga taha ‘o e ongoongolelei ‘a e Lamí, ‘a ia kuo ta‘ofi ‘e he siasi fakalielia ko iá, ‘a ia na‘á ke mamata ki hono fokotu‘ú.

33 Ko ia ‘oku folofola ‘e he Lami ‘a e ‘Otuá: Te u ‘alo‘ofa ki he kau Senitailé, kae fakahoko ha fu‘u tautea lahi ki he toenga ‘o e fale ‘o ‘Isilelí.

And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God—because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.

Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren.

Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren.

Neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall forever remain in that awful state of blindness, which thou beholdest they are in, because of the plain and most precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, whose formation thou hast seen.

Wherefore saith the Lamb of God: I will be merciful unto the Gentiles, unto the visiting of the remnant of the house of Israel in great judgment.

34 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e lea mai 'a e 'āngelo 'a e 'Eiki kiate au 'o pehē: Vakai, 'oku folofola 'e he Lami 'a e 'Otuá, hili 'eku tautea 'i 'a e toenga 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí—pea ko e toenga 'a ia 'oku ou lau ki aí ko e hako ia 'o ho 'o tamaí—ko ia, 'o ka hili 'eku 'a 'ahi kiate kinautolu 'i he tauteá, peá u te 'ia 'a kinautolu 'i he nima 'o e kau Senitailé, pea hili 'a e toe fu 'u fai angahala lahi 'a e kau Senitailé koe' uhi ko e ngaahi konga mahinongofua mo mahu'inga taha 'o e ongoongolelei 'a e Lamí 'a ia kuo ta'ofi 'e he siasi fakalielia ko iá, 'a ia ko e fa'ē 'a e kau fé'auakí, 'oku folofola 'e he Lamí—te u 'alo'ofa ki he kau Senitailé 'i he 'aho ko iá, ko ia te u 'omi ai kiate kinautolu, 'i hoku mālohi 'o 'okú, 'a e konga lahi 'o 'eku ongoongolelei, 'a ia 'e mahinongofua mo mahu'inga, 'oku folofola 'e he Lamí.

35 He vakai, 'oku folofola 'e he Lami: Te u fakahā au ki ho hakó, koe' uhi ke nau tohi 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi 'a ia te u fakahā kiate kinautolu, 'a ia 'e mahinongofua mo mahu'inga; pea ka hili 'a e faka'auha 'o ho hakó, pea faka'au'au hifo 'i he ta'etui, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e hako 'o ho ongo ta'oketé, vakai, 'e fufuu 'i 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, ke toki 'omi ki he kau Senitailé, 'i he foaki mo e mālohi 'o e Lamí.

36 Pea 'e tohi 'i ai 'a 'eku ongoongolelei, 'oku folofola 'e he Lamí, mo 'eku maká mo 'eku fakamo'uí.

37 Pea 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu 'e feinga ke 'omi 'a hoku Saioné 'i he 'aho ko iá, he te nau ma'u 'a e foaki mo e mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oní'oní; pea kapau te nau kātaki ki he ngata'angá 'e hiki hake 'a kinautolu 'i he 'aho faka'osí, pea 'e fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu 'i he pule'anga ta'engata 'o e Lamí; pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'e fakahā 'a e ongoongo 'o e melinó, 'io, 'a e ongoongo 'o e fiefia lahi, hono 'ikai te nau faka'ofa'ofa 'i he ngaahi mo'ungá.

38 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku vakai ki he toenga 'o e hako 'o hoku ngaahi tokouá, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e tohi 'o e Lami 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia kuo 'alu atu 'i he ngutu 'o e Siú, pea fou mai ia 'i he kau Senitailé ki he toenga 'o e hako 'o hoku ngaahi tokouá.

And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord spake unto me, saying: Behold, saith the Lamb of God, after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel—and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of thy father—wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, which is the mother of harlots, saith the Lamb—I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious, saith the Lamb.

For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed, that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren, behold, these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.

And in them shall be written my gospel, saith the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.

And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.

And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren.

39 Pea hili 'ene a'u atu kiate kinautolú, na'á ku vakai ki he ngaahi tohi kehe, 'a ia na'e 'omai 'i he māfima'fi 'o e Lamí, mei he kau Senitailé kiate kinautolu, koe'uhi ke fakamahino ki he kau Senitailé mo e toenga 'o e hako 'o hoku ngaahi tokouá, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e kau Siu 'a ia kuo movetevete 'i he funga 'o e māmaní kotoa pē, 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'a e kau palōfitá mo e kau 'apostolo 'e toko hongofulu mā ua 'a e Lamí.

40 Pea na'e lea mai 'a e 'āngeló kiate au 'o pehē: Ko e ngaahi lekooti fakamuimui ko 'eni, 'a ia kuó ke mamata ki ai 'i he kau Senitailé, te ne fakamo'oni 'i 'a hono mo'oni 'o e 'uluakí, 'a ia 'oku 'o e kau 'apostolo 'e toko hongofulu mā ua 'a e Lamí, pea te nau fakamahino 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a mahinongofua mo mahu'inga 'a ia kuo to'o mei aí; pea 'e fakahā ia ki he fa'ahinga, mo e ngaahi lea, mo e kakai fulipē, ko e Lami 'a e 'Otuá ko e 'Alo ia 'o e Tamai Ta'engatá, pea ko e Fakamo'ui 'o e māmaní; pea kuo pau ke ha'u 'a e kakai fulipē kiate ia, pē 'e 'ikai fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu.

41 Pea kuo pau ke nau ha'u 'o fakatatau mo e ngaahi folofola 'e folofola 'aki 'e he fofonga 'o e Lamí; pea 'e fakahā 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a e Lamí 'i he ngaahi lekooti 'a ho hakó, pea pehē foki 'i he ngaahi lekooti 'a e kau 'apostolo 'e toko hongofulu mā ua 'a e Lamí; ko ia 'e fakataha 'i 'a kinaua ke na taha; he 'oku 'i ai 'a e 'Otuá pē taha mo e Tauhi-sipi pē taha ki he māmaní kotoa.

42 Pea 'e hoko 'a e taimi te ne fakahā ai ia ki he ngaahi pulé'anga kotoa pē, ki he kau Siú kae 'uma'ā foki mo e kau Senitailé fakatou'osi; pea hili 'ene fakahā ia 'e ia ki he kau Siú pea ki he kau Senitailé foki, te ne toki fakahā ia ki he kau Senitailé pea ki he kau Siú foki, pea 'e mu'omu'a 'a e muimuí, pea 'e muimui 'a e mu'omu'á.

And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

And the time cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last.

I Nīfai 14

- 1 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē, kapau 'e tokanga 'a e kau Senitailé ki he Lami 'a e 'Otuá 'i he 'aho 'a ia te ne fakahā ai ia kiate kinautolu 'i he folofolá, kae 'uma'ā foki 'i he māfimaſi, 'i he ngaahi ngāue, ki hono to'atu 'o honau ngaahi tūkia'angá—
- 2 Pea 'ikai fakafefeka honau lotó ki he Lami 'a e 'Otuá, 'e lau 'a kinautolu fakataha mo e hako 'o ho'otamaí; 'io, 'e lau 'a kinautolu fakataha mo e fale 'o 'Isilelí; pea te nau hoko ko e kakai monū'ia 'i he funga 'o e fonua 'o e tala'ofá 'o ta'engata; 'e 'ikai toe fakapōpula 'i 'a kinautolu; pea 'e 'ikai toe veuki 'a e fale 'o 'Isilelí.
- 3 Pea ko e luo lahi, 'a ia kuo keli ma'anautolu 'e he fu'u siasi lahi mo fakalieliá, 'a ia na'e fokotu'u 'e he tēvoló mo 'ene fānaú, ke ne tohoaki 'i atu 'a e laumālie 'o e tangatá ki heli—'io, 'a e fu'u luo lahi ko ia 'a ia kuo keli ke faka'auha ai 'a e tangatá, 'e fakafonu ia 'aki 'a e fa'ahinga na'a nau keli iá, 'o a'u ki honau faka'auha ke 'osi'osingamālie, 'oku folofola 'e he Lami 'a e 'Otuá; kae 'ikai ko e faka'auha 'o e laumālie, kā ko hono laku ki he heli ko ia 'oku 'ikai hano ngata'angá.
- 4 He vakai, 'oku tatau 'eni mo hono fakapōpula 'i 'o e tēvoló, pea fakatatau foki mo e fakamaau totonu 'a e 'Otuá, kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'e fai 'a e ngāue 'o e fai angahala mo e fakalielia 'i hono 'aó.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e lea mai 'a e 'āngeló kiate au, ko Nīfai, 'o pehē: Kuó ke vakai, kapau 'e fakatomala 'a e kau Senitaile, 'e lelei ia kiate kinautolu; pea 'okú ke 'ilo'i foki 'a e ngaahi fuakava 'a e 'Eiki ki he fale 'o 'Isilelí; pea kuó ke fanongo foki, ko ia ia 'oku 'ikai fakatomalá kuo pau ke 'auha.
- 6 Ko ia, mala'ia ki he kau Senitailé 'o kapau te nau fakafefeka honau lotó ki he Lami 'a e 'Otuá.

I Nephi 14

And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end.

For behold, this is according to the captivity of the devil, and also according to the justice of God, upon all those who will work wickedness and abomination before him.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying: Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish.

Therefore, wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.

7 He 'e hokosia 'a e taimi, 'oku folofola 'e he Lami 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia te u fai ai ha ngāue ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofa 'i he fānau 'a e tangatá; ko ha ngāue 'a ia 'e ta'engata, 'i hano tafa'aki pē—pe ki hono fakaloto 'i 'o kinautolu ki he melinó mo e mo'ui ta'engata, pe ki hono tuku 'o kinautolu ki he fefeka 'o honau lotó mo e fakakuihi 'o honau 'atamaí, 'o a'u ki hono fakapōpula 'i 'a kinautolu, kae 'uma'ā foki honau faka'auha, fakatu'asino mo fakalaumālie fakatou'osi, 'o fakatatau mo e fakapōpula 'a e tēvoló, 'a ia kuó u lau ki aí.

8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi lea 'aki 'e he 'āngeló 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'á ne pehē mai kiate au: 'Okú ke manatu koā ki he ngaahi fuakava 'a e Tamaí ki he fale 'o 'Isilelí? Na'á ku pehē ange kiate ia: 'Io.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne pehē mai kiate au: Hanga atu, 'o vakai ki he fu'u siasi lahi mo fakalielia 'a ia ko e fa'ē 'a e ngaahi me'a fakalieliá, 'a ia ko hono tupu'angá ko e tēvoló.

10 Pea na'á ne pehē mai kiate au: Vakai, 'oku 'i ai 'a e siasi 'e ua pē; ko e taha ko e siasi 'o e Lami 'a e 'Otuá, pea ko e tahá ko e siasi 'o e tēvoló; ko ia, 'ilonga ia 'oku 'ikai kau ki he siasi 'o e Lami 'a e 'Otuá 'oku kau ia ki he fu'u siasi ko ia, 'a ia ko e fa'ē 'a e ngaahi me'a fakalieliá; pea ko e fe'auaki ia 'o e māmaní kotoa pē.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku hanga atu 'o vakai ki he fe'auaki 'o e māmaní kotoa pē, pea na'e heka ia 'i he fu'u vai lahi; pea na'á ne pule ki he māmaní kotoa pē pea 'i he ngaahi pule'anga, mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga, mo e ngaahi lea, mo e kakai fulipē.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mamata ki he siasi 'o e Lami 'a e 'Otuá, pea na'e tokosi 'i, koe'uhi ko e fai angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia 'a e fe'auaki 'a ia na'e heka 'i he ngaahi vai lahi; ka neongo iá, na'á ku vakai na'e 'i he funga kotoa 'o māmaní 'a e siasi 'o e Lamí, 'a ia ko e kau mā'oni'oni 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia na'a nau 'i he funga 'o e māmaní foki; pea na'e sí 'i 'a 'enua pule 'i he funga 'o e māmaní, koe'uhi ko e fai angahala 'a e fu'u fe'auaki 'a ia na'á ku mamata ki aí.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku vakai na'e tānaki fakataha 'e he fu'u fa'ē 'o e ngaahi fakalieliá 'a e fu'u kakai tokolahi 'i he funga 'o e māmaní kotoa, 'i he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē 'o e kau Senitailé, koe'uhi ke tau 'i 'a e Lami 'a e 'Otuá.

For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.

And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel? I said unto him, Yea.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look, and behold that great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose founder is the devil.

And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.

- 14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku vakai ki he mālohi 'o e Lami 'a e 'Otuá, pea na'e tō ia ki he kau mā'oni'oni 'o e siasi 'o e Lamí, pea ki he kakai 'o e fuakava 'o e 'Eikí, 'a ia kuo fakamovetevete ki he funga kotoa 'o e māmaní; pea na'e fakamahafu 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e mā'oni'oni pea mo e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá 'i he fu' u nāunau lahi.
- 15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku vakai na'e hua 'i hifo 'a e houhau 'o e 'Otuá ki he fu' u siasi lahi mo fakalieliá, ko ia na'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi ongoongo 'o e ngaahi tau 'i he ngaahi pule'anga mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e māmaní.
- 16 Pea 'i he kamata ke 'i ai 'a e ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi ongoongo 'o e ngaahi tau 'i he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē 'a ia na'e kau ki he fa'ē 'a e ngaahi me'a fakalieliá, na'e lea 'a e 'āngeló kiate au 'o pehē: Vakai, 'oku 'i he fa'ē 'a e kau fe'auakí 'a e houhau 'o e 'Otuá; pea vakai, 'okú ke mamata ki he ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē—
- 17 Pea 'o ka hokosia 'a e 'aho 'e hua 'i hifo ai 'a e houhau 'o e 'Otuá ki he fa'ē 'a e kau fe'auakí, 'a ia ko e fu' u siasi lahi mo fakalielia 'o e māmaní kātōá, 'a ia ko hono tupu'angá ko e tēvoló, 'e toki kamata, 'i he 'aho ko iá, 'a e ngāue 'a e Tamaí, ko e teuteu 'a e hala ki hono fakahoko 'o 'ene ngaahi fuakava, 'a ia kuó ne fai ki hono kakai 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.
- 18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e lea mai 'a e 'āngeló kiate au 'o pehē: Vakai!
- 19 Pea na'á ku sio atu 'o vakai ki ha tangata, pea na'á ne kofu 'aki 'a e pulupulu hinehina.
- 20 Pea na'e pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au: Vakai ko e toko taha 'o e kau 'apostolo 'e toko hongofulu mā ua 'a e Lamí.
- 21 Vakai, te ne mamata mo tohi 'a e toenga 'o e ngaahi me'á ni; 'io, kae 'uma'ā foki mo ha ngaahi me'a lahi 'a ia kuo hoko.
- 22 Pea te ne tohi foki 'o kau ki he ngata'anga 'o e māmaní.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon that great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mother of abominations, the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and behold, thou seest all these things—

And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe.

And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; yea, and also many things which have been.

And he shall also write concerning the end of the world.

- 23 Ko ia, 'oku totonu mo mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'a te ne tohi; pea vakai kuo tohi ia 'i he tohi na'á ke mamata ki ai 'oku 'alu atu mei he ngutu 'o e Siú; pea 'i he taimi 'oku 'alu atu ai ia mei he ngutu 'o e Siú, pe, 'i he taimi na'e 'alu atu ai 'a e tohi mei he ngutu 'o e Siú, ko e ngaahi me'a na'e tohi na'e mahinongofua mo haohaoa, pea fu'u mahu'inga mo mahinongofua taha ki he 'atamai 'o e kakai kotoa pē.
- 24 Pea vakai, ko e ngaahi me'a 'e tohi 'e he 'apostolo ko ia 'a e Lamí, ko e ngaahi me'a lahi ia 'a ia kuó ke mamata ki ai; pea vakai, te ke mamata ki hono toé.
- 25 Ka ko e ngaahi me'a te ke mamata ki ai 'amuí ke 'oua na'á ke tohi ia; he kuo tu'utu'uni 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ki he 'apostolo 'a e Lami 'a e 'Otuá ke ne tohi ia.
- 26 Kae 'uma'ā foki ha ni'ihni kehe foki, kuó ne fakahā ki ai 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē, pea kuo nau tohi ia; pea kuo fakama'u ia ke toki fakahā mai 'i hono tu'unga haohaoá, 'o fakatata ki he mo'oni 'oku 'i he Lamí, kae 'oua kuo hokosia 'a e taimi 'oku finangalo ki ai 'a e 'Eikí, ki he fale 'o 'Isilelí.
- 27 Pea ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku fanongo mo fakamo'oni, ko e hingoa 'o e 'apostolo 'a e Lamí ko Sione, 'o hangē ko e lea 'a e 'āngeló.
- 28 Pea vakai, ko au, Nīfai, kuo tu'utu'uni kiate au ke 'oua na'á ku tohi 'a e toenga 'o e ngaahi me'a 'a ia na'á ku mamata mo fanongo ki aí; ko ia 'oku fe'unga kiate au 'a e ngaahi me'a kuó u tohi; pea kuó u tohi pē ha kongá si'í 'o e ngaahi me'a na'á ku mamata ki aí.
- 29 Pea 'oku ou fakamo'oni na'á ku mamata ki he ngaahi me'a na'e mamata ki ai 'a 'eku tamaí, pea na'e fakahā ia kiate au 'e he 'āngelo 'a e 'Eikí.
- 30 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou faka'osi 'eku lea 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'a na'á ku mamata ki ai 'i he lolotonga 'ave au 'e he Laumālié; pea kapau kuo 'ikai ke tohi 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē na'á ku mamata ki aí, ka 'oku mo'oni pē 'a e ngaahi me'a kuó u tohi. Pea 'oku pehē pē. 'Ēmeni.

Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; and behold they are written in the book which thou beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew; and at the time they proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, or, at the time the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things which were written were plain and pure, and most precious and easy to the understanding of all men.

And behold, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen; and behold, the remainder shalt thou see.

But the things which thou shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write; for the Lord God hath ordained the apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them.

And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel.

And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.

And behold, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written suffice me; and I have written but a small part of the things which I saw.

And I bear record that I saw the things which my father saw, and the angel of the Lord did make them known unto me.

And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the Spirit; and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And thus it is. Amen.

I Nīfai 15

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e 'ave au, Nīfai, 'e he Laumālié, peá u mamata ki he ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, peá u foki ki he fale fehikitaki 'o 'eku tamaí.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku sio ki hoku ngaahi tokouá, pea na'a nau lolotonga fakakikihi 'iate kinautolu 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'a kuo lea 'aki kiate kinautolu 'e he'eku tamaí.
- 3 He ko e mo'oni na'e lahi 'a e ngaahi me'a lalahi na'á ne lea 'aki kiate kinautolu, 'a ia na'e mahinongata 'a, 'o kapau 'e 'ikai fehu 'i 'e ha tangata ki he 'Eikí; pea ko e me'a 'i he fefeka honau lotó, ko ia na'e 'ikai te nau falala ki he 'Eikí 'o hangē ko me'a na'e totonu ke nau faí.
- 4 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Nīfai, na'e mamahi hoku lotó koe'uhi ko e fefeka 'o honau lotó, pea koe'uhi foki, ko e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuó u mamata ki aí, pea na'á ku 'ilo 'i kuo pau ke hoko ia koe'uhi ko e fai angahala lahi fau 'a e fānau 'a e tangatá.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e mafasia hoku lotó ko e tupu mei hoku ngaahi faingata 'a 'iá, he na'á ku tui 'oku lahi ange 'a hoku ngaahi faingata 'a 'iá 'i he mamahi kotoa pē, koe'uhi ko e faka'auha 'o hoku kaká, he kuó u vakai ki he'enu toó.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'eku ma'u ha iví na'á ku lea ange ki hoku ngaahi tokouá, 'i he'eku fie 'ilo meiate kinautolu 'a e 'uhinga 'o 'enu ngaahi fakakikihi.
- 7 Pea nau pehē mai: Vakai, 'oku 'ikai mahino kiate kimautolu 'a e ngaahi lea kuo lea 'aki 'e he'etau tamaí 'o kau ki he ngaahi va'a totonu 'o e fu'u 'ōlivé, pea toe kau foki ki he kau Senitailé.
- 8 Pea na'á ku pehē ange kiate kinautolu: Kuo mou fehu 'i koā ki he 'Eikí?
- 9 Pea nau pehē mai kiate au: Kuo 'ikai; he 'oku 'ikai fakahā mai 'e he 'Eikí ha me'a pehē kiate kimautolu.
- 10 Vakai, na'á ku pehē ange kiate kinautolu: Ko e hā 'oku 'ikai te mou tauhi ai 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí? Ko e hā te mou fie mala 'ia ai ko e tupu 'i he fefeka 'o homou lotó?

I Nephi 15

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been carried away in the Spirit, and seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that I beheld my brethren, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things which my father had spoken unto them.

For he truly spake many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought.

And now I, Nephi, was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts, and also, because of the things which I had seen, and knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness of the children of men.

And it came to pass that I was overcome because of my afflictions, for I considered that mine afflictions were great above all, because of the destruction of my people, for I had beheld their fall.

And it came to pass that after I had received strength I spake unto my brethren, desiring to know of them the cause of their disputations.

And they said: Behold, we cannot understand the words which our father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the olive tree, and also concerning the Gentiles.

And I said unto them: Have ye inquired of the Lord?

And they said unto me: We have not; for the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us.

Behold, I said unto them: How is it that ye do not keep the commandments of the Lord? How is it that ye will perish, because of the hardness of your hearts?

11 'Oku 'ikai te mou manatu 'i koā 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo folofola 'aki 'e he 'Eiki?—Kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakafefeka homou lotó, pea mou kole kiate au 'i he tui, 'o 'amanaki te mou ma'u, 'i ho'omou tauhi faivelenga 'eku ngaahi fekaú, ko e mo'oni 'e fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate kimoutolu.

12 Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, na'e fakatatau 'a e fale 'o 'Isilelí ki ha fu'u 'ōlive, 'i he Laumālie 'o e 'Eiki 'a ia na'e 'i he 'etau tamaí; pea vakai 'ikai kuo fesi 'i 'a kitautolu mei he fale 'o 'Isilelí, pea 'ikai ko ha va'a koā 'a kitautolu 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí?

13 Pea ko 'eni, ko e 'uhinga 'o e lea 'a 'etau tamaí 'o kau ki he fakahoko 'o e ngaahi va'a totonú 'i hono kakato 'o e kau Senitailé, 'e a'u ki he ngaahi 'aho fakamuí, 'i he faka'au'auhifo 'i he ta'etui 'a hotau hakó, 'io, 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi, mo e ngaahi to'u tangata lahi 'i he hili 'a e hā mai 'a e Mīsaía 'i he sino ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'e toki 'omi hono kakato 'o e ongoongolelei 'a e Mīsaía ki he kau Senitailé, pea mei he kau Senitailé ki he toenga 'o hotau hakó—

14 Pea 'i he 'aho ko iá 'e 'ilo 'e he toenga 'o hotau hakó 'oku nau 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, pea ko kinautolú ko e kakai 'o e fuakava 'o e 'Eiki; pea te nau toki 'ilo 'i pea ma'u 'a e 'ilo ki he 'enau ngaahi kuí, kae 'uma ā foki 'a e 'ilo ki he ongoongolelei 'a honau Huhu'í, 'a ia na'e ako 'i ki he 'enau ngaahi tamaí 'e ia; ko ia, te nau ma'u 'a e 'ilo ki honau Huhu'í mo e ngaahi tefito 'i me'a 'o 'ene ngaahi tokāteliné, ko'e uhi ke nau 'ilo 'i pe 'e fēfē 'enau ha'u kiate ia 'o mo'uí:

15 Pea 'e 'ikai koā te nau nēkeneka 'i he 'aho ko iá, pea 'oatu 'a e fakafeta 'i ki honau 'Otua ta'engata, ko honau makatu'ú mo honau fakamo'uí? 'Io, 'e 'ikai koā te nau ma'u 'i he 'aho ko iá 'a e ivi mo e me'akai mei he vaine mo'oni? 'Io, 'e 'ikai koā te nau ha'u ki he loto'ā sipi mo'oni 'a e 'Otuá?

16 Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Io; 'e toe manatu 'i 'a kinautolu fakataha mo e fale 'o 'Isilelí; pea 'e fakahoko 'a kinautolu, 'a ia ko e va'a totonu 'o e fu'u 'ōlivé, ki he fu'u 'ōlive totonú.

Do ye not remember the things which the Lord hath said?—If ye will not harden your hearts, and ask me in faith, believing that ye shall receive, with diligence in keeping my commandments, surely these things shall be made known unto you.

Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our father; and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel?

And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed—

And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their forefathers, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their fathers by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved.

And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?

Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive tree, into the true olive tree.

17 Pea ko e 'uhinga 'eni 'o e lea 'a 'etau tamaí; pea ko 'ene 'uhingá 'e 'ikai hoko ia kae 'oua kuo hili honau fakamovetevete 'i 'e he kau Senitailé; pea ko 'ene 'uhingá 'e fakafou mai ia 'i he kau Senitailé, koe'uhi ke lava 'o fakahā 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono māfimaí ki he kau Senitailé, koe'uhi ko e 'uhinga tatau mo ia 'e li'aki ai ia 'e he kau Siú, pe ko e fale 'o 'Isilelí.

18 Ko ia, kuo 'ikai lau 'a 'etau tamaí ki hotau hakó pē, ka ki he fale kotoa foki 'o 'Isilelí, 'o 'uhinga ki he fuakava 'a ia 'e fakahoko 'i he ngaahi 'aho faka'osí; 'a ia ko e fuakava na'e fai 'e he 'Eikí ki he 'etau tamaí ko 'Ēpalahamé, 'o ne folofola: 'E monū'ia 'i ho hakó 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e māmaní.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku lea lahi kiate kinautolu 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'á ni; 'io, na'á ku lea kiate kinautolu 'o kau ki hono fakafoki mai 'o e kau Siú 'i he ngaahi 'aho faka'osí.

20 Pea na'á ku lau kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi lea 'a 'Īsaiá, 'a ia na'á ne lea 'o kau ki he fakafoki 'o e kau Siú, pe ko e fale 'o 'Isilelí; pea hili honau fakafokí 'e 'ikai toe veuveuki 'a kinautolu, pea 'e 'ikai toe fakamovetevetea 'a kinautolu. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku lea 'aki ha ngaahi lea lahi ki hoku ngaahi tokouá, pea na'a nau fiemālie ai, 'o nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau toe lea mai kiate au 'o pehē: Ko e hā 'a e 'uhinga 'o e me'a 'a ia na'e mamata ki ai 'a 'etau tamaí 'i ha misí? Ko e hā 'a e 'uhinga 'o e fu'u 'akau 'a ia na'á ne mamata ki aí?

22 Pea na'á ku pehē ange kiate kinautolu: Ko e fakataipe ia 'o e fu'u 'akau 'o e mo'uí.

23 Pea nau pehē mai kiate au: Ko e hā 'a e 'uhinga 'o e va'a ukamea 'a ia na'e mamata ki ai 'a 'etau tamaí, 'a ia na'e fakatau ki he fu'u 'akau?

24 Pea na'á ku pehē ange kiate kinautolu, ko e folofola ia 'a e 'Otuá, pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'e tokanga ki he folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'o piki ma'u ki aí, 'e 'ikai te nau teitei mate; pea 'e 'ikai foki lava ke ikuna 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he ngaahi 'ahí'ahi mo e ngaahi ngahau vela 'a e filí ke fakakuihi mo tohoaki 'i atu 'a kinautolu ki he faka'auhá.

And this is what our father meaneth; and he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; and he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.

Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake much unto them concerning these things; yea, I spake unto them concerning the restoration of the Jews in the latter days.

And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spake concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And it came to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did speak unto me again, saying: What meaneth this thing which our father saw in a dream? What meaneth the tree which he saw?

And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?

And I said unto them that it was the word of God; and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.

25 Ko ia, ko au, Nifai, na'á ku na'ina'i kiate kinautolu ke nau tokanga ki he folofola 'a e 'Eiki; 'io, na'á ku na'ina'i kiate kinautolu 'aki 'a e ivi kotoa 'o hoku laumalié mo e mālohi kotoa na'e 'iate aú ke nau tokanga ki he folofola 'a e 'Otuá pea manatu ke tauhi ma'u ai pē 'a 'ene ngaahi fekaú 'i he me'a kotoa pē.

26 Pea na'a nau pehē mai kiate au: Ko e hā 'a e 'uhinga 'o e vaitafe na'e mamata ki ai 'a 'etau tamaí?

27 Pea na'á ku pehē ange kiate kinautolu ko e vai na'e mamata ki ai 'a 'eku tamaí ko e 'ulí ia; pea na'e lahi pehē fau 'a e mo'ua 'a 'ene fakakaukaú ki he ngaahi me'a kehé ko ia na'e 'ikai ai te ne tokanga 'i hono 'uli 'o e vai.

28 Pea na'á ku pehē ange kiate kinautolu ko e vanu fakamanavahē ia, 'a ia 'okú ne vahē 'i 'a e kau angahalá mei he 'akau 'o e mo'uí, kae 'uma'ā foki mei he kau mā'oni'oni 'a e 'Otuá.

29 Pea na'á ku pehē ange kiate kinautolu ko e fakatātā ia 'o e heli fakamanavahē, 'a ia na'e pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au kuo teuteu ma'á e kau fai angahalá.

30 Pea na'á ku pehē ange kiate kinautolu na'e toe mamata foki 'a 'etau tamaí na'e vahē 'i 'a e kau angahalá mei he kau mā'oni'oni 'e he fakamaau totonu 'a e 'Otuá; pea ko hono ngingilá 'oku hangē ko e maama 'o e uló 'o ha afi kakaha, 'a ia 'oku 'alu hake ki he 'Otuá 'o ta'engata pea ta'engata, pea 'oku 'ikai hano ngata'anga.

31 Pea nau pehē mai kiate au: 'Oku 'uhinga koā 'a e me'á ni ki he fakamamahi 'i 'o e sinó 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o e nofo 'ahi'ahi'angá, pe 'oku 'uhinga koā ia ki he tu'unga faka'osi 'o e laumalié 'i he hili 'a e mate 'o e sino fakamatelié, pe 'oku 'uhinga ia ki he ngaahi me'a 'oku fakamatelié?

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku pehē ange kiate kinautolu ko e fakatātā ia 'o e ngaahi me'a 'oku fakamatelié mo fakalaumalié fakatou'osi; ko'e uhi 'e hoko 'a e 'aho 'a ia kuo pau 'e fakamāu 'i ai 'a kinautolu 'i he'enua ngaahi ngāue, 'io, 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a ia na'e fai 'e he sino fakamatelié 'i honau ngaahi 'aho 'o e nofo 'ahi'ahi'angá.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord; yea, I did exhort them with all the energies of my soul, and with all the faculty which I possessed, that they would give heed to the word of God and remember to keep his commandments always in all things.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the river of water which our father saw?

And I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water.

And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.

And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.

And I said unto them that our father also saw that the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; and the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming fire, which ascendeth up unto God forever and ever, and hath no end.

And they said unto me: Doth this thing mean the torment of the body in the days of probation, or doth it mean the final state of the soul after the death of the temporal body, or doth it speak of the things which are temporal?

And it came to pass that I said unto them that it was a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation.

33 Ko ia, kapau te nau mate 'i he 'enau fai angahalá, kuo pau ke kapusi atu foki 'a kinautolu ki tu'a, mei he ngaahi me'a 'oku fakalaumalié, 'a ia 'oku kau ki he mā'oni'oni, ko ia, kuo pau ke 'omai 'a kinautolu ke nau tutu'u 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, ke fakamāu 'i 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau ngaahi ngāué, pea kapau na'e 'uli 'enau ngaahi ngāué kuo pau te nau 'uli; pea kapau 'oku nau 'uli kuo pau leva 'e 'ikai te nau lava 'o nofo 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá; ka ne pehē, kuo pau ke 'uli foki mo e pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá.

34 Kae vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku 'ikai 'uli 'a e pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá; pea 'oku 'ikai lava 'o hū ha me'a 'oku ta'ema'a ki he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá; ko ia, 'oku pau ai ke teuteu 'i ha potu 'o e 'uli ma'á e me'a 'oku 'ulí.

35 Pea 'oku 'i ai ha potu kuo teuteu, 'io, na'a mo e heli fakamanavahē 'a ia kuó u lea ki aí, pea ko e tēvoló na'á ne teuteu iá; ko ia ko e nofo'anga faka'osi 'o e ngaahi laumalié 'o e fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá ke nau nofo 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá, pe ko hono kapusi ki tu'a koe'uhi ko e fakamaau totonu 'a ia kuó u lau ki aí.

36 Ko ia, 'e vahe 'i 'a e kau fai angahalá mei he kau mā'oni'oni, kae 'uma'ā foki mei he 'akau 'o e mo'uí, 'a ia 'oku fungani mahu'inga 'a hono fuá mo fungani lelei lahi hake 'i he ngaahi fua kehe kotoa pē; 'io, pea ko e mahu'inga taha ia 'i he ngaahi me'a-foaki kotoa pē 'a e 'Otuá. Pea na'e pehē 'eku lea ki hoku ngaahi tokouá. Ēmeni.

Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God, to be judged of their works; and if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.

But behold, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy.

And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the preparator of it; wherefore the final state of the souls of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be cast out because of that justice of which I have spoken.

Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the righteous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is most precious and most desirable above all other fruits; yea, and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God. And thus I spake unto my brethren. Amen.

I Nīfai 16

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, 'i he hili 'a e faka'osi 'eku lea ki hoku ngaahi tokouá, vakai, na'a nau pehē mai kiate au: Kuó ke fakahā mai kiate kimautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a 'oku fefeka, 'o lahi hake 'i he me'a 'oku mau malava 'o kātaki'í.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku pehē ange kiate kimautolu na'á ku 'ilo 'i kuó u lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a fefeka ki he fai angahalá 'o fakatatau ki he mo'oní; pea kuo fakatonuhia 'i 'a e mā'oní'oní, mo fakamo'oní 'e hiki hake 'a kimautolu 'i he 'aho faka'osí; ko ia, 'oku lau 'e he halaiá 'oku fefeka 'a e mo'oní, he 'oku hoka 'i ai honau lotó.
- 3 Pea ko 'eni 'e hoku ngaahi tokoua, ka ne mou mā'oní'oní 'o mou fie fanongo ki he mo'oní, 'o tokanga ki ai, koe'uhi ke mou 'a'eva angatonu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, pehē kuo 'ikai te mou lāunga koe'uhi ko e mo'oní, 'o pehē: 'Okú ke lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a fefeka kiate kimautolu.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku na'ina 'i ki hoku ngaahi tokouá, 'aki hoku tūkuingatá, ke nau tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kimautolu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí; ko ia na'á ku ma'u ai 'a e fiefia mo ha ngaahi 'amanaki lahi meiate kimautolu, te nau 'a'eva 'i he ngaahi hala 'o e mā'oní'oní.
- 6 Pea ko 'eni, na'e lea 'aki mo fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'i he lolotonga nofo 'a 'eku tamaí 'i ha fale fehikitaki 'i he tele'a 'a ia na'á ne ui ko Lēmiuelá.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku ma'u ha toko taha 'o e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o 'Isimelí ke hoko ko hoku uaifí; kae 'uma'ā foki na'e ma'u, 'e hoku ngaahi tokouá 'a e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o 'Isimelí ke hoko ko honau ngaahi uaifí; pea na'e ma'u foki 'e Sōlami 'a e 'ofefine lahi 'o 'Isimelí ke hoko ko hono uaifi.
- 8 Pea ko ia kuo fakahoko 'e he'eku tamaí 'a e ngaahi fekau kotoa pē 'a e 'Eikí 'a ia kuo tuku kiate iá. Pea ko e tahá, ko au, Nīfai, kuo tāpuaki 'i au 'e he 'Eikí 'o lahi 'aupito.
- 9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ongo mai 'a e le'o 'o e 'Eikí 'o folofola ki he'eku tamaí 'i he pō, 'o fekau kiate ia ke ne fai 'i he pongipongi haké 'ene fononga ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

I Nephi 16

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of speaking to my brethren, behold they said unto me: Thou hast declared unto us hard things, more than we are able to bear.

And it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; wherefore, the guilty taketh the truth to be hard, for it cutteth them to the very center.

And now my brethren, if ye were righteous and were willing to hearken to the truth, and give heed unto it, that ye might walk uprightly before God, then ye would not murmur because of the truth, and say: Thou speakest hard things against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did exhort my brethren, with all diligence, to keep the commandments of the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord; insomuch that I had joy and great hopes of them, that they would walk in the paths of righteousness.

Now, all these things were said and done as my father dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Lemuel.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also, my brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

And thus my father had fulfilled all the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night, and commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he tu'u hake 'a 'eku tamaí 'i he pongipongí, 'o ne 'alu atu ki he matapā 'o e fale fehikitakí, na'á ne ofo lahi 'aupito 'i he'ene mamata 'i he funga kekelelé ki ha me'a fuopotopotó na'e ngaohi faka'ofa'ofa; pea na'e 'o e palasa lelei ia. Pea na'e 'i lotó 'i he me'a fuopotopotó 'a e hui 'e ua; pea na'e tuhu 'i 'e he taha 'a e hala ke mau fou ai 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau tñaki fakataha 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku totonu ke mau 'ave ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, mo e toenga 'o 'emau ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'a ia kuo foaki mai 'e he 'Eikí ma'amautolu; pea na'a mau to'o 'a e tenga 'i 'akau 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē ke mau 'ave ia ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau 'ave 'a homau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'o mau 'alu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'i he kauvai 'e taha 'o e vaitafe ko Leimaná.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau fononga 'i he 'aho 'e fā, 'o meimei fou fakatonga-tonga-hahaké nai, pea mau toe fokotu'u homau ngaahi fale fehikitakí; pea mau ui 'a e hingoa 'o e potu ko iá ko Seisela.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau to'o 'a 'emau ngaahi kaufaná mo 'emau ngaahi ngahaú, pea mau ō atu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá ke tāmata 'i ha me'a ke kai 'e homau ngaahi fāmilí; pea hili 'emau tāmata 'i ha me'a ke kai 'e homau ngaahi fāmilí, na'a mau toe foki ki homau ngaahi fāmilí 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá ki he potu ko Seiselá. Pea na'a mau toe 'alu atu 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'o fou atu 'i he feitu'u tatau pē, 'o fou atu ai pē 'i he ngaahi potu mahu taha 'o e toafá, 'a ia na'e 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua ofi ki he Tahí Kulokulá.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau fononga 'i ha ngaahi 'aho lahi, 'o mau tāmata 'i ha me'a ke kai 'i he ve'e halá 'aki 'emau ngaahi kaufaná mo 'emau ngaahi ngahaú, mo 'emau ngaahi fo 'i maká mo 'emau ngaahi makataá.

16 Pea na'a mau muimui ki he ngaahi fakahinohino 'a e me'a fuopotopotó, 'a ia na'e tataki 'a kimautolu ki he ngaahi potu mahu ange 'o e feitu'u maomaonganoá.

17 Pea hili 'emau fononga 'i he ngaahi 'aho lahi, na'a mau fokotu'u homau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'o fuofuolosa 'i, koe'uhi ke mau toe lava 'o mālōlō, mo ma'u ha me'akai ma'a homau ngaahi fāmilí.

And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.

And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer.

And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, to the place of Shazer. And we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.

And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.

And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness.

And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, 'i he'eku 'alu atu ke tāmāte'i ha me'a ke kaí, vakai, na'á ku motuhi 'eku kaufaná, 'a ia kuo ngaohi 'aki 'a e ukamea lelei; pea hili 'eku motuhi 'eku kaufaná, vakai, na'e 'ita 'a hoku ngaahi tokouá kiate au koe'uhi ko e mole 'o 'eku kaufaná, he na'e 'ikai te mau ma'u ha me'akai.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau foki atu ta'e-ha-me'akai ki homau ngaahi fāmilí, pea ko e me'a 'i he'enua ongosia lahi mei he'enua fonongá, na'a nau mamahi lahi koe'uhi ko e 'ikai ha'anau me'akai.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata ke fu'u lāunga lahi 'a Leimana mo Lēmiuela mo e ngaahi foha 'o 'Isimelí, koe'uhi ko 'enua ngaahi mamahi mo e ngaahi faingata'a 'ia 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá; kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e kamata 'e he'eku tamai ke lāunga ki he 'Eiki, ko hono 'Otuá; 'io, pea na'a nau fu'u loto-mamahi kotoa pē, 'io, 'o a'u ki he'enua lāunga ki he 'Eikí.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku mamahi fakataha mo hoku ngaahi tokouá koe'uhi ko e mole 'o 'eku kaufaná, mo e mole 'a e mālohi 'o 'enua ngaahi kaufaná, na'e faka'au ke fu'u faingata'a lahi 'aupito, 'io, 'o a'u ki he 'ikai te mau lava 'o ma'u ha me'akai.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'e lahi 'eku lea ki hoku ongo tokouá, koe'uhi ko 'ena toe fakafefeka hona lotó, 'io, 'o a'u ki he lāunga ki he 'Eiki ko hona 'Otuá.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku ngaohi 'aki 'a e 'akau ha kaufana, pea mo ha ngahau 'aki ha va'akau hangatonu; ko ia, na'á ku to'o ha kaufana, mo ha ngahau, mo ha makatā, mo ha ngaahi fo'i maka. Peá u pehē ange ki he'eku tamai: Ko e fē ha potu ke u 'alu ki ai ke ma'u ha me'akai?

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fehu'i ki he 'Eikí, he kuo nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko 'eku ngaahi leá; he na'á ku lea 'aki ha ngaahi me'a lahi kiate kinautolu 'i he ivi 'o hoku laumālié.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ongo mai 'a e le'o 'o e 'Eikí ki he'eku tamai; pea na'e valokí 'i lahi ia koe'uhi ko 'ene lāunga ki he 'Eikí, ko ia na'e fakavaivai 'i ia 'i he fu'u loto-mamahi lahi.

26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ongo mai 'a e le'o 'o e 'Eikí 'o folofola mai kiate ia 'o pehē: Vakai ki he me'a fuopotopotó, pea vakai ki he ngaahi me'a kuo tohi aí.

And it came to pass that as I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my brethren were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food.

And it came to pass that we did return without food to our families, and being much fatigued, because of their journeying, they did suffer much for the want of food.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael did begin to murmur exceedingly, because of their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness; and also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God; yea, and they were all exceedingly sorrowful, even that they did murmur against the Lord.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, having been afflicted with my brethren because of the loss of my bow, and their bows having lost their springs, it began to be exceedingly difficult, yea, insomuch that we could obtain no food.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did speak much unto my brethren, because they had hardened their hearts again, even unto complaining against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow; wherefore, I did arm myself with a bow and an arrow, with a sling and with stones. And I said unto my father: Whither shall I go to obtain food?

And it came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord, for they had humbled themselves because of my words; for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father; and he was truly chastened because of his murmuring against the Lord, insomuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him: Look upon the ball, and behold the things which are written.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he mamata 'a 'eku tamaí ki he ngaahi me'a kuo tohi 'i he me'a fuopotopotó, na'á ne ilifia mo fu'u tetetete lahi 'aupito, kae 'uma'ā foki hoku ongo tokouá mo e ngaahi foha 'o 'Isimelí mo homau ngaahi uaifí.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku vakai ki he ongo hui 'a ia na'e 'i he me'a fuopotopotó, na'á na ngāue 'o fakatatau ki he tui mo e faivelenga mo e talangofua kuo mau fai ki aí.

29 Pea na'e tohi foki ai mo ha tohi nima fo'ou, 'a ia na'e faingofua ke lau, 'a ia na'e fakahā mai ai kiate kimaautolu ha 'ilo ki he ngaahi hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eikí; pea na'e tohi ia, pea liliu mei he taimi ki he taimi 'o fakatatau ki he tui mo e faivelenga na'a mau fai ki aí. Pea ko ia 'oku hā mai 'oku lava 'e he 'Eiki 'o fakahoko 'aki 'a e ngaahi founga íkí 'a e ngaahi fu'u me'a lalahí.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku 'alu hake ki he tumutumumu 'o e mo'ungá, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi fakahinohino 'a ia kuo fakahā mai 'i he me'a fuopotopotó.

31 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku tāmata'e i ha fanga manu kaivao, ko ia na'á ku ma'u ai ha me'akai ma'a homau ngaahi fāmilí.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku foki atu ki homau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'o fua atu 'a e fanga manu kuó u tāmata'e; pea ko 'eni 'i he'enu vakai kuó u ma'u ha me'akaí, hono 'ikai lahi 'enu fiefiá! Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, 'o nau 'oatu 'a e fakafeta 'i kiate ia.

33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau toe fai atu 'a 'emau fonongá, 'o fou atu 'o ofi pē ki he feitu'u ko ia na'a mau tomu'a fou aí; pea hili 'emau fononga 'i ha ngaahi 'aho lahi, na'a mau toe fokotu'u homau ngaahi fale fehikitakí, ke mau nofo ai 'i ha ngaahi 'aho 'e ní'ihí.

34 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e mate 'a 'Isimeli, pea na'e tanu ia 'i he potu na'e ui ko Neihomi.

And it came to pass that when my father beheld the things which were written upon the ball, he did fear and tremble exceedingly, and also my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and our wives.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them.

And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to the faith and diligence which we gave unto it. And thus we see that by small means the Lord can bring about great things.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the mountain, according to the directions which were given upon the ball.

And it came to pass that I did slay wild beasts, inso-much that I did obtain food for our families.

And it came to pass that I did return to our tents, bearing the beasts which I had slain; and now when they beheld that I had obtained food, how great was their joy! And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord, and did give thanks unto him.

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry for the space of a time.

And it came to pass that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place which was called Nahom.

35 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tangi lahi 'aupito 'a e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o 'Isimelí, koe'uhi ko e mate 'a 'enua tamaí, pea koe'uhi ko honau ngaahi faingata 'a 'ia 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá; pea nau lāunga ki he'eku tamaí koe'uhi ko 'ene 'omi 'a kinautolu mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, 'o nau pehē: Kuo sí'i mate 'a 'emaui tamaí; 'io, pea kuo mau fehēhē'aki holo 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, pea kuo mau kātaki 'i 'a e faingata 'a 'ia lahi, mo e fiekaia, mo e fieinua, mo e ongosia; pea hili 'a e ngaahi faingata 'a ni kotoa pē, kuo pau ke mau mate 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'i he fiekaia.

36 Pea na'e pehē 'a 'enua lāunga ki he'eku tamaí, pea kiate au foki; pea nau loto ke nau toe foki atu ki Selūsalema.

37 Pea na'e pehē 'e Leimana kia Lēmiuela kae 'uma'ā foki ki he ngaahi foha 'o 'Isimelí: Vakai, tau tāmata 'i 'a 'emaui tamaí kae 'uma'ā foki homa tokoua ko Nifái, 'a ia kuó ne fokotu'u ia ko e pule mo e faiako kiate kitaua ko hono ongo ta'oketé.

38 Pea ko 'eni, 'okú ne pehē kuo folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kiate ia, pea kuo tauhi ia foki 'e he kau 'āngeló. Kae vakai, 'oku tau 'ilo 'i 'okú ne loi kiate kinautolu; pea 'okú ne fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate kinautolu, pea 'okú ne fai 'a e ngaahi me'á lahi 'i he'ene ngaahi olopotó, koe'uhi ke ne kākaa 'i 'a hotau matá, 'o ne fakakaukau, mahalo, te ne lava nai 'o taki atu 'a kinautolu ki ha feitu'u maomaonganoa ngali kehe; pea hili 'ene taki atu 'a kinautolú, 'okú ne 'amanaki ke fokotu'u ia ko e tu 'i mo e pule kiate kinautolu, koe'uhi ke ne fai kiate kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki hono lotó mo 'ene fa'itelihá. Pea na'e pehē 'a e fakatupu 'e Leimana 'a e 'ita 'i honau lotó.

39 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kau mo kimaua 'a e 'Eikí, 'io, na'e ongo mai 'a e le'o 'o e 'Eikí 'o folofola 'aki ha ngaahi folofola lahi kiate kinautolu, 'o valokí 'i lahi 'a kinautolu; pea 'i he 'osi honau valokí 'i 'e he le'o 'o e 'Eikí na'e ta'ofi ai honau 'itá, 'o fakatomala mei he'enua ngaahi angahalá, ko ia na'e toe tāpuakí 'i ai 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eikí 'aki ha me'akai, 'o 'ikai te mau mate.

And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly, because of the loss of their father, and because of their afflictions in the wilderness; and they did murmur against my father, because he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, saying: Our father is dead; yea, and we have wandered much in the wilderness, and we have suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue; and after all these sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hunger.

And thus they did murmur against my father, and also against me; and they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem.

And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael: Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder brethren.

Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us; and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger.

And it came to pass that the Lord was with us, yea, even the voice of the Lord came and did speak many words unto them, and did chasten them exceedingly; and after they were chastened by the voice of the Lord they did turn away their anger, and did repent of their sins, insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with food, that we did not perish.

I Nīfai 17

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau toe fai atu 'emau fononga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá; pea na'a mau fou 'o meimei fakahahake 'o fai atu mei he taimi ko íá. Pea mau fononga mo fepaki mo e ngaahi faingata'a'ia lahi 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá; pea na'e fā'ele'i 'e homau kakai fefiné 'a e fānau 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 2 Pea na'e pehē fau hono lahi 'o e ngaahi tāpuaki 'a e 'Eikí kiate kimautiló, neongo na'a mau mo'ui mei he kakano'i manu 'ota 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, na'e foaki 'e homau kakai fefiné 'a e hu'a huhu fe'unga ma'a 'enau fānau, 'o nau sino mālohi, 'io, 'o tatau mo e kau tangata; pea kamata ke nau kātaki 'i 'a 'enau fononga pea 'ikai ke toe 'i ai ha ngaahi lāunga.
- 3 Pea ko ia na'a mau 'ilo 'i ko e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá kuo pau ke fakahoko ia. Pea kapau 'e hanga 'e he fānau 'a e tangatá 'o tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá 'okú ne fafanga 'a kinautolu, pea fakamālohi 'a kinautolu, pea 'omi mo e ngaahi founa te nau lava ai 'o fai 'a e me'a kuó ne fekau kiate kinautiló; ko ia, na'á ne 'omi 'a e ngaahi me'a ma'amautilo lolotonga 'emau 'āunofu 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 4 Pea na'a mau 'āunofu 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi, 'io, ko e ta'u 'e valu 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 5 Pea na'a mau a'u mai ki he fonua 'a ia na'a mau ui ko Mahu, koe'uhi ko e lahi 'o hono ngaahi fua 'i 'akaú, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e huhu 'a 'i hone 'o e vaó; pea na'e teuteu 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'e he 'Eikí ke 'oua na'a mau mate. Pea na'a mau mamata ki he tahí, 'a ia na'a mau ui ko 'Ileanetume, 'a ia ko hono 'uhingá, ko e ngaahi vai lahi.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau fokotu'u homau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'i he ve'e matātahi; pea neongo kuo mau kātekina 'a e ngaahi faingata'a'ia lahi mo e fu'u faingata'a, 'io, na'e pehē fau hono lahí 'oku 'ikai ai te mau lava ke tohi kotoa, ka na'a mau fu'u fiefia 'aupito 'i he 'emau a'u ki he matātahí; 'o mau ui 'a e potú ko Mahu, koe'uhi ko e lahi hono ngaahi fua 'i 'akaú.

I Nephi 17

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, yea, even like unto the men; and they began to bear their journeyings without murmurings.

And thus we see that the commandments of God must be fulfilled. And if it so be that the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, and strengthen them, and provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he has commanded them; wherefore, he did provide means for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness.

And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

And it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the seashore; and notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions and much difficulty, yea, even so much that we cannot write them all, we were exceedingly rejoiced when we came to the seashore; and we called the place Bountiful, because of its much fruit.

7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, 'i he hili 'eku 'i he fonua ko Mahú 'i he ngaahi 'aho lahi, na'e ongo mai 'a e le' o 'o e 'Eikí kiate au, 'o pehē: Tu' u hake, peá ke 'alu atu ki he mo'ungá. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku tu' u hake 'o 'alu hake ki he mo'ungá, 'o tangi ki he 'Eikí.

8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kiate au, 'o pehē: Ke ke fo' u ha vaka 'o fakatatau ki he sīpinga te u fakahā kiate koé, koé' uhi ke u lava 'o a' utaki 'a ho kakaí ki he kauvai 'e taha 'o e ngaahi vai ní.

9 Pea na'á ku pehē ange: 'E 'Eiki, te u 'alu ki fē ke ma' u mei ai ha maka ukamea ke haka, koé' uhi ke u lava 'o ngaohi 'aki ha ngaahi me' a ngāue ke fo' u 'aki 'a e vaká, 'o fakatatau ki he sīpinga kuó ke fakahā kiate aú?

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakahā mai 'e he 'Eikí kiate au 'a e potu ke u 'alu ki ai 'o ma' u mei ai ha maka ukamea ke u ngaohi 'aki ha ngaahi me' a ngāué.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku ngaohi 'aki ha ngaahi kili' i manu ha me' a tapili ke tapilipili 'aki 'a e afí; pea hili 'eku ngaohi ha me' a tapili ke u ma' u ha me' a ke tapilipili 'aki 'a e afi, na'á ku toloafi 'aki ha ongo maka ke u tafu ha afi.

12 He kuo 'ikai ke tuku 'e he 'Eiki ke mau tutu 'o loko lahi ha afi lolotonga 'emaufononga 'i he feitu' u maomaonganoá; he na'á ne folofola: Te u ngaohi ke melie 'a ho' omou me' akaí koé' uhi ke 'oua na' a mou haka pe tunu ia;

13 Pea te u hoko foki ko ho' omou maama 'i he feitu' u maomaonganoá; pea te u tofa 'a e hala ki mu' a 'iate kimoutolu, 'o kapau te mou tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú; ko ia, kapau te mou tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú, 'e tataki atu 'a kimoutolu ki he fonua 'o e tala' ofá; pea te mou 'ilo nai ko au 'oku tataki 'a kimoutolú.

14 'Io, pea na'e folofola foki 'e he 'Eikí: Hili ho' omou a' u ki he fonua 'o e tala' ofá, te mou 'ilo ko au, ko e 'Eikí, ko e 'Otua au; pea ko au ko e 'Eikí, kuó u fakahaofi 'a kimoutolu mei he faka' auhá; 'io, na'á ku 'omi 'a kimoutolu mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá.

15 Ko ia, ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku feinga ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí, peá u na' ina' i ki hoku ongo tokouá ke na tui mateaki mo faivelenga.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku ngaohi ha me' a ngāue 'aki 'a e ukamea 'a ia na'á ku haka mei he maká.

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And it came to pass that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.

And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to molten, that I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?

And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.

For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become sweet, that ye cook it not;

And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that ye shall keep my commandments; wherefore, inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be led towards the promised land; and ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led.

Yea, and the Lord said also that: After ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did strive to keep the commandments of the Lord, and I did exhort my brethren to faithfulness and diligence.

And it came to pass that I did make tools of the ore which I did molten out of the rock.

17 Pea 'i he mamata 'a hoku ongo tokouá 'oku ou teuteu ke fô'u ha vaká, na'e kamata ke na lāunga ko'e uhi ko au, 'o pehē: Ko e tangata vale 'a hota tokouá, he 'okú ne pehē te ne lava 'o fô'u ha vaka; 'io, pea 'okú ne pehē foki te ne lava 'o 'alu ki he kauvai 'e taha 'o e ngaahi fu'u vai lahi ko 'ení.

18 Pea na'e pehē 'a e anga 'o e lāunga 'a hoku ongo tokouá ko'e uhi ko au, 'o na faka'amu ke 'oua na'á na ngāue, he na'e 'ikai te na tui te u lava 'o fô'u ha vaka; pea na'e 'ikai foki te na fie tui na'e fakahinohino 'i au 'e he 'Eikí.

19 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku fu'u loto-mamahi 'aupito ko'e uhi ko e fefeka 'a hona lotó; pea ko 'eni 'i he'ena sio 'oku ou kamata ke loto-mamahí, na'á na fiefia 'i hona lotó, pea ko ia na'á na manuki 'i au, 'o pehē: Na'á ma 'ilo 'i 'e 'ikai te ke lava 'o fô'u ha vaka, he na'á ma 'ilo 'okú ke masiva 'i he poto; ko ia, 'oku 'ikai te ke lava ha fu'u ngāue lahi pehē.

20 Pea 'okú ke tatau mo 'etau tamaí, 'o kākaa 'i 'e he ngaahi fakakaukau ngali vale 'a hono lotó; 'io, kuó ne taki 'a kitautolu mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, pea kuo tau 'auhē 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi ko 'ení; pea kuo ngāue mālohi 'a hotau kakai fefinē, lolotonga 'enau feitamá; pea kuo nau fanau 'i 'a e fānau 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá mo kātaki 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē, tuku kehe pē 'a e maté; ka na'e mei lelei ange ke nau mate 'oku te'eki ai ke nau ha'u mei Selūsalemá 'i he'enu kātaki 'i 'a e ngaahi faingata 'a ko 'ení.

21 Vakai, ko e ngaahi ta'u lahi ni kuo tau mamahi 'ia 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'a ia ko e taimi na'a tau mei ma'u ai ha fiefia 'i he'etau ngaahi koloá mo e fonua 'o hotau tofi'á; 'io, pea na'a tau mei fiefia ai.

22 Pea 'oku tau 'ilo ko e kakai 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua ko Selūsalemá ko e kakai mā'oni'oni; he na'a nau tauhi 'a e ngaahi fono mo e ngaahi finangalo 'o e 'Eikí, mo e kotoa 'o 'ene ngaahi fekaú 'o fakatatau ki he fono 'a Mōsesé; ko ia, 'oku tau 'ilo ko e kakai mā'oni'oni 'a kinautolu; pea kuo fakamāu 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he'etau tamaí, pea kuo tataki atu 'a kitautolú ko'e uhi he na'a tau tokanga ki he'ene ngaahi leá; 'io, pea 'oku tatau mo ia 'a hota tokouá. Pea na'e pehē 'a e anga 'o e lea na'e lāunga mo hanu 'aki 'e hoku ongo tokouá 'o kau kiate kimauá.

And when my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to murmur against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters.

And thus my brethren did complain against me, and were desirous that they might not labor, for they did not believe that I could build a ship; neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.

And now it came to pass that I, Nephi, was exceedingly sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts; and now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts, insomuch that they did rejoice over me, saying: We knew that ye could not construct a ship, for we knew that ye were lacking in judgment; wherefore, thou canst not accomplish so great a work.

And thou art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; yea, he hath led us out of the land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions.

Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; yea, and we might have been happy.

And we know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people; for they kept the statutes and judgments of the Lord, and all his commandments, according to the law of Moses; wherefore, we know that they are a righteous people; and our father hath judged them, and hath led us away because we would hearken unto his words; yea, and our brother is like unto him. And after this manner of language did my brethren murmur and complain against us.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nifai, na'á ku lea kiate kinaua 'o pehē ange: 'Okú mo tui koā kuo tataki atu nai 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí, 'a ia ko e fānau 'a 'Isilelí, mei he nima 'o e kakai 'Isipité 'o kapau na'e 'ikai te nau tokanga ki he ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Eikí?

24 'Io, 'okú mo mahalo koā na'e tataki atu nai 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá 'o kapau na'e 'ikai fekau 'e he 'Eikí kia Mōsese ke ne tataki atu 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá?

25 Ko 'eni 'okú mo 'ilo na'e nofo pōpula 'a e fānau 'a 'Isilelí; pea 'okú mo 'ilo na'e hilifaki kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi ngāue mamafa, 'a ia na'e faingata 'a hono fuesiá; ko ia, 'okú mo 'ilo 'i kuo pau pē na'e lelei kiate kinautolu hono 'omi 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá.

26 Pea 'okú mo 'ilo 'i na'e fekau 'e he 'Eikí kia Mōsese ke ne fai 'a e fu 'u ngāue ko iá; pea 'okú mo 'ilo 'i na'e vahevahe 'i 'a e vai 'o e Tahi Kulokula ki hē mo ē 'i he'ene leá, pea nau fononga atu 'i he kelekele mōmoa.

27 Ka 'okú mo 'ilo na'e melema 'a e kau 'Isipité 'i he Tahi Kulokulá, 'a ia ko e kau tau 'a Feló.

28 Pea 'okú mo 'ilo 'i foki na'e fafanga 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e mana 'i he feitu 'u maomaongoá.

29 'Io, pea 'okú mo 'ilo 'i foki na'e hanga 'e Mōsese, 'i he'ene lea 'o fakatatau ki he mālohi 'o e 'Otuá 'a ia na'e 'iate iá, 'o taa 'i 'a e maká, pea na'e ha'u mei ai 'a e vai ke inu mei ai 'a e fānau 'a 'Isilelí 'o fiu.

30 Pea neongo na'e taki atu 'a kinautolu, ka na'e mu'omu 'a 'iate kinautolu 'a e 'Eiki, ko honau 'Otuá, ko honau Huhu'í, 'o tataki 'a kinautolu 'i he 'ahó mo foaki 'a e maama kiate kinautolu 'i he po'ulí, mo fai 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē ma'anautolu 'a ia na'e 'aonga ke ma'u 'e he tangatá, ka na'a nau fakafefeka pē honau lotó mo fakakuihi honau 'atamaí, mo lea kovi kia Mōsese pea ki he 'Otuá mo 'oni mo mo'uí.

31 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne faka'auha 'a kinautolu 'o hangē ko 'ene folofolá; pea na'á ne tataki 'a kinautolu 'o hangē ko 'ene folofolá; pea na'á ne fai 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē ma'anautolu 'o hangē ko 'ene folofolá; pea na'e 'ikai ha me'a 'e fai kā 'i he'ene folofolá pē.

32 Pea hili 'enau 'a'u ki he kauvai 'e taha 'o e vaitafe ko Soataní, na'á ne ngaohi 'a kinautolu ke nau mālohi ke nau teke 'i atu 'a e fānau 'o e fonuá; 'io, 'o a'u ki honau fakamovetevete 'i atu ke faka'auhá.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake unto them, saying: Do ye believe that our fathers, who were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?

Yea, do ye suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead them out of bondage?

Now ye know that the children of Israel were in bondage; and ye know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne; wherefore, ye know that it must needs be a good thing for them, that they should be brought out of bondage.

Now ye know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work; and ye know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither, and they passed through on dry ground.

But ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.

And ye also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness.

Yea, and ye also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.

And notwithstanding they being led, the Lord their God, their Redeemer, going before them, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night, and doing all things for them which were expedient for man to receive, they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.

And it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not any thing done save it were by his word.

And after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, yea, unto the scattering them to destruction.

33 Pea ko 'eni, 'okú mo mahalo koā ko e fānau 'o e fonua ko iá, 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua 'o e tala'ofá, 'a ia na'e teke'i ki tu'a 'e he'etau ngaahi tamaí, 'okú mo mahalo koā na'a nau mā'oni'oni? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoua, 'Ikai.

34 'Okú mo mahalo koā na'e mei mahu'inga ange nai 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí 'iate kinautolu 'o kapau na'a nau mā'oni'oni? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoua, 'Ikai.

35 Vakai, 'oku 'ofa tatau 'a e 'Eikí ki he kakai fulipē; kae 'ilonga ia 'oku mā'oni'oni 'oku 'ofeina ia 'e he 'Otuá. Kae vakai, kuo lí'aki 'e he kakai ko 'ení 'a e folofola kotoa pē 'a e 'Otuá, pea kuo kakato 'enau angahalá; pea na'e 'iate kinautolu 'a hono kotoa 'o e houhau 'o e 'Otuá; pea na'e fakamala'ia'i 'a e fonuá 'e he 'Eikí kiate kinautolu, pea ne tāpuaki'i ia ki he'etau ngaahi tamaí; 'io, na'á ne fakamala'ia'i ia kiate kinautolu koe'uhi ke nau 'auha; ka na'á ne tāpuaki'i ia ki he'etau ngaahi tamaí ke nau mā'u 'a e mālohi ke 'oua na'a nau 'auha.

36 Vakai, kuo fakatupu 'e he 'Eikí 'a e māmani koe'uhi ke nofo'i ia; pea kuó ne fakatupu 'a 'ene fānau ke nau mā'u ia.

37 Pea 'okú ne fakatupu ha pule'anga 'oku mā'oni'oni, pea ne faka'auha 'a e ngaahi pule'anga 'o e kau fai angahalá.

38 Pea 'okú ne tataki atu 'a e kau mā'oni'oni ki he ngaahi fonua mahu'inga, ka 'okú ne faka'auha 'a e kau fai angahalá, mo fakamala'ia'i 'a e fonuá koe'uhi ko kinautolu.

39 'Okú ne pule 'i 'olunga 'i he ngaahi langí, he ko hono 'afio'angá ia, pea ko e māmaní 'a hono tu'unga to'ukupu kelekelé.

40 Pea 'okú ne 'ofa 'iate kinautolu 'oku nau fie tali ia ke hoko ko honau 'Otuá. Vakai, na'á ne 'ofa 'i he'etau ngaahi tamaí, 'o ne fuakava mo kinautolu, 'io, 'a 'Ēpalahame, 'Aisake mo Sēkope; pea na'á ne manatu'i 'a e ngaahi fuakava kuó ne faí; ko ia, na'á ne 'omi 'a kinautolu mei he fonua ko 'Isipité.

And now, do ye suppose that the children of this land, who were in the land of promise, who were driven out by our fathers, do ye suppose that they were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Do ye suppose that our fathers would have been more choice than they if they had been righteous? I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. But behold, this people had rejected every word of God, and they were ripe in iniquity; and the fulness of the wrath of God was upon them; and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our fathers; yea, he did curse it against them unto their destruction, and he did bless it unto our fathers unto their obtaining power over it.

Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.

And he raiseth up a righteous nation, and destroyeth the nations of the wicked.

And he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes.

He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool.

And he loveth those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.

41 Pea na 'á ne tautea 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he feitu 'u maomaonganoá 'aki 'ene me 'a kinikinisi; he na 'a nau fakafefeka honau lotó 'o hangē kuó mo faí; pea na 'e fakatonutonu 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eikí koe 'uhi ko 'enau angahalá. Na 'á ne fekau atu 'a e fanga ngata vela 'oku puna kiate kinautolu; pea hili hono huhu kinautolú, na 'á ne teuteu 'a e founga ke lava ai 'o fakamo 'ui 'a kinautolu; pea ko e ngāue pē na 'e 'anautolu ke faí ko e mamata pē; pea ko e me 'a 'i hono faingofua 'o e foungá, pe ko hono faingofuá, na 'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi na 'e mate ai.

42 Pea na 'a nau fakafefeka honau lotó mei he taimi ki he taimi, pea nau angatu 'u kia Mōsesé, kae 'uma 'ā foki ki he 'Otuá; ka neongo iá, 'okú mo 'ilo na 'e tataki atu 'a kinautolu 'i hono māfima'fi ta 'e-hano-tataú ki he fonua 'o e tala 'ofá.

43 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he hili 'a e ngaahi me 'á ni kotoa pē, kuo hokosia 'a e taimi, 'a ia kuo nau hoko ai 'o fai angahala, 'io, 'o meimei a 'u ki hono kakató; pea hei 'ilo na 'a kuo ofi he 'ahó ni 'a honau faka 'auhá; he 'oku ou 'ilo kuo pau ke hokosia 'a e 'aho 'e faka 'auha ai 'a kinautolu, tuku kehe ha tokosi 'i pē, 'a ia 'e tataki atu ki he pōpulá.

44 Ko ia, na 'e fekau 'e he 'Eikí ki he 'eku tamai ke ne 'alu ki he toafá; pea na 'e feinga foki 'e he kau Siú ke to 'o 'ene mo 'uí; 'io, pea kuó mo feinga foki mo kimoua ke to 'o 'ene mo 'uí; ko ia, ko e ongo fakapō 'a kimoua 'i homo lotó, pea 'okú mo hangē pē ko kinautolú.

45 'Okú mo vave ki he fai angahalá, kae tuai ki he manatu 'i 'o e 'Eiki ko homo 'Otuá. Kuó mo mamata ki ha 'āngelo, pea na 'e lea ia kiate kimoua; 'io, kuó mo fanongo ki hono le 'ó mei he taimi ki he taimi; pea kuó ne lea kiate kimoua 'i he kihí 'i le 'o-si 'í, ka na 'e 'ikai te mo lava 'o ongo 'i, 'o 'ikai ai te mo ongo 'i 'a 'ene ngaahi leá; ko ia, kuó ne lea kiate kimoua 'o hangē ko e 'u 'ulu 'o e maná, 'a ia na 'e ngaohi ke ngalulululu ai 'a e fonuá 'o hangē ka mafahi ua iá.

46 Pea 'okú mo 'ilo foki 'okú ne mafai ke pule ke mole atu 'a e māmaní 'i he mālohi 'o 'ene folofola māfima'fi; 'io, pea 'okú mo 'ilo 'okú ne mafai ke fakatokalelei 'a e ngaahi potu tokakoví, pea fakamafahifahi 'a e ngaahi potu tokalelei 'i he 'ene folofolá. 'Oiauē, kapau ko ia, ko e hā nai 'oku fu 'u fefeka pehē fau ai 'a homo lotó?

And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; for they hardened their hearts, even as ye have; and the Lord straitened them because of their iniquity. He sent fiery flying serpents among them; and after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed; and the labor which they had to perform was to look; and because of the simpleness of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished.

And they did harden their hearts from time to time, and they did revile against Moses, and also against God; nevertheless, ye know that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise.

And now, after all these things, the time has come that they have become wicked, yea, nearly unto ripeness; and I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed; for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed, save a few only, who shall be led away into captivity.

Wherefore, the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; yea, and ye also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, ye are murderers in your hearts and ye are like unto them.

Ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God. Ye have seen an angel, and he spake unto you; yea, ye have heard his voice from time to time; and he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice, but ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words; wherefore, he has spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder.

And ye also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; yea, and ye know that by his word he can cause the rough places to be made smooth, and smooth places shall be broken up. O, then, why is it, that ye can be so hard in your hearts?

47 Vakai, kuo makafokafo hoku laumālié 'i he mamahi lahi koe'uhi ko kimoua, pea 'oku mamahi hoku lotó; 'oku ou manavahē na 'a kapusi atu 'a kimoua ke ta'engata. Vakai, 'oku ou fonu 'i he Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá, pea 'oku pehē fau hono lahi 'oku 'ikai ai ha ivi 'i hoku sinó.

48 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'eku lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'á na 'ita kiate au, peá na holi ke lī au ki he loto moaná; pea 'i he 'ena 'unu'unu mai ke puke au 'aki hona nimá, na'á ku lea atu kiate kinaua 'o pehē: 'I he huafa 'o e 'Otua Māfimafí 'oku ou fekau kiate kimoua, ke 'oua na'á mo ala kiate au, he 'oku ou fonu 'i he mālohi 'o e 'Otuá, 'o a'u ki he vela 'a hoku kakanó; pea 'ilonga ia 'e hili hono nimá kiate aú te ne mae 'o hangē ko ha musie mōmoa; pea te ne hangē ko e me'a noa pē ki he māfimafí 'o e 'Otuá, he 'e taa'ia 'e he 'Otuá.

49 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku tala ange kiate kinaua ke 'oua na'á na toe lāunga ki he'ena tamaí; pea 'oua foki te na fakafisi ke ngāue mo au, he kuo fekau kiate au 'e he 'Otuá ke u fo'u ha vaka.

50 Pea na'á ku pehē ange kiate kinaua: Kapau na'e fekau kiate au 'e he 'Otuá ke u fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē, pehē te u lava 'o fai ia. Ka 'o ka ne ka fekau kiate au ke u pehē ki he vai ni, ke ke hoko ko e kelekele, 'e hoko ia ko e kelekele; pea kapau te u lea 'aki ia, 'e fai ia.

51 Pea ko 'eni, kapau 'oku 'i he 'Eikí 'a e mālohi lahi pehē, pea kuó ne fai ha ngaahi mana lahi pehē 'i he lotolotonga 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá, ko e hā nai 'oku 'ikai ai te ne fakahinohino 'i au ke u fo'u ha vaká?

52 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi ki hoku ongo tokouá, ko ia na'á na puputu' ai, 'o 'ikai te na lava ke fakakikihi mo au; 'o 'ikai foki te na loto-to'a ke hili hona nimá kiate au pe ala 'aki hona louhi 'i nimá kiate au, 'io, 'i ha ngaahi 'aho lahi. Pea na'e lahi pehē fau 'a e ivi 'o e Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá, na'e 'ikai ai te na loto-to'a ke fai 'eni telia na'á na mae 'i hoku 'aó; pea kuo pehē 'ene ue 'i hake 'a kinauá.

53 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kiate au: Toe mafao atu ho nimá ki ho ongo tokouá, pea 'e 'ikai te na mae 'i ho 'aó, ka te u lulu 'i 'a kinaua, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí, pea te u fai 'eni, koe'uhi ke na 'ilo 'i au ko e 'Eiki, ko hona 'Otuá.

Behold, my soul is rent with anguish because of you, and my heart is pained; I fear lest ye shall be cast off forever. Behold, I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame has no strength.

And now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them, saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that ye touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed; and he shall be as naught before the power of God, for God shall smite him.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto them that they should murmur no more against their father; neither should they withhold their labor from me, for God had commanded me that I should build a ship.

And I said unto them: If God had commanded me to do all things I could do them. If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth; and if I should say it, it would be done.

And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship?

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, insomuch that they were confounded and could not contend against me; neither durst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers, even for the space of many days. Now they durst not do this lest they should wither before me, so powerful was the Spirit of God; and thus it had wrought upon them.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God.

54 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mafao atu hoku nimá ki hoku ongo tokouá, pea na'e 'ikai te na mae 'i hoku 'aó; ka na'e lulu 'i 'a kinaua 'e he 'Eikí, 'io, 'o hangē ko e folofola kuó ne folofola'akí.

55 Pea ko 'eni, na'á na pehē: 'Okú ma 'ilo 'i fakapapau 'oku 'iate koe 'a e 'Eikí, he 'okú ma 'ilo 'i ko e mālohi ia 'o e 'Eikí 'a ia kuo lulu 'i 'a kimauá. Pea na'á na tōmape'e hifo 'i mu'a 'iate au, 'o na mei hū kiate au, ka na'e 'ikai te u fie tuku 'a kinaua, peá u pehē ange: Ko au ko homo tokoua, 'io, ko homo tehiná; ko ia, hū ki he 'Eikí ko homo 'Otuá, pea faka'apa'apa ki ho'omo tamaí mo ho'omo fa'é koe'uhi ke fuoloa homo ngaahi 'ahó 'i he fonua, 'a ia 'e foaki 'e he 'Eiki ko homo 'Otuá kiate kimouá.

And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken.

And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, for we know that it is the power of the Lord that has shaken us. And they fell down before me, and were about to worship me, but I would not suffer them, saying: I am thy brother, yea, even thy younger brother; wherefore, worship the Lord thy God, and honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee.

I Nīfai 18

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á na hū ki he 'Eikí, 'o na ō atu mo au; pea na'a mau ngaohi 'a e ngaahi 'akau 'i ha founga fakatufunga faka'ofó'ofa. Pea na'e fakahā mai 'e he 'Eikí kiate au mei he taimi ki he taimi 'a e founga ke u ngaohi 'aki 'a e ngaahi 'akau 'o e vaká.
- 2 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Nīfai, na'e 'ikai te u ngaohi 'a e ngaahi 'akau 'o hangē ko e founga kuo poto ai 'a e tangatá; pea 'ikai foki te u fo'u 'a e vaka 'o hangē ko e founga 'a e tangatá; ka na'á ku ngaohi ia 'o fakatatau ki he founga kuo fakahā kiate au 'e he 'Eikí; ko ia, na'e 'ikai fakatatau ia mo e founga 'a e tangatá.
- 3 Pea ko au Nīfai, na'á ku 'alu tu' o lahi ki he mo'unga, pea u lotu tu' o lahi ki he 'Eiki; ko ia, na'e fakahā mai 'e he 'Eikí kiate au 'a e ngaahi me'a lalahi.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'eku faka'osi 'a e vaká, 'o fakatatau ki he folofola 'a e 'Eikí, na'e vakai 'e hoku ongo tokouá kuo lelei ia, pea kuo matu'aki faka'ofó'ofa 'aupito 'a hono fa'ú; ko ia, na'á na toe fakavaivai 'i 'a kinaua 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e folofola mai 'a e le' o 'o e 'Eikí ki he 'eku tamaí, ke mau tu'u hake, pea ō hifo ki he lotu vaká.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he pongipongi haké, hili 'emau teuteu 'a e me'a kotoa pē, 'a e ngaahi fua 'i 'akau lahi mo e kakano 'i manu mei he feitu'u maomaonganoá, pea mo e hu'a hone lahi 'aupito mo e ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau 'o fakatatau ki he me'a kuo fekau kiate kimautilu 'e he 'Eikí, pea na'a mau ō hifo ki he lotu vaká mo 'emau 'utá kátoa mo 'emau ngaahi tenga 'i 'akau pea mo e me'a kotoa pē kuo mau 'omi mo kimautilú, ko e tokotaha taki taha 'o fakatatau ki hono ta'u; ko ia na'a mau ō hifo kotoa pē ki lotu vaka mo homau ngaahi uaifí mo 'emau fānaú.
- 7 Pea ko 'eni, kuo fanau 'i 'e he 'eku tamaí ha foha 'e toko ua 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá; na'e ui 'a e lahi ko Sēkope, pea ko e sí 'i ko Siosefa.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'emau ō hifo kotoa pē ki he lotu vaká, pea kuo mau 'ave mo kimautilu 'a 'emau ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau mo e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuo fekau kiate kimautilú, na'a mau tuku folau atu ki tahi pea na'e teketeke 'i atu 'a kimautilu 'e he matangi 'o halaga atu ki he fonua 'o e tala'ofá.

I Nephi 18

And it came to pass that they did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men, neither did I build the ship after the manner of men; but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me; wherefore, it was not after the manner of men.

And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

And it came to pass that after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did go down into the ship, with all our loading and our seeds, and whatsoever thing we had brought with us, every one according to his age; wherefore, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph.

And it came to pass after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded us, we did put forth into the sea and were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land.

9 Pea hili homau teketeke 'i atu 'e he matangi 'i he ngaahi 'aho lahi, vakai, na'e kamata ke fakafiefia 'a hoku ngaahi tokoua mo e ngaahi foha 'o 'Isimeli kae 'uma 'a foki honau ngaahi uaifí, pea ko ia na'a nau kamata ke hulohula, mo hiva, mo lea fu'u ta'e-faka'apa'apa 'aupito, 'io, na'e ngalo 'iate kinautolu 'a e mālohi 'a ia kuo 'omi 'a kinautolu ki aí; 'io, na'a nau hikisia 'i he fu'u anga ta'e-faka'apa'apa lahi.

10 Pea ko au, Nīfai, na'e kamata ke u fu'u ilifia lahi telia na'a houhau 'a e 'Eiki kiate kinautolu, pea te 'ia 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko 'emau angahalá, pea 'e folo hifo ai 'a kinautolu 'i he ngaahi loloto 'o e tahí, ko ia, ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku kamata ke lea 'o fu'u fakamātoato 'aupito kiate kinautolu; kae vakai na'a nau 'ita kiate au, 'o pehē: 'Oku 'ikai te mau loto ke hoko homa tehina ko e pule kiate kinautolu.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e puke au 'e Leimana mo Lēmiuela 'o na ha'i au 'aki 'a e ngaahi afo, pea na'á na fu'u ngaohikovi 'i 'aupito au; ka neongo iá, na'e tuku pē 'e he 'Eiki ke fai ia koe'uhi ke ne fakahā atu ai 'a hono māfimaí, koe'uhi ke fakahoko 'a 'ene folofola kuó ne folofola 'aki 'o kau ki he kau fai angahalá.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'ena ha'i au 'o 'ikai ai te u toe lava 'o ngāué, ko e kāpasa, 'a ia kuo teuteu 'e he 'Eiki, na'e tuku 'ene ngāué.

13 Ko ia, na'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo pe te nau faka'uli ki fē 'a e vaká, he na'e tō 'a e fu'u matangi, 'io, 'a e fu'u afā lahi mo fakamanavahē; pea na'e teketeke 'i fakaholomui 'a kinautolu 'i he funga 'o e ngaahi vai 'i ha 'aho 'e tolu; pea na'e kamata ke nau fu'u ilifia 'aupito telia na'a nau melema 'i he tahí; ka neongo iá, na'e 'ikai te nau tukuange au.

14 Pea 'i he 'aho fā 'o hono teketeke 'i fakaholomui 'a kinautolú, na'e faka'au ke fu'u mālohi ange 'aupito 'a e afaá.

And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, yea, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; yea, they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness.

And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but behold they were angry with me, saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel did take me and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked.

And it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work.

Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, yea, a great and terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

And on the fourth day, which we had been driven back, the tempest began to be exceedingly sore.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'amanaki ke folo hifo 'a kimautilu 'i he ngaahi loloto 'o e tahí. Pea hili hono teketeke 'i fakaholomui 'a kimautilu 'i he ngaahi vai 'i he 'aho 'e fā, na'e kamata ke mahino ki hoku ongo tokouá kuo 'iate kinaua 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a e 'Otuá, pea kuo pau ke na mate 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te na fakatomala mei he'ena ngaahi angahalá; ko ia na'á na ha'u ai kiate au, 'o vete ange 'a e ngaahi ha'i 'a ia na'e 'i hoku ongo kau'inimá, pea vakai kuo fufula 'o fu'u lahi hoku ongo nimá; pea kuo fufula 'o fu'u lahi foki mo hoku ongo tunga'iva'é, pea na'e mamahi lahi 'aupito.

16 Ka neongo iá, na'á ku sio pē ki hoku 'Otuá, pea na'á ku fakafeta 'i kiate ia 'i he 'ahó kotoa; pea na'e 'ikai te u lāunga ki he 'Eiki koe'uhi ko hoku ngaahi faingata'a'ia.

17 Ko 'eni kuo lea 'aki 'e he'eku tamai, ko Līhai, 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi kiate kinaua, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e ngaahi foha 'o 'Isimelí; kae vakai, na'a nau fai ha ngaahi lea fakamanamana fakamanavahē lahi ki ha taha pē te ne taukapo 'i au; pea ko e me'a 'i he fu'u motu'a 'a 'eku ongo mātu'á, pea ko e me'a 'i he'ena kātaki 'i 'a e mamahi lahi koe'uhi ko 'ena fānaú, ko ia na'e 'ohifo ai 'a kinaua, 'io, ki hona mohengá kuó na puke.

18 Pea koe'uhi ko 'ena mamahi mo e loto-mamahi lahi, pea mo e angahala 'a hoku ongo tokouá, na'e fakaofiofi ai ke 'ave atu 'a kinaua mei he mo'uí ni ke na fetaulaki mo hona 'Otuá; 'io, na'e ofi ke 'ohifo hona lou'ulu hinaá ke tokoto 'i lalo 'i he efú; 'io, na'e ofi ke lí 'a kinaua 'i he loto-mamahí ki ha tanu'anga 'i he tahí.

19 Pea ko Sēkope pea mo Siosefa foki, na'á na kei si'i, he na'e 'aonga ke na ma'u 'a e me'akai lahi, ko ia na'á na loto-mamahi ko e tupu mei he ngaahi faingata'a'ia 'a 'ena fa'éé; kae 'uma'ā foki hoku uafí mo hono ngaahi lo'imatá mo e ngaahi lotú, pea mo 'eku fānaú foki, ka na'e 'ikai te nau fakamolū 'a e loto 'o hoku ongo tokouá ke na tukuange au.

20 Pea na'e 'ikai ha me'a 'e lava ke fakamolū hona lotó, ka ko e māfimafi pē 'o e 'Otuá, 'a ia na'e hangē ka fakahoko ai kiate kinaua 'a e faka'auhá; ko ia, 'i he'ena vakai 'oku ofi ke folo hifo 'a kinaua 'i he ngaahi loloto 'o e tahí, na'á na fakatomala ai mei he me'a kuó na faí; ko ia na'á na vete ange ai au.

And it came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed the bands which were upon my wrists, and behold they had swollen exceedingly; and also mine ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

Nevertheless, I did look unto my God, and I did praise him all the day long; and I did not murmur against the Lord because of mine afflictions.

Now my father, Lehi, had said many things unto them, and also unto the sons of Ishmael; but, behold, they did breathe out much threatenings against anyone that should speak for me; and my parents being stricken in years, and having suffered much grief because of their children, they were brought down, yea, even upon their sick-beds.

Because of their grief and much sorrow, and the iniquity of my brethren, they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God; yea, their grey hairs were about to be brought down to lie low in the dust; yea, even they were near to be cast with sorrow into a watery grave.

And Jacob and Joseph also, being young, having need of much nourishment, were grieved because of the afflictions of their mother; and also my wife with her tears and prayers, and also my children, did not soften the hearts of my brethren that they would loose me.

And there was nothing save it were the power of God, which threatened them with destruction, could soften their hearts; wherefore, when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea they repented of the thing which they had done, inso-much that they loosed me.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'ena vete ange aú, vakai na'á ku to' o hake 'a e kāpasá, pea na'e tuhu ia ki he feitu' u na'á ku lotu ki aí. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku lotu ki he 'Eikí; pea hili 'eku lotú, na'e malū 'a e matangi, pea na'e 'osi 'a e afaá, pea na'e tofu 'aupito.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku faka'uli 'a e vaká, ke mau toe folau atu ki he fonua 'o e tala'ofá.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'emau folau 'i he ngaahi 'aho lahi, na'a mau tau ki he fonua 'o e tala'ofá; pea mau hifo atu ki 'uta, 'o fokotu' u homau ngaahi fale fehikitakí; pea na'a mau ui ia ko e fonua 'o e tala'ofá.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau kamata ke ngoue' i 'a e kelekelé, 'o mau kamata ke tō 'a e ngaahi tenga' i 'akau; 'io, na'a mau tō 'emau tenga' i 'akau kotoa pē ki he kelekelé, 'a ia kuo mau 'omi mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau tupu lahi 'aupito; ko ia na'e tāpuekina 'a kimautolu 'o fu' u lahi 'aupito.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau 'ilo' i 'i he funga 'o e fonua 'o e tala'ofá, lolotonga 'emau fononga 'i he feitu' u maomaonganoá, na'e 'i ai 'a e fanga manu 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'i he ngaahi vao 'akaú, 'a e fanga pulu fēfiné mo e fanga pulu tangata fakatou'osi, mo e 'así, mo e hōsí, mo e kosí, mo e kosi kaivaó, pea mo e fanga manu kaivao 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē, 'a ia 'oku 'i ai ke faka'aonga' i 'e he tangatá. Pea na'a mau 'ilo' i 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e maka ukamea, 'a e koulá mo e silivá fakatou'osi, pea mo e kopá.

And it came to pass after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.

And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance.

And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. And we did find all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper.

I Nīfai 19

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau kiate au 'e he 'Eikí, ko ia na'á ku ngaohi ai ha ngaahi peletí 'aki ha maka ukamea ke u lava 'o tongitongi ki ai 'a e lekooti 'o hoku kakaí. Pea na'á ku tongitongi ki he ngaahi peleti 'a ia na'á ku ngaohí 'a e lekooti 'a 'eku tamaí, kae 'uma'ā mo 'emau ngaahi fononga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá mo e ngaahi kikite 'a 'eku tamaí; kae 'uma'ā foki ha'aku ngaahi kikite lahi kuó u tongitongi ki ai.
- 2 Pea na'e 'ikai te u 'ilo 'i he taimi na'á ku ngaohi ai iá, 'e fekau kiate au 'e he 'Eikí ke u ngaohi 'a e ngaahi peleti ko 'ení; ko ia, ko e lekooti 'o e mo'ui 'a 'eku tamaí, mo e tohi hohoko 'o 'ene ngaahi tamaí, pea mo e konga lahi 'o 'emau ngaahi ngāue 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá kuo tongitongi ia ki he ngaahi peleti 'a ia kuó u lau ki aí; ko ia, ko e ngaahi me'a na'e hoko ki mu'a 'i he 'eku ngaohi 'a e ngaahi peleti ko 'ení, 'oku mo'oni ia, pea 'oku fakamatala kakato ange 'i he ngaahi 'uluaki peletí.
- 3 Pea hili 'eku ngaohi 'a e ngaahi peleti ko 'ení koe'uhi ko e fekaú, ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku ma'u ha fekau ke tohi ki he ngaahi peleti ko 'ení 'a e ngāue fakafaipekau mo e ngaahi kikite, 'a honau ngaahi konga mahinongofua mo mahu'inga angé; pea ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuo tohi ke ako'i 'aki 'a hoku kakaí, 'a ia 'oku totonu ke nau ma'u 'a e fonuá, kae 'uma'ā foki ha ngaahi taumu'a fakapotopoto kehe, 'a ia ko ha ngaahi taumu'a 'oku 'afio 'i 'e he 'Eikí.
- 4 Ko ia, ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku fai ha lekooti 'i he ngaahi peleti kehé, 'a ia 'oku fakamatala, pe 'oku kau ai ha fakamatala lahi ange ki he ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi fakakikihí mo e ngaahi faka'auha 'o hoku kakaí. Pea kuó u fai 'eni, peá u fekau ki hoku kakaí 'a e me'a ke nau fai hili ha'aku mate; pea ke tukufakaholo 'a e ngaahi peleti ko 'ení mei he to'u tangata 'e taha ki he to'u tangata 'e taha, pe mei he palōfita 'e taha ki he palōfita 'e taha, kae 'oua ke ma'u ha ngaahi fekau kehe mei he 'Eikí.
- 5 Pea 'e fai ha fakamatala ki he 'eku ngaohi 'a e ngaahi peleti ko 'ení 'amui; pea ko ia, vakai, te u fai 'o hangē ko e me'a kuó u lea'akí; pea 'oku ou fai 'eni koe'uhí ke lava 'o tauhi 'a e ngaahi me'a toputapu angé koe'uhi ke 'ilo 'e hoku kakaí.

I Nephi 19

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father, and also our journeyings in the wilderness, and the prophecies of my father; and also many of mine own prophecies have I engraven upon them.

And I knew not at the time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my father, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those first plates of which I have spoken; wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more particularly made mention upon the first plates.

And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious parts of them, should be written upon these plates; and that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of my people, who should possess the land, and also for other wise purposes, which purposes are known unto the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.

And an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter; and then, behold, I proceed according to that which I have spoken; and this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my people.

6 Ka neongo iá, 'oku 'ikai te u tohi ha me'a ki he ngaahi peletí ká 'i he'eku pehē 'oku toputapu ia. Pea ko 'eni, kapau 'oku 'i ai ha'aku fai hala, na'a nau fai hala foki 'i mu'a; pea 'oku 'ikai ko 'eku fie fakatonuhia 'i au koe'uhi ko ha kau tangata kehe, ká koe'uhi ko e ngaahi vaivai 'a ia 'oku 'iate au, 'o fakatatau ki he kakanó, ko ia 'oku ou fakatonuhia 'i ai au.

7 He ko e ngaahi me'a 'a ia 'oku pehē 'e ha kau tangata 'e ní'ihí 'oku fu'u mahu'inga ki he sinó mo e laumálié fakatou'osi, 'oku lau ia 'e ha ní'ihí kehe 'oku ta'e'aonga 'o nau molomoloki hifo ia 'i honau lalo va'é. 'Io, na'a mo e 'Otua mo'oni 'o 'Isilelí 'oku molomoloki hifo ia 'e he tangatá 'i honau lalo va'é; 'oku ou pehē, 'oku molomoloki hifo 'i honau lalo va'é ka 'oku ou fie lea 'i ha ngaahi lea kehe—'oku nau ta'etoka 'i ia, pea 'ikai tokanga ki he le'o 'o 'ene ngaahi akonakí.

8 Pea vakai 'e hā'ele mai ia 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a e 'āngeló, 'i hono onongeau 'o e ta'u hili 'a e taimi 'a ia na'e 'alu atu ai 'a 'eku tamaí mei Selūsalemá.

9 Pea ko e māmaní, ko e me'a 'i he'enu angahalá, te nau fakamāu 'i ia ko e me'a noa pē; ko ia te nau tautea 'i ia, pea te ne kātaki 'i ia; pea te nau taa 'i ia, pea te ne kātaki 'i ia. 'Io, te nau 'anuhia ia, pea te ne kātaki 'i ia, koe'uhi ko 'ene 'alo'ofa mo 'ene kātaki fuoloa ki he fānau 'a e tangatá.

10 Pea ko e 'Otua 'o 'etau ngaahi tamaí, 'a ia na'e taki atu mei 'Isipite, mei he nofo pōpulá, pea malu 'i foki 'a kinautolu 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'io, 'a e 'Otua 'o 'Ēpalahame mo 'Aisake mo e 'Otua 'o Sēkopé, na'á ne tukuangē ia ko e tangata, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a e 'āngeló, ki he nima 'o ha kau tangata angakovi, ke hiki hake, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a Seinokí, pea kalusefai ia, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a Neiumí, pea ke telio 'i ha fonualoto 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a Seinosí, 'a ia na'á ne lea 'o kau ki he 'aho 'e tolu 'o e fakapo'ulí, 'a ia 'e hoko ko e faka'ilonga 'o 'ene pekiá kiate kinautolu te nau nofo 'i he ngaahi motu 'o e tahí, kae tautautefito kiate kinautolu 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.

Nevertheless, I do not write anything upon plates save it be that I think it be sacred. And now, if I do err, even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself.

For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth, both to the body and soul, others set at naught and trample under their feet. Yea, even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words—they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels.

And behold he cometh, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem.

And the world, because of their iniquity, shall judge him to be a thing of naught; wherefore they scourge him, and he suffereth it; and they smite him, and he suffereth it. Yea, they spit upon him, and he suffereth it, because of his loving kindness and his long-suffering towards the children of men.

And the God of our fathers, who were led out of Egypt, out of bondage, and also were preserved in the wilderness by him, yea, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, according to the words of the angel, as a man, into the hands of wicked men, to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spake concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.

11 He na'e lea pehē 'e he palōfitá: Ko e mo'oni 'e hā'ele 'a e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ki he fale kotoa 'o 'Isilelí 'i he 'aho ko iá, ko e ni'ihī 'aki hono le'ó, ko e 'uhi ko 'enau mā'oni'oni, 'o nau fonu ai 'i he fiefia lahi mo fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu, pea ko e ni'ihī kehe 'aki 'a e ngaahi mana mo e ngaahi tapa 'a e 'uhila 'o hono māfimaí, pea 'aki 'a e afā, mo e afi, mo e ohu afi, pea 'aki 'a e 'ao 'o e fakapo'uli matolu, pea 'aki 'a e mafahifahi 'i he fonuá, pea mo e ngaahi mo'unga 'a ia 'e hiki haké.

12 Pea kuo pau ke hoko 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa, 'oku pehē 'e he palōfita ko Seinosi. Pea kuo pau ke mafahifahi 'a e ngaahi maka 'o e fonuá; pea ko e me'a 'i he ngaahi 'u'ulu 'a e fonuá, 'e 'i ai ha ngaahi tu'i tokolahi 'o e ngaahi motu 'o e tahí 'e ue'i 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá ke nau kaila: 'Oku mamahi 'a e 'Otuá 'o natulá.

13 Pea ko e me'a kiate kinautolu 'oku 'i Selūsalemá, 'oku pehē 'e he palōfitá, 'e fakamamahí 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he kakai fulipē, ko e 'uhi ko 'enau kalusefai 'a e 'Otuá 'o 'Isilelí, mo 'enau liliu honau lotó ki ha me'a kehe, 'o lí'aki 'a e ngaahi faka'ilonga mo e ngaahi me'a fakaofa pea mo e māfimaí mo e lāngilangi 'o e 'Otuá 'o 'Isilelí.

14 Pea ko e me'a 'i he 'enau fakatafoki honau lotó, 'oku pehē 'e he palōfitá, pea kuo nau fehi'a ki he Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí, ko ia te nau 'auhē ai 'i he kakanó, pea 'auha, pea hoko ko ha faka'ise'isa'anga mo ha luma'anga, pea fehi'anekina 'i he pule'anga kotoa pē.

15 Ka neongo iá, 'o ka hoko 'a e 'aho ko iá, 'oku pehē 'e he palōfitá, 'a ia 'e 'ikai te nau toe fakatafoki ai honau lotó 'o fakafili ki he Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí, te ne toki manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi fuakava na'á ne fai ki he 'enau ngaahi tamaí.

16 'Io, te ne toki manatu 'i ai 'a e ngaahi motu 'o e tahí; 'io, pea mo e kakai kotoa pē 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, te u tānaki mai, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí, 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi lea 'a e palōfita ko Seinosi, mei he ngaahi vahe 'e fā 'o e māmani.

17 'Io, pea 'e mamata 'a māmani kotoa pē ki he fakamo'ui 'a e 'Eikí, 'oku pehē 'e he palōfitá; 'e monū'ia 'a e pule'anga mo e fa'ahinga mo e lea mo e kakai fulipē.

18 Pea ko au, Nīfai, kuó u tohi 'a e ngaahi me'á ni ki hoku kakai, ko e 'uhi ke u lava 'apē 'o fakaloto 'i 'a kinautolu ke nau manatu ki he 'Eiki ko honau Huhu'í.

For thus spake the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, and others with the thunderings and the lightnings of his power, by tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapor of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up.

And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.

And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations.

Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers.

Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.

Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed.

And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer.

19 Ko ia, 'oku ou lea ki he fale kotoa 'o 'Isilelí, 'o kapau te nau ma'u 'a e ngaahi me'á ni.

20 He vakai, 'oku hoha 'a hoku laumālié, 'a ia 'oku fakaongosia kiate au, pea 'oku vaivaia ai 'a hoku ngaahi hokotanga hui kotoa pē, koe'uhi ko kinautolu 'oku 'i Selūsalemá; he kā ne 'ikai 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Eikí, ke fakahā mai kiate au ha me'a 'oku kau kiate kinautolu, 'o hangē foki kuó ne fai ki he kau palōfita 'i mu'á, pehē kuó u 'auha mo au foki.

21 Pea ko e mo'oni kuó ne fakahā ki he kau palōfita 'i mu'á 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē na'e kau kiate kinautolú; kae 'uma'ā foki 'ene fakahā ki he tokolahi ha me'a 'oku kau kiate kinautolu; ko ia, 'oku 'aonga ke mau 'ilo kiate kinautolu he kuo tohi ia 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá.

22 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nífai, na'á ku akonaki 'aki ki hoku ngaahi tokouá 'a e ngaahi me'á ni; pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku lau ha ngaahi me'a lahi kiate kinautolu, 'a ia kuo tongitongi 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá, koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo ki he ngaahi ngāue 'a e 'Eikí 'i he ngaahi fonua kehé, 'i he kakai 'i mu'a atú.

23 Pea na'á ku lau ha ngaahi me'a lahi kiate kinautolu 'a ia kuo tohi 'i he ngaahi tohi 'a Mōsesé; koe'uhi ke u lava 'o fakaloto 'i kakato ange 'apē 'a kinautolu ke nau tui ki he 'Eiki ko honau Huhu'í, ko ia na'á ku lau kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo tohi 'e he palōfita ko 'Īsaiá, he na'á ku fakatatau 'a e ngaahi folofolá kotoa pē kiate kinautolu, koe'uhi ke 'aonga ia kiate kinautolu pea mau poto ai.

24 Ko ia, na'á ku lea kiate kinautolu 'o pehē: Mou fanongo mai ki he ngaahi lea 'a e palōfitá, 'a kimoutolu 'oku 'o e toenga 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, 'a ia ko ha va'a kuo motuhi atu; mou fanongo ki he ngaahi lea 'a e palōfitá, 'a ia kuo tohi ki he fale kotoa 'o 'Isilelí, pea mou fakatatau 'i ia kiate kimoutolu koe'uhi ke mou lava 'o ma'u ha 'amanaki lelei 'o hangē ko homou kāinga 'a ia kuo motuhi 'a kimoutolu mei aí; he ko e anga 'eni 'o e tohi 'a e palōfitá.

Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.

For behold, I have workings in the spirit, which doth weary me even that all my joints are weak, for those who are at Jerusalem; for had not the Lord been merciful, to show unto me concerning them, even as he had prophets of old, I should have perished also.

And he surely did show unto the prophets of old all things concerning them; and also he did show unto many concerning us; wherefore, it must needs be that we know concerning them for they are written upon the plates of brass.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.

And I did read many things unto them which were written in the books of Moses; but that I might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer I did read unto them that which was written by the prophet Isaiah; for I did liken all scriptures unto us, that it might be for our profit and learning.

Wherefore I spake unto them, saying: Hear ye the words of the prophet, ye who are a remnant of the house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear ye the words of the prophet, which were written unto all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves, that ye may have hope as well as your brethren from whom ye have been broken off; for after this manner has the prophet written.

I Nīfai 20

- 1 Tokanga pea fanongo mai ki he me‘á ni, ‘E fale ‘o Sēkope, ‘a kimoutolu kuo ui ‘aki ‘a e hingoa ko ‘Isilelí, pea kuo mou ha‘u mei he ngaahi vai ‘o Siutá, pe mei he ngaahi vai ‘o e papitaisó, ‘a ia kuo mou fuakava ‘i he huafa ‘o e ‘Eikí, pea kuo mou lau ki he ‘Otua ‘o ‘Isilelí, kā kuo ‘ikai te nau fuakava ‘i he mo‘oní pe ‘i he mā‘oní‘oní.
- 2 Ka neongo iá, ‘oku nau pehē ‘oku nau ‘o e kolo mā‘oní‘oní, kā ‘oku ‘ikai te nau falala ki he ‘Otua ‘o ‘Isilelí, ‘a ia ko e ‘Eiki ‘o e Ngaahi Kau Tau; ‘io, ko e ‘Eiki ‘o e Ngaahi Kau Tau ‘a hono huafá.
- 3 Vakai, kuó u fakahā ‘a e ngaahi me‘a mu‘á talu mei he kamata‘angá; pea na‘e ‘alu atu mei hoku ngutú, pea na‘á ku fakahā ia. Na‘á ku fakahā fakafokifā ia.
- 4 Pea na‘á ku fai ia koe‘uhí he na‘á ku ‘ilo ‘okú ke paongata‘a, pea ko ho kiá ‘oku fefeka ‘o hangē ha ukameá, pea ko ho fo‘i la‘é ko e palasa;
- 5 Pea kuo talu mei he kamata‘anga mo ‘eku fakahā kiate koe; ‘i he te‘eki ai hoko iá na‘á ku fakahā ia kiate koe; pea na‘á ku fakahā ia ‘i he ‘eku manavasi‘i telia na‘á ke pehē—Kuo fai ia ‘e he ‘eku tamapuá, pea ko ‘eku tamapua kuo tongitongí, pea ko ‘eku tamapua ukamea ne haká na‘á ne fekau iá.
- 6 Kuó ke mamata mo fanongo ki he ngaahi me‘á ni kotoa pē; pea ‘e ‘ikai koā te ke fakahā ia? Pea kuó u fakahā atu talu mei he taimí ni ‘a e ngaahi me‘a fo‘ou, ‘io, ‘a e ngaahi me‘a lilo, pea na‘e ‘ikai te ke ‘ilo‘i ia.
- 7 Kuo toki fakatupú ni ia, kae ‘ikai mei he kamata‘angá, ‘io ki mu‘á ‘i he ‘aho na‘á ke fanongo ki aí, na‘e fakahā ia kiate koe, telia na‘á ke pehē—Vakai na‘á ku ‘ilo‘i ia.
- 8 ‘Io, pea na‘e ‘ikai te ke ongo‘i; ‘io, na‘e ‘ikai te ke ‘ilo‘i; ‘io, na‘e talu mei he taimi ko iá na‘e ‘ikai fakaava ‘a ho telingá; he na‘á ku ‘ilo‘i te ke ngāue ‘i he fu‘u kākā lahi, pea na‘e ui koe ko e maumau-fono mei he manavá.
- 9 Ka neongo iá, koe‘uhi ko hoku hingoa ‘e ‘ikai te u ‘ita, pea koe‘uhi ko hoku fakalāngilangi‘i te u ta‘ofi ai au meiate koe, ke ‘oua na‘á ku motuhi atu koe.
- 10 He vakai, kuó u fakama‘a koe, kuó u fili koe ‘i he afi kakaha ‘o e faingata‘a iá.

I Nephi 20

Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, who are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, or out of the waters of baptism, who swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, yet they swear not in truth nor in righteousness.

Nevertheless, they call themselves of the holy city, but they do not stay themselves upon the God of Israel, who is the Lord of Hosts; yea, the Lord of Hosts is his name.

Behold, I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them. I did show them suddenly.

And I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;

And I have even from the beginning declared to thee; before it came to pass I showed them thee; and I showed them for fear lest thou shouldst say—Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image hath commanded them.

Thou hast seen and heard all this; and will ye not declare them? And that I have showed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.

They are created now, and not from the beginning, even before the day when thou heardest them not they were declared unto thee, lest thou shouldst say—Behold I knew them.

Yea, and thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time thine ear was not opened; for I knew that thou wouldst deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.

Nevertheless, for my name’s sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain from thee, that I cut thee not off.

For, behold, I have refined thee, I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.

11 Koe‘uhi ko au, ‘io, koe‘uhi ko au te u fai ai ‘eni, he ‘e
‘ikai te u tuku ke ‘uli‘i ‘a hoku hingoá, pea ‘e ‘ikai te u
tuku hoku nāunaú ki ha tokotaha kehe.

12 Tokanga kiate au, ‘e Sēkope, pea mo ‘Isileli ‘a ia kuó u
uí, he ko au ia; ko au ko e ‘uluakí, pea ko au foki ko e
kimuí.

13 Kuo ‘ai foki ‘e hoku nimá ‘a e tu‘unga ‘o māmaní, pea
ko hoku nima to‘omata ‘ú na‘e fofola ‘a e ngaahi langí.
‘Oku ou ui kiate kinautolu pea ‘oku nau tutu‘u fakataha
hake.

14 ‘A kimoutolu kotoa pē, mou fakataha mai, pea
fanongo; ko hai ‘iate kinautolu kuó ne fakahā ‘a e ngaahi
me‘á ni kiate kinautolú? Kuo ‘ofa ‘a e ‘Eiki kiate ia; ‘io,
pea te ne fakahoko ‘a ‘ene folofolá ‘a ia kuó ne fakahā
‘iate kinautolú; pea te ne fai ‘ene fa‘itelihá ki Pāpilone,
pea ‘e hoko mai hono to‘ukupú ki he kakai Kalitiá.

15 Kae ‘uma‘ā, ‘oku folofola ‘e he ‘Eikí: Ko au ko e ‘Eikí,
‘io, kuó u lea; ‘io, kuó u ui ia ke ne fakahā, kuó u ‘omi ia,
pea te ne ngaohi ke tu‘umālie hono halá.

16 Mou ha‘u ke ofi kiate au; kuo ‘ikai te u lea ‘i he lilo;
talu mei he kamata‘angá, mei he taimi na‘e fakahā ai kuó
u leá; pea ko e ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá mo hono Laumālié, kuó
na fekau‘i aú.

17 Ko ia ‘oku folofola ‘e he ‘Eiki, ko ho Huhu‘í, ko e
Tokotaha Mā‘oni‘oni ‘o ‘Isilelí; kuó u fekau‘i ia, ko e
‘Eiki ko ho ‘Otuá ‘a ia ‘okú ne akonaki‘i kiate koe ‘a e
me‘a ‘oku ‘aonga kiate koé, ‘a ia ‘okú ne tataki koe ‘i he
hala ‘oku totonu ke ke ‘alu aí, ko ia kuó ne fai iá.

18 Pehe ange ‘e au kuó ke tokanga ki he‘eku ngaahi
fekaú—pea toki tafē mai ho‘o melinó ‘o hangē ko e
vaitafe, pea tatau ho‘o mā‘oni‘oni mo e ngaahi peau ‘o e
tahí.

19 Ko ho hakó foki kuo hangē ko e ‘one‘oné; pea ko e fua
‘o ho mānava ‘oku hangē ko e ngaahi fō‘i ‘one‘oné; kuo
‘ikai totonu ke motuhi atu pe faka‘auha ‘a hono hingoá
mei hoku ‘aó.

20 Ke ‘alu atu ‘a kimoutolu mei Pāpilone, mou hola mei
he kakai Kalitiá, fakahā ‘aki ‘a e le‘o ‘o e hiva, tala ‘a e
me‘á ni, talaki atu ke a‘u ki he ngata‘anga ‘o māmaní;
mou pehē: Kuo huhu‘i ‘e he ‘Eiki ‘a ‘ene tamaio‘eiki ko
Sēkopé.

For mine own sake, yea, for mine own sake will I do
this, for I will not suffer my name to be polluted, and I
will not give my glory unto another.

Hearken unto me, O Jacob, and Israel my called, for I
am he; I am the first, and I am also the last.

Mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth,
and my right hand hath spanned the heavens. I call unto
them and they stand up together.

All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; who among
them hath declared these things unto them? The Lord
hath loved him; yea, and he will fulfil his word which he
hath declared by them; and he will do his pleasure on
Babylon, and his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans.

Also, saith the Lord; I the Lord, yea, I have spoken;
yea, I have called him to declare, I have brought him,
and he shall make his way prosperous.

Come ye near unto me; I have not spoken in secret;
from the beginning, from the time that it was declared
have I spoken; and the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath
sent me.

And thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy
One of Israel; I have sent him, the Lord thy God who
teacheth thee to profit, who leadeth thee by the way
thou shouldst go, hath done it.

O that thou hadst hearkened to my command-
ments—then had thy peace been as a river, and thy
righteousness as the waves of the sea.

Thy seed also had been as the sand; the offspring of
thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not
have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.

Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans,
with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter to the
end of the earth; say ye: The Lord hath redeemed his
servant Jacob.

21 Pea na'e 'ikai te nau fieinua; na'a ne tataki atu 'a
kinautolu 'i he ngaahi toafa; na'a ne pule ke tafe atu 'a e
vai mei he maká ma'anautolu; na'a ne foa'i foki 'a e maká
pea na'e puna mei ai 'a e ngaahi vai.

22 Pea neongo 'ene fai 'eni kotoa pē, pea mo ia 'oku lahi
haké, ka 'oku 'ikai ha melino ki he kakai fai angahalá,
'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki.

And they thirsted not; he led them through the
deserts; he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for
them; he clave the rock also and the waters gushed out.

And notwithstanding he hath done all this, and
greater also, there is no peace, saith the Lord, unto the
wicked.

I Nīfai 2 I

- 1 Pea ko e tahá: Tokanga mai, ‘A kimoutolu ‘e fale ‘o ‘Isileli, ‘a kimoutolu kotoa pē kuo motuhi atú, pea kuo kapusi ki tu‘a koe‘uhi ko e fai angahala ‘a e kau taki fakalotu ‘o hoku kakaí; ‘io, ‘a kimoutolu kotoa pē kuo motuhi atú, ‘a ia kuo fakamovetevetea holo ‘i he ngaahi tukui fonua, ‘a ia ‘oku ‘o hoku kakaí, ‘E fale ‘o ‘Isileli. Fanongo, ‘A e ngaahi motú, kiate au, pea tokanga mai ‘a kimoutolu ‘a e kakai mei he mama‘ó; kuo ui au ‘e he ‘Eikí mei he manavá; talu ‘eku ‘i he fatu ‘o ‘eku fá‘eé mo ‘ene folofola ‘aki hoku hingoá.
- 2 Pea kuó ne ngaohi hoku ngutu ke hangē ko ha heletā māšila; ‘i he malumalu ‘o hono to‘ukupu kuó ne fufuu‘i au, mo ngaohi au ko ha ngahau ngingila; kuó ne fufuu‘i au ‘i hono hōfangahaú;
- 3 Peá ne folofola mai kiate au: Ko ‘eku tamaio‘eiki koe, ‘E ‘Isileli, ‘a ia ‘e fakalāngilangi‘i ai au.
- 4 Pea na‘á ku pehē ange, Kuó u ngāue ta‘e‘aonga, kuó u fakamoleki hoku ivi ‘i he me‘a noa mo ta‘e‘aonga; ko e mo‘oni ‘oku ‘i he ‘Eikí ‘a ‘eku fakamāú, pea mo ‘eku ngāué ‘i hoku ‘Otuá.
- 5 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘oku folofola ‘e he ‘Eikí—‘a ia na‘á ne fakatupu au mei he manavá ke u hoko ko ‘ene tamaio‘eiki, ke toe ‘omi ‘a Sēkope kiate ia—neongo ‘oku te‘eki tānaki ‘a ‘Isileli, kā te u ongoongolelei pē ‘i he ‘ao ‘o e ‘Eikí, pea ‘e hoko ‘a hoku ‘Otuá ko hoku mālohi.
- 6 Pea na‘á ne folofola: Ko e me‘a ma‘ama‘a ho‘o hoko ko ‘eku tamaio‘eiki ke fokotu‘u hake ‘a e ngaahi fá‘ahinga ‘o Sēkopé, pea fakafoki ‘a e kakai ‘o ‘Isileli kuó u fakahaofí. Te u foaki foki koe ko ha maama ki he kau Senitailé, koe‘uhi ke ke hoko ko ‘eku fai fakamo‘ui ki he ngaahi ngata‘anga ‘o e māmaní.
- 7 Ko ia ‘oku folofola ‘e he ‘Eikí, ko e Huhu‘i ‘o ‘Isilelí, ko hono Tokotaha Mā‘oni‘oní, kiate ia ‘oku fehí‘a ki ai ‘a e tangatá, kiate ia ‘oku fakalilí‘a ki ai ‘a e ngaahi pulé‘angá, ki he tamaio‘eiki ‘a e kau pulé: ‘E mamata ‘a e ngaahi tu‘í pea nau tu‘u hake, ‘e hū foki ‘a e kau pilinisi kiate ia, koe‘uhi ko e ‘Eikí, ‘a ia ‘oku faitotonu.

I Nephi 2 I

And again: Harken, O ye house of Israel, all ye that are broken off and are driven out because of the wickedness of the pastors of my people; yea, all ye that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles, unto me, and hearken ye people from far; the Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.

And he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver hath he hid me;

And said unto me: Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.

Then I said, I have labored in vain, I have spent my strength for naught and in vain; surely my judgment is with the Lord, and my work with my God.

And now, saith the Lord—that formed me from the womb that I should be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him—though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.

And he said: It is a light thing that thou shouldst be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel. I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the ends of the earth.

Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nations abhorreth, to servant of rulers: Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful.

8 Ko ia 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí: Kuó u fanongo kiate koe 'i hono taimi totonu, 'E ngaahi motu 'o e tahí, pea 'i ha 'aho 'o e fakamo'uí kuó u tokoni ai kiate koe; pea te u fakatolonga koe, pea foaki kiate koe 'a 'eku tamaio'eiki ke hoko ko ha fuakava 'o e kakaí, ke nofo 'i 'a e māmaní, pea fakafoki kiate koe 'a e ngaahi fonua kuo lalá ke hoko ko ho ngaahi tofi'a;

9 Koe'uhi ke ke pehē ki he kau pōpulá: 'Alu atu; kiate kinautolu 'oku nofo 'i he fakapo'ulí: Fakahā 'a kimoutolu. Te nau kai tau'atāina 'i he ngaahi hala, pea 'e 'i he ngaahi potu mā'olunga kotoa pē 'a honau ngaahi ngoue ma'ui'uí.

10 'E 'ikai te nau fiekaia pe feinua, pea 'e 'ikai foki te'ia 'a kinautolu 'e he velá pe ko e la'aá; he ko ia 'okú ne 'alo'ofa kiate kinautolu te ne tataki 'a kinautolu, 'io te ne tataki 'a kinautolu 'i he ngaahi ve'e matavaí.

11 Pea te u ngaohi hoku ngaahi mo'ungá kotoa pē ko e hala, pea 'e hakeaki'i hoku ngaahi hala lalahí.

12 Pea ko ia, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli, vakai, 'e ha'u 'a kinautolú ni mei he mama'ó; pea vakai, ko kinautolu ní mei he tokelau, pea mei he lulungá; pea mo kinautolú ni mei he fonua 'o Sinimí.

13 Hiva, 'E ngaahi langi; pea fiefia, 'E māmani; he 'e fokotu'u ma'u 'a e va'e 'o kinautolu 'oku 'i he potu hahaké; pea pā mai 'i he hiva, 'E ngaahi mo'unga; koe'uhi 'e 'ikai toe te'ia 'a kinautolu; he kuo fakafemālie'i 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono kakaí, pea te ne 'alo'ofa ki hono kakai kuo faingata'a'ia.

14 Kae, vakai, kuo pehē 'e Saione: Kuo lí'aki au 'e he 'Eikí, pea kuo fakangalo'i au 'e hoku 'Eikí—ka te ne fakahā kuo 'ikai.

15 He 'oku lava koā 'e ha fefine 'o fakangalongalo'i 'a 'ene tama 'oku kei huhú, 'o 'ikai ai te ne ma'u ha 'ofa mamahi ki he tama 'o hono manavá? 'Io, te nau fa'a fakangalo'i, ka 'e 'ikai te u fakangalo'i koe, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli.

16 Vakai, kuó u tohi tongi koe 'i hoku ongo 'aofi nimá; 'oku ou manatu ma'u ai pē ki ho ngaahi 'aá.

17 'E fai vave ho'o fānau ke langa hake 'a ia kuo faka'auhá; pea ko kinautolu na'e maumau'i koe te nau 'alu 'iate koe.

Thus saith the Lord: In an acceptable time have I heard thee, O isles of the sea, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee; and I will preserve thee, and give thee my servant for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;

That thou mayest say to the prisoners: Go forth; to them that sit in darkness: Show yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places.

They shall not hunger nor thirst, neither shall the heat nor the sun smite them; for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall be exalted.

And then, O house of Israel, behold, these shall come from far; and lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim.

Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; for the feet of those who are in the east shall be established; and break forth into singing, O mountains; for they shall be smitten no more; for the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted.

But, behold, Zion hath said: The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me—but he will show that he hath not.

For can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee, O house of Israel.

Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.

Thy children shall make haste against thy destroyers; and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee.

18 Hiki hake ho matá pea vakai; ko kinautolú ni kotoa pē 'oku fakataha maí, te nau ha'u kiate koe. Pea hangē 'oku ou mo'uí, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí, te ke fakakofu'í mo'oni koe 'aki 'a kinautolu kotoa pē, 'o hangē ko ha me'a teuteu, 'o 'ai ia 'o hangē ko ha ta'ahine ta'ane.

19 He ko ho ngaahi potu maumau mo lalá, pea mo ho fonua kuo faka'auhá, 'e hoko ni 'o fu'u sí'isi'í koe'uhi ko e tokolahi 'o e kakai 'oku nofo aí; pea ko kinautolu na'e nofo 'i aí, te nau mama'o atu.

20 Ko e fānau te ke ma'u 'o ka hili 'a e mole 'iate koe 'a e 'uluakí, te nau toe pehē 'i ho telinga: kuo fāsi'í 'a e potú ni kiate au; foaki mai ha potu lahi ange ma'aku ke u nofo ai.

21 Pea te ke toki pehē 'i ho lotó: Ko hai kuó ne fakatupu kiate au 'a kinautolu ní, he kuo mole 'iate au 'eku fānau, pea 'oku ou pa'a, ko ha pōpula, 'o fe'alu'aki fano holo pē? Pea ko hai kuó ne tauhi 'a kinautolú ni ma'akú? Vakai, na'e lí'ekina toko taha pē au; ka ko kinautolu ní, na'a nau 'i fē?

22 Ko ia na'e folofola 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá: Vakai, te u hiki hake hoku nimá ki he kau Senitailé, pea fokotu'u 'eku fuká ki he kakai; pea te nau 'omi ho ngaahi fohá 'i honau nimá, mo ho ngaahi 'ofefiné 'e fua 'i honau umá.

23 Pea 'e hoko 'a e ngaahi tu'í ko ho'o ngaahi tamai tauhi, pea ko honau ngaahi kuini ko ho'o ngaahi fa'ē tauhi; te nau punou hifo kiate koe 'aki honau matá ki he kekelelé, pea 'emo 'a e efu 'o ho va'é; pea te ke 'ilo'í ko au ko e 'Eikí; koe'uhi 'e 'ikai mā 'a kinautolu 'oku tatali kiate aú.

24 He 'e to'o 'a e mo'ulaloá mei he mālohí, pe tukuange 'a e kau pōpula totonú?

25 Ka 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí, na'a mo e kau pōpula 'o e kakai mālohí 'e 'ave 'a kinautolu, pea 'e tukuange 'a e mo'ulaloa 'o e tokotaha fakamanavaheé; koe'uhi te u tau mo ia 'oku tau mo koé, pea te u fakahaofi 'a ho'o fānau.

26 Pea te u fafanga 'a kinautolu 'oku fakamamahi'í koé 'aki honau kakano 'onautolú; te nau konā 'i honau toto 'onautolú 'o hangē ha uaine melie; pea 'e 'ilo'í 'e he kakai kotoa pē, ko au ko e 'Eikí, ko ho Fakamo'ui mo ho Huhu'í, ko e Tokotaha Māfima'í 'o Sēkopé.

Lift up thine eyes round about and behold; all these gather themselves together, and they shall come to thee. And as I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on even as a bride.

For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants; and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away.

The children whom thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the first, shall again in thine ears say: The place is too strait for me; give place to me that I may dwell.

Then shalt thou say in thine heart: Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where have they been?

Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captives delivered?

But thus saith the Lord, even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.

And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I, the Lord, am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

I Nīfai 22

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, hili 'eku lau 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'a ia na'e tongitongi 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá, na'e ha'u kiate au 'a hoku ngaahi tokouá, 'o nau pehē mai kiate au: Ko e hā hono 'uhinga 'o e ngaahi me'á ni, 'a ia kuó ke laú? Vakai, 'e 'ilo'i nai ia 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi me'a 'oku fakalaumālie, 'a ia 'e hoko 'o fakatatau ki he laumālié kae 'ikai ko e kakanó?
- 2 Pea ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku pehē ange kiate kinautolu: Vakai na'e fakahā ia ki he palōfitá 'e he le'ó 'o e Laumālié; he 'oku fakahā 'i he Laumālié 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē ki he kau palōfitá, 'a ia 'e hoko ki he fānau 'a e tangatá 'o fakatatau ki he kakanó.
- 3 Ko ia, ko e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuó u laú ko e ngaahi me'a ia 'oku kau ki he ngaahi me'a 'oku fakamatelie mo fakalaumālie fakatou'osi; ko e fale 'o 'Isilelí 'e 'i ai pē 'a e taimi 'e fakamovetevete ai, ki he funga kotoa 'o e māmaní, kae 'uma'ā foki ki he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē.
- 4 Pea vakai, 'oku 'i ai 'a e tokolahi kuo 'ikai toe 'ilo ki ai 'a kinautolu 'oku 'i Selūsalemá. 'Io, ko e kongalahi ange 'o e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē kuo tataki atu; pea kuo fakamovetevete ki hē mo ē 'i he ngaahi motu 'o e tahí; pea ko e feitu'u 'oku nau 'i ai 'oku 'ikai 'ilo'i 'e ha toko taha 'iate kitautolu, ka 'oku tau 'ilo'i pē kuo tataki atu 'a kinautolu.
- 5 Pea hili honau tataki atú, ko e ngaahi me'á ni kuo kikite'i 'o kau kiate kinautolu, kae 'uma'ā foki mo kinautolu kotoa pē 'a ia 'e fakamovetevete mo veuveuki 'amui, koe'uhi koe Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí; he te nau fakafefeka honau lotó kiate ia; ko ia, 'e fakamovetevete ai 'a kitautolu ki he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē pea 'e fehi'anekina'i 'a kinautolu 'e he kakai kotoa pē.

I Nephi 22

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brethren came unto me and said unto me: What meaneth these things which ye have read? Behold, are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual, which shall come to pass according to the spirit and not the flesh?

And I, Nephi, said unto them: Behold they were manifest unto the prophet by the voice of the Spirit; for by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh.

Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations.

And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

6 Ka neongo iá, 'o ka hili honau tauhi 'e he kau Senitailé, pea kuo hiki hake 'e he 'Eiki' a hono to'ukupú ki he kau Senitailé 'o fokotu'u hake 'a kinautolu ke hoko ko ha fuka, pea kuo fua 'enau fānaú 'i honau ngaahi nimá, pea kuo fua honau ngaahi 'ofefiné 'i honau umá, vakai, 'oku fakamāmani 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'a ia kuo lau ki aí; he 'oku pehē 'a e ngaahi fuakava 'a e 'Eiki ki he 'etau ngaahi tamaí; pea 'oku 'uhinga ia kiate kitautolu 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'amuí, kae 'uma'ā foki hotau kāinga kotoa pē 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.

7 Pea ko hono 'uhingá 'e hokosia 'a e taimi 'o ka hili 'a e fakamovetevete mo e veuveuki 'o e fale kotoa 'o 'Isilelí, 'e hiki hake ai 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ha pule'anga mālohi 'i he kau Senitailé, 'io, 'i he funga 'o e fonua ko 'ení; pea 'e fakamovetevete 'e kinautolu 'a hotau hakó.

8 Pea 'o ka 'osi 'a e fakamovetevete 'o hotau hakó, 'e hanga leva 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'o fai ha ngāue fakafo 'i he kau Senitailé, 'a ia 'e fu'u mahu'inga lahi ki hotau hakó; ko ia, 'oku fakatatau ia ki honau tauhi 'e he kau Senitailé pea mo honau fua 'i honau nimá pea 'i honau umá.

9 Pea 'e toe mahu'inga foki ia ki he kau Senitailé; kae 'ikai ki he kau Senitailé pē kā ki he fale kotoa 'o 'Isilelí, ke fakahā 'a e ngaahi fuakava kuo fai 'e he Tamai 'o e langí kia 'Ēpalahame, 'o pehē: 'E tupu 'i ho hakó hono tāpuekina 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e māmani.

10 Pea 'oku ou faka'amu, 'e hoku ngaahi tokoua, ke mou 'ilo'i 'e 'ikai lava ke monū'ia 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e māmani kae 'oua kuó ne fakahā hono to'ukupú 'i he 'ao 'o e ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē.

11 Ko ia, 'e hanga 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'o fakahā 'a hono to'ukupú 'i he 'ao 'o e ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē, 'i hono fakahoko 'ene ngaahi fuakavá mo 'ene ongoongolelé kiate kinautolu 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.

12 Ko ia, te ne toe 'omi 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá, pea 'e tñaki fakataha 'a kinautolu ki he ngaahi fonua 'o honau tofi'á; pea 'e 'omi 'a kinautolu mei he kakapú pea mei he fakapo'ulí; pea te nau 'ilo'i ko e 'Eiki 'a honau Fakamo'uí mo honau Huhu'í, ko e Tokotaha Māfima'fi 'o 'Isilelí.

Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers; and it meaneth us in the days to come, and also all our brethren who are of the house of Israel.

And it meaneth that the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.

And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.

And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And I would, my brethren, that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.

Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance; and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.

13 Pea ko e toto 'o e fu'u siasi lahi mo fakalieliá, 'a ia ko e fe'auaki 'o e māmani kotoa pē, 'e foki mai ki honau 'ulu 'onautolú; koe'uhi he te nau fetau'aki 'iate kinautolu, pea 'e tō 'a e heletā 'o honau nimá ki honau 'ulu 'onautolú, pea te nau konā 'i honau toto pē 'onautolú.

14 Pea ko e pule'anga kotoa pē 'e tau'i koé, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli, te nau fetau'aki 'iate kinautolu, pea te nau tō ki he luo na'a nau keli ke tauhele'i 'a e kakai 'o e 'Eikí. Pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'e tau'i 'a Saioné 'e faka'auha 'a kinautolu, pea ko e fu'u fe'auaki lahi ko iá, 'a ia kuó ne liliu kovi 'a e ngaahi hā'ele'anga totonu 'o e 'Eikí, 'io, 'a e fu'u siasi lahi mo fakalielia ko iá, 'e tō ia ki he efú pea 'e lahi 'aupito 'a 'ene toó.

15 He vakai, 'oku pehē 'e he palōfitá, 'oku vave mai 'a e taimi 'a ia 'e 'ikai toe ma'u ai 'e Sētane ha mālohi ki he loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá; he 'oku ha'u vave 'a e 'aho 'e tatau mo e veve 'a e kakai pōlepole kotoa pē pea mo kinautolu 'oku fai koví; pea 'oku ha'u 'a e 'aho kuo pau ke tutu 'a kinautolu.

16 Koe'uhi 'oku ha'u vave 'a e taimi 'e lilingi hifo 'a hono kakato 'o e houhau 'o e 'Otuá ki he fānau kotoa pē 'a e tangatá; koe'uhí 'e 'ikai te ne tuku ke faka'auha 'e he kau fai angahalá 'a e kau mā'oni'oni.

17 Ko ia, te ne malu'i 'a e kau mā'oni'oni 'i hono māfima'fi, neongo 'o kapau 'e pau ke hoko mai 'a hono kakato 'o hono houhau, pea malu'i ai 'a e kau mā'oni'oni, 'io ke faka'auha ai 'a honau ngaahi filí 'i he afi. Ko ia, 'oku 'ikai 'aonga ke manavahē 'a e kau mā'oni'oni; he na'e pehē 'e he palōfitá, 'e fakahaofi 'a kinautolu neongo pē 'o kapau 'e fai ia 'aki 'a e afi.

18 Vakai, 'e hoku ngaahi tokoua, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo pau ke hoko vave mai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni; 'io, na'a mo e toto, mo e afi, mo e kakapu 'o e 'ahu kuo pau ke hoko; pea kuo pau ke hoko ia 'i he funga 'o e māmani ko 'eni; pea 'e hoko mai ia ki he fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá 'o fakatatau ki he kakanó 'o kapau te nau fakafefeka honau lotó ki he Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí.

19 He vakai, 'e 'ikai 'auha 'a e kau mā'oni'oni; he kuo pau ke hoko mai 'a e taimi ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku tau'i 'a Saioné 'e motuhi atu 'a kinautolu.

And the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood.

And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, yea, that great and abominable church, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it.

For behold, saith the prophet, the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day cometh that they must be burned.

For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous.

Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come, and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for thus saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire.

Behold, my brethren, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; yea, even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.

For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off.

20 Pea kuo pau 'e teuteu 'e he 'Eiki ha hala ki hono kakaí, ke fakahoko ai 'a e ngaahi lea 'a Mōsesé, 'a ia na 'á ne lea 'aki, 'o pehē: 'E fokotu'u hake ha palōfita 'e he 'Eiki ko homou 'Otuá kiate kimoutolu, 'o hangē pē ko aú; ke mou fanongo kiate ia 'i he ngaahi me'a kotoa pē te ne lea 'aki kiate kimoutolú. Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'e 'ikai fanongo ki he palōfita ko iá, 'e motuhi atu ia mei he kakaí.

21 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Nīfai, 'oku ou fakahā kiate kimoutolu, ko e palōfita ko ia 'a ia na 'e lau ki ai 'a Mōsesé ko e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni ia 'o 'Isilelí; ko ia, te ne fai 'a e fakamāú 'i he mā'oni'oni.

22 Pea 'oku 'ikai 'aonga ke manavahē 'a e kau mā'oni'oni, he ko kinautolu ia 'a ia 'e 'ikai veuveukí. Ka ko e pulé'anga ia 'o e tēvoló, 'a ia 'e langa hake 'i he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'a ia ko e pulé'anga kuo fokotu'u 'iate kinautolu 'oku nau 'i he kakanó—

23 Koe'uhi 'e hoko vave mai 'a e taimi ko e ngaahi siasi kotoa pē kuo fokotu'u ke fakatupu koloá mo ia kotoa pē kuo fokotu'u ke ma'u ha mālohi ki he kakanó, mo ia kotoa pē kuo fokotu'u ke manakoa 'i he vakai 'a e māmaní, pea mo kinautolu 'oku fekumi ki he ngaahi holi kovi 'o e kakanó mo e ngaahi me'a 'o e māmaní, mo nau fai 'a e ngaahi angahala kehekehe kotoa pē; 'io, kae tautautefito, kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku kau ki he pulé'anga 'o e tēvoló ko ia ia 'a kinautolu 'oku totonu ke manavahē mo tetetete mo teketekelili; ko ia ia 'a kinautolu kuo pau ke tuku hifo ke mā'ulalo 'i he efú; ko ia ia 'a kinautolu kuo pau ke vela 'o 'osi 'o hangē ko e vevé; pea 'oku fakatatau 'eni mo e ngaahi lea 'a e palōfitá.

24 Pea 'oku ha'u vave 'a e taimi kuo pau ke tataki 'a e kau mā'oni'oni 'o hangē ko e fanga 'uhiki'i pulu 'o e fale fafangá, pea kuo pau ke pulé 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí 'i he pulé aoniu, mo e māfimaí, mo e mālohi pea mo e fu'u nāunau lahi.

25 Pea te ne tānaki fakataha mai 'a 'ene fānau mei he ngaahi vahe 'e fā 'o e māmaní; pea 'okú ne lau 'a 'ene fanga sipí, pea 'oku nau 'ilo'i ia; pea 'e 'i ai 'a e loto'ā sipi pē taha mo e tauhi pē taha; pea te ne fafanga 'a 'ene fanga sipí, pea te nau ma'u 'iate ia ha ngoue ma'ui'ui.

And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.

And the righteous need not fear, for they are those who shall not be confounded. But it is the kingdom of the devil, which shall be built up among the children of men, which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh—

For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; yea, in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet.

And the time cometh speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, and the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory.

And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth; and he numbereth his sheep, and they know him; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.

26 Pea koe'uhi ko e mā'oni'oni 'a hono kakaí, 'oku 'ikai ma'u ai 'e Sētane ha mālohi; ko ia, 'oku 'ikai lava ke vete ange ia 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi; koe'uhi 'oku 'ikai te ne ma'u ha mālohi ki he loto 'o e kakaí, he 'oku nau nonofo 'i he mā'oni'oni, pea 'oku pule 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí.

27 Pea ko 'eni vakai, ko au, Nīfai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo pau ke hoko 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'o fakatatau ki he kakanó.

28 Kae vakai, ko e ngaahi pule'anga, mo e ngaahi fá'ahinga, mo e ngaahi lea, mo e kakai kotoa pē 'e nofo malu 'i he Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí 'o kapau te nau fakatomala.

29 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Nīfai, 'oku ou faka'osi; he 'oku ou manavahē ke toe fakamatala 'o lahi ange ki he ngaahi me'á ni.

30 Ko ia, 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou tui 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuo tohi ki he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá; pea 'oku nau fakamo'oni kuo pau ke talangofua ha tangata ki he ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá.

31 Ko ia, 'oku 'ikai 'aonga ke mou mahalo 'oku ngata pē 'iate au mo 'eku tamaí 'a e fá'ahinga kuo fakamo'oni pea mo akonaki 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a ní. Ko ia, kapau te mou talangofua ki he ngaahi fekaú, pea kātaki ki he ngata'angá, 'e fakamo'ui 'a kimoutolu 'i he 'aho faka'osí. Pea 'oku pehē pe. 'Ēmeni.

And because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth.

And now behold, I, Nephi, say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh.

But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.

And now I, Nephi, make an end; for I durst not speak further as yet concerning these things.

Wherefore, my brethren, I would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.

Wherefore, ye need not suppose that I and my father are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved at the last day. And thus it is. Amen.

Ko e Tohi Hono Ua ‘a Nīfai

Ko ha fakamatala ki he pekia ‘a Līhai. ‘Oku angatu ‘u ‘a e ngaahi tokoua ‘o Nīfai kiate ia. ‘Oku folofola ‘a e ‘Eiki kia Nīfai ke ne ‘alu ki he feitu ‘u maomaonganoá. Ko ‘ene ngaahi fononga ‘i he feitu ‘u maomaonganoá, mo e ngaahi alā me ‘a peheé.

2 Nīfai 1

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na ‘e hoko ‘o pehē ko au, Nīfai, kuó ou faka ‘osi ‘eku akonaki ki hoku ngaahi tokouá, na ‘e lea foki mo ‘emau tamai, ko Līhai, ‘aki ‘a e ngaahi me ‘a lahi kiate kinautolu, ‘o fakamanatu ‘i kiate kinautolu, ‘a e ngaahi me ‘a lalahi kuo fai ‘e he ‘Eiki ma ‘anautolu ‘i hono ‘omai ‘a kinautolu ki tu ‘a mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá.
- 2 Pea na ‘á ne lea kiate kinautolu ‘o kau ki he ‘enau ngaahi angatu ‘u ‘i he funga ‘o e ngaahi vai, pea mo e ngaahi ‘alo ‘ofa ‘a e ‘Otuá ‘i hono fakahaofi ‘enau mo ‘uí, ke ‘oua na ‘a folo hifo ‘a kinautolu ‘i he tahí.
- 3 Pea na ‘á ne lea foki kiate kinautolu ‘o kau ki he fonua ‘o e tala ‘ofa, ‘a ia kuo nau ma ‘ú—mo hono hulu ‘o e ‘alo ‘ofa ‘a e ‘Eiki ‘i he fale ‘i kinautolu ke mau lava ‘o hola mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá.
- 4 Na ‘á ne pehē, He vakai, kuó u mamata ki ha me ‘a hā-mai, ‘a ia ‘oku ou ‘ilo ‘i ai kuo faka ‘auha ‘a Selūsalema; pea kā ne tau nofo ‘i Selūsalema, pehē kuo tau mate mo kitautolu foki.
- 5 Ka, na ‘á ne pehē, neongo ‘a hotau ngaahi faingata ‘a ‘iá, kuo tau ma ‘u ha fonua ‘o e tala ‘ofa, ko ha fonua ‘a ia ‘oku mahu ‘inga lahi hake ‘i he ngaahi fonua kehe kotoa pē; ko ha fonua ‘a ia kuo fuakava kiate au ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá ‘e hoko ko ha fonua ko e tofi ‘a ‘o hoku hakó. ‘Io, kuo fuakava ‘e he ‘Eiki ke tuku ‘a e fonuá ni kiate au, mo ‘eku fānaú ‘o ta ‘engata, pea mo kinautolu kotoa pē foki ‘e tataki atu mei he ngaahi fonua kehé ‘e he to ‘ukupu ‘o e ‘Eiki.
- 6 Ko ia, ko au, Līhai, ‘oku ou kikite ‘o fakatatau ki he ngaahi fakahinohino ‘a e Laumālié ‘a ia ‘oku ‘iate aú, ‘e ‘ikai ha ‘u ha taha ki he fonuá ni kā ‘i he ‘omi ‘a kinautolu ‘e he to ‘ukupu ‘o e ‘Eiki.

The Second Book of Nephi

An account of the death of Lehi. Nephi’s brethren rebel against him. The Lord warns Nephi to depart into the wilderness. His journeyings in the wilderness, and so forth.

2 Nephi 1

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of teaching my brethren, our father, Lehi, also spake many things unto them, and rehearsed unto them, how great things the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.

And he spake unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters, and the mercies of God in sparing their lives, that they were not swallowed up in the sea.

And he also spake unto them concerning the land of promise, which they had obtained—how merciful the Lord had been in warning us that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem.

For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jerusalem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also have perished.

But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed. Yea, the Lord hath covenanted this land unto me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led out of other countries by the hand of the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord.

7 Ko ia, kuo fakatapui 'a e fonuá ni ki ha taha te ne tatakí maí. Pea kapau te nau tauhi kiate ia 'o fakatatau mo e ngaahi fekau kuó ne foaki maí, 'e hoko ia ko ha fonua 'o e tau'atāina ma'anautolu; ko ia, 'e 'ikai fakapōpula 'i 'a kinautolu 'o ta'engata; ka 'o kapau 'e pehē, ko e tupu ia mei he angahalá; he kapau 'e lahi 'a e angahalá, 'e mala'ia 'a e fonuá koe'uhi ko kinautolu, ka 'e tāpuekina ia 'o ta'engata ma'á e kau mā'oni'oni.

8 Pea vakai, 'oku fakapotopoto ke kei ta'ofi 'a e fonuá ni mei he 'ilo 'a e ngaahi pule'anga kehé; he vakai, 'e hanga 'e he kakai mei he ngaahi pule'anga lahi 'o fakafonu 'a e fonuá, pea 'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha potu ke hoko ko ha tofi'a.

9 Ko ia, ko au, Līhai, kuó u ma'u ha tala'ofa, 'e fakatatau ki he tauhi 'e kinautolu 'a ia 'e 'omi 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, 'a 'ene ngaahi fekaú, 'a 'enau tu'umālie 'i he funga 'o e fonuá ni; pea 'e ta'ofi 'a e fonuá ni mei he 'ilo 'a e ngaahi pule'anga kehé kotoa, koe'uhi ke nau ma'u 'a e fonuá ni mo'onautolu pē. Pea kapau te nau tauhi 'a 'ene ngaahi fekaú 'e tāpuekina 'a kinautolu 'i he funga 'o e fonuá ni, pea 'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha taha ke fakafiu 'i 'a kinautolu, pe to'o 'a e fonua 'o honau tofi'á; pea te nau nofo malu 'o ta'engata.

10 Kae vakai, 'o ka hokosia 'a e taimi te nau faka'au'auhifo ai 'i he ta'etui, hili 'enau ma'u 'a e ngaahi tāpuaki lahi pehē mei he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eiki—'o nau ma'u ha 'ilo ki he fakatupu 'o e māmaní, mo e kakai fulipē, 'o nau 'ilo 'i 'a e ngaahi ngāue ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofa 'a e 'Eiki talu mei he fakatupu 'o e māmaní; pea kuo tuku kiate kinautolu 'a e mālohi ke fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'i he tui; pea nau ma'u 'a e ngaahi fekau kotoa pē talu mei he kamata'angá, pea kuo 'omi 'a kinautolu 'i he'ene angaleléi ta'e-fakangatangata ki he fonua 'o e tala'ofa mahu'inga ko 'ení—vakai, 'oku ou pehē, kapau 'e hokosia 'a e 'aho 'a ia te nau faka'ikai 'i ai 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isileli, ko e Mīsaia mo'oni, mo honau Huhu 'i mo honau 'Otuá, vakai, 'e nofo 'iate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a'ana 'a ia 'oku angatonú.

11 'Io, te ne 'omi 'a e ngaahi pule'anga kehe kiate kinautolu, pea te ne tuku kiate kinautolu 'a e mālohi, pea te ne to'o meiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi fonua 'o honau tofi'á, pea te ne tuku ke fakamovetevete 'i mo tāmata 'i 'a kinautolu.

Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

And behold, it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yet from the knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they shall dwell safely forever.

But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.

Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.

- 12 'Io, 'i he hokohoko atu 'a e ngaahi to'u tangatá 'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi lilingi toto, mo e ngaahi tautea lalahi 'iate kinautolu; ko ia, 'e hoku ongo foha, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mo manatu'i; 'io, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mo tokanga ki he'eku ngaahi leá.
- 13 Taumaiā ke mo 'ā hake; 'ā hake mei he mohe ma'ú, 'io, mei he mohe 'o heli, pea tupe'i atu 'a e ngaahi sēini fakamanavahē 'a ia kuo ha'i 'aki 'a kimouá, 'a ia ko e ngaahi sēini kuo ha'i 'aki 'a e fānau 'a e tangatá, ke 'ave pōpula hifo 'a kinautolu ki he vanu ta'engata 'o e mamahí mo e mala'ia.
- 14 'Ā hake! pea tutu'u hake mei he efú, pea fanongo ki he ngaahi lea 'a ha mātu'a kuo vaivai, 'a ia 'oku ofi ke mo fakatokoto hifo hono sinó ki he fá'itoka momoko mo longomaté, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai lava ke foki mei ai ha tokotaha fononga; 'oku toe 'a e ngaahi 'aho si'i, pea te u fou 'i he hala 'o e māmani kotoa pē.
- 15 Kae vakai, kuo huhu'i 'e he 'Eikí 'a hoku laumālié mei heli; kuó u mamata ki hono nāunaú, pea 'oku takatakai'i au 'o ta'engata 'e he ongo to'ukupu 'o 'ene 'ofá.
- 16 Pea 'oku ou faka'amu ke mo manatu ke tauhi ki he ngaahi tu'utu'uni mo e ngaahi finangalo 'o e 'Eikí; vakai, ko e me'a 'eni kuo hoha'a ki ai 'a hoku laumālié talu mei he kamata'angá.
- 17 Kuo mafasia hoku lotó 'i he mamahi mei he taimi ki he taimi, he kuó u manavahē, koe'uhi ko e fefeka 'o homo lotó na'a hā'ele mai 'a e 'Eiki ko homo 'Otuá 'i hono kotoa 'o hono houhaú kiate kimoua, pea motuhi atu ai mo faka'auha 'a kimoua 'o ta'engata.
- 18 Pē, hoko ha fakamala'ia kiate kimoua 'i ha ngaahi to'u tangata lahi; pea 'e tautea'i 'a kimoua 'i he tau, mo e honge, pea 'e fehi'anekina, mo tākiekina 'a kimoua 'o fakatatau ki he fá'iteliha mo e fakapōpula 'a e tēvoló.
- 19 'Oiauē 'e hoku ongo foha, 'amusia ange 'e au 'e 'ikai hoko 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate kimoua, kā ke mo hoko ko ha kakai fili mo 'ofeina 'e he 'Eikí. Kae vakai, ke fai hono finangaló; he 'oku mā'oni'oni 'a hono ngaahi halá 'o ta'engata.
- 20 Pea kuó ne folofola: 'E fakatatau ki ho'omou tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú, te mou tu'umālie 'i he fonuá; ka kapau 'e 'ikai te mou tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú, 'e motuhi atu 'a kimoutolu mei hoku 'aó.

Yea, as one generation passeth to another there shall be bloodsheds, and great visitations among them; wherefore, my sons, I would that ye would remember; yea, I would that ye would hearken unto my words.

O that ye would awake; awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.

Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave, from whence no traveler can return; a few more days and I go the way of all the earth.

But behold, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, and I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love.

And I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes and the judgments of the Lord; behold, this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning.

My heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time, for I have feared, lest for the hardness of your hearts the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath upon you, that ye be cut off and destroyed forever;

Or, that a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations; and ye are visited by sword, and by famine, and are hated, and are led according to the will and captivity of the devil.

O my sons, that these things might not come upon you, but that ye might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord. But behold, his will be done; for his ways are righteousness forever.

And he hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

- 21 Pea ko 'eni koe'uhi ke ma'u 'e hoku laumalié ha fiefia 'iate kimoua, pea koe'uhi ke 'alu 'a hoku lotó mei he maama ko 'eni 'i he fiefia koe'uhi ko kimoua, pea koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a 'ohifo au ki he fa'itoká 'i he lotomamahi mo e tangi, mo tu'u hake mei he efú, 'e hoku ongo foha, pea 'ai ke ngali tangata, pea fakapapau'i homo lotó ke mo fakakaukau taha mo loto taha, pea uouongataha 'i he ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'okú mo faí, koe'uhí ke 'oua na'a 'ohifo 'a kimoua ki he fakapōpulá;
- 22 Koe'uhi ke 'oua 'e fakamala'ia'i 'a kimoua 'aki ha mala'ia fakamamahi; pea ko e tahá foki, ke 'oua te mo fakatupu 'a e houhau 'o ha 'Otua angatonu, pea faka'auha ai 'a kimoua, 'io, 'a e faka'auha ta'engata 'o e laumalié mo e sinó fakatou'osi.
- 23 'Ā hake, 'e hoku ongo foha; 'ai 'a e teunga tau 'o e mā'oní'oní. Tupe'i atu 'a e ngaahi sēini, 'a ia kuo ha'i 'aki 'a kimouá, pea ha'u ki tu'a mei he kakapú, pea tu'u hake mei he efú.
- 24 'Oua na'a toe angatu'u ki homo tokouá, 'a ia 'oku nāunau'ia 'ene ngaahi me'a-hā-maí, pea kuó ne tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekaú talu mei he taimi na'a tau ha'u ai mei Selūsalemá; pea kuó ne hoko ko ha me'angāue 'i he to'ukupu 'o e 'Otuá, ke 'omi 'a kitautolu ki he fonua 'o e tala'ofá; he kā ne ta'e'oua 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa kuó ne faí, pehē kuo tau mate 'i he fiekaia 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá; ka neongo iá, kuó mo feinga ke to'o 'ene mo'u; 'io, pea kuó ne kātaki'i 'a e mamahi lahi koe'uhi ko kimoua.
- 25 Pea 'oku ou fu'u manavahē pea tetetete lahi koe'uhi ko kimoua, telia na'á ne toe mamahi; he vakai, kuó mo tukuaki'i ia 'o pehē na'á ne feinga ke ne ma'u 'a e mālohi mo e mafai kiate kimoua; ka 'oku ou 'ilo kuo 'ikai te ne feinga ke ma'u ha mālohi pe pule kiate kimoua, kā ko 'ene feinga pē ki hono fakalāngilangi'i 'o e 'Otuá, pea mo ho'omo fiefia ta'engatá.
- 26 Pea kuó mo lāunga koe'uhi ko 'ene lea mahinongofua kiate kimouá. 'Okú mo pehē, kuó ne lea fefeká; 'okú mo pehē kuó ne 'ita kiate kimoua; kae vakai, ko 'ene lea fefeká ko e fefeka pē ia 'o e mālohi 'o e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia 'oku 'iate iá; pea ko e me'a na'á mo ui ko e 'itá ko e mo'oní pē ia, 'o fakatatau ki he me'a ko ia 'oku 'i he 'Otuá, 'a ia na'e 'ikai te ne lava 'o ta'ofi, 'o ne fakahā 'i he loto-to'a kiate kimoua 'a ho'omo ngaahi angahalá.

And now that my soul might have joy in you, and that my heart might leave this world with gladness because of you, that I might not be brought down with grief and sorrow to the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, and be men, and be determined in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, that ye may not come down into captivity;

That ye may not be cursed with a sore cursing; and also, that ye may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you, unto the destruction, yea, the eternal destruction of both soul and body.

Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains with which ye are bound, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust.

Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, ye sought to take away his life; yea, and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you.

And I exceedingly fear and tremble because of you, lest he shall suffer again; for behold, ye have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you, but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

And ye have murmured because he hath been plain unto you. Ye say that he hath used sharpness; ye say that he hath been angry with you; but behold, his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God, which was in him; and that which ye call anger was the truth, according to that which is in God, which he could not restrain, manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities.

27 Pea 'oku totonu ke 'iate ia 'a e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá, 'o a'u ki he'ene fekau'i 'a kimoua kuo pau ke mo talangofua ki ai. Kae vakai, na'e 'ikai ko ia, kā ko e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí 'a ia na'e 'iate iá, 'a ia na'e fakaava hono ngutú ke ne lea, 'o 'ikai ai te ne lava 'o ta'ofi ia.

28 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, ko Leimana, kae 'uma'ā foki mo Lēmiuela mo Samu, kae 'uma'ā foki hoku ngaahi foha 'a ia ko e ngaahi foha 'o 'Isimelí, vakai, kapau te mou tokanga ki he le' o 'o Nīfái, 'e 'ikai te mou mala'ia. Pea kapau te mou tokanga kiate ia 'oku ou tuku kiate kimoutolu ha tāpuaki, 'io, 'a 'eku 'uluaki tāpuakí.

29 Ka kapau 'e 'ikai te mou tokanga kiate ia, te u to' o 'eku 'uluaki tāpuakí, 'io, 'a 'eku tāpuakí, pea 'e foaki ia kiate ia.

30 Pea ko 'eni, 'e Sōlami, 'oku ou lea kiate koe: Vakai, ko e tamaio'eiki koe 'a Lēpani; ka neongo iá, kuo 'omi koe mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, pea 'oku ou 'ilo ko e kaume'a mo'oni koe 'o hoku foha, ko Nīfái, 'o ta'engata.

31 Ko ia, ko e me'a 'i ho' o tui faivelengá 'e tāpuaki'i 'a ho hakó fakataha mo hono hakó, pea te nau nofo tu'umālie fuoloa 'i he funga 'o e fonuá ni; pea 'e 'ikai ha me'a, tuku kehe pē 'a e fai angahala 'iate kinautolú, te ne maumau'i pe veuveuki 'a enau tu'umālie 'i he funga 'o e fonuá ni 'o ta'engata.

32 Ko ia, kapau te ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí, kuo fakatapui 'e he 'Eikí 'a e fonuá ni ke malu'i ai 'a ho hakó fakataha mo e hako 'o hoku fohá.

And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that ye must obey. But behold, it was not he, but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it.

And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, yea, even my first blessing.

But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, yea, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

And now, Zoram, I speak unto you: Behold, thou art the servant of Laban; nevertheless, thou hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and I know that thou art a true friend unto my son, Nephi, forever.

Wherefore, because thou hast been faithful thy seed shall be blessed with his seed, that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land; and nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever.

Wherefore, if ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of thy seed with the seed of my son.

2 Nīfai 2

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, 'e Sēkope, 'oku ou lea kiate koe: Ko koe 'a hoku 'uluaki foha 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o 'eku mamahi 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá. Pea vakai, 'i ho'oku kei si'í, na'á ke fepaki mo e ngaahi faingata 'a 'iá mo e mamahi lahi, koe'uhi ko e anga-mālohi 'a ho ngaahi tokouá.
- 2 Ka neongo iá, 'e Sēkope, ko hoku 'uluaki foha 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'okú ke 'ilo 'a e māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá; pea te ne fakatapui 'a ho'oku ngaahi faingata 'a 'iá ke hoko ko ha tāpuaki kiate koe.
- 3 Ko ia, 'e monū'ia 'a ho laumālié, pea te ke nofo malu mo ho tokoua, ko Nīfai; pea 'e faka'aonga 'i ho ngaahi 'ahó 'i he tauhi ki ho 'Otuá. Ko ia, 'oku ou 'ilo kuo huhu 'i koe, koe'uhi ko e mā'oni'oni 'a ho Huhu'í; he kuó ke vakai 'e hā'ele mai ia 'i he kakato 'o e ngaahi kuongá ke 'omi 'a e fakamo'uí ki he fá'ahinga 'o e tangatá.
- 4 Pea kuó ke mamata 'i ho'oku kei si'í ki hono nāunaú; ko ia, kuo tāpuaki 'i koe 'o hangē foki ko kinautolu te ne ngāue ki ai 'i he kakanó; he 'oku tatau 'a e Laumālié, 'i he 'aneafí, mo e 'aho ní, pea ta'engata. Pea kuo teuteu 'a e hala talu mei he hinga 'a e tangatá, pea 'oku ta'etotongi 'a e fakamo'uí.
- 5 Pea kuo akonaki 'i 'a e tangatá 'o fe'unga koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo 'i 'a e leleí mei he koví. Pea kuo tuku 'a e fonó ki he tangatá. Pea 'oku 'ikai ke fakatonuhia 'i ha taha fakakakano 'i he fonó; pe, 'oku motuhi atu 'i he fonó 'a e tangatá. Io, kuo motuhi atu 'a kinautolu 'i he fono fakamāmani; pea ko e tahá foki, 'i he fono fakalaumālié 'oku nau 'auha 'i hono motuhi atu 'a kinautolu mei he me'a 'oku leleí, pea mamahi 'o ta'engata.
- 6 Ko ia, 'oku fou mai 'a e huhu'í 'o tu'unga 'i he Mīsaia Mā'oni'oni; he 'oku fonu ia 'i he 'alo'ofa mo e mo'oni.
- 7 Vakai, 'okú ne 'oatu ia ke hoko ko ha feilaulau koe'uhi ko e angahalá, ke fakakakato 'a e ngaahi tu'utu'uni 'a e fonó, mā'anautolu kotoa pē 'oku ma'u 'a e loto-mafesifesi mo e laumālie fakatomalá; pea 'oku 'ikai lava 'e ha tokotaha 'o fakakakato 'a e ngaahi tu'utu'uni 'a e fonó.

2 Nephi 2

And now, Jacob, I speak unto you: Thou art my first-born in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness. And behold, in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow, because of the rudeness of thy brethren.

Nevertheless, Jacob, my firstborn in the wilderness, thou knowest the greatness of God; and he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain.

Wherefore, thy soul shall be blessed, and thou shalt dwell safely with thy brother, Nephi; and thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God. Wherefore, I know that thou art redeemed, because of the righteousness of thy Redeemer; for thou hast beheld that in the fulness of time he cometh to bring salvation unto men.

And thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory; wherefore, thou art blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh; for the Spirit is the same, yesterday, today, and forever. And the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is free.

And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men. And by the law no flesh is justified; or, by the law men are cut off. Yea, by the temporal law they were cut off; and also, by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good, and become miserable forever.

Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; for he is full of grace and truth.

Behold, he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered.

8 Ko ia, 'oku mahu'inga lahi ke fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'á ni ki he kakai 'oku nofo 'i he māmaní, koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo'í 'oku 'ikai ha taha 'e lava 'o nofo 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, kae ngata pē 'i he ngaahi ngāue mā'oni'oni, mo e 'alo'ofa, mo e manava'ofa 'a e Mīsaia Mā'oni'oni, 'a ia 'e tuku hifo 'a 'ene mo'uí 'o fakatautu ki he kakanó, pea toe to'o hake ia 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālié, koe'uhi ke ne fakahoko 'a e toetu'u 'o e maté, ko e 'uluaki ia 'a ia 'e toe tu'ú.

9 Ko ia, ko e 'uluaki fua ia ki he 'Otuá, he te ne fai ha taukapo ki he 'Otuá ma'á e fānau 'a e tangatá; pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku tui ki ate iá 'e fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu.

10 Pea ko e me'á 'i he taukapo na'e fai ma'á e kakai fulipē, 'e ha'u ai 'a e kakai fulipē ki he 'Otuá; ko ia te nau tu'u 'i hono 'áo ke fakamāu'í 'e ia 'o fakatautu ki he mo'oni mo e mā'oni'oni 'oku 'iate iá. Ko ia, ko e ngaahi tu'utu'uni 'a e fono kuo fokotu'u 'e he Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni, kuo pau ai ke ne fai ha tautea 'o fakatautu ki he fonó, 'a ia ko e tautea 'oku fehanga'angai mo e fiefia 'oku ma'u 'e ha taha koe'uhi ko 'ene talangofua ki he fonó, pea 'oku ngāue foki 'a e fakalelé 'o fakatautu ki he fono ko iá—

11 He 'oku totonu ke 'i ai, 'a e fehanga'angai 'i he me'á kotoa pē. Ka ne 'ikai ke pehē, 'e hoku 'uluaki foha na'e fanau'í 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'e 'ikai lava 'o fakahoko 'a e angatonú, pe fai angahalá, pe mā'oni'oni pe mamahí, pe leléi pe koví. Ko ia, 'e hangē leva 'a e me'á kotoa pē ko ha me'á pē 'e tahá; ko ia, kapau 'oku taha pē ha me'á 'iate ia pē, kuo pau ke tolonga ia 'o hangē 'oku maté, 'o 'ikai mo'ui pe mate, pe ha 'au'auha pe ta'e-'au'auha, pe ha fiefia pe mamahi, pea 'ikai ha 'ilo pe ta'ema'u ha 'ilo.

12 Ko ia, na'e pau ke fakatupu ia ko ha me'á ta'e'aonga; ko ia kuo 'ikai ke 'i ai ha taumu'a 'o hono fakatupú. Ko ia, 'e hanga 'e he me'á ni 'o faka'auha 'a e poto 'o e 'Otuá mo 'ene ngaahi taumu'a ta'engatá, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e māfima'fi, mo e 'alo'ofa mo e fakamaau totonu 'a e 'Otuá.

Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who layeth down his life according to the flesh, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should rise.

Wherefore, he is the firstfruits unto God, inasmuch as he shall make intercession for all the children of men; and they that believe in him shall be saved.

And because of the intercession for all, all men come unto God; wherefore, they stand in the presence of him, to be judged of him according to the truth and holiness which is in him. Wherefore, the ends of the law which the Holy One hath given, unto the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed, which punishment that is affixed is in opposition to that of the happiness which is affixed, to answer the ends of the atonement—

For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my firstborn in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither good nor bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one; wherefore, if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having no life neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, happiness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility.

Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a thing of naught; wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation. Wherefore, this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his eternal purposes, and also the power, and the mercy, and the justice of God.

13 Pea kapau te mou pehē 'oku 'ikai ha fono, te mou pehē foki 'oku 'ikai ha angahala. Kapau te mou pehē 'oku 'ikai ha angahala, te mou pehē foki 'oku 'ikai ha mā'oni'oni. Pea kapau 'oku 'ikai ha mā'oni'oni, 'oku 'ikai ha fiefia. Pea kapau 'oku 'ikai ha mā'oni'oni pe fiefia tā 'oku 'ikai ha tautea pe mamahi. Pea kapau 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha 'Otua. Pea kapau 'oku 'ikai ha 'Otua, 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai 'a kitautolu, pe ko e māmaní; he kuo 'ikai lava 'o hoko ha fakatupu 'o ha ngaahi me'a, pea na'e 'ikai 'i ai ha me'a ke ngāue pe ngāue'i; ko ia, kuo pau ke mole atu 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē.

14 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku ngaahi foha, 'oku ou fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi me'á ni koe'uhi ke 'aonga kiate kimoutolu pea mou ako ai; he 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otua, pea kuó ne fakatupu 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē, 'a e langí mo e māmaní fakatou'osi, pea mo e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku 'i ai, 'a e ngaahi me'a ke ngāue pe ngāue'í fakatou'osi.

15 Pea ke fakahoko ai 'a 'ene ngaahi taumu'a ta'engata ki he iku'anga faka'osi 'o e fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá, hili 'ene ngaohi 'a 'etau 'uluaki ongo mātu'á, mo e fanga manu 'o e fonuá mo e fanga manupuna 'o e 'ataá, pea ko hono fakakātoá, ko e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuo fakatupú, na'e totonu ke 'i ai ha fehangahangai; 'io 'a e fua tapu 'oku fehangahangai mo e 'akau 'o e mo'uí; ko e taha na'e melie mo e taha na'e mahi.

16 Ko ia, na'e tuku 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ki he tangatá 'a e tau'atāina ke ne fili ma'ana. Ko ia, 'e 'ikai lava ke fili 'a e tangatá 'o kapau 'e 'ikai fakatauele'i ia 'e he me'a 'e taha, pe ko e me'a kehe.

17 Pea ko au, Lihai, hangē ko e ngaahi me'a kuó u laú, 'oku tonu ke u pehē kuo tō mei he langí ha 'āngelo 'a e 'Otua, 'o hangē ko ia kuo tohí; ko ia na'á ne hoko ko ha tēvolo, he kuó ne feinga ke fai 'a e ngaahi me'a 'oku kovi 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá.

18 Pea ko e me'a 'i he'ene tō mei he langí, 'o ne hoko 'o mamahi 'o ta'engata, ko ia kuó ne feinga ai ke mamahi foki mo e kotoa 'o e fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá. Ko ia, na'á ne pehē kia 'Ivi, 'io 'a e ngata motu'a, 'a ia ko e tēvoló, 'a ia ko e tamai 'a e ngaahi loi kotoa pē, ko ia na'á ne pehē: Kai 'a e fua tapú, pea 'e 'ikai te ke mate, kā te ke hangē ko e 'Otuá, 'o 'ilo'i 'a e lelei mo e kovi.

And if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin. If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness. And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. And if these things are not there is no God. And if there is no God we are not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act nor to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have vanished away.

And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon.

And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.

And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, must needs suppose that an angel of God, according to that which is written, had fallen from heaven; wherefore, he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before God.

And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. Wherefore, he said unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the father of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die, but ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil.

19 Pea 'i he hili 'a e kai 'e 'Ātama mo 'Ivi 'a e fua tapú,
na'e kapusi 'a kinaua mei he ngoue 'o 'Ītení, ke ngoue 'i 'a
e kelekelé.

20 Pea kuó na fakatupu ha fānau; 'io, 'a e fāмили 'o e
māmaní kotoa.

21 Pea na'e fakalōloa 'i 'a e ngaahi 'aho 'o e fānau 'a e
tangatá, 'o fakatatau ki he finangalo 'o e 'Otuá, koe'uhi
ke nau lava 'o fakatomala lolotonga 'enau mo'uí 'i he
kakanó; ko ia, na'e hoko 'a 'enau mo'uí ko ha taimi 'o e
sivi'i, pea na'e fakalōloa 'i 'a 'enau mo'uí koe'uhi ke nau
ma'u ai ha faingamālie ke nau tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau
na'e foaki 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ki he fānau 'a e tangatá.
He na'á ne tuku 'a e ngaahi fekau ke fakatomala 'a e
kakai fulipē; he na'á ne fakahā ki he kakai fulipē kuo
nau mole ko e tupu 'i he maumau-fono 'a 'enau ongo
mātu'á.

22 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, kā ne 'ikai maumau-fono 'a 'Ātama
pehē kuo 'ikai te ne hinga, kā kuó ne nofo 'i he ngoue 'o
'Ītení. Pea ko e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuo fakatupú te
nau 'i he anga pē ko ia na'a nau 'i ai 'i he hili honau
fakatupú; pea kuo pau ke nau 'i he anga pē ko iá 'o
ta'engata, pea 'ikai hano ngata'anga.

23 Pea kuo 'ikai te na ma'u ha fānau; ko ia, te na nofo ai 'i
ha anga-ta'ehalaia, 'o 'ikai ma'u ha fiefia, he na'e 'ikai te
na 'ilo'i ha mamahi; 'o 'ikai fai ha lelei, he na'e 'ikai te na
'ilo'i ha angahala.

24 Kae vakai, kuo fai 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'i he potu
'o ia 'okú ne 'afio 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē.

25 Na'e hinga 'a 'Ātamá koe'uhi ke 'i ai 'a e fa'ahinga 'o e
tangatá; pea 'oku 'i ai 'a e fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá koe'uhi
ke nau ma'u 'a e fiefiá.

26 Pea 'e hā'ele mai 'a e Mīsaia 'i he kakato 'o e ngaahi
kuongá, koe'uhi ke ne huhu 'i 'a e fānau 'a e fa'ahinga 'o e
tangatá mei he hinga. Pea ko e me'a 'i hono huhu 'i 'a
kinautolu mei he hinga kuo nau hoko ai 'o tau'atāina 'o
ta'engata, 'o nau 'ilo'i 'a e lelei mei he koví; ke fili
ma'anautolu pē kae 'ikai fakamālohi 'i ke ngāue 'i ha
fa'ahinga founga, tuku kehe pē 'i hono tautea 'i 'e he
fonó 'i he fu'u 'aho lahi mo faka'osi ko ia 'e fakamāu 'i ai
'e he 'Otuá 'a e kakai kotoa pē, 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi
fekau kuo foaki mai 'e he 'Otuá.

And after Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbid-
den fruit they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to
till the earth.

And they have brought forth children; yea, even the
family of all the earth.

And the days of the children of men were prolonged,
according to the will of God, that they might repent
while in the flesh; wherefore, their state became a state
of probation, and their time was lengthened, according
to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto
the children of men. For he gave commandment that all
men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they
were lost, because of the transgression of their parents.

And now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed he
would not have fallen, but he would have remained in
the garden of Eden. And all things which were created
must have remained in the same state in which they
were after they were created; and they must have re-
mained forever, and had no end.

And they would have had no children; wherefore
they would have remained in a state of innocence, hav-
ing no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for
they knew no sin.

But behold, all things have been done in the wisdom
of him who knoweth all things.

Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they
might have joy.

And the Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, that
he may redeem the children of men from the fall. And
because that they are redeemed from the fall they have
become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for
themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the
punishment of the law at the great and last day, accord-
ing to the commandments which God hath given.

- 27 Ko ia, 'oku tau'atāina 'a e tangatá 'o fakatatau ki he kakanó; pea kuo foaki 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kiate kinautolu 'a ia 'oku 'aonga ki he tangatá. Pea 'oku nau tau'atāina ke fili 'a e tau'atāina mo e mo'ui ta'engatá, tu'unga 'i he fakalaloa lahi 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá, pe fili 'a e pōpula mo e maté, 'i he'enua pōpula mo mo'ulaloa ki he mālohi 'o e tēvoló; he 'okú ne feinga ke mamahi 'a e tangata kotoa pē 'o hangē pē ko iá.
- 28 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku ngaahi foha, 'oku ou loto ke mou sio ki he Fakalaloa lahi, pea tokanga ki he'ene ngaahi fekau mahu'ingá; pea tui faivelenga ki he'ene ngaahi folofolá, pea fili 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá, 'o fakatatau ki he finangalo 'o hono Laumālie Mā'oni'oni;
- 29 Kae 'ikai fili 'a e mate ta'engatá 'a ia 'oku fakatatau mo ho'omou ngaahi holi fakakakanó pea mo e kovi 'a ia 'oku 'i aí, 'a ia 'okú ne foaki ki he laumālie 'o e tēvoló 'a e mālohi ke fakapōpula 'i 'a kimoutolu, koe'uhí ke taki hifo 'a kimoutolu ki heli, koe'uhí ke ne pule 'i 'a kimoutolu 'i hono pule'anga 'o'oná.
- 30 Kuó u lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea si'i ko 'eni kiate kimoutolu kotoa pē, 'e hoku ngaahi foha, 'i he ngaahi 'aho faka'osi 'o hoku sivi'i; pea kuó u fili 'a e me'a lelei, 'o fakatatau mo e ngaahi lea 'a e palōfitá. Pea 'oku 'ikai ha'aku taumu'a kehe ki he'eku fakahā atu 'eni, kā koe'uhi pē ko e lelei ta'engata 'a homou laumālié. 'Ēmeni.

Wherefore, men are free according to the flesh; and all things are given them which are expedient unto man. And they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death, according to the captivity and power of the devil; for he seeketh that all men might be miserable like unto himself.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should look to the great Mediator, and hearken unto his great commandments; and be faithful unto his words, and choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit;

And not choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh and the evil which is therein, which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own kingdom.

I have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; and I have chosen the good part, according to the words of the prophet. And I have none other object save it be the everlasting welfare of your souls. Amen.

2 Nīfai 3

- 1 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou lea kiate koe, 'e Siosefa, ko hoku foha na'e fanau'i fakamuimuí. Na'e fā'ele'i koe 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoa 'a ia na'á ku kātekina ai 'a e ngaahi faingata'a'ia; 'io, 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o 'eku mamahi lahi tahá na'e fanau'i ai koe 'e ho'o fa'éé.
- 2 Pea 'ofa ke fakatapui foki 'e he 'Eikí mo'ó u 'a e fonuá ni, 'a ia ko ha fonua fungani mahu'inga, ke hoko ko ho tofi'a mo e tofi'a 'o ho hakó fakataha mo ho ngaahi tokouá, koe'uhi ke ke nofo malu ai 'o ta'engata, 'o kapau te ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí.
- 3 Pea ko 'eni, 'e Siosefa, ko hoku foha na'e fanau'i fakamuimuí, 'a ia kuó u 'omi mei he feitu'u maomaonganoa 'a ia na'á ku kātekina ai 'a e ngaahi faingata'a'ia, 'ofa ke tāpuaki'i koe 'e he 'Eikí 'o ta'engata, he 'e 'ikai faka'auha 'o 'osi'osingamālie 'a ho hakó.
- 4 He vakai, ko e fua 'o hoku manava koe; pea ko e hako au 'o Siosefa 'a ia na'e 'ave pōpula ki 'Isipité. Pea na'e mahu'inga 'a e ngaahi fuakava na'e fai 'e he 'Eikí kia Siosefá.
- 5 Ko ia, na'e mamata mo'oni mai 'a Siosefa ki hotau 'ahó. Pea na'á ne ma'u ha tala'ofa mei he 'Eikí, 'e fakatupu 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá mei he fua 'o hono manavá ha va'a mā'oni'oni 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí; 'ikai ko e Mīsaia, ka ko ha va'a 'e fesi'i, ka neongo ia, 'e manatu'i 'i he ngaahi fuakava 'a e 'Eikí ke fakahā 'a e Mīsaia kiate kinautolu 'i he ngaahi 'aho faka'osi, 'i he laumālie 'o e mālohi, pea 'e taki mai ai 'a kinautolu mei he po'ulí ki he māmá—'io mei he po'uli matolú, pea mei he nofo pōpulá ki he tau'atāiná.
- 6 He ko e mo'oni na'e fakamo'oni 'e Siosefa, 'o pehē: 'E fokotu'u hake 'e he 'Eiki ko hoku 'Otuá, ha tangata kikite, 'a ia 'e hoko ko ha tangata kikite mahu'inga ki he fua 'o hoku manavá.

2 Nephi 3

And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born. Thou wast born in the wilderness of mine afflictions; yea, in the days of my greatest sorrow did thy mother bear thee.

And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most precious land, for thine inheritance and the inheritance of thy seed with thy brethren, for thy security forever, if it so be that ye shall keep the commandments of the Holy One of Israel.

And now, Joseph, my last-born, whom I have brought out of the wilderness of mine afflictions, may the Lord bless thee forever, for thy seed shall not utterly be destroyed.

For behold, thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom.

For Joseph truly testified, saying: A seer shall the Lord my God raise up, who shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my loins.

- 7 'Io, ko e mo'oni na'e pehē 'e Siosefa: Ko ia na'e folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí kiate au: Te u fokotu'u hake ha tangata kikite mahu'inga mei he fua 'o ho manavá; pea 'e faka'apa'apa'i lahi ia 'i he fua 'o ho manavá. Pea te u tuku kiate ia 'a e fekau ke ne fai ha ngāue ma'á e fua 'o ho manavá, 'a ia ko hono kāingá, 'a ia 'e fu'u mahu'inga lahi kiate kinautolu, pea 'i he ngāue ko iá te nau ma'u ai ha 'ilo ki he ngaahi fuakava 'a ia kuó u fai mo ho'o ngaahi tamaí.
- 8 Pea te u tuku kiate ia ha fekau ke 'oua na'á ne fai ha ngāue kehe, kā ko e ngāue pē te u fekau kiate iá. Pea te u hakeaki 'i ia ke ne mā'olunga 'i hoku 'aó; he te ne fai 'a 'eku ngāué.
- 9 Pea 'e lahi ia 'o tatau mo Mōsese, 'a ia kuó u pehē te u fokotu'u hake ma'á u, ke ne fakahaofi 'a hoku kakaí, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli.
- 10 Pea te u fokotu'u hake 'a Mōsese, ke ne fakahaofi 'a ho kakaí mei he fonua 'o 'Isipité.
- 11 Kā te u fokotu'u hake ha tangata kikite mei ho hakó; pea te u foaki kiate ia 'a e mālohi ke ne 'omi 'a 'eku ngaahi leá ki he fua 'o ho manavá—pea 'e 'ikai te ne ako 'i 'eku ngaahi leá pē, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí, kā te ne ngaohi foki 'a kinautolu ke nau tui ki he 'eku lea, 'a ia kuo 'osi tuku kiate kinautolú.
- 12 Ko ia, 'e tohi 'e he fua 'o ho manavá; pea 'e tohi 'e he fua 'o e manava 'o Siutá; pea ko e me'a 'a ia 'e tohi 'e he fua 'o ho manavá, pea mo ia 'a ia 'e tohi 'e he fua 'o e manava 'o Siutá, 'e fakataha 'i ia, ke veuveuki 'a e ngaahi tokāteline halá, pea fakangata 'a e ngaahi fakakikihí, pea fokotu'u 'a e melinó 'i he fua 'o ho manavá, pea fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e 'ilo ki he 'enau ngaahi tamaí 'i he ngaahi 'aho faka'osí, kae 'uma'ā mo e 'ilo ki he 'eku ngaahi fuakavá, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí.
- 13 Pea 'e fakamālohi ia 'i he vaivaí, 'i he 'aho ko ia 'e kamata ai 'a 'eku ngāué 'i hoku kakai kotoa pē, pea 'e toe fokotu'u ai 'a koe, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí.
- 14 Pea na'e kikite pehē 'e Siosefa, 'o pehē: Vakai, 'e tāpuaki 'i 'a e tangata kikite ko iá 'e he 'Eikí; pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'e feinga ke faka'auha iá 'e veuveuki 'a kinautolu; he ko e tala'ofa ko 'eni 'a ia kuó u ma'u mei he 'Eikí, ki he fua 'o hoku manavá, 'e fakahoko ia. Vakai, 'oku ou 'ilo 'i pau 'e fakahoko 'a e tala'ofa ko 'ení;

Yea, Joseph truly said: Thus saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers.

And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.

And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt.

But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins—and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.

Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord.

And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.

And thus prophesied Joseph, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;

15 Pea ko hono hingoá 'e tatau mo au; pea 'e tatau ia mo e hingoa 'o 'ene tamaí. Pea te ne tatau pē mo au; koe'uhi ko e me'a 'e fakahoko 'e he 'Eikí 'i hono nimá, 'i he mālohi 'o e 'Eikí, 'e 'omi ai 'a hoku kakaí ki he fakamo'uí.

16 'Io, na'e kikite pehē 'e Siosefa: 'Oku ou 'ilo 'i pau 'e hoko 'a e me'á ni, 'o hangē foki ko 'eku 'ilo pau ki he tala'ofa 'e tupu hake 'a Mōsesé; he kuo folofola 'aki 'e he 'Eikí kiate au, Te u fakatolonga ho hakó 'o ta'engata.

17 Pea kuo folofola 'e he 'Eikí: Te u fokotu'u hake ha Mōsesé; pea te u tuku kiate ia 'a e mālohi 'i hono tokotokó; pea te u foaki kiate ia 'a e mālohi ke ne tohi ha ngaahi lao 'oku lelé. Kā 'e 'ikai te u tuku ke poto 'i he leá, koe'uhi ke ne lea 'o lahi, koe'uhi 'e 'ikai te u ngaohi ia ke hoko ko ha tokotaha lea mālohi. Kā te u tohi 'eku fonó ma'ana, 'aki 'a e tuhu 'o hoku nima 'o'okú; pea te u foaki ha tangata lea ma'ana.

18 Pea na'e folofola 'e he 'Eikí kiate au foki: Te u fokotu'u hake ha tangata kikite mei he fua 'o ho manavá; pea te u foaki ha tangata lea ma'ana. Pea ko au, vakai, te u tuku kiate ia ha mālohi ke ne tohi ki he fua 'o ho manavá 'a e tohi 'o e fua 'o ho manavá; pea ko e tangata lea mei he fua 'o ho manavá te ne fakahā iá.

19 Pea ko e ngaahi lea te ne tohi ko e ngaahi lea ia kuó u pehē 'oku mahu'inga ke 'alu atu ki he fua 'o ho manavá. Pea 'e hangē ia kuo kalanga mai 'a e fua 'o ho manavá mei he efú kiate kinautolu; he 'oku ou 'ilo 'i 'a 'enau tuí.

20 Pea te nau kalanga mei he efú; 'io, 'aki 'a e fakatomala ki honau kāingá, 'io 'o ka 'osi atu ha ngaahi ta'u lahi meiate kinautolu. Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e 'alu atu 'a 'enau kalangá, koe'uhi ko e mahinongofua 'o 'enau ngaahi leá.

21 Ko e me'a 'i he 'enau tuí 'e 'alu atu 'i hoku ngutú 'a 'enau ngaahi leá ki honau kāingá 'a ia ko e fua 'o ho manavá; pea te u liliu 'a e vaivai 'o 'enau ngaahi leá ke mālohi 'i he 'enau tuí, pea te u manatu 'i ai 'a 'eku fuakava na'á ku fai ki ho'ngaahi kuí.

22 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'e hoku foha ko Siosefa, ko e anga 'eni 'o e kikite na'e fai 'e he 'eku kui 'o e kuonga mu'á.

23 Ko ia, ko e me'a 'i he fuakava ko 'ení kuo tāpuaki 'i ai koe; koe'uhi 'e 'ikai faka'auha ho hakó, he te nau tokanga ki he ngaahi lea 'o e tohi.

And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.

Yea, thus prophesied Joseph: I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve thy seed forever.

And the Lord hath said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod; and I will give judgment unto him in writing. Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of mine own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him.

And the Lord said unto me also: I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it.

And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins. And it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust; for I know their faith.

And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simpleness of their words.

Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth unto their brethren who are the fruit of thy loins; and the weakness of their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers.

And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my father of old prophesy.

Wherefore, because of this covenant thou art blessed; for thy seed shall not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

24 Pea 'e tupu hake 'iate kinautolu ha tokotaha 'e mālohi, 'a ia te ne fai ha ngāue lelei lahi, 'i he lea, pea 'i he ngāue fakatou 'osi, 'o hoko ko ha me'angāue 'i he to'ukupu 'o e 'Otuá, 'i he tui lahi, ke fai ha ngaahi me'a fakaofa lalahi, mo fai 'a e me'a ko ia 'oku hakeaki 'i mo mā'olunga 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, pea 'e fakafoki ai ha ngaahi me'a lahi ki he fale 'o 'Isilelí, pea ki he hako 'o ho ngaahi ta'oketé.

25 Pea ko 'eni, 'okú ke monū 'ia koe, 'e Siosefa. Vakai, 'okú ke kei si 'i; ko ia tokanga ki he ngaahi lea 'a ho tokoua, ko Nifaí, pea 'e fakahoko 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuó u lea'aki 'o kau kiate koé. Manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ho 'o tamai 'oku ofi ke ne pekiá. 'Ēmeni.

And there shall rise up one mighty among them, who shall do much good, both in word and in deed, being an instrument in the hands of God, with exceeding faith, to work mighty wonders, and do that thing which is great in the sight of God, unto the bringing to pass much restoration unto the house of Israel, and unto the seed of thy brethren.

And now, blessed art thou, Joseph. Behold, thou art little; wherefore hearken unto the words of thy brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto thee even according to the words which I have spoken. Remember the words of thy dying father. Amen.

2 Nīfai 4

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, ko au, Nīfai, 'oku ou lea 'o kau ki he ngaahi kikite kuo lea ki ai 'a 'eku tamaí, 'o kau kia Siosefa, 'a ia na'e 'ave ki 'Isipité.
- 2 He vakai, na'á ne kikite mo'oni 'o kau ki hono hako kotoa pē. Pea 'oku 'ikai ke lahi ha ngaahi kikite 'oku mahu'inga ange 'i he ngaahi kikite na'á ne tohí. Pea na'á ne kikite 'o kau kiate kitautolu, pea mo hotau hako 'amuí; pea kuo tohi ia 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá.
- 3 Ko ia, 'i he faka'osi 'e he'eku tamaí 'ene lea ki he ngaahi kikite 'a Siosefá, na'á ne tānaki fakataha mai 'a e fānau 'a Leimaná, 'a hono ngaahi fohá, mo hono ngaahi 'ofefiné, 'o ne pehē kiate kinautolu: Vakai, 'e hoku ngaahi foha mo hoku ngaahi 'ofefine, 'a ia ko e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o hoku 'uluaki fohá, 'oku ou loto ke mou fakafanongo ki he'eku ngaahi leá.
- 4 He kuo folofola 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá: 'E fakatatau ki ho'omou tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú, 'a ho'omou tu'umālie 'i he fonuá; pea kapau 'e 'ikai te mou tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú 'e motuhi atu 'a kimoutolu mei hoku 'aó.
- 5 Kae vakai, 'e hoku ngaahi foha mo hoku ngaahi 'ofefine, 'oku 'ikai te u fa'a lava ke 'alu hifo ki hoku fa'itoká kae 'oua kuó u tuku ha tāpuaki kiate kimoutolu; he vakai, 'oku ou 'ilo'i kapau 'oku akonekina 'a kimoutolu 'i he hala 'oku totonu ke mou fou aí 'e 'ikai te mou afe mei ai.
- 6 Ko ia, kapau kuo fakamala'ia 'i 'a kimoutolu, vakai, 'oku ou tuku 'eku tāpuakí kiate kimoutolu, koe'uhí ke lava 'o to'atu meiate kimoutolu 'a e fakamala'ia pea 'eke'i ia mei he 'ulu 'o ho'omou ongo mātu'á.
- 7 Ko ia, ko e mé'a 'i he'eku tāpuakí 'e 'ikai ke tuku 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ke mou mate; ko ia te ne 'alo'ofa kiate kimoutolu pea ki homou hakó 'o ta'engata.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he faka'osi 'e he'eku tamaí 'ene lea ki he ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o Leimaná, na'á ne kole ke 'omi 'a e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o Lēmiuelá kiate ia.

2 Nephi 4

And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my father hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt.

For behold, he truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. And he prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are written upon the plates of brass.

Wherefore, after my father had made an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph, he called the children of Laman, his sons, and his daughters, and said unto them: Behold, my sons, and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my firstborn, I would that ye should give ear unto my words.

For the Lord God hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

But behold, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for behold, I know that if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart from it.

Wherefore, if ye are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents.

Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever.

And it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking to the sons and daughters of Laman, he caused the sons and daughters of Lemuel to be brought before him.

- 9 Pea na'e lea ia kiate kinautolu, 'o pehē: Vakai, 'e hoku ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine, 'a ia ko e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o hoku foha hono uá; vakai 'oku ou tuku kiate kimoutolu 'a e tāpuaki tatau mo ia kuó u tuku ki he ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o Leimaná, ko ia 'e 'ikai faka'auha 'a kimoutolu ke 'osi'osingamālie, kā 'e tāpuekina homou hakó 'i he iku'angá.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e faka'osi 'e he'eku tamaí 'ene lea kiate kinautolú, vakai, na'á ne lea ki he ngaahi foha 'o 'Isimelí, 'io, pea ki hono fāmilí kotoa.
- 11 Pea hili 'a e faka'osi 'ene lea kiate kinautolú, na'á ne lea kia Samu, 'o pehe: 'Okú ke monū'ia koe, mo ho hakó, he te ke ma'u 'a e fonuá 'o hangē pē ko ho tokoua ko Nīfai. Pea 'e lau ho hakó fakataha mo hono hakó; pea te ke hangē pē ko ho tokouá, pea ko ho hakó 'e tatau mo hono hakó; pea 'e tāpuaki 'i koe 'i ho ngaahi 'ahó kotoa.
- 12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e lea 'eku tamaí ko Līhai kiate kinautolu kotoa pē na'e 'iate iá, 'o fakatatau mo e me'a na'á ne ongo 'i 'i hono lotó pea mo e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí 'a ia na'e 'iate iá, na'á ne faka'au 'o motu'a. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne pekia, pea na'e tanu ia.
- 13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e te'eki 'osi ha ngaahi 'aho lahi mei he'ene pekia, na'e 'ita 'a Leimana mo Lēmiuela mo e ngaahi foha 'o 'Isimelí kiate au koe'uhi ko hono valokí 'i kinautolu 'e he 'Eikí.
- 14 He ko au, Nīfai, na'e ue'i au ke u lea kiate kinautolu 'o fakatatau mo 'ene folofolá; he kuó u lea'aki ha ngaahi me'a lahi kiate kinautolu, pea mo 'eku tamaí foki, 'i he te'eki ai ke ne pekia; pea ko e kongā lahi 'o e ngaahi lea ko iá kuo tohi 'i he ngaahi peleti kehe kuó u ngaohí; pea ko e kongā 'oku kau ki he hisitōliá kuo tohi ia 'i he'eku ngaahi peleti kehé.
- 15 Pea 'oku ou tohi 'i he ngaahi peleti ko 'ení 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a hoku laumālié, mo e ngaahi folofola lahi kuo tongitongi 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá. He 'oku fiefia 'a hoku laumālié 'i he ngaahi folofolá, pea 'oku fakalaulauloto ki ai 'a hoku lotó, pea 'oku tohi ia 'e hoku lotó ke ako mei ai pea 'aonga ki he'eku fānaú.
- 16 Vakai, 'oku fiefia hoku laumālié 'i he ngaahi me'a 'a e 'Eikí; pea 'oku fakalaulauloto ma'u pē 'a hoku lotó ki he ngaahi me'a kuó u mamata mo fanongo ki aí.

And he spake unto them, saying: Behold, my sons and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my second son; behold I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons and daughters of Laman; wherefore, thou shalt not utterly be destroyed; but in the end thy seed shall be blessed.

And it came to pass that when my father had made an end of speaking unto them, behold, he spake unto the sons of Ishmael, yea, and even all his household.

And after he had made an end of speaking unto them, he spake unto Sam, saying: Blessed art thou, and thy seed; for thou shalt inherit the land like unto thy brother Nephi. And thy seed shall be numbered with his seed; and thou shalt be even like unto thy brother, and thy seed like unto his seed; and thou shalt be blessed in all thy days.

And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spoken unto all his household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died, and was buried.

And it came to pass that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me because of the admonitions of the Lord.

For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them, according to his word; for I had spoken many things unto them, and also my father, before his death; many of which sayings are written upon mine other plates; for a more history part are written upon mine other plates.

And upon these I write the things of my soul, and many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass. For my soul delighteth in the scriptures, and my heart pondereth them, and writeth them for the learning and the profit of my children.

Behold, my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard.

17 Pea neongo 'a e fu'u angalelei lahi 'a e 'Eikí, 'i he fakahā mai kiate au 'a 'ene ngaahi ngāue mā'ongo'onga mo fakaofó, ka 'oku kaila 'a hoku lotó: 'Oiauē ko e tangata loto-mamahi ko au! 'Io, 'oku mamahi 'a hoku lotó koe'uhi ko hoku kakanó; 'oku mamahi 'a hoku laumālié koe'uhi ko 'eku ngaahi angahalá.

18 'Oku kāpui au, 'i he ngaahi 'ahi'ahi mo e ngaahi angahala 'a ia 'oku faingofua 'aupito 'eku mo'ua ki aí.

19 Pea 'o kau ka holi ke fiefia, 'oku tangi 'a hoku lotó koe'uhi ko 'eku ngaahi angahalá; ka neongo iá, 'oku ou 'ilo'í 'a ia 'oku ou falala ki aí.

20 Kuo hoko 'a hoku 'Otuá ko hoku poupou; kuó ne tataki au 'i he'eku ngaahi mamahi 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá; pea kuó ne malu'í au 'i he ngaahi vai 'o e fu'u moana lolotó.

21 Kuó ne fakafonu au 'aki 'a 'ene 'ofá 'o a'u ki he'ene makupusi kotoa hoku sinó.

22 Kuó ne ikuna'í kātóa 'a hoku ngaahi filí, 'o a'u ki he'ene ngaohi 'a kinautolu ke nau tetetete 'i hoku 'aó.

23 Vakai, kuó ne fanongo ki he'eku tangi 'i he 'ahó, pea kuó ne foaki kiate au 'a e 'ilo'í he ngaahi me'a-hā-mai 'i he po'ulí.

24 Pea 'i he 'ahó kuó u faka'au 'o loto-to'a 'i he'eku ngaahi lotu lahi kiate iá; 'io, kuó u hiki hake hoku le'ó ki he langí 'i he lotu; pea na'e 'alu hifo 'a e kau 'āngeló 'o tauhi au.

25 Pea kuo 'ave hoku sinó 'i he ngaahi kapakau 'o hono Laumālié ki ha ngaahi mo'unga mā'olunga 'aupito. Pea kuo mamata 'a hoku ongo matá ki ha ngaahi fu'u me'a lalahi, 'io, 'o lalahi ange 'i he me'a 'oku fe'unga ke māta'ia 'e he tangatá; ko ia na'e fekau'í au ke 'oua na'á ku tohi ia.

26 Ko ia, kapau kuó u mamata ki ha ngaahi me'a lalahi pehē, kapau kuo 'a'ahi 'a e 'Eikí 'i he'ene āfeitaualalo lahi pehē faú ki he fānau 'a e tangatá 'i he'ene 'alo'ofa lahi peheé, ko e hā 'e tangi ai 'a hoku lotó pea nofo ai 'a hoku laumālié 'i he tele'a 'o e mamahí, pea vaivai 'a hoku sinó, pea mole mo hoku iví, koe'uhi ko hoku ngaahi faingata 'a iá?

Nevertheless, notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord, in showing me his great and marvelous works, my heart exclaimeth: O wretched man that I am! Yea, my heart sorroweth because of my flesh; my soul grieveth because of mine iniquities.

I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me.

And when I desire to rejoice, my heart groaneth because of my sins; nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted.

My God hath been my support; he hath led me through mine afflictions in the wilderness; and he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep.

He hath filled me with his love, even unto the consuming of my flesh.

He hath confounded mine enemies, unto the causing of them to quake before me.

Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the night-time.

And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him; yea, my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me.

And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And mine eyes have beheld great things, yea, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them.

O then, if I have seen so great things, if the Lord in his condescension unto the children of men hath visited men in so much mercy, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in the valley of sorrow, and my flesh waste away, and my strength slacken, because of mine afflictions?

27 Pea ko e hā te u tuku ai au ke u mo'ulaloa ki he angahalá koe'uhi ko hoku kakanó? 'Io, ko e hā te u tukulolo ai ki he ngaahi 'ahi'ahi, koe'uhi kae lava 'e he tokotaha angakoví 'o ma'u ha mālohi kiate au 'o maumau 'i 'a 'eku melinó, pea fakamamahi 'i 'a hoku laumālié? Ko e hā 'oku ou 'ita ai koe'uhi ko hoku filí?

28 'Ā hake, 'e hoku laumālie! 'Oua te ke toe vaivai koe'uhi ko e angahalá. Fiefia, 'e hoku loto, pea 'oua na'a toe tuku ki he fili 'o hoku laumālié ke ne 'ahi'ahi 'i au.

29 'Oua 'e toe 'ita koe'uhi ko hoku ngaahi filí. 'Oua na'a ke vaivai koe'uhi ko hoku ngaahi faingata'a'ia.

30 Fiefia, 'e hoku loto, pea lotu ki he 'Eiki, 'o pehē: 'E 'Eiki, te u fakalāngilangi 'i koe 'o ta'engata; 'io, 'e fiefia 'a hoku laumālié 'iate koe, ko hoku 'Otuá, mo e maka 'o hoku fakamo'uí.

31 'E 'Eiki, te ke huhu 'i koā 'a hoku laumālié? Te ke fakahaofi au mei he nima 'o hoku ngaahi filí? Te ke ngaohi au ke u tetetete 'i he hā mai 'a e angahalá.

32 'Ofa ke tāpuni ma'u ai pē 'a e ngaahi matapā 'o helí 'i hoku 'aó, koe'uhi 'oku mafesifesi hoku lotó pea 'oku fakatomala hoku laumālié! 'E 'Eiki, 'oua mu'a te ke tāpuni 'i 'a e ngaahi matapā 'o ho'o mā'oní'oní 'i hoku 'aó, ke u lava 'o 'a'eva 'i he hala 'o e tele'a mā'ulalo, pea ke u nofo ma'u 'i he hala 'ilongofuá!

33 'E 'Eiki, ke ke takatakai au 'aki 'a e pulupulu 'o ho'o mā'oní'oní! 'E 'Eiki, ke ke tofa ha hala ke u hao ai mei hoku ngaahi filí! Ke ke fakahinohino 'i mai 'a e hala ke u fou ai! 'Oua na'a ke 'ai ha maka-tūkia'anga 'i hoku halá—ka ke ke faka'ata'atā hoku halá 'i mu'a 'iate au, pea 'oua 'e tāpuni 'i hoku halá, ka ko e ngaahi hala pē 'o hoku filí.

34 'E 'Eiki, kuó u falala kiate koe, pea te u falala kiate koe 'o ta'engata. 'E 'ikai te u falala ki he nima 'o e kakanó; he 'oku ou 'ilo 'i 'oku mala'ia ia 'okú ne falala ki he nima 'o e kakanó. 'Io, 'oku mala'ia ia 'okú ne tuku 'ene falalá ki he tangatá pe 'okú ne ngaohi 'a e kakanó ke hoko ko hono nimá.

And why should I yield to sin, because of my flesh? Yea, why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul? Why am I angry because of mine enemy?

Awake, my soul! No longer droop in sin. Rejoice, O my heart, and give place no more for the enemy of my soul.

Do not anger again because of mine enemies. Do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions.

Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; yea, my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my salvation.

O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul? Wilt thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies? Wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin?

May the gates of hell be shut continually before me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is contrite! O Lord, wilt thou not shut the gates of thy righteousness before me, that I may walk in the path of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain road!

O Lord, wilt thou encircle me around in the robe of thy righteousness! O Lord, wilt thou make a way for mine escape before mine enemies! Wilt thou make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not place a stumbling block in my way—but that thou wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up my way, but the ways of mine enemy.

O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putteth his trust in the arm of flesh. Yea, cursed is he that putteth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm.

35 'Io, 'oku ou 'ilo 'e foaki lahi 'e he 'Otuá kiate ia 'oku kolé. 'Io, 'e foaki 'e hoku 'Otuá kiate au, 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te u kole ta'etotonu; ko ia te u hiki hake hoku le'ó kiate koe; 'io, te u tangi kiate koe, ko hoku 'Otuá, ko e maka 'o 'eku mā'oni'oni. Vakai, 'e hiki hake ma'u ai pē 'a hoku le'ó kiate koe, ko hoku maká pea mo hoku 'Otuá Ta'engatá. 'Ēmeni.

Yea, I know that God will give liberally to him that asketh. Yea, my God will give me, if I ask not amiss; therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee; yea, I will cry unto thee, my God, the rock of my righteousness. Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee, my rock and mine everlasting God. Amen.

2 Nīfai 5

- 1 Vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē, ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku lotu lahi ki he 'Eiki ko hoku 'Otuá, koe'uhi ko e 'ita 'a hoku ongo tokouá.
- 2 Kae vakai, na'e 'āsili 'o lahi ange 'a 'ena 'ita kiate aú, 'o tupu ai ha'ana feinga ke to'o 'eku mo'uí.
- 3 'Io, na'á na lāunga koe'uhi ko au, 'o pehē: 'Oku 'amanaki 'e homa tehiná ke pule kiate kimaua; pea kuo hoko 'a e fu'u faingata'a lahi kiate kimaua koe'uhi ko ia; ko ia, ta tāmata'i 'eni ia, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a toe fakamamahi'i 'a kimaua 'i he ngaahi me'a 'okú ne fakahā maí. He vakai, 'e 'ikai te ma tuku ke ne hoko ko homa pule; he 'oku 'omaua, 'a ia ko hono ongo tokouá, ke ma pule ki he kakai ni.
- 4 Ko 'eni 'oku 'ikai te u tohi 'i he ngaahi peletí ni 'a e ngaahi lea kotoa pē na'á na lāunga ai koe'uhi ko aú. Ka 'oku fe'unga kiate au ke pehē, na'á na feinga ke to'o 'eku mo'uí.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eiki 'o fakatokanga kiate au, Nīfai, ke u hiki meiate kinautolu, 'o hola ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá pea 'ave mo kinautolu kotoa pē 'e fie 'alu mo aú.
- 6 Ko ia, na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku 'ave hoku fāmilí, mo Sōlami foki mo hono fāmilí, mo Samu, ko hoku ta'oketé mo hono fāmilí, mo Sēkope mo Siosefa, ko hoku ongo tehiná, kae 'uma'ā hoku ngaahi tuofāfiné, pea mo kinautolu kotoa pē na'e lotu ke nau 'alu mo aú. Pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'a ia na'e lotu ke nau 'alu mo aú ko kinautolu ia 'a ia na'a nau tui ki he ngaahi fakatokanga mo e ngaahi fakahā 'a e 'Otuá; ko ia, na'a nau tokanga ki he'eku ngaahi leá
- 7 Pea na'a mau 'ave homau ngaahi fale fehikitakí mo e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē na'a mau lava 'o 'avé, pea mau fononga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'i ha ngaahi 'aho lahi. Pea hili 'emau fononga 'i ha ngaahi 'aho lahi na'a mau fokotu'u homau ngaahi fale fehikitakí.
- 8 Pea na'e lotu 'a hoku kakai ke mau ui 'a e hingoa 'o e potu ko iá ko Nīfai; ko ia, na'a mau ui ia ko Nīfai.
- 9 Pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'a ia na'e iate aú na'a nau lotu ke ui 'a kinautolu ko e kakai 'o Nīfai.

2 Nephi 5

Behold, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cry much unto the Lord my God, because of the anger of my brethren.

But behold, their anger did increase against me, inso-much that they did seek to take away my life.

Yea, they did murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people.

Now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me. But it sufficeth me to say, that they did seek to take away my life.

And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did take my family, and also Zoram and his family, and Sam, mine elder brother and his family, and Jacob and Joseph, my younger brethren, and also my sisters, and all those who would go with me. And all those who would go with me were those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God; wherefore, they did hearken unto my words.

And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

10 Pea na'a mau tokanga ke tauhi ki he ngaahi tu'utu'uni mo e ngaahi fono pea mo e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eiki' i he me'a kotoa pē, 'o fakatatau ki he fono 'a Mōsesé.

11 Pea na'e 'iate kimautolu 'a e 'Eiki; pea na'a mau fu'u tu'umālie lahi; he na'a mau tō 'a e tenga'i 'akau, 'o mau toe utu 'i he mahu. Pea mau kamata ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí, mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí, pea mo e fanga manu 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē.

12 Pea ko au, Nīfai, kuó u 'omi foki mo e ngaahi lekooti 'a ia kuo tongitongi 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá; kae 'uma'ā mo e me'a-fuopotopotó, pe ko e kāpasá, 'a ia na'e teuteu'i ma'a 'eku tamaí 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eiki, 'o fakatatau ki he me'a kuo tohi 'o kau ki ai 'i mu'á.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau faka'au 'o tu'umālie 'aupito, mo tupu 'o tokolahi 'i he fonuá.

14 Pea ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku to'o 'a e heletā 'a Lēpaní, 'o ngaohi 'o fakatatau ki hono sīpingá ha ngaahi heletā lahi, telia na'a ha'u kiate kimautolu 'a e kakai kuo ui 'eni ko e kau Leimaná 'o faka'auha 'a kimautolu; he na'á ku 'ilo'i 'enau fehí'a kiate au mo 'eku fānaú pea mo kinautolu kuo ui ko hoku kakai.

15 Pea na'á ku ako'i 'a hoku kakai ke langa ha ngaahi fale, pea ngāue fakatufunga 'i he ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'aki 'a e 'akau, mo e ukamea, mo e kopa, mo e palasa, mo e sitila, mo e koula, mo e siliva, pea mo e ngaahi ukamea mahu'inga, 'a ia na'e fu'u lahi 'aupito.

16 Pea ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku langa ha temipale; pea u langa ia 'o hangē ko e sīpinga 'o e temipale 'o Solomoné ka na'e 'ikai langa 'aki ia ha ngaahi me'a mahu'inga lahi pehē fau; he na'e 'ikai ke ma'u ia 'i he fonuá, ko ia, na'e 'ikai lava ke ngaohi ia 'o tatau mo e temipale 'o Solomoné. Ka ko e anga 'o hono langá na'e tatau ia mo e temipale 'o Solomoné; pea ko hono ngaohí na'e fu'u lelei 'aupito.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nīfai, na'á ku pule ke fa'a ngāue 'a hoku kakai, 'o ngāue 'aki honau nimá.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau loto ke u hoko ko honau tu'i. Ka ko au Nīfai, na'e 'ikai te u loto ke nau ma'u ha tu'i; ka neongo iá, na'á ku fai ma'anautolu 'o fakatatau ki he me'a na'á ku lavá.

And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things, according to the law of Moses.

And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. And we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.

And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, which was prepared for my father by the hand of the Lord, according to that which is written.

And it came to pass that we began to prosper exceedingly, and to multiply in the land.

And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; for I knew their hatred towards me and my children and those who were called my people.

And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.

And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.

And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

- 19 Pea vakai, kuo fakahoko 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Eiki ki hoku ongo tokouá, 'a ia na'á ne folofola 'aki 'o kau kiate kinauá, 'o pehē te u hoko ko hona pule mo hona faiakó. Ko ia, kuó u hoko ko hona pule mo hona faiako, 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eiki, 'o a'u ki he taimi na'á na feinga ai ke to'ó 'eku mo'uí.
- 20 Ko ia, na'e fakahoko 'a e folofola 'a e 'Eiki 'a ia na'á ne folofola 'aki kiate au, 'o pehē: Kapau 'e 'ikai te na tokanga ki ho'ó ngaahi leá 'e motuhi atu 'a kinaua mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eiki. Pea vakai, na'e motuhi atu 'a kinaua mei hono 'aó.
- 21 Pea kuó ne pule ke hoko mai kiate kinautolu 'a e mala'ia, 'io, ko ha mala'ia fakamamahi, koe'uhi ko 'enau angahalá. He vakai, kuo nau fakafefeka honau lotó kiate ia, pea kuo nau hoko ai 'o tatau mo e maka-afi; ko ia, ko e me'a 'i he 'enau hinehina, mo hoihoifua 'aupito mo matamatalelé, pea koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a nau hoko 'o manakoa 'e hoku kakaí, na'e pule ai 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ke liliu 'o lanu fakapo'upo'uli honau kilí.
- 22 Pea ko ia na'e folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá; Te u pule ke nau hoko ko e fakamamahi ki ho kakaí, 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala mei he 'enau ngaahi angahalá.
- 23 Pea 'e mala'ia 'a e hako 'o ia 'e femali'aki mo honau hakó; koe'uhi 'e fakamala'ia 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e mala'ia tatau pē mo ia. Pea na'e folofola 'aki ia 'e he 'Eiki, pea na'e hoko ia.
- 24 Pea ko e me'a 'i he mala'ia 'a ia na'e 'iate kinautolú, na'a nau hoko ai ko ha kakai fakapikopiko, 'o nau fonu 'i he anga-pau'u mo e kākā, pea nau tuli 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'a e fanga manu fekaí.
- 25 Pea na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá kiate au: Te nau hoko ko e fakamamahi ki ho hakó, koe'uhi ke ue'i hake 'a kinautolu ke nau manatu'i au; pea kapau 'e 'ikai te nau manatu'i au, mo tokanga ki he 'eku ngaahi folofolá, te nau fakamamahi 'i 'a kinautolu 'o a'u ki honau faka'auha.
- 26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Nifai, na'á ku fakanofa 'a Sēkope mo Siosefa, ke na hoko ko ha ongo taula'eiki mo e ongo akonaki ki he fonua kotoa 'o hoku kakaí.
- 27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau nofo 'i he fiefia.

And behold, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spake concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they sought to take away my life.

Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me, saying that: Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto thy words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And behold, they were cut off from his presence.

And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them.

And thus saith the Lord God: I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy people, save they shall repent of their iniquities.

And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done.

And because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey.

And the Lord God said unto me: They shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in remembrance of me; and inasmuch as they will not remember me, and hearken unto my words, they shall scourge them even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did consecrate Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests and teachers over the land of my people.

And it came to pass that we lived after the manner of happiness.

28 Pea kuo 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e tolungofulu mei he taimi
na'a mau 'alu ai mei Selūsalemá.

29 Pea ko au, Nīfai, kuó u tauhi 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'o
hoku kakaí 'i he'eku ngaahi peleti 'a ia kuó u ngaohí, 'o
a'u mai ki he 'ahó ni.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eiki ko e
'Otuá kiate au: Ngaohi ha ngaahi peleti kehe; peá ke
tohi ki ai ha ngaahi me'a lahi kehe 'a ia 'oku ou hōifua ki
ai, koe'uhi ke 'aonga ki ho kakaí.

31 Ko ia, ko au, Nīfai, koe'uhi ke u talangofua ki he
ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí, na'á ku 'alu 'o ngaohi 'a e ngaahi
peleti ko 'eni 'a ia kuó u tohi ki ai 'a e ngaahi me'a ní.

32 Peá u tohi 'a e me'a 'oku hōifua ki ai 'a e 'Otuá. Pea
kapau 'oku lelei'ia 'a hoku kakaí 'i he ngaahi me'a 'a e
'Otuá, te nau sai'ia 'i he'eku ngaahi tongitongi 'a ia 'oku
'i he ngaahi peleti ko 'ení.

33 Pea kapau 'oku fie 'ilo 'a hoku kakaí ki he ngaahi me'a
fakaikiiki ange 'o e hisitōlia 'o hoku kakaí kuo pau ke
nau fakatotolo 'i he'eku ngaahi peleti 'e tahá.

34 Pea 'oku fé'unga kiate au ke u pehē, kuo 'osi atu 'a e
ta'u 'e fāngofulu, pea kuo mau 'osi kau 'i ha ngaahi tau
mo ha ngaahi feke'ike 'i mo homau kāingá.

And thirty years had passed away from the time we
left Jerusalem.

And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my plates,
which I had made, of my people thus far.

And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto me:
Make other plates; and thou shalt engraven many things
upon them which are good in my sight, for the profit of
thy people.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the com-
mandments of the Lord, went and made these plates
upon which I have engraven these things.

And I engraved that which is pleasing unto God.
And if my people are pleased with the things of God
they will be pleased with mine engravings which are
upon these plates.

And if my people desire to know the more particular
part of the history of my people they must search mine
other plates.

And it sufficeth me to say that forty years had passed
away, and we had already had wars and contentions
with our brethren.

2 Nīfai 6

- 1 Ko e ngaahi lea ‘a Sēkope, ko e tokoua ‘o Nīfai, ‘a ia na ‘á ne lea ‘aki ki he kau Nīfai:
- 2 Vakai, ‘e hoku kāinga ‘ofeina, ko au, Sēkope, ko e me‘a ‘i he ui au ‘e he ‘Otuá mo fakanofu ‘o fakatatau ki he founga ‘o hono lakanga toputapú, pea ‘i he fakanofu au ‘e hoku tokoua ko Nīfai, ‘a ia ‘oku mou falala ki ai ko ha tu ‘i pe malu‘í, pea ‘oku mou falala ki ai ke ma‘u ha malu‘í, vakai ‘oku mou ‘ilo kuó u lea kiate kimoutolu ‘aki ha ngaahi me‘a lahi ‘aupito.
- 3 Ka neongo iá, ‘oku ou toe lea kiate kimoutolu; he ‘oku ou tokanga ki he lelei ‘a homou laumālié. ‘Io, ‘oku hulu ‘a ‘eku tokanga kiate kimoutolu; pea ‘oku mou ‘ilo foki kuo pehē ma‘u ai pē ia. He kuó u na ‘ina ‘i kiate kimoutolu ‘i he fu‘u faivelenga kakato, pea kuó u ako ‘i kiate kimoutolu ‘a e ngaahi lea ‘a ‘eku tamaí; pea kuó u lea kiate kimoutolu ‘o kau ki he ngaahi me‘a kotoa pē ‘a ia kuo tohi talu mei he fakatupu ‘o e māmaní.
- 4 Pea ko ‘eni, vakai, ‘oku ou fie lea kiate kimoutolu ‘o kau ki he ngaahi me‘a ‘oku ‘i ai, mo e ngaahi me‘a ‘e hoko mai; ko ia, te u lau kiate kimoutolu ‘a e ngaahi lea ‘a ‘Īsaía. Pea ko e ngaahi lea ia na ‘e faka‘amu hoku tokouá ke u lea ‘aki kiate kimoutolu. Pea ‘oku ou lea kiate kimoutolu koe‘uhi ko ho‘omou lelei, koe‘uhi ke mou ‘ilo‘i pea fakalāngilangi ‘i ‘a e huafa ‘o homou ‘Otuá.
- 5 Pea ko ‘eni, ko e ngaahi folofola te u lau ko e ngaahi lea ia ‘a ‘Īsaia ‘o kau ki he fale kotoa ‘o ‘Isilelí; ko ia, ‘e lava ‘o fakatatau ia kiate kimoutolu, he ‘oku mou ‘o e fale ‘o ‘Isilelí. Pea ‘oku lahi ‘a e ngaahi me‘a kuo lea ‘aki ‘e ‘Īsaia ‘a ia ‘e lava ‘o fakatatau kiate kimoutolu, he ‘oku mou ‘o e fale ‘o ‘Isilelí.
- 6 Pea ko ‘eni, ko e ngaahi folofolá ‘eni: ‘Oku folofola pehē ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá: Vakai, te u hiki hake hoku nimá ki he kau Senitailé, pea fokotu‘u ‘eku fuká ki he kakaí; pea te nau ‘omi ho ngaahi fohá ‘i honau nimá, mo ho ngaahi ‘ofefiné ‘e fua ‘i honau umá.
- 7 Pea ‘e hoko ‘a e ngaahi tu‘í ko ha ngaahi tamai tauhi kiate koe, pea ko honau ngaahi kuiní ko ha ngaahi fá‘ē tauhi kiate koe; te nau punou hifo kiate koe ‘o hanga honau matá ki he kekelelé, pea ‘emo ‘a e efu mei ho va‘é; pea te ke ‘ilo‘i ko au ko e ‘Eiki; koe‘uhi ‘e ‘ikai mā ‘a kinautolu ‘oku tatali kiate aú.

2 Nephi 6

The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spake unto the people of Nephi:

Behold, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, having been called of God, and ordained after the manner of his holy order, and having been consecrated by my brother Nephi, unto whom ye look as a king or a protector, and on whom ye depend for safety, behold ye know that I have spoken unto you exceedingly many things.

Nevertheless, I speak unto you again; for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls. Yea, mine anxiety is great for you; and ye yourselves know that it ever has been. For I have exhorted you with all diligence; and I have taught you the words of my father; and I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world.

And now, behold, I would speak unto you concerning things which are, and which are to come; wherefore, I will read you the words of Isaiah. And they are the words which my brother has desired that I should speak unto you. And I speak unto you for your sakes, that ye may learn and glorify the name of your God.

And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel.

And now, these are the words: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

8 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Sēkope, 'oku ou fie lea si'i 'o kau ki he ngaahi folofolá ni. He vakai, kuo fakahā mai 'e he 'Eiki kiate au ko kinautolu na'e 'i Selūsalemá, 'a ia na'a tau ha'u mei aí, kuo tāmata'e i pe 'ave pōpula 'a kinautolu.

9 Ka neongo iá, kuo fakahā mai 'e he 'Eiki kiate au te nau toe foki mai. Pea kuó ne toe fakahā foki kiate au, 'e fakahā 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá, ko e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí ia 'e ia 'i he kakanó kiate kinautolu; pea hili 'ene fakahā ia 'e iá te nau tautea 'i ia pea kalusefai ia, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a e 'āngelo 'a ia na'e lea 'aki ia kiate aú.

10 Pea hili 'enau fakafefeka honau lotó, 'o fakakekeva honau kiá ki he Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí, vakai, 'e hoko kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí. Pea 'oku ha'u 'a e 'aho 'e tautea 'i mo fakamamahi 'i ai 'a kinautolu.

11 Ko ia, 'o ka hili honau tulifano holó, he na'e pehē 'e he 'āngeló, 'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi te nau faingata 'a ia 'i he kakanó, ka 'e 'ikai tuku ke nau mate, koe'uhi ko e ngaahi lotu 'a e kakai tui faivelengá; 'e fakamovetevete 'i 'a kinautolu, pea te'ia, mo fehī'anekina; ka neongo iá 'e 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Eiki kiate kinautolu, pea 'o ka nau ka ma'u 'a e 'ilo ki honau Huhu'í, 'e toe tānaki fakataha 'a kinautolu ki he ngaahi fonua 'o honau tofi'á.

12 Pea 'oku monū'ia 'a e kau Senitailé, 'a kinautolu na'e tohi 'a e palōfitá 'o kau ki aí; he vakai, kapau te nau fakatomala 'o 'ikai tau 'i 'a Saione, pea 'ikai te nau kau mo e fu'u siasi lahi mo fakalielia ko iá, 'e fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu; koe'uhi 'e fakahoko 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a 'ene ngaahi fuakava kuó ne fai ki he'ene fānaú; pea ko hono 'uhinga 'eni kuo tohi ai 'e he palōfitá 'a e ngaahi me'á ni.

13 Ko ia, ko kinautolu 'oku tau 'i 'a Saione mo e kakai 'o e fuakava 'o e 'Eiki te nau 'emo 'a e efú mei honau va'é; pea 'e 'ikai mā 'a e kakai 'o e 'Eiki. He ko e kakai 'o e 'Eiki 'a kinautolu 'oku tatali kiate iá; he 'oku nau kei tatali ki he hā'ele mai 'a e Mīsaí.

And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.

Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.

And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold, the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted.

Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayers of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated; nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance.

And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things.

Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.

- 14 Pea vakai, hangē ko e ngaahi lea ‘a e palōfitá, ‘e toe kamata ‘e he Mīsaíá ko hono tu‘o ua ke toe fakafoki mai ‘a kinautolu; ko ia, te ne fakahā ia ‘e ia kiate kinautolu ‘i he māfimaſi mo e nāunau lahi, ‘i hono faka‘auha honau ngaahi filí, ‘o ka hokosia ‘a e ‘aho te nau tui ai kiate iá; pea ‘e ‘ikai te ne faka‘auha ha tokotaha ‘a ia ‘oku tui kiate ia.
- 15 Pea ko kinautolu ‘oku ‘ikai tui kiate iá ‘e faka‘auha ‘a kinautolu, ‘aki ‘a e aſi, pea mo e afā fakatou‘osi, pea ‘i he ngaahi mofuike mo e ngaahi lilingi toto, pea ‘i he mahaki faka‘auha, pea ‘i he hongē. Pea te nau ‘ilo‘i ko e ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá ia, ko e Tokotaha Mā‘oni‘oni ‘o ‘Isilelí.
- 16 He ‘e to‘o ‘a e mo‘ulaloá mei he mālohí, pe fakahaofi ‘a e kau pōpula totonú?
- 17 Ka ‘oku folofola peheni ‘e he ‘Eikí: Na‘a mo e kau pōpula ‘a e mālohí ‘e ‘ave ia, pea ‘e fakahaofi ‘a e mo‘ulaloa ‘o e tokotaha fakamanaſaheé; koe‘uhi ‘e fakahaofi ‘e he ‘Otua Māfimaſi ‘a hono kakai ‘o e fuakavá. He ‘oku folofola peheni ‘e he ‘Eikí: Te u tau mo kinautolu ‘oku tau‘i koé—
- 18 Pea te u fafanga ‘a kinautolu ‘oku nau ngaohikovi‘i koé, ‘aki honau kakano ‘onautolú; pea te nau konā ‘i honau toto ‘onautolú ‘o hangē ha uaine melié; pea ‘e ‘ilo‘i ‘e he kakai kotoa pē ko au ko e ‘Eikí ko ho Fakamo‘ui mo ho Huhu‘í, ko e Tokotaha Māfimaſi ‘o Sēkopé.

And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.

And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?

But thus saith the Lord: Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For thus saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contendeth with thee—

And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

2 Nīfai 7

- 1 'Io, he 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí: Kuó u veté 'i koe, pe kuó u lí 'aki koe ke ta'engata? He 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí: 'Oku 'i fē 'a e tohi 'o e veté 'o ho'ó fa'ée? Kuó u tukuange koe kia hai, pe ko hai 'iate kinautolu na'á ku mo'ua ki ai kuó u fakatau atu 'a kimoutolu ki aí? 'Io, kuó u fakatau 'a kimoutolu kia hai? Vakai, kuo mou fakatau 'a kimoutolu koe'uhi ko ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, pea ko e mé'a 'i ho'omou ngaahi maumau-fonó, ko ia kuo tukuange ai 'a ho'omou fa'ée.
- 2 Ko ia, 'i he'eku ha'ú, na'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha tangata; 'i he'eku uí, 'io, na'e 'ikai ha taha ke tali mai. 'E fale 'o 'Isileli, kuo vaivai koā 'a hoku nimá 'o 'ikai ai te u lava 'o huhu 'i koé, pea 'oku 'ikai koā haku mālohi ke u fakahaofi koe? Vakai, 'i he'eku folofola 'i he valokí 'oku ou fakamōmoa 'a e tahí, 'oku ou liliu 'a honau ngaahi vaitafé ke hoko ko ha feitu'u maomaonganoa pea mo honau fanga iká ke namukū koe'uhi kuo maha hono ngaahi vaí, pea 'oku nau mate ko e tupu mei he fieinuá.
- 3 'Oku ou fakakofu 'i 'a e ngaahi langí 'aki 'a e fakapo'uli pea 'oku ou ngaohi 'a e tauanga'á ko honau kofu.
- 4 Kuo foaki kiate au 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a e 'elelo 'o e potó, koe'uhi ke u 'ilo 'i 'a e founga ke u lea 'aki ha lea 'i he fa'ahita'u totonu kiate koe, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli. 'O ka mou ka hela'ia, 'okú ne 'ā hake 'i he pongipongi kotoa pē. 'Okú ne fakaongo hoku telingá ke u fanongo 'o hangē ko e potó.
- 5 Kuo fakaava 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a hoku telingá, pea na'e 'ikai te u angatu'u, pe tafoki meiate ia.
- 6 Na'á ku tuku atu hoku tu'á ki he tokotaha kau'imaéa, mo hoku kou'ahé kiate kinautolu na'a nau fusi hoku kavá. Na'e 'ikai te u fufuu 'i hoku matá mei he manukí 'i mo 'anuhia aú.
- 7 He 'e tokoni 'i au 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá, ko ia 'e 'ikai veuveuki au. Ko ia, kuó u ngaohi hoku matá ke hangē ko ha maka-afí, pea 'oku ou 'ilo 'i 'e 'ikai te u mā.
- 8 Pea 'oku ofi mai 'a e 'Eikí, pea 'okú ne fakatonuhia 'i au. Ko hai 'e fakakikihi mo au? Tuku ke ma tutu'u fakataha. Ko hai 'a hoku filí? Tuku ke ne 'unu'unu mai kiate au, pea te u lea pea te u taa 'i 'aki ia 'a e mālohi 'o hoku ngutú.

2 Nephi 7

Yea, for thus saith the Lord: Have I put thee away, or have I cast thee off forever? For thus saith the Lord: Where is the bill of your mother's divorcement? To whom have I put thee away, or to which of my creditors have I sold you? Yea, to whom have I sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have ye sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away.

Wherefore, when I came, there was no man; when I called, yea, there was none to answer. O house of Israel, is my hand shortened at all that it cannot redeem, or have I no power to deliver? Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make their rivers a wilderness and their fish to stink because the waters are dried up, and they die because of thirst.

I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.

The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season unto thee, O house of Israel. When ye are weary he waketh morning by morning. He waketh mine ear to hear as the learned.

The Lord God hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back.

I gave my back to the smiter, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair. I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

For the Lord God will help me, therefore shall I not be confounded. Therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.

And the Lord is near, and he justifieth me. Who will contend with me? Let us stand together. Who is mine adversary? Let him come near me, and I will smite him with the strength of my mouth.

9 Koe‘uhi ‘e tokoni‘i au ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá. Pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē ‘e fakahala‘i aú, vakai, te nau faka‘au kotoa pē ‘o motu‘a ‘o hangē ko ha kofú, pea ‘e keina ‘a kinautolu ‘e he ané.

10 Ko hai ‘iate kimoutolu ‘oku manavahē ki he ‘Eiki, ‘a ia ‘oku talangofua ki he le‘o ‘o ‘ene tamaio‘eiki, ‘a ia ‘oku ‘eve‘eva ‘i he po‘ulí, pea ‘oku ‘ikai ma‘u ha māmá?

11 Vakai ‘a kimoutolu kotoa pē ‘oku tafunaki ‘a e afí, pea kāpui ‘aki ‘a kimoutolu ‘a e ngaahi kalofiamá, mou ‘eve‘eva ‘i he maama ‘o ho‘omou afí pea ‘i he ngaahi kalofiamá ‘a ia kuo mou tafunakí. Ko e me‘a ia te mou ma‘u mei hoku nimá—te mou tokoto hifo ‘i he mamahi.

For the Lord God will help me. And all they who shall condemn me, behold, all they shall wax old as a garment, and the moth shall eat them up.

Who is among you that feareth the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness and hath no light?

Behold all ye that kindle fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks, walk in the light of your fire and in the sparks which ye have kindled. This shall ye have of mine hand—ye shall lie down in sorrow.

2 Nīfai 8

- 1 Tokanga kiate au, ‘a kimoutolu ‘oku muimui ki he mā‘onī‘onī. Sio ki he maka kuo tā ‘a kimoutolu mei aí, pea ki he luo ‘a ia kuo keli ‘a kimoutolu mei aí.
- 2 Sio kia ‘Ēpalahame, ko ho‘omou tamaí, pea kia Sela, ‘a ia na‘á ne fanau‘i ‘a kimoutolú; he na‘á ku ui ia toko taha pē, pea tāpuaki‘i ia.
- 3 He ‘e fakafiemālie‘i ‘e he ‘Eikí ‘a Saione, te ne fakafiemālie‘i ‘a hono ngaahi potu lala kotoa pē; pea te ne ngaohi ‘a hono feitu‘u maomaonganoá ke hangē ko ‘Īteni, pea mo hono tofá ke hangē ko e ngoue ‘a e ‘Eikí. ‘E ‘ilo‘i ai ‘a e fiefiá mo e nēkeneká, ko e fakafeta‘í pea mo e le‘o ‘o e hivá.
- 4 Tokanga kiate au, ‘e hoku kakai; pea fakafanongo kiate au, ‘E hoku pule‘anga; he ‘e ‘alu atu ha fono meiate au, pea te u fokotu‘u ‘eku fakamāú ke hoko ma‘u pē ko ha maama ki he kakai.
- 5 ‘Oku ofi mai ‘a ‘eku mā‘onī‘onī; kuo ‘alu atu ‘a ‘eku fakamo‘uí, pea ‘e fakamāú‘i ‘e hoku nimá ‘a e kakai. ‘E tatali ‘a e ngaahi motú kiate au, pea te nau falala ki hoku nimá.
- 6 Hanga hake homou matá ki he ngaahi langí, pea sio ki he māmani ‘i laló; koe‘uhi ‘e mole atu ‘a e ngaahi langí ‘o hangē ko e ‘ohuafi, pea ‘e faka‘au ‘o motu‘a ‘a e māmani ‘o hangē ko ha kofu; pea ko kinautolu ‘oku nau nofo ‘i aí te nau mate ‘i he anga tatau. Kā ko ‘eku fakamo‘uí ‘e ta‘engata ia, pea ‘e ‘ikai fakangata ‘a ‘eku mā‘onī‘onī.
- 7 Tokanga kiate au, ‘a kimoutolu ‘oku ‘ilo‘i ‘a e mā‘onī‘onī, ko e kakai kuó u tohi ‘i honau lotó ‘a ‘eku fonó, ‘oua te mou manavahē ki he manuki ‘a e tangatá, pea ‘oua te mou ilifia ki he‘enau ngaahi lau‘iková.
- 8 Koe‘uhi ‘e kai ‘e he ané ‘a kinautolu ‘o ‘osi ‘o hangē ko ha kofu, pea ‘e kai ‘a kinautolu ‘e he ‘uanga ‘o hangē ko e fulufulu‘i sipi. Kā ko ‘eku mā‘onī‘onī ‘e tu‘u ta‘engata ia, pea ko ‘eku fakamo‘uí mei he to‘u tangata ki he to‘u tangata.
- 9 ‘Ā hake, ‘Ā hake! ‘Ai ho mālohí, ‘E to‘ukupu ‘o e ‘Eikí; ‘ā hake ‘o hangē ko e ngaahi ‘aho ‘i mu‘á. ‘Ikai ko koe ia kuo tu‘usi ‘a Lēhapí, pea hoka‘i ‘a e fu‘u talākoné?

2 Nephi 8

Hearken unto me, ye that follow after righteousness. Look unto the rock from whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from whence ye are digged.

Look unto Abraham, your father, and unto Sarah, she that bare you; for I called him alone, and blessed him.

For the Lord shall comfort Zion, he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the voice of melody.

Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation; for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light for the people.

My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arm shall judge the people. The isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust.

Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath; for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment; and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner. But my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart I have written my law, fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.

For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool. But my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

Awake, awake! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake as in the ancient days. Art thou not he that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?

10 'Ikai ko koe ia kuo fakamōmoa 'a e tahí, 'a e ngaahi vai 'o e fu'ū moaná lolotó; pea kuó ke ngaohi 'a e ngaahi potu loloto 'o e tahí ko ha hala ke 'alu atu ai 'a e kakai kuó ke fakahaofí?

11 Ko ia, 'e toe foki mai 'a e kakai kuo huhu 'i 'e he 'Eikí, pea ha'ū mo e hiva ki Saione; pea 'e 'i honau 'ulú 'a e fiefia ta'engata mo e mā'oni'oni; pea te nau ma'ū 'a e fiefia mo e nēkeneka; 'e hola meiate kinautolu 'a e mamahí mo e tangí.

12 Ko au ia; 'io, ko au ia 'oku fakafiemālie 'i koé. Vakai, ko hai koe, ke ke manavahē ki he tangata, 'a ia 'e maté, pea ki he foha 'o e tangatá, 'a ia 'e ngaohi ke hangē ko e mohukú.

13 Pea kuó ke fakangalo'í 'a e 'Eiki ko ho tupu'angá, 'a ia kuó ne fofola 'a e ngaahi langí, pea fokotu'ū mo e ngaahi tu'unga 'o e māmaní, pea kuó ke manavahē ma'ū ai pē 'i he 'aho kotoa pē, koe'uhi ko e 'ita 'a e tokotaha fakamālohi, 'o hangē kuó ne teuteu ke faka'auha koé? Pea ko e fē 'a e 'ita 'a e tokotaha fakamālohi

14 'Oku fakato'oto' 'a e pōpula koe'uhi ke tukuange vave ia, pea 'ikai te ne mate 'i he luo, pea 'oua na' 'a 'osi 'ene maá.

15 Ka ko au ko e 'Eiki ko ho 'Otuá, 'a ia na'á ku ngaohi 'a e ngaahi peau 'o e tahí ke 'u'ulu; ko e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú 'a hoku hingoá.

16 Pea kuó u 'ai 'a 'eku ngaahi leá ki ho ngutu, pea kuó u 'ufi'ufi koe 'i he malumalu 'o hoku nimá, koe'uhi ke u fokotu'ū 'a e ngaahi langí pea fokotu'ū mo e ngaahi tu'unga 'o e māmaní, pea lea ki Saione: Vakai, ko hoku kakai koe.

17 'Ā hake, 'ā hake, tu'ū hake, 'E Selūsalema, 'a koe kuo inu mei he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí 'a e ipu 'o hono houhaú—kuó ke inu 'a e me'a kuo toka 'i he ipu 'o e tautea fakamamahi 'a ia kuo tatau.

18 Pea 'oku 'ikai ha taha ke fakahinohino 'i ia 'i he ngaahi foha kotoa pē kuó ne fanau'í; pea 'oku 'ikai ha taha ke ne tataki ia 'aki hono nimá, 'i he ngaahi foha kotoa pe kuó ne tauhí.

19 'Oku ha'ū kiate koe 'a e ongo fohá ni, 'a ia 'e 'ofa mamahi kiate koe—ko ho maumau'í mo e faka'auhá mo e hongé pea mo e heletaá—pea te u fakafiemālie 'i koe 'ia hai?

Art thou not he who hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?

Therefore, the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy and holiness shall be upon their heads; and they shall obtain gladness and joy; sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

I am he; yea, I am he that comforteth you. Behold, who art thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of man, who shall die, and of the son of man, who shall be made like unto grass?

And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth, and hast feared continually every day, because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? And where is the fury of the oppressor?

The captive exile hasteneth, that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.

But I am the Lord thy God, whose waves roared; the Lord of Hosts is my name.

And I have put my words in thy mouth, and have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion: Behold, thou art my people.

Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury—thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling wrung out—

And none to guide her among all the sons she hath brought forth; neither that taketh her by the hand, of all the sons she hath brought up.

These two sons are come unto thee, who shall be sorry for thee—thy desolation and destruction, and the famine and the sword—and by whom shall I comfort thee?

20 Kuo pongia ‘a ho ngaahi fohá, tuku kehe pē ‘a kinauá ni; ‘okú na tokoto ‘i he kamata‘anga ‘o e ngaahi hala kotoa pē; ‘o hangē ko ha pulu tangata hehengi ‘i ha kupenga; ‘okú na fonu ‘i he houhau ‘o e ‘Eikí, ‘a e valoki ‘a ho ‘Otuá.

21 Ko ia, fanongo ki he me‘á ni, ‘a koe kuo fakamamahi ‘i mo konā kae ‘ikai ‘i he uainé.

22 ‘Oku folofola peheni ‘a ho ‘Eikí, ‘oku taukapo ‘i ‘e he ‘Eiki mo ho ‘Otuá ‘a hono kakaí; vakai, kuó u to ‘o atu mei ho nimá ‘a e ipu ‘o e tautea fakamamahi, ‘a e toka ‘i he ipu ‘o hoku houháú; ‘e ‘ikai te ke toe inu ia.

23 Kā te u ‘ai ia ki he nima ‘o kinautolu ‘oku fakamamahi ‘i koé; ‘a ia kuo nau pehē ki ho laumālié: Punou hifo, ka mau laka atu—pea kuó ke tuku ‘a ho sinó ‘o hangē ko e kelekele, pea hangē ko e hala kiate kinautolu na ‘e ‘alu atu.

24 ‘Ā hake, ‘ā hake, ‘ai ho mālohí, ‘E Saione; ‘ai ho ngaahi kofu matamataleléi, ‘E Selūsalema, ko e kolo mā‘oní‘oní; koe‘uhi ‘e ngata mei heni ‘e ‘ikai toe hū kiate koe ‘a e ta‘ekamú mo e ta‘ema‘á.

25 Tupe‘i atu ‘a e efú meiate koe; tu‘u hake, nofo hifo, ‘E Selūsalema; vete koe mei he ngaahi ha‘i ‘o ho kiá, ‘E ‘ofefine pōpula ‘o Saione.

Thy sons have fainted, save these two; they lie at the head of all the streets; as a wild bull in a net, they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God.

Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, and not with wine:

Thus saith thy Lord, the Lord and thy God pleadeth the cause of his people; behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again.

But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; who have said to thy soul: Bow down, that we may go over—and thou hast laid thy body as the ground and as the street to them that went over.

Awake, awake, put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city; for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the un-circumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

2 Nīfai 9

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, kuó u lau 'a e ngaahi me'á ni koe'uhi ke mou 'ilo ki he ngaahi fuakava 'a e 'Eikí 'a ia kuó ne fuakava 'aki mo e fale kotoa 'o 'Isilelí—
- 2 'A ia kuó ne folofola 'aki ki he kau Siú 'i he ngutu 'o 'ene kau palōfita mā'oni'óní, talu mei he kamata'angá, mei he to'u tangata ki he to'u tangata, kae 'oua ke hokosia 'a e taimi 'e toe fakafoki ai 'a kinautolu ki he siasi mo'oni mo e loto'ā sipi 'a e 'Otuá; 'o ka tānaki fakataha mai 'a kinautolu ki 'api ki he ngaahi fonua 'o honau tofi'á, pea toe fokotu'u 'a kinautolu 'i honau ngaahi fonua kotoa pē 'o e tala'ofá.
- 3 Vakai, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate kimoutolu koe'uhi ke mou fiefia, pea hanga hake 'a homou matá 'o ta'engata, koe'uhi ko e ngaahi tāpuaki 'a ia 'e foaki 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá, ki ho'omou fānaú.
- 4 He 'oku ou 'ilo 'i kuo mou fakatotolo 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito, 'io 'a homou tokolahí, ke 'ilo ki he ngaahi me'á 'e hoko mai 'i he kaha'ú; ko ia 'oku ou 'ilo 'oku mou 'ilo 'i kuo pau ke 'auha 'a hotau sinó 'o mate, ka neongo iá, te tau mamata 'i hotau sinó ki he 'Otuá.
- 5 'Io, 'oku ou 'ilo 'oku mou 'ilo 'i te ne fakahā ia 'e ia 'i he sinó kiate kinautolu 'i Selūsalemá, 'a ia na'a tau ha'u mei aí; he 'oku taau ke hoko ia 'iate kinautolu; he 'oku taau mo e Tupu'anga lahí ke ne tuku ia ke ne mo'ulaloa ki he tangatá 'i he kakanó, pea pekia ma'á e kakai fulipē, koe'uhi ke lava 'o mo'ulaloa 'a e kakai kotoa pē kiate ia.
- 6 He 'oku hangē kuo hoko 'a e maté ki he fá'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá, koe'uhi ke fakahoko 'a e palani 'ofa 'o e Tupu'anga lahí, pehē 'oku tonu ke 'i ai ha mālohi 'o e toetu'ú, pea 'oku totonu ke hoko mai 'a e toetu'ú ki he fá'ahinga 'o e tangatá koe'uhi ko e hingá; pea na'e hoko 'a e hingá koe'uhi ko e maumau-fonó; pea ko e me'a 'i he hingá 'a e tangatá na'e motuhi atu ai 'a kinautolu mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí.

2 Nephi 9

And now, my beloved brethren, I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel—

That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise.

Behold, my beloved brethren, I speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice, and lift up your heads forever, because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children.

For I know that ye have searched much, many of you, to know of things to come; wherefore I know that ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.

Yea, I know that ye know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.

For as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall; and the fall came by reason of transgression; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

7 Ko ia, 'oku 'aonga ke 'i ai ha fakalelei ta'e-fakangatangata—pea kapau 'e 'ikai hoko ia ko ha fakalelei ta'e-fakangatangata, 'e 'ikai lava 'e he 'au'auhá ni 'o 'ai 'a e ta'e-fa'a- 'au'auhá. Ko ia, ko e 'uluaki fakamaau ko ia na'e hoko ki he tangatá na'e mei ta'engata hono fuoloá. Pea kapau na'e pehē, na'e pau ke tokoto hifo 'a e kakanó ni ke popo, pea 'au'aunga ki he kelekele 'a ia na'e tupu mei aí, 'o 'ikai toe tu'u.

8 'Oiauē, 'a e poto 'o e 'Otuá, mo 'ene 'alo'ofá mo e angalelei! He vakai, kapau 'e 'ikai toe tu'u 'a e kakanó, kuo pau ke mo'ulaloa 'a hotau laumālié ki he 'āngelo 'a ia na'e tō mei he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá Ta'engatá, 'o ne hoko ko e tēvoló, 'o 'ikai toe tu'u.

9 Pea na'e pau ke tatau 'a hotau laumālié mo ia, 'o tau hoko ko e kau tēvolo, ko e kau 'āngelo ki ha tēvolo, 'e ta'ofi 'i tu'a mei he 'ao 'o hotau 'Otuá, ke nofo mo e tamai 'o e ngaahi loí, 'i he mamahi, 'o hangē pē ko iá; 'io, 'a e tokotaha ko ia na'á ne kākaa 'i 'a 'etau 'uluaki ongo mātu'á, 'a ia na'á ne liliu ia 'o hangē nai ko ha 'āngelo 'o e māmá, 'o ne ue'i 'a e fānau 'a e tangatá ki he ngaahi kautaha fufū 'o e fakapō mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e ngaahi ngāue fufū 'o e fakapo'ulí.

10 'Oiauē hono 'ikai lahi 'a e angalelei 'a hotau 'Otuá, 'a ia 'okú ne tofa 'a e hala ke tau hao ai mei he nima 'o e fu'u me'a fakamanavahē ko iá; 'io, 'a e fu'u me'a fakamanavahē ko ia, 'a ia ko e maté mo helí, 'a ia 'oku ou ui ko e mate 'a e sinó, mo e mate foki 'a e laumālié.

11 Pea koe'uhi ko e founga ki hotau fakahaofi kuo tofa 'e hotau 'Otuá, ko e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí, ko e mate ko ia, 'a ia kuó u lau ki aí, 'a ia 'oku fakamatelié; 'e tuku hake 'e ia 'a hono kakai maté, pea ko e mate ko iá 'a e fa'itoká.

12 Pea ko e mate ko ia 'a ia kuó u lau ki aí, 'a ia ko e mate fakalaumālié, 'e tuku hake 'e ia 'a hono kakai maté; ko e mate fakalaumālie ko iá ko heli; ko ia, kuo pau ke tukuange 'e he maté mo heli 'a hona kakai maté, pea kuo pau ke tuku hake 'e heli 'a hono ngaahi laumālie pōpulá, pea kuo pau ke tuku hake 'e he ngaahi fa'itoká 'a hono ngaahi sino pōpulá, pea 'e toe fakataha 'i 'a e sinó mo e laumālie 'o e tangatá; pea 'e hoko ia 'i he mālohi 'o e toetu'u 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí.

Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more.

O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

And our spirits must have become like unto him, and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself; yea, to that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit.

And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

- 13 'Oiauē hono 'ikai ke mā'ongo'onga 'a e palani 'a hotau 'Otuá! Ka 'i he tafa'aki 'e tahá, kuo pau ke tuku hake 'e he palataisi 'o e 'Otuá 'a e laumālie 'o e kau mā'oni'oni, pea tuku hake 'e he fa'itoká 'a e sino 'o e kau mā'oni'oni; pea 'e toe fakataha 'i 'a e laumālie mo e sinó, pea hoko 'a e tangata kotoa pē 'o haohaoa, mo ta'e-fa'a-mate, pea nau hoko ko ha ngaahi laumālie mo 'ui, 'o mā'u ha 'ilo haohaoa 'o hangē ko kitautolu 'i he kakanó, kā 'e haohaoa ange 'a 'etau 'iló.
- 14 Ko ia, te tau mā'u ha 'ilo haohaoa ki he 'etau ngaahi angahala kotoa pē, mo 'etau ta'ema'á, pea mo 'etau telefua; pea 'e mā'u 'e he kau mā'oni'oni ha 'ilo haohaoa ki he 'enau fiefia aí mo 'enau mā'oni'oni, kuo fakakofu 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e anga-haohaoá, 'io, 'aki 'a e pulupulu 'o e mā'oni'oni.
- 15 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'o ka hili 'a e 'alu atu 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá mei he 'uluaki mate ko 'eni ki he mo'ui, ko e me'a 'i he 'enau hoko 'o ta'e-fa'a-maté, kuo pau ke nau 'alu atu ki he 'ao 'o e 'afio'anga fakamaau 'o e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí; pea 'e toki hoko 'a e fakamāu, pea kuo pau ke toki fakamāu 'i 'a kinautolu 'o hoa mo e fakamaau mā'oni'oni 'a e 'Otuá.
- 16 Pea hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eikí, he kuo folofola 'aki ia 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá, pea ko 'ene folofola ta'engatá ia, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai ngata, 'e mā'oni'oni ai pē 'a kinautolu 'oku mā'oni'oni, pea 'e uli ai pē 'a kinautolu 'oku 'ulí, ko ia, ko kinautolu 'oku ta'ema'á ko e tēvoló ia mo 'ene kau 'āngeló; pea te nau 'alu atu ki he afi ta'engatá, 'a ia kuo teuteu mā'anautolu; pea ko 'enau mamahí 'oku hangē ko ha ano 'o e afi mo e maka-vela, 'a ia 'oku 'alu hake 'a hono uló 'o ta'engata, pea ta'engata, pea 'oku 'ikai hano ngata'anga.
- 17 'Oiauē, 'a e mā'ongo'onga mo e fakamaau totonu 'a hotau 'Otuá! He 'okú ne fakahoko 'a 'ene ngaahi folofola kotoa pē, pea kuo nau 'alu atu mei hono fofongá, pea kuo pau ke fakahoko 'a 'ene fonó.
- 18 Kae vakai, ko e kau angatonú, 'a ia ko e kau mā'oni'oni 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí, 'a kinautolu kuo tui ki he Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí, 'a kinautolu 'a ia kuo nau kātekina 'a e ngaahi kolosi 'o e māmaní pea 'ikai te nau mā aí, te nau mā'u 'a e pulé'anga 'o e 'Otuá, 'a ia na'e teuteu mo'onautolu talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní, pea 'e kakato 'a 'enau fiefiá 'o ta'engata.

O how great the plan of our God! For on the other hand, the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh, save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect.

Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of all our guilt, and our uncleanness, and our nakedness; and the righteous shall have a perfect knowledge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, being clothed with purity, yea, even with the robe of righteousness.

And it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to the holy judgment of God.

And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and they shall go away into everlasting fire, prepared for them; and their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever and has no end.

O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executeth all his words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must be fulfilled.

But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of the world, and their joy shall be full forever.

19 'Oiauē hono 'ikai ke lahi 'a e 'alo'ofa 'a hotau 'Otua, ko e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí! He kuó ne fakahaofi 'a 'ene kau mā'oni'oni mei he fu' me'a fakamanavahē 'a ia ko e tēvoló, mo e maté, mo heli, mo e ano 'o e afí mo e maka-velá, 'a ia ko e fakamamahi ta'engatá.

20 'Oiauē hono 'ikai ke lahi 'a e mā'oni'oni 'a hotau 'Otuá! He 'okú ne 'afio 'i 'a e me'a kotoa pē, pea 'oku 'ikai ha me'a 'oku 'ikai te ne ta'e-afio 'i.

21 Pea 'okú ne hā'ele mai ki he māmaní koe'uhi ke ne fakamo'ui 'a e kakai fulipē 'o kapau te nau tokanga ki hono le'ó; he vakai, 'okú ne kātaki 'i 'a e ngaahi mamahi 'a e kakai kotoa pē, 'io, 'a e ngaahi mamahi 'a e kakai mo'ui kotoa pē, 'a e kakai tangata, mo e kakai fefine fakatou'osi, pea mo e fānau, 'a ia 'oku kau 'i he fāmili 'o 'Ātamá.

22 Pea 'okú ne kātaki 'i 'eni koe'uhi ke hoko 'a e toetu'ú ki he kakai fulipē, koe'uhi ke tu'u 'a e kakai fulipē 'i hono 'aó 'i he fu'u 'aho lahi mo fakamanavahē ko ia 'o e fakamāú.

23 Pea 'okú ne fekau ki he kakai fulipē kuo pau ke nau fakatomala, mo papitaiso 'i hono huafá, 'o ma'u 'a e tui haohao ki he Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí, pe 'e 'ikai lava 'o fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá.

24 Pea kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala pea tui ki hono huafá, 'o papitaiso 'i hono huafá, pea kātaki ki he ngata'angá, kuo pau ke nau mala'ia; he kuo folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otua, ko e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí.

25 Ko ia, kuó ne foaki mai ha fono; pea 'o ka 'ikai ha fono kuo foaki mai 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha tautea; pea 'o ka 'ikai ha tautea 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha fakahalaia'i; pea 'o ka 'ikai ha fakahalaia'i 'oku fakamolemole 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he 'alo'ofa 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí, koe'uhi ko e fakalelé; he 'oku fakahaofi 'a kinautolu 'e hono māfimaí.

O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For he delivereth his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death, and hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

O how great the holiness of our God! For he knoweth all things, and there is not anything save he knows it.

And he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffereth the pains of all men, yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children, who belong to the family of Adam.

And he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.

And he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.

Wherefore, he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement; for they are delivered by the power of him.

26 He 'oku totongi kakato 'e he fakalelé ki he ngaahi tautea 'o 'ene fakamaau totonú kiate kinautolu kotoa pē kuo 'ikai tuku kiate kinautolu 'a e fonó, pea 'oku fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he fu'u me'a fakamanavahē ko iá, 'a ia ko e maté mo heli, mo e tēvoló, pea mo e ano 'o e afi mo e maka-velá, 'a ia ko e fakamamahi ta'engatá; pea 'oku fakafoki 'a kinautolu ki he 'Otua ko ia na'á ne foaki 'a e mānavá kiate kinautolú, 'a ia ko e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí.

27 Kae mala'ia ki he tokotaha ko ia 'a ia kuo tuku ki ai 'a e fonó, 'io, 'a ia kuó ne ma'u 'a e ngaahi fekau kotoa pē 'a e 'Otuá, 'o hangē ko kitautolú, ka 'okú ne talangata'a ki ai, mo maumau'i 'a e ngaahi 'aho 'o hono 'ahi'ahi'i, he 'oku fakamanavahē 'a e tu'unga 'okú ne 'i ai.

28 'Oiauē 'a e palani olopoto 'a e tokotaha angakoví! 'Oiauē 'a e laukau mo e vaivai mo e vale 'a e kakai! 'O ka nau ka akonekina, 'oku nau pehē 'oku nau poto, pea 'oku 'ikai te nau tokanga ki he akonaki 'a e 'Otuá, he 'oku nau le'ei ia ki he tafa'akí, 'o mahalo 'oku nau 'ilo'i 'iate kinautolu pē; ko ia, ko e vale pē 'a honau potó pea 'oku 'ikai 'aonga ia kiate kinautolu. Pea kuo pau ke nau mate.

29 Ka 'oku lelei ke akonekina, 'o kapau te nau tokanga ki he ngaahi akonaki 'a e 'Otuá.

30 Ka 'e mala'ia 'a e koloa'ia, 'a ia 'oku koloa'ia 'i he ngaahi me'a 'o e māmaní. He ko e me'a 'i he'enu koloa'ia, 'oku nau fehí 'a ai ki he masivá, pea nau fakatanga'i 'a e angamaluú, pea kuo tuku honau lotó ki he'enu ngaahi koloá; ko ia, 'oku hoko 'enu koloá ko honau 'otua. Pea vakai, 'e 'auha 'enu koloá fakataha mo kinautolu foki.

31 Pea 'e mala'ia 'a e tuli 'oku 'ikai fie fanongó; he te nau mate.

32 'E mala'ia 'a e kui 'oku 'ikai fie mamatá; he te nau mate foki.

33 'E mala'ia 'a kinautolu kuo 'ikai kamu honau lotó, koe'uhi 'e tautea'i 'a kinautolu 'e he 'ilo ki he'enu ngaahi angahalá 'i he 'aho faka'osí.

34 'E mala'ia ia 'oku loí, he 'e kapusi hifo ia ki heli.

35 'E mala'ia 'a e tokotaha fakapō ko ia 'oku fakapō tavalé, he kuo pau ke ne mate.

36 'E mala'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku fai 'a e ngaahi fe'auakí, he 'e kapusi hifo 'a kinautolu ki heli.

For the atonement satisfieth the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.

But wo unto him that has the law given, yea, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgresseth them, and that wasteth the days of his probation, for awful is his state!

O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish.

But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God.

But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their god. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also.

And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish.

Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also.

Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day.

Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell.

Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die.

Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.

37 'Io, 'e mala'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku hū ki he ngaahi tamapuá, he 'oku fiefia 'a e tēvoló 'o e ngaahi tēvolo kotoa pē 'iate kinautolu.

38 Pea, ko hono fakakātoá, 'e mala'ia 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku mate 'i he 'enau ngaahi angahalá; he te nau foki ki he 'Otuá, pea mamata ki hono fofongá, pea nofo ma'u 'i he 'enau ngaahi angahalá.

39 'Oiauē, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, mou manatu ki hono fakamanavahē 'o e talangata 'a ki he 'Otua Mā'oni'oni ko iá, pea mo hono fakamanavahē 'o e tukulolo ki he ngaahi fakatauele 'a e tokotaha olopoto ko iá. Manatu, ko e fakakaukau fakakakanó ko e maté ia, pea ko e fakakaukau fakalaumālié ko e mo'ui ta'engatá ia.

40 'Oiauē, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, mou fanongo ki he 'eku ngaahi leá. Manatu ki he māfimafi 'o e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí. 'Oua na 'a mou pehē kuó u lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a fefeka kiate kimoutolu; he kapau te mou fai pehē, te mou angatu'u ki he mo'oní; he kuó u lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi folofola pē 'a homou tupu'angá. 'Oku ou 'ilo'i 'oku fefeka 'a e ngaahi folofola 'o e mo'oní kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku ta'ema'á; ka 'oku 'ikai manavahē ki ai 'a e kau mā'oni'oni, he 'oku nau 'ofa ki he mo'oní, pea 'oku 'ikai te nau puputu'u.

41 'Oiauē, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, mou tali pea ha'u ki he 'Eiki, ko e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni. Manatu ko hono ngaahi halá 'oku mā'oni'oni. Vakai, 'oku lausi'i 'a e hala ki he tangatá, ka 'oku tu'u hangatonu atu ia ki mu'a 'iate ia, pea ko e tauhi 'o e matapaá 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí; pea 'oku 'ikai te ne nō ha taha kehe ke ne tauhi ia; he 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha hala kehe kā 'i he matapaá pē; he 'oku 'ikai lava ke kākaa 'i ia, he ko e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a hono huafá.

42 Pea 'ilonga ia 'oku tukitukí, te ne fakaava kiate ia; pea ko e kakai potó, mo e kau akonekiná, pea mo kinautolu 'oku koloa'ia, 'a kinautolu 'oku pōlepole koe'uhi ko honau potó mo 'enau 'iló, pea mo 'enau ngaahi koloá—'io, ko ia ia 'a kinautolu 'okú ne fehi'a ki aí; pea kapau 'e 'ikai te nau si'aki ke mama'ó 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, pea lau 'a kinautolu ko e kau vale 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, pea fakavaivai 'i he fu'u loto-fakatōkilalo lahi, 'e 'ikai te ne fakaava kiate kinautolu.

43 Ka ko e ngaahi me'a 'a e kau 'ilo'iló mo e kau anga-fakapotopotó 'e fufuu 'i meiate kinautolu 'o ta'engata—'io, 'a e fiefia ko ia kuo teuteu ma'á e kau mā'oni'oni.

Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them.

And, in fine, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, and behold his face, and remain in their sins.

O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal.

O, my beloved brethren, give ear to my words. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken hard things against you; for if ye do, ye will revile against the truth; for I have spoken the words of your Maker. I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous fear them not, for they love the truth and are not shaken.

O then, my beloved brethren, come unto the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that his paths are righteous. Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employeth no servant there; and there is none other way save it be by the gate; for he cannot be deceived, for the Lord God is his name.

And whoso knocketh, to him will he open; and the wise, and the learned, and they that are rich, who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom, and their riches—yea, they are they whom he despiseth; and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them.

But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever—yea, that happiness which is prepared for the saints.

44 'Oiauē, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, manatu ki he'eku ngaahi leá. Vakai, 'oku ou vete 'a hoku ngaahi kofú, pea tupe'i ia 'i homou 'aó; 'oku ou lotu ki he 'Otua 'o hoku fakamo'uí ke ne 'afio mai kiate au 'aki hono fofonga 'oku 'afio'i 'a e me'a kotoa pē; ko ia, te mou 'ilo'i 'i he 'aho faka'osí, 'o ka fakamāu'i 'a e kakai fulipē koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi ngāué, na'e 'afio'i 'e he 'Otua 'o 'Isileli na'á ku 'osi tupe'i atu ho'omou ngaahi angahalá mei hoku laumālié, pea 'oku ou tu'u haohaoa 'i hono 'aó, pea 'oku ou ma'a mei homou totó.

45 'Oiauē, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, tafoki mei ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, tupe'i atu 'a e ngaahi sēini 'a ia 'okú ne fie ha'i ma'u 'a kimoutolú; ha'u ki he 'Otua 'a ia ko e maka 'o homou fakamo'uí.

46 Teuteu homou laumālié ki he 'aho nāunau'ia ko ia 'e fakahoko ai 'a e fakamaau totonu ki he kau mā'oni'oni, 'io, 'a e 'aho 'o e fakamāu, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a mou kalo 'i he manavahē lahi faka'ulia; koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a mou manatu'i faka'auliliki 'a ho'omou halaia fakamanavaheé, pea ngaohi ai 'a kimoutolu ke mou kaila: 'Oku mā'oni'oni, 'oku mā'oni'oni 'a ho'o ngaahi fakamāu, 'E 'Eiki ko e 'Otua Māfimaí—ka 'oku ou 'ilo'i 'a 'eku angahalá; na'á ku maumau'i 'a ho'o fonó, pea 'oku 'a'aku pe 'a 'eku ngaahi maumau-fonó; pea kuo ma'u au 'e he tēvoló, pea ko e mo'ulaloa au ki he'ene fakamamahi fakamanavaheé.

47 Kae vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku 'aonga koā ke u fafangu 'a kimoutolu ke mou 'ilo ki hono mo'oni fakamanavahē 'o e ngaahi me'a ní? Te u fakamamahi'i koā 'a homou laumālié kapau na'e ma'a 'a ho'omou fakakaukáu? Te u lea koā 'o mahinongofua kiate kimoutolu 'o fakatatau mo hono mahinongofua 'o e mo'oni kapau na'a mou 'ata'atā mei he angahalá?

48 Vakai, kapau na'a mou mā'oni'oni te u lea kiate kimoutolu 'o kau ki he mā'oni'oni; ka ko e me'a 'i he 'ikai te mou mā'oni'oni, pea 'oku mou lau au ko e faiako pē, ko ia 'oku 'aonga ke u ako'i 'a kimoutolu ki he ngaahi nunu'a 'o e angahalá.

49 Vakai, 'oku fakalili'a 'a hoku laumālié ki he angahalá, pea 'oku nēkeneka 'a hoku lotó 'i he mā'oni'oni; pea te u fakaongoongolei'i 'a e huafa toputapu 'o hoku 'Otuá.

O, my beloved brethren, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; wherefore, ye shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul, and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.

O, my beloved brethren, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.

Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice shall be administered unto the righteous, even the day of judgment, that ye may not shrink with awful fear; that ye may not remember your awful guilt in perfectness, and be constrained to exclaim: Holy, holy are thy judgments, O Lord God Almighty—but I know my guilt; I transgressed thy law, and my transgressions are mine; and the devil hath obtained me, that I am a prey to his awful misery.

But behold, my brethren, is it expedient that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things? Would I harrow up your souls if your minds were pure? Would I be plain unto you according to the plainness of the truth if ye were freed from sin?

Behold, if ye were holy I would speak unto you of holiness; but as ye are not holy, and ye look upon me as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin.

Behold, my soul abhorreth sin, and my heart delighteth in righteousness; and I will praise the holy name of my God.

50 Ha'u, 'e hoku kāinga, 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē 'oku feinuá, mou ō mai ki he ngaahi vaí; pea ko ia ia 'oku 'ikai ma'u ha pa'angá, ha'u 'o fakatau mo kai; 'io, ha'u 'o fakatau 'a e uaine, mo e hu'akau ta'e 'i ai ha pa'anga pea ta'e 'i ai ha totongi.

51 Ko ia, 'oua na'a 'oatu ha pa'anga ki he me'a 'a ia 'oku ta'e'aongá, pe ko ho'omou ngāué ke fetongi 'aki 'a e me'a 'a ia 'oku 'ikai fakafiemālié. Tokanga lahi kiate au, pea manatu'i 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia kuó u lea'akí; pea ha'u ki he Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí, pea keinanga 'i he ngaahi me'a 'a ia 'oku 'ikai ke 'auha, pea 'oku 'ikai lava 'o maumaú, pea tuku ke fiefia 'a ho laumālié 'i he mahu.

52 Vakai, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, manatu'i 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a homou 'Otuá; lotu ma'u ai pe kiate ia 'i he 'aho, pea 'oatu 'a e fakafeta'i ki hono huafa mā'oni'oni 'i he pō. Tuku ke nēkeneka 'a homou lotó.

53 Pea vakai ki hono lahi 'o e ngaahi fuakava 'a e 'Eikí, pea mo hono lahi 'o 'ene ngaahi 'alo'ofa ki he fānau 'a e tangatá; pea ko e me'a 'i he'ene māfima'í mo 'ene manava'ofá mo e 'alo'ofá, kuó ne tala'ofa ai kiate kitautolu 'e 'ikai ke faka'auha fakaesino ke 'osi 'aupito 'a hotau hakó 'o fakatatau ki he kakanó, ka te ne fakatolonga 'a kinautolu; pea te nau hoko 'i he ngaahi to'u tangata 'amuí ko ha va'a mā'oni'oni ki he fale 'o 'Isilelí.

54 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku ou toe fie lea kiate kimoutolu; ka 'i he 'apongipongí te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a hono toenga 'o 'eku ngaahi leá. 'Ēmeni.

Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money and without price.

Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot satisfy. Hearken diligently unto me, and remember the words which I have spoken; and come unto the Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which perisheth not, neither can be corrupted, and let your soul delight in fatness.

Behold, my beloved brethren, remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night. Let your hearts rejoice.

And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel.

And now, my brethren, I would speak unto you more; but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words. Amen.

2 Nīfai 10

- 1 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Sēkope, 'oku ou toe lea kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, ki he va'a mā'oni'oni 'a ia kuó u lau ki aí.
- 2 He vakai, ko e ngaahi tala'ofa kuo tau ma'ú ko e ngaahi tala'ofa ia kiate kitautolu 'o fakatatau ki he kakanó; ko ia, hangē ko ia kuo fakahā mai kiate aú 'e 'auha 'i he kakanó 'a e tokolahi 'o hotau hakó ko e tupu mei he ta'etuí, ka neongo iá, 'e 'alo'ofa pē 'a e 'Otuá ki he tokolahi; pea 'e toe fakafoki mai 'a 'etau fānaú, koe'uhi ke nau ma'ú 'a e me'a ko ia 'e 'omi ai kiate kinautolu 'a e 'ilo mo'oni ki honau Huhu'í.
- 3 Ko ia, hangē ko 'eku tala kiate kimoutolú, 'oku taau mo Kalaisi—he na'e tala mai kiate au 'anepō 'e he 'āngeló ko hono huafá ia—ke ne hā'ele mai ki he kau Siú, 'iate kinautolu 'a ia ko e kongā angakovi taha 'o e kakai 'o e māmaní; pea te nau kalusefai ia—he na'e 'afio'í 'e hotau 'Otuá kuo pau ke hoko ia, pea 'oku 'ikai mo ha pule'anga kehe 'i he māmaní te nau kalusefai 'a honau 'Otuá.
- 4 He ka ne fai 'a e ngaahi mana lalahí 'i ha ngaahi pule'anga kehe, pehē te nau fakatomala, pea 'ilo'í ko honau 'Otuá ia.
- 5 Ka ko e me'a 'i he ngaahi ngāue fakataula'eiki kākā mo e ngaahi angahalá 'a kinautolu 'oku 'i Selūsalemá te nau fakakekeva honau kiá 'o faka'ikai'í ia, pea 'e kalusefai ai.
- 6 Ko ia, ko e me'a 'i he'enua ngaahi angahalá, 'e hoko mai kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi faka'auha, mo e ngaahi hongē mo e ngaahi mahaki faka'auha mo e ngaahi lilingi toto; pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'e 'ikai 'auhá 'e fakamovetevete 'a kinautolu 'i he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē.
- 7 Kae vakai, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá: 'O ka hokosia 'a e 'aho 'a ia te nau tui ai kiate au, ko au ko Kalaisi, kuó u fuakava mo 'enua ngaahi tamaí ke toki fakafoki mai 'a kinautolu 'i he kakanó, 'i he māmaní, ki he ngaahi fonua 'o honau tofi'á.

2 Nephi 10

And now I, Jacob, speak unto you again, my beloved brethren, concerning this righteous branch of which I have spoken.

For behold, the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh; wherefore, as it has been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief, nevertheless, God will be merciful unto many; and our children shall be restored, that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their Redeemer.

Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.

For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.

But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.

Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations.

But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.

8 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e tānaki mai 'a kinautolu hili 'enau nofo movetevete fuoloá, mei he ngaahi motu 'o e tahí, pea mei he tapa 'e fā 'o e māmaní; pea 'e lahi 'i hoku 'aó 'a e ngaahi pule'anga 'o e kau Senitailé, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Otuá, ko e me'á 'i he 'enau 'ave 'a kinautolu ki he ngaahi fonua 'o honau tofi'á.

9 'Io, 'e hoko 'a e ngaahi tu 'i 'o e kau Senitailé 'o hangē ha ngaahi tamai tauhi kiate kinautolu, pea 'e hoko 'a honau ngaahi kuini 'o hangē ha ngaahi fa'ē tauhi kiate kinautolu; ko ia, 'oku mahu'inga 'a e ngaahi tala'ofa 'a e 'Eikí ki he kau Senitailé, he kuó ne folofola 'aki ia, pea ko hai 'oku lava 'o fakakikihi 'i ia?

10 Kae vakai, na'e folofola 'e he 'Otuá, 'e hoko 'a e fonuá ni ko ha fonua 'o ho tofi'á, pea 'e monū 'ia 'a e kau Senitailé 'i he funga 'o e fonuá.

11 Pea 'e hoko 'a e fonuá ni ko ha fonua 'o e tau'atāina ki he kau Senitailé, pea 'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha ngaahi tu 'i 'i he funga 'o e fonuá, 'a ia 'e fokotu'u hake ki he kau Senitailé.

12 Pea te u ngaohi 'a e fonuá ni ke mālohi ki he ngaahi pule'anga kehe kotoa pē.

13 Pea 'ilonga ia 'oku tau 'i 'a Saioné te ne 'auha, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Otuá.

14 He 'ilonga ia 'e fokotu'u hake ha tu 'i kiate aú te ne 'auha, he ko au ko e 'Eikí, ko e tu 'i 'o e langí, te u hoko ko honau tu 'í, pea te u hoko ko e maama kiate kinautolu 'o ta'engata 'a ia 'oku nau fanongo ki he 'eku ngaahi leá.

15 Ko ia, koe'uhi ko 'eni, ke fakahoko 'a 'eku ngaahi fuakava 'a ia kuó u fai ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'a ia te u fai ma'anautolu lolotonga 'a 'enau 'i he kakanó, ko ia 'oku totonu ai ke u faka'auha 'a e ngaahi ngāue fufū 'o e fakapo'ulí, mo e ngaahi fakapoó, pea mo e ngaahi me'á fakalieliá.

16 Ko ia, 'ilonga ia 'oku tau 'i 'a Saioné, 'a e Siú mo e Senitailé fakatou'osi, 'a e pōpulá mo e tau'atāiná fakatou'osi, 'a e tangatá mo e fefiné fakatou'osi, 'e 'auha ia; he ko kinautolu ko e kau fe'auaki ia 'o e māmaní kotoa pē; he 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'oku 'ikai kau mo aú 'oku nau fakafili kiate au, 'oku folofola 'e hotau 'Otuá.

17 He te u fakahoko 'eku ngaahi tala'ofa 'a ia kuó u fai ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'a ia te u fai ma'anautolu lolotonga 'a 'enau 'i he kakanó—

And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.

Yea, the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them, and their queens shall become nursing mothers; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?

But behold, this land, said God, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land.

And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles.

And I will fortify this land against all other nations.

And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God.

For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.

Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations.

Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.

For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh—

- 18 Ko ia, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku folofola peheni 'e hotau 'Otuá: Te u fakamamahi 'i ho hakó 'i he nima 'o e kau Senitailé; ka neongo iá, te u fakamolū 'a e loto 'o e kau Senitailé, koe'uhi ke nau hangē ko ha tamai kiate kinautolu; ko ia, 'e tāpuaki 'i ai 'a e kau Senitailé, pea lau fakataha 'a kinautolu mo e fale 'o 'Isilelí.
- 19 Ko ia, te u fakatapui 'a e fonuá ni ma' a ho hakó, mo kinautolu 'e kau fakataha mo ho hakó, 'o ta'engata, ke hoko ko e fonua 'o honau tofi'á; he ko ha fonua kuo fili ia, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Otuá, 'o mahu'inga ange 'i he ngaahi fonua kehe kotoa pē; ko ia 'oku ou loto ke hū kiate au 'a e kakai fulipē 'a ia 'e nofo 'i he fonuá, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Otuá.
- 20 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, ko e me'a 'i he foaki mai kiate kinautolu 'e hotau 'Otuá 'alo'ofá 'a e fu'u 'ilo lahi pehē ki he ngaahi me'a ní, ko ia tau manatu kiate ia, pea lí'aki 'a 'etau ngaahi angahalá, pea 'ikai punou hifo hotau 'ulú, he kuo 'ikai ke lí'aki 'a kinautolu; neongo iá kuo kapusi atu 'a kinautolu mei he fonua 'o hotau tofi'á; kā kuo tataki 'a kinautolu ki ha fonua lelei ange, he kuo ngaahi 'e he 'Eiki 'a e tahí ko hotau hala, pea 'oku tau 'i ha motu 'o e tahí.
- 21 Kā 'oku lalahi 'a e ngaahi tala'ofa 'a e 'Eiki kiate kinautolu 'a ia 'oku nau 'i he ngaahi motu 'o e tahí; ko ia, koe'uhi 'oku lau ia ki he ngaahi motu, 'oku pau 'oku toe 'i ai mo ha ngaahi motu kehe, pea 'oku nofo 'i foki ia 'e hotau kāinga.
- 22 He vakai, kuo tataki atu 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá mei he taimi ki he taimi ha ní'ihī mei he fale 'o 'Isilelí 'o fakatatau ki hono finangaló mo 'ene fa'itelihá. Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'oku manatu 'i 'e he 'Eiki 'a kinautolu kotoa pē kuo fakamavahe atú, ko ia 'okú ne manatu 'i mo kinautolu foki.
- 23 Ko ia, fakafiefia 'i homou lotó, pea manatu 'oku mou tau 'atāina ke ngāue ma'amoutolu pē—ke fili 'a e hala 'o e mate ta'engatá pe ko e hala 'o e mo'ui ta'engatá.
- 24 Ko ia, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, fakalelei 'a kimoutolu ki he finangalo 'o e 'Otuá, kae 'ikai ki he loto 'o e tēvoló pea mo e kakanó; pea manatu, 'o ka 'osi ho'omou fakalelei 'a kimoutolu ki he finangalo 'o e 'Otuá, 'oku ngata pea fou 'i he 'alo'ofa pē 'a e 'Otuá 'a homou fakamo'uí.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.

Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto thy seed, and them who shall be numbered among thy seed, forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me, saith God.

And now, my beloved brethren, seeing that our merciful God has given us so great knowledge concerning these things, let us remember him, and lay aside our sins, and not hang down our heads, for we are not cast off; nevertheless, we have been driven out of the land of our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land, for the Lord has made the sea our path, and we are upon an isle of the sea.

But great are the promises of the Lord unto them who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says isles, there must needs be more than this, and they are inhabited also by our brethren.

For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to time from the house of Israel, according to his will and pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembereth all them who have been broken off, wherefore he remembereth us also.

Therefore, cheer up your hearts, and remember that ye are free to act for yourselves—to choose the way of everlasting death or the way of eternal life.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, reconcile yourselves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil and the flesh; and remember, after ye are reconciled unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of God that ye are saved.

25 Ko ia, 'ofa ke fokotu'u hake 'a kimoutolu 'e he 'Otuá
mei he maté 'i he mālohi 'o e toetu'ú, kae 'uma'ā mei he
mate ta'engatá 'i he mālohi 'o e fakalelei, koe'uhi ke
ma'u 'a kimoutolu 'i he pule'anga ta'engata 'o e 'Otuá,
koe'uhi ke mou fakaongoongolelei 'i ia tu'unga 'i he
'alo'ofa fakalangí. 'Ēmeni.

Wherefore, may God raise you from death by the
power of the resurrection, and also from everlasting
death by the power of the atonement, that ye may be re-
ceived into the eternal kingdom of God, that ye may
praise him through grace divine. Amen.

2 Nīfai 11

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, na'e toe lea 'aki 'e Sēkope ha ngaahi me'a lahi ange ki hoku kakaí 'i he taimi ko iá; ka neongo iá ko e ngaahi me'a pē 'eni kuó u tu'utu'uni ke tohí, he ko e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuó u tohí 'oku fe'unga kiate au.
- 2 Pea ko 'eni, ko au, Nīfai, 'oku ou tohi mo ha toe ngaahi lea kehe 'a 'Īsaia, he 'oku fiefia hoku laumālié 'i he'ene ngaahi leá. He te u fakatatau 'ene ngaahi leá ki hoku kakaí, pea te u 'oatu ia ki he'eku fānau kotoa pē, he na'á ne mamata mo'oni ki hoku Huhu'í, 'o hangē ko 'eku mamata kiate iá.
- 3 Pea ko hoku tokoua, ko Sēkopé, kuó ne mamata foki kiate ia 'o hangē ko 'eku mamata kiate iá; ko ia, te u 'oatu 'ena ngaahi leá ki he'eku fānau ke fakamo'oni 'i kiate kinautolu 'oku mo'oni 'a 'eku ngaahi leá. Ko ia, 'i he ngaahi lea 'a e toko tolú, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí, te u fakamo'oni 'i 'eku ngaahi leá. Ka neongo iá, 'oku fekau atu 'e he 'Otuá mo e kau fakamo'oni tokolahi ange, pea 'okú ne fakamo'oni 'i 'a 'ene ngaahi folofola kotoa pē.
- 4 Vakai, 'oku fiefia 'a hoku laumālié 'i he fakamo'oni 'i ki hoku kakaí 'a hono mo'oni 'o e hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí; he ko hono 'uhinga 'eni kuo tuku mai ai 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé; mo e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'a ia kuo 'omai 'e he 'Otuá talu mei he kamata'anga 'o e māmaní, ki he tangatá, ko e fakataipe ia kiate ia.
- 5 Pea 'oku fiefia foki 'a hoku laumālié 'i he ngaahi fuakava 'a e 'Eikí 'a ia kuó ne fai ki he'etau ngaahi tamaí; 'io, 'oku fiefia 'a hoku laumālié 'i he'ene 'alo'ofá, pea 'i he'ene fakamaau totonú, mo e māfimaí, mo e 'alo'ofa 'i he palani lahi mo ta'engata 'o e fakahaofi mei he maté.
- 6 Pea 'oku fiefia 'a hoku laumālié 'i he fakamo'oni 'i ki hoku kakaí kapau 'e 'ikai ke hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisi kuo pau ke 'auha 'a e kakai fulipē.
- 7 He kapau 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha Kalaisi 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai mo ha 'Otuá; pea kapau 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha 'Otuá 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai mo kitautolu, he kuo 'ikai lava ke hoko ha fakatupu. Ka 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otuá, pea ko Kalaisi ia, pea 'e hā'ele mai ia 'i he taimi 'okú ne finangalo ki aí.

2 Nephi 11

And now, Jacob spake many more things to my people at that time; nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written, for the things which I have written sufficient me.

And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. For I will liken his words unto my people, and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him.

And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. Wherefore, by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word. Nevertheless, God sendeth more witnesses, and he proveth all his words.

Behold, my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him.

And also my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our fathers; yea, my soul delighteth in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death.

And my soul delighteth in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish.

For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he cometh in the fulness of his own time.

8 Pea ko 'eni, 'oku ou tohi ha ni'ihī 'o e ngaahi lea 'a
'Īsaiá, koe'uhi ka ai ha ni'ihī 'o hoku kakai 'a ia 'e
mamata ki he ngaahi lea ni te nau hiki hake honau lotó
pea fiefia koe'uhi ko e fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá. Ko 'eni ko e
ngaahi lea 'eni, pea te mou lava 'o fakatatau ia kiate
kimoutolu, pea ki he kakai kotoa pē.

And now I write some of the words of Isaiah, that
whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up
their hearts and rejoice for all men. Now these are the
words, and ye may liken them unto you and unto all
men.

2 Nīfai 12

- 1 Ko e folofola, na'e mamata ki ai 'a 'Īsaia, ko e foha 'o 'Āmosí, 'o kau ki Siuta mo Selūsalemá.
- 2 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ngaahi 'aho faka'osí, 'o ka fokotu'u ma'u 'a e mo'ungá 'o e fale 'o e 'Eikí 'i he tumutumu 'o e ngaahi mo'ungá, pea 'e hakeaki 'i ia ke mā'olunga 'i he ngaahi mo'ungá, pea 'e tafe ki ai 'a e ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē.
- 3 Pea 'e 'alu 'a e kakai tokolahi mo nau pehē, Mou ha'u, pea tau ō hake ki he mo'ungá 'o e 'Eikí, ki he fale 'o e 'Otua 'o Sēkopé; pea te ne akonaki 'i 'a kitautolu 'i hono ngaahi halá, pea te tau 'a 'eva 'i hono ngaahi halá; he 'e 'alu atu mei Saione 'a e fonó pea mo e folofola 'a e 'Eikí mei Selūsalema.
- 4 Pea te ne fakamaau 'i he lotolotonga 'o e ngaahi pule'angá, pea valoki 'i 'a e kakai tokolahi; pea te nau tuki 'a 'enau ngaahi heletaá ke hoko ko e ngaahi mata 'i huo toho, pea mo honau ngaahi taó ko e ngaahi hele 'auhani—'e 'ikai toe hiki hake 'e ha pule'anga 'a e heletā ki ha pule'anga, pea 'e 'ikai foki te nau toe ako ki he tau.
- 5 'E fale 'o Sēkope, mou ha'u pea tau 'a 'eva 'i he maama 'o e 'Eikí; 'io, mou ha'u, he kuo mou hē kotoa pē, ko e tangata taki taha 'i hono ngaahi hala angakovi 'o'ona.
- 6 Ko ia, 'E 'Eiki, kuó ke li'aki 'a ho kakaí, 'a e fale 'o Sēkopé, koe'uhi kuo fakafonu 'a kinautolu mei he potu hahaké, 'o nau tokanga ki he kau kikite loí 'o hangē ko e kau Filisitiá, pea nau lelei 'ia 'i he fānau 'a e kau muli.
- 7 'Oku fonu foki 'a honau fonuá 'i he siliva mo e koula, pea 'oku 'ikai hano ngata'anga foki 'o 'enau ngaahi koloá; 'oku fonu foki 'a honau fonuá 'i he fanga hoosi, pea 'oku 'ikai foki hano ngata'anga 'o 'enau ngaahi salioté.
- 8 'Oku fonu foki 'a honau fonuá 'i he ngaahi tamapua; 'oku nau hū ki he ngāue 'a honau nima 'onautolú, 'a e ngaahi me'a ko ia kuo ngaohi 'e honau louhi 'i nimá.
- 9 Pea 'oku 'ikai ke punou hifo 'a e tangata me'avalé, pea ko e tangata mā'olungá 'oku 'ikai fakavaivai 'i ia, ko ia, 'oua na'a fakamolemole 'i ia.

2 Nephi 12

The word that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:

And it shall come to pass in the last days, when the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it.

And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths; for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks—nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

O house of Jacob, come ye and let us walk in the light of the Lord; yea, come, for ye have all gone astray, every one to his wicked ways.

Therefore, O Lord, thou hast forsaken thy people, the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and hearken unto soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.

Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots.

Their land is also full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made.

And the mean man boweth not down, and the great man humbleth himself not, therefore, forgive him not.

10 'A kimoutolu 'a e kau fai angahala, mou hū ki he ngaahi 'ana'i maká, pea fufuu'i 'a kimoutolu 'i he efú, koé'uhi 'e hanga 'e he manavahē ki he 'Eikí mo e nāunau 'o hono māfimaí 'o te'ia koe.

11 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e fakavaivai'i 'a e fofonga laukau 'o e tangatá, pea ko e pōlepolé 'a e tangatá 'e tuku hifo ki lalo, pea ko e 'Eikí pē 'e hakeaki'i 'i he 'aho ko iá.

12 He 'e hoko vave mai 'a e 'aho 'o e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú ki he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē, 'io, ki he pule'anga kotoa; 'io, ki he kau pōlepolé mo mā'olungá, mo e kau 'ulu mā'olungá, pea tuku hifo ia ki lalo.

13 'Io, pea 'e hoko mai 'a e 'aho 'o e 'Eikí ki he ngaahi sita kotoa pē 'o Lapanoní, he 'oku nau mā'olunga mo hīkisiá; pea ki he ngaahi 'oke kotoa pē 'o Pēsaní;

14 Pea ki he ngaahi mo'unga mā'olunga kotoa pē, pea ki he ngaahi tafungofunga kotoa pē, pea ki he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē 'oku hīkisiá, pea ki he fa'ahinga kakai kotoa pē;

15 Pea ki he ngaahi taua mā'olunga kotoa pē, pea ki he ngaahi 'ā 'o e ngaahi kolo kotoa pē;

16 Pea ki he ngaahi vaka kotoa pē 'o e tahí, pea ki he ngaahi vaka kotoa pē 'o Tāsisí, pea ki he ngaahi fakatātā matamatalelei kotoa pē.

17 Pea 'e fakavaivai'i hifo 'a e loto-mā'olunga 'a e tangatá, pea 'e fakavaivai'i mo e fiela'i 'a e kakai; pea ko e 'Eikí pē 'e hakeaki'i 'i he 'aho ko iá.

18 Pea te ne faka'auha 'aupito 'a e ngaahi tamapuá.

19 Pea te nau hū ki he ngaahi 'ana'i maká, mo e ngaahi luo 'i he kekelelé, he 'e tō kiate kinautolu 'a e manavahē ki he 'Eikí pea 'e hanga 'e he nāunau 'o hono māfimaí 'o te'ia kinautolu, 'o ka ne ka tu'u hake ke lulu'i lahi 'aupito 'a e māmaní.

20 'I he 'aho ko ia 'e lí 'e ha tangata 'ene ngaahi tamapua 'o e silivá, mo 'ene ngaahi tamapua 'o e koula 'a ia kuó ne ngaohi ma'ana ke hū ki ai, ki he fanga kumaá mo e fanga peká;

21 'E 'alu 'a e kakai ki he ngaahi mafahifahi 'i he maká, pea ki he tumutumumu 'o e ngaahi maka māsilá, he 'e hoko kiate kinautolu 'a e manavahē ki he 'Eikí, pea 'e hanga 'e he nāunau 'o hono māfimaí 'o te'ia 'a kinautolu, 'o ka ne ka tu'u hake ke lulu'i lahi 'aupito 'a e māmaní.

O ye wicked ones, enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for the fear of the Lord and the glory of his majesty shall smite thee.

And it shall come to pass that the lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

For the day of the Lord of Hosts soon cometh upon all nations, yea, upon every one; yea, upon the proud and lofty, and upon every one who is lifted up, and he shall be brought low.

Yea, and the day of the Lord shall come upon all the cedars of Lebanon, for they are high and lifted up; and upon all the oaks of Bashan;

And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills, and upon all the nations which are lifted up, and upon every people;

And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall;

And upon all the ships of the sea, and upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.

And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low; and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

And the idols he shall utterly abolish.

And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the glory of his majesty shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which he hath made for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats;

To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the majesty of his glory shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

22 Tuku ho'omou falala ki he tangatá, 'a ia 'oku 'i hono
ava' i ihú 'a 'ene mānavá; he ko e hā hano mahu'inga?

Cease ye from man, whose breath is in his nostrils;
for wherein is he to be accounted of?

2 Nīfai 13

- 1 He vakai, ko e 'Eikí, 'a ia ko e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, 'okú ne to' o atu mei Selūsalema, pea mei Siuta, 'a e poupoú mo e tokotokó, 'a e tokoni kotoa pē 'o e me'akai, mo e tokoni kotoa pē 'o e vai—
- 2 'A e tangata mālohí, mo e tangata taú, 'a e fakamāú, mo e palōfitá, mo e tangata potó, pea mo e mātu'á;
- 3 'A e 'eikitau 'o e toko nimangofulú, pea mo e tangata anga-faka'eí'eikí, mo e tangata fale'í, mo e tangata fie mana kākaá, pea mo e tangata lea mālié.
- 4 Pea te u tuku 'a e tamaikí kiate kinautolu ke hoko ko honau kau pilinisi, pea 'e pule kiate kinautolu 'a e fānau valevalé.
- 5 Pea 'e fengaohikovi'í'aki 'a e kakaí 'iate kinautolu, pea mo e tangata taki taha 'e hono kaungā'apí; pea fai ta'e-faka'apa'apa lahi 'e he tamasi'í ki he mātu'á, mo e tangata ta'e-faka'apa'apá ki he tangata anga-faka'eí'eikí.
- 6 'O ka puke 'e ha tangata 'a hono tokouá 'i he fale 'o 'ene tamaí, 'o ne pehē: 'Okú ke ma'u ha kofu, ke ke hoko ko homau pule, pea 'oua na'a tuku he hoko 'a e faka'auhá ni 'i ho nimá—
- 7 'I he 'aho ko iá te ne fuakava, 'o pehē: 'E 'ikai te u hoko ko e fai fakamo'ui; he 'oku 'ikai ha mā pe ha kofu 'i hoku falé; 'oua na'a fokotu'u au ko e pule 'o e kakaí.
- 8 He kuo maumau 'a Selūsalema, pea kuo tō mo Siuta, he ko 'enau ngaahi leá mo 'enau ngaahi angafái 'oku fakafili ia ki he 'Eikí, ke fakatupu-houhau ki he fofonga 'o hono nāunaú.
- 9 'Oku hanga 'e he anga 'o honau fofongá 'o talatalaakí 'i 'a kinautolu, pea fakahā ai 'oku tatau 'a 'enau angahalá mo Sōtoma, pea 'oku 'ikai te nau lava 'o fufuu 'i ia. Mala'ia ki honau laumālié; he kuo nau fakatupu 'a e kovi kiate kinautolu pē.
- 10 Mou pehē ki he kau mā'oní'oní te nau hao; he te nau kai 'a e fua 'o 'enau ngaahi ngāué.
- 11 Mala'ia ki he kau fai angahalá, he te nau 'auha; koe'uhi 'e tō kiate kinautolu 'a e totongi 'o 'enau ngaahi ngāué!

2 Nephi 13

For behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem, and from Judah, the stay and the staff, the whole staff of bread, and the whole stay of water—

The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient;

The captain of fifty, and the honorable man, and the counselor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator.

And I will give children unto them to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.

And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbor; the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honorable.

When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, and shall say: Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let not this ruin come under thy hand—

In that day shall he swear, saying: I will not be a healer; for in my house there is neither bread nor clothing; make me not a ruler of the people.

For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen, because their tongues and their doings have been against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory.

The show of their countenance doth witness against them, and doth declare their sin to be even as Sodom, and they cannot hide it. Wo unto their souls, for they have rewarded evil unto themselves!

Say unto the righteous that it is well with them; for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.

Wo unto the wicked, for they shall perish; for the reward of their hands shall be upon them!

- 12 Pea ko hoku kakaí, ko e fānaú 'a honau kau pule fakamālohí, pea 'oku pule kiate kinautolu 'a e kau fefiné. 'E hoku kakai, 'oku fakahala 'i koe 'e kinautolu 'oku tataki koé pea 'oku nau maumau 'i 'a e anga ho ngaahi halá.
- 13 'Oku tu'u hake 'a e 'Eikí ke taukapo 'i, pea 'oku tu'u ia ke fakamāu 'i 'a e kakaí.
- 14 'E fakamāu 'i fakataha koe 'e he 'Eiki mo e mātu 'a 'o hono kakaí pea mo honau kau pilinisí; he kuo mou kai 'o 'osi 'a e ngoue vainé mo e ngaahi me'a kuo mou kaiha 'asi mei he masivá 'i homou ngaahi falé.
- 15 Ko e hā homou lotó? 'Oku mou fu'u haha lahi 'a hoku kakaí, 'o laiki 'a e mata 'o e masivá, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otua 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.
- 16 Pea 'ikai ia ko ia pē, ka 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí: Koe'uhi 'oku fu'u pōlepole 'a e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o Saioné, pea nau 'a 'eva fakamāfutofuta mo e mata holi-kovi, 'o 'alu fakatekiteki mo fie hā, pea mo e ngaahi ukamea 'i honau va'é 'oku tatangi he'enau 'alú—
- 17 Ko ia, 'e taa 'i 'e he 'Eiki 'a e tumu 'aki 'o e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o Saione 'aki 'a e pala, pea 'e fakatelefua 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eikí.
- 18 'I he 'aho ko iá 'e to 'o 'e he 'Eikí meiate kinautolu 'a e faka'ofo'ofa lahi 'o honau ngaahi teunga tatangi mo e me'a-fa'u siueli 'o e 'ulú, mo honau ngaahi kaho fuopotopoto 'oku hangē ko e māhiná;
- 19 'A e ngaahi kahoá mo e ngaahi vesá, pea mo e ngaahi pūlóú;
- 20 'A e ngaahi tataá mo e ngaahi teuteu ki he va'é, pea mo e ngaahi me'a-ha 'i 'ulú, mo e ngaahi 'ai'anga kakalá pea mo e ngaahi hau ki honau telingá;
- 21 'A e ngaahi mamá mo e teuteu ki he ihú;
- 22 Mo honau ngaahi kofu ngingilá, pea mo e ngaahi kofu tu'á, pea mo e ngaahi pulupulú, pea mo e ngaahi kato pa'angá;
- 23 'A e ngaahi teunga aatá, pea mo e līneni tu'ovalevalé, pea mo e ngaahi pulouú, pea mo e ngaahi holoholo pūlóú.
- 24 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē, 'e fetongi 'a e namu kakalá 'aki 'a e namukū; pea ko e no'ó 'aki 'a e pulupulu noa pē; pea ko e 'ulu lau lelé 'aki 'a e tula; pea fetongi 'a e ngaahi teunga faka'ofo'ofá 'aki 'a e tauanga'a; ko e hoihoifuá 'aki 'a e fohia.
- And my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they who lead thee cause thee to err and destroy the way of thy paths.
- The Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.
- The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people and the princes thereof; for ye have eaten up the vineyard and the spoil of the poor in your houses.
- What mean ye? Ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor, saith the Lord God of Hosts.
- Moreover, the Lord saith: Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched-forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet—
- Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the Lord will discover their secret parts.
- In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments, and caul, and round tires like the moon;
- The chains and the bracelets, and the mufflers;
- The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings;
- The rings, and nose jewels;
- The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the cringing-pins;
- The glasses, and the fine linen, and hoods, and the veils.
- And it shall come to pass, instead of sweet smell there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle, a rent; and instead of well set hair, baldness; and instead of a stomacher, a girding of sackcloth; burning instead of beauty.

- 25 'E tō 'a ho kau tangatá 'i he heletā mo ho 'o kau mālohí 'i he tau. Thy men shall fall by the sword and thy mighty in the war.
- 26 Pea 'e tangilāulau mo tangi 'a hono ngaahi matapaá; And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she shall be desolate, and shall sit upon the ground.

2 Nīfai 14

- 1 Pea 'i he 'aho ko iá 'e piki 'a e fefine 'e toko fitú ki he tangata 'e toko taha, 'o nau pehē: Tē mau kai 'a 'emau mā 'amautolu pē, pea kofu 'aki 'a homau ngaahi kofu 'omautolu pē; kae kehe ke ui 'a kimautolu 'i ho hingoá koe'uhi ke to'o atu ai 'a homau manukiá.
- 2 'I he 'aho ko iá 'e faka'ofa'ofa mo nāunau'ia 'a e va'a 'o e 'Eikí; 'e lelei lahi mo matamatalelei 'a e fua 'o e fonuá kiate kinautolu 'o e fale 'o 'Isileli kuo hao mei he faka'auhá.
- 3 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē, ko kinautolu 'oku toe 'i Saioné, pea mo ia 'oku 'i Selūsalemá, 'e ui 'a kinautolu ko e mā'oní'oni, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē kuo tohi 'i he kakai mo'ui 'o Selūsalemá—
- 4 'O ka 'osi fufulu 'e he 'Eikí 'a e 'uli 'o e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o Saioné, pea fakama'a mo e halaia 'o Selūsalemá mei he lotolotonga 'o iá 'aki 'a 'ene fakamaau mālohí pea 'i he laumālie 'o e vela.
- 5 Pea 'e fakatupu 'e he 'Eikí 'i he nofo'anga kotoa 'o e mo'unga 'o Saioné, pea mo kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku ha'u ki aí, 'a e 'ao 'o e 'ahu 'i afi 'i he 'aho, pea mo e maama 'o e afi ulo ngingila 'i he pō; koe'uhi 'e hoko 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'o e nāunau 'o Saioné ko e malu'i.
- 6 Pea 'e 'i ai ha tāpanekale ko e fakamalumu'anga mei he vela 'o e 'ahó, pea ko ha hūfanga'anga, mo ha malu'anga mei he afaá pea mei he 'uhá.

2 Nephi 14

And in that day, seven women shall take hold of one man, saying: We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel; only let us be called by thy name to take away our reproach.

In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious; the fruit of the earth excellent and comely to them that are escaped of Israel.

And it shall come to pass, they that are left in Zion and remain in Jerusalem shall be called holy, every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem—

When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment and by the spirit of burning.

And the Lord will create upon every dwelling-place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day and the shining of a flaming fire by night; for upon all the glory of Zion shall be a defence.

And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and a covert from storm and from rain.

2 Nīfai 15

- 1 Pea te u hiva ki hoku 'ofá'angá 'aki 'a e hiva 'o hoku kaume'á, 'o kau ki he'ene ngoue vainé. 'Oku ma'u 'e hoku kaume'a 'ofá 'a e ngoue vaine 'i ha mo'unga kelekele mo'ui 'aupito.
- 2 Pea na'á ne 'aa'i ia mo fetuku mei ai 'a e ngaahi maká, pea ne tō 'i ai 'a e vaine lelei tahá, mo ne langa ha fale le'ó 'i hono lotolotonga, mo fokotu'u foki 'i ai ha tata 'o'anga uaine; pea ne tatali ke tupu mei ai 'a e ngaahi kálepí, ka na'e tupu mai ko e kálepí vao.
- 3 Pea ko 'eni, 'e kakai 'o Selūsalema, mo e kau tangata 'o Siutá, 'oku ou kole ke mou fakamaau 'iate au pea mo 'eku ngoue vainé.
- 4 Ko e hā mo ha me'a kuo lava nai ke mei fai ki he'eku ngoue vainé 'a ia 'oku te'eki ke u fai ki ai? Kā 'i he'eku tatali ke tupu mei ai 'a e ngaahi kálepí, na'e tupu mai ia ko e kálepí vao?
- 5 Pea ko 'eni fanongo; kau fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a ia te u fai ki he'eku ngoue vainé—te u to'ó mei ai 'a hono 'áá, pea 'e keina ia 'o 'osi; pea te u holoki 'a hono 'áá, pea 'e molomoloki hifo ia;
- 6 Pea te u faka'auha ia; 'e 'ikai 'auhani pe ngoue'í ia; kā 'e tupu ai 'a e ngaahi 'akau talatala mo e talatala'āmoa; pea te u fekau foki ki he ngaahi 'aó ke 'oua na'a nau 'uha ki ai.
- 7 He ko e ngoue vaine 'a e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú 'a e fale 'o 'Isilelí, pea ko e kau tangata 'o Siutá 'a 'ene ngaahi 'akau lelei; pea na'á ne 'amanaki ki he fakamaau totonu, kae vakai, ko e fakamālohi; ki he mā'oni'óní, kae vakai ko e tangi.
- 8 Mala'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku nau fakahoko 'a e fale ki he fale, kae 'oua kuo 'ikai toe ha potu, 'o tuku toko taha pē 'a kinautolu 'i he lotolotonga 'o e fonuá.
- 9 Na'e folofola 'a e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, 'i hoku telingá, ko e mo'oni 'e lala 'a e ngaahi fale lahi, pea 'i ha ngaahi kolo lalahi mo matamatalelé 'e 'ikai ha kakai.
- 10 'Io, ko e 'eka 'e hongofulu 'o e ngoue vainé 'e ma'u mei ai 'a e pate pē 'e taha, pea 'e tupu mei he homa 'e taha 'o e tenga 'i 'akau 'a e 'efa pē 'e taha.
- 11 'E mala'ia 'a kinautolu ko ia 'oku tu'u hengihengi hake, ke kumi ki he kava mālohí, pea fai atu 'o a'u ki he poó, kae 'oua kuo nau konā 'i he uainé!

2 Nephi 15

And then will I sing to my well-beloved a song of my beloved, touching his vineyard. My well-beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill.

And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a wine-press therein; and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.

And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard.

What could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes.

And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard—I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and I will break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down;

And I will lay it waste; it shall not be pruned nor digged; but there shall come up briars and thorns; I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

For the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant; and he looked for judgment, and behold, oppression; for righteousness, but behold, a cry.

Wo unto them that join house to house, till there can be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!

In mine ears, said the Lord of Hosts, of a truth many houses shall be desolate, and great and fair cities without inhabitant.

Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah.

Wo unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink, that continue until night, and wine inflame them!

12 Pea 'oku nau 'omi 'enau ha'apé, mo e violá, mo e timipalé mo e fulutá, mo e uainé ki he'enua ngaahi kátoangá; ka 'oku 'ikai te nau tokanga ki he ngāue 'a e 'Eikí, pe fakakaukau ki he ngāue 'a hono to'ukupú.

13 Ko ia, kuo 'alu ai 'a hoku kakaí ki he pōpula, ko'e'uhí he 'oku 'ikai te nau ma'u 'a e 'ilo; pea kuo mate 'i he fiekaia 'a honau kau tangata ongoongoá, pea kuo mate 'i he feinua 'a honau tokolahi.

14 Ko ia, kuo teuteu 'a heli ke ma'u ha kakai tokolahi ange; pea ko honau nāunaú, mo honau tokolahí, mo 'enua laukaú, pea mo ia 'oku fiefiá, 'e 'alu hifo ki ai.

15 Pea 'e 'ohifo ki lalo 'a e tangata lāuvalé, pea 'e fakavaivai 'i mo e tangata mālohí, pea ko e fofonga 'o e fie mā'olungá 'e fakavaivai 'i ia.

16 Kā 'e hakeaki 'i 'a e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú ko'e'uhi ko 'ene fakamāú, pea ko e 'Otua 'a ia 'oku mā'oni'oni 'e fakahaohaoa 'i ia ko'e'uhi ko 'ene mā'oni'oni.

17 Pea 'e toki kai 'a e fanga lami 'o hangē ko ia kuo nau anga ki aí, pea 'e kai 'e he kakai mulí 'a e ngaahi potu lala 'o e kakai koloa'ía.

18 Mala'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku tohoaki 'i mai 'a e angahalá 'aki 'a e ngaahi afo 'o e fielahí, mo e angahalá 'o hangē ko ha maea tohó.

19 'A kinautolu 'oku pehē: Tuku ke ne fai vave, fakato'oto'oto 'a 'ene ngāué, ko'e'uhi ke tau mamata ki ai; pea tuku 'a e ngaahi fakamaau 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí ke 'unu'unu mai, pea ha'u, ko'e'uhi ke tau 'ilo'ia.

20 Mala'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku ui 'a e kovi ko e leleí, mo e leleí ko e kovi, mo pehē ko e po'uli 'a e māmá, mo e māmá ko e po'uli, mo fokotu'u 'a e koná ko e melié, mo e melié ko e kona!

21 Mala'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku nau poto 'i honau mata 'onautolú mo nau fakapotopoto 'i honau mata 'onautolú.

22 Mala'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku fai mālohi 'i he inu uainé, mo e kau tangata mālohi 'oku nau felingiaki 'a e kava mālohí;

23 'A kinautolu 'oku fakatonuhia 'i 'a e angahalá ko'e'uhi ko e totongí, mo to'o atu 'a e mā'oni'oni 'a e mā'oni'oni meiate ia!

And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine are in their feasts; but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands.

Therefore, my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge; and their honorable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.

Therefore, hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure; and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it.

And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled.

But the Lord of Hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness.

Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.

Wo unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope;

That say: Let him make speed, hasten his work, that we may see it; and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it.

Wo unto them that call evil good, and good evil, that put darkness for light, and light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

Wo unto the wise in their own eyes and prudent in their own sight!

Wo unto the mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink;

Who justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!

24 Ko ia, hangē 'oku keina 'e he afi 'a e mohuku mōmoá, pea tutu 'o 'osi 'e he ulu 'o e afi 'a e kafukafú, 'e popo 'a honau aká, pea 'e mōmoa 'o puna hake 'a honau fisí 'o hangē ko e efu; ko'e uhi kuo nau lí'aki 'a e fono 'a e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, mo nau fehi 'a ki he folofola 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí.

25 Ko ia, kuo tupu hake 'a e houhau 'o e 'Eiki ki hono kakaí, pea mafao atu 'a hono to'ukupú ke tautea 'i 'a kinautolu, pea kuó ne taa 'i 'a kinautolu; pea tetetete 'a e ngaahi mo'ungá, pea haehae 'a honau ngaahi sino maté 'i he lotolotonga 'o e ngaahi halá. Neongo 'eni kotoa 'oku te'eki lolou hono houhaú, ka 'oku kei mafao atu hono to'ukupú.

26 Pea te ne hiki hake ha fuka ki he ngaahi pule'anga mei he mama'ó, pea te ne sisi kiate kinautolu mei he ngata'anga 'o māmaní; pea vakai, te nau ha'u vave mo fakato'oto'o; 'e 'ikai hela pe humu ha taha 'iate kinautolu.

27 'E 'ikai ha taha 'iate kinautolu 'e tulemohe pe mohe; pea 'e 'ikai vete 'a e nono'o 'o honau kongalotó, pea 'e motuhi 'a e nono'o 'o honau topuva'é;

28 'E māsila 'a 'enau ngaahi ngahaú, pea 'e fusi 'a 'enau ngaahi kaufana kotoa pē, pea 'e fefeka 'a e pesipesi 'o 'enau fanga hōsí 'o tatau mo e maka-afi, pea 'e teka 'a 'enau ngaahi ve'e teká 'o tatau mo ha 'ahiohio, ko 'enau ngungulú 'o hangē ha laioné.

29 Te nau ngungulu 'o hangē ko ha fanga laione mui; 'io, te nau ngungulu, pea puke 'a e me'a kuo poó, pea 'ave 'a ia kuo nau poó ki ha potu 'oku haó, 'a ia 'e 'ikai ha tokotaha 'e fá'a fakahaofi ia mei ai.

30 Pea 'i he 'aho ko iá te nau ngungulu kiate kinautolu 'o hangē ko e 'u'ulu 'a e tahí; pea kapau te nau sio ki he fonuá, vakai, ko e fakapo'uli mo e mamahi, pea 'e fakapo'uli 'a e maama 'i he ngaahi langí.

Therefore, as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, their root shall be rottenness, and their blossoms shall go up as dust; because they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.

Therefore, is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them; and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth; and behold, they shall come with speed swiftly; none shall be weary nor stumble among them.

None shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken;

Whose arrows shall be sharp, and all their bows bent, and their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind, their roaring like a lion.

They shall roar like young lions; yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry away safe, and none shall deliver.

And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea; and if they look unto the land, behold, darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.

2 Nīfai 16

- 1 The tā'u na'e hala ai 'a e tu'i ko 'Ūsaiá, na'á ku mamata foki ki he 'Eiki' oku 'afio 'i ha nofo 'a faka'e'i'eiki, 'oku mā'olunga, pea na'e fakafonu 'e hono pulupulú 'a e tempalé.
- 2 Na'e tu'u 'i 'olunga ai 'a e ongo selafimi; na'e taki ono hona kapakaú; pea na'á na fakapūlou hona matá 'aki 'a e ua, pea na 'ufi'ufi hona va'é 'aki 'a e ua, pea na puna 'aki 'a e ua.
- 3 Pea na'e kalanga 'a e taha ki he tahá 'o pehē: 'Oku mā'oni'oni, 'oku mā'oni'oni, 'oku mā'oni'oni, 'a e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú; 'oku fonu 'a māmani kotoa pē 'i hono nāunaú.
- 4 Pea na'e ngaueue 'a e ngaahi pou 'o e matapaá 'i he le'ó 'o ia na'e kalangá, pea na'e fakafonu 'a e falé 'i he 'ohu afi.
- 5 Pea na'á ku toki pehē: 'E mala'ia kiate au! he 'e motuhi atu au; koe'uhi ko ha tangata lounгутu tá'ema 'a au; pea 'oku ou nofo 'i he lototonga 'o ha kakai lounгутu tá'ema 'a; he kuo mamata 'a hoku ongo matá ki he Tu'i, ko e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.
- 6 Pea na'e toki puna mai ha toko taha 'o e ongo selafimi kiate au, na'e 'i hono nimá ha malala 'i afi mo'ui, 'a ia kuó ne to'ó 'aki 'a e hikofi mei he funga 'esi-feilaulaú;
- 7 Pea na'á ne 'ai ia ki hoku loto ngutú, mo ne pehē: Vakai, kuo tau 'eni ki ho lounгутú; pea kuo to'ó atu 'a ho'ó hiá, pea fakama 'a 'a ho'ó angahalá.
- 8 Pea na'á ku fanongo foki ki he le'ó 'o e 'Eiki, na'e folofola: Ko hai te u fekau atú, pea ko hai 'e hoko ko 'etau talafekau? Pea na'á ku toki pehē ange: Ko au 'eni; fekau au.
- 9 Pea na'á ne folofola: 'Alu, pea tala ki he kakaí ni—'Oku mou fanongo mo'oni, ka 'oku 'ikai te mou ongo 'i, pea 'oku mou mamata pau, ka na'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo'i.
- 10 Ngaohi 'a e loto 'o e kakaí ni ke fefeka, pea ngaohi ke 'oua te nau fanongo lelei, pe fakakuihi 'a honau matá—telia na'a nau mamata 'aki honau matá, pea fanongo 'aki honau telingá, pea 'ilo'i 'aki honau lotó, 'o ului pea fakamo'ui.
- 11 Na'á ku toki pehē ange: 'E 'Eiki, 'e fēfē hono fuoloá? Pea na'á ne folofola mai: Kae 'oua ke lala 'a e ngaahi koló 'o 'ikai ha kakai ke nofo 'i, pea mo e ngaahi falé 'o 'ikai nofo 'i 'e ha taha, pea lala 'aupito 'a e fonuá;

2 Nephi 16

In the year that king Uzziah died, I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

Above it stood the seraphim; each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

And one cried unto another, and said: Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory.

And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.

Then said I: Wo is unto me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips; and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips; for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.

Then flew one of the seraphim unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar;

And he laid it upon my mouth, and said: Lo, this has touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.

Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then I said: Here am I; send me.

And he said: Go and tell this people—Hear ye indeed, but they understood not; and see ye indeed, but they perceived not.

Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes—lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted and be healed.

Then said I: Lord, how long? And he said: Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate;

12 Pea kuo 'ave 'e he 'Eikí 'a e kakai ke mama 'o 'aupito,
koe'uhi 'e lala 'aupito 'a e loto fonuá.

13 Ka 'e 'i ai 'a e vahehongofulu 'e taha 'o e kakaí, pea te
nau foki mai, pea 'e keina 'a kinautolu, 'o hangē ko e fu'u
'akau ko e teilí, pea hangē ko e fu'u 'akau ko e 'oké 'a ia
'oku kei 'i ai hono huhu'á 'i he taimi 'oku nau fakatōlau
aí; ko ia 'e hoko pehē hono fakatolonga 'o e hako
mā'oni'oni.

And the Lord have removed men far away, for there
shall be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.

But yet there shall be a tenth, and they shall return,
and shall be eaten, as a teil tree, and as an oak whose sub-
stance is in them when they cast their leaves; so the holy
seed shall be the substance thereof.

2 Nīfai 17

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o 'Āhasi, ko e foha 'o Sōtame, ko e foha 'o 'Ūsaia, ko e tu'i 'o Siutá, na'e 'alu hake 'a Lēsini, ko e tu'i 'o Siliá mo Peka ko e foha 'o Lemalia, ko e tu'i 'o 'Isilelí, ki Selūsalema ke tau'i ia, ka na'e 'ikai te ne lava 'o ikuna'i ia.
- 2 Pea na'e fakahā ki he fale 'o Tēvitá, 'o pehē: 'Oku kau fakataha 'a Silia mo 'Ifalemi. Pea na'e tetetete 'a hono lotó 'i he manavahē, mo e loto 'o hono kakáí, 'o hangē ko hono lulu'i 'e he matangi 'a e ngaahi 'akau 'o e vaó.
- 3 Na'e toki folofola 'a e 'Eikí kia 'Īsaia: 'Alu atu 'eni 'o fakafetaulaki kia 'Āhasi, 'a koe mo Siasasupe ko ho fohá, 'i he ngata'anga 'o e tafe'anga 'o e vai taupotu ki 'olunga 'i he hala 'o e ngoue 'a e tangata fakama'a kofú;
- 4 Peá ke pehē atu kiate ia: Tokanga, pea ke fakalongolongo; 'oua 'e manavahē, pea 'oua foki 'e loto-vaivai koe'uhi ko e ongo tūhulú ni 'oku kohú he kuo mei mate ia, koe'uhi ko e 'ita lahi 'a Lēsini ki Siliá, pea ki he foha 'o Lemaliá.
- 5 He kuo fealea'aki 'a Silia mo 'Ifalemi pea mo e foha 'o Lemaliá ke faikovi kiate koe, 'o pehē:
- 6 Tau ō hake 'o tau'i 'a Siuta, pea fakamamahi'i ia, pea tau vahevahe 'a e koló 'iate kitautolu, pea fokotu'u ha tu'i 'oku tau loto ki ai 'i hono lotolotonga, 'io, 'a e foha 'o Tapealé.
- 7 'Oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá: 'E 'ikai pehē ia, pea 'e 'ikai foki fakahoko ia.
- 8 He ko e 'ulu 'o Siliá ko Tāmasikusi, pea ko e 'ulu 'o Tāmasikusi ko Lēsini; he 'e te'eki kakato 'a e ta'u 'e onongofulu mā nima 'e maumau 'i 'a 'Ifalemi pea 'e 'ikai kei hoko ia ko ha kakai.
- 9 Pea ko e 'ulu 'o 'Ifalemi ko Samēlia, pea ko e 'ulu 'o Samēliá 'a e foha 'o Lemaliá. Kapau 'oku 'ikai te mou tui, ko e mo'oni 'e 'ikai fokotu'u 'a kimoutolu.
- 10 Pea 'ikai ia ko ia pē, na'e toe folofola 'a e 'Eikí kia 'Āhasi, 'o pehē:
- 11 Kole ha faka'ilonga kiate koe mei he 'Eiki ko ho 'Otuá; kole kiate ia ke ne fai ha me'a 'i he māmaní pe 'i he langí 'i 'olunga.
- 12 Ka na'e pehē 'e 'Āhasi: 'E 'ikai te u kole, pea 'e 'ikai foki te u 'ahi'ahi'i 'a e 'Eikí.

2 Nephi 17

And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin, king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it, but could not prevail against it.

And it was told the house of David, saying: Syria is confederate with Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind.

Then said the Lord unto Isaiah: Go forth now to meet Ahaz, thou and Shearjashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller's field;

And say unto him: Take heed, and be quiet; fear not, neither be faint-hearted for the two tails of these smoking firebrands, for the fierce anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.

Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil counsel against thee, saying:

Let us go up against Judah and vex it, and let us make a breach therein for us, and set a king in the midst of it, yea, the son of Tabeal.

Thus saith the Lord God: It shall not stand, neither shall it come to pass.

For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus, Rezin; and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken that it be not a people.

And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is Remaliah's son. If ye will not believe surely ye shall not be established.

Moreover, the Lord spake again unto Ahaz, saying:

Ask thee a sign of the Lord thy God; ask it either in the depths, or in the heights above.

But Ahaz said: I will not ask, neither will I tempt the Lord.

13 Pea na'á ne pehē: Mou fanongo mai 'eni, 'E fale 'o Tēvita; ko ha me'a si'isi'i koā kiate kimoutolu ho'omou faka'ita'i 'a e tangatá, ko ia te mou fakatupu-houhau ai ki hoku 'Otuá foki?

14 Ko ia, ko e 'Eikí tonu te ne tuku kiate kimoutolu ha faka'ilonga—Vakai, 'e tu'itu'ia ha tāupo'ou, pea fā'ele'i ha tama, pea ui 'a hono huafá ko 'Īmanuela.

15 Te ne kai 'a e patá mo e hu'a honé, koe'uhi ke ne 'ilo'i ke fakafisinga 'a e koví, kae fili 'a e leleí.

16 Koe'uhi 'i he te'eki ke 'ilo'i 'e he tamasi'i ke fakafisinga 'a e koví kae fili 'a e leleí, ko e fonua 'okú ke fehi'a ki aí 'e lí'aki 'e hono ongo tu'í fakatou'osi.

17 'E 'omi 'e he 'Eikí kiate koe, pea ki ho kakaí, pea ki he fale 'o ho'o tamaí, ha ngaahi 'aho 'a ia 'oku te'eki ai ke hoko, talu 'a e 'aho na'e 'alu ai 'a 'Ifalemi mei Siuta, ko e tu'i 'o 'Asiliá.

18 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'aho ko iá 'e sisí atu 'a e 'Eikí ki he lango 'a ia 'oku 'i he potu taupotu 'o 'Isipité, pea ki he pī 'a ia 'oku 'i he fonua ko 'Āsiliá.

19 Pea te nau ha'u, pea 'e nofo 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'i he ngaahi tele'a lí'akí, pea 'i he ngaahi 'ana'i maká, pea 'i he ngaahi 'akau talatala kotoa pē, pea 'i he ngaahi 'akau kotoa pē.

20 'I he 'aho pē ko iá 'e tele 'e he 'Eikí 'aki 'a e tele 'a ia kuo nō; 'e kinautolu ki kō atu mei he vaitafé, 'e he tu'i 'o 'Asiliá, 'a e 'ulu, pea mo e fulufulu 'o e va'é; pea 'e faka'osi 'e ia mo e kavá foki.

21 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'aho ko iá, 'e fafanga'i 'e ha tangata ha pulu mui fefine mo e sipi 'e ua;

22 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē, te ne kai 'a e patá koe'uhi ko e lahi fau 'o e hu'akau 'e ma'u mei aí; he 'e kai 'a e patá mo e hu'a honé 'e kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku toe 'i he fonuá.

23 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'aho ko iá, ko e potu kotoa pē na'e 'i ai 'a e vaine 'e afe 'o tatau mo e kongá siliva 'e afe, 'e tupu 'i ai 'a e 'akau talatala mo e talatala'āmoa pē 'e ma'u 'i aí.

24 'E ha'u ki ai 'a e kau tangata mo e ngaahi ngahau mo e ngaahi kaufana, he 'e hoko 'a e fonuá kotoa pē ko ha potu 'o e ngaahi 'akau talatala mo e talatala'āmoa.

And he said: Hear ye now, O house of David; is it a small thing for you to weary men, but will ye weary my God also?

Therefore, the Lord himself shall give you a sign— Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil and to choose the good.

For before the child shall know to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.

The Lord shall bring upon thee, and upon thy people, and upon thy father's house, days that have not come from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah, the king of Assyria.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.

And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.

In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired, by them beyond the river, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet; and it shall also consume the beard.

And it shall come to pass in that day, a man shall nourish a young cow and two sheep;

And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk they shall give he shall eat butter; for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.

And it shall come to pass in that day, every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings, which shall be for briers and thorns.

With arrows and with bows shall men come thither, because all the land shall become briers and thorns.

25 Pea ko e ngaahi tafungofunga kotoa pē 'e keli 'aki 'a e
huo, 'e 'ikai ha'u ha taha ki ai koe'uhi ko e manavahē ki
he ngaahi 'akau talatalá mo e talatala 'āmoá; pea 'e hoko
ia ko ha potu ke tukuange ai 'a e fanga pulú, pea
fā'iteliha ai 'a e fanga pulu ikí.

And all hills that shall be digged with the mattock,
there shall not come thither the fear of briers and
thorns; but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen, and
the treading of lesser cattle.

2 Nīfai 18

- 1 Pea 'ikai ia ko ia pē, ka na'e pehē mai 'a e folofola 'a e 'Eikí kiate au: To 'o kiate koe ha takainga lahi, pea tohi ki ai 'aki ha peni 'a e tangatá, 'o kau kia Maha-sala-hase-pase.
- 2 Pea na'á ku to 'o kiate au ha kau fakamo'oni falala'anga ke tohi, ko 'Ūlaia ko e taula'eikí, mo Sakalia ko e foha 'o Sepelikaiá.
- 3 Pea na'á ku 'alu ki he palōfita fefiné; pea na'e tu'itu'ia ia, 'o ne fanau 'i ha tama. Pea na'e toki folofola 'e he 'Eikí kiate au: Ui hono hingoá ko Maha-sala-hase-pase.
- 4 He vakai, 'e te'eki motu 'a fe'unga 'a e tamasi'í ke ne pehē, Ko 'eku tamai, mo 'eku fá'ē, ka kuo 'ave atu 'a e ngaahi koloa 'o Tāmasikusí mo e ngaahi koloa vete 'o Samēliá mei he 'ao 'o e tu 'i 'o 'Asiliá.
- 5 Na'e folofola foki 'a e 'Eikí kiate au, 'o pehē:
- 6 Ko e me'a 'i he lí'aki 'e he kakaí ní 'a e ngaahi vai tafetafe mālie 'o Sailoá, pea nau fiefia 'ia Lēsini mo e foha 'o Lemaliá;
- 7 Ko ia ai, vakai, 'oku 'omi 'e he 'Eikí kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi vai 'o e vaiatafe, 'oku mālohi pea lahi, 'io, 'a e tu 'i 'o 'Asiliá mo e kotoa 'o hono nāunaú; pea te ne fono hake 'i hono ngaahi tafenga vai kotoa pē, pea fá 'i hono ngaahi kauvai kotoa pē.
- 8 Pea te ne fou atu 'i Siuta; te ne fá pea mafola, te ne a'u hake ki he kiá; pea ko e fālahi 'o hono kapakaú 'e fakafonu 'a e maokupu 'o ho fonuá, 'E 'Īmanuela.
- 9 Mou kau fakataha, 'a kimoutolu 'a e kakai, pea 'e laiki 'a kimoutolu ke momo-iiki; pea fanongo mai, 'a kimoutolu 'i he ngaahi fonua mama 'o kotoa pē; teuteu 'i 'a kimoutolu, pea 'e fakamomoiiki 'a kimoutolu; teuteu 'a kimoutolu ki he tau, pea 'e fakamomoiiki 'a kimoutolu.
- 10 Alea fakataha, pea 'e 'ikai hano 'aonga kiate kimoutolu; alea fakataha, pea 'e 'ikai fakahoko ia; he 'oku 'iate kinautolu 'a e 'Otuá.
- 11 He na'e folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí kiate au 'i ha fakatokanga mamafa, mo ne enginaki 'i au ke 'oua na'á ku 'alu 'i he hala 'o e kakai ko 'ení, 'o ne folofola:

2 Nephi 18

Moreover, the word of the Lord said unto me: Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen, concerning Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record, Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.

And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived and bare a son. Then said the Lord to me: Call his name, Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

For behold, the child shall not have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, before the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria.

The Lord spake also unto me again, saying:

Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah's son;

Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria and all his glory; and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks.

And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.

Associate yourselves, O ye people, and ye shall be broken in pieces; and give ear all ye of far countries; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.

Take counsel together, and it shall come to naught; speak the word, and it shall not stand; for God is with us.

For the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying:

12 'Oua ná 'á ke pehē, ko ha kautaha, kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'a ia 'e pehē ki ai 'e he kakai ni, ko ha kautaha; pe manavahē ki he me'a 'oku nau manavahē ki ai, pea 'oua te ke ilifia.

13 'Apsia ki he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, pea tuku ke ne hoko ko ho manavahē 'angá, pea tuku ke ne hoko ko ho ilifia 'angá.

14 Pea 'e hoko ia ko ha hūfanga 'anga kiate koe; kā ko ha maka ke tūkia 'anga, mo ha maka ke humu ai 'a e ongo fale 'o 'Isilelí, koe 'uhi ke hoko ko ha tauhele mo ha tauhele 'anga ki he kakai 'o Selūsalemá.

15 Pea ko e tokolahi 'o kinautolu te nau tūkia 'o tō, pea laiki, pea tauhele 'i, pea ma 'u 'i he tauhelé.

16 Nono 'o fakataha 'a e fakamo 'oní, fakama 'u 'a e fonó 'i he 'eku kau ākongá.

17 Pea te u tatali ki he 'Eiki, 'a ia 'okú ne fufuu 'i 'a hono fofongá mei he fale 'o Sēkopé, pea te u kumi kiate ia.

18 Vakai, ko au mo e fānau 'a ia kuo foaki kiate au 'e he 'Eiki ke hoko ko ha ngaahi faka 'ilonga pea mo ha ngaahi me'a fakaofa 'i 'Isileli mei he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, 'a ia 'oku 'afio 'i he Mo 'unga ko Saioné.

19 Pea 'o ka nau ka pehē atu kiate kimoutolu: Alea mo kinautolu 'a ia 'oku ma 'u ha ngaahi laumālie 'ulí, pea ki ha kau taula fá 'ahikehe 'a ia 'oku mapu 'o hangē ha manupuná mo femuhumu 'i—'ikai 'oku totonu ke fekumi 'e ha kakai ki honau 'Otuá, 'a e 'Otuá ko ia 'o e me'a mo 'ui kotoa pē, kapau 'oku nau fie fanongo mei he maté?

20 Fakatatau 'enau ngaahi leá ki he fonó pea ki he fakamo 'oní; pea kapau 'oku 'ikai te nau lea 'o fakatatau mo e folofolá ni, 'oku tupu ia 'i he 'ikai ha maama 'iate kinautolu.

21 Pea te nau 'alu atu 'i he fonuá 'i he mamahi mo e fiekaia; pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'o ka nau ka fiekaia, te nau 'ita lahi 'aupito, pea lea kovi ki honau tu 'i mo honau 'Otuá, pea sio ki 'olunga.

22 Pea te nau sio ki he fonuá pea vakai ki he mamahi pē, mo e fakapo 'uli, mo e fakamamahi lahi, pea 'e kapusi fakamālohi 'a kinautolu ki he fakapo 'ulí.

Say ye not, A confederacy, to all to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid.

Sanctify the Lord of Hosts himself, and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread.

And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling, and for a rock of offense to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

And many among them shall stumble and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.

Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.

And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.

Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of Hosts, which dwelleth in Mount Zion.

And when they shall say unto you: Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep and mutter—should not a people seek unto their God for the living to hear from the dead?

To the law and to the testimony; and if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.

And they shall pass through it hardly bestead and hungry; and it shall come to pass that when they shall be hungry, they shall fret themselves, and curse their king and their God, and look upward.

And they shall look unto the earth and behold trouble, and darkness, dimness of anguish, and shall be driven to darkness.

2 Nīfai 19

- 1 Ka neongo iá, 'e 'ikai matolu tatau 'a e fakapo'ulí mo hono fakamamahi'i iá, 'i hono fuofua fakamamahi'i si'i kae 'ikai faka'auha kakato 'a e fonua 'o Sepuloní, mo e fonua 'o Nafitalái; pea toki fakamamahi'i lahi ange ki mui, 'i he Tahi Kulokulá ki kō atu 'i Soatani 'i Kāleli 'o e ngaahi pule'angá.
- 2 Ko e kakai 'a ia na'e 'a'eva 'i he po'ulí kuo nau mamata ki he maama lahi; 'a kinautolu 'oku nofo 'i he fonua 'o e malumalu 'o e mate kuo ulo kiate kinautolu 'a e māmá.
- 3 Kuó ke fakatokolahi 'a e pule'angá, pea fakalahi 'a e fiefiá—'oku nau fakafiefa 'i ho 'aó 'o hangē ko e fiefa 'i he taimi utu ta'ú, pea hangē ko e fakafiefa 'a e kau tangatá 'o nau ka vahevahe 'a e koloa veté.
- 4 He kuó ke fesí 'i 'a e ha'amo 'o 'ene kavengá, pea mo e 'akau fakalava ki hono umá, 'a e me'a tā 'a hono tokotaha fakamamahi.
- 5 He ko e tau kotoa pē 'a e tangata taú ko e longoa 'a fakatupu puputu 'u ia, mo honau ngaahi kofu kuo pani totó; ka 'e tutu ia pea hoko ko e fefie ki he afí.
- 6 He kuo fanau 'i kiate kinautolu ha tama, kuo foaki kiate kinautolu ha foha; pea 'e 'i hono umá 'a e pule; pea 'e ui 'a hono huafá ko Fakafofo, ko Akonaki, ko e 'Otua Māfimaifi, ko e Tamai Ta'engata, ko e Pilinisi 'o e Melino.
- 7 Pea ko e tupulaki 'a hono pule'angá mo e melinó 'oku 'ikai hano ngata'anga, pea 'afio 'i he 'afio'anga 'o Tēvitá, pea 'i hono pule'angá ke fakamaau ia, mo fokotu 'u ia 'i he fakamaau mo e fakamaau totonu 'o kamata mei he taimi ko iá, 'io 'o ta'engata. Ko e māfimaifi 'o e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú te ne fakahoko iá.
- 8 Na'e fekau atu 'e he 'Eiki 'a 'ene folofolá kia Sēkope, pea kuo tō ia ki 'Isileli.
- 9 Pea 'e 'ilo 'i 'e he kakai kotoa pē, 'io 'e 'Ifalemi mo e kakai 'o Samēliá, 'a kinautolu 'oku pehē 'i he hīkisia mo e fiela 'i 'o e lotó:
- 10 Kuo tō ki lalo 'a e ngaahi maka kuo langa 'aki hotau ngaahi koló, ka te mau langa 'aki ha ngaahi maka kuo tā; kuo tu'usi ki lalo 'a e ngaahi 'akau ko e sukaminó, ka te mau fetongi 'aki ia 'a e 'akau ko e sitá.
- 11 Ko ia, 'e fokotu 'u hake 'e he 'Eiki 'a e ngaahi fili 'o Lēsiní kiate ia, pea fakakau fakataha 'a hono ngaahi filí;

2 Nephi 19

Nevertheless, the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun, and the land of Naphtali, and afterwards did more grievously afflict by the way of the Red Sea beyond Jordan in Galilee of the nations.

The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light; they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

Thou hast multiplied the nation, and increased the joy—they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.

For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor.

For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.

For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

Of the increase of government and peace there is no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth, even forever. The zeal of the Lord of Hosts will perform this.

The Lord sent his word unto Jacob and it hath lighted upon Israel.

And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitants of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart:

The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones; the sycamores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.

Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;

12 'A e kakai 'o Siliá 'i mu'a pea mo e kau Filisitiá 'i mui; pea te nau keina 'a 'Isileli 'aki 'a e ngutu kuo fakamanga. Neongo kotoa 'eni 'oku te'eki ai ke lolou 'a hono houhaú, ka 'oku kei mafao atu 'a hono to'ukupú.

13 He 'oku 'ikai tafoki 'a e kakai kiate ia 'okú ne taa 'i 'a kinautolú, pea 'oku 'ikai foki te nau kumi ki he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.

14 Ko ia 'e motuhi atu 'e he 'Eiki mei 'Isileli 'a e 'ulú mo e ikú, 'a e va'a mo e kahó 'i he 'aho pē taha.

15 Ko e motu'a ko e 'ulú ia; pea ko e palōfita 'a ia 'oku ako 'aki 'a e loí, ko e ikú ia.

16 He ko e kau takimu'a 'o e kakai ni 'oku nau fakatupu 'enau faihalá; pea ko e kakai ko ia kuo nau tatakí ko kinautolu kuo faka'auhá.

17 Ko ia, 'oku 'ikai hōifua 'a e 'Eiki ki honau kau talavou, pe 'alo'ofa ki he 'enau fānau 'oku tamai maté mo e kau uitoú; he ko e mālualoi mo e kau fai kovi 'a kinautolu taki taha, pea 'oku lea 'aki 'a e valé 'e he ngutu kotoa pē. Neongo 'eni kotoa 'oku te'eki ai ke lolou 'a hono houhaú, ka 'oku kei mafao atu 'a hono to'ukupú.

18 He 'oku vela 'a e fai angahalá 'o hangē ko e afi; 'e keina 'e ia 'a e ngaahi 'akau talatalá mo e talatala 'āmoá, pea tutu 'e ia ke vela 'a e ngaahi pupunga 'akau matolu 'o e ngaahi vaó, pea te nau 'alu hake 'o hangē ko e puna hake 'a e 'ahu.

19 Ko e me'a 'i he houhau 'o e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú kuo fakapo'uli ai 'a e fonuá, pea 'e hangē 'a e kakai ko e fefie ki he afi; 'e 'ikai fakamo'ui 'e ha tangata 'a hono tokouá.

20 Pea te ne kaiha'asi 'i he nima to'omata'ú kae kei fiekaia pē; pea te ne kai 'i he to'ohemá, ka 'e 'ikai te nau mākona; pea 'e kai 'e he tangata taki taha 'a e kakano 'o hono nima 'o'oná—

21 Ko Manase mo 'Ifalemi; pea ko 'Ifalemi mo Manase; te na kau fakataha ke tau 'i 'a Siutá. Neongo iá 'oku te'eki ai ke lolou 'a hono houhaú, ka 'oku kei mafao atu 'a hono to'ukupú.

The Syrians before and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth them, neither do they seek the Lord of Hosts.

Therefore will the Lord cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush in one day.

The ancient, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail.

For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed.

Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows; for every one of them is a hypocrite and an evil-doer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

For wickedness burneth as the fire; it shall devour the briars and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forests, and they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke.

Through the wrath of the Lord of Hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire; no man shall spare his brother.

And he shall snatch on the right hand and be hungry; and he shall eat on the left hand and they shall not be satisfied; they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm—

Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh; they together shall be against Judah. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

2 Nīfai 20

- 1 Mala'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku fokotu'u ha ngaahi lao 'oku ta'e-mā'oni'oni, pea 'oku nau tohi 'a e lao fakamamahi 'a ia kuo nau fa'ú;
- 2 Koe'uhi ke nau ta'ofi ai 'a e fakamaau totonú meiate kinautolu 'oku faingata'a'ia, pea fa'ao 'a e totonú mei hoku kakai 'oku masivá, koe'uhi ke nau kaiha'a mei he kau uitoú, pea koe'uhi ke nau kaiha'a mei he tamai maté!
- 3 Pea ko e hā te mou fai 'i he 'aho 'o e tauteá, pea 'i he faka'auha 'e ha'u mei he mama'ó? Ko hai te mou hola ki ai ke ma'u ha tokoní? pea te mou fufuu 'i 'i fē 'a ho'omou ngaahi koloa mahu'ingá?
- 4 Kapau 'e 'ikai te nau ma'u au te nau punou hifo fakataha mo e kau pōpulá, pea te nau tō fakataha mo e kakai 'e tāmata'í. Kā neongo kotoa 'eni 'oku te'eki ai lolou 'a hono houhaú, ka 'oku kei mafao atu 'a hono to'ukupú.
- 5 'E tangata 'Asilia, ko e me'a tā 'o 'eku 'itá, pea ko e tokotoko 'i honau nimá 'a 'enau 'itá.
- 6 Te u fekau 'i atu ia ke tau 'i ha pule'anga mālualoí, pea te u tuku kiate ia ha fekau koe'uhi ko e kakai 'oku ou 'ita ki ai ke 'ave 'enau koloá meiate kinautolu, pea to'ó 'enau ngaahi koloa mahu'ingá, pea molomoloki hifo 'a kinautolu 'o hangē ko e pelepela 'o e ngaahi halá.
- 7 Neongo iá 'oku 'ikai ke pehē 'a hono lotó, pea 'oku 'ikai fakakaukau pehē 'a hono lotó; ka 'oku 'i hono lotó ke faka'auha pea motuhi atu ha ngaahi pule'anga ka 'oku 'ikai tokosí'i.
- 8 He 'okú ne pehē: 'Ikai 'e hoko hoku kau pilinisí ko e ngaahi tu'i?
- 9 'Ikai 'oku hangē 'a Kalinó ko Kalikemisí? 'Ikai 'oku hangē 'a Hāmoti ko 'Āpatí? 'Ikai 'oku hangē 'a Samēlia ko Tāmasikusí?
- 10 'O hangē kuo fokotu'u 'e hoku nimá 'a e ngaahi pule'anga 'o e ngaahi tamapuá, pea lelei ange 'enau ngaahi tamapuá 'i he ngaahi tamapua 'o Selūsalema mo Samēliá;
- 11 'E 'ikai koā, te u fai 'a e me'a na 'á ku fai ki Samēlia mo 'ene ngaahi tamapuá, pea u fai pehē foki ki Selūsalema mo 'ene ngaahi tamapuá?

2 Nephi 20

Wo unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;

To turn away the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!

And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?

Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is their indignation.

I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.

Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but in his heart it is to destroy and cut off nations not a few.

For he saith: Are not my princes altogether kings?

Is not Calno as Carchemish? Is not Hamath as Arpad? Is not Samaria as Damascus?

As my hand hath founded the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;

Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and to her idols?

12 Ko ia 'e hoko 'o pehē 'o ka 'osi 'a hono fai 'e he 'Eiki 'a 'ene ngāue kotoa 'i he Mo'unga ko Saionē pea 'i Selūsalema, te u tautea 'i 'a e fua 'o e loto-fefeka 'a e tu 'i 'o 'Asiliá, pea mo e hīkisia 'o hono fofonga fie mā'olungá.

13 Koe'uhi kuó ne pehē: 'I he mālohi 'o hoku nimá pea 'i hoku potó kuó u fai ai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni; he 'oku ou potó; pea kuó u hiki 'a e ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'o e kakaí, pea kaihá'asi mo 'enua ngaahi koloá, pea kuó u fakamo'ulaloa 'i 'a e kakai 'o e fonuá 'o hangē ha tangata to'á;

14 Pea kuo 'ilo 'i 'e hoku nimá 'a e ngaahi koloa 'a e kakaí 'o hangē ha pununga 'oku toé pea hangē 'oku tānaki 'e ha taha 'a e ngaahi fua 'i manu kuo mo 'utukuá 'oku pehē 'eku tānaki 'a māmaní kotoa; pea kuo 'ikai ha taha 'e ngauē 'i hono kapakaú, pe fakamanga 'a e ngutú, pe fakasiosio.

15 'E pōlepole koā 'a e tokí kiate ia 'okú ne ngāue 'aki iá? 'E pōlepole koā 'a e kilí 'o pehē 'oku 'ikai te ne fie ma'u 'a e tokotaha 'okú ne fetoho 'aki iá? Tala'ehai 'e lava 'e he va'akaú 'o tā ha me'a kapau 'oku 'ikai ha nima ke ne hiki hake ia, pe 'e lava 'e he tokotokó 'o 'alu 'iate ia pē 'o hangē 'oku 'ikai ko ha va'akau iá!

16 Ko ia 'e fekau 'i atu 'e he 'Eiki, ko e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, ki he sisinó, 'a e tutuē; pea 'i hono nāunaú te ne tafunaki ha vela 'oku hangē ko e vela 'o ha afí.

17 Pea ko e maama 'o 'Isilelí 'e hoko ko ha afi, pea ko hono Tokotaha Mā'oní'oní ko ha uló 'o e afi, pea 'e vela ia pea keina hono ngaahi 'akau talatalá mo e talatala'āmoá 'i he 'aho pē 'e taha;

18 Pea 'e vela 'o 'osi 'a e nāunau 'o hono vao 'akaú, pea mo 'ene ngoue fuá, 'a e laumalié mo e sinó fakatou'osi; pea te nau hangē ko e pongia 'a ha tangata to' o fuká.

19 Pea 'e si'i 'a hono toe 'o e ngaahi 'akau 'o hono vaó, pea 'e lava 'e ha ki'i tamasi'i si'i 'o tohi ia.

20 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'aho ko iá, ko e toenga 'o 'Isilelí, pea mo kinautolu kuo hao 'i he fale 'o Sēkopé, 'e 'ikai te nau toe fakafalala kiate ia 'a ia na'e tautea 'i 'a kinautolú, kā ko hono mo'oní, te nau falala ki he 'Eiki, ko e Tokotaha Mā'oní'oní 'o 'Isilelí.

21 'E foki mai 'a e toengá, 'io, 'a e toenga 'o Sēkopé, ki he 'Otua māfimaí.

Wherefore it shall come to pass that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon Mount Zion and upon Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks.

For he saith: By the strength of my hand and by my wisdom I have done these things; for I am prudent; and I have moved the borders of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man;

And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people; and as one gathereth eggs that are left have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

Shall the ax boast itself against him that heweth therewith? Shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? As if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself as if it were no wood!

Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, send among his fat ones, leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.

And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame, and shall burn and shall devour his thorns and his briers in one day;

And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body; and they shall be as when a standard-bearer fainteth.

And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them, but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

The remnant shall return, yea, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

22 He neongo 'e tatau 'a ho kakai ko 'Isilelí mo e 'one'one 'o e tahí, kā 'e foki mai pē ha toenga 'o kinautolu; ka ko e faka'auha kuo tu'utu'uni 'e fonu mahuohua ia 'i he mā'oni'oni.

23 He kuo finangalo 'a e 'Eiki ko e 'Otua 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, te ne fai ha faka'auha 'a ia kuo tu'utu'uni ki he fonuá kotoa.

24 Ko ia, 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otua 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú: 'E hoku kakai 'a ia 'oku nofo 'i Saioné, 'oua 'e manavahē ki he tangata 'Asiliá; te ne taa 'i koe 'aki 'a e me'a tā, pe hiki hake 'a hono tokotokó kiate koe, 'o hangē ko ia na'e fai 'i 'Isipité.

25 Ka 'oku toetoe si'i pē, pea 'e ngata 'a hoku 'itá, pea mo 'eku 'itá 'i honau faka'auhá.

26 Pea 'e fakatupu 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú ha tautea kiate ia 'o hangē ko e faka'auha 'o Mitiani 'i he maka ko 'Ōlepí; pea hangē ko 'ene hiki hake hono tokotokó ki he tahí 'e pehē 'a 'ene hiki hake ia 'o hangē ko ia na'e fai 'i 'Isipité.

27 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'aho ko iá, 'e to' 'o 'a 'ene kavengá mei ho umá, pea mo 'ene ha'amongá mei ho kiá, pea 'e faka'auha 'a e ha'amongá koe'uhi ko e pani koe.

28 Kuo ha'u ia ki 'Aioti, kuo 'alu atu ia ki Mikiloni; kuó ne tuku 'a 'ene ngaahi salioté 'i Mikimasi.

29 Kuo nau laka atu 'i he hala he mo'ungá; kuo nau kamata 'a 'enau nofó 'i Kepa; 'oku manavahē 'a Lamata; kuo hola 'a Kipea 'o Saulá.

30 Hiki hake ho le'ó, 'E 'ofefine 'o Kalimi; 'ai ke ongo atu ki Laisi, 'E si'i 'Anatotí masiva.

31 Kuo hola 'a Matemena; 'oku fakataha mai 'a e kakai 'o Kapimé ke nau fehólaki.

32 Ka te ne nofo 'i Nopi 'i he 'aho ko iá; te ne lulu 'i hono nimá ki he mo'unga 'o e 'ofefine 'o Saioné, 'a e mo'unga 'o Selūsalemá.

33 Vakai, ko e 'Eiki, ko e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, te ne tu'usi 'a e va'á 'aki 'a e manavahē; pea ko e kakai 'oku mā'olungá 'e tā hifo; pea ko e fielahí 'e fakavaivai'i.

34 Pea te ne tu'usi ki lalo 'a e ngaahi pupunga 'akau matolu 'o e ngaahi vaó 'aki 'a e ukamea, pea 'e tō 'a Lapanoni 'i ha tokotaha māfimaifi.

For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return; the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

For the Lord God of Hosts shall make a consumption, even determined in all the land.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord God of Hosts: O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian; he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.

For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.

And the Lord of Hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb; and as his rod was upon the sea so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.

And it shall come to pass in that day that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.

He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages.

They are gone over the passage; they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramath is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.

Lift up the voice, O daughter of Gallim; cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.

Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to flee.

As yet shall he remain at Nob that day; he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.

Behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts shall lop the bough with terror; and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down; and the haughty shall be humbled.

And he shall cut down the thickets of the forests with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.

2 Nīfai 2 I

- 1 Pea 'e tupu hake ha tokotoko mei he tefito 'o Sesé, pea 'e tupu ha va'a mei hono ngaahi aká.
- 2 Pea 'e nofo 'iate ia 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí, 'a e laumālie 'o e 'iló mo e fá 'a 'iló, 'a e laumālie 'o e akonakí mo e mālohí, 'a e laumālie 'o e potó pea mo e manavahē ki he 'Eikí;
- 3 Pea te ne ngaohi ia ke ne 'ilo'ilo 'i he manavahē ki he 'Eikí; pea 'e 'ikai te ne fakamaau 'o fakatatau ki he me'a 'okú ne vakai ki aí, pe valoki 'o fakatatau ki he'ene fanongó.
- 4 Kā 'i he mā'oni'oni te ne fakamāu 'i 'a e masivá, pea fakamaau ta'e-filifilimānako mā'á e kau angamalū 'o e māmani; pea te ne taa 'i 'a māmani 'aki 'a e me'a tā 'o hono fofongá, pea te ne tāmāte 'i 'a e kau fai angahalá 'aki 'a e mānava 'o hono loungutú.
- 5 Pea 'e hoko 'a e mā'oni'oni ko e no'o 'o hono kongalotó, pea mo e tui faivelengá ko e nono'o 'o hono no'otanga-valá.
- 6 Pea 'e toki nofo fakataha 'a e ulofí mo e lamí; pea 'e tokoto fakataha 'a e lēpatí mo e 'uhikí 'i kosí, pea ko e 'uhikí 'i pulú, mo e laione muí, mo e pulu sisinó, fakataha; pea 'e tataki 'a kinautolu 'e ha tamasi 'i sí'i.
- 7 Pea 'e kai fakataha 'a e pulu fefiné mo e peá; pea tākoto fakataha 'a hona 'uhikí; pea 'e kai 'e he laioné 'a e kau 'i mohuku mōmoá 'o hangē ko e pulú.
- 8 Pea ko e tamasi 'i 'oku kei huhú te ne va'inga 'i he luo 'o e ngata koná, pea ko e tamasi 'i kuo mavaé te ne 'ai 'a hono nimá ki he 'ana 'o e ngata huhu koná.
- 9 'E 'ikai te nau fakamamahi 'i pe faka'auha 'i hono kotoa 'o hoku mo'unga toputapú; he 'e fonu 'a māmani 'i he 'ilo 'o e 'Eikí 'o hangē ko hono fakafonu 'e he ngaahi vai 'a e tahí.
- 10 Pea 'i he 'aho ko iá 'e 'i ai ha aka 'o Sese, 'a ia 'e tu'u ko e fuka 'o e kakai; 'e kumi ki ai 'e he kau Senitailé; pea 'e nāunau 'ia 'a hono mālōlō'angá.
- 11 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'aho ko iá 'e toe 'ai 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono to'ukupú ko hono tu'o ua ke toe fakahaofi 'a e toenga 'o hono kakai, 'a ia 'e fakatoe, mei 'Asiliá, pea mei 'Isipité, pea mei Pātolosí, pea mei Kusá, pea mei 'Ilamí, pea mei Sainá, pea mei Hamaté, pe mei he ngaahi motu 'o e tahí.

2 Nephi 2 I

And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots.

And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord; and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears.

But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

- 12 Pea te ne fokotu'u ha fuka ma'á e ngaahi pule'angá, pea fakataha'i mai 'a e kau li'ekina 'o 'Isilelí; pea te ne tånaki 'a e kakai kuo fakamovetevete'i 'o Siuta mei he ngaahi tuliki 'e fã 'o e māmaní.
- 13 'E mole atu foki 'a e meheka 'a 'Ifalemi, pea ko e ngaahi fili 'o Siutá 'e motuhi atu ia; 'e 'ikai meheka 'a 'Ifalemi kia Siutá, pea 'e 'ikai fakamamahi'i 'e Siuta 'a 'Ifalemi.
- 14 Kā te na puna atu ki he ngaahi uma 'o e kau Filisitia ki he hihifó; pea te na vete fakataha 'a kinautolu 'o e hahaké; pea te na hili hona nimá ki 'Itomi mo Mōape; pea 'e talangofua 'a e fānau 'a 'Āmoní kiate kinaua.
- 15 Pea 'e faka'auha 'o 'osi 'e he 'Eiki 'a e va'a 'o e tahi 'Isipité; pea 'i he'ene fu'u matangi mālohí te ne lulu'i 'a hono to'ukupú ki 'olunga 'i he vaitafé, pea taa'i ia 'i he ngaahi vaitafe iiki 'e fitú, pea tuku 'a e tangatá ke fononga ai kae 'ikai viviku hono va'é.
- 16 Pea 'e 'i ai ha hala lalahi mo'ó e toenga 'o hono kakaí 'a ia 'e fakatoe, mei 'Asiliá, 'o hangē ko ia na 'e hoko ki 'Isileli 'i he 'aho na'á ne 'alu atu ai mei he fonua 'o 'Isipité.

And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

The envy of Ephraim also shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off; Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.

But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines towards the west; they shall spoil them of the east together; they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.

And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind he shall shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod.

And there shall be a highway for the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

2 Nīfai 22

- 1 Pea 'i he 'aho ko iá te ke pehē: 'E 'Eiki, te u fakafeta'i kiate koe; neongo na 'á ke houhau kiate au kā kuo lolou atu 'a ho houháu, pea kuo fakafiemālie'i au.
- 2 Vakai, ko e 'Otuá 'a hoku fakamo'uí; te u falala, kae 'ikai manavahē; he ko e 'Eiki ko ΣΙΗΟVÁ 'a hoku mālohí ia mo 'eku hivá; kuó ne hoko foki ko hoku fakamo'uí.
- 3 Ko ia, te mou 'utu fiefia 'a e vai mei he ngaahi vai 'o e fakamo'uí.
- 4 Pea 'i he 'aho ko iá te mou pehē: Fakafeta'i ki he 'Eiki, ui ki hono huafá, tala 'a 'ene ngaahi ngāué 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kakaí, pea fakahā 'a e lāngilangi 'o hono huafá.
- 5 Hiva ki he 'Eiki; he kuó ne fai ha ngaahi me'a lelei lahi; he kuo 'ilo'i ia 'i he māmaní kotoa.
- 6 Kalanga pea mavava, 'a kimoutolu 'a e kakai 'oku nofo 'i Saioné; he 'oku māfima'i 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isileli 'a ia 'oku 'i homou lotolotongá.

2 Nephi 22

And in that day thou shalt say: O Lord, I will praise thee; though thou wast angry with me thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.

Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid; for the Lord JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also has become my salvation.

Therefore, with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.

And in that day shall ye say: Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.

Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things; this is known in all the earth.

Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion; for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.

2 Nīfai 23

- 1 Ko e kavenga 'a Pāpiloné, 'a ia na'e mamata ki ai 'a 'Īsaia ko e foha 'o 'Āmosí.
- 2 Mou fusi hake ha fuka 'i he funga 'o ha mo'unga mā'olunga, hiki hake 'a e lé'ó 'o kalanga kiate kinautolu, ta'alo kiate kinautolu, koe'uhi ke nau hū 'i he ngaahi matapā 'o e ngaahi hou'eikí.
- 3 Kuó u fekau 'i 'a hoku kakai kuo fakamā'oni'oni'í, kuó u ui foki 'a 'eku kau mālohí, he ko 'eku 'itá'oku 'ikai kiate kinautolu 'oku fiefia 'i he'eku pule kiate kinautolú.
- 4 Ko e longoa'a 'o e fu'u tokolahi 'i he ngaahi mo'ungá 'oku hangē ko e longoa'a 'a ha kakai tokolahí, ko ha longoa'a fakamoveuveu 'o e ngaahi pule'anga 'o e ngaahi kakai kuo tānaki fakataha, kuo tānaki fakataha, 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'o e taú.
- 5 'Oku nau ha'u mei ha fonua mama'ó, mei he ngata'anga 'o e langí, 'io, 'a e 'Eikí, mo e ngaahi mahafu 'o hono houháú, ke faka'auha 'a e fonuá hono kotoa.
- 6 Ngala 'a kimoutolu, he 'oku ofi 'a e 'aho 'o e 'Eikí; 'e hoko mai ia 'o hangē ha faka'auha mei he Māfimaí.
- 7 Ko ia 'e vaivai ai 'a e nima kotoa pē, pea 'e vaivai 'a e loto 'o e tangata kotoa pē.
- 8 Pea te nau manavahē; 'e puke 'a kinautolu 'e he ngaahi langá mo e ngaahi mamahí; te nau feofó'aki 'iate kinautolu; 'e tatau 'a honau matá mo e ngaahi ulo 'o e afi.
- 9 Vakai, 'oku ha'u 'a e 'aho 'o e 'Eikí, 'oku anga ta'e'ofa 'i he tuputāmaki pea mo e houhau lahi, ke faka'auha 'a e fonuá; pea te ne faka'auha 'a e kau fai angahala 'oku 'i aí.
- 10 He ko e ngaahi fetu'u 'o e langí mo e ngaahi pupunga fetu'u 'i aí 'e 'ikai te nau tuku mai 'a honau māmá; 'e fakapo'uli 'a e la'aá 'i hono halá, pea 'e 'ikai fakaulo atu 'e he māhiná 'a hono māmá.
- 11 Pea te u tautea 'i 'a māmani koe'uhi ko e koví, pea mo e kau fai angahalá koe'uhi ko 'enau hiá; te u fakangata 'a e fie'eiki 'o e kau pōlepolé, pea te u tuku ki lalo 'a e angahiki 'o e kakai fakamanavaheé.
- 12 Te u ngaohi 'a e tangatá ke mahu'inga hake 'i he koula lelei; 'io, 'e mahu'inga hake ha tangata 'i he koula 'o 'Ōfeli.

2 Nephi 23

The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.

Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.

I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones, for mine anger is not upon them that rejoice in my highness.

The noise of the multitude in the mountains like as of a great people, a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together, the Lord of Hosts mustereth the hosts of the battle.

They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, yea, the Lord, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.

Howl ye, for the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.

Therefore shall all hands be faint, every man's heart shall melt;

And they shall be afraid; pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.

Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate; and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.

For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light; the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine.

And I will punish the world for evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay down the haughtiness of the terrible.

I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.

13 Ko ia, te u lulu 'i 'a e ngaahi langí, pea 'e hiki 'a māmani mei hono potú, 'i he houhau 'o e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, pea 'i he 'aho 'o hono houhau kakahá.

14 Pea 'e hoko ia 'o tatau mo e 'anitelope 'oku tuli, pea hangē ha sipi 'a ia 'oku 'ikai ma' u 'e ha tangata; pea ko kinautolu 'e tafoki 'a e tangata taki taha ki hono kakaí, pea hola taki taha ki hono fonua 'o 'oná.

15 Ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku pōlepolé 'e hoka 'i ke 'asi 'aki 'a e heletā; 'io, pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku kau mo e kau fai angahalá 'e tō 'i he heletā.

16 Ko 'enau fānaú, 'e laiki foki 'i honau 'aó; 'e vetē 'a honau ngaahi falé, pea 'e tohotoho 'i 'a honau ngaahi uaifí.

17 Vakai, te u faka'ita 'i 'a e kau Mītiá ki te kinautolu, 'a ia 'e 'ikai te nau tokanga ki he silivá mo e koulá, pea 'e 'ikai foki te nau fiefia ai.

18 'E hanga 'e he 'enau ngaahi kaufaná 'o laiki foki 'a e kau talavou; pea 'e 'ikai te nau ma' u ha momo 'i 'ofa ki he fua 'o e mānavá; 'e 'ikai fakamo'ui 'e honau matá 'a e fānaú.

19 Pea ko Pāpilone, ko e nāunau 'ia taha 'i he ngaahi pulé angá, ko e kolo faka'ofa 'o fa ne hoko ko e pōlepolé anga 'o e kau Kalitiá, 'e hangē ia ko e hanga 'e he 'Otuá 'o faka'auha 'a e kolo ko Sōtoma mo Komolá.

20 'E 'ikai toe nofo 'i ia, pea 'e 'ikai ke nofo 'ia ia mei he to' u tangata ki he to' u tangata; pea 'e 'ikai fokotu' u 'e he tangata 'Alepeá ha fale fehikitaki 'i ai; pea 'e 'ikai mālōlō ai 'a e kau tauhi-sipi mo 'enau tākanga sipi.

21 Ka 'e tākoto 'i ai 'a e fanga manu kaivao 'o e feitu' u maomaonganoá; pea 'e fonu 'a honau ngaahi falé 'i he fanga manu 'oku tangi pea 'e nofo ai 'a e fanga lulú, pea 'e me' e ai 'a e fanga sataiá.

22 Pea 'e tangi 'a e fanga manu kaivao 'o e ngaahi 'otu motú 'i honau ngaahi fale li'ekiná, pea mo e fanga talākoné 'i honau ngaahi fale fakatu' i lelei; pea kuo ofi ke hokosia 'a hono taimí, pea 'e 'ikai fakatuotuai 'a hono 'ahó. Koe' uhi te u faka'auha vave ia; 'io, koe' uhi he te u 'alo' ofa ki hoku kakaí, ka 'e 'auha 'a e kau fai angahalá.

Therefore, I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of Hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.

And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up; and they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.

Every one that is proud shall be thrust through; yea, and every one that is joined to the wicked shall fall by the sword.

Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled and their wives ravished.

Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver and gold, nor shall they delight in it.

Their bows shall also dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eyes shall not spare children.

And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah.

It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there.

But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there.

And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons in their pleasant palaces; and her time is near to come, and her day shall not be prolonged. For I will destroy her speedily; yea, for I will be merciful unto my people, but the wicked shall perish.

2 Nīfai 24

- 1 He 'e 'alo'ofā 'a e 'Eikí kia Sēkope, pea te ne toe fili 'a 'Isileli, mo fokotu'ū 'a kinautolu 'i honau fonua 'onautolú; pea 'e fakataha mo kinautolu 'a e kakai mulí, pea te nau pikitai ki he fale 'o Sēkopé.
- 2 Pea 'e 'ave 'a kinautolu 'e he kakai pea 'omi kinautolu ki honau feitu'ú; 'io, mei he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e māmani; pea te nau foki ki honau ngaahi fonua 'o e tala'ofá. Pea 'e ma'ū 'e he fale 'o 'Isilelí 'a kinautolu, pea te nau ngāue 'i he fonua 'o e 'Eikí ko e kau tamaio'eiki mo e kau kaunanga; pea te nau fakapōpula 'i 'a kinautolu na'a nau pōpula ki aí; pea te nau pule 'i 'a honau kau fakamālohí.
- 3 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'aho ko iá 'e tuku kiate koe 'e he 'Eikí ha mālōlō, mei ho mamahí, pea mei ho'omanavaheé, pea mei he nofo pōpula faingata 'a 'a ia na'e fakamālohí 'i koe ke ke ngāue aí.
- 4 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'aho ko ia, te ke lea 'aki ai 'a e lea fakatātā ko 'ení ki he tu 'i 'o Pāpiloné, 'o pehē: Vakai kuo ngata 'a e tokotaha fakamālohí, kuo ngata 'a e kolo koulá!
- 5 Kuo fesí 'i 'e he 'Eikí 'a e tokotoko 'o e kau fai angahalá, mo e ngaahi tokotoko fakatu 'i 'o e kau pulé.
- 6 Ko ia na'á ne taa 'i 'a e kakai 'i he tuputāmaki 'aki 'a e tā ta'etuku, ko ia 'a ia na'á ne pule 'i 'a e ngaahi pule'angá 'i he houhaú, kuo fakatanga 'i ia, pea 'oku 'ikai ta'ofi 'e ha taha.
- 7 'Oku mālōlō 'a māmani kotoa pē, pea fakalongolongo; 'oku nau kalanga 'i he hiva fiefia.
- 8 'Io, 'oku fiefia 'a e ngaahi 'akau ko e feá 'iate koe, mo e ngaahi 'akau ko e sita foki 'o Lapanoní, 'o nau pehē: Talu 'a ho tuku hifó, kuo 'ikai ke ha 'u ha tangata ta'anga 'o tu'usi hifo 'a kinautolu.
- 9 'Oku ngāue 'a heli mei lalo ke fakafetaulaki kiate koe 'i ho'oha'ú; 'okú ne ue 'i hake 'a e pekia kiate koe, 'io na'a mo e kau tu'ū-ki-mu'a 'o e māmani; kuó ne fokotu'ū hake mei honau ngaahi taloní 'a e ngaahi tu 'i kotoa pē 'o e ngaahi pule'angá.
- 10 'E lea 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'o pehē kiate koe: 'Okú ke hoko 'o vaivai mo koe 'o hangē ko kinautolú? 'Okú ke hoko 'o tatau mo kinautolu?

2 Nephi 24

For the Lord will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land; and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob.

And the people shall take them and bring them to their place; yea, from far unto the ends of the earth; and they shall return to their lands of promise. And the house of Israel shall possess them, and the land of the Lord shall be for servants and handmaids; and they shall take them captives unto whom they were captives; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall give thee rest, from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say: How hath the oppressor ceased, the golden city ceased!

The Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked, the scepters of the rulers.

He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindereth.

The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet; they break forth into singing.

Yea, the fir trees rejoice at thee, and also the cedars of Lebanon, saying: Since thou art laid down no feller is come up against us.

Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming; it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.

All they shall speak and say unto thee: Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us?

11 Kuo 'ohifo 'a ho laukaú ki he fá'itoká; kuo 'ikai onгона 'a e lé'ó 'o ho'ó ngaahi violá; kuo fofola 'i lalo 'iate koe 'a e 'uangá, pea 'ufi'ufi koe 'e he fanga 'uangá.

12 Hono 'ikai lahi ho'ó tō hifo mei he langí, 'E Lusifā, ko e foha 'o e pongipongi! Kuo tu'usi koe ki lalo ki he kekelelé, 'a koe na'á ke fakavaivai 'i 'a e ngaahi pulé'angá!

13 He kuó ke pehē 'i ho lotó: Te u 'alu hake ki he langí, te u fokotu'u ke mā'olunga hake 'a hoku nofo'anga fakatu'í 'i he ngaahi fetu'u 'o e 'Otuá; te u nofo foki 'i he mo'unga 'oku fakataha ki aí, 'i he tokelau mama'ó.

14 Te u 'alu hake 'o mā'olunga ange 'i he ngaahi 'aó; te u tatau mo e Fungani Mā'olungá.

15 Kā 'e 'ohifo koe ki lalo ki heli, ki he ngaahi potu mā'ulalo 'o e luó.

16 Ko kinautolu 'e mamata kiate koé te nau sio fakamama'u kiate koe, pea fakakaukau kiate koe, 'o pehē: Ko e tangata koā 'eni 'a ia na'á ne ngaahi ke tetetete 'a e māmaní, 'a ia na'e lulu 'i 'a e ngaahi pulé'angá?

17 Peá ne ngaahi 'a e māmaní ke hangē ko ha feitu'u maomaonganoá, mo faka'auha hono ngaahi koló, 'o 'ikai fakaava 'a e fale 'o 'ene kau pōpulá?

18 Ko e ngaahi tu 'i kotoa pē 'o e ngaahi pulé'angá, 'io, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē, 'oku nau tākoto hifo 'i he nāunau, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē taki taha 'i hono fale 'o'óná.

19 Kā kuo lí koe ki tu'a mei ho fonualoto 'o hangē ko ha va'a fakalielia, pea mo e toenga 'o kinautolu kuo tāmata'í, kuo hoka'í ke 'asi 'aki 'a e heletā, pea kuo 'alu hifo ki he ngaahi maka 'o e luó; 'o hangē ko ha 'anga'anga kuo molomoloki 'i he lalo va'é.

20 'E 'ikai tanu koe fakataha mo kinautolu, koé'uhí he kuó ke faka'auha 'a ho fonuá pea tāmata'í mo ho kakaí; pea ko e hako 'o e kau faikoví 'e 'ikai ongoongoa.

21 Teuteu 'i 'a e fakapō ki he'ene fānaú koé'uhi ko e ngaahi angahala 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí, koé'uhi ke 'oua na'a nau a'u ki he taloní, pe ma'u 'a e fonuá, pe 'ufi'ufi 'a e funga 'o e māmaní 'aki 'a e ngaahi kolo.

22 Koe'uhi he te u tu'u hake kiate kinautolu, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, pea motuhi atu mei Pāpilone 'a e hingóá, mo e toengá, mo e fohá, pea mo e 'ilamutú, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí!

Thy pomp is brought down to the grave; the noise of thy viols is not heard; the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! Art thou cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations!

For thou hast said in thy heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north;

I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.

Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.

They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and shall consider thee, and shall say: Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms?

And made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof, and opened not the house of his prisoners?

All the kings of the nations, yea, all of them, lie in glory, every one of them in his own house.

But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and the remnant of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcass trodden under feet.

Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land and slain thy people; the seed of evil-doers shall never be renowned.

Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquities of their fathers, that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.

For I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of Hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the Lord.

23 Te u ngaohi foki ia ko ha tofi 'a 'o e pītaní, mo e ngaahi toka'anga vai; pea te u tafi ia 'aki 'a e me'a tafi 'o e faka'auhá, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.

24 Kuo fuakava 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, 'o pehē: Ko e mo'oni 'e hoko 'o tatau mo 'eku fakakaukáu; pea hangē ko hoku lotó, 'e pehē ia—

25 Te u 'omi 'a e tangata 'Asilía ki hoku fonuá, pea molomoloki hifo ia 'i hoku ngaahi mo'unga; pea 'e toki mahu 'i meiate kinautolu 'a 'ene ha'amongá, pea to 'o atu mo 'ene kavengá mei honau umá.

26 Ko me'a 'eni kuó u loto ke fai ki he māmaní kotoa; pea ko e nima 'eni kuo mafao atu ki he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē.

27 He kuo finangalo 'a e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, pea ko hai te ne fakata 'e 'aonga 'i hono finangaló? Pea kuo mafao atu 'a hono to'ukupú, pea ko hai te ne ta'ofi ia?

28 'I he ta'u na'e pekia ai 'a e tu 'i ko 'Āhasi na'e fakahā ai 'a e tala mamafa ko 'ení.

29 'Oua na'á ke fiefia, 'a kimoutolu, Pālesitina kotoa, koe'uhi kuo fesi 'i 'a e me'a tā 'o ia na'á ne taa 'i koé; koe'uhi 'e tupu hake mei he tefito 'o e ngatá ha ngata kona, pea ko hono hakó ko ha ngata vela 'oku puna.

30 Pea 'e kai 'a e 'uluaki fānau 'o e kau masivá, pea 'e tokoto ta'e-tu'utāmaki 'a e kakai faingata'a'ía; pea te u tāmata 'i 'a ho aká 'aki 'a e honge, pea te ne tāmata 'i 'a e toenga 'o ho kakaí.

31 Ngala, 'E matapā; tangi, 'e kolo; 'a koe Pālesitina kotoa, kuo veteki koe; koe'uhi he 'e ha'u mei he tokelaú ha 'ahu, pea 'e 'ikai tu'u toko taha pē ha taha 'i hono taimi kuo kotofá.

32 Ko e hā leva ha talí 'a e kau talafekau mei he ngaahi pule'angá? Kuo fokotu'u 'e he 'Eiki 'a Saione, pea 'e falala ki ai 'a e kau masiva 'o hono kakaí.

I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water; and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of Hosts.

The Lord of Hosts hath sworn, saying: Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand—

That I will bring the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot; then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.

This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth; and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all nations.

For the Lord of Hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul? And his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?

In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden.

Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken; for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.

And the firstborn of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety; and I will kill thy root with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant.

Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina, art dissolved; for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed times.

What shall then answer the messengers of the nations? That the Lord hath founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

2 Nīfai 25

- 1 Ko 'eni ko au, Nīfai, 'oku ou fakamatala 'o kau ki he ngaahi folofola 'a ia kuó u tohí, 'a ia kuo lea 'aki 'i he ngutu 'o 'Īsaiá. He vakai, na'e lea 'aki 'e 'Īsaia ha ngaahi me'a lahi 'a ia na'e faingata'a ke mahino ki he tokolahi 'o hoku kakaí, koe'uhí he na'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo ki he anga 'o e kikite 'i he kau Siú.
- 2 He ko au, Nīfai, kuo 'ikai te u ako 'i kiate kinautolu ha ngaahi me'a lahi 'o kau ki he anga 'o e kau Siú; he ko 'enau ngaahi ngāue ko e ngaahi ngāue ia 'o e fakapo'ulí, pea ko 'enau ngaahi ngāue ko e ngaahi ngāue fakalielia.
- 3 Ko ia, 'oku ou tohi ki hoku kakaí, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē te nau ma'u 'amui 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'a ia 'oku ou tohí, koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia 'e hoko ki he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē, 'o fakatatau ki he folofola kuó ne folofola 'akí.
- 4 Ko ia, tokanga mai, 'e hoku kakaí, 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Īsilelí, pea fakafanongo ki he 'eku ngaahi leá; neongo 'oku ta'emahino kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi lea 'a 'Īsaiá, ka 'oku mahinongofua ia kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku fonu 'i he laumālie 'o e kikité. Ka 'oku ou fai kiate kimoutolu ha kikite, 'o fakatatau ki he laumālie 'a ia 'oku 'iate aú; ko ia te u kikite 'o fakatatau mo e mahinongofua 'a ia kuo 'iate au talu mei he taimi na'á ku ha'u ai mei Selūsalema mo 'eku tamaí; he vakai, 'oku fiefia 'a hoku lotó 'i he lea mahinongofua ki hoku kakaí, koe'uhi ke nau ako ai.
- 5 'Io, pea 'oku fiefia 'a hoku laumālie 'i he ngaahi lea 'a 'Īsaiá, he na'á ku ha'u mei Selūsalema, pea kuo mamata 'a hoku ongo matá ki he ngaahi me'a 'a e kau Siú, pea 'oku ou 'ilo 'oku mahino ki he kau Siú 'a e ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfitá, pea 'oku 'ikai mo ha kakai kehe 'oku mahino kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia na'e lea 'aki ki he kau Siú, ki he 'eku fānaú, 'o hangē pē ko kinautolú, kae 'oua kuo akonekina 'a kinautolu 'i he anga 'o e ngaahi me'a 'a e kau Siú.

2 Nephi 25

Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my people to understand; for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews.

For I, Nephi, have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews; for their works were works of darkness, and their doings were doings of abominations.

Wherefore, I write unto my people, unto all those that shall receive hereafter these things which I write, that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.

Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.

Yea, and my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them, save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews.

6 Kae vakai, ko au, Nifai, kuo 'ikai te u ako 'i 'a 'eku fānaú 'i he anga 'o e me'a 'a e kau Siú; kae vakai, ko au, na 'á ku nofo 'i Selūsalema, ko ia 'oku ou 'ilo ai ki he ngaahi potu takatakai ki aí; pea kuó u lea ki he 'eku fānaú 'o kau ki he ngaahi tautea 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia kuo tō ki he kau Siú, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuo lea 'aki 'e 'Īsaiá, pea 'oku 'ikai te u tohi ia.

7 Kae vakai, 'oku ou hoko atu ke fai 'a 'eku kikite 'a 'aku, 'o fakatatau ki he 'eku lea mahinongofuá; 'a ia 'oku ou 'ilo 'oku 'ikai lava ke hala ai ha tangata; ka neongo iá, 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'a ia 'e fakahoko ai 'a e ngaahi kikite 'a 'Īsaiá, 'e 'ilo 'i fakapapu ai 'e he kakaí, 'i he ngaahi taimi 'e fakahoko ai iá.

8 Ko ia, 'oku mahu'inga ia ki he fānaú 'a e tangatá, pea ko ia 'oku mahalo 'oku 'ikai 'aonga iá, 'oku kau tonu kiate kinautolu 'a 'eku leá, pea 'e fai 'a e ngaahi leá pē ki hoku kakai 'o 'okú; he 'oku ou 'ilo 'e 'aonga lahi ia kiate kinautolu 'i he ngaahi 'aho faka'osí; he 'e mahino kiate kinautolu 'i he 'aho ko iá; ko ia, kuó u tohi ai ia ke 'aonga kiate kinautolu.

9 Pea hangē ko hono faka'auha 'a e to'u tangata 'e taha 'i he kau Siú ko e tupu mei he angahalá, kuo pehē pē 'a honau faka'auha mei he to'u tangata ki he to'u tangata 'o fakatatau mo 'enau ngaahi fai hiá; pea kuo te'eki ai faka'auha ha ní'ihí 'iate kinautolu kā 'i he tomu'a fakahā ia kiate kinautolu 'e he kau palōfita 'a e 'Eikí.

10 Ko ia, kuo fakahā kiate kinautolu 'o kau ki he faka'auha 'a ia 'e hoko kiate kinautolú, 'o ka hili pē 'a e 'alu 'a 'eku tamaí mei Selūsalemá; ka neongo iá, na 'a nau fakafefeka honau lotó; pea kuo faka'auha 'a kinautolu 'o hangē ko 'eku kikité, tuku kehe pē 'a kinautolu kuo 'ave pōpula ki Pāpiloné.

11 Pea ko 'eni, 'oku ou lea 'aki 'eni koe'uhi ko e laumālie 'a ia 'oku 'iate aú. Pea neongo kuo 'ave 'a kinautolu kā te nau toe foki mai, 'o ma'u 'a e fonua ko Selūsalemá; ko ia, 'e toe fakafoki 'a kinautolu ki he fonua 'o honau tofi 'á.

But behold, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them.

But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.

Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.

And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.

Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem; nevertheless, they hardened their hearts; and according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away captive into Babylon.

And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.

- 12 Kae, vakai, 'e 'iate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi tau, mo e ngaahi ongoongo 'o e ngaahi tau; pea 'o ka hokosia 'a e 'aho 'a ia 'e fakahā ai 'e he 'Alo pē Taha na'e Fakatupu 'o e Tamaí, 'io, 'a ia ko e Tamaí 'o e langí pea mo e māmaní, pea fakahā ia kiате kinautolu 'i he kakanó, vakai, te nau li'aki ia, ko e tupu mei he'enua ngaahi angahalá, mo e fefeka 'o honau lotó, pea mo e kekeva 'o honau kiá.
- 13 Vakai, te nau kalusefai ia; pea hili hono telio ia 'i ha fonualoto 'i ha 'aho 'e tolu, te ne toe tu'u mei he pekiá, mo e fakamo'ui 'i hono kapakaú; pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'e tui ki hono huafá 'e fakamo'ui 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá. Ko ia, 'oku fiefia 'a hoku laumálié ke kikite 'o kau kiате ia, he kuó u mamata ki hono 'ahó, pea 'oku fakalāngilangi 'i 'e hoku lotó 'a hono huafa mā'oní'oní.
- 14 Pea vakai 'e hoko 'o pehē 'o ka hili 'a e toe tu'u 'a e Mīsaiaí mei he pekiá, mo 'ene fakahā ia 'e ia ki hono kakaí, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'e tui ki hono huafá, vakai, 'e toe faka'auha 'a Selūsalema; he ko e mala'ia kiате kinautolu 'oku tau 'i 'a e 'Otuá pea mo e kakaí 'o hono siasí.
- 15 Ko ia, 'e fakamovetevete 'a e kau Siú 'i he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē; 'io, pea 'e faka'auha foki mo Pāpilone; ko ia, 'e fakamovetevete 'a e kau Siú 'e ha ngaahi pule'anga kehe.
- 16 Pea hili honau fakamoveteveté, pea mo e tautea 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'aki 'a e ngaahi pule'anga kehe 'i he ngaahi to'u tangata lahi, 'io, 'o fai mai mei he to'u tangata ki he to'u tangata kae 'oua ke fakaloto 'i 'a kinautolu ke tui kia Kalaisi, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, pea ki he fakalelei, 'a ia 'oku ta'e-fakangatangata ki he fá'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá—pea 'o ka hokosia 'a e 'aho ko ia 'a ia te nau tui ai kia Kalaisí, pea hū ki he Tamaí 'i hono huafá, 'aki 'a e loto-ma'a mo e ngaahi nima ma'a, 'o 'ikai toe 'amanaki ki ha Mīsaia kehé, pehē 'e hokosia 'i he taimi ko iá, 'a e 'aho 'a ia kuo pau ke 'aonga ke nau tui ai ki he ngaahi me'á ni.
- 17 Pea 'e toe 'ai 'e he 'Eiki 'a hono to'ukupú ko hono tu'oua ke fakafoki 'a hono kakaí mei honau tu'unga mole mo tō ki laló. Ko ia, te ne hanga 'o fai ha ngāue faka'ofu mo faka'ulia 'i he fānau 'a e tangatá.

But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.

Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name.

And behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his church.

Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; yea, and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations.

And after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind—and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things.

And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.

18 Ko ia, te ne 'omi 'a 'ene ngaahi folofolá kiate kinautolu, 'a ia ko e ngaahi folofola 'e fakamāu 'i 'aki 'a kinautolu 'i he 'aho faka'osí, koe'uhi 'e foaki ia kiate kinautolu koe'uhí ke fakaloto 'i 'a kinautolu ke nau tui ki he Mīsaia mo'oni, 'a ia na' a nau lí'aki; ki hono fakaloto 'i 'o kinautolu 'oku 'ikai 'aonga ke nau toe 'amanaki atu ki ha Mīsaia 'e hā'ele mai; koe'uhi 'e 'ikai ha'u mo ha taha, tuku kehe pē ha Mīsaia loi 'a ia te ne kākaa 'i 'a e kakaí; he 'oku taha pē 'a e Mīsaia 'a ia kuo lau ki ai 'a e kau palōfitá, pea ko e Mīsaia ko iá 'a ia 'e lí'aki 'e he kau Siú.

19 He 'oku hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfitá, 'e hā'ele mai 'a e Mīsaia 'i he ta'u 'e onongeau mei he taimi na'e 'alu ai 'a 'eku tamaí mei Selūsalemá; pea hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfitá pea mo e lea 'a e 'āngelo 'a e 'Otuá, ko hono huafá ko Sisū Kalaisi, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá.

20 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, kuó u lea 'o mahinongofua koe'uhí ke 'oua na' a mou ma'u hala. Pea hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a ia na' á ne 'omi 'a 'Isileli mei he fonua ko 'Isipité, 'o ne tuku kia Mōsesē 'a e mālohi ke ne fakamo'ui 'a e ngaahi pulé'angá 'i he hili hono u'u 'a kinautolu 'e he fanga ngata koná, 'o kapau te nau hanga atu honau matá ki he ngata 'a ia na' á ne hiki hake 'i honau 'aó, peá ne foaki foki kiate ia 'a e mālohi ke ne taa 'i 'a e maká pea ha'u mei ai 'a e vaí; 'io, vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, koe'uhi 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, pea hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eiki, ko e 'Otuá, pehē kuo 'ikai ke tuku mai mo ha toe huafa kehe 'i he lalo langí, kā ko e Sisū Kalaisi ko 'eni, 'a ia kuó u lau ki ai, 'a ia 'e lava 'o fakamo'ui ai 'a e tangatá.

21 Ko ia, ko hono 'uhinga 'eni kuo tala'ofa ai 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá kiate au 'e tauhi mo malu 'i 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'a ia 'oku ou tohí, pe 'e tukufakaholo mai ia 'i hoku hakó, mei he to'u tangata ki he to'u tangata, koe'uhi ke lava 'o fakahoko 'a e tala'ofa kia Siosefa, 'e 'ikai 'auha 'a hono hakó lolotonga 'a e kei tu'u 'a māmaní.

22 Ko ia, 'e 'alu atu 'a e ngaahi me'á ni mei he to'u tangata ki he to'u tangata lolotonga 'a e kei tu'u 'a māmaní; pea te nau 'alu atu 'o fakatatau ki he finangalo mo e fá'iteliha 'a e 'Otuá; pea ko e ngaahi pulé'anga 'a ia 'e ma'u iá 'e fakamāu 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi lea 'a ia kuo tohí.

Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem; and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken plainly that ye cannot err. And as the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth; yea, behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God liveth, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

23 He 'oku mau ngāue faivelenga ke tohi, ke fakaloto'i 'a 'emau fānaú, mo homau kāingá foki, ke nau tui kia Kalaisi, mo fakalelei ki he 'Otuá; he 'oku mau 'ilo 'oku 'i he 'alo'ofá 'a homau fakamo'uí, 'o ka hili 'emau fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'e ala faí.

24 Pea neongo 'oku mau tui kia Kalaisi, 'oku mau tauhi 'a e fonó 'a Mōsesé, pea 'amanaki atu 'i he tui mo'oni kia Kalaisi, kae 'oua ke fakahoko 'a e fonó.

25 He ko hono 'uhinga 'eni na'e tuku mai ai 'a e fonó; ko ia kuo hoko 'o mate ai 'a e fonó kiate kimautilu, pea 'oku fakamo'uí 'a kimautilu 'ia Kalaisi koe'uhi ko 'emau tui; kā 'oku mau tauhi 'a e fonó koe'uhi ko e ngaahi fekaú.

26 Pea 'oku mau lea 'ia Kalaisi, 'oku mau fiefia 'ia Kalaisi, 'oku mau malanga 'aki 'a Kalaisi, 'oku mau kikite 'ia Kalaisi, pea 'oku mau tohi 'o fakatatau mo 'emau ngaahi kikité, ke 'ilo 'e he' emau fānaú ki he tupu'anga 'a ia te nau lava ke sio ki ai ke ma'u ai ha fakamolemole 'o 'enau ngaahi angahalá.

27 Ko ia, 'oku mau lea 'o kau ki he fonó koe'uhí ke 'ilo 'e he' emau fānaú ki he mate 'a e fonó; pea 'i he 'ilo ki he mate 'o e fonó te nau lava 'o 'amanaki ki he mo'ui ko ia 'oku 'ia Kalaisi, pea 'ilo 'i 'a e 'uhinga na'e tuku mai ai 'a e fonó. Pea hili hono fakahoko 'o e fonó 'ia Kalaisi, 'e 'ikai 'aonga ke nau fakafefeka honau lotó kiate ia 'i he taimi 'oku totonu ke lí'aki ai 'a e fonó.

28 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'e hoku kakai, ko ha kakai kia-kekeva 'a kimoutolu; ko ia, kuó u lea 'o mahinongofua kiate kimoutolu, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a ta'emahino kiate kimoutolu. Pea ko e ngaahi lea 'a ia kuó u lea'akí 'e tu'u ia ko ha fakamo'oni ke talatalaaki 'i 'a kimoutolu; he 'oku fe'unga ia ke ako 'i ki ha tangata 'a e hala totonú; he ko e hala totonú ke tui kia Kalaisi pea 'ikai faka'ikai 'i ia; he 'i ho'omou faka'ikai 'i iá 'oku mou faka'ikai 'i ai mo e kau palōfitá pea mo e fonó.

29 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu ko e hala totonú ke tui kia Kalaisi, pea 'ikai faka'ikai 'i ia; pea ko Kalaisi 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí; ko ia, kuo pau ke mou punou hifo 'i hono 'aó, pea hū kiate ia 'aki 'a e kotoa 'o homou mālohí, 'atamaí, mo e iví, pea mo homou laumālié kotoa; pea kapau te mou fai 'eni 'e 'ikai 'aupito kapusi ki tu'a 'a kimoutolu.

For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God; for we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do.

And, notwithstanding we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

For, for this end was the law given; wherefore the law hath become dead unto us, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; yet we keep the law because of the commandments.

And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.

Wherefore, we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given. And after the law is fulfilled in Christ, that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law ought to be done away.

And now behold, my people, ye are a stiffnecked people; wherefore, I have spoken plainly unto you, that ye cannot misunderstand. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law.

And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if ye do this ye shall in nowise be cast out.

30 Pea fakatatau ki hono 'aonga ke faí, 'oku totonu ke mou tauhi 'a e ngaahi ngāue mo e ngaahi ouau 'a e 'Otuá kae 'oua kuo fakahoko 'a e fono 'a ia na 'e tuku kia Mōsesé.

And, inasmuch as it shall be expedient, ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses.

2 Nīfai 26

- 1 Pea hili 'a e toe tu'u 'a Kalaisi mei he pekiá te ne fakahā ia 'e ia kiate kimoutolu, ko 'eku fānau, mo hoku kāinga 'ofeina; pea ko e ngaahi folofola te ne folofola 'aki kiate kimoutolú 'e hoko ia ko e fono 'a ia te mou fai ki ai.
- 2 He vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kuó u vakai 'e 'osi atu 'a e ngaahi to'u tangata lahi, pea 'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi tau lalahi mo e ngaahi fakakikihi 'i hoku kakaí.
- 3 Pea hili 'a e hā'ele mai 'a e Mīsaia 'e tuku ha ngaahi faka'ilonga ki hoku kakaí ki hono 'alo'í, kae 'uma'ā mo 'ene pekiá mo e toetu'ú; pea 'e lahi mo fakamanavahē 'a e 'aho ko ía ki he kau fai angahalá, he te nau 'auha; pea 'oku tupunga 'a 'enau 'auhá mei he 'enau kapusi ki tu'a 'a e kau palōfitá, mo e kau mā'oní'oní, pea tolomaka 'i 'a kinautolu, mo tāmata'e 'i 'a kinautolu; ko ia 'e a'u hake ki he 'Otuá mei he kelekelé 'a e tangi 'a e toto 'o e kau mā'oní'oní 'o talatalaaki 'i 'a kinautolu.
- 4 Ko ia, ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku pōlepolé, mo kinautolu 'oku fai angahalá, 'oku ha'u 'a e 'aho 'e vela ai 'o 'osi 'a kinautolu, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, he te nau tatau mo e veve.
- 5 Pea ko kinautolu 'oku tāmata'e 'i 'a e kau palōfitá mo e kau mā'oní'oní, 'e folo hifo 'a kinautolu 'i he ngaahi potu loloto 'o e kelekelé, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú; pea 'e 'ufi'ufi 'a kinautolu 'e he ngaahi mo'ungá, pea 'e 'ave 'a kinautolu 'i he ngaahi 'ahiohió, pea 'e holo hifo kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi falé 'o laiki 'a kinautolu ke momo-iiki pea momosi 'a kinautolu ke efu.
- 6 Pea 'e tautea 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi mana, mo e ngaahi tapa 'a e 'uhila, mo e ngaahi mofuike, mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga faka'auha kotoa pē, koe'uhi 'e tutu 'a e afi 'o e houhau 'o e 'Eiki kiate kinautolu, pea te nau tatau mo e veve, pea 'oku ha'u 'a e 'aho 'e vela ai 'o 'osi 'a kinautolu, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.
- 7 'Oiauē 'a e mamahi, mo e to'e 'a hoku laumalié koe'uhi ko e mole 'a e fa'ahinga kuo tāmata'e 'i 'i hoku kakaí! He ko au, Nīfai, kuó u mamata ki ai, pea 'oku meimei faka'auha ai au 'i he mamahi 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eiki; ka kuo pau ke u tangi ki hoku 'Otuá: 'Oku totonu 'a ho ngaahi halá.

2 Nephi 26

And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved brethren; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do.

For behold, I say unto you that I have beheld that many generations shall pass away, and there shall be great wars and contentions among my people.

And after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth, and also of his death and resurrection; and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them.

Wherefore, all those who are proud, and that do wickedly, the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, for they shall be as stubble.

And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and mountains shall cover them, and whirlwinds shall carry them away, and buildings shall fall upon them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.

And they shall be visited with thunderings, and lightnings, and earthquakes, and all manner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them, and they shall be as stubble, and the day that cometh shall consume them, saith the Lord of Hosts.

O the pain, and the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my people! For I, Nephi, have seen it, and it well nigh consumeth me before the presence of the Lord; but I must cry unto my God: Thy ways are just.

- 8 Kae vakai, ko e kau mā'oni'oni 'a ia 'oku tokanga ki he ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfitá, pea 'ikai faka'auha 'a kinautolu, ka nau sio ma'u pē kia Kalaisi 'i he tui mo'oni koe'uhi ko e ngaahi faka'ilonga kuo fakahaá, neongo 'a e ngaahi fakatanga kotoa pē—vakai, ko kinautolu ia 'e 'ikai ke 'auhá.
- 9 Ka ko e 'Alo 'o e Mā'oni'oni 'e hā mai kiate kinautolu; pea te ne fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu, pea te nau ma'u 'a e melino 'iate ia, kae 'oua kuo 'osi atu 'a e to'u tangata 'e tolu, pea 'osi atu mo e tokolahi 'o e to'u tangata hono faá 'i he mā'oni'oni.
- 10 Pea 'o ka 'osi atu 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'e hoko vave mai 'a e faka'auha ki hoku kakaí; he neongo 'a e ngaahi mamahi 'a hoku laumālié, kā kuó u mamata ki ai; ko ia, 'oku ou 'ilo 'e hoko ia; pea te nau fakatau atu 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko ha me'a noa pē; he ko e totongi 'o 'enau loto-híkisiá mo 'enau valé te nau utu 'a e 'auha; koe'uhi ko 'enau tukulolo ki he tēvoló mo 'enau fili 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'o e fakapo'ulí kae 'ikai ko e māmá, ko ia kuo pau te nau ō hifo ai ki heli.
- 11 Koe'uhi 'e 'ikai fāinga ma'u ai pē 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eiki mo e tangatá. Pea 'o ka tuku 'e he Laumālié 'ene feinga 'i 'a e tangatá 'e hoko vave mai leva 'a e faka'auhá, pea 'oku mamahi hoku laumālié 'i he me'á ni.
- 12 Pea hangē ko 'eku lau ki hono fakaloto 'i 'o e kau Siú ko Sīsū 'a e Kalaisi mo'oni, 'oku 'aonga foki ke fakaloto 'i mo e Senitailé ko Sīsū 'a e Kalaisi, ko e 'Otuá Ta'engatá;
- 13 Pea 'okú ne fakahā ia 'e ia kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku tui kiate iá, 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni; 'io, ki he pule'anga, mo e fá'ahinga, mo e lea, mo e kakai fulipē, 'o ne fai 'a e ngaahi mana lalahi, mo e ngaahi faka'ilonga, mo e ngaahi me'a fakaofu, 'i he lotolotonga 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau tuí.
- 14 Kae vakai, 'oku ou kikite kiate kimoutolu 'o kau ki he ngaahi 'aho faka'osí; 'o kau ki he ngaahi 'aho ko ia 'e hanga ai 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'o fakahoko mai ai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni ki he fānau 'a e tangatá.

But behold, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given, notwithstanding all persecution—behold, they are they which shall not perish.

But the Son of Righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness.

And when these things have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people; for, notwithstanding the pains of my soul, I have seen it; wherefore, I know that it shall come to pass; and they sell themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction; for because they yield unto the devil and choose works of darkness rather than light, therefore they must go down to hell.

For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man. And when the Spirit ceaseth to strive with man then cometh speedy destruction, and this grieveth my soul.

And as I spake concerning the convincing of the Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God;

And that he manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith.

But behold, I prophesy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.

15 'O ka hili 'a e faka'au'au hifo 'a hoku hakó mo e hako 'o hoku ngaahi tokouá 'i he ta'etuí, pea kuo te'ia 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Senitailé; 'io, 'i he hili hono 'ákilotoa takatakai 'i kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá, pea hili hono 'ákoló 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e mo'ungá, pea langa mo e ngaahi kolotau ke malu 'i kinautolú; pea hili honau tā hifo ke mā'ulalo 'i he efú, 'o 'ikai te nau kei mo'uí, kā 'e tohi pē 'a e ngaahi lea 'a e kau mā'oní'oní, pea 'e 'afio 'i 'a e ngaahi lotu 'a e kau tui faivelengá, pea ko kinautolu kotoa kuo faka'au'au hifo 'i he ta'etuí 'e 'ikai ke fakangalo 'i ia.

16 He ko kinautolu 'e 'auhá te nau lea mai kiate kinautolu mei he kekelelé, pea 'e ongo hake 'a 'enau leá mei he loto efú, pea 'e tatau 'a honau le'ó mo ha taha 'oku mā'u ha laumālie 'uli; koe'uhi 'e tuku kiate ia 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá, 'a e mālohi ke ne fafana 'o kau kiate kinautolu, 'o hangē ko e fai ia mei he kekelelé; pea 'e fafana mai 'a 'enau leá mei he efú.

17 He 'oku folofola pehe 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá: Te nau tohi 'a e ngaahi me'a 'e fai 'iate kinautolú, pea 'e tohi mo fakama'u ia 'i ha tohi, pea 'e 'ikai mā'u ia 'e kinautolu kuo faka'au'au hifo 'i he ta'etuí, he 'oku nau feinga ke faka'auha 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a e 'Otuá.

18 Ko ia, ko e me'a kiate kinautolu kuo faka'auhá na'e faka'auha vave 'a kinautolu; pea ko e fu'u tokolahi 'o honau ngaahi fili fakailifá te nau hangē ko e kafukafu 'a ia 'oku mole atu—'io, 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá: 'E hoko ia 'i he kemo, pea fakafokifā—

19 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē, ko kinautolu kuo faka'au'au hifo 'i he ta'etuí, 'e te'ia 'a kinautolu 'i he nima 'o e kau Senitailé.

20 Pea kuo fielahí 'a e kau Senitailé 'i he hīkisia honau matá 'o pehē 'oku nau lelei ange he kakai kehé, pea kuo nau tūkia, koe'uhi ko hono lahi 'o honau maka-tūkia'angá, pea kuo nau fokotu'u 'a e ngaahi siasi lahi; ka neongo iá 'oku nau manuki ki he mālohi mo e ngaahi mana 'a e 'Otuá, pea nau vikia pē 'a honau poto 'onautolú mo 'enau 'iló, koe'uhi pē ke nau mā'u ha totongi, pea fakatupu ha mamahi 'a e masivá.

21 Pea 'oku lahi 'a e ngaahi siasi kuo fokotu'u 'a ia 'oku fakalanga 'a e femeheka 'akí mo e feke'ike'í mo e tāufehí'á.

After my seed and the seed of my brethren shall have dwindled in unbelief, and shall have been smitten by the Gentiles; yea, after the Lord God shall have camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them; and after they shall have been brought down low in the dust, even that they are not, yet the words of the righteous shall be written, and the prayers of the faithful shall be heard, and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten.

For those who shall be destroyed shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give unto him power, that he may whisper concerning them, even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust.

For thus saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book, and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God.

Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away—yea, thus saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly—

And it shall come to pass, that those who have dwindled in unbelief shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles.

And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor.

And there are many churches built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice.

- 22 Pea kuo 'i ai foki mo e ngaahi kautaha fufū, 'io 'o hangē ko e ngaahi kuonga 'i mu'á, 'o tatau mo e ngaahi kautaha fufū 'a e tēvoló, he ko e tupu'anga ia 'o e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa; 'io, ko e tupu'anga 'o e fakapoó mo e ngaahi ngāue 'o e fakapo'ulí; 'io, pea 'okú ne tataki 'a kinautolu 'i honau kiá 'aki 'a e filo vavae, kae 'oua kuó ne ha'ihā 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a 'ene ngaahi afó mālohí ke ta'engata.
- 23 He vakai, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'oku 'ikai ngāue 'a e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'i he fakapo'uli.
- 24 'Oku 'ikai te ne fai ha me'a 'o kapau 'e 'ikai 'aonga ia ki he kakai 'o e māmaní; he 'okú ne 'ofa ki he māmaní, 'io, 'o a'u ki he'ene tuku hifo 'a 'ene mo'ui 'a 'aná koe'uhi ke ne tohoaki kiate ia 'a e kakai fulipē. Ko ia, 'oku 'ikai te ne fekau ki ha tokotaha ke 'oua te ne ma'u 'a 'ene fakamo'uí.
- 25 Vakai, 'okú ne tangi koā ki ha taha, 'o pehē: 'Alu 'iate au? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Oku 'ikai; ka 'okú ne folofola: Mou ha'u kiate au, 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē 'a e ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e māmaní, fakatau mai 'a e hu'a huhu mo e hu'a hone ta'e-ha-pa'anga pea ta'e-ha-totongi.
- 26 Vakai, kuó ne fekau koā ki ha ní'ihí ke nau 'alu ki tu'a mei he ngaahi fale lotú, pe mei he ngaahi fale 'o e lotú? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, Kuo 'ikai.
- 27 Kuó ne fekau koā ki ha ní'ihí ke 'oua na'a nau ma'u 'a 'ene fakamo'uí? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, Kuo 'ikai; ka kuó ne foaki ta'etotongi ia ki he kakai fulipē; pea kuó ne fekau ki hono kakaí ke nau fakaloto'i 'a e kakai kotoa pē ke fakatomala.
- 28 Vakai, kuo fekau koā 'e he 'Eikí ki ha ní'ihí ke 'oua na'a nau ma'u mei he'ene angalelé? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, Kuo 'ikai; ka 'oku ma'u 'a e faingamālie 'a e kakai fulipē, 'o tatau 'a e tangata taki taha, pea 'oku 'ikai ta'ofi ha taha.
- 29 'Okú ne tu'utu'uni ke 'oua na'a 'i ai ha ngāue fakataula'eiki kākā, he vakai, ko e ngāue fakataula'eiki kākā 'a hono malanga 'aki mo hono fokotu'u 'e ha kau tangata 'a kinautolu ko ha maama ki māmani, koe'uhi ke nau ma'u ha totongi mo e fakamālō 'a e māmaní; ka 'oku 'ikai te nau feinga ki he lelei 'a Saioné.

And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

For behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness.

He doeth not anything save it be for the benefit of the world; for he loveth the world, even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him. Wherefore, he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his salvation.

Behold, doth he cry unto any, saying: Depart from me? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but he saith: Come unto me all ye ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price.

Behold, hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the synagogues, or out of the houses of worship? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Hath he commanded any that they should not partake of his salvation? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but he hath given it free for all men; and he hath commanded his people that they should persuade all men to repentance.

Behold, hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but all men are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden.

He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold, priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.

- 30 Vakai, kuo tapui 'e he 'Eikí 'a e me'á ni; ko ia, kuo fai ai 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ha fekau ke ma'u 'e he kakai kotoa pē 'a e manava'ofá, pea ko e manava'ofa ko iá 'a e 'ofá. Pea kapau 'e 'ikai te nau ma'u 'a e manava'ofá, ko e me'a noa pē 'a kinautolu. Ko ia, kapau 'oku nau ma'u 'a e manava'ofá 'e 'ikai te nau tuku 'a e tangata ngāue 'i Saioné ke mate.
- 31 Kā ko e tangata ngāue 'i Saioné te ne ngāue ma'a Saione; he kapau te nau ngāue koe'uhi ko e pa'angá te nau mala'ia.
- 32 Pea 'ikai ia ko ia pē, kā kuo toe fekau 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ke 'oua na'a fakapō 'e ha tangata; ke 'oua na'a nau loi; ke 'oua na'a nau kaiha'a; ke 'oua na'a nau takuanoa 'a e huafa 'o e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá; ke 'oua na'a nau meheka; ke 'oua na'a 'iate kinautolu 'a e fakafāsifasí; ke 'oua na'a nau fakakikihi 'iate kinautolu; ke 'oua na'a nau fai 'a e ngaahi fe'auakí; pea ke 'oua na'a nau fai ha taha 'o e ngaahi me'á ni; he ko ia ia 'oku fai iá, te ne mala'ia.
- 33 He 'oku 'ikai ke tupu mei he 'Eikí ha taha 'o e ngaahi angahalá ni; he 'okú ne fai 'a ia 'oku lelé 'i he fānau 'a e tangatá; pea 'oku 'ikai te ne fai ha me'a 'o kapau 'oku 'ikai mahinongofua ia ki he fānau 'a e tangatá; pea 'okú ne fakaafe'i 'a kinautolu kotoa pē ke nau ha'u kiate ia 'o ma'u 'i he'ene angalelé; pea 'oku 'ikai te ne ta'ofi ha tokotaha 'oku ha'u kiate ia, pe ko ha 'ulí'uli pe hinehina, pe ko ha pōpula pe tau'atāina, pe ko ha tangata pe fefine; pea 'okú ne manatu'i 'a e kau hītení; pea 'oku tatau 'a e kakai fulipē 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, 'a e Siú mo e Senitailé fakatou'osi.

Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing; wherefore, the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is love. And except they should have charity they were nothing. Wherefore, if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish.

But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish.

And again, the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things; for whoso doeth them shall perish.

For none of these iniquities come of the Lord; for he doeth that which is good among the children of men; and he doeth nothing save it be plain unto the children of men; and he inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness; and he denieth none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembereth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.

2 Nīfai 27

- 1 Kae vakai, 'i he ngaahi 'aho faka'osí, pe 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o e kau Senitailé—'io, vakai ko e ngaahi pule'anga kotoa 'o e kau Senitailé mo e kau Siú foki, 'a kinautolu 'a ia 'e ha'u ki he funga 'o e fonua ní pea mo kinautolu foki 'a ia te nau 'i ha ngaahi fonua kehé, 'io, 'i he funga 'o e ngaahi fonua kotoa pē 'o e māmaní, vakai, te nau konā 'i he angahalá mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga anga-fakalielia kotoa pē—
- 2 Pea 'o ka hokosia 'a e 'aho ko iá, 'e tautea 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, 'aki 'a e mana mo e mofuike pea mo e 'u'ulu lahi, mo e tangi, mo e afā, pea mo e ulo 'o e afi faka'auhá.
- 3 Pea ko e ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē 'a ia 'oku tau 'i 'a Saione, mo fakamamahi 'i iá, 'e hangē ko ha misi 'o ha me'a hā mai 'i he pō; 'io, 'e hoko kiate kinautolu, 'o hangē 'oku hoko ki ha tangata fiekaia 'a ia 'oku misi, pea vakai 'okú ne kai ka 'okú ne ā hake pea 'oku 'ikai ke mākona 'a hono laumālié; pe tatau mo e tangata 'oku fieinua 'a ia 'oku misi, pea vakai 'okú ne inu ka 'okú ne ā hake pea vakai 'okú ne vaivaia, pea 'oku 'ikai fiemālie 'a hono laumālié; 'io, 'e pehē pē 'a e fu'u tokolahi 'o e ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē 'a ia 'oku tau 'i 'a e Mo'unga ko Saioné.
- 4 He vakai, ko kimoutolu kotoa pē 'oku fai angahalá, ta'ofi 'a kimoutolu pea mou fifili, he te mou kaila, mo tangi; 'io, te mou konā kae 'ikai 'i he uaine, te mou tāsipa kae 'ikai 'i he inu mālohi.
- 5 He vakai, kuo lilingi hifo kiate kimoutolu 'e he 'Eiki 'a e laumālie 'o e mohe ma'u. He vakai, kuo mou kuikui 'a homou matá, pea kuo mou lí'aki 'a e kau palōfitá; pea ko homou kau pulé, mo e kau tangata kikité, kuó ne fufuu 'i koe'uhi ko ho'omou angahalá.
- 6 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e 'omi 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi lea 'o ha tohi, pea ko e ngaahi lea ia 'anautolu kuo mohé.
- 7 Pea vakai kuo fakama'u 'a e tohi; pea 'e 'i he tohi ha fakahā mei he 'Otuá, mei he kamata'anga 'o māmaní 'o a'u ki hono ngata'angá.
- 8 Ko ia, koe'uhi ko e ngaahi me'a kuo fakama'ú, 'e 'ikai fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo fakama'ú 'i he 'aho 'o e fai angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia 'a e kakaí. Ko ia 'e ta'ofi meiate kinautolu 'a e tohi.

2 Nephi 27

But, behold, in the last days, or in the days of the Gentiles—yea, behold all the nations of the Gentiles and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land and those who shall be upon other lands, yea, even upon all the lands of the earth, behold, they will be drunken with iniquity and all manner of abominations—

And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision; yea, it shall be unto them, even as unto a hungry man which dreameth, and behold he eateth but he awaketh and his soul is empty; or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth, and behold he drinketh but he awaketh and behold he is faint, and his soul hath appetite; yea, even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion.

For behold, all ye that doeth iniquity, stay yourselves and wonder, for ye shall cry out, and cry; yea, ye shall be drunken but not with wine, ye shall stagger but not with strong drink.

For behold, the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.

And behold the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.

Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people. Wherefore the book shall be kept from them.

9 Ka 'e 'oange 'a e tohí ki ha tangata, pea te ne 'ave 'a e ngaahi lea 'o e tohí, 'a ia ko e ngaahi lea 'anautolu kuo mohe 'i he efú, pea te ne 'oange 'a e ngaahi lea ko iá ki ha tokotaha kehe;

10 Kā ko e ngaahi lea kuo fakama'ú 'e 'ikai te ne fakahā ia, pea 'e 'ikai te ne fakahā foki 'a e tohí. Koe'uhi 'e fakama'ú 'a e tohí 'i he māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá, pea ko e fakahā na'e fakama'ú 'e tauhi ia 'i he tohí 'o a'u ki he taimi 'oku finangalo ki ai 'a e 'Eiki, koe'uhi ke fakahā mai ai ia; he vakai, 'oku fakahā ai 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní 'o a'u ki hono ngata'angá.

11 Pea 'oku ha'u 'a e 'aho 'e lau 'a e ngaahi lea 'o e tohi kuo fakama'ú mei he tumu'aki 'o e ngaahi falé; pea 'e lau ia 'i he mālohi 'o Kalaisí; pea 'e fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'a ia kuo hoko 'i he fānau 'a e tangatá, pea mo e ngaahi me'a 'e hoko 'o a'u ki he ngata'anga 'o e māmaní.

12 Ko ia, 'i he 'aho ko iá 'o ka 'oange ai 'a e tohí ki he tangata 'a ia kuó u lau ki aí, 'e fufuu 'i 'a e tohí mei he mata 'o e māmaní, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a mamata ki ai 'a e mata 'o ha tokotaha tuku kehe pē 'o ka mamata ki ai ha kau fakamo'oni 'e toko tolu, 'i he māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá, tuku kehe ia na'e 'oange ki ai 'a e tohí; pea te nau fakamo'oni ki hono mo'oni 'o e tohí pea mo e ngaahi me'a 'oku 'i aí.

13 Pea 'e 'ikai mamata ki ai mo ha tokotaha kehe, kā ko ha tokosi 'i pē 'o fakatatau mo e finangalo 'o e 'Otuá, ke fakamo'oni 'i ki he fānau 'a e tangatá 'a 'ene folofolá; he kuo folofola 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'e lea 'a e ngaahi lea 'a e kau tui faivelengá 'o hangē ko ha lea mai ia mei he pekiá.

14 Ko ia, 'e fai leva 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ke 'omai 'a e ngaahi lea 'o e tohí; pea 'i he ngutu 'o e kau fakamo'oni tokolahi 'o fakatatau mo ia 'okú ne 'afio 'i 'oku lelé te ne fakamo'oni 'i 'a 'ene folofolá; pea 'e mala'ia ia 'oku lí'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá!

15 Kae vakai, 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e folofola 'a e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá kiate ia te ne 'oange ki ai 'a e tohí: 'Ave 'a e ngaahi leá ni 'a ia kuo 'ikai fakama'ú pea 'oange ia ki ha tokotaha kehe, koe'uhi ke ne fakahā ia ki ha tangata poto, 'o pehē: 'Oku ou kole ke ke lau 'eni. Pea 'e pehē 'e he tangata potó: 'Omi ki heni 'a e tohí, pea te u lau ia.

But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another;

But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold, they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.

And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth.

Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein.

And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good will he establish his word; and wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God!

But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned, saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.

16 Pea ko 'eni, koe'uhi ko e holi ki he fakamālō 'a e māmaní pea ke ma'u ha totongí te nau lea 'aki 'eni, kae 'ikai koe'uhi ko e nāunau 'o e 'Otuá.

17 Pea 'e pehē 'e he tangatá. 'Oku 'ikai te u lava 'o 'omi 'a e tohí, he kuo fakama'u ia.

18 'E toki pehē 'e he tangata potó: 'Oku 'ikai te u lava 'o lau ia.

19 Ko ia 'e hoko 'o pehē, 'e toe 'oange 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a e tohí mo hono ngaahi leá kiate ia 'oku 'ikai ke poto; pea 'e pehē 'e he tangata 'oku 'ikai potó: 'Oku 'ikai te u poto.

20 'E toki folofola kiate ia 'a e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá: 'E 'ikai lau ia 'e he kau potó, he kuo nau lí'aki ia, pea 'oku ou mafai ke fai 'a 'eku ngāue pē 'a 'akú; ko ia ke ke lau 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia te u foaki kiate koé.

21 'Oua na 'a ala ki he ngaahi me 'a 'a ia kuo fakama'ú, he te u fakahā mai ia 'i he taimi 'oku ou loto ki aí; he te u fakahā ki he fānau 'a e tangatá 'oku ou mafai ke fai 'a 'eku ngāue pē 'a 'akú.

22 Ko ia, 'o ka 'osi 'a ho' o lau 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia kuó u fēkau kiate koé, mo ma'u 'a e kau fakamo'oni 'a ia kuó u tala'ofa kiate koé, pea te ke toe fakama'u leva 'a e tohí, pea fufuu 'i hake ia kiate au, koe'uhi ke u lava 'o fakatolonga 'a e ngaahi lea kuo 'ikai te ke laú, kae 'oua ke u pehē 'oku lelei 'i hoku poto 'o'okú ke fakahā 'a e ngaahi me 'a kotoa pē ki he fānau 'a e tangatá.

23 He vakai, ko e 'Otuá au; pea ko e 'Otuá au 'o e ngaahi mana; pea te u fakahā ki he māmaní 'oku ou tatau 'i he 'aneafí, 'aho nī, pea ta'engatá; pea 'oku 'ikai te u ngāue 'i he fānau 'a e tangatá kae fakatatau pē ki he 'enau tuí.

24 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē foki 'e folofola 'a e 'Eiki kiate ia 'a ia 'e lau 'a e ngaahi lea 'e tuku kiate iá:

25 Ko e me 'a 'i he 'unu'unu mai 'a e kakaí ni kiate au 'aki honau ngutú, pea faka'apa'apa kiate au 'aki honau loungutú, ka 'oku mama 'o 'aupito honau lotó meiate au, pea ko 'enau manavahē kiate au 'oku tupu ia 'i he ngaahi akonaki 'a e tangata pē—

26 Ko ia, te u hanga ke fai ha ngāue fakaofa 'i he kakaí ni, 'io, ko ha ngāue fakaofa mo faka'ulía, he ko e poto 'o 'enau kau tangata potó mo e kau tangata akonekiná 'e 'auha ia, pea 'e fufuu 'i 'a e 'ilo 'a 'enau kau tangata fakapotopotó.

And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.

And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.

Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.

Wherefore it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.

Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.

Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work.

Wherefore, when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt thou seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which thou hast not read, until I shall see fit in mine own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men.

For behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles; and I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith.

And again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him:

Forasmuch as this people draw near unto me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me, and their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men—

Therefore, I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, yea, a marvelous work and a wonder, for the wisdom of their wise and learned shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent shall be hid.

27 Pea 'e mala'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku feinga lahi ke fufuu 'i 'a 'enau akonakí mei he 'Eikí! Pea 'oku fai 'i he fakapo'uli 'a 'enau ngaahi ngāue; pea 'oku nau pehē: Ko hai 'oku mamata kiate kinautolu? pea ko hai 'okú ne 'ilo' 'i 'a kinautolu? Pea nau pehē foki: Ko e mo'oni ko ho'omou fulihi 'a e ngaahi me'á 'e tataua ia mo e 'umea 'a e tangata ngaohi ipú. Kae vakai, te u fakahā kiate kinautolu, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, 'oku ou 'ilo' 'i 'a 'enau ngaahi ngāue kotoa pē. He 'e lea koā 'e he me'a kuo ngaohi 'o kau kiate ia na'á ne ngaohi iá, na'e 'ikai te ne ngaohi au? Pe pehē 'e he me'a na'e langá, 'oku 'ikai te u 'ilo ki he me'a na'á ne fai?

28 Kae vakai, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú: Te u fakahā ki he fānau 'a e tangatá 'oku toetoe si' i pea 'e liliu 'a Lapanoni ke hoko ko ha ngoue fua mo'ui; pea 'e lau 'a e ngoue fua mo'uí 'o hangē ha vao 'akau.

29 Pea 'i he 'aho ko iá 'e fanongo 'a e tulí ki he ngaahi lea 'o e tohí, pea 'e mamata 'a e mata 'o e kuí mei he kakapú, pea mei he po'ulí.

30 Pea ko e kakai angamaluú foki 'e fakatokolahi, pea ko 'enau fiefiá 'e 'i he 'Eikí, pea ko e kau masiva 'i he kakai 'e fiefia 'i he Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí.

31 He hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eikí 'e pehē 'enau sio ki hono tuku hifo 'o e tokotaha fakamanavaheé ko ha me'a noa pē, pea 'oku faka'auha 'a e kakai 'oku manuki ki he ngaahi me'a 'a e 'Otuá, pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku lama ke angahalá 'oku motuhi atu 'a kinautolu;

32 Pea ko kinautolu 'oku fakahalaia 'i ha tangata koe'uhi ko ha kupu 'i lea, pea tau ha tauhele kiate ia 'oku valoki 'i he matapaá, mo fakasítu 'a 'i 'a e angatonú, 'o lau ko ha me'a noa pē.

33 Ko ia, 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí, 'a ia na'á ne huhu 'i 'a 'Ēpalahamé, 'o kau ki he fale 'o Sēkopé: 'E 'ikai mā 'eni 'a Sēkope, pea 'ikai foki liliu 'o tea 'a hono fofongá.

34 Ka 'o ka ne ka mamata ki he'ene fānau, 'a ia ko e ngāue 'a hoku nimá, 'i hono lotolotongá, te nau fakatoputapu 'i 'a hoku hingoá, pea fakatoputapu 'i 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o Sēkopé, pea manavahē ki he 'Otua 'o 'Isilelí.

35 Ko kinautolu foki na'e fehalaaki 'i he ngaahi me'a fakalaumālié te nau ma'u 'a e 'iló, pea ko kinautolu na'e lāungá te nau ako 'o 'ilo 'a e tokāteliné.

And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! And their works are in the dark; and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? And they also say: Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay. But behold, I will show unto them, saith the Lord of Hosts, that I know all their works. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had no understanding?

But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest.

And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness.

And the meek also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

For assuredly as the Lord liveth they shall see that the terrible one is brought to naught, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;

And they that make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of naught.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob: Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.

But when he seeth his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.

They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.

2 Nīfai 28

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, kuó u lea kiate kimoutolu 'o fakatatau ki he fekau kuo fai kiate au 'e he Laumālié; ko ia, 'oku ou 'ilo'i kuo pau ke hoko ia.
- 2 Pea ko e ngaahi me'á 'a ia 'e hiki mei he tohí 'e 'aonga lahi ia ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, kae lahi ange ki hotau hakó, 'a ia ko ha toenga 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.
- 3 He 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'aho ko iá ko e ngaahi siasi 'a ia kuo fokotu'u, kae 'ikai ki he 'Eikí, 'o ka nau ka fepehē'aki 'iate kinautolu: Vakai, ko au, 'oku ou 'o e 'Eikí; pea 'e pehē 'e he ní'ihí kehé: Ko au, 'oku ou 'o e 'Eikí; pea 'e lea pehē 'e kinautolu kotoa pē kuo nau langa hake ha ngaahi siasi, kae 'ikai ki he 'Eikí—
- 4 Pea te nau fakakikihi 'iate kinautolu; pea 'e fefakakikihi'aki 'a honau kau taula'eikí, pea te nau akonaki 'aki 'a honau potó, 'o faka'ikai'i 'a e Laumālie Mā'oní'oní, 'a ia 'okú ne fakalea'i 'a e tangatá.
- 5 Pea 'oku nau faka'ikai'i 'a e māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá, 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oní'oní 'o 'Isilelí; pea 'oku nau pehē ki he kakaí: Tokanga mai kiate kinautolu, pea mou fanongo ki he 'emaui ngaahi akonakí; he vakai 'oku 'ikai ha 'Otuá he 'ahó ni, he kuo fai 'e he 'Eikí mo e Huhu'í 'a 'ene ngāué, pea kuó ne tuku hono mālohí ki he tangatá;
- 6 Vakai, mou tokanga ki he 'eku akonakí; pea kapau te nau pehē kuo fai ha mana 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí, 'oua na 'a tui ki ai; he ko e 'aho ní 'oku 'ikai ko ha 'Otuá ia 'o e ngaahi mana; he kuó ne fai 'a 'ene ngāué.
- 7 'Io, pea 'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi te nau pehē: Tau kai mo inu mo fiefia, he te tau mate 'apongipongi; pea te tau lelei pē kitautolu.
- 8 Pea 'e 'i ai foki mo e tokolahi 'a ia 'e pehē: Kai, mo inu, mo fiefia; ka neongo iá, manavahē ki he 'Otuá—te ne fakatonuhia 'i pē 'a e fai 'o e kí'i angahala sí'í; 'io, fai ha kí'i loi, tauhele'i ha tokotaha koe'uhi ko 'ene ngaahi leá, keli ha luo ki ho kaungā'apí; he 'oku 'ikai ha kovi 'i he me'á ni; pea fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, he te tau mate 'apongipongi; pea kapau te tau halaia, 'e ta'a 'i 'a kitautolu 'e he 'Otuá 'aki ha ngaahi tā sí'isí'i, pea ka hili iá 'e fakamo'ui 'a kitautolu 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá.

2 Nephi 28

And now, behold, my brethren, I have spoken unto you, according as the Spirit hath constrained me; wherefore, I know that they must surely come to pass.

And the things which shall be written out of the book shall be of great worth unto the children of men, and especially unto our seed, which is a remnant of the house of Israel.

For it shall come to pass in that day that the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and thus shall every one say that hath built up churches, and not unto the Lord—

And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance.

And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people: Hearken unto us, and hear ye our precept; for behold there is no God to-day, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men;

Behold, hearken ye unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us.

And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry; nevertheless, fear God—he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

9 'Io, pea 'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'e pehē, 'enau ako 'i 'a e ngaahi tokāteline hala mo ta'e'aonga mo valé, pea nau fakafuofuolahi 'i honau lotó, pea 'ahi'ahi lahi ke fūfūnaki 'a 'enau ngaahi akonakí mei he 'Eikí; pea 'oku fai 'i he fakapo'ulí 'a 'enau ngaahi ngāué.

10 Pea ko e toto 'o e kau mā'oní'oní 'e tangi mei he kelekelé 'o talatalaaki 'i 'a kinautolu.

11 'Io, kuo nau hē kotoa pē mei he halá; kuo nau hoko 'o kovi.

12 Pea ko e tupu 'i he loto-hīkisia, pea koe'uhi ko e kau akonaki loi mo e ngaahi tokāteline halá, kuo fakakovi 'i 'a honau ngaahi siasí, pea kuo fiela 'i 'a honau ngaahi siasí; pea ko e tupu 'i he loto-hīkisiá kuo nau 'ulu-pupula ai.

13 'Oku nau kaiha 'a mei he kau masivá koe'uhi ko honau ngaahi fale lotu masaní; 'oku nau kaiha 'a mei he masivá koe'uhi ko honau ngaahi kofu leleí; pea 'oku nau fakatanga 'i 'a e angamaluú mo e angavaivaí, koe'uhi 'oku tupu 'i he 'enau loto-hīkisiá 'a 'enau 'ulu-pupulá.

14 'Oku nau kia-keveva mo 'ulu-mā'olunga; 'io, pea ko e tupu 'i he loto-hīkisiá mo e fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá mo e ngaahi fe'auakí, kuo nau hē ai kotoa tuku kehe pē ha tokosí 'i, 'a ia ko e kau muimui anga-fakatōkilalo 'o Kalaisí; kae kehe, 'oku tākiekina 'a kinautolu, pea 'i he ngaahi me'a lahi 'oku nau fai hala koe'uhi 'oku ako 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi akonaki 'a e tangatá.

15 'Oiauē 'a e kau potó, mo e kau akonekiná, mo e kau ma'u me'á, 'a ia 'oku 'ulu-pupula 'i he hīkisia 'a honau lotó, pea mo kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku malanga 'aki 'a e ngaahi tokāteline halá, pea mo kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku fai 'a e ngaahi fe'auakí, mo fakakovi 'i 'a e hā'ele'anga totonu 'o e 'Eikí; malá'ia, malá'ia, malá'ia kiate kinautolu, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otua Māfimafí, koe'uhí 'e kapusi hifo 'a kinautolu ki heli!

16 Malá'ia kiate kinautolu 'oku tafoki mei he angatonú 'o hangē ko ha me'a ta'e'aongá, pea nau angatu'u ki he me'a 'oku leleí, 'o pehē 'oku ta'e'aonga 'ia! He 'e hoko 'a e 'aho 'e tautea fakavavevave ai 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otua 'a e kakai 'o e māmaní; pea 'i he 'aho ko ia 'e kakato ai 'a 'enau angahalá te nau 'auha.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines, and shall be puffed up in their hearts, and shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord; and their works shall be in the dark.

And the blood of the saints shall cry from the ground against them.

Yea, they have all gone out of the way; they have become corrupted.

Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted, and their churches are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up.

They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.

They wear stiff necks and high heads; yea, and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray save it be a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led, that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men.

O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty, for they shall be thrust down to hell!

Wo unto them that turn aside the just for a thing of naught and revile against that which is good, and say that it is of no worth! For the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth; and in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish.

17 Kae vakai, kapau 'e fakatomala 'a e kakai 'o e māmani mei he 'enau fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá, 'e 'ikai faka'auha 'a kinautolu, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.

18 Kae vakai, ko e fu'u siasi lahi mo fakalieliá, 'a ia ko e fe'auaki 'o e māmani kotoa pē, kuo pau ke tō ia ki he kelekelé, pea kuo pau ke lahi 'a 'ene toó.

19 He ko e pule'anga 'o e tēvoló kuo pau ke ngalulululu, pea ko kinautolu 'oku kau ki aí 'oku totonu ke ue'i hake 'a kinautolu ke nau fakatomala, pe 'e puke 'a kinautolu 'e he tēvoló 'aki 'a 'ene ngaahi sēini ta'engatá, pea 'e ue'i hake 'a kinautolu ke 'ita, 'o nau 'auha;

20 He vakai, 'i he 'aho ko iá te ne tekelili 'i he loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá, pea ue'i hake 'a kinautolu ke nau 'ita ki he me'a 'oku lelei.

21 Pea te ne fakafiemālie 'i 'a e loto 'o e ni'ihiki kehé, pea kākaa 'i fakaooloo 'a kinautolu ke nau fiemālie fakakakano pea nau pehē: 'Oku lelei 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'i Saione; 'io, 'oku tu'umālie 'a Saione, 'oku lelei 'a e me'a kotoa pē—pea 'oku kākaa 'i pehe 'i 'e he tēvoló 'a honau laumālie, pea tataki fakaooloo hifo 'a kinautolu ki heli.

22 Pea vakai, 'okú ne tohoaki 'i atu 'a e ni'ihiki kehé 'i he 'ene fakahekeheke 'i 'a e ni'ihiki kehé, mo tala kiate kinautolu 'oku 'ikai ha heli; pea 'okú ne pehē kiate kinautolu: 'Oku 'ikai ko e tēvoló au, he 'oku 'ikai ha taha pehē—pea 'oku pehē 'ene fanafana 'i honau telingá, kae 'oua kuó ne puke 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a 'ene ngaahi sēini fakamanavahē 'a ia 'oku 'ikai te nau lava 'o vete ange 'a kinautolu mei aí.

23 'Io, kuo puke 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e maté, mo heli; pea ko e pekiá, mo heli mo e tēvoló, mo kinautolu kotoa pē kuo puke 'i he ngaahi ha 'i fakamanavaheé, kuo pau ke nau tutu'u 'i he 'ao 'o e 'afio'anga 'o e 'Otuá, pea fakamāu 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau ngaahi ngāué, pea kuo pau ke nau 'alu mei ai ki he potu kuo teuteu 'i mo'onautolu, 'io 'a e ano 'o e afi mo e maka-vela, 'a ia ko e fakamamahi ta'engatá.

24 Ko ia, mala'ia ia 'okú ne nofo fakafiemālie pē 'i Saioné!

25 Mala'ia ia 'okú ne kaila: 'Oku lelei 'a e me'a kotoa pē!

26 'Io, mala'ia ia 'okú ne tokanga 'o talangofua ki he ngaahi akonaki 'a e tangatá, pea faka'ikai 'i 'a e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá, mo e me'a-foaki 'o e Laumālie Mā'oní'oní!

But behold, if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness and abominations they shall not be destroyed, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But behold, that great and abominable church, the whore of all the earth, must tumble to the earth, and great must be the fall thereof.

For the kingdom of the devil must shake, and they which belong to it must needs be stirred up unto repentance, or the devil will grasp them with his everlasting chains, and they be stirred up to anger, and perish;

For behold, at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men, and stir them up to anger against that which is good.

And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well—and thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully down to hell.

And behold, others he flattereth away, and telleth them there is no hell; and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none—and thus he whispereth in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains, from whence there is no deliverance.

Yea, they are grasped with death, and hell; and death, and hell, and the devil, and all that have been seized therewith must stand before the throne of God, and be judged according to their works, from whence they must go into the place prepared for them, even a lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion!

Wo be unto him that crieth: All is well!

Yea, wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men, and denieth the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

27 'Io, mala'ia ia 'oku pehē: Kuo mau ma'u, pea 'oku
'ikai te mau toe fie ma'u ha toe me'a!

28 Pea ko hono faka'osí, 'e mala'ia 'a kinautolu kotoa pē
'oku tetetete mo 'ita koe'uhi ko e mo'oni 'a e 'Otuá! He
vakai, ko ia ia kuo langa 'i he maká, 'okú ne tali ia 'i he
fiefia; pea ko ia ia kuo langa 'i he tu'unga 'o e 'one'one
'okú ne tetetete telia na'á ne tō.

29 Mala'ia ia 'a ia 'e pehē: Kuo mau ma'u 'a e folofola 'a e
'Otuá, pea 'oku 'ikai te mau toe fie ma'u ha folofola 'a e
'Otuá, he kuo mau ma'u 'o fe'unga!

30 He vakai, 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá:
Te u foaki ki he fānau 'a e tangatá 'a e 'otu lea ki he 'otu
lea, 'a e akonaki ki he akonaki, ko e si'i 'i heni pea si'i 'i
hena; pea 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku fanongo 'o
tokanga ki he'eku ngaahi akonakí, pea fanongo ki
he'eku akonakí, he te nau ma'u ai 'a e 'iló; he ko ia 'okú
ne talí te u foaki 'o lahi ange kiate ia; pea 'ilonga 'a
kinautolu 'oku pehē, Kuo mau ma'u 'o fe'ungá, 'e to'o
meiate kinautolu 'a e me'a 'oku nau ma'ú.

31 'Oku mala'ia ia 'okú ne falala ki he tangatá, pe ngaohi
'a e kakanó ke hoko ko hono nima, pe tokanga ki he
ngaahi akonaki 'a e tangatá, tuku kehe pē 'o kapau 'e fai
'a 'enau ngaahi akonakí 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie
Mā'oni'oni.

32 'E mala'ia 'a e kau Senitailé, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki ko
e 'Otua 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú! He neongo te u mafao atu
'a hoku nimá kiate kinautolu 'i he 'aho ki he 'aho, ka te
nau faka'ikai 'i au; ka neongo iá, te u 'alo'ofa kiate
kinautolu, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá, 'o kapau
te nau fakatomala, pea ha'u kiate au; he 'oku mafao atu
'a hoku nimá 'i hono kotoa 'o e 'ahó, 'oku folofola 'e he
'Eiki ko e 'Otua 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.

Yea, wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and
we need no more!

And in fine, wo unto all those who tremble, and are
angry because of the truth of God! For behold, he that is
built upon the rock receiveth it with gladness; and he
that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth lest he
shall fall.

Wo be unto him that shall say: We have received the
word of God, and we need no more of the word of God,
for we have enough!

For behold, thus saith the Lord God: I will give unto
the children of men line upon line, precept upon pre-
cept, here a little and there a little; and blessed are those
who hearken unto my precepts, and lend an ear unto
my counsel, for they shall learn wisdom; for unto him
that receiveth I will give more; and from them that shall
say, We have enough, from them shall be taken away
even that which they have.

Cursed is he that putteth his trust in man, or maketh
flesh his arm, or shall hearken unto the precepts of men,
save their precepts shall be given by the power of the
Holy Ghost.

Wo be unto the Gentiles, saith the Lord God of
Hosts! For notwithstanding I shall lengthen out mine
arm unto them from day to day, they will deny me; nev-
ertheless, I will be merciful unto them, saith the Lord
God, if they will repent and come unto me; for mine
arm is lengthened out all the day long, saith the Lord
God of Hosts.

2 Nīfai 29

- 1 Kae vakai, 'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi—'i he 'aho 'o ka u ka kamata ke fai ha ngāue fakaofō 'iate kinautolu, koe'uhi ke u manatu 'i 'a 'eku ngaahi fuakava 'a ia kuó u fai ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, koe'uhi ke u toe 'ai 'a hoku nimá ko hono liunga ua ke toe fakafoki mai 'a hoku kakai, 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí;
- 2 Pea ko e tahá, koe'uhi ke u manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi tala'ofá 'a ia kuó u fai kiate koé, 'e Nīfai, pea ki ho'ó tamaí foki, ke u manatu 'i 'a homo hakó; pea 'alu atu 'i hoku ngutú ki homo hakó 'a e ngaahi lea 'a homo hakó; pea 'e tuku atu 'a 'eku ngaahi leá 'o a'u ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e māmaní, ke hoko ko ha fuka ki hoku kakai, 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí;
- 3 Pea koe'uhi 'e tuku atu 'a 'eku ngaahi leá—'e pehē 'e he tokolahi 'o e kau Senitailé: Ko ha Tohi Tapu! Ko ha Tohi Tapu! Kuo mau ma'u ha Tohi Tapu, pea 'oku 'ikai lava ke toe 'i ai mo ha Tohi Tapu kehe.
- 4 Ka 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá: 'A e kau vale, te nau ma'u ha Tohi Tapu; pea 'e 'alu atu ia mei he kau Siú, 'a ia ko hoku kakai na'á ku fuakava mo ia 'i mu'a atú. Pea hono 'ikai lahi 'enau fakamālō ki he kau Siú koe'uhi ko e Tohi Tapu 'a ia kuo nau ma'u meiate kinautolú? 'Io, 'oku 'uhinga ki he hā 'a e kau Senitailé? 'Oku nau manatu 'i koā 'a e ngaahi faingata 'a, mo e ngaahi ngāue, mo e ngaahi mamahi 'a e kau Siú, pea mo 'enau faivelenga kiate aú, pea 'i hono 'omi 'o e fakamo'uí ki he kau Senitailé?
- 5 'Oiauē 'a kimoutolu 'a e kau Senitailé, kuo mou manatu 'i koā 'a e kau Siú, 'a hoku kakai 'o e fuakava 'i mu'a atú? 'Ikai; kā kuo mou kape 'i 'a kinautolu, pea fehi 'a kiate kinautolu, 'o 'ikai feinga ke fakafoki mai 'a kinautolu. Kae vakai, te u fakafoki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē ki homou 'ulu 'omoutolú; he ko au ko e 'Eiki kuo 'ikai te u fakangalo 'i 'a hoku kakai.
- 6 'A koe ko e valé, te ke pehē: Ko ha Tohi Tapu, kuo mau ma'u ha Tohi Tapu, pea 'oku 'ikai 'aonga ke mau ma'u mo ha toe Tohi Tapu. Tē mou ma'u koā ha Tohi Tapu kā ne ta'é'oua 'a e kau Siú?

2 Nephi 29

But behold, there shall be many—at that day when I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again the second time to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto thee, Nephi, and also unto thy father, that I would remember your seed; and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth unto your seed; and my words shall hiss forth unto the ends of the earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And because my words shall hiss forth—many of the Gentiles shall say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any more Bible.

But thus saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people. And what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them? Yea, what do the Gentiles mean? Do they remember the travails, and the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in bringing forth salvation unto the Gentiles?

O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant people? Nay; but ye have cursed them, and have hated them, and have not sought to recover them. But behold, I will return all these things upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not forgotten my people.

Thou fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no more Bible. Have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

7 'Ikai 'oku mou 'ilo 'oku 'i ai mo ha ngaahi pule'anga 'oku lahi ange 'i he tahá? 'Ikai 'oku mou 'ilo ko au, ko e 'Eiki ko homou 'Otuá, kuó u fakatupu 'a e kakai kotoa pē, pea 'oku ou manatu 'i 'a kinautolu 'oku 'i he ngaahi motu 'o e tahí; pea 'oku ou pule 'i he langí 'i 'olunga pea 'i he māmaní 'i lalo; pea 'oku ou 'omi 'eku ngaahi leá ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'io, ki he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē 'o e māmaní?

8 Ko e hā 'oku mou lāunga aí, koe'uhi te mou toe ma'u ai mo ha ngaahi lea lahi ange 'a'aku? 'Ikai 'oku mou 'ilo ko e fakamo'oni 'a e pule'anga 'e uá ko ha fakamo'oni ia kiate kimoutolu ko e 'Otuá au, pea 'oku ou manatu 'i 'a e pule'anga 'e taha 'o tatau mo e taha kehe? Ko ia, 'oku ou lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea tatau ki ha pule'anga 'e taha 'o hangē ki ha taha kehe. Pea 'o ka fakataha 'i 'a e ongo pule'angá, 'e fakataha foki mo e fakamo'oni 'a e ongo pule'angá.

9 Pea 'oku ou fai 'eni koe'uhi ke u fakamo'oni 'i ki he tokolahi 'oku ou tatau 'i he 'aneafí, 'aho nī, pea ta'engata; pea 'oku ou lea 'aki 'eku ngaahi leá 'o fakatatau ki he 'eku fa'iteliha 'a'akú. Pea koe'uhi kuó u lea 'aki ha lea 'e taha 'oua na'a mou mahalo 'oku 'ikai te u lava ke toe lea ki ha taha kehe; he 'oku te'eki ai ke 'osi 'a 'eku ngāué; pea 'e 'ikai ai pē ke 'osi ia 'o a'u ki he ngata'anga 'o e tangatá, pea fai atu foki mei he taimi ko iá 'o ta'engata.

10 Ko ia, ko e me'a 'i ho'omou ma'u ha Tohi Tapú 'oku 'ikai fie ma'u ke mou mahalo ai 'oku 'i ai 'a 'eku ngaahi lea kotoa pē; pea 'oku 'ikai fie ma'u foki ke mou mahalo kuo 'ikai te u pule ke tohi mo ha ngaahi lea kehe.

11 He 'oku ou fekau 'i 'a e kakai kotoa pē, 'i he potu hahaké pea 'i he hihifó pea 'i he tokelaú, pea 'i he tongá, pea 'i he ngaahi motu 'o e tahí, ke nau tohi 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia 'oku ou lea 'aki kiate kinautolú; he te u fakamāu 'i 'a e māmani 'aki 'a e ngaahi tohi 'a ia 'e tohi, ko e tangata kotoa pē 'o fakatatau ki he enau ngaahi ngāué, 'o fakatatau ki he me'a kuo tohí.

12 He vakai, te u lea ki he kau Siú pea te nau tohi ia; pea te u lea foki ki he kau Nifaí, pea te nau tohi ia; te u lea foki ki he ngaahi fa'ahinga kehe 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, 'a ia kuó u tataki atu ke mama'ó, pea te nau tohi ia; pea te u lea foki ki he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē 'o e māmaní, pea te nau tohi ia.

Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall receive more of my word? Know ye not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also.

And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure. And because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another; for my work is not yet finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

Wherefore, because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need ye suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works, according to that which is written.

For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

13 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e ma'u 'e he kau Siú 'a e ngaahi lea 'a e kau Nīfaí, pea 'e ma'u 'e he kau Nīfaí 'a e ngaahi lea 'a e kau Siú; pea 'e ma'u 'e he kau Nīfaí mo e kau Siú 'a e ngaahi lea 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga 'o 'Isileli kuo pulí; pea 'e ma'u 'e he ngaahi fa'ahinga 'o 'Isileli kuo pulí 'a e ngaahi lea 'a e kau Nīfaí mo e kau Siú.

14 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē ko hoku kakaí, 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, 'e tñnaki 'a kinautolu ki 'api ki he ngaahi fonua 'o honau tofi'á; pea 'e tñnaki fakataha foki 'a 'eku ngaahi lea ke taha pē. Pea te u fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a ia 'oku tau'i 'a 'eku leá pea mo hoku kakaí, 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, ko au ko e 'Otua, pea na'á ku fuakava mo 'Ēpalahame ke u manatu'i 'a hono hakó 'o ta'engata.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

2 Nīfai 30

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou fie lea kiate kimoutolu; he ko au, Nīfai, 'oku 'ikai te u fie tuku ke mou mahalo 'oku mou mā'oni'oni ange 'i he kau Senitailé. He vakai, kapau 'e 'ikai te mou tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá te mou 'auha foki mo kimoutolu kotoa pē; pea koe'uhi ko e ngaahi lea kuo lea 'akí 'oku 'ikai totonu ke mou mahalo 'e faka'auha 'o 'osi'osingamālie 'a e kau Senitailé.
- 2 He vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'o e kau Senitailé 'e fakatomalá 'oku nau hoko ko e kakai 'o e fuakava 'o e 'Eikí 'a kinautolu; pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'o e kau Siú 'e 'ikai fakatomalá 'e kapusi ki tu'a; he 'oku 'ikai fuakava 'a e 'Eikí mo ha taha kā ko kinautolu pē 'oku fakatomala mo tui ki hono 'Aló, 'a ia ko e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí.
- 3 Pea ko 'eni, 'oku ou fie kikite 'o ki'i lahi ange ki he kau Siú mo e kau Senitailé. He 'o ka hili 'a e hā mai 'a e tohi 'a ia kuó u lau ki aí, pea mo hono tohi ki he kau Senitailé, pea mo hono toe fakama'u ki he 'Eikí, 'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'e tui ki he ngaahi folofola kuo tohí; pea te nau 'oatu ia ki he toenga 'o hotau hakó.
- 4 Pea 'e toki 'ilo 'e he toenga 'o hotau hakó kiate kinautolu, mo e founga 'o 'etau ha'u mei Selūsalemá, pea ko kinautolú ko e hako 'o e kau Siú.
- 5 Pea ko e ongoongolelei 'o Sīsū Kalaisí 'e malanga 'aki 'i honau lotolotonga; ko ia, 'e fakafoki kiate kinautolu 'a e 'ilo ki he 'enau ngaahi tamaí, pea mo e 'ilo foki kia Sīsū Kalaisi, 'a ia na'e ma'u 'e he 'enau ngaahi tamaí.
- 6 Pea te nau toki fiefia; he te nau 'ilo ko ha tāpuaki ia kiate kinautolu mei he to'ukupu 'o e 'Otuá; pea 'e kamata ke mokulu 'a e ngaahi 'uno 'o e fakapo'ulí mei honau matá; pea 'e 'ikai 'osi atu ha ngaahi to'u tangata lahi 'iate kinautolu, kuo nau hoko ko ha kakai mā'a mo faka'ofo'ofa.
- 7 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē ko e kau Siu kuo fakamoveteveté 'e kamata foki ke nau tui kia Kalaisi; pea kamata ke nau fakataha mai ki he founga 'o e fonuá; pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'e tui kia Kalaisí te nau hoko foki ko ha kakai faka'ofo'ofa.

2 Nephi 30

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you; for I, Nephi, would not suffer that ye should suppose that ye are more righteous than the Gentiles shall be. For behold, except ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall all likewise perish; and because of the words which have been spoken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed.

For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the Gentiles. For after the book of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be written unto the Gentiles, and sealed up again unto the Lord, there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed.

And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and a delightful people.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightful people.

8 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e kamata 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a 'ene ngāué 'i he ngaahi pule'anga, mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga, mo e ngaahi lea, mo e kakai fulipē, ke fakahoko 'a hono fakafoki mai 'o hono kakai 'i he funga 'o e māmani.

9 Pea 'i he mā'oni'oni 'e fakamāu 'i 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a e masivá, pea valoki 'i ta'e-filifilimānako 'a e angamalū 'o e māmani. Pea te ne taa 'i 'a māmani 'aki 'a e me'a tā 'o hono fofongá; pea te ne tāmata 'i 'a e angakoví 'aki 'a e mānava 'o hono loungutú.

10 He 'e vave mai 'a e taimi 'e pule ai 'a e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ke hoko ha mavahevahe lahi 'i he vaha 'a 'o e kakai; pea te ne faka'auha 'a e kau fai angahalá; pea te ne fakahaofi 'a hono kakai; 'io, neongo pē kuo pau ke faka'auha 'a e kau fai angahalá 'aki 'a e afi.

11 Pea 'e hoko 'a e mā'oni'oni ko e nono'o 'o hono kongalotó, pea mo e tui faivelengá ko e nono'o 'o hono no'otanga-valá.

12 Pea 'e toki nofo fakataha 'a e ulofí mo e lamí; pea 'e tākoto fakataha 'a e lēpatí mo e 'uhiki 'i kosí, pea ko e 'uhiki 'i pulú, mo e laione muí, mo e pulu sisinó, fakataha; pea 'e tataki 'a kinautolu 'e ha tamasi 'i sí.

13 Pea 'e kai fakataha 'a e pulu fefiné mo e peá; pea tākoto fakataha 'a hona 'uhiki; pea 'e kai 'e he laioné 'a e kau 'i mohuku mōmoá 'o hangē ko e pulú.

14 Pea ko e tamasi 'i 'oku kei huhú te ne va'inga 'i he luo 'o e ngatá, pea ko e tamasi 'i kuo mavaé te ne 'ai 'a hono nimá ki he 'ana 'o e ngata fékaí.

15 'E 'ikai te nau fakamamahi 'i pe faka'auha 'i hono kotoa 'o hoku mo'unga toputapú; he 'e fonu 'a e māmani 'i he 'ilo 'o e 'Eiki 'o hangē ko hono fakafonu 'e he ngaahi vai 'a e tahí.

16 Ko ia, 'e fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'a 'o e ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē; 'io, 'e faka'ilo 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē ki he fānau 'a e tangatá.

17 'Oku 'ikai ha me'a 'oku lilo 'e ta'e-fakahā; 'oku 'ikai ha ngāue 'o e fakapo'ulí 'e ta'e-fakahā 'i he māamá; pea 'oku 'ikai ha me'a 'a ia kuo fakama'u 'i māmani 'e ta'evete.

18 Ko ia, ko e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'a ia kuo fakahā ki he fānau 'a e tangatá 'e fakahā 'i he 'aho ko iá; pea 'e 'ikai toe ma'u 'e Sētane ha mālohi ki he loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá 'i ha taimi fuoloa. Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou faka'osi 'a 'eku ngaahi leá.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.

And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.

Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made known; yea, all things shall be made known unto the children of men.

There is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed.

Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. And now, my beloved brethren, I make an end of my sayings.

2 Nīfai 3 I

- 1 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Nīfai, 'oku ou faka'osi 'a 'eku kikite kiate kimoutolú, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina. Pea 'oku ou tohi ha ngaahi me'a 'e ni'ihī pē, 'a ia 'oku ou 'ilo kuo pau ke hoko; pea ko e ngaahi me'a 'e ni'ihī pē foki 'oku ou tohi mei he ngaahi lea 'a hoku tokoua ko Sēkopé.
- 2 Ko ia, 'oku fe'unga kiate au 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuó u tohi, tuku kehe pē 'a e ngaahi lea 'e ni'ihī 'a ia kuo pau ke u lea 'aki 'o kau ki he tokāteline 'a Kalaisí; ko ia, te u lea mahino kiate kimoutolu 'o fakatatau ki hono mahinongofua 'o 'eku kikité.
- 3 He 'oku fiefia 'a hoku laumālié 'i he me'a mahinongofuá; he 'oku anga pehē 'a e ngāue 'a e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'i he fānau 'a e tangatá. He 'oku foaki 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a e maama ki he 'atamaí; he 'okú ne folofola ki he tangatá 'i he'enau leá, koe'uhi ke mahino kiate kinautolu.
- 4 Ko ia, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou manatu 'i kuó u lea kiate kimoutolu 'o kau ki he palōfita 'a ia na'e fakahā mai 'e he 'Eiki kiate au, te ne papitaiso 'a e Lami 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia te ne 'ave 'a e ngaahi angahala 'a māmaní.
- 5 Pea ko 'eni, kapau ko e Lami 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia 'oku mā'oni'oni, 'oku 'aonga ke papitaiso 'i he vaí, koe'uhi ke fakahoko 'a e mā'oni'oni kotoa pē, hono 'ikai 'aonga lahi ange kiate kitautolu 'oku ta'e-mā'oni'oni ke papitaiso, 'io, 'i he vaí!
- 6 Pea ko 'eni, 'oku ou fie fehū 'i kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, na'e fakahoko 'i he hā 'a e mā'oni'oni kotoa pē 'e he Lami 'a e 'Otuá 'i he papitaiso 'i he vaí?
- 7 'Ikai 'oku mou 'ilo na'e mā'oni'oni ia? Neongo 'a 'ene mā'oni'oni, ka 'okú ne fakahā ki he fānau 'a e tangata, 'okú ne fakavaivai 'i ia 'o fakatatau ki he kakanó 'i he 'ao 'o e Tamaí, pea 'okú ne fakahā ki he Tamaí te ne talangofua kiate ia 'i he tauhi 'ene ngaahi fekaú.
- 8 Ko ia, 'i he hili hono papitaiso 'aki 'a e vaí na'e maliu hifo 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni kiate ia 'i he tatau 'o ha lupe.

2 Nephi 3 I

And now I, Nephi, make an end of my prophesying unto you, my beloved brethren. And I cannot write but a few things, which I know must surely come to pass; neither can I write but a few of the words of my brother Jacob.

Wherefore, the things which I have written sufficeth me, save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ; wherefore, I shall speak unto you plainly, according to the plainness of my prophesying.

For my soul delighteth in plainness; for after this manner doth the Lord God work among the children of men. For the Lord God giveth light unto the understanding; for he speaketh unto men according to their language, unto their understanding.

Wherefore, I would that ye should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world.

And now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfil all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, yea, even by water!

And now, I would ask of you, my beloved brethren, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?

Know ye not that he was holy? But notwithstanding he being holy, he showeth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.

Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove.

- 9 Pea ko 'eni, 'oku fakahā ai ki he fānau 'a e tangatá 'a hono lausi' i 'o e halá mo hono fāsi' i 'o e matapā, 'a ia 'oku totonu ke nau hū aí, 'o ne fokotu' u ai 'a e fá'ifa'itaki' anga 'i honau 'aó.
- 10 Pea na'á ne folofola ki he fānau 'a e tangatá: Mou muimui 'iate au. Ko ia, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, te tau lava koā ke muimui 'ia Sīsū 'o kapau 'oku 'ikai te tau lotu ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e Tamaí?
- 11 Pea na'e folofola 'e he Tamaí: Mou fakatomala, mou fakatomala, pea papitaiso 'i he huafa 'o hoku 'Alo 'Ofa'angá.
- 12 Pea ko 'eni foki, na'e ongo mai 'a e le' o 'o e 'Aló kiate au, 'o folofola: Ko ia ia kuo papitaiso 'i hoku hingoá, 'e foaki kiate ia 'e he Tamaí 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'o hangē ko aú; ko ia, muimui 'iate au, pea fai 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuo mou mamata 'oku ou faí.
- 13 Ko ia, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou 'ilo kapau te mou muimui ki he 'Aló, 'i he lotu-fakamātoato mo'oni, 'o 'ikai fai 'i he mālualoí pe ha fakakākā 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, kā 'i he lotu-mo'oni, pea fakatomala mei ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, 'o fakapapau ki he Tamaí 'oku mou lotu-fiemālie ke to' o kiate kimoutolu 'a e huafa 'o Kalaisí, 'i he papitaiso—'io, 'i he muimui hifo 'i homou 'Eikí mo homou Fakamo'uí ki he lotu vaí, 'o fakatatau mo 'ene folofolá, vakai, te mou toki ma' u 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni; 'io, pea 'e toki hoko mai 'a e papitaiso 'aki 'a e afí pea mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni; pea te mou toki lava 'o lea 'aki 'a e lea 'a e kau 'āngeló, pea kalanga 'aki 'a e ngaahi fakafeta 'i ki he Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí.
- 14 Kae vakai, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, na'e ongo pehē mai 'a e le' o 'o e 'Aló kiate au, 'o folofola: Ka hili ho'omou fakatomala mei ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, mo fakamo'oni 'i ki he Tamaí 'oku mou fie tauhi 'a 'eku ngaahi fekaú, 'i he papitaiso 'i he vaí, pea ma' u 'a e papitaiso 'aki 'a e afí pea mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, pea mou lava 'o lea 'aki 'a e lea fo'ou, 'io, 'aki 'a e lea 'a e kau 'āngeló, pea hili 'eni kapau te mou faka'ikai 'i au, 'e lelei ange kiate kimoutolu 'o kapau na'e 'ikai te mou 'ilo 'i au.
- 15 Pea na'á ku fanongo ki ha le' o mei he Tamaí, na'e folofola: 'Io, 'oku mo'oni mo totonu 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a hoku 'Ofa'angá. Ko ia ia 'oku kātaki ki he ngata'angá, 'e fakamo'ui ia.

And again, it showeth unto the children of men the straitness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.

And he said unto the children of men: Follow thou me. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father?

And the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.

And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which ye have seen me do.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I know that if ye shall follow the Son, with full purpose of heart, acting no hypocrisy and no deception before God, but with real intent, repenting of your sins, witnessing unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ, by baptism—yea, by following your Lord and your Savior down into the water, according to his word, behold, then shall ye receive the Holy Ghost; yea, then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel.

But, behold, my beloved brethren, thus came the voice of the Son unto me, saying: After ye have repented of your sins, and witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water, and have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost, and can speak with a new tongue, yea, even with the tongue of angels, and after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that ye had not known me.

And I heard a voice from the Father, saying: Yea, the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.

- 16 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou 'ilo 'i 'i he me'á ni, kapau 'e 'ikai kātaki ha tangata ki he ngata'angá 'i he fa'ifa'itaki ki he sīpinga 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otua mo'uí, 'e 'ikai fakamo'ui ia.
- 17 Ko ia, fai 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuó u fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a ia na'á ku mamata 'e fai 'e homou 'Eiki mo homou Huhu'í; he ko hono 'uhinga 'eni kuo fakahā ai ia kiate aú, koe'uhi ke mou 'ilo 'i 'a e matapā 'oku totonu ke mou hū aí. He ko e matapā 'oku totonu ke mou hū aí ko e fakatomalá mo e papitaiso 'i he vaí; pea 'oku toki hoko ha fakamolemole 'i 'o ho'omou ngaahi angahalá 'i he afi mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni.
- 18 Pea 'oku mou tu'u ai 'i he hala fāsi'i mo lausi'i 'a ia 'oku fakatau ki he mo'ui ta'engatá; 'io, kuo mou hū 'i he matapaá; kuo mou fai 'o fakatau ki he ngaahi fekau 'a e Tamaí mo e 'Aló; pea kuo mou ma'u 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'a ia 'oku fakamo'oni'i 'a e Tamaí mo e 'Aló, 'o fakahoko ai 'a e tala'ofa kuó ne faí, kapau te mou hū 'i he matapaá te mou ma'u ia.
- 19 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'o ka hili ho'omou hū ki he hala fāsi'i mo lausi'i ko iá, 'oku ou fie fehu'i kiate kimoutolu kuo mou fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu: 'Ikai; he kuo 'ikai te mou a'usia ki he potu ko iá kā ne ta'e'oua 'a e folofola 'a Kalaisí mo e tui ta'e-faka'alo'alongaua kiate ia, 'o falala kakato ki he ngaahi lelei 'a'ana 'a ia 'okú ne māfima'fi ke fakamo'uí.
- 20 Ko ia, kuo pau ke mou vivili atu ki mu'a 'i he tui mālohi kia Kalaisi, pea ma'u 'a e 'amanaki 'oku mālohi haohaoa, mo ha 'ofa ki he 'Otua mo e kakai fulipē. Ko ia, kapau te mou vilitaki atu, pea keinanga 'i he folofola 'a Kalaisí, pea kātaki ki he ngata'angá, vakai, 'oku folofola 'e he Tamaí: Te mou ma'u 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá.
- 21 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, ko e halá 'eni; pea 'oku 'ikai ha hala pe ha hingoa kuo tuku mai 'i he lalo langí 'a ia 'e lava 'o fakamo'ui ai 'a e tangatá 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otua. Pea ko 'eni, vakai, ko e tokāteline 'eni 'a Kalaisí, pea ko e tokāteline mo'oni pē 'e taha ia 'a e Tamaí, pea mo e 'Aló, pea mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'a ia ko e 'Otua pē taha, 'oku 'ikai hano ngata'angá. 'Ēmeni.

And now, my beloved brethren, I know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter. For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost.

And then are ye in this strait and narrow path which leads to eternal life; yea, ye have entered in by the gate; ye have done according to the commandments of the Father and the Son; and ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive.

And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this strait and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life.

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

2 Nīfai 32

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou mahalo 'oku mou kei fifili 'i homou lotó 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'a 'oku totonu ke mou fai 'o ka 'osi 'a ho'omou hū 'i he halá. Kae vakai, ko e hā 'oku mou fifili ai ki he ngaahi me'a ni 'i homou lotó?
- 2 'Ikai 'oku mou manatu na'á ku pehē kiate kimoutolu 'o ka hili ho'omou ma'u 'a e Laumālie Mā'oní'oní te mou lava 'o lea 'aki 'a e lea 'a e kau 'āngeló? Pea ko 'eni, te mou lava fēfē 'o lea 'aki 'a e lea 'a e kau 'āngeló kae ngata pē 'i he Laumālie Mā'oní'oní?
- 3 'Oku lea 'a e kau 'āngeló 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oní'oní; ko ia, 'oku nau lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a Kalaisí. Ko ia, na'á ku pehē kiate kimoutolu, keinanga 'i he ngaahi folofola 'a Kalaisí; he vakai, 'e fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'e he ngaahi folofola 'a Kalaisí 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku totonu ke mou fai.
- 4 Ko ia, 'o ka 'osi 'a 'eku lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ní, kapau 'oku 'ikai mahino ia kiate kimoutolu 'oku tupu ia 'i he 'ikai te mou kolé, pea 'ikai foki te mou tukitukí; ko ia, 'oku 'ikai 'omi 'a kimoutolu ki he māmá, kā kuo pau ke mou mala'ia 'i he fakapo'ulí.
- 5 He vakai, 'oku ou toe pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau te mou hū 'i he halá, pea ma'u 'a e Laumālie Mā'oní'oní, te ne fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku totonu ke mou fai.
- 6 Vakai, ko e tokāteline 'eni 'a Kalaisí, pea 'e 'ikai tuku mai mo ha toe tokāteline kehe kae 'oua ke ne fakahā ia 'e ia kiate kimoutolu 'i he kakanó. Pea 'i he'ene fakahā ia 'e ia kiate kimoutolu 'i he kakanó, ko e ngaahi me'a te ne folofola 'aki kiate kimoutolú ke mou tokanga ke fai ia.
- 7 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Nīfai, 'oku 'ikai te u malava ke toe lea; 'oku ta'ofi 'e he Laumālié 'a 'eku leá, pea kuo tuku au ke u tangi koe'uhi ko e ta'etuí, mo e fai angahalá, mo e ta'é'iló, mo e kia-kekeva 'a e kakaí; he 'oku 'ikai te nau fie kumi ki he 'iló, pe 'ilo'i 'o e ngaahi 'ilo lahi, 'o ka foaki ia kiate kinautolu 'i he lea mahinongofua, 'io 'i he lea mahinongofua tahá.

2 Nephi 32

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, I suppose that ye ponder somewhat in your hearts concerning that which ye should do after ye have entered in by the way. But, behold, why do ye ponder these things in your hearts?

Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?

Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

Wherefore, now after I have spoken these words, if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not, neither do ye knock; wherefore, ye are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark.

For behold, again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do.

Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do.

And now I, Nephi, cannot say more; the Spirit stoppeth mine utterance, and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

- 8 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou 'ilo 'i 'oku mou kei fifili 'i homou lotó; pea 'oku fakamamahi kiate au koe'uhi ko e pau ke u lea ki he me'á ni. He kapau te mou tokanga ki he Laumālie 'a ia 'oku ako 'i ha tangata ke lotú, te mou 'ilo 'i 'oku pau ke mou lotu; he 'oku 'ikai ako 'i 'e he laumālie 'ulí ha tangata ke lotu, ka 'okú ne ako 'i ia kuo pau ke 'oua te ne lotu.
- 9 Kae vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kuo pau ke mou lotu ma' u ai pē, pea 'oua na' a fiu; pea kuo pau ke 'oua na' a mou fai ha me' a ma' á e 'Eiki kā 'i ho'omou tomu' a lotu ki he Tamai 'i he huafa 'o Kalaisí, koe'uhí ke ne fakatapui ho' o ngāué ma' au, pea koe'uhí ke 'aonga 'a ho' o ngāué ki ho laumālié.

And now, my beloved brethren, I perceive that ye ponder still in your hearts; and it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing. For if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray, ye would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray.

But behold, I say unto you that ye must pray always, and not faint; that ye must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he will consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be for the welfare of thy soul.

2 Nīfai 33

- 1 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Nīfai, 'oku 'ikai te u malava ke tohi 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'a ia na'e akonaki 'aki 'i hoku kakaí; pea 'oku 'ikai foki te u mālohi 'i he tohí, 'o hangē ko 'eku leá; he 'o ka lea ha tangata 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni'oku fakahū ia 'e he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni ki he loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá.
- 2 Kae vakai, 'oku 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'oku fakafefeka honau lotó ki he Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, pea 'oku 'ikai ma'u 'e ia ha nofo'anga 'iate kinautolu; ko ia, 'oku nau lí'aki ai 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi 'a ia kuo tohí, 'o lau ia ko e ngaahi me'a ta'e'aonga.
- 3 Kā ko au, Nīfai, kuó u tohi 'a ia kuó u tohí, pea 'oku ou pehē 'oku mahu'inga lahi ia, kae tautautefito ki hoku kakaí. He 'oku ou lotua ma'u ai pē 'a kinautolu 'i he 'aho; pea 'oku hanga 'e hoku lo'imatá 'o fakaviviku 'a hoku 'olungá 'i he pō, koe'uhi ko kinautolu; pea 'oku ou tangi ki hoku 'Otuá 'i he tui, pea 'oku ou 'ilo te ne fanongo ki he'eku tangí.
- 4 Pea 'oku ou 'ilo 'e fakatapui 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a 'eku ngaahi lotú ke 'aonga ki hoku kakaí. Pea ko e ngaahi lea kuó u tohi 'i he vaivaí 'e ngaohi ia ke mālohi ma'anautolu; he 'okú ne fakaloto 'i ai 'a kinautolu ke failelei; 'oku fakahā ai kiate kinautolu 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí; pea 'oku lea ia 'o kau kia Sīsū, pea 'oku fakaloto 'i ai 'a kinautolu ke nau tui kiate ia, pea kātaki ki he ngata'angá, 'a ia ko e mo'ui ta'engatá.
- 5 Pea 'oku valoki 'i mālohi ai 'a e angahalá, 'o fakatatau ki hono mahinongofua 'o e mo'oni; ko ia, 'e 'ikai 'ita ha tangata 'e taha ki he ngaahi lea 'a ia kuó u tohí, tuku kehe pē 'o kapau 'okú ne mo'ulaloo ki he laumālie 'o e tēvoló.
- 6 'Oku ou vīkiviki 'i he lea mahinongofuá; 'oku ou vīkiviki 'i he mo'oni; 'oku ou vīkiviki 'i hoku Sīsú, he kuó ne huhu 'i 'a hoku laumālié mei heli.
- 7 'Oku ou ma'u ha manava'ofa ki hoku kakaí, pea mo e tui lahi 'ia Kalaisi te u fetaulaki mo ha ngaahi laumālie tokolahi 'oku ta'e-hanau-'ila 'i hono nofo'anga fakamāú.
- 8 'Oku ou ma'u ha manava'ofa ki he Siú—'oku ou pehē ko e Siú, he ko 'eku 'uhinga ki he kakai ia na'á ku ha'u mei aí.

2 Nephi 33

And now I, Nephi, cannot write all the things which were taught among my people; neither am I mighty in writing, like unto speaking; for when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men.

But behold, there are many that harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit, that it hath no place in them; wherefore, they cast many things away which are written and esteem them as things of naught.

But I, Nephi, have written what I have written, and I esteem it as of great worth, and especially unto my people. For I pray continually for them by day, and mine eyes water my pillow by night, because of them; and I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry.

And I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the gain of my people. And the words which I have written in weakness will be made strong unto them; for it persuadeth them to do good; it maketh known unto them of their fathers; and it speaketh of Jesus, and persuadeth them to believe in him, and to endure to the end, which is life eternal.

And it speaketh harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the truth; wherefore, no man will be angry at the words which I have written save he shall be of the spirit of the devil.

I glory in plainness; I glory in truth; I glory in my Jesus, for he hath redeemed my soul from hell.

I have charity for my people, and great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat.

I have charity for the Jew—I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came.

- 9 'Oku ou ma'u foki mo ha manava'ofa ki he kau Senitailé. Kae vakai, 'oku 'ikai ha taha 'iate kinautolu ní te u ma'u ha 'amanaki lelei ki ai, kae 'oua kuo nau fakalelei kia Kalaisi, pea hū 'i he matapā lausi'í, pea 'a'eva 'i he hala fāsi'í ko ia 'oku fakatau ki he mo'uí, pea fai atu 'i he halá 'o a'u ki he ngata'anga 'o e 'aho 'o e sivi'í.
- 10 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, pea mo e Siú foki, pea mo kinautolu kotoa 'a e ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e māmaní, tokanga ki he ngaahi folofolá ni pea tui kia Kalaisi; pea kapau 'oku 'ikai te mou tui ki he ngaahi folofola ní tui pē kia Kalaisi. Pea kapau 'oku mou tui kia Kalaisi te mou tui ki he ngaahi folofolá ni, he ko e ngaahi folofola ia 'a Kalaisi, pea kuó ne tuku ia kiate au; pea 'oku nau akonaki'í 'a e kakai fulipē 'oku totonu ke nau faillelei.
- 11 Pea kapau 'oku 'ikai ko e ngaahi folofola ia 'a Kalaisi, fakamāu'í ia 'e kimoutolu—he 'e fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'e Kalaisi, 'i he mālohi mo e nāunau lahi, 'i he 'aho faka'osí ko 'ene ngaahi folofola ia; pea te ta tutu'u 'o fehanganagai 'i hono fakamaau'angá; pea te mou 'ilo'í kuó ne fekau kiate au ke u tohi 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, neongo hoku ngaahi vaivaí.
- 12 Pea 'oku ou lotu ki he Tamaí 'i he huafa 'o Kalaisí koe'uhi ke 'i ai hatau tokolahi, pe ko kitautolu kotoa pē, 'e lava 'o fakamo'ui 'i hono pule'angá 'i he fu'u 'aho lahi mo faka'osi ko iá.
- 13 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, pea mo kimoutolu kotoa 'a e ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e māmaní, 'oku ou lea kiate kimoutolu 'o hangē ko e le'ó 'o ha tokotaha 'oku tangi kiate kimoutolu mei he efú: Mou nofo ā kae 'oua ke hokosia 'a e 'aho lahi ko iá.
- 14 Pea ko kimoutolu 'oku 'ikai loto ke 'inasi 'i he angalelei 'a e 'Otuá, pea faka'apa'apa ki he ngaahi lea 'a e kau Siú, pea pehē foki mo 'eku ngaahi leá, pea mo e folofola 'a ia 'e 'alu atu mei he fofonga 'o e Lami 'a e 'Otuá, vakai, 'oku ou fai kiate kimoutolu ha lea fakamāvae ta'engata, koe'uhi 'e fakahalaia 'i 'e he ngaahi folofolá ni 'a kimoutolu 'i he 'aho faka'osí.
- 15 He ko ia ia kuó u fakama'u 'i māmaní, 'e 'omi ia ke talatalaaki 'i 'aki 'a kimoutolu 'i he fakamaau'angá; he kuo fekau 'i pehe 'i au 'e he 'Eikí, pea kuo pau ke u talangofua. 'Ēmeni.

I also have charity for the Gentiles. But behold, for none of these can I hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ, and enter into the narrow gate, and walk in the strait path which leads to life, and continue in the path until the end of the day of probation.

And now, my beloved brethren, and also Jew, and all ye ends of the earth, hearken unto these words and believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ. And if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words, for they are the words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me; and they teach all men that they should do good.

And if they are not the words of Christ, judge ye—for Christ will show unto you, with power and great glory, that they are his words, at the last day; and you and I shall stand face to face before his bar; and ye shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these things, notwithstanding my weakness.

And I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at that great and last day.

And now, my beloved brethren, all those who are of the house of Israel, and all ye ends of the earth, I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust: Farewell until that great day shall come.

And you that will not partake of the goodness of God, and respect the words of the Jews, and also my words, and the words which shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the Lamb of God, behold, I bid you an everlasting farewell, for these words shall condemn you at the last day.

For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against you at the judgment bar; for thus hath the Lord commanded me, and I must obey. Amen.

Ko e Tohi ‘a Sēkopé

ko e Tokoua ‘o Nīfaí

Ko e ngaahi lea ‘o ‘ene malanga ki hono kāingá. ‘Okú ne lava ‘i ha fakakikibi mo ha tangata ‘a ia na ‘e feinga ke ta ‘ofi ‘a e ngaahi tokāteline ‘a Kalaisí. Ko ha ngaahi lea ‘e ní ‘ibi ‘oku kau ki he hisitōlia ‘o e kakai ‘o Nīfaí.

Sēkope 1

- 1 He vakai, na ‘e hoko ‘o pehē kuo ‘osi atu ‘a e ta ‘u ‘e nimangofulu mā nima mei he taimi na ‘e ‘alu ai ‘a Līhai mei Selūsalemá; ko ia, na ‘e fai ‘e Nīfaí kiate au, Sēkope, ha fekau ‘o kau ki he ngaahi peleti iiki, ‘a ia kuo tohi ai ‘a e ngaahi me ‘a ko ‘ení.
- 2 Pea na ‘á ne tuku kiate au, Sēkope, ha fekau ke u tohi ki he ngaahi peletí ni ha ní ‘ihi ‘o e ngaahi me ‘a ‘oku ou pehē ‘oku mahu ‘inga tahá; pea ke ‘oua na ‘á ku ala ki ai, ka ko ha fakamatala nounou pē, ‘o kau ki he hisitōlia ‘o e kakai ni, ‘a ia ‘oku ui ko e kakai ‘o Nīfaí.
- 3 He na ‘á ne pehē ‘oku totonu ke tohi ‘a e hisitōlia ‘o hono kakai ‘i he ‘ene ngaahi peleti kehé, pea ‘oku totonu ke u tauhi fakatolonga ‘a e ngaahi peletí ni, pea tukufakaholo ia ‘i hoku hakó, mei he to ‘u tangata ki he to ‘u tangata.
- 4 Pea kapau na ‘e ‘i ai ha malanga ‘oku toputapu, pe ha fakahā ‘oku mahu ‘inga lahi, pe ha kikite, ‘oku totonu ke u tohi ‘a e ngaahi me ‘a ‘oku mahu ‘inga tahá ‘i he ngaahi peletí ni, pea tohi ki ai ‘a e ngaahi me ‘a kotoa pē te u ala tohi ‘o kau ki ai, koe ‘uhi ko Kalaisi, pea koe ‘uhi ke ‘aonga ki homau kakai.
- 5 Pea ko e me ‘a ‘i he tuí mo e fu ‘u loto-tokanga lahi, kuo fakahā mo ‘oni mai kiate kimautilu ‘o kau ki homau kakai, ‘a e ngaahi me ‘a ‘e hoko kiate kinautilu.
- 6 Pea na ‘a mau ma ‘u foki ha ngaahi fakahā lahi, pea mo e laumālie ‘o e kikite lahi; ko ia, na ‘a mau ‘ilo ai kia Kalaisi mo hono pule ‘anga, ‘a ia ‘e hoko maí.

The Book of Jacob

the Brother of Nephi

The words of his preaching unto his brethren. He foundeth a man who seeketh to overthrow the doctrine of Christ. A few words concerning the history of the people of Nephi.

Jacob 1

For behold, it came to pass that fifty and five years had passed away from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious; that I should not touch, save it were lightly, concerning the history of this people which are called the people of Nephi.

For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other plates, and that I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

And if there were preaching which was sacred, or revelation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates, and touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ’s sake, and for the sake of our people.

For because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them.

And we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; wherefore, we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come.

7 Ko ia na'a mau ngāue faivelenga 'i he lotolotonga 'o homau kakaí ke mau lava 'o fakaloto'i 'a kinautolu ke nau ha'u kia Kalaisi, 'o ma'u 'a e angalelei 'a e 'Otuá, koe'uhí ke nau lava 'o hū ki hono mālōlō'angá, koe'uhí ke 'oua na'a 'i ai ha 'uhinga te ne fuakava ai 'i hono houhaú 'e 'ikai te nau hū ki ai, 'o hangē ko ia na'e hoko 'i he fakatupu-houhau 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o e 'ahi'ahí lolotonga 'a e 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'a e fānau 'o 'Isilelí.

8 Ko ia, 'oku mau faka'amu ki he 'Otuá na'a mau lava 'o fakaloto'i 'a e kakai fulipē ke 'oua na'a nau angatu'u ki he 'Otuá, ke fakatupu 'ene houhaú, kae tui 'a e kakai fulipē kia Kalaisi, 'o fakakaukau lahi ki he'ene pekiá, pea fua hono kolosí pea kātaki'i 'a e manuki 'a māmaní; ko ia, ko au, Sēkope, 'oku ou tali ke u fakahoko 'a e fekau 'a hoku tokoua ko Nīfai.

9 Ko 'eni na'e faka'au 'o motu'a 'a Nīfai, pea na'á ne 'ilo'i kuo pau ke vave 'a 'ene mate; ko ia, na'á ne pani ai ha tangata ke hoko ko ha tu'i mo ha pule ki hono kakaí he taimi ko iá, 'o fakatatau ki he pule 'a e ngaahi tu'í.

10 Ko e me'a 'i he 'ofa lahi 'aupito 'a e kakaí kia Nīfai, koe'uhi kuó ne hoko ko ha malu'i lahi 'o kinautolu, 'i he'ene ngāue 'aki 'a e heletā 'a Lēpaní ke malu'i 'a kinautolu, pea kuó ne ngāue 'i hono ngaahi 'ahó kotoa koe'uhi ko 'enau leleí—

11 Ko ia, na'e loto ai 'a e kakaí ke nau manatu'i ma'u pē hono hingoá. Pea 'ilonga ia 'e pule 'o fetongi iá, na'e ui 'e he kakaí ko Nīfai hono ua, ko Nīfai hono tolu, 'o fai pehē atu, 'o fakatatau ki he pule 'a e ngaahi tu'í; pea ko ia na'e pehē hono ui kinautolu 'e he kakaí, 'o tatau ai pē pe ko hai honau hingoá.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pekia 'a Nīfai.

13 Ko 'eni ko e kakai 'a ia na'e 'ikai ko e kau Leimaná ko e kau Nīfai 'a kinautolu; ka neongo iá, na'e ui 'a kinautolu ko e kau Nīfai, ko e kau Sēkope, ko e kau Siosefa, ko e kau Sōlami, ko e kau Leimana, ko e kau Lēmiuela mo e kau 'Isimeli.

14 Ka ko au, Sēkope, 'e 'ikai te u fakafaikehekehe 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi hingoa ko 'ení'amui, kā te u ui 'a kinautolu ko e kau Leimana 'oku feinga ke faka'auha 'a e kakai 'o Nīfai, pea ko kinautolu 'oku fe'ofó'ofani mo Nīfai te u ui ko e kau Nīfai, pe ko e kakai 'o Nīfai, 'o fakatatau ki he pule 'a e ngaahi tu'í.

Wherefore we labored diligently among our people, that we might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should swear in his wrath they should not enter in, as in the provocation in the days of temptation while the children of Israel were in the wilderness.

Wherefore, we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God, to provoke him to anger, but that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world; wherefore, I, Jacob, take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my brother Nephi.

Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings.

The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence, and having labored in all his days for their welfare—

Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reigns of the kings; and thus they were called by the people, let them be of whatever name they would.

And it came to pass that Nephi died.

Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

But I, Jacob, shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them Lamanites that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings.

15 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e kakai 'o Nīfaí, lolotonga 'a e pule 'a e tu 'i hono uá, na'e faka'au 'o fefeka 'a honau lotó, pea nau fiefia 'i hono fai 'o e ngaahi me'a fakalielia, 'o hangē ko Tēvita 'i mu'á 'o holi ke ma'u ha ngaahi uaifi mo e ngaahi sinifu tokolahi, kae 'uma 'ā foki mo Solomone, ko hono fohá.

16 'Io, na'e kamata foki ke nau kumi ki he koula mo e siliva lahi, pea kamata ke fiela 'i he loto-híkisiá.

17 Ko ia ko au, Sēkope, na'á ku fai kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi leá ni 'i he'eku akonaki 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he temipalé, kā kuó u tomu'a ma'u 'eku fekau mei he 'Eikí.

18 Ka ko au, Sēkope, mo hoku tokoua ko Siosefá, kuo fakatapui 'a kimaua ko e ongo taula'eiki mo e ongo akonaki ki he kakaí ni, 'i he nima 'o Nīfaí.

19 Pea na'á ma tauhi faivelenga 'a homa lakangá ki he 'Eikí, 'o ma tali 'a e fatongiá, 'o to'o 'a e ngaahi angahala 'a e kakaí ki homa 'ulú 'o kapau na'e 'ikai te ma ako 'i kiate kinautolu 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i he faivelenga kakato; ko ia, 'i he'ema ngāue 'aki homa tūkuingatá 'e 'ikai hoko ki homa ngaahi kofú 'a honau totó; pea ka 'ikai 'e hoko ki homa ngaahi kofú 'a honau totó; pea 'e 'ikai te ma ta'ehalaia 'i he 'aho faka'osí.

And now it came to pass that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son.

Yea, and they also began to search much gold and silver, and began to be lifted up somewhat in pride.

Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.

For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been consecrated priests and teachers of this people, by the hand of Nephi.

And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all diligence; wherefore, by laboring with our might their blood might not come upon our garments; otherwise their blood would come upon our garments, and we would not be found spotless at the last day.

Sēkope 2

- 1 Ko e ngaahi lea na'e lea 'aki 'e Sēkope, ko e tokoua 'o Nīfái, ki he kakai 'o Nīfái 'i he hili 'a e pekia 'a Nīfái:
- 2 Ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, ko au, Sēkope, ko e me'a 'i he fatongia kuo tuku kiate au 'e he 'Otuá, pea koe'uhi ke u tauhi faivelenga hoku lakanga 'i he fakamātoato, pea koe'uhi ke u fakama'a hoku ngaahi kofú mei ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, ko ia 'oku ou ha'u ai ki he tempalé 'i he 'ahó ni ke u lava 'o fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá.
- 3 Pea ke mou 'ilo 'e kimoutolu kuó u faivelenga 'o a'u mai ki he 'ahó ni 'i he ngāue 'i 'a e lakanga 'o hoku fatongiá; ka 'i he 'aho ní 'oku ou mafasia lahi ange 'i he holi mo e hoha'a koe'uhi ko e lelei 'a homou laumālié 'i he 'eku loto-mo'ua ki mu'a ange 'i he 'aho ní.
- 4 He vakai, kuo mou talangofua 'o a'u mai ki he 'ahó ni ki he folofola 'a e 'Eiki, 'a ia kuó u fakahā kiate kimoutolú.
- 5 Kae vakai, mou tokanga mai kiate au, pea 'ilo 'i 'oku ou lava 'o fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'i he tokoni 'a e Tupu'anga fungani māfima'fi 'o e langí mo e māmaní 'o kau ki ho'omou ngaahi fakakaukaú, 'a e anga 'o ho'omou lolotonga kamata ke ngāue 'i he angahalá, 'a ia ko e angahala 'oku hā ngali fakalielia 'aupito kiate au, 'io, pea fakalielia ki he 'Otuá.
- 6 'Io, 'okú ne fakamamahi 'i 'a hoku laumālié pea 'oku fakatupu 'a 'eku hola 'i he 'eku mā mei he 'ao 'o hoku Tupu'angá, koe'uhi kuo pau ke u fakamo'oni 'i kiate kimoutolu 'a e fai angahala 'o homou lotó.
- 7 Pea 'oku fakamamahi foki kiate au 'a e pau ke u fai ha lea fefeka pehē 'o kau kiate kimoutolu 'i he 'ao 'o homou ngaahi uaifí mo ho'omou fānaú, 'a ia ko hanau tokolahí 'oku fu'u ongongofua mo ma'a mo pelepelengesi 'aupito 'a honau lotó 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, 'a ia ko ha me'a 'oku fakahōifua ki he 'Otuá;
- 8 Pea 'oku ou mahalo kuo nau ha'u ki hení ke fanongo ki he folofola fakafiemālie 'a e 'Otuá, 'io, 'a e folofola ko ia 'oku fakamo'ui 'a e laumālie kuo kafó.

Jacob 2

The words which Jacob, the brother of Nephi, spake unto the people of Nephi, after the death of Nephi:

Now, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, according to the responsibility which I am under to God, to magnify mine office with soberness, and that I might rid my garments of your sins, I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God.

And ye yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling; but I this day am weighed down with much more desire and anxiety for the welfare of your souls than I have hitherto been.

For behold, as yet, ye have been obedient unto the word of the Lord, which I have given unto you.

But behold, hearken ye unto me, and know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts, how that ye are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeareth very abominable unto me, yea, and abominable unto God.

Yea, it grieveth my soul and causeth me to shrink with shame before the presence of my Maker, that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts.

And also it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children, many of whose feelings are exceedingly tender and chaste and delicate before God, which thing is pleasing unto God;

And it supposeth me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God, yea, the word which healeth the wounded soul.

9 Ko ia, 'oku fakamafasia 'i 'a hoku laumālié 'i hono fekau 'i au, koe'uhi ko e fekau mamafa 'a ia kuó u ma'u mei he 'Otuá, ke u na'ina 'i kiate kimoutolu 'o fakatatau ki ho'omou ngaahi hiá, ke fakalahi 'a e kafo 'o kinautolu kuo 'osi kafó, kae 'ikai fakafiemālie 'i mo fakamo'ui 'a honau ngaahi kafó; pea ko kinautolu 'oku te'eki ai ke kafó, 'oku 'ikai te nau keinanga 'i he folofola fakafiemālie 'a e 'Otuá, ka 'oku tuku ha ngaahi hele fufū ke hoka 'i honau laumālié pea kafo ai honau 'atamai pelepelengesí.

10 Ka neongo hono lahi 'o e fatongiá, kuo pau pē ke u fai 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi fekau mamafa 'a e 'Otuá, pea fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'o kau ki ho'omou fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá, 'i he 'ao 'o e kakai 'oku loto-ma'á, mo e kakai 'oku loto-mafesifesi, pea 'i he 'afio mai 'a e fofonga 'ilo'ilo 'o e 'Otua Māfima'í.

11 Ko ia, kuo pau ke u fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e mo'oní 'o fakatatau ki hono mahinongofua 'o e folofola 'a e 'Otuá. He vakai, 'i he'eku fehu 'i ki he 'Eikí, na'e hoko mai kiate au 'a e folofola, 'o pehē: 'E Sēkope, ke ke 'alu hake ki he temipalé 'apongipongi, pea fakahā 'a e folofola 'a ia te u tuku kiate koé ki he kakaí ni.

12 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, ko e folofola 'eni 'a ia 'oku ou fakahā kiate kimoutolú, 'oku 'i ai homou tokolahi kuo kamata ke kumi ki he koula mo e siliva, pea ki he ngaahi fa'ahinga maka mahu'inga kotoa pē, 'a ia 'oku hulu 'aupito 'i he fonuá ni, 'a ia ko ha fonua 'o e tala'ofa kiate kimoutolu mo homou hakó.

13 Pea kuo hōifua 'a e to'ukupu 'o e māfima'í 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito kiate kimoutolu, pea kuo mou ma'u ai 'a e ngaahi koloa lahi; pea ko e tupu 'i he ma'u 'e homou ni'ihí 'o lahi hake 'i homou kāingá, kuo hikisia ai homou lotó, pea mou kia-kekeva mo 'ulu mā'olunga, koe'uhi ko hono mahu'inga lahi 'o homou kofú, pea mou fakatanga 'i 'a homou kāingá koe'uhi 'oku mou mahalo 'oku mou lelei ange 'iate kinautolu.

14 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku mou mahalo koā 'oku fakatonuhia 'i 'a kimoutolu 'e he 'Otuá 'i he me'á ni? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai. Ka 'okú ne fakahalaia 'i 'a kimoutolu, pea kapau te mou vilitaki 'i he ngaahi me'á ni, kuo pau ke hoko vave mai 'a 'ene ngaahi tauteá kiate kinautolu.

Wherefore, it burdeneth my soul that I should be constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God, to admonish you according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those who are already wounded, instead of consoling and healing their wounds; and those who have not been wounded, instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls and wound their delicate minds.

But, notwithstanding the greatness of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, and tell you concerning your wickedness and abominations, in the presence of the pure in heart, and the broken heart, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

Wherefore, I must tell you the truth according to the plainness of the word of God. For behold, as I inquired of the Lord, thus came the word unto me, saying: Jacob, get thou up into the temple on the morrow, and declare the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they.

And now, my brethren, do ye suppose that God justifieth you in this thing? Behold, I say unto you, Nay. But he condemneth you, and if ye persist in these things his judgments must speedily come unto you.

15 Taumaiā ke ne fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'okú ne lava 'o 'afio 'i kimoutolu, pea 'okú ne mafai 'i he 'afio tu 'o taha pē 'a hono fofongá ke taa 'i hifo 'a kimoutolu ki he efú!

16 Taumaiā ke ne faka'atā 'a kimoutolu mei he angahalá mo e fakalieliá ni. Pea, 'ofa ke mou fanongo ki he folofola 'o 'ene ngaahi fekaú, pea 'oua na 'a tuku ke hanga 'e he loto-híkisiá ni 'a homou lotó 'o faka'auha 'a homou laumálié!

17 Fakakaukau ki homou kāingá 'o hangē pē ko kimoutolú, pea angalelei ki he kakai kotoa pē pea foaki fie foaki mei ho'omou koloá, koe'uhi ke nau koloa'ia 'o tatau pē mo kimoutolu.

18 Kā 'i he te'eki ai ke mou kumi ki he ngaahi koloá, mou kumi ki he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá.

19 Pea 'o ka hili 'a ho'omou ma'u ha 'amanaki lelei 'ia Kalaisí te mou ma'u 'a e ngaahi koloa, 'o kapau te mou kumi ki ai; pea te mou kumi ki ai koe'uhi ko ho'omou fie fai ha lelei—ke fakakofu 'i 'a e telefuá, pea fafanga 'i 'a e fiekaíá, pea fakatau 'atāina 'i 'a e pōpulá, pea foaki 'a e fiamālie ki he kau mahaki mo mamahí.

20 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, kuó u lea kiate kimoutolu 'o kau ki he híkisiá; pea ko kimoutolu kuo mou fakamamahí 'i 'a homou kaungá'apí, pea fakatanga 'i ia koe'uhi ko ho'omou pōlepole 'i homou lotó, 'i he ngaahi me'a kuo foaki 'e he 'Otuá kiate kimoutolú, ko e hā ha'amou lau ki aí?

21 'Ikai 'oku mou pehē 'oku fakalielia 'a e ngaahi me'a peheé kiate ia na 'á ne fakatupu 'a e kakano kotoa pē? Pea 'oku mahu'inga tatau 'a e tokotaha kotoa pē 'i hono 'aó 'o hangē ko e taha kehé. Pea na 'e tupu 'a e kakano kotoa pē mei he efú; pea kuó ne fakatupu 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko e 'uhinga pē taha, koe'uhi ke nau tauhi 'a 'ene ngaahi fekaú pea fakaongoongolelei 'i ia 'o ta'engata.

22 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou faka'osi 'eku lea kiate kimoutolu 'o kau ki he híkisiá ni. Pea ka ne 'ikai totonu ke u lea kiate kimoutolu 'o kau ki ha hia 'oku fakalielia ange, pehē 'e fu 'u fiefia 'aupito 'a hoku lotó koe'uhi ko kimoutolu.

O that he would show you that he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eye he can smite you to the dust!

O that he would rid you from this iniquity and abomination. And, O that ye would listen unto the word of his commands, and let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls!

Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, and be familiar with all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto you.

But before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.

And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them for the intent to do good—to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say ye of it?

Do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.

And now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride. And were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime, my heart would rejoice exceedingly because of you.

23 Ka 'oku fakamafasia 'i au 'e he folofola 'a e 'Otuá koe'uhi ko ho'omou ngaahi hia 'oku fakalielia angé. He vakai, 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí: 'Oku kamata ke fai 'e he kakaí ni ha ngaahi angahala lahi ange; 'oku 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi folofolá, he 'oku nau feinga ke fakatonuhia 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he'enu fe'auakí, tu'unga 'i he ngaahi me'a na'e tohi 'o kau kia Tēvita mo Solomone, ko hono fohá.

24 Vakai, ko e mo'oni na'e ma'u 'e Tēvita mo Solomone 'a e ngaahi uaifi mo e ngaahi sinifu tokolahi, 'a ia ko ha me'a na'e fakalielia 'i hoku 'aó, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí.

25 Ko ia, 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí, kuó u tataki atu 'a e kakaí ni mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá 'i he mālohi 'o hoku nimá, koe'uhi ke u fokotu'u kiate au ha va'a mā'oni'oni mei he hako 'o e manava 'o Siosefá.

26 Ko ia, ko au ko e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'e 'ikai te u tuku ke fai 'e he kakaí ni 'o tatau mo kinautolu 'o e kuonga mu'á.

27 Ko ia, 'e hoku kāinga, fanongo mai kiate au, pea tokanga ki he folofola 'a e 'Eikí: Koe'uhi 'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha tangata 'e toko taha 'iate kimoutolu te ne ma'u ka ko e uaifi pē 'e toko taha; pea 'e 'ikai te ne ma'u ha sinifu 'e toko taha;

28 He ko au, ko e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá, 'oku ou fiefia 'i he angama'a 'a e kakai fefine. Pea ko e me'a fakalielia 'i hoku 'aó 'a e ngaahi fe'auakí; 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.

29 Ko ia, 'e tauhi 'e he kakaí ni 'a 'eku ngaahi fekau, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, pe te u fakamala'ia 'i 'a e fonuá koe'uhi ko kinautolu.

30 He kapau te u loto ki ai, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, ke fakatupu ha hako kiate au, te u fekau ki hoku kakaí; he ka 'ikai kuo pau ke nau tokanga ki he fekau ko 'ení.

31 He vakai, ko au, ko e 'Eikí, kuó u mamata ki he mamahí, peá u ongo 'i 'a e tangi 'a e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o hoku kakai 'i he fonua ko Selūsalemá, 'io, pea 'i he ngaahi fonua kotoa pē 'o hoku kakaí, koe'uhi ko e fai angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia 'a honau ngaahi husepānití.

But the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes. For behold, thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.

Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.

Wherefore, thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.

Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.

Wherefore, my brethren, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none;

For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women. And whoredoms are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.

Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.

For if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will command my people; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things.

For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations of their husbands.

32 Pea 'e 'ikai te u tuku, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, ke a'u hake kiate au 'a e ngaahi tangi 'a e ngaahi 'ofefine hoihoifua 'o e kakai ní, 'a ia kuó u taki atu mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, 'o talatalaaki 'i 'a e kau tangata 'o hoku kakai, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.

33 Koe'uhi 'e 'ikai te nau taki fakapōpula 'i atu 'a e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o hoku kakai 'i he fai angahalá koe'uhi ko e ongongofua honau lotó, kā te u 'a'ahi kiate kinautolu 'aki ha tautea mamafa, 'io, 'o a'u ki he faka'auha; koe'uhi 'e 'ikai te nau fai 'a e ngaahi fé'auaki, 'o hangē ko kinautolu 'o e kuonga mu'á, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.

34 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku mou 'ilo na'e tuku 'a e ngaahi fekaú ni ki he'etau tamai, ko Lihai; ko ia, kuo mou 'ilo 'i ia 'i mu'a; pea kuo mou fakahalaia 'i lahi ai 'a kimoutolu; he kuo mou fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'a ia na'e 'ikai totonu ke mou fai.

35 Vakai, kuo mou fai ha ngaahi fu'u angahala lalahi ange 'i he kau Leimana, ko hotau kāingá. Kuo mou fakatupu ha mamahi lahi 'i he loto 'o homou ngaahi uaifi ongongofuá, pea kuo mole 'iate kimoutolu 'a e falala 'a ho'omou fānaú, ko e tupu 'i ho'omou ngaahi sīpinga kovi 'i honau 'aó; pea 'oku 'alu hake ki he 'Otuá 'a e tangi 'a honau lotó ke talatalaaki 'i 'a kimoutolu. Pea ko e me'a 'i hono fefeka 'o e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia 'oku 'alu hifo ke talatalaaki 'i 'a kimoutolú, kuo mate ai 'a e loto 'o e tokolahi kuo hoka 'i 'aki 'a e ngaahi fu'u lavea lalahi.

And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem, shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because of their tenderness, save I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto destruction; for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of old, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And now behold, my brethren, ye know that these commandments were given to our father, Lehi; wherefore, ye have known them before; and ye have come unto great condemnation; for ye have done these things which ye ought not to have done.

Behold, ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our brethren. Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you. And because of the strictness of the word of God, which cometh down against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds.

Sēkope 3

- 1 Kae vakai, ko au, Sēkope, 'oku ou fie lea kiate kimoutolu 'oku loto-ma'á. Sio ki he 'Otuá 'i he 'atamai 'oku tu'u ma'u, pea lotu kiate ia 'i he fu'u tui lahi, pea te ne fakafiemālie 'i 'a kimoutolu 'i homou ngaahi faingata 'a iá, pea te ne taukapo 'i 'a kimoutolu, 'o fekau hifo 'a e tautea kiate kinautolu 'oku feinga ke faka'auha 'a kimoutolú.
- 2 'Oiauē 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē 'oku loto-ma'á, hiki hake homou 'ulú, pea tali 'a e folofola fakafiemālie 'a e 'Otuá, pea keinanga 'i he 'ene 'ofá; he te mou lava 'o fai ia, 'o kapau 'e tu'u ma'u 'a homou 'atamai 'o ta'engata.
- 3 Kā, 'e mala'ia, 'e mala'ia, 'a kimoutolu 'oku 'ikai loto-ma'á, 'a kimoutolu 'oku 'uli he 'ahó ni 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá; he ka 'ikai te mou fakatomala, 'oku fakamala'ia 'i 'a e fonuá koe'uhi ko kimoutolu; pea ko e kau Leimaná, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai te nau 'ulí 'o hangē ko kimoutolú, ka neongo iá na'e fakamala'ia 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki ha tautea mamafa, te nau fakamamahí 'i 'a kimoutolu 'o a'u ki he faka'auha.
- 4 Pea 'oku ha'u vave 'a e taimi, kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala te nau ma'u 'a e fonua 'o homou tofi'á, pea 'e hanga 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'o tatakí atu 'a e kau mā'oni'oni meiate kimoutolu.
- 5 Vakai, ko e kau Leimana ko homou kāingá, 'a ia 'oku mou fehi'a ki ai koe'uhi ko 'enau 'ulí mo e fakamala'ia kuo hoko ki honau kilí, 'oku nau mā'oni'oni ange 'iate kimoutolu; he kuo 'ikai ngalo 'iate kinautolu 'a e fekau 'a e 'Eikí, 'a ia na'e tuku ki he 'etau tamaí—pea ke nau ma'u ha uaifi 'e toko taha pē, pea ke 'oua na'a nau ma'u ha sinifu 'e toko taha, pea ke 'oua na'a nau fai ha fe'auakí 'iate kinautolu.
- 6 Pea ko 'eni, ko e fekaú ni 'oku nau tokanga ke tauhi ko ia, ko e me'a 'i he tokanga ko iá, 'o tauhi 'a e fekau ní, 'e 'ikai faka'auha 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá, ka te ne 'alo'ofa kiate kinautolu; pea 'e 'i ai 'a e 'aho te nau hoko ai ko ha kakai monū'ia.

Jacob 3

But behold, I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart. Look unto God with firmness of mind, and pray unto him with exceeding faith, and he will console you in your afflictions, and he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction.

O all ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for ye may, if your minds are firm, forever.

But, wo, wo, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filthy this day before God; for except ye repent the land is cursed for your sakes; and the Lamanites, which are not filthy like unto you, nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing, shall scourge you even unto destruction.

And the time speedily cometh, that except ye repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance, and the Lord God will lead away the righteous out from among you.

Behold, the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our father—that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none, and there should not be whoredoms committed among them.

And now, this commandment they observe to keep; wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them; and one day they shall become a blessed people.

7 Vakai, 'oku 'ofa 'a honau ngaahi husepānití 'i honau ngaahi uaifí, pea 'oku 'ofa 'a honau ngaahi uaifí 'i honau ngaahi husepānití; pea 'oku 'ofa 'a honau ngaahi husepānití mo honau ngaahi uaifí 'i he 'enau fānaú; pea 'oku tupu 'a 'enau ta'etuí mo 'enau fehi 'a 'iate kimoutolú mei he fai angahala 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí; ko ia, 'oku fēfē 'a hono lahi ange ho 'omou lelei 'iate kinautolu, 'i he 'ao 'o homou Tupu'anga māfimaí?

8 'Oiauē 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku ou manavahē telia na 'a 'ikai te mou fakatomala mei ho 'omou ngaahi angahalá pea hinehina ange 'a honau kilí 'i homou kilí, 'o ka 'omi 'a kimoutolu fakataha mo kinautolu ki he 'afio'anga 'o e 'Otuá.

9 Ko ia, 'oku ou tuku ha fekau kiate kimoutolu, 'a ia ko e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, ke tuku ho 'omou angatu'u kiate kinautolu koe'uhi ko e lanu fakapo'upo'uli 'o honau kilí; pea 'oua foki na 'a mou fehi 'a 'iate kinautolu koe'uhi ko 'enau 'ulí; ka mou manatu 'i pē 'a ho 'omou 'uli 'amoutolú, pea manatu 'i na'e tupu 'a 'enau 'ulí mei he 'enau ngaahi tamaí.

10 Ko ia, ke mou manatu 'i 'a ho 'omou fānaú, 'a e anga 'o ho 'omou fakatupu ha mamahi lahi 'o honau lotó ko e tupu mei he sipinga kuo mou fokotu'u 'i honau 'aó; pea ko e tahá, manatu te mou lava, koe'uhi ko ho 'omou 'ulí 'o 'omi 'a ho 'omou fānaú ki he faka'auha, pea 'e 'eke 'i mei homou 'ulú 'a 'enau ngaahi angahalá 'i he 'aho faka'osí.

11 'Oiauē 'e hoku kāinga, tokanga ki he 'eku ngaahi leá; fakaake 'a e ngaahi ivi 'o homou laumālié; fafangu 'a kimoutolu koe'uhi ke mou 'ā hake mei he mohe 'o e maté; pea vete ange 'a kimoutolu mei he mamahi 'o helí koe'uhi ke 'oua na 'a mou hoko ko ha kau 'āngelo 'a e tēvoló, ke li hifo ki he ano 'o e afi mo e maka-vela, 'a ia ko e mate 'anga uá.

12 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Sēkope, na 'á ku lea 'aki mo ha ngaahi me'a lahi ange ki he kakai 'o Nīfaí, 'o fakatokanga kiate kinautolu 'o kau ki he fe'auakí mo e holi kovi fakakakanó, mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga angahala kotoa pē, 'o tala kiate kinautolu 'a honau ngaahi nunu 'a fakamanavaheé.

Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

O my brethren, I fear that unless ye shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God.

Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness; but ye shall remember your own filthiness, and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers.

Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also, remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day.

O my brethren, hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.

And now I, Jacob, spake many more things unto the people of Nephi, warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them.

13 Pea ko ha vahe teau 'e taha 'o e ngaahi me'a na'e hoko ki he kakai ní, 'a ia kuo faka'au ke nau tokolahi ange, 'oku 'ikai lava 'o tohi ia ki he ngaahi peleti ko 'ení; kā kuo tohi ha ngaahi me'a lahi 'i he ngaahi peleti lalahí, mo 'enau ngaahi taú, mo 'enau ngaahi fakakikihí, mo e pule 'a honau ngaahi tu'í.

14 'Oku ui 'a e ngaahi peleti ni ko e ngaahi peleti 'a Sēkopé, pea na'e ngaohi ia 'e he nima 'o Nīfai. Pea 'oku ou faka'osi hono lea 'aki 'o e ngaahi leá ni.

And a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, which now began to be numerous, cannot be written upon these plates; but many of their proceedings are written upon the larger plates, and their wars, and their contentions, and the reigns of their kings.

These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and they were made by the hand of Nephi. And I make an end of speaking these words.

Sēkope 4

- 1 Ko 'eni vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Sēkope, kuó u ngāue lahi ki hoku kakai 'i he lea, (pea 'oku 'ikai te u lava 'o tohi ka ko ha ngaahi me'a si'i pe 'o 'eku ngaahi leá, koe'uhi ko hono faingata'a 'o hono tohi 'o 'emau ngaahi leá ki ha ngaahi peleti), pea 'oku mau 'ilo'i ko e ngaahi me'a 'a ia 'oku mau tohi ki he ngaahi peleti kuo pau ke tolonga ia;
- 2 Ka ko e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku mau tohi ka 'oku 'ikai 'i ha ngaahi peleti kuo pau ke 'auha ia pea mole atu, ka 'oku mau lava 'o tohi ha ngaahi lea si'i ki ha ngaahi peleti, 'a ia 'e fakahā ai ki he 'emau fānaú, mo homau kāinga 'ofeina, ha 'ilo si'isi'i 'o kau kiate kimautilu, pe ki he'enua ngaahi tamaí—
- 3 Ko 'eni 'oku mau fiefia 'i he ngaahi me'a ni; pea 'oku mau ngāue faivelenga ke tohi 'a e ngaahi leá ni ki he ngaahi peleti, 'i he faka'amu 'e ma'u ia 'e homau kāinga 'ofeina mo 'emau fānaú 'i he loto-fakafeta'i, pea vakai ki ai ke nau ako 'i he fiefia, kae 'ikai 'i he mamahi, pea 'ikai foki 'i he manuki ki he'enua 'uluaki ongo mātu'á.
- 4 He ko hono 'uhinga 'eni kuo mau tohi ai 'a e ngaahi me'a ní, koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo na'a mau 'ilo kia Kalaisi, pea na'a mau ma'u ha 'amanaki lelei ki hono nāunaú 'i he ngaahi ta'u 'e lau teau ki mu'a 'i he'ene hā'ele maí; pea na'e 'ikai ko kimautilu pē na'e ma'u ha 'amanaki lelei ki hono nāunaú, kā ko e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni kotoa pē foki, 'a ia na'e 'i mu'a 'iate kimautilú.
- 5 Vakai, na'a nau tui kia Kalaisi mo hū ki he Tamaí 'i hono huafá, pea 'oku mau hū foki ki he Tamaí 'i hono huafá. Pea ko hono 'uhinga 'eni 'oku mau tauhi ai 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé, koe'uhi he 'okú ne takiaki 'i 'e ia 'a homau laumālie kiate ia; pea ko e 'uhinga 'eni 'oku fakamā'oni'oni 'i ai ia kiate kimautilu koe'uhi ko e mā'oni'oni, 'o hangē tofu pē ko e fekau 'a 'Ēpalahame 'i he maomaonganoá ke talangofua ki he ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá 'o feilaulau 'aki 'a hono foha ko 'Aisaké, 'a ia ko hano tatau ia 'o e feilaulau 'aki 'e he 'Otuá 'a hono 'Alo pē Taha na'e Fakatupú.

Jacob 4

Now behold, it came to pass that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my people in word, (and I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the difficulty of engraving our words upon plates) and we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain;

But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away; but we can write a few words upon plates, which will give our children, and also our beloved brethren, a small degree of knowledge concerning us, or concerning their fathers—

Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved brethren and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents.

For, for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

6 Ko ia, 'oku mau fakatotolo ki he kau palōfitá, pea 'oku mau ma'u ha ngaahi fakahā lahi mo e laumālie 'o e kikité; pea 'i he'emaui ma'u 'a e ngaahi fakamo'oni kotoá ni 'oku mau ma'u ai ha 'amanaki lelei, pea 'oku tu'u ma'u ai 'a 'emaui tuí, ko ia 'oku mau lava ai 'o fekau 'i he huafá 'o Sīsuú pea 'oku talangofua kiate kimautolu 'a e ngaahi 'akau, pe ko e ngaahi mo'ungá, pe ko e ngaahi peau 'o e tahí.

7 Ka neongo iá, 'oku fakahā kiate kimautolu 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a homau vaivaí koe'uhi ke mau 'ilo'i ko e me'a ia 'i he'ene 'alo'ofá mo 'ene āfeitaulalo lahi ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'oku mau ma'u ai 'a e mālohi ke fai 'a e ngaahi me'a ko 'ení.

8 Vakai, 'oku ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofa 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a e 'Eiki. Hono 'ikai te tau fa'a 'ilo'i hono loloto 'o 'ene ngaahi me'a liló; pea 'oku 'ikai fa'a lava 'e ha tangata 'o 'ilo'i 'a 'ene ngaahi founga kotoa pē. Pea 'oku 'ikai 'ilo 'e ha tangata ki he'ene ngaahi founga tuku kehe 'o ka toki fakahā ia kiate ia; ko ia, 'e kāinga, 'oua na'a lí'aki 'a e ngaahi fakahā 'a e 'Otuá.

9 He vakai, na'e tu'unga 'i he mālohi 'o 'ene folofolá na'e ha'u ai 'a e tangatá ki he funga 'o e māmani, 'a ia ko e māmani na'e fakatupu 'i he māfima'fi 'o 'ene folofolá. Ko ia, kapau na'e lava 'e he 'Otuá 'o folofola pea na'e 'i ai 'a e māmani, pea folofola pea na'e ngaohi 'a e tangatá, kapau ko ia ko e hā 'oku 'ikai te ne malava ai ke fekau ki he māmani, pe ki he ngāue 'a hono to'ukupú 'i hono funga 'o iá, 'o fakatatau ki hono finangaló mo 'ene fa'itelihá?

10 Ko ia, 'e kāinga, 'oua na'a feinga ke akonaki 'i 'a e 'Eiki, kae ma'u 'a e akonaki mei hono to'ukupú. He vakai, 'oku mou 'ilo'i 'e kimoutolu 'okú ne akonaki 'i he poto, pea 'i he fakamaau totonu, pea 'i he 'alo'ofa lahi, ki he ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuó ne fakatupú.

11 Ko ia, 'e kāinga 'ofeina, mou fakalelei kiate ia 'i he fakalelei 'a Kalaisi, ko hono 'Alo pē Taha na'e Fakatupú, pea te mou lava 'o toe tu'u, 'o fakatatau ki he mālohi 'o e toetu'u 'a ia 'oku 'ia Kalaisi, pea mou hoko ai ko e 'uluaki fua 'o Kalaisi ki he 'Otuá, mou ma'u 'a e tuí, pea kuo mou ma'u ha 'amanaki lelei ki he nāunau 'iate ia ki mu'á pea ne toki fakahā mai ia 'i he kakanó.

Wherefore, we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and having all these witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith becometh unshaken, insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things.

Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God.

For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

Wherefore, brethren, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works.

Wherefore, beloved brethren, be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and ye may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in Christ, and be presented as the first-fruits of Christ unto God, having faith, and obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself in the flesh.

12 Pea ko 'eni, 'e kāinga 'ofeina, 'oua na 'a mou ofo 'i he'eku fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi me'a ní; he ko e hā 'oku 'ikai te tau lau ai ki he fakalelei 'a Kalaisí, pea ma'u ha 'ilo haohaoa kiate ia, pea ma'u mo e 'ilo ki he toetu'ú mo e maama ka hoko maí?

13 Vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, ko ia ia 'oku kikité, tuku ke ne kikite ke mahino ki he kakaí; he 'oku folofola 'aki 'e he Laumālié 'a e mo'oni pea 'oku 'ikai loi. Ko ia, 'okú ne folofola ki he ngaahi me'a 'o hangē ko honau angamo'oni, pea ki he ngaahi me'a 'o hangē ko honau angamo'oni 'e 'i aí; ko ia, 'oku fakahā mahinongofua mai 'a e ngaahi me'a ní kiate kiate kitautolu, koe'uhi ke fakamo'ui 'a hotau laumālié. Kae vakai, 'oku 'ikai ko e kau fakamo'oni 'a kimautolu pē ki he ngaahi me'a ní; he na 'e folofola 'aki ia 'e he 'Otuá foki ki he kau palōfita 'i mu'á.

14 Kae vakai, ko ha kakai kia-kekeva 'a e kau Siú; pea na 'a nau fehi 'a ki he ngaahi lea mahinongofuá, 'o tāmata 'i 'a e kau palōfita, mo kumi ki ha ngaahi me'a na 'e 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu. Ko ia, ko e me'a 'i he 'enau kuí, 'a ia ko e kui na 'e tupu 'i he 'enau tokanga ki he ngaahi me'a na 'e 'ikai mahu'ingá, kuo pau ai ke nau tō; he kuo to 'o 'e he 'Otuá meiate kinautolu 'a 'ene folofola mahinongofuá, pea foaki kiate kinautolu ha ngaahi me'a lahi 'a ia 'oku 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu, koe'uhí he na 'a nau holi ki ai. Pea ko e me'a 'i he 'enau holi ki aí, ko ia kuo fai ia 'e he 'Otuá, koe'uhi ke nau tūkia ai.

15 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Sēkope, na 'e tataki au 'e he Laumālié ke u kikite; he na 'á ku 'ilo 'i 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie 'a ia 'oku 'iate aú, ko e me'a 'i he tūkia 'a e kau Siú te nau lí'aki 'a e maka 'a ia te nau lava 'o langa ai 'o ma'u ha makatu'unga 'oku malú.

16 Kae vakai, 'oku lau 'i he ngaahi folofolá, 'e hoko 'a e maká ni ko e lahi, mo e ki muí, pea mo e makatu'unga malu pē taha, 'a ia 'e lava 'a e kau Siú 'o langa aí.

17 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku lava fēfē 'e kinautolú ni, 'i he hili 'enau lí'aki 'a e makatu'unga malú, ke nau lava 'o langa ai, koe'uhi ke hoko ia ko e makatu'unga pē taha kiate kinautolú?

And now, beloved, marvel not that I tell you these things; for why not speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him, as to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come?

Behold, my brethren, he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not. Wherefore, it speaketh of things as they really are, and of things as they really will be; wherefore, these things are manifested unto us plainly, for the salvation of our souls. But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old.

But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.

And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.

But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

And now, my beloved, how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner?

18 Vakai, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, te u fakamatala 'i 'a e
me'a liló ni kiate kinautolu; ka 'o ka 'ikai ue'i au 'e ha
me'a kehe mei he'eku tu'u ma'u 'i he Laumālié, peá u
tūkia ai ko e me'a 'i he'eku fu'u hoha'a lahi koe'uhi ko
kimoutolú.

Behold, my beloved brethren, I will unfold this mys-
tery unto you; if I do not, by any means, get shaken
from my firmness in the Spirit, and stumble because of
my over anxiety for you.

Sēkope 5

- 1 Vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, 'ikai 'oku mou manatu ki ho'omou lau 'a e ngaahi lea 'a e palōfita ko Seinosis, 'a ia na'á ne lea ki he fale 'o 'Isilelí, 'o pehē:
- 2 Tokanga mai, 'A kimoutolu, 'e fale 'o 'Isileli, pea fanongo ki he ngaahi lea 'a'akú, 'a ia ko ha palōfita 'a e 'Eikí.
- 3 He vakai, 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí, te u fakatatau koe, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli, ki ha fu'u 'ōlive kolo, 'a ia na'e 'ave 'e ha tangata 'o tauhi 'i he'ene ngoue vainé; pea tupu ia, 'o faka'au 'o motu'a, pea kamata ke mate.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu atu 'a e pule 'o e ngoue vainé, 'o ne vakai 'oku kamata ke mate 'a 'ene fu'u 'ōlivé; pea pehē 'e ia: Te u 'auhani ia, pea keli 'o takatakai ai, mo tauhi ia, koe'uhi ke tupu mai 'apē ha ngaahi va'a mui mo litolito, pea 'e 'ikai mate ia.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne 'auhani ia, mo ne keli takatakai mo tauhi ia 'o hangē ko 'ene leá.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e ngaahi 'aho lahi na'e kamata ke tupu mai ha ngaahi va'a fo'ou mo litolito 'e ní'ihí; kae vakai, na'e kamata ke mate 'a e ngaahi va'a lalahi 'i 'olungá.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e mamata ki ai 'a e pule 'o e ngoue vainé, pea na'e pehē 'e ia ki he'ene tamaio'eikí: 'Oku fakamamahi kiate au 'o ka mole 'iate au 'a e fu'u 'akaú ni; ko ia, ke ke 'alu, 'o tu'usi mai 'a e ngaahi va'a mei he fu'u 'ōlive vaó, pea 'omi ia ki heni kiate au; pea te ta tu'usi 'a e ngaahi va'a lalahi ko ia 'oku kamata ke maé, pea te ta laku ia ki he afí 'o tutu ai.
- 8 Pea vakai, 'oku pehē 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé, 'oku ou 'ave 'a e lahi 'o e ngaahi va'a mui mo litolito ní, pea te u fakahoko ia ki ha ngaahi potu 'oku ou loto ki aí; pea 'oku tatau ai pē pe 'e mate 'a e aka 'o e 'akaú ni, ka te u lava pē 'o fakatolonga 'a hono fuá ma'aku; ko ia, te u 'ave 'a e ngaahi va'a mui mo litolito ní, pea te u fakahoko ia 'i he ngaahi potu 'oku ou loto ki aí.
- 9 Ke ke 'ave 'a e ngaahi va'a 'o e fu'u 'ōlive vaó, pea fakahoko ia ke fetongi 'aki ia; pea ko e ngaahi va'a ní 'a ia kuó u tu'usi mei aí, te u lí ia ki he afí, 'o tutu ai, ke 'oua na'a fakafelefele 'e ia 'a e kekelele 'o 'eku ngoue vainé.

Jacob 5

Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:

Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of the Lord.

For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive tree began to decay; and he said: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.

And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word.

And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive tree, and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned.

And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will; and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.

Take thou the branches of the wild olive tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fai 'e he tamaio'eiki 'a e 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé 'o hangē ko e lea 'a e 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé, 'o ne fakahoko leva ki ai 'a e ngaahi va'a 'o e 'akau ko e 'ōlive vaó.

11 Pea na'e fekau 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ke keli takataki, pea 'auhani, pea tauhi ia, 'o ne pehē ange ki he'ene tamaio'eiki: 'oku fakamamahi kiate au 'o ka mole 'iate au 'a e 'akaú ni; ko ia, koe'uhi ke u lava 'apē 'o fakatolonga hono ngaahi aká ke 'oua na'a nau mate, koe'uhi ke u fakaili ia ma'aku, ko ia kuó u fai ai 'a e me'á ni.

12 Ko ia, ke fai atu ho'ngāue; tokanga 'i 'a e 'akaú, pea tauhi ia, 'o hangē ko 'eku ngaahi leá.

13 Pea te u tuku 'a e ngaahi va'á ni ki he potu mama'ota 'o 'eku ngoue vainé, 'i he potu pē te u loto ki aí, 'oku tatau ai pē kiate koe; pea 'oku ou fai ia koe'uhi ke u lava 'o fakatolonga ma'aku 'a e ngaahi va'a totonu 'o e 'akaú; pea koe'uhí foki, ke u lava 'o tokonaki 'a e fua mei ai ki ha 'osi 'a e fa'ahita'ú ma'aku; koe'uhí he 'oku fakamamahi kiate au 'o ka mole 'iate au 'a e 'akaú ni mo hono fuá.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu atu 'a e 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé, 'o ne fufuu 'i 'a e ngaahi va'a totonu 'o e fu'u 'ōlive koló 'i he ngaahi potu mama'ota 'o e ngoue vainé, ko e ni'ihí 'i he potu 'e taha mo e ni'ihí 'i ha potu kehe, 'o fakatatau ki hono lotó mo 'ene fa'itelihá.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'osi atu 'a e taimi fuoloa, pea na'e pehē ange 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ki he'ene tamaio'eiki: Ha'u, ta ō hifo ki he loto ngoue vainé, koe'uhi ke ta ngāue 'i he ngoue vainé.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu hifo 'a e 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé, pea mo e tamaio'eiki, ke ngāue 'i he ngoue vainé. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē ange 'e he tamaio'eiki ki hono 'eiki: Vakai, mamata mai ki heni; vakai ki he 'akaú.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e vakai atu 'a e 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé, 'o ne mamata ki he 'akau 'a ia kuo fakahoko ki ai 'a e ngaahi va'a 'ōlive vaó; kuo tupu hake ia 'o kamata ke fua. Pea na'á ne vakai kuo lelei ia; pea na'e tatau 'a hono fuá mo e fua totonú.

And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.

Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.

And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.

And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.

18 Pea ne pehē ange ki he tamaio'eikí: Vakai, kuo mā'u 'e he ngaahi va'a 'o e 'akau tupu vao 'a e huhu'a mei he aká, ko ia kuo fakatupu ai 'e hono aká 'a e mālohi lahi; pea ko e me'a 'i he lahi 'o e mālohi 'o hono aká kuo fua 'aki ai 'e he ngaahi va'a tupu va'o 'a e fua tupu kolo. Ko 'eni, kapau na'e 'ikai ke ta fakahoko ki ai 'a e ngaahi va'a ni, kuo mate 'a e 'akaú ia. Pea ko 'eni, vakai, te u mā'u ha fua lahi, 'a ia kuo fua 'aki 'e he 'akau ko íá; pea te u lava 'o tokonaki 'a e fua mei he 'akaú ki ha 'osi 'a e fa'ahita'ú; mā'aku ke u ngaue'aki.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ki he tamaio'eikí: Ha'u, ta o ki he potu mama'o taha 'o e ngoue vainé, 'o vakai pe kuo fua 'aki foki 'e he ngaahi va'a totonu 'o e 'akaú ha ngaahi fua lahi pe foki, ko'e uhi ke u lava 'o tokonaki mā'aku 'a e fua mei he 'akaú ke u ngāue 'aki ki ha 'osi 'a e fa'ahita'ú.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á na 'alu atu ki he potu kuo fufuu 'i ai 'e he 'eikí 'a e ngaahi va'a totonu 'o e 'akaú, pea pehē 'e ia ki he tamaio'eikí: Vakai ki he ngaahi va'a ni; pea na'á ne vakai ki he 'uluaki va'a 'oku fua lahi; pea ne vakai foki 'oku lelei ia. Pea ne pehē ange ki he tamaio'eikí: Toli hono fuá pea tokonaki mā'aku ia ki ha 'osi 'a e fa'ahita'ú; ko'e uhi ke u fakatolonga ia mā'aku, he vakai, na'e pehē 'e ia, kuó u tauhi ia 'i he taimi fuoloá ni, pea kuo fua 'aki 'e ia 'a e fua lahi.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē 'e he tamaio'eikí ki hono 'eikí: Ko e hā 'okú ke ha'u ai ki heni ke tō 'a e 'akau ní, pe ko e va'a ko 'eni 'o e 'akaú? He vakai, ko e potu kovi taha ia 'i he kelekele kotoa 'o ho'ngoue vainé.

22 Pea pehē 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé kiate ia: 'Oua te ke akonaki 'i au; he na'á ku 'ilo ko e potu kelekele kovi ia; ko ia, na'á ku pehē ai kiate koe, kuó u tauhi ia 'i he taimi fuoloá ni, pea 'okú ke vakai kuo fua mai ia 'aki 'a e fua lahi.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ki he'ene tamaio'eikí: Sio atu ki hē; vakai kuó u tō ai mo ha va'a kehe 'o e 'akaú foki; pea 'okú ke 'ilo na'e kovi ange 'a e potu kelekele ko íá 'i he 'uluakí. Kae vakai ki he 'akaú. Kuó u tauhi ia 'i he taimi fuoloá ni, pea kuo tupu ai 'a e fua lahi; ko ia, tānaki ia, mo tokonaki ki ha 'osi 'a e fa'ahita'ú, ko'e uhi ke u fakatolonga ia mā'aku.

And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him: Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe pehē ange 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ki he'ene tamaio'eiki: Sio atu ki hē, vakai foki ki ha toe va'a kehe, 'a ia kuó u tō; vakai kuó u tauhi ia foki, pea kuo tupu ai ha fua.

25 Pea pehē ange 'e ia ki he tamaio'eiki: Sio atu ki hē, pea vakai ki he va'a faka'osi. Vakai, kuó u tō 'eni 'i ha potu lelei 'o e kekelelé; pea kuó u tauhi ia 'i he taimi fuoloá ni, pea ko ha kongá pē 'o e 'akaú kuo fua 'aki 'a e fua koló, pea kuo fua 'aki 'e he kongá 'e taha 'o e 'akaú 'a e fua vao; vakai, kuó u tauhi 'a e 'akaú ni 'o hangē ko e ngaahi 'akau kehé.

26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē ange 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ki he tamaio'eiki: Tu'usi hifo 'a e ngaahi va'a 'a ia kuo 'ikai ke tupu ai 'a e fua lelei, pea laku ia ki he afí.

27 Kae vakai, na'e pehē ange kiate ia 'e he tamaio'eiki: Ta 'auhani ia, pea keli takatakai ai, pea tauhi ia 'o ki'i fuofuolaa ange, koe'uhi ke fua 'aki 'apē 'e ia 'a e fua lelei ma'au, koe'uhi ke tokonaki ia ki ha 'osi 'a e fa'ahita'ú.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hanga 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé mo e tamaio'eiki 'a e 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé 'o tauhi 'a e fua kotoa pē 'o e ngoue vainé.

29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'osi atu 'a e taimi fuolaa, pea na'e pehē ange 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ki he'ene tamaio'eiki: Ha'u, ta o hifo ki he ngoue vainé, koe'uhi ke ta toe ngāue 'i he ngoue vainé. He vakai, 'oku ofi mai 'a e taimí, pea 'oku ha'u vave 'a e ngata'angá; ko ia, kuo pau ke u tokonaki 'a e fua ki ha 'osi 'a e fa'ahita'ú, ma'aku.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu hifo 'a e 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé mo e tamaio'eiki ki he loto ngoue vainé; pea na'á na a'u atu ki he 'akau 'a ia kuo tu'usi hono ngaahi va'a totonú, pea fakahoko ki ai 'a e ngaahi va'a tupu vaó; pea vakai na'e opeope 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga fua kehekehe kotoa pē 'i he 'akaú.

31 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ahi'ahi'i 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ha fua, ko e fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o fakatatau ki hono lahi. Pea na'e pehē 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé: Vakai, kuó ta tauhi 'i he taimi fuoloá ni 'a e 'akaú ni, pea kuo u tokonaki ma'aku 'a e fua lahi ki ha 'osi 'a e fa'ahita'ú.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.

And he said unto the servant: Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.

But behold, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.

And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.

32 Kae vakai, ko e taimi 'eni kuo tupu ai 'a e fua lahi, pea 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai hano fua 'e taha 'oku lelei. Kae vakai, 'oku 'i ai 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga kehekehe kotoa pē 'o e fua kovi; pea 'oku ta'e'aonga ia kiate au, neongo 'a 'eta ngāu'é kotoa; pea ko 'eni 'oku fakamamahi kiate au ka mole meiate au 'a e 'akaú ni.

33 Pea na'e pehē 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ki he tamaio'eikí: Ko e hā te ta fai ki he 'akaú ke u toe tokonaki mei ai ma'aku ha fua 'oku lelei?

34 Pea na'e pehē 'e he tamaio'eikí ki hono 'eikí: Vakai, ko e me'a 'i ho'o fakahoko 'a e ngaahi va'a 'o e fu'u 'ōlive vaó ko ia kuo nau fakamo'ui 'a e ngaahi aká, ko ia 'oku nau mo'ui ai pe kuo 'ikai te nau mate; ko ia, 'okú ke vakai ai 'oku nau kei lelei pē.

35 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ki he'ene tamaio'eikí: 'Oku ta'e'aonga kiate au 'a e 'akaú, pea 'oku ta'e'aonga kiate au hono ngaahi aká lolotonga 'oku kei tupu ai 'a e fua kovi.

36 Neongo iá, 'oku ou 'ilo 'oku lelei 'a e ngaahi aká, pea kuó u fakatolonga ia ko'e'uhi ko 'eku 'uhinga pē 'a'aku; pea ko e me'a 'i honau mālohi lahi, ko ia kuo nau fua 'aki, mei he ngaahi va'a tupu vaó, 'a e fua lelei.

37 Kae vakai, kuo tupu 'a e ngaahi va'a tupu vaó 'o lahi ange 'i hono ngaahi aká; pea ko e me'a 'i he ikuna 'i 'e he ngaahi va'a tupu vaó 'a hono ngaahi aká kuo tupu ai 'a e fua kovi lahi; pea ko e me'a 'i he'ene fua 'aki 'a e fua kovi lahi peheé 'okú ke vakai 'oku faka'au ia ke mate; pea 'e vave pē ha'ane popo, pea 'e lelei ke li ia ki he afí, tuku kehe kapau te ta fai ha me'a ki ai ke fakatolonga ia.

38 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē ange 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ki he'ene tamaio'eikí: Ta ō hifo ki he ngaahi potu mama'o taha 'o e ngoue vainé, 'o vakai pe kuo tupu foki 'i he ngaahi va'a totonú ha fua kovi.

39 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á na ō hifo ki he ngaahi potu mama'o taha 'o e ngoue vainé. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á na vakai kuo hoko 'o kovi foki mo e fua 'o e ngaahi va'a totonú; 'io, 'a e 'uluakí mo hono uá pea mo e faka'osí foki; pea kuo nau kovi kotoa pē.

40 Pea kuo ikuna 'i 'e he fua tupu vao 'o e va'a faka'osí 'a e konga ko ia 'o e 'akaú 'a ia na'e fua 'aki 'a e fua lelei, 'o a'u ki he mae 'o mate 'a e va'á.

But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?

And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.

Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.

But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.

And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.

And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and died.

41 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tangi 'a e 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé, 'o ne pehē ange ki he tamaio'eikí; Ko e hā mo ha toe me'a na'á ku mei lava nai 'o fai ki he'eku ngoue vainé?

42 Vakai, na'á ku 'ilo kuo hoko 'o kovi 'a e fua kotoa pē 'o e ngoue vainé, tuku kehe pē 'eni. Pea ko 'eni ko e ngaahi va'a 'eni na'e mu'aki fakatupu mai 'a e fua lelei kuo hoko 'o kovi foki; pea ko 'eni 'oku ta'e'aonga 'a e ngaahi 'akau kotoa pē 'o 'eku ngoue vainé, ka ke tā hifo pea laku ki he afí.

43 Pea vakai ko e 'akau faka'osi ko 'ení, 'a ia kuo mae 'a hono va'á, na'á ku tō ia 'i ha potu kelekele lelei; 'io, na'e lelei ange ia kiate au 'i he ngaahi potu kehe kotoa pē 'o e kelekele 'o 'eku ngoue vainé.

44 Pea na'á ke vakai na'á ku tā hifo foki 'a ia na'e fakafelefele 'i he potu kelekele ko 'ení, ko'e'uhi ke u lava 'o tō 'a e 'akau ni 'o fetongi 'aki ia.

45 Pea na'á ke vakai na'e 'i ai hono kongá 'e taha na'e fua 'aki 'a e fua lelei, pea ko hono kongá 'e taha na'e fua 'aki 'a e fua tupu vao; pea ko e me'a 'i he 'ikai te u tu'usi 'a hono ngaahi va'á 'o lí ia ki he afí, vakai, kuo nau ikuna 'i ai 'a e va'a lelei pea kuo mae ia.

46 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, neongo 'a e tauhi kotoa pē 'a ia kuó ta fai ki he'eku ngoue vainé, kā kuo hoko 'o kovi 'a e ngaahi 'akau 'i ai, pea 'oku 'ikai ai te nau fua 'aki ha fua lelei; pea kuó u faka'amu ke u lava 'o fakatolonga mo tokonaki 'a e fua ki ha 'osi 'a e fá 'ahita 'ú ma'aku. Kae vakai, kuo nau hoko 'o tatau mo e fu'u 'ōlive vaó, pea 'oku nau ta'e'aonga ka ke tā hifo pea laku ki he afí; pea 'oku fakamamahi kiate au ke mole ia meiate au.

47 Ka ko e hā mo ha me'a na'á ku mei toe lava nai 'o fai 'i he'eku ngoue vainé? Kuó u fakapikopiko koā, 'o 'ikai te u tauhi ia? 'Ikaí, kā kuó u tauhi ia, pea kuó u keli takatakai ai, pea kuó u 'auhani ia, pea kuó u mafao atu 'a hoku nimá 'i he meimei 'ahó hono kotoa, pea 'oku faka'au 'o ofi mai 'a e ngata'anga. Pea 'oku fakamamahi kiate au ke u tā hifo ki lalo 'a e ngaahi 'akau kotoa pē 'o 'eku ngoue vainé, 'o laku ia ki he afí 'o tutu ia. Ko hai ia kuó ne fakakovi 'i 'a 'eku ngoue vainé?

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?

Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into the fire.

And behold this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me above all other parts of the land of my vineyard.

And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof.

And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit, and a part thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have overcome the good branch that it hath withered away.

And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. But, behold, they have become like unto the wild olive tree, and they are of no worth but to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieveth me that I should lose them.

But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nourished it? Nay, I have nourished it, and I have digged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?

48 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē ange 'e he tamaio'eikí ki hono 'eikí: 'Ikai ko hono mā'olunga 'o ho'o ngoue vainé—'ikai kuo ikuna 'i 'e hono ngaahi va'á 'a e ngaahi aka 'a ia 'oku lelei? Pea ko e me'a 'i hono ikuna 'i 'e he ngaahi va'á 'a hono ngaahi aká, vakai kuo nau tupu 'o vave ange 'i hono mālohi 'o e ngaahi aká, 'o to'o 'a e mālohi mo'onautolu. Vakai, 'oku ou pehē, 'ikai ko e tupu'anga ia 'o e fakakovi 'i 'o e ngaahi 'akau 'o ho'o ngoue vainé?

49 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē ange 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ki he tamaio'eikí: Ta kamata ā hono tā hifo 'o e ngaahi 'akau 'o e ngoue vainé pea laku ia ki he afí ke 'oua na'a nau fakafelefele 'i he kelekele 'o 'eku ngoue vainé, he kuó u fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē te u lava 'o fai. Ko e hā mo ha toe me'a te u lava 'o fai ki he 'eku ngoue vainé?

50 Kae vakai, na'e pehē 'e he tamaio'eikí ki he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé: Tuku ai pē ia 'o ki 'i fuofuoloa si'i.

51 Pea pehē ange 'e he 'Eikí: 'Io, te u fakahaofi ai pē ia 'o ki 'i fuofuoloa si'i, he 'oku fakamamahi kiate au ka mole meiate au 'a e ngaahi 'akau 'o 'eku ngoue vainé.

52 Ko ia, ta 'ave 'a e ngaahi va'a ko 'eni 'a ia kuó u tō 'i he ngaahi potu mama'o taha 'o 'eku ngoue vainé, peá ta fakahoko ia ki he 'akau 'a ia na'a nau tupu mei ai; peá ta tu'usi mei he 'akaú 'a e ngaahi va'a 'a ia 'oku mahi taha 'a hono fuá, pea fakahoko ki ai 'a e ngaahi va'a totonu 'o e 'akaú ke fetongi 'aki ia.

53 Pea te u fai 'eni ke 'oua na'a mate 'a e 'akaú, koe'uhi, ke u lava 'apē, 'o fakatolonga ma'á ku 'a hono ngaahi aká koe'uhi ko 'eku 'uhinga pē 'a aku.

54 Pea vakai, 'oku kei mo'ui 'a e ngaahi aka 'o e ngaahi va'a totonu 'o e 'akau 'a ia na'a ku tō 'i he ngaahi feitu' u kehekehe na'á ku loto ki ai; ko ia, koe'uhi ke u lava foki 'o fakatolonga ia koe'uhi ko 'eku 'uhinga 'a aku, te u 'ave 'a e ngaahi va'a 'o e 'akaú ni, pea te u fakahoko ia ki ai. 'Io, te u fakahoko ki ai 'a e ngaahi va'a 'o e motu'a 'akaú koe'uhi ke u lava foki 'o fakatolonga 'a e ngaahi aká ma'aku, koe'uhi 'o ka mālohi fe'unga ia, te nau fua 'aki ha fua lelei, pea te u toe ma'u 'apē 'a e fiefia 'i he fua 'o 'eku ngoué.

55 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a na to'o mei he 'akau totonu 'a ia ne hoko ko e 'akau tupu vaó, 'o fakahoko ia ki he ngaahi 'akau totonu, 'a ia kuo hoko foki ko e 'akau tupu vaó.

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted?

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

And the Lord said: Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof.

And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose.

And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild.

56 Pea na 'á na to' o foki ha ngaahi va'a mei he ngaahi 'akau totonu 'a ia kuo hoko ko e 'akau tupu vaó 'o fakahoko ia ki he motu 'a 'akaú.

57 Pea na'e pehē 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ki he tamaio'eiki: 'Oua na'á ke tu'usi 'a e ngaahi va'a tupu vaó mei he ngaahi 'akaú, tuku kehe pē 'a ia 'oku mahi tahá; pea ke ke fakahoko ki ai 'o hangē ko ia kuó u fekau kiate koé.

58 Pea te ta toe tauhi 'a e ngaahi 'akau 'o e ngoue vainé, pea te ta 'auhani 'a hono ngaahi va'á; pea te ta tu'usi mei he ngaahi 'akaú 'a e ngaahi va'a ko ia kuo motu'a, 'a ia kuo pau ke maté, pea laku ia ki he afí.

59 Pea 'oku ou fai 'eni koe'uhí, ke ma'u 'apē 'e hono ngaahi aká ha mālohi koe'uhi ko honau leleí; pea ko e me'a 'i hono fetongi 'o e ngaahi va'á, ke lava ai 'o ikuna 'i 'e he leleí 'a e koví.

60 Pea ko e me'a 'i he'eku fakaili 'a e ngaahi va'a totonú pea mo hono ngaahi aká, pea kuó u toe fakahoko 'a e ngaahi va'a totonú ki he motu 'a 'akaú, pea mo 'eku fakaili 'a e ngaahi aka 'o e motu 'a 'akaú, koe'uhí, ke lava 'apē, ke toe fua 'aki 'e he ngaahi 'akau 'o 'eku ngoue vainé ha fua leleí; pea ke u toe ma'u ai 'a e fiefia 'i he fua 'o 'eku ngoue vainé, pea, ke u lava 'apē, 'o ma'u ha fu'u fiefia lahi 'i he'eku fakaili 'a e ngaahi aká pea mo e ngaahi va'a 'o e 'uluaki fuá—

61 Ko ia, 'alu atu, pea ui ha kau tamaio'eiki, koe'uhi ke tau ngāue faivelenga 'aki hotau tūkuingatá 'i he ngoue vainé, koe'uhi ke tau teuteu 'a e hala, koe'uhi ke u toe lava 'o fakatupu mai 'a e fua totonú, 'a ia ko e fua totonu 'oku lelei mo mahu'inga taha 'i he ngaahi fua kehe kotoa pē.

62 Ko ia, ke tau 'alu atu pea ngāue 'aki hotau tūkuingatá ko hono faka'osi, he vakai 'oku ofi 'a e ngata'angá, pea ko hono faka'osi 'eni 'o 'eku 'auhani 'a 'eku ngoue vainé.

63 Fakahoko 'a e ngaahi va'á; kamata mei he ki muí koe'uhi ke nau mu'omu'a, pea muimui 'a e ki mu'á, pea keli takatakai 'i he ngaahi 'akaú, fakatou'osi 'a e 'akau motu'á mo e 'akau toki tupú, ko e 'uluakí mo e ki muí; pea mo e ki muí mo e 'uluakí, koe'uhi ke toe tauhi kotoa pē ko hono fai faka'osi.

And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said.

And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.

And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil.

And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree, and have preserved the roots of their mother tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit—

Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit.

Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.

Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.

- 64 Ko ia, keli takatakai 'iate kinautolu, pea 'auhani, pea toe 'ai kiate kinautolu ha te 'emanu ko hono fai faka'osi, he 'oku ofi mai 'a e ngata'angá. Pea kapau 'e tupu 'a e ngaahi va'a fakahoko ki mui ko 'ení, pea tupu mai 'a e fua totonú, ke mou toki tauhi lelei 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ke nau lava 'o tupu.
- 65 Pea 'i he 'enau kamata ke tupú ke mou tutu'u atu leva 'a e ngaahi va'a 'a ia 'oku tupu ai 'a e fua mahí, 'o fakatatau ki hono mālohi 'o e ngaahi va'a 'oku lelei pea mo honau lahí; pea 'e 'ikai te mou tutu'u faka'angataha kotoa 'a e koví, telia na'a 'iloange kuo mālohi ange 'a hono ngaahi aká ki he va'a kuo fakahoko ki aí, pea mate 'a e va'a kuo fakahokó kae mole meiate au 'a e ngaahi 'akau 'o 'eku ngoue vainé.
- 66 He 'oku mamahi hoku lotó ka mole meiate au 'a e ngaahi 'akau 'o 'eku ngoue vainé; ko ia, ke ke tutu'u atu 'a e koví 'o fakatatau ki he tupu lelei, koe'uhi ke mālohi tatau 'a e aká mo e kongá 'i 'olungá, kae 'oua ke ikuna'i 'e he lelei 'a e koví, pea tā hifo 'a e koví 'o laku ki he afí, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a nau fakafelefele'i 'a e kelekele 'o 'eku ngoue vainé; pea te u tafi pehe'i atu 'a e koví mei he 'eku ngoue vainé.
- 67 Pea te u toe fakahoko 'a e ngaahi va'a 'o e 'akau totonú ki he 'akau totonú;
- 68 Pea te u fakahoko 'a e ngaahi va'a 'o e 'akau totonú ki honau ngaahi tu'unga 'i he 'akau totonú; pea te u toe fakataha'i pehe'i 'a kinautolu, koe'uhi ke nau fua 'aki 'a e fua totonu, pea te nau taha pē.
- 69 Pea 'e lí'aki 'a e koví, 'io, mei he kelekele kotoa 'o 'eku ngoue vainé; he vakai, te u 'auhani faka'osi ai 'a 'eku ngoue vainé.
- 70 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau atu 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé 'a 'ene tamaio'eiki; pea na'e 'alu 'a e tamaio'eiki 'o ne fai 'o hangē ko e fekau 'a e 'Eiki kiate íá, pea ne 'omi mo ha kau tamaio'eiki kehe; pea na'a nau tokosi'i.

Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow.

And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard.

For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard.

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree;

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one.

And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few.

71 Pea na'e pehē ange 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé kiate kinautolu: Mou 'alu, pea ngāue 'i he ngoue vainé, 'aki homou iví. He vakai, ko hono faka'osi 'eni 'o 'eku tauhi 'eku ngoue vainé; he 'oku ofi mai 'a e ngata'angá, pea 'oku ha'u vave 'a e fa'ahita'ú; pea kapau te mou ngāue 'aki homou iví fakataha mo au te mou ma'u 'a e fiefia 'i he fua ko ia te u tokonaki ma'aku ki ha 'osi 'a e fa'ahita'u 'a ia 'oku vave 'ene ha'ú.

72 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu 'a e kau tamaio'eikí 'o nau ngāue 'aki honau tūkuingatá; pea na'e ngāue foki 'a e 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé fakataha mo kinautolu; pea nau talangofua ki he ngaahi fēkau 'a e 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé 'i he me'a kotoa pē.

73 Pea na'e kamata ke toe 'i ai 'a e fua totonú 'i he ngoue vainé; pea na'e kamata ke tupu pea lau ma'ui'ui 'aupito 'a e ngaahi va'a totonú; pea na'e kamata ke tu'usi atu 'a e ngaahi va'a tupu va'o 'o lí'aki, pea na'a nau tauhi 'a e aká mo hono kongá 'i 'olungá ke na tatau, 'o fakatatau ki hona mālohí.

74 Pea na'a nau ngāue pehē, 'i he faivelenga kakato, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi fēkau 'a e 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé, kae 'oua kuo lí'aki 'a e ngaahi va'a koví mei he ngoue vainé, pea kuo fakaili 'e he 'Eikí ma'ana 'a e ngaahi 'akau kuo toe fua 'aki 'a e fua totonú; pea nau hoko 'o hangē ko e sino pē taha; pea na'e tatau 'a e ngaahi fuá; pea kuo fakatolonga 'e he 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé ma'ana 'a e fua totonú, 'a ia kuo fungani mahu'inga kiate ia talu mei he kamata'angá.

75 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he mamata 'a e 'Eiki 'o e ngoue vainé kuo lelei 'a 'ene fuá, pea kuo 'ikai ke toe koví 'a 'ene ngoue vainé, na'á ne ui mai 'a 'ene kau tamaio'eikí, 'o ne pehē kiate kinautolu: Vakai, kuo tau tauhi 'a 'eku ngoue vainé ko hono fai faka'osi; pea 'oku mou vakai kuó u fai 'a ia 'oku ou loto ke faí; pea kuó u fakatolonga 'a e fua totonú, pea 'oku lelei ia, 'io 'o tatau mo hono anga 'i he kamata'angá. Pea 'oku monū'ia 'a kimoutolu; he ko e me'a 'i ho'omou faivelenga 'i he ngāue fakataha mo au 'i he 'eku ngoue vainé, 'o mou tauhi 'a 'eku ngaahi fēkau, 'o toe 'omi kiate au 'a e fua totonú, 'oku 'ikai ai ke toe koví 'a 'eku ngoue vainé, pea kuo lí'aki 'a e koví, vakai te mou ma'u 'a e fiefia fakataha mo au koe'uhi ko e fua 'o 'eku ngoue vainé.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come.

And it came to pass that the servants did go and labor with their might; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof.

And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. And blessed art thou; for because ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

76 He vakai, te u tokonaki ma'aku 'i ha taimi fuoloa 'a e fua mei he'eku ngoue vainé ma'aku ki ha 'osi 'a e fa'ahita'ú; 'a ia 'oku vave 'ene ha'ú; pea kuó u tauhi faka'osi 'a 'eku ngoue vainé, pea 'auhani ia, 'o keli takatakai ai, pea tuku ki ai ha te'emanu; ko ia, te u tokonaki ma'aku 'a e ngaahi fuá ni 'i ha taimi fuoloa, 'o hangē ko ia kuó u lea'akí.

77 Pea 'o ka hokosia 'a e taimi 'e toe 'i ai 'a e fua kovi 'i he'eku ngoue vainé, te u toki fekau leva ke tānaki 'a e leleí mo e kovi; pea te u fakatolonga ma'aku 'a e leleí, pea te u lí'aki 'a e kovi ki hono potu 'o'ona. Pea 'e toki hoko mai 'a e fa'ahita'ú mo e ngata'angá pea te u pule ke tutu 'a 'eku ngoue vainé 'aki 'a e afi.

For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and dunged it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.

And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its own place. And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire.

Sēkope 6

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, hangē ko 'eku pehē kiate kimoutolu te u kikitē, vakai, ko 'eku kikitē 'eni—ko e ngaahi me'a na'e lea ki ai 'a e palōfita ko 'eni ko Seinosi, 'o kau ki he fale 'o 'Isilelí, 'a ia na'á ne fakatatau ai 'a kinautolu ki ha fu'u 'ōlive koló, kuo pau ke hoko mo'oni ia.
- 2 Pea ko e 'aho 'e ala mai ai 'a hono to'ukupú ko hono tu'oua ke fakahaofi 'a hono kakaí, ko e 'ahó ia, 'io, ko hono faka'osi ia, 'o e 'alu atu 'a e kau tamaio'eiki 'a e 'Eiki 'i hono mālohí, ke tauhi mo 'auhani 'a 'ene ngoue vainé; pea hili ia 'e hoko vave mai leva 'a e ngata'angá.
- 3 Pea 'oku monū'ia 'aupito 'a kinautolu 'a ia kuo ngāue faivelenga 'i he'ene ngoue vainé; pea 'oku mala'ia 'a kinautolu 'a ia 'e kapusi ki tu'a ki honau potu 'onautolú! Pea 'e tutu 'a māmani 'aki 'a e afi.
- 4 Pea 'oku 'alo'ofa lahi 'a hotau 'Otuá kiate kinautolu, he 'okú ne manatu 'i 'a e fale 'o 'Isilelí, 'a hono ngaahi aká mo e ngaahi va'a fakatou'osi; pea 'oku mafao atu 'a hono to'ukupú kiate kinautolu 'i hono kotoa 'o e 'ahó; pea ko ha kakai kia-kekeva mo fa'a talangata'a 'a kinautolu; ka ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'e 'ikai fakafefeka honau lotó 'e fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá.
- 5 Ko ia, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou kole fakamo'omo'oni kiate kimoutolu 'i he ngaahi lea fakamātoato ke mou fakatomala, pea ha'u 'i he lotofakamātoato mo'oni, 'o pīkitai ki he 'Otuá 'o hangē ko 'ene pīkitai kiate kimoutolú. Pea lolotonga 'a e kei mafao atu 'a hono to'ukupu 'o e 'alo'ofá kiate kimoutolu 'i he maama 'o e 'ahó, 'oua te mou fakafefeka 'a homou lotó.
- 6 'Io, ko e 'ahó ni, kapau te mou fanongo ki hono le'ó, 'oua te mou fakafefeka 'a homou lotó, he ko e hā te mou fie mate aí?
- 7 He vakai, 'o ka hili hono fafanga 'aki 'a kimoutolu 'a e folofola lelei 'a e 'Otuá 'i hono kotoa 'o e 'ahó, te mou fua 'aki koā ha fua 'oku kovi, koe'uhi ke tā hifo 'o laku 'a kimoutolu ki he afí?

Jacob 6

And now, behold, my brethren, as I said unto you that I would prophesy, behold, this is my prophecy—that the things which this prophet Zenos spake, concerning the house of Israel, in the which he likened them unto a tame olive tree, must surely come to pass.

And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh.

And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place! And the world shall be burned with fire.

And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house of Israel, both roots and branches; and he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying people; but as many as will not harden their hearts shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I beseech of you in words of soberness that ye would repent, and come with full purpose of heart, and cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you. And while his arm of mercy is extended towards you in the light of the day, harden not your hearts.

Yea, today, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts; for why will ye die?

For behold, after ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will ye bring forth evil fruit, that ye must be hewn down and cast into the fire?

8 Vakai, te mou lí'aki koā 'a e ngaahi leá ni? Tē mou lí'aki koā 'a e ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfitá; pea te mou lí'aki koā 'a e ngaahi lea kotoa pē 'a ia kuo lea 'aki 'o kau kia Kalaisí, hili 'a e lea ha fu'u tokolahi pehē 'o kau kiate ia; pea faka'ikai'í 'a e folofola lelei 'a Kalaisí, mo e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá, mo e me'a-foaki 'o e Laumālie Mā'oní'oní, pea ta'ofi 'a e mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oní'oní, 'o taukae ki he palani lahi 'o e huhu'í, 'a ia kuo teuteu'í ma'amoutolú?

9 'Oku mou 'ilo koā kapau te mou fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, 'e hanga 'e he mālohi 'o e huhu'í mo e toetu'ú, 'a ia 'oku 'ia Kalaisí, 'o 'omi kimoutolu ke mou tu'u 'i he mā pea mo e ongo'í 'o e halaia fakamanavahē 'i he fakamaau 'o e 'Otuá?

10 Pea hangē ko e mālohi 'o e fakamaau totonú, he 'oku 'ikai fa'a lava 'o ta'ofi 'a e fakamaau totonú, kuo pau ke mou 'alu atu ki he ano 'o e afi mo e maka-vela 'a ia 'oku 'ikai fa'a tāmata'í 'a hono ngaahi uló, pea 'oku 'alu hake 'a hono kohú 'o ta'engata pea ta'engata, pea ko e ano 'o e afi mo e maka-vela ko iá ko e fakamamahi ta'engata.

11 'Oiauē kapau ko ia, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, mou fakatomala, pea hū 'i he matapā fāsi'í, pea 'alu atu 'i he hala 'a ia 'oku lausi'í kae 'oua ke mou ma'u 'a e mo'ui ta'engata.

12 'Oiauē mou fakapotopoto; ko e hā ha me'a ke u toe lea'aki atu kiate kimoutolú?

13 Ko hono faka'osí, 'oku ou lea māvae kiate kimoutolu kae 'oua ke tau fē'iloaki 'i he 'ao 'o e fakamaau lelei 'o e 'Otuá, 'a ia ko e fakamaau'anga 'oku taa'í 'aki 'a e kau fai angahala 'a e ilifia mo e manavahē faka'ulia. 'Ēmeni.

Behold, will ye reject these words? Will ye reject the words of the prophets; and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?

Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?

And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ye must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.

O then, my beloved brethren, repent ye, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until ye shall obtain eternal life.

O be wise; what can I say more?

Finally, I bid you farewell, until I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which bar striketh the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

Sēkope 7

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'osi mei ai 'a e ngaahi ta'u 'e ni'ihī, na'e ha'u ha tangata ki he kau Nīfai, 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko Seialemi.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata ke ne malanga 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kakaí, pea fakahā kiate kinautolu 'e 'ikai totonu ke 'i ai ha Kalaisi. Pea na'á ne malanga 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi 'a ia na'e fakahekeheke ki he kakaí; pea na'á ne fai 'eni koe'uhí ke ne iku 'i 'a e tokāteline 'a Kalaisí.
- 3 Pea na'á ne ngāue faivelenga koe'uhi ke ne kākaa'í 'a e loto 'o e kakaí, 'o ne fakahee'í ai 'a e loto 'o e tokolahi; pea 'i he'ene 'ilo'í ko au, Sēkope, na'á ku ma'u 'a e tui kia Kalaisi 'a ia 'e hā'ele mai, na'á ne feinga lahi ke ma'u ha faingamālie ke ne ha'u ai kiate au.
- 4 Pea ko e tangata poto ia, pea na'á ne ma'u ha 'ilo kakato ki he lea 'a e kakaí; ko ia, na'á ne lava ai 'o ngāue 'aki 'a e lea fakahekeheke lahi, mo ngāue 'aki 'a e ivi lahi 'i he lea, 'o fakatatau ki he mālohi 'o e tēvoló.
- 5 Pea na'á ne 'amanaki ke faka'auha 'a 'eku tuí, neongo 'a e ngaahi fakahā lahi pea mo e ngaahi me'a lahi 'a ia kuó u mamata ki ai 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'a ko 'ení; he kuó u mamata mo'oni ki ha kau 'āngelo, pea na'a nau tauhi au. Kae 'uma'ā foki, kuó u fanongo ki he le'ó 'o e 'Eiki 'oku folofola mai kiate au 'i he folofola mo'oni mei he taimi ki he taimi; ko ia, na'e 'ikai fá'a lava ke ue'í au.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne ha'u kiate au, pea na'e anga peheni 'ene lea kiate au, 'o pehē: 'E hoku tokoua ko Sēkope, kuó u feinga lahi ke ma'u ha faingamālie ke u lea ai kiate koe; he kuó u fanongo ai, peá u 'ilo'í foki 'oku lahi ho'ofononga holo, 'o malanga 'aki 'a e me'a 'a ia 'okú ke ui ko e ongoongolelé, pe ko e tokāteline 'a Kalaisí.
- 7 Pea kuó ke kākaa'í 'a e tokolahi 'o e kakaí ni 'o nau liliu 'a e hala totonu 'o e 'Otuá, 'o 'ikai tauhi 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé 'a ia ko e hala totonú; pea liliu 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé 'o hū ki ha tokotaha 'a ia 'okú ke pehē 'e hā'ele mai 'o ka hili ange 'a e ngaahi ta'u 'e lau teau mei heni. Pea ko 'eni vakai, ko au, Seialemi, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe ko e lea taukae 'eni ki he 'Otuá; he 'oku 'ikai 'ilo'í 'e ha tangata 'e toko taha 'a e ngaahi me'a peheé; he 'oku 'ikai te ne fá'a lava 'o fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'a 'e hokó. Pea na'e anga pehē hono fakakikihi 'i au 'e Seialemi.

Jacob 7

And now it came to pass after some years had passed away, there came a man among the people of Nephi, whose name was Sherem.

And it came to pass that he began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ. And he preached many things which were flattering unto the people; and this he did that he might overthrow the doctrine of Christ.

And he labored diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the people, insomuch that he did lead away many hearts; and he knowing that I, Jacob, had faith in Christ who should come, he sought much opportunity that he might come unto me.

And he was learned, that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, and much power of speech, according to the power of the devil.

And he had hope to shake me from the faith, notwithstanding the many revelations and the many things which I had seen concerning these things; for I truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me. And also, I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time; wherefore, I could not be shaken.

And it came to pass that he came unto me, and on this wise did he speak unto me, saying: Brother Jacob, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you; for I have heard and also know that thou goest about much, preaching that which ye call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.

And ye have led away much of this people that they pervert the right way of God, and keep not the law of Moses which is the right way; and convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which ye say shall come many hundred years hence. And now behold, I, Sherem, declare unto you that this is blasphemy; for no man knoweth of such things; for he cannot tell of things to come. And after this manner did Sherem contend against me.

8 Kae vakai, na'e lilingi hifo 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a hono Laumālie ki hoku laumālié, ko ia na'á ku lava ai 'o veuveuki ia 'i he'ene ngaahi lea kotoa pē.

9 Peá u pehē ange kiate ia: 'Okú ke faka'ikai'i koá 'a e Kalaisi ko ia 'e hā'ele mai? Pea na'á ne pehē: Kapau 'oku totonu ke 'i ai ha Kalaisi, 'e 'ikai te u faka'ikai'i ia; ka 'oku ou 'ilo'i 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha Kalaisi, pea kuo 'ikai ke 'i ai, pea 'e 'ikai ai pē ke 'i ai ia.

10 Peá u pehē ange kiate ia: 'Okú ke tui koā ki he ngaahi folofolá? Peá ne pehē, 'Io.

11 Peá u pehē ange kiate ia: Tā 'oku 'ikai mahino ia kiate koe; he ko e mo'oni 'oku nau fakamo'oni kia Kalaisi. Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe kuo te'eki ai ha palōfita 'e tohi, pe kikite ta'e-te-nau lea 'o kau ki he Kalaisi ko iá.

12 Pea 'oku 'ikai ngata ai—ka kuo fakahā mai kiate au, he kuó u fanongo mo mamata ki ai; pea kuo fakahā foki ia kiate au 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni; ko ia, 'oku ou 'ilo kapau 'e 'ikai fai ha fakalelei kuo pau ke mole 'a e fá'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne pehē mai kiate au: Fakahā mai kiate au ha faka'ilonga 'i he mālohi ko ia 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'a ia 'okú ke pehē 'okú ke 'ilo lahi ki aí.

14 Peá u pehē ange kiate ia: Ko e hā au ke u 'ahi'ahi'i 'a e 'Otuá ke fakahā kiate koe ha faka'ilonga 'o kau ki he me'a 'a ia 'okú ke 'ilo'i 'oku mo'oni? Ka te ke faka'ikai'i pē ia, koe'uhi he 'okú ke 'o e tēvoló. Ka neongo iá, ke 'oua na'a fai 'a hoku lotó; ka 'o kapau 'e te'ia koe 'e he 'Otuá, tuku ke hoko ia ko ha faka'ilonga kiate koe 'oku 'iate ia 'a e mālohi, 'i he langí pea mo e māmaní fakatou'osi; kae 'uma'ā foki, 'e hā'ele mai 'a e Kalaisi ko iá. Pea ke fai ho finangaló, 'e 'Eiki, kae 'ikai ko hoku lotó.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Sēkope, 'i he 'osi 'a 'eku lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e tō kiate ia 'a e māfima'fi 'o e 'Eikí, 'o tupu ai ha'ane mape'e hifo ki he kekekelé. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fafanga 'i ia 'i ha ngaahi 'aho lahi.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne pehē ki he kakaí: fakataha kotoa mai 'apongipongi, he te u mate; ko ia, 'oku ou fie lea ki he kakaí 'i he te'eki ai te u maté.

But behold, the Lord God poured in his Spirit into my soul, insomuch that I did confound him in all his words.

And I said unto him: Deniest thou the Christ who shall come? And he said: If there should be a Christ, I would not deny him; but I know that there is no Christ, neither has been, nor ever will be.

And I said unto him: Believest thou the scriptures? And he said, Yea.

And I said unto him: Then ye do not understand them; for they truly testify of Christ. Behold, I say unto you that none of the prophets have written, nor prophesied, save they have spoken concerning this Christ.

And this is not all—it has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

And I said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which thou knowest to be true? Yet thou wilt deny it, because thou art of the devil. Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come. And thy will, O Lord, be done, and not mine.

And it came to pass that when I, Jacob, had spoken these words, the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth. And it came to pass that he was nourished for the space of many days.

And it came to pass that he said unto the people: Gather together on the morrow, for I shall die; wherefore, I desire to speak unto the people before I shall die.

- 17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he pongipongi haké, kuo fakataha mai 'a e fu'u kakai tokolahī; pea na'á ne lea mahinongofua kiate kinautolu 'o ne faka'ikai' 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuó ne ako' i kiate kinautolú, mo ne fakamo'oni' i 'oku 'i ai ha Kalaisi, mo e mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni' oní, pea mo e tauhi mai 'a e kau 'āngeló.
- 18 Pea na'á ne lea mahinongofua kiate kinautolu, kuo kākaa' i ia 'e he mālohi 'o e tēvoló. Pea na'á ne lea 'o kau ki heli, mo e ta'engata, pea mo e tautea ta'engata.
- 19 Pea pehē 'e ia: 'Oku ou manavasi' i na'a kuó u fai 'a e angahala 'oku 'ikai fa' a fakamolemoleá, he kuó u loi ki he 'Otuá, he na'á ku faka'ikai' 'a e Kalaisi, peá u pehē na'á ku tui ki he ngaahi folofolá; ka 'oku nau fakamo'oni' i mo'oni ia. Pea ko e me'a 'i he'eku loi pehē ki he 'Otuá 'oku ou manavahē lahi telia na'a kovi lahi 'a e tu'unga te u 'i ai; ka 'oku ou vete ki he 'Otuá.
- 20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi 'a 'ene lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ní na'e 'ikai te ne lava 'o toe lea 'aki ha me'a, peá ne mate leva.
- 21 Pea 'i he vakai 'e he fu'u kakai tokolahī na'á ne lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'i he'ene 'amanaki ke maté, na'a nau fu'u ofo lahi 'aupito; pea na'e 'alu hifo 'a e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá kiate kinautolu, pea na'e fakavaivai' 'a kinautolu 'o nau tō ai ki he kekekelé.
- 22 Ko 'eni, na'e fakafiefia 'a e me'á ni kiate au, ko Sēkope, he kuó u kole ia mei he'eku Tamai 'a ia 'oku 'i he langi ke fakahoko ia; he kuó ne 'afio' i 'a 'eku tangi, peá ne tali 'a 'eku lotú.
- 23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe fokotu'u 'a e melinó mo e 'ofa 'i he 'Otuá 'i he kakaí; pea na'a nau fakatotolo 'i he ngaahi folofolá, 'o 'ikai toe tokanga ki he ngaahi lea 'a e tangata angakoví ni.
- 24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e filio' i 'e he kakaí ha ngaahi founga lahi ke toe 'omi pea fakafoki 'a e kau Leimaná ki he 'ilo' i 'o e mo'oni; ka na'e ta'e aonga ia kotoa, ko'e uhi he na'a nau manako 'i he ngaahi taú mo e lilingi totó, pea na'a nau ma'u ha tāufehi' a ta'engata kiate kinautolu, ko honau kāingá. Pea na'a nau feinga 'i he mālohi 'o honau nimá ke faka'auha 'a kinautolu ma'u pē.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

And he spake plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. And he spake of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

And he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him. And because I have thus lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.

And it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost.

And when the multitude had witnessed that he spake these things as he was about to give up the ghost, they were astonished exceedingly; insomuch that the power of God came down upon them, and they were overcome that they fell to the earth.

Now, this thing was pleasing unto me, Jacob, for I had requested it of my Father who was in heaven; for he had heard my cry and answered my prayer.

And it came to pass that peace and the love of God was restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man.

And it came to pass that many means were devised to reclaim and restore the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; but it all was vain, for they delighted in wars and bloodshed, and they had an eternal hatred against us, their brethren. And they sought by the power of their arms to destroy us continually.

25 Ko ia, na'e hanga 'e he kakai 'o Nīfai 'o langa ha ngaahi kolotau ke malu'i kinautolu meiate kinautolu 'aki 'enau ngaahi me'ataú, pea 'i honau mālohí kotoa, 'o nau falala ki he 'Otuá mo e maka 'o honau fakamo'uí; ko ia, na'a nau kei hoko pē ko e kau ikuna 'o honau ngaahi filí.

26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Sēkope, na'á ku faka'au 'o motu'a; pea ko e me'a 'i he tauhi 'a e lekooti 'o e kakaí ni 'i he ngaahi peleti kehe 'a Nīfai, ko ia, 'oku ou faka'osi ai 'a e lekōtí ni, 'o fakapapau atu kuó u tohi 'o fakatautu mo hono kakato 'o 'eku 'iló, 'i he'eku pehē na'e mole atu 'a e taimi 'iate kimautolu, pea na'e mole atu foki mo 'emau mo'uí 'o hangē ko e misi kiate kimautolu, he ko ha kakai ta'elata mo loto-mamahi 'a kimautolu, ko e kau 'auhē, 'a ia kuo kapusi ki tu'a mei Selūsalema, 'a ia na'e fanau'i 'i he mamahi, 'i ha maomaonganoa, pea fehi'anekina 'i 'e homau kāingá, 'o tupu ai ha ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi fakakikihi; ko ia, na'a mau mo'ui mamahi 'i homau ngaahi 'ahó kotoa.

27 Pea ko au, Sēkope, na'á ku vakai kuo pau ke vave ha'aku 'alu hifo ki hoku fa'itoká; ko ia, na'á ku pehē ki hoku foha ko 'Īnosí: To'o 'a e ngaahi peletí ni. Pea u tala kiate ia 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuo fekau kiate au 'e hoku tokoua ko Nīfai, pea na'á ne palōmesi te ne talangofua ki he ngaahi fekaú. Pea 'oku ou faka'osi 'a 'eku tohi 'i he ngaahi peletí ni, 'a ia ko ha tohi 'oku sí'isi'i; pea 'oku ou lea fakamāvae kiate ia 'a ia 'oku laú, 'o u faka'amu 'e lau ha tokolahi 'o hoku kāingá 'i he'eku ngaahi leá. 'E kāinga, mou nofo ā.

Wherefore, the people of Nephi did fortify against them with their arms, and with all their might, trusting in the God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yet, conquerors of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I, Jacob, began to be old; and the record of this people being kept on the other plates of Nephi, wherefore, I conclude this record, declaring that I have written according to the best of my knowledge, by saying that the time passed away with us, and also our lives passed away like as it were unto us a dream, we being a lonesome and a solemn people, wanderers, cast out from Jerusalem, born in tribulation, in a wilderness, and hated of our brethren, which caused wars and contentions; wherefore, we did mourn out our days.

And I, Jacob, saw that I must soon go down to my grave; wherefore, I said unto my son Enos: Take these plates. And I told him the things which my brother Nephi had commanded me, and he promised obedience unto the commands. And I make an end of my writing upon these plates, which writing has been small; and to the reader I bid farewell, hoping that many of my brethren may read my words. Brethren, adieu.

Ko e Tohi ‘a ‘Īnosí

- 1 Vakai, na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ko au, ‘Īnosí, ‘i he‘eku ‘ilo ko ‘eku tamaí ko ha tangata angatonu ia—he na‘á ne akonekina au ‘i he‘ene leá, pea ‘i he akonaki mo e enginaki ‘a e ‘Eikí—pea ‘oku ou fakafeta ‘i ki he huafa ‘o hoku ‘Otuá koe‘uhi ko ia—
- 2 Pea te u fakamatala kiate kimoutolu ‘o kau ki he‘eku fāinga ‘i he ‘ao ‘o e ‘Otuá, ‘i he te‘eki ai ke u ma‘u ha fakamolemole ‘o ‘eku ngaahi angahalá.
- 3 Vakai, na‘á ku ‘alu ke tuli ‘a e fanga manu ‘i he ngaahi vaó; pea ko e ngaahi lea ‘a ia kuó u fanongo tu‘o lahi ki hono lea ‘aki ‘e he‘eku tamaí ‘o kau ki he mo‘ui ta‘engatá pea mo e fiefia ‘a e kau mā‘oní‘oní, na‘e tō mamafa ia ki hoku lotó.
- 4 Pea na‘e holi tu‘u ‘a hoku laumālié; peá u tū‘ulutui hifo ‘i he ‘ao ‘o hoku Tupu‘angá, pea na‘á ku tangi kiate ia ‘i he fu‘u lotu fakamātoato mo e kole tāuma‘u koe‘uhi ko hoku laumālie ‘o‘okú; peá u tangi kiate ia ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e ‘ahó; ‘io, pea ‘i he hoko mai ‘a e po‘ulí na‘á ku kei hiki hake ‘a hoku le‘ó ke mā‘olunga ko ia na‘e a‘u hake ia ki he ngaahi langí.
- 5 Pea na‘e ongo mai ha le‘o kiate au, ‘o pehē: ‘E ‘Īnosí, kuo fakamolemole‘i ho‘o ngaahi angahalá, pea ‘e tāpuekina koe.
- 6 Pea ko au, ‘Īnosí, na‘á ku ‘ilo‘i ‘oku ‘ikai lava ke loi ‘a e ‘Otuá; ko ia, na‘e matafi atu ‘a ‘eku ongo‘i halaiá.
- 7 Peá u pehē ange: ‘E ‘Eiki, ‘oku fai fēfee‘i ia?
- 8 Pea folofola mai ia kiate au: Ko e me‘a ‘i ho‘o tui kia Kalaisi, ‘a ia kuo te‘eki ai te ke fanongo pe mamata ki aí. Pea ‘e ‘osi atu ‘a e ngaahi ta‘u lahi pea te ne toki fakahā ia ‘e ia ‘i he kakanó; ko ia, ke ke ‘alu, he kuo fakama‘a koe tu‘unga ‘i ho‘o tuí.
- 9 Ko ‘eni, na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he‘eku fanongo ki he ngaahi folofola ní na‘e kamata ke u ongo‘i ha faka‘amu ke monū‘ia ‘a hoku kāinga, ko e kau Nifái; ko ia, na‘á ku lotu ‘aki ‘a e ivi kotoa ‘o hoku laumālié ki he ‘Otuá koe‘uhi ko kinautolu.

The Book of Enos

Behold, it came to pass that I, Enos, knowing my father that he was a just man—for he taught me in his language, and also in the nurture and admonition of the Lord—and blessed be the name of my God for it—

And I will tell you of the wrestle which I had before God, before I received a remission of my sins.

Behold, I went to hunt beasts in the forests; and the words which I had often heard my father speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the saints, sunk deep into my heart.

And my soul hungered; and I kneeled down before my Maker, and I cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul; and all the day long did I cry unto him; yea, and when the night came I did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou shalt be blessed.

And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was swept away.

And I said: Lord, how is it done?

And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee whole.

Now, it came to pass that when I had heard these words I began to feel a desire for the welfare of my brethren, the Nephites; wherefore, I did pour out my whole soul unto God for them.

10 Pea 'i he lolotonga 'a 'eku fefa'uhi pehē 'i he laumālié, vakai, na'e toe ongo mai 'a e le'o 'o e 'Eikí ki hoku 'atamaí, 'o folofola: Te u 'a'ahi ki ho kāingá 'o fakatau ki he'enau faivelenga 'i he tauhi 'a 'eku ngaahi fekaú. Kuó u foaki kiate kinautolu 'a e fonuá ni, pea ko e fonua toputapu ia; pea 'e 'ikai te u fakamala'ia 'i ia kae ngata pē 'i he angahala; ko ia, te u 'a'ahi ki ho kāinga 'o hangē ko ia kuó u lea'akí; pea te u tuku hifó 'a e tautea ki he'enau ngaahi angahalá 'i he mamahi ki honau 'ulú.

11 Pea ko au, 'Inosi, 'i he hili leva 'eku fanongo ki he ngaahi folofola ní, na'e kamata ke tu'u ma'u ta'e-veiveiua 'a 'eku tui ki he 'Eikí; peá u lotu kiate ia 'i ha ngaahi fāinga fuoloa koe'uhi ko hoku kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili leva 'a 'eku lotu mo e feinga 'i he faivelenga kakató, na'e folofola mai kiate au 'a e 'Eikí: Te u foaki kiate koe 'o fakatau mo ho'o ngaahi holí koe'uhi ko ho'o tuí.

13 Pea ko 'eni vakai, ko e me'a 'eni na'á ku fie ma'u meiate iá—kapau 'e hinga 'a hoku kakai, ko e kau Nifái, ki he maumau-fonó, pea nau 'auha 'i ha founga, kae 'ikai 'auha 'a e kau Leimaná, 'e fakatolonga 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ha lekooti 'o hoku kakai, ko e kau Nifái; neongo ka fai ia 'i he māfima'í 'o hono to'ukupu mā'oní'oní, koe'uhi ke lava 'o 'omai ia ki he kau Leimaná 'i ha 'aho 'amui, koe'uhí, ke lava nai ke 'omi 'a kinautolu ki he fakamo'uí—

14 He ko e lolotonga ní na'e ta'e'aonga 'a 'emau ngaahi feinga ke fakatafoki 'a kinautolu ki he tui mo'oní. Pea nau fuakava 'i he'enau 'itá, kapau 'e faingamālie, te nau faka'auha 'a 'emau ngaahi lekōtí mo kinautolu, kae 'uma'á mo e ngaahi talatukufakaholo kotoa pē 'a 'emau ngaahi tamaí.

15 Ko ia, ko e me'a 'i he'eku 'ilo 'oku lava 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'o fakatolonga 'a 'emau ngaahi lekōtí, na'á ku lotu ta'etuku ai kiate ia, he kuó ne folofola mai kiate au: 'Ilonga ha me'a te ke kole 'i he tuí, 'o tui te ke ma'u ia 'i he huafa 'o Kalaisí, te ke ma'u ia.

16 Pea na'á ku ma'u 'a e tuí, peá u tangi ki he 'Otuá ke ne fakatolonga 'a e ngaahi lekōtí; pea na'á ne fuakava kiate au te ne 'omai ia ki he kau Leimaná 'i he taimi te ne finangalo ki aí.

And while I was thus struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments. I have given unto them this land, and it is a holy land; and I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity; wherefore, I will visit thy brethren according as I have said; and their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.

And after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord; and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to thy desires, because of thy faith.

And now behold, this was the desire which I desired of him—that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation—

For at the present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. And they swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers.

Wherefore, I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records, I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask in faith, believing that ye shall receive in the name of Christ, ye shall receive it.

And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

17 Pea ko au, 'Īnosi, na'á ku 'ilo'í 'e hoko ia 'o hangē ko e fuakava kuó ne fai; ko ia, na'e fiamālie 'a hoku laumālié.

18 Pea na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kiate au: Kuo fie ma'u foki 'e ho'o ngaahi tamaí meiate au 'a e me'á ni; pea 'e fai kiate kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau tuí; he 'oku hangē 'enau tuí ko ho'o tuí.

19 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, 'Īnosi, na'á ku 'alu holo 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kau Nīfái, 'o kikite'í 'a e ngaahi me'a 'e hoko, 'o fakamo'oni ki he ngaahi me'a kuó u fanongo mo mamata ki aí.

20 Pea 'oku ou fakamo'oni'í na'e feinga faivelenga 'a e kau Nīfái ke fakatafoki'í 'a e kau Leimaná ki he tui mo'oni ki he 'Otuá. Ka na'e ta'e'aonga 'a 'emau ngaahi ngāue; na'e tu'u ma'u 'a 'enau tāufehi'á, pea na'e angi 'a kinautolu 'e honau 'ulungāanga ková 'o nau hoko ai ko ha kakai hehengi, mo loto-fita'a, mo manako 'i he lilingi totó, pea nau fonu 'i he tauhi tamapuá mo e 'ulí; 'o nau kai 'a e fanga manu fekai; pea nau nofo fale fehikitaki, 'o hēhē holo 'i he maomaonganoá kuo kofu 'aki honau kongalotó 'a e kili'í manu si'isi'í, pea tekefua 'a honau 'ulú; pea ko honau faivá ko e ngāue 'aki 'a e kaufaná, mo e heletā pikó, pea mo e tokí. Pea na'e 'i ai honau tokolahi na'e 'ikai te nau kai ha me'a ka ko e kakano'í manu 'ota pē; pea na'a nau feinga ma'u ai pē ke faka'auha 'a kimautolu.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ngoue'í 'a e kekekelé 'e he kau Nīfái, 'o nau ngoue'í 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga kēleni kotoa pē, pea mo e fo'í 'akau, mo tauhi 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahi, pea mo e ngaahi takanga 'o e fanga pulu kehekehe 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē, mo e fanga kosi, mo e fanga kosi kaivao, kae 'uma'ā mo e fanga hoosi tokolahi.

22 Pea na'e 'i ai ha kau palōfita tokolahi 'aupito 'iate kimautolu. Pea ko ha kakai kia-kekeva 'a e kakaí, pea na'e 'ikai te nau fie 'ilo ki he ngaahi me'a 'a e 'Otuá.

And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest.

And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine.

And now it came to pass that I, Enos, went about among the people of Nephi, prophesying of things to come, and testifying of the things which I had heard and seen.

And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey; dwelling in tents, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; and they were continually seeking to destroy us.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, and flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses.

And there were exceedingly many prophets among us. And the people were a stiffnecked people, hard to understand.

23 Pea na'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha me'a ka ko e fu'u lea mālohi fau, mo e malanga mo hono kikite 'i 'o e ngaahi tau, mo e ngaahi fakakikihí, mo e ngaahi faka'auha, pea mo e fa'a fakamanatu 'i ai pē kiate kinautolu 'a e maté mo hono fuoloa 'o e ta'engata, mo e ngaahi tautea mo e māfimaifi 'o e 'Otuá, pea mo e ngaahi me'a ni kotoa pē—'o toutou ue'i hake 'a kinautolu ke nau 'i he manavahē ki he 'Eikí. 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu na'e 'ikai ha me'a kehe mei he ngaahi me'a ni, mo e lea mahinongofua 'aupito, 'e ta'ofi 'a kinautolu mei ha 'anau 'alu vave hifo ki he faka'auhá. Pea ko e anga 'eni 'o 'eku tohi 'o kau kiate kinautolú.

24 Pea na'a ku mamata ki he ngaahi tau 'i he vaha 'a 'o e kau Nifái mo e kau Leimaná lolotonga hoku ngaahi 'ahó.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a ku faka'au 'o motu'a, pea kuo 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e teau fitungofulu mā hiva talu mei he taimi na'e 'alu ai 'a 'emau tamai ko Līhá mei Selūsalemá.

26 Pea na'a ku 'ilo 'i kuo pau ke vave ha'aku 'alu hifo ki hoku fá'itoká, kuo ue'i au 'e he mālohi 'o e 'Otuá kuo pau ke u malanga mo kikite ki he kakaí ni, 'o fakahā 'a e folofolá 'o fakatatau ki he mo'oni 'a ia 'oku 'ia Kalaisí. Pea kuó u fakahā ia 'i he kotoa hoku ngaahi 'ahó, peá u fiefia ai 'o lahi ange 'i he ngaahi me'a 'o e māmaní.

27 Pea 'oku vave mai 'a 'eku fononga atu ki he potu 'o hoku mālōlō'angá, 'a ia 'oku 'i hoku Huhu'í; he 'oku ou 'ilo te u mālōlō 'iate ia. Pea 'oku ou fiefia 'i he 'aho 'o ka 'ai ai 'e hoku sino 'au'auhá ni 'a e ta'e-fa'a-'au'auhá, peá u tu'u 'i hono 'aó; te u toki mamata ki hono fofongá 'i he fiefia, pea te ne folofola mai kiate au: Ha'u kiate au, 'a koe 'oku monū'ia, 'oku 'i ai ha potu kuo teuteu mo'ou 'i he ngaahi nofo'anga 'o 'eku Tamaí. 'Ēmeni.

And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them.

And I saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.

And it came to pass that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem.

And I saw that I must soon go down to my grave, having been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach and prophesy unto this people, and declare the word according to the truth which is in Christ. And I have declared it in all my days, and have rejoiced in it above that of the world.

And I soon go to the place of my rest, which is with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto me: Come unto me, ye blessed, there is a place prepared for you in the mansions of my Father. Amen.

Ko e Tohi 'a Seilomí

- 1 Ko 'eni vakai, ko au, Seilomi, 'oku ou tohi ha ngaahi lea si'i 'o fakatatau ki he fekau 'a 'eku tamai, ko 'Inosí, koe'uhi ke lava 'o tauhi homau tohi hohokó.
- 2 Pea ko e me'a 'i he si'isi'i 'a e ngaahi peleti ko 'ení, pea koe'uhi 'oku tohi 'a e ngaahi me'a ni 'i he 'uhinga ke 'aonga ki homau kāinga ko e kau Leimaná, ko ia, 'oku 'aonga ai ke u tohi ha me'a si'i pē; ka 'e 'ikai te u tohi 'a e ngaahi me'a 'oku kau ki he 'eku kikité, pe ko 'eku ngaahi fakahaá. He ko e hā mo ha toe me'a te u lava 'o tohi 'o lahi ange 'i he me'a kuo tohi 'e he 'eku ngaahi tamai? He 'ikai koā kuo nau fakahā 'a e palani 'o e fakamo'uí? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu: 'Io; pea 'oku fe'unga 'eni kiate au.
- 3 Vakai, 'oku 'aonga ke fai ha ngāue lahi 'i he kakaí ni, koe'uhi ko e fefeka 'o honau lotó, mo e tuli 'a honau telingá, mo e fakapo'uli 'o honau 'atamaí, mo e kekeva 'o honau kiá; ka neongo iá, 'oku kei fu'u 'alo'ofa lahi kiate kinautolu 'a e 'Otuá, pea kuo te 'eki ai ke ne tafi'i 'a kinautolu mei he funga 'o e fonuá.
- 4 Pea 'oku 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'iate kinautolu kuo ma'u ha ngaahi fakahā lahi, he 'oku 'ikai ke nau kia-kekeva kotoa pē. Pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku 'ikai kia-kekeva ka 'oku nau ma'u 'a e tuí, 'oku nau feohi vāofi mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'a ia 'oku fakahā mai ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau tuí.
- 5 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, kuo 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e uangeau, pea kuo faka'au 'o mālohi 'a e kau Nīfai 'i he fonuá. Na 'a nau feinga ke tauhi 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé mo e 'aho sāpaté ke toputapu ki he 'Eiki. Pea na 'e 'ikai te nau lea kapekape; pe te nau lea taukae ki he 'Eiki. Pea na 'e fu'u fefeka 'aupito 'a e ngaahi lao 'o e fonuá.
- 6 Pea na 'a nau mafola 'i he kongā lahi 'o e funga 'o e fonuá, pea pehē mo e kau Leimaná. Pea na 'a nau fu'u tokolahi ange 'iate kinautolu na 'e 'o e kau Nīfai; pea na 'a nau manako 'i he fakapoó pea na 'a nau inu 'a e toto 'o e fanga manú.

The Book of Jarom

Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

And as these plates are small, and as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our brethren the Lamanites, wherefore, it must needs be that I write a little; but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, nor of my revelations. For what could I write more than my fathers have written? For have not they revealed the plan of salvation? I say unto you, Yea; and this sufficeth me.

Behold, it is expedient that much should be done among this people, because of the hardness of their hearts, and the deafness of their ears, and the blindness of their minds, and the stiffness of their necks; nevertheless, God is exceedingly merciful unto them, and has not as yet swept them off from the face of the land.

And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked. And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith.

And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

And they were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they were exceedingly more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts.

7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau ha'u tu'o lahi ke tau mo kimautolu, ko e kau Nifai. Ka ko homau ngaahi tu'i mo homau kau takimu'á ko e kau tangata ivi lahi 'i he tui ki he 'Eiki; pea na'a nau ako'i ki he kakaí 'a e ngaahi hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eiki; ko ia, na'a mau matu'uaki 'a e kau Leimaná 'o teke'i 'a kinautolu mei homau ngaahi fonuá, 'o mau kamata ke langa kolotau 'i homau ngaahi koló, pe ko ha ngaahi potu pē 'i homau tofi'á.

8 Pea na'a mau fakatokolahi 'o fu'u tokolahi 'aupito, pea mafola atu 'i he funga 'o e fonuá, 'o mau faka'au 'o fu'u koloa'ia 'i he koula, mo e siliva, mo e ngaahi me'a mahu'inga, mo e ngaahi ngāue fakatufunga lelei 'aupito 'o e 'akau, pea 'i he ngaahi langa fale, mo e ngaahi me'a ngāue ukamea, pea mo e ukamea foki mo e kopa, mo e palasa mo e sitila, 'o mau ngaohi 'a e ngaahi me'a ngāue fakatufunga kehekehe 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē ke ngoue'i 'aki 'a e kelekelé, pea mo e ngaahi mahafu tau—'io, 'a e ngahau 'oku mata māsila, mo e hōfangahau, mo e ngahau iiki, mo e tao, pea mo e ngaahi teuteu kotoa pē ki he tau.

9 Pea 'i he'emaui teuteu pehē ke fetaulaki mo e kau Leimaná, na'e 'ikai te nau lava ai ha me'a kiate kimautolu. Ka na'e fakamo'oni'i hono mo'oni 'o e folofola 'a e 'Eiki 'a ia na'á ne folofola 'aki ki he'emaui ngaahi tamaí, 'o pehē: Kapau te mou tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú te mou tu'umalie 'i he fonuá.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e valoki'i 'e he kau palōfita 'a e 'Eiki 'a e kakaí 'o Nifai, 'o fakatatau ki he folofola 'a e 'Otuá, he kapau 'e 'ikai te nau tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekaú, 'o nau tō ki he maumau-fonó, 'e faka'auha 'a kinautolu mei he funga 'o e fonuá.

11 Ko ia, na'e ngāue faivelenga 'a e kau palōfitá, mo e kau taula'eiki, mo e kau akonaki, 'o nau na'ina'i ki he kakaí 'i he fa'a kātaki fuoloa ke nau ngāue faivelenga; pea nau akonaki 'aki 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé, mo hono 'uhinga na'e fokotu'u ai iá; 'o fakaloto'i 'a kinautolu ke 'amanaki atu ki he Mīsaí, pea tui kiate ia 'e hā'ele mai 'o hangē kuó ne 'osi hā'ele mai. Pea ko e anga 'eni 'o 'enau ako'i 'a kinautolú.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he'enau fai peheé na'a nau ta'ofi 'a hono faka'auha 'o kinautolu mei he funga 'o e fonuá; he na'a nau huhuhuhu 'i ke mamahi honau lotó 'aki 'a e folofolá, mo ue'i hake ma'u pē 'a kinautolu ke nau fakatomala.

And it came to pass that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord; wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.

And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war—yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war.

And thus being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us. But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.

Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already was. And after this manner did they teach them.

And it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being destroyed upon the face of the land; for they did prick their hearts with the word, continually stirring them up unto repentance.

- 13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e uangeau mā tolungofulu mā valu—'i he founa 'o e ngaahi tau, mo e ngaahi fakakikihi, mo e ngaahi maveuveu, 'i ha kongā lahi 'o e taimi ko iá.
- 14 Pea ko au, Seilomi, 'oku 'ikai te u tohi mo ha toe me'a lahi ange, he 'oku si'i 'a e ngaahi peletí. Kae vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, te mou lava 'o vakai 'i he ngaahi peleti kehe 'a Nīfai; he vakai, kuo tohi ai 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'o 'emau ngaahi tau, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi me'a na'e tohi 'e he ngaahi tu'í, pe ko e ngaahi me'a na'a nau fekau ke tohí.
- 15 Pea 'oku ou tuku 'a e ngaahi peletí ni ki he nima 'o hoku foha ko 'Amenai, koe' uhi ke tauhi ia 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi fekau kuo fai kiate au 'e he'eku ngaahi tamaí.

And it came to pass that two hundred and thirty and eight years had passed away—after the manner of wars, and contentions, and dissensions, for the space of much of the time.

And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are small. But behold, my brethren, ye can go to the other plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written.

And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son Omni, that they may be kept according to the commandments of my fathers.

Ko e Tohi ‘a ‘Amenai

- 1 Vakai, na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ko au, ‘Amenai, ‘i he fekau ‘i au ‘e he‘eku tamaí, ko Seilomí, ke u tohi ha me‘a ‘e ni‘ihi ki he ngaahi peletí ni ke fakatolonga homau tohi hohokó—
- 2 Ko ia, ‘i hoku ngaahi ‘ahó, ‘oku ou loto ke mou ‘ilo‘i na‘á ku tau lahi ‘aki ‘a e heletā ke malu‘i ‘a hoku kakai, ko e kau Nifái, mei ha‘anau mo‘ulalao ki he nima ‘o honau ngaahi fili, ko e kau Leimaná. Kae vakai, ko e tangata fai angahala foki au, pea kuo ‘ikai te u tauhi ‘a e ngaahi fono mo e ngaahi fekau ‘a e ‘Eikí ‘o hangē ko ia na‘e totonu ke u faí.
- 3 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē kuo ‘osi atu ‘a e ta‘u ‘e uangeau mā fitungofulu mā ono, pea na‘a mau ma‘u ‘a e melino ‘i he ngaahi fa‘ahita‘u lahi; pea kuo mau fehanganagai ‘i he ngaahi fa‘ahita‘u lahi mo e ngaahi tau mo e lilingi toto fakamanavahē. ‘Io, pea ‘ikai ia ko ia pē, ka kuo ‘osi atu ‘a e ta‘u ‘e uangeau mā valungofulu mā ua, pea kuó u tauhi ‘a e ngaahi peletí ni ‘o fakatatau ki he ngaahi fekau ‘a ‘eku ngaahi tamaí; pea u tuku ia ki hoku foha, ko ‘Amaloné. Pea ‘oku ou faka‘osi ‘eku tohí.
- 4 Pea ko ‘eni ko au, ‘Amalone, ‘oku ou tohi ‘a e ngaahi me‘a ‘oku ou tohí, ‘a ia ‘oku si‘i, ‘i he tohi ‘a ‘eku tamaí.
- 5 Vakai, na‘e hoko ‘o pehē kuo ‘osi atu ‘a e ta‘u ‘e tolungeau mā uofulu, pea kuo faka‘auha ‘a e kongā lahi ‘o e kau fai angahala taha ‘o e kau Nifái.
- 6 He na‘e ‘ikai finangalo ‘a e ‘Eikí ke tuku, hili ‘ene tataki atu ‘a kinautolu mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá pea mo ‘ene tauhi mo e malu‘i ‘a kinautolu ke ‘oua na‘a nau tō ki honau ngaahi filí, ‘io, na‘e ‘ikai te ne finangalo ke tuku ta‘e-fakamo‘oni‘i ‘a e ngaahi folofola, ‘a ia na‘á ne folofola ‘aki ki he‘emau ngaahi tamaí, ‘o pehē: Ka ‘ikai te mou tauhi ‘eku ngaahi fekaú, ‘e ‘ikai te mou tu‘umālie ‘i he fonuá.
- 7 Ko ia, na‘e ‘a‘ahi ‘a e ‘Eikí kiate kinautolu ‘aki ‘a e ngaahi tautea mamafa; ka neongo íá na‘á ne fakamo‘ui ‘a e kau mā‘oni‘oní ke ‘oua na‘a nau mate, ka na‘á ne fakahaofi ‘a kinautolu mei he nima ‘o honau ngaahi filí.
- 8 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ku tuku ‘a e ngaahi peletí ki hoku tokoua ko Kēmisi.

The Book of Omni

Behold, it came to pass that I, Omni, being commanded by my father, Jarom, that I should write somewhat upon these plates, to preserve our genealogy—

Wherefore, in my days, I would that ye should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my people, the Nephites, from falling into the hands of their enemies, the Lamanites. But behold, I of myself am a wicked man, and I have not kept the statutes and the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done.

And it came to pass that two hundred and seventy and six years had passed away, and we had many seasons of peace; and we had many seasons of serious war and bloodshed. Yea, and in fine, two hundred and eighty and two years had passed away, and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.

And now I, Amaron, write the things whatsoever I write, which are few, in the book of my father.

Behold, it came to pass that three hundred and twenty years had passed away, and the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed.

For the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, yea, he would not suffer that the words should not be verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land.

Wherefore, the Lord did visit them in great judgment; nevertheless, he did spare the righteous that they should not perish, but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.

9 Ko 'eni ko au, Kēmisi, 'oku ou tohi 'a e ngaahi me'a si'i 'a ia 'oku ou tohi, 'i he tohi pē ko ia 'a ia na'e tohi ai 'a hoku tokouá; he vakai, na'á ku sio ki hono faka'osi 'o e me'a na'á ne tohi, pea na'á ne tohi ia 'aki hono nima 'o'oná; pea na'á ne tohi ia 'i he 'aho na'á ne tuku mai ai ia kiate aú. Pea ko e founga 'eni 'oku mau tauhi ai 'a e ngaahi lekōtī, he 'oku tatau ia mo e ngaahi fekau 'a 'emau ngaahi tamaí. Pea 'oku ou faka'osi 'eku tohi.

10 Vakai ko au, 'Apinatomi, ko e foha au 'o Kēmisi. Vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku mamata ki he ngaahi tau lahi mo e fetēleni 'i he vaha 'a 'o hoku kakai, ko e kau Nifái, pea mo e kau Leimaná; pea ko au, kuó u to'o 'aki 'a 'eku heletā 'a akú 'a e mo'ui 'a e tokolahi 'o e kau Leimaná 'i he malu 'i hoku ngaahi kāingá.

11 Pea vakai, ko e lekooti 'o e kakaí ni kuo tohi 'i ha ngaahi peleti 'a ia 'oku tauhi 'e he ngaahi tu'í, 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi to'u tangatá; pea 'oku 'ikai te u 'ilo 'i ha fakahā ka ko ia pē kuo tohi, pe ko ha kikite; ko ia, 'oku fe'unga pē 'a ia kuo tohi. Pea 'oku ou faka'osi 'eku tohi.

12 Vakai, ko au 'Amalekai, ko e foha 'o 'Apinatomí. Vakai, te u lea si'i kiate kimoutolu 'o kau kia Mōsaia, 'a ia na'e fakanofu ko e tu'í ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá; he vakai, na'e fai mai ha fakatokanga kiate ia 'e he 'Eikí ke ne hola mei he fonua ko Nifái, pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'e tokanga ki he le'o 'o e 'Eikí ke 'alu fakataha mo ia mei he fonuá 'o 'alu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá—

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fai 'o hangē ko e fekau 'a e 'Eikí kiate iá. Pea na'a nau 'alu atu mei he fonuá ki he maomaonganoá, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'e fie tokanga ki he le'o 'o e 'Eikí; pea na'e tataki 'a kinautolu 'i he ngaahi malanga pea mo e ngaahi kikite lahi. Pea na'e akonaki 'i ma'u pē 'a kinautolu 'e he folofola 'a e 'Otuá; pea na'e tataki 'a kinautolu 'e he māfimaí 'o hono to'ukupú, 'i he maomaonganoá, kae 'oua kuo nau a'u hifo ki he fonua 'oku ui ko e fonua ko Seilahemalá.

14 Pea na'a nau 'ilo 'i ai ha kakai na'e ui ko e kakai 'o Seilahemalá. Ko 'eni, na'e 'i ai 'a e fiefia lahi 'aupito 'i he kakai 'o Seilahemalá; pea na'e fiefia lahi foki mo Seilahemala, ko e me'a 'i he fekau mai 'e he 'Eikí 'a e kakai 'o Mōsaiaí pea mo e ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá, 'a ia na'e 'i ai 'a e lekooti 'o e kau Siú.

Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our fathers. And I make an end.

Behold, I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. Behold, it came to pass that I saw much war and contention between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my brethren.

And behold, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations; and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither prophecy; wherefore, that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end.

Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness—

And it came to pass that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord; and they were led by many preachings and prophesying. And they were admonished continually by the word of God; and they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.

And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla. Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; and also Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.

15 Vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ilo'i 'e Mōsaia na'e ō mai 'a e kakai 'o Seilahemalá mei Selūsalema 'i he taimi na'e 'ave pōpula ai 'a Setikia ko e tu'i 'o Siutá, ki Pāpiloné.

16 Pea na'a nau fononga 'i he maomaonganoá, pea na'e 'omi 'a kinautolu 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí ki he kauvai 'e taha 'o e vai lahi, ki he fonua na'e 'ilo'i ai 'a kinautolu 'e Mōsaiá; pea na'a nau nofo ai 'o kamata mei he taimi ko iá.

17 Pea 'i he taimi na'e 'ilo'i ai 'a kinautolu 'e Mōsaiá, kuo nau faka'au 'o fu'u tokolahi 'aupito. Ka neongo iá, kuo nau fai ha ngaahi tau lahi pea mo e ngaahi fakakikihi lea na'e fu'u lalahi, pea kuo nau tō 'i he heletā mei he taimi ki he taimi; pea kuo faka'au 'o kovi 'a 'enau leá; pea kuo 'ikai ke nau 'omi ha ngaahi lekooti mo kinautolu; pea nau faka'ikai 'i 'oku 'i ai hanau Tupu'anga; pea na'e 'ikai mahino 'enau leá kia Mōsaia, pe ko e kakai 'o Mōsaiá.

18 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'e Mōsaia ke ako 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he'ene leá. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili honau ako 'i 'i he lea 'a Mōsaiá, na'e fakamatala 'i ange 'e Seilahemala 'a e tohi hohoko 'o 'ene ngaahi tamaí, 'o fakatatau ki he me'a na'á ne manatu'í; pea kuo tohi ia kae 'ikai 'i he ngaahi peleti ní.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakataha kātoa 'a e kakai 'o Seilahemalá, mo e kakai 'o Mōsaiá; pea na'e fili 'a Mōsaia ke hoko ko honau tu'i.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o Mōsaiá, na'e 'omi kiate ia ha fu'u maka 'a ia na'e tu'u ai ha ngaahi tongitongi; pea na'á ne fakamatala 'i 'a e ngaahi tongitongi 'i he foaki pea mo e māfimaí 'o e 'Otuá.

21 Pea na'a nau fakamatala ki ha taha ko Kolianitomuli, mo e faka'auha 'o hono kakai. Pea na'e 'ilo'i 'a Kolianitomuli 'e he kakai 'o Seilahemalá; pea na'á ne nofo 'iate kinautolu 'i ha māhina 'e hiva.

22 Na'e fai ai foki mo ha ngaahi fakamatala si'i 'o kau ki he'ene ngaahi tamaí. Pea na'e ha'u 'ene 'uluaki ongo mātu'á mei he taua 'i he taimi na'e veuveuki ai 'e he 'Eikí 'a e lea 'a e kakai; pea na'e tō 'a e tautea mamafa 'a e 'Eikí kiate kinautolu, 'o fakatatau ki he'ene ngaahi tauteá, 'a ia 'oku totonu; pea na'e movetevete honau ngaahi huí 'i he fonua he fakatokelaú.

Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where Mosiah discovered them; and they had dwelt there from that time forth.

And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, and had fallen by the sword from time to time; and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator; and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them.

But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.

And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king.

And it came to pass in the days of Mosiah, there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God.

And they gave an account of one Coriantumr, and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons.

It also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward.

- 23 Vakai, ko au, 'Amalekai, na'e fanau 'i au 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o Mōsaiá; pea kuó u mo 'ui 'o mamata ki he'ene pekiá; pea ko hono foha, ko Penisimaní, 'okú ne pule 'o fetongi iá.
- 24 Pea vakai, kuó u mamata, 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o e tu 'i ko Penisimaní, ki ha fu 'u tau pea mo e lilingi toto lahi 'i he vaha 'a 'o e kau Nīfaí pea mo e kau Leimaná. Kae vakai, na'e ma 'u 'e he kau Nīfaí ha mālohi lahi ange kiate kinautolu; 'io, ko ia ai na'e teke 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he tu 'i ko Penisimaní mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá.
- 25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku faka 'au 'o motu 'a; pea 'i he 'ikai te u ma 'u ha hakó, pea 'i he 'eku 'ilo 'i ko ha tangata angatonu 'a e tu 'i ko Penisimaní 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, ko ia, te u tuku 'a e ngaahi peletí ni kiate ia, 'o na'ina 'i ki he kakai fulipē ke nau ha 'u ki he 'Otua, ko e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí, pea tui ki he kikité, pea mo e ngaahi fakahaá, pea ki he tauhi mai 'a e kau 'āngeló, mo e me'a-foaki 'o e lea 'i he ngaahi lea kehekehé, mo e me'a-foaki 'o hono fakamatalá 'i 'o e ngaahi leá, pea 'i he ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku leleí; he ko e me'a kotoa pē 'oku leleí 'oku mei he 'Eikí ia; pea ko e me'a 'oku koví 'oku mei he tēvoló ia.
- 26 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou loto ke mou ha 'u kia Kalaisi, 'a ia ko e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí, pea kau 'i he'ene fakamo'ui, pea mo e mālohi 'o 'ene huhu'í. 'Io, ha 'u kiate ia, pea 'oatu homou laumālié kotoa ko ha feilaulau kiate ia, pea fai atu 'i he 'aukai mo e lotu, pea kātaki ki he ngata 'angá; pea hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eikí 'e fakamo'ui 'a kimoutolu foki.
- 27 Pea 'oku ou fie lea 'eni 'o kau ki ha ní'hi na'e 'alu hake ki he maomaonganoá ke foki atu ki he fonua ko Nīfaí; he na'e 'i ai ha tokolahi 'a ia na'a nau loto ke ma 'u 'a e fonua 'o honau tofí'á.
- 28 Ko ia, na'a nau ō hake ki he maomaonganoá. Pea ko honau takimu'á ko ha tangata sino mālohi mo kaukau, kae 'uma'ā ko ha tangata kia-kekeva ia, ko ia na'á ne langaki ha fakakikihi 'iate kinautolu; pea nau tō tau kotoa 'i he maomaonganoá, tuku kehe pe 'a e toko nimangofulu, pea nau toe foki mai ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá.
- 29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'ave foki mo ha fu 'u tokolahi kehe, 'o nau toe fononga ki he maomaonganoá.

Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead.

And behold, I have seen, in the days of king Benjamin, a serious war and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. But behold, the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them; yea, in-
somuch that king Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations, and in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good; for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord: and that which is evil cometh from the devil.

And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved.

And now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number who went up into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi; for there was a large number who were desirous to possess the land of their inheritance.

Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiff-necked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that they also took others to a considerable number, and took their journey again into the wilderness.

30 Pea ko au, 'Amalekai, na'e 'i ai hoku tokoua, na'e 'alu foki mo kinautolu; pea talu ai mo e 'ikai te u fanongo 'i ha fakamatala 'o kau kiate kinautolu. Pea 'oku ofi ke u tokoto hifo ki hoku fa'itoká; pea kuo fonu 'a e ngaahi peleti 'ení. Pea 'oku ou faka'osi 'eku tohí.

And I, Amaleki, had a brother, who also went with them; and I have not since known concerning them. And I am about to lie down in my grave; and these plates are full. And I make an end of my speaking.

Ko e Ngaahi Lea ‘a Molomoná

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni ko au, Molomona, ‘i he ‘amanaki ke u tukuangē ‘a e lekooti kuó u fai ki hoku foha ko Molonái, vakai kuó u mamata tonu ki he meimei faka‘auha kakato ‘o hoku kakai, ko e kau Nīfai.
- 2 Pea kuo ‘osi atu ha ngaahi ta‘u ‘e lau teau lahi mei he hā‘ele mai ‘a Kalaisí ‘oku ou tuku ‘a e ngaahi lekooti ko ‘ení ki hoku fohá; pea ‘oku ou ‘amanaki te ne mamata tonu ki he faka‘auha faka‘aufuli ‘o hoku kakai. Kae ‘ofa ke tuku ‘e he ‘Otua ke ne mo‘ui hili ‘enau maté, koe‘uhi ke ne tohi ha me‘a ‘e ní‘ihi ‘o kau kiate kinautolu, pea mo ha me‘a ‘e ní‘ihi ‘o kau kia Kalaisi, koe‘uhi ke ‘i ai ha ‘aho ‘e ‘aonga nai ia kiate kinautolu.
- 3 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘oku ou lea si‘i ‘o kau ki he me‘a ‘a ia kuó u tohi; he na‘e hili ‘eku fakanounou‘i ‘a e ngaahi peleti ‘a Nīfai, ‘o a‘u hifo ki he pule ‘a e tu‘i ni ko Penisimani, ‘a ia na‘e lea ki ai ‘a ‘Amalekaí, na‘á ku fakatotolo ‘i he ngaahi lekooti kuo tuku kiate aú, pea u ‘ilo‘i ‘i he ngaahi peleti ni, ‘oku tu‘u ai ‘a e fakamatala nounou ni ki he kau palōfitá, ‘o fai mai meia Sēkope ki he pule ‘a e tu‘i ni ko Penisimani, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo ha ngaahi lea lahi ‘a Nīfai.
- 4 Pea ko e ngaahi me‘a ‘oku tu‘u ‘i he ngaahi peleti ní ‘oku fakafiemālie kiate au, koe‘uhi ko e ngaahi kikite ki he hā‘ele mai ‘a Kalaisí; pea mo hono ‘ilo‘i ‘e he‘eku ngaahi tamaí kuo hoko ha ngaahi me‘a lahi ‘i he ngaahi me‘a ko íá; ‘io, pea ‘oku ou ‘ilo‘i foki ko e me‘a kotoa pē kuo kikite ‘i ‘o kau kiate kinautolu ‘o fai mai ki he ‘aho ní, kuo hoko ia, pea ko e ngaahi kikite kotoa pē ‘oku kau ki he kaha‘ú kuo pau ke hoko ia—
- 5 Ko ia, na‘á ku fili ai ‘a e ngaahi me‘a ni ke faka‘osi ‘aki ‘a ‘eku lekōtí, pea ko e toenga ko ia ‘o ‘eku lekōtí te u to‘o mai ia mei he ngaahi peleti ‘a Nīfai; pea ‘oku ‘ikai te u malava ‘o tohi hano vahe teau ‘e taha ‘o e ngaahi me‘a ‘a hoku kakai.
- 6 Kae vakai, te u to‘o ‘a e ngaahi peleti ni, ‘a ia ‘oku tu‘u ai ‘a e ngaahi kikite mo e ngaahi fakahaá ni, pea u tuku ia fakataha mo e toenga ‘o ‘eku lekōtí, he ‘oku mahu‘inga ia kiate au; pe ‘oku ou ‘ilo‘i ‘e mahu‘inga ia ki hoku kāingá.

The Words of Mormon

And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them.

And now, I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written; for after I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi, down to the reign of this king Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spake, I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands, and I found these plates, which contained this small account of the prophets, from Jacob down to the reign of this king Benjamin, and also many of the words of Nephi.

And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; yea, and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass—

Wherefore, I chose these things, to finish my record upon them, which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi; and I cannot write the hundredth part of the things of my people.

But behold, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.

7 Pea 'oku ou fai 'eni koe'uhi ko ha taumu'a fakapotopoto; he 'okú ne fanafana mai kiate au, 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi fakahinohino 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí 'a ia 'oku 'iate aú. Pea ko 'eni, 'oku 'ikai te u 'ilo 'a e me'a kotoa pē; ka 'oku 'afio 'i 'e he 'Eikí 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'a ia 'e hokó, ko ia, 'okú ne o 'i au ke u fai 'o fakatatau ki hono finangaló.

8 Pea ko 'eku lotu ki he 'Otuá 'oku kau ki hoku kāingá, koe'uhí ke faifai pea nau toe ma'u 'a e 'ilo ki he 'Otuá, 'io, ki he huhu 'i 'a Kalaisí, koe'uhi ke nau toe hoko ko ha kakai 'oku hōifua ki ai 'a e 'Eikí.

9 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Molomona, 'oku ou fai atu ke faka'osi 'eku lekooti 'a ia kuó u hiki mei he ngaahi peleti 'a Nīfaí, pea 'oku ou fai 'o fakatatau ki he 'ilo mo e mahino kuo foaki 'e he 'Otuá kiate aú.

10 Ko ia, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e tuku atu 'e 'Amalekai 'a e ngaahi peleti ni ki he tu'i ko Penisimaní, na'á ne 'ave ia 'o tuku fakataha mo e ngaahi peleti kehé, 'a ia na'e tu'u ai 'a e ngaahi lekooti kuo tukufakaholo mai 'i he ha'a tu'í, mei he to'u tangata ki he to'u tangata 'o fai mai ki he ngaahi 'aho 'o e tu'i ko Penisimaní.

11 Pea na'e tukufakaholo mai ia mei he tu'i ko Penisimaní, mei he to'u tangata ki he to'u tangata kae 'oua kuo nau a'u mai ki hoku nimá. Pea ko au, Molomona, 'oku ou lotu ki he 'Otuá koe'uhi ke fakatolonga ia 'o fai atu mei he taimí ni. Pea 'oku ou 'ilo 'i 'e fakatolonga ia; he 'oku 'i ai ha ngaahi me'a mahu'inga kuo tohi ai, 'a ia 'e fakamāu 'i 'aki 'a hoku kakaí mo honau kāingá 'i he fu'u 'aho lahi mo faka'osí, 'o hangē ko e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'a ia kuo tohí.

12 Pea ko 'eni, ko e me'a ki he tu'í ni ko Penisimaní—na'á ne fepaki mo ha ngaahi fakakikihi 'e ni'ihí 'i hono kakaí.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē foki na'e ō mai 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná mei he fonua ko Nīfaí ke tau 'i hono kakaí. Kae vakai, na'e tānaki fakataha 'e he tu'i ko Penisimaní 'a 'ene ngaahi kau tau, peá ne fehangahangi mo kinautolu; peá ne tau 'i he mālohi 'o hono nima 'o'oná, 'aki 'a e heletā 'a Lēpaní.

And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will.

And my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.

And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.

And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their brethren shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written.

And now, concerning this king Benjamin—he had somewhat of contentions among his own people.

And it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of Nephi, to battle against his people. But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban.

- 14 Pea 'i he māfimaſi 'o e 'Eikí na'a nau tau mo honau ngaahi filí, 'o a'u ki he'enu tāmāte'i 'a e toko lau afe 'o e kau Leimaná. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau tau mo e kau Leimaná kae 'oua kuo nau tuli atu 'a kinautolu mei he ngaahi fonua kotoa 'o honau tofi'á.
- 15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hili iá na'e 'i ai ha ngaahi Kalaisi loi, pea kuo ta'ofi honau ngutu, pea kuo tautea 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki he'enu ngaahi hiá;
- 16 Pea hili 'a e 'i ai ha kau palōfita loi, pea mo ha kau malanga mo e kau akonaki loi 'i he kakaí, pea kuo tautea 'i 'a e fá'ahinga kotoa ko iá 'o fakatatau ki he'enu ngaahi hiá; pea hili iá na'e 'i ai ha feke'ike 'i lahi pea mo ha tokolahi 'a ia na'e mavahe atu ki he kau Leimaná, vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e tu 'i ko Penisimaní 'i he tokoni 'i ia 'e he kau palōfita mā'oní'oni 'a ia na'e 'i hono kakaí—
- 17 He vakai, ko e tu 'i ko Penisimaní ko ha tangata mā'oní'oni ia, pea na'á ne pule ki hono kakaí 'i he mā'oní'oni; pea na'e 'i ai ha kau tangata mā'oní'oni tokolahi 'i he fonuá, pea na'a nau lea 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i he mālohi mo e mafai; pea na'a nau fai 'a e lea māsilā lahi ko e me'a 'i he kia-kekeva 'o e kakaí—
- 18 Ko ia, 'i he tokoni 'a kinautolu ní, na'e toe langa hake 'e he tu 'i ko Penisimaní 'a e melinó 'i he fonuá, 'o ne ngāue 'aki hono tūkuingata 'o hono sinó mo e mālohi 'o hono laumālié kotoa, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e kau palōfitá, pea ne toe fokotu'u ai 'a e melinó 'i he fonuá.

And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did contend against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance.

And it came to pass that after there had been false Christs, and their mouths had been shut, and they punished according to their crimes;

And after there had been false prophets, and false preachers and teachers among the people, and all these having been punished according to their crimes; and after there having been much contention and many dissensions away unto the Lamanites, behold, it came to pass that king Benjamin, with the assistance of the holy prophets who were among his people—

For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness; and there were many holy men in the land, and they did speak the word of God with power and with authority; and they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the people—

Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land.

Ko e Tohi 'a Mōsaia

Mōsaia 1

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'ikai ke toe 'i ai ha feke'ike'i 'i he fonua kotoa ko Seilahemalá, 'i he kakai kotoa pē 'a ia na'e 'o e tu'i ko Penisimaní, ko ia, na'e 'i he tu'i ko Penisimaní ma'u ai pē 'a e melino 'i he toenga 'o hono ngaahi 'ahó.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne ma'u 'a e foha 'e toko tolu; pea na'á ne ui 'a honau hingoá ko Mōsaia, mo Hilolumi, mo Hilamani. Pea na'á ne fekau ke ako 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he lea kotoa 'a 'ene ngaahi tamaí, koe'uhi ke nau lava ai 'o hoko ko e kau tangata poto; pea ke nau lava 'o 'ilo ki he ngaahi kikite kuo lea 'aki 'e he'enua ngaahi tamaí, 'a ia na'e foaki kiate kinautolu 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí.
- 3 Pea na'á ne ako 'i foki 'a kinautolu 'o kau ki he ngaahi lekooti 'a ia kuo tohi 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá, 'o ne pehē: 'E hoku ngaahi foha, 'oku ou loto ke mou manatu kapau na'e 'ikai 'a e ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá ni, 'a ia 'oku tohi ai 'a e ngaahi lekooti ko 'ení kae 'uma'á 'a e ngaahi fekau ní, na'e pau ke tau mamahi 'i he ta'e'ilo, 'io 'i he lolotongá ni, 'o 'ikai 'ilo' i 'a e ngaahi me'a lilo 'a e 'Otuá.
- 4 He ka ne 'ikai ia 'e 'ikai lava 'e he'etau tamai, ko Lihái, 'o manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē ke ako 'aki ki he'ene fānaú; ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e ngaahi peletí ni; koe'uhi ko e me'a 'i he'ene poto 'i he lea 'a e kau 'Isipité ko ia na'á ne lava ai 'o lau 'a e ngaahi tohi tongitongí ni, pea akonaki 'aki ia ki he'ene fānaú, koe'uhi ke nau lava ai 'o akonaki 'aki ia ki he'enua fānaú, pea 'i he'enua fai iá, 'oku nau fakahoko ai 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, 'o 'a'u mai ki he taimi lolotongá.
- 5 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku ngaahi foha, ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, 'a ia kuo tauhi mo fakatolonga 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Otuá, koe'uhi ke tau lava ai 'o lau mo 'ilo 'a 'ene ngaahi me'a lilo, pea ma'u ma'u ai pē 'ene ngaahi fekaú 'i hotau 'aó, pehē kuo kau mo 'etau ngaahi tamaí 'i he faka'au'au hifo 'i he ta'etuí, pea kuo tau mei tatau mo hotau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai te nau 'ilo ha me'a 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'á ni, pe 'oku 'ikai te nau tui ki ai 'o ka ako 'i ia kiate kinautolu, koe'uhi ko e ngaahi talatukufakaholo 'a 'enua ngaahi tamaí, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai totonu.

The Book of Mosiah

Mosiah 1

And now there was no more contention in all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who belonged to king Benjamin, so that king Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days.

And it came to pass that he had three sons; and he called their names Mosiah, and Helorum, and Helaman. And he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes, that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief, and we should have been like unto our brethren, the Lamanites, who know nothing concerning these things, or even do not believe them when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their fathers, which are not correct.

6 'Oiauē, 'e hoku ngaahi foha, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou manatu'i 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi leá ni, pea 'oku mo'oni foki mo e ngaahi lekōtí ni. Pea vakai, ko e ngaahi peleti foki 'a Nifai, 'a ia 'oku tu'u ai 'a e ngaahi lekōtí mo e ngaahi lea 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí talu mei he taimi na'a nau 'alu ai mei Selūsalemá 'o a'u mai ki he 'ahó ni, pea 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'a ko iá; pea 'oku tau lava 'o 'ilo pau 'a honau mo'oní koe'uhí he 'oku tau ma'u ia 'i hotau 'aó.

7 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku ngaahi foha, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou manatu'i ke mou fakatotolo faivelenga ki ai, koe'uhi ke 'aonga kiate kimoutolu; pea 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, koe'uhi ke mou tu'umálie 'i he fonuá 'o fakatautu ki he ngaahi tala'ofa kuo fai 'e he 'Eiki ki he 'etau ngaahi tamaí.

8 Pea na'e lahi mo ha ngaahi me'a kehe na'e ako 'i e he tu'i ko Penisimaní ki hono ngaahi fohá, 'a ia kuo 'ikai tohi 'i he tohí ni.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e faka'osi 'e he tu'i ko Penisimaní 'ene akonaki ki hono ngaahi fohá, na'á ne faka'au 'o motu'a, pea na'e mahino kiate ia kuo pau ke vave 'a 'ene fou 'i he hala 'o e māmaní kotoa; ko ia, na'á ne pehē 'oku 'aonga ke ne tuku 'a e pule'angá ki ha toko taha 'o hono ngaahi fohá.

10 Ko ia, na'á ne fekau ke 'omi 'a Mōsaia kiate ia; pea ko e ngaahi me'a 'eni na'á ne folofola 'aki kiate ia, 'o pehē: 'E hoku foha, 'oku ou faka'amu ke ke fai ha fanongonongo 'i he fonuá ni hono kotoa ki he kakaí hono kotoa, pe ko e kakai 'o Seilahemalá, mo e kakai 'o Mōsaia 'a ia 'oku nofo 'i he fonuá, koe'uhí ke fakataha 'i mai 'a kinautolu; he te u fakahā ki hoku kakaí ni 'a'pongi'pongi 'aki hoku ngutu 'o'okú, ko ha tu'i mo ha pule koe ki he kakaí ni, 'a ia kuo tuku kiate kitaua 'e he 'Eiki ko hota 'Otuá.

11 Pea ko e tahá te u 'ai ha hingoa ki he kakaí ni, koe'uhi ke fakafaikehekehe 'i ai 'a kinautolu mei he kakai kotoa pē kuo tataki mai 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá, mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá; pea 'oku ou fai 'eni koe'uhi kuo nau hoko ko e kakai faivelenga 'i hono tauhi 'o e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eiki.

12 Pea 'oku ou 'ai kiate kinautolu ha hingoa 'a ia 'e 'ikai ai pē ke tāmata'e, kae ngata pē 'i he maumau-fono.

O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true. And behold, also the plates of Nephi, which contain the records and the sayings of our fathers from the time they left Jerusalem until now, and they are true; and we can know of their surety because we have them before our eyes.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should remember to search them diligently, that ye may profit thereby; and I would that ye should keep the commandments of God, that ye may prosper in the land according to the promises which the Lord made unto our fathers.

And many more things did king Benjamin teach his sons, which are not written in this book.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must very soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he thought it expedient that he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

Therefore, he had Mosiah brought before him; and these are the words which he spake unto him, saying: My son, I would that ye should make a proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the people of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us.

And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I do because they have been a diligent people in keeping the commandments of the Lord.

And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it be through transgression.

13 'Io, pea ko e tahá 'oku ou pehē foki kiate koe, kapau 'e hinga 'a e kakai 'ofeina lahi ko 'eni 'o e 'Eikí ki he maumau-fonó, 'o hoko ko ha kakai fai angahala mo fa'a fē'auaki, 'e tukuange 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eikí ke nau hoko 'o vaivai 'o hangē ko honau kāingá; pea 'e 'ikai te ne toe malu 'i 'a kinautolu 'i hono māfimaifi ta'e-hano-tatau mo fakaofó, 'o hangē kuó ne fakahaofi 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí talu mei mu'a.

14 He 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e mafao atu hono to'ukupú 'o malu 'i 'etau ngaahi tamaí pehē kuo nau tō ki he nima 'o e kau Leimaná, 'o mo'ulaloa ki he'enua tāufehi'á.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono faka'osi 'e he tu'i ko Penisimaní 'ene ngaahi leá ni ki hono fohá, na'á ne tuku kiate ia 'a e mafai ki he ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'o e pule'angá.

16 Pea ko e tahá, na'á ne tuku foki kiate ia 'a e fatongia ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'a ia kuo tohi 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá; kae 'uma'ā foki mo e ngaahi peleti 'a Nífaí; kae 'uma'ā foki, mo e heletā 'a Lēpaní, mo e me'a fuopotopotó pe ko e me'a fakahinohinó, 'a ia na'e tatakí 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'a ia na'e teuteu 'i 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí koe'uhí ke tatakí 'a kinautolu, ko e tangata kotoa pē 'o fakatautu ki he'ene tokanga mo 'ene faivelenga 'i he tauhi kiate iá.

17 Ko ia, 'i he'enua ta'e-faitotonú, na'e 'ikai ai te nau tu'umalie pe faka'au ki mu'a 'i he'enua fonongá, ka na'e teke fakaholomui 'a kinautolu, pea nau fakatupu-houhau ai ki he 'Otuá; ko ia na'e te'ia 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e hongē mo e ngaahi faingata 'a ia fakamamahi koe'uhi ke ue'i hake 'a kinautolu ke nau manatu 'i 'a honau fatongiá.

18 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu 'a Mōsaia 'o ne fai 'o hangē ko e fekau kiate ia 'e he'ene tamaí, 'o ne fanongonongo ki he kakai kotoa pē na'e 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá ke nau fakataha kotoa mai, ke 'alu hake ki he temipalé ke fanongo ki he ngaahi folofola 'e folofola 'aki 'e he'ene tamaí kiate kinautolú.

Yea, and moreover I say unto you, that if this highly favored people of the Lord should fall into transgression, and become a wicked and an adulterous people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they become weak like unto their brethren; and he will no more preserve them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he has hitherto preserved our fathers.

For I say unto you, that if he had not extended his arm in the preservation of our fathers they must have fallen into the hands of the Lamanites, and become victims to their hatred.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son, that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.

And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our fathers through the wilderness, which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him.

Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famine and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.

And now, it came to pass that Mosiah went and did as his father had commanded him, and proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them.

Mōsaia 2

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi fai 'e Mōsaia 'o hangē ko e fekau kuo fai kiate ia 'e he'ene tamaí, pea kuó ne fanongonongo 'i he fonuá hono kotoa, na'e fakataha mai 'a e kakai 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá, ke nau 'alu hake ki he temipalé ke fanongo ki he ngaahi me'a 'e folofola 'aki kiate kinautolu 'e he tu'i ko Penisimaní.
- 2 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e fu'u tokolahi, 'io, na'e pehē fau honau tokolahí na'e 'ikai ai ke nau lau 'a kinautolu; he kuo nau fakatokolahi 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito, mo tupulaki 'o fu'u tokolahi 'i he fonuá.
- 3 Pea na'a nau to'o foki mei he 'uluaki 'uhiki 'i he'enua ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí, koe'uhi ke nau lava 'o fai ha feilaulau mo ha ngaahi feilaulau tutu 'o fakatatau ki he fono 'a Mōsesé;
- 4 Kae 'uma'ā foki ke nau lava 'o 'oatu 'a e fakafeta'i ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, 'a ia kuó ne 'omi 'a kinautolu mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, pea na'á ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nima 'o honau ngaahi filí, mo fakanofu ha kau tangata angatonu ke hoko ko honau kau faiako, kae 'uma'ā foki ha tangata angatonu foki ke tu'i kiate kinautolu, 'a ia kuó ne fokotu'u 'a e melinó 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea kuó ne ako'i 'a kinautolu ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, koe'uhi ke nau fiefia pea fonu 'i he 'ofa ki he 'Otuá mo e kakai fulipē.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he'enua 'alu hake ki he temipalé, na'a nau fokotu'u honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'o takatakai ki ai, ko e tangata taki taha 'o fakatatau ki hono fāмили, 'a ia na'e kau ai 'a hono uaifí, mo hono ngaahi fohá, mo hono ngaahi 'ofefiné, mo honau ngaahi fohá, mo honau ngaahi 'ofefiné, 'o fai mei he lahí 'o a'u ki he sí'i tahá, pea na'e nofo mavahe 'a e fāмили taki taha.
- 6 Pea na'a nau fokotu'u honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'o takatakai 'i he temipalé, ko e tangata taki taha mo hono fale fehikitakí 'o hanga atu hono matapaá ki he temipalé, koe'uhi ke nau lava ai 'o nofo 'i honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí pea fanongo ki he ngaahi me'a 'a ia 'e folofola 'aki 'e he tu'i ko Penisimaní kiate kinautolú;

Mosiah 2

And it came to pass that after Mosiah had done as his father had commanded him, and had made a proclamation throughout all the land, that the people gathered themselves together throughout all the land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them.

And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land.

And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;

And also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and had appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king, who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla, and who had taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men.

And it came to pass that when they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.

And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;

7 He ko e me'a 'i he tokolahi pehē fau 'a e kakaí ko ia na'e 'ikai lava ai 'e he tu'i ko Penisimaní 'o akonaki kiate kinautolu kotoa 'i loto 'i he ngaahi 'ā 'o e tempalé, ko ia na'á ne fekau ke langa ha taua, koe'uhi ke lava ai 'o fanongo 'a hono kakaí ki he ngaahi me'a 'a ia te ne folofola 'aki kiate kinautolú.

8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata ke ne folofola ki hono kakaí mei he tauá; pea na'e 'ikai te nau fá'a fanongo kotoa ki he'ene ngaahi folofolá koe'uhi ko hono fu'u tokolahi 'o e kakaí; ko ia na'á ne fekau ke tohi 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia na'á ne folofola 'akí 'o 'oatu kiate kinautolu kotoa pē na'e 'ikai ke ongo atu ki ai 'a hono le'ó, koe'uhi ke nau lava foki 'o ma'u 'a 'ene ngaahi folofolá.

9 Pea ko e ngaahi lea 'eni na'á ne folofola 'aki mo fekau ke tohi, 'o pehē: 'E hoku kāinga, 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē 'a ia kuo mou fakataha maí, 'a kimoutolu 'oku mou lava 'o fanongo ki he'eku ngaahi lea 'a ia te u lea 'aki kiate kimoutolu he 'aho ní; he kuo 'ikai te u fekau kiate kimoutolu ke mou ha'u ki heni ke va'inga 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia te u lea 'akí, ka ke mou tokanga mai kiate au, pea fakaava homou telingá ke mou ongo'i, mo homou lotó koe'uhí ke mou 'ilo'i, pea mo homou 'atamaí koe'uhi ke lava 'o fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi me'a lilo 'a e 'Otuá ke mahino kiate kimoutolu.

10 Kuo 'ikai te u fekau kiate kimoutolu ke mou ha'u ki heni koe'uhi ke mou manavahē kiate au, pe ke mou pehē 'oku ou lahi ange 'i he tangata fakamatelié.

11 Ka 'oku ou hangē pē ko kimoutolú, 'o mo'ua ki he fá'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e ngaahi vaivai 'i he sino mo e 'atamai; ka kuo fili au 'e he kakaí ni, pea fakanofu au 'e he'eku tamaí, pea kuo tuku 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí ke u hoko ko e pule mo e tu'i ki he kakaí ni; pea kuo tauhi mo malu 'i au 'i hono māfimaí ta'e-hano-tataú, ke u tauhi 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e mālohi, 'atamai mo e ivi kotoa pē 'a ia kuo tuku kiate au 'e he 'Eikí.

12 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'i he tuku kiate au ke u faka'aonga 'i 'a hoku ngaahi 'ahó 'i homou tauhi, 'o a'u mai ki he taimí ní, pea kuo 'ikai te u kumi ha koula pe ko e siliva pe ko ha fá'ahinga 'e taha 'o e ngaahi koloá meiate kimoutolu;

For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a tower to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.

And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words.

And these are the words which he spake and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.

I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me, or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man.

But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.

I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;

- 13 Pea kuo 'ikai foki te u tuku ke fakapōpula 'i 'a kimoutolu 'i ha ngaahi 'ana fakapōpula, pe ke mou fefakapōpula 'aki 'iate kimoutolu, pe ke mou fakapō, pe vete, pe kaiha'a, pe tono; pea kuo 'ikai foki te u tuku ke mou fai ha fa'ahinga fai angahala 'e taha, kā kuó u ako 'i 'a kimoutolu ke mou tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí, 'i he me'a kotoa pē 'a ia kuó ne fekau kiate kimoutolú—
- 14 Pea na'a mo au foki, kuó u ngāue 'aki hoku nima 'o'okú ke u tauhi 'a kimoutolu, pea ke 'oua na'a fakakavenga 'i 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi tukuhau, pea ke 'oua na'a hoko kiate kimoutolu ha me'a 'a ia 'oku faingata 'a hono fuesiá—pea ko e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē 'a ia kuó u lea 'akí, ko e kau fakamo'oni 'a kimoutolu ki ai 'i he 'ahó ni.
- 15 Kae kehe, 'e hoku kāinga, kuo 'ikai te u fai 'a e ngaahi me'a ní ke u pōlepole ai, pea 'oku 'ikai foki te u lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a ní ke u tukuaki 'i ai 'a kimoutolu; ka 'oku ou lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate kimoutolú ke mou 'ilo 'i 'oku ou ma'u ha konisēnisi 'oku 'ata'atā mei he angahalá 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá he 'ahó ni.
- 16 Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu ko e me'a 'i he'eku pehē kiate kimoutolu kuó u faka'aonga 'i hoku ngaahi 'ahó 'i homou tauhi, 'oku 'ikai te u fie pōlepole ai, he kuó u 'i he ngāue pē 'a e 'Otuá.
- 17 Pea vakai, 'oku ou fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi me'a ní koe'uhí ke mou 'ilo 'i 'a e potó; koe'uhí ke mou 'ilo 'i 'o ka mou ka 'i he tauhi 'o homou kāingá, 'oku mou 'i he tauhi pē 'o homou 'Otuá.
- 18 Vakai, kuo mou ui au ko homou tu'í; pea kapau ko au, 'a ia 'oku mou ui ko homou tu'í, 'oku ou ngāue ke tauhi 'a kimoutolu, 'oku 'ikai 'apē ke taau ke mou ngāue ke fetauhi 'aki 'iate kimoutolu?
- 19 Pea vakai foki, kapau ko au, 'a ia 'oku mou ui ko homou tu'í, 'a ia kuó ne faka'aonga 'i 'a hono ngaahi 'ahó 'i homou tauhi, ka kuó ne 'i he tauhi pē 'o e 'Otuá, kapau 'oku ou taau mo ha fakamālō meiate kimoutolu, 'Oiaue hono 'ikai totonu ke mou fakafeta 'i foki ki homou Tu'í fakalangí!

Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you—

And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne—and of all these things which I have spoken, ye yourselves are witnesses this day.

Yet, my brethren, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that ye may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.

Behold, I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God.

And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.

Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, whom ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another?

And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how ye ought to thank your heavenly King!

20 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga, kapau te mou 'oatu 'a e fakamālō mo e fakafeta'i kotoa pē 'oku ma'u 'e homou laumālié kotoa 'a e mālohi ke fai, ki he 'Otua 'a ia na'á ne fakatupu 'a kimoutolú, pea kuó ne tauhi mo malu i 'a kimoutolú, pea fakafefia i 'a kimoutolu, pea kuó ne tuku ke mou nofo fakataha i he melinó—

21 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kapau te mou tauhi kiate ia 'a ia kuó ne fakatupu 'a kimoutolu mei he kamata'angá, pea 'oku lolotonga malu i 'a kimoutolu mei he 'aho ki he 'ahó, i he foaki kiate kimoutolu 'a e mānava, koe'uhi ke mou faingamālie ke mo'ui mo ngāue mo fai 'o fakatahu ki ho'omou fa'iteliha 'amoutolú, 'o ne poupu i 'a kimoutolu mei he mōmēniti 'e taha ki he mōmēniti 'e tahá—'oku ou pehē, kapau te mou tauhi kiate ia 'aki homou laumālié kotoa ka te mou kei hoko pē ko ha kau tamaio'eiki ta'e'aonga.

22 Pea vakai, ko e me'a pē 'okú ne 'eke meiate kimoutolú ke mou tauhi pē 'a 'ene ngaahi fekaú; pea kuó ne tala'ofa kiate kimoutolu kapau te mou tauhi 'a 'ene ngaahi fekaú te mou tu'umālie i he fonuá; pea 'oku 'ikai ai pē te ne fai kehe mei he me'a kuó ne folofola'akí; ko ia, kapau 'oku mou tauhi 'a 'ene ngaahi fekaú 'okú ne tāpuaki i mo fakamonū'ia i 'a kimoutolu.

23 Pea ko 'eni, ko e 'uluaki 'o e me'á, kuó ne fakatupu 'a kimoutolu, mo foaki kiate kimoutolu 'a ho'omou mo'uí, 'a ia 'oku mou mo'ua ai kiate ia.

24 Pea ko hono uá, 'okú ne finangalo ke mou fai 'o hangē ko ia kuó ne fekau kiate kimoutolú; he kapau te mou fai ia, 'okú ne tāpuaki i leva 'a kimoutolu; ko ia kuó ne totongi ai kiate kimoutolu. Pea 'oku mou kei mo'ua ai kiate ia, pea 'oku mou mo'ua, pea te mou mo'ua ai pē, 'o ta'engata pea ta'engata; ko ia, ko e hā mo ha me'a ke mou pōlepole ai?

25 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou fehu i, pe 'oku mou lava ke pehē 'oku mou lava ha me'a 'iate kimoutolu? 'Oku ou tali kiate kimoutolu, 'ikai. 'Oku 'ikai te mou lava ke pehē 'oku mou mahu'inga tatau mo e efu 'o e māmaní; ka na'e fakatupu 'a kimoutolu mei he efu 'o e māmaní; kae vakai, 'oku 'a'ana ia 'a ia na'á ne fakatupu 'a kimoutolú.

I say unto you, my brethren, that if you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that ye should rejoice, and has granted that ye should live in peace one with another—

I say unto you that if ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that ye may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another—I say, if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be unprofitable servants.

And behold, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments; and he has promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land; and he never doth vary from that which he hath said; therefore, if ye do keep his commandments he doth bless you and prosper you.

And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.

And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast?

And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you.

26 Pea na‘a mo au, ‘a ia ‘oku mou ui ko homou tu‘i, ‘oku ‘ikai te u lelei hake ‘iate kimoutolu; he na‘á ku mei he efú foki mo au. Pea ‘oku mou vakai ‘oku ou motu‘a, pea ‘oku ofi ke u tuku ‘a e sino fakamatelie ni ki hono motu‘a kelekélé.

27 Ko ia, ko e me‘a ki he‘eku pehē kiate kimoutolu kuó u tauhi ‘a kimoutolú, ‘o ‘a‘eva ‘i he konisēnisi ‘oku ‘ata‘atā ‘i he ‘ao ‘o e ‘Otuá, ko ia ai kuó u fekau he taimí ni ke mou fakataha mai ‘a kimoutolú koe‘uhi ke fakatonuhia ‘i au, pea ke ‘oua na‘a ‘eke‘i homou totó meiate au, ‘o kau ka tu‘u koe‘uhi ke fakamāu ‘i au ‘e he ‘Otuá ‘i he ngaahi me‘a kuó ne fekau kiate au ‘o kau kiate kimoutolú.

28 ‘Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kuó u fekau ke mou fakataha mai ‘a kimoutolú ke u fakama‘a hoku ngaahi kofú mei homou totó, ‘i he vaha‘ataimi ko ‘eni ‘i he ofi ke u ‘alu hifo ki hoku fa‘itoká, koe‘uhi ke u ‘alu hifo ‘i he fiemālie, pea kau fakataha ‘a hoku laumālie ta‘e-fa‘amaté mo e ngaahi kau hiva ‘i ‘olungá ‘i he hiva ‘aki ‘a e ngaahi fakafeta ‘i ki ha ‘Otuā angatonu.

29 Pea ko e tahá, ‘oku ou toe pehē kiate kimoutolu kuó u fekau ke mou fakataha mai ‘a kimoutolú, ke u fakahā kiate kimoutolu ‘oku ‘ikai te u toe lava ke hoko atu ko homou faiako pe ko homou tu‘i;

30 Na‘a mo e lolotonga ní, ‘oku tetetete lahi ‘aupito ‘a hoku sinó kotoa ‘i he‘eku feinga ke lea atu kiate kimoutolú; ka ‘oku pou pou ‘i au ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá, pea kuó ne tuku ke u lea atu kiate kimoutolu, ‘o ne fekau ‘i au ke u fakahā kiate kimoutolu he ‘ahó ni, ko hoku foha ko Mōsaiá ko e tu‘i mo e pule kiate kimoutolu.

31 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘e hoku kāinga, ‘oku ou loto ke mou fai ‘o hangē ko ia kuo mou fai ‘o a‘u mai ki he ‘aho ní. Hangē ko ho‘omou tauhi ‘eku ngaahi fekaú kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo e ngaahi fekau ‘a ‘eku tamaí, pea mou monū‘iá, pea malu‘i ‘a kimoutolu mei he tō ki he nima ‘o homou ngaahi filí, ‘e pehē foki kapau te mou tauhi ‘a e ngaahi fekau ‘a hoku fohá, pe ko e ngaahi fekau ‘a e ‘Otuá ‘a ia te ne tuku kiate kimoutolú, te mou tu‘umālie ‘i he fonuá, pe ‘e ‘ikai ma‘u ‘e homou ngaahi filí ha mālohi ke pule ‘i ‘a kimoutolu.

And I, even I, whom ye call your king, am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth.

Therefore, as I said unto you that I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God, even so I at this time have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you.

I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.

And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king;

For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should do as ye have hitherto done. As ye have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my father, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.

- 32 Kae, 'Oiauē 'e hoku kakai, tokanga telia na 'a tupu ha ngaahi fakakikihi 'iate kimoutolu, pea mou fili ke talangofua ki he laumālie angakovi, 'a ia na 'e lea ki ai 'a 'eku tamai ko Mōsaiá.
- 33 He vakai, 'oku 'i ai ha tautea mamafa kuo tu 'utu 'uni kiate ia 'oku fili ke talangofua ki he laumālie ko iá; he kapau 'okú ne fili ke talangofua kiate ia, pea nofo ma 'u pea mate 'i he 'ene ngaahi angahalá, 'e inu 'e ia 'a e mala 'ia ki hono laumālie 'o 'oná; he te ne ma 'u 'a e totongi ki he 'ene ngaahi ngāuē 'a ia ko e tautea lauikuonga, koe 'uhi kuó ne maumau 'i 'a e fono 'a e 'Otuá 'o ta 'ehoa mo 'ene 'iló.
- 34 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha toko taha 'iate kimoutolu, tuku kehe pē 'a ho 'omou fānau ikí kuo 'ikai ke akonekina 'i he ngaahi me 'á ni, ka ko hai 'oku 'ikai te ne 'ilo 'i 'oku mou mo 'ua ta 'engata ki ho 'omou Tamai fakalangí, ke 'oatu kiate ia 'a e me 'a kotoa pē 'oku mou ma 'ú pea mo kimoutolu; pea kuo akonekina foki ia 'i he ngaahi lekooti 'a ia 'oku tu 'u ai 'a e ngaahi kikite 'a ia kuo lea 'aki 'e he kau palōfita mā 'oní 'oní, 'o fai mai ki he taimi na 'e 'alu ai 'a 'etau tamai, ko Līhai, mei Selūsalemá;
- 35 Kae 'uma 'ā foki, mo e me 'a kotoa pē kuo lea 'aki 'e he 'etau ngaahi tamai 'o a 'u mai ki he 'ahó ni. Pea vakai, foki, na 'a nau lea 'aki 'a e me 'a na 'e fekau kiate kinautolu 'e he 'Eikí; ko ia, 'oku totonu mo mo 'oni ia.
- 36 Pea ko 'eni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga, 'o ka hili ho 'omou 'ilo mo akonekina 'i he ngaahi me 'á ni kotoa pē, kapau te mou fai hala 'o talangata 'a ki he me 'a kuo folofola 'akí, 'o mou fakamavahe 'i ai 'a kimoutolu mei he Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí, 'o 'ikai ai te ne ma 'u hano nofo 'anga 'iate kimoutolu ke fakahinohino 'i 'a kimoutolu 'i he ngaahi hala 'o e potó koe 'uhi ke tāpuaki 'i, mo fakamonū 'ia 'i, mo malu 'i 'a kimoutolú—
- 37 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko e tangata 'okú ne fai 'ení, ko e tangata ia 'oku angatu 'u fakahāhā ki he 'Otuá; ko ia 'okú ne fili ke talangofua ki he laumālie angakoví, 'o ne hoko ko e fili ki he mā 'oní 'oni kotoa pē; ko ia, 'oku 'ikai ma 'u 'e he 'Eikí ha nofo 'anga 'iate ia, he 'oku 'ikai 'afio ia 'i ha ngaahi temipale ta 'e mā 'oní 'oni.

But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.

For behold, there is a wo pronounced upon him who listeth to obey that spirit; for if he listeth to obey him, and remaineth and dieth in his sins, the same drinketh damnation to his own soul; for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.

I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our father, Lehi, left Jerusalem;

And also, all that has been spoken by our fathers until now. And behold, also, they spake that which was commanded them of the Lord; therefore, they are just and true.

And now, I say unto you, my brethren, that after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that ye may be blessed, prospered, and preserved—

I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples.

38 Ko ia kapau 'oku 'ikai fakatomala 'a e tangata ko iá, kae nofo ma'u pea mate ko ha fili ki he 'Otuá, 'oku fakaaake 'e he ngaahi 'eke 'o e fakamaau totonu faka-'Otuá 'a hono laumālie ta'e-fa'a-maté ki ha manatu ta'etuku ki he 'ene angahala 'a aná, 'a ia 'oku ngaohi ai ia ke holomui mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, pea 'oku fakafonu 'a hono lotó 'aki 'a e ongo 'i 'o e angahalá mo e mamahí, mo e loto-mamahí, 'a ia 'oku hangē ko ha afi ta'e-fa'a-mate, 'a ia 'oku 'alu hake 'a hono uló 'o ta'engata pea ta'engata.

39 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku 'ikai ma'u 'e he 'alo'ofá ha mafai ki he tangata ko iá; ko ia ko hono tautea aofangatukú ke ne kātekina ha fakamamahi 'oku 'ikai hano ngata'anga.

40 'Oiauē, 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē 'a e kau toulekeleká, motu'á, kae 'uma'ā foki mo kimoutolu 'a e kau tangata talavou, pea mo kimoutolu 'a e fānau iiki 'a ia 'oku mahino kiate kimoutolu 'a 'eku ngaahi leá, he kuó u lea mahinongofua kiate kimoutolu koe'uhi ke mou 'ilo'i, 'oku ou lotua ke mou 'ā hake ki ha manatu 'i 'o e tu'unga fakamamahi 'o kinautolu kuo tō ki he maumau-fonó.

41 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku ou loto ke mou fakakaukau ki he tu'unga monū'ia mo fakafiefia 'o kinautolu 'oku tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá. He vakai, 'oku nau monū'ia 'i he me'a kotoa pē, 'a e me'a fakamāmaní mo e fakalaumālié fakatou'osi; pea kapau te nau kātaki 'i he tui faivelenga 'o a'u ki he ngata'angá 'e ma'u hake 'a kinautolu ki he langí koe'uhi ke nau nofo mo e 'Otuá 'i he tu'unga fiefia 'oku 'ikai hano ngata'anga. 'Oiauē manatu, manatu 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'á ni; he kuo folofola 'aki ia 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá.

Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment.

O, all ye old men, and also ye young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that ye might understand, I pray that ye should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

And moreover, I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God. For behold, they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

Mōsaia 3

- 1 Pea ko 'eni 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku ou toe loto ke mou tokanga mai, he 'oku 'i ai mo ha ngaahi me'a 'e ni'ihī 'oku ou toe fie lea ai kiate kimoutolu; he vakai, 'oku 'i ai mo ha ngaahi me'a 'oku ou fie fakahā atu kiate kimoutolu 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'a 'e hoko 'i he kaha'ú.
- 2 Pea ko e ngaahi me'a te u fakahā kiate kimoutolú na'e fakahā ia kiate au 'e ha 'āngelo mei he 'Otuá. Pea na'á ne pehē mai kiate au: 'Ā hake; peá u 'ā, pea vakai na'á ne tu'u 'i hoku 'aó.
- 3 Peá ne pehē mai kiate au: 'Ā hake, pea fanongo ki he ngaahi lea te u lea'aki kiate koé; he vakai, kuó u ha'u ke fakahā kiate koe 'a e ngaahi ongoongo fakafiefia 'o e fiefia lahi.
- 4 He kuo 'afio'i 'e he 'Eiki 'a ho'o ngaahi lotú, mo fakamāu 'i 'a ho'o mā'oní'oní, pea kuó ne fekau 'i au ke u fakahā kiate koe 'oku lelei ke ke fiefia; pea 'oku lelei ke ke fakahā ki ho kakaí koé uhi ke nau fonu foki mo kinautolu 'i he fiefia.
- 5 He vakai, 'oku ha'u 'a e taimi, pea 'oku 'ikai mama'o ia, 'e hā'ele hifo ai 'i he mālohi, 'a e 'Eiki Māfima'fi 'a ia 'okú ne pulé, 'a ia na'e 'i aí, pea 'okú ne 'i ai mei he ta'engatá ki he ta'engatá kotoa, mei he langí 'i he lotolotonga 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá, pea nofo 'i ha sino 'o e kelekele, pea hā'ele atu 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kakaí, 'o fai 'a e ngaahi mana lalahi, 'o hangē ko e fakamo'ui 'o e mahakí, fokotu'u hake 'o e maté, mo e pule ke 'eve'eva 'a e pipikí, mo e faka'aaki 'a e mata 'o e kuí, mo e tulí ke fanongo, pea fakamo'ui 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga mahaki kotoa pē.
- 6 Pea te ne kapusi ki tu'a 'a e kau tēvoló, pe ko e ngaahi laumālie 'uli 'oku nau nofo'ia 'i he loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá.
- 7 Pea vakai, te ne kātaki 'i 'a e ngaahi 'ahi'ahi, mo e mamahi fakaesino, 'a e fiekaíá, fieinuá, mo e ongosíá, 'io 'o lahi hake 'i he me'a 'oku fa'a kātaki 'i 'e he tangatá, tuku kehe pē 'a e maté; he vakai, 'oku tafe hifo 'a e ta'ata'á mei he ava kotoa pē 'o hono kilí, pea 'e lahi pehē 'a 'ene mamahi koe'uhi ko e ngaahi fai angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia 'a hono kakaí.

Mosiah 3

And again my brethren, I would call your attention, for I have somewhat more to speak unto you; for behold, I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come.

And the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake; and I awoke, and behold he stood before me.

And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee; for behold, I am come to declare unto you the glad tidings of great joy.

For the Lord hath heard thy prayers, and hath judged of thy righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice; and that thou mayest declare unto thy people, that they may also be filled with joy.

For behold, the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.

And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of the children of men.

And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst, and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people.

8 Pea 'e ui ia ko Sisū Kalaisi, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuā, ko e Tamai 'o e langi mo e māmaní, ko e Tupu'anga 'o e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē mei he kamata'angá; pea 'e ui 'a 'ene fa'éé ko Mele.

9 Pea vakai, te ne hā'ele mai ki hono kakai 'o'oná, ko'e uhi ke hoko 'a e fakamo'ui ki he fānau 'a e tangatá 'i he tui ki hono huafá; pea neongo 'a 'eni kotoa pē ka te nau pehē ko ha tangata pē ia, mo pehē 'oku 'iate ia ha laumālie 'uli, pea te nau fakamamahi 'i ia, mo kalusefai ia.

10 Pea te ne toe tu' u 'i he 'aho hono tolú mei he maté; pea vakai, 'oku ne tu' u ke fakamāu 'i 'a e māmaní; pea vakai, 'oku fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē ko'e uhi ke lava 'o hoko 'a e fakamaau mā'oní'oni ki he fānau 'a e tangatá.

11 He vakai, pea 'oku totongi foki 'e hono ta'ata'á ki he ngaahi angahala 'anautolu kuo hinga 'i he maumau-fono 'a 'Ātamá, pea kuo nau mate 'i he ta'é'ilo 'i 'a e finangalo 'o e 'Otuá 'o kau kiate kinautolú, pe kuo nau fai angahala ta'é'ilo.

12 Kae mala'ia, mala'ia kiate ia 'oku ne 'ilo 'i 'oku ne angatu' u ki he 'Otuá! He 'oku 'ikai ke hoko mai 'a e fakamo'ui ki ha taha pehē, kae ngata pē 'i he fakatomala mo e tui ki he 'Eiki ko Sisū Kalaisí.

13 Pea kuo fekau atu 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a 'ene kau palōfita mā'oní'oni ki he fānau kotoa pē 'a e tangatá, ke nau fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'á ni ki he fa'ahinga kotoa pē, mo e pule'anga, mo e lea, ko'e uhi ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku tui 'e hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí, 'e ma' u 'e kinautolu 'a e fakamolemole 'o 'enau ngaahi angahalá, pea fiefia 'i he fiefia lahi 'aupito, 'o hangē nai kuó ne 'osi hā'ele mai kiate kinautolú.

14 Ka na'e 'afio 'i 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ko ha kakai kia-kekeva 'a hono kakai, pea na'á ne tuku kiate kinautolu ha fonó, 'a ia ko e fonó 'a Mōsesé.

15 Pea na'e lahi ha ngaahi faka'ilonga, mo e ngaahi me'a fakafofo, mo e ngaahi sipinga, mo e ngaahi 'ata na'á ne fakahā kiate kinautolu, 'o kau ki he 'ene hā'ele mai; pea na'e lea foki mo e kau palōfita mā'oní'oni kiate kinautolu 'o kau ki he 'ene hā'ele mai; ka na'a nau fakafefeka pē 'a honau lotó, pea na'e 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu 'oku ta'é'aonga 'a e fonó 'a Mōsesé kae ngata pē 'i he fakalelei 'o hono ta'ata'á.

And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary.

And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him.

And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous judgment might come upon the children of men.

For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned.

But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as though he had already come among them.

Yet the Lord God saw that his people were a stiff-necked people, and he appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses.

And many signs, and wonders, and types, and shadows showed he unto them, concerning his coming; and also holy prophets spake unto them concerning his coming; and yet they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availeth nothing except it were through the atonement of his blood.

16 Pea ka ne lava 'e he fānau ikí 'o fai angahala 'e 'ikai lava 'o fakamo'uí 'a kinautolu; ka 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'oku nau monū'ia; he vakai, koe'uhi ko 'Ātama, pe 'i honau anga fakangatulá, kuo nau hinga ai, ko ia kuo totongi 'e he ta'ata'a 'o Kalaisí ki he'enau ngaahi angahalá.

17 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e 'ikai tuku mai mo ha toe hingoa kehe pe hala pe founga 'a ia 'e lava 'o hoko ai 'a e fakamo'uí ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, kae fou pea ngata pē 'i he huafa 'o Kalaisi, ko e 'Eiki Māfimaí.

18 He vakai 'okú ne fakamaau, pea 'oku totonu 'a 'ene fakamāú; pea 'oku 'ikai mala'ia fakalaumālie 'a e tamasi'i valevale ko ia 'oku pekia 'i he'ene kei valevalé; ka 'oku inu 'e he kakai 'a e mala'ia ki honau laumālie 'onautolú tuku kehe 'o ka nau ka toki fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu pea hoko 'o tatau mo e fānau ikí, pea tui na'e hoko 'a e fakamo'uí, pea 'oku hoko, pea 'e hoko ia, tu'unga 'i he ta'ata'a fakalelei 'o Kalaisi, ko e 'Eiki Māfimaí.

19 He ko e tangata fakakakanó ko e fili ia ki he 'Otuá, pea kuo pehē ai pē ia talu mei he hinga 'a 'Ātamá, pea 'e pehē ai pē, 'o ta'engata pea ta'engata, kae 'oua kuó ne talangofua ki he ngaahi fakahinohino 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, pea lí'aki 'a e tangata fakakakanó kae hoko ko ha tangata mā'oni'oni 'i he fakalelei 'a Kalaisi ko e 'Eikí, pea hoko 'o anga tatau mo ha tamasi'i sí'i, angavaivai, angamalū, loto-fakatōkilalo, fa'a kātaki, fonu 'i he 'ofa, pea loto-fiemālie ke fakavaivai 'i he me'a kotoa pē 'oku 'afio 'i 'e he 'Eikí 'oku lelei ke ne faí, 'o hangē 'oku fakavaivai 'e ha tamasi'i sí'i ki he'ene tamaí.

20 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e hokosia 'a e taimi 'a ia 'e mafola ai 'a e 'ilo ki he Fakamo'uí 'i he pule'anga, mo e fa'ahinga, mo e lea, mo e kakai fulipē.

21 Pea vakai, 'o ka hokosia 'a e taimi ko iá, 'e 'ikai 'ilo 'i ha taha 'oku ta'ehalaia 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, tuku kehe pē 'a e fānau ikí, kae ngata pē 'i he fakatomala mo e tui ki he huafa 'o e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá Māfimaí.

22 Pea na'a mo e taimí ni, 'o ka 'osi ho 'o akonaki 'i 'a ho kakai 'i he ngaahi me'a kuo fekau 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá kiate koé, 'oku 'ikai ke nau tu'u ta'ehalaia ai 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, kae fakatatau pē ki he ngaahi lea kuó u lea'aki kiate kimoutolú.

And even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved; but I say unto you they are blessed; for behold, as in Adam, or by nature, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins.

And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For behold he judgeth, and his judgment is just; and the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.

And moreover, I say unto you, that the time shall come when the knowledge of a Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

And behold, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

And even at this time, when thou shalt have taught thy people the things which the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God, only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee.

23 Pea ko 'eni, kuó u lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia kuo fekau kiate au 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá.

24 Pea 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki: 'E tu'u ia ko ha fakamo'oni mahino ke talatalaaki 'i 'aki 'a e kakaí ni 'i he 'aho fakamāú; pea 'e fakamāu 'i 'aki ia 'a kinautolu, ko e tangata taki taha 'o fakatatau ki he'ene ngaahi ngāué, pe 'oku lelei pe kovi ia.

25 Pea kapau 'oku kovi 'oku tuku ai 'a kinautolu ke mamahi 'i he'enu fakakaukau ki he'enu angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia 'anautolú, 'a ia 'oku fakatupu ai 'a 'enu holomui mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eiki ki ha tu'unga 'o e mamahi mo e fakamamahi ta'engata, 'a ia 'e 'ikai te nau fa'a lava 'o toe foki mei ai; ko ia kuo nau inu 'a e mala'ia ki honau laumālie 'onautolú.

26 Ko ia, kuo nau inu mei he ipu 'o e houhau 'o e 'Otuá, pea 'oku 'ikai fa'a lava 'e he fakamaau totonu ko iá 'o ta'ofi 'a e tautea 'e hoko kiate kinautolú, 'o hangē pē ko e 'ikai te ne lava 'o ta'ofi 'a e hinga 'a 'Ātama 'i he'ene kai 'a e fua tapú; ko ia, 'e 'ikai toe ma'u 'e he 'alo'ofá ha mafai kiate kinautolu 'o ta'engata.

27 Pea 'oku hangē 'a honau fakamamahi 'i ko ha ano 'o e afi mo e makavela, 'a ia 'oku ta'e-fa'a-mate 'a hono ngaahi uló, pea 'oku 'alu hake 'a hono 'ahú 'o ta'engata pea ta'engata. Kuo pehē hono fekau au 'e he 'Eiki. 'Ēmeni.

And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.

And thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil.

And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls.

Therefore, they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partaking of the forbidden fruit; therefore, mercy could have claim on them no more forever.

And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever. Thus hath the Lord commanded me. Amen.

Mōsaia 4

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he faka'osi 'e he tu'i ko Penisimani 'a 'ene folofola 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo fakahā kiate ia 'e he 'āngelo 'a e 'Eikí, na'á ne 'afio takatakai atu ki he kakai, 'o ne 'afio kuo nau tō ki he kelekelé, he kuo tō kiate kinautolu 'a e manavahē ki he 'Eikí.
- 2 Pea kuo vakai ki honau tu'unga fakakakano 'onautolú, 'a ia 'oku nau sí 'i hifo 'i he efu 'o e kelekelé. Pea na'a nau kalanga le'o-lahi 'i he le'o pē taha, 'o pehē: 'Oiaue 'alo'ofa mai, pea ngāue 'aki 'a e ta'ata'a fakalelei 'o Kalaisi koe'uhi ke mau lava 'o ma'u ha fakamolemole 'o 'emau ngaahi angahalá, pea lava ke fakama'a 'a homau lotó; he 'oku mau tui kia Sīsū Kalaisi, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, 'a ia na'á ne fakatupu 'a e langí mo e māmaní, pea mo e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē; 'a ia 'e hā'ele hifo ki he fānau 'a e tangatá.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a 'enau lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ní na'e tō kiate kinautolu 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí, pea na'a nau fonu 'i he fiefia, hili 'enau ma'u ha fakamolemole 'o 'enau ngaahi angahalá, mo e fiemālie 'o e konisēnisí, ko e tupu mei he fu'u tui lahi 'a ia na'a nau ma'u kia Sīsū Kalaisi 'a ia te ne hā'ele maí, 'o fakatatau ki he folofola kuo folofola 'aki 'e he tu'i ko Penisimani kiate kinautolú.
- 4 Pea na'e toe kamata 'e he tu'i ko Penisimani ke folofola kiate kinautolu, 'o pehē: 'E hoku ngaahi kaume'a mo hoku ngaahi tokoua, 'e hoku kāinga mo hoku kakai, 'oku ou toe fie fakatokanga 'i 'a kimoutolu, koe'uhí ke mou fanongo pea 'ilo'i 'a hono toe 'o 'eku ngaahi lea 'a ia te u lea 'aki kiate kimoutolú.
- 5 He vakai, kapau kuo fakaake 'a kimoutolu he taimí ni 'e he 'ilo'i 'o e angalelei 'a e 'Otuá ke mou ongo'i 'a ho'omou ta'e aongá, mo homou anga ta'e-mahu'inga mo tō ki laló—

Mosiah 4

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord, that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and behold they had fallen to the earth, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them.

And they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth. And they all cried aloud with one voice, saying: O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men.

And it came to pass that after they had spoken these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ who should come, according to the words which king Benjamin had spoken unto them.

And king Benjamin again opened his mouth and began to speak unto them, saying: My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people, I would again call your attention, that ye may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.

For behold, if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state—

6 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau kuo mou ma'u ha 'ilo ki he angalelei 'a e 'Otuá, mo hono māfimaŋi ta'e-hano-tataú, mo hono potó, mo 'ene fa'a kātaki, mo 'ene kātaki fuoloa ki he fānau 'a e tangatá; kae 'uma'ā foki, mo e fakalelei 'a ia kuo teuteu talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní, koe'uhi ke lava 'o fakahoko ai 'a e fakamo'uí kiate ia 'e falala ki he 'Eikí, pea faivelenga 'i he tauhi 'o 'ene ngaahi fekaú, pea fai atu 'i he tui 'o a'u ki he ngata'anga 'o 'ene mo'uí, 'a ia ko 'eku lau ki he mo'uí 'a e sino fakamatelié—

7 'Oku ou pehē, ko 'eni 'a e tangata 'okú ne ma'u 'a e fakamo'uí, tu'unga 'i he fakalelei 'a ia na'e teuteu talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní ma'á e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá, 'a ia kuo 'i ai talu 'a e hinga 'a 'Ātamá, pea 'oku 'i ai, pe 'e 'i ai, 'o a'u ki he ngata'anga 'o e māmaní.

8 Pea ko e founga 'eni 'oku hoko mai ai 'a e fakamo'uí. Pea 'oku 'ikai ke toe 'i ai mo ha fakamo'ui kehe ka ko 'eni pē 'a ia kuo lau ki ai; pea 'oku 'ikai foki ke toe 'i ai mo ha ngaahi tu'unga 'e lava ke fakamo'ui ai 'a e tangatá, ka 'i he 'ene fakahoko pē 'a e ngaahi tu'unga kuó u fakahā kiate kimoutolú.

9 Tui pe ki he 'Otuá; tui 'okú ne 'i ai, pea na'á ne fakatupu 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē, 'i he langí pea 'i he māmaní fakatou'osi; tui 'okú ne ma'u 'a e poto kotoa, mo e māfimaŋi kotoa, 'i he langí mo e māmaní fakatou'osi; tui 'oku 'ikai 'ilo 'i 'e he tangatá 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku lava ke 'afio 'i 'e he 'Eikí.

10 Pea ko e tahá, tui foki 'oku totonu ke mou fakatomala mei ho'omou ngaahi angahalá pea lí'aki ia, pea fakavaivai 'i 'a kimoutolu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá; pea kole 'i he loto-fakamo'omo'oni ke ne fakamolemole 'i 'a kimoutolu; pea ko 'eni, kapau 'oku mou tui ki he ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, tokanga ke mou fai ia.

I say unto you, if ye have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life, I mean the life of the mortal body—

I say, that this is the man who receiveth salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.

And this is the means whereby salvation cometh. And there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of; neither are there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you.

Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.

And again, believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you; and now, if you believe all these things see that ye do them.

- 11 Pea 'oku ou toe pehē kiate kimoutolu 'o hangē ko 'eku pehē 'i mu'á, ko e me'a 'i ho'omou 'ilo 'i 'a e nāunau 'o e 'Otuá, pe kuo mou 'ilo ki he'ene angalelé 'o 'ahi'ahi 'i 'a 'ene 'ofá, pea ma'u ha fakamolemole 'o ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, 'a ia 'oku fakatupu ha fu'u fiefia lahi pehē 'i homou laumālié, ko ia 'oku ou loto ke mou manatu, pea mou manatu ma'u ai pē, ki he māfima 'i 'o e 'Otuá, mo ho'omou ta'e'aongá, mo 'ene angalelé mo e kātaki fuoloa kiate kimoutolú, 'a e kakai ta'etaau, pea fakavaivai 'i 'a kimoutolu 'i he fu'u loto-fakatōkilalo lahi, pea ui ki he huafa 'o e 'Eikí 'i he 'aho kotoa pē, 'o tu'u ma'u 'i he tui mālohi ki he ngaahi me'a 'e hoko maí, 'a ia na'e lea 'aki 'e he ngutu 'o e 'āngeló.
- 12 Pea vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau te mou fai 'eni te mou fiefia ma'u pē, pea fonu 'i he 'ofa 'a e 'Otuá, 'o tauhi ma'u ai pē ha fakamolemole 'o ho'omou ngaahi angahalá; pea te mou tupulaki 'i he 'ilo ki he nāunau 'o ia na'á ne fakatupu 'a kimoutolú, pe 'i he 'ilo 'i ki he me'a ko ia 'oku totonu mo mo'oní.
- 13 Pea 'e 'ikai ke 'i homou 'atamaí ke fefakamamahi'aki 'iate kimoutolu, kae nofo melino, pea fai ki he tangata taki taha 'o fakatau mo e me'a 'oku totonu ke fai kiate iá.
- 14 Pea 'e 'ikai te mou tuku ho'omou fānau ke fiekaia, pe tēlefua; pea 'e 'ikai foki te mou tuku ke nau maumau 'i 'a e ngaahi fono 'a e 'Otuá, pea kē mo feke'ike 'i 'iate kinautolu, mo tauhi 'a e tēvoló, 'a ia ko e pule 'o e angahalá, pe ko e laumālie angakovi ia 'a ia kuo lea ki ai 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí, he ko e fili ia ki he mā'oní'oni kotoa pē.
- 15 Ka te mou ako 'i 'a kinautolu ke nau 'a'eva 'i he ngaahi hala 'o e mo'oní mo e anga-fakamo'omo'oní; te mou ako 'i 'a kinautolu ke nau fe'ofa'aki mo fetauhi'aki 'iate kinautolu.
- 16 Kae 'uma'ā foki, te mou tokoni mo kimoutolu kiate kinautolu 'oku nau fie ma'u ho'omou tokoní; te mou foaki mei ho'omou koloá kiate ia 'oku fie ma'u ha tokoní; pea 'e 'ikai te mou tuku he fai ta'e'aonga 'e he paeá 'a 'ene kolé kiate kimoutolu, pea kapusi ia ke 'alu 'o mate.

And again I say unto you as I have said before, that as ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if ye have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which causeth such exceedingly great joy in your souls, even so I would that ye should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling on the name of the Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel.

And behold, I say unto you that if ye do this ye shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins; and ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

And ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

And ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness.

But ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another.

And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

17 Te ke pehē 'apē: Kuo fakahoko 'e he tangatā 'iate ia pē 'a 'ene mamahí; ko ia te u ta'ofi hoku nimá 'o 'ikai tokoni kiate ia, pea 'ikai foaki kiate ia mei he'eku me'akaí, pe foaki kiate ia mei he'eku koloá koe'uhi ke 'oua na'á ne mamahi, he 'oku totonu 'a hono ngaahi tauteá—

18 Ka 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'Oiauē 'e tangata, ko ia ia 'oku fai 'eni 'oku 'i ai ha'ane fu'u 'uhinga lahi ke fakatomala; pe ka 'ikai te ne fakatomala mei he me'a kuó ne faí te ne mala'ia 'o ta'engata, pea 'oku 'ikai hano potu 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá.

19 He vakai, 'oku 'ikai koā ko e kau paea kotoa pē 'a kitautolu? 'Oku 'ikai koā te tau falala kotoa pē ki he Tokotaha tatau, 'a ia ko e 'Otuá, ke ma'u meiate ia 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku tau ma'ú, ke ma'u 'a e me'akai mo e kofu fakatou'osi, pea mo e koula, mo e siliva, mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga koloa kotoa pē 'oku tau ma'ú?

20 Pea vakai, na'a mo e taimí ni, kuo mou ui ki hono huafá, 'o kole fakamātoato ke ma'u ha fakamolemole 'o ho'omou ngaahi angahalá. Pea kuó ne tuku koā ke mou kole 'o ta'e'aonga? 'Ikai; kuó ne lilingi hifo 'a hono Laumālié kiate kimoutolu, 'o tuku ke fakafonu 'a homou lotó 'i he fiefia, mo tuku ke mapuni 'a homou ngutú ke 'oua na'a mou fa'a lea, ko e tupu 'i hono lahi fau 'o ho'omou fiefiá.

21 Pea ko 'eni, kapau ko e 'Otuá, 'a ia na'á ne fakatupu 'a kimoutolú, 'a ia 'oku mou fakafalala ki ai ke ma'u ho'omou mo'uí mo e me'a kotoa pē 'oku mou ma'ú mo kimoutolu, kapau 'okú ne foaki kiate kimoutolu 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku mou kole 'a ia 'oku totonú, 'i he tui, mo 'amanaki te mou ma'ú, Kapau ko ia, hono 'ikai totonu ke mou fefoaki'aki mei he ngaahi koloa 'oku mou ma'ú 'iate kimoutolu.

22 Pea kapau 'oku mou fakamāu 'i 'a e tangata ko ia 'oku kole meiate kimoutolu 'a ho'omou koloá koe'uhi ke 'oua te ne maté, kae fakahalaia 'i ia, hono 'ikai totonu ange homou fakahalaia 'i koe'uhi ko e ta'ofi 'o ho'omou ngaahi koloá, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai 'amoutolu ka 'oku 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia foki 'oku 'a'ana ho'omou mo'uí; ka 'oku 'ikai te mou kole kiate ia, pe fakatomala mei he me'a kuo mou faí.

23 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, mala'ia 'a e tangata ko ia, koe'uhi 'e 'auha fakataha mo ia 'a 'ene koloá; pea ko 'eni, 'oku ou lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate kinautolu 'a ia 'oku koloa'ia 'i he ngaahi me'a 'o e māmani ko 'eni.

Perhaps thou shalt say: The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just—

But I say unto you, O man, whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent; and except he repenteth of that which he hath done he perisheth forever, and hath no interest in the kingdom of God.

For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that ye could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy.

And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another.

And if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth; and yet ye put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which thou hast done.

I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world.

- 24 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku ou pehē ki he masivá, 'a kimoutolu 'oku 'ikai koloa'ia, ka 'oku mou ma'u fe'unga ke mo'ui ai mei he 'aho ki he 'ahó; ko 'eku lau kiate kimoutolu kotoa pē 'oku teke'i 'a e paeá, koe'uhi 'oku 'ikai te mou ma'u ha me'á; 'oku ou loto ke mou pehē 'i homou lotó: 'Oku 'ikai te u foakí koe'uhi he 'oku 'ikai te u ma'u ha me'a, ka 'o kapau na'á ku ma'u te u foaki.
- 25 Pea ko 'eni, kapau 'oku mou lea 'aki 'eni 'i homou lotó 'oku mou kei ta'ehalaia, ka 'ikai 'oku fakahala'ia 'i 'a kimoutolu; pea 'oku totonu 'a homou fakahalaia he 'oku mou mānumanu ki he ngaahi me'a 'oku te'eki ai te mou ma'u.
- 26 Pea ko 'eni, koe'uhi ko e ngaahi me'á ni kuó u lea 'aki kiate kimoutolú—'a ia ko e pehē, koe'uhi ke tauhi ha fakamolemole 'o ho'omou ngaahi angahala mei he 'aho ki he 'aho, koe'uhí ke mou 'a'eva 'o ta'ehalaia 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá—'oku ou faka'amu ke mou foaki mei ho'omou ngaahi koloá ki he masivá, ko e tangata taki taha 'o fakatatau ki he me'a 'okú ne ma'ú, 'o hangē ko e fafanga 'o e fiekaia, mo e fakakofu 'i 'o e telefuá, mo e 'a'ahi ki he mahakí, pea tokoni ki honau fakafiemālié, 'i he me'a fakalaumālie mo fakatu'asino fakatou'osi, 'o fakatatau ki he'enua ngaahi fie ma'ú.
- 27 Pea tokanga ke fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē 'i he fakapotopoto mo e maau; he 'oku 'ikai fie ma'u ke lele 'a e tangatá 'o vave ange 'i he mālohi 'okú ne ma'ú. Pea ko e tahá, 'oku 'aonga ke ne faivelenga koe'uhi ke ne lava 'o ma'u ai 'a e palé; ko ia, 'oku totonu ke fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'o maau.
- 28 Pea 'oku ou loto ke mou manatu, 'ilonga ia 'iate kimoutolu 'oku kole mei hono kaungā'apí 'oku totonu ke ne fakafoki 'a e me'a 'okú ne kolé, 'o fakatatau mo e alea na'á ne faí, ka 'ikai te ke fai angahala ai; pea mahalo te ke fakatupu foki ha fai angahala ai 'a ho kaungā'apí.
- 29 Pea ko hono faka'osí, 'oku 'ikai te u lava 'o fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku mou lava ai 'o fai angahala; he 'oku lahi ha ngaahi hala mo ha ngaahi founa kehekehe, 'io 'oku pehē fau honau lahi 'oku 'ikai te u fa'a lau ia.

And again, I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not, but if I had I would give.

And now, if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned; and your condemnation is just for ye covet that which ye have not received.

And now, for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you—that is, for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day, that ye may walk guiltless before God—I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants.

And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength. And again, it is expedient that he should be diligent, that thereby he might win the prize; therefore, all things must be done in order.

And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also.

And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit sin; for there are divers ways and means, even so many that I cannot number them.

30 Ka 'oku ou lava ke fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e me'a ko 'enī, kapau 'oku 'ikai te mou 'ilo'i 'oku mou faitotonu ma'u pē, mo ho'omou ngaahi fakakaukā, mo ho'omou ngaahi leá, mo ho'omou ngaahi ngāu'é, pea tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, 'o tui ma'u pē ki he ngaahi me'a kuo mou fanongo ai 'o kau ki he hā'ele mai 'a hotau 'Eikí, 'o a'u ki he ngata'anga 'o ho'omou mo'uí, pehē kuo pau ke mou mala'ia. 'Oiauē 'e tangata, manatu, pea 'oua 'e mala'ia.

But this much I can tell you, that if ye do not watch yourselves, and your thoughts, and your words, and your deeds, and observe the commandments of God, and continue in the faith of what ye have heard concerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of your lives, ye must perish. And now, O man, remember, and perish not.

Mōsaia 5

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi folofola peheni 'a e tu'i ko Penisimaní ki hono kakaí, na'á ne fekau atu kiate kinautolu, koe'uhi ko 'ene fie 'ilo pe 'oku tui hono kakaí ki he ngaahi lea kuó ne lea 'aki kiate kinautolú.
- 2 Pea na'a nau kaila kotoa pē 'i he le'o pē taha, 'o pehē: 'Io, 'oku mau tui ki he ngaahi folofola kotoa pē kuó ke folofola 'aki kiate kinautolú; pea 'oku mau 'ilo 'i foki 'a hono paú mo hono mo'oní, koe'uhi ko e Laumālie 'o e 'Eiki Māfimaí, 'a ia kuo fakatupu ha fu'u liliu lahi 'i loto 'iate kinautolu, pe 'i homau lotó, 'o 'ikai ai te mau toe ma'u ha holi ke faikovi, kā ke failelei ma'u ai pē.
- 3 Pea ko kinautolu, foki, 'oku mau ma'u 'i he fungani angalelei ta'e-fakangatangata 'a e 'Otuá, mo e ngaahi me'a kuo fakahā mai 'e hono Laumālie kiate kinautolú, kuo mau 'ilo ki he ngaahi me'a lalahi 'a ia 'e hoko maí; pea kapau 'e 'aonga, te mau lava 'o kikite ki he ngaahi me'a kotoa pē.
- 4 Pea ko e tui kuo mau ma'u ki he ngaahi me'a kuo folofola 'aki 'e homau tu'i kiate kinautolú kuo tupu ai 'ema ma'u 'a e fu'u 'ilo lahi ko 'ení, 'a ia 'oku mau fiefia ai 'i he fu'u fiefia lahi fau.
- 5 Pea 'oku mau loto-fiemālie ke fai ha fuakava mo homau 'Otuá ke fai 'a hono finangaló, pea talangofua ki he'ene ngaahi fekaú 'i he me'a kotoa pē te ne fekau kiate kinautolú, 'i he toenga kotoa 'o homau ngaahi 'ahó, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a mau 'omi kiate kinautolu ha fakamamahi 'oku 'ikai ngata, 'o hangē ko ia na'e lea 'aki 'e he 'āngeló, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a tō kiate kinautolu 'a e houhau 'o e 'Otuá.
- 6 Pea ko 'eni, ko e ngaahi lea 'eni 'a ia na'e fie ma'u 'e he tu'i ko Penisimaní meiate kinautolú; ko ia na'á ne folofola ange kiate kinautolu: Kuo mou lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia na'á ku fie ma'ú; pea ko e fuakava kuo mou faí ko ha fuakava mā'oni'oni ia.
- 7 Pea ko 'eni, ko e me'a 'i he fuakava kuo mou faí 'e ui ai 'a kimoutolu ko e fānau 'a Kalaisi, ko hono ngaahi foha, pea mo hono ngaahi 'ofefine; he vakai, 'i he 'ahó ni kuó ne fānau 'i fakalaumālie 'a kimoutolu; he 'oku mou pehē kuo liliu 'a homou lotó 'i he tui ki hono huafá; ko ia, kuo fānau 'i 'a kimoutolu 'iate ia 'o mou hoko ko hono ngaahi foha mo hono ngaahi 'ofefine.

Mosiah 5

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had thus spoken to his people, he sent among them, desiring to know of his people if they believed the words which he had spoken unto them.

And they all cried with one voice, saying: Yea, we believe all the words which thou hast spoken unto us; and also, we know of their surety and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more disposition to do evil, but to do good continually.

And we, ourselves, also, through the infinite goodness of God, and the manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come; and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things.

And it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king has spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy.

And we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will, and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God.

And now, these are the words which king Benjamin desired of them; and therefore he said unto them: Ye have spoken the words that I desired; and the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant.

And now, because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; for behold, this day he hath spiritually begotten you; for ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, ye are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters.

8 Pea 'i he huafá ni kuo fakatau'atāina 'i ai 'a kimoutolu, pea 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai mo ha huafa kehe 'a ia 'e lava 'o fakatau'atāina ai 'a kimoutolu. 'Oku 'ikai ke 'i ai mo ha toe huafa kehe kuo foaki 'a ia 'e ma'u ai 'a e fakamo'uí; ko ia, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou to'oki kiate kimoutolu 'a e huafá 'o Kalaisí, 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē kuo fai 'a e fuakava mo e 'Otuá ke mou talangofua 'o a'u ki he ngata'anga 'o ho'omou mo'uí.

9 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'ilonga ia 'okú ne fai 'ení, te ne ma'u ha nofo'anga 'o e nāunau 'i he nima to'omata'u 'o e 'Otuá, ko'e uhi he te ne 'ilo 'a e hingoa 'oku ui 'aki iá; he 'e ui 'aki ia 'a e huafá 'o Kalaisí.

10 Pea ko 'ení 'e hoko 'o pehē, ko ia ia 'e 'ikai te ne to'oki kiate ia 'a e huafá 'o Kalaisí kuo pau ke ui ia 'aki ha hingoa kehe; ko ia, te ne 'ilo 'okú ne nofo 'i he to'ukupu to'ohema 'o e 'Otuá.

11 Pea 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou manatu 'i foki, ko e huafa 'ení 'a ia ná á ku pehē te u 'ai kiate kimoutolu 'a ia 'e 'ikai tāmata'e 'i, kae ngata pē 'i he maumau-fonó; ko ia, tokanga ke 'oua ná 'a mou maumau-fono, ko'e uhi ke 'oua ná 'a tāmata'e 'i 'a e huafá ni mei homou lotó.

12 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou manatu ke tauhi ma'u 'a e huafá 'o tohi ma'u ai pē 'i homou lotó, ko'e uhi ke 'oua ná 'a mou nofo 'i he to'ohema 'o e 'Otuá, ka ke mou fanongo pea 'ilo 'i 'a e le'o 'o ia 'e ui 'aki 'a kimoutolu, kae 'uma'ā foki, mo e huafa 'a ia 'e ui 'aki 'a kimoutolú.

13 He 'oku 'ilo 'i fēfē 'e ha tangata 'a e 'eiki kuo 'ikai te ne tauhi, pea ko ha muli ia kiate iá, pea 'oku mama 'o ia mei he ngaahi fakakaukau mo e ngaahi holi 'a hono lotó?

14 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku 'ave koā 'e ha tangata ha 'asi 'oku 'a hono kaungā'apí, 'o ne tauhi ia? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Oku 'ikai; 'e 'ikai te ne teitei tuku ke kai fakataha ia mo 'ene ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí, ka te ne tuli ia ke mama 'o, pea kapusi ia ki tua'ā. 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e pehē pē 'a e me'a 'e hoko kiate kimoutolú 'o kapau 'oku 'ikai te mou 'ilo 'a e huafá 'a ia 'oku ui 'aki 'a kimoutolú.

And under this head ye are made free, and there is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.

And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.

And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts.

I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you.

For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart?

And again, doth a man take an ass which belongeth to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called.

15 Ko ia, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou tu'u ma'u mo ta'e-
fa'a-ngāue, pea fonu ma'u pē'i he ngaahi ngāue lelei,
koe'uhi ke fakama'u 'e Kalaisi, ko e 'Eiki ko e 'Otua
Māfima'fi, 'a kimoutolu ma'ana, koe'uhi ke 'omi 'a
kimoutolu ki he langi, ke mou ma'u 'a e fakamo'ui
ta'engata mo e mo'ui ta'engata, 'i he poto, mo e
māfima'fi, mo e fakamaau totonu, mo e 'alo'ofa 'a'ana
na'a ne fakatupu 'a e me'a kotoa pē'i he langi pea mo
māmani, 'a ia ko e 'Otua 'oku mā'olunga tahā. 'Ēmeni.

Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and
immovable, always abounding in good works, that
Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his,
that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have ev-
erlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom,
and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created
all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all.
Amen.

Mōsaia 6

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, na'e fakakaukau 'e he tu'i ko Penisimaní, 'i he hili 'a 'ene faka'osi 'a 'ene folofola ki he kakaí, 'oku 'aonga ke ne tohi 'a e ngaahi hingoa 'onautolu kotoa pē kuo fai ha fuakava mo e 'Otuá ke tauhi 'ene ngaahi fekaú.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ha toko taha, tuku kehe pē 'a e fānau ikí, kuo 'ikai te nau fai ha fuakava 'o to'o kiate kinautolu 'a e huafa 'o Kalaisí.
- 3 Pea ko e tahá, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e faka'osi 'e he tu'i ko Penisimaní 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, pea kuó ne fakatapui 'a hono foha ko Mōsaiá ke hoko ko e pule mo e tu'i ki hono kakaí, peá ne tuku kiate ia 'a e ngaahi tu'utu'uni kotoa pē na'e kau ki he pule'angá, mo fakanofu foki ha kau taula'eiki ke ako'i 'a e kakaí, koe'uhí ke nau lava ai 'o fānongo, mo 'ilo 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, pea ue'i hake 'a kinautolu ke nau manatu 'i 'a e fuakava kuo nau faí, pea na'á ne tukuange 'a e kakaí, pea na'a nau foki, ko e tangata taki taha, 'o fakatatau ki honau fāmilí, ki honau ngaahi fale 'onautolú.
- 4 Pea na'e kamata 'a Mōsaia ke pule 'o fetongi 'ene tamaí. Pea na'á ne kamata ke pule 'i he tolungofulu ta'u 'o hono motu'á, 'a ia ko hono lau fakatahá ko e ta'u 'e fāngeau mā fitungofulu mā ono nai talu mei he taimi na'e 'alu ai 'a Līhai mei Selūsalemá.
- 5 Pea na'e mo'ui 'a e tu'i ko Penisimaní 'i he ta'u 'e tolu pea na'á ne pekia.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'a'eva 'a e tu'i ko Mōsaiá 'i he ngaahi hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eikí, 'o ne fai ki he'ene ngaahi fakamāú mo 'ene ngaahi fonó, mo tauhi 'a 'ene ngaahi fekaú 'i he me'a kotoa pē na'á ne fekau kiate íá.
- 7 Pea na'e fekau 'e he tu'i ko Mōsaiá ki hono kakaí ke nau ngoue'i 'a e kelekelé. Pea na'á ne kau foki mo ia, 'i hono ngoue'i 'o e kelekelé, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'á ne hoko ko ha fakakavenga ki hono kakaí, koe'uhi ke ne lava 'o fai 'o hangē ko ia kuo fai 'e he'ene tamaí 'i he me'a kotoa pē. Pea na'e 'ikai ha fakakikihi 'i hono kakaí kotoa 'o fe'unga mo e ta'u 'e tolu.

Mosiah 6

And now, king Benjamin thought it was expedient, after having finished speaking to the people, that he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that there was not one soul, except it were little children, but who had entered into the covenant and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

And again, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of all these things, and had consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a king over his people, and had given him all the charges concerning the kingdom, and also had appointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they might hear and know the commandments of God, and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath which they had made, he dismissed the multitude, and they returned, every one, according to their families, to their own houses.

And Mosiah began to reign in his father's stead. And he began to reign in the thirtieth year of his age, making in the whole, about four hundred and seventy-six years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

And king Benjamin lived three years and he died.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe his judgments and his statutes, and did keep his commandments in all things whatsoever he commanded him.

And king Mosiah did cause his people that they should till the earth. And he also, himself, did till the earth, that thereby he might not become burdensome to his people, that he might do according to that which his father had done in all things. And there was no contention among all his people for the space of three years.

Mōsaia 7

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, na'e 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e ma'u 'e he tu'i ko Mōsaia 'a e melino ma'u ai pē 'i he ta'u 'e tolu, na'á ne faka'amu ke 'ilo ki he kakai ko ia na'a nau 'alu hake ke nofo 'i he fonua ko Lihai-Nifaí, pe 'i he kolo ko Lihai-Nifaí; he kuo 'ikai toe fanongo 'a hono kakaf 'i ha me'a meiate kinautolu talu 'a e taimi na'a nau 'alu ai mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá; ko ia, na'á ne fiu 'i he'enu fa'a fehu'í.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuku 'e he tu'i ko Mōsaia ke 'alu hake ha toko hongofulu mā ono 'o honau kau tangata mālohi ki he fonua ko Lihai-Nifaí 'o kumi ki honau kāingá.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he pongipongi haké na'a nau kamata ke 'alu atu, pea na'e 'iate kinautolu ha tokotaha ko 'Āmoni, 'a ia ko e tangata mālohi mo ivi lahi, pea ko ha hako 'o Seilahemala; pea ko honau takimu'á foki ia.
- 4 Pea ko 'eni, na'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo 'a e hala ke nau fou ai 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá ke 'alu hake ki he fonua ko Lihai-Nifaí; ko ia na'a nau hē holo 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'i he ngaahi 'aho lahi, 'io ko e 'aho 'e fāngofulu na'a nau hē aí.
- 5 Pea 'i he 'osi 'a 'enu hē holo 'i he 'aho 'e fāngofulu na'a nau a'u atu ki ha ki'i mo'unga, 'a ia 'oku 'i he tokelau 'o e fonua ko Sailomé, pea na'a nau fokotu'u 'i ai 'a honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí.
- 6 Pea na'e 'ave 'e 'Āmoni 'a e toko tolu 'o hono kāingá, pea ko honau hingoá ko 'Amalekai, mo Hilemi, mo Hemi, pea na'a nau ō hifo ki he fonua ko Nifaí.
- 7 Pea vakai, na'a nau fetaulaki mo e tu'i 'o e kakai 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua ko Nifaí, pea 'i he fonua ko Sailomé; pea na'e kāpui 'a kinautolu 'e he kau le'o 'a e tu'í, pea na'e puke 'a kinautolu, 'o ha'i, pea tuku ki he fale fakapōpulá.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a 'enu nofo 'i he fale fakapōpulá 'i he 'aho 'e ua, na'e toe taki mai 'a kinautolu ki he 'ao 'o e tu'í, pea na'e vete 'a honau ngaahi ha'í; pea na'a nau tu'u 'i he 'ao 'o e tu'í, pea na'e fakangofua, pe na'e fekau kiate kinautolu ke nau tali 'a e ngaahi fehu'í 'a ia te ne fai kiate kinautolú.

Mosiah 7

And now, it came to pass that after king Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years, he was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of Lehi-Nephi; for his people had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla; therefore, they wearied him with their teasings.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi, to inquire concerning their brethren.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up, having with them one Ammon, he being a strong and mighty man, and a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was also their leader.

And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even forty days did they wander.

And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom, and there they pitched their tents.

And Ammon took three of his brethren, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went down into the land of Nephi.

And behold, they met the king of the people who were in the land of Nephi, and in the land of Shilom; and they were surrounded by the king's guard, and were taken, and were bound, and were committed to prison.

And it came to pass when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king, and their bands were loosed; and they stood before the king, and were permitted, or rather commanded, that they should answer the questions which he should ask them.

- 9 Pea pehē 'e ia kiate kinautolu: Vakai, ko au Limihai, ko e foha 'o Noa, 'a ia ko e foha 'o Sēnifí, 'a ia na'e ha'u mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá ke ma'u 'a e fonuá ni, 'a ia ko e fonua 'o 'enau ngaahi tamaí, 'a ia na'e fokotu'u ko e tu'i 'i he loto-taha 'a e kakaí.
- 10 Pea ko 'eni, 'oku ou fie 'ilo 'a e 'uhinga na'a mou loto-to'a pehē ai ke ha'u 'o ofi ki he ngaahi 'ā 'o e koló, lolotonga 'eku 'i tu'a 'i he matapaá mo 'eku kau le'ó?
- 11 Pea ko 'eni, ko e 'uhinga 'eni kuó u tuku ke fakamo'ui ai 'a kimoutolú, koe'uhi ke u fehu 'i kiate kimoutolu, he kapau na'e 'ikai ia, pehē kuó u fekau ki he'eku kau le'ó ke tāmata'e 'i 'a kimoutolu. 'Oku ngofua ke mou lea.
- 12 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he vakai 'e 'Āmoni kuo fakangofua ia ke ne leá, na'á ne 'alu atu 'o punou hifo 'i he 'ao 'o e tu'í; pea 'i he'ene toe tu'u haké na'á ne pehē ange: 'E tu'i, 'oku ou fakafeta'i lahi 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá he 'ahó ni koe'uhi 'oku ou kei mo'ui, pea kuo fakangofua au ke u lea; pea te u feinga ke lea ta'e-manavahē;
- 13 He 'oku ou 'ilo 'i fakapapau kapau na'á ke 'afio 'i au, pehē kuo 'ikai te ke tuku ke ha'i au 'aki 'a e ngaahi ha'í ni. He ko 'Āmoni au, pea ko e hako au 'o Seilahemala, pea kuó u ha'u mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá ke kumi homau kāinga, 'a ia na'e 'omi 'e Sēnifi mei he fonua ko iá.
- 14 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e fanongo 'a Limihai ki he ngaahi lea 'a 'Āmoní, na'á ne fu'u fiefia 'aupito, 'o ne folofola ange: Ko 'eni, 'oku ou 'ilo 'i fakapapau 'oku kei mo'ui 'a hoku kāinga 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá. Pea ko 'eni, te u fiefia; pea te u fekau ke fiefia foki mo hoku kakaí 'apongipongi.
- 15 He vakai, 'oku mau nofo pōpula ki he kau Leimaná, pea kuo fakatukuhau 'i 'a kimautilu 'aki ha tukuhau 'oku faingata'a hono fuesiá. Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'e fakahaofi 'a kimautilu 'e homau kāingá mei he'emaunofō pōpulá, pe mei he pule 'a e kau Leimaná, pea te mau hoko ko 'enau kau pōpula; he 'oku lelei ange 'emaunofō hoko ko e kau pōpula ki he kau Nifáí 'i he totongi 'a e tukuhau ki he tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná.

And he said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, which was the land of their fathers, who was made a king by the voice of the people.

And now, I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the walls of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the gate?

And now, for this cause have I suffered that ye should be preserved, that I might inquire of you, or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death. Ye are permitted to speak.

And now, when Ammon saw that he was permitted to speak, he went forth and bowed himself before the king; and rising again he said: O king, I am very thankful before God this day that I am yet alive, and am permitted to speak; and I will endeavor to speak with boldness;

For I am assured that if ye had known me ye would not have suffered that I should have worn these bands. For I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our brethren, whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.

And now, it came to pass that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon, he was exceedingly glad, and said: Now, I know of a surety that my brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla are yet alive. And now, I will rejoice; and on the morrow I will cause that my people shall rejoice also.

For behold, we are in bondage to the Lamanites, and are taxed with a tax which is grievous to be borne. And now, behold, our brethren will deliver us out of our bondage, or out of the hands of the Lamanites, and we will be their slaves; for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites.

16 Pea ko 'eni, na'e fekau 'e he tu'i ko Limihaí ki he 'ene kau le'ó ke 'oua 'e ha'i 'a 'Āmoni pe ko hono kāingá, ka na'á ne fekau ke nau ō ki he ki'i mo'unga na'e tu'u ki he tokelau 'o Sailomé, pea 'omi 'a honau kāingá ki he koló, koe'uhi ke nau kai, mo inu, pea mālōlō mei he ngaahi ngāue 'o 'enau fonongá; he kuo nau kātaki'i ha ngaahi me'a lahi; kuo nau kātaki'i 'a e fiekaia, mo e fieinuá, mo e ongosia.

17 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'apongipongi na'e fekau 'e he tu'i ko Limihaí ke fanongonongo ha tu'utu'uni ki hono kakaí kotoa, ke nau fakataha mai 'a kinautolu ki he temipalé ke fanongo ki he ngaahi lea 'a ia te ne lea 'aki kiate kinautolú.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'enau fakataha maí na'á ne folofola kiate kinautolu 'i he founga ko 'ení, 'o pehē: 'Oiauē 'a kimoutolu, ko hoku kakai, ke mou loto-to'a pea fiamalie; he vakai, 'oku ofi mai 'a e taimi, pea 'oku 'ikai ke mama' o ia, 'a ia 'e 'ikai te tau kei pōpula ai ki hotau ngaahi filí, neongo 'a 'etau ngaahi feinga lahi, 'a ia kuo ta'e'aongá; ka 'oku ou tui 'e kei 'aonga pē ke fai ha feinga.

19 Ko ia, ke mou loto-to'a, pea fiefia, pea mou falala ki he 'Otua, 'a ia ko e 'Otua 'o 'Ēpalahame, mo 'Aisake, mo Sēkopé; kae 'uma'ā foki, 'a e 'Otua ko ia na'á ne 'omi 'a e fānau 'a 'Isilelí mei he fonua ko 'Isipité, 'o ne pule ke nau fononga atu 'i he kelekele mōmoa ki he kauvai 'e taha 'o e Tahi Kulokulá, 'o ne fafanga 'aki 'a kinautolu 'a e maná koe'uhi ke 'oua te nau mate 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá; pea na'e lahi mo ha ngaahi me'a kehe na'á ne fai ma'anautolu.

20 Pea ko e tahá, ko e 'Otua pē ko ia na'á ne 'omi 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, pea kuó ne tauhi mo malu'i 'a hono kakaí 'o a'u mai ki he taimí ni; pea vakai, ko e me'a 'i he 'etau ngaahi hiá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá kuó ne tuku ai ke tau nofo pōpulá.

21 Pea ko kimoutolu kotoa pē ko e kau fakamo'oni he 'ahó ni, ko Sēnifi, 'a ia na'e fokotu'u ko e tu'i ki he kakai ní, ko e me'a 'i he 'ene holi lahi ke ma'u 'a e fonua 'o 'ene ngaahi tamaí, ko ia na'e kākaa'i ia 'i he olopoto mo e kākā 'a e tu'i ko Leimaná, 'a ia kuó ne fai ha alepau mo e tu'i ko Sēnifí, mo tuku kiate ia 'a e ngaahi me'a 'o hano kongá 'o e fonuá, pe ko e kolo ko Līhai-Nīfaí, mo e kolo ko Sailomé; pea mo e fonua takatakai ki aí—

And now, king Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his brethren, but caused that they should go to the hill which was north of Shilom, and bring their brethren into the city, that thereby they might eat, and drink, and rest themselves from the labors of their journey; for they had suffered many things; they had suffered hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

And now, it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple, to hear the words which he should speak unto them.

And it came to pass that when they had gathered themselves together that he spake unto them in this wise, saying: O ye, my people, lift up your heads and be comforted; for behold, the time is at hand, or is not far distant, when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies, notwithstanding our many strugglings, which have been in vain; yet I trust there remaineth an effectual struggle to be made.

Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them.

And again, that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now; and behold, it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has brought us into bondage.

And ye all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, who was made king over this people, he being over-zealous to inherit the land of his fathers, therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman, who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land, or even the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom; and the land round about—

22 Pea na'á ne fai 'eni kotoa pē, koe' uhi ko e 'uhinga pē taha ke ne 'omi 'a e kakaí ni ke nofo mo 'ulaloa pe nofo pōpula. Pea vakai, 'oku tau lolotonga totongi ha tukuhau ki he tu' i 'o e kau Leimaná, ko hono lahi ko e vaeua 'o 'etau koané mo 'etau pa'alé, kae 'uma'ā mo 'etau ngaahi kēleni 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē, pea mo hono vaeua 'o e tupu 'i he 'etau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí mo 'etau ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí; pea 'oku a'u ki he vaeua 'o e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku tau ma'ú, 'oku 'eke meiate kitautolu 'e he tu' i 'o e kau Leimaná, pe ko 'etau mo'uí.

23 Pea ko 'eni, 'ikai 'oku faingata'a hono fuesia 'a e me'á ni? Pea 'ikai ko hotau faingata'a 'ía, 'oku lahi? Ko 'eni vakai, hono 'ikai lahi 'a e 'uhinga 'oku tau ma'u ke tangi aí.

24 'Io, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku mamafa 'a e ngaahi 'uhinga 'oku tau ma'u ke tangi aí; he vakai hono 'ikai tokolahi 'a hotau kāinga kuo maté, pea kuo lilingi ta'e 'uhinga 'a honau totó, pea 'oku tupunga kotoa ia 'i he angahala.

25 He ka ne 'ikai tō 'a e kakaí ni ki he maumau-fonó pehē kuo 'ikai tuku 'e he 'Eikí ke hoko 'a e fu'u koví ni kiate kinautolu. Kae vakai, na'e 'ikai te nau fie tokanga ki he'ene ngaahi folofolá; ka na'e tupu 'a e ngaahi fakakikihi 'iate kinautolu, pea na'e a'u ki he'enu fetāmate'aki 'iate kinautolu.

26 Pea kuo nau tāmata'i ha palōfita 'a e 'Eikí: 'io, ko ha tangata kuo fili 'e he 'Otuá, 'a ia na'á ne fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a 'enu fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá, 'o kikite'i 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi 'a ia 'e hoko, 'io, na'a mo e hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí.

27 Pea ko e me'a 'i he'ene pehē kiate kinautolu ko Kalaisi 'a e 'Otua, mo e Tamai 'a e me'a kotoa pē, 'o ne pehē te ne to'o kiate ia 'a e tatau 'o e tangatá, pea ko e tatau ia 'a ia na'e fakatupu ia 'i he kamata'angá; pe ko hono 'ai 'e tahá, na'á ne pehē kuo fakatupu 'a e tangatá 'i he tatau 'o e 'Otuá, pea 'e hā'ele hifo 'a e 'Otuá ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'o ma'u kiate ia 'a e sino 'o e kakano mo e toto, 'o hā'ele atu 'i he funga 'o e māmaní—

And all this he did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into subjection or into bondage. And behold, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction, great? Now behold, how great reason we have to mourn.

Yea, I say unto you, great are the reasons which we have to mourn; for behold how many of our brethren have been slain, and their blood has been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them. But behold, they would not hearken unto his words; but there arose contentions among them, even so much that they did shed blood among themselves.

And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ.

And because he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth—

- 28 Pea ko 'eni, ko e me'a 'i he'enelea 'aki 'eni, ko ia na'a nau tamate'i ai ia; pea na'e lahi ha ngaahi me'a na'a nau fai 'a ia na'e 'ohifo ai 'a e houhau 'o e 'Otuá kiate kinautolu. Ko ia, ko hai 'okú ne ofo 'i he'enu nofo pōpulá, pea mo honau tautea 'i 'aki 'a e ngaahi faingata 'a 'ia fakamamahí?
- 29 He vakai, kuo folofola 'e he 'Eikí: 'E 'ikai te u tokoni 'i 'a hoku kakaí 'i he 'aho 'o 'enu maumau-fonó; ka te u fakafaingata 'a 'ia 'i 'a honau ngaahi halá ke 'oua te nau tu'umālie; pea 'e hoko 'enu ngaahi angafai, ko ha maka tūkia'anga 'i honau 'aó.
- 30 Pea ko e tahá, 'okú ne toe folofola: Kapau 'oku tūtuu 'i 'e hoku kakaí ko e kovi kuo pau ke nau utu hono kafukafú 'i he 'ahiohio, pea ko hono nunu 'a 'o iá ko e kona.
- 31 Pea 'okú ne toe folofola: Kapau 'e tūtuu 'i 'e hoku kakaí 'a e kovi, kuo pau ke nau utu 'a e matangi hahaké, 'a ia 'okú ne 'omi 'a e faka'auha fakafokifā.
- 32 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, kuo fakahoko 'a e tala'ofa 'a e 'Eikí, pea kuo te'ia mo fakamamahí 'i 'a kimoutolu.
- 33 Ka 'o kapau te mou tafoki ki he 'Eikí 'i he loto-fakamātoato mo'oni, pea falala kiate ia, mo tauhi kiate ia 'i he faivelenga kotoa 'o e 'atamaí, kapau te mou fai 'eni, te ne fakahaofi 'a kimoutolu mei he nofo pōpulá 'o hangē ko hono finangaló mo 'ene fá'itelihá.

And now, because he said this, they did put him to death; and many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them. Therefore, who wondereth that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions?

For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them.

And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.

And again he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the east wind, which bringeth immediate destruction.

And now, behold, the promise of the Lord is fulfilled, and ye are smitten and afflicted.

But if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of heart, and put your trust in him, and serve him with all diligence of mind, if ye do this, he will, according to his own will and pleasure, deliver you out of bondage.

Mōsaia 8

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono faka'osi 'e he tu'i ko Limihaí 'ene folofola ki hono kakaí, he na'á ne folofola 'aki ha ngaahi me'a lahi kiate kinautolu ka ko e ni'ihī pē 'o e ngaahi me'a ko iá kuó u tohi 'i he tohi ní, pea na'á ne fakahā ki hono kakaí 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē na'e kau ki honau kāinga 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá.
- 2 Pea na'á ne fekau kia 'Āmoni ke tu'u hake 'i he 'ao 'o e kakaí, 'o fakamatala kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuo hoko ki honau kāingá talu mei he taimi na'e 'alu ai 'a Sēnifi mei he fonuá 'o 'a'u ki he taimi na'á ne ha'u ai mei he fonuá.
- 3 Pea na'á ne toe fakamatala 'i foki kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi folofola faka'osi 'a ia kuo akonaki 'aki 'e he tu'i ko Penisimaní kiate kinautolú, 'o ne fakamatala 'i ia ki he kakaí 'o e tu'i ko Limihaí, koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo 'a e ngaahi folofola kotoa pē 'a ia na'á ne folofola 'akí.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'ene fai 'eni kotoa pē, na'e tukuange leva 'e he tu'i ko Limihaí 'a e kakaí, 'o ne fekau ke nau foki taki taha ki hono fale 'o oná.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fekau ke 'omi 'a e ngaahi peleti 'a ia na'e 'i ai 'a e lekooti 'o hono kakaí talu mei he taimi na'a nau 'alu ai mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá, ki he 'ao 'o 'Āmoní koe'uhi ke ne lau ia.
- 6 Ko 'eni, 'i he faka'osi leva 'e 'Āmoni hono lau 'o e lekōtí, na'e fehu 'i ange 'e he tu'í kiate ia pe'okú ne lava 'o liliu 'a e ngaahi leá, pea na'e fakahā kiate ia 'e 'Āmoni 'oku 'ikái te ne lava.
- 7 Pea folofola ange 'a e tu'í kiate ia: Ko e me'a 'i he'eku loto-mamahi koe'uhi ko e ngaahi faingata 'a ia 'a hoku kakaí, ko ia na'á ku fekau ai ha toko fāngofulu mā tolu 'o hoku kakaí ke nau fononga ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo 'i 'a e fonua ko Seilahemalá, ke mau lava 'o kole ki homau kāingá ke fakatau 'atāina 'i 'a kimautilu mei he nofo pōpulá.

Mosiah 8

And it came to pass that after king Limhi had made an end of speaking to his people, for he spake many things unto them and only a few of them have I written in this book, he told his people all the things concerning their brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla.

And he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude, and rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their brethren from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even until the time that he himself came up out of the land.

And he also rehearsed unto them the last words which king Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to the people of king Limhi, so that they might understand all the words which he spake.

And it came to pass that after he had done all this, that king Limhi dismissed the multitude, and caused that they should return every one unto his own house.

And it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them.

Now, as soon as Ammon had read the record, the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languages, and Ammon told him that he could not.

And the king said unto him: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.

8 Pea na'a nau hē 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'i ha ngaahi 'aho lahi, ka na'a nau fai tūkuingata pē, 'o 'ikai te nau 'ilo 'a e fonua ko Seilahemalá, ka nau foki mai ki he fonuá ni hili 'enau fononga holo 'i ha fonua 'oku lahi ai 'a e ngaahi vaí, 'o nau 'ilo ai ha fonua na'e 'ufi'ufi 'aki 'a e ngaahi hui 'o e tangata, pea mo e fanga manu, pea na'e 'ufi'ufi foki 'aki 'a e ngaahi fale maumau 'i he ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē, 'o nau 'ilo ha fonua 'a ia na'e nofo 'i 'e ha kakai 'a ia na'e tokolahi 'o hangē ko e tokolahi 'o e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa 'o 'Isilelí.

9 Pea kuo nau 'omi ke fakamo'oni 'i 'aki 'enau leá ha ngaahi peleti koula 'e uofulu mā fā 'a ia 'oku fonu 'i ha ngaahi tongitongi, pea 'oku nau 'o e koula haohaoa.

10 Pea vakai, foki, kuo nau 'omi ha ngaahi sifa-fatafata, 'a ia 'oku lalahi, pea kuo ngaohi 'aki ia 'a e palasa pea mo e kopa, pea 'oku kei lelei 'aupito.

11 Pea ko e tahá, kuo nau 'omi ha ngaahi heletā kuo maumau honau kaú, pea kuo matolu 'a e 'ume'umeá 'i honau matá; pea 'oku 'ikai ha tokotaha 'i he fonuá te ne lava 'o lau 'a e lea pe ko e ngaahi tongitongi 'a ia 'oku 'i he ngaahi peletí. Ko ia na'á ku pehē ai kiate koe: 'Okú ke lava koā 'o liliu lea?

12 Pea 'oku ou toe pehē kiate koe: 'Okú ke 'ilo koā ki ha tokotaha 'a ia 'okú ne lava 'o liliu lea? He 'oku ou faka'amu ke liliu 'a e ngaahi lekooti ko 'ení ki he 'etau leá; he te nau fakahā 'apē kiate kitautolu 'a e 'ilo ki ha toenga 'o e kakai ko 'ení 'a ia kuo 'auhá, 'a ia na'e ha'u mei ai 'a e ngaahi lekooti ní; pe, mahalo, te nau fakahā 'apē kiate kitautolu ha 'ilo ki he kakai pē ko ia 'a ia kuo 'auhá; pea 'oku ou fie 'ilo 'a e tupu'anga 'o 'enau 'auhá.

13 Pea na'e pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni kiate ia: Ko e mo'oni 'oku ou lava 'o fakahā kiate koe, 'e tu'i, ha tangata 'okú ne lava 'o liliu 'a e ngaahi lekōtí; he 'okú ne ma'u ha me'a 'a ia 'okú ne lava 'o mamata ki ai, pea liliu 'a e ngaahi lekooti kotoa pē 'a ia 'oku 'o ha 'aho 'i mu'a; pea ko ha me'a-foaki ia mei he 'Otuá. Pea 'oku ui 'a e ongo me'a ko iá ko e me'a liliu lea, pea 'oku 'ikai mafai ha tangata ke fakasio ki ai 'o kapau 'e 'ikai fekau 'i ia, telia na'á ne fakasio ki ha me'a 'a ia 'oku ta'etotonu ke ne sio ki ai pea mate ai ia. Pea ko ia ia 'oku fekau 'i ke fakasio ki ai 'oku ui ia ko e tangata kikite.

And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.

And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; and there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates. Therefore I said unto thee: Canst thou translate?

And I say unto thee again: Knowest thou of any one that can translate? For I am desirous that these records should be translated into our language; for, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the people who have been destroyed, from whence these records came; or, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer.

14 Pea vakai, ko e tu'í 'o e kakai ko ia 'oku 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá ko ia ia 'a e tangata kuo fekau ke ne fai 'a e ngaahi me'a ní, pea 'okú ne ma'u 'a e me'a-foaki mahu'inga lahi ko iá mei he 'Otuá.

15 Pea na'e pehē 'e he tu'í 'oku lahi ange 'a e tangata kikitē 'i ha palōfita.

16 Pea na'e pehē 'e 'Āmoni ko e tangata kikitē ko ha tangata ma'u fakahā mo e palōfita foki ia; pea 'oku 'ikai ha me'a-foaki lahi ange 'e lava 'e ha tangata 'o ma'u, tuku kehe 'o ka ne ka ma'u 'a e māfima'fí 'o e 'Otuá, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai lava ke ma'u 'e ha tangata; ka 'oku lava ke ma'u 'e ha tangata 'a e mālohi lahi 'oku foaki kiate ia mei he 'Otuá.

17 Ka 'oku lava 'e he tangata kikitē 'o 'ilo ki he ngaahi me'a 'i he kuohilí, kae 'unma'ā foki 'a e ngaahi me'a 'e hoko, pea 'e fakahā mai 'iate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē, pe, 'e fakahā mai 'iate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a liló, pea 'e 'a 'i he māma' 'a e ngaahi me'a fufuú, pea ko e ngaahi me'a 'oku te'eki 'ilo'í 'e fakahā 'iate kinautolu, pea 'e fakahā foki 'iate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia 'e 'ikai lava ke 'ilo'í 'i ha toe founa kehé.

18 Ko ia kuo foaki ai 'e he 'Otuá ha founa 'oku lava ai 'e he tangatá, 'i he tui, 'o fai 'a e ngaahi mana lalahi; ko ia 'okú ne hoko ai ko ha taha 'aonga lahi ki hono kāingá.

19 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he faka'osi 'e 'Āmoni 'a 'ene lea 'aki 'o e ngaahi lea ní na'e fiefia lahi 'aupito 'a e tu'í, 'o ne 'oatu 'a e fakafeta 'i ki he 'Otuá, 'o pehē: 'Oku 'ikai ha'aku veiveiua 'oku 'i he ngaahi peletí ni 'a e me'a lilo lahi, pea kuo pau ne teuteu 'i 'a e ongo me'a liliu lea ko 'ení ko hono 'uhingá ke fakamatalá 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a lilo pehē kotoa pē ki he fānau 'a e tangatá.

20 'Oiauē hono 'ikai faka'ofa 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a e 'Eikí, pea hono 'ikai fuoloa 'a 'ene kātaki 'i hono kakaí; 'io, pea hono 'ikai kui mo faingata 'a ke mahino ki he 'atamai 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá; he 'oku 'ikai te nau fie kumi ki he potó, pea 'oku 'ikai foki te nau loto ke ne pule 'i 'a kinautolu!

21 'Io, 'oku nau tatau mo ha takanga monumanu iiki hehengi 'oku hola mei he tauhí, pea 'oku fakamovetevete 'i, pea 'oku tuli, mo keina 'a kinautolu 'e he fānga manu fekai 'o e vaó.

And behold, the king of the people who are in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things, and who has this high gift from God.

And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet.

And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

Thus God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he becometh a great benefit to his fellow beings.

And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God, saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men.

O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom, neither do they desire that she should rule over them!

Yea, they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd, and scattereth, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest.

KO E LEKOOTI 'A SĒNIFI—Ko ha fakamatala 'o hono kakai talu mei be taimi na 'a nau 'alu ai mei be fonua ko Seilahemalá 'o a 'u ki be taimi na 'e fakabaofi ai 'a kinautolu mei be nima 'o e kau Leimaná.

Mōsaia 9

- 1 Ko au, Sēnifi, kuo akonekina au 'i he lea kotoa 'o e kau Nīfaí, pea 'i he'eku ma'u 'a e 'ilo ki he fonua ko Nīfaí, pe ki he fonua 'o e 'uluaki tofi 'a 'o 'emau ngaahi tamaí, pea 'i he fekau 'i atu au ko e tangata mataki 'i he kau Leimaná koe'uhi ke u mataki 'i 'a 'enau ngaahi kau taú, koe'uhi ke lava 'e he'emau kau taú 'o 'oho atu kiate kinautolu 'o faka'auha 'a kinautolu—ka 'i he'eku vakai ki he me'a 'a ia 'oku lelei 'iate kinautolú na 'á ku faka'amu ke 'oua 'e faka'auha 'a kinautolu.
- 2 Ko ia, na 'á ku fakakikihi mo hoku kāingá 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá he na 'á ku loto ke fai 'e homau pulé ha alea fakamelino mo kinautolu; ka koe'uhi ko ha tangata loto-fefeka mo loto tāmata ia, ko ia na 'á ne fekau ke tāmata 'i au; ka na 'e fakahaofi au 'i he lilingi 'o e toto lahi; he na 'e fetau 'aki 'a e tamai mo e tamai, mo e tokoua mo e tokoua, 'o a 'u ki hono faka'auha 'o ha kongá lahi 'o 'emau kau taú 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá; pea na 'a mau foki, 'a kinautolu na 'e haó, ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, ke fakahā 'a e talá ki honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enau fānaú.
- 3 Ka neongo iá, ko e me'a 'i he'eku fu'u faka'amu lahi ke ma'u 'a e fonua 'o 'emau ngaahi tamaí, na 'á ku tānaki ai 'a e tokolahi 'o kinautolu kotoa pē na 'e fie 'alu hake ke ma'u 'a e fonuá, pea mau toe kamata 'a 'emau fononga atu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá ke 'alu hake ki he fonuá; ka na 'e te'ia 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e honge mo e ngaahi faingata 'a 'ia fakamamahi; he na 'a mau fai tuai 'i he manatu ki he 'Eiki ko homau 'Otuá.
- 4 Ka neongo iá, 'i he hili ha ngaahi 'aho lahi 'o 'emau hē holo 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá na 'a mau fokotu'u homau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'i he potu 'a ia na 'e tō ai homau kāingá, 'a ia na 'e ofi ki he fonua 'o 'emau ngaahi tamaí.

THE RECORD OF ZENIFF—An account of his people, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time that they were delivered out of the hands of the Lamanites.

Mosiah 9

I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, and having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our fathers' first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come upon them and destroy them—but when I saw that which was good among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

Therefore, I contended with my brethren in the wilderness, for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere and a blood-thirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood; for father fought against father, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that were spared, to the land of Zarahemla, to relate that tale to their wives and their children.

And yet, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God.

Nevertheless, after many days' wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place where our brethren were slain, which was near to the land of our fathers.

5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku toe 'alu atu mo e toko fā 'o 'eku kau tangatá ki he koló, ki he tu'í, koe'uhi ke u 'ilo 'a e fakakaukau 'a e tu'í, pea koe'uhi ke u 'ilo pe 'e ngofua ke mau hū atu mo hoku kakaí 'o ma'u 'a e fonuá 'i he melino.

6 Peá u 'alu atu ki he tu'í, pea na'á ne fai ha fuakava mo au ke u ma'u 'a e fonua ko Līhai-Nīfái, pea mo e fonua ko Sailomé.

7 Pea na'á ne fēkau foki ke 'alu 'a hono kakaí mei he fonuá, pea na'á ku 'alu atu mo hoku kakaí ki he fonuá koe'uhi ke mau ma'u ia.

8 Pea na'a mau kamata ke langa 'a e ngaahi fale, pea monomono 'a e ngaahi 'ā 'o e koló, 'io, 'a e ngaahi 'ā 'o e kolo ko Līhai-Nīfái, pea mo e kolo ko Sailomé.

9 Pea na'a mau kamata ke ngoue 'i 'a e kekelelé, 'io, 'aki 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga tenga 'i 'akau kotoa pē, 'aki 'a e tenga 'i koane, mo e tenga 'i uite, mo e pa'ale, mo e neiasi, mo e siumi, pea mo e ngaahi tenga 'o e ngaahi fa'ahinga fua 'i 'akau kotoa pē; pea na'a mau kamata ke fakatokolahi pea tu'umālie 'i he fonuá.

10 Ko 'eni, ko e olopoto mo e kākā 'a e tu'í ko Leimaná, ke ne 'omi 'a hoku kakaí 'o fakapōpula 'i, ko ia na'á ne tuku mai ai 'a e fonuá ke mau ma'u íá.

11 Ko ia na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'emau nofo 'i he fonuá 'i he ta'u 'e hongofulu mā ua, na'e kamata ke tailiili 'a e tu'í ko Leimaná, telia na'a faka'au 'o mālohi 'a hoku kakaí 'i he fonuá, pea 'e 'ikai te nau lava 'o ikuna 'i 'o fakapōpula 'i 'a kinautolu.

12 Ko 'eni ko e kakai fakapikopiko mo tauhi tamapua 'a kinautolu; ko ia na'a nau fie fakapōpula 'i 'a kinautolu, ke nau fakafiemālie 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi fua 'o e ngāue 'a homau nimá; 'io, koe'uhi ke nau keinanga mei he ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki 'o 'emau ngaahi ngoué.

13 Ko ia, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata 'e he tu'í ko Leimaná ke faka'ai'ai 'a hono kakaí ke tau mo hoku kakaí; ko ia, na'e kamata ha ngaahi tau mo ha ngaahi fakakikihi 'i he fonuá.

And it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the city, in unto the king, that I might know of the disposition of the king, and that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land in peace.

And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.

And he also commanded that his people should depart out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it.

And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, yea, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom.

And we began to till the ground, yea, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.

Now it was the cunning and the craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.

Therefore it came to pass, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.

Now they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.

Therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land.

- 14 He 'i hono hongofulu mā tolu 'o e ta'u 'o 'eku pule 'i he fonua ko Nīfái, 'a ia na'e mama'o atu ki he tonga 'o e fonua ko Sailomé, 'i he lolotonga 'a e fakainu mo e fafanga 'e hoku kakaí 'a 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí, pea nau ngoue 'i honau kekelelé, na'e fe'ohofi mai ha fu'u kau tau tokolahi 'aupito 'o e kau Leimaná kiate kinautolu 'o kamata ke tāmatae 'i 'a kinautolu, pea ke fetuku atu 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí, pea mo e koane 'o 'enau ngaahi ngoue.
- 15 'Io, pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fehólaki, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē na'e te'eki ai ke puké, 'o a'u ki he kolo ko Nīfái, pea nau tangi kiate au ke malu 'i 'a kinautolu.
- 16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku fakamahafu 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi kaufana, mo e ngaahi ngahau, mo e ngaahi heletā, mo e ngaahi hele piko, mo e ngaahi pōvai, mo e ngaahi maka-tā, pea mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga mahafu kotoa pē, 'a ia na'a mau lava 'o ngaohí, pea na'á ku 'alu atu mo hoku kakaí ke tau mo e kau Leimaná.
- 17 'Io, na'a mau 'alu atu 'i he mālohi 'o e 'Eikí ke tau mo e kau Leimaná; he na'á ku fu'u tangi lahi mo hoku kakaí ki he 'Eikí ke ne fakahaofi 'a kimautilu mei he nima 'o homau ngaahi filí, he na'a mau ake hake 'o manatu ki hono fakahaofi 'o 'emau ngaahi tamaí.
- 18 Pea na'e 'afio 'a e 'Otuá ki he 'emau ngaahi tangí, 'o ne tali 'emau ngaahi lotú; pea na'a mau ō atu 'i hono māfimaí; 'io, na'a mau fe'ohofi atu ki he kau Leimaná, pea 'i he 'aho pē taha mo e pō pē taha na'a mau tāmatae 'i 'a e toko tolu afe mo e toko fāngofulu mā tolu; na'a mau tāmatae 'i 'a kinautolu kae 'oua kuo mau teke 'i 'a kinautolu mei homau fonuá.
- 19 Pea ko au, na'á ku tokoni 'aki hoku ongo nima 'o'okú, ki he tanu honau kakai maté. Pea vakai, na'a mau fu'u mamahi mo tangilāulau lahi, koe'uhi ko e tō 'a e toko uangeau mā fitungofulu mā hiva 'o homau kāingá.

For, in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi, away on the south of the land of Shilom, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them and began to slay them, and to take off their flocks, and the corn of their fields.

Yea, and it came to pass that they fled, all that were not overtaken, even into the city of Nephi, and did call upon me for protection.

And it came to pass that I did arm them with bows, and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters, and with clubs, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons which we could invent, and I and my people did go forth against the Lamanites to battle.

Yea, in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

And God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might; yea, we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land.

And I, myself, with mine own hands, did help to bury their dead. And behold, to our great sorrow and lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our brethren were slain.

Mōsaia 10

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau toe kamata ke fokotu'u 'a e pule'angá pea mau toe kamata ke ma'u 'a e fonuá 'i he melino. Pea na'á ku fekau ke ngaohi 'a e ngaahi mahafu tau 'o e fá'ahinga kotoa pē, koe'uhi ke u ma'u ai ha ngaahi mahafu ma'a hoku kakaí 'o teuteu ki ha taimi 'e toe ha'u ai 'a e kau Leimaná ke tau 'i 'a hoku kakaí.
- 2 Pea na'á ku fokotu'u 'a e kau le'ó 'o takatakai 'i he fonuá, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a toe 'ohofi faka'ohovale 'a kimautolu 'e he kau Leimaná 'o faka'auha 'a kimautolu; pea na'e pehē 'a 'eku malu 'i 'a hoku kakaí mo 'eku ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí, mo fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he tō ki he nima 'o homau ngaahi filí.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau ma'u 'a e fonua 'o 'emau ngaahi tamaí 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi; 'io, 'i he vaha 'a 'o e ta'u 'e uofulu mā ua.
- 4 Pea na'á ku fekau ke ngoue 'i 'a e kelekelé 'e he kakai tangatá, mo tō 'a e ngaahi fá'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e kēleni mo e ngaahi fá'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e fua 'i 'akaú.
- 5 Pea na'á ku fekau ke lalanga tupenu 'a e kakai fefiné, pea femo'uekina, mo ngāue, mo ngaohi 'a e ngaahi fá'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e līneni tu'ovalevale, 'io, pea mo e fá'ahinga tupenu kotoa pē, koe'uhi ke mau fakakofu 'i 'aki 'a homau telefuá; pea ko ia na'a mau tu'umālie 'i he fonuá—ko ia na'e 'iate kimautolu ma'u ai pē 'a e melino 'i he fonuá 'i he ta'u 'e uofulu mā ua.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hala 'a e tu 'i ko Leimaná, pea na'e kamata ke pule 'a hono fohá 'o fetongi ia. Pea na'e kamata ke ne fakalanga 'i hono kakaí 'a e loto ke angatu'u ki hoku kakaí; ko ia na'a nau kamata ke teuteu ki he tau, pea ha'u ke tau mo hoku kakaí.
- 7 Ka kuó u 'osi fekau 'i atu ha'aku kau tangata mataki ke 'alu takai 'i he fonua ko Semeloní, ke u lava ai 'o 'ilo 'i 'a 'enau ngaahi teuteú, koe'uhi ke u teuteu kiate kinautolu, ke 'oua na'a nau fé'ohofi mai ki hoku kakaí 'o faka'auha 'a kinautolu.

Mosiah 10

And it came to pass that we again began to establish the kingdom and we again began to possess the land in peace. And I caused that there should be weapons of war made of every kind, that thereby I might have weapons for my people against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my people.

And I set guards round about the land, that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares and destroy us; and thus I did guard my people and my flocks, and keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies.

And it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, yea, for the space of twenty and two years.

And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind.

And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and thus we did prosper in the land—thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty and two years.

And it came to pass that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore they began to prepare for war, and to come up to battle against my people.

But I had sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them, that they might not come upon my people and destroy them.

8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'alu hake ki he potu tokelau 'o e fonua ko Sailomé, mo 'enau fu'u kau tau tokolahí, 'a e kau tangata kuo fakamahafu 'aki 'a e ngaahi kaufana, mo e ngaahi ngahau, mo e ngaahi heletā, mo e ngaahi hele piko, mo e ngaahi maka, pea mo e ngaahi maka-tā; pea kuo tele honau lou'ulú 'o tekefua; pea kuo nau kofu 'aki 'a e no'o kili'i manu 'i honau kongalotó.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a ku fekau ke 'alu 'a e kakai fefine mo e fānau 'o hoku kakai 'o toitoi 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá; pea na'a ku fekau foki 'a 'eku kau tangata motu'a kotoa pē 'a ia na'a nau lava 'o to'o mahafú, kae 'uma'ā foki mo 'eku tangata talavou kotoa pē 'a ia na'e lava 'o to'o mahafú, ke fakataha mai ke nau 'alu atu ke tau 'i 'a e kau Leimaná; pea na'a ku fokotu'utu'u 'a kinautolu ki honau ngaahi tu'unga 'i he tau, ko e tangata taki taha 'o fakatatau ki hono ta'u motu'á.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau 'alu hake ke tau mo e kau Leimaná; pea na'a mo au foki, 'io ko au, 'i hoku fu'u ta'u motu'á, na'a ku 'alu hake ke tau mo e kau Leimaná. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau 'alu atu 'i he māfima'fi 'o e 'Eikí ke tau.

11 Ko 'eni, na'e 'ikai 'ilo 'e he kau Leimana ha me'a 'e taha 'o kau ki he 'Eikí, pe ko e māfima'fi 'o e 'Eikí, ko ia na'a nau falala pē ki honau ivi 'onautolú. Kā ko e kakai sino mālohi 'a kinautolu, 'o fakatatau ki he mālohi fakaetangata.

12 Ko e kakai anga-kaivao, mo fekai, mo loto-tāmate 'a kinautolu, 'o nau tui ki he talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí, 'a ia ko 'eni—Na'a nau tui kuo kapusi 'a kinautolu mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá koe'uhi ko e ngaahi angahala 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí, pea na'e faihala kiate kinautolu 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'e honau ngaahi tokouá, pea na'e faihala foki kiate kinautolu lolotonga 'a 'enau folau 'i he tahí;

13 Pea ko e tahá, na'e toe faihala kiate kinautolu lolotonga 'enau 'i he fonua 'o honau 'uluaki tofi'á, 'i he hili 'enau folau mai 'i he tahí, pea kuo tupunga 'eni kotoa koe'uhi na'e tui faivelenga 'o lahi hake 'a Nīfai 'i he tauhi 'o e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí—ko ia na'e 'ofeina ia 'e he 'Eikí, he na'e 'afio 'a e 'Eikí ki he'ene ngaahi lotú 'o ne tali ia, pea na'a ne tatakí 'a 'enau fononga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

And it came to pass that they came up upon the north of the land of Shilom, with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; and they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins.

And it came to pass that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age.

And it came to pass that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites; and I, even I, in my old age, did go up to battle against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle.

Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength. Yet they were a strong people, as to the strength of men.

They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, believing in the tradition of their fathers, which is this—Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;

And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord—therefore he was favored of the Lord, for the Lord heard his prayers and answered them, and he took the lead of their journey in the wilderness.

14 Pea na'e 'ita kiate ia 'a hono ngaahi tokouá koe' uhi he na'e 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a e 'Eikí; na'a nau 'ita foki kiate ia 'i he funga 'o e ngaahi vai koe' uhi he na'a nau fakafefeka honau lotó ki he 'Eikí.

15 Pea ko e tahá, na'a nau 'ita kiate ia 'i he hili 'enau 'a u ki he fonua 'o e tala' ofá, he na'a nau pehē kuó ne to' o 'a e pule ki he kakaí mei honau nimá; pea na'a nau feinga ke tāmata' i ia.

16 Pea ko e tahá, na'a nau toe 'ita kiate ia koe' uhi ko 'ene 'alu ki he feitu' u maomaonganoá 'o hangē ko e fekau 'a e 'Eikí kiate iá, 'o ne 'ave 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'a ia na'e tongitongi 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá, he na'a nau pehē na'á ne kaiha' a meiate kinautolu.

17 Pea kuo pehē 'a 'enau ako' i 'enau fānaú ke nau fehi' a kiate kinautolú, pea ke nau fakapoongi 'a kinautolu, pea ke nau kaiha' asi mo vete fakamālohi 'enau ngaahi koloá, mo fai 'a e me' a kotoa pē te nau lava 'o faka' auha ai 'a kinautolú; ko ia kuo 'iate kinautolu ma' u ai pē ha fehi' a ta' engata ki he fānau 'a Nifái.

18 Ko hono 'uhinga mo' oni 'eni kuo hanga ai 'e he tu' i ko Leimaná, 'i he' ene olopotó, mo e fakahekeheke kākaá, pea mo 'ene ngaahi tala' ofa mālié, 'o kākaa' i au, pea u 'omi ai 'a hoku kakaí ni ki he fonuá ni, koe' uhi ke nau faka' auha 'a kinautolu; 'io, pea kuo mau faingata' a ia 'i ha ngaahi ta' u lahi 'i he fonuá.

19 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Sēnifi, 'i he hili 'eku fakahā 'a e ngaahi me' á ni kotoa ki hoku kakaí 'o kau ki he kau Leimaná, na' á ku faka' ai' ai 'a kinautolu ke nau 'alu ke tau 'i honau iví kotoa, 'o falala kakato ki he 'Eikí; ko ia, na'a mau fēfā' uhi mo kinautolu, ko e mata ki he mata.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau toe teke' i 'a kinautolu mei homau fonuá; pea mau tāmata' i 'a kinautolu 'i he fu' u faka' auha lahi, 'io, na'e pehē fau honau tokolahí na'e 'ikai ai te mau lau 'a kinautolu.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau toe liu mai ki homau fonua 'omautolú, pea na'e toe kamata 'a hoku kakaí ke tauhi 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí, mo ngoue' i honau kelekelé.

22 Pea ko 'eni ko e me' a 'i he' eku motu' á, ko ia na' á ku tuku 'a e pule ki he pule' angá ki ha taha 'o hoku ngaahi fohá; ko ia, 'oku 'ikai te u toe lea 'aki mo ha me' a. Pea 'ofa ke tāpuaki' i 'e he 'Eikí 'a hoku kakaí. 'Ēmeni.

And his brethren were wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord; they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord.

And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands; and they sought to kill him.

And again, they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, for they said that he robbed them.

And thus they have taught their children that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi.

For this very cause has king Laman, by his cunning, and lying craftiness, and his fair promises, deceived me, that I have brought this my people up into this land, that they may destroy them; yea, and we have suffered these many years in the land.

And now I, Zeniff, after having told all these things unto my people concerning the Lamanites, I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might, putting their trust in the Lord; therefore, we did contend with them, face to face.

And it came to pass that we did drive them again out of our land; and we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them.

And it came to pass that we returned again to our own land, and my people again began to tend their flocks, and to till their ground.

And now I, being old, did confer the kingdom upon one of my sons; therefore, I say no more. And may the Lord bless my people. Amen.

Mōsaia 11

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuku 'e Sēnifi 'a e pule'angá kia Noa, ko e taha 'o hono ngaahi fohá; ko ia na'e kamata ke pule 'a Noa 'o fetongi ia; pea na'e 'ikai te ne 'a'eva 'i he ngaahi hala 'o 'ene tamaí.
- 2 He vakai, na'e 'ikai te ne tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, ka na'á ne 'a'eva 'o fakatatau mo e ngaahi holi 'a hono loto 'o'oná. Pea na'á ne ma'u 'a e ngaahi uaifi tokolahi pea mo e kau sinifu. Pea na'á ne fakatupu 'a e fai angahala 'a hono kakaí, mo 'enau fai 'a e me'a na'e fakalielia 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí. 'Io, pea na'a nau fai 'a e ngaahi fe'auaki mo e fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e fai angahalá.
- 3 Pea na'á ne fokotu'u 'a e tukuhau 'o e vahe nima 'e taha 'o e me'a kotoa pē na'a nau ma'ú, 'a ia ko e vahe nima 'o 'enau koulá mo 'enau silivá, pea mo e vahe nima 'o 'enau sifí, mo 'enau kopá, pea mo 'enau palasá mo 'enau ukameá; pea mo e vahe nima 'e taha 'o 'enau fanga manu sisinó; kae 'uma'ā foki mo e vahe nima 'e taha 'o 'enau kelení hono kotoa.
- 4 Pea na'á ne to'o kotoa 'eni ke tauhi 'aki ia, mo hono ngaahi uaifí mo 'ene kau sinifú; kae 'uma'ā foki mo 'ene kau taula'eikí, mo honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enau kau sinifú; pea na'e pehē 'a 'ene liliu 'a e ngaahi me'a 'o e pule'angá.
- 5 He na'á ne fakahifo 'a e kau taula'eiki kotoa pē kuo fakatapui 'e he'ene tamaí, 'o ne fakanofu 'a e ni'ihí kehe ke fetongi 'a kinautolu, 'a ia ko ha ni'ihí na'a nau fielahi mo e hīkisia 'i honau lotó.
- 6 'Io, pea na'e pehē hono tauhi 'a kinautolu 'i honau anga-fakapikopikó, pea 'i he'enu tauhi tamapuá, pea 'i he'enu ngaahi fe'auakí, 'aki 'a e ngaahi tukuhau kuo hilifaki 'e he tu'i ko Noá ki hono kakaí; ko ia na'e fu'u ngāue lahi 'a e kakaí ke poupuu 'i 'a e angahalá.
- 7 'Io, pea na'a nau kamata foki ke tauhi tamapua, ko e tupu 'i he kākāa 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he ngaahi lea ta'e'aonga mo fakahekeheke 'a e tu'í mo e kau taula'eikí; he na'a nau lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a fakahekeheke kiate kinautolu.

Mosiah 11

And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his father.

For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. And he did cause his people to commit sin, and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord. Yea, and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.

And he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain.

And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.

For he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them.

8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e langa 'e he tu'i ko Noá 'a e ngaahi fale lahi na'e masanisani mo lalahi; pea na'á ne teuteu'i 'aki ia 'a e ngāue lelei lahi 'o e 'akau, pea mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e ngaahi me'a mahu'inga, 'o e koula, mo e siliva, mo e ukamea, mo e palasa, mo e sifi pea mo e kopa;

9 Pea na'á ne langa foki mo'ona ha fu'u fale fakatu'i lahi, pea mo ha nofo'a fakatu'i 'i loto ai, 'a ia 'oku 'o e papa lelei kotoa pea kuo teuteu'i 'aki ia 'a e koula mo e siliva pea mo e ngaahi me'a mahu'inga.

10 Pea na'á ne fekau foki ke ngaahi 'e he'ene kau ngāué 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e ngāue fakamea 'a 'i loto 'i he ngaahi 'ā 'o e tempalé, 'o e 'akau lelei, mo e kopa, mo e palasa.

11 Pea ko e ngaahi nofo'anga kuo vahe'i ma'á e kau taula'eiki lahi, 'a ia na'e mā'olunga hake 'i he ngaahi nofo'anga kehe kotoa pē, na'á ne teuteu'i ia 'aki 'a e koula haohaoa; pea na'á ne fekau ke langa ha 'ā ki mu'a ai ke lava 'o falala ai honau sinó mo honau nimá lolotonga 'enau lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea loi mo ta'e'aonga ki hono kakaí.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne langa ha taua 'o ofi ki he tempalé; 'io, na'a mo e taua mā'olunga 'aupito, pea na'e pehē fau hono mā'olungá na'á ne lava ai 'o tu'u 'i hono tumu'akí 'o sio atu ki he fonua ko Sailomé, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e fonua ko Semeloní, 'a ia na'e ma'u 'e he kau Leimaná; pea na'á ne lava foki 'o mamata ki hono kotoa 'o e fonua na'e tu'u takatakai ki aí.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fekau ke langa ha ngaahi fale lahi 'i he fonua ko Sailomé; peá ne fekau ke langa ha fu'u taua mā'olunga 'i he funga 'o e tafungofunga 'i he tokelau 'o e fonua ko Sailomé, 'a ia na'e hūfanga ai 'a e fānau 'a Nifái 'i he taimi na'a nau hola ai mei he fonuá; pea na'e pehē 'a 'ene ngāue 'aki 'a e ngaahi koloa 'a ia na'á ne ma'u 'i he tukuhau 'i 'o hono kakaí.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuku hono lotó ki he'ene ngaahi koloá, pea na'á ne fakamoleki hono ngaahi taimi 'i he faikovi mo hono ngaahi uai'í mo 'ene kau sinifú; pea pehē foki mo hono fakamoleki 'e he'ene kau taula'eiki honau taimí mo e kau munitau.

And it came to pass that king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;

And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.

And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.

And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breastwork to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.

And it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and thus he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

- 15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a ne tō 'a e ngaahi ngoue vaine takatakai 'i he fonuá; pea na'á ne ngaohi 'a e ngaahi tata 'o'anga uaine, 'o ne ngaohi 'a e uainé 'o lahi 'aupito; pea ko ia na'á ne hoko ko e tangata fá'a inu uaine, kae 'uma'ā foki mo hono kakaí.
- 16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata 'a e kau Leimaná ke 'oho mai ki hono kakaí, 'i he ngaahi ha'ofanga kakai tokosi'i, pea tāmata 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he'enuu ngaahi ngoué, pea 'i he lolotonga 'a 'enuu tauhi 'enuu ngaahi takanga monumanu i'iki.
- 17 Pea na'e fekau atu 'e he tu'i ko Noá 'a e kau le'oku ke 'alu takai 'i he fonuá 'o teke 'i 'a kinautolu; ka na'e 'ikai te ne 'oatu 'o tokolahi fé'unga, pea na'e 'oho mai kiate kinautolu 'a e kau Leimaná 'o tāmata 'i 'a kinautolu, 'o tuli 'enuu ngaahi takanga monumanu i'iki tokolahi 'aupito mei he fonuá; ko ia na'e pehē 'a e kamata 'e he kau Leimaná hono faka'auha 'a kinautolú, pea mo fakahā 'enuu fehi 'a kiate kinautolú.
- 18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau atu 'e he tu'i ko Noá 'a 'ene ngaahi kau taú ke tau mo kinautolu, pea na'e teke 'i fakaholomui 'a kinautolu, pe na'a nau teke 'i fakaholomui 'a kinautolu 'i ha ki 'i taimi sí'i; ko ia, na'a nau liu mai 'oku nau fiefia koe'uhi ko e ngaahi koloa vete kuo ma'ú.
- 19 Pea ko 'eni, koe'uhi ko e fu'u ikuná ni na'a nau fiela'i 'i he hīkisia 'a honau lotó; pea na'a nau pōlepolé 'i honau ivi 'onautolú, 'o nau pehē, 'oku lava pē 'e honau toko nimangofulú 'o matu'uaki 'a e toko lau afe 'o e kau Leimaná; pea na'e pehē 'a 'enuu pōlepolé, 'o nau fiefia 'i he totó, mo e lilingi 'o e toto 'o honau kāingá, pea na'e tupunga 'eni 'i he fai angahala 'a honau tu'í mo e kau taula'eikí.
- 20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ai ha tangata 'iate kinautolu, 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko 'Apinetai; pea na'e 'alu atu ia 'iate kinautolu, 'o kamata ke kikite, 'o pehē: Vakai, 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí, pea kuó ne fekau kiate au, 'o pehē: 'Alu atu pea fakahā ki he kakaí ni, 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí—'E hoko 'a e mala'ia ki he kakaí ni, he kuó u mamata ki he'enuu ngaahi me'a fakalieliá, mo 'enuu fai angahalá, pea mo 'enuu ngaahi fé'auakí; pea ka 'ikai te nau fakatomala te u 'a'ahi kiate kinautolu 'i he'eku 'itá.

And it came to pass that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites began to come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and to slay them in their fields, and while they were tending their flocks.

And king Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient number, and the Lamanites came upon them and killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the land; thus the Lamanites began to destroy them, and to exercise their hatred upon them.

And it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies against them, and they were driven back, or they drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned rejoicing in their spoil.

And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their brethren, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger.

21 Pea kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala pea tafoki ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, vakai, te u tukuange 'a kinautolu ki he nima 'o honau ngaahi filí; 'io, pea 'e fakapōpula 'i 'a kinautolu; pea 'e fakamamahi 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he nima 'o honau ngaahi filí.

22 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē te nau 'ilo ko au ko e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, pea ko e 'Otua fua 'a au, pea 'oku ou tautea 'i 'a e ngaahi angahala 'a hoku kakaí.

23 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē kapau 'e 'ikai fakatomala 'a e kakaí ni pea tafoki ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, 'e fakapōpula 'i 'a kinautolu; pea 'e 'ikai ha taha te ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu, ka ko e 'Eiki pē ko e 'Otua Māfimaí.

24 'Io, pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'o ka nau ka tangi kiate au 'e tuai 'a 'eku fanongo ki he 'enau ngaahi tangí; 'io, pea te u tuku ke te 'ia 'a kinautolu 'e honau ngaahi filí.

25 Pea kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala 'i he tauanga 'a mo e efu 'o tangi lahi ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, 'e 'ikai te u fanongo ki he 'enau ngaahi lotú, pea 'e 'ikai foki te u fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei honau ngaahi faingata 'a 'iá; pea 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki, pea kuo pehē 'a 'ene fekau kiate aú.

26 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi leva hono lea 'aki 'e 'Apinetai 'a e ngaahi leá ni kiate kinautolú na 'a nau 'ita kiate ia, 'o feinga ke tāmata 'i ia; ka na 'e fakahaofi ia 'e he 'Eiki mei honau nimá.

27 Pea 'i he fanongo 'a e tu 'i ko Noá ki he ngaahi lea kuo lea 'aki 'e 'Apinetai ki he kakaí, na 'á ne houhau foki; pea ne folofola: Ko hai 'a 'Apinetai, ke ne fakamāu 'i au mo hoku kakaí, pe ko hai 'a e 'Eiki, ke ne fakahoko 'a e faingata 'a 'ia lahi pehē ki hoku kakaí?

28 'Oku ou fekau kiate kimoutolu ke mou 'omi 'a 'Apinetai ki heni, koe 'uhi ke u tāmata 'i ia, he kuó ne lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me 'á ni ke fakatupu 'a e 'ita 'i hoku kakaí, pea fakalanga 'a e ngaahi fakakikihi 'i hoku kakaí; ko ia, te u tāmata 'i ia.

29 Ko 'eni kuo fakakuihi 'a e mata 'o e kakaí; ko ia na 'a nau fakafefeka ai honau lotó ki he ngaahi lea 'a 'Apinetai, pea na 'a nau feinga 'o kamata mei he taimi ko iá ke puke ia. Pea na 'e fakafefeka 'e he tu 'i ko Noá 'a hono lotó ki he folofola 'a e 'Eiki, pea na 'e 'ikai te ne fakatomala mei he 'ene ngaahi ngāue koví.

And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.

And it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.

And it shall come to pass that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.

Yea, and it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; yea, and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.

And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me.

Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.

Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?

I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him, for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people; therefore I will slay him.

Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore they hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi, and they sought from that time forward to take him. And king Noah hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his evil doings.

Mōsaia 12

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi ange 'a e ta'u 'e ua na'e ha'u 'a 'Apinetai 'i honau lotolotonga 'i ha teunga fakapuli, pea na'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo 'i ia, 'o ne kamata ke kikite 'iate kinautolu, 'o pehē: Kuo fekau pehē mai kiate au 'e he 'Eikí, 'o pehē—'E 'Apinetai, 'alu pea kikite ki hoku kakaí ni, 'o pehē, he kuo nau fakafefeka honau lotó ki he'eku ngaahi leá; kuo 'ikai te nau fakatomala mei he'enu ngaahi ngāue koví; ko ia, te u 'a'ahi kiate kinautolu 'i hoku 'itá, 'io, 'i hoku 'ita kakahá te u 'a'ahi kiate kinautolu koe'uhi ko 'enu ngaahi angahalá mo e ngaahi me'a fakalieliá.
- 2 'Io, 'e mala'ia 'a e to'u tangatá ni! Pea na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kiate au: Mafao atu ho nimá 'o kikite 'o pehē: 'Oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí, 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e fakapōpula 'i 'a e to'u tangatá ni, koe'uhi ko 'enu ngaahi angahalá, pea 'e sipi 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he kou'ahé; 'io, pea 'e angi fakamālohi 'a kinautolu 'e ha kau tangata, pea 'e tāmata 'i 'a kinautolu; pea 'e hanga 'e he fanga manupuna fekaí 'o e 'ataá, mo e fanga kulií, 'io, pea mo e fanga manu fekaí 'o keina 'a honau kakanó.
- 3 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e hangē 'a e mahu'inga 'o e mo'ui 'a e tu 'i ko Noá ko ha kofu 'i he loto afi kakaha; he te ne 'ilo ko au ko e 'Eikí.
- 4 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē te u taa 'i 'a hoku kakaí ni 'aki 'a e ngaahi faingata 'a 'ia fakamamahi, 'io, 'aki 'a e hongē mo e mahaki faka'auha; pea te u ngaohi 'a kinautolu ke nau ngala 'i hono kotoa 'o e 'ahó.
- 5 'Io, pea te u fekau ke 'i ai ha ngaahi kavenga 'oku ha 'i ki honau tu'á; pea 'e angi fakamālohi 'a kinautolu 'o hangē ko ha 'asi 'oku noá.
- 6 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē te u fekau atu 'a e 'uha maka kiate kinautolu, pea te ne taa 'i 'a kinautolu; pea 'e taa 'i foki 'a kinautolu 'e he magari hahaké; pea 'e fakafu 'i 'e he fanga 'inisēkité 'a honau fonuá foki, mo kai 'o 'osi 'enu kēlení.
- 7 Pea 'e taa 'i 'aki 'a kinautolu 'a e fu'u mahaki faka'auha lahi—pea te u fai 'eni kotoa pē koe'uhi ko 'enu ngaahi angahalá mo e ngaahi me'a fakalieliá.

Mosiah 12

And it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me, saying—Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have hardened their hearts against my words; they have repented not of their evil doings; therefore, I will visit them in my anger, yea, in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities and abominations.

Yea, wo be unto this generation! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy, saying: Thus saith the Lord, it shall come to pass that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.

And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.

And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.

Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.

And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.

8 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala, te u faka'auha 'a kinautolu 'o 'osi'osingamālie mei he funga 'o e māmaní; ka te nau kei tuku pē ha lekooti, pea te u fakatolonga ia mā'á e ngaahi pule'anga kehe 'a ia 'e ma'ú 'a e fonuá; 'io, te u fai 'eni foki ke u fakahā ai 'a e ngaahi me'a fakalielia 'a e kakaí ni ki he ngaahi pule'anga kehé. Pea na 'e kikite 'aki 'e 'Apinetai 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi ki he kakaí ni.

9 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē na 'a nau 'ita kiate ia; pea nau puke ia mo 'ave ia kuo ha 'i ki he 'ao 'o e tu'í, 'o nau pehē ki he tu'í: Vakai, kuo mau 'omi ha tangata kiate koe, 'a ia kuo kikite 'i 'a e kovi ki ho kakaí, pea 'okú ne pehē 'e faka'auha 'e he 'Otuá 'a kinautolu.

10 Pea 'okú ne kikite 'i foki 'e hoko 'a e kovi ki ho 'o mo'uí, 'o ne pehē 'e tatau 'a ho 'o mo'uí mo e kofu 'i ha afi kakaha.

11 Pea ko e tahá, 'okú ne toe pehē te ke tatau mo e kau 'i 'akau, 'io 'o tatau mo ha kau 'i 'akau mōmoa 'o e ngoué, 'a ia 'oku laka atu ai 'a e fanga manú, pea nau molomoloki hifo ia 'i honau lalo va'é.

12 Pea ko e tahá, 'okú ne toe pehē foki te ke tatau mo e fisí 'i talatala'āmoa, 'a ia, 'o ka motu 'a 'aupito ia, 'o ka angi mai 'a e matangí, 'oku vilingia holo ia 'i he funga 'o e fonuá. Pea 'okú ne lea fakakākā 'o pehē kuo folofola 'aki ia 'e he 'Eikí. Pea 'okú ne pehē 'e hoko 'eni kotoa kiate koe 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te ke fakatomala, pea 'e tupu 'eni koe'uhi ko ho 'o ngaahi angahalá.

13 Pea ko 'eni, 'E tu'í, ko e hā ha fu'ú kovi lahi kuó ke fai, pea ko e hā ha ngaahi fu'ú angahala lalahi kuo fai 'e ho kakaí, 'a ia 'oku totonu ke fakahalaia 'i ai 'a kitautolu 'e he 'Otuá pe fakamāu 'i 'a kitautolu 'e he tangata ní?

14 Pea ko 'eni, 'E tu'í, vakai 'oku tau ta'ehalaia, pea ko koe, 'E tu'í, kuo 'ikai te ke fai angahala; ko ia, kuo loi 'a e tangatá ni 'o kau kiate koe, pea 'oku ta'e'aonga 'ene ngaahi kikité.

15 Pea vakai, 'oku tau mālohi, 'e 'ikai fakapōpula 'i 'a kitautolu, pe 'ave pōpula 'e hotau ngaahi filí; 'io, pea kuó ke monū 'ia 'i he fonuá, pea te ke kei tu'umālie ai pē koe.

16 Vakai, ko e tangatá 'eni, 'oku mau tuku atu ia ki ho to'ukupú; 'oku lelei ke ke fai kiate ia 'o fakatatau ki ho finangaló.

And it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; yea, even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.

And he also prophesieth evil concerning thy life, and saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.

And again, he saith that thou shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.

And again, he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind bloweth, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretendeth the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent, and this because of thine iniquities.

And now, O king, what great evil hast thou done, or what great sins have thy people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man?

And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.

And behold, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; yea, and thou hast prospered in the land, and thou shalt also prosper.

Behold, here is the man, we deliver him into thy hands; thou mayest do with him as seemeth thee good.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'e he tu'i ko Noá ke lí 'a 'Apinetai ki he fale fakapōpulá; pea ne fekau ke kātōa mai 'a e kau taula'eikí ke ne fai ha fealea'aki mo kinautolu pe ko e hā ha'ane me'a 'e fai kiate iá.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau pehē ange ki he tu'í: 'Omi ia ki heni ke tau fakafehu'í ia; pea na'e fekau 'e he tu'í ke 'omi ia ki honau 'aó.

19 Pea na'a nau kamata ke fakafehu'í ia, ke nau tauhele'í ai ia, koe'uhi ke nau ma'u ai ha me'a ke talatalaaki'í 'aki ia; ka na'á ne tali 'a kinautolu 'i he loto-to'a, 'o ne lava 'o tali 'enau ngaahi fehu'í kotoa pē, 'io, 'o nau ofo ai; he na'á ne ta'ofi 'a kinautolu 'i he'enau ngaahi fehu'í kotoa pē, mo fakamaa'í 'a kinautolu 'i he'enau ngaahi lea kotoa pē.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē kiate ia 'e hanau toko taha: Ko e hā 'a e 'uhinga 'o e ngaahi folofola 'a ia kuo tohí, pea kuo akonaki 'aki 'e he'etau ngaahi tamaí, 'o pehē:

21 Hono 'ikai faka'ofó'ofa 'i he ngaahi mo'ungá 'a e va'e 'o ia 'okú ne 'omi 'a e ngaahi ongoongo lelei; 'a ia 'okú ne fakahā 'a e melinó; 'a ia 'okú ne 'omi 'a e ngaahi ongoongo lelei 'o e lelei; 'a ia 'okú ne fakahā 'a e fakamo'uí; 'a ia 'okú ne pehē ki Saione, 'Oku pule 'a ho 'Otuá;

22 'E hiki hake 'e ho kau tangata le'ó 'a honau le'ó; pea 'i he le'ó pē taha te nau hiva; he te nau mamata 'aki honau mata'ki ki hono toe fokotu'u 'e he 'Eikí 'a Saioné.

23 Ke pā mai 'i he fiefia; hiva fakataha 'a kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi potu lala 'o Selūsalemá; he kuo fakafiemālie'í 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono kakaí, kuó ne huhu'í 'a Selūsalema;

24 Kuo fakahā 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono to'ukupu mā'oni'oní 'i he 'ao 'o e ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē, pea 'e mamata 'e he ngaahi ngata'anga kotoa pē 'o māmaní ki he fakamo'ui 'a hotau 'Otuá?

25 Pea ko 'eni na'e pehē 'e 'Apinetai kiate kinautolu: Ko e kau taula'eiki koā 'a kimoutolu, pea 'oku mou 'ai ke hā 'o hangē 'oku mou akonaki ki he kakaí ni, pea 'oku mou 'ilo 'a e laumālie 'o e kikité, ka 'oku mou fie 'ilo meiate au 'a e 'uhinga 'o e ngaahi me'a ní?

And it came to pass that king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.

And it came to pass that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; and the king commanded that he should be brought before them.

And they began to question him, that they might cross him, that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him; but he answered them boldly, and withstood all their questions, yea, to their astonishment; for he did withstand them in all their questions, and did confound them in all their words.

And it came to pass that one of them said unto him: What meaneth the words which are written, and which have been taught by our fathers, saying:

How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good; that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth;

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion;

Break forth into joy; sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God?

And now Abinadi said unto them: Are you priests, and pretend to teach this people, and to understand the spirit of prophesying, and yet desire to know of me what these things mean?

26 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e mala'ia 'a kimoutolu koe'uhi ko ho'omou fakakovi'i 'a e ngaahi hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eiki! He kapau 'oku mahino kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi me'á ni pehē kuo 'ikai te mou akonaki 'aki ia; ko ia, kuo mou fakakovi'i 'a e ngaahi hala 'o e 'Eiki.

27 Kuo 'ikai te mou feinga fakamātoato 'i homou lotó ke mou 'ilo'i; ko ia, 'oku 'ikai ai te mou potó. Ko ia, ko e hā 'oku mou akonaki 'aki ki he kakai ní?

28 Pea na'a nau pehē: 'Oku mau akonaki 'aki 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé.

29 Pea toe pehē 'e ia kiate kinautolu: Kapau 'oku mou akonaki 'aki 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé, ko e hā 'oku 'ikai te mou tauhi ai ki aí? Ko e hā 'oku tuku ai homou lotó ki he ngaahi koloá? Ko e hā 'oku mou fai ai 'a e ngaahi fe'auaki 'o faka'osi homou iví mo e kau muitau, 'io, pea fakatupu 'a e fai angahala 'a e kakaí ni, pea 'oku ai ha 'uhinga 'a e 'Eiki ke fekau'i ai au ke u kikite ki he kakaí ni, 'io, 'aki 'a e fu'u kovi lahi ki he kakaí ni?

30 'Ikai 'oku mou 'ilo 'oku ou lea 'aki 'a e mo'oní? 'Io, 'oku mou 'ilo'i 'oku ou lea 'aki 'a e mo'oní; pea 'oku taau ke mou tetetete 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá.

31 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e taa'i 'a kimoutolu koe'uhi ko ho'omou ngaahi angahalá he kuo mou pehē 'oku mou akonaki 'aki 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé. Pea ko e hā ha'amou me'a 'oku mou 'ilo ki he fono 'a Mōsesé? 'Oku fou mai koā 'a e fakamo'uí 'i he fono 'a Mōsesé? Ko e hā ha'amou lau?

32 Pea na'a nau tali 'o pehē 'oku fou mai 'a e fakamo'uí 'i he fono 'a Mōsesé.

33 Ka ko 'eni na'e pehē ange 'e 'Apinetai kiate kinautolu: 'Oku ou 'ilo 'e fakamo'ui 'a kimoutolu 'o kapau te mou tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá: 'io, 'o kapau te mou tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau na'e tuku 'e he 'Eiki kia Mōsesé 'i he mo'unga 'o Sainaí, 'o pehē:

34 Ko au ko e 'Eiki ko ho 'Otuá, 'a ia kuó u 'omi koe mei he fonua ko 'Isipité, mei he fale 'o e pōpulá.

35 'Oua na'á ke ma'u ha 'otua kehe 'i hoku 'aó.

36 'Oua na'á ke ngaohi kiate koe ha tamapua kuo tongitongi, pe ha me'a fakatatau 'e taha 'i ha me'a 'i he langí 'i 'olungá, pe ki ha me'a 'oku 'i he fonuá 'i lalo.

I say unto you, wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord! For if ye understand these things ye have not taught them; therefore, ye have perverted the ways of the Lord.

Ye have not applied your hearts to understanding; therefore, ye have not been wise. Therefore, what teach ye this people?

And they said: We teach the law of Moses.

And again he said unto them: If ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it? Why do ye set your hearts upon riches? Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, yea, even a great evil against this people?

Know ye not that I speak the truth? Yea, ye know that I speak the truth; and you ought to tremble before God.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall be smitten for your iniquities, for ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses. And what know ye concerning the law of Moses? Doth salvation come by the law of Moses? What say ye?

And they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.

But now Abinadi said unto them: I know if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved; yea, if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:

I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

Thou shalt have no other God before me.

Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath.

37 Ko 'eni na'e pehē ange 'e 'Apinetai kiate kinautolu,
Kuo mou fai kotoa 'a e ngaahi me'á ni? 'Oku ou pehē
kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai, kuo 'ikai te mou fai pehē. Pea
kuo mou akonaki koā ki he kakaí ni ke nau fai 'a e ngaahi
me'á ni kotoa pē? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai,
kuo 'ikai te mou fai pehē.

Now Abinadi said unto them, Have ye done all this? I
say unto you, Nay, ye have not. And have ye taught this
people that they should do all these things? I say unto
you, Nay, ye have not.

Mōsaia 13

- 1 Pea ko 'eni 'i he fanongo 'a e tu'í ki he ngaahi lea ní, na'á ne pehē ki he'ene kau taula'eikí: 'Ave 'a e tangatá ni, pea tāmata'e i ia; he ko e hā 'atautolu 'e fai kiate ia, he 'oku faha ia.
- 2 Pea nau 'unu'unu atu 'o feinga ke puke ia; ka na'á ne ta'ofi 'a kinautolu, 'o ne pehē kiate kinautolu:
- 3 'Oua 'e ala kiate au, koe'uhi 'e taa'i 'a kimoutolu 'e he 'Otuá 'o kapau te mou ala 'aki homou nimá kiate au, he kuo te'eki ai te u fakahā 'a e pōpoaki 'a ia na'e fekau kiate au 'e he 'Eikí ke u fakahaá; pea kuo 'ikai foki te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e me'a na'a mou kole ke u fakahā atú; ko ia, 'e 'ikai tuku 'e he 'Otuá ke tāmata'e i au 'i he taimí ni.
- 4 Ka kuo pau ke u fakahoko 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a ia kuo fekau kiate au 'e he 'Otuá; pea ko e me'a 'i he'eku tala kiate kimoutolu 'a e mo'oní, ko ia 'oku mou 'ita ai kiate aú. Pea ko e tahá, koe'uhi ko 'eku lea 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá kuo mou fakamāu 'i ai 'oku ou fahá.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo 'osi lea 'aki 'e 'Apinetai 'a e ngaahi lea ní na'e ilifia 'a e kakai 'o e tu'í ko Noá ke ala honau nimá kiate ia, he na'e 'iate ia 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí; pea na'e ulo hono fofongá 'o fu'u ngingila 'aupito, 'o hangē pē ko Mōsesé, 'i he'ene 'i he mo'unga 'o Sainá, lolotonga 'ena fefolofolai mo e 'Eikí.
- 6 Pea na'e lea ia 'i he mālohi mo e mafai mei he 'Otuá; pea na'á ne hoko atu 'ene ngaahi leá 'o pehē:
- 7 'Oku mou vakai 'oku 'ikai te mou ma'u ha mālohi ke tāmata'e i au, ko ia, te u faka'osi 'a 'eku leá. 'Io, pea 'oku ou 'ilo'i 'oku lavea mo'oni homou lotó koe'uhi ko 'eku fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e mo'oní 'i ho'omou ngaahi fai angahalá.
- 8 'Io, pea 'oku fakafonu 'e he'eku ngaahi leá 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e fakatumutumu, mo e ofo, mo e 'ita.
- 9 Ka 'oku ou faka'osi 'a 'eku leá; pea 'o ka hili ia, 'e tatau ai pē pe te u 'alu ki fē, kae kehe pē ke fakamo'ui au.
- 10 Ka ko hono lahi pē 'eni 'o e me'a te u fakahā kiate kimoutolú, ko e me'a te mou fai kiate au, 'amuí, 'e hoko ia ko ha sipinga mo ha taípe 'o e ngaahi me'a 'a ia 'e hoko.

Mosiah 13

And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad.

And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them:

Touch me not, for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver; neither have I told you that which ye requested that I should tell; therefore, God will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this time.

But I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God has commanded me; and because I have told you the truth ye are angry with me. And again, because I have spoken the word of God ye have judged me that I am mad.

Now it came to pass after Abinadi had spoken these words that the people of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord.

And he spake with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying:

Ye see that ye have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. Yea, and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities.

Yea, and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, and with anger.

But I finish my message; and then it matters not whither I go, if it so be that I am saved.

But this much I tell you, what you do with me, after this, shall be as a type and a shadow of things which are to come.

11 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou lau kiate kimoutolu 'a hono toe 'o e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, he 'oku ou 'ilo'i kuo 'ikai ke tohi ia 'i homou lotó; 'oku ou 'ilo'i kuo mou ako mo akonaki 'aki 'a e angahalá 'i hono kongá lahi 'o ho'omou mo'uí.

12 Pea ko 'eni, 'oku mou manatu na'á ku pehē kiate kimoutolu: 'Oua na'á ke ngaohi kiate koe ha tamapua kuo tongitongi, pe ha me'a fakatatau 'e taha 'i ha me'a 'i he langí 'i 'olunga, pe ha me'a 'oku 'i he fonuá 'i lalo, pe ki ha me'a 'oku 'i he vai 'i he lalo fonuá.

13 Pea ko 'eni: 'Oua na'á ke punou hifo koe kiate kinautolu, pe tauhi ki ai; he ko au ko e 'Eiki ko ho 'Otuá, ko e 'Otua fua'a au, 'oku ou totongi 'a e fai angahala 'a e ngaahi tamaí ki he fānaú, 'o a'u ki hono tolu mo hono fā 'o e to'u tangata 'o kinautolu 'oku fehí'a kiate aú;

14 Peá u fakahā 'a e 'alo'ofa ki he ngaahi toko afe 'o kinautolu 'oku 'ofa kiate au mo tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekau.

15 'Oua na'á ke takuanoa 'a e huafa 'o e 'Eiki ko ho 'Otuá; ko'e uhi 'e 'ikai lau 'e he 'Eiki ko e ta'ehalaia ia 'a ia 'okú ne takuanoa 'a hono huafá.

16 Manatu ki he 'aho sāpaté, ke tauhi ia ke mā'oni'oni.

17 Ko e 'aho 'e ono ke ke ngāue ai, 'o fai ai ho'ono ngāue kotoa pē;

18 Ka ko hono fitu 'o e 'ahó ko e 'aho sāpate ia 'o e 'Eiki ko ho 'Otuá, 'oua na'á ke fai 'i ai ha ngāue 'e taha, 'a koe, pe ko ho fohá, pe ko ho 'ofefiné, pe ko ho 'o tamaio'eiki, pe ko ho 'o kaunangá, pe ko ho 'o pulú, pe ko e muli 'oku nofo 'i ho loto'áá;

19 He na'e ngaohi 'e he 'Eiki 'i he 'aho 'e ono 'a e langí mo e fonuá, mo e tahí, mo e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku 'i aú; ko ia na'e tāpuaki 'i 'e he 'Eiki 'a e 'aho sāpaté mo fakatapui ia.

20 Faka'apa'apa ki ho'ono tamaí mo ho'ono fa'eé, ko'e uhi ke fuoloa ho ngaahi 'ahó 'i he fonua 'oku foaki kiate koe 'e he 'Eiki ko ho 'Otuá.

21 'Oua na'á ke fakapō.

22 'Oua na'á ke tono. 'Oua na'á ke kaiha'a.

23 'Oua na'á ke tukuaki 'i loi 'a ho kaungá'apí.

And now I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God, for I perceive that they are not written in your hearts; I perceive that ye have studied and taught iniquity the most part of your lives.

And now, ye remember that I said unto you: Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of things which are in heaven above, or which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the water under the earth.

And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me;

And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;

But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;

For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

Thou shalt not kill.

Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal.

Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

24 'Oua na'á ke mānumanu ki he fale 'o ho kaungā'apí, 'oua na'á ke mānumanu ki he uaifi 'o ho kaungā'apí, pe ki he'ene tamaio'eikí, pe ki he'ene kaunangá, pe ki he'ene pulú, pe ki he'ene 'así, pe ki ha me'a 'e taha 'oku 'a ho kaungā'apí.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he faka'osi 'e 'Apinetai 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'á ne pehē ange kiate kinautolu: Kuo mou akonaki koā ki he kakaí ni ke nau tokanga ke fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē ko'e uhi ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekaú ni?

26 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai; he kapau na'a mou fai pehē, kuo 'ikai fekau au 'e he 'Eikí ke u ha 'u 'o kikite 'aki 'a e kovi ki he kakaí ni.

27 Pea ko 'eni kuo mou pehē 'oku hoko mai 'a e fakamo'uí 'i he fono 'a Mōsesé. 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'oku 'aonga ke mou kei tauhi 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé; ka 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e hokosia 'a e taimi 'e 'ikai toe 'aonga ai ke tauhi ki he fono 'a Mōsesé.

28 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku 'ikai ke hoko mai 'a e fakamo'uí 'i he fonó pē; pea ka ne ta'é'oua 'a e fakalelei, 'a ia 'e fai 'e he 'Otuá tonu ko'e uhi ko e ngaahi angahala mo e ngaahi hia 'a hono kakaí, pehē kuo pau ke nau mala'ia, neongo 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé.

29 Pea ko 'eni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, na'e 'aonga ke fokotu'u ha fono ki he fānau 'a 'Isilelí, 'io, na'a mo ha fono fefeka 'aupito; he ko ha kakai kia-kekeva 'a kinautolu, 'a ia 'oku nau fakavavevave ki he angahalá, mo nau fakatuotuai ke manatu 'i 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá;

30 Ko ia ai na'e tuku ha fono kiate kinautolu, 'io, ko ha fono 'o e ngaahi ngāue mo e ngaahi ouau, ko ha fono na'e totonu ke nau fai pau ki ai 'i he 'aho ki he 'aho, ko'e uhi ke tokoni 'i 'a kinautolu ke nau manatu ki he 'Otuá mo honau fatongia kiate iá.

31 Kae vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē ko e ngaahi sīpinga ia 'o e ngaahi me'a 'e hoko maí.

Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his manservant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's.

And it came to pass that after Abinadi had made an end of these sayings that he said unto them: Have ye taught this people that they should observe to do all these things for to keep these commandments?

I say unto you, Nay; for if ye had, the Lord would not have caused me to come forth and to prophesy evil concerning this people.

And now ye have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses. I say unto you that it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet; but I say unto you, that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of Moses.

And moreover, I say unto you, that salvation doth not come by the law alone; and were it not for the atonement, which God himself shall make for the sins and iniquities of his people, that they must unavoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses.

And now I say unto you that it was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God;

Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.

But behold, I say unto you, that all these things were types of things to come.

- 32 Pea ko 'eni, na'e mahino koā kiate kinautolu 'a e fonó? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai, na'e 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'a e fono; pea na'e tupu ia mei he fefeka 'a honau lotó; he na'e 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu 'e 'ikai fa'a fakamo'ui ha tangata 'e toko taha ka 'i he huhu'i pē 'a e 'Otuá.
- 33 He vakai, 'ikai na'e kikite 'a Mōsese kiate kinautolu 'o kau ki he hā'ele mai 'a e Mīsaia, pea mo e huhu'i 'e he 'Otuá 'a hono kakai? 'Io, pea na'a mo e kau palōfita kotoa pē kuo kikite talu mei he kamata'anga 'o māmaní —'ikai kuo nau lau ki he ngaahi me'a 'e ní'ihí 'o e ngaahi me'á ni?
- 34 'Ikai kuo nau pehē 'e hā'ele hifo 'a e 'Otuá tonu ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, pea ma'u kiate ia 'a e tatau 'o ha tangata, pea hā'ele atu 'i he māfima'fi lahi 'i he funga 'o e māmaní?
- 35 'Io, pea 'ikai kuo nau pehē foki te ne fakahoko 'a e toetu'u 'o e maté, pea ko ia, tonu, 'e ngaohikovi'i ia mo fakamamahi'i?

And now, did they understand the law? I say unto you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redemption of God.

For behold, did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God should redeem his people? Yea, and even all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began—have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

Have they not said that God himself should come down among the children of men, and take upon him the form of man, and go forth in mighty power upon the face of the earth?

Yea, and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed and afflicted?

Mōsaia 14

- 1 'To, 'oku 'ikai koā na'e pehē 'e 'Īsaia: Ko hai kuó ne tui ki he 'emau ongoongó, pea kuo fakahā kia hai 'a e to 'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí?
- 2 He te ne tupu hake 'i hono 'aó 'o hangē ko ha 'akau matengofua, pea hangē ko ha aka mei he kelekele mōmoa; 'oku 'ikai ha sino lelei pe ha faka 'ofó 'ofa 'iate ia; pea ka tau ka mamata kiate ia, 'oku 'ikai ha faka 'ofó 'ofa ke tau manako ai kiate ia.
- 3 'Oku fehi 'anekina ia pea lí 'akí 'e he kakaí; ko e tangata ia 'o e ngaahi mamahi, pea maheni mo e loto-mamahí; pea na 'a tau fufū 'a hotau fofongá meiate ia; na 'e manuki 'i ia, pea na 'e 'ikai te tau mahu 'inga 'ia 'iate ia.
- 4 Ko e mo 'oni kuó ne fuesia 'a hotau ngaahi mamahí, 'o ne kātaki 'i 'etau ngaahi loto-mamahí; ka na 'a tau mahalo kuo tautea, mo taa 'i ia mei he 'Otua, pea mamahi 'ia.
- 5 Ka na 'e kafo ia koe 'uhi ko 'etau ngaahi maumau-fonó, na 'e fakavolu ia koe 'uhi ko 'etau ngaahi angahalá; na 'e hanga 'e he tautea na 'á ne fuesiá 'o toe 'omi 'a e melinó kiate kitautolu; pea ko e me 'a 'i hono ngaahi kafó kuo tau mo 'ui ai.
- 6 Kuo tau hē kotoa pē, 'o hangē ko e fanga sipi; kuo tau afe taki taha kotoa pē ki hono hala 'o 'ona; pea kuo hilifaki kiate ia 'e he 'Eikí 'a e ngaahi angahala 'atautolu kotoa pē.
- 7 Na 'e ngaohikovia ia, pea na 'e fakamamahi 'i ia, ka na 'e 'ikai si 'ane lea; 'oku tataki mai ia 'o hangē ko e lami ke tāmata 'i, pea hangē ha sipi 'oku noa 'i he 'ao 'o hono kau tangata kosí ka na 'e 'ikai si 'ane lea.
- 8 Na 'e 'ave ia mei he fale fakapōpulá pea mei he fakamāú; pea ko hai ha taha te ne fakamatala ki hono tupu 'angá 'o e me 'a 'e hoko kiate iá? He na 'e motuhi atu ia mei he fonua 'o e mo 'uí; pea koe 'uhi ko e ngaahi maumau-fono 'a hoku kakaí na 'e te 'ia ai ia.
- 9 Pea na 'á ne ngaohi hono fonualotó fakataha mo e kau fai angahalá, mo e kau koloa 'iá 'i he 'ene pekiá; koe 'uhi kuo 'ikai te ne fai ha kovi, pea na 'e 'ikai ha kākā 'e taha mei hono fofongá.

Mosiah 14

Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him there is no beauty that we should desire him.

He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all.

He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth; he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth.

He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the transgressions of my people was he stricken.

And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

10 Ka na'e finangalo 'a e 'Eiki ke fakavolu ia; kuó ne tuku ia ki he mamahi; 'o ka ke ka ngaohi hono laumālié ko e feilaulau koe'uhi ko e angahala te ne mamata ki hono hakó, te ne fakalōloa hono ngaahi 'ahó, pea ko e finangalo 'o e 'Eiki 'e tu'umālie ia 'i hono to'ukupú.

11 Te ne mamata ki he mamahi lahi 'o hono laumālié, pea 'e fiemālie ai ia; 'i he 'ilo kiate iá 'e fakatonuhia 'i 'e he'eku tamaio'eiki mā'oni'oni 'a e kakai tokolahi; he te ne fua 'enau ngaahi angahalá.

12 Ko ia, te u tuku kiate ia ha 'inasi 'i he kakai ongoongoá, pea te ne vahevahe 'a e koloá mo e kakai mālohí; koe'uhi kuo mamahi hono laumālié 'o ne pekia; pea na'e lau ia fakataha mo e kau maumau-fonó; pea na'á ne fua 'a e ngaahi angahala 'o e tokolahi, peá ne fai 'a e taukapo koe'uhi ko e kau maumau-fonó.

Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Mōsaia 15

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e pehē 'e 'Apinetai kiate kinautolu: 'Oku ou faka'amu ke mahino kiate kimoutolu 'e hā'ele hifo 'a e 'Otuá tonu ki he lotolotonga 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá, pea huhu 'i 'a hono kakaí.
- 2 Pea koe'uhi te ne mo'ui 'i he kakanó 'e ui ai ia ko e 'Aló 'o e 'Otuá, pea 'i he'ene fakamo'ulaloa 'i 'a e kakanó ki he finangalo 'o e Tamaí, 'o hoko ai ko e Tamaí mo e 'Aló—
- 3 Ko e Tamaí, koe'uhi na'e fakatupu ia 'e he māfimaí 'o e 'Otuá; pea ko e 'Aló, koe'uhi ko e kakanó; 'o ne hoko ai ko e Tamaí mo e 'Aló—
- 4 Pea ko e 'Otua pē taha 'a kinaua, 'io, ko e Tamai Ta'engata mo'oni 'o e langí pea mo e māmaní.
- 5 Pea 'oku pehē 'a e mo'ulaloa 'a e kakanó ki he Laumālié, pe ko e 'Aló ki he Tamaí, 'a ia ko e 'Otua pē taha, pea fepaki mo e 'ahí'ahí, pea 'ikai tukulolo ki he 'ahí'ahí, ka ne tuku ke manukia ia, mo fakamamahí 'i, mo kapusi ki tu'a, mo lí'aki 'e hono kakaí.
- 6 Pea hili 'a 'eni kotoa pē, 'o ka 'osi 'a 'ene fai 'a e ngaahi fu'u mana lahi 'i he lotolotonga 'o e fānau 'a e tangata, 'e tataki atu ia, 'io, 'o hangē ko e lau 'a 'Īsaiá, 'o hangē ha sipi 'oku noa 'i he 'ao 'o e tangata kosí, ka na'e 'ikai sí'ane leá.
- 7 'Io, 'e pehē 'a hono taki atu, 'o kalusefai, mo tāmata'í, 'o mo'ulaloa pehē 'a e kakanó ki he maté, pea folo hifo 'a e finangalo 'o e 'Aló 'e he finangalo 'o e Tamaí.
- 8 Pea na'e pehē hono maumau 'i 'e he 'Otuá 'a e ngaahi ha 'i 'o e maté, kuó ne ikuna 'a e maté; pea tuku ai ki he 'Aló 'a e mālohi ke fai ha taukapo ma'á e fānau 'a e tangatá—
- 9 Pea kuó ne hā'ele hake ki he langí, kuo fonu 'i he 'alo'ofa; pea fonu 'i he 'ofa mamahi ki he fānau 'a e tangatá; 'o tu'u 'i honau vaha'a mo e fakamaau totonú; kuó ne maumau 'i 'a e ngaahi ha 'i 'o e maté, pea to'o kiate ia 'enau ngaahi angahalá mo 'enau ngaahi maumau-fonó, kuó ne huhu 'i 'a kinautolu, mo totongi 'a e ngaahi fie ma'u 'a e fakamaau totonú.

Mosiah 15

And now Abinadi said unto them: I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people.

And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son—

The Father, because he was conceived by the power of God; and the Son, because of the flesh; thus becoming the Father and Son—

And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.

And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, being one God, suffereth temptation, and yieldeth not to the temptation, but suffereth himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people.

And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.

Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father.

And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men—

Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

10 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko hai ha taha te ne fakamatala ki hono tupu'angá? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'o ka ngaohi hono laumālié ko e feilaulau koe'uhi ko e angahalá te ne mamata ki hono hakó. Pea ko 'eni ko e hā ha'amou lau? Pea ko hai 'e hoko ko hono hakó?

11 Vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko kinautolu kotoa pē kuo fanongo ki he ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfitá, 'io, 'a e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni kotoa pē kuo kikitē 'o kau ki he hā'ele mai 'a e 'Eikí—'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko kinautolu kotoa pē kuo nau tokanga mo'oni ki he'enau ngaahi leá, mo tui 'e huhu'í 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono kakaí, pea kuo nau 'amanaki atu ki he 'aho ko iá ke ma'u ha fakamolemole 'o 'enau ngaahi angahalá, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko kinautolu ia ko hono hakó, pe koe kau 'ea hoko ki he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá.

12 He ko 'eni 'a kinautolu kuó ne fua 'enau ngaahi angahalá; ko 'eni 'a kinautolu kuó ne pekia koe'uhi ko kinautolú, ke huhu'í 'a kinautolu mei he'enau ngaahi maumau-fonó. Pea ko 'eni, 'ikai ko hono hako 'a kinautolu?

13 'Io, pea 'ikai ko e kau palōfitá, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē kuo nau lea 'o kikité, pea kuo 'ikai te nau hinga ki he maumau-fonó, 'oku ou lau ki he kau palōfita mā'oni'oni kotoa pē talu mei he kamata'anga 'o māmaní? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko hono hako 'a kinautolu.

14 Pea ko 'eni 'a e fá'ahinga kuo nau fakahā 'a e melinó, 'a ia kuo nau 'omi 'a e ngaahi ongoongo lelei 'o e lelei, 'a ia kuo nau fakahā 'a e fakamo'uí; mo nau pehē ki Saione: 'Oku pule 'a ho 'Otuá!

15 Pea 'oiaue hono 'ikai faka'ofa'ofa 'i he ngaahi mo'ungá 'a honau va'é!

16 Pea ko e tahá, hono 'ikai faka'ofa'ofa 'i he ngaahi mo'ungá 'a e va'e 'o kinautolu 'oku kei fakahā 'a e melinó!

17 Pea ko e tahá, hono 'ikai faka'ofa'ofa 'i he ngaahi mo'ungá 'a e va'e 'o kinautolu te nau fakahā 'amui 'a e melinó, 'io, mei he taimí ni 'o fai atu, pea ta'engata!

And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say ye? And who shall be his seed?

Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord—I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are the heirs of the kingdom of God.

For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?

Yea, and are not the prophets, every one that has opened his mouth to prophesy, that has not fallen into transgression, I mean all the holy prophets ever since the world began? I say unto you that they are his seed.

And these are they who have published peace, who have brought good tidings of good, who have published salvation; and said unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that are still publishing peace!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace, yea, from this time henceforth and forever!

18 Pea vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku 'ikai ke ngata ai. He 'oiaue hono 'ikai faka'ofa'ofa 'i he ngaahi mo'ungá 'a e va'e 'o ia 'oku 'omi 'a e ngaahi ongoongo lelei, 'a ia ko e tupu'anga 'o e melinó, 'io, na'a mo e 'Eiki, 'a ia kuó ne huhu 'i 'a hono kakaí; 'io, 'a ia kuó ne foaki 'a e fakamo'uí ki hono kakaí;

19 He ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e huhu 'i 'a ia kuó ne fai ma'a hono kakaí, 'a ia na'e teuteu talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ka ne ta'e'oua 'eni, ko e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá 'e mala'ia.

20 Kae vakai, 'e maumau 'i 'a e ngaahi ha'i 'o e maté, pea pule 'a e 'Aló, pea ne ma'u 'a e mālohi ki he maté; ko ia, 'okú ne fakahoko 'a e toetu'u 'o e maté.

21 Pea 'e hoko ha toetu'u, na'a mo ha 'uluaki toetu'u, 'io, ko ha toetu'u 'a kinautolu kuo mo'ui, pea 'oku nau mo'ui, pea te nau mo'ui, 'io kae 'oua kuo toetu'u 'a Kalaisi—he 'e ui pehē ia.

22 Pea ko 'eni, ko e toetu'u 'a e kau palōfita kotoa pē, pea mo kinautolu kotoa pē na'a nau tui ki he 'enau ngaahi leá, pe ko kinautolu kotoa pē kuo tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, te nau 'alu atu 'i he 'uluaki toetu'ú; ko ia, ko kinautolu ko e 'uluaki toetu'ú.

23 'Oku fokotu'u hake 'a kinautolu ke nofo fakataha mo e 'Otua 'a ia kuó ne huhu 'i 'a kinautolú; ko ia 'oku nau ma'u 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá 'ia Kalaisi, 'a ia kuó ne maumau 'i 'a e ngaahi ha'i 'o e maté.

24 Pea ko kinautolu 'eni 'oku nau kau 'i he 'uluaki toetu'ú; pea ko kinautolu 'eni na'a nau mate ki mu'a 'i he hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí, 'i he 'enau ta'e'iló, pea na'e te'eki ai fakahā 'a e fakamo'uí kiate kinautolu. Pea 'oku fakahoko pehe 'i 'e he 'Eiki 'a e toe fakafoki 'o kinautolu ní; pea 'oku nau kau 'i he 'uluaki toetu'ú, pe ma'u 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá, kuo huhu 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki.

25 Pea 'oku ma'u foki 'e he fānau ikí 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá.

26 Kae vakai, pea manavahē, mo tetetete 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, he 'oku totonu ke mou tetetete; ko'e'uhí 'oku 'ikai huhu 'i 'e he 'Eiki 'a e kakai 'oku angatu'u kiate ia pea mate 'i he 'enau ngaahi angahalá; 'io, na'a mo kinautolu kotoa pē kuo nau mate 'i he 'enau ngaahi angahalá talu mei he kamata'anga 'o e māmaní, 'a ia kuo nau loto ke angatu'u ki he 'Otuá, 'a ia kuo nau 'ilo 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, kae 'ikai te nau tauhi ki aí; ko 'eni 'a kinautolu 'e 'ikai te nau kau 'i he 'uluaki toetu'ú.

And behold, I say unto you, this is not all. For O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that is the founder of peace, yea, even the Lord, who has redeemed his people; yea, him who has granted salvation unto his people;

For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, I say unto you, were it not for this, all mankind must have perished.

But behold, the bands of death shall be broken, and the Son reigneth, and hath power over the dead; therefore, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead.

And there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be, even until the resurrection of Christ—for so shall he be called.

And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the first resurrection.

They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.

And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them. And thus the Lord bringeth about the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.

And little children also have eternal life.

But behold, and fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble; for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in their sins; yea, even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these are they that have no part in the first resurrection.

27 Ko ia 'oku 'ikai koā ke totonu ke mou tetetete?
 Koe'uhi 'oku 'ikai hoko 'a e fakamo'ui ki ha taha pehē;
 he kuo 'ikai huhu'i 'e he 'Eiki ha taha pehē; 'io, 'oku 'ikai
 lava foki 'e he 'Eiki 'o huhu'i ha taha pehē; he 'oku 'ikai
 te ne lava 'o faka'ikai'i ia; he 'oku 'ikai te ne lava 'o
 faka'ikai'i 'a e ngaahi fie ma'u 'a e fakamaau totonú.

28 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou tala kiate kimoutolu 'e hokosia 'a e
 taimi 'a ia 'e fakahā ai 'a e fakamo'ui 'a e 'Eiki 'i he
 pulé'anga, mo e fa'ahinga, mo e lea, mo e kakai fulipē.

29 'Io, 'e 'Eiki, 'e hiki hake 'e ho'o kau tangata le'ó 'a
 honau le'ó; pea 'i he le'o pē taha te nau hiva fakataha; he
 te nau mamata 'aki honau matá, 'o ka toe fokotu'u 'e he
 'Eiki 'a Saione.

30 Ke pā mai 'i he fiefia, hiva fakataha, 'a kimoutolu 'a e
 ngaahi potu lala 'o Selūsalemá; he kuo fakafiemālie'i 'e
 he 'Eiki 'a hono kakai, kuó ne huhu'i 'a Selūsalema.

31 Kuo fakahā 'e he 'Eiki 'a hono to'ukupu mā'oní'oní 'i
 he 'ao 'o e ngaahi pulé'anga kotoa pē; pea 'e mamata 'e he
 ngaahi ngata'anga kotoa pē 'o māmaní ki he fakamo'ui
 'a hotau 'Otuá.

Therefore ought ye not to tremble? For salvation
 cometh to none such; for the Lord hath redeemed none
 such; yea, neither can the Lord redeem such; for he can-
 not deny himself; for he cannot deny justice when it has
 its claim.

And now I say unto you that the time shall come that
 the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every na-
 tion, kindred, tongue, and people.

Yea, Lord, thy watchmen shall lift up their voice;
 with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see
 eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of
 Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he
 hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of
 all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the
 salvation of our God.

Mōsaia 16

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono lea 'aki 'e 'Apinetai 'a e ngaahi lea ní na'á ne mafafo atu hono nimá 'o pehē: 'E hokosia 'a e taimi 'a ia 'e mamata ai 'a e kakai fulipē ki he fakamo'ui 'a e 'Eiki; 'a ia 'e lava ai 'e he pulē'anga, mo e fa'ahinga, mo e lea, mo e kakai fulipē, 'o sio 'i he mata ki he mata mo fakahā 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá 'oku totonu 'a 'ene ngaahi fakamāú.
- 2 Pea 'e toki kapusi ki tu'a 'a e kau angahalá, pea 'e 'i ai ha'anau 'uhinga ke nau ngala, mo tangi, mo tangi lāulau, pea fenga'itaki honau nifó; pea 'e tupu 'eni 'i he 'ikai te nau fie tokanga mo talangofua ki he lé' o e 'Eiki; ko ia 'oku 'ikai huhu 'i 'e he 'Eiki 'a kinautolu.
- 3 He 'oku nau anga-fakakakano mo anga-fakatēvolo, pea 'oku ma'u 'e he tēvoló 'a e mālohi kiate kinautolu; 'io na'a mo e ngata motu'a ko ia na'á ne kākaa 'i 'a 'etau 'uluaki ongo mātu'á, 'a ia ko e tupu'anga 'o 'ena hingá; pea ko e tupu'anga 'o e hoko 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá 'o anga-fakakakano, mo fa'a holi kovi, mo anga-fakatēvolo, mo nau 'ilo 'a e kovi mei he lelé, mo fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu ki he tēvoló.
- 4 Ko ia na'e mole ai 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá; pea vakai, na'a nau mei mole ta'engata ka ne ta'e'oua hono huhu 'i 'e he 'Otuá 'a hono kakai mei honau tu'unga mole mo tō ki laló.
- 5 Kae manatu ko ia ia 'okú ne vilitaki 'i hono 'ulungāanga fakakakanó, pea 'okú ne fai atu 'i he ngaahi hala 'o e angahalá mo e angatu'u ki he 'Otuá, 'okú ne nofo ma'u 'i hono tu'unga tō ki laló pea 'oku ma'u 'e he tēvoló 'a e mālohi kotoa kiate ia. Ko ia, 'oku hangē ai na'e 'ikai fai ha huhu'i, pea ko e fili ia ki he 'Otuá; pea ko e tēvoló ko e fili foki ia ki he 'Otuá.
- 6 Pea ko 'eni ka ne 'ikai ke hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisi ki he māmaní, ko 'eku lea ki he ngaahi me'a 'e hoko 'o hangē kuo nau 'osi hokó, pehē kuo 'ikai ke 'i ai ha huhu'i.
- 7 Pea kapau kuo 'ikai toe tu'u 'a Kalaisi mei he pekiá, pe motuhi 'a e ngaahi ha 'i 'o e maté ke 'oua na'a ikuna 'a fa'itoka, pea ke 'oua na'a 'i ai hano huhu 'o e maté, pehē kuo 'ikai ke 'i ai ha toetu'u.
- 8 Ka 'oku 'i ai ha toetu'u, ko ia 'oku 'ikai ha ikuna 'a e fa'itoká, pea 'oku folo hifo 'a e huhu 'o e maté 'ia Kalaisi.

Mosiah 16

And now, it came to pass that after Abinadi had spoken these words he stretched forth his hand and said: The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye and shall confess before God that his judgments are just.

And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teeth; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemeth them not.

For they are carnal and devilish, and the devil has power over them; yea, even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil.

Thus all mankind were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.

But remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remaineth in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him. Therefore he is as though there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God.

And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption.

And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.

But there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ.

- 9 Ko ia 'a e maama mo e mo'ui 'o e māmaní; 'io, ko ha maama 'oku 'ikai hano ngata'anga, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai lava 'o tāmāte'i; 'io, kae 'uma'ā foki ha mo'ui 'a ia 'oku 'ikai hano ngata'anga, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a toe 'i ai ha mate.
- 10 'Io na'a mo e sino fa'a-maté ni 'e 'ai 'e ia 'a e ta'e-fa'a-mate, pe 'e 'ai 'e he 'au'auhá ni 'a ta'e-fa'a-'au'auha, pea 'e 'omi ke tu'u 'i he fakamaau'anga 'o e 'Otuá, ke fakamāu 'i 'e ia 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau ngaahi ngāu'e pe 'oku lelei pe kovi ia—
- 11 Pea kapau 'oku lelei ia, te nau toe tu'u ki he mo'ui mo e fiefia ta'engata; pea kapau 'oku kovi, te nau toe tu'u ki he mala'ia ta'engata, pea tukuange 'a kinautolu ki he tēvoló, 'a ia kuó ne pule'i 'a kinautolu, 'a ia ko e mala'ia—
- 12 Koe'uhi kuo nau 'a'eva 'o fakatatau ki honau lotó mo 'enau ngaahi holi fakakakanó; 'o 'ikai ui ki he 'Eikí lolotonga 'a e mafao atu hono to'ukupu 'o e 'alo'ofá kiate kinautolú; he na'e mafao atu 'a e to'ukupu 'o e 'alo'ofá kiate kinautolu, ka na'e 'ikai te nau tali ia; na'e valoki'i 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi angahalá ka na'e 'ikai te nau fie tafoki mei ai; pea na'e fekau'i 'a kinautolu ke fakatomala ka na'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala.
- 13 Pea ko 'eni, 'ikai 'oku totonu ke mou tetetete pea fakatomala mei ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, pea manatu 'oku fou pea tu'unga pē 'ia Kalaisi homou fakamo'uí?
- 14 Ko ia, kapau 'oku mou akonaki 'aki 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé, ke mou akonaki foki ko e 'ata pē ia 'o e ngaahi me'a 'e hoko—
- 15 Akonaki kiate kinautolu 'oku fou mai 'a e huhu'í 'ia Kalaisi ko e 'Eikí, 'a ia ko e Tamai Tā'engata mo'oní. 'Ēmeni.

He is the light and the life of the world; yea, a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; yea, and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death.

Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation—

Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were extended towards them, and they would not; they being warned of their iniquities and yet they would not depart from them; and they were commanded to repent and yet they would not repent.

And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved?

Therefore, if ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come—

Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord, who is the very Eternal Father. Amen.

Mōsaia 17

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he faka'osi 'e 'Apinetai 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e fekau 'e he tu'í ke 'ave ia 'e he kau taula'eikí pea fekau ke tāmata'e i ia.
- 2 Ka na'e 'i ai ha toko taha 'iate kinautolu 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko 'Alamā, 'a ia ko e hako foki ia 'o Nifai. Pea ko e tangata kei talavou ia, pea na'e tui ia ki he ngaahi lea kuo lea 'aki 'e 'Apinetai, he na'á ne 'ilo 'i 'a e angahala kuo valoki 'i ai 'a kinautolu 'e 'Apinetai; ko ia na'á ne kamata ke kole ki he tu'í ke 'oua te ne houhau kia 'Apinetai, kae tukuange ke ne 'alu fiemālie.
- 3 Ka na'e 'āsili ai 'a e houhau 'a e tu'í, 'o ne fekau ke kapusi ki tu'a 'a 'Alamā meiate kinautolu, 'o ne fekau atu ha'ane kau tamaio'eiki ke nau tuli ia koe'uhi ke nau tāmata'e i ia.
- 4 Ka na'á ne hola mei honau 'aó 'o ne toitoi pea na'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo ia. Pea 'i he'ene toitoi 'i he ngaahi 'aho lahi na'á ne tohi 'a e ngaahi lea kotoa pē kuo lea 'aki 'e 'Apinetai.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'e he tu'í ke hanga 'e he'ene kau le'ó 'o kāpui 'a 'Apinetai 'o puke ia; pea na'a nau ha'i ia 'o lī ki he fale fakapōpulá.
- 6 Pea 'i he hili 'a e 'aho 'e tolu, kuó ne alea mo 'ene kau taula'eikí, na'á ne fekau ke toe 'omi ia ki hono 'aó.
- 7 Pea pehē 'e ia kiate ia: 'E 'Apinetai, kuo mau 'ilo 'i ha kovi ke tukuaki 'i ai koe, pea 'oku totonu ke ke mate.
- 8 He kuó ke pehē 'e hā'ele hifo 'a e 'Otuá tonu ki he lotolotonga 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá; pea ko 'eni, koe'uhi ko e me'á ni 'e tāmata'e i koe, tuku kehe 'o kapau te ke fakafoki 'a e ngaahi lea kotoa pē kuó ke lau'ikovi 'i 'aki au mo hoku kakaí.
- 9 Pea na'e pehē 'e 'Apinetai kiate ia: 'Oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'e 'ikai te u fakafoki 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia kuó u lea 'aki kiate koe 'a ia 'oku kau ki he kakai ní, he 'oku mo'oni ia; pea koe'uhi ke mou 'ilo ki honau mo'oní kuó u tuku ai ke u tō ki homou nimá.

Mosiah 17

And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.

But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi had testified against them; therefore he began to plead with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that he might depart in peace.

But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him.

But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not. And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

And it came to pass that the king caused that his guards should surround Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast him into prison.

And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that he should again be brought before him.

And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against thee, and thou art worthy of death.

For thou hast said that God himself should come down among the children of men; and now, for this cause thou shalt be put to death unless thou wilt recall all the words which thou hast spoken evil concerning me and my people.

Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true; and that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have fallen into your hands.

10 'Io, pea te u kātaki pē 'o a' u ki he maté, ka 'e 'ikai te u faka'ikai' i 'a 'eku ngaahi leá, pea 'e tu' u ia ko ha fakamo'oni ke talatalaaki' i 'a kimoutolu. Pea kapau te mou tāmata' i au, te mou lilingi ai 'a e toto ta' ehalai, pea 'e tu' u foki ia ko ha fakamo'oni ke talatalaaki' i 'a kimoutolu 'i he 'aho faka'osi.

11 Pea ko 'eni na' e meimei tukuange ia 'e he tu' i ko Noá, he na' á ne ilifia 'i he' ene leá; he na' á ne manavahē telia na' a tō 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a e 'Otuá kiate ia.

12 Ka na' e hiki hake 'a e le' o 'o e kau taula' eiki' i he' enau 'itá, 'o kamata ke tukuaki' i ia, 'o pehē: Kuó ne lau' ikovi' i 'a e tu' í. Ko ia na' e fakatupu ai 'a e houhau 'o e tu' í kiate ia, 'o ne tukuange ia koe' uhi ke tāmata' i ia.

13 Pea na' e hoko 'o pehē na' a nau 'ave ia 'o ha' i, 'o nau haha hono kilí 'aki 'a e ngaahi ha' inga 'akau vela 'o a' u ki he' ene mate.

14 Pea ko 'eni 'i he kamata ke ne vela 'i he ngaahi ulo 'o e afí, na' á ne kaila kiate kinautolu, 'o pehē:

15 Vakai, 'e hangē ko ho' omou fai kiate aú, 'e pehē hono ngaohi 'e homou hakó ke mamahi 'a e tokolahi 'i he ngaahi mamahi 'oku ou mamahi aí, 'io 'i he ngaahi mamahi 'o e mate 'i he afí; pea 'e tupunga 'eni koe' uhi ko 'enau tui ki he fakamo'ui 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá.

16 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e fakamamahi' i 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi fa' ahinga mahaki kotoa pē koe' uhi ko ho' omou ngaahi angahalá.

17 'Io, pea 'e te' ia 'a kimoutolu mei he feitu' u kotoa pē, pea 'e tuli mo fakamovetevetea holo 'a kimoutolu, 'o hangē 'oku tuli 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki kaivaó 'e he fanga manu kaivao mo fekaí.

18 Pea 'i he 'aho ko iá, 'e ha' ao 'a kimoutolu, pea 'e ma' u 'a kimoutolu 'e he nima 'o homou ngaahi filí, pea te mou toki mamahi, 'o hangē ko 'eku mamahi 'i he ngaahi mamahi 'o e mate 'i he afí.

19 'Oku pehē hono sāuni 'e he 'Otuá kiate kinautolu 'oku faka'auha 'a hono kakaí. 'E 'Otuá, ke ke ma' u hoku laumálié.

20 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he 'osi lea 'aki 'e 'Apinetai 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na' á ne tō, he kuó ne kātaki' i 'a e mate 'i he afí; 'io, na' e tāmata' i ia koe' uhi na' e 'ikai te ne faka'ikai' i 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, 'o ne fakama' u 'a hono mo'oni 'o 'ene ngaahi leá 'aki 'a 'ene pekiá.

Yea, and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words, and they shall stand as a testimony against you. And if ye slay me ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word; for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him.

But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain.

And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death.

And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:

Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.

And it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.

Yea, and ye shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.

And in that day ye shall be hunted, and ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then ye shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.

Thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul.

And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.

Mōsaia 18

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē ko 'Alamā, 'a ia kuó ne hola mei he kau tamaio'eiki 'a e tu'i ko Noá, na'á ne fakatomala mei he'ene ngaahi angahalá mo e ngaahi hiá, 'o ne 'alu holo fakafufū 'i he kakaí, 'o kamata ke akonaki 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea 'a 'Apinetai.
- 2 'Io, 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'a 'e hokó, pea fekau'aki foki mo e toetu'u 'o e maté, pea mo e huhu'i 'o e kakaí, 'a ia 'e fakahoko 'i he māfimaí, mo e ngaahi mamahi, mo e pekia 'a Kalaisí, pea mo 'ene toetu'ú mo e hā'ele hake ki he langí.
- 3 Pea na'á ne akonaki 'i 'a kinautolu kotoa pē na'a nau fie fanongo ki he'ene leá. Pea na'á ne akonaki fakafufū kiate kinautolu, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a 'afio'i 'e he tu'í. Pea na'e tui 'a e tokolahi ki he'ene ngaahi leá.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu atu 'a e kakai tokolahi ko ia na'e tui kiate iá ki ha potu 'a ia na'e ui ko Molomona, 'a ia na'e fakahingoa 'e he tu'í, pea na'e tu'ua 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonuá 'a ia kuo fonu 'i he ngaahi fá'ahita'u 'e ní'ihí 'o e ta'ú 'i he fanga manu kaivao.
- 5 Ko 'eni, na'e 'i Molomona ha matavai 'o e vai má'a, pea na'e fá'a 'alu ki ai 'a 'Alamā, he na'e ofi ki he vai ha pupunga 'akau iiki, 'a ia na'á ne toitoi ai 'i he 'ahó mei he ngaahi kumi 'a e tu'í.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e kakai tokolahi kotoa pē na'e tui kiate iá na'a nau 'alu ki ai ke fanongo ki he'ene ngaahi leá.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'osi mei ai 'a e ngaahi 'aho lahi, kuo kátoa mai 'a e kakai tokolahi 'aupito ki he potu ko Molomoná, ke nau fanongo ki he ngaahi lea 'a 'Alamaá. 'Io, kuo fakataha mai 'a kinautolu kotoa pē na'e tui ki he'ene leá, ke nau fanongo kiate ia. Pea na'á ne ako kiate kinautolu, mo ne malanga 'aki kiate kinautolu 'a e fakatomalá, mo e huhu'í, pea mo e tui ki he 'Eikí.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne pehē kiate kinautolu: Vakai, ko e vai 'eni 'o Molomoná (he na'e ui pehē ia), pea ko 'eni, ko e me'a 'i ho'omou holi ke hū ki he loto'ā sipi 'o e 'Otuá, pea ui 'a kimoutolu ko hono kakaí, pea 'oku mou loto ke fefua'aki 'a ho'omou ngaahi kavengá, koe'uhi ke nau ma'amá'a;

Mosiah 18

And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi—

Yea, concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven.

And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.

And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.

Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king.

And it came to pass that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.

And it came to pass after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. Yea, all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord.

And it came to pass that he said unto them: Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for thus were they called) and now, as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another's burdens, that they may be light;

9 'Io, pea 'oku mou loto ke tangi fakataha mo kinautolu 'oku tangi; 'io, pea fakafiemālie 'i 'a kinautolu 'oku 'aonga ki ai 'a e fakafiemālie, pea tu'u ko e kau fakamo'oni 'o e 'Otuá 'i he taimi kotoa pē pea 'i he me'a kotoa pē, pea 'i he feitu'u kotoa pē te mou 'i ai, 'o a'u ki he mate, koe'uhi ke huhu 'i 'a kimoutolu 'e he 'Otuá, pea mou kau fakataha mo kinautolu 'oku 'o e 'uluaki toetu'ú, koe'uhi ke mou ma'u 'a e mo'ui ta'engata—

10 Ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau ko e faka'amu 'eni 'o homou lotó, ko e hā ha'amou 'uhinga ke 'oua na'a papitaiso 'a kimoutolu 'i he huafa 'o e 'Eiki, ko e fakamo'oni kiate ia kuo mou fai ha fuakava mo ia te mou tauhi kiate ia mo tauhi 'ene ngaahi fekaú, koe'uhi ke ne hua 'i hifo 'a hono Laumālie 'o lahi 'aupito kiate kimoutolu?

11 Pea ko 'eni 'i he fanongo 'a e kakaí ki he ngaahi lea ní, na'a nau pasipasi honau nimá 'i he fiefia, 'o nau kaila: Ko e faka'amu ia 'a homau lotó.

12 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ave 'e 'Alamā 'a Heilami, 'a ia ko e taha 'o kinautolu na'e fuofua tuí, 'o na 'alu 'o tu'u 'i he vaí, 'o ne kaila, 'o pehē: 'E 'Eiki, ke ke lilingi hifo ho Laumālie ki ho 'o tamaio'eiki, koe'uhi ke ne lava 'o fai 'a e ngāué ni 'i he loto-mā'oni'oni.

13 Pea kuó ne lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e 'iate ia 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eiki, 'o ne pehē: 'E Heilami, 'oku ou papitaiso koe, 'i he'eku ma'u 'a e mafai mei he 'Otuá Māfimaí, ko ha fakamo'oni kuó ke fai ha fuakava ke tauhi kiate ia 'o a'u ki ho 'o mate 'i he sino fakamatelié; pea tuku ke hua 'i hifo 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eiki kiate koe; pea tuku ke ne foaki kiate koe 'a e mo'ui ta'engata, 'i he huhu 'i 'a Kalaisí, 'a ia kuó ne teuteu talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní.

14 Pea hili 'a e lea 'aki 'e 'Alamā 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e fakangalo hifo 'a 'Alamā mo Heilami fakatou'osi 'i he loto vaí; pea na'á na tu'u hake, 'o 'alu hake mei he loto vaí 'i he fiefia, kuó na fonu 'i he Laumālie.

15 Pea na'e toe 'ave 'e 'Alamā mo ha tokotaha kehe, 'o ne 'alu hifo ki he vaí ko hono tu'o ua, pea ne papitaiso ia 'o hangē ko e 'uluakí, ka na'e 'ikai te ne toe fakangalo hifo 'e ia ia 'i he vaí.

Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life—

Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?

And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts.

And now it came to pass that Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart.

And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.

And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.

And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water.

16 Pea na'e founnga pehē 'ene papitaiso 'a e kakai kotoa pē na'a nau 'alu atu ki he potu ko Molomoná; pea ko e toko uangeau mā fā nai 'a honau tokolahí; 'io, pea na'e papitaiso 'a kinautolu 'i he ngaahi vai 'o Molomoná, pea na'e fakafonu 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Otuá.

17 Pea na'e ui 'a kinautolu ko e siasi 'o e 'Otuá, pe ko e siasi 'o Kalaisí, 'o fai atu mei he taimi ko iá. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'ilonga 'a kinautolu na'e papitaiso 'i he mālohi mo e mafai 'o e 'Otuá na'e tānaki atu 'a kinautolu ki hono siasí.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he mā'u 'e 'Alamā, 'a e mafai mei he 'Otuá, na'á ne fakanofu ha kau taula'eiki; 'io, na'á ne fakanofu 'a e taula'eiki 'e toko taha ki he toko nimangofulu kotoa pē 'o kinautolu ke malanga kiate kinautolu, pea ako kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a 'oku kau ki he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá.

19 Pea na'á ne fekau kiate kinautolu ke 'oua na'a nau akonaki 'aki ha me'a ka ko e ngaahi me'a pē kuó ne akonaki 'akí, pea kuo lea 'aki 'e he ngutu 'o e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni.

20 'Io, na'á ne fekau foki kiate kinautolu ke 'oua na'a nau malanga 'aki ha me'a ka ko e fakatomala mo e tui ki he 'Eikí, 'a ia kuó ne huhu 'i 'a hono kakai.

21 Pea na'á ne fekau kiate kinautolu ke 'oua na'a 'i ai ha fakakikihi 'iate kinautolu ka 'oku totonu ke nau sio ki mu'a 'i he loto pē taha, 'o mā'u 'a e tui pē taha mo e papitaiso pē taha, pea ke taha honau lotó 'i he uouongataha mo e fe'ofa'ofani.

22 Pea na'e pehē 'a 'ene fekau kiate kinautolu ke malangá. Pea na'e pehē 'a 'enau hoko ko e fānau 'a e 'Otuá.

23 Pea na'á ne fekau kiate kinautolu ke nau tauhi 'a e 'aho sāpaté, pea tauhi ia ke mā'oni'oni, pea ke nau fakafeta 'i foki 'i he 'aho kotoa pē ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá.

24 Pea na'á ne fekau foki kiate kinautolu ko e kau taula'eiki kuó ne fakanofó ke nau ngāue 'aki honau nima 'onautolú ke tauhi 'a kinautolu.

25 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e 'aho 'e taha 'i he uike kotoa pē 'a ia na'e vahe 'i ke nau fakataha ai ke akonaki ki he kakai, pea hū ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, kae 'uma 'ā foki, ke nau fakataha 'i he faingamālie kotoa pē te nau lavá.

And after this manner he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Mormon; and they were in number about two hundred and four souls; yea, and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God.

And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward. And it came to pass that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his church.

And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.

And he commanded them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught, and which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy prophets.

Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.

And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another.

And thus he commanded them to preach. And thus they became the children of God.

And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.

And he also commanded them that the priests whom he had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.

And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the Lord their God, and also, as often as it was in their power, to assemble themselves together.

26 Pea na'e fekau ke 'oua na'a fakafalala 'a e kau taula'eiki ki he kakai ke ma'u mei ai hanau tauhi; ka ko e totongi ki he 'enau ngāue ke nau ma'u 'a e 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Otuá, koe'uhi ke nau tupulaki 'o mālohi 'i he Laumālié, pea ma'u 'a e 'ilo 'o e 'Otuá, koe'uhi ke nau akonaki 'i he mālohi mo e mafai mei he 'Otuá.

27 Pea na'e toe fekau 'e 'Alamā ke foaki 'e he kakai 'o e siasí mei he 'enau koloá, ko e tangata taki taha 'o fakatatau ki he me'a 'okú ne ma'ú; kapau 'okú ne ma'ú 'o lahi ange 'oku totonu ke ne foaki 'o lahi ange; ka 'e totonu ke si'isi'i meiate ia 'okú ne ma'ú si'isi'i; pea foaki kiate ia 'oku 'ikai te ne ma'ú.

28 Pea ke pehē 'a 'enau foaki mei he 'enau ngaahi koloá 'i honau loto-tau'atāina mo e ngaahi holi lelei ki he 'Otuá, pea ki he kau taula'eiki 'oku masivá, 'io, pea ki he kakai masiva mo tēlefua kotoa pē.

29 Pea na'á ne lea 'aki 'eni kiate kinautolu 'i hono fekau 'i ia 'e he 'Otuá, pea na'a nau 'a 'eva angatonu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, 'o nau fefoaki 'aki 'a e me'a fakatu'asino mo e me'a fakalaumālie fakatou'osi, 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi me'a na'a nau masiva ai mo fie ma'ú.

30 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fai kotoa 'eni 'i Molomona, 'io, 'o ofi ki he ngaahi vai 'o Molomoná, 'i he vao na'e ofi ki he ngaahi vai 'o Molomoná; 'io, 'a e potu 'o Molomoná, 'a e ngaahi vai 'o Molomoná, 'a e vao 'o Molomoná, hono 'ikai faka'ofa'ofa ia ki he mata 'o kinautolu na'a nau ma'ú ai 'a e 'ilo ki honau Huhu'í; 'io, pea hono 'ikai monū 'a kinautolu, he te nau hiva mo fakafeta 'i kiate ia 'o ta'engata.

31 Pea na'e fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonuá, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a 'afio 'i ia 'e he tu'í.

32 Kae vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'afio 'e he tu'í ki ha fe'alu'aki 'i he kakai, na'á ne fekau atu 'a 'ene kau tamaio'eiki ke mataki 'i 'a kinautolu. Ko ia 'i he 'aho na'a nau lolotonga fakataha ai ke fanongo ki he folofola 'a e 'Eiki na'e tala na'e 'ilo 'i ai 'a kinautolu 'e he tu'í.

33 Pea ko 'eni na'e folofola 'a e tu'í 'oku fakalanga 'e 'Alamā 'a e kakai ke angatu'u kiate ia; ko ia na'á ne fekau atu 'a 'ene kau tau ke faka'auha 'a kinautolu.

And the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God.

And again Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.

And thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that stood in need, yea, and to every needy, naked soul.

And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, imparting to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.

And now it came to pass that all this was done in Mormon, yea, by the waters of Mormon, in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon; yea, the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; yea, and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever.

And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king.

But behold, it came to pass that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them. Therefore on the day that they were assembling themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discovered unto the king.

And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them.

34 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakatokanga kia 'Alamā
mo e kakai 'o e 'Eikí 'oku ha'u 'a e kau tau 'a e tu'í; ko ia
na'a nau 'ave honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí mo honau
ngaahi fāmilí 'o nau hiki ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

35 Pea ko honau tokolahi ko e toko fāngeau
nimangofulu nai.

And it came to pass that Alma and the people of the
Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's army;
therefore they took their tents and their families and de-
parted into the wilderness.

And they were in number about four hundred and
fifty souls.

Mōsaia 19

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e liu mai 'a e kau tau 'a e tu'í, kuo nau kumi ta'e aonga ki he kakai 'o e 'Eikí.
- 2 Pea ko 'eni vakai, na'e tokosi'i 'a e kau tau 'a e tu'í, ko e me'a 'i hono fakatokosi'í, pea na'e tupu ha mavahevahe 'i hono toe 'o e kakai.
- 3 Pea na'e kamata 'e he fa'ahi tokosi'i angé ha ngaahi lea fakamanamana ki he tu'í, pea na'e tupu ha fu'u fakakikihi lahi 'iate kinautolu.
- 4 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'iate kinautolu ha tangata ko hono hingoá ko Kitione, pea ko ha tangata sino mālohi ia pea ko ha fili ia ki he tu'í, ko ia na'á ne unuhi ai 'ene heletaá, 'o ne fuakava 'i he'ene 'itá te ne tāmata'i 'a e tu'í.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne tau mo e tu'í; pea 'i he vakai 'e he tu'í 'oku ofi ke ne ikuna 'i iá, na'á ne hola 'o lele 'o kaka hake ki he funga taua 'a ia na'e ofi ki he temipalé.
- 6 Pea na'e tuli ia 'e Kitione, peá ne kamata ke kaka hake 'i he tauá ke tāmata'i 'a e tu'í, pea na'e 'afio takai 'a e tu'í ki he fonua ko Semeloní, pea vakai, na'e 'i loto 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonuá 'a e kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná.
- 7 Pea ko 'eni na'e kaila 'a e tu'í 'i he mamahi 'a hono laumālié, 'o ne pehē: 'E Kitione, fakamo'ui au, he kuo 'oho mai kiate kitautolu 'a e kau Leimaná, pea te nau faka'auha 'a kitautolu; 'io, te nau faka'auha 'a hoku kakai.
- 8 Ka ko 'eni na'e 'ikai ke tokanga lahi 'a e tu'í ki hono kakai 'o hangē ko 'ene tokanga ki he'ene mo'ui 'a'aná; ka neongo iá, na'e fakamo'ui ia 'e Kitione.
- 9 Pea na'e fekau 'e he tu'í ki he kakai ke nau hola mei he kau Leimaná, pea na'á ne mu'omu'a ia 'iate kinautolu, 'o nau hola ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá mo honau kakai fefiné mo 'enau fānaú.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuli 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Leimaná, 'o ma'u 'a kinautolu, 'o kamata ke tāmata'i 'a kinautolu.
- 11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'e he tu'í kiate kinautolu ke lí'aki 'e he kau tangata kotoa pē 'a honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enau fānaú, pea hola mei he kau Leimaná.

Mosiah 19

And it came to pass that the army of the king returned, having searched in vain for the people of the Lord.

And now behold, the forces of the king were small, having been reduced, and there began to be a division among the remainder of the people.

And the lesser part began to breathe out threatenings against the king, and there began to be a great contention among them.

And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon, and he being a strong man and an enemy to the king, therefore he drew his sword, and swore in his wrath that he would slay the king.

And it came to pass that he fought with the king; and when the king saw that he was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the tower which was near the temple.

And Gideon pursued after him and was about to get upon the tower to slay the king, and the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land.

And now the king cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying: Gideon, spare me, for the Lamanites are upon us, and they will destroy us; yea, they will destroy my people.

And now the king was not so much concerned about his people as he was about his own life; nevertheless, Gideon did spare his life.

And the king commanded the people that they should flee before the Lamanites, and he himself did go before them, and they did flee into the wilderness, with their women and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue them, and did overtake them, and began to slay them.

Now it came to pass that the king commanded them that all the men should leave their wives and their children, and flee before the Lamanites.

- 12 Ko 'eni na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi na'e 'ikai fie li'aki 'a kinautolu, ka na'a nau fie nofo 'o mate fakataha mo kinautolu. Pea na'e li'aki 'e hono to'e 'a honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enau fānaú ka nau hola.
- 13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko kinautolu na'e nofo mo honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enau fānaú na'a nau fekau ke 'alu atu honau ngaahi 'ofefine hoihoifuá 'o kole ki he kau Leimaná ke 'oua na'a nau tāmata'i 'a kinautolu.
- 14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ofa mamahi kiate kinautolu 'a e kau Leimaná, he na'a nau sai'ia 'i he hoihoifua 'o honau kakai fefiné.
- 15 Ko ia na'e fakamo'ui ai 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Leimaná, 'o nau puke pōpula 'a kinautolu pea nau toe 'ave 'a kinautolu ki he fonua ko Nifái, pea fakangofua 'a kinautolu ke nau ma'u 'a e fonuá 'o kapau te nau tukuange 'a e tu'í ko Noá ki he nima 'o e kau Leimaná, pea tukuange 'enau koloá, 'io, ko hono vaeua 'o 'enau me'a kotoa pē 'oku nau ma'u, ko e vaeua 'o 'enau koulá, mo 'enau silivá, mo 'enau ngaahi me'a mahu'inga kotoa pē, pea 'e pehē ha'anau totongi tukuhau ki he tu'í 'o e kau Leimaná mei he ta'u ki he ta'u.
- 16 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'i ai 'a e toko taha 'o e ngaahi 'alo 'o e tu'í 'iate kinautolu na'e puké, 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko Limihai.
- 17 Pea ko 'eni na'e faka'amu 'a Limihai ke 'oua 'e tāmata'i 'a 'ene tamaí; neongo iá, na'e 'ikai ke ta'e'ilo 'a Limihai ki he ngaahi angahala 'a 'ene tamaí, he ko ha tangata angatonu ia.
- 18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau atu 'e Kitione ha kau tangata ke nau 'alu fakafufū ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'o kumi ki he tu'í mo kinautolu na'e 'iate iá. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fetaulaki mo e kakai 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē tuku kehe pē 'a e tu'í mo 'ene kau taula'eikí.
- 19 Ko 'eni kuo nau fuakava 'i honau lotó ke nau foki ki he fonua ko Nifái, pea ka 'iloange kuo tāmata'i honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enau fānaú, pea mo kinautolu foki kuo nofo mo kinautolú, pehē te nau feinga ke sauni ki ai, pea mate fakataha foki mo kinautolu.
- 20 Pea na'e fekau kiate kinautolu 'e he tu'í ke 'oua te nau foki; pea na'a nau 'ita ki he tu'í, 'o nau fakamamahi 'i ia, 'io, 'o a'u ki he'ene mate 'i he afí.

Now there were many that would not leave them, but had rather stay and perish with them. And the rest left their wives and their children and fled.

And it came to pass that those who tarried with their wives and their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth and plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.

Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver up king Noah into the hands of the Lamanites, and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

And now there was one of the sons of the king among those that were taken captive, whose name was Limhi.

And now Limhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed; nevertheless, Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father, he himself being a just man.

And it came to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly, to search for the king and those that were with him. And it came to pass that they met the people in the wilderness, all save the king and his priests.

Now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were slain, and also those that had tarried with them, that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.

And the king commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire.

21 Pea na'a nau 'ai ke puke foki mo e kau taula'eiki 'o tamate'i 'a kinautolu, ka na'a nau hola meiate kinautolu.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'a nau teuteu ke foki atu ki he fonua ko Nifai, pea nau fetaulaki mo e kau tangata 'a Kitione. Pea na'e fakaha kiate kinautolu 'e he kau tangata 'a Kitione 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pe kuo hoko ki honau ngaahi uaifi mo 'enau fana'u; pea mo hono fakangofua kinautolu 'e he kau Leimaná ke nau ma'u 'a e fonua 'i he 'enau totongi ha tukuhau 'a ia ko e vaeua 'o e ngaahi me'a kotoa pe 'oku nau ma'u.

23 Pea na'e fakaha 'e he kakai ki he kau tangata 'a Kitione, kuo nau tamate'i 'a e tu'i, pea kuo hola meiate kinautolu 'a 'ene kau taula'eiki ki ha potu mama 'o ange 'i he loto feitu'u maomaonganoa.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe 'i he hili 'a 'enau fe'iloaki, na'a nau foki ki he fonua ko Nifai 'i he fiefia, koe'uhi kuo 'ikai ke tamate'i honau ngaahi uaifi mo 'enau fana'u; pea nau fakaha kia Kitione 'a e me'a kuo nau fai ki he tu'i.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'e fai 'e he tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná ha fuakava kiate kinautolu, 'e 'ikai tamate'i 'a kinautolu 'e hono kakai.

26 Kae 'uma'a foki mo Limhai, ko e 'alo 'o e tu'i, kuo tuku kiate ia 'a e pule 'e he kakai, na'a ne fai ha fuakava ki he tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná ke totongi 'e hono kakai 'a e tukuhau kiate ia, 'a ia ko e vaeua 'o e me'a kotoa pe 'oku nau ma'u.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'e kamata 'e Limhai ke langa hake 'a e pule'anga pea ke fokotu'u mo e melino 'i hono kakai.

28 Pea na'e fokotu'u 'e he tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná ha kau le'o ke nofo takatakai 'i he fonua, koe'uhi ke ta'ofi 'a e kakai 'o Limhai 'i he fonua, koe'uhi ke 'oua te nau 'alu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoa; pea na'a ne tauhi 'ene kau le'o 'aki 'a e tukuhau na'a ne ma'u mei he kau Nifai.

29 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'i he tu'i ko Limhai ma'u ai pe 'a e melino 'i hono pule'anga 'i he ta'u 'e ua, pea na'e 'ikai feinga 'a e kau Leimaná ke fakamamahi 'i pe faka'auha 'a kinautolu.

And they were about to take the priests also and put them to death, and they fled before them.

And it came to pass that they were about to return to the land of Nephi, and they met the men of Gideon. And the men of Gideon told them of all that had happened to their wives and their children; and that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the land by paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed.

And the people told the men of Gideon that they had slain the king, and his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that after they had ended the ceremony, that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing, because their wives and their children were not slain; and they told Gideon what they had done to the king.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites made an oath unto them, that his people should not slay them.

And also Limhi, being the son of the king, having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they possessed.

And it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom and to establish peace among his people.

And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land, that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land, that they might not depart into the wilderness; and he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites.

And now king Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for the space of two years, that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them.

Mōsaia 20

- 1 Ko 'eni na'e 'i ai ha potu 'i Semeloni 'a ia na'e fa'a fakataha ai 'a e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o e kau Leimaná 'o hiva, mo me'e, pea fakafiefia 'i 'a kinautolu.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai 'a e 'aho 'e taha na'e fakataha ha ni'ihī tokosi 'i 'o kinautolu ke nau hiva mo me'e.
- 3 Pea ko 'eni ko e kau taula'eiki 'a e tu 'i ko Noá, ko e me'a 'i he'enu mā ke foki ki he kolo ko Nīfaí, 'io, kae 'uma'ā foki 'enu manavahē na'a tāmāte 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he kakai, ko ia na'e 'ikai te nau foki ki honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enu fānaú.
- 4 Pea 'i he'enu tatali 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, pea hili 'enu 'ilo 'i 'a e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o e kau Leimaná, na'a nau toitoi 'o fakasiosio 'a kinautolu;
- 5 Pea kuo fakataha mai hanau tokosi 'i pē ke me'e, pea nau fé'ohofi atu mei honau ngaahi toitoi'angá 'o nau puke mo 'ave 'a kinautolu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá; 'io, na'a nau 'ave 'a e toko uofulu mā fā 'o e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o e kau Leimaná ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'ilo 'i 'e he kau Leimaná kuo 'ikai 'iloa 'a honau ngaahi 'ofefiné, na'a nau 'ita ki he kakai 'o Limihaí, he na'a nau mahalo kuo fai ia 'e he kakai 'o Limihaí.
- 7 Ko ia na'a nau fekau atu 'enu ngaahi kau tau; 'io, na'a mo e tu 'i na'a ne taki 'a hono kakai; pea na'a nau 'alu atu ki he fonua ko Nīfaí ke faka'auha 'a e kakai 'o Limihaí.
- 8 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'ilo 'i 'a kinautolu 'e Limihai mei he tauá, 'io, na'a ne 'ilo 'i 'a 'enu ngaahi teuteu kotoa ki he tau; ko ia na'a ne tānaki fakataha 'a hono kakai, mo toka 'a e malumu kiate kinautolu 'i he ngaahi ngoué mo e ngaahi vaó.
- 9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he a'u mai 'a e kau Leimaná, na'e kamata ke 'ohofi 'a kinautolu 'e he kakai 'o Limihaí mei honau ngaahi toitoi'angá, 'o nau kamata ke tāmāte 'i 'a kinautolu.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e faka'au 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito 'a e tau, he na'a nau tau 'o hangē ko e fanga laione ki he me'a kuo nau pō.

Mosiah 20

Now there was a place in Shemlon where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather themselves together to sing, and to dance, and to make themselves merry.

And it came to pass that there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing and to dance.

And now the priests of king Noah, being ashamed to return to the city of Nephi, yea, and also fearing that the people would slay them, therefore they durst not return to their wives and their children.

And having tarried in the wilderness, and having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites, they laid and watched them;

And when there were but few of them gathered together to dance, they came forth out of their secret places and took them and carried them into the wilderness; yea, twenty and four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing, they were angry with the people of Limhi, for they thought it was the people of Limhi.

Therefore they sent their armies forth; yea, even the king himself went before his people; and they went up to the land of Nephi to destroy the people of Limhi.

And now Limhi had discovered them from the tower, even all their preparations for war did he discover; therefore he gathered his people together, and laid wait for them in the fields and in the forests.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had come up, that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from their waiting places, and began to slay them.

And it came to pass that the battle became exceedingly sore, for they fought like lions for their prey.

- 11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata ke teke'i atu 'e he kakai 'o Limihai 'a e kau Leimaná meiate kinautolu; ka na'e 'ikai ke a'u honau tokolahí ki hono vaeua 'o e tokolahi 'o e kau Leimaná. Ka na'a nau tau koe'uhi ko 'enau mo'uí, mo honau ngaahi uaifí, mo 'enau fānaú; ko ia na'a nau fai 'aki honau tūkuingatá pea nau tau 'o hangē ko e fanga talākoni.
- 12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'ilo'i 'a e tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná fakataha mo honau kakai maté; ka na'e 'ikai mate ia, ka kuo kafo, pea tuku ia 'i he kekelelé, ko e me'a 'i he fu'u vave 'aupito 'o e hola 'a hono kakai.
- 13 Pea na'a nau 'ave ia 'o nono'o hono ngaahi kafó, 'o nau 'omi ia ki he 'ao 'o Limihai, 'o pehē: Vakai, ko e tu'i 'eni 'o e kau Leimaná; kuo kafo ia pea tō fakataha mo honau kakai maté, pea kuo nau tuku ia; pea vakai, kuo mau 'omi ia ki ho 'aó; pea ko 'eni tau tāmata'i ia.
- 14 Ka na'e pehē 'e Limihai kiate kinautolu: 'Oua te mou tāmata'i ia, ka mou 'omi ia ki heni ke u mamata kiate ia. Pea na'a nau 'omi ia. Pea na'e pehē 'e Limihai kiate ia: Ko e hā hono 'uhinga 'o ho'omou o mai ke tau mo hoku kakai? Vakai, kuo 'ikai ke maumau 'i 'e hoku kakai 'a e fuakava na'á ku fai mo kimoutolú; ko ia, ko e hā te ke maumau 'i ai 'a e fuakava na'á ke fai ki hoku kakai?
- 15 Pea ko 'eni na'e folofola ange 'a e tu'í: Kuó u maumau 'i 'a e fuakava koe'uhi na'e 'ave 'e ho kakai 'a e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o hoku kakai; ko ia, na'á ku fekau ai 'i hoku 'itá ki hoku kakai ke nau o mai 'o tau 'i 'a ho kakai.
- 16 Pea ko 'eni kuo 'ikai fanongo 'e Limihai 'i ha me'a 'o kau ki he me'á ni; ko ia na'á ne pehē ange: Te u fakatotolo 'i hoku kakai pea 'ilonga ia kuó ne fai 'a e me'a ní te ne mate. Ko ia na'á ne fekau ke fai ha fakatotolo 'i hono kakai.
- 17 Pea 'i he fanongo 'a Kitione ki he ngaahi me'a ní, pea ko e me'a 'i he'ene hoko ko e 'eikitau 'a e tu'í, na'á ne 'alu atu 'o ne pehē ange ki he tu'í: 'Oku ou kole ke ke tatali sí'i, pea 'oua na'á ke fakatotolo 'i he kakai ni, pea 'oua na'a tukuaki 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he me'á ni.
- 18 He 'oku 'ikai te ke manatu 'i 'a e kau taula'eiki 'a ho'o tamaí, 'a ia na'e feinga 'a e kakai ni ke faka'auhá? 'ikai 'oku nau 'i he feitu'u maomaongoá? Pea 'ikai ko kinautolu ko e fa'ahinga kuo nau kaiha'asi 'a e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o e kau Leimaná?

And it came to pass that the people of Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them; yet they were not half so numerous as the Lamanites. But they fought for their lives, and for their wives, and for their children; therefore they exerted themselves and like dragons did they fight.

And it came to pass that they found the king of the Lamanites among the number of their dead; yet he was not dead, having been wounded and left upon the ground, so speedy was the flight of his people.

And they took him and bound up his wounds, and brought him before Limhi, and said: Behold, here is the king of the Lamanites; he having received a wound has fallen among their dead, and they have left him; and behold, we have brought him before you; and now let us slay him.

But Limhi said unto them: Ye shall not slay him, but bring him hither that I may see him. And they brought him. And Limhi said unto him: What cause have ye to come up to war against my people? Behold, my people have not broken the oath that I made unto you; therefore, why should ye break the oath which ye made unto my people?

And now the king said: I have broken the oath because thy people did carry away the daughters of my people; therefore, in my anger I did cause my people to come up to war against thy people.

And now Limhi had heard nothing concerning this matter; therefore he said: I will search among my people and whosoever has done this thing shall perish. Therefore he caused a search to be made among his people.

Now when Gideon had heard these things, he being the king's captain, he went forth and said unto the king: I pray thee forbear, and do not search this people, and lay not this thing to their charge.

For do ye not remember the priests of thy father, whom this people sought to destroy? And are they not in the wilderness? And are not they the ones who have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites?

19 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, fakahā ki he tu'í 'a e ngaahi me'á ni ke ne fakahā ia ki hono kakaí koe'uhi ke nau lotofiemālie kiate kitautolu; he vakai, 'oku nau lolotonga teuteu ke 'oho mai kiate kitautolu; pea vakai foki 'oku tau tokosi' i pē.

20 Pea vakai, 'oku nau ha'u mo 'enau fu'u kau tau tokolahí; pea kapau 'e 'ikai fakafiemālie' i 'e he tu'í honau lotó kiate kitautolu kuo pau ke tau mate.

21 He 'ikai kuo fakahoko 'a e ngaahi lea 'a 'Apinetaí, 'a ia na'á ne kikite 'aki kiate kitautolú—pea kuo tupunga 'eni kotoa koe'uhi na'e 'ikai te tau tokanga mo talangofua ki he ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Eikí, 'o tafoki mei he'etau ngaahi angahalá?

22 Pea ko 'eni tau fakafiemālie' i 'a e tu'í, pea tau fakahoko 'a e fuakava kuo tau fai kiate iá; he 'oku lelei ange ke tau nofo pōpula 'i he mole meiate kitautolu 'a 'etau mo'uí; ko ia, tau ta'ofi 'a e lilingi 'o e fu'u toto lahi pehē.

23 Pea na'e fakahā foki 'e Limihai ki he tu'í 'a e ngaahi me'á kotoa pē na'e kau ki he'ene tamaí, mo e kau taula'eiki kuo hola ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'o ne tukuaki' i hono 'ave 'o honau ngaahi 'ofefiné kiate kinautolu.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fiemālie 'a e tu'í ki hono kakaí; 'o ne pehē kiate kinautolu: Tau ō ta'e-mahafu ke fetaulaki mo hoku kakaí; pea 'oku ou fakapapau atu kiate kimoutolu 'i ha fuakava 'e 'ikai tāmata' i 'a ho kakaí 'e hoku kakaí.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau muimui 'i he tu'í, 'o nau 'alu atu ta'e-mahafu ke fetaulaki mo e kau Leimaná. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fetaulaki mo e kau Leimaná; pea na'e tōmape'e hifo 'a e tu'í 'o e kau Leimaná 'i honau 'aó, 'o ne tautapa koe'uhi ko e kakaí 'o Limihai.

26 Pea 'i he mamata 'a e kau Leimaná ki he kakaí 'o Limihai 'oku 'ikai ha'anau mahafú, na'a nau 'ofa mamahi kiate kinautolu, 'o nau fiemālie ki ai, pea nau foki mo honau tu'í 'i he melino ki honau fonua 'onautolú.

And now, behold, and tell the king of these things, that he may tell his people that they may be pacified towards us; for behold they are already preparing to come against us; and behold also there are but few of us.

And behold, they come with their numerous hosts; and except the king doth pacify them towards us we must perish.

For are not the words of Abinadi fulfilled, which he prophesied against us—and all this because we would not hearken unto the words of the Lord, and turn from our iniquities?

And now let us pacify the king, and we fulfil the oath which we have made unto him; for it is better that we should be in bondage than that we should lose our lives; therefore, let us put a stop to the shedding of so much blood.

And now Limhi told the king all the things concerning his father, and the priests that had fled into the wilderness, and attributed the carrying away of their daughters to them.

And it came to pass that the king was pacified towards his people; and he said unto them: Let us go forth to meet my people, without arms; and I swear unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay thy people.

And it came to pass that they followed the king, and went forth without arms to meet the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did meet the Lamanites; and the king of the Lamanites did bow himself down before them, and did plead in behalf of the people of Limhi.

And when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi, that they were without arms, they had compassion on them and were pacified towards them, and returned with their king in peace to their own land.

Mōsaia 21

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e liu mai 'a Limihai mo hono kakai ki he kolo ko Nīfaí, 'o nau kamata ke toe nofo melino 'i he fonuá.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hili ha ngaahi 'aho lahi, na'e toe tupu hake 'a e 'ita 'i he kau Leimaná ki he kau Nīfaí, 'o nau kamata ke ō mai ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonua takatakaí.
- 3 Ka na'e 'ikai te nau fie tāmata'i 'a kinautolu, koe'uhi ko e fuakava kuo fai 'e honau tu'í kia Limihai; ka na'a nau sipi'i 'a kinautolu 'i honau kou'ahé, mo pule kiate kinautolu; 'o nau kamata ke hilifaki 'a e ngaahi kavenga mamafa ki honau tu'á, pea angi 'a kinautolu 'o hangē ko 'enau angi ha 'asi 'oku noá—
- 4 'Io, na'e fai 'eni kotoa koe'uhí ke fakahoko 'a e folofola 'a e 'Eiki.
- 5 Pea ko 'eni na'e lahi 'aupito 'a e ngaahi faingata'a'ia 'o e kau Nīfaí, pea na'e 'ikai ha founa te nau lava ai ke faka'atā 'a kinautolu mei honau nimá, he kuo 'ākilotoa 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Leimaná 'i he tafa'aki kotoa pē.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata ke lāunga 'a e kakai ki he tu'í koe'uhi ko honau ngaahi faingata'a'ia; pea na'a nau kamata ke faka'amu ke nau 'alu atu kiate kinautolu ke nau tau. Pea nau fakakina'i 'a e tu'í 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito 'i he 'enau ngaahi lāungá; ko ia na'á ne tuku kiate kinautolu ke nau fai 'o fakatau ki he 'enau ngaahi holí.
- 7 Pea na'a nau toe tānaki fakataha mai 'a kinautolu, 'o tui honau teunga taú, pea nau 'alu atu ke tau mo e kau Leimaná ke teke'i 'a kinautolu mei honau fonuá.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ikuna 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Leimaná, 'o nau teke'i fakaholomui 'a kinautolu, mo tāmata'i honau tokolahi.
- 9 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'i ai 'a e fu'u tangi mo e tangi lāulau lahi 'i he kakai 'o Limihai, ko e tangi 'a e uitoú koe'uhi ko hono husepānití, ko e ngaahi fohá mo e ngaahi 'ofefiné koe'uhi ko 'enau tamaí, mo e ngaahi tokouá koe'uhi ko honau ngaahi tokouá.
- 10 Ko 'eni na'e tokolahi 'a e kau uitou 'i he fonuá, pea na'a nau tangi lahi mei he 'aho ki he 'aho, he kuo tō ha fu'u ilifia lahi 'i he kau Leimaná kiate kinautolu.

Mosiah 21

And it came to pass that Limhi and his people returned to the city of Nephi, and began to dwell in the land again in peace.

And it came to pass that after many days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Nephites, and they began to come into the borders of the land round about.

Now they durst not slay them, because of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi; but they would smite them on their cheeks, and exercise authority over them; and began to put heavy burdens upon their backs, and drive them as they would a dumb ass—

Yea, all this was done that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled.

And now the afflictions of the Nephites were great, and there was no way that they could deliver themselves out of their hands, for the Lamanites had surrounded them on every side.

And it came to pass that the people began to murmur with the king because of their afflictions; and they began to be desirous to go against them to battle. And they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints; therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires.

And they gathered themselves together again, and put on their armor, and went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did beat them, and drove them back, and slew many of them.

And now there was a great mourning and lamentation among the people of Limhi, the widow mourning for her husband, the son and the daughter mourning for their father, and the brothers for their brethren.

Now there were a great many widows in the land, and they did cry mightily from day to day, for a great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hanga 'e he' enau tangi ta'etukú 'o fakalanga 'i hono toe 'o e kakai 'o Limihaí ha 'ita ki he kau Leimaná; pea na'a nau toe 'alu atu ke tau, ka na'e toe teke 'i fakaholomui 'a kinautolu, pea na'e mole ai honau tokolahi.

12 'Io, na'a nau 'alu atu ko hono tu' o tolu, pea nau toe mamahi 'i he founga tatau pē; pea ko e fa'ahinga na'e 'ikai ke toó na'a nau liu mai ki he kolo ko Nīfaí.

13 Pea na'a nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu 'o a'u ki he efú, 'o nau fakatōkilalo ki he ha'amonga 'o e nofo pōpulá, 'o nau tuku ke taa'i, mo tulifano holo, mo fakakavenga 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatau mo e loto 'o honau ngaahi filí.

14 Pea na'a nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu 'o a'u ki he fu'u loto-fakatōkilalo lahi; pea nau tangi lahi 'aupito ki he 'Otuá; 'io, na'a mo e 'ahó hono kotoa na'a nau tangi ai ki honau 'Otuá ke ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei honau ngaahi faingata'a'ia.

15 Pea ko 'eni na'e fakatuotuai 'e he 'Eikí ke 'afio ki he' enau tangi koe' uhi ko 'enau ngaahi angahalá; kae kehe na'e 'afio pē 'a e 'Eiki ki he' enau ngaahi tangi, 'o ne kamata ke fakamolū 'a e loto 'o e kau Leimaná, pea nau kamata ke fakama'ama' a 'a 'enau ngaahi kavengá; ka na'e 'ikai finangalo 'a e 'Eikí ke faka'atā 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau faka'au ke tu'umālie māmālie 'i he fonuá, 'o nau kamata ke ngoue 'i 'a e kēlení 'o lahi ange, pea mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahi, pea na'e 'ikai te nau faingata'a'ia 'i he fiekaia.

17 Ka na'e tokolahi 'aupito 'a e kakai fefiné, 'o nau tokolahi ange 'i he kakai tangatá; ko ia, na'e fekau ai 'e he tu'i ko Limihaí ke foaki 'e he tangata taki taha ha me'a ke tauhi 'aki 'a e kau uitoú, pea mo 'enau fānaú, koe' uhi ke 'oua na'a nau mate 'i he fiekaia; pea nau fai 'eni koe' uhi ko honau tokolahi kuo maté.

18 Ko 'eni na'e nofo fakataha 'a e kakai 'o Limihaí 'i he potu pē taha 'o fakatau ki he' enau lavá, 'o nau malu 'i 'enau kēlení mo 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí.

19 Pea na'e manavahē 'a e tu'í ke ne 'alu ki tu'a 'i he ngaahi 'ā 'o e koló, tuku kehe 'o ka ne ka 'alu fakataha mo 'ene kau le'ó, ko e manavahē telia na'á ne tō 'i ha founga ki he nima 'o e kau Leimaná.

And it came to pass that their continual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the Lamanites; and they went again to battle, but they were driven back again, suffering much loss.

Yea, they went again even the third time, and suffered in the like manner; and those that were not slain returned again to the city of Nephi.

And they did humble themselves even to the dust, subjecting themselves to the yoke of bondage, submitting themselves to be smitten, and to be driven to and fro, and burdened, according to the desires of their enemies.

And they did humble themselves even in the depths of humility; and they did cry mightily to God; yea, even all the day long did they cry unto their God that he would deliver them out of their afflictions.

And now the Lord was slow to hear their cry because of their iniquities; nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries, and began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens; yet the Lord did not see fit to deliver them out of bondage.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper by degrees in the land, and began to raise grain more abundantly, and flocks, and herds, that they did not suffer with hunger.

Now there was a great number of women, more than there was of men; therefore king Limhi commanded that every man should impart to the support of the widows and their children, that they might not perish with hunger; and this they did because of the greatness of their number that had been slain.

Now the people of Limhi kept together in a body as much as it was possible, and secured their grain and their flocks;

And the king himself did not trust his person without the walls of the city, unless he took his guards with him, fearing that he might by some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites.

20 Pea na'á ne fekau ke le'ohi 'e hono kakaí 'a e fonua takatakaí, na'á 'iloange kuo nau lava 'o puke 'a e kau taula'eiki 'a ia na'e hola ki he feitu'u maomaongoá, 'a ia kuo nau kaiha'asi 'a e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o e kau Leimaná, pea fakatupu hono fai 'o e fu'u faka'auha lahi pehē kiate kinautolú.

21 He na'a nau fie puke 'a kinautolu ke nau tautea'i 'a kinautolu; he kuo nau hū ki he fonua ko Nīfai 'i he po'ulí, 'o fetuku 'a 'enau kēlení mo e kongā lahi 'o 'enau ngaahi me'a mahu'ingá; ko ia na'a nau lamalama ke ma'u 'a kinautolu.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ke toe 'i ai ha vātamaki 'e taha 'i he vaha'a 'o e kau Leimaná mo e kakai 'o Limihaí 'o a'u ki he taimi na'e ha'u ai 'a 'Āmoni mo hono kāingá ki he fonuá.

23 Pea ko e me'a 'i he 'i tu'a 'i he matapā 'o e koló 'a e tu'í fakataha mo 'ene kau le'ó, na'á ne fe'iloaki ai mo 'Āmoni mo hono kāingá; pea 'i he 'ene mahalo ko e kau taula'eiki 'a Noa 'a kinautolú ko ia na'á ne fekau ai ke puke 'a kinautolu, 'o ha'i, pea lí ki he fale fakapōpulá. Pea ka ne ko e kau taula'eiki 'a Noa 'a kinautolu, pehē kuó ne fekau ke tāmata'e 'i 'a kinautolu.

24 Ka 'i he 'ene 'ilo 'oku 'ikaí, ka ko hono kāinga 'a kinautolu, pea kuo nau ha'u mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá, na'e fonu ia 'i he fu'u fiefia lahi.

25 Ko 'eni kuo fekau atu 'e Limihai 'i he te'eki ai ke ha'u 'a 'Āmoní, 'a e kau tangata tokosí 'i ke nau kumi ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá; ka na'e 'ikai te nau lava 'o 'ilo ia, pea na'a nau hē 'i he feitu'u maomaongoá.

26 Ka neongo iá, na'a nau 'ilo 'i ha fonua na'e nofo 'i 'e ha kakai; 'io, ko ha fonua kuo 'ufi'ufi 'aki 'a e ngaahi hui mōmoa; 'io, ko ha fonua na'e nofo 'i 'e ha kakai 'a ia kuo faka'auha; pea 'i he 'enau mahalo ko Seilahemala iá, na'a nau foki ki he fonua ko Nīfai, 'o nau a'u ki he ngaahi ngata'anga fonuá 'i he ngaahi 'aho sí 'i pē ki mu'a pea ha'u 'a 'Āmoní.

27 Pea na'a nau 'omi mo kinautolu ha lekooti, 'a ia ko ha lekooti 'o e kakai na'e 'onautolu 'a e ngaahi hui kuo nau 'iló; pea kuo tongitongi ia 'i ha ngaahi peleti 'o ha maka ukamea.

And he caused that his people should watch the land round about, that by some means they might take those priests that fled into the wilderness, who had stolen the daughters of the Lamanites, and that had caused such a great destruction to come upon them.

For they were desirous to take them that they might punish them; for they had come into the land of Nephi by night, and carried off their grain and many of their precious things; therefore they laid wait for them.

And it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between the Lamanites and the people of Limhi, even until the time that Ammon and his brethren came into the land.

And the king having been without the gates of the city with his guard, discovered Ammon and his brethren; and supposing them to be priests of Noah therefore he caused that they should be taken, and bound, and cast into prison. And had they been the priests of Noah he would have caused that they should be put to death.

But when he found that they were not, but that they were his brethren, and had come from the land of Zarahemla, he was filled with exceedingly great joy.

Now king Limhi had sent, previous to the coming of Ammon, a small number of men to search for the land of Zarahemla; but they could not find it, and they were lost in the wilderness.

Nevertheless, they did find a land which had been peopled; yea, a land which was covered with dry bones; yea, a land which had been peopled and which had been destroyed; and they, having supposed it to be the land of Zarahemla, returned to the land of Nephi, having arrived in the borders of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon.

And they brought a record with them, even a record of the people whose bones they had found; and it was engraven on plates of ore.

28 Pea ko 'eni na'e toe fonu 'a Limihai 'i he fiefia 'i he'ene 'ilo mei he lea 'a 'Āmoní 'oku ma'u 'e he tu'i ko Mōsaiá ha me'a-foaki mei he 'Otuá, 'a ia te ne lava ai 'o liliu ha ngaahi tongitongi pehē; 'io, pea na'e fiefia foki mo 'Āmoni.

29 Ka na'e fonu 'i he loto-mamahi 'a 'Āmoni mo hono kāingá, koe'uhi ko e fu'u tokolahi 'o honau kāinga kuo maté;

30 Pea koe'uhi foki kuo fakatupu 'e he tu'i ko Noá mo 'ene kau taula'eikí 'a e fai 'e he kakai 'a e ngaahi angahala mo e ngaahi hia lahi pehē ki he 'Otuá; pea na'a nau tangi foki koe'uhi ko e pekia 'a 'Apinetaí; kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e 'alu 'a 'Alamā mo e kakai na'a nau ō mo iá, 'a ia kuo nau fokotu'u ha siasi 'o e 'Otuá 'i he ivi mo e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá, pea mo e tui ki he ngaahi lea kuo lea 'aki 'e 'Apinetaí.

31 'Io, na'a nau tangi koe'uhi ko 'enau 'alú, he na'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo pe kuo nau hola ki fē. Ko 'eni na'a nau mei fiefia ke fakataha mo kinautolu, he kuo nau fai 'e kinautolu ha fuakava mo e 'Otuá ke talangofua kiate ia pea tauhi 'ene ngaahi fekaú.

32 Pea ko 'eni talu 'a e ha'u 'a 'Āmoní, kuo fai foki 'e he tu'i ko Limihai ha fuakava ki he 'Otuá, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e tokolahi 'o hono kakai, ke talangofua kiate ia, pea tauhi 'a 'ene ngaahi fekaú.

33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e faka'amu 'a e tu'i ko Limihai mo e tokolahi 'o hono kakai ke nau papitaiso; ka na'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha tokotaha 'i he fonuá kuó ne ma'u ha mafai mei he 'Otuá. Pea na'e fakafisi 'a 'Āmoni mei hono fai 'o e me'á ni, ko 'ene pehē ko ha tamaio'eiki ta'efe'unga ia.

34 Ko ia na'e 'ikai te nau fokotu'u 'a kinautolu 'i he taimi ko iá ke nau hoko ko ha siasi, ka na'a nau tatali ki he Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí. Ko 'eni na'a nau faka'amu ke nau tatau mo 'Alamā mo hono kāinga 'a ia kuo nau hola ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

35 Na'a nau faka'amu ke papitaiso 'a kinautolu ko ha fakamo'oni mo e faka'ilonga 'oku nau loto-fiemālie ke tauhi 'a e 'Otuá 'aki honau lotó kotoa; ka neongo iá na'a nau fakatoloi 'a e taimí; pea 'e fai ha fakamatala ki honau papitaisó 'amui.

And now Limhi was again filled with joy on learning from the mouth of Ammon that king Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings; yea, and Ammon also did rejoice.

Yet Ammon and his brethren were filled with sorrow because so many of their brethren had been slain;

And also that king Noah and his priests had caused the people to commit so many sins and iniquities against God; and they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi; and also for the departure of Alma and the people that went with him, who had formed a church of God through the strength and power of God, and faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi.

Yea, they did mourn for their departure, for they knew not whither they had fled. Now they would have gladly joined with them, for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him and keep his commandments.

And now since the coming of Ammon, king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God, and also many of his people, to serve him and keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that king Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized; but there was none in the land that had authority from God. And Ammon declined doing this thing, considering himself an unworthy servant.

Therefore they did not at that time form themselves into a church, waiting upon the Spirit of the Lord. Now they were desirous to become even as Alma and his brethren, who had fled into the wilderness.

They were desirous to be baptized as a witness and a testimony that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts; nevertheless they did prolong the time; and an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter.

36 Pea ko 'eni, ko e fakakaukau pē taha 'a 'Āmoni mo hono kakaí, mo e tu'i ko Limihaí mo hono kakaí, ke nau hao mei he nima 'o e kau Leimaná pea mei he nofo pōpulá.

And now all the study of Ammon and his people, and king Limhi and his people, was to deliver themselves out of the hands of the Lamanites and from bondage.

Mōsaia 22

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata 'a 'Āmoni mo e tu'i ko Limihaí ke alea mo e kakaí pe 'e fēfē ha'anau fakatau'atāina'i 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá; pea na'á na fekau foki ke kātōa fakataha mai 'a e kakaí; pea na'á na fai 'eni koe'uhi ke na 'ilo'i 'a e loto 'o e kakaí 'o kau ki he me'a ko iá.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai te nau lava 'o 'ilo'i ha founga te nau lava ai 'o fakatau'atāina'i 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá, ka 'i he'enau 'ave pē 'a honau kakai fefiné, mo 'enau fānaú, mo 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí, mo 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí, mo honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí, 'o 'alu atu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá; he ko e me'a 'i he fu'u tokolahi 'a e kau Leimaná, na'e 'ikai lava ai 'e he kakai 'o Limihaí 'o tau'i 'a kinautolu, 'i ha'anau 'amanaki ke fakatau'atāina'i 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá 'aki 'a e heletā.
- 3 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu atu 'a Kitione 'o ne tu'u 'i he 'ao 'o e tu'í, 'o ne pehē kiate ia: Ko 'eni 'e tu'i, kuó ke hōifua tu'o lahi ki he'eku ngaahi leá 'o 'a'u mai ki he 'ahó ni 'i he lolotonga 'etau fetau'aki mo hotau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná.
- 4 Pea ko 'eni 'e tu'i, kapau kuó u hoko ko ha tamaio'eiki ta'e'aonga kiate koe, pe kuó ke 'afio ki he'eku ngaahi leá 'i he me'a 'e ni'ihí, pea kuo 'aonga ia kiate koe, kapau kuo pehē 'oku ou faka'amu ke ke 'afio mai 'eni ki he'eku ngaahi leá 'i he taimi ko 'ení, pea te u hoko ko ho'o tamaio'eiki 'o fakahaofi 'a e kakaí ni mei he nofo pōpulá.
- 5 Pea na'e fakangofua ia 'e he tu'í ke ne lea. Pea na'e pehē 'e Kitione kiate ia:
- 6 Vakai ko e matapā, 'i he 'ā 'i muí, 'i mui 'i he tu'a koló. Ko e kau Leimana, pe ko e kau le' 'a e kau Leimana 'i aí, 'oku nau fá 'a inu 'o konā 'i he po'ulí; ko ia tau fanongonongo ki he kakaí ni kotoa pē ke nau tānaki fakataha 'a 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí mo 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí, koe'uhi ke nau fakateka ia ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'i he po'ulí.
- 7 Pea te u 'alu 'o hangē ko ho'o fekaú 'o totongi 'a e tukuhaui faka'osi 'o e uaine ki he kau Leimaná, pea te nau konā; pea te tau hū atu 'i he hala pulipulia 'i he tafa'aki to'ohema 'o honau 'apitangá 'i he lolotonga 'enau konā mo mohé.

Mosiah 22

And now it came to pass that Ammon and king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage; and even they did cause that all the people should gather themselves together; and this they did that they might have the voice of the people concerning the matter.

And it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage, except it were to take their women and children, and their flocks, and their herds, and their tents, and depart into the wilderness; for the Lamanites being so numerous, it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them, thinking to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword.

Now it came to pass that Gideon went forth and stood before the king, and said unto him: Now O king, thou hast hitherto hearkened unto my words many times when we have been contending with our brethren, the Lamanites.

And now O king, if thou hast not found me to be an unprofitable servant, or if thou hast hitherto listened to my words in any degree, and they have been of service to thee, even so I desire that thou wouldst listen to my words at this time, and I will be thy servant and deliver this people out of bondage.

And the king granted unto him that he might speak. And Gideon said unto him:

Behold the back pass, through the back wall, on the back side of the city. The Lamanites, or the guards of the Lamanites, by night are drunken; therefore let us send a proclamation among all this people that they gather together their flocks and herds, that they may drive them into the wilderness by night.

And I will go according to thy command and pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites, and they will be drunken; and we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their camp when they are drunken and asleep.

8 'E pehē 'a 'etau 'alu mo hotau kakai fefiné mo 'etau fānaú, mo 'etau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí mo 'etau ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí ki he feitu'ú maomaonganoá; pea te tau fononga takai 'i he fonua ko Sailomé.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tokanga 'a e tu'í ki he ngaahi lea 'a Kitioné.

10 Pea na'e fekau 'e he tu'í ko Limihaí ke tānaki fakataha 'e hono kakai 'a 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí; pea na'á ne fekau ke 'ave 'a e tukuhau 'o e uaine ki he kau Leimaná; pea ne 'oatu mo ha uaine lahi ange, ko ha me'á 'ofa kiate kinautolu; pea nau inu tau 'atāina 'a e uaine na'e 'oatu kiate kinautolu 'e he tu'í ko Limihaí.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu atu 'a e kakai 'o e tu'í ko Limihaí 'i he po'ulí ki he feitu'ú maomaonganoá mo 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí mo 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí, pea nau 'alu takai 'i he fonua ko Sailomé 'i he feitu'ú maomaonganoá, 'o nau afe 'o hangatonu atu ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea na'e tatakai 'a kinautolu 'e 'Āmoni mo hono kāingá.

12 Pea kuo nau 'ave 'a 'enau koulá hono kotoa, mo e silivá, mo 'enau ngaahi koloa mahu'inga, 'a ia na'a nau lava 'o fetukú, kae 'uma'ā foki 'enau ngaahi me'akái mo e nāunaú; ki he feitu'ú maomaonganoá; pea na'a nau fai atu 'enau fonongá.

13 Pea hili 'enau 'i he feitu'ú maomaonganoá 'i ha ngaahi 'aho lahi, na'a nau a'u atu ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'o nau fakataha mo e kakai 'o Mōsaiá, 'o nau hoko ko hono kakai.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tali 'a kinautolu 'e Mōsaia 'i he fiefia; pea na'á ne ma'ú foki mo 'enau ngaahi lekōtí, pea mo e ngaahi lekooti foki kuo 'ilo'í 'e he kakai 'o Limihaí.

15 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'ilo'í 'e he kau Leimaná kuo 'alu 'a e kakai 'o Limihaí mei he fonuá 'i he po'ulí, na'a nau fekau leva ke 'alu ha kau tau ki he feitu'ú maomaonganoá ke tuli 'a kinautolu;

16 Pea hili 'enau tuli 'a kinautolu 'i he 'aho'í 'e ua, na'e 'ikai te nau toe lava 'o muimui ki honau 'alu'angá; ko ia na'a nau hē ai 'i he feitu'ú maomaonganoá.

Thus we will depart with our women and our children, our flocks, and our herds into the wilderness; and we will travel around the land of Shilom.

And it came to pass that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon.

And king Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks together; and he sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites; and he also sent more wine, as a present unto them; and they did drink freely of the wine which king Limhi did send unto them.

And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brethren.

And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things, which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the wilderness; and they pursued their journey.

And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects.

And it came to pass that Mosiah received them with joy; and he also received their records, and also the records which had been found by the people of Limhi.

And now it came to pass when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night, that they sent an army into the wilderness to pursue them;

And after they had pursued them two days, they could no longer follow their tracks; therefore they were lost in the wilderness.

Ko ha fakamatala kia 'Alamā mo e kakai 'o e 'Eikí, 'a ia na'e kapusi ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'e he kakai 'o e Tu'i ko Noá.

Mōsaia 23

- 1 Ko 'eni ko 'Alamā, 'i he tomu'a fakatokanga 'e he 'Eikí 'e ha'u 'a e kau tau 'a e tu'i ko Noá kiate kinautolú, pea 'i he'ene fakahā ia ki hono kakaí, na'a nau tānaki leva 'a 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí, pea 'ave mo 'enau kēlení, 'o nau 'alu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'o mu'omu'a 'i he kau tau 'a e tu'i ko Noá.
- 2 Pea na'e fakamālohia 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eikí, 'o 'ikai lava ai ke ma'u 'a kinautolu 'e he kakai 'o e tu'i ko Noá ke faka'auha 'a kinautolu.
- 3 Pea na'a nau hola 'o fononga 'i he 'aho 'e valu 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 4 Pea na'a nau a'u atu ki ha fonua, 'io, ko ha fonua matamatalelei mo fakalata, ko ha fonua na'e 'i ai 'a e vai ma'a.
- 5 Pea na'a nau fokotu'u honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí, pea nau kamata ke ngoue 'i 'a e kelekelé, 'o kamata ke langa ha ngaahi fale; 'io, na'a nau fa'a ngāue, pea nau ngāue 'o lahi 'aupito.
- 6 Pea na'e faka'amu 'a e kakaí ke hoko 'a 'Alamā ko honau tu'i, he na'e 'ofeina ia 'e hono kakaí.
- 7 Ka na'á ne pehē kiate kinautolu: Vakai, 'oku 'ikai lelei ke tau ma'u ha tu'i; he 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí: 'Oua te mou lau 'oku lelei ange ha taha 'i ha taha kehe, pe mahalo 'e ha tangata 'okú ne lelei ange 'i ha taha kehe; ko ia 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'oku 'ikai lelei ke mou ma'u ha tu'i.
- 8 Ka neongo iá, kapau te mou lava 'o ma'u ma'u ai pē ha kau tangata angatonu ke hoko ko homou ngaahi tu'i pehē 'e lelei ke mou ma'u ha tu'i.
- 9 Kae manatu ki he angahala 'a e tu'i ko Noá mo 'ene kau taula'eikí; pea ko au foki na'á ku 'efihia 'i ha tauhele, pea u fai 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi na'e fakalielia 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, 'a ia na'e fakatupu ai ha'aku fakatomala mamahi;

An account of Alma and the people of the Lord, who were driven into the wilderness by the people of King Noah.

Mosiah 23

Now Alma, having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Noah would come upon them, and having made it known to his people, therefore they gathered together their flocks, and took of their grain, and departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Noah.

And the Lord did strengthen them, that the people of king Noah could not overtake them to destroy them.

And they fled eight days' journey into the wilderness.

And they came to a land, yea, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.

And they pitched their tents, and began to till the ground, and began to build buildings; yea, they were industrious, and did labor exceedingly.

And the people were desirous that Alma should be their king, for he was beloved by his people.

But he said unto them: Behold, it is not expedient that we should have a king; for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another; therefore I say unto you it is not expedient that ye should have a king.

Nevertheless, if it were possible that ye could always have just men to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king.

But remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance;

10 Ka neongo iá, 'i he hili ha mamahi lahi, na'e 'afio 'i 'e he 'Eiki 'a 'eku ngaahi tangí, 'o ne tali 'eku ngaahi lotú, pea kuó ne ngaohi au ko ha me'a ngāue 'i hono to'ukupú ke fakatafoki homou fu'u tokolahi fau ki hono 'ilo 'i 'o 'ene mo'oní.

11 Ka neongo iá, 'oku 'ikai te u pōlepole 'i he me'á ni, he 'oku 'ikai taau mo au ke u pōlepole 'iate au pē.

12 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo ngaohikovia 'a kimoutolu 'e he tu 'i ko Noá, pea kuo mou pōpula kiate ia mo 'ene kau taula'eiki, pea kuo nau fakatupu ho'omou angahalá; ko ia na'e ha 'i ai 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi ha 'i 'o e angahalá.

13 Pea ko 'eni ko e me'a 'i he fakatau'atāina 'i 'a kimoutolu 'e he māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá mei he ngaahi ha 'i ko iá; 'io, mei he nima 'o e tu 'i ko Noá mo hono kakaí, pea mei he ngaahi ha 'i foki 'o e angahalá, ko ia 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou tu'u ma'u 'i he tau'atāina 'a ia kuo fakatau'atāina 'aki 'a kimoutolú, pea 'oua te mou falala ki ha tangata ke ne hoko ko ha tu 'i kiate kimoutolu.

14 Pea 'oua foki te mou falala ki ha tokotaha ke ne hoko ko homou faiako, pe ko ho'omou faifekau, tuku kehe pē 'o kapau ko ha tangata ia 'a e 'Otuá, pea 'okú ne 'a'eva 'i hono ngaahi halá mo tauhi 'ene ngaahi fekaú.

15 Na'e akonaki pehē 'e 'Alamā ki hono kakaí, ke 'ofa 'a e tangata taki taha ki hono kaungā'apí 'o hangē pē ko ia, pea ke 'oua na'a 'i ai ha fakakikihi 'iate kinautolu.

16 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'a 'Alamā ko honau taula'eiki lahi, he ko ia na'á ne fokotu'u honau siasí.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ma'u 'e ha taha 'a e mafai ke malanga pe akonaki tuku kehe kapau na'e fou mai kiate ia mei he 'Otuá. Ko ia na'á ne fakanofa 'a 'enau kau taula'eiki kotoa pē mo honau kau akonaki kotoa pē; pea na'e 'ikai fakanofa ha taha 'o kapau na'e 'ikai ko ha kau tangata angatonu.

18 Ko ia na'a nau tokanga 'i honau kakaí, 'o nau fafanga 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a 'oku kau ki he mā'oní'oní.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau faka'au ke fu'u tu'umālie lahi 'aupito 'i he fonuá; pea na'a nau ui 'a e fonuá ko Heilami.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau tupu 'o tokolahi mo tu'umālie lahi 'aupito 'i he fonua ko Heilamí; pea na'a nau langa ha kolo, 'a ia na'a nau ui ko e kolo ko Heilamí.

Nevertheless, after much tribulation, the Lord did hear my cries, and did answer my prayers, and has made me an instrument in his hands in bringing so many of you to a knowledge of his truth.

Nevertheless, in this I do not glory, for I am unworthy to glory of myself.

And now I say unto you, ye have been oppressed by king Noah, and have been in bondage to him and his priests, and have been brought into iniquity by them; therefore ye were bound with the bands of iniquity.

And now as ye have been delivered by the power of God out of these bonds; yea, even out of the hands of king Noah and his people, and also from the bonds of iniquity, even so I desire that ye should stand fast in this liberty wherewith ye have been made free, and that ye trust no man to be a king over you.

And also trust no one to be your teacher nor your minister, except he be a man of God, walking in his ways and keeping his commandments.

Thus did Alma teach his people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself, that there should be no contention among them.

And now, Alma was their high priest, he being the founder of their church.

And it came to pass that none received authority to preach or to teach except it were by him from God. Therefore he consecrated all their priests and all their teachers; and none were consecrated except they were just men.

Therefore they did watch over their people, and did nourish them with things pertaining to righteousness.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land; and they called the land Helam.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and prosper exceedingly in the land of Helam; and they built a city, which they called the city of Helam.

21 Ka neongo iá na'e 'afio'i 'e he 'Eiki 'oku taau ke valoki'i 'a hono kakaí; 'io, 'okú ne sivi'i 'enau kātaki mo 'enau tuí.

22 Ka neongo iá—ko ia ia 'oku falala kiate iá, 'e hiki hake ia 'i he 'aho faka'osí. 'Io, pea na'e hoko pehē ki he kakaí ni.

23 He vakai, te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu na'e fakapōpula'i 'a kinautolu, pea na'e 'ikai fa'a fakahaofi 'a kinautolu 'e ha taha ka ko e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá pē, 'io, 'a e 'Otua 'o 'Ēpalahame mo 'Aisake mo Sēkopé.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu, 'o ne fakahā atu ai 'a hono fu'u māfimaifi lahi kiate kinautolu, pea na'e lahi 'aupito 'a 'enau fiefiá.

25 He vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga 'enau nofo 'i he fonua ko Heilamí, 'io, 'i he kolo ko Heilamí, lolotonga 'enau ngoue'i 'a e kelekele takatakai ki aí, 'iloange kuo hū mai ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonuá ha kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná.

26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hola 'a e kāinga 'o 'Alamaá mei he 'enau ngaahi ngoué, 'o nau fakataha 'a kinautolu 'i he kolo ko Heilamí; pea na'a nau fu'u ilifia lahi koe'uhi ko e 'asi mai 'a e kau Leimaná.

27 Ka na'e 'alu atu 'a 'Alamā 'o ne tu'u 'i honau lotolotongá, 'o ne na'ina'i kiate kinautolu ke 'oua te nau manavahē, ka ke nau manatu'i 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá pea te ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu.

28 Ko ia na'a nau ta'ofi 'a 'enau ilifía, 'o nau kamata ke tangi ki he 'Eiki ke ne fakamolū 'a e loto 'o e kau Leimaná, ke nau fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu, mo honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enau fānaú.

29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakamolū 'e he 'Eiki 'a e loto 'o e kau Leimaná. Pea na'e 'alu atu 'a 'Alamā mo hono kāingá 'o nau tukulolo kiate kinautolu; pea na'e ma'u 'a e fonua ko Heilamí 'e he kau Leimaná.

30 Ko 'eni ko e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná, 'a ia na'a nau tuli ki he kakai 'o e tu'i ko Limihái, kuo nau hē 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'i he ngaahi 'aho lahi.

31 Pea vakai, kuo nau 'ilo'i 'a e kau taulá'eiki 'a e tu'i ko Noá, 'i ha potu na'a nau ui ko 'Amulone; pea kuo nau kamata ke nofo'i 'a e fonua ko 'Amuloné 'o nau kamata ke ngoue'i 'a e kelekelé.

Nevertheless the Lord seeth fit to chasten his people; yea, he trieth their patience and their faith.

Nevertheless—whosoever putteth his trust in him the same shall be lifted up at the last day. Yea, and thus it was with this people.

For behold, I will show unto you that they were brought into bondage, and none could deliver them but the Lord their God, yea, even the God of Abraham and Isaac and of Jacob.

And it came to pass that he did deliver them, and he did show forth his mighty power unto them, and great were their rejoicings.

For behold, it came to pass that while they were in the land of Helam, yea, in the city of Helam, while tilling the land round about, behold an army of the Lamanites was in the borders of the land.

Now it came to pass that the brethren of Alma fled from their fields, and gathered themselves together in the city of Helam; and they were much frightened because of the appearance of the Lamanites.

But Alma went forth and stood among them, and exhorted them that they should not be frightened, but that they should remember the Lord their God and he would deliver them.

Therefore they hushed their fears, and began to cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of the Lamanites, that they would spare them, and their wives, and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. And Alma and his brethren went forth and delivered themselves up into their hands; and the Lamanites took possession of the land of Helam.

Now the armies of the Lamanites, which had followed after the people of king Limhi, had been lost in the wilderness for many days.

And behold, they had found those priests of king Noah, in a place which they called Amulon; and they had begun to possess the land of Amulon and had begun to till the ground.

32 Ko 'eni, ko e hingoa 'o e taki 'o e kau taula'eiki ko iá ko 'Amulone.

33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tangi 'a 'Amulone ki he kau Leimaná; 'o ne fekau atu foki 'a honau ngaahi uaifí, 'a ia ko e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o e kau Leimaná, ke nau tangi ki honau kāingá, ke 'oua te nau tāmata'i honau ngaahi husepānití.

34 Pea na'e 'ofa mamahi 'a e kau Leimaná kia 'Amulone mo hono kāingá, pea na'e 'ikai te nau faka'auha 'a kinautolu, koe'uhi ko honau ngaahi uaifí.

35 Pea na'e kau fakataha 'a 'Amulone mo hono kāingá mo e kau Leimaná, pea na'a nau lolotonga fononga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, ko e kumi ki he fonua ko Nīfaí 'i he'enua 'ilo'i 'a e fonua ko Heilamí, 'a ia na'e ma'u 'e 'Alamā mo hono kāingá.

36 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakapapau 'e he kau Leimaná kia 'Alamā mo hono kāingá, kapau te nau fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e hala 'oku fakatau ki he fonua ko Nīfaí te nau tukuange ke nau mo'ui mo nau tau'atāina.

37 Ka 'i he hili 'a e fakahā 'e 'Alamā kiate kinautolu 'a e hala 'oku fakatau ki he fonua ko Nīfaí na'e 'ikai fai 'e he kau Leimaná ki he'enua fakapapau; ka na'a nau fokotu'u 'a e kau le'o 'o takatakai 'i he fonua ko Heilamí ke le'ohi 'a 'Alamā mo hono kāingá.

38 Pea na'e 'alu atu 'a hono toe 'o kinautolú ki he fonua ko Nīfaí; pea na'e foki honau ni'ihiki ki he fonua ko Heilamí, 'o nau 'omi foki mo kinautolu 'a e ngaahi uaifi mo e fānau 'a e kau le'o, 'a ia kuo tuku 'i he fonuá.

39 Pea kuo tuku 'e he tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná kia 'Amulone ke ne hoko ko ha tu'i mo ha pule ki hono kakai, 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua ko Heilamí; ka neongo iá 'oku 'ikai totonu ke ne ma'u ha mālohi ke fai ha me'a 'o ta'ehoa mo e finangalo 'o e tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná.

Now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon.

And it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites; and he also sent forth their wives, who were the daughters of the Lamanites, to plead with their brethren, that they should not destroy their husbands.

And the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon and his brethren, and did not destroy them, because of their wives.

And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his brethren.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites promised unto Alma and his brethren, that if they would show them the way which led to the land of Nephi that they would grant unto them their lives and their liberty.

But after Alma had shown them the way that led to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise; but they set guards round about the land of Helam, over Alma and his brethren.

And the remainder of them went to the land of Nephi; and a part of them returned to the land of Helam, and also brought with them the wives and the children of the guards who had been left in the land.

And the king of the Lamanites had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king and a ruler over his people, who were in the land of Helam; nevertheless he should have no power to do anything contrary to the will of the king of the Lamanites.

Mōsaia 24

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e faka'au 'o 'ofeina 'a 'Amulone 'i he 'ao 'o e tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná; ko ia, na'e tuku kiate ia mo hono kāingá 'e he tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná ke fokotu'u 'a kinautolu ko e kau faiako ki hono kakaí, 'io, ki he kakai na'e 'i he fonua ko Semeloní, pea 'i he fonua ko Sailomé, pea 'i he fonua ko 'Amuloné.
- 2 He kuo ma'u 'e he kau Leimaná 'a e ngaahi fonuá ni kotoa pē; ko ia, kuo fakanofu 'e he tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná ha ngaahi tu'i ki he ngaahi fonua kotoa pē ko 'ení.
- 3 Pea ko 'ení ko e hingoa 'o e tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná ko Leimana, he na'e fakahuafa ia ki he huafa 'o 'ene tamaí; pea ko ia na'e ui ia ko e tu'i ko Leimaná. Pea ko e tu'i ia ki ha kakai tokolahi.
- 4 Pea na'á ne fakanofu ha kau faiako mei he kāinga 'o 'Amuloné 'i he fonua kotoa pē na'e ma'u 'e hono kakaí; pea ko ia na'e kamata ke ako 'i 'a e lea 'a Nīfái 'i he kakai kotoa pē 'o e kau Leimaná.
- 5 Pea ko ha kakai nofo fe'ofu ofani 'a kinautolu; ka na'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo 'i 'a e 'Otuá; pea na'e 'ikai foki ako 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he kāinga 'o 'Amuloné 'i ha me'a 'e taha 'oku kau ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, pe ko e fonu 'a Mōsesé; pea na'e 'ikai foki te nau ako 'i kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi lea 'a 'Apinetaí;
- 6 Ka na'a nau ako 'i 'a kinautolu ke nau tauhi hanau lekooti, pea ke nau fetohi'aki 'iate kinautolu.
- 7 Pea ko ia na'e kamata ke tupulekina 'a e ngaahi koloa 'a e kau Leimaná, pea na'a nau kamata ke fefakatau'aki 'iate kinautolu, 'o nau faka'au ke mālohi, 'o kamata ke hoko ko ha kakai olopoto mo 'ilo'ilo, 'i he poto 'o e māmaní, 'io, ko ha kakai olopoto 'aupito, 'o nau manako 'i he ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e fai angahalá mo e kaihá'á, tuku kehe pē 'i honau kāingá.
- 8 Pea ko 'ení na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata ke pule fakamālohi 'e 'Amulone kia 'Alamā mo hono kāingá, 'o ne kamata ke fakatanga 'i ia, mo pule ke hanga 'e he'ene fānaú 'o fakatanga 'i 'a 'enau fānaú.

Mosiah 24

And it came to pass that Amulon did gain favor in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites; therefore, the king of the Lamanites granted unto him and his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people, yea, even over the people who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the land of Shilom, and in the land of Amulon.

For the Lamanites had taken possession of all these lands; therefore, the king of the Lamanites had appointed kings over all these lands.

And now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman, being called after the name of his father; and therefore he was called king Laman. And he was king over a numerous people.

And he appointed teachers of the brethren of Amulon in every land which was possessed by his people; and thus the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.

And they were a people friendly one with another; nevertheless they knew not God; neither did the brethren of Amulon teach them anything concerning the Lord their God, neither the law of Moses; nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi;

But they taught them that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.

And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world, yea, a very cunning people, delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own brethren.

And now it came to pass that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma and his brethren, and began to persecute him, and cause that his children should persecute their children.

9 He na'e 'ilo'i 'e 'Amulone 'a 'Alamā, ko e taha ia 'o e kau taula'eiki 'a e tu'í, pea ko ia ia na'e tui ki he ngaahi lea 'a 'Apinetaí pea na'e tuli ia ki tu'a mei he 'ao 'o e tu'í, pea ko ia na'á ne 'ita lahi ai kiate ia; he na'á ne fakaongoongo ki he tu'í ko Leimaná, ka neongo ia na'á ne pule'i fakamālohi 'a kinautolu, 'o hilifaki ha ngaahi ngāue kiate kinautolu, mo fokotu'u ha kau pule ngāue ke angi 'a kinautolu.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e lahi fau 'a 'enau faingata'a 'iá ko ia na'a nau kamata ai ke tangi lahi ki he 'Otuá.

11 Pea na'e fekau 'e 'Amulone kiate kinautolu ke tuku 'enau tangí; 'o ne fokotu'u ha kau le'o ke le'ohi 'a kinautolu, pea ko ia kotoa pē 'e 'ilo'i 'okú ne ui ki he 'Otuá ke tāmata'i ia.

12 Pea ko 'Alamā mo hono kakaí na'e 'ikai te nau lotu 'i he le'o-lahi ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, ka na'a nau fakahā hake honau lotó kiate ia; pea na'á ne 'afio'i 'a e ngaahi fakakaukau 'a honau lotó.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ongo mai 'a e le'o 'o e 'Eiki kiate kinautolu 'i he 'enau ngaahi faingata'a 'iá, 'o folofola: Hanga hake homou 'ulú pea fiemālie, he 'oku ou 'ilo'i 'a e fuakava kuo mou fai kiate aú; pea te u fuakava mo hoku kakaí pea fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá.

14 Pea te u fakama'ama'a foki 'a e ngaahi kavenga kuo hilifaki ki homou ngaahi umá, ke 'oua na'a mou ongo 'i ia 'i homou tu'á, lolotonga ho'omou 'i he nofo pōpulá; pea te u fai 'eni koe'uhi ke mou tu'u ko e kau fakamo'oni kiate au 'amui, pea ke mou 'ilo'i fakapapau ko au ko e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá, 'oku ou tāpuaki 'i hoku kakaí 'i honau ngaahi faingata'a 'iá.

15 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakama'ama'a 'a e ngaahi kavenga 'a ia na'e hilifaki kia 'Alamā mo hono kāingá; 'io, na'e fakamālohi 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki koe'uhi ke nau lava 'o fua faingofua 'a 'enau ngaahi kavengá, pea nau fakaongoongo 'i he fiefia mo e fa'a kātaki ki he finangalo kotoa pē 'o e 'Eiki.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e lahi fau 'a 'enau tuí mo 'enau fa'a kātaki ko ia na'e toe ongo mai ai kiate kinautolu 'a e le'o 'o e 'Eiki, 'o folofola: Mou fiefia, he 'i he 'apongipongi te u fakahaofi 'a kimoutolu mei he nofo pōpulá.

For Amulon knew Alma, that he had been one of the king's priests, and that it was he that believed the words of Abinadi and was driven out before the king, and therefore he was wroth with him; for he was subject to king Laman, yet he exercised authority over them, and put tasks upon them, and put task-masters over them.

And it came to pass that so great were their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God.

And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.

And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the thoughts of their hearts.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying: Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me; and I will covenant with my people and deliver them out of bondage.

And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs, even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that ye may stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that ye may know of a surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their afflictions.

And now it came to pass that the burdens which were laid upon Alma and his brethren were made light; yea, the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease, and they did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord.

And it came to pass that so great was their faith and their patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying: Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.

17 Pea na'e folofola ia kia 'Alamā: Ke ke mu'omu'a koe 'i he kakaí ni, pea te u 'alu mo koe 'o fakahaofi 'a e kakaí ni mei he nofo pōpulá.

18 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tānaki fakataha 'e 'Alamā mo hono kakaí 'i he po'ulí 'a 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí, pea mo 'enau kēlení foki; 'io, na'e fe'unga mo e poó hono kotoa 'a 'enau tānaki fakataha 'a 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí.

19 Pea 'i he pongipongi haké na'e pule 'e he 'Eikí ke hoko 'a e mohe ma'u ki he kau Leimaná, 'io, pea na'e mohe ma'u 'a 'enau kau pule ngāué kotoa pē.

20 Pea na'e 'alu atu 'a 'Alamā mo hono kakaí ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá; pea kuo nau fononga 'i he 'ahó kotoa, pea nau fokotu'u honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'i ha tele'a, pea na'a nau ui 'a e tele'á ko 'Alamā, koe'uhí he na'á ne taki 'enau fononga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

21 'Io, na'a nau 'oatu 'a e fakafeta'i lahi 'i he tele'a ko 'Alamaá ki he 'Otuá koe'uhi ko 'ene 'alo'ofa kiate kinautolú, mo fakama'ama 'a 'enau ngaahi kavengá, pea ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá; he na'a nau nofo pōpula, pea na'e 'ikai fá'a fakahaofi 'a kinautolu 'e ha taha tuku kehe 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá pē.

22 Pea na'a nau 'oatu 'a e fakafeta'i ki he 'Otuá, 'io, 'e honau kau tangata kotoa pē mo honau kau fefine kotoa pē pea mo 'enau fānau kotoa pē 'a ia na'e lava 'o leá na'a nau hiki hake honau le'ó 'i he fakafeta'i ki honau 'Otuá.

23 Pea ko 'eni na'e folofola 'a e 'Eikí kia 'Alamā: Ke ke fakavavevave peá ke 'alu koe mo e kakaí ni mei he fonuá ni, he kuo 'ā hake 'a e kau Leimaná pea 'oku nau tuli 'a kimoutolu; ko ia ke ke 'alu mei he fonuá ni, pea te u ta'ofi 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he tele'á ni ke 'oua te nau laka atu 'i hono tuli 'o e kakai ní.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'alu atu mei he tele'á, 'o nau fai 'enau fonongá ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

25 Pea kuo nau 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'i he 'aho 'e hongofulu mā ua, pea na'a nau 'a u ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá; pea na'e tali 'a kinautolu foki 'e he tu'i ko Mōsaiá 'i he fiefia.

And he said unto Alma: Thou shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.

Now it came to pass that Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also of their grain; yea, even all the night-time were they gathering their flocks together.

And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, and all their taskmasters were in a profound sleep.

And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma, because he led their way in the wilderness.

Yea, and in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God.

And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men and all their women and all their children that could speak lifted their voices in the praises of their God.

And now the Lord said unto Alma: Haste thee and get thou and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.

And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.

And after they had been in the wilderness twelve days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla; and king Mosiah did also receive them with joy.

Mōsaia 25

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, na'e fekau 'e he tu'i ko Mōsaia ke fakataha mai 'a e kakai kotoa pē.
- 2 Ko 'eni na'e 'ikai ke tokolahi 'a e fānau 'a Nīfaí, pe tokolahi 'a kinautolu ko e hako 'o Nīfaí, 'o hangē ko e kakai 'o Seilahemalá, 'a ia ko e hako 'o Mūlekí, pea mo kinautolu na'e ha'u fakataha mo ia ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 3 Pea na'e 'ikai ke tokolahi 'a e kakai 'o Nīfaí pea mo e kakai 'o Seilahemalá, 'o hangē ko e tokolahi 'o e kau Leimaná; 'io, na'e 'ikai a'u honau tokolahí ki hono vaeua.
- 4 Pea ko 'eni kuo fakataha 'a e kakai kotoa pē 'o Nīfaí, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e kakai kotoa pē 'o Seilahemalá, pea kuo nau fakataha ki he fakataha'anga 'e ua.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e lau 'e Mōsaia, pea ne fekau ke lau, 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'a Sēnifí ki hono kakaí; 'io, na'á ne lau 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'o e kakai 'o Sēnifí 'o fai mei he taimi na'a nau 'alu atu ai mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá 'o a'u ki he'enua toe foki maí.
- 6 Pea na'á ne lau foki mo e lekooti 'o 'Alamā mo hono kāingá, pea mo 'enua ngaahi faingata'a'ia talu mei he taimi na'a nau o'atu ai mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'o a'u ki he taimi na'a nau toe foki mai ai ki aí.
- 7 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he faka'osi hono lau 'e Mōsaia 'a e ngaahi lekōtí, na'e fu'u ofo mo fakatumutumu lahi 'a hono kakai 'a ia na'e nofo 'i he fonuá.
- 8 He na'e puputu'u honau lotó; pea 'i he'enua mamata kiate kinautolu kuo fakahaofi mei he nofo pōpulá na'e fakafonu 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e fu'u fiefia lahi 'aupito.
- 9 Pea ko e tahá, 'i he'enua fakakaukau ki honau kāinga kuo tāmata'i 'e he kau Leimaná na'a nau fonu 'i he lotomamahi, pea na'e lahi honau lo'imata 'o e mamahi na'e toó.
- 10 Pea ko e tahá foki, 'i he'enua fakakaukau ki he angalelei vave 'a e 'Otuá, mo hono māfimaí 'i he fakahaofi 'o 'Alamā mo hono kāingá mei he nima 'o e kau Leimaná mo e nofo pōpulá, na'a nau hiki hake honau le'ó 'o nau fakafeta 'i ki he 'Otuá.

Mosiah 25

And now king Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together.

Now there were not so many of the children of Nephi, or so many of those who were descendants of Nephi, as there were of the people of Zarahemla, who was a descendant of Mulek, and those who came with him into the wilderness.

And there were not so many of the people of Nephi and of the people of Zarahemla as there were of the Lamanites; yea, they were not half so numerous.

And now all the people of Nephi were assembled together, and also all the people of Zarahemla, and they were gathered together in two bodies.

And it came to pass that Mosiah did read, and caused to be read, the records of Zeniff to his people; yea, he read the records of the people of Zeniff, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until they returned again.

And he also read the account of Alma and his brethren, and all their afflictions, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time they returned again.

And now, when Mosiah had made an end of reading the records, his people who tarried in the land were struck with wonder and amazement.

For they knew not what to think; for when they beheld those that had been delivered out of bondage they were filled with exceedingly great joy.

And again, when they thought of their brethren who had been slain by the Lamanites they were filled with sorrow, and even shed many tears of sorrow.

And again, when they thought of the immediate goodness of God, and his power in delivering Alma and his brethren out of the hands of the Lamanites and of bondage, they did raise their voices and give thanks to God.

11 Pea ko e tahá, 'i he 'enau fakakaukau ki he kau
Leimana, 'a ia ko honau kāingá, mo honau tu'unga
angahala'ia mo fakalieliá, na'a nau fonu 'i he mamahi
mo e feinga 'o e lotó koe'uhi ko honau laumalié.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko kinautolu ko e fānau 'a
'Amulone mo hono kāingá, 'a ia kuo nau mali mo e
ngaahi 'ofefine 'o e kau Leimaná, na'a nau fehi'a 'i he
ngaahi angafai 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí, 'o 'ikai te nau loto
ke toe ui 'aki 'a kinautolu 'a e ngaahi hingoa 'o 'enau
ngaahi tamaí, ko ia na'a nau 'ai kiate kinautolu 'a e
hingoa 'o Nifái, koe'uhi ke ui 'a kinautolu ko e fānau 'a
Nifai, pea lau fakataha 'a kinautolu mo kinautolu na'e
ui ko e kau Nifái.

13 Pea ko 'eni na'e lau fakataha 'a e kakai kotoa pē 'o
Seilahemalá mo e kau Nifái, pea na'e fai 'eni koe'uhi kuo
te'eki ai ke tuku 'a e pule'anga 'i he fonuá ki ha taha ka
ko kinautolu pē 'a ia ko e hako 'o Nifái.

14 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he faka'osi 'e Mōsaia 'a
'ene folofolá mo 'ene lau ki he kakai, na'a ne loto ke fai
foki 'e 'Alamā ha lea ki he kakai.

15 Pea na'e lea 'a 'Alamā kiate kinautolu, lolotonga
'enau nofo fakataha 'i ha ngaahi ha'ofanga kakai
tokolahí, pea na'a ne 'alu mei he ha'ofanga kakai 'e tahá
ki he taha, 'o malanga 'aki ki he kakai 'a e fakatomalá mo
e tui ki he 'Eikí.

16 Pea na'a ne na'ina'i ki he kakai 'o Limihaí mo hono
kāingá, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē kuo fakahaofi mei he nofo
pōpulá, ke nau manatu'i ko e 'Eikí na'a ne fakahaofi 'a
kinautolú.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono ako'i 'e 'Alamā ki
he kakai ha ngaahi me'a lahi, pea kuo faka'osi 'a 'ene lea
kiate kinautolú, na'e faka'amu 'a e tu'i ko Limihaí ke
papitaiso, pea na'e faka'amu foki mo hono kakai kotoa
pē ke nau papitaiso.

18 Ko ia, na'e 'alu atu 'a 'Alamā ki he loto vai 'o ne
papitaiso 'a kinautolu; 'io, na'a ne papitaiso 'a kinautolu
'o fakatatau ki he founga 'a ia na'a ne papitaiso 'aki 'a
hono kāingá 'i he ngaahi vai 'o Molomoná; 'io, na'e kau
ki he siasi 'o e 'Otuá 'a kinautolu kotoa pē na'a ne
papitaisó; pea na'e fai 'eni koe'uhi ko 'enau tui ki he
ngaahi lea 'a 'Alamā.

And again, when they thought upon the Lamanites,
who were their brethren, of their sinful and polluted
state, they were filled with pain and anguish for the wel-
fare of their souls.

And it came to pass that those who were the children
of Amulon and his brethren, who had taken to wife the
daughters of the Lamanites, were displeased with the
conduct of their fathers, and they would no longer be
called by the names of their fathers, therefore they took
upon themselves the name of Nephi, that they might be
called the children of Nephi and be numbered among
those who were called Nephites.

And now all the people of Zarahemla were numbered
with the Nephites, and this because the kingdom had
been conferred upon none but those who were descen-
dants of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that when Mosiah had made
an end of speaking and reading to the people, he desired
that Alma should also speak to the people.

And Alma did speak unto them, when they were as-
sembled together in large bodies, and he went from one
body to another, preaching unto the people repentance
and faith on the Lord.

And he did exhort the people of Limhi and his
brethren, all those that had been delivered out of
bondage, that they should remember that it was the
Lord that did deliver them.

And it came to pass that after Alma had taught the
people many things, and had made an end of speaking
to them, that king Limhi was desirous that he might be
baptized; and all his people were desirous that they
might be baptized also.

Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did
baptize them; yea, he did baptize them after the manner
he did his brethren in the waters of Mormon; yea, and
as many as he did baptize did belong to the church of
God; and this because of their belief on the words of
Alma.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuku 'e he tu'i ko Mōsaiá kia 'Alamā ke ne fokotu'u ha ngaahi siasi 'i he fonua hono kotoa 'o Seilahemalá; 'o ne tuku kiate ia 'a e mālohi ke fakanofo ha kau taula'eiki mo ha kau akonaki ki he siasi taki taha.

20 Ko 'eni na'e fai 'eni koe'uhi na'e lahi fau 'a hono tokolahi 'o e kakai ko ia na'e 'ikai lava ai ke tauhi 'a kinautolu 'e he faiako pē 'e toko taha; pea na'e 'ikai foki te nau lava 'o fanongo kotoa pē ki he folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i ha fakataha'anga pē 'e taha;

21 Ko ia na'a nau fakataha ai 'a kinautolu ki ha ngaahi fakataha'anga kehekehe, 'a ia na'e ui ko e ngaahi siasi; pea na'e ma'u 'e he siasi taki taha kotoa pē hanau kau taula'eiki mo hanau kau akonaki, pea na'e malanga 'aki 'a e folofolá 'e he taula'eiki taki taha 'o fakatatau ki he me'a kuo fakahā mai kiate ia 'i he ngutu 'o 'Alamaá.

22 Pea ko ia, neongo na'e 'i ai ha ngaahi siasi lahi, ka ko e siasi pē taha, 'io ko e siasi 'o e 'Otuá; he na'e 'ikai ke malanga 'aki ha me'a 'i he ngaahi siasi kotoa ka ko e fakatomalá mo e tui ki he 'Otuá.

23 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'i ai 'a e siasi 'e fitu 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'ilonga 'a e kakai na'a nau fie 'ai kiate kinautolu 'a e huafa 'o Kalaisí, pe ko e 'Otuá, na'a nau ului ki he ngaahi siasi 'o e 'Otuá;

24 Pea na'e ui 'a kinautolu ko e kakai 'o e 'Otuá. Pea na'e lilingi hifo 'e he 'Eiki 'a hono Laumālié kiate kinautolu, pea na'a nau monū'ia, mo tu'umālie 'i he fonuá.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church.

Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;

Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called churches; every church having their priests and their teachers, and every priest preaching the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma.

And thus, notwithstanding there being many churches they were all one church, yea, even the church of God; for there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God.

And now there were seven churches in the land of Zarahemla. And it came to pass that whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the churches of God;

And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

Mōsaia 26

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'o e to'u tangata kei tupu haké 'a ia na'e 'ikai fa'a mahino kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a e tu'i ko Penisimaní, koe'uhi ko e fānau iiki 'a kinautolu 'i he taimi na'á ne folofola ai ki hono kakaí; pea na'e 'ikai te nau tui ki he talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí.
- 2 Na'e 'ikai te nau tui ki he me'a kuo lea 'aki 'o kau ki he toetu'u 'o e maté, pea 'ikai foki te nau tui ki he hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí.
- 3 Pea ko 'eni koe'uhi ko 'enau ta'etuí na'e 'ikai fa'a mahino kiate kinautolu 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá; pea na'e fakafefeka honau lotó.
- 4 Pea na'e 'ikai te nau fie papitaiso; pea na'e 'ikai te nau fie kau ki he siasí. Pea ko ha kakai mavahe 'a kinautolu 'i he 'enau tuí, 'o nau nofo pehē ai pē, 'i honau tu'unga fakakakano mo angahala'ia; he na'e 'ikai te nau fie ui ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá.
- 5 Pea ko 'eni 'i he lolotonga 'a e tu'i 'a Mōsaia na'e 'ikai ke a'u honau tokolahi ki hono vaeua 'o e kakai 'o e 'Otuá; ka ko e tupu 'i he ngaahi feke'ike'i 'i he vaha'a 'o e kāingalotu 'o e siasí, na'a nau faka'au ai 'o tokolahi ange.
- 6 He na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau kākāa'i 'a e tokolahi 'aki 'enau ngaahi lea fakahekeheké, 'a ia na'e kau ki he siasí, 'o nau fakatupu ai 'a 'enau fai 'a e ngaahi angahala lahi; ko ia na'e hoko ai 'o 'aonga ke valoki'i 'e he siasí 'a kinautolu na'e fai angahala, 'a ia na'e kau ki he siasí.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'omi 'a kinautolu ki he 'ao 'o e kau taula'eikí, pea na'e tukuange 'a kinautolu ki he kau taula'eikí 'e he kau akonakí; pea na'e 'omi 'a kinautolu 'e he kau taula'eikí ki he 'ao 'o 'Alamā, 'a ia ko e taula'eiki lahi.
- 8 Ko 'eni kuo tuku 'e he tu'i ko Mōsaia kia 'Alamā 'a e mafai ki he siasí.
- 9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai 'ilo 'e 'Alamā 'o kau kiate kinautolu; ka na'e tokolahi 'a e kakai na'a nau talatalaaki'i 'a kinautolu; 'io, na'e tu'u 'a e kakai 'o fakamo'oni 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito ki he 'enau angahalá.
- 10 Ko 'eni kuo te'eki ai ke hoko ha me'a pehē ki mu'a 'i he siasí; ko ia na'e puputu'u 'a 'Alamā 'i hono lotó, pea na'á ne fekau ke 'omi 'a kinautolu ki he 'ao 'o e tu'í.

Mosiah 26

Now it came to pass that there were many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of king Benjamin, being little children at the time he spake unto his people; and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers.

They did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ.

And now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God; and their hearts were hardened.

And they would not be baptized; neither would they join the church. And they were a separate people as to their faith, and remained so ever after, even in their carnal and sinful state; for they would not call upon the Lord their God.

And now in the reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God; but because of the dissensions among the brethren they became more numerous.

For it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flattering words, who were in the church, and did cause them to commit many sins; therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin, that were in the church, should be admonished by the church.

And it came to pass that they were brought before the priests, and delivered up unto the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma, who was the high priest.

Now king Mosiah had given Alma the authority over the church.

And it came to pass that Alma did not know concerning them; but there were many witnesses against them; yea, the people stood and testified of their iniquity in abundance.

Now there had not any such thing happened before in the church; therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit, and he caused that they should be brought before the king.

11 Pea na'á ne pehē ki he tu'í: Vakai, ko 'eni 'a e ni'ihī tokolahi kuo mau 'omi kiate koe, 'a ia kuo talatalaaki'i 'e honau kāingá; 'io, pea kuo 'ilo 'a kinautolu 'i he 'enau fai ha ngaahi angahala kehekehe. Pea 'oku 'ikai te nau fakatomala mei he 'enau ngaahi angahalá; ko ia kuo mau 'omi 'a kinautolu ki ho 'aó, koe'uhi ke ke fakamāu'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakataau ki he 'enau ngaahi hiá.

12 Ka na'e folofola 'e he tu'í ko Mōsaiá kia 'Alamā: Vakai, 'e 'ikai te u fakamāu'i 'a kinautolu; ko ia 'oku ou tuku atu 'a kinautolu ki ho nimá ke fakamāu'i.

13 Pea ko 'eni na'e toe puputu'u 'a e loto 'o 'Alamaá; pea na'á ne 'alu 'o fehu'i ki he 'Eikí pe ko e hā 'a e me'a te ne fai 'i he me'a ko iá, he na'á ne manavahē telia na'a 'iloange kuó ne fai ta'etotonu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'ene fakahā hake hono laumālié kotoa ki he 'Otuá, na'e ongo mai 'a e le' o e 'Eikí kiate, 'o folofola:

15 'Oku ke monū'ia koe, 'e 'Alamā, pea 'oku monū'ia mo kinautolu kuo papitaiso 'i he ngaahi vai 'o Molomoná. 'Okú ke monū'ia koe'uhi ko hono lahi fau ho'o tui hili ho'o fanongo ki he ngaahi lea pē 'a 'eku tamaio'eiki ko 'Apinetaí.

16 Pea 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko 'enau tui lahi ki he ngaahi lea pē 'a ia kuó ke lea 'aki kiate kinautolú.

17 Pea 'okú ke monū'ia koe koe'uhi ko ho'o fokotu'u ha siasi 'i he kakaí ni; pea 'e fokotu'u ma'u 'a kinautolu, pea te nau hoko ko hoku kakai.

18 'Io, 'oku monū'ia 'a e kakaí ni 'a ia 'oku nau loto fiamālie ke ui 'aki 'a kinautolu 'a hoku hingoá; he 'e ui 'a kinautolu 'i hoku hingoá; pea 'oku 'a'aku 'a kinautolu.

19 Pea koe'uhi ko ho'o fehu'i kiate au 'o kau ki he me'a 'e fai ki he tokotaha maumau-fonó, 'okú ke monū'ia ai.

20 Ko 'eku tamaio'eiki koe; pea 'oku ou fuakava mo koe te ke ma'u 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá; pea te ke tauhi kiate au pea 'alu atu 'i hoku hingoá, pea tānaki fakataha 'a 'eku fanga sipí.

21 Pea ko ia ia 'e fanongo ki hoku le'ó te ne hoko ko 'eku sipi; pea te ke tali ia ki he siasí, pea te u tali ia foki.

And he said unto the king: Behold, here are many whom we have brought before thee, who are accused of their brethren; yea, and they have been taken in divers iniquities. And they do not repent of their iniquities; therefore we have brought them before thee, that thou mayest judge them according to their crimes.

But king Mosiah said unto Alma: Behold, I judge them not; therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be judged.

And now the spirit of Alma was again troubled; and he went and inquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter, for he feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God.

And it came to pass that after he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. Thou art blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi.

And blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them.

And blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people; and they shall be established, and they shall be my people.

Yea, blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name; for in my name shall they be called; and they are mine.

And because thou hast inquired of me concerning the transgressor, thou art blessed.

Thou art my servant; and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life; and thou shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.

And he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall ye receive into the church, and him will I also receive.

22 He vakai, ko hoku siasí 'eni; ko ia ia 'e papitaisó 'e pau ke papitaiso ia ki he fakatomalá. Pea ko ia ia te mou talí kuo pau ke ne tui ki hoku hingoá; pea te u fakamolemole 'i lahi ia.

23 He ko au ia 'oku to'oku kiate au 'a e ngaahi angahala 'a māmaní; he ko au ia 'a ia kuó u fakatupu 'a kinautolú; pea ko au ia 'a ia 'oku foaki kiate ia 'e tui 'o a' u ki he ngata'angá ha potu 'i hoku nima to'omata'ú.

24 He vakai, 'oku ui 'a kinautolu 'i hoku hingoá; pea kapau 'oku nau 'ilo' i au te nau ha' u, 'o ma' u ha nofo'anga 'i hoku nima to'omata'ú 'o ta'engata.

25 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'o ka ifi 'anga ua 'a e talupité ko kinautolu na'e te'eki ai 'ilo' i aú te nau toki ha' u 'o tu' u 'i hoku 'aó.

26 Pea te nau toki 'ilo' i ko au ko e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, pea ko au honau Huhu'í; ka 'e 'ikai te nau loto ke huhu' 'a kinautolu.

27 Pea te u toki fakahā kiate kinautolu na'e 'ikai te u 'ilo' i 'a kinautolu; pea te nau 'alu atu ki he afi ta'engata 'a ia kuo teuteu mo'ó e tēvoló mo 'ene kau 'āngeló.

28 Ko ia 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, ko ia ia 'e 'ikai te ne fanongo ki hoku le'ó, 'oua na'a mou ma' u ia 'i hoku siasí, pea ko ia 'e 'ikai te u tali ia 'i he 'aho faka'osí.

29 Ko ia 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'Alu; pea 'ilonga ia 'e fai angahala kiate aú, ke ke fakamāu 'i ia 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi angahala kuó ne faí, pea kapau te ne vete 'ene ngaahi angahalá 'i ho 'aó pea mo hoku 'aó, pea fakatomala 'i he mo'oni 'o hono lotó, ke ke fakamolemole 'i ia, pea te u fakamolemole 'i ia foki.

30 'Io, pea 'o ka fakatomala ma' u pē 'a hoku kakaí te u fakamolemole 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he 'enua ngaahi angahala kiate aú.

31 Pea ke mou fefakamolemole 'aki foki 'a ho'omou ngaahi faihalá; he ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'ilonga ia 'oku 'ikai te ne fakamolemole 'i 'a e ngaahi faihala 'a hono kaungā'apí 'o ka ne ka pehē 'okú ne fakatomalá, kuó ne fakatupu hano fakahalaia 'i ia.

32 Ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, Ke ke 'alu; pea 'ilonga ia 'e 'ikai te ne fakatomala mei he 'ene ngaahi angahalá 'e 'ikai lau ia fakataha mo hoku kakaí; pea 'e fai 'a e mé 'á ni 'o kamata mei he taimí ni 'o fai atu.

For behold, this is my church; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance. And whomsoever ye receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.

For it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world; for it is I that hath created them; and it is I that granteth unto him that believeth unto the end a place at my right hand.

For behold, in my name are they called; and if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.

And it shall come to pass that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.

And then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.

And then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

Therefore I say unto you, that he that will not hear my voice, the same shall ye not receive into my church, for him I will not receive at the last day.

Therefore I say unto you, Go; and whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also.

Yea, and as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.

And ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgiveth not his neighbor's trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation.

Now I say unto you, Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people; and this shall be observed from this time forward.

33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he fanongo 'a 'Alamā ki he ngaahi folofola ní na'á ne tohi ia koe'uhi ke ne ma'u ia, pea koe'uhi ke ne lava ke fakamāu 'i 'a e kakai 'o e siasi ko iá 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá.

34 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu 'a 'Alamā 'o ne fakamāu 'i 'a kinautolu 'a ia kuo 'ilo lolotonga 'enau angahalá, 'o fakatatau ki he folofola 'a e 'Eikí.

35 Pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu na'e fakatomala mei he 'enau ngaahi angahalá mo vete iá, na'á ne lau 'a kinautolu fakataha mo e kakai 'o e siasí;

36 Pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu na'e 'ikai te nau fie vete 'enau ngaahi angahalá mo fakatomala mei he 'enau ngaahi hiá, na'e 'ikai lau 'a kinautolu fakataha mo e kakai 'o e siasí, pea na'e tāmata 'i honau ngaahi hingoá.

37 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tu'utu'uni 'e 'Alamā 'i he ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'o e siasí; pea na'e toe kamata ke 'iate kinautolu 'a e melinó pea nau tu'umālie 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito 'i he ngaahi me'a 'o e siasí, 'o nau mo'ui faka'ehi'ehi 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, 'o tali 'a e tokolahi, mo papitaiso 'a e tokolahi.

38 Pea ko 'eni na'e fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē 'e 'Alamā mo hono kaungā-ngāue 'a ia na'e tauhi 'a e siasí, 'o nau 'a 'eva faivelenga kakato, 'o akonaki 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i he me'a kotoa pē, 'o nau kātaki 'i 'a e fa'ahinga faingata 'a iá kotoa pē, pea na'e fakatanga 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he kakai kotoa 'a ia na'e 'ikai kau ki he siasi 'o e 'Otuá.

39 Pea na'a nau valoki 'i honau kāingá; pea na'e valoki 'i mo kinautolu foki ko e tangata taki taha 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'o fakatatau ki he 'ene ngaahi angahalá, pe ko e ngaahi angahala kuó ne faí, pea na'e fekau 'i ia 'e he 'Otuá ke ne lotu ta'etuku, pea ke 'atu 'a e fakafeta 'i 'i he me'a kotoa pē.

And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity, according to the word of the Lord.

And whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church;

And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out.

And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of the church; and they began again to have peace and to prosper exceedingly in the affairs of the church, walking circumspectly before God, receiving many, and baptizing many.

And now all these things did Alma and his fellow laborers do who were over the church, walking in all diligence, teaching the word of God in all things, suffering all manner of afflictions, being persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God.

And they did admonish their brethren; and they were also admonished, every one by the word of God, according to his sins, or to the sins which he had committed, being commanded of God to pray without ceasing, and to give thanks in all things.

Mōsaia 27

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e fakatanga na'e fai ki he siasí 'e he kau ta'etuí na'e 'āsili 'o lahi 'aupito 'a hono lahi ko ia na'e kamata ai ke lāunga 'a e siasí, 'o nau lāunga ki honau kau takí 'o kau ki ai; pea na'a nau lāunga kia 'Alamā. Pea na'e fakahā 'e 'Alamā 'a e me'á ki honau tu'i, ko Mōsaia. Pea na'e fealea'aki 'a Mōsaia mo 'ene kau taula'eikí.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hanga 'e he tu'i ko Mōsaia 'o fai ha fanongonongo ki he fonua takatakaí ke 'oua na'a fakatanga 'i 'e ha tangata ta'etuí ha toko taha 'o e fá'ahinga na'e kau ki he siasi 'o e 'Otuá.
- 3 Pea na'e 'i ai ha tu'utu'uni mamafa 'i he ngaahi siasí kotoa pē ke 'oua na'a 'i ai ha fakatanga 'iate kinautolu, pea 'oku totonu ke tu'unga tataua 'a e kakai kotoa pē.
- 4 Pea ke 'oua na'a nau tuku ke hanga 'e he loto-híkisiá pe fielahí 'o veuveuki 'enau nofo melinó, pea ke tokanga 'a e tangata kotoa pē ki hono kaunga'apí 'o hangē pē ko ia, mo ngāue 'aki honau nima 'onautolú ke tauhi 'a kinautolu.
- 5 'Io, pea ke ngāue 'a honau kau taula'eikí mo 'enau kau akonaki kotoa pē 'aki honau nima 'onautolú ke tauhi 'a kinautolu 'i he me'a kotoa pē tuku kehe pē 'o ka nau ka mahaki, pe fu'u masiva lahi; pea 'i he fai 'o e ngaahi me'a ní, na'a nau ma'u 'o lahi 'a e 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Otuá.
- 6 Pea na'e faka'au ke toe 'i ai 'a e fu'u melino lahi 'i he fonuá; pea na'e faka'au 'o fu'u tokolahi 'aupito 'a e kakaí, 'o nau kamata ke mafola atu 'i he funga 'o e fonuá, 'io, ki he tokelaú mo e tongá, ki he hahaké mo e hihifó, 'o nau langa 'a e ngaahi fu'u kolo lalahi mo e ngaahi kolo iiki 'i he ngaahi potu kotoa pē 'o e fonuá.
- 7 Pea na'e 'a'ahi 'a e 'Eikí kiate kinautolu 'o ne fakatu'umālie 'i 'a kinautolu, pea na'a nau hoko ko ha kakai tokolahi mo koloa'ia.
- 8 Ko 'eni na'e kau fakataha 'a e ngaahi foha 'o Mōsaia mo e kau ta'etuí; pea na'e kau foki mo kinautolu ha toko taha 'o e ngaahi foha 'o 'Alamaá, pea na'e ui ia ko 'Alamā, 'o hangē ko 'ene tamaí; ka neongo iá, na'á ne hoko ko ha tangata angakovi 'aupito mo fa'a tauhi tamapua. Pea ko e tangata poto ia he leá, peá ne lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea fakahekeheke lahi ki he kakaí; ko ia na'á ne ue 'i 'a e kakai tokolahi ke nau fai 'o hangē ko e ngaahi anghala na'á ne faí.

Mosiah 27

And now it came to pass that the persecutions which were inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that the church began to murmur, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with his priests.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the church of God.

And there was a strict command throughout all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them, that there should be an equality among all men;

That they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace; that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, laboring with their own hands for their support.

Yea, and all their priests and teachers should labor with their own hands for their support, in all cases save it were in sickness, or in much want; and doing these things, they did abound in the grace of God.

And there began to be much peace again in the land; and the people began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, yea, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land.

And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealthy people.

Now the sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his father; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man. And he was a man of many words, and did speak much flattery to the people; therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities.

- 9 Pea na'á ne hoko ko ha tūkia'anga lahi ki he tu'umālie 'a e siasi 'o e 'Otuá; 'o ne tohoaki'i 'a e loto 'o e kakai; pea ne fakalanga 'a e feke'ike'i lahi 'i he kakai; 'o ma'u ai 'e he fili 'o e 'Otuá ha faingamālie ke ne ngāue 'aki hono mālohí kiate kinautolu.
- 10 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē lolotonga 'ene 'alu holo ke faka'auha 'a e siasi 'o e 'Otuá, he na'á ne 'alu fakafufū holo mo e ngaahi foha 'o Mōsaiá, 'o nau feinga ke faka'auha 'a e siasí, mo takihala'i 'a e kakai 'o e 'Eiki, 'o ta'ehoa mo e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, pea a'u ki he tu'í—
- 11 Pea hangē ko 'eku pehē kiate kimoutolu, lolotonga 'enau 'alu holo 'i he angatu'u ki he 'Otuá, vakai, na'e hā mai kiate kinautolu 'a e 'āngelo 'a e 'Eiki; pea na'á ne 'alu hifo 'o hangē na'e 'i ha 'aó; 'o ne lea 'o hangē ko ha 'u'ulu 'o e mana, 'a ia na'e lulululu'i ai 'a e kelekele 'a ia na'a nau tu'u aí;
- 12 Pea na'e pehē fau hono lahi 'o 'enau 'ohovalé, na'a nau tō ai ki he kelekelé, 'o 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi lea na'á ne lea 'aki kiate kinautolú.
- 13 Ka neongo iá na'á ne toe kaila 'o pehē: 'E 'Alamā, tu'u hake pea 'unu'unu mai, he ko e hā 'okú ke fakatanga 'i ai 'a e siasi 'o e 'Otuá? He kuo folofola 'a e 'Eiki: Ko hoku siasí 'eni, pea te u fokotu'u ia; pea 'e 'ikai ikuna 'i ia 'e ha me'a, ka ko e maumau-fono pē 'a hoku kakai.
- 14 Pea ko 'eni, na'e 'ikai ia ko ia pē ka na'e pehē 'e he 'āngeló: Vakai, kuo 'afio 'i 'e he 'Eiki 'a e ngaahi lotu 'a hono kakai, kae 'uma 'ā foki 'a e ngaahi lotu 'a 'ene tamaio'eiki, ko 'Alamā, 'a ia ko ho'o tamaí; he kuó ne lotu 'i he tui lahi koe'uhi ko koe ke lava nai 'o ma'u ha 'ilo ki he mo'oní; ko ia, ko hono 'uhinga 'eni kuó u ha'u ai ke fakamahino kiate koe 'a e māfimaí mo e mafai 'o e 'Otuá, koe'uhi ke lava 'o tali 'a e ngaahi lotu 'a 'ene kau tamaio'eiki 'o fakatatau mo 'enau tuí.
- 15 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'okú ke lava koā 'o faka'ikai'i 'a e māfimaí 'o e 'Otuá? He vakai, 'ikai 'oku lulu'i 'e hoku le'ó 'a e fonuá? Pea 'ikai 'okú ke lava 'o mamata kiate au 'i ho 'aó? Pea kuo fekau 'i mai au mei he 'Otuá.

And he became a great hinderment to the prosperity of the church of God; stealing away the hearts of the people; causing much dissension among the people; giving a chance for the enemy of God to exercise his power over them.

And now it came to pass that while he was going about to destroy the church of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king—

And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;

And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.

Nevertheless he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.

And again, the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith.

And now behold, can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.

16 Ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate koe: 'Alu, pea manatu ki he nofo pōpula 'a ho'ō ngaahi tamaí 'i he fonua ko Heilamí, pea 'i he fonua ko Nifái; pea manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi fu'u me'a lalahi kuo ne fai ma'anautolú; he na'a nau nofo pōpula, pea kuó ne fakatau 'atāina 'i 'a kinautolu. Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'e 'Alamā, ke 'alu 'i ho halá, pea 'oua 'e toe feinga ke faka'auha 'a e siasí, koe'uhí ke tali 'enau ngaahi lotú, pea fai 'eni neongo ha'ō loto ke kapusi atu koé.

17 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e ngaahi lea faka'osi 'eni na'e lea 'aki 'e he 'āngeló kia 'Alamā, pea na'á ne 'alu.

18 Pea ko 'eni ko 'Alamā mo kinautolu na'e 'iate iá na'a nau toe tō ki he kelekelé, he na'e fu'u lahi 'a 'enau 'ohovalé; he kuo nau mamata 'aki honau mata 'onautolú ki ha 'āngelo 'a e 'Eikí; pea na'e hangē hono le'ó ko ha mana, 'a ia na'e lulu'i 'a e kelekelé, pea na'a nau 'ilo'i 'oku 'ikai ha me'a ka ko e māfimaí pē 'o e 'Otuá 'a ia 'e lava 'o lulu'i 'a e kelekelé 'o ngaohi ia ke ngalulululu 'o hangē ka mavaeuá.

19 Pea ko 'eni na'e pehē fau hono lahi 'o e 'ohovale 'a 'Alamaá na'á ne hoko ai 'o noa, 'o 'ikai fá 'a lava 'o lea; 'io, pea na'á ne hoko 'o vaivai, pea na'e 'ikai te ne fá 'a lava 'o ue'i hono ongo nimá; ko ia na'e 'ave ia 'e kinautolu na'e 'iate iá, 'o nau fata ia 'i he'ene ta'e-fa'a-ngaué, 'o nau tuku ia 'i he 'ao 'o 'ene tamaí.

20 Pea nau fakamatala ki he'ene tamaí 'a e me'a kotoa pē kuo hoko kiate kinautolú; pea na'e fiefia 'a 'ene tamaí, he na'á ne 'ilo'i ko e māfimaí ia 'o e 'Otuá.

21 Pea na'á ne fekau ke fakataha mai ha fu'u kakai tokolahi ke nau fakamo'oni ki he me'a kuo fai 'e he 'Eikí ma'a hono fohá, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a kinautolu 'a ia na'e 'iate iá.

22 Pea na'á ne fekau ke kātoa fakataha mai 'a e kau taula'eikí; pea na'a nau kamata ke 'aukai mo lotu ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, ke ne fakaava 'a e ngutu 'o 'Alamaá, ke ne lava 'o lea, pe ma'u foki 'e hono ngaahi kupu'i sinó 'a honau mālohí—koe'uhi ke 'ā 'a e mata 'o e kakai ke nau mamata pea 'ilo'i 'a e angalelei mo e nāunau 'o e 'Otuá.

Now I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of thy fathers in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi; and remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in bondage, and he has delivered them. And now I say unto thee, Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, that their prayers may be answered, and this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off.

And now it came to pass that these were the last words which the angel spake unto Alma, and he departed.

And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth; and they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as though it would part asunder.

And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; yea, and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his father.

And they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened unto them; and his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.

And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.

And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength—that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness and glory of God.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē hili 'enau 'aukai mo lotu 'i he 'aho 'e ua mo e pō 'e ua, na'e ma'u 'e he ngaahi kupu'i sino 'o 'Alamaá 'a honau mālohí, pea na'e tu'u hake ia 'o ne kamata ke lea kiate kinautolu, 'o ne tala kiate kinautolu ke nau fiemālie:

24 He, na'á ne pehē, kuó u fakatomala mei he'eku ngaahi angahalá, pea kuo huhu'i au 'e he 'Eikí; vakai kuo fanau'i au 'i he Laumālié.

25 Pea na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kiate au: 'Oua 'e ofo he ko e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangata kotoa pē, 'io, 'a e tangata mo e fefine, 'a e ngaahi pule'angá, mo e ngaahi fa'ahingá, mo e ngaahi leá, mo e kakai kotoa pē, kuo pau ke fanau'i fo'ou; 'io, ke nau fanau'i 'i he 'Otuá, 'o liliu mei honau tu'unga fakakakano mo tō ki laló, ki ha tu'unga 'o e anga-mā'oni'oni, kuo huhu'i 'e he 'Otuá, 'o hoko ko hono ngaahi foha mo hono ngaahi 'ofefine;

26 Pea 'oku nau hoko ai ko ha kakai fo'ou; pea ka 'ikai ke nau fai 'eni, 'e 'ikai te nau teitei lava 'o ma'u 'a e pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá.

27 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau 'e 'ikai hoko 'eni, kuo pau ke kapusi atu 'a kinautolu; pea 'oku ou 'ilo'i 'eni, koe'uhi na'e meimei kapusi atu au.

28 Ka neongo iá, hili ha'aku 'a mai 'i ha fu'u mamahi lahi, pea mo e fakatomala 'o a'u ki he'eku meimei mate, kuo finangalo 'a e 'Eikí 'i he'ene 'alo'ofá ke fakahaofi au mei ha tutu 'oku ta'engata, pea kuo fanau'i au 'i he 'Otuá.

29 Kuo huhu'i hoku laumālié mei he 'ahu 'o e mamahi mo e ngaahi ha'i 'o e pōpula 'i he angahalá. Na'á ku 'i he vanu fakapo'uli tahá; ka ko 'eni kuó u mamata ki he maama fakafofo 'a e 'Otuá. Na'e mamahi'ia 'a hoku laumālié 'i he fakamamahi ta'engata; ka kuo fakahaofi au, pea 'oku 'ikai ke toe fakamamahi'i 'a hoku laumālié.

30 Na'a ku lí'aki 'a hoku Huhu'í, peá u faka'ikai'i 'a e me'a kuo lea ki ai 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí; pea koe'uhi ke nau tomu'a 'ilo te ne hā'ele mai, pea 'okú ne manatu'i 'a e kakai fulipē kuó ne fakatupú, te ne fakahā ia 'e ia ki he kakai fulipē.

And it came to pass after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort:

For, said he, I have repented of my sins, and have been redeemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the Spirit.

And the Lord said unto me: Marvel not that all mankind, yea, men and women, all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, must be born again; yea, born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of God, becoming his sons and daughters;

And thus they become new creatures; and unless they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

I say unto you, unless this be the case, they must be cast off; and this I know, because I was like to be cast off.

Nevertheless, after wading through much tribulation, repenting nigh unto death, the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning, and I am born of God.

My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness and bonds of iniquity. I was in the darkest abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God. My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am snatched, and my soul is pained no more.

I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which had been spoken of by our fathers; but now that they may foresee that he will come, and that he remembereth every creature of his creating, he will make himself manifest unto all.

- 31 'Io, 'e peluki 'a e tui kotoa pē, pea fakahā 'e he 'elelo kotoa pē 'i hono 'aó. 'Io, 'i he 'aho faka'osí, 'o ka tutu'u 'a e kakai fulipē ke fakamāu 'i 'e ia, te nau toki fakahā ai ko e 'Otuá ia; pea te nau toki fakahā, 'a kinautolu na'e mo'ui ta'ekau atu 'a e 'Otuá 'i he māmaní, 'oku totonu 'a e fakamaau 'o e tautea lauikuonga kiate kinautolú, pea te nau tete mo tetetete, pea holomui 'i he 'afio mai 'a hono fofonga 'ilo'íló.
- 32 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata 'e 'Alamā 'o fai atu mei he taimi ko iá ke ako 'i 'a e kakai, fakataha mo kinautolu na'e 'ia 'Alamā 'i he taimi na'e hā mai ai 'a e 'āngeló kiate kinautolú, pea na'a nau fononga holo 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá, 'o nau fakamafola ki he kakai kotoa pē 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo nau fanongo mo mamata ki aí, pea na'a nau malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i he ngaahi faingata'a lahi, pea na'e lahi 'aupito honau fakatanga 'i 'e kinautolu na'e ta'etuá, pea na'e taa 'i 'a kinautolu 'e hanau tokolahi.
- 33 Pea neongo 'a 'eni kotoa pē, ka na'a nau 'omi 'a e fu'u fiemālie lahi ki he siasí, 'o nau poupou 'i 'enau tuí, mo na'ina 'i kiate kinautolu 'i he fa'a kātaki fuoloa mo e feinga lahi ke nau tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá.
- 34 Pea ko honau toko fā ko e ngaahi foha 'o Mōsaia; pea ko honau ngaahi hingoá ko 'Āmoni mo 'Ēlone mo 'Omínea mo Himinai; ko e ngaahi hingoa ia 'o e ngaahi foha 'o Mōsaia.
- 35 Pea na'a nau fononga holo 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea 'i he kakai fulipē na'e fakaongo ki he pule 'a e tu'í ko Mōsaia, 'o nau feinga fakakukafi ke fakatonutonu 'a e ngaahi maumau kotoa pē kuo nau fai ki he siasí, pea nau vete 'enau ngaahi angahala kotoa pē, mo fakamafola 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuo nau mamata ki aí, mo fakamatala 'i 'a e ngaahi kikité mo e ngaahi folofola tapú kiate kinautolu kotoa pē na'e fie fanongo kiate kinautolú.
- 36 Pea ko ia na'a nau hoko ai ko ha ngaahi me'angāue 'i he to'ukupu 'o e 'Otuá 'i hono fakatafoki mai 'o e tokolahi ki he 'ilo'í 'o e mo'oní, 'io, ki he 'ilo'í 'o honau Huhu'í.
- 37 Pea hono 'ikai ke monū 'ia 'a kinautolu! He na'a nau fakamafola 'a e melinó; na'a nau fakahā 'a e ngaahi ongoongo lelei 'o e lelei; pea na'a nau fakahā ki he kakai 'oku pule 'a e 'Eikí.

Yea, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. Yea, even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.

And now it came to pass that Alma began from this time forward to teach the people, and those who were with Alma at the time the angel appeared unto them, traveling round about through all the land, publishing to all the people the things which they had heard and seen, and preaching the word of God in much tribulation, being greatly persecuted by those who were unbelievers, being smitten by many of them.

But notwithstanding all this, they did impart much consolation to the church, confirming their faith, and exhorting them with long-suffering and much travail to keep the commandments of God.

And four of them were the sons of Mosiah; and their names were Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni; these were the names of the sons of Mosiah.

And they traveled throughout all the land of Zarahemla, and among all the people who were under the reign of king Mosiah, zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the church, confessing all their sins, and publishing all the things which they had seen, and explaining the prophecies and the scriptures to all who desired to hear them.

And thus they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, yea, to the knowledge of their Redeemer.

And how blessed are they! For they did publish peace; they did publish good tidings of good; and they did declare unto the people that the Lord reigneth.

Mōsaia 28

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi hono fai 'e he ngaahi foha 'o Mōsaia 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, na'a nau 'ave mo kinautolu 'a e tokosi 'i 'o foki ki he 'enau tamai, ko e tu'í, pea na'a nau kole kiate ia ke ne fakangofua 'a kinautolu ke nau 'alu hake ki he fonua ko Nifái, fakataha mo kinautolú ni kuo nau filí, ke nau malanga 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'á 'a ia kuo nau fanongo ki aí, pea ke nau fakahā 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá ki honau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná—
- 2 Koe'uhí ke nau lava 'apē 'o fakatafoki 'a kinautolu ki he 'ilo'í 'o e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, mo fakamahino kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi angahala 'a 'enau ngaahi tamai; pea ke nau lava 'apē ke fakatafoki 'a kinautolu mei he 'enau fehi 'a ki he kau Nifái, koe'uhi ke 'omi 'a kinautolu ke nau fiefia 'i he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, koe'uhi ke nau nofo fé'ofó'ofani 'iate kinautolu, pea ke 'oua na'a toe 'i ai ha ngaahi fakakikihi 'i he fonua kotoa 'a ia kuo foaki 'e he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá kiate kinautolú.
- 3 Ko 'eni na'a nau faka'amu ke fakahā 'a e fakamo'uí ki he kakai fulipē, he na'e 'ikai te nau fá'a kātaki 'i ke mala'ia ha laumālie 'o ha taha; 'io, na'e hanga 'e he fakakaukau pē ki he tō 'a e laumālie ki he mamahi ta'etukú 'o fakatupu 'enau tete mo tetetete.
- 4 Pea na'e ngāue pehē 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eiki 'iate kinautolu, he ko kinautolu 'a e fakalielia taha 'i he kau fai angahalá. Pea na'e finangalo 'a e 'Eiki 'i he 'ene 'alo'ofa ta'e-fakangatangata ke fakahaofi 'a kinautolu; ka neongo íá na'a nau kātaki 'i 'a e fu'u mamahi lahi 'o e laumālie koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi angahalá, 'o nau mamahi lahi mo manavahē telia na'a 'iloange kuo kapusi atu 'a kinautolu 'o ta'engata.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau kole ki he 'enau tamai 'i he ngaahi 'aho lahi ke nau 'alu atu ki he fonua ko Nifái.
- 6 Pea na'e 'alu 'a e tu'í ko Mōsaia 'o ne fehu'í ki he 'Eiki pe 'e lelei ke ne tukuange hono ngaahi fohá ke nau 'alu atu 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kau Leimaná 'o malanga'aki 'a e folofolá.

Mosiah 28

Now it came to pass that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these things, they took a small number with them and returned to their father, the king, and desired of him that he would grant unto them that they might, with these whom they had selected, go up to the land of Nephi that they might preach the things which they had heard, and that they might impart the word of God to their brethren, the Lamanites—

That perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers; and that perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites, that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God, that they might become friendly to one another, and that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God had given them.

Now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature, for they could not bear that any human soul should perish; yea, even the very thoughts that any soul should endure endless torment did cause them to quake and tremble.

And thus did the Spirit of the Lord work upon them, for they were the very vilest of sinners. And the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to spare them; nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities, suffering much and fearing that they should be cast off forever.

And it came to pass that they did plead with their father many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi.

And king Mosiah went and inquired of the Lord if he should let his sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word.

7 Pea na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kia Mōsaia: Tuku ke nau 'alu atu, he 'e tui 'a e tokolahi ki he 'enau ngaahi leá, pea te nau ma'u 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá; pea te u fakahaofi ho ngaahi fohá mei he nima 'o e kau Leimaná.

8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuku 'e Mōsaia ke nau 'alu 'o fai 'o hangē ko 'enau kolé.

9 Pea na'a nau fai 'enau fonongá ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá ke 'alu atu 'o malanga 'aki 'a e folofolá 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kau Leimaná; pea te u fai ha fakamatala ki he 'enau ngaahi ngāué 'amui.

10 Ko 'eni na'e 'ikai ma'u 'e Mōsaia ha tokotaha ke tuku ki ai 'a e pule'angá, he na'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha taha 'o hono ngaahi fohá te ne fie tali 'a e pule'angá.

11 Ko ia na'á ne to'o 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'a ia na'e tongitongi ki he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e ngaahi peleti 'a Nifái, pea mo e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuó ne tauhi mo malu 'i 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, hili 'ene liliu mo ne fekau ke tohi 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'a ia na'e 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e koula 'a ia na'e 'ilo'í 'e he kakai 'o Limihái, 'a ia na'e tuku kiate ia 'e Limihái;

12 Pea na'á ne fai 'eni koe'uhi ko e fu'u tokanga lahi 'a hono kakai; he na'a nau fu'u faka'amu 'o fu'u lahi fau ke 'ilo 'o kau ki he kakai 'a ia kuo faka'auhá.

13 Pea ko 'eni na'á ne liliu ia 'i hono ngāue 'aki 'a e ongo maka 'a ia na'e fakama'u ki he ongo kau 'i me'a fuopotopotó.

14 Pea na'e teuteu 'a e ongo me'á ni ko iá talu mei he kamata'angá, pea tukufakaholo mai mei he to'u tangata ki he to'u tangata, ko hono taumu'á ke liliu 'aki 'a e ngaahi leá;

15 Pea kuo tauhi mo malu 'i ia 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí, koe'uhi ke ne fakahā 'aki ki he kakai fulipē 'a ia te nau ma'u 'a e fonuá 'a e ngaahi angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia 'a hono kakai.

16 Pea 'ilonga ia 'okú ne ma'u 'a e ongo me'a ní 'oku ui ia ko e tangata kikite 'o hangē ko e founda 'o e kuonga mu'á.

And the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go and do according to their request.

And they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites; and I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter.

Now king Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon, for there was not any of his sons who would accept of the kingdom.

Therefore he took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, and also the plates of Nephi, and all the things which he had kept and preserved according to the commandments of God, after having translated and caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;

And this he did because of the great anxiety of his people; for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people who had been destroyed.

And now he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.

Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;

And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;

And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times.

17 Ko 'eni 'i he hili hono liliu 'e Mōsaia 'a e ngaahi lekooti ní, vakai, na'e fakamatala ia ki he kakai 'a ia na'e faka'auhá, 'o fai mei he taimi na'e faka'auha ai 'a kinautolú 'o a'u ki he langa 'o e fu'u taua 'i he taimi na'e veuveuki ai 'e he 'Eiki 'a e lea 'a e kakaí pea fakamovetevete atu 'a kinautolu ki he funga 'o e māmaní kotoa pē, 'io, 'o fai mei he taimi ko iá 'o a'u ki he fakatupu 'o 'Ātamá.

18 Ko 'eni na'e langaki 'e he fakamatalá ni 'a e fu'u tangi lahi 'a e kakai 'o Mōsaiá, 'io, na'e fakafonu 'aki 'a kinautolu 'a e loto-mamahi; ka neongo iá na'e 'omi ai kiate kinautolu 'a e 'ilo lahi, 'a ia na'a nau fiefia ai.

19 Pea ko e fakamatalá ni 'e hiki ia 'amui; he vakai, 'oku 'aonga ke 'ilo 'e he kakai kotoa pē 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo hiki 'i he fakamatala ko iá.

20 Pea ko 'eni, hangē ko 'eku pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'i he hili leva hono fai 'e he tu'i ko Mōsaiá 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, na'á ne to' o 'a e ngaahi peleti 'o e palasá, pea mo e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuó ne tauhí, 'o ne tuku ia kia 'Alamā, 'a ia ko e foha 'o 'Alamaá; 'io, 'a e ngaahi lekōtí kotoa kae 'uma'ā 'a e ongo me'a liliu leá, 'o ne tuku ia kiate ia, mo fekau kiate ia ke ne tauhi mo malu'i ia, pea ke ne tauhi ha lekooti 'o e kakaí, pea tukufakaholo ia mei he to'u tangata ki he to'u tangata, 'o hangē kuo tukufakaholo mai ia talu mei he taimi na'e 'alu ai 'a Līhai mei Selūsalemá.

Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records, behold, it gave an account of the people who were destroyed, from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people and they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the earth, yea, and even from that time back until the creation of Adam.

Now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly, yea, they were filled with sorrow; nevertheless it gave them much knowledge, in the which they did rejoice.

And this account shall be written hereafter; for behold, it is expedient that all people should know the things which are written in this account.

And now, as I said unto you, that after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

Mōsaia 29

- 1 Ko 'eni, 'i he 'osi hono fai 'eni 'e Mōsaia na 'á ne 'oatu 'a e fekau ki he fonuá kotoa, ki he kakai kotoa pē, koe 'uhí he na 'á ne fie 'ilo honau lotó pe ko hai 'e hoko ko honau tu 'í.
- 2 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē na 'e fakahā mai 'a e le 'o 'o e kakai, 'o pehē: 'Oku mau faka 'amu ke hoko 'a 'Ēlone ko ho fohá ko homau tu 'i mo homau pule.
- 3 Ko 'eni kuo 'osi 'alu atu 'a 'Ēlone ia ki he fonua ko Nifai, ko ia na 'e 'ikai lava ke tuku 'e he tu 'í 'a e pule 'angá kiate ia, pea na 'e 'ikai foki ke loto 'a 'Ēlone ke ne ma 'u 'a e pule 'angá; pea na 'e 'ikai loto foki ha toko taha 'o e ngaahi foha 'o Mōsaia ke nau ma 'u 'a e pule 'angá.
- 4 Ko ia na 'e toe 'oatu 'e he tu 'i ko Mōsaia ha fekau ki he kakai; 'io, na 'á ne fekau ke 'ave holo ha tohi 'i he kakai. Pea ko e ngaahi lea 'eni na 'e tohi aí, 'o pehē:
- 5 Vakai, 'a kimoutolu ko hoku kakai, pe ko hoku kāinga, he 'oku ou pehē 'eku fakakaukau kiate kimoutolú, 'oku ou faka 'amu ke mou fakakaukau 'i 'a e me 'a 'oku kole atu ke mou fakakaukau ki aí—he 'oku mou faka 'amu ke mou ma 'u ha tu 'i.
- 6 Pea 'oku ou fakahā kiate kimoutolu, ko ia ia 'oku totonu ke ne ma 'u 'a e pule 'angá kuo ne fakafisi, pea 'e 'ikai te ne ma 'u ma 'ana 'a e pule 'angá.
- 7 Pea ko 'eni, kapau 'e fili ha taha ko hono fetongi, vakai 'oku ou manavahē na 'a tupu ha fakakikihi 'iate kimoutolu. Pea ko hai 'okú ne 'ilo 'i na 'a faifaí pea 'ita 'a hoku foha 'a ia 'oku totonu ke 'a 'ana 'a e pule 'angá 'o ne fakaloto 'i ha ni 'ihi 'o e kakai ni ke nau muimui 'iate ia, 'a ia 'e fakatupu ai 'a e ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi fakakikihi 'iate kimoutolu, 'a ia 'e hoko ko e tupu 'anga 'o e lilingi 'o e fu 'u toto lahi mo e fakakovi 'i 'o e hā 'ele 'anga 'o e 'Eiki, 'io, pea faka 'auha ai 'a e laumālie 'o e kakai tokolahi.
- 8 Ko 'eni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, tau fakapotopoto mo fakakaukau ki he ngaahi me 'á ni, he 'oku 'ikai ha 'atau totonu ke tau faka 'auha 'a hoku fohá, pea 'oku 'ikai foki ha 'atau totonu ke tau faka 'auha ha tokotaha kehe 'o ka fakanofa ia ko hono fetongi.
- 9 Pea kapau 'e tafoki 'a hoku fohá ki he 'ene loto-híkisiá mo e ngaahi laukaú pehē te ne fakafoki 'a e ngaahi me 'a kuó ne lea 'aki, pea 'eke 'i 'ene totonu ki he pule 'angá, 'a ia 'e fakatupu ai ha 'ane fu 'u fai angahala lahi kae 'uma 'ā foki hono kakai.

Mosiah 29

Now when Mosiah had done this he sent out throughout all the land, among all the people, desiring to know their will concerning who should be their king.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: We are desirous that Aaron thy son should be our king and our ruler.

Now Aaron had gone up to the land of Nephi, therefore the king could not confer the kingdom upon him; neither would Aaron take upon him the kingdom; neither were any of the sons of Mosiah willing to take upon them the kingdom.

Therefore king Mosiah sent again among the people; yea, even a written word sent he among the people. And these were the words that were written, saying:

Behold, O ye my people, or my brethren, for I esteem you as such, I desire that ye should consider the cause which ye are called to consider—for ye are desirous to have a king.

Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom.

And now if there should be another appointed in his stead, behold I fear there would rise contentions among you. And who knoweth but what my son, to whom the kingdom doth belong, should turn to be angry and draw away a part of this people after him, which would cause wars and contentions among you, which would be the cause of shedding much blood and perverting the way of the Lord, yea, and destroy the souls of many people.

Now I say unto you let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right to destroy another if he should be appointed in his stead.

And if my son should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this people to commit much sin.

10 Pea ko 'eni tau fai fakapotopoto, pea tomu'a vakai atu ki he ngaahi me'a ni, pea fai 'a e me'a ko ia 'e tupu ai 'a e melino 'i he kakai ni.

11 Ko ia te u hoko ko homou tu 'i 'i he toenga hoku ngaahi 'ahó; ka neongo iá, tau fili 'e kitautolu ha kau fakamaau, ke fakamāu 'i 'a e kakaí ni 'o fakatatau mo 'etau laó; pea te tau fokotu'utu'u fo'ou 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a e kakai ní, he te tau fili 'a e kau tangata poto ke hoko ko e kau fakamāu, 'a ia te nau fakamāu 'i 'a e kakaí ni 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá.

12 Ko 'eni 'oku lelei ange ke fakamāu 'i ha tangata 'e he 'Otuá kae 'ikai 'e he tangatá, he 'oku totonu ma'u ai pē 'a e fakamaau totonu 'a e 'Otuá, ka 'oku 'ikai totonu ma'u ai pē 'a e fakamaau 'a e tangatá.

13 Ko ia ka ne mou lava 'o ma'u ha kau tangata angatonu ke hoko ko homou ngaahi tu 'i, 'a ia te nau fokotu'u 'a e ngaahi fono 'a e 'Otuá, 'o fakamāu 'i 'a e kakaí ni 'o fakatatau mo 'ene ngaahi fekaú, 'io, ka ne mou lava ke ma'u ha kau tangata ke hoko ko homou ngaahi tu 'i 'a ia 'e fai 'o hangē ko ia na'e fai 'e he'eku tamai ko Penisimaní ma'á e kakaí ni—'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau na'e lava ke pehē ma'u ai pē 'e 'aonga ke mou ma'u ma'u ai pē ha ngaahi tu 'i ke pule 'i 'a kimoutolu.

14 Pea na'a mo au, kuó u ngāue 'aki hoku mālohí mo e ivi kotoa 'oku ou ma'ú, ke u ako 'i kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, pea fokotu'u ma'u 'a e melinó 'i he fonuá kotoa, ko'e uhi ke 'oua na'a 'i ai ha ngaahi tau pe ha ngaahi fakakikihi, pea 'ikai ha kaiha'a, pe vete, pe fakapō, pe ha fá'ahinga angahala 'e taha;

15 Pea 'ilonga ha taha kuó ne fai ha angahala, kuó u tautea 'i ia, 'o fakatatau ki he hia kuó ne faí, 'o fakatatau ki he lao 'a ia kuo fokotu'u ma'atautolu 'e he'etau ngaahi tamai.

16 Ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko e me'a 'i he 'ikai angatonu 'a e tangata kotoa pē 'oku 'ikai 'aonga ke mou ma'u ha tu 'i pe ha ngaahi tu 'i, ke nau pule 'i 'a kimoutolu.

17 He vakai, ko e hā hano lahi 'o e angahala 'oku fakatupu 'e ha tu 'i fai angahala, 'io, pea hono 'ikai lahi 'a e faka'auhá!

And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people.

Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of this people, for we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.

Now it is better that a man should be judged of God than of man, for the judgments of God are always just, but the judgments of man are not always just.

Therefore, if it were possible that you could have just men to be your kings, who would establish the laws of God, and judge this people according to his commandments, yea, if ye could have men for your kings who would do even as my father Benjamin did for this people—I say unto you, if this could always be the case then it would be expedient that ye should always have kings to rule over you.

And even I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;

And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law which has been given to us by our fathers.

Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have a king or kings to rule over you.

For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!

18 'Io, manatu 'i 'a e tu 'i ko Noá, 'a 'ene fai angahalá mo 'ene ngaahi anga-fakalieliá, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e fai angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia 'a hono kakaí. Vakai ki hono lahi 'o e faka'auha 'a ia na'e hoko kiate kinautolú; pea koe'uhi foki ko 'enau ngaahi fai angahalá na'e 'omi ai 'a kinautolu ki he nofo pōpula.

19 Pea ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e tokoni 'a honau Tupu'anga fungani potó, pea kuo tupunga 'eni 'i he 'enau fakatomala mo'óní, pehē 'e 'ikai lava ke ta'ofi 'a 'enau nofo pōpula 'o a'u mai ki he taimí ni.

20 Kae vakai, na'á ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu koe'uhi na'a nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu 'i hono 'aó; pea koe'uhí ko 'enau fu'u tangi lahi kiate iá na'á ne fakahaofi ai 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá; pea 'oku ngāue pehē 'a e 'Eikí 'i he me'a kotoa pē 'i hono māfima'í 'i he fānau 'a e tangatá, pea mafao atu 'a e to'ukupu 'o e 'alo'ofá kiate kinautolu 'oku falala kiate iá.

21 Pea vakai, ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e 'ikai te mou lava 'o fakahifo ha tu 'i angakovi, kae ngata pe 'i he fakakikihi lahi mo e felingi'aki 'o e toto lahi.

22 He vakai, ko hono ngaahi kaume'á 'oku 'i he angahala, pea 'okú ne fokotu'u 'ene kau le'ó ke ofi kiate ia; pea 'okú ne haehae 'a e ngaahi lao 'a kinautolu na'a nau pule 'i he mā'oni'oni ki mu'a 'iate iá; pea 'okú ne molomoloki 'i hono lalo va'é 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá.

23 Pea 'okú ne fokotu'u ha ngaahi lao, pea 'ave ia ki hono kakaí, 'io, ko e ngaahi lao 'oku fakangofua ai 'a 'ene ngaahi fai angahala 'a'aná; pea 'ilonga ha taha 'oku 'ikai talangofua ki he'ene ngaahi laó 'okú ne fekau ke faka'auha ia; pea 'ilonga ia 'oku angatu'u kiate iá te ne fekau atu 'a 'ene kau taú ke tau 'i kinautolu, pea kapau te ne lava ke ne faka'auha 'a kinautolu; pea 'oku pehē hono fakakovi 'i 'e he tu 'i ta'e-mā'oni'oni 'a e ngaahi hala 'o e mā'oni'oni kotoa pē.

24 Pea ko 'eni vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku 'ikai 'aonga ke hoko kiate kimoutolu ha ngaahi me'a fakalielia pehē.

25 Ko ia, mou fili 'i he le'ó 'o e kakaí ni ha kau fakamaau, koe'uhí ke fakamāu 'i 'a kimoutolu 'o fakataata ki he ngaahi lao kuo fokotu'u ma'amoutolu 'e he'etau ngaahi tamaí, 'a ia 'oku totonú, pea na'e tuku kiate kinautolu 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí.

Yea, remember king Noah, his wickedness and his abominations, and also the wickedness and abominations of his people. Behold what great destruction did come upon them; and also because of their iniquities they were brought into bondage.

And were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Creator, and this because of their sincere repentance, they must unavoidably remain in bondage until now.

But behold, he did deliver them because they did humble themselves before him; and because they cried mightily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage; and thus doth the Lord work with his power in all cases among the children of men, extending the arm of mercy towards them that put their trust in him.

And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.

For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned in righteousness before him; and he trampleth under his feet the commandments of God;

And he enacteth laws, and sendeth them forth among his people, yea, laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war, and if he can he will destroy them; and thus an unrighteous king doth pervert the ways of all righteousness.

And now behold I say unto you, it is not expedient that such abominations should come upon you.

Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that ye may be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of the Lord.

- 26 Ko 'eni, 'oku 'ikai ko ha me'a maheni 'ene hoko ke fie ma'u 'e he le'o 'o e kakaí ha me'a 'oku fehanganhangai mo e me'a 'oku totonú; ka 'oku lahi 'a e fie ma'u 'e he kongasi'i ange 'o e kakaí ha me'a 'oku ta'etotonú; ko ia mou fai ki he me'á ni 'o fokotu'u ia ko ho'omou lao—ke fai ho'omou ngaahi ngāu'é 'o fakatatau ki he le'o 'o e kakaí.
- 27 Pea 'o ka hoko 'a e taimi 'a ia 'e fili ai 'e he le'o 'o e kakaí 'a e angahalá, ko e taimi ia 'e toki tō ai kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a e 'Otuá; 'io, ko e taimi ia te ne toki 'a'ahi ai kiate kimoutolu 'aki 'a e fū'u faka'auha lahi 'o hangē ko ia kuó ne fai ki he fonuá ni 'i mu'a atú.
- 28 Pea ko 'eni kapau 'oku 'i ai ha'amou kau fakamaau, pea 'oku 'ikai te nau fakamāu'i 'a kimoutolu 'o fakatatau mo e lao kuo fokotu'ú, 'oku ngofua ke mou fekau ke fakamāu'i 'a kinautolu 'e ha fakamaau mā'olunga ange.
- 29 Kapau 'oku 'ikai fakamaau 'aki 'a e fakamaau mā'oní'oni 'e ho'omou kau fakamaau mā'olunga, ke mou fekau ke fakataha mai ha ni'ihī 'o ho'omou kau fakamaau mā'ulalo angé, pea te nau fakamāu'i ho'omou kau fakamaau mā'olungá, 'o fakatatau ki he le'o 'o e kakaí.
- 30 Pea 'oku ou fekau kiate kimoutolu ke mou fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'i he manavahē ki he 'Eikí; pea 'oku ou fekau kiate kimoutolu ke mou fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, pea 'oua te mou ma'u ha tu'i; pea kapau 'e fai 'e he kakaí ni ha ngaahi angahala mo e ngaahi hia, 'e 'eke'i ia mei honau 'ulu 'onautolú.
- 31 He vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kuo fakatupu ha ngaahi angahala 'a e kakaí tokolahi 'e he ngaahi angahala 'a honau ngaahi tu'í; ko ia 'e 'eke'i 'enau ngaahi angahalá mei he 'ulu 'o honau ngaahi tu'í.
- 32 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou faka'amu ke 'oua na'a toe 'i ai 'a e ta'e-tu'unga tataú ni 'i he fonuá ni, kae tautautefito pē 'i he kakaí ni ko hoku kakaí; ka 'oku ou faka'amu ke hoko 'a e fonuá ni ko ha fonua 'o e tau'atāina, pea ke fiefa tataú 'a e tangata kotoa pē 'i he'ene ngaahi totonú mo e ngaahi faingamālié, lolotonga 'a e kei finangalo 'a e 'Eikí ke tau nofo'i mo ma'u 'a e fonuá, 'io, lolotonga 'a e kei nofo 'a hotau hakó 'i he funga 'o e fonuá.

Now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth anything contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser part of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall ye observe and make it your law—to do your business by the voice of the people.

And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity, then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; yea, then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has hitherto visited this land.

And now if ye have judges, and they do not judge you according to the law which has been given, ye can cause that they may be judged of a higher judge.

If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgments, ye shall cause that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered together, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of the people.

And I command you to do these things in the fear of the Lord; and I command you to do these things, and that ye have no king; that if these people commit sins and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads.

For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings.

And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, yea, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.

- 33 Pea na'e lahi mo e ngaahi me'a kehe na'e tohi kiate kinautolu 'e he tu'i ko Mōsaiá, 'o ne fakamatala'i kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi 'ahi'ahi mo e ngaahi faingata'a 'a ha tu'i mā'oni'oni, 'io, 'a e ngaahi mamahi kotoa pē 'o e laumālié koe'uhi ko honau kakaí, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e ngaahi lāunga 'a e kakaí ki honau tu'í; pea na'á ne fakamatala'i kotoa ia kiate kinautolu.
- 34 Pea na'á ne fakahā kiate kinautolu 'oku 'ikai totonu ke hoko 'a e ngaahi me'á ni; ka 'oku totonu ke hili 'a e kavengá ki he kakai kotoa pē, koe'uhi ke fua 'e he tangata taki taha 'a hono vaha'angataé.
- 35 Pea na'á ne fakamatala'i foki kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi faingata'a kotoa pē te nau fepaki mo ia, 'i he ma'u ha tu'i ta'e-mā'oni'oni ke pule'i 'a kinautolú.
- 36 'Io, 'a 'ene ngaahi angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia kotoa pē, mo e ngaahi tau kotoa pē, mo e ngaahi fakakikihi, mo e lilingi toto, mo e kaiha'a, mo e vete, mo e fai fe'auaki, mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga angahala kotoa pē, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai lava 'o tohi—'o ne fakahā kiate kinautolu 'oku 'ikai totonu ke hoko 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, pea 'oku ta'efe'unga 'aupito ia mo e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá.
- 37 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē, hili 'a e 'oatu 'e he tu'i ko Mōsaiá 'a e ngaahi me'á ni ki he kakaí, na'e fakaloto'i 'a kinautolu ki hono mo'oni 'o 'ene ngaahi folofolá.
- 38 Ko ia, na'a nau tuku 'enau holi ke ma'u ha tu'í, ka nau kamata ke fu'u faka'amu lahi ke ma'u 'e he kakai kotoa pē 'a e faingamālie tatau 'i he fonuá hono kotoa; 'io, pea na'e fakahā 'e he tangata taki taha 'a 'ene loto fiemālie ke fua 'a 'ene ngaahi angahala 'a'aná.
- 39 Ko ia na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fakatahataha mai 'i ha ngaahi fakataha'anga 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá, ke fakahā honau le'ó pe ko hai 'e hoko ko honau kau fakamaau ke fakamāu 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau mo e lao kuo fokotu'u ma'anautolú; pea na'a nau fu'u fiefia 'aupito koe'uhi ko e tau'atāina kuo foaki ange kiate kinautolu.

And many more things did king Mosiah write unto them, unfolding unto them all the trials and troubles of a righteous king, yea, all the travails of soul for their people, and also all the murmurings of the people to their king; and he explained it all unto them.

And he told them that these things ought not to be; but that the burden should come upon all the people, that every man might bear his part.

And he also unfolded unto them all the disadvantages they labored under, by having an unrighteous king to rule over them;

Yea, all his iniquities and abominations, and all the wars, and contentions, and bloodshed, and the stealing, and the plundering, and the committing of whoredoms, and all manner of iniquities which cannot be enumerated—telling them that these things ought not to be, that they were expressly repugnant to the commandments of God.

And now it came to pass, after king Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people they were convinced of the truth of his words.

Therefore they relinquished their desires for a king, and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land; yea, and every man expressed a willingness to answer for his own sins.

Therefore, it came to pass that they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them; and they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.

40 Pea na'a nau faka'au 'o mālohi 'i he 'ofa kia Mōsaia; 'io, na'a nau toka' i ia 'o lahi ange 'i ha toe tangata kehe; he na'e 'ikai te nau lau ia ko ha pule anga-kakaha 'a ia na'e kumi ke mā'u ha tupu, 'io, ki he koloa 'a ia 'okú ne faka'uli' i 'a e laumālié; he kuo 'ikai te ne fa'ao meiate kinautolu ha koloa, pea kuo 'ikai te ne fiefia 'i he lilingi 'o e totó; ka kuó ne fōkotu' u 'a e melinó 'i he fonuá, pea kuó ne tuku ki hono kakaí ke nau hao mei he fa'ahinga pōpula kotoa pē; ko ia, na'a nau toka' i ia, 'io, 'o lahi hake 'i he me'a 'oku lava ke fakamatalá.

41 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fakanofu ha kau fakamaau ke pule' i 'a kinautolu, pe fakamāu' i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki he laó, pea na'a nau fai 'eni 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá.

42 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fili 'a 'Alamā ke ne hoko ko e 'uluaki fakamaau lahí, pea ko e taula'eiki lahi foki ia, he na'e foaki 'e he'ene tamaí 'a e lakangá kiate ia, 'o ne tuku kiate ia 'a hono tokanga' i 'o e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'o e siasi.

43 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'a'eva 'a 'Alamā 'i he ngaahi hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eikí, 'o ne tauhi 'a 'ene ngaahi fekaú, 'o ne fai 'a e ngaahi fakamaau mā'oní'oni; pea na'e 'i ai 'a e melino ta'etuku 'i he fonuá hono kotoa.

44 Pea na'e kamata pehē 'a e pule 'a e kau fakamāu' i he fonua kotoa 'o Seilahemalá 'i he kakai kotoa pē na'e ui ko e kau Nīfaí; pea na'e hoko 'a 'Alamā ko e 'uluaki fakamaau lahí.

45 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pekia 'a 'ene tamaí, kuo ta'u 'e valungofulu mā ua 'a hono motu'á, kuó ne mo'ui ke fakahoko 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá.

46 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pekia foki mo Mōsaia 'i he ta'u hono tolungofulu mā tolu 'o 'ene pulé, kuo ta'u 'e onongofulu mā tolu 'a hono motu'á; 'a ia 'oku lau fakatahá ko e ta'u 'e nimangeau mā hiva talu mei he taimi na'e 'alu ai 'a Līhai mei Selūsalemá.

47 Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a e pule 'a e ngaahi tu'í ki he kau Nīfaí; pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a e ngaahi 'aho 'o 'Alamā, 'a ia na'á ne fōkotu' u honau siasí.

And they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah; yea, they did esteem him more than any other man; for they did not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain, yea, for that lucre which doth corrupt the soul; for he had not exacted riches of them, neither had he delighted in the shedding of blood; but he had established peace in the land, and he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage; therefore they did esteem him, yea, exceedingly, beyond measure.

And it came to pass that they did appoint judges to rule over them, or to judge them according to the law; and this they did throughout all the land.

And it came to pass that Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his father having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the church.

And now it came to pass that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord, and he did keep his commandments, and he did judge righteous judgments; and there was continual peace through the land.

And thus commenced the reign of the judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who were called the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

And now it came to pass that his father died, being eighty and two years old, having lived to fulfil the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that Mosiah died also, in the thirty and third year of his reign, being sixty and three years old; making in the whole, five hundred and nine years from the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

And thus ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Alma, who was the founder of their church.

Ko e Tohi 'a 'Alamā

ko e Foha 'o 'Alamā

Ko e fakamatala 'a 'Alamā, 'a ia ko e foha 'o 'Alamā, ko e 'uluaki fakamaau mo e fakamaau labi ki he kakai 'o Nīfai, kae 'umā 'ā foki mo e taula'eiki labi foki ki he siasī. Ko ha fakamatala ki he pule 'a e kau fakamāu, mo e ngaahi tau pea mo e ngaahi fakakikibi 'i he kakai. Kae 'umā 'ā foki ha fakamatala ki ha tau 'i he vaha 'a 'o e kau Nīfai mo e kau Leimanā, 'o fakatatau ki he lekooti 'a 'Alamā, ko e 'uluaki fakamaau mo e tu 'i fakamaau labi.

'Alamā I

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'uluaki ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai 'o Nīfai, 'o kamata mei he taimi ko 'eni 'o fai mai, kuo fononga atu 'a e tu 'i ia ko Mōsaiā 'i he hala 'o e māmanī kotoa, kuó ne fai 'a e tau lelei, 'o 'a'eva 'i he angatonu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, 'o 'ikai ke ne tuku ha tokotaha ke pule ko hono fetongi; ka neongo iá kuó ne fokotu'u ha ngaahi lao, pea na'e tali ia 'e he kakai; ko ia na'e pau ke nau talangofua ki he ngaahi lao kuó ne fokotu'ú.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'uluaki ta'u 'o e pule 'a 'Alamā 'i he nofo'anga fakamāu, na'e 'i ai ha tangata 'a ia na'e 'omai ki hono 'aó ke fakamāu 'i, ko ha tangata na'e sino lahi, pea na'e ongoongoa koe'uhi ko hono ivi lahi.
- 3 Pea kuó ne 'alu holo 'i he kakai, 'o malanga kiate kinautolu 'aki ha me'a na'á ne pehē ko e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'o ne fakafetau ki he siasī; 'o ne fakahā ki he kakai 'oku totonu ke manakoa 'a e taula'eiki mo e akonaki kotoa pē; pea 'oku 'ikai totonu ke nau ngāue 'aki honau nimá, ka 'oku totonu ke tauhi kinautolu 'e he kakai.
- 4 Pea na'á ne fakamo'oni 'i foki ki he kakai 'e fakamo'ui 'a e fa'ahinga 'o e kotoa 'o e tangatá 'i he 'aho faka'osí, pea 'oku 'ikai totonu ke nau manavahē pe tetetete, ka ke nau hanga hake honau 'ulú 'o fiefia; he kuo ngaohi 'e he 'Eikí 'a e kakai fulipē, pea kuó ne huhu 'i foki 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá; pea, 'i he ngata'angá, 'e ma'u 'e he kakai fulipē 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá.

The Book of Alma

the Son of Alma

The account of Alma, who was the son of Alma, the first and chief judge over the people of Nephi, and also the high priest over the Church. An account of the reign of the judges, and the wars and contentions among the people. And also an account of a war between the Nephites and the Lamanites, according to the record of Alma, the first and chief judge.

Alma I

Now it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, from this time forward, king Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth, having warred a good warfare, walking uprightly before God, leaving none to reign in his stead; nevertheless he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment-seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church; declaring unto the people that every priest and teacher ought to become popular; and they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people.

And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice; for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and, in the end, all men should have eternal life.

- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne ako 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito na'e tui ai 'a e tokolahi ki he'ene ngaahi leá, 'io na'e pehē fau honau tokolahí na'a nau kamata ai ke tauhi ia mo foaki kiate ia ha pa'anga.
- 6 Pea na'á ne faka'au 'o fielahe 'i he hīkisia 'o hono lotó, mo kofu 'aki 'a e kofu fakataungata'a 'aupito, 'io, 'o a'u ki he'ene kamata ke fokotu'u ha siasi 'o tatau mo e anga 'o 'ene malangá.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē lolotonga 'ene 'alu atu, ke malanga kiate kinautolu na'a nau tui ki he'ene leá, na'á ne fetaulaki ai mo ha tangata na'e kau ki he siasi 'o e 'Otuá, 'io, ko ha toko taha 'o honau kau akonakí; peá ne kamata ke fakakikihi mālohi mo ia, koe'uhi ke ne tohoaki 'i atu 'a e kakai 'o e siasí; ka na'e ta'ofi ia 'e he tangatá, 'o ne valokí 'i ia 'aki 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Otuá.
- 8 Pea ko 'eni ko e hingoa 'o e tangatá ko Kitione; pea ko ia ia 'a e tokotaha 'a ia na'e hoko ko ha me'a ngāue 'i he to'ukupu 'o e 'Otuá ke fakahaofi 'a e kakai 'o Limihaí mei he nofo pōpulá.
- 9 Pea ko 'eni, ko e me'a 'i he ta'ofi ia 'e Kitione 'aki 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Otuá ko ia na'á ne 'ita ai kia Kitione, 'o ne unuhi 'ene heletaá 'o kamata ke taa 'i ia. Ka koe'uhi ko Kitione foki kuó ne fu'u motu'a, na'e 'ikai ai te ne lava 'o matu'uaki 'ene ngaahi taá, ko ia na'e tāmata 'i ai ia 'i he heletā.
- 10 Pea ko e tangata na'á ne taa 'i iá, na'e 'ave ia 'e he kakai 'o e siasí, pea na'e taki mai ia ki he 'ao 'o 'Alamaá, ke fakamāu 'i ia 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi hia kuó ne faí.
- 11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tu'u ia 'i he 'ao 'o 'Alamaá 'o taukapo 'i ia 'i he loto ta'e-manavahē lahi.
- 12 Ka na'e pehē ange 'e 'Alamā kiate ia: Vakai, ko hono fuofua fakahū mai 'eni 'o e ngāue fakataula'eiki kākaá ki he kakaí ni. Pea vakai, 'oku 'ikai ngata 'i ho'o halaia 'i he ngāue fakataula'eiki kākaá, kā kuó ke feinga ke fakamālohi 'i ke tali ia 'aki 'a e heletā; pea ka ne fakamālohi 'i 'a e ngāue fakataula'eiki kākaá ke tali 'e he kakaí ni pehē 'e iku ia ki honau faka'auha faka'aufuli.
- 13 Pea kuó ke lilingi 'a e toto 'o ha tangata mā'oni'oni, 'io, ko ha tangata kuó ne fai ha fu'u lelei lahi 'i he kakaí ni; pea kapau te mau fakamo'ui koe 'e tō kiate kimautolu 'a e sāuni ki hono totó.

And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, yea, and even began to establish a church after the manner of his preaching.

And it came to pass as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the church of God, yea, even one of their teachers; and he began to contend with him sharply, that he might lead away the people of the church; but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words of God.

Now the name of the man was Gideon; and it was he who was an instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage.

Now, because Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. Now Gideon being stricken with many years, therefore he was not able to withstand his blows, therefore he was slain by the sword.

And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the church, and was brought before Alma, to be judged according to the crimes which he had committed.

And it came to pass that he stood before Alma and pled for himself with much boldness.

But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold, thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction.

And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, yea, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

- 14 Ko ia 'oku fakamaaumatea koe 'o fakatatau ki he lao kuo fokotu'u ma'atautolu e Mōsaia, ko hotau tu'i fakamuimu'i; pea kuo loto ki ai 'a e kaka'i ni, ko ia 'oku pau ke talangofua 'a e kaka'i ni ki he laó.
- 15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'ave ia; pea ko hono hingoá ko Nēhoa; pea nau 'ave ia ki he tumutumu 'o e mo'unga ko Manataí, pea na'e ngaohi ai ia, kae kehe na'á ne fakahā 'i he 'ao 'o e ngaahi langí mo e māmaní, ko e me'a kuó ne ako ki he kaka'i 'oku faikehekehe ia mo e folofola 'a e 'Otuá; pea na'á ne fepaki ai mo ha mate'anga fakamā.
- 16 Ka neongo iá, na'e 'ikai ke fakangata 'e he me'a ni 'a e mafola 'a e ngāue fakataula'eiki kākaá 'i he fonuá; he na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi na'a nau manako ki he ngaahi me'a laukau 'o e māmaní, pea na'a nau 'alu holo 'o malanga 'aki 'a e ngaahi tokāteline loí; pea na'a nau fai ia koe'uhi ko e ngaahi koloa mo e lāngilangi.
- 17 Ka neongo iá, na'a nau manavahē ke loi, telia na'a 'ilo ia, ko e me'a 'i he ilifia ki he laó, he na'e tautea 'i 'a e fa'ahinga na'e loí; ko ia na'a nau 'ai ke hangē ko ha'anau malanga pē 'o fakatatau mo 'enau tuí; pea ko 'eni na'e 'ikai ke 'i ai hano mālohi 'o e laó ki ha tangata tu'unga 'i he'ene tuí.
- 18 Pea na'a nau manavahē ke kaiha'a, ko e me'a 'i he ilifia ki he laó, he na'e tautea 'i 'a e fa'ahinga ko iá; pea na'a nau manavahē foki ke fa'ao fakamālohi mei ha taha, pe fakapō, he ko ia ia na'e fakapoó na'e tautea 'aki ia 'a e mate.
- 19 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē 'ilonga ia na'e 'ikai kau ki he siasi 'o e 'Otuá na'a nau kamata ke fakatanga 'i 'a kinautolu na'e kau ki he siasi 'o e 'Otuá, pea kuo nau to'o kiate kinautolu 'a e huafa 'o Kalaisí.
- 20 'Io, na'a nau fakatanga 'i 'a kinautolu, 'o fakamamahi 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga lea kotoa pē, pea na'e fai 'eni koe'uhi ko 'enau loto-fakatōkilaló; he na'e 'ikai te nau pōlepole 'i honau mata 'onautolú, pea ko e me'a 'i he'enu fefakahā 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'iate kinautolu, ta'e-ha-pa'anga, pea ta'e-ha-totongi.
- 21 Na'e 'i ai foki ha lao mamafa 'i he kaka'i 'o e siasí, ke 'oua na'a 'i ai ha tangata, 'oku kau ki he siasí, 'e tu'u hake 'o fakatanga 'i 'a kinautolu na'e 'ikai ke kau ki he siasí, pea ke 'oua na'a 'i ai ha fefakatanga 'aki 'iate kinautolu.

Therefore thou art condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law.

And it came to pass that they took him; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti, and there he was caused, or rather did acknowledge, between the heavens and the earth, that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God; and there he suffered an ignominious death.

Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor.

Nevertheless, they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief; and now the law could have no power on any man for his belief.

And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.

But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church of God began to persecute those that did belong to the church of God, and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

Yea, they did persecute them, and afflict them with all manner of words, and this because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes, and because they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money and without price.

Now there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.

- 22 Ka neongo iá, na'e 'i ai hanau tokolahi 'a ia na'e faka'au ke pōlepole, 'o nau kamata ke fefakakikihi'aki mālohi mo honau ngaahi filí, 'io 'o a'u ki he fetuki'aki; 'io, na'a nau fetuki'aki honau nimá.
- 23 Pea na'e fai 'eni 'i hono ua 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a 'Alamaá, pea ko e tupu'anga ia 'o ha faingata'a lahi ki he siasí, 'io, ko e tupu'anga ia 'o ha sivi faingata'a lahi ki he siasí.
- 24 He kuo fakafefeka 'a e loto 'o e tokolahi, pea na'e tāmata'e 'i honau ngaahi hingoá, pea na'e 'ikai ke toe manatu' 'i a kinautolu fakataha mo e kakai 'o e 'Otuá. Pea na'e 'i ai foki ha tokolahi na'a nau mavahe meiate kinautolu.
- 25 Na'e hoko 'eni ko ha fu'u 'ahi'ahi lahi ki he fa'ahinga 'a ia na'e tu'u ma'u 'i he tuí; ka neongo ia, na'a nau tu'u ma'u mo tu'u ta'e-fa'a-ue'i 'i he tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, pea na'a nau tali 'i he fa'a kātaki 'a e fakatanga na'e taulōfu'u mai kiate kinautolú.
- 26 Pea 'i he tuku 'e he kau taula'eikí 'enau ngāue ke ako 'i 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá ki he kakai, na'e tuku foki 'e he kakai 'a 'enau ngaahi ngāue ke fanongo ki he folofola 'a e 'Otuá. Pea 'i he hili hono fakahā 'e he taula'eikí kiate kinautolu 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá na'a nau toe foki kotoa pē 'i honau tūkuingatá ki he 'enau ngaahi ngāue; pea na'e 'ikai ke lau 'e he taula'eikí 'oku lelei ange ia 'iate kinautolu 'oku fanongo kiate iá, he na'e 'ikai lelei ange 'a e tokotaha malangá 'i he tokotaha fanongó, pea 'ikai foki ke lelei ange 'a e faiakó 'i he tokotaha 'oku akó; pea ko ia na'a nau tu'unga tatau kotoa pē, 'o nau ngāue kātōa, ko e tangata taki taha 'o fakatau ki hono ivi.
- 27 Pea na'a nau fefoaki'aki 'i he 'enau ngaahi me'á, ko e tangata taki taha 'o fakatau ki he me'a 'okú ne ma'ú, ki he masivá, mo e faingata'a 'iá, mo e mahakí, pea mo e mamahi'iá; pea na'e 'ikai te nau kofu 'aki 'a e kofu fakataungata'a, ka na'e ma'a 'enau teú mo nau matamatalelei.
- 28 Pea na'e pehē 'enau fakamā'opo'opo 'a e ngaahi me'a 'o e siasí; pea ko ia ai na'a nau toe kamata ke melino ma'u ai pē, neongo hono kotoa 'o honau ngaahi fakatanga'í.

Nevertheless, there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows; yea, they would smite one another with their fists.

Now this was in the second year of the reign of Alma, and it was a cause of much affliction to the church; yea, it was the cause of much trial with the church.

For the hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, that they were remembered no more among the people of God. And also many withdrew themselves from among them.

Now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, and they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them.

And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

And they did impart of their substance, every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.

And thus they did establish the affairs of the church; and thus they began to have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions.

29 Pea ko 'eni, ko'e uhi ko e ma'uma'uluta 'a e siasí na'a nau faka'au ai ke fu'u koloa'ia 'aupito, 'o nau ma'u lahi 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'a ia na'e 'aonga ke nau ma'ú—pea tokolahi 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí, mo e fanga manu sisino 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e kēleni lahi, mo e koula, pea mo e siliva, pea mo e ngaahi me'a mahu'inga, mo e silika lahi foki mo e līneni tu'ovalevale, pea mo e fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e tupenu lelei 'oku 'ikai fu'u mahu'ingá.

30 Pea ko ia, 'i he'enau tu'umālié, na'e 'ikai te nau teke'i ha tokotaha 'a ia na'e tēlefua, pē na'e fiekaia, pe na'e feinua, pe na'e puke, pe kuo 'ikai fafanga'i; pea na'e 'ikai te nau tuku honau lotó ki he ngaahi koloa; ko ia na'a nau angalelei ki he kakai kotoa pē, 'o tatau ki he lalahi mo e iiki, 'a e pōpula mo e tau'atāina, 'a e tangata mo e fēfine, pe na'e ta'ekau ki he siasí pe na'e kau ki he siasí, 'o 'ikai ke nau filifilimānako pe ko hai na'e masivá.

31 Pea ko ia na'a nau tu'umālie 'o nau hoko 'o koloa'ia lahi ange 'aupito 'iate kinautolu na'e 'ikai ke kau ki honau siasí.

32 He ko kinautolu na'e 'ikai kau ki honau siasí na'a nau fakafemālie 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he ngaahi ngāue mana fakafa'ahikehe, pea mo e tauhi tamapuá pe ko e fakapikopiko, pea 'i he talanoa laulaunoá, mo e ngaahi femeheka'akí pea mo e moveuveu; 'o nau kofu 'akí 'a e kofu fakataungata'a; 'o nau fielahi 'i he hīkisia 'o honau mata 'onautolú; pea na'a nau fakatanga'i, mo loi, mo kaiha'a, mo fa'ao fakamālohi, mo fai 'a e ngaahi fe'auaki, mo e fakapō, pea mo e fa'ahinga fai angahala kotoa pē; ka neongo iá, na'e fakamālohi'i 'a e laó kiate kinautolu kātoa 'a ia na'e maumau'i iá, 'o fakatatau ki he me'a na'e lavá.

33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono fakamālohi pehe'i 'a e laó kiate kinautolú, 'o mamahi 'a e tangata kotoa pē 'o fakatatau ki he me'a kuó ne faí, na'a nau faka'au 'o melino ange, 'o nau manavahē ke fai ha angahala telia na'a 'ilo'i; ko ia na'e ai ha melino lahi 'i he kakai 'o Nīfaí 'o a'u mai ki hono nima 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú.

And now, because of the steadiness of the church they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need—an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.

And thus, in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

And thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church.

For those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness; nevertheless, the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress it, inasmuch as it was possible.

And it came to pass that by thus exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to that which he had done, they became more still, and durst not commit any wickedness if it were known; therefore, there was much peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

‘Alamā 2

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he kamata hono nima ‘o e ta‘u ‘o ‘enau pulé na‘e kamakamata ke ‘i ai ha fefakakikihi‘aki ‘i he kakaí; he na‘e ‘i ai ha tangata ‘e toko taha, na‘e ui ko ‘Amelikai, ko ha tangata fu‘u olopoto ia, ‘io, ko ha tangata poto ‘i he poto ‘o e māmaní, ko e tangata mei he fa‘ahinga na‘e mei ai ‘a e tangata ‘a ia na‘e tāmāte‘i ‘a Kitione ‘aki ‘a e heletaá, ‘a ia na‘e tāmāte‘i ‘o fakatatau ki he laó—
- 2 Pea ko e ‘Amelikai ko ‘ení, ‘i he‘ene olopoto, kuó ne tohoaki‘i ‘a e kakai tokolahi kiate ia; ‘io ‘o a‘u ki he‘enau fu‘u mālohi; pea nau kamata ke feinga ke fokotu‘u ‘a ‘Amelikai ko ha tu‘i ki he kakaí.
- 3 Pea na‘e fakatupu-hoha‘a ‘eni ki he kakai ‘o e siasí, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo e fa‘ahinga kotoa kuo ‘ikai kākaa‘i ‘e he ngaahi lea fakaoloolo ‘a ‘Amelikai; he na‘a nau ‘ilo ‘o fakatatau ki he laó kuo pau ke fokotu‘u ‘a e ngaahi me‘a peheé ‘i he le‘o ‘o e kakaí.
- 4 Ko ia, kapau ‘e lava ma‘u ‘e ‘Amelikai ‘a e loto ‘o e kakaí, he ko ha tangata angakovi ia; te ne to‘o ai meiate kinautolu ‘enau ngaahi totonú mo e ngaahi faingamālie ‘o e siasí, he ko ‘ene fakakaukau ke faka‘auha ‘a e siasi ‘o e ‘Otuá.
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e fakataha mai ‘a e kakaí ‘i he ngaahi feitu‘u kotoa pē ‘o e fonuá, ko e tangata taki taha ‘o fakatatau ki hono lotó, pe ko ‘enau loto pe ta‘eloto kia ‘Amelikai, ‘i ha ngaahi fakataha‘anga kehekehe, pea na‘e lahi ‘enau feke‘ike‘i mo e fakakikihi fakafo‘iate kinautolu.
- 6 Pea na‘e pehē ‘enau fakataha ke fakahā honau loto ‘o kau ki he me‘á; pea na‘e fakahā ia ‘i he ‘ao ‘o e kau fakamāú.
- 7 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ‘ikai talí ‘e he loto ‘o e kakaí ‘a ‘Amelikai, pea na‘e ‘ikai ai fokotu‘u ia ko e tu‘i ki he kakaí.
- 8 Ko ‘eni na‘e langaki ‘e he me‘á ni ha fu‘u fiefia ‘i he loto ‘o kinautolu ‘a ia na‘e ta‘eloto kiate iá; ka na‘e faka‘ai‘ai ‘e ‘Amelikai ‘a e fa‘ahinga ‘a ia na‘e loto kiate iá ke nau ‘ita kiate kinautolu ‘a ia na‘e ‘ikai ke loto kiate iá.
- 9 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘a nau kātoa fakataha mai ‘a kinautolu, ‘o nau fakanofa ‘a ‘Amelikai ke ne tu‘i kiate kinautolu.

Alma 2

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fifth year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people; for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very cunning man, yea, a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed according to the law—

Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be a king over the people.

Now this was alarming to the people of the church, and also to all those who had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici; for they knew that according to their law that such things must be established by the voice of the people.

Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the church; for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and wonderful contentions one with another.

And thus they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices concerning the matter; and they were laid before the judges.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici, that he was not made king over the people.

Now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those who were against him; but Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against those who were not in his favor.

And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.

10 Ko 'eni 'i he hili hono fakanofo 'o 'Amelikai ko e tu'i kiate kinautolú na'á ne fekau kiate kinautolu ke nau to'o mahafu 'o tau'i honau kāingá; pea na'á ne fai 'eni ke ne ngaohi 'a kinautolu ke nau mo'ulaloa kiate ia.

11 Ko 'eni na'e ui 'a e kakai 'o 'Amelikaí 'i he hingoa 'o 'Amelikaí, pea na'e ui 'a kinautolu ko e kau 'Amelikai; pea ko hono toé na'e ui ko e kau Nīfai, pe ko e kakai 'o e 'Otuá.

12 Ko ia na'e mahino ki he kakai 'o e kau Nīfai 'a e fakakaukau 'a e kau 'Amelikaí, pea ko ia na'a nau teuteu ai ke fepaki mo kinautolu; 'io, na'a nau fakamahafu 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi heletā, mo e ngaahi hele piko, mo e ngaahi kaufana, mo e ngaahi ngahau, mo e ngaahi maka, mo e ngaahi maka-tā, pea mo e ngaahi mahafu tau kehekehe kotoa 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē.

13 Pea ko ia na'a nau teuteu ke fepaki mo e kau 'Amelikai 'i he taimi te nau 'oho mai aí. Pea na'e fili ha kau 'eikitau, mo e kau 'eikitau mā'olunga ange, pea mo e 'eikitau lahi, 'o fakataua ki honau tokolahí.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakamahafu 'e 'Amelikai 'a 'ene kau tangatá 'aki 'a e ngaahi mahafu tau kehekehe kotoa 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē; pea na'á ne fakanofo foki ha kau pule mo ha kau taki ki hono kakai, ke taki 'a kinautolu ke tau mo honau kāingá.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e a'u mai 'a e kau 'Amelikaí ki he mo'unga ko 'Amenaihū 'a ia na'e tu'u 'i he fakahahake 'o e vaitafe ko Saitoné, 'a ia na'e tafe atu 'i he tafa'aki 'o e fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea na'a nau kamata ke tau ai mo e kau Nīfai.

16 Ko 'eni ko 'Alamā, ko e tu'i fakamaau lahi mo e pule 'o e kakai 'o Nīfai, ko ia na'á ne 'alu hake ai mo hono kakai, 'io, fakataha mo 'ene kau 'eikitaú pea mo e kau 'eikitau pulé, 'io, 'o ne taki 'ene ngaahi kau tau ke tau mo e kau 'Amelikaí.

17 Pea na'a nau kamata ke tā 'a e kau 'Amelikaí 'i he funga mo'unga 'i he fakahahake 'o Saitoné. Pea na'e tau 'a e kau 'Amelikaí mo e kau Nīfai 'i he fu'u ivi lahi, pea na'e tupunga ai 'a e tō ha tokolahi 'o e kau Nīfai 'i he 'ao 'o e kau 'Amelikaí.

18 Ka neongo iá na'e fakamālohi 'e he 'Eikí 'a e nima 'o e kau Nīfai, 'o nau tāmatai ai 'a e kau 'Amelikaí 'i he fu'u faka'auha lahi, pea na'a nau kamata ai ke feholaiki meiate kinautolu.

Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their brethren; and this he did that he might subject them to him.

Now the people of Amlici were distinguished by the name of Amlici, being called Amlicites; and the remainder were called Nephites, or the people of God.

Therefore the people of the Nephites were aware of the intent of the Amlicites, and therefore they did prepare to meet them; yea, they did arm themselves with swords, and with cimeters, and with bows, and with arrows, and with stones, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons of war, of every kind.

And thus they were prepared to meet the Amlicites at the time of their coming. And there were appointed captains, and higher captains, and chief captains, according to their numbers.

And it came to pass that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every kind; and he also appointed rulers and leaders over his people, to lead them to war against their brethren.

And it came to pass that the Amlicites came upon the hill Amnihu, which was east of the river Sidon, which ran by the land of Zarahemla, and there they began to make war with the Nephites.

Now Alma, being the chief judge and the governor of the people of Nephi, therefore he went up with his people, yea, with his captains, and chief captains, yea, at the head of his armies, against the Amlicites to battle.

And they began to slay the Amlicites upon the hill east of Sidon. And the Amlicites did contend with the Nephites with great strength, insomuch that many of the Nephites did fall before the Amlicites.

Nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hand of the Nephites, that they slew the Amlicites with great slaughter, that they began to flee before them.

- 19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuli 'e he kau Nīfai 'a e kau 'Amelikaí 'o a'u ki he 'osi 'a e 'aho ko iá, pea na'a nau tāmata'e 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he fu'u faka'auha lahi, ko ia na'e mate 'i he kau 'Amelikaí 'a e toko taha mano ua afe nimangeau tolungofulu mā ua; pea na'e mate 'i he kau Nīfai 'a e toko ono afe nimangeau onongofulu mā ua.
- 20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'ikai toe lava 'e 'Alamā ke kei tuli 'a e kau 'Amelikaí, na'a ne fekau ke fokotu'u 'e hono kakaí 'a honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'i he tele'a ko Kitioné, 'a ia na'e tauhingoa 'a e tele'a ki he Kitione ko ia 'a ia na'e tāmata'e 'i he nima 'o Nēhoá 'i he heletā; pea na'e fokotu'u 'e he kau Nīfai 'a honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'i he tele'a ko 'eni 'i he pō.
- 21 Pea na'e fekau atu 'e 'Alamā ha kau fakaasiasi ke muimui 'i he toenga 'o e kau 'Amelikaí, koe'uhí ke ne lava 'o 'ilo 'i 'enau ngaahi fakakaukau mo 'enau ngaahi filio'í, koe'uhí ke ne malu 'i ai ia meiate kinautolu, koe'uhi ke ne malu 'i hono kakaí mei he faka'auhá.
- 22 Ko 'eni ko e fa'ahinga kuó ne fekau atu ke nau lamalama 'a e 'apitanga 'o e kau 'Amelikaí na'e ui ko Seilami, mo Aminoa, mo Manatai, pea mo Limihea; ko e fa'ahinga ko 'eni ko kinautolu ia na'e 'alu atu mo hanau kau tangata ke lamalama 'a e 'apitanga 'o e kau 'Amelikaí.
- 23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he pongipongi hono hokó na'a nau foki fakavavevave mai ki he 'apitanga 'o e kau Nīfai, kuo nau fu'u ofo mo fu'u manavahē lahi, 'o nau pehē:
- 24 Vakai, na'a mau muimui ki he fononga 'a e kau 'Amelikaí, pea ko e me'a na'e 'āsili ai 'emau fu'u 'ohovalé, na'a mau sio 'i he fonua ko Mainoní 'i he feitu'u ki kō atu 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'i he hala ki he fonua ko Nīfai, ki ha fu'u tau tokolahi 'o e kau Leimaná; pea vakai kuo 'alu atu 'a e kau 'Amelikaí 'o kau mo kinautolu;
- 25 Pea kuo nau 'oho atu ki hotau kāinga 'i he fonua ko iá; pea 'oku nau feholaiki meiate kinautolu mo 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí, mo honau ngaahi uaifí, pea mo 'enau fānaú, ki hotau koló; pea kapau 'e 'ikai te tau fakavavevave te nau puke hotau koló, pea 'e tāmata'e 'i 'etau ngaahi tamaí, mo hotau ngaahi uaifí, mo 'etau fānaú.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day, and did slay them with much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls.

And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of Gideon, the valley being called after that Gideon who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night.

And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and their plots, whereby he might guard himself against them, that he might preserve his people from being destroyed.

Now those whom he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who went out with their men to watch the camp of the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste, being greatly astonished, and struck with much fear, saying:

Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon, above the land of Zarahemla, in the course of the land of Nephi, we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites; and behold, the Amlicites have joined them;

And they are upon our brethren in that land; and they are fleeing before them with their flocks, and their wives, and their children, towards our city; and except we make haste they obtain possession of our city, and our fathers, and our wives, and our children be slain.

26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ave 'e he kakai 'o Nīfaí honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí, 'o nau ō mei he tele'a ko Kitioné ki honau koló, 'a ia ko e kolo ko Seilahemalá.

27 Pea vakai, fé'unga mo 'enau a'a atu 'i he vaitafe ko Saitoné kuo 'oho mai kiate kinautolu 'a e kau Leimaná pea mo e kau 'Amelikaí, 'oku nau fu'u tokolahí 'o hangē nai ko e 'one'one 'o e tahí, ke faka'auha 'a kinautolu.

28 Ka neongo iá, kuo fakamālohi 'a e kau Nīfaí 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí, 'i he'enua lotu lahi kiate ia ke ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nima 'o honau ngaahi filí, ko ia na'e 'afio mai 'a e 'Eikí ki he'enua tangí, 'o ne fakamālohi 'a kinautolu, pea na'e tō 'a e kau Leimaná mo e kau 'Amelikaí 'i honau 'aó.

29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tau 'a 'Alamā mo 'Amelikai 'aki 'a e heletā, 'o na fehangahangai; pea na fefai'aki 'o fu'u mālohi 'aupito.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko 'Alamā, koe'uhi ko ha tangata ia 'a e 'Otuá, pea 'i hono ue'i hake ia 'e ha fu'u tui lahi, na'á ne kaila, ai 'o pehē: 'E 'Eiki, 'alo'ofa mai 'o fakahaofi 'eku mo'uí, koe'uhi ke u hoko ko ha me'angāue 'i ho to'ukupú ke fakahaofi mo malu'i 'a e kakai ni.

31 Pea 'i he 'osi lea 'aki 'e 'Alamā 'a e ngaahi lea ní na'á ne toe tau mo 'Amelikai; pea na'e fakamālohi ia, ko ia na'á ne tāmata'e 'i 'a 'Amelikai 'aki 'a e heletā.

32 Pea na'á ne tau foki mo e tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná; ka na'e hola fakaholoholomui 'a e tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná meia 'Alamā 'o ne fekau 'ene kau le'ó ke tau mo 'Alamā.

33 Ka ko 'Alamā, mo 'ene kau le'ó, na'a nau tau mo e kau le'ó 'a e tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná kae 'oua kuó ne tā mo tuli fakaholomui 'a kinautolu.

34 Pea ko ia na'e pehē 'ene faka'atā 'a e kelekelé, pe ko e kauvai, 'a ia na'e 'i he fakahihifo 'o e vaitafe ko Saitoné, 'o ne laku 'a e ngaahi 'anga'anga 'o e kau Leimana kuo toó ki he ngaahi vai 'o Saitoné, koe'uhi ke lava ke ma'u 'e hono kakai ha potu 'atā ke 'alu atu 'o tau mo e kau Leimana mo e kau 'Amelikai na'e 'i he kauvai fakahihifo 'o e vaitafe ko Saitoné.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents, and departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their city, which was the city of Zarahemla.

And behold, as they were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them.

Nevertheless, the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord, having prayed mightily to him that he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies, therefore the Lord did hear their cries, and did strengthen them, and the Lamanites and the Amlicites did fall before them.

And it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another.

And it came to pass that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.

Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword.

And he also contended with the king of the Lamanites; but the king of the Lamanites fled back from before Alma and sent his guards to contend with Alma.

But Alma, with his guards, contended with the guards of the king of the Lamanites until he slew and drove them back.

And thus he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was on the west of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of Sidon, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon.

35 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē hili 'enau a'a atu kotoa pē 'i he
vaitafe ko Saitoné na'e kamata ke feholaki 'a e kau
Leimaná pea mo e kau 'Amelikaí meiate kinautolu,
neongo 'enau fu'u tokolahí mo e 'ikai ke fá'a lava 'o lau 'a
kinautolú.

36 Pea na'a nau feholaki mei he kau Nīfaí ki he feitu'u
maomaonganoa na'e tu'u ki he hihifo mo e tokelaú, ki
kō atu 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonuá; pea na'e tuli 'a
kinautolu 'e he kau Nīfaí 'aki honau tūkuingatá, 'o nau
tāmate'i 'a kinautolu.

37 'To, na'a nau fepaki mo kinautolu 'i he feitu'u kotoa
pē, pea na'e tāmate'i mo tuli 'a kinautolu, kae 'oua kuo
fakamovetevete 'a kinautolu ki he hihifó mo e tokelaú,
kae 'oua kuo nau a'u ki he feitu'u maomaonganoa, 'a ia
na'e ui ko Heamaunití; pea ko e kongá ia 'o e feitu'u
maomaonganoá 'a ia na'e hulu ai 'a e fanga manu kaivaó
mo e fanga manu fekaí.

38 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e mate 'a e tokolahi 'i he
feitu'u maomaonganoá ko e tupu mei honau ngaahi
laveá, pea na'e keina 'e he fanga manu kaivao ko iá kae
'uma'ā foki mo e fanga manu puna fekaí 'o e 'ataá; pea
kuo 'ilo'i honau ngaahi huí, mo fokotu'utu'u 'i he funga
kelekelé.

And it came to pass that when they had all crossed
the river Sidon that the Lamanites and the Amlicites be-
gan to flee before them, notwithstanding they were so
numerous that they could not be numbered.

And they fled before the Nephites towards the
wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the
borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them
with their might, and did slay them.

Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and
driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the
north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was
called Hermounts; and it was that part of the wilderness
which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.

And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness
of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and
also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been
found, and have been heaped up on the earth.

‘Alamā 3

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ko e kau Nīfai ko ia na‘e ‘ikai ke mate ‘i he ngaahi mahafu taú, hili ‘enau tanu ‘a e fa‘ahinga kuo toó—pea ko ‘eni na‘e ‘ikai ke lau hono tokolahi ‘o kinautolu na‘e maté koe‘uhi ko hono fu‘u lahi fau honau tokolahí—hili ‘enau tanu ‘a honau kakai maté, na‘a nau foki kotoa ki honau ngaahi fonuá, mo honau ngaahi falé, mo honau ngaahi uafí, pea mo ‘enau fānaú.
- 2 Ko ‘eni kuo tāmata‘i foki ‘a e kakai fefine mo e fānau tokolahi ‘i he heletā, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo e tokolahi ‘o ‘enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí mo ‘enau ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí; pea mo e lahi foki ‘o ‘enau ngaahi ngoue kelení ne faka‘auha, he kuo molomoloki hifo ia ‘e he kakai ‘o e ngaahi kau taú.
- 3 Pea ko ‘eni ko e tokolahi ‘o e kau Leimana pea mo e kau ‘Amelikai kuo tō ‘i he kauvai ‘o e vaitafe ko Saitoné na‘e laku ‘a kinautolu ki he ngaahi vai ‘o Saitoné; pea vakai ko honau ngaahi huí ‘oku ‘i he ngaahi potu loloto ‘o e tahí, pea ‘oku fu‘u lahi.
- 4 Pea na‘e ‘ilonga ‘a e kau ‘Amelikaí mei he kau Nīfaí, he kuo nau faka‘ilonga ‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘aki ‘a e lanu kulokula ‘i honau la‘é ‘o hangē ko e kau Leimaná; ka neongo íá kuo ‘ikai ke nau fakatekefua honau ‘ulú ‘o hangē koe kau Leimaná.
- 5 Ko ‘eni kuo fakatekefua ‘a e ‘ulu ‘o e kau Leimaná; pea na‘a nau telefua, tuku kehe pē ha kili‘imanu na‘e nono‘o ki honau kongalotó, pea mo honau teunga taú foki, ‘a ia na‘e nono‘o kiate kinautolú, pea mo ‘enau ngaahi kaufaná, mo ‘enau ngaahi ngahaú, mo ‘enau ngaahi maká, mo ‘enau ngaahi maka-taá, pea mo e alā me‘a peheé.
- 6 Pea na‘e lanu fakapo‘upo‘uli ‘a e kili ‘o e kau Leimaná, ‘o tatau mo e faka‘ilonga kuo ‘ai ki he‘enau ngaahi tamaí, ‘a ia ko ha fakamala‘ia kiate kinautolu ko e me‘a ‘i he‘enau maumau-fonó pea mo ‘enau angatu‘u ki honau ngaahi tokouá, ‘a ia na‘e kau ai ‘a Nīfai, mo Sēkope, mo Siosefa, pea mo Samu, ‘a ia ko ha kau tangata angatonu mo mā‘oní‘oni.

Alma 3

And it came to pass that the Nephites who were not slain by the weapons of war, after having buried those who had been slain—now the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number—after they had finished burying their dead they all returned to their lands, and to their houses, and their wives, and their children.

Now many women and children had been slain with the sword, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men.

And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many.

And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites.

Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor, which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against their brethren, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men.

7 Pea na'e feinga 'a honau ngaahi tokouá ke faka'auha 'a kinautolu, ko ia na'e fakamala'ia'i 'a kinautolu; pea na'e 'ai 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ha faka'ilonga kiate kinautolu, 'io, kia Leimana mo Lēmiuela, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e ngaahi foha 'o 'Isimelí, mo e kau fefine 'o e ha'a 'Isimelí.

8 Pea na'e fai 'eni koe'uhi ke 'ilonga honau hakó mei he hako 'o honau ngaahi tokouá, koe'uhi ke lava ai 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'o malu'i hono kakaí, ke 'oua na'a nau fefiofi 'o tui ki ha ngaahi talatukufakaholo hala 'a ia 'e hoko ko honau faka'auha'angá.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'ilonga ia na'e fio hono hakó mo e hako 'o e kau Leimaná na'á ne fakahoko 'a e mala'ia pē ko iá ki hono hakó.

10 Ko ia, 'ilonga ia na'á ne tuku ke tohoaki'i atu ia 'e he kau Leimaná na'e ui ia 'i he hingoa pē ko iá, pea na'e 'ai ha faka'ilonga kiate ia.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'ilonga ia na'e 'ikai fie tui ki he talatukufakaholo 'a e kau Leimaná, ka na'á ne tui ki he ngaahi lekooti 'a ia na'e 'omi mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí, 'a ia na'e totonú, 'a ia na'e tui ki he ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá 'o nau tauhi ia, na'e ui 'a kinautolu ko e kau Nīfaí, pe ko e kakaí 'o Nīfaí, 'o fai atu mei he taimi ko iá—

12 Pea ko ia 'a kinautolu 'a ia kuo tauhi 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'oku mo'oni 'o honau kakaí, kae 'uma'ā foki pea mo e kakaí 'o e kau Leimaná.

13 Ko 'eni te tau toe foki ki he kau 'Amelikaí, he na'e 'ai foki kiate kinautolu ha faka'ilonga; 'io, na'a nau 'ai 'e kinautolu 'a e faka'ilonga kiate kinautolu, 'io, ko ha faka'ilonga lanu-kulokula 'i honau la'é.

14 Ko ia kuo fakamo'oni'i ai 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, he ko 'eni 'a e ngaahi folofola na'á ne folofola 'aki kia Nīfaí: Vakai, kuó u fakamala'ia'i 'a e kau Leimaná, pea te u 'ai ha faka'ilonga kiate kinautolu koe'uhí ke fakamavahe'i 'a kinautolu mo honau hakó meiate koe mo ho hakó, 'o fai atu mei he taimi ko 'eni 'o ta'engata, tuku kehe pē 'o kapau te nau fakatomala mei he'enau fai angahalá pea tafoki mai kiate au koe'uhi ke u lava 'o 'alo'ofa kiate kinautolu.

And their brethren sought to destroy them, therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, yea, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitic women.

And this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their brethren, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him.

And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their fathers, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth—

And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites.

Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; yea, they set the mark upon themselves, yea, even a mark of red upon their foreheads.

Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them.

15 Pea ko 'eni foki: Te u 'ai ha faka'ilonga kiate ia te ne fio hono hakó mo ho kāingá, koe'uhi ke nau mala'ia mo kinautolu foki.

16 Pea ko 'eni foki: Te u 'ai ha faka'ilonga kiate ia 'oku tau'i koe pea mo ho hakó.

17 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku ou pehē 'ilonga ia 'oku mavahe atu meiate koé 'e 'ikai toe ui ia ko ho hako; pea te u tāpuaki'i koe, pea mo kinautolu kotoa pē 'e ui ko ho hakó, 'o fai atu mei he taimi ko 'eni 'o ta'engata; pea ko e ngaahi tala'ofa 'eni 'a e 'Eikí kia Nifai pea ki hono hakó.

18 Ko 'eni na'e 'ikai foki 'ilo 'e he kau 'Amelikaí 'oku nau fakahoko 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i he'enua kamata ke faka'ilonga 'i 'a kinautolu 'i honau la'é; ka neongo iá kuo nau angatu'u fakahāhā ki he 'Otuá; ko ia na'e totonu ai ke hoko kiate kinautolu 'a e mala'ia.

19 Pea ko hoku lotó ke mahino kiate kimoutolu na'a nau fakahoko pē 'e kinautolu 'a e fakamala'ia kiate kinautolu; pea 'oku pehē foki mo hono fakahoko 'iate ia pē 'e he tangata kotoa pē kuo fakamala'ia 'i 'a hono fakamala'ia 'i 'o'oná.

20 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo te'eki 'osi atu ha ngaahi 'aho lahi mei he tau na'e fai 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'e he kau Leimaná mo e kau 'Amelikaí, na'e 'i ai ha toe kau tau 'e taha 'o e kau Leimaná na'e 'oho mai ki he kakai 'o Nifai, 'i he potu fonua tatau pē ko ia na'e fepaki ai 'a e 'uluaki kau taú mo e kau 'Amelikaí.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai ha kau tau na'e fekau'i atu ke tuli 'a kinautolu mei honau fonuá.

22 Ko 'eni ko 'Alamā foki kuó ne faingata'a'ia 'i ha kafo, 'o 'ikai ai te ne 'alu atu ke tau 'i he taimi ko iá mo e kau Leimaná;

23 Ka na'á ne fekau atu ha kau tau tokolahi ke fepaki mo kinautolu; pea na'a nau 'alu atu 'o tāmata'i 'a e tokolahi 'o e kau Leimaná, 'o tuli hono toe 'o kinautolú mei he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o honau fonuá.

24 Pea na'a nau toe liu mai 'o kamata ke fokotu'u 'a e melinó 'i he fonuá, pea na'e 'ikai toe fakahoha'asi 'a kinautolu 'e honau ngaahi filí 'i ha ki'i taimi sí'i.

25 Ko 'eni na'e fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, 'io, ko e ngaahi taú ni mo e ngaahi fakakikihí na'e kamata pea na'e 'osi ia 'i hono nima 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that mingleth his seed with thy brethren, that they may be cursed also.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed.

And again, I say he that departeth from thee shall no more be called thy seed; and I will bless thee, and whomsoever shall be called thy seed, henceforth and forever; and these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed.

Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.

Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

Now it came to pass that not many days after the battle which was fought in the land of Zarahemla, by the Lamanites and the Amlicites, that there was another army of the Lamanites came in upon the people of Nephi, in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that there was an army sent to drive them out of their land.

Now Alma himself being afflicted with a wound did not go up to battle at this time against the Lamanites;

But he sent up a numerous army against them; and they went up and slew many of the Lamanites, and drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land.

And then they returned again and began to establish peace in the land, being troubled no more for a time with their enemies.

Now all these things were done, yea, all these wars and contentions were commenced and ended in the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

26 Pea na'e ngaohi 'i he ta'u pē taha ke 'alu 'a e ngaahi laumālie 'e lau afe mo e lau mano ki he maama ta'engatá, ke nau ma'u 'a 'enau ngaahi totongi 'o fakatatau ki he'enau ngaahi ngāué, pe kuo lelei ia pe kuo kovi ia, ke 'utu 'a e fiefia ta'engatá pe ko e mamahi ta'engatá, 'o fakatatau ki he laumālie na'a nau fie talangofua ki aí, pe ko ha laumālie lelei ia pe ko ha laumālie kovi.

27 He 'oku ma'u 'e he tangata kotoa pē 'a e totongi meiate ia 'okú ne fie talangofua ki aí, pea 'oku tatau 'eni mo e ngaahi lea 'a e laumālie 'o e kikité; ko ia tuku ke hoko ia 'o fakatatau ki he mo'oní. Pea na'e ngata pehē hono nima ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú.

And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whether they were good or whether they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.

For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth to obey, and this according to the words of the spirit of prophecy; therefore let it be according to the truth. And thus endeth the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

‘Alamā 4

- 1 Ko ‘eni na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he ta‘u hono ono ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai ‘o Nīfaí, na‘e ‘ikai ke ‘i ai ha fakakikihi pe ko ha ngaahi tau ‘i he fonua ko Seilahemalá.
- 2 Ka na‘e mamahi ‘a e kakai, ‘io, na‘a nau fu‘u mamahi lahi koe‘uhi ko e mole honau kāingá, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo e mole ‘enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo e mole ‘enau ngaahi ngoue kēlení, ‘a ia na‘e molomoloki ‘i he lalo va‘é mo faka‘auha ‘e he kau Leimaná.
- 3 Pea na‘e pehē hono lahi ‘o ‘enau ngaahi mamahí, na‘e tupu ai ha tangi ‘a e kakai kotoa pē; pea na‘a nau tui ko e ngaahi tautea ia ‘a e ‘Otuá kuo fekau hifo kiate kinautolu ko e me‘a ‘i he ‘enau fai angahalá pea mo ‘enau ngaahi anga-fakalieliá; ko ia na‘e fakaake ai ‘a kinautolu ke manatu ki honau fatongía.
- 4 Pea na‘a nau kamata ke langa hake ‘a e siasí ke mā‘opo‘opo ange; ‘io, pea na‘e papitaiso ‘a e tokolahi ‘i he ngaahi vai ‘o Saitoné ‘o nau kau ki he siasí ‘o e ‘Otuá; ‘io, na‘a nau papitaiso ‘i he nima ‘o ‘Alamaá, ‘a ia kuo fakanofu ko e taula‘eiki lahi ki he ka kai ‘o e siasí, ‘i he nima ‘o ‘ene tamai ko ‘Alamaá.
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he ta‘u hono fitu ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāu na‘e ‘i ai ‘a e kakai ‘e toko tolu afe nimangeau nai na‘a nau ului kinautolu ki he siasí ‘o e ‘Otuá ‘o nau papitaiso. Pea na‘e ‘osi pehē hono fitu ‘o e ta‘u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai ‘o Nīfaí; pea na‘e ‘i ai ma‘u pē ‘a e melinó ‘i he taimi hono kotoa ko iá.
- 6 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i hono valu ‘o e ta‘u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāu, na‘e faka‘au ke pōlepole ‘a e kakai ‘o e siasí, ko e me‘a ‘i he hulu ‘a ‘enau ngaahi koloá, mo e ngaahi silika lelei, mo ‘enau līneni tu‘ovalevalé, pea koe‘uhi ko e lahi ‘o ‘enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí, pea mo ‘enau koula, mo ‘enau siliva, mo e ngaahi me‘a mahu‘inga kehekehe kotoa pē, ‘a ia kuo nau ma‘u ‘i he ‘enau fa‘a ngāué; pea na‘e hanga ‘e he ngaahi me‘a ni kotoa pē ‘o fakatupu ‘a ‘enau fielahe ‘i he hīkisia ‘a honau matá, he na‘a nau kamata ke kofu ‘aki ‘a e kofu fu‘u fakataungata‘a.

Alma 4

Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla;

But the people were afflicted, yea, greatly afflicted for the loss of their brethren, and also for the loss of their flocks and herds, and also for the loss of their fields of grain, which were trodden under foot and destroyed by the Lamanites.

And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.

And they began to establish the church more fully; yea, and many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to the church of God; yea, they were baptized by the hand of Alma, who had been consecrated the high priest over the people of the church, by the hand of his father Alma.

And it came to pass in the seventh year of the reign of the judges there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the church of God and were baptized. And thus ended the seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and there was continual peace in all that time.

And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel.

7 Na'e hoko 'eni ko e tupu'anga 'o e mamahi lahi kia 'Alamā, 'io, pea ki he tokolahi 'o e kakai kuo fakatapui 'e 'Alamā ko e kau akonaki, mo e kau taula'eiki, pea mo e kaumātu'a ki he siasí; 'io, na'e fu'u loto-mamahi lahi 'a honau tokolahi ko e me'a 'i he fai angahala 'oku nau vakai kuo kamata 'i honau kakaí.

8 He na'a nau sio 'o vakai 'i he fu'u loto-mamahi lahi kuo kamata 'a e kakai 'o e siasí ke hīkisia 'i he hīkisia 'a honau matá, pea nau holi lahi ki he ngaahi koloa pea mo e ngaahi me'a ta'e'aonga 'o e māmaní, ko ia na'a nau kamata ai ke femanuki'aki, 'iate kinautolu, 'o nau kamata ke fakatanga 'i 'a kinautolu na'e 'ikai ke tui 'o fakatatau ki honau loto 'onautolu mo 'enau fa'itelihá.

9 Pea ko ia, na'e kamata 'i he ta'u hono valu ko 'eni 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ke 'i ai 'a e ngaahi fakakikihi lahi 'i he kakai 'o e siasí; 'io, na'e 'i ai 'a e femeheka'akí, mo e fetēlení, mo e fakafāsifasí, mo e fefakatanga'akí, pea mo e loto-hīkisiá, 'io, 'o lahi ange 'i he hīkisia 'anautolu na'e 'ikai kau ki he siasi 'o e 'Otuá.

10 Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono valu 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú; pea ko e fai angahala 'a e kāingalotu 'o e siasí ko e fu'u maka-tūkia'anga ki he fa'ahinga 'a ia na'e 'ikai kau ki he siasí; pea ko ia na'e kamata ke tu'u 'a e siasí 'i he'ene laka ki mu'á.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he kamata hono hiva 'o e ta'ú, na'e mamata 'a 'Alamā ki he fai angahala 'a e kāingalotu 'o e siasí, 'o ne vakai foki kuo kamata ke tākiaki 'i 'e he sīpinga 'a e kāingalotu 'o e siasí 'a kinautolu 'a ia ko e kau ta'etuí mei he kongā angahala 'e tahá ki ha kongā 'e taha, 'o nau langaki ai hono faka'auha 'o e kakaí.

12 'Io, na'á ne vakai ki he fu'u tu'unga ta'etatau 'i he kakaí, ko e ni'ihi na'e hiki hake 'a kinautolu 'e he'enu loto-hīkisiá, 'o nau fehí'a ki he kakai kehé, 'o nau fulitú'a ki he faingata'a'ia mo e telefuá mo kinautolu na'e fiekaiá, mo kinautolu na'e fieinuá, pea mo kinautolu na'e puke mo faingata'a'ia.

13 Ko 'eni ko ha tupu'anga lahi ia 'o e tangi lāulau 'i he kakaí, ka ko e fa'ahinga 'e ni'ihi na'a nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu, mo tokoni kiate kinautolu na'e 'aonga ke ma'u 'enau tokoní, 'o hangē ko e foaki 'o 'enau ngaahi me'á ki he masivá mo e faingata'a'ia, mo e fafanga 'i 'o e fiekaiá, mo e kātaki 'i 'o e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e faingata'á, koe'uhi ko Kalaisi, 'a ia 'e hā'ele mai 'o hangē kuo fakahā 'i he laumālie 'o e kikité;

Now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, yea, and to many of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and priests, and elders over the church; yea, many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people.

For they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.

And thus, in this eighth year of the reign of the judges, there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the church of God.

And thus ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges; and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the church; and thus the church began to fail in its progress.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the ninth year, Alma saw the wickedness of the church, and he saw also that the example of the church began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another, thus bringing on the destruction of the people.

Yea, he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.

Now this was a great cause for lamentations among the people, while others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as imparting their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake, who should come according to the spirit of prophecy;

- 14 'O sio atu ki he 'aho ko iá, 'o tauhi ma'u ai ha fakamolemole 'o 'enau ngaahi angahala; kuo nau fonu 'i he fu'u fiefia lahi koe'uhi ko e toetu'u 'o e maté, 'o fakatatau mo e finangalo mo e māfimafoi mo e fakahaofi 'e Sisū Kalaisi mei he ngaahi ha 'i 'o e maté.
- 15 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo vakai 'e 'Alamā, ki he ngaahi mamahi 'a e kau muimui angavaivai 'o e 'Otuá, pea mo e ngaahi fakatanga na'e hulu hono fai kiate kinautolu 'e hono toe 'o hono kakaí, pea 'i he'ene vakai ki hono kotoa 'o honau tu'unga ta'etataú, na'e kamata ke fu'u loto-mamahi 'aupito; ka neongo iá na'e 'ikai li'aki ia 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí.
- 16 Pea na'á ne fili ha tangata poto 'a ia na'e 'o e kau mātu'a 'o e siasí, 'o ne tuku kiate ia 'a e mālohi 'o fakatatau ki he le'o 'o e kakaí, koe'uhi ke ne ma'u 'a e mālohi ke fakahoko ha ngaahi lao 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi lao kuo fokotu'ú, pea ke fakamālohi 'i ia 'o fakatatau ki he fai angahala mo e ngaahi hia 'a e kakaí.
- 17 Pea ko e hingoa 'o e tangata ko 'ení ko Nīfaihā, pea na'e fili ia ko e fakamaau lahí; pea na'á ne nofo 'i he nofo'anga fakamāu ke fakamāu 'i mo pule 'i 'a e kakaí.
- 18 Pea na'e 'ikai tuku kiate ia 'e 'Alamā 'a e lakanga ko e taula'eiki lahi ki he siasí, ka ne ma'u 'a e lakanga ko e taula'eiki lahí kiate ia; ka ne tuku 'a e nofo'anga fakamāu kia Nīfaihā.
- 19 Pea na'á ne fai 'eni koe'uhí ke ne lava 'e ia 'o 'alu atu 'i he lotolotonga 'o hono kakaí, pe ko e kakai 'o Nīfaí, koe'uhi ke ne lava 'o malanga kiate kinautolu 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, ke ue 'i hake 'a kinautolu ke nau manatu 'i honau fatongiá, pea ke ne lava 'o ta'ofi, 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'a e loto-hīkisia mo e kākā kotoa pē pea mo e ngaahi fakakikihi kotoa pē 'a ia na'e 'i hono kakaí, he na'e 'ikai te ne 'ilo ha founa te ne lava ai 'o toe fakafoki mai 'a kinautolu kā 'i hono fakafepaki 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e fakamo'oni 'oku haohaoá.
- 20 Pea ko ia 'i he kamata hono hiva 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai 'o Nīfaí, na'e tuku 'e 'Alamā 'a e nofo'anga fakamāu kia Nīfaihā, 'o ne fakataumu 'a hono kotoa 'o 'ene ngāué ki he lakanga fakataula'eiki mā'olunga 'o e lakanga toputapu 'o e 'Otuá, ki hono fakamo'oni 'i 'o e folofolá, 'o fakatatau ki he laumālie 'o e fakahaá mo e kikité.

Looking forward to that day, thus retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death.

And now it came to pass that Alma, having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God, and the persecutions which were heaped upon them by the remainder of his people, and seeing all their inequality, began to be very sorrowful; nevertheless the Spirit of the Lord did not fail him.

And he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.

Now this man's name was Nephiah, and he was appointed chief judge; and he sat in the judgment-seat to judge and to govern the people.

Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself; but he delivered the judgment-seat unto Nephiah.

And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, and that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them.

And thus in the commencement of the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephiah, and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the word, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy.

Ko e ngaahi lea 'eni na'e fai 'e 'Alamā, ko e taula'eiki lahi 'o fakatatau ki he lakanga toputapu 'o e 'Otuá, ki he kakai 'i honau ngaahi kolo lalahi pea mo e ngaahi kolo iiki 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá.

'Alamā 5

- 1 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata 'e 'Alamā ke fakahā 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá ki he kakai, 'o fuofua fai 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea fai atu mei ai ki hono kotoa 'o e fonuá.
- 2 Pea ko e ngaahi lea 'eni na'á ne lea 'aki ki he kakai 'i he siasi 'a ia kuo fokotu'u 'i he kolo ko Seilahemalá, 'o fakatatau ki he'ene lekooti 'a'aná, 'a ia 'oku pehē:
- 3 Ko au, 'Alamā, kuo fakatapu au 'e he'eku tamai, ko 'Alamaá, ke u hoko ko ha taula'eiki lahi ki he siasi 'o e 'Otuá, he na'á ne ma'u 'a e mālohi mo e mafai mei he 'Otuá ke fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu na'á ne kamata ke fokotu'u ha siasi 'i he fonua na'e 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'o Nifái; 'io, ko e fonua na'e ui ko e fonua ko Molomoná; 'io, pea na'á ne papitaiso hono ngaahi kāinga 'i he ngaahi vai 'o Molomoná.
- 4 Pea vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, na'e fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nima 'o e kakai 'o e tu'i ko Noá, 'i he 'alo'ofa mo e māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá.
- 5 Pea vakai, 'i he hili iá, na'e fakapōpula 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he nima 'o e kau Leimaná 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá; 'io, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, na'a nau nofo pōpula, pea na'e toe fakahaofi 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki mei he nofo pōpulá 'i he māfima'fi 'o 'ene folofolá; pea na'e 'omi 'a kinautolu ki he fonuá ni, pea na'a tau kamata heni ke fokotu'u 'a e siasi 'o e 'Otuá 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá ni foki.
- 6 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga, 'a kimoutolu 'oku kau ki he siasi ko 'eni, kuo fe'unga koā ho'omou manatu ki he nofo pōpula 'a ho'omou ngaahi tamai? 'Io, pea kuo fe'unga koā 'a ho'omou manatu ki he'ene 'alo'ofá mo e kātaki fuoloa kiate kinautolú? Pea ko e tahá, kuo fe'unga koā 'a ho'omou manatu ki he'ene fakahaofi honau ngaahi laumālie mei heli?

The words which Alma, the High Priest according to the holy order of God, delivered to the people in their cities and villages throughout the land.

Alma 5

Now it came to pass that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land.

And these are the words which he spake to the people in the church which was established in the city of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying:

I, Alma, having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things, behold, I say unto you that he began to establish a church in the land which was in the borders of Nephi; yea, the land which was called the land of Mormon; yea, and he did baptize his brethren in the waters of Mormon.

And behold, I say unto you, they were delivered out of the hands of the people of king Noah, by the mercy and power of God.

And behold, after that, they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness; yea, I say unto you, they were in captivity, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word; and we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the church of God throughout this land also.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, you that belong to this church, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers? Yea, and have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and long-suffering towards them? And moreover, have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell?

7 Vakai, na'á ne liliu honau lotó; 'io, na'á ne fafangu 'a kinautolu mei he mohe ma'u, 'o nau 'ā hake ki he 'Otuá. Vakai, na'a nau 'i ha loto fakapo'uli; ka neongo iá, na'e fakamaama honau ngaahi laumálié 'e he maama 'o e folofola ta'engatá; 'io, na'e takatakai 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi ha'i 'o e maté, pea mo e ngaahi sēini 'o helí, pea na'e 'i ai ha faka'auha ta'engata na'e tatali kiate kinautolu.

8 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou fehu'i kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga, na'e faka'auha nai 'a kinautolu? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai, na'e 'ikai.

9 Pea 'oku ou toe fehu'i, na'e maumau'i nai 'a e ngaahi ha'i 'o e maté, pea vete ange, mo e ngaahi ha'i 'o heli 'a ia na'e takatakai 'a kinautolú? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Io, na'e vete ange ia, pea na'e tupulaki lahi honau laumálié, 'o nau hiva 'aki 'a e 'alo'ofa huhu'í. Pea 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kuo fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu.

10 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou fehu'i kiate kimoutolu ko e hā 'a e ngaahi tu'unga kuo fakamo'ui ai 'a kinautolú? 'Io, ko e hā ha ngaahi tu'unga na'e tupu ai ha'anau 'amanaki ki ha fakamo'uí? Ko e hā hono 'uhinga 'o honau vete ange mei he ngaahi ha'i 'o e maté, 'io, pea mo e ngaahi sēini 'o helí?

11 Vakai, 'oku ou lava ke fakahā kiate kimoutolu—'ikai na'e tui 'a 'eku tamaí ko 'Alamaá ki he ngaahi lea 'a ia na'e lea 'aki 'e 'Apinetaí? Pea 'ikai ko ha palōfita mā'oni'oni ia? 'Ikai na'á ne lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Otuá, pea na'e tui 'a 'eku tamaí ko 'Alamaá ki ai?

12 Pea na'e fakatatau ki he'ene tuí na'e hoko ha fu'u liliu lahi 'i hono lotó. Vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'oku mo'oni kotoa 'eni.

13 Pea vakai, na'á ne malanga 'aki 'a e folofolá ki ho'omou ngaahi tamaí, pea na'e hoko foki ha fu'u liliu lahi 'i hono lotó, pea nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu 'o nau falala ki he 'Otuá mo'oni mo mo'uí. Pea vakai, na'a nau tui faivelenga 'o a'u ki he ngata'angá; ko ia na'e fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu.

14 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku ou fehu'i kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga 'o e siasí, kuo mou fanau 'i fakalaumálie koā 'i he 'Otuá? Kuo mou ma'u koā hono tataú 'i homou fofongá? Kuo mou ongo 'i koā 'a e fu'u liliu lahi ni 'i homou lotó?

Behold, he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God. Behold, they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, they were not.

And again I ask, were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, Yea, they were loosed, and their souls did expand, and they did sing redeeming love. And I say unto you that they are saved.

And now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? Yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation? What is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, and also the chains of hell?

Behold, I can tell you—did not my father Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the words of God, and my father Alma believe them?

And according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true.

And behold, he preached the word unto your fathers, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. And behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved.

And now behold, I ask of you, my brethren of the church, have ye spiritually been born of God? Have ye received his image in your countenances? Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts?

- 15 'Oku mou ngāue 'aki nai 'a e tui ki he huhu 'i 'a 'ana na 'á ne fakatupu 'a kimoutolú? 'Oku mou sio atu koā 'aki 'a e mata 'o e tui, 'o mamata ki he sino fá 'a maté ni kuo fokotu 'u hake 'i he ta 'e-fa 'a-mate, pea mo e 'au 'auhá ni kuo fokotu 'u hake 'i he ta 'e-fa 'a-'au 'auha, ke tu 'u 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá ke fakamāu 'i 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi ngāue kuo fai 'i he sino fá 'a maté?
- 16 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku mou lava koā ke sio loto atu ki ha 'amou fanongo ki he le 'o 'o e 'Eiki, 'oku folofola mai kiate kimoutolu 'i he 'aho ko iá: Ha 'u kiate au 'a kimoutolu 'oku monū 'ia, he vakai, ko ho 'omou ngaahi ngāue ko e ngaahi ngāue 'o e mā 'oni 'oni 'i he funga 'o e māmaní?
- 17 Pe 'oku mou mahalo koā 'i homou loto te mou lava 'o loi ki he 'Eiki 'i he 'aho ko iá, 'o pehē ange—'E 'Eiki, ko 'emau ngaahi ngāue ko e ngaahi ngāue mā 'oni 'oni 'i he funga 'o e māmaní—pea te ne fakamo 'ui 'a kimoutolu?
- 18 Kae kehe, 'oku mou lava koā 'o sio loto atu ki homou taki mai ki he fakamaau 'o e 'Otuá, kuo fonu homou laumalié 'i he ongo 'i halaia mo e mamahi, 'i ho 'omou manatu ki ho 'omou hala kotoa, 'io, ko ha manatu haohao ki ho 'omou ngaahi fai angahala kotoa pē, 'io, ko ha manatu 'i ho 'omou angatu 'u ki he ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá?
- 19 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, te mou lava koā 'o sio hake ki he 'Otuá 'i he 'aho ko iá 'aki 'a e loto-ma 'a mo e nima ma 'a? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, te mou lava koā 'o sio hake, kuo tongitongi 'a e tatau 'o e 'Otuá 'i homou fofongá?
- 20 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku mou lava koā 'o 'amanaki ki homou fakamo 'ui kā kuo mou fakavaivai 'i 'a kimoutolu ke mou hoko ko e kau mo 'ulaloa ki he tēvoló?
- 21 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, te mou 'ilo 'i he 'aho ko iá 'e 'ikai lava 'o fakamo 'ui 'a kimoutolu; he 'oku 'ikai lava 'o fakamo 'ui ha tangata 'e toko taha, tuku kehe kapau kuo fō hono ngaahi kofú ke hinehina; 'io, kuo pau ke fakama 'a hono kofú kae 'oua ke nau ma 'a mei he 'uli kotoa pē, 'i he ta 'ata 'a 'o ia kuo lau ki ai 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí, 'a ia 'e hā 'ele mai 'o huhu 'i hono kakaí mei he 'enau ngaahi angahalá.

Do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? Do you look forward with an eye of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which have been done in the mortal body?

I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me ye blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth?

Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord in that day, and say—Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth—and that he will save you?

Or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at defiance the commandments of God?

I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?

I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?

I say unto you, ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins.

- 22 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou fehu'i kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga, 'e fēfē homou loto, 'o kapau te mou tutu'u 'i he fakamaau'anga 'o e 'Otuá, kuo 'uli homou ngaahi kofu 'i he toto mo e fá'ahinga 'uli kehekehe kotoa pē? Vakai, ko e hā 'e fakahā 'e he ngaahi me'a ni 'i hano talatalaaki 'i 'a kimoutolu?
- 23 Vakai, he 'ikai te nau fakamo'oni 'i ko e kau fakapō 'a kimoutolu, 'io, pea kuo mou halaia foki 'i he fá'ahinga fai angahala kotoa pē?
- 24 Vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku mou mahalo koā 'e lava ke ma'u 'e ha taha pehē ha potu ke nofo hifo ai 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá, fakataha mo 'Ēpalahame, mo 'Aisake, mo Sēkope, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni kotoa pē, 'a ia kuo fufulu honau kofú pea 'oku ta'e-hano-mele, pea haohaoa mo hinehina?
- 25 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai; ka 'o kapau pē te mou lau ko e loi 'a hotau Tupu'angá talu mei he kamata'angá, pe mahalo ko e tangata loi ia talu mei he kamata'angá, he 'ikai te mou lava ke 'amanaki 'e lava ma'u 'e he fá'ahinga peheé ha nofo'anga 'i he pule'anga 'o e langí; ka 'e kapusi ki tu'a 'a kinautolu he ko e fānau 'a kinautolu 'o e pule'anga 'o e tēvoló.
- 26 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga, kapau kuo mou ongo'i ha liliu 'i homou lotó, pea kapau kuo mou fie hiva 'aki 'a e hiva 'o 'ene 'ofa huhu'í, 'oku ou fie fehu'i atu, pe 'oku mou lava 'o ongo'i pehē he taimí ni?
- 27 Kuo mou 'a'eva nai, 'o tauhi 'a kimoutolu ke ta'ehalaia 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá? Te mou lava koā 'o pehē 'i homou lotó 'i he taimí ni, kapau ná'e ui 'a kimoutolu ke mate leva 'i he taimí ni, kuo fé'unga nai 'a ho'omou loto-fakatōkílaló? Pea kuo fakama'a mo fakahinehina 'i 'a homou ngaahi kofú 'i he ta'ata 'a 'o Kalaisí, 'a ia 'e hā'ele mai ke huhu 'i hono kakaí mei he'enua ngaahi angahalá?
- 28 Vakai, kuo mole kotoa koā meiate kimoutolu 'a e loto-híkisiá? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau kuo te'eki ai, kuo 'ikai te mou teuteu ke fetaulaki mo e 'Otuá. Vakai, kuo pau ke mou teuteu fakavavevave; he 'e hoko vave mai 'a e pule'anga 'o e langí, pea 'oku 'ikai ma'u 'e ha tokotaha pehē 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of filthiness? Behold, what will these things testify against you?

Behold will they not testify that ye are murderers, yea, and also that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness?

Behold, my brethren, do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white?

I say unto you, Nay; except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, ye cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, if ye have experienced a change of heart, and if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can ye feel so now?

Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and made white through the blood of Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins?

Behold, are ye stripped of pride? I say unto you, if ye are not ye are not prepared to meet God. Behold ye must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand, and such an one hath not eternal life.

29 Vakai, 'oku ou pehē, 'oku 'i ai koā ha toko taha 'iate kimoutolu kuo te'eki ai mole kotoa meiate ia 'a e meheká? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'oku 'ikai mateuteu 'a e tokotaha peheé; pea ko hoku lotó ke ne teuteu fakavavevave, he 'oku vave mai 'a e houá, pea 'oku 'ikai te ne 'ilo 'i pē 'e hoko 'a fē 'a e taimí; he 'oku 'ikai ke fakatonuhia 'i ha tokotaha pehē.

30 Pea 'oku ou toe pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku 'i ai koā hamou toko taha 'oku manuki 'i hono tokouá, pe 'oku fai lahi kiate ia 'a e ngaahi fakatangá?

31 Mala'ia ki he tokotaha peheé, he 'oku te'eki ai ke ne teuteu, pea 'oku vave mai 'a e taimi kuo pau ke ne fakatomala aí pe 'e 'ikai lava 'o fakamo'ui ia!

32 'Io, 'e mala'ia foki 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē ko e kau fai angahalá; mou fakatomala, mou fakatomala, he kuo folofola 'aki ia 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá!

33 Vakai, 'okú ne 'oatu ha fakaafe ki he kakai fulipē, he kuo mafao atu 'a e to'ukupu 'o e 'alo'ofá kiate kinautolu, pea 'okú ne folofola: fakatomala, pea te u tali 'a kimoutolu.

34 'Io, 'okú ne folofola: Ha' u kiate au pea te mou ma' u 'a e fua 'o e 'akau 'o e mo'uí; 'io, te mou kai mo inu fa'iteliha 'a e mā mo e vai 'o e mo'uí;

35 'Io, ha' u kiate au, pea fai 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'o e mā'oni'oni, pea 'e 'ikai ke tā hifo 'a kimoutolu, 'o laku ki he afí—

36 He vakai, 'oku tu'unuku mai 'a e taimi 'e 'ilonga ia 'oku 'ikai tupu ai 'a e fua leleí, pe 'ilonga ia 'oku 'ikai fai 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'o e mā'oni'oni, 'e ma' u 'e ia ha 'uhinga ke ngala pea tangi ai.

37 'A kimoutolu 'a e kau ngāue 'o e angahalá; 'a kimoutolu 'oku hīkisia 'i he ngaahi me'a ta'e'aonga 'o e māmaní, 'a kimoutolu kuo mou pehē 'oku mou 'ilo 'i 'a e ngaahi hala 'o e mā'oni'oni, ka neongo iá kuo mou hē 'o hangē ko e fanga sipi ta'e-hanau-tauhí, neongo kuo ui kiate kimoutolu ha tauhi-sipi pea 'okú ne kei ui kiate kimoutolu, ka 'oku 'ikai te mou fie tokanga ki hono le'ó!

Behold, I say, is there one among you who is not stripped of envy? I say unto you that such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knoweth not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found guiltless.

And again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heapeth upon him persecutions?

Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!

Yea, even wo unto all ye workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it!

Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive you.

Yea, he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely;

Yea, come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness, and ye shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire—

For behold, the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same have cause to wail and mourn.

O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice!

38 Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku ui kiate kimoutolu 'a e tauhi-sipi lelei; 'io, pea 'okú ne ui kiate kimoutolu 'i hono huafa 'o 'oná, 'a ia ko e huafa 'o Kalaisí; pea kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fanongo ki he le' o 'o e tauhi-sipi lelei, ki he huafa 'a ia 'oku ui 'aki 'a kimoutolú, vakai, 'oku 'ikai ko e fanga sipi 'a kimoutolu 'a e tauhi-sipi lelei.

39 Pea ko 'eni kapau 'oku 'ikai ko e fanga sipi 'a kimoutolu 'a e tauhi-sipi lelei, ko e fē 'a e lotó ā sipi 'oku mou kau ki aí? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko e tēvoló 'a homou tauhi-sipí, pea 'oku mou kau ki hono lotó 'aá; pea ko 'eni, ko hai te ne lava 'o faka'ikai 'i 'eni? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'ilonga ia 'e faka'ikai 'i 'ení ko e tangata loi ia pea ko e fānau 'a e tēvoló.

40 He 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'ilonga ha me'a 'oku lelei 'oku tupu ia mei he 'Otuá, pea 'ilonga ha me'a 'oku kovi 'oku tupu ia mei he tēvoló.

41 Ko ia, kapau 'oku fai 'e ha tangata 'a e ngaahi ngāue lelei, 'oku tokanga ia ki he le' o 'o e tauhi-sipi lelei, pea 'okú ne muimui kiate ia; kae 'ilonga ia 'oku fai 'a e ngaahi ngāue kovi, 'oku hoko ia ko e fānau 'a e tēvoló, he 'okú ne tokanga ki hono le'ó, 'o muimui kiate ia.

42 Pea 'ilonga ia 'oku fai 'ení kuo pau ke ne ma' u 'ene totongí meiate ia; ko ia, ko e totongi te ne ma' u ko e mate, ki he ngaahi me'a 'oku kau ki he mā'oni'oni, he kuó ne mate ki he ngaahi ngāue lelei kotoa pē.

43 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, ko hoku lotó ke mou fanongo kiate au, he 'oku ou lea kiate kimoutolu 'i he ivi 'o hoku laumālié; he vakai, kuó u lea kiate kimoutolu 'i he lea mahinongofua ko'e uhi ke 'oua na 'a mou fai hala, pe kuó u lea 'o fakatatau mo e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá.

44 He kuo uiui 'i au ke u lea peheni, 'o fakatatau ki he founga mā'oni'oni 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia 'oku 'ia Kalaisi Sīsuú; 'io, kuo fekau 'i au ke u tu' u 'o fakamo'oni 'i ki he kakaí ni 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuo lea 'aki 'e he'etau ngaahi tamaí 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'a 'e hokó.

45 Pea 'oku 'ikai ko ia kotoa. 'Ikai 'oku mou 'amanaki 'oku ou 'ilo' i 'e au 'a e ngaahi me'á ni? Vakai, 'oku ou fakamo'oni 'i kiate kimoutolu 'oku ou 'ilo' i ko e ngaahi me'á ni 'a ia kuó u lea ki aí 'oku mo'oni ia. Pea 'oku mou pehē 'oku fēfē 'eku 'ilo' i honau mo'oni?

Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd.

And now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold; and now, who can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever denieth this is a liar and a child of the devil.

For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil.

Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.

And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul; for behold, I have spoken unto you plainly that ye cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God.

For I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God, which is in Christ Jesus; yea, I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the things which are to come.

And this is not all. Do ye not suppose that I know of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do ye suppose that I know of their surety?

- 46 Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kuo fakahā ia kiate au 'e he Laumālie Mā'oni'oni 'o e 'Otuá. Vakai, kuó u 'aukai mo lotu 'i he ngaahi 'aho lahi koe 'uhi ke u 'ilo'í 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'e au. Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou 'ilo'í 'e au 'oku mo'oni ia; he kuo fakahā ia 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá kiate au 'aki hono Laumālie Mā'oni'oni; pea ko e laumālie ia 'o e fakahā 'oku 'iate aú.
- 47 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kuo fakahā pehē mai kiate au, ko e ngaahi lea 'a ia kuo lea 'aki 'e he 'etau ngaahi tamaí 'oku mo'oni ia, 'o fakatatau ki he laumālie 'o e kikité 'a ia 'oku 'iate aú, 'a ia kuo fakahā mai foki 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá.
- 48 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku ou 'ilo'í 'e au ko e ngaahi me'á kotoa pē te u lea 'aki kiate kimoutolu, 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'á 'e hokó, 'oku mo'oni ia; pea 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku ou 'ilo'í 'e hā'ele mai 'a Sīsū Kalaisi, 'io, 'a e 'Aló, 'a e 'Alo pē Taha na'e Fakatupu 'o e Tamaí, 'oku fonu 'i he 'alo'ofa, mo e manava'ofa, pea mo e mo'oni. Pea vakai, ko ia ia 'e hā'ele mai ke 'ave 'a e ngaahi angahala 'a māmaní, 'io, 'a e ngaahi angahala 'a e tangata kotoa pē 'oku tui mo'oni ki hono huafá.
- 49 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu ko e lakanga 'eni kuo uiui'í ai aú, 'io, ke malanga ki hoku kāinga 'ofeiná, 'io, kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku nofo 'i he fonuá; 'io, ke malanga ki he kakai fulipē, 'o tatau 'a e mātū 'a mo e talavou, mo e pōpula mo e tau'atāina fakatou'osi; 'io, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'a e kakai toulekeleká, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e fatu tangatá, pea ki he to'u tangata tupu haké; 'io, ke kalanga kiate kinautolu kuo pau ke nau fakatomala pea fanau 'i fo'ou.
- 50 'Io, 'oku folofola 'e he Laumālié: Fakatomala, 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē 'a e ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e māmaní, he 'oku vave ke hoko mai 'a e pule'anga 'o e langí; 'io, 'e hā'ele mai 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá 'i hono nāunaú, pea 'i hono māfimafí, mo hono nāunaú, mo hono mālohí, pea mo 'ene pule aoniú. 'Io, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku folofola 'e he Laumālié: Vakai ki he nāunau 'o e Tu'í 'o e māmaní kotoa; kae 'uma'ā foki mo e Tu'í 'o e langí 'e ulo vave atu 'aupito 'i he lotolotonga 'o e fānau kotoa pē 'a e tangatá.

Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.

And moreover, I say unto you that it has thus been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our fathers are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true; and I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, and mercy, and truth. And behold, it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world, yea, the sins of every man who steadfastly believeth on his name.

And now I say unto you that this is the order after which I am called, yea, to preach unto my beloved brethren, yea, and every one that dwelleth in the land; yea, to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free; yea, I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation; yea, to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again.

Yea, thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand; yea, the Son of God cometh in his glory, in his might, majesty, power, and dominion. Yea, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, that the Spirit saith: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; and also the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of men.

51 Pea folofola mai foki 'e he Laumālié kiate au, 'io, 'okú
 ne kalanga 'aki 'a e le'ō-lahi kiate au, 'o pehē: 'Alu atu 'o
 lea ki he kaká ni—Mou fakatomala, he kapau 'e 'ikai te
 mou fakatomala 'e 'ikai 'aupito te mou lava 'o ma'u 'a e
 pulé'anga 'o e langí.

52 Pea 'oku ou toe pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku folofola 'e
 he Laumālié: Vakai, kuo 'ai 'a e tokí ki he tefito 'o e
 'akaú; ko ia 'ilonga 'a e 'akau kotoa pē 'oku 'ikai tupu ai
 'a e fua lelei 'e tā hifo ia 'o laku ki he afí, 'io, ko ha afi ta'e-
 fá'a-mate, 'io ko ha afi ta'e-fá'a-mate. Vakai, pea manatu,
 kuo folofola 'aki ia 'e he Tokotaha Mā'oni'óní.

53 Pea ko 'eni 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou pehē kiate
 kimoutolu, te mou lava koā ke fakakikihi 'i 'a e ngaahi leá
 ni; 'io, te mou lava koā ke lí'aki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, pea
 mou molomoloki hifo 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'óní 'i
 homou lalo va'é; 'io, te mou malava koā 'o
 fakafuofuolahi 'i he hīkisia 'a homou lotó; 'io, te mou
 kei vilitaki koā 'i he kofu 'aki 'a e ngaahi kofu
 fakataungata'á pea mo ho'omou holi ki he ngaahi me'á
 ta'e'aonga 'o e māmaní, mo ho'omou ngaahi koloá?

54 'Io, te mou vilitaki koā 'i ho'omou mahalo 'oku mou
 lelei ange 'i ha taha kehé; 'io, te mou kei vilitaki koā 'i he
 fakatanga 'i homou kāinga, 'a ia 'oku fakavaivai 'i 'a
 kinautolu 'o nau 'a'eva 'o fakatatau ki he lakanga
 toputapu 'o e 'Otuá, 'a ia kuo fakahū ai 'a kinautolu ki
 he siasi ní, pea kuo fakamā'oni'óní 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he
 Laumālie Mā'oni'óní, pea 'oku nau fai 'a e ngaahi ngāue
 'a ia 'oku taau mo e fakatomalá—

55 'Io, pea te mou vilitaki koā 'i ho'omou fulitu'á ki he
 masivá, mo e faingata'á 'iá, pea 'i ho'omou ta'ofi
 ho'omou ngaahi me'á meiate kinautolú?

56 Pea ko hono faka'osi, ko kimoutolu kotoa pē 'e
 vilitaki atu 'i ho'omou fai angahalá, 'oku ou pehē kiate
 kimoutolu, ko 'eni 'a e fá'ahinga 'e tā hifo 'o laku ki he
 afí 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala fakavavevave.

And also the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me
 with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this
 people—Repent, for except ye repent ye can in nowise
 inherit the kingdom of heaven.

And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold,
 the ax is laid at the root of the tree; therefore every tree
 that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down
 and cast into the fire, yea, a fire which cannot be con-
 sumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and remem-
 ber, the Holy One hath spoken it.

And now my beloved brethren, I say unto you, can ye
 withstand these sayings; yea, can ye lay aside these
 things, and trample the Holy One under your feet; yea,
 can ye be puffed up in the pride of your hearts; yea, will
 ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and set-
 ting your hearts upon the vain things of the world,
 upon your riches?

Yea, will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one
 than another; yea, will ye persist in the persecution of
 your brethren, who humble themselves and do walk af-
 ter the holy order of God, wherewith they have been
 brought into this church, having been sanctified by the
 Holy Spirit, and they do bring forth works which are
 meet for repentance—

Yea, and will you persist in turning your backs upon
 the poor, and the needy, and in withholding your sub-
 stance from them?

And finally, all ye that will persist in your wicked-
 ness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be
 hewn down and cast into the fire except they speedily
 repent.

57 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē 'a ia 'oku loto ke muimui ki he le' o 'o e tauhi-sipi lelei, mou ha' u mei he kau angahalá, pea mou nofo mavahe, pea 'oua na' a ala ki he' enau ngaahi me' a ta' ema' á; pea vakai, 'e tāmata' i honau ngaahi hingoá, ke 'oua na' a lau fakataha 'a e ngaahi hingoa 'o e kau angahalá mo e ngaahi hingoa 'o e kau mā' oni' oni, koe' uhi ke fakamo' oni' i 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia 'oku pehē: 'E 'ikai fakataha' i 'a e ngaahi hingoa 'o e kau angahalá mo e ngaahi hingoa 'o hoku kakaí;

58 He 'e tohi 'a e ngaahi hingoa 'o e kau mā' oni' oni 'i he tohi 'o e mo' uí, pea te u foaki kiate kinautolu ha tofi' a 'i hoku nima to' omata' ú. Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, ko e hā ha' amou fakaanga ki he me' á ni? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku tatau ai pē pe te mou fakaanga' i ia pe 'ikai, he kuo pau ke fakamo' oni' i 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá.

59 He ko hai ha tauhi-sipi 'iate kimoutolu 'oku ma' u ha fanga sipi tokolahi 'oku 'ikai te ne tokanga' i 'a kinautolu, ke 'oua na' a hū mai 'a e fanga ulofi 'o keina 'ene takangá? Pea vakai, ka hū ha ulofi ki he' ene takangá 'ikai 'okú ne tuli ia ki tu' a? 'Io, pea 'o ka hili ia, kapau te ne lava, te ne faka' auha ia.

60 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'oku ui 'a e tauhi-sipi lelei kiate kimoutolu; pea kapau te mou fanongo mo talangofua ki hono le' ó te ne 'omi 'a kimoutolu ki hono loto' aá, pea ko 'ene fanga sipi 'a kimoutolu; pea 'okú ne fekau kiate kimoutolu ke 'oua na' a mou tuku ke hū mai ha ulofi fekai ki homou lotolotonga, koe' uhi ke 'oua na' a faka' auha 'a kimoutolu.

61 Pea ko 'eni ko au, 'Alamā, 'oku ou fekau kiate kimoutolu 'i he lea 'a ana kuó ne fekau' i aú, ke mou talangofua mo' oni ki he ngaahi lea kuó u lea 'aki kiate kimoutolú.

62 'Oku ou lea 'i ha fekau kiate kimoutolu 'oku kau ki he siasí; pea kiate kinautolu 'oku 'ikai kau ki he siasí 'i ha fakaafe, 'o pehē: Ha' u 'o papitaiso ki he fakatomalá, koe' uhi ke mou kau foki 'i he ma' u 'a e fua 'o e 'akau 'o e mo' uí.

And now I say unto you, all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things; and behold, their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled, which saith: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;

For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my brethren, what have ye to say against this? I say unto you, if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.

For what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock? And behold, if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out? Yea, and at the last, if he can, he will destroy him.

And now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and ye are his sheep; and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that ye may not be destroyed.

And now I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you.

I speak by way of command unto you that belong to the church; and unto those who do not belong to the church I speak by way of invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life.

‘Alamā 6

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē hili ‘a e faka‘osi ‘e ‘Alamā ‘ene lea ki he kakai ‘o e siasí, ‘a ia na’e fokotu‘u ‘i he kolo ko Seilahemalá, na‘á ne fakanofu ha kau taula‘eiki mo ha kaumātu‘a, ‘i he‘ene hilifaki hono nimá ‘o fakatatau ki he founga ‘a e ‘Otuá, ke pule‘i mo le‘ohi ‘a e siasí.
- 2 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē ko kinautolu kotoa pē na’e ‘ikai kau ki he siasí ‘a ia na’a nau fakatomala mei he‘enau ngaahi angahalá na’e papitaiso ‘a kinautolu ki he fakatomalá, pea na’e tali ‘a kinautolu ki he siasí.
- 3 Pea na’e hoko foki ‘o pehē ‘ilonga ‘a kinautolu na’e kau ki he siasí ‘a ia na’e ‘ikai fakatomala mei he‘enau ngaahi fai angahalá ‘o fakavaivai‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘i he ‘ao ‘o e ‘Otuá—ko ‘eku lau kiate kinautolu na’e fielahi ‘i he hīkisia ‘o honau lotó—na’e tukuange ‘a kinautolu, pea na’e tāmatae ‘i honau ngaahi hingoá, pea na’e ‘ikai toe lau honau hingoá fakataha mo e kau mā‘oni‘oní.
- 4 Pea ko ia na’a nau kamata ke toe fokotu‘u ‘a e lakanga ‘o e siasí ‘i he kolo ko Seilahemalá.
- 5 Ko ‘eni ‘oku ou loto ke mou ‘ilo na’e malanga ‘aki ta‘etotongi ‘a e folofola ‘a e ‘Otuá ki he kakai fulipē, pea na’e ‘ikai ta‘ofi mei ha taha ‘a e faingamālie ke nau fakataha ‘o fanongo ki he folofola ‘a e ‘Otuá.
- 6 Ka neongo iá na’e fekau ki he fānau ‘a e ‘Otuá ke nau fá‘a fakataha, mo kau fakataha ‘i he ‘aukai pea mo e lotu lahi koe‘uhi ko e lelei ‘a e laumālie ‘o kinautolu ‘a ia na’e ‘ikai ‘ilo‘i ‘a e ‘Otuá.
- 7 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he ‘osi fai ‘e ‘Alamā ‘a e ngaahi tu‘utu‘uni ko ‘ení na‘á ne ‘alu meiate kinautolu, ‘io, mei he siasí ‘a ia na’e ‘i he kolo ko Seilahemalá, ‘o ne ‘alu atu ki he fakahahake ‘o e vaitafe ko Saitoné, ki he tele‘a ko Kitioné, kuo langa ai ha kolo, na’e ui ko e kolo ko Kitioné, ‘a ia na’e ‘i he tele‘a na’e ui ko Kitioné, ‘a ia na’e tauhingoa ki he hingoa ‘o e tangata na’e fakapoongi ‘i he nima ‘o Nēhoá ‘aki ‘a e heletā.

Alma 6

And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church.

And it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the church.

And it also came to pass that whosoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God—I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts—the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous.

And thus they began to establish the order of the church in the city of Zarahemla.

Now I would that ye should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God.

Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of Zarahemla, and went over upon the east of the river Sidon, into the valley of Gideon, there having been a city built, which was called the city of Gideon, which was in the valley that was called Gideon, being called after the man who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword.

8 Pea na'e 'alu 'a 'Alamā 'o kamata ke fakahā 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá ki he siasi kuo fokotu'u 'i he tele'a ko Kitioné, 'o fakatatau ki he fakahā 'o e mo'oni 'o e folofola 'a ia kuo lea 'aki 'e he'ene ngaahi tamaí, pea fakatatau ki he lea 'a e laumālie 'o e kikite 'a ia na'e 'iate iá, 'o fakatatau ki he fakamo'oni 'o Sīsū Kalaisi, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, 'a ia 'e hā'ele mai 'o huhu 'i hono kakaí mei he'enau ngaahi angahalá, pea mo e lakanga toputapu 'a ia kuo uiui 'i ai iá. Pea kuo tohi ia. 'Ēmeni.

And Alma went and began to declare the word of God unto the church which was established in the valley of Gideon, according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spoken by his fathers, and according to the spirit of prophecy which was in him, according to the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who should come to redeem his people from their sins, and the holy order by which he was called. And thus it is written. Amen.

Ko e ngaahi lea na'e lea 'aki 'e 'Alamā ki he kakai 'i Kitioné, 'o fakatatau ki he'ene lekooti 'a'aná.

'Alamā 7

- 1 Vakai 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, ko e me'a 'i hono fakangofua au ke u ha'u kiate kimoutolú, ko ia 'oku ou feinga ai ke malanga kiate kimoutolu 'i he'eku leá; 'io, pea 'i hoku ngutu 'o'okú, he ko 'eku fuofua lea 'eni kiate kimoutolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea 'o hoku ngutú, he kuó u nofo ma'u 'i he nofo'anga fakamāú, he na'e lahi 'eku ngaahi ngāué 'o 'ikai ai te u lava 'o ha'u kiate kimoutolu.
- 2 Pea na'a mo au 'e 'ikai te u lava 'o ha'u 'i he taimi ko 'ení kapau na'e 'ikai ke tuku 'a e nofo'anga fakamāú ki ha taha kehe, ke pule ko hoku fetongi; pea kuo tuku 'e he 'Eikí 'i he 'alo'ofa lahi ke u ha'u kiate kimoutolu.
- 3 Pea vakai, kuó u ha'u 'i he 'amanaki lahi mo e holi lahi ke u 'ilo'i kuo mou fakavaivai'i 'a kimoutolu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, pea mou fai atu 'i he kole ke ma'u 'ene 'alo'ofá, ko'e'uhi ke u 'ilo kuo mou ta'ehalaia 'i hono 'aó, ko'e'uhi ke u 'ilo 'oku 'ikai te mou 'i he tu'utāmaki fakamanavahē na'e 'i ai hotau kāinga 'i Seilahemalá.
- 4 Ke monū'ia 'a e huafa 'o e 'Otuá, ko'e'uhi kuó ne tuku mai ke u 'ilo'i, 'io, kuó ne tuku kiate au 'a e fu'u fiefia lahi 'i he 'ilo'i kuo toe fokotu'u 'a kinautolu 'i he hala 'o 'ene mā'oní'oní.
- 5 Pea 'oku ou 'amanaki, 'o fakatatau ki he Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá 'a ia 'oku 'iate aú, te u ma'u foki 'a e fiefia 'iate kimoutolu; ka neongo iá 'oku 'ikai ko hoku lotó ke tupunga 'eku fiefia 'iate kimoutolú 'i ha ngaahi faingata'a lahi pehē mo ha ngaahi mamahi 'a ia kuo 'iate au ko e tupu mei he kāinga 'i Seilahemalá, he vakai, kuo tupu 'eku fiefiá 'iate kinautolu 'i he hili hono kātaki'i 'o e ngaahi faingata'a mo e ngaahi mamahi lahi.

The words of Alma which he delivered to the people in Gideon, according to his own record.

Alma 7

Behold my beloved brethren, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language; yea, by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you.

And even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the judgment-seat hath been given to another, to reign in my stead; and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you.

And behold, I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had humbled yourselves before God, and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace, that I should find that ye were blameless before him, that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our brethren were in at Zarahemla.

But blessed be the name of God, that he hath given me to know, yea, hath given unto me the exceedingly great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness.

And I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall also have joy over you; nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the brethren at Zarahemla, for behold, my joy cometh over them after wading through much affliction and sorrow.

6 Kae vakai, 'oku ou 'amanaki 'oku 'ikai ke mou 'i he anga 'o e fu'u ta'etui lahi 'o hangē ko ia na'e 'i ai homou kāingá; 'oku ou 'amanaki kuo 'ikai te mou fielahi 'i he hīkisia 'o homou lotó; 'io, 'oku ou 'amanaki kuo 'ikai te mou tuku ma'u homou lotó ki he ngaahi koloa pea mo e ngaahi me'a ta'e'onga 'o e māmaní; 'io, 'oku ou 'amanaki 'oku 'ikai te mou hū ki he ngaahi tamapua, ka 'oku mou hū ki he 'Otua mo'oni mo mo'uí, pea mou sio atu ki ha fakamolemole 'o ho'omou ngaahi angahalá 'i he tui ta'engata, 'a ia 'e hoko mai.

7 He vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku 'i ai ha ngaahi me'a lahi 'e hoko; pea vakai, 'oku 'i ai ha me'a 'e taha 'oku mamafa ange 'i he ngaahi me'a ko ia kotoa pē—he vakai, 'oku 'ikai ke mama'o 'a e taimi 'e mo'u ai 'a e Huhu'í pea hā'ele mai ki hono kakaí.

8 Vakai, 'oku 'ikai ko 'eku pehē te ne hā'ele mai kiate kitautolu 'i he taimi te ne mo'u ai 'i hono sino fakamatelié; he vakai, kuo 'ikai ke folofola mai 'a e Laumālié kiate au 'e hoko ia. Ko 'eni 'oku 'ikai te u 'ilo ki he me'á ni; ka ko e me'a 'eni 'oku ou 'iló, 'oku ma'u 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a e māfima'fi ke fai 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'a ia 'oku fakatatau ki he'ene folofolá.

9 Kae vakai, kuo folofola 'aki 'e he Laumālié 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate au, 'o pehē: Kalanga ki he kakaí ni, 'o pehē—Mou fakatomala, pea teuteu 'a e hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eikí, pea 'a 'eva 'i hono ngaahi halá, 'a ia 'oku hangatonu; he vakai, 'oku ofi mai 'a e pule'anga 'o e langí, pea 'e hā'ele mai 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá ki he funga 'o e māmaní.

10 Pea vakai, 'e 'alo 'i ia 'ia Mele, 'i Selūsalema 'a ia ko e fonua 'o 'etau ngaahi tamaí, pea ko ha tāupo'ou ia, ko ha me'angāue mahu'inga ia kuo fili, 'a ia 'e 'ō'ōfaki pea te ne tu'itu'ia 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, pea fakahifo ha tama, 'io, na'a mo e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá.

11 Pea te ne hā'ele atu, 'o kātaki 'i 'a e ngaahi mamahi mo e ngaahi faingata 'á pea mo e ngaahi 'ahi'ahi kehekehe kotoa pē; pea 'e fai 'eni koe'uhi ke lava 'o fakamo'oni 'i 'a e folofolá 'a ia 'oku pehē te ne to'o kiate ia 'a e ngaahi mamahi mo e ngaahi mahaki 'oku mo'ua ai hono kakaí.

But behold, I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief as were your brethren; I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts; yea, I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain things of the world; yea, I trust that you do not worship idols, but that ye do worship the true and the living God, and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins, with an everlasting faith, which is to come.

For behold, I say unto you there be many things to come; and behold, there is one thing which is of more importance than they all—for behold, the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among his people.

Behold, I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case. Now as to this thing I do not know; but this much I do know, that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word.

But behold, the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying—Repent ye, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth.

And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God.

And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind; and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.

12 Pea te ne to' o kiate ia 'a e maté, koe' uhi ke ne vete 'a e ngaahi ha' i 'o e maté 'a ia 'oku ha' iha' i 'a hono kakaí; pea te ne to' o kiate ia 'a honau ngaahi vaivaí, koe' uhi ke fonu hono lotó 'i he 'alo' ofa, 'o fakatatau ki he kakanó, koe' uhi ke ne 'afio' i 'o fakatatau ki he kakanó 'a e founga ke tokoni' i ai 'a hono kakaí 'o fakatatau ki honau ngaahi vaivaí.

13 Ko 'eni 'oku 'afio' i 'e he Laumālié 'a e me' a kotoa pē; ka neongo iá 'e mamahi 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá 'o fakatatau ki he kakanó koe' uhi ke ne lava 'o to' o kiate ia 'a e ngaahi angahala 'a hono kakaí, koe' uhi ke ne lava 'o fakamolemole' i 'enau ngaahi maumau-fonó 'o fakatatau ki he māfima' i 'o 'ene fakamo' uí; pea ko 'eni vakai, ko e fakamo' oni 'eni 'oku 'iate aú.

14 Ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kuo pau ke mou fakatomala, pea fanau' i fo' ou; he 'oku folofola 'e he Laumālié kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fanau' i fo' ou 'oku 'ikai te mou lava 'o ma' u 'a e pule' anga 'o e langí; ko ia ha' u 'o papitaiso ki he fakatomalá, koe' uhi ke fufulu 'a kimoutolu mei ho' omou ngaahi angahalá, koe' uhi ke mou ma' u 'a e tui ki he Lami 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia 'oku 'ave' a e ngaahi angahala 'a e māmaní, 'a ia 'oku māfima' i ke fakamo' ui mo fakama' a mei he ta' e-mā' oni' oni kotoa pē.

15 'Io, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu mou ha' u pea 'oua 'e manavahē, pea li' aki 'a e angahala kotoa pē, 'a ia 'oku faingofua 'ene faka' e' fihia' i 'a kimoutolú, 'a ia 'oku puke hifo 'a kimoutolu ki homou faka' auhá, 'io, mou ha' u, pea 'alu atu, pea fakahā ki homou 'Otuá 'oku mou fie fakatomala mei ho' omou ngaahi angahalá 'o fai ha fuakava mo ia ke tauhi 'ene ngaahi fekaú, pea fakamo' oni' i ia kiate ia he 'ahó ni 'i ho' omou 'alu hifo ki he ngaahi vai 'o e papitaisó.

16 Pea 'ilonga ia 'okú ne fai 'eni, mo tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá 'o fai atu mei he taimi ko 'ení, te ne manatu' i 'oku ou pehē kiate ia, 'io, te ne manatu' i kuó u pehē kiate ia, te ne ma' u 'a e mo' ui ta' engatá, 'o fakatatau ki he fakamo' oni 'a e Laumālie Mā' oni' oni, 'a ia 'oku fakamo' oni ki hoku lotó.

And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities.

Now the Spirit knoweth all things; nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance; and now behold, this is the testimony which is in me.

Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye may be washed from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.

Yea, I say unto you come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction, yea, come and go forth, and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of baptism.

And whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth, the same will remember that I say unto him, yea, he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit, which testifieth in me.

- 17 Pea ko 'eni 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku mou tui koā ki he ngaahi me'á ni? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'io, 'oku ou 'ilo 'i 'oku mou tui ki ai; pea ko e founa 'oku ou 'ilo ai 'oku mou tui ki ai 'oku 'i he fakahā 'a e Laumālie 'a ia 'oku 'iate aú. Pea ko 'eni ko e me'a 'i he mālohi ho'omou tui ki ai, 'io, ki he ngaahi me'a kuó u lea 'aki, 'oku lahi ai 'eku fiefiá.
- 18 He 'oku hangē ko 'eku pehē kiate kimoutolu 'i he kamata'angá, 'oku ou faka'amu lahi ke 'oua ná'a mou 'i he anga 'o e tu'utāmaki 'o hangē ko homou kāingá, pehē foki kuo u 'ilo 'i kuo fiemālie 'a hoku lotó.
- 19 He 'oku hā mai kiate au 'oku mou 'i he ngaahi hala 'o e mā'oni'oni; 'oku mahino mai 'oku mou 'i he hala 'oku fakatau atu ki he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá; 'io, 'oku hā mai kiate au 'oku mou fakatonutonu hono ngaahi halá.
- 20 'Oku hā mai kiate au kuo fakamahino kiate kimoutolu, 'i he fakamo'oni 'a 'ene folofolá, 'oku 'ikai te ne lava 'o hā'ele 'i ha ngaahi hā'ele'anga pikopiko; pea 'ikai foki te ne tafoki mei he me'a kuó ne folofola'aki; pea 'oku 'ikai foki ke 'iate ia ha 'ata 'o e feliliuaki mei he to'omata'ú ki he to'ohemá, pe mei he me'a 'oku totonú ki he me'a 'oku halá; ko ia ko hono hā'ele'angá 'oku tatai ai pē 'o ta'engata.
- 21 Pea 'oku 'ikai te ne 'afio 'i he ngaahi temipale ta'e-mā'oni'oni; pea 'oku 'ikai fa'a lava ke tali 'a e 'ulí pe ko ha me'a 'oku ta'ema 'a 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá; ko ia 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'e hoko 'a e taimi, 'io, pea 'e hoko 'i he 'aho faka'osí, 'ilonga ia 'oku 'ulí te ne nofo 'i he'ene 'ulí.
- 22 Pea ko 'eni 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, kuó u lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate kimoutolu koe'uhi ke u lava 'o fakaake 'iate kimoutolu ha'amou ongo 'i homou fatongia ki he 'Otuá, koe'uhi ke mou 'a'eva ta'ehalaia 'i hono 'aó, koe'uhi ke mou 'a'eva 'o fakatai mo e lakanga toputapu 'o e 'Otuá; 'a ia kuo tali ai 'a kimoutolú.

And now my beloved brethren, do you believe these things? Behold, I say unto you, yea, I know that ye believe them; and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation of the Spirit which is in me. And now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea, concerning the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.

For as I said unto you from the beginning, that I had much desire that ye were not in the state of dilemma like your brethren, even so I have found that my desires have been gratified.

For I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness; I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the kingdom of God; yea, I perceive that ye are making his paths straight.

I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his word, that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong; therefore, his course is one eternal round.

And he doth not dwell in unholy temples; neither can filthiness or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God; therefore I say unto you the time shall come, yea, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filthy shall remain in his filthiness.

And now my beloved brethren, I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God, that ye may walk blameless before him, that ye may walk after the holy order of God, after which ye have been received.

23 Pea ko 'eni ko hoku lotó ke mou loto-fakatókilalo, mo anganofó mo angavaivai; pea ako'ingofua; pea mohu 'i he kātaki mo e fá'a kātaki fuoloa; pea anga-fakapotopoto 'i he me'a kotoa pē; pea faivelenga ma'u ai pē 'i he tauhi 'o e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá; pea kole 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku 'aonga ke mou ma'ú, ko e me'a fakalaumālie mo e me'a fakatu'asino fakatou'osi; pea fakafeta'i ma'u ai pē ki he 'Otuá koe'uhi ko e me'a kotoa pē 'oku mou ma'ú.

24 Pea manatu'i ke mou ma'u 'a e tuí, mo e 'amanaki leleí, mo e manava'ofá, pea mou toki fai ke lahi 'a e ngaahi ngāue leleí.

25 Pea 'ofa ke tāpuakí 'i 'a kimoutolu 'e he 'Eikí, pea tauhi homou ngaahi kofú ke ma'a, koe'uhi ke faifai pea 'omi 'a kimoutolu ke mou nofo hifo mo 'Ēpalahame, 'Aisake, mo Sēkope, mo e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni 'a ia kuo mo'ui talu mei he kamata'anga 'o e māmaní, kuo ma'a mo ta'e-hano-mele homou ngaahi kofú 'o hangē ko e ma'a honau ngaahi kofú, 'i he pule'anga 'o e langí 'o 'ikai toe hū ki tu'a.

26 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, kuó u lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi leá ni kiate kimoutolu 'o fakatatau ki he Laumālie 'oku fakamo'oni 'i hoku lotó; pea 'oku fu'u fiefia 'aupito 'a hoku laumālié, koe'uhi ko e fu'u faivelenga mo e tokanga lahi kuo mou fai ki he'eku leá.

27 Pea ko 'eni, 'ofa ke nofo 'iate kimoutolu 'a e melino 'a e 'Otuá, pea 'i homou ngaahi falé mo homou ngaahi fonuá, pea 'i ho'omou ngaahi takanga monumanu íki mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí, mo e me'a kotoa 'oku mou ma'ú, ko homou kakai fefiné pea mo ho'omou fānaú, 'o fakatatau ki ho'omou tuí pea mo e ngāue leleí, 'o fai atu mei he taimi ko 'eni 'o ta'engata. Pea ko hono anga 'eni 'o 'eku leá. 'Ēmeni.

And now I would that ye should be humble, and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God at all times; asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive.

And see that ye have faith, hope, and charity, and then ye will always abound in good works.

And may the Lord bless you, and keep your garments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began, having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out.

And now my beloved brethren, I have spoken these words unto you according to the Spirit which testifieth in me; and my soul doth exceedingly rejoice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have given unto my word.

And now, may the peace of God rest upon you, and upon your houses and lands, and upon your flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your women and your children, according to your faith and good works, from this time forth and forever. And thus I have spoken. Amen.

‘Alamā 8

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e foki mai ‘a ‘Alamā mei he fonua ko Kitioné, hili ‘ene ako ‘i ki he kakai ‘o Kitioné ha ngaahi me’a lahi ‘oku ‘ikai fa’a lava ‘o tohi, hili ‘ene fokotu ‘u ‘a e lakanga ‘o e siasí, ‘o hangē ko ia kuó ne fai ‘i he fonua ko Seilahemalá, ‘io, na’á ne foki mai ki hono fale ‘o’ona ‘i Seilahemalá ke mālōlō mei he ngaahi ngāue kuó ne fai.
- 2 Pea na’e ‘osi pehē hono hiva ‘o e ta’u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai ‘o Nīfaí.
- 3 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he kamata hono hongofulu ‘o e ta’u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai ‘o Nīfaí, na’e ‘alu atu mei ai ‘a ‘Alamā ‘o ne fai ‘ene fonongá ki he fonua ko Mīlekí ‘i he fakahihifo ‘o e vaitafe ko Saitoné, ‘i he potu hihifó ‘o ofi ki he ngaahi ngata ‘anga ‘o e feitu ‘u maomaonganoá.
- 4 Pea ne kamata ke ako ki he kakai ‘i he fonua ko Mīlekí ‘o fakatatau ki he lakanga toputapu ‘o e ‘Otuá, ‘a ia kuo uiui ‘i ai iá; ‘o ne kamata ke ako ki he kakai ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e fonuá ko Mīlekí.
- 5 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e ha’u kiate ia ‘a e kakai ‘i he ngaahi ngata ‘anga fonua kotoa pē ‘o e fonuá ‘a ia na’e ‘i he ve’e feitu ‘u maomaonganoá. Pea na’a nau papitaiso ‘i he potu kotoa pē ‘o e fonuá;
- 6 Ko ia, ‘i he’ene faka’osi ‘ene ngāue ‘i Mīlekí, na’á ne ‘alu leva mei ai, ‘o fononga ‘i ha ‘aho ‘e tolu ‘i he tokelau ‘o e fonua ko Mīlekí; pea na’á ne a’u atu ki ha kolo na’e ui ko ‘Amonaihā.
- 7 Ko ‘eni ko e anga foki ‘o e kakai ‘o Nīfaí ke ui honau ngaahi fonuá, mo honau ngaahi kolo lalahí, mo honau ngaahi kolo íkí, ‘io, na’a mo honau fanga kí ‘i kolo íkí, ‘i he hingoa ‘o ia ‘a ia na’e fuofua ma’u iá; pea na’e pehē mo e fonua ko ‘Amonaihaá.
- 8 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he a’u atu ‘a ‘Alamā ki he kolo ko ‘Amonaihaá, na’á ne kamata ke malanga ‘aki ‘a e folofola ‘a e ‘Otuá kiate kinautolu.
- 9 Ko ‘eni kuo ma’u ‘e Sētane ha mālohi lahi ‘i he loto ‘o e kakai ‘o e kolo ko ‘Amonaihaá; ko ia na’e ‘ikai te nau fie fanongo ki he ngaahi lea ‘a ‘Alamaá.

Alma 8

And now it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the church, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla, yea, he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.

And thus ended the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek, on the west of the river Sidon, on the west by the borders of the wilderness.

And he began to teach the people in the land of Melek according to the holy order of God, by which he had been called; and he began to teach the people throughout all the land of Melek.

And it came to pass that the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness side. And they were baptized throughout all the land;

So that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence, and traveled three days’ journey on the north of the land of Melek; and he came to a city which was called Ammonihah.

Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their cities, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them; and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah.

And it came to pass that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.

Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.

- 10 Ka neongo iá na'e ngāue lahi 'a 'Alamā 'i he laumālie, 'o ne fāinga mo e 'Otuá 'i he fu'u lotu lahi, ke ne lilingi hifo hono Laumālié ki he kakai na'e 'i he koló; pea ke ne tuku foki kiate ia ke ne papitaiso 'a kinautolu ki he fakatomalá.
- 11 Ka neongo iá na'a nau fakafefeka honau lotó, 'o pehē kiate ia: Vakai, 'oku mau 'ilo 'i ko 'Alamā koe; pea 'oku mau 'ilo ko e taula'eiki lahi koe ki he siasi 'a ia kuó ke fokotu'u 'i ha ngaahi feitu'u lahi 'o e fonuá, 'o fakatautu ki ho'omou ngaahi talatukufakaholó; pea 'oku 'ikai ke mau kau ki ho siasí, pea 'oku 'ikai te mau tui ki ha ngaahi talatukufakaholo fakasesele pehē.
- 12 Pea ko 'eni 'oku mau 'ilo koe'uhi 'oku 'ikai te mau kau ki ho siasí, 'oku mau 'ilo 'i 'oku 'ikai te ke ma'u ha mālohi kiate kimaautolu; pea kuó ke tuku 'a e lakanga fakamāú kia Nīfaihā; ko ia 'oku 'ikai ko e fakamaau lahi koe kiate kimaautolu.
- 13 Pea ko 'eni 'i he 'osi hono lea 'aki 'eni 'e he kakai, 'o nau fakafetau 'i 'ene ngaahi lea kotoa pē, 'o manuki 'i ia, mo 'a 'anu kiate ia, 'o nau pule ke kapusi ki tu'a mei honau koló, na'á ne 'alu atu leva mei ai, 'o fai 'ene fonongá ki he kolo na'e ui ko 'Ēlone.
- 14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga 'ene fononga ki aí, pea mafasia hono lotó 'i he mamahi, 'o ne fefa'uhi mo e mamahi mo e feinga lahi 'o e laumālie, koe'uhi ko e fai angahala 'a e kakai na'e 'i he kolo ko 'Amonaihaá, na'e hoko 'o pehē lolotonga 'a e mafasia 'a 'Alamā 'i he loto-mamahí, vakai na'e hā mai kiate ia ha 'āngelo 'a e 'Eikí, 'o pehē ange:
- 15 'Okú ke monū 'ia koe, 'e 'Alamā; ko ia, hanga hake ho matá pea fiefia, he 'oku 'i ai ha 'uhinga lahi ke ke fiefia; he kuó ke tui faivelenga 'i hono tauhi 'o e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá talu mei he taimi na'á ke ma'u ai 'a e 'uluaki folofola meiate iá. Vakai, ko au ia ne u 'omi ia kiate koé.
- 16 Pea vakai, kuo fekau kiate au ke u tu'utu'uni kiate koe ke ke foki ki he kolo ko 'Amonaihaá, 'o toe malanga ki he kakai 'o e koló; 'io, malanga kiate kinautolu. 'Io, pehē ange kiate kinautolu, kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala 'e faka'auha 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá.

Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance.

Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.

And now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us; and thou hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephiah; therefore thou art not the chief judge over us.

Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.

And it came to pass that while he was journeying thither, being weighed down with sorrow, wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul, because of the wickedness of the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass while Alma was thus weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma; therefore, lift up thy head and rejoice, for thou hast great cause to rejoice; for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the time which thou receivedst thy first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you.

And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; yea, preach unto them. Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

17 He vakai, 'oku nau lolotonga fifili he taimí ni ke nau lava 'o faka'auha 'a e tau'atāina 'a ho kakaí (he 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí) 'a ia 'oku ta'ehoa mo e ngaahi laó mo e ngaahi fakamāú pea mo e ngaahi fēkau kuó ne fai ki hono kakaí.

18 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e ma'u 'e 'Alamā 'ene pōpoaki mei he 'āngelo 'a e 'Eikí na'á ne foki fakavavevave leva ki he fonua ko 'Amonaihaá. Pea na'á ne hū atu ki he koló 'i ha hala kehe, 'io, 'i he hala 'oku 'i he potu tonga 'o e kolo ko 'Amonaihaá.

19 Pea 'i he'ene hū atu ki he kolo, na'á ne fiekaia, 'o ne pehē atu ki ha tangata: Tē ke 'ofa mai mu'a ki ha tamaio'eiki mā'ulalo 'o e 'Otuá ha me'akai ke ne ma'u?

20 Pea na'e pehē ange 'a e tangatá kiate ia: Ko ha tangata Nifai au, pea 'oku ou 'ilo 'i ko ha palōfita mā'oni'oni koe 'a e 'Otuá, he ko koe 'a e tangata 'a ia na'e pehē mai 'e ha 'āngelo 'i ha me'a-hā-mai: Ke tali ia. Ko ia, ta ō mo au ki hoku falé pea te u foaki kiate koe mei he'eku me'akai; pea 'oku ou 'ilo te ke hoko ko ha tāpuaki kiate au pea mo hoku falé.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tali ia 'e he tangatá ki hono falé; pea ko e hingoa 'o e tangatá ko 'Amuleki; pea ne 'omai ha mā mo ha kakano 'i manu, 'o tuku 'i he 'ao 'o 'Alamaá.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kai 'e 'Alamā 'a e maá 'o ne mākona; pea ne tāpuaki 'i 'a 'Amuleki mo hono falé, 'o ne fakafeta 'i ki he 'Otuá.

23 Pea hili 'ene kai 'o mākoná na'á ne pehē ange kia 'Amuleki: ko 'Alamā au, pea ko e taula'eiki lahi au ki he siasi 'o e 'Otuá 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá.

24 Pea vakai, kuo uiui 'i au ke u malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i he lolotonga 'o e kakaí ni hono kotoa, 'o fakatatau ki he laumālie 'o e fakahaá mo e kikité; pea ne u 'i he fonuá ni ka na'e 'ikai te nau fie tali au, ka na'a nau kapusi au ki tu'a, pea u meimei sítu'a mei he fonuá ni 'o ta'engata.

25 Kae vakai, kuo fēkau kiate au ke u toe foki mai, 'o kikite ki he kakaí ni, 'io, mo fakamo'oni' i kiate kinautolu 'a 'enua ngaahi angahalá.

26 Pea ko 'eni, 'e 'Amuleki, ko e me'a 'i ho' o fafanga 'i au mo tali au ki ho falé, 'okú ke monū 'ia ai; he ne u fiekaia, he na'á ku 'aukai 'i ha ngaahi 'aho lahi.

For behold, they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people, (for thus saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people.

Now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, yea, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.

And as he entered the city he was an hungered, and he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat?

And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house.

And it came to pass that the man received him into his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.

And it came to pass that Alma ate bread and was filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he gave thanks unto God.

And after he had eaten and was filled he said unto Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the church of God throughout the land.

And behold, I have been called to preach the word of God among all this people, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy; and I was in this land and they would not receive me, but they cast me out and I was about to set my back towards this land forever.

But behold, I have been commanded that I should turn again and prophesy unto this people, yea, and to testify against them concerning their iniquities.

And now, Amulek, because thou hast fed me and taken me in, thou art blessed; for I was an hungered, for I had fasted many days.

- 27 Pea na'e nofo 'a 'Alamā 'i he ngaahi 'aho lahi mo 'Amuleki 'i he te'eki ai kamata ke ne malanga ki he kakaí.
- 28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e faka'au ke fai 'e he kakaí ha ngaahi angahala mamafa ange.
- 29 Pea na'e hoko mai 'a e folofola kia 'Alamā, 'o pehē: 'Alu; peá ke lea foki ki he'eku tamaio'eiki ko 'Amuleki, 'alu atu pea kikite ki he kakaí ni, 'o pehē—Mou fakatomala, he 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí, kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala te u 'a'ahi ki he kakaí ni 'i he'eku 'itá, 'io, pea 'e 'ikai te u lolou 'a 'eku 'ita kakahá.
- 30 Pea na'e 'alu atu 'a 'Alamā, pea mo 'Amuleki foki, 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kakaí, ke fakahā 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Otuá kiate kinautolu; pea na'e fakafonu 'a kinaua 'aki 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni.
- 31 Pea na'e foaki kiate kinaua 'a e mālohi, na'e pehē fau hono lahí na'e 'ikai lava ai ke fakapōpula 'i 'a kinaua 'i he ngaahi 'ana fakapōpula; pea na'e 'ikai lava foki 'e ha tangata 'o tāmata 'i 'a kinaua; ka neongo iá na'e 'ikai te na ngāue 'aki hona mālohí kae 'oua kuo ha 'i 'a kinaua 'i he ngaahi nono 'o pea lī ki he fale fakapōpulá. Ko 'eni, na'e fai 'eni koe'uhi ke lava 'e he 'Eikí 'o fakahā atu hono māfimafí 'iate kinaua.
- 32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á na 'alu atu 'o kamata ke malanga mo kikite ki he kakaí, 'o fakatatau ki he laumālie mo e mālohi kuo tuku kiate kinaua 'e he 'Eikí.

And Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach unto the people.

And it came to pass that the people did wax more gross in their iniquities.

And the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy unto this people, saying—Repent ye, for thus saith the Lord, except ye repent I will visit this people in mine anger; yea, and I will not turn my fierce anger away.

And Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among the people, to declare the words of God unto them; and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them.

And it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people, according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them.

Ko e ngaahi lea 'a 'Alamā pea mo e ngaahi lea foki 'a 'Amuleki, 'a ia na 'e fakahā ki he kakai na 'e 'i he fonua ko 'Amonaihaá. Pea 'oku fakahū foki 'a kinaua ki he fale fakapōpūlá, mo fakahaofi 'i he māfimaafi fakaofa 'o e 'Otuá 'a ia na 'e 'iate kinauá, 'o fakatatau ki he lekooti 'a 'Alamaá.

'Alamā 9

- 1 Pea ko 'eni foki, ko au, 'Alamā, 'i he fekau 'i au 'e he 'Otuá ke u 'ave 'a 'Amuleki peá ma 'alu atu 'o toe malanga ki he kakai ní, pe ko e kakai na 'e 'i he kolo ko 'Amonaihaá, na 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'eku kamata ke malanga kiate kinautolú, na 'a nau kamata ke fakakikihi mo au, 'o pehē:
- 2 Ko hai koe? 'Okú ke mahalo koā te mau tui ki he fakamo'oni 'a ha tangata 'e toko taha, neongo te ne malanga mai kiate kinautolu 'e ngata 'a e māmaní?
- 3 Ko 'eni na 'e 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi lea na 'a nau lea 'akí; he na 'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo 'e ngata 'a e māmaní.
- 4 Pea na 'a nau pehē foki: 'E 'ikai te mau tui ki ho 'o ngaahi leá neongo te ke kikite 'e faka'auha 'a e fu 'u koló ni 'i he 'aho pē 'e taha.
- 5 Ko 'eni na 'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo 'oku lava 'e he 'Otuá 'o fai ha ngaahi ngāue fakaofa pehē, he ko ha kakai lotofefeka mo kia-kekeva 'a kinautolu.
- 6 Pea na 'a nau pehē: Ko hai 'a e 'Otuá, 'oku 'ikai te ne fekau hifo ai ha mafai lahi ange ka ko e tangata pē 'e toko taha ki he kakai ní, ke fakahā kiate kinautolu hono mo'oni 'o ha ngaahi fu 'u me 'a ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofa pehē?
- 7 Pea na 'a nau 'unu'unu mai ke puke au 'aki honau nimá; kae vakai, na 'e 'ikai ke nau fai ia. Pea na 'a ku tu 'u 'i he loto-to 'a ke lea kiate kinautolu, 'io, ne u fakamo'oni ta'e-manavahē kiate kinautolu, 'o pehē:
- 8 Vakai, 'A kimoutolu 'a e to 'u tangata angakovi mo paongata 'a, kuo fēfē ho 'omou fakangalo 'i 'a e talatukufakaholo 'a ho 'omou ngaahi tamá; 'io, hono 'ikai ke vave 'a ho 'omou fakangalo 'i 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá.

The words of Alma, and also the words of Amulek, which were declared unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah. And also they are cast into prison, and delivered by the miraculous power of God which was in them, according to the record of Alma.

Alma 9

And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

Who art thou? Suppose ye that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away?

Now they understood not the words which they spake; for they knew not that the earth should pass away.

And they said also: We will not believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.

Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiff-necked people.

And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?

And they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but behold, they did not. And I stood with boldness to declare unto them, yea, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:

Behold, O ye wicked and perverse generation, how have ye forgotten the tradition of your fathers; yea, how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God.

- 9 'Ikai 'oku mou manatu na'e tatakai mai 'etau tamai, ko Līhāi, mei Selūsalema 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Otuá? 'Ikai 'oku mou manatu na'á ne tatakai 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá?
- 10 Pea kuo mou fakangalo 'i koā 'o vave pehē hono tu'ohāhi 'o 'ene fakahaofi 'etau ngaahi tamai mei he nima 'o honau ngaahi filí, mo malu 'i 'a kinautolu mei he faka'auhá, 'io 'i he nima 'o honau kāinga 'onautolú?
- 11 'Io, pea ka ne ta'e'oua 'a hono māfima fi ta'e-hano-tataú, mo 'ene 'alo'ofá, pea mo 'ene kātaki fuoloa kiate kitautolú, 'oku pau pē kuo loa hotau motuhi atu mei he funga 'o e māmani 'i he te'eki hoko 'a e taimi ko 'eni, pea mahalo kuo vahe 'i nai ki ha tu'unga 'o e mamahi mo e mala'ia ta'engata.
- 12 Vakai, ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'okú ne fekau kiate kimoutolu ke mou fakatomala; pea kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala, 'e 'ikai 'aupito te mou fa'a ma'u 'a e pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá. Kae vakai, 'oku 'ikai ngata ai—ka kuó ne fekau kiate kimoutolu ke mou fakatomala, pe te ne faka'auha 'aupito 'a kimoutolu mei he funga 'o e māmani; 'io, te ne hā'ele mai kiate kimoutolu 'i hono houhá, pea ko hono houhau kakahá 'e 'ikai te ne ta'ofi ia.
- 13 Vakai, 'ikai koā 'oku mou manatu ki he ngaahi folofola 'a ia na'á ne folofola 'aki kia Līhāi, 'o pehē: Kapau te mou tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú te mou tu'umālie 'i he fonuá? Pea kuo folofola 'aki foki 'o pehē: kapau he 'ikai te mou tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú, 'e motuhi atu 'a kimoutolu mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí.
- 14 Ko 'eni, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou manatu 'i, ko e me'a 'i he 'ikai tauhi 'e he kau Leimaná 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, kuo motuhi atu 'a kinautolu mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí. Pea 'oku tau vakai kuo fakamo'oni 'i hono mo'oni 'o e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i he me'á ni, pea kuo motuhi atu 'a e kau Leimaná mei hono 'aó, talu mei he kamata'anga 'o 'enau ngaahi maumau-fonó 'i he fonuá.
- 15 Ka neongo iá, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e kātaki'ingofua ange 'a kinautolu 'i he 'aho 'o e fakamāú 'iate kimoutolu, 'o kapau te mou nofo 'i ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, 'io, pea 'e kātaki'ingofua ange 'a kinautolu 'i he mo'uí ni 'iate kimoutolu, 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala.

Do ye not remember that our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? Do ye not remember that they were all led by him through the wilderness?

And have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our fathers out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own brethren?

Yea, and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.

Behold, now I say unto you that he commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. But behold, this is not all—he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; yea, he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away.

Behold, do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land? And again it is said that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Now I would that ye should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord. Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their transgressions in the land.

Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if ye remain in your sins, yea, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except ye repent.

16 He 'oku lahi ha ngaahi tala'ofa kuo tuku ki he kau Leimaná; he ko e me'a ia 'i he ngaahi talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí kuo tupunga ai 'enau nofo 'i honau tu'unga 'o e ta'e'iló; ko ia 'e 'alo'ofa ai 'a e 'Eikí kiate kinautolu 'o fakatolonga 'enau nofo 'i he fonuá.

17 Pea toka ange ha taimi 'e toki 'omi 'a kinautolu ke nau tui ki he 'ene folofolá, mo 'ilo 'i hono ta'etotonu 'o e ngaahi talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí; pea 'e fakamo'ui hanau tokolahi, ko'e uhi 'e 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Eikí kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'a ia 'oku ui ki hono huafá.

18 Kae vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kapau te mou vilitaki atu 'i ho'omou fai angahalá 'e 'ikai fakatolonga homou ngaahi 'aho 'i he fonuá, ko'e uhi 'e fekau mai 'a e kau Leimaná kiate kimoutolu; pea kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala, te nau ō mai 'i ha taimi 'oku 'ikai te mou 'ilo ki ai, pea 'e 'a'ahi kiate kimoutolu 'aki 'a e faka'auha faka'aufuli; pea 'e hoko ia 'o fakatautu ki he houhau kakaha 'o e 'Eikí.

19 Koe'uhi 'e 'ikai te ne tuku kiate kimoutolu ke mou nofo 'i ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, 'o faka'auha 'a hono kakai. 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'E 'ikai; 'e lelei ange kiate ia ke ne tuku ke faka'auha 'e he kau Leimaná 'a hono kakai kotoa pē 'a ia 'oku ui ko e kakai 'o Nifái, 'o kapau 'e ngalingali te nau tō ki ha ngaahi angahala mo e ngaahi maumau-fonó, 'i he hili hano foaki ha maama mo e 'ilo lahi pehē kiate kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá.

20 'Io, 'i he hili 'enau hoko ko ha kakai 'ofeina lahi pehē 'e he 'Eikí; 'io, 'i he hili 'enau hoko 'o 'ofeina ange 'i he pule'anga, mo e fa'ahinga, mo e lea, mo e kakai kehe kotoa pē; hili hono fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e me'a kotoa pē, 'o fakatautu mo 'enau ngaahi holí mo 'enau tuí, pea mo e ngaahi lotú, 'o e ngaahi me'a kuo 'i aí, mo e ngaahi me'a 'oku 'i aí, pea mo e ngaahi me'a 'e hokó;

21 Hili 'a e 'a'ahi kiate kinautolu 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá; pea nau fealea'aki mo e kau 'āngeló, pea folofolá 'a e le'ó 'o e 'Eikí kiate kinautolú; pea nau ma'u 'a e laumālie 'o e kikité, mo e laumālie 'o e fakahaá, kae 'uma'ā foki mo ha ngaahi me'a-foaki lahi, ko e me'a-foaki 'o e lea 'aki 'o e ngaahi lea kehekehé, mo e me'a-foaki 'o e fai 'o e ngaahi malangá, mo e me'a-foaki 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oní, pea mo e me'a-foaki 'o e liliu leá;

For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land.

And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.

But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.

For he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people. I say unto you, Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;

Yea, after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; yea, after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come;

Having been visited by the Spirit of God; having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord; and having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation;

- 22 'Io, pea hili honau fakahaofi 'e he 'Otuá mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, 'i he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí; pea fakamo'ui mei he hongē, mo e mahaki, pea mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga mahaki 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē; pea kuo nau faka'au 'o mālohi 'i he tau, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a faka'auha 'a kinautolu; kuo toutou 'omi 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá, mo tauhi mo malu 'i 'o a' u mai ki he taimi ni; pea kuo fakamonū 'ia 'a kinautolu kae 'oua kuo nau koloa 'ia 'i he me'a kehekehe kotoa pē—
- 23 Pea ko 'eni vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau 'e talangata 'a 'a e kakaí ni, 'a ia kuo nau ma' u ha ngaahi tāpuaki lahi pehē mei he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí, fai ha maumau-fono 'oku ta'ehoa mo e maama mo e 'ilo 'a ia 'oku nau ma'ú, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kapau 'e pehē, kapau te nau hinga ki he maumau-fono, 'e kātaki'ingofua ange 'aupito 'a e kau Leimaná 'iate kinautolu.
- 24 He vakai, 'oku fakahā 'a e ngaahi tala'ofa 'a e 'Eikí ki he kau Leimaná, ka 'oku 'ikai fakahā ia kiate kimoutolu 'o kapau te mou fai angahala; he 'ikai koā kuo tala'ofa mahino mai mo tu'utu'uni pau 'e he 'Eikí, kapau te mou angatu' u kiate ia 'e faka'auha faka'aufuli 'a kimoutolu mei he funga 'o māmani?
- 25 Pea ko e 'uhinga 'eni foki, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a faka'auha 'a kimoutolu, kuo fēkau ai 'e he 'Eikí 'a 'ene 'āngelo ke 'a'ahi ki ha tokolahí 'o hono kakaí, 'o fakahā kiate kinautolu kuo pau ke nau 'alu atu 'o kalanga le'olahi ki he kakaí ni, 'o pehē: Mou fakatomala, he 'oku ofi mai 'a e pule'anga 'o e langí;
- 26 Pea 'i he te'eki 'osi 'a e ngaahi 'aho lahi mei ai 'e hā'ele mai 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá 'i hono nāunaú; pea ko hono nāunaú ko e nāunaú ia 'o e 'Alo pē Taha na'e Fakatupu 'o e Tamaí, 'oku fonu 'i he 'ofa, mo e angatonu, mo e mo'oni, pea fonu 'i he kātaki, mo e 'alo'ofa mo e kātaki fuoloa, 'oku vave ke 'afio ki he ngaahi tangi 'a hono kakaí mo tali 'enau ngaahi lotú.
- 27 Pea vakai, te ne hā'ele mai ke huhu 'i 'a kinautolu 'a ia 'e papitaiso ki he fakatomalá, tu'unga 'i he tui ki hono huafá.

Yea, and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things—

And now behold I say unto you, that if this people, who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you that if this be the case, that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

For behold, the promises of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if ye transgress; for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth?

And now for this cause, that ye may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying: Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand;

And not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer their prayers.

And behold, he cometh to redeem those who will be baptized unto repentance, through faith on his name.

28 Ko ia, mou teuteu 'a e hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eikí, he 'oku ofi mai 'a e taimi 'e utu ai 'e he kakai fulipē 'a e totongi 'o 'enau ngaahi ngāué, 'o fakatatau ki he me'a 'a ia kuo nau fai—kapau kuo nau mā'oni'oni te nau utu 'a e fakamo'ui 'a honau laumālié, 'o fakatatau ki he māfimafo mo e fakamo'ui 'a Sīsū Kalaisí; pea kapau kuo nau kovi, te nau utu 'a e fakamala'ia ki honau laumālié, 'o fakatatau ki he mālohi mo e fakapōpula 'a e tēvoló.

29 Vakai foki, ko e le'o 'eni 'o e 'āngelo, 'oku kalanga ki he kakai.

30 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, he ko hoku kāinga 'a kimoutolu, pea 'oku totonu ke 'ofeina 'a kimoutolu, pea 'oku totonu ke mou fai 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a ia 'oku ngali mo e fakatomalá, koe'uhi he kuo fu'u fefeka 'aupito homou lotó ki he folofola 'a e 'Otuá, pea koe'uhi ko ha kakai 'a kimoutolu kuo hē mo tō ki lalo.

31 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, 'Alamā, hili 'eku lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ní, vakai, na'e 'ita kiate au 'a e kakai koe'uhi ko 'eku pehē kiate kinautolu, ko ha kakai loto-fefeka mo kia-kekeva 'a kinautolu.

32 Pea ko e me'a foki 'i he 'eku pehē kiate kinautolu ko ha kakai 'a kinautolu kuo hē mo tō ki lalo ko ia na'a nau 'ita ai kiate au, 'o feinga ke puke au 'aki honau nimá ke nau lī au ki he fale fakapōpulá.

33 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ke tuku 'e he 'Eikí kiate kinautolu ke nau 'ave au 'i he 'aho ko iá 'o lī au ki he fale fakapōpulá.

34 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu 'a 'Amuleki 'o ne tu'u atu ki mu'a, 'o ne kamata foki ke malanga kiate kinautolu. Pea ko 'eni kuo 'ikai ke tohi 'a e ngaahi lea kotoa pē 'a 'Amulekí, ka neongo iá kuo tohi 'a e kongá 'o 'ene ngaahi leá 'i he tohí ni.

Therefore, prepare ye the way of the Lord, for the time is at hand that all men shall reap a reward of their works, according to that which they have been—if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their souls, according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ; and if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls, according to the power and captivation of the devil.

Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people.

And now, my beloved brethren, for ye are my brethren, and ye ought to be beloved, and ye ought to bring forth works which are meet for repentance, seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against the word of God, and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people.

Now it came to pass that when I, Alma, had spoken these words, behold, the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me, and sought to lay their hands upon me, that they might cast me into prison.

But it came to pass that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time and cast me into prison.

And it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth, and began to preach unto them also. And now the words of Amulek are not all written, nevertheless a part of his words are written in this book.

‘Alamā 10

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni ko e ngaahi lea ‘eni na’e malanga ‘aki ‘e ‘Amuleki ki he kakai ‘a ia na’e ‘i he fonua ko ‘Amonaihaá, ‘o pehē:
- 2 Ko au ko ‘Amuleki; ko e foha au ‘o Kitiona, ‘a ia ko e foha ‘o ‘Isimeli, ‘a ia ko e hako ‘o ‘Aminatai; pea ko ia ‘a e ‘Aminatai ko ia ‘a ia na’á ne lau ‘a e tohi na’e tu’u ‘i he holisi ‘o e temipalé, ‘a ia na’e tohi ‘e he to’ukupu ‘o e ‘Otuá.
- 3 Pea ko ‘Aminatai ko e hako ia ‘o Nīfai, ‘a ia ko e foha ‘o Līhaí, ‘a ia na’e ha’u mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, ‘a ia ko e hako ‘o Manase, ‘a ia ko e foha ‘o Siosefa, ‘a ia na’e fakatau ki ‘Isipite ‘e hono ngaahi tokuá.
- 4 Pea vakai, ko e tangata foki au ‘oku ongoongolelei lahi ‘iate kinautolu kotoa pē ‘oku ‘ilo ‘i aú; ‘io, pea vakai, ‘oku ‘i ai hoku kāinga tokolahi mo e ngaahi kaume’a, pea kuó u ma’u foki ha fu’u koloa lahi ‘i he’eku fa’a ngāué.
- 5 Ka neongo iá, neongo ‘a e ngaahi me’á ni kotoa, kuo te’eki ai te u ‘ilo lahi ki he ngaahi hala ‘o e ‘Eikí, pea mo ‘ene ngaahi me’a liló mo e māfimaifi fakaofó. Ne u pehē kuo te’eki ai te u ‘ilo lahi ki he ngaahi me’á ni; kae vakai, kuó u faihala, he kuó u mamata ki ha ngaahi me’a lahi ‘o ‘ene ngaahi me’a liló mo hono māfimaifi fakaofó; ‘io, ‘i hono fakahaofi foki ‘o e mo’ui ‘a e kakaí ni.
- 6 Ka neongo iá, ne u fakafefeka pē hoku lotó, he na’e tu’o lahi hono ui au kae ‘ikai te u fie fanongo; ko ia ne u ‘ilo ki he ngaahi me’á ni, ka na’e ‘ikai te u fie ‘ilo; ko ia ne u fai atu ‘i he angatu’u ki he ‘Otuá, ‘i he fai angahala ‘a hoku lotó, ‘io, ‘o a’u mai ki hono fā ‘o e ‘aho ‘o e māhina hono fitu ko ‘ení, ‘a ia ko hono hongofulu ‘o e ta’u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāú.
- 7 Lolotonga ha’aku fononga ke ‘a’ahi ki ha kāinga ofi ‘aupito, ‘iloange na’e hā mai kiate au ha ‘āngelo ‘a e ‘Eikí, ‘o pehē: ‘E ‘Amuleki, foki atu ki ho fale, he te ke fafanga ha palōfita ‘a e ‘Eikí, ‘io, ko ha tangata mā’oni’oni, ‘a ia ko ha tangata kuo fili ‘e he ‘Otuá; he kuó ne ‘aukai ‘i he ngaahi ‘aho lahi koe’uhi ko e angahala ‘a e kakai ní, pea ‘okú ne fiekaia, pea ke ke tali ia ‘i ho falé mo fafanga ia, pea te ne tāpuaki ‘i koe mo ho falé; pea ‘e nofo ‘a e tāpuaki ‘a e ‘Eikí ‘iate koe mo ho falé.

Alma 10

Now these are the words which Amulek preached unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, saying:

I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was that same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God.

And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren.

And behold, I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me; yea, and behold, I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry.

Nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power. I said I never had known much of these things; but behold, I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; yea, even in the preservation of the lives of this people.

Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear; therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart, even until the fourth day of this seventh month, which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges.

As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; yea, a holy man, who is a chosen man of God; for he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and thy house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and thy house.

8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ne u talangofua ki he le' o 'o e 'āngeló, pea u liu mai ki hoku falé. Pea lolotonga 'eku foki ki ai ne u fe'iloaki mo e tangata 'a ia na'e fakahā mai kiate au 'e he 'āngeló: Ke ke tali ia 'i ho falé—pea vakai ko ia ia 'a e tangata kuo lea kiate kimoutolu 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'a 'a e 'Otuá.

9 Pea na'e pehē mai 'e he 'āngeló kiate au ko ha tangata mā'oni'oni ia; ko ia 'oku ou 'ilo'i ai ko ha tangata mā'oni'oni ia, he na'e lea 'aki ia 'e ha 'āngelo 'a e 'Otuá.

10 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku ou 'ilo'i foki 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'a kuó ne fakamo'oni ki ai; he vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eikí, pehē kuó ne fekau mai ha'ane 'āngelo ke fakahā mai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate au; pea kuó ne fai 'eni lolotonga 'a e nofo 'a e 'Alamā ko 'eni 'i hoku falé.

11 He vakai, kuó ne tāpuaki'i hoku falé, kuó ne tāpuaki'i au, mo 'eku kau fefiné, mo 'eku fānaú, mo 'eku tamaí pea mo hoku kāingá; 'io, na'a mo hoku kāinga kotoa pē kuó ne tāpuaki'i, pea kuo nofo 'iate kimautolu 'a e tāpuaki 'a e 'Eikí 'o fakatatau mo e ngaahi lea kuó ne lea 'akí.

12 Pea ko 'eni, hili 'a e lea 'aki 'e 'Amuleki 'a e ngaahi lea ní na'e kamata ke 'ohovale 'a e kakai, ko e me'a 'i he 'i ai ha fakamo'oni 'oku tokolahí hake 'i ha toko taha pē 'oku fakamo'oni ki he ngaahi me'a kuo talatalaaki 'i ai 'a kinautolú, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e ngaahi me'a 'e hoko, 'o fakatatau ki he laumālie 'o e kikite na'e 'iate kinauá.

13 Ka neongo iá, na'e 'i ai hanau ní'ihí 'a ia na'e toka 'i honau lotó ke fakafehu 'i 'a kinaua, koe'uhí ke nau tauhele'i nai 'a kinaua 'i he'ena ngaahi leá tu'unga 'i he'enua ngaahi lea kākā fakaooló, koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo'i ha fakamo'oni ke talatalaaki 'i 'aki 'a kinaua, koe'uhi ke nau lava 'o tukuange 'a kinaua ki he'enua kau fakamāú ke fakamāú 'i 'a kinaua 'o fakatatau ki he fonó, pea ke lava ai 'o tāmata 'i pe lí 'a kinaua ki he fale fakapōpulá, 'o fakatatau mo e hia te nau lava 'o fakamo'oni'i kuó na faí.

14 Pea ko e kau tangata na'e feinga ke tāmata 'i 'a kinauá, ko e kau taukapo 'a ia na'e nō pe fili 'e he kakai ke fakafofonga 'i 'a e fono 'i he lolotonga fai 'a e ngaahi hopo 'o e ngaahi hia 'a e kakai 'i he 'ao 'o e kau fakamāú.

15 Na'e poto foki 'a e kau taukapo ko 'eni 'i he ngaahi faiva kátoa mo e olopoto 'o e kakai; pea na'e pehē ia koe'uhi ke nau lava ai 'o poto taukei 'i he'enua ngāué.

And it came to pass that I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my house. And as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said unto me: Thou shalt receive into thy house—and behold it was this same man who has been speaking unto you concerning the things of God.

And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.

And again, I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true; for behold I say unto you, that as the Lord liveth, even so has he sent his angel to make these things manifest unto me; and this he has done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house.

For behold, he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children, and my father and my kinsfolk; yea, even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake.

And now, when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were accused, and also of the things which were to come, according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

Nevertheless, there were some among them who thought to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged according to the law, and that they might be slain or cast into prison, according to the crime which they could make appear or witness against them.

Now it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.

Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata ke nau fakafehu 'i 'a 'Amuleki, koe'uhi ke nau lava ai 'o ngaohi ia ke ne fakahala 'i 'a 'ene ngaahi leá, pe fakakikihi 'i 'a e ngaahi lea te ne lea'akí.

17 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo 'oku lava 'e 'Amuleki 'o 'ilo ki he 'enau ngaahi fakakaukaú. Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'enau kamata ke fakafehu 'i iá, na'á ne 'ilo 'i 'enau ngaahi fakakaukaú, 'o ne pehē kiate kinautolu: 'A kimoutolu 'a e to'u tangata angakovi mo paongata 'a, 'a kimoutolu 'a e kau taukapo mo e kau māluoi, he 'oku mou fai 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a e tēvoló; he 'oku mou fokotu'u ha ngaahi tauhele mo ha ngaahi hele ke 'efihia ai 'a e kau mā'oni'oni 'a e 'Otuá.

18 'Oku mou fokotu'u ha ngaahi fakakaukaú ke fakakovi 'i 'aki 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a e kau mā'oni'oni, pea fakatupu ha tō mai 'a e houhau 'o e 'Otuá kiate kimoutolu, 'o a'u ki he faka'auha kotoa 'o e kakaí ni.

19 'Io, 'ikai na'e totonu 'a e folofola 'a Mōsaia ko hotau tu 'i fakamuimui, 'i he 'ene teu tukuange 'a e pule'angá, 'i he 'ikai ha'ane tokotaha ke tuku ia ki ai, 'o ne tu'utu'uni ke pule 'i 'a e kakaí ni 'i honau loto 'onautolú—'io, na'á ne folofola ka 'iloange kuo hokosia 'a e taimi 'e fili 'e he loto 'o e kakaí ni 'a e angahalá, 'a ia ko e pehē, kapau 'e hokosia 'a e taimi 'e hinga 'a e kakaí ni ki he maumau-fonó, kuo nau taau ai mo e faka'auhá.

20 Pea 'oku ou pehē foki kiate kimoutolu, 'oku ai ha 'uhinga lelei ki hono fakamāu 'i 'e he 'Eikí 'a ho'omou ngaahi angahalá; 'oku ngali tonu 'ene folofola ki he kakaí ni, 'i he le' o 'o 'ene kau 'āngeló: mou fakatomala, fakatomala, he 'oku ofi ke hoko mai 'a e pule'anga 'o e langí.

21 'Io, 'oku 'uhinga lelei 'ene folofola, 'i he le' o 'o 'ene kau 'āngeló 'o pehē: Tē u 'a'ahi ki hoku kakaí 'aki 'a e faitotonu mo e fakamaau totonu 'i hoku nimá.

22 'Io, pea 'oku ou pehē kite kimoutolu ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e ngaahi lotu 'a e kau mā'oni'oni 'oku lolotonga 'i he fonuá, 'e tautea 'i leva 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e faka'auha 'aupito; ka 'e 'ikai hoko ia 'i he lōmaki, 'o hangē ko ia na'e hoko ki he kakaí 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o Noá, ka 'e hoko ia 'i he honge, mo e mahaki faka'auha, pea mo e tau.

And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek, that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.

Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs. But it came to pass as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts, and he said unto them: O ye wicked and perverse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites, for ye are laying the foundations of the devil; for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.

Ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.

Yea, well did Mosiah say, who was our last king, when he was about to deliver up the kingdom, having no one to confer it upon, causing that this people should be governed by their own voices—yea, well did he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction.

And now I say unto you that well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent ye, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Yea, well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.

Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword.

23 Ka ko e me'a 'i he ngaahi lotu 'a e kau mā'oni'oni 'oku fakamo'ui ai 'a kimoutolú; ko ia ai, kapau te mou kapusi ki tu'a 'a e kau mā'oni'oni meiate kimoutolu, 'e 'ikai ta'ofi 'e he 'Eiki 'a hono to'ukupú; ka te ne hā'ele mai 'i hono houhau kakahá kiate kimoutolu; pea 'e toki te 'ia 'aki 'a kimoutolu 'a e honge, mo e mahaki faka'auha, pea mo e tau; pea 'oku vave mai 'a e taimi 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala.

24 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ita 'o lahi ange 'a e kakai kia 'Amuleki, 'o nau kaila 'o pehē: 'Oku lau'ikovi 'i 'e he tangatá ni 'a 'etau ngaahi fonó 'a ia 'oku totonú, pea mo 'etau kau taukapo poto kuo tau filí.

25 Ka na'e mafao atu 'e 'Amuleki 'a hono nimá, 'o kalanga 'o mālohi ange kiate kinautolu, 'o pehē: 'A kimoutolu 'a e to'u tangata angakovi mo paongata'a, ko e hā kuo ma'u ai 'e Sētane ha mālohi lahi pehē 'i homou lotó? Ko e hā ka mou ka fakavaivai 'i ai 'a kimoutolu kiate ia ke ne ma'u ai ha mālohi kiate kimoutolu, ke fakakuihi homou matá, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a mahino kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi lea 'oku faí, 'o fakatatau ki honau mo'oni?

26 Pea vakai, kuó u fakamo'oni kovi koā ki ho'omou fonó? 'Oku 'ikai mahino kiate kimoutolu; 'oku mou pehē kuó u lau'ikovi 'a ho'omou fonó; ka kuo 'ikai, ka kuó u lea 'o poupou ki ho'omou fonó 'o fakahā ai kiate kimoutolu 'ene fakahalaia 'i 'a kimoutolú.

27 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo 'osi fai 'a e teuteu ki hono faka'auha 'o e kakai ní 'i he ta'e-mā'oni'oni 'a homou kau taukapó pea mo homou kau fakamāú.

28 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi lea 'aki 'e 'Amuleki 'a e ngaahi lea ko 'eni, na'e lau'ikovi ia 'e he kakai, 'o nau pehē: Ko 'eni 'oku tau 'ilo 'i ko e fānau 'a e tēvolo 'a e tangatá ni, he kuó ne loi kiate kinautolu; koe'uhi he kuó ne lau'ikovi 'etau fonó. Pea ko 'eni 'okú ne pehē kuo 'ikai ke ne lau'ikovi 'i ia.

29 Pea ko e tahá, kuó ne lau'ikovi 'i 'etau kau taukapó pea mo 'etau kau fakamāú.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakapapau 'e he loto 'o e kau taukapó te nau manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a ni ko hono talatalaaki 'i.

But it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; now therefore, if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent.

And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.

But Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto them, saying: O ye wicked and perverse generation, why hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will ye yield yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind your eyes, that ye will not understand the words which are spoken, according to their truth?

For behold, have I testified against your law? Ye do not understand; ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.

And now behold, I say unto you, that the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your judges.

And now it came to pass that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he hath spoken against our law. And now he says that he has not spoken against it.

And again, he has reviled against our lawyers, and our judges.

And it came to pass that the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him.

31 Pea na'e 'i ai hanau tokotaha ko Sisolome hono hingoá. Ko e taki foki ia 'i hono talatalaaki 'i 'o 'Amuleki mo 'Alamaá, he ko ha taha ia 'i honau kau poto tahá, he na'e lahi 'ene ngāue ne ma'u mei he kakaí.

32 Pea ko e holi 'a e kau taukapó ni ke ma'u 'a e totongi; pea na'a nau ma'u 'a e totongi 'o fakatatau ki he'enau ngāué.

And there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom. Now he was the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma, he being one of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people.

Now the object of these lawyers was to get gain; and they got gain according to their employ.

‘Alamā 11

- 1 Ko ‘eni na‘e tu‘u ‘i he fono ‘o Mōsaiá ‘o pehē ko e tangata kotoa pē ‘oku hoko ko ha fakamaau ‘o e fonó, pe ko kinautolu kuo fili ko e kau fakamāú, ‘e ma‘u ‘e kinautolu ‘a e totongi ‘o fakatatau ki hono fuoloa ‘o ‘enau ngāue ki hono fakamāú ‘i ‘o kinautolu kuo ‘omi ki honau ‘aó ke fakamāú ‘í.
- 2 Ko ‘eni kapau ‘oku mo‘ua ha tangata ‘i he pa‘anga ki ha taha kehe, ‘o ‘ikai te ne fie totongi ‘a ia ‘okú ne mo‘ua aí, ‘oku fai leva ha lāunga ki he fakamāú koe‘uhi ko ia; pea ‘oku ngāue ‘aki ‘e he fakamāú ‘a hono mafái, ‘o ne fēkau ha kau pule ke ‘omi ‘a e tangatá kiate ia; pea ‘okú ne fakamāú ‘i ‘a e tangatá ‘o fakatatau ki he fonó pea mo e ngaahi fakamo‘oni na‘e ‘omi ke talatalaaki ‘i ‘aki iá, pea ko ia na‘e fakamālohi ‘i ai ‘a e tangatá ke totongi ‘a e me‘a na‘á ne mo‘ua aí, pe ‘e to‘o ‘ene me‘a kotoa pē, pe ‘e kapusi ki tu‘a ia mei he kakai ‘o hangē ko ha kaiha‘a mo e fa‘ao me‘a.
- 3 Pea na‘e totongi ‘a e fakamāú ‘o fakatatau ki hono fuoloa ‘o ‘ene ngāue—Ko ha sēnine ‘o e koula ki he ngāue ‘o e ‘aho ‘e taha, pe ko ha sēnumi ‘o e siliva, ‘a ia ‘oku mahu‘inga tatau mo ha sēnine ‘o e koula; pea ‘oku fakatatau ‘eni mo e fono ‘a ia kuo fokotu‘ú.
- 4 Vakai ko e ngaahi hingoa ‘eni ‘o ‘enau ngaahi kongá koula kehekehé, mo ‘enau silivá, ‘o fakatatau ki honau mahu‘ingá. Pea kuo fokotu‘u ‘a e ngaahi hingoá ‘e he kau Nifái, he na‘e ‘ikai te nau lau pa‘anga ‘o fakatatau ki he founga ‘o e kau Siu na‘e ‘i Selūsalemá; pea na‘e ‘ikai foki te nau fua ‘o fakatatau ki he founga ‘o e kau Siú; ka na‘a nau liliu ‘enau lau mo ‘enau fuá ‘o fakatatau ki he loto mo e anga ‘o e nofo ‘a e kakai ‘i he to‘u tangata taki taha, ‘o fai mai ki he pule ‘a e kau fakamaau ‘a ia kuo fokotu‘u ‘e he tu‘i ko Mōsaiá.
- 5 Ko hono anga foki ‘eni ‘o e ngaahi mahu‘inga ‘o ‘enau lau pa‘angá—ko e sēnine ‘o e koula, mo e seone ‘o e koula, pea mo e sumu ‘o e koula, mo e limina ‘o e koula.
- 6 Ko ha sēnume ‘o e siliva, mo ha amanoa ‘o e siliva, mo ha ‘eseloma ‘o e siliva, pea mo ha ‘oniti ‘o e siliva.
- 7 Na‘e tatau ‘a e sēnume ‘o e silivá mo e sēnine ‘o e koulá, pea na‘e tatau taki taha ia mo e fua ‘e taha ‘o e pa‘ale, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo e fua ‘e taha ‘o e fa‘ahinga keleni kotoa pē.

Alma 11

Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

And the judge received for his wages according to his time—a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah.

Now the reckoning is thus—a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

A senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

- 8 Ko e seone 'o e koulá na'e liunga ua hono mahu'ingá 'i hono mahu'ingá 'o e sēniné. Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.
- 9 Pea ko e sumu 'o e koulá na'e liunga ua hono mahu'ingá 'i hono mahu'ingá 'o e seoné. And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.
- 10 Pea ko e limina 'o e koulá na'e tatau 'a hono mahu'ingá mo e ngaahi me'a ko iá kotoa. And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.
- 11 Pea ko e 'amanoa 'e taha 'o e silivá na'e tatau mo e sēnume 'e ua. And an amnor of silver was as great as two senums.
- 12 Pea ko e 'eseloma 'o e silivá na'e tatau ia mo e sēnume 'e fā. And an ezrom of silver was as great as four senums.
- 13 Pea ko e 'onití na'e tatau ia mo hono mahu'ingá 'o e ngaahi me'a ko iá kotoa. And an onti was as great as them all.
- 14 Ko e mahu'ingá foki 'eni 'o e ngaahi pa'anga iiki hifo 'i he'enu lau pa'angá— Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their reckoning—
- 15 'Oku tatau 'a e sipiloné mo hono vaeua 'o e sēnume; ko ia 'oku fé'unga 'a e sipilone 'e tahá mo e vaeua 'o e fua 'e taha 'o e pa'ale. A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore, a shiblon for half a measure of barley.
- 16 Pea 'oku tatau 'a e sipilumé mo hono vaeua 'o e sipilone. And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.
- 17 Pea 'oku tatau 'a e liá mo hono vaeua 'o e sipilume. And a Leah is the half of a shiblum.
- 18 Ko e ngaahi mahu'ingá foki 'eni 'o fakatatau ki he'enu lau pa'angá. Now this is their number, according to their reckoning.
- 19 'Oku tatau foki 'a e 'anitione 'o e koulá mo e sipilone 'e tolu. Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.
- 20 Ko 'eni, ko e me'a pē taha na'e tokanga ki aí, ke ma'u ha tupu, koe'uhi ko 'enu ma'u 'enu ngaahi totongi 'o fakatatau ki hono fuoloa 'o 'enu ngāue, ko ia, na'a nau ue'i hake ai 'a e kakaí 'i he ngaahi feke'ike'i mo e fá'ahinga maveuveu kotoa pē pea mo e fai angahala, koe'uhi ke fuoloa ange ai 'enu ngāue ke ma'u 'a 'enu totongi, koe'uhi ke nau ma'u 'a e pa'anga 'o fakatatau mo e ngaahi tangi na'e 'omi kiate kinautolú; ko ia na'a nau ue'i hake 'a e loto 'o e kakaí ke nau 'ita kia 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki. Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, because they received their wages according to their employ, therefore, they did stir up the people to riotings, and all manner of disturbances and wickedness, that they might have more employ, that they might get money according to the suits which were brought before them; therefore they did stir up the people against Alma and Amulek.
- 21 Pea na'e kamata 'e he Sisolome ko 'ení ke fakafehu'i 'a 'Amuleki, 'o pehē ange: Te ke tali mai mu'a kiate au 'a e ngaahi fehu'i 'e ní'ihí 'a ia te u fai kiate koe? Ko e tangata poto foki 'a Sisolome 'i he ngaahi filio 'i kākā 'a e tēvoló, koe'uhi ke ne faka'auha 'a ia 'oku lelé; ko ia, na'a ne pehē ai kia 'Amuleki: Te ke tali mai mu'a 'a e ngaahi fehu'i te u fai kiate koe? And this Zeezrom began to question Amulek, saying: Will ye answer me a few questions which I shall ask you? Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that which was good; therefore, he said unto Amulek: Will ye answer the questions which I shall put unto you?

22 Pea na'e pehē ange 'e 'Amuleki kiate ia: 'Io, kapau 'e fakahā mai 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí 'a ia 'oku 'iate aú, ke u tali; koe'uhi 'e 'ikai te u lea 'aki ha me'a 'oku faikehekehe mo e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí. Pea na'e pehē ange 'e Sisolome kiate ia: Vakai, ko e 'oniti siliva 'eni 'e ono, pea te u 'atu 'eni kotoa pē ma'au 'o kapau te ke fakafisinga 'oku 'i ai ha Tokotaha Fungani Mā'olunga.

23 Ko 'eni na'e pehē ange 'e 'Amuleki: 'A koe, 'a e fānau 'o heli, ko e hā 'okú ke 'ahí'ahi 'i ai aú? 'Ikai 'okú ke 'ilo 'oku 'ikai vaivai 'a e kau mā'oni'oni ki he ngaahi 'ahí'ahi pehē?

24 'Okú ke tui koā 'oku 'ikai ha 'Otua? 'Oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'Oku 'ikai, ka 'okú ke 'ilo 'i 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otua, ka 'okú ke 'ofa lahi hake ki he pa'anga ko 'ená 'iate ia.

25 Pea ko 'eni kuó ke loi 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá kiate au. Na'á ke pehē mai kiate au—Vakai ki he 'oniti 'eni 'e ono ko 'ení, 'a ia 'oku fu'u mahu'inga, te u 'atu ia ma'au—ka na'e toka 'i ho lotó ke ta'ofi ia 'o 'ikai foaki kiate au; pea koe holi pē 'a ho lotó ke u fakafisinga 'a e 'Otua mo'oni mo mo'uí, koe'uhi ke ke ma'u ai ha 'uhinga ke faka'auha au. Pea ko 'eni vakai, ko e me'a 'i he fu'u angahalá ni te ke ma'u ho'o totongí.

26 Pea na'e pehē ange 'e Sisolome kiate ia: 'Okú ke pehē koā 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otua mo'oni mo mo'uí?

27 Pea na'e pehē 'e 'Amuleki: 'Io, 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otua mo'oni mo mo'uí.

28 Pea na'e pehē 'e Sisolome: 'Oku tokolahi 'a e 'Otuá 'i he toko tahá?

29 Pea tali ange 'e ia, 'Oku 'ikai.

30 Ko 'eni na'e toe pehē 'e Sisolome kiate ia: 'Okú ke 'ilo 'i fēfē 'a e ngaahi me'á ni?

31 Pea ne pehē ange: Kuo fakahā 'e ha 'āngelo 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate au.

32 Pea toe pehē ange 'e Sisolome: Ko hai ia 'e hā'ele maí? Ko e 'Alo ia 'o e 'Otuá?

33 Pea ne pehē ange kiate ia, 'Io.

34 Pea na'e toe pehē ange 'e Sisolome: Te ne fakamo'ui koā 'a hono kakaí 'i he'enau ngaahi angahalá? Pea na'e tali ange 'e 'Amuleki, 'o ne pehē kiate ia: 'Oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'e 'ikai, he 'oku 'ikai ke ne lava 'o faka'ikai 'i 'a 'ene folofolá.

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, if it be according to the Spirit of the Lord, which is in me; for I shall say nothing which is contrary to the Spirit of the Lord. And Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if thou wilt deny the existence of a Supreme Being.

Now Amulek said: O thou child of hell, why tempt ye me? Knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to no such temptations?

Believest thou that there is no God? I say unto you, Nay, thou knowest that there is a God, but thou lovest that lucre more than him.

And now thou hast lied before God unto me. Thou saidst unto me—Behold these six onties, which are of great worth, I will give unto thee—when thou hadst it in thy heart to retain them from me; and it was only thy desire that I should deny the true and living God, that thou mightest have cause to destroy me. And now behold, for this great evil thou shalt have thy reward.

And Zeezrom said unto him: Thou sayest there is a true and living God?

And Amulek said: Yea, there is a true and living God.

Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?

And he answered, No.

Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest thou these things?

And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me.

And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the Son of God?

And he said unto him, Yea.

And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it is impossible for him to deny his word.

35 Ko 'eni na'e pehē ange 'e Sisolome ki he kakaí:
Tokanga ke mou manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a ni; he na'á ne
pehē 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otuá pē taha; ka 'oku pehē mai 'e ia 'e
hā'ele mai 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, ka 'e 'ikai te ne fakamo'ui
'a hono kakaí—'o hangē kuo 'iate ia 'a e mafai ke fekau 'i
'a e 'Otuá.

36 Ko 'eni, na'e toe pehē ange kiate ia 'e 'Amuleki: Vakai
kuó ke loi, he 'okú ke pehē ne u lea 'o hangē 'oku 'iate au
'a e mafai ke fekau 'i 'a e 'Otuá ko e me'a 'i he'eku pehē 'e
'ikai te ne fakamo'ui 'a hono kakaí 'i he'enu ngaahi
angahalá.

37 Pea 'oku ou toe pehē kiate koe 'oku 'ikai ke ne lava 'o
fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu 'i he'enu ngaahi angahalá; he
'oku 'ikai te u lava ke faka'ikai 'i 'a 'ene folofolá, pea kuó
ne folofola 'oku 'ikai lava ke ma'u 'e ha me'a ta'ema'a 'a e
pule'anga 'o e langí; ko ia, 'e lava fēfē ke fakamo'ui 'a
kimoutolu, kae 'oua kuo mou ma'u 'a e pulé'anga 'o e
langí? Ko ia, 'e 'ikai lava ke fakamo'ui 'a kimoutolu 'i
ho'omou ngaahi angahalá.

38 Ko 'eni na'e toe pehē ange 'e Sisolome kiate ia: Ko e
Tamai Ta'engata mo'oni 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá?

39 Pea na'e pehē kiate ia 'e 'Amuleki: 'Io, ko e Tamai
Ta'engata mo'oni ia 'o e langí mo e māmaní pea mo e
ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku 'i aí; ko e tupu'angá ia mo e
iku'angá, ko e 'uluakí mo e ki muí;

40 Pea te ne hā'ele mai ki he māmaní ke huhu 'i hono
kakaí; pea te ne fua kiate ia 'a e ngaahi maumau-fono
'anautolu 'oku tui ki hono huafá; pea ko e fa'ahinga 'eni
'e ma'u 'a e mo'ui ta'engata, pea 'oku 'ikai hoko 'a e
fakamo'uí ki ha tokotaha kehe.

41 Ko ia 'e nofo ma'u 'a e kau angahalá 'o hangē kuo 'ikai
fai ha huhu 'í, kae ngata pē 'i hono vete ange 'o e ngaahi
ha 'i 'o e maté; he vakai, 'oku ha'u 'a e 'aho 'e toe tu'u ai 'a
e kakai fulipē mei he maté 'o tutu'u 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá,
pea 'e fakamāu 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki he'enu
ngaahi ngāué.

42 Ko 'eni, 'oku 'i ai ha mate 'oku ui ko ha mate fakasinó,
pea 'e vete 'e he pekia 'a Kalaisí 'a e ngaahi ha 'i 'o e mate
fakasino ko 'ení, koe'uhi ke fokotu'u hake 'a e kakai
fulipē mei he mate fakasinó ni.

Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that ye re-
member these things; for he said there is but one God;
yet he saith that the Son of God shall come, but he shall
not save his people—as though he had authority to
command God.

Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold thou hast
lied, for thou sayest that I spake as though I had author-
ity to command God because I said he shall not save his
people in their sins.

And I say unto you again that he cannot save them in
their sins; for I cannot deny his word, and he hath said
that no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of
heaven; therefore, how can ye be saved, except ye inherit
the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, ye cannot be saved
in your sins.

Now Zeezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of
God the very Eternal Father?

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, he is the very
Eternal Father of heaven and of earth, and all things
which in them are; he is the beginning and the end, the
first and the last;

And he shall come into the world to redeem his peo-
ple; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of
those who believe on his name; and these are they that
shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none
else.

Therefore the wicked remain as though there had
been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of
the bands of death; for behold, the day cometh that all
shall rise from the dead and stand before God, and be
judged according to their works.

Now, there is a death which is called a temporal
death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of
this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this
temporal death.

43 'E toe fakataha 'i 'a e sinó pea mo e laumālié 'i hono anga-haohaoá; 'e toe fakafoki 'a e alangá mo e hokotanga huí fakatou'osi ki hono tu'unga totonú, 'o hangē foki ko hotau anga 'i he taimi ní; pea 'e taki mai 'a kitautolu ke tutu'ú 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, 'o 'ilo'í 'o hangē foki 'oku tau 'ilo'í 'i he taimi ní, pea manatu'í lelei 'a 'etau angahala kotoa pē.

44 Ko 'eni, 'e hoko 'a e toe fakafoki ko 'eni ki he kakai fulipē, 'a e kakai motu'a mo e kau talavou fakatou'osi, 'a e pōpula mo e tau'atāina fakatou'osi, 'a e tangata mo e fefine, 'a e kau fai angahala mo e kau mā'oni'oni, pea na'a mo e tu'oni lou'ulu 'e tahá 'e 'ikai mole ia mei honau 'ulú; ka 'e toe fakafoki 'a e me'a kotoa pē ki hono tu'unga haohaoá, 'o hangē 'oku 'i aí ni iá, pe 'oku 'i he sinó, pea 'e 'omi 'a kinautolu ke nau fakamatala 'i he 'ao 'o e fakamaau 'o Kalaisi ko e 'Aló, mo e 'Otua ko e Tamaí, pea mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'a ia ko e 'Otua Ta'engata pē 'e taha, ke fakamāu'í 'o fakatatau ki he'enua ngaahi ngāué, pe 'oku lelei ia pe kovi.

45 Ko 'eni, vakai, kuó u lea kiate kimoutolu 'i he mate 'o e sino fakamāmaní, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e toetu'ú 'o e sino fakamāmaní. 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e fokotu'ú hake 'a e sino fakamāmaní ni ko ha sino ta'e-fa'a-mate, 'a ia ko e pehē ko e toe tu'ú hake mei he maté, 'io, mei he 'uluaki maté ki he mo'ui, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a nau toe mate; pea fakataha honau laumālié mo honau sinó, pea 'e 'ikai ke toe fakamavahe'í; ko ia 'e hoko hono kotoa 'o e sinó 'o fakalaumālie mo ta'e-fa'a-mate, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a nau toe lava 'o 'ilo 'a e 'au'auhá.

46 Ko 'eni, 'i he faka'osi 'e 'Amuleki 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e toe kamata ke 'ohovale 'a e kakaí, pea na'e kamata foki 'a Sisolome ke tetetete. Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a e ngaahi lea 'a 'Amulekí, kae kehe ko ia pē 'eni kuó u tohí.

The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt.

Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but every thing shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil.

Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption.

Now, when Amulek had finished these words the people began again to be astonished, and also Zeezrom began to tremble. And thus ended the words of Amulek, or this is all that I have written.

‘Alamā 12

- 1 Ko ‘eni, ko e me‘a ‘i he vakai ‘e ‘Alamā kuo ta‘ofi ‘e he ngaahi lea ‘a ‘Amulekí ‘a Sisolomé, he na‘á ne vakai kuo ‘ilo ‘e ‘Amuleki ‘i he‘ene loi mo kaka ke faka‘auha íá, pea ko e me‘a ‘i he‘ene vakai ‘okú ne kamata ke tetetete koe‘uhi ko ‘ene ‘ilo‘i ‘ene angahalá, na‘á ne fakaava ai hono ngutú ‘o kamata ke lea kiate ia, pea ke poupou ‘i ‘a e ngaahi lea ‘a ‘Amulekí, pea ke fakamatala ‘i ‘a e ngaahi me‘a ‘o lahi ange, pe ke fakamahino ‘i ‘a e ngaahi folofolá ‘o lahi ange ‘i he me‘a kuo fai ‘e ‘Amulekí.
- 2 Ko ‘eni, na‘e fanongo ‘e he kakai na‘e tu‘u takatakaí ki he ngaahi lea ‘a ia na‘e lea ‘aki ‘e ‘Alamā kia Sisolomé; he na‘e tokolahi ‘aupito ‘a e kakaí, pea ko e anga ‘eni ‘o ‘ene leá:
- 3 Ko ‘eni ‘e Sisolome, ko e me‘a ‘i he ‘ilo‘i koe ‘i ho‘o loí mo e kákaa, he kuo ‘ikai ke ngata ‘i ho‘o loi ki he tangatá, ka kuo ke loi ki he ‘Otuá; he vakai, ‘okú ne ‘afio ‘i ‘a ho‘o ngaahi fakakaukau kotoa pē, pea ‘okú ke vakai ‘oku fakahā kiate kimaua ‘a ho‘o ngaahi fakakaukau ‘e hono Laumálié.
- 4 Pea ‘okú ke vakai ‘okú ma ‘ilo‘i ko ho‘o fakakaukau ko ha fakakaukau fakaololo ‘aupito, ‘o tatau mo e olo poto ‘o e tēvoló, ke loi mo kákaa ‘i ai ‘a e kakaí ni ke ke lava ai ‘o fakafehi ‘a ‘a kinautolu kiate kimaua, ke nau lau‘ikovi ‘i mo kapusi ‘a kimaua ki tu‘a—
- 5 Ko e fakakaukau foki ‘eni ‘a ho filí, pea kuo ne ngāue ‘aki hono mālohí ‘iate koe. Pea ko hoku lotó ke ke manatu ‘i ko e me‘a ‘oku ou lea ‘aki kiate koé ‘oku ou lea ‘aki ia ki he kakai kotoa pē.
- 6 Pea vakai ‘oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kotoa pē ko ha tauhele ‘eni ‘a ho filí, ‘a ia kuó ne fokotu‘u ke tauhele ‘i ‘aki ‘a e kakaí ni, koe‘uhí ke ne lava ai ‘o fakamo‘ulaloa ‘i ‘a kimoutolu kiate ia, koe‘uhí ke ne lava ‘o kāpui ‘aki ‘a kimoutolu ‘a ‘ene ngaahi sēiní, koe‘uhi ke ne ha ‘iha ‘i hifo ‘a kimoutolu ki he ‘auha ta‘engatá, ‘o fakatatau ki he mālohi ‘o ‘ene fakapōpulá.

Alma 12

Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zeezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

Now the words that Alma spake unto Zeezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spake on this wise:

Now Zeezrom, seeing that thou hast been taken in thy lying and craftiness, for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all thy thoughts, and thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

And thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil, for to lie and to deceive this people that thou mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out—

Now this was a plan of thine adversary, and he hath exercised his power in thee. Now I would that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all.

And behold I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity.

7 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he 'osi hono lea 'aki 'e 'Alamā 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e kamata 'a Sisolome ke tetetete 'o fu'u lahi ange 'aupito, he kuo 'āsili ai pe hono mahino lahi ange kiate ia 'a e māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá; pea kuo mahino foki kiate ia 'oku ma'u 'e 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki ha 'ilo kiate ia, he kuo mahino kiate ia kuó na 'ilo'i 'a e ngaahi fakakaukau mo e ngaahi holi 'a hono lotó; he kuo tuku 'a e mālohi kiate kināua ke na 'ilo ki he ngaahi me'a ko iá 'o fakatatau ki he laumālie 'o e kikité.

8 Pea na'e kamata 'e Sisolome ke 'eke fakamātoato kiate kināua, koe'uhí ke ne 'ilo lahi ange ki he pulé'anga 'o e 'Otuá. Pea na'á ne pehē kia 'Alamā: Ko e hā hono 'uhinga 'o e me'á ni, 'a ia kuo lea 'aki 'e 'Amuleki 'o kau ki he toetu'u 'o e maté, 'o pehē 'e toe tu'u 'a e kakai kotoa pē mei he maté, 'o tatau 'a e angatonu mo e ta'e-angatonu, pea 'e 'omai ke tutu'u 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá ke fakamāu 'i 'o fakatatau ki he'enua ngaahi ngāu'é?

9 Pea ko 'eni na'e kamata 'e 'Alamā ke fakamatala'i 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate ia, 'o ne pehē: 'Oku tuku ki ha tokolahi ke 'ilo'i 'a e ngaahi me'a lilo 'a e 'Otuá; ka neongo iá kuo fai kiate kinautolu ha fekau mamafa ke 'oua na'a nau fakahā kae fakatatau pē ki he kongā 'o 'ene folofolá 'a ia 'okú ne fakangofua ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'o fakatatau ki he tokanga mo e faivelenga 'oku nau fai kiate iá.

10 Pea ko ia, 'ilonga ia 'e fakafefeka hono lotó, 'e ma'u 'e ia 'a e kongā sí'i ange 'o e folofolá; pea 'ilonga ia 'e 'ikai fakafefeka hono lotó, 'e foaki kiate ia 'a e kongā lahi 'o e folofolá, kae 'oua kuo tuku kiate ia ke ne 'ilo'i 'a e ngaahi me'a lilo 'a e 'Otuá 'o a'u ki he'ene 'ilo'i hono kotoa.

11 Pea ko kinautolu 'e fakafefeka honau lotó, 'e foaki kiate kinautolu 'a e kongā sí'i ange 'o e folofolá kae 'oua kuo 'ikai ke nau 'ilo'i ha me'a 'o kau ki he'ene ngaahi me'a lilo; pea 'e toki fakapōpula 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he tēvoló, pea taki hifo 'a kinautolu 'i he'ene fá'itelihá ki he faka'auhá. Ko 'eni ko hono 'uhinga 'eni 'o e ngaahi sēini 'o helí.

12 Pea kuo lea mahinongofua 'a 'Amuleki 'o kau ki he maté, pea mo e fokotu'u hake mei he fá'a 'au'auhá ni ki he ta'e-fá'a-'au'auhá, mo e taki mai ki he fakamaau 'o e 'Otuá, ke fakamāu 'i 'o fakatatau ki he'etau ngaahi ngāu'é.

Now when Alma had spoken these words, Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God; and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him, for he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his heart; for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy.

And Zeezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God. And he said unto Alma: What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the unjust, and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works?

And now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying: It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

And Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

- 13 Pea kapau kuo hoko 'o fakafefeka hotau lotó, 'io, kapau kuo tau fakafefeka hotau lotó ki he folofolá, kae 'oua kuo 'ikai 'iloa ia 'iate kitautolu, 'e toki fakamanavahē leva 'a hotau tu'ungá, he 'e toki fakahalaia 'i ai 'a kitautolu.
- 14 Koe'uhi he 'e fakahalaia 'i kitautolu 'e he'etau ngaahi leá, 'io, 'e fakahalaia 'i 'a kitautolu 'e he'etau ngaahi ngāué kotoa; 'e 'ikai lau 'a kitautolu 'oku ta'e-ha-mele; pea 'e fakahalaia 'i 'a kitautolu foki 'e he'etau ngaahi fakakauá; pea 'i he tu'unga fakamanavahē ko iá 'e 'ikai te tau loto-to'a ke sio hake ki hotau 'Otuá; pea te tau fie fiefia 'o kapau te tau lava 'o fekau ki he ngaahi maká mo e ngaahi mo'ungá ke holo hifo kiate kitautolu ke fufuu 'i 'a kitautolu mei hono 'aó.
- 15 Ka 'e 'ikai lava ke pehē; he kuo pau ke tau ō mai 'o tutu'ú 'i hono 'aó 'i hono nāunaú, mo hono mālohí, mo hono māfimafi, mo e ngeiá, pea mo e pule aoniú, 'o fakamo'oni 'i hotau fakamaa 'i ta'engatá 'oku totonu 'a 'ene ngaahi fakamaau kotoa pē; pea 'okú ne angatonu 'i he'ene ngaahi ngāué kotoa pē, pea 'okú ne 'alo'ofa ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, pea 'oku 'iate ia 'a e māfimafi kotoa pē ke fakamo'ui 'a e tangata fulipē 'oku tui ki hono huafá 'o fua 'aki 'a e fua 'oku ngali mo e fakatomalá.
- 16 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'e toki hoko mai ha mate, 'io ko e mate 'anga uá, 'a ia ko ha mate fakalaumālie; ko e taimi ko iá 'ilonga ia 'oku mate 'i he'ene ngaahi angahalá 'i he mate fakasinó, 'io, 'e toki mate ia 'i ha mate fakalaumālie; 'io, te ne mate ki he ngaahi me'a 'oku kau ki he mā'oni'oni.
- 17 Ko e taimi 'eni 'e tatau ai honau fakamamahi 'i mo ha ano 'o e afi mo e maka-vela, 'a ia 'oku 'alu hake hono uló 'o ta'engata pea ta'engata; pea ko ia ia 'a e taimi 'e toki ha'iha 'i hifo 'a kinautolu ki he faka'auha ta'engatá, 'o fakatatau ki he mālohi mo e fakapōpula 'a Sētané, he kuó ne fakapōpula 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau mo hono lotó.
- 18 Ko ia 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, te nau toki hangē kuo 'ikai ha huhu 'i 'e faí; he 'oku 'ikai lava 'o huhu 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki he fakamaau totonu 'a e 'Otuá; pea 'oku 'ikai te nau lava 'o mate, he 'oku 'ikai ke toe 'i ai ha 'auha.
- 19 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he faka'osi 'e 'Alamā hono lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e kamata ke ofo 'o lahi ange 'a e kakai.

Then if our hearts have been hardened, yea, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, insomuch that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance.

And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea, he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness.

Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

Then, I say unto you, they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words, the people began to be more astonished;

- 20 Ka na'e ai ha tokotaha ko Enitiona, 'a ia ko ha pule lahi 'iate kinautolu, na'e ha'u ia 'o ne pehē kiate ia: Ko e hā 'a e me'a ko ia kuó ke pehē 'e toe tu'u 'a e tangatá mei he maté 'o liliu mei he fa'a-maté ni ki he tu'unga ta'e-fa'a-mate, ke 'oua na'a lava 'o toe mate 'a e laumālié?
- 21 Ko e hā 'a e 'uhinga 'o e folofola, 'oku pehē na'e tuku 'e he 'Otuá ha kau selupimi mo ha heletā ulo 'i he potu hahake 'o e ngoue 'o 'Ītení, telia na'a hū 'a 'etau 'uluaki mātu'á 'o na kai 'a e fua 'o e 'akau 'o e mo'uí, peá na mo'uí 'o ta'engata? Pea ko ia 'oku tau vakai ai na'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha kihí 'i momo'í faingamālie ke na mo'uí ai 'o ta'engata.
- 22 Ko 'eni na'e pehē ange 'e 'Alamā kiate ia: Ko e me'a ia na'á ku 'ai ke fakamatala'í. Ko 'eni 'oku tau vakai na'e hinga 'a 'Ātama 'i he'ene kai 'a e fua tapú, 'o fakatatau ki he folofola 'a e 'Otuá; pea ko ia 'oku tau vakai ai na'e hoko 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangata 'i he'ene hinga'á ko ha kakai kuo hē mo tō ki lalo.
- 23 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe ka ne lava 'e 'Ātama ke kai 'a e fua 'o e 'akau 'o e mo'uí 'i he taimi ko iá, pehē kuo 'ikai ke 'i ai ha mate, pea kuo ta'e'aonga 'a e folofolá, 'o lau ai 'a e 'Otuá ko ha loi, he na'á ne folofola: Kapau te ke kai, kuo pau te ke mate.
- 24 Pea 'oku tau vakai 'oku hoko 'a e mate ki he fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá, 'io, 'a e mate ko ia kuo lau ki ai 'a 'Amulekí, 'a ia ko e mate fakasinó; ka neongo iá na'e tuku ki he tangatá ha vaha'ataimi ke ne lava ai 'o fakatomala; ko ia na'e hoko ai 'a e mo'uí ni ko ha tu'unga 'ahí'ahí'anga; ko ha taimi ke teuteu ai ke fé'iloaki mo e 'Otuá; ko ha taimi ke teuteu ki he tu'unga ta'engata 'a ia kuó ma lau ki aí, 'a ia 'e hoko 'i he hili 'a e toetu'u 'o e maté.
- 25 Ko 'eni, ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e palani 'o e huhu'í, 'a ia na'e fokotu'u talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní, kuo 'ikai lava ke 'i ai ha toetu'u 'o e maté; ka na'e 'i ai ha palani 'o e huhu'í na'e fokotu'u, 'a ia 'e fakahoko 'a e toetu'u 'o e maté, 'a ia kuo lau ki aí.
- 26 Pea ko 'eni vakai, ka ne lava 'o 'alu atu 'a 'etau 'uluaki ongo mātu'á 'o kai 'a e fua 'o e 'akau 'o e mo'uí, pehē kuó na mamahí'ia 'o ta'engata, 'o 'ikai ma'u ha tu'unga teuteu'anga; pea ko ia 'e fakata'e'aonga 'i ai 'a e palani 'o e huhu'í, pea 'e ta'e'aonga 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'o ta'elava ai ha me'a.

But there was one Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him: What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state, that the soul can never die?

What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? And thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever.

Now Alma said unto him: This is the thing which I was about to explain. Now we see that Adam did fall by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and thus we see, that by his fall, all mankind became a lost and fallen people.

And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would have been no death, and the word would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If thou eat thou shalt surely die.

And we see that death comes upon mankind, yea, the death which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us, which is after the resurrection of the dead.

Now, if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect.

27 Kae vakai, na'e 'ikai ke pehē; ka na'e tu'utu'uni ki he fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá kuo pau ke nau mate; pea ka hili ange 'a e maté, ke nau o mai ki he fakamāú, 'a ia ko e fakamaau pē ko ia kuó ma lau ki aí, 'a ia ko e ngata'angá.

28 Pea hili 'a e tu'utu'uni 'e he 'Otuá ke hoko 'a e ngaahi me'á ni ki he tangatá, vakai, na'á ne toki 'afio'i 'oku totonu ke 'ilo 'e he tangatá ki he ngaahi me'a kuó ne tu'utu'uni kiate kinautolú;

29 Ko ia na'á ne fekau ai ha kau 'āngelo ke fealea'aki mo kinautolu, pea nau ngaohi 'a e tangatá ke mamata ki hono nāunaú.

30 Pea na'a nau kamata 'o fai atu mei he taimi ko iá ke ui ki hono huafá; ko ia na'e fefolofolai 'a e 'Otuá mo e tangatá, 'o ne fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e palani 'o e huhu'í, 'a ia kuo teuteu talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní; pea na'á ne fakahā 'eni kiate kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki he'enau tuí mo e fakatomalá pea mo 'enau ngaahi ngāue mā'oni'oní.

31 Ko ia, na'á ne tuku ha ngaahi fekau ki he fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá, he kuo nau tomu'a maumau'i 'a e ngaahi 'uluaki fekaú 'i he ngaahi me'a na'e fakamāmaní, 'o nau hoko 'o hangē ko e ngaahi 'otua, 'o 'ilo'i 'a e lelei mei he kovi, 'o fokotu'u 'a kinautolu 'i ha tu'unga ke ngāue, pe fokotu'u 'i ha tu'unga ke ngāue 'o fakatatau mo honau lotó mo 'enau fa'itelihá, ke fai kovi, pe failelei—

32 Ko ia na'e tuku ai 'e he 'Otuá ha ngaahi fekau kiate kinautolu, hili 'ene fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e palani 'o e huhu'í, ke 'oua na'a nau fai kovi, he ko e tautea ki aí ko ha mate 'anga ua, 'a ia ko ha mate ta'engata 'i he ngaahi me'a 'oku kau ki he mā'oni'oní; koe'uhi 'e 'ikai ke mafai ha me'a 'e he palani 'o e huhu'í ki he kakai peheé, he 'oku 'ikai te ne ma'u ha mālohi ki he ngaahi ngāue 'o e fakamaau totonú, 'o fakatatau mo e fungani angalelei 'o e 'Otuá.

33 Ka kuo ui 'e he 'Otuá ki he fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá 'i he huafa 'o hono 'Aló (he ko e palani 'eni 'o e huhu'í na'e fokotu'ú) 'o ne folofola: Kapau te mou fakatomala 'o 'ikai fakafekā homou lotó, pehē te u 'alo'ofa kiate kimoutolu 'i hoku 'Alo pē Taha na'e Fakatupú;

But behold, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

And after God had appointed that these things should come unto man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

Therefore he sent angels to converse with them, who caused men to behold of his glory.

And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works.

Wherefore, he gave commandments unto men, they having first transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal, and becoming as gods, knowing good from evil, placing themselves in a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills and pleasures, whether to do evil or to do good—

Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil, the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent, and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son;

- 34 Ko ia, 'ilonga ia 'oku fakatomala pea 'ikai fakafefeka hono lotó, 'e ma'u 'e ia 'a e totonu ki he 'alo'ofa 'i hoku 'Alo pē Taha na'e Fakatupú, ki ha fakamolemole 'o 'ene ngaahi angahalá; pea 'e hū 'a e fa'ahingá ni ki hoku mālōlō'angá.
- 35 Pea 'ilonga ia 'e fakafefeka hono lotó mo fai angahalá, vakai 'oku ou fuakava 'i he'eku 'itá 'e 'ikai te ne hū ki hoku mālōlō'angá.
- 36 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau te mou fakafefeka homou lotó, he 'ikai ke mou hū ki he mālōlō'anga 'o e 'Eikí; ko ia 'oku fakahouhau 'i ia 'e ho'omou angahalá ke ne fekau hifo ai kiate kimoutolu 'a hono houhaú 'o hangē ko ia na'e fai 'i he 'uluaki fakatupu houhaú, 'io, 'o hangē ko 'ene folofola 'i he fakahouhau fakamuimuí pea mo e 'uluakí foki, ki hono faka'auha ta'engata 'o homou ngaahi laumālié; ko ia, 'oku fakatatau ai ki he'ene folofolá, ki he mate fakamuimuí pea mo e 'uluakí foki.
- 37 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, ko e me'a 'i he'etau 'ilo'í 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, pea 'oku mo'oni ia, tuku ke tau fakatomala, pea 'oua 'e fakafefeka hotau lotó, ke 'oua na'a tau fakatupu houhau ki he 'Eiki ko hotau 'Otuá, ke 'ohifo hono houhaú kiate kitautolu 'i he'ene ngaahi fekau hono ua ko 'eni 'a ia kuó ne tuku kiate kitautolú; kae tuku ke tau hū ki he mālōlō'anga 'o e 'Otuá, 'a ia kuo teuteu 'o fakatatau ki he'ene folofolá.

Therefore, whosoever repenteth, and hardeneth not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through mine Only Begotten Son, unto a remission of his sins; and these shall enter into my rest.

And whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.

And now, my brethren, behold I say unto you, that if ye will harden your hearts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord; therefore your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation, yea, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first.

And now, my brethren, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us; but let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

‘Alamā 13

- 1 Pea ‘ikai ia ko ia, ‘e hoku kāinga, ‘oku ou loto ke fakatokanga ‘i ange ho‘omou fakakaukau ki he taimi ‘a ia na‘e fai ai ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá, ‘a e ngaahi fekaú ni ki he‘ene fānaú; pea ko hoku loto ke mou manatu‘i, na‘e fakanofu ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá ha kau taula‘eiki, ‘i hono lakanga toputapú, ‘a ia na‘e tatau mo e lakanga ‘o hono ‘Aló, ke nau akonaki ‘aki ‘a e ngaahi me‘á ni ki he kakáí.
- 2 Pea na‘e fakanofu ‘a e kau taula‘eiki ko iá ‘o fakatatau ki he lakanga ‘o hono ‘Aló ‘i ha founa ‘a ia ‘e lava ke ‘ilo‘i ai ‘e he kakáí pe ‘e anga-fēfē ‘enau sio ki hono ‘Aló ke ma‘u ha huhu‘í.
- 3 Pea ko e founa ‘eni na‘e fakanofu ai ‘a kinautolu—na‘e ui mo teuteu‘i ‘a kinautolu talu mei hono ‘ai ‘a e tu‘unga ‘o māmaní, ‘o fakatatau ki he tokaima‘ananga ‘a e ‘Otuá, tu‘unga ‘i he‘enau fu‘u tui lahi ‘aupito mo e ngaahi ngāue leleí; kuo tomu‘a tuku kiate kinautolu ke nau fili ‘a e leleí pe ko e koví; ko ia ‘i he‘enau fili ‘a e leleí, mo ngāue ‘aki ‘a e fu‘u tui lahi, kuo ui ai ‘a kinautolu ‘aki ha lakanga toputapu, ‘io, ‘aki ‘a e lakanga toputapu ‘a ia na‘e teuteu‘i, pea fakatatau mo ha huhu‘i teuteu mo‘ó e kakai peheé.
- 4 Pea ko ia kuo ui ‘a kinautolu ki he lakanga toputapú ni tu‘unga ‘i he‘enau tuí, ka ko e ní‘ihi kehé kuo nau fie lí‘aki ‘a e Laumālie ‘o e ‘Otuá ‘i he fefeka ‘o honau lotó mo e fakapo‘uli ‘a honau ‘atamaí, ka ‘o ka ne ta‘é‘oua ‘eni pehē kuo nau ma‘u ha faingamālie lahi ‘o hangē ko honau kāingá.
- 5 ‘A ia ko e pehē, na‘a nau tu‘u ‘i he kamata‘angá ‘i he tu‘unga tatau mo honau kāingá; ko ia na‘e teuteu‘i ‘a e lakanga toputapú ni talu hono ‘ai ‘a e tu‘unga ‘o māmaní ma‘á e fa‘ahinga ‘e ‘ikai ke nau fakafefeka honau lotó, tu‘unga pea founa ‘i he fakalelei ‘a e ‘Alo pē Taha na‘e Fakatupú, ‘a ia na‘e teuteu—
- 6 Pea ‘i he ui pehē ‘a kinautolu ‘i he lakanga toputapú ni mo fakanofu ki he lakanga fakataula‘eiki mā‘olunga ‘o e lakanga toputapu ‘o e ‘Otuá, ke akonaki ‘aki ‘ene ngaahi fekaú ki he fānaú ‘a e tangatá, koe‘uhí ke nau lava foki ‘o hū ki hono mālōlō‘angá—

Alma 13

And again, my brethren, I would cite your minds forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children; and I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.

And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.

And this is the manner after which they were ordained—being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith, are called with a holy calling, yea, with that holy calling which was prepared with, and according to, a preparatory redemption for such.

And thus they have been called to this holy calling on account of their faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds, while, if it had not been for this they might have had as great privilege as their brethren.

Or in fine, in the first place they were on the same standing with their brethren; thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared—

And thus being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to teach his commandments unto the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest—

7 Ko e lakanga fakataula'eiki mā'olunga ni 'oku fakatatau ia ki he lakanga 'o hono 'Aló, 'a ia ko e lakanga kuo 'i ai talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní; pe ko e pehē, 'oku 'ikai hano kamata'anga 'o hono ngaahi 'ahó pe ko hano ngata'anga 'o hono ngaahi ta'ú, kuo teuteu 'i ia mei he ta'engata ki he ta'engata kotoa, 'o fakatatau ki he tokaima'ananga kiate ia 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē—

8 Pea na'e fakanofu 'a kinautolu 'i he founa ko 'eni— kuo ui 'a kinautolu ki ha lakanga toputapu, pea fakanofu 'i ha ouau toputapu, pea nau to'o kiate kinautolu 'a e lakanga fakataula'eiki mā'olunga 'o e lakanga toputapú, 'a ia ko e lakanga, mo e ouau, pea mo e lakanga fakataula'eiki mā'olunga, 'oku 'ikai hano kamata'anga pe ngata'anga—

9 Ko ia 'oku nau hoko ko e kau taula'eiki lahi 'o ta'engata, 'i he lakanga 'o e 'Aló, 'a e 'Alo pē Taha na'e Fakatupu 'o e Tamaí, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai hano kamata'anga 'o hono ngaahi 'ahó pe ko hano ngata'anga 'o hono ngaahi ta'ú, 'a ia 'oku fonu 'i he 'alo'ofa mo e angatonu pea mo e mo'oni. Pea 'oku pehē pē. 'Ēmeni.

10 Ko 'eni, hangē ko 'eku lea ki he lakanga toputapú ni pe ko e lakanga fakataula'eiki mā'olunga ní, na'e 'i ai ha tokolahi na'e fakanofu 'o nau hoko ko ha kau taula'eiki lahi 'o e 'Otuá; pea na'e tu'unga ia 'i he 'enau fu'u tui lahi mo e fakatomalá pea mo 'enau mā'oni'oni 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, he na'a nau fili ke fakatomala mo fai 'a e mā'oni'oni kae 'ikai mala'ia;

11 Ko ia na'e ui 'a kinautolu ki he lakanga toputapú ni mo fakamā'oni'oni'i, mo fō honau kofú ke hinehina 'i he ta'ata'a 'o e Lamí.

12 Ko 'eni hili honau fakamā'oni'oni'i 'e he Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, mo fakahinehina honau ngaahi kofú, 'o nau ma'a mo ta'e-hano-ila 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, na'e 'ikai te nau lava 'o sio ki ha angahala ka 'i he fakalilí'a; pea na'e ai ha tokolahi, 'a ia ko ha fu'u tokolahi 'aupito, 'a ia na'e fakama'a mo nau hū ki he mālōlō'anga 'o e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá.

13 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, ko hoku lotó ke mou fakavaivai 'i 'a kimoutolu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, pea fakahā 'a e fua 'oku ngali mo e fakatomalá, koe'uhí ke mou lava foki 'o hū ki he mālōlō'anga ko iá.

This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which order was from the foundation of the world; or in other words, being without beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things—

Now they were ordained after this manner—being called with a holy calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and high priesthood, is without beginning or end—

Thus they become high priests forever, after the order of the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, who is without beginning of days or end of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth. And thus it is. Amen.

Now, as I said concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood, there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God; and it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and work righteousness rather than to perish;

Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified, and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest.

14 'Io, fakavaivai 'i 'a kimoutolu 'o hangē ko e kakai 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o Melekisēteki, 'a ia ko ha taula'eiki lahi foki 'i he lakanga pē ko ia 'a ia kuó u lea ki aí, 'a ia na'á ne ma'u foki 'a e lakanga fakataula'eiki mā'olungá kiate ia ke ta'engata.

15 Pea ko ia ia 'a e Melekisēteki na'e totongi ki ai 'e 'Ēpalahame 'a e ngaahi vahehongofulu; 'io, na'a mo 'etau tamai ko 'Ēpalahamé na'á ne totongi 'a e vahe hongofulu 'aki 'a e vahe hongofulu 'e taha 'o e me'a kotoa pē na'á ne ma'ú.

16 Na'e tuku mai foki 'a e ngaahi ouaú ni 'i he founga ko 'ení, koe'uhí ke lava ai ke sio 'a e kakai ki mu'a ki he 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, he ko ha taípe ia 'o hono lakangá, pe ko hono lakangá ia, pea 'oku peheé koe'uhi ke nau lava 'o sio ki mu'a kiate ia ke ma'u ha fakamolemole 'o 'enau angahalá, koe'uhí ke nau lava 'o hū ki he mālōlō 'anga 'o e 'Eiki.

17 Ko 'eni ko e Melekisēteki ko 'ení foki ko ha tu'í ia ki he fonua ko Sēlemí; pea na'e faka'au 'o mālohi 'a hono kakai 'i he fai angahalá mo e anga-fakalielia; 'io, na'a nau hē kotoa pē; pea nau fonu 'i he fa'ahinga fai angahala kotoa pē.

18 Ka kuo ngāue 'aki 'e Melekisēteki 'a e fu'u tui lahi, pea ma'u 'a e lakanga 'o e lakanga fakataula'eiki mā'olungá 'o fakatatau ki he lakanga toputapu 'o e 'Otuá, peá ne malanga 'aki 'a e fakatomalá ki hono kakai. Pea vakai, na'a nau fakatomala; pea na'e fokotu'u 'e Melekisēteki 'a e melinó 'i he fonuá 'i hono ngaahi 'aho; ko ia na'e ui ai ia ko e pilinisi 'o e melinó, he ko e tu'í ia 'o Sēlemi; pea na'á ne pule fakaongoongo ki he'ene tamai.

19 Ko 'eni, na'e 'i ai ha tokolahi ki mu'a 'iate ia, kae 'uma'ā foki mo ha tokolahi ki mui 'iate ia, ka na'e 'ikai ha taha na'e lahi hake; ko ia kuo nau lau 'o lahi ange kiate ia.

20 Ko 'eni 'oku 'ikai 'aonga ke u fakamatala ki he me'á; mahalo kuo fe'unga 'a ia kuó u lea'akí. Vakai, 'oku 'i homou 'ao 'a e ngaahi folofolá; kapau te mou faka'uhinga 'i kehe ia, 'e hoko ia ko homou faka'auha'anga 'omoutolu.

Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.

And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord.

Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;

But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father.

Now, there were many before him, and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.

Now I need not rehearse the matter; what I have said may suffice. Behold, the scriptures are before you; if ye will wrest them it shall be to your own destruction.

- 21 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e lea 'aki 'e 'Alamā 'a e ngaahi leá ni kiate kinautolú, na'á ne mafao atu hono nimá kiate kinautolu 'o ne kaila 'i he le'o-lahi 'o pehē: Ko 'eni 'a e taimi ke fakatomala aí, he 'oku ofi mai 'a e 'aho 'o e fakamo'uí;
- 22 'Io, pea 'oku fakahā ia 'e he le' 'o e 'Eikí 'i he ngutu 'o e kau 'āngeló, ki he pule'anga kotoa pē; 'io, 'oku fakahā ia, koe'uhí ke nau lava 'o má'u 'a e ongoongo fakafiefia 'o e fiefia lahi; 'io, pea 'okú ne fakaongo atu 'a e ngaahi ongoongo fakafiefia ko iá 'i he lotolotonga 'o hono kakai kotoa pē, 'io, 'o a'u kiate kinautolu kuo fakamovetevete holo 'i he funga 'o māmaní; ko ia kuo hoko mai ia kiate kinautolu.
- 23 Pea 'oku fakahā ia kiate kinautolu 'i he lea mahinongofua, koe'uhi ke mahino kiate kinautolu, koe'uhí ke 'oua na'a tau hē; pea 'oku pehē koe'uhi ko e kau 'auhē 'a kinautolu 'i ha fonua ngali fo'ou; ko ia, kuo tau fu'u 'ofeina lahi, he kuo fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e ongoongo fakafiefia ko 'ení 'i he ngaahi potu kotoa pē 'o 'etau ngoue vainé.
- 24 He vakai, 'oku fa'a fakahā ia 'e he kau 'āngelo ki ha tokolahi 'i hotau fonuá 'i he taimí ni; pea ko hono 'uhinga 'oku fai ai iá ke teuteu 'i 'a e loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá ke tali 'ene folofolá 'i he taimi 'o 'ene hā'ele mai 'i hono nāunaú.
- 25 Pea ko 'eni 'oku tau tatali pē ke fanongo ki hono fakahā mai kiate kinautolu 'o e ongoongo fakafiefia 'o 'ene hā'ele maí 'e he ngutu 'o e kau 'āngeló; he 'e hoko maí 'a e taimí, ka 'oku 'ikai te tau 'ilo 'i hono vavé. 'Amusia ange 'e au ki he 'Otuá ke hoko mai ia 'i hoku 'ahó; kae tuku ke vave ia pe tuai, ka te u fiefia ai pē au.
- 26 Pea 'e fakahā ia ki ha kau tangata angatonu mo mā'oni'oni, 'e he ngutu 'o e kau 'āngelo, 'i he taimi 'o 'ene hā'ele maí, koe'uhi ke lava 'o fakamo'oni 'i 'a e ngaahi lea 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí, 'o fakatatau mo e me'a kuo nau lea 'aki 'o kau kiate iá, 'a ia na'e fakatatau ki he laumālie 'o e kikite na'e 'iate kinautolú.
- 27 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku ou faka'amu 'i hono mo'oni taha 'o hoku lotó, 'io, 'i he fu'u loto-hoha 'a lahi 'o a'u ki he mamahi, ke mou fie tokanga ki he'eku ngaahi leá, pea lí'aki ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, 'o 'ikai fakatatali 'a e 'aho 'o ho'omou fakatomalá;

And now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand unto them and cried with a mighty voice, saying: Now is the time to repent, for the day of salvation draweth nigh;

Yea, and the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it unto all nations; yea, doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy; yea, and he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people, yea, even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth; wherefore they have come unto us.

And they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land; therefore, we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.

For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.

And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice.

And it shall be made known unto just and holy men, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our fathers may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

And now, my brethren, I wish from the inmost part of my heart, yea, with great anxiety even unto pain, that ye would hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;

- 28 Ka ke mou fakavaivai 'i 'a kimoutolu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eiki, pea ui ki hono huafa toputapu, pea le'o mo lotu ma'u ai pē, ke 'oua na'a 'ahi'ahi 'i 'a kimoutolu 'o lahi ange 'i he me'a 'oku mou lava 'o kātaki'í, pea tataki ai 'a kimoutolu 'e he Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'o mou hoko 'o loto-fakatōkilalo mo angamalū mo anganofo mo fa'a kātaki, pea fonu 'i he 'ofa mo e fa'a kātaki fuoloa kotoa pē;
- 29 'O ma'u 'a e tui ki he 'Eiki; 'o ma'u ha 'amanaki lelei te mou ma'u 'a e mo'ui ta'engata; 'o ma'u 'a e 'ofa ki he 'Otuá ma'u ai pē 'i homou lotó, koe'uhí ke hiki hake 'a kimoutolu 'i he 'aho fakamuí pea mou hū ki hono mālōlō'angá.
- 30 Pea 'ofa ke tuku 'e he 'Eiki kiate kimoutolu 'a e fakatomalá, koe'uhí ke 'oua na'a mou fakatupu 'a hono houhaú kiate kimoutolu, ke 'oua na'a ha'isia 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi ha 'i 'o helí, ke 'oua na'a mou mamahi 'i he mate 'anga uá.
- 31 Pea na'e toe lea 'aki 'e Alamā ha ngaahi lea lahi ange ki he kakaí, 'a ia kuo 'ikai tohi 'i he tohi ni.

But that ye would humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear, and thus be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and all long-suffering;

Having faith on the Lord; having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life; having the love of God always in your hearts, that ye may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.

And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

And Alma spake many more words unto the people, which are not written in this book.

‘Alamā 14

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili ‘ene faka‘osi ‘ene lea ki he kakaí na‘e tui hanau tokolahi ki he‘ene ngaahi leá, ‘o nau kamata ke fakatomala, mo fakatotolo ‘i he ngaahi folofolá.
- 2 Ka ko honau tokolahi na‘a nau faka‘amu ke nau tāmata‘i ‘a ‘Alamā mo ‘Amuleki; he na‘a nau ‘ita kia ‘Alamā, koe‘uhi ko e mahinongofua ‘o ‘ene ngaahi lea kia Sisolomé; pea na‘a nau pehē foki kuo loi ‘a ‘Amuleki kiate kinautolu, pea kuó ne lau‘ikovi‘i ‘enau fonó kae ‘uma‘ā foki honau kau taukapó mo e kau fakamāú.
- 3 Pea na‘a nau ‘ita foki kia ‘Alamā mo ‘Amuleki; pea ko me‘a ‘i he‘ena fakamo‘oni ‘o fu‘u mahinongofua pehē ki he‘enau fai angahalá, na‘a nau feinga ai ke tāmata‘i fakafufū ‘a kinaua.
- 4 Ka na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ‘ikai ke nau fai pehē; ka nau puke ‘a kinaua ‘o ha‘i ‘aki ha ngaahi afo mālohi, pea nau taki atu ‘a kinaua ki he ‘ao ‘o e tu‘i fakamaau lahi ‘o e fonuá.
- 5 Pea na‘e ‘alu atu ‘a e kakaí ‘o talatalaaki‘i ‘a kinaua—‘o nau fakamo‘oni kuó na lau‘ikovi‘i ‘a e fonó mo ‘enau kau taukapó pea mo e kau fakamaau ‘o e fonuá, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo e kakai kotoa pē ‘oku ‘i he fonuá; peá na fakamo‘oni foki ko e ‘Otua pē taha, pea te ne fekau‘i mai hono ‘Aló ki he kakaí, ka ‘e ‘ikai te ne fakamo‘ui ‘a kinautolu; pea na‘e lahi pehē ‘a e ngaahi me‘a na‘e talatalaaki‘i ‘aki ‘e he kakaí ‘a ‘Alamā mo ‘Amuleki. Pea na‘e fai ‘eni ‘i he ‘ao ‘o e fakamaau lahi ‘o e fonuá.
- 6 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ofo ‘a Sisolome ‘i he ngaahi lea kuo lea‘akí; peá ne ‘ilo foki ki he fakapo‘uli ‘o e fakakaukau kuó ne fakatupu ‘i he kakaí ‘i he‘ene ngaahi lea loí; pea na‘e kamata ke mamahi‘ia ‘a hono laumálié ‘i he ‘ilo‘i ‘ene fai angahala ‘a‘aná; ‘io, na‘e kamata ke kāpui ia ‘e he ngaahi mamahi ‘o helí.

Alma 14

And it came to pass after he had made an end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words, and began to repent, and to search the scriptures.

But the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom; and they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law and also against their lawyers and judges.

And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

But it came to pass that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

And the people went forth and witnessed against them—testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyers and judges of the land, and also of all the people that were in the land; and also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them; and many such things did the people testify against Alma and Amulek. Now this was done before the chief judge of the land.

And it came to pass that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; and he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he had caused among the people by his lying words; and his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; yea, he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell.

7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata ke ne kalanga ki he kakai, 'o pehē: Vakai, kuó u halaia, pea 'oku 'ikai ha angahala 'a e ongo tangatá ni 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá. Pea na'e kamata ke ne taukapo 'i 'a kinaua 'o fai atu mei he taimi ko iá; ka na'a nau lau 'ikovi ia, 'o pehē ange: Kuo ulusino foki 'iate koe 'a e tēvoló? Pea nau 'a'anu kiate ia, mo kapusi ia ki tu'a meiate kinautolu, pea mo kinautolu kotoa pē foki na'e tui ki he ngaahi lea na'e lea 'aki 'e 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki; pea na'a nau kapusi ki tu'a 'a kinautolu, mo fekau ha kau tangata ke tolongaki 'aki 'a kinautolu ha ngaahi maka.

8 Pea na'a nau tñnaki fakataha mai honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enau fñnau, pea 'ilonga ha taha kuo tui pe kuo akonekina ke tui ki he folofola 'a e 'Otuá na'a nau tu'utu'uni ke lí 'a kinautolu ki he afí; pea na'a nau 'omi foki mo 'enau ngaahi lekooti 'a ia na'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi folofolá, 'o nau lí ia foki ki he afí, koe'uhi ke vela mo 'auha ia 'i he afí.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'ave 'a 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki, mo fata atu 'a kinaua ki he potu 'o e tñmaté, koe'uhi ke na mamata tonu ki hono tñmate 'i 'o kinautolu na'e faka'auha 'e he afí.

10 Pea 'i he vakai 'e 'Amuleki ki he ngaahi mamahi 'a e kakai fefiné pea mo e fñnau 'a ia na'e vela 'i he afí, na'a nau mamahi foki mo ia; 'o ne pehē kia 'Alamā: Te ta lava fēfē ke mamata ki he me'a fakamamahí ni? Ko ia ta mafao atu hota nimá, pea ngāue 'aki 'a e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá 'a ia 'oku 'iate kitauá, 'o fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he ngaahi ulo 'o e afí.

11 Ka na'e pehē ange 'e 'Alamā kiate ia: 'Oku ta'ofi au 'e he Laumalié ke 'oua na'a mafao atu hoku nimá; he vakai 'oku ma'u 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki kiate ia, 'i he nāunau; pea 'okú ne tuku ke nau fai 'a e me'á ni, pe fai 'e he kakai 'a e me'á ni kiate kinautolu, 'o fakatatau mo e fefeka 'o honau lotó, koe'uhi ke totonu 'a e ngaahi tautea te ne fai kiate kinautolu 'i hono houhaú; pe 'e tu'u 'a e toto 'o e kakai ta'ehalaiá ko ha fakamo'oni ke talatalaaki 'i 'a kinautolu, 'io, pea tangi lahi 'i he talatalaaki 'i 'o kinautolu 'i he 'aho fakamuí.

12 Ko 'eni na'e pehē ange 'e 'Amuleki kia 'Alamā: Vakai, mahalo na'a nau tutu mo kitaua foki.

13 Pea pehē ange 'e 'Alamā: Tuku ke fai 'o fakatatau ki he finangalo 'o e 'Eiki. Kae vakai, 'oku te'eki ai ke 'osi 'eta ngāué; ko ia 'e 'ikai ke nau tutu 'a kitaua.

And it came to pass that he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God. And he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him, saying: Art thou also possessed with the devil? And they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, and also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek; and they cast them out, and sent men to cast stones at them.

And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire; and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire.

And it came to pass that they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire.

And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene? Therefore let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

Now Amulek said unto Alma: Behold, perhaps they will burn us also.

And Alma said: Be it according to the will of the Lord. But, behold, our work is not finished; therefore they burn us not.

14 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi 'auha 'a e ngaahi sino 'o kinautolu kuo lī ki he afi, pea mo e ngaahi lekooti foki na'e lī ki ai fakataha mo kinautolu, na'e ha'u 'a e fakamaau lahi 'o e fonuá, 'o tu'u 'i he 'ao 'o 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki lolotonga hono ha'i kinauá; peá ne sipi'i 'aki hono nimá 'a kinaua 'i hona kou'ahé, 'o ne pehē ange kiate kinaua: Hili 'a e me'a kuó mo mamata ki aí, te mo kei malanga ai pē ki he kakaí ni, 'o pehē 'e lī 'a kinautolu ki he ano 'o e afi mo e maka-vela?

15 Vakai, 'oku hā mai kiate kimoua na'e 'ikai te mo ma'u ha mālohi ke fakahaofi 'a kinautolu kuo lī ki he afi; pea kuo 'ikai foki ke fakahaofi 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Otuá ko e me'a 'i he'enua kau ki ho'omo tuí. Pea na'e toe sipi'i 'a kinaua 'e he fakamāú 'i hona kou'ahé, mo fehu'i ange: Ko e hā ha'amo taukapo 'e fai ma'amoua?

16 Ko 'eni ko e fakamaau 'eni na'e kau ki he kautaha mo e lotu 'a Nēhoá, 'a ia na'á ne tāmata'i 'a Kitioné.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai lea 'aki 'e 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki ha me'a kiate ia; peá ne toe taa'i 'a kinaua, mo tukuange 'a kinaua ki he kau pulé ke fakahū ki he fale fakapōpulá.

18 Pea hili hona fakahū ki he fale fakapōpulá 'o 'aho 'e tolu, na'e ha'u ha kau taukapo tokolahi mo ha kau fakamaau mo ha kau taula'eiki pea mo ha kau akonaki, 'a ia na'e kau ki he kautaha 'o Nēhoá; pea na'a nau hū mai ki he fale fakapōpulá ke 'a'ahi kiate kinaua, 'o nau fakafehu'i 'a kinaua 'i ha ngaahi fehu'i lahi; kae 'ikai te na tali kiate kinautolu ha me'a.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tu'u 'a e fakamāú ki mu'a 'iate kinaua, 'o ne pehē: Ko e hā 'oku 'ikai te mo tali ai 'a e ngaahi lea 'a e kakai ní? 'ikai 'okú mo 'ilo'i 'oku 'iate au 'a e mālohi ke fekau ke lī 'a kimoua ki he ngaahi uló 'o e afi? Peá ne fekau kiate kinaua ke lea; ka na'e 'ikai te na tali ki ha me'a 'e taha.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'alu, 'o taki taha 'alu 'i hono hala, ka nau toe foki mai 'i he 'apongipongí; pea na'e toe taa'i foki 'a kinaua 'e he fakamāú 'i hona kou'ahé. Pea na'e o mai foki mo ha tokolahi, 'o taa'i 'a kinaua, 'o pehē: Tē mo toe tu'u hake koā 'o fakamāú 'i 'a e kakaí ni, pea fakahala 'i 'a 'emau fonó? Kapau 'oku 'iate kimoua ha fu'u mālohi lahi pehē, ko e hā 'oku 'ikai ai te mo fakahaofi 'a kimouá?

Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what ye have seen, will ye preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone?

Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith. And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say ye for yourselves?

Now this judge was after the order and faith of Nehor, who slew Gideon.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.

And when they had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; and they came in unto the prison to see them, and they questioned them about many words; but they answered them nothing.

And it came to pass that the judge stood before them, and said: Why do ye not answer the words of this people? Know ye not that I have power to deliver you up unto the flames? And he commanded them to speak; but they answered nothing.

And it came to pass that they departed and went their ways, but came again on the morrow; and the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will ye stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law? If ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves?

21 Pea na'e lahi 'a e ngaahi me'a pehē na'a nau lea 'aki kiate kinaua, 'o nau fengai'itaki honau nifō kiate kinaua, mo 'a'anu kiate kinaua, mo pehē: Te mau fēfē 'o ka fakamala'ia' i 'a kimautolu?

22 Pea mo e ngaahi me'a lahi pehē, 'io, ko e ngaahi fa'ahinga me'a kehekehe pehē kotoa pē na'a nau lea 'aki kiate kinaua; pea na'e pehē 'enau manuki' i 'a kinaua 'i he ngaahi 'aho lahi. Pea na'a nau ta'ofi meiate kinaua 'a e me'akai koe'uhi ke na fiekaia, pea mo e vai koe'uhi ke na feinua; pea na'a nau to'o foki meiate kinaua 'a hona kofú ke na tēlefua; pea ko ia na'e ha'iha' i 'a kinaua 'aki 'a e ngaahi afo mālohi, mo fakapōpula' i 'i he fale fakapōpula.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'ena mamahi'ia pehē 'i ha ngaahi 'aho lahi, (pea 'i hono hongofulu mā ua 'o e 'ahó mo hono hongofulu 'o e māhiná, 'i he ta'u hono hongofulu 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai Nīfaí) na'e 'alu ai 'a e fakamaau lahi 'o e fonuá ko 'Amonaihá pea mo ha tokolahi 'o 'enau kau akonakí mo 'enau kau taukapó ki he fale fakapōpula kuo ha' i ai 'a 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki 'aki ha ngaahi afó.

24 Pea na'e tu'u ki mu'a 'iate kinaua 'a e fakamaau lahi, 'o ne toe taa' i 'a kinaua, mo pehē ange kiate kinaua: kapau 'oku 'iate kimoua 'a e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá, fakahaofi 'a kimoua mei he ngaahi ha' i ni, pea te mau toki tui 'e faka'auha 'e he 'Eiki' 'a e kakai ni 'o fakatatau ki ho'omo ngaahi leá.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'alu atu kotoa pē 'o taa' i 'a kinaua, 'o lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea pē ko iá, 'io 'o a'u ki he tokotaha fakamuimuí; pea hili 'a e lea 'a e tokotaha fakamuimuí kiate kinauá, na'e 'ia 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki 'a e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá, 'o na tu'u hake 'o tu'u 'i hona va'é.

26 Pea kaila 'a 'Alamā, 'o pehē: 'E fēfē hono fuoloa 'o 'ema mamahi'ia 'i he ngaahi fu'u fakamamahi lahi ni, 'e 'Eiki? 'E 'Eiki, ke ke tuku mu'a kiate kimaua 'a e mālohi 'o fakatatau ki he'ema tui 'oku tu'unga 'ia Kalaisí, 'io ke fakahaofi 'a kimaua. Pea na'á na motuhi 'a e ngaahi afo kuo ha' i 'aki 'a kinauá; pea 'i he vakai 'e he kakai ki he me'a ní, na'e kamata ke nau hola, he kuo hoko kiate kinautolu 'a e manavahē ki he faka'auhá.

And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned?

And many such things, yea, all manner of such things did they say unto them; and thus they did mock them for many days. And they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and thus they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison.

And it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) that the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma and Amulek were bound with cords.

And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words.

And it came to pass that they all went forth and smote them, saying the same words, even until the last; and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet.

And Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē fau hono lahi 'o 'enau ilifía, na'a nau tō ai ki he kelekelé, 'o 'ikai te nau a'u ki he matapā hū'anga ki tu'a 'o e fale fakapōpulá; pea na'e ngalulululu lahi 'aupito 'a e kelekelé, pea na'e mafahi ua 'a e ngaahi holisi 'o e fale fakapōpulá, 'o holo ai ki he kelekelé; pea ko e fakamaau lahí mo e kau taukapó mo e kau taula'eikí pea mo e kau akonakí, 'a ia na'e taa'i 'a 'Alamā mo 'Amulekí na'a nau mate 'i he'ene holó.

28 Pea na'e hū mai 'a 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki ki tu'a mei he fale fakapōpulá, pea na'e 'ikai te na lavea; he kuo tuku 'e he 'Eikí kiate kinaua 'a e mālohi, 'o fakatatau ki he'ena tui kia Kalaisí. Pea na'á na hū leva ki tu'a mei he fale fakapōpulá; pea na'e vete ange meiate kinaua 'a hona ngaahi ha'í; pea kuo holo ki he kelekelé 'a e fale fakapōpulá, pea na'e mate ai 'a e kakai kotoa pē na'e 'i loto 'i hono ngaahi holisi, tuku kehe pē 'a 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki; pea na'á na ha'u leva ki he koló.

29 Pea ko 'eni 'i he fanongo 'e he kakai ki he fu'u longoa'a lahí na'a nau lolofi tokolahi fakataha mai, ke 'ilo ki hono tupu'angá; pea 'i he'enau mamata kia 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki 'okú na hū mai ki tu'a mei he fale fakapōpulá, pea kuo holo hono ngaahi holisi ki he kelekelé, na'e tō kiate kinautolu 'a e fu'u ilifía lahi, 'o nau hola mei he 'ao 'o 'Alamā mo 'Amulekí 'o hangē 'oku hola ha kosi mo hono 'uhiki mei ha ongo laioné; pea na'e pehē 'enau hola mei he 'ao 'o 'Alamā mo 'Amulekí.

And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ. And they straightway came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain; and they straightway came forth into the city.

Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

‘Alamā 15

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e fekau kia ‘Alamā mo ‘Amuleki ke na ‘alu mei he kolo ko i; pea na‘á na ‘alu, ‘o na ‘u atu ki he fonua ko Saitomé; pea vakai, na‘á na fetaulaki ai mo e kakai kotoa pē ‘a ia kuo nau ‘alu mei he fonua ko ‘Amonaihaá, ‘a ia kuo kapusi ki tu‘a mo tolongaki ‘aki ‘a e maká, ko e me‘a ‘i he‘enua tui ki he ngaahi lea ‘a ‘Alamaá.
- 2 Pea na‘a nau fakamatata kiate kinaua ‘a e me‘a kotoa pē kuo hoko ki honau ngaahi uaifí mo e fānaú, pea mo kinautolu foki, pea mo ‘enua ma‘u ‘a e mālohi ke fakahaofi ‘a kinautolú.
- 3 Pea na‘e tokoto foki ‘a Sisolome ‘i Saitome, kuó ne puke ‘i ha mofi lahi, ‘a ia kuo tupu ‘i he ngaahi mamahi lahi ‘o ‘ene fakakaukaú koe‘uhi ko ‘ene fai angahalá, he na‘á ne mahalo ‘oku ‘ikai kei mo‘ui ‘a ‘Alamā mo ‘Amuleki; pea na‘á ne mahalo kuo tāmata ‘i ‘a kinaua tupunga ‘i he‘ene angahalá. Pea na‘e hanga ‘e he fu‘u angahala lahí ni, mo ‘ene ngaahi angahala lahi kehé, ‘o fakamamahi ‘i ‘a ‘ene fakakaukaú ‘o a‘u ki he fu‘u mamahi lahi ‘aupito, he na‘e ‘ikai ke ‘i ai ha fakahaofi; ko ia na‘e kamata ke vela ia ‘i he vela kakaha.
- 4 Ko ‘eni, ‘i he‘ene fanongo ‘oku ‘i he fonua ko Saitomé ‘a ‘Alamā mo ‘Amuleki, na‘e kamata ke to‘a ‘a hono lotó; pea na‘á ne fekau leva ke ‘ave ha tala kite kinaua, ‘o kole ke na ha‘u kiate ia.
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á na ō leva, ‘o talangofua ki he kole kuó ne ‘oatu kiate kinauá; pea na hū ki he falé kia Sisolome; pea na‘á na ‘ilo ia kuó ne tokoto ‘i hono mohengá, ‘okú ne puke, kuo fu‘u vaivai ‘aupito ‘i ha mofi lahi; pea na‘e faingata‘a‘ia ‘aupito foki ‘a ‘ene fakakaukaú koe‘uhi ko ‘ene ngaahi angahalá; pea ‘i he‘ene mamata kiate kinauá na‘á ne mafao atu hono nimá, ‘o kole kiate kinaua ke na fakamo‘ui ia.
- 6 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e pehē ange ‘e ‘Alamā kiate ia, mo puke ia ‘i hono nimá: ‘Okú ke tui koā ki he māfimaifi ‘o Kalaisi ki he fakamo‘uí?
- 7 Pea na‘á ne tali ‘o pehē ange: ‘Io, ‘oku ou tui ki he ngaahi lea kotoa pē kuó ke akonaki‘akí.
- 8 Pea na‘e pehē ‘e ‘Alamā: Kapau ‘okú ke tui ki he huhu‘i ‘a Kalaisi ‘e lava ‘o fakamo‘ui koe.
- 9 Pea pehē ‘e ia: ‘Io, ‘oku ou tui ‘o fakatatau ki ho‘o ngaahi lea.

Alma 15

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city; and they departed, and came out even into the land of Sidom; and behold, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of Ammonihah, who had been cast out and stoned, because they believed in the words of Alma.

And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.

Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.

And it came to pass that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.

And it came to pass that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?

And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that thou hast taught.

And Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.

And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words.

- 10 Pea na'e toki kalanga 'a 'Alamā ki he 'Eiki, 'o pehē: 'E 'Eiki, ko homau 'Otuā, ke ke 'alo'ofa mai ki he tangatā ni, pea fakamo'ui ia 'o fakataata ki he'ene tui kia Kalaisi.
- 11 Pea 'i he lea 'aki 'e 'Alamā 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e puna hake 'a Sisolome 'o tu'u 'i hono va'é, 'o kamata ke 'alu; pea na'e fu'u ofo lahi 'a e kakai kotoa pē 'i he fai 'o e me'a ní; pea na'e mafola atu 'a e ongoongo 'o e me'a ní 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonua ko Saitomé.
- 12 Pea na'e papitaiso 'e 'Alamā 'a Sisolome ki he 'Eiki; pea ne kamata 'o fai atu mei he 'aho ko iá ke malanga ki he kakai.
- 13 Pea na'e fokotu'u 'e 'Alamā ha siasi 'i he fonua ko Saitomé, mo ne fakanofa ha kau taula'eiki mo ha kau akonaki 'i he fonuá, ke papitaiso ki he 'Eiki 'a kinautolu kotoa pē na'e fie papitaisó.
- 14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fu'u tokolahii; he na'a nau katoa mai mei he potu kotoa pē 'oku takatakai ki Saitomé, pea na'e papitaiso 'a kinautolu.
- 15 Ka ko e me'a ki he kakai na'e 'i he fonua ko 'Amonaihaá, na'a nau kei hoko pē ko ha kakai lotofefeka mo kia-kekeva; pea na'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala mei he'enua ngaahi angahalá, 'o nau pehē ko e mālohi kotoa pē 'o 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki 'oku tupu ia mei he tēvoló; he na'a nau kau ki he kautaha lotu 'o Nēhoá, 'o 'ikai te nau tui ki he fakatomala mei he'enua ngaahi angahalá.
- 16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē, ko 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki, 'i he lí'aki 'e 'Amuleki 'a 'ene koula, mo e siliva, mo 'ene ngaahi me'a mahu'inga kotoa pē, 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua ko 'Amonaihaá, koe'uhi ko e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, he kuo fakafisinga ia 'e kinautolu na'e nau hoko ko hono ngaahi kaume'á, kae 'uma'ā foki 'ene tamaí mo hono kāingá;
- 17 Ko ia, 'i he hili 'a e fokotu'u 'e 'Alamā 'a e siasi 'i Saitomé, pea 'i he'ene vakai ki ha fu'u tafoki lahi, 'io, 'i he'ene vakai kuo tafoki 'a e kakai mei he hīkisia 'o honau lotó mo 'enua angafái, 'o nau kamata ke fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, mo nau kamata ke fakataha 'a kinautolu ki honau ngaahi potu tapú ke hū ki he 'Otuá 'i he 'ao 'o e 'esi-feilaulá, 'o nau le'o mo lotu ma'u ai pē ke fakahaofi 'a kinautolu meia Sētane, mo e maté, pea mo e faka'auhá—

And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.

And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.

And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.

And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

And it came to pass that they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized.

But as to the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people; and they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the power of Alma and Amulek to the devil; for they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek, Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his father and his kindred;

Therefore, after Alma having established the church at Sidom, seeing a great check, yea, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts, and began to humble themselves before God, and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar, watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction—

18 Pea hangē ko 'eku laú, 'i he vakai 'e 'Alamā ki he ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, ko ia na'á na 'ave ai 'a 'Amuleki, 'o na ō atu ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'o ne 'ave ia ki hono fale 'o'oná, mo tauhi ia 'i he'ene ngaahi mamahí, mo tokoni'ia 'i he 'Eikí.

19 Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a e ta'u hono hongofulu 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfaí.

Now as I said, Alma having seen all these things, therefore he took Amulek and came over to the land of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house, and did administer unto him in his tribulations, and strengthened him in the Lord.

And thus ended the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

‘Alamā 16

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i hono hongofulu mā taha ‘o e ta‘u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāú ki he kau Nīfai, ‘i hono nima ‘o e ‘aho ‘o e māhina hono uá, hili ha fu‘u melino lahi ‘i he fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea kuo ‘ikai ke ‘i ai ha tau pe ko ha fakakikihi ‘i he ta‘u ‘e ní‘ihi, ‘o fai mai ki he ‘aho hono nima ‘o e māhina hono ua ‘o hono hongofulu mā taha ‘o e ta‘ú, na‘e ongona ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e fonuá ‘a e kaila ki he tau.
- 2 He vakai, kuo hū mai ‘a e ngaahi kau tau ‘o e kau Leimaná mei he feitu‘u ki he feitu‘u maomaonganoá, ki he ngaahi ngata‘anga ‘o e fonuá, ‘io ‘o a‘u mai ki he kolo ko ‘Amonaihaá, ‘o nau kamata ke tā ‘a e kakaí mo faka‘auha ‘a e koló.
- 3 Pea ko ‘eni na‘e hoko ‘o pehē, ‘i he te‘eki ai lava ‘e he kau Nīfai ‘o tānaki ha kau tau tokolahi fé‘unga ke teke‘i ‘a kinautolu mei he fonuá, kuo nau faka‘auha ‘a e kakai na‘e ‘i he kolo ko ‘Amonaihaá, pea mo ha ní‘ihi foki ‘i he ngaahi ngata‘anga fonua ‘o Noá, mo nau ‘ave pōpula ‘a e ní‘ihi kehe ki he feitu‘u maomaonganoá.
- 4 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e faka‘amu ‘e he kau Nīfai ke fakahaofi ‘a kinautolu kuo ‘ave pōpula ki he feitu‘u maomaonganoá.
- 5 Ko ia, ko ia ia kuo fakanofu ko e ‘eikitau ki he tau ‘o e kau Nīfai, (pea ko hono hingoá ko Sōlami, pea na‘e toko ua hono ongo fohá, ko Līhai mo ‘Eiha)—‘i he ‘ilo‘i ‘e Sōlami foki mo hono ongo fohá, ko e taula‘eiki lahi ‘a ‘Alamā ki he siasí, pea ‘i he‘enua fanongo kuo ‘iate ia ‘a e laumālie ‘o e kikité, ko ia na‘a nau ‘alu atu ai kiate ia, ‘o nau fehu‘i ke ‘ilo meiate ia pe ‘oku finangalo ‘a e ‘Eikí ke nau ō ki he feitu‘u maomaonganoá ‘o kumi ki honau kāinga, ‘a ia kuo ‘ave pōpula ‘e he kau Leimaná.
- 6 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e fehu‘i ‘e ‘Alamā ki he ‘Eikí ‘i he me‘á ni. Pea na‘e foki mai ‘a ‘Alamā ‘o ne pehē ange kiate kinautolu: Vakai, ‘e a‘a ‘a e kau Leimaná ‘i he vaitafe ko Saitoné ‘i he feitu‘u maomaonganoa ki he tongá, ‘o mama‘o atu ki tu‘a mei he ngata‘anga ‘o e fonua ko Manataí. Pea vakai te mou fetaulaki ai mo kinautolu, ‘i he fakahahake ‘o e vaitafe ko Saitoné, pea ‘e tuku kiate kimoutolu ‘i ai ‘e he ‘Eikí ‘a homou kāinga kuo ‘ave pōpula ‘e he kau Leimaná.

Alma 16

And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla, there having been no wars nor contentions for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard throughout the land.

For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.

And now it came to pass, before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, and also some around the borders of Noah, and taken others captive into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that the Nephites were desirous to obtain those who had been carried away captive into the wilderness.

Therefore, he that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites, (and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)—now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the church, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren, who had been taken captive by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Alma inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And Alma returned and said unto them: Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the river Sidon, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.

7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e a'atu 'a Sōlami mo hono ongo fohá 'i he vaitafe ko Saitoné mo 'enau ngaahi kau tau, 'o nau laka mama'atu ki tu'a mei he ngata'anga 'o e fonua ko Manataí ki he feitu'u maomaonganoa 'i he tongá, 'a ia na'e tu'u 'i he tafa'aki fakahahake 'o e vaitafe ko Saitoné.

8 Pea na'a nau fetaulaki ai mo e kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná, pea na'e fakamovetevete 'i mo tuli 'a e kau Leimaná ki he lotu feitu'u maomaonganoá; pea na'a nau ma'u honau kāinga kuo 'ave pōpula 'e he kau Leimaná, pea kuo 'ikai tāmatae 'i ha toko taha 'o kinautolu kuo 'ave pōpula. Pea na'e 'omai 'a kinautolu 'e honau kāingá ke ma'u honau ngaahi potu fonua 'onautolú.

9 Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono hongofulu mā taha 'o e ta'u 'o e kau fakamāu, pea kuo teke 'i 'a e kau Leimaná mei he fonuá, pea kuo faka'auha 'a e kakai 'o 'Amonaihaá; 'io, kuo faka'auha 'a e kakai mo'ui katoa 'o e kau 'Amonaihaá, kae 'uma'ā foki honau fu'u koló, 'a ia na'a nau pehē 'oku 'ikai lava 'e he 'Otuá 'o faka'auha, ko e me'a 'i hono fu'u lahi.

10 Kae vakai, na'e fakalala ia 'i he 'aho pē 'e taha; pea na'e haehae 'a e ngaahi 'anga'angá 'e he fanga kuli pea mo e fanga manu fekai 'o e feitu'u maomaonganoá.

11 Ka neongo iá, na'e hili ha ngaahi 'aho lahi na'e fokotu'utu'u honau ngaahi 'anga'angá 'i he funga 'o e fonuá, pea na'e tanu 'aki ha kelekele si'i pē. Pea ko 'eni na'e pehē fau hono hulu 'o hono namukuú ko ia na'e lau ta'u lahi 'a e 'ikai ke fa'a 'alu 'a e kakai ki he fonua ko 'Amonaihaá 'o nofo ai. Pea na'e fakahingoa ia ko e 'Auha'anga 'o e kau Nēhoá; he na'a nau kau ki he kautaha 'o Nēhoá, 'a ia na'e tāmatae 'i; pea na'a lala ai pē honau ngaahi potu fonuá.

12 Pea na'e 'ikai toe ha'u 'a e kau Leimaná ke tau 'i 'a e kau Nifái 'o a'u mai ki hono hongofulu mā fā 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu ki he kau Nifái. Pea ko ia na'e ta'u 'e tolu 'a e 'i he kau Nifai ma'u ai pē 'a e melinó 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá.

13 Pea na'e 'alu atu 'a 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki 'o malanga 'aki 'a e fakatomalá ki he kakai 'i honau ngaahi temipalé, pea 'i honau ngaahi potu tapú, pea 'i honau ngaahi fale lotú foki, 'a ia kuo langa 'o fakatatau ki he ākenga 'o e kau Siú.

And it came to pass that Zoram and his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon.

And they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, and the Lamanites were scattered and driven into the wilderness; and they took their brethren who had been taken captive by the Lamanites, and there was not one soul of them had been lost that were taken captive. And they were brought by their brethren to possess their own lands.

And thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.

But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.

Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

And the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land.

And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews.

14 Pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu na'e fie fanongo ki he'ena ngaahi leá, na'á na fakahā ki ai 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, ta'e 'i ai ha filifilimānako, ma'u pē.

15 Pea na'e pehē 'a e 'alu atu 'a 'Alamā mo 'Amuleki, kae 'uma'ā foki ha tokolahi kehe kuo fili ki he ngāue, ke malanga 'aki 'a e folofolá 'i he tukui feitu'u kotoa pē 'o e fonuá. Pea na'e mafola hono fokotu'u 'o e siasí 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá, 'i he ngaahi potu takatakai kotoa pē, 'i he kakai kotoa 'o e kau Nifái.

16 Pea na'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha tu'unga ta'etatau 'iate kinautolu; na'e lilingi hifo 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono Laumālié ki hono kotoa 'o e funga fonuá ke teuteu 'i 'a e fakakaukau 'a e fānau 'a e tangatá, pe ke teuteu 'i honau lotó ke tali 'a e folofola 'a ia 'e akonaki 'aki kite kinautolu 'i he taimi 'o 'ene hā'ele mai—

17 Koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a nau fakafefeka honau lotó ki he folofolá, ke 'oua na'a nau ta'etui, 'o fai atu 'o a'u ki he faka'auhá, ka ke nau tali 'a e folofolá 'i he fiefia, pea hangē ha va'a 'oku fakahoko ki he vaine mo'oní, koe'uhi ke nau lava 'o hū ki he mālōlō'anga 'o e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá.

18 Pea ko 'eni ko e kau taula'eiki na'e 'alu atu 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kakai na'a nau malanga 'aki foki 'a hono kovi 'o e loí, mo e ngaahi kākāá, mo e ngaahi meheká, mo e ngaahi vākoví, mo e fakafāsifasí, mo e ngaahi lea koví, mo e kaiha'á, fa'ao me'á, veté, mo e fakapoó, mo e tonó, pea mo e fa'ahinga 'o e anga-ta'ema'a kotoa pē, 'o nau kalanga 'oku 'ikai totonu ke nau fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni—

19 'O nau fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo pau ke vave 'ene hoko; 'io, na'a nau fakahā 'a e hā'ele mai 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, mo 'ene ngaahi faingata'a'ia mo 'ene pekiá, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e toetu'u 'o e maté.

20 Pea na'e fehu 'i 'e he kakai tokolahi ki he potu 'e hā'ele mai ki ai 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá; pea na'e ako kiate kinautolu te ne hā mai kiate kinautolu 'i he hili 'ene toetu'ú; pea na'e fanongo 'a e kakai ki he me'á ni 'i he fiefia mo e nēkeneka lahi.

And as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.

And thus did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land. And the establishment of the church became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of the Nephites.

And there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming—

That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction, but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be—

Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.

And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; and they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection; and this the people did hear with great joy and gladness.

21 Pea ko 'eni 'i he hili hono fokotu'u 'o e siasí 'i he fonuá kotoa—kuo ikuna 'i 'a e tēvoló, pea kuo malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i hono haohaoá 'i he fonuá kotoa, pea na'e lilingi hifo 'e he 'Eikí 'a 'ene ngaahi tāpuakí ki he kakai—na'e 'osi pehē hono hongofulu mā fā 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfaí.

And now after the church had been established throughout all the land—having got the victory over the devil, and the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land, and the Lord pouring out his blessings upon the people—thus ended the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Ko ha fakamatala ki he ngaahi foha 'o Mōsaiá, 'a ia na'a nau fakafisinga 'a 'enau ngaahi totonu ke hoko ko e tu'i koe'uhi ke nau malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, pea nau 'alu atu ki he fonua ko Nīfai' ke malanga ki he kau Leimaná; ko 'enau ngaahi mamahi pea mo honau fakahaofi—'o fakatatau ki he lekooti 'a 'Alamaá.

'Alamā 17

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga fononga atu 'a 'Alamā mei he fonua ko Kitioné ki he feitu'u fakatonga, ki he feitu'u 'o e fonua ko Manataí, 'iloange, na'á ne 'ohovale, 'i he'ene fetaulaki mo e ngaahi foha 'o Mōsaiá 'oku nau fononga ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá.
- 2 Ko 'eni na'e 'ia 'Alamā 'a e ngaahi fohá ni 'o Mōsaiá 'i he taimi na'e 'uluaki hā mai 'a e 'āngelo kiate iá; ko ia na'e fu'u fiefia lahi ai 'a 'Alamā ke mamata ki hono kāingá; pea ko e me'a na'e fakalahi ai 'o lahi ange ki he'ene fiefiá ko 'enau kei tui mo kaungā-ngāue ma'á e 'Eikí; 'io, pea kuo nau tupulaki 'o mālohi 'i he 'ilo'í 'o e mo'oní; he ko e kau tangata fa'a fakakaukau lelei 'a kinautolu pea kuo nau fakatotolo faivelenga 'i he ngaahi folofolá, koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo'í 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá.
- 3 Ka 'oku 'ikai ko ia pē; ka kuo nau fa'a lotu, mo 'aukai lahi; ko ia na'a nau ma'u 'a e mālohi 'o e kikitē, pea mo e laumālie 'o e fakahaá, pea 'o ka nau ka akonaki 'oku nau akonaki 'i he mālohi mo e mafai mei he 'Otuá.
- 4 Pea kuo nau akonaki 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i he ta'u 'e hongofulu mā fā 'i he lolotonga 'o e kau Leimaná, pea kuo fu'u 'ola 'enau ngāué 'i hono 'omai ha tokolahi ki he 'ilo'í 'o e mo'oní; 'io, na'e fakatafoki mai 'i he mālohi 'o 'enau ngaahi leá 'a e tokolahi ki he 'esi-feilaulau 'a e 'Otuá, ke lotu kiate ia mo vete 'enau angahalá 'i hono 'aó.
- 5 Pea ko e anga 'eni 'o e ngaahi me'a na'e hoko kiate kinautolu 'i he'enau ngaahi fefononga'akí, he na'a nau fepaki mo e ngaahi faingata'a lahi; na'a nau kātaki 'i ha ngaahi me'a lahi, 'i honau sinó mo e 'atamaí fakatou'osi, 'o hangē ko e fiekaíá, fieinuá mo e ongosíá, pea mo e feinga lahi foki 'i he laumālie.

An account of the sons of Mosiah, who rejected their rights to the kingdom for the word of God, and went up to the land of Nephi to preach to the Lamanites; their sufferings and deliverance—according to the record of Alma.

Alma 17

And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the land of Gideon southward, away to the land of Manti, behold, to his astonishment, he met with the sons of Mosiah journeying towards the land of Zarahemla.

Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel first appeared unto him; therefore Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his brethren; and what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in the Lord; yea, and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth; for they were men of a sound understanding and they had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God.

But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting; therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God.

And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him.

Now these are the circumstances which attended them in their journeyings, for they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both in body and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much labor in the spirit.

6 Pea ko 'enau ngaahi fefononga'aki'eni: Hili 'enau 'alu atu mei he' enau tamaí, ko Mōsaiá, 'i he 'uluaki ta'u 'o e kau fakamāu; pea 'i he hili 'enau fakafisinga 'a e pule 'a ia na'e fie tuku kiate kinautolu 'e he' enau tamaí, pea ko e fakakaukau foki mo ia 'a e kakaí;

7 Ka neongo iá na'a nau 'alu mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'o nau 'ave 'enau ngaahi heletaá, mo 'enau ngaahi taó, mo 'enau ngaahi kaufaná, mo 'enau ngaahi ngahaú, pea mo 'enau ngaahi maka-taá; pea na'a nau fai 'eni koe'uhí ke nau lava 'o ma'u ha me'akai ma'anautolu lolotonga 'enau 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

8 Pea ko ia na'a nau 'alu atu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá mo e kakai kehe kuo nau fili, ke nau ō atu ki he fonua ko Nifai, ke malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá ki he kau Leimaná.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fononga 'i ha ngaahi 'aho lahi 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, pea na'a nau 'aukai mo lotu lahi ke tuku mai 'e he 'Eiki kiate kinautolu ha tufakanga 'o hono Laumālié ke 'alu mo kinautolu, mo nofo mo kinautolu, koe'uhí ke nau lava 'o hoko ko ha me'angāue 'i he to'ukupu 'o e 'Otuá ke fakatafoki, 'o kapau 'e ala lava, 'a honau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná, ki he 'ilo'i 'o e mo'oní, mo e 'ilo'i 'o hono kovi 'o e ngaahi talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai totonú.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'a'ahi 'a e 'Eiki kiate kinautolu 'aki 'a hono Laumālié, mo folofola ange kiate kinautolu: Mou fiamālie. Pea na'e fakafiamālie 'i 'a kinautolu.

11 Pea na'e folofola 'a e 'Eiki kiate kinautolu foki: 'Alu atu ki he kau Leimana, ko homou kāingá, 'o malanga 'aki 'eku leá; ka ke mou fa'a kātaki 'i he kātaki fuoloa mo e ngaahi mamahí, koe'uhí ke mou fakahā atu ha ngaahi sīpinga lelei kiate kinautolu 'iate au, pea te u ngaohi 'a kimoutolu ko ha me'angāue 'i hoku nimá 'a ia 'e fakamo'ui ai ha kakai tokolahi.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e faka'au 'o to'a 'a e lotu 'o e ngaahi foha 'o Mōsaiá, kae 'uma'ā foki kinautolu na'e 'iate kinautolú, ke nau ō atu ki he kau Leimaná 'o fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá.

Now these were their journeyings: Having taken leave of their father, Mosiah, in the first year of the judges; having refused the kingdom which their father was desirous to confer upon them, and also this was the minds of the people;

Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves while in the wilderness.

And thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of God unto the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness, and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted.

And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites, thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls.

And it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to declare unto them the word of God.

- 13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'enau a'u ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonua 'o e kau Leimaná, na'a nau māvae leva 'o taki taha 'alu 'i hono hala 'o'ona, 'o nau falala ki he 'Eikí ke nau toe fē'iloaki 'i he hili 'enau utu-ta'ú; he na'a nau 'amanaki 'e ma'u ha fua lahi 'i he ngāue kuo nau kamata hono faí.
- 14 Pea ko e mo'oni na'e lahi 'aupito ia, he kuo nau kamata hono malanga 'aki 'o e folofola 'a e 'Otuá ki ha kakai anga-kaivao mo loto-fefeka mo anga-fīta'a; ko ha kakai na'e manako 'i he fakapoongi 'o e kau Nīfaí, pea mo e kaiha'a mo e vete 'o 'enau koloá; pea kuo holi lahi honau lotó ke ma'u 'a e ngaahi koloá, pe ki he koulá mo e silivá, pea mo e ngaahi maka mahu'ingá; ka na'a nau feinga ke ma'u 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'i he fakapō mo e vete koloa, ke 'oua na'a nau ngāue 'aki honau nimá ke ma'u ia.
- 15 Ko ia ko ha kakai fakapikopiko 'aupito 'a kinautolu, 'a ia na'e hū hanau tokolahi ki he ngaahi tamapua, pea kuo tō kiate kinautolu 'a e fakamala'ia 'a e 'Otuá ko e me'a 'i he ngaahi talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí; ka na'e kei fakahā 'a e ngaahi tala'ofa 'a e 'Eikí kiate kinautolu 'o kapau te nau fakatomala.
- 16 Ko ia, ko e 'uhinga 'eni na'e fakakaukau ai 'a e ngaahi foha 'o Mōsaiá ke nau fai 'a e ngāué, ko'e uhi ke nau lava nai 'o fakatafoki 'a kinautolu ki he fakatomalá; ko'e uhi ke nau lava nai 'o fakatafoki 'a kinautolu ki he 'ilo'i 'a e palani 'o e huhu'í.
- 17 Ko ia na'a nau taki taha 'alu 'iate kinautolu, 'o 'alu atu 'i honau lotolotongá, 'o tautau toko taha 'a e tangata taki taha, 'o fakatafoki ki he folofola mo e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá 'a ia kuo tuku kiate iá.
- 18 Ko 'eni ko 'Āmoni foki na'e taki 'iate kinautolú, kae kehe na'á ne tauhi kiate kinautolu, pea na'á ne 'alu meiate kinautolu, 'i he hili 'ene tāpuaki'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatafoki ki honau ngaahi lakanga taki taha, hili 'ene fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, pe tāpuaki'i 'a kinautolu 'i he te'eki ke ne 'alú; pea ko ia na'a nau taki taha fai 'enau ngaahi fononga 'i he fonuá kotoa.
- 19 Pea na'e 'alu 'a 'Āmoni ki he fonua ko 'Isimelí, he kuo tauhingo 'a e fonuá ki he hingo 'o e ngaahi foha 'o 'Isimelí, 'a ia na'e hoko foki ko e kau Leimana.

And it came to pass when they had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and departed one from another, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close of their harvest; for they supposed that great was the work which they had undertaken.

And assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with their own hands.

Thus they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.

Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption.

Therefore they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.

Now Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them, and he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his departure; and thus they took their several journeys throughout the land.

And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.

20 Pea 'i he hū atu 'a 'Āmoni ki he fonua ko 'Isimelí, na'e puke ia 'o ha'i ia 'e he kau Leimaná, 'o hangē ko honau angá ke fá 'a ha'í 'a e kau Nífaí kotoa pē na'e tō ki honau nimá, pea fata atu 'a kinautolu ki he 'ao 'o e tu'í; pea ko ia na'e tuku ki he fá 'itelihá 'a e tu'í ke tāmāte'í 'a kinautolu, pe tauhi 'a kinautolu 'i he pōpula, pe ke lī 'a kinautolu ki he fale fakapōpulá, pe ke kapusi 'a kinautolu ki tu'a mei hono fonuá, 'o fakatatau ki hono lotó mo 'ene fá 'itelihá.

21 Pea ko ia na'e fata atu 'a 'Āmoni ki he 'ao 'o e tu'í na'e pule'í 'a e fonua ko 'Isimelí; pea ko hono huafá ko Lamōnai; pea ko e hako ia 'o 'Isimeli.

22 Pea na'e 'eke 'e he tu'í kia 'Āmoni pe ko 'ene fie nofo 'i he fonuá 'i he kau Leimaná, pe ko hono kakaí.

23 Pea pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni kiate ia; 'Io, 'oku ou loto ke nofo 'i he kakaí n'í ha taimi; 'io, pea mahalo pē 'o a'u ki he 'aho te u mate aí.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hōifua lahi 'aupito 'a e tu'í ko Lamōnaí kia 'Āmoni, 'o ne tu'utu'uni ke vete hono ngaahi ha'í; pea ko hono finangaló ke ma'u 'e 'Āmoni ha taha 'o hono ngaahi 'ofefiné ke hoko ko hono uaifi.

25 Ka na'e pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni kiate ia: 'Ikai, ka te u hoko ko ho'o tamaio'eiki. Ko ia na'e hoko 'a 'Āmoni ko ha tamaio'eiki ki he tu'í ko Lamōnaí. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tu'utu'uni fakataha ia mo ha kau tamaio'eiki 'e ní'ihí kehe ke nau le'ohi 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki 'a Lamōnaí he ko e founga ia 'a e kau Leimaná.

26 Pea hili 'ene 'i he tauhi 'o e tu'í 'i he 'aho 'e tolu, lolotonga 'ene 'alu atu fakataha mo e kau tamaio'eiki Leimaná mo 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí ki he potu 'o e vai, 'a ia na'e ui ko e vai 'o Sēpusí, pea 'oku fá 'a fakateka 'e he kau Leimaná kotoa pē 'a 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí ki ai ke nau ma'u ha vai—

27 Ko ia, 'i he fakateka atu 'e 'Āmoni mo e kau tamaio'eiki 'a e tu'í 'a 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí ki he potu vai ní, 'ilo ange, na'e tutu'u hake ha ní'ihí 'o e kau Leimaná, 'a ia kuo nau ō mai 'o fakainu 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí, 'o nau fakamovetevete'í 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki 'a 'Āmoni mo e kau tamaio'eiki 'a e tu'í, 'o nau fakamovetevete'í 'a kinautolu 'o nau hola ki he potu kotoa pē.

And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.

And thus Ammon was carried before the king who was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.

And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or among his people.

And Ammon said unto him: Yea, I desire to dwell among this people for a time; yea, and perhaps until the day I die.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.

But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant to king Lamoni. And it came to pass that he was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni, according to the custom of the Lamanites.

And after he had been in the service of the king three days, as he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of Sebus, and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water—

Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king were driving forth their flocks to this place of water, behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king, and they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways.

28 Ko 'eni na'e kamata ke lāunga 'a e kau tamaio'eiki 'a e tu'í, 'o nau pehē: 'E tāmāte'i 'a kitautolu 'e he tu'í, 'o hangē kuó ne fai ki hotau kāingá ko e me'a 'i he fakamovetevete'i 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí 'i he fai angahala 'a e kau tangata ní. Pea na'e kamata ke nau fu'u tangi lahi 'aupito, 'o nau pehē: Vakai, kuo 'osi fakamovetevete'i 'a 'etau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí.

29 Pea na'a nau tangí ko e me'a 'i he ilifia na'a tāmāte'i 'a kinautolu. Pea 'i he vakai 'e 'Āmoni ki he me'a ní na'e fonu hono lotó 'i he fiefia; na'á ne pehē, he te u fakahā hoku ivi ki hoku kaungā-tamaio'eiki ni, pe ko e ivi 'oku 'iate aú, 'i he fakafoki mai 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí ni ki he tu'í ke u lava 'o ma'u ai 'a e 'ofa 'anautolu ni, ko hoku kaungā-tamaio'eiki, koe'uhi ke u malava 'o tākiaki'i 'a kinautolu ke nau tui ki he'eku ngaahi leá.

30 Pea ko 'eni, ko e ngaahi fakakaukau 'eni 'a 'Āmoní, 'i he'ene mamata ki he ngaahi mamahi 'anautolu na'á ne lau ko hono ngaahi kaume'á.

31 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fakahekeheke'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'ene ngaahi leá, 'o pehē: 'E hoku kāinga, mou fiefia, pea ke tau ō atu 'o kumi 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí, pea te tau tākaki fakataha 'a kinautolu, pea toe 'omi ki he potu vai; pea te tau malu'i pehē 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí ma'á e tu'í, pea 'e 'ikai te ne tāmāte'i 'a kitautolu.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau ō 'o kumi ki he ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí, pea na'a nau muimui 'ia 'Āmoni, 'o nau 'oho vave atu 'o mu'omu'a 'i he ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki 'a e tu'í 'o ta'ofi mai 'a kinautolu, 'o nau toe tākaki fakataha mai 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí ki he potu vai.

33 Pea na'e toe tu'u mai 'a e kau tangata pē ko iá ke fakamovetevete'i 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí; ka na'e pehē 'e 'Āmoni ki hono ngaahi kaume'á: Kāpui 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí 'o takatakai ke 'oua te nau hola; pea te u 'alu 'o tau mo e kau tangatá ní 'oku nau fakamovetevete'i 'etau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí.

34 Ko ia, na'a nau fai 'o hangē kuo fekau kiate kinautolu 'e 'Āmoní, pea na'á ne 'alu atu 'o tu'u ke tau mo kinautolu na'e tu'u 'i he ve'e vai 'o Sēpusí; pea na'a nau tokolahi.

Now the servants of the king began to murmur, saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our brethren because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men. And they began to weep exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered already.

Now they wept because of the fear of being slain. Now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

And now, these were the thoughts of Ammon, when he saw the afflictions of those whom he termed to be his brethren.

And it came to pass that he flattered them by his words, saying: My brethren, be of good cheer and let us go in search of the flocks, and we will gather them together and bring them back unto the place of water; and thus we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

And it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.

35 Ko ia, na'e 'ikai te nau manavahē kia 'Āmoni, he na'a nau 'amanaki 'e lava 'e hanau toko taha pē 'o tāmāte'i ia 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau fa'itelihá, koe'uhi na'e 'ikai ke nau 'ilo'i kuo tala'ofa 'e he 'Eikí kia Mōsaia te ne fakahaofi hono ngaahi fohá mei honau mālohí; pea na'e 'ikai foki te nau 'ilo'i ha me'a 'o kau ki he 'Eikí; ko ia na'a nau manako ki he faka'auha 'o honau kāingá; pea ko e 'uhinga 'eni na'a nau tu'u ai ke fakamovetevete'i 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki 'a e tu'í.

36 Ka na'e tu'u atu ki mu'a 'a 'Āmoni 'o ne kamata ke lisingaki 'aki 'ene maka-taá ha ngaahi maka kiate kinautolu; 'io, na'á ne lī 'a e ngaahi maká 'aki 'a e fu'u mālohi lahi faka'ulia kiate kinautolu; pea ko ia na'á ne tāmāte'i ai hanau ni'ihī 'o nau kamata ai ke ofo 'i hono mālohí; ka neongo iá na'a nau 'ita ko e me'a 'i he tō honau ngaahi kāingá, pea na'e fakapapau honau lotó kuo pau ke ne mate; ko ia ko e me'a 'i he 'enau vakai 'oku 'ikai te nau lava ke 'ai 'enau ngaahi maká ke tau 'iate iá, na'a nau ha'u ai mo e ngaahi 'akau tā ke tāmāte'i ia.

37 Kae vakai, ko e tangata kotoa pē na'e hiki hake 'ene va'akaú ke taa'i 'a 'Āmoní, na'á ne tu'usi honau ngaahi nimá 'aki 'ene heletaá; he na'á ne matu'uaki 'enau ngaahi taá 'aki 'ene taa'i honau nimá 'aki 'a e mata 'o 'ene heletaá, pea ko ia na'a nau ofo ai, pea kamata ke hola meiate ia; 'io, na'a nau tokolahi; pea na'á ne fakatupu 'enau holá 'i he mālohi 'o hono nimá.

38 Kuo tō foki 'a e toko ono 'i he maka-tā, kae 'ikai te ne tāmāte'i ha tokotaha 'aki 'ene heletaá, kae ngata pe 'i honau takí; pea na'á ne tu'usi 'a e nima kotoa pē na'e hiki hake kiate iá, pea na'a nau tokolahi 'aupito.

39 Pea 'i he 'osi 'ene tuli 'a kinautolu 'o mama'o 'aupitó, na'á ne foki mai pea na'a nau fakainu mo fakafoki 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí ki he loto'ā mohuku 'a e tu'í, pea na'a nau toki 'alu atu ki he tu'í, 'o fetuku 'a e ngaahi nima kuo tu'usi 'aki 'a e heletā 'a 'Āmoní, 'a kinautolu 'a ia na'e feinga ke tāmāte'i iá; pea na'e fetuku ia ki he tu'í ko ha fakamo'oni ki he ngaahi me'a kuo nau faí.

Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.

But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.

But behold, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to flee before him; yea, and they were not few in number; and he caused them to flee by the strength of his arm.

Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.

And when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king, and then went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, of those who sought to slay him; and they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done.

‘Alamā 18

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e tu‘utu‘uni ‘e he tu‘i ko Lamōnai ke tutu‘u hake ‘a ‘ene kau tamaio‘eiki ‘o fakamo‘oni ki he ngaahi me‘a kuo nau mamata ki ai ‘o kau ki he me‘a na‘e hokó.
- 2 Pea hili ‘enau fakamo‘oni kotoa pē ki he ngaahi me‘a kuo nau mamata ki ai, pea kuó ne ‘afio‘i ‘a e tui faivelenga ‘a ‘Āmoni ‘i he malu‘i ‘ene ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí, kae ‘uma‘ā foki hono mālohi lahi ‘i he tau mo kinautolu na‘e feinga ke tāmata‘i iá, na‘á ne fu‘u ofo ‘aupito, ‘o ne pehē: Kuo pau ko e tangata ‘eni ia ‘oku lahi ange ia ‘i he tangatá. Vakai, ‘ikai koā ko e Laumālie Lahi ‘eni ‘a ia ‘okú ne fekau‘i ‘a e ngaahi fu‘u tautea lalahi pehē ki he kakaí ni, ko e me‘a ‘i he‘enau ngaahi fakapoó?
- 3 Pea na‘a nau tali ki he tu‘í ‘o pehē: Kapau ko e Laumālie Lahí ia pe ko e tangata ‘oku ‘ikai ke mau ‘ilo‘i; ka ko e me‘a ‘eni ‘oku mau ‘ilo‘í, ‘oku ‘ikai ke malava ke tāmata‘i ia ‘e he ngaahi fili ‘o e tu‘í; pea ‘ikai foki te nau malava ‘o fakamoveteve‘i ‘a e ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki ‘a e tu‘í ‘o ka ne ka ‘iate kinautolu, ko e me‘a ‘i hono poto ‘i he ngaahi mahafu taú mo hono fu‘u mālohí; ko ia ‘oku mau ‘ilo‘i ai ko ha kaume‘a ia ki he tu‘í. Pea ko ‘eni, ‘e tu‘i, ‘oku ‘ikai te mau tui ‘oku ma‘u ‘e ha tangata ha mālohi lahi pehē, he ‘oku mau ‘ilo‘oku ‘ikai lava ke tāmata‘i ia.
- 4 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘i he fanongo ‘e he tu‘í ki he ngaahi lea ní, na‘á ne folofola ange kiate kinautolu: ‘Oku ou ‘ilo‘i ‘eni ko e Laumālie Lahí ia; pea kuó ne hā‘ele hifo ‘i he taimí ni ke malu‘i ho‘omou mo‘uí, ke ‘oua na‘á ku tāmata‘i ‘a kimoutolu ‘o hangē ko ‘eku fai ki homou ngaahi kāingá. Ko ‘eni ko e Laumālie Lahi ‘eni ‘a ia kuo lea ki ai ‘a ‘etau ngaahi kuí.
- 5 Pea ko e talatukufakaholo ‘eni ‘a Lamōnai, ‘a ia kuó ne ma‘u mei he‘ene tamaí, ‘a ia ‘oku ‘i ai ha Laumālie Lahi. Neongo na‘a nau tui ki ha Laumālie Lahi ka na‘a nau mahalo ‘oku totonu ‘a e me‘a kotoa pē ‘oku nau faí; ka neongo iá, na‘e kamata ke fu‘u ilifia lahi ‘aupito ‘a Lamōnai, ‘i he manavahē telia kuó ne fai hala ‘i he tāmata‘i ‘o ‘ene kau tamaio‘eiki;

Alma 18

And it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.

And when they had all testified to the things which they had seen, and he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks, and also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders?

And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; neither can they scatter the king’s flocks when he is with us, because of his expertness and great strength; therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king. And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; and he has come down at this time to preserve your lives, that I might not slay you as I did your brethren. Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our fathers have spoken.

Now this was the tradition of Lamoni, which he had received from his father, that there was a Great Spirit. Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit, they supposed that whatsoever they did was right; nevertheless, Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

6 He kuó ne tāmāte‘i hanau tokolahi ko e me‘a ‘i he fakamovetevete ‘e honau kāingá ‘a ‘enau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí ‘i he potu vai; pea koe‘uhi kuo fakamovetevete‘i ‘a ‘enau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí ko ia na‘e tāmāte‘i ai ‘a kinautolu.

7 Ko e anga foki ‘o e kau Leimaná ke tu‘u ‘i he ve‘e vai ‘o Sēpusí ‘o fakamovetevete‘i ‘a e ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki ‘a e kakaí, koe‘uhi ke nau lava ai ‘o fakateka atu ‘a e ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki tokolahi kuo fakamoveteveteá ki honau fonua ‘onautolú, he ko e anga ia ‘o ‘enau ma‘u ‘i he fakamālohi ‘a e koloa vete ‘iate kinautolú.

8 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ‘eke ‘e he tu‘i ko Lamōnai ki he‘ene kau tamaio‘eiki ‘o pehē: ‘Oku ‘i fē ‘a e tangatá ni ‘a ia ‘oku ‘iate ia ha fu‘u mālohi lahi pehe‘e?

9 Pea na‘a nau pehē ange kiate ia: Vakai, ‘okú ne lolotonga fafanga ho‘o fanga hōsí. Ko ‘eni, kuo mu‘aki fekau ‘e he tu‘i ki he‘ene kau tamaio‘eiki ‘i he te‘eki ai ke nau fakainu ‘enau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí ke nau teuteu ‘a ‘ene fanga hōsí mo e ngaahi salioté, pea fakafé‘ao ia ki he fonua ko Nīfai; he kuo tu‘utu‘uni ke fai ha fu‘u katoanga ‘i he fonua ko Nīfai ‘e he tamai ‘a Lamōnai, ‘a ia na‘e tu‘i ki he fonuá kotoa.

10 Pea ‘i he fanongo ‘e he tu‘i ko Lamōnai ‘oku lolotonga teuteu ‘e ‘Āmoni ‘a ‘ene fanga hōsí mo ‘ene ngaahi salioté, na‘e ‘āsili ai ‘a ‘ene ‘ohovalé ko e me‘a ‘i he falala‘anga ‘a ‘Āmoní, ‘o ne pehē: Ko e mo‘oni kuo te‘eki ‘i ai ha tamaio‘eiki ‘i he‘eku kau tamaio‘eiki kotoa pē kuo alafalala‘anga pehē ‘o hangē ko e tangatá ni; he ‘okú ne manatu‘i pea fai foki ‘a e ngaahi fekau kotoa pē kuó u fekau ke ne fai.

11 ‘Oku ou ‘ilo‘i pau ai ko e Laumālie Lahí ‘eni, pea ‘oku ou fie kole kiate ia ke ne hā‘ele mai kiate au, ka ‘oku ‘ikai te u lava ‘o kole kiate ia.

12 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he ‘osi teuteu ‘e ‘Āmoni ‘a e fanga hōsí mo e ngaahi salioté ma‘á e tu‘i mo ‘ene kau tamaio‘eiki, na‘á ne ‘alu atu ki he tu‘í, ‘o ne vakai kuo liliu ‘a e fofonga ‘o e tu‘í; ko ia na‘á ne meimei tafoki ai mei hono ‘aó.

For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water; and thus, because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain.

Now it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni inquired of his servants, saying: Where is this man that has such great power?

And they said unto him: Behold, he is feeding thy horses. Now the king had commanded his servants, previous to the time of the watering of their flocks, that they should prepare his horses and chariots, and conduct him forth to the land of Nephi; for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi, by the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

Now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness of Ammon, saying: Surely there has not been any servant among all my servants that has been so faithful as this man; for even he doth remember all my commandments to execute them.

Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I would desire him that he come in unto me, but I durst not.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had made ready the horses and the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was about to return out of his presence.

13 Pea na'e lea ange ha taha 'o e kau tamaio'eiki 'a e tu'i kiate ia: Lāpana, 'a ia ko hono 'uhingá, ko e tu'i pe māfimaflahi, he 'oku nau lau foki 'oku māfimaflahi honau ngaahi tu'i; pea ko ia na'á ne pehē ange kiate ia: 'E Lāpana, ko e finangalo 'o e tu'i ke ke nofo pē.

14 Ko ia na'e tafoki atu 'a 'Āmoni ki he tu'i, 'o ne pehē ange kiate ia: Ko e hā ha me'a 'okú ke finangalo ke u fai ma'á u, 'e tu'i? Pea na'e 'ikai ke tali ia 'e he tu'i 'i he feitu'ula'ā 'e taha, 'o fakatatau ki he'enua lau feitu'ula'aá, he na'e 'ikai ke ne 'afio'i pe ko e hā ha me'a ke ne folofola 'aki kiate iá.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe pehē ange kiate ia 'e 'Āmoni: Ko e hā ha me'a 'okú ke fie ma'u meiate aú? Ka na'e 'ikai ke tali ia 'e he tu'i.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fonu 'a 'Āmoni 'i he Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá, ko ia na'á ne 'ilo'i ai 'a e ngaahi fakakaukau 'a e tu'i. Pea na'á ne pehē ange kiate ia: Ko e me'a nai ia 'i ho'o fanongo ne u malu'i ho'o kau tamaio'eiki mo ho'o ngaahi takanga monumanu i'ki, peá u tāmata'e 'i 'a e toko fitu 'o honau kāinga 'aki 'a e maka-tā pea mo e heletā, peá u tu'usi 'a e nima 'o ha ni'ihikehe, koe'uhi ke malu'i ho'o ngaahi takanga monumanu i'ki pea mo ho'o kau tamaio'eiki; vakai, ko e 'uhinga nai ia 'okú ke ofo aí?

17 'Okú ou pehē kiate koe, ko e hā 'a e me'a 'oku hulu pehē ai ho'o ofó? Vakai, ko ha tangata pē au, pea ko ho'o tamaio'eiki; ko ia, ka 'ilonga ha me'a 'okú ke fie ma'u 'a ia 'oku totonu, te u fai ia.

18 Pea ko 'eni 'i he 'afio 'e he tu'i ki he ngaahi lea ní, na'á ne toe ofo, he na'á ne 'afio'i 'oku malava 'e 'Āmoni 'o 'ilo'i 'a 'ene ngaahi fakakaukau; ka neongo 'eni, na'e fakaava 'e he tu'i ko Lamōnai 'a hono ngutú, 'o ne folofola kiate ia: Ko hai koe? Ko e Laumālie Lahí koā koe, 'a ia 'oku 'afio'i 'a e me'a kotoa pē?

19 Na'e tali 'e 'Āmoni 'o ne pehē ange kiate ia: 'Okú 'ikai.

20 Pea na'e folofola ange 'a e tu'i: 'Okú ke 'ilo'i fēfē 'a e ngaahi fakakaukau 'a hoku lotó? 'Okú ngofua ke ke lea ta'e-manavahē, 'o fakamatala kiate au 'i he ngaahi me'á ni; peá ke fakamatala foki kiate au pe ko e mālohi fē na'á ke tāmata'e ai mo tu'usi 'a e nima 'o hoku kāinga 'a ia na'e fakamovetevete 'i 'a 'eku ngaahi takanga monumanu i'ki—

And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbanah, which is, being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to be powerful; and thus he said unto him: Rabbanah, the king desireth thee to stay.

Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him: What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king? And the king answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time, for he knew not what he should say unto him.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto him again: What desirest thou of me? But the king answered him not.

And it came to pass that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God, therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king. And he said unto him: Is it because thou hast heard that I defended thy servants and thy flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend thy flocks and thy servants; behold, is it this that causeth thy marvelings?

I say unto you, what is it, that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which is right, that will I do.

Now when the king had heard these words, he marvelled again, for he beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts; but notwithstanding this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?

Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.

And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart? Thou mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell me by what power ye slew and smote off the arms of my brethren that scattered my flocks—

21 Pea ko 'eni, kapau te ke fakamatala mai kiate au 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, pea 'ilonga ha me'a 'okú ke fie ma'u te u 'oatu ia ma'au; pea kapau 'e 'aonga, te u malu'i koe 'aki 'eku kau taú; ka 'oku ou 'ilo'i 'okú ke mālohi ange 'iate kinautolu kotoa pē; ka foaki kiate koe 'a ia kotoa pē 'okú ke fie ma'u meiate aú.

22 Ko 'eni, neongo 'a e olopoto 'a 'Āmoní, ka na'e 'ikai 'iate ia ha loto 'oku kovi, ko ia na'á ne pehē ange ai kia Lamōnai: Te ke tokanga mu'a ki he'eku ngaahi leá, 'o kapau te u fakahā kiate koe 'a e mālohi 'oku ou fai ai 'a e ngaahi me'a ní? Pea ko e me'a 'eni 'oku ou fie ma'u meiate koé.

23 Pea na'e folofola ange 'a e tu'i kiate ia, 'o pehē: 'Io, te u tui ki ho'o ngaahi lea kotoa pē. pea na'e tauhele'i pehe'i ia ke ne fanongo.

24 Pea na'e kamata ke lea kiate ia 'e 'Āmoni 'i he lototo'a, 'o ne pehē kiate ia: 'Okú ke tui koā 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otuá?

25 Pea na'á ne folofola, 'o pehē ange kiate ia: 'Okú 'ikai te u 'ilo'i hono 'uhinga 'o e me'a ko iá.

26 Pea na'e toki pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni: 'Okú ke tui 'oku 'i ai ha Laumālie Lahi?

27 Pea na'á ne folofola ange: 'Io.

28 Pea na'e pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni: Ko e 'Otuá ia. pea toe pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni kiate ia: 'Okú ke tui koā na'e fakatupu 'e he Laumālie Lahi ko iá, 'a ia ko e 'Otuá, 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku 'i he langí pea mo māmaní?

29 Pea na'á ne folofola ange: 'Io, 'oku ou tui na'á ne fakatupu 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku 'i māmaní; ka 'oku 'ikai te u 'ilo ki he langí.

30 Pea na'e pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni kiate ia: Ko e langí ko ha potu ia 'oku 'afio ai 'a e 'Otuá pea mo 'ene kau 'āngelo mā'oni'oni kotoa pē.

31 Pea na'e folofola ange 'a e tu'i ko Lamōnai: 'Okú 'i 'olunga ia 'i he māmaní?

32 Pea na'e pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni: 'Io, pea 'okú ne 'afio hifo ki he fānau kotoa pē 'a e tangatá; pea 'okú ne 'afio 'i 'a e ngaahi fakakaukau mo e ngaahi holi kotoa pē 'o e lotó; he na'e fakatupu 'e hono to'ukupu 'a e me'a kotoa pē talu mei he kamata'angá.

33 Pea na'e folofola ange 'e he tu'i ko Lamōnai: 'Okú ou tui ki he ngaahi me'á ni kotoa 'a ia kuó ke lea'akí. Ko e fekau 'i mai koe mei he 'Otuá?

And now, if thou wilt tell me concerning these things, whatsoever thou desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee with my armies; but I know that thou art more powerful than all they; nevertheless, whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

Now Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things? And this is the thing that I desire of thee.

And the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words. And thus he was caught with guile.

And Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness, and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meaneth.

And then Ammon said: Believest thou that there is a Great Spirit?

And he said, Yea.

And Ammon said: This is God. And Ammon said unto him again: Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

And he said: Yea, I believe that he created all things which are in the earth; but I do not know the heavens.

And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.

And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

And Ammon said: Yea, and he looketh down upon all the children of men; and he knows all the thoughts and intents of the heart; for by his hand were they all created from the beginning.

And king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which thou hast spoken. Art thou sent from God?

34 Na'e pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni kiate ia: Ko ha tangata au; pea na'e ngaohi 'a e tangatá 'i he kamata'angá 'i he tatau 'o e 'Otuá, pea kuo uiui'i au 'e hono Laumālie Mā'oni'oni ke akonaki 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni ki he kakaí ni, koe'uhí ke lava nai 'o fakatafoki 'a kinautolu ki he 'ilo'i 'o e me'a 'oku totonu mo mo'oni;

35 Pea 'oku 'afio 'iate au ha tufakanga 'o e Laumālie ko iá, 'a ia 'oku 'omi kiate au ha potō kae 'uma'ā foki ha mālohi 'o fakatatau ki he'eku tuí mo e ngaahi holi 'a ia 'oku tu'unga 'i he 'Otuá.

36 Pea hili 'a e lea 'aki 'e 'Āmoni 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'á ne kamata mei he fakatupu 'o māmaní kae 'uma'ā foki hono fakatupu foki 'o 'Ātamá, 'o ne fakamatala kiate ia 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku kau ki he hinga 'a e tangatá, peá ne fakamatala 'i mo lau 'i hono 'aó 'a e ngaahi folofola mā'oni'oni 'a e kakaí, 'a ia kuo lea 'aki 'e he kau palōfitá, 'o a'u mai ki he taimi na'e mavahe ai 'a e 'enau tamai, ko Līhai, mei Selūsalemá.

37 Pea na'á ne fakamatala 'i foki kiate kinautolu (he na'e fai ia ki he tu'í pe mo 'ene kau tamaio'eikí) 'a e ngaahi fefononga'aki kātoa 'a 'enau ngaahi tamai 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, pea mo 'enau ngaahi mamahi kotoa 'i he fiekaia mo e fieinuá, pea mo 'enau faingata'a'ia mo e ngaahi me'a peheé.

38 Pea na'á ne toe fakamatala foki kiate kinautolu 'o kau ki he ngaahi angatu'u 'a Leimana mo Lēmiuelá, mo e ngaahi foha 'o 'Isimelí, 'io, na'á ne fakamatala 'i kiate kinautolu 'a 'enau ngaahi angatu'ú kātoa; pea na'á ne fakamatala 'i kakato kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi lekooti pea mo e ngaahi folofolá kotoa talu mei he taimi na'e 'alu ai 'a Līhai mei Selūsalemá 'o fai mai ki he taimi lolotongá.

39 Ka 'oku 'ikai ia ko ia pē; ka na'á ne fakamatala 'i kakato kiate kinautolu 'a e palani 'o e huhu 'i na'e teuteu talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní; pea na'á ne fakahā foki kiate kinautolu 'o kau ki he hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí, pea ko e ngaahi ngāue kātoa 'a e 'Eikí na'á ne fakahā kiate kinautolu.

40 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'ene lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a ní, pea na'á ne fakamatala 'i kakato ia ki he tu'í, na'e tui 'a e tu'í ki he'ene ngaahi lea kotoa pē.

Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;

And a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God.

Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their father, Lehi, left Jerusalem.

And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.

And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; and he expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time.

But this is not all; for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world; and he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.

And it came to pass that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king, that the king believed all his words.

41 Pea kamata ia ke tangi ki he 'Eiki, 'o pehē: 'E 'Eiki, 'alo'ofa mai kiate au mo hoku kakaí 'o hangē ko ho'o 'alo'ofa lahi kuó ke fai ki he kau Nifái.

42 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hili leva 'ene lea 'aki 'ení, na'á ne tō hifo ki he kekelelé, 'o hangē kuó ne pekiá.

43 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ave ia 'e he'ene kau tamaio'eiki 'o nau fata ki hono uaifí, mo fakatoka ia 'i ha toka'anga; peá ne toka 'o hangē kuó ne pekiá 'i he 'aho 'e ua pea mo e pō 'e ua; pea na'e tengihia ia 'e hono uaifí mo hono ngaahi fohá pea mo hono ngaahi 'ofefiné he ko e anga ia 'o e kau Leimaná, 'o nau tangi lāulau koe'uhi ko 'ene pekiá.

And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.

And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons, and his daughters mourned over him, after the manner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.

‘Alamā 19

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ‘osi ‘a e ‘aho ‘e ua pea mo e pō ‘e ua, pea nau te u ke ‘ave hono sinó ‘o tuku ‘i ha fonualoto, ‘a ia kuo nau foa koe‘uhi ke tanu ai honau kakai pekiá.
- 2 Kuo fanongo foki ‘a e kuini ki he ongoonga ‘o ‘Āmoní, ko ia na‘á ne fekau atu ai ha taha, ‘o kole ke ha‘u kiate ia.
- 3 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e fai ‘e ‘Āmoni ‘o hangē ko e fekau kiate iá, ‘o ne hū atu ki he kuini, ‘o ‘eke ki ai ke ‘ilo pe ko e hā ‘a e me‘a ‘okú ne loto ke ne faí.
- 4 Pea na‘e me‘a ange ia kiate ia: Kuo fakahā mai kiate au ‘e he kau tamaio‘eiki ‘a hoku husepānití ko ha palōfita koe ‘a ha ‘Otuá mā‘oní‘oní, pea ‘oku ‘iate koe ‘a e mālohi ke fai ha ngaahi fu‘u ngāue lalahi ‘i hono huafá;
- 5 Ko ia, kapau ‘oku mo‘oní ‘eni, ko hoku lotó ke ke hū atu ‘o vakai ki hoku husepānití, he kuo fakatoka ia ‘i hono toka‘angá ‘i he ‘aho ‘e ua pea mo e pō ‘e ua; pea ‘oku pehē ‘e ha ní‘ihi kuo ‘ikai pekia ia, ka ‘oku lau ‘e ha ní‘ihi tokua kuó ne pekia, pea ‘oku namu hāhā ia, pea ‘oku totonu ke tuku ia ki ha fonualoto; ka ko au ‘oku ‘ikai te u tui ‘oku namu hāhā ia.
- 6 Ko ‘eni, ko me‘a ia na‘e fie ma‘u ‘e ‘Āmoní, he na‘á ne ‘ilo‘i ‘oku mo‘ulaloa ‘a e tu‘i ko Lamōnái ki he mālohi ‘o e ‘Otuá; pea na‘á ne ‘ilo‘i ‘oku to‘o atu ‘a e veili fakapo‘uli ‘o e ta‘etuí mei hono ‘atamaí, pea ko e maama ‘a ia ‘oku fakamaama hono ‘atamaí, ko e maama ia ‘o e nāunau ‘o e ‘Otuá ‘a ia ko e maama fakaofo ia ‘o ‘ene angalelé—‘io, kuo hanga ‘e he maama ko iá ‘o fakafonu ha fiefia lahi fau ki hono laumālié, pea kuo mole atu ai ‘a e ‘ao fakapo‘ulí, pea kuo tutu ‘a e maama ‘o e mo‘ui ta‘engatá ‘i hono laumālié, ‘io, na‘á ne ‘ilo‘i kuo ma‘u ‘e ia ‘a e mālohi ki hono sino fakamāmaní, pea kuó ne mo‘ulaloa ai ki he mālohi ‘o e ‘Otuá—
- 7 Ko ia, ko me‘a kotoa pe na‘e loto ‘a e kuini ke ne fakahā ange kiate iá ko e me‘a pē ia na‘á ne faka‘amu ki aí. Ko ia na‘á ne hū atu ke vakai ki he tu‘í ‘o hangē kuo kole kiate ia ‘e he kuini; peá ne vakai ki he tu‘í, ‘o ne ‘ilo‘i kuo ‘ikai ke pekia ia.
- 8 Pea na‘á ne pehē ange ki he kuini: ‘Okú ‘ikai ke pekia ia, ka ‘okú ne mohe pē ‘i he ‘Otuá, pea te ne toe tu‘u hake ‘apongipongi; ko ia, ‘oua na‘á ke telio ia.

Alma 19

And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead.

Now the queen having heard of the fame of Ammon, therefore she sent and desired that he should come in unto her.

And it came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded, and went in unto the queen, and desired to know what she would that he should do.

And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God, and that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;

Therefore, if this is the case, I would that ye should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre; but as for myself, to me he doth not stink.

Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness—yea, this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul, yea, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God—

Therefore, what the queen desired of him was his only desire. Therefore, he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.

And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.

9 Pea na'e pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni kiate ia: 'Okú ke tui koā ki he me'á ni? Pea ne pehē ange kiate ia: 'Oku 'ikai ha'aku fakamo'oni ka ko ho'o leá pē, pea mo e lea 'a 'ema kau tamaio'eikí; ka 'oku ou tui pē 'e hoko 'o hangē ko ho'o leá.

10 Pea na'e pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni kiate ia: 'Okú ke monū'ia koe ko e me'a 'i ho'o fu'u tui lahi; 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'e fefine, kuo 'ikai ke 'i ai ha fu'u tui lahi pehē 'i he kakai kotoa 'o e kau Nifái.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne tauhi ki he toka'anga 'o hono husepānití, 'o fai atu mei he feitu'ula'ā ko iá 'o a'u ki he feitu'ula'ā 'i he 'apongipongí 'a ia kuo fakahā 'e 'Āmoni te ne tu'u hake aí.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne tu'u hake 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a 'Āmoní; pea 'i he'ene tu'u haké na'á ne mafao atu hono nimá ki he fefiné, 'o ne pehē: Ke monū'ia 'a e huafa 'o e 'Otuá, pea 'okú ke monū'ia mo koe foki.

13 He hangē 'okú ke mo'uí, vakai, kuó u mamata ki hoku Huhu'í; pea te ne hā'ele mai, pea 'alo'í 'i ha fefine, pea te ne huhu'í 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá 'a ia 'oku tui ki hono huafá. Pea ko 'eni, 'i he 'osi leva 'ene folofola 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a ní, kuo fonu hono loto 'iate ia, 'o ne toe tō ki lalo 'i he fiefia; pea na'e tō ki lalo foki mo e kuiní kuo fakavaivai 'i ia 'e he Laumālié.

14 Ko 'eni 'i he vakai 'e 'Āmoni kuo lilingi hifo 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí ki he kau Leimana ko hono kāingá 'o fakatatau ki he'ene ngaahi lotú, 'a ia kuo nau hoko ko e tupu'anga 'o ha fu'u mamahi lahi 'i he kau Nifái, pe ko e kakai kotoa 'o e 'Otuá koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi angahalá pea mo 'enau ngaahi talatukufakaholó, na'á ne tō hifo 'i hono ongo tuí, 'o ne kamata ke lotu fakamātoato mo fai 'a e fakafeta 'i ki he 'Otuá koe'uhi ko e ngaahi me'a kuó ne fai ma'a hono kāingá; pea na'e fakavaivaia foki mo ia 'i he fiefia; pea ko ia kuo nau ngoto hifo, 'a e toko tolu kātoa ko iá ki he kelekelé.

15 Ko 'eni, 'i he vakai 'e he kau tamaio'eiki 'a e tu'í kuo nau tō hifó, na'a nau kamata foki ke kalanga ki he 'Otuá, he kuo tō kiate kinautolu foki 'a e manavahē ki he 'Eikí, he ko kinautolu foki na'a nau tu'u 'i he 'ao 'o e tu'í 'o fakamo'oni 'i kiate ia 'a e fu'u mālohi lahi 'o 'Āmoní.

And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said.

And Ammon said unto her: Blessed art thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.

And it came to pass that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou.

For as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name. Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.

Now Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites, his brethren, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren; and he was also overpowered with joy; and thus they all three had sunk to the earth.

Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau ui ki he huafa 'o e 'Eikí, 'aki honau tūkuingatá, kae 'oua kuo nau tō hifo kātoa ki he kekelelé, tuku kehe pe 'a e toko taha 'o e kau fefine Leimaná, ko hono hingoá ko 'Āpisi, kuó ne ului ki he 'Eikí 'i ha ngaahi ta'u lahi, ko e tupu mei ha me'a-hā-mai fakaofa na'e hā ki he'ene tamaí—

17 Ko ia, kuo 'osi 'ene ului ki he 'Eikí, kae 'ikai te ne fakahā ia, ko ia, 'i he'ene vakai kuo tō hifo ki he kekelelé 'a e kau tamaio'eiki kātoa 'a Lamōnaí, kae 'uma'ā foki 'ene fine'eiki, ko e kuiní, mo e tu'í pea mo 'Āmoni kuo nau tokoto 'i he funga kekelelé, na'á ne 'ilo'i ko e māfimaí ia 'o e 'Otuá; pea 'i he'ene mahalo ko e faingamālie 'eni, ke fakahā ki he kakaí 'a e me'a kuo hoko 'iate kinautolú, pea 'i he'enua vakai ki he me'a ní'e ngaohi kinautolu ke nau tui ki he māfimaí 'o e 'Otuá, ko ia na'á ne lele holo mei he fale ki he fale 'o fakahā ia ki he kakaí.

18 Pea nau kamata ke fakataha mai ki he fale 'o e tu'í. Pea na'e ha'u ha fu'u kakai tokolahi, pea na'a nau ofo 'i he'enua vakai ki he tu'í, mo e kuiní, pea mo 'ena kau tamaio'eiki kuo tākoto 'i he kekelelé, pea na'a nau tokoto kotoa pē 'o hangē kuo nau maté; pea na'a nau mamata foki kia 'Āmoni, pea vakai, ko ha tangata Nīfai ia.

19 Pea ko 'eni na'e kamata lāunga 'a e kakaí 'iate kinautolu; na'e pehē 'e he ni'ihí kuo tō kiate kinautolu ha fu'u kovi lahi, pe ki he tu'í mo hono falé, ko e me'a 'i he'ene tuku ke nofo 'a e tangata Nīfai 'i he fonua.

20 Ka na'e valoki 'i 'a kinautolu 'e ha ni'ihí kehe, 'o nau pehē: Kuo fakahoko 'e he tu'í 'a e kovi ni ki hono falé, ko e me'a 'i he'ene tāmata 'i 'a 'ene kau tamaio'eiki 'a ia na'e fakamovetevete 'i 'enua ngaahi takanga monumanu i'ki 'i he ngaahi vai 'o Sēpusí.

21 Pea na'e valoki 'i 'a kinautolu foki 'e he kau tangata ko ia na'a nau tu'u 'i he vai 'o Sēpusí, 'o fakamovetevete 'i 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki 'a e tu'í, he na'a nau 'ita kia 'Āmoni ko e me'a 'i he tokolahi 'o honau kāinga kuó ne tāmata 'i 'i he vai 'o Sēpusí, 'i he'ene malu 'i 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki 'a e tu'í.

And it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father—

Thus, having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known, therefore, when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth, and also her mistress, the queen, and the king, and Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth, she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene it would cause them to believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

And they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment, they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

And now the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

But others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

And they were also rebuked by those men who had stood at the waters of Sebus and scattered the flocks which belonged to the king, for they were angry with Ammon because of the number which he had slain of their brethren at the waters of Sebus, while defending the flocks of the king.

22 Ko 'eni, ko honau toko taha, na'e mate hono tokoua 'i he heletā 'a 'Āmoní, kuó ne fu'u 'ita lahi kia 'Āmoní, ko ia na'á ne unuhi 'ene heletā 'o 'alu atu koe'uhi ke ne 'ai ia ke tō kia 'Āmoní, ke tāmāte'i ia; pea 'i he'ene hiki hake 'a e heletā ke taa'i iá, 'iloange na'á ne tō 'o mate.

23 Ko 'eni, 'oku tau vakai na'e 'ikai lava 'o tāmāte'i 'a 'Āmoní, koe'uhi kuo folofola 'e he 'Eikí kia Mōsaia, ko 'ene tamaí: Te u fakahaofi ia, pea 'e fai 'eni kiate ia koe'uhi ko ho'o tuí—ko ia, na'e tuku ia 'e Mōsaia ki he 'Eikí ke ne malu'i.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he vakai 'e he fu'u kakaí kuo tō 'a e tangatá 'o mate, 'a ia na'e hiki hake 'a e heletā ke taa'i 'a 'Āmoní, na'e tō 'a e manavahē kiate kinautolu kotoa pē, pea na'e 'ikai te nau to'a ke ala honau nimá kiate ia pe ko ha tokotaha kuo tō hifo; pea na'a nau toe kamata ke fakatumutumu 'iate kinautolu ki hono tupu'anga 'o e fu'u mālohí ní, pe ko hono 'uhinga 'o e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai hanau tokolahi 'a ia na'a nau pehē tokua ko 'Āmoní 'a e Laumālie Lahí, kae pehē 'e ha ní'ihí kehe tokua kuo fekau mai ia 'e he Laumālie Lahí;

26 Ka na'e valokí 'i 'a kinautolu kātoa 'e ha ní'ihí kehe, 'o nau lau ko e fu'u tangata faka'ulía ia kuo fekau'i mei he kau Nífaí ke fakamamahi'i 'a kinautolu.

27 Pea na'e 'i ai ha ní'ihí na'a nau pehē tokua kuo fekau'i mai 'a 'Āmoní 'e he Laumālie Lahí ke fakamamahi'i 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi angahalá; pea ko e Laumālie Lahi ko iá kuó ne kau ma'u ai pē 'a kinautolu mei honau nimá; pea na'a nau pehē tokua ko e Laumālie Lahi ko iá, 'a ia kuó ne faka'auha 'a e fu'u tokolahi 'o honau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná.

28 Pea ko ia na'e faka'au ke fu'u mālohi 'aupito 'a e fefakakikihí'akí 'iate kinautolu. Pea lolotonga 'enau fefakakikihí'aki peheé, na'e ha'u 'a e fefine kaunanga 'a ia na'á ne talaki ke kātoa mai 'a e fu'u kakaí, pea 'i he'ene vakai ki he fefakakikihí'aki na'e fai 'i he kakaí na'á ne fu'u loto-mamahi 'aupito, pea ne tangi.

Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.

Now we see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah, his father: I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to thy faith—therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

And it came to pass that there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit;

But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them.

And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.

And thus the contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them. And while they were thus contending, the woman servant who had caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.

29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne 'alu atu 'o puke 'a e
 kuiní 'i hono nimá, ko'e uhi ke ne lava nai 'o fokotu'u
 hake ia mei he kekelelé; pea 'i he'ene ala pē ki hono nimá
 na'á ne tu'u hake 'o tu'u 'i hono va'é 'o kalanga 'i he le'o-
 lahi, 'o pehē: Ke monū'ia 'a Sīsū, 'a ia kuó ke fakamo'ui
 au mei he heli faka'ulíá! Ke monū'ia 'a e 'Otuá, ke ke
 'alo'ofa mai ki he kakaí ni!

30 Pea 'i he 'osi 'ene lea 'aki 'ení, na'á ne kuku hono ongo
 nimá, kuó ne fonu 'i he fiefia, mo lea 'aki ha ngaahi lea
 lahi na'e ta'emahino; pea hili 'ene fai 'ení, na'á ne puke 'a
 e tu'i, ko Lamōnaí, 'i hono nimá, pea 'iloange na'á ne
 tu'u hake 'o tu'u 'i hono va'é.

31 Pea 'i he'ene, vakai leva, ki he fefakakihí'aki 'a hono
 kakaí, na'á ne 'alu atu 'o kamata ke valoki'i 'a kinautolu,
 mo akonaki 'aki kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia kuó
 ne fanongo ki ai 'i he ngutu 'o 'Āmoní; pea 'ilonga 'a
 kinautolu na'e fanongo ki he'ene ngaahi leá, na'á nau tui
 'o nau ului ki he 'Eikí.

32 Ka na'e ai hanau tokolahi na'e 'ikai ke fie fanongo ki
 he'ene ngaahi leá; ko ia na'á nau tafoki 'o 'alu.

33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he tu'u hake 'a 'Āmoní na'á ne
 lea foki mo ia kiate kinautolu, pea mo e kau tamaio'eiki
 kotoa foki 'a Lamōnaí; pea na'á nau fakahā kotoa pē ki
 he kakaí 'a e me'a tatau—kuo liliu honau lotó; pea 'oku
 'ikai ke nau toe ma'u ha holi ke faikovi.

34 Pea vakai, na'e fakamo'oni 'e he tokolahi ki he kakaí
 kuo nau mamata ki ha kau 'āngelo, 'o nau fetalanoa'aki
 mo kinautolu; pea ko ia kuo nau fakamatala kiate
 kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a e 'Otuá, pea mo 'ene
 mā'oni'oni.

35 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai ha tokolahi na'e tui ki
 he'enua ngaahi leá; pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu na'e tuí na'e
 papitaiso 'a kinautolu; pea na'á nau hoko ko ha kakai
 mā'oni'oni, 'o nau fokotu'u ha siasi 'iate kinautolu.

36 Pea ko ia na'e kamata pehē 'a e ngāue 'a e 'Eikí 'i he
 kau Leimaná; ko ia na'e kamata pehē hono lingi hifo 'e
 he 'Eikí 'a hono Laumālié kiate kinautolu; pea 'oku tau
 vakai 'oku hōifua 'a e 'Eikí ke tali 'a e kakai fulipē 'a ia 'e
 fakatomala mo tui ki hono huafá.

And it came to pass that she went and took the queen
 by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the
 ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose
 and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice,
 saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful
 hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people!

And when she had said this, she clasped her hands,
 being filled with joy, speaking many words which were
 not understood; and when she had done this, she took
 the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and
 stood upon his feet.

And he, immediately, seeing the contention among
 his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to
 teach them the words which he had heard from the
 mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words be-
 lieved, and were converted unto the Lord.

But there were many among them who would not
 hear his words; therefore they went their way.

And it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also
 administered unto them, and also did all the servants of
 Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the
 selfsame thing—that their hearts had been changed;
 that they had no more desire to do evil.

And behold, many did declare unto the people that
 they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and
 thus they had told them things of God, and of his right-
 eousness.

And it came to pass that there were many that did be-
 lieve in their words; and as many as did believe were
 baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they
 did establish a church among them.

And thus the work of the Lord did commence
 among the Lamanites; thus the Lord did begin to pour
 out his Spirit upon them; and we see that his arm is ex-
 tended to all people who will repent and believe on his
 name.

‘Alamā 20

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili leva ‘enau fokotu‘u ha siasi ‘i he fonua ko ia, na‘e kole ‘e he tu‘i ko Lamōnai kia ‘Āmoni ke na ō mo ia ki he fonua ko Nīfaí ke ne lava ‘o fakahā ia ki he‘ene tamaí.
- 2 Pea na‘e ongo mai ‘a e le‘o ‘o e ‘Eikí kia ‘Āmoni ‘o folofola ange: ‘E ‘ikai te ke ‘alu hake ki he fonua ko Nīfaí, he vakai, ‘e feinga ‘e he tu‘i ke tāmāte‘i koe; ka ke ke ‘alu ki he fonua ko Mitonai; he vakai, ‘oku ‘i he fale fakapōpulá ‘a ho tokoua ko ‘Ēloné, kae ‘uma‘ā foki ‘a Mulokai mo ‘Ama.
- 3 Ko ‘eni na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he fanongo ‘a ‘Āmoni ki he me‘a ní, na‘á ne pehē ange kia Lamōnai: Vakai, ‘oku ‘i he fale fakapōpulá ‘a hoku tokouá mo hoku kāingá ‘i Mitonai, pea te u ‘alu koe‘uhi ke u lava ‘o fakatau‘atāina ‘i ‘a kinautolu.
- 4 Pea na‘e pehē ange ‘e Lamōnai kia ‘Āmoni: ‘Oku ou ‘ilo ‘okú ke lava ‘o fai ‘a e ngaahi me‘a kotoa pē ‘i he māfimaí ‘o e ‘Eikí. Kae vakai, te u ‘alu mo koe ki he fonua ko Mitonai; he ko ha kaume‘a ‘o ‘oku ‘a e tu‘i ‘o e fonua ko Mitonai, ‘a ia ko ‘Anitiomono hono hingoá; ko ia te u ‘alu ki he fonua ko Mitonai ke u fakafiemālie‘i ‘a e tu‘i ‘o e fonuá, pea te ne tukuange ho kāingá mei he fale fakapōpulá. Ka na‘e pehē ange kiate ia ‘e Lamōnai: Ko hai na‘á ne fakahā kiate koe ‘oku ‘i he fale fakapōpulá ‘a ho kāingá?
- 5 Pea pehē ange ‘e ‘Āmoni kiate ia: ‘Oku ‘ikai ha tokotaha kuó ne fakahā kiate au, ka ko e ‘Otua pē; ‘o ne folofola mai kiate au—‘Alu, ‘o fakahaofi ‘a ho kāingá, he ‘oku nau ‘i he fale fakapōpulá ‘i he fonua ko Mitonai.
- 6 Pea ‘i he fanongo ‘a Lamōnai ki he me‘a ní, na‘á ne fekau ke hanga ‘e he‘ene kau tamaio‘eikí ‘o teuteu ‘ene fanga hōsí mo ‘ene ngaahi salioté.
- 7 Peá ne pehē ange kia ‘Āmoni: Ha‘u, pea te u ‘alu mo koe ki he fonua ko Mitonai, pea te u kole ‘i ai ki he tu‘i ke ne tukuange ho kāingá mei he fale fakapōpulá.
- 8 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē lolotonga ‘a e fononga atu ‘a ‘Āmoni mo Lamōnai ki aí, na‘á na fetaulaki mo e tamai ‘a Lamōnai, ‘a ia ko e tu‘i ki he fonuá hono kotoa.

Alma 20

And it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land, that king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi, that he might show him unto his father.

And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon, saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life; but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, thy brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.

Now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my brother and brethren are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I may deliver them.

Now Lamoni said unto Ammon: I know, in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things. But behold, I will go with thee to the land of Middoni; for the king of the land of Middoni, whose name is Antiomno, is a friend unto me; therefore I go to the land of Middoni, that I may flatter the king of the land, and he will cast thy brethren out of prison. Now Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that thy brethren were in prison?

And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be God; and he said unto me—Go and deliver thy brethren, for they are in prison in the land of Middoni.

Now when Lamoni had heard this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses and his chariots.

And he said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison.

And it came to pass that as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

9 Pea vakai, na'e pehē 'e he tamai 'a Lamōnai kiate ia: Ko e hā na'e 'ikai te ke ha'u ai ki he katoanga 'i he 'aho lahi 'a ia na'á ku fai ai 'a e katoanga ki hoku ngaahi fohá, mo hoku kakai?

10 Pea na'e pehē foki 'e ia: Ko ho'o 'alu ki fē mo e tangata Nifai ko 'ení, 'a ia ko e taha 'o e fānau 'a ha tangata loi?

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakamatala 'i 'e Lamōnai kiate ia 'a e feitu'u 'okú ne 'alu ki aí, he na'á ne manavahe ke fakatupu-houhau kiate ia.

12 Pea na'á ne fakahā foki kiate ia hono 'uhinga kotoa na'á ne nofo ai 'i hono pule'anga 'o'oná, 'o'ikai ai te ne 'alu hake ki he'ene tamai ki he katoanga kuó ne teuteú.

13 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he faka'osi 'e Lamōnai 'a 'ene fakamatala kiate ia 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, vakai, na'á ne 'ohovale 'i he tuputāmaki 'a 'ene tamai kiate ia, 'o ne pehē: 'E Lamōnai, ko ho'o 'alú ke fakahaofi 'a e kau Nifai ko iá, 'a ia ko e ngaahi foha 'o ha tangata loi. Vakai, na'á ne kaiha'a mei he'eta ngaahi kuí; pea kuo ha'u 'eni mo 'ene fānau kiate kitautolu ke nau kākaa 'i 'a kitautolu 'i he'enu olopotó mo 'enu ngaahi loí, koe'uhi ke nau toe kaiha'asi 'etau koloá meiate kitautolu.

14 Ko 'eni na'e fekau 'e he tamai 'a Lamōnai kiate ia ke ne tāmata 'i 'a 'Āmoni 'aki 'a e heletā. Pea na'á ne fekau foki kiate ia ke 'oua te ne 'alu ki he fonua ko Mitonai, ka ke ne foki mo ia ki he fonua ko 'Isimelí.

15 Ka na'e pehē ange 'e Lamōnai kiate ia: 'E 'ikai te u tāmata 'i 'a 'Āmoni, pea 'e 'ikai te u foki atu ki he fonua ko 'Isimelí, ka te u 'alu ki he fonua ko Mitonai koe'uhi ke u lava 'o fakatau'atāina 'i 'a e kāinga 'o 'Āmoní, he 'oku ou 'ilo 'i ko e kau tangata angatonu 'a kinautolu, pea ko e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni 'a kinautolu 'a e 'Otua mo'oni.

16 Ko 'eni 'i he fanongo 'a 'ene tamai ki he ngaahi lea ní, na'á ne houhau lahi kiate ia, 'o ne to'o 'ene heletaá ke ne taa 'i hifo ia ki he kekelelé.

17 Ka na'e tu'u atu ki mu'a 'a 'Āmoni 'o ne pehē ange kiate ia: Vakai, 'e 'ikai te ke tāmata 'i ho fohá, ka neongo iá 'e lelei ange 'ene toó 'i ha'o tō, he vakai, kuó ne fakatomala mei he'ene ngaahi angahalá; ka kapau te ke tō 'i he taimí ni lolotonga ho'o houhaú, he 'ikai lava ke fakamo'ui ho laumalié.

And behold, the father of Lamoni said unto him: Why did ye not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my sons, and unto my people?

And he also said: Whither art thou going with this Nephite, who is one of the children of a liar?

And it came to pass that Lamoni rehearsed unto him whither he was going, for he feared to offend him.

And he also told him all the cause of his tarrying in his own kingdom, that he did not go unto his father to the feast which he had prepared.

And now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him all these things, behold, to his astonishment, his father was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, thou art going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Behold, he robbed our fathers; and now his children are also come amongst us that they may, by their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they again may rob us of our property.

Now the father of Lamoni commanded him that he should slay Ammon with the sword. And he also commanded him that he should not go to the land of Middoni, but that he should return with him to the land of Ishmael.

But Lamoni said unto him: I will not slay Ammon, neither will I return to the land of Ishmael, but I go to the land of Middoni that I may release the brethren of Ammon, for I know that they are just men and holy prophets of the true God.

Now when his father had heard these words, he was angry with him, and he drew his sword that he might smite him to the earth.

But Ammon stood forth and said unto him: Behold, thou shalt not slay thy son; nevertheless, it were better that he should fall than thee, for behold, he has repented of his sins; but if thou shouldst fall at this time, in thine anger, thy soul could not be saved.

18 Kae vakai, 'oku 'aonga ke ke kātaki pē; he kapau te ke tāmāte'i ho fohá, 'e tangi hono totó mei he kelekelé ki he 'Eiki, ko hono 'Otuá, koe'uhi ke tō kiate koe 'a e tautea, he ko e tangata ta'ehalaia ia; pea na'a mole mo ho laumālié.

19 Ko 'eni, na'e hili leva 'a e lea 'aki 'e 'Āmoni 'a e ngaahi lea ni kiate iá, na'á ne tali kiate ia, 'o pehē: 'Oku ou 'ilo'i te u lilingi 'a e toto ta'ehalaia 'o kapau te u tāmāte'i hoku fohá; ka ko koe ia kuo feinga ke faka'auha iá.

20 Pea mafao atu hono nimá ke tāmāte'i 'a 'Āmoni. Ka na'e matu'uaki 'ene ngaahi taá 'e 'Āmoni, 'o ne taa'i foki 'a hono nimá, 'o 'ikai ai te ne lava ke ngāue 'aki ia.

21 Pea 'i he vakai 'e he tu'í 'e lava 'e 'Āmoni 'o tāmāte'i iá, na'á ne kamata ke kole kia 'Āmoni ke ne fakahaofi 'ene mo'uí.

22 Ka na'e hiki hake 'e 'Āmoni 'a 'ene heletaá, 'o ne pehē ange kiate ia: Vakai, te u taa'i koe 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te ke fakangofua mai ke tukuange 'a hoku kāingá mei he fale fakapōpulá.

23 Ko 'eni ko e me'a 'i he manavahē 'a e tu'í na'a mole 'ene mo'uí, na'á ne folofola ange: Kapau te ke fakamo'ui au, te u foaki kiate koe 'a ia kotoa pē te ke kole ki aí, 'o a'u ki hono vaeua 'o e pule'angá.

24 Pea 'i he 'ilo'i 'e 'Āmoni kuó ne fakaloto'i 'a e tu'í toulekeleká 'o hangē ko hono lotó, na'á ne pehē ange kiate ia: kapau te ke fakangofua ke tukuange hoku kāingá mei he fale fakapōpulá, pea ke tauhi foki 'e Lamōnai 'a hono pule'angá, pea 'e 'ikai te ke kei houhau kiate ia, kae tuku ke ne fai 'o hangē ko 'ene ngaahi holí, 'i ha me'a pē 'okú ne fakakaukau ki aí, pe 'oku lelei kiate iá, pea te u toki fakamo'ui koe; ka 'ikai, pea te u taa'i koe ki he kelekelé.

25 Ko 'eni 'i he hili hono lea 'aki 'e 'Āmoni 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e kamata ke fiefia 'a e tu'í koe'uhi ko hono toe fakahaofi 'ene mo'uí.

26 Pea 'i he'ene vakai 'oku 'ikai fie tāmāte'i ia 'e 'Āmoni, pea 'i he'ene vakai ki he'ene fu'u 'ofa lahi 'aupito ki hono foha ko Lamōnai, na'á ne fu'u ofo 'aupito, 'o folofola ange: Koe'uhi ko 'eni pē kuó ke fie ma'ú, ke u tukuange ho kāinga kae tuku ki hoku foha ko Lamōnai ke ne tauhi hono pule'angá, vakai, te u tuku ma'au ke tauhi 'e hoku fohá 'a hono pule'angá, 'o fai atu mei he 'ahó ni 'o ta'engata; pea he 'ikai te u toe pule'i ia—

And again, it is expedient that thou shouldst forbear; for if thou shouldst slay thy son, he being an innocent man, his blood would cry from the ground to the Lord his God, for vengeance to come upon thee; and perhaps thou wouldst lose thy soul.

Now when Ammon had said these words unto him, he answered him, saying: I know that if I should slay my son, that I should shed innocent blood; for it is thou that hast sought to destroy him.

And he stretched forth his hand to slay Ammon. But Ammon withstood his blows, and also smote his arm that he could not use it.

Now when the king saw that Ammon could slay him, he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life.

But Ammon raised his sword, and said unto him: Behold, I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my brethren may be cast out of prison.

Now the king, fearing he should lose his life, said: If thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever thou wilt ask, even to half of the kingdom.

Now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire, he said unto him: If thou wilt grant that my brethren may be cast out of prison, and also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom, and that ye be not displeased with him, but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee; otherwise I will smite thee to the earth.

Now when Ammon had said these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life.

And when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that thou hast desired, that I would release thy brethren, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more—

27 Pea te u tuku foki ma'au ke tukuange ho kāingá mei he fale fakapōpulá, pe'e lelei ke mou ha'u mo ho kāingá kiate au 'i hoku pule'angá; he 'oku ou faka'amu lahi ke u fē'iloaki mo koe. He na'e fu'u ofo lahi 'a e tu'í 'i he ngaahi lea 'a ia kuo lea 'aki 'e hono foha ko Lamōnai, ko ia na'á ne faka'amu ke 'ilo ki ai.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hoko atu 'a 'Āmoni mo Lamōnai 'i hona fononga ki he fonua ko Mitonai. Pea na'e finangalo lelei kia Lamōnai 'a e tu'í 'o e fonuá; ko ia na'e taki mai ki tu'a 'a e kāinga 'o 'Āmoni mei he fale fakapōpulá.

29 Pea 'i he fē'iloaki 'a 'Āmoni mo kinautolú na'á ne fu'u loto-mamahi 'aupito, he vakai na'a nau tēlefua, pea kuo fu'u mafohifohi 'a honau kilí ko e tupu mei honau ha'i 'aki ha ngaahi afo mālohi. Pea kuo nau mamahi'ia 'i he fiekaiá mo e fieinuá mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga mamahi kehekehe; ka neongo iá na'a nau fa'a kātaki 'i honau ngaahi mamahi kotoa pē.

30 Pea, ko e me'a 'eni na'e hokó, na'e pau ke nau tō ki he nima 'o ha kakai loto-fefeka ange mo ha kakai kia-kekeva ange; ko ia na'e 'ikai te nau fie tokanga ki he'enau ngaahi leá, pea kuo nau kapusi 'a kinautolu ki tu'a, mo taa'í 'a kinautolu, mo tuli 'a kinautolu mei he fale ki he fale, pea mei he potu ki he potu, kae 'oua kuo nau a'u atu ki he fonua ko Mitonai; pea na'e puke ai 'a kinautolu pea lí ki he fale fakapōpulá, pea ha'i 'aki 'a e ngaahi afo mālohi, pea tuku 'i he fale fakapōpulá 'o laulau 'aho, pea na'e fakatau'atāina 'i 'a kinautolu 'e Lamōnai mo 'Āmoni.

And I will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of prison, and thou and thy brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom; for I shall greatly desire to see thee. For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni, therefore he was desirous to learn them.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni proceeded on their journey towards the land of Middoni. And Lamoni found favor in the eyes of the king of the land; therefore the brethren of Ammon were brought forth out of prison.

And when Ammon did meet them he was exceedingly sorrowful, for behold they were naked, and their skins were worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords. And they also had suffered hunger, thirst, and all kinds of afflictions; nevertheless they were patient in all their sufferings.

And, as it happened, it was their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened and a more stiff-necked people; therefore they would not hearken unto their words, and they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from house to house, and from place to place, even until they had arrived in the land of Middoni; and there they were taken and cast into prison, and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days, and were delivered by Lamoni and Ammon.

Ko ha fakamatala ki he malanga 'a 'Ēlone, mo Mulokai, pea mo hona kāingá, ki he kau Leimaná.

'Alamā 21

- 1 Ko 'eni, 'i he māvae 'a 'Āmoni mo hono kāingá 'i he ngata'anga 'o e fonua 'o e kau Leimaná, vakai na'e fai 'e 'Ēlone 'a 'ene fonongá ki he fonua na'e ui 'e he kau Leimaná ko Selūsalema, ko e fakahingoa ki he hingoa 'o e fonua na'e fā'ele'i ai 'a 'enua ngaahi kui; pea na'e mama'o atu 'ene tu'ú 'o fehokotaki mo e ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'o Molomoná.
- 2 Pea kuo hanga 'e he kau Leimaná mo e kau 'Amalekaí pea mo e kau 'Amuloné 'o langa ha fu'u kolo na'e ui ko Selūsalema.
- 3 Ko 'eni ko e kau Leimaná ko e kakai ako'ingata'a, ka ko e kau 'Amalekaí mo e kau 'Amuloné na'a nau fefeka ange kinautolu; ko ia na'a nau ue'i hake 'a e kau Leimaná ke nau fakafefeka honau lotó, pea ke nau tupulaki 'o mālohi 'i he fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e a'u atu 'a 'Ēlone ki he kolo ko Selūsalemá, 'o ne fuofua kamata ke malanga ki he kau 'Amalekaí. Pea na'e kamata ke ne malanga kiate kinautolu 'i honau ngaahi fale lotú, he kuo nau langa ha ngaahi fale lotu 'o tatau mo e kautaha 'o e kau Nēhoá; he na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'o e kau 'Amalekaí mo e kau 'Amuloné na'a nau kau ki he siasi 'o e kau Nēhoá.
- 5 Ko ia, 'i he hū atu 'a 'Ēlone ki ha taha 'o honau ngaahi fale lotú ke malanga ki he kakai, pea lolotonga 'ene lea kiate kinautolú, 'iloange na'e tu'ú hake ha tangata 'Amalekai, 'o ne kamata ke fakakikihi mo ia, 'o pehē: Ko e hā 'a e me'a kuó ke fakamo'oni'aki? Kuó ke mamata ki ha 'āngelo? Ko e hā 'oku 'ikai ke hā mai ai ha kau 'āngelo kiate kinautolú? Vakai 'ikai 'oku lelei tatau 'a e kakai ni mo ho kakai?

An account of the preaching of Aaron, and Muloki, and their brethren, to the Lamanites.

Alma 21

Now when Ammon and his brethren separated themselves in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites, Jerusalem, calling it after the land of their fathers' nativity; and it was away joining the borders of Mormon.

Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called Jerusalem.

Now the Lamanites of themselves were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were still harder; therefore they did cause the Lamanites that they should harden their hearts, that they should wax strong in wickedness and their abominations.

And it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites. And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors; for many of the Amalekites and the Amulonites were after the order of the Nehors.

Therefore, as Aaron entered into one of their synagogues to preach unto the people, and as he was speaking unto them, behold there arose an Amalekite and began to contend with him, saying: What is that thou hast testified? Hast thou seen an angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as thy people?

6 'Okú ke toe pehē foki, te mau mala'ia kapau 'e 'ikai te mau fakatomala. 'Okú ke 'ilo'i fēfē 'a 'emau ngaahi fakakaukau mo e me'a te mau fai? 'Okú ke 'ilo'i fēfē 'oku 'i ai ha 'uhinga ke fakatomala? 'Okú ke 'ilo'i fēfē 'oku 'ikai ko ha kakai 'a kimautilu 'oku mā'oni'oni? Vakai, kuo mau langa 'a e ngaahi potu tapu, pea 'oku mau fa'a fakataha ke hū ki he 'Otuá. 'Oku mau tui 'e fakamo'ui 'e he 'Otuá 'a e kakai fulipē.

7 Pea na'e pehē ange 'e 'Ēlone kiate ia: 'Okú ke tui koā 'e hā'ele mai 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá ke huhu'i 'a e fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá mei he'enu ngaahi angahalá?

8 Pea na'e pehē ange 'e he tangatá kiate ia: 'Oku 'ikai ke mau tui 'okú ke 'ilo'i ha fa'ahinga me'a pehē. 'Oku 'ikai te mau tui ki he ngaahi talatukufakaholo laulaunoa ko iá. 'Oku 'ikai te mau tui 'okú ke 'ilo ki he ngaahi me'a 'e hoko maí, pea 'ikai foki te mau tui na'e 'ilo'i 'e ho'omou ngaahi tamaí pea mo 'emau ngaahi tamaí foki 'a e ngaahi me'a na'a nau lea 'aki, 'a ia na'e kau ki he ngaahi me'a 'e hokó.

9 Ko ia na'e kamata 'a 'Ēlone ke fakamatala 'a e ngaahi folofolá kiate kinautilu 'o kau ki he hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e toetu'u 'o e pekiá, pea mo e 'ikai lava ke 'i ai ha huhu'i mo'ó e fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá, kae ngata pē 'i he hala mo e ngaahi mamahi 'a Kalaisí, pea mo e fakalelei 'i hono lilingi hono ta'ata'á.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he'ene kamata ke fakamatala 'i 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate kinautilu, na'a nau 'ita kiate ia, 'o kamata ke manuki 'i ia; 'o 'ikai te nau fie fanongo ki he ngaahi lea na'a ne lea 'akí.

11 Ko ia, 'i he'ene vakai 'oku 'ikai te nau fie fanongo ki he'ene ngaahi leá, na'á ne 'alu atu mei honau fale lotú, 'o ne 'alu atu ki ha kolo 'a ia na'e ui ko 'Ani-'Anitai, pea na'á ne 'ilo ai 'a Mulokai 'oku lolotonga fai 'ene malanga 'aki 'a e folofolá kiate kinautilu; kae 'uma'ā foki mo 'Ama mo hono kāingá. Pea na'a nau fakakikihi mo ha kakai tokolahi 'o kau ki he ongoongolelé.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau vakai 'e fakafefeka 'e he kakai 'a honau lotó, ko ia na'a nau ō mei ai, 'o nau fononga ki he fonua ko Mitonai. Pea na'a nau malanga 'aki 'a e folofola ki he tokolahi, ka na'e tui pē 'a e tokosi 'i ki he ngaahi folofola na'a nau akonaki'akí.

Thou also sayest, except we repent we shall perish. How knowest thou the thought and intent of our hearts? How knowest thou that we have cause to repent? How knowest thou that we are not a righteous people? Behold, we have built sanctuaries, and we do assemble ourselves together to worship God. We do believe that God will save all men.

Now Aaron said unto him: Believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind from their sins?

And the man said unto him: We do not believe that thou knowest any such thing. We do not believe in these foolish traditions. We do not believe that thou knowest of things to come, neither do we believe that thy fathers and also that our fathers did know concerning the things which they spake, of that which is to come.

Now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death and sufferings of Christ, and the atonement of his blood.

And it came to pass as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him, and began to mock him; and they would not hear the words which he spake.

Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he departed out of their synagogue, and came over to a village which was called Ani-Anti, and there he found Muloki preaching the word unto them; and also Ammah and his brethren. And they contended with many about the word.

And it came to pass that they saw that the people would harden their hearts, therefore they departed and came over into the land of Middoni. And they did preach the word unto many, and few believed on the words which they taught.

13 Ka neongo iá, na'e puke 'a 'Ēlone mo ha ni'ihī 'o hono kāingá 'o fakahū ki he fale fakapōpulá, ka ko honau ni'ihī na'e toe na'a nau hola mei he fonua ko Mitonái ki he ngaahi potu takatakaí.

14 Pea ko kinautolu 'a ia na'e fakahū ki he fale fakapōpulá na'a nau faingata 'a ia 'i ha ngaahi me'a lahi, pea na'e fakatau 'atāina 'i 'a kinautolu 'e Lamōnai mo 'Āmoni, pea na'e fafanga 'i mo fakakofu 'i 'a kinautolu.

15 Pea na'a nau toe 'alu atu ke malanga 'aki 'a e ongoongoleleí, ka na'e pehē honau mu'aki fakahaofi mei he fale fakapōpulá, pea na'e pehē 'a 'enau mamahi'íá.

16 Pea na'a nau 'alu atu ki he potu kotoa pē 'a ia na'e tataki 'a kinautolu ki ai 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí, 'o nau malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i he fale lotu kotoa pē 'o e kau 'Amalekaí, pe 'i he fakataha'anga kotoa pē 'o e kau Leimaná 'a ia na'e fakangofua ke nau hū ki aí.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata ke tāpuaki 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eikí, ko ia na'a nau fakatafoki ai ha tokolahi ki he 'ilo 'i 'o e mo'oní; 'io, na'a nau fakamahino ki ha tokolahi 'a 'enau ngaahi angahalá, pea mo e ngaahi talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí, 'a ia na'e 'ikai totonú.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e foki mai 'a 'Āmoni mo Lamōnai mei he fonua ko Mitonái ki he fonua ko 'Isimelí, 'a ia ko e fonua 'o hona tofí'á.

19 Pea na'e 'ikai ke fie tuku 'e he tu 'i ko Lamōnai 'a 'Āmoni ke ne ngāue ma'ana, pe hoko ko 'ene tamaio'eiki.

20 Ka na'á ne fekau ke langa ha ngaahi fale lotu 'i he fonua ko 'Isimelí; pea na'á ne fekau ki hono kakaí, pe ko e kakai na'e fakaongoongo ki he'ene pulé, ke nau fakataha kátoa mai.

21 Pea na'á ne fiefia koe'uhi ko kinautolu, 'o ne ako kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi. Pea na'á ne fakahā foki kiate kinautolu ko e kakai 'a kinautolu 'a ia 'oku fakaongoongo kiate ia, pea ko ha kakai tau'atāina 'a kinautolu, pea ko ha kakai 'a kinautolu 'oku tau'atāina mei he ngaahi fakamālohi 'a e tu 'i, ko 'ene tamaí; he kuo tuku kiate ia 'e he'ene tamaí ke ne pule 'i 'a e kakai 'a ia 'oku 'i he fonua ko 'Isimelí, pea 'i he fonua kátoa 'oku takatakaí ki aí.

Nevertheless, Aaron and a certain number of his brethren were taken and cast into prison, and the remainder of them fled out of the land of Middoni unto the regions round about.

And those who were cast into prison suffered many things, and they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni and Ammon, and they were fed and clothed.

And they went forth again to declare the word, and thus they were delivered for the first time out of prison; and thus they had suffered.

And they went forth whithersoever they were led by the Spirit of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every synagogue of the Amalekites, or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admitted.

And it came to pass that the Lord began to bless them, insomuch that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, they did convince many of their sins, and of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni returned from the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael, which was the land of their inheritance.

And king Lamoni would not suffer that Ammon should serve him, or be his servant.

But he caused that there should be synagogues built in the land of Ishmael; and he caused that his people, or the people who were under his reign, should assemble themselves together.

And he did rejoice over them, and he did teach them many things. And he did also declare unto them that they were a people who were under him, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the oppressions of the king, his father; for that his father had granted unto him that he might reign over the people who were in the land of Ishmael, and in all the land round about.

22 Pea na'á ne fakahā foki kiate kinautolu te nau ma'u'a e tau'atāina ke hū ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau fa'itelihá, 'i he potu pē 'oku nau 'i aí, 'o kapau 'oku 'i he fonua 'a ia 'oku fakaongo ki he pule 'a e tu'i ko Lamōnaí.

23 Pea na'e malanga 'a 'Āmoni ki he kakai 'o e tu'i ko Lamōnaí; pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne akonaki kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'i he ngaahi me'a 'oku kau ki he mā'oní'oní. Peá ne enginaki tūkuingata kiate kinautolu 'i he 'aho kotoa pē; pea na'a nau tokanga ki he'ene leá, 'o nau ngāue faivelenga 'i he fai 'o e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá.

And he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshiping the Lord their God according to their desires, in whatsoever place they were in, if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni.

And Ammon did preach unto the people of king Lamoni; and it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness. And he did exhort them daily, with all diligence; and they gave heed unto his word, and they were zealous for keeping the commandments of God.

‘Alamā 22

- 1 Ko ‘eni, lolotonga ‘a e ako‘i pehē ‘e ‘Āmoni ‘a e kakai ‘o Lamōnaí ma‘u pē, te tau foki ki he fakamatala kia ‘Ēlone mo hono kāingá; he ‘i he hili ‘ene ‘alu atu mei he fonua ko Mitonaí na‘e tataki ia ‘e he Laumālié ki he fonua ko Nīfaí, ‘o a‘u ki he fale ‘o e tu‘i na‘e pule ki he fonuá hono kotoa tuku kehe pē ‘a e fonua ko ‘Isimelí; pea ko e tamai ia ‘a Lamōnaí.
- 2 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ne hū atu kiate ia ki he fale ‘o e tu‘í, fakataha mo hono kāingá, peá ne punou hifo ‘i he ‘ao ‘o e tu‘í, ‘o ne pehē kiate ia: Vakai, ‘E tu‘i, ko e kāinga kimautolu ‘o ‘Āmoni, ‘a ia kuó ke tukuange mei he fale fakapōpulá.
- 3 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘E tu‘i, kapau te ke tuku pē ke mau mo‘uí, te mau hoko ko ho‘o kau tamaio‘eiki. Pea na‘e folofola ange ‘e he tu‘í kiate kinautolu: Tu‘u hake, he te u tuku kiate kimoutolu ‘a ho‘omou mo‘uí, pea ‘e ‘ikai te u tuku ke mou hoko ko ‘eku kau tamaio‘eiki; ka ‘oku ou kole ke mou tokoni mai kiate au; he kuo hoha‘a ‘eku fakakaukaú koe‘uhi ko e anga‘ofa mo hono ma‘ongó‘onga ‘o e ngaahi lea ‘a homou tokoua ko ‘Āmoní; pea ‘oku ou fie ‘ilo pe ko e hā ‘a e ‘uhinga kuo ‘ikai ai te ne ha‘u mei he fonua ko Mitonaí mo kimoutolú.
- 4 Pea na‘e pehē ‘e ‘Ēlone ki he tu‘í: Vakai, kuo ui ia ‘e he Laumālie ‘o e ‘Eiki ki ha feitu‘u kehe; kuó ne ‘alu ki he fonua ko ‘Isimelí ke ako‘i ‘a e kakai ‘o Lamōnaí.
- 5 Pea ko ‘eni na‘e folofola ange ‘e he tu‘í kiate kinautolu: ko e hā ‘eni kuo mou lea ‘aki ‘o kau ki he Laumālie ‘o e ‘Eiki? Vakai, ko e me‘a ‘eni ‘oku fakahoha‘a kiate aú.
- 6 Pea ko e tahá, ko e hā hono ‘uhinga ‘o e me‘á ni na‘e pehē ‘e ‘Āmoni—Kapau te mou fakatomala, ‘e fakamo‘uí ‘a kimoutolu, pea ka ‘ikai te mou fakatomala, ‘e kapusi atu ‘a kimoutolu ‘i he ‘aho faka‘osí?
- 7 Pea na‘e tali ‘e ‘Ēlone kiate ia ‘o pehē ange ki ai: ‘Okú ke tui koā ‘oku ‘i ai ha ‘Otua? Pea folofola ange ‘e he tu‘í: ‘Oku ou ‘ilo‘i ‘oku lau ‘e he kau ‘Amalekaí ‘oku ‘i ai ha ‘Otua, pea kuó u fakangofua kiate kinautolu ke nau langa ha ngaahi potu tapu, ke nau fakataha mai ki ai ‘o hū kiate ia. Pea kapau ‘okú ke pehē ‘eni ‘oku ‘i ai ha ‘Otua, vakai te u tui pē.

Alma 22

Now, as Ammon was thus teaching the people of Lamoni continually, we will return to the account of Aaron and his brethren; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the father of Lamoni.

And it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king’s palace, with his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, and said unto him: Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of prison.

And now, O king, if thou wilt spare our lives, we will be thy servants. And the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants; but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon; and I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee.

And Aaron said unto the king: Behold, the Spirit of the Lord has called him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael, to teach the people of Lamoni.

Now the king said unto them: What is this that ye have said concerning the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, this is the thing which doth trouble me.

And also, what is this that Ammon said—If ye will repent ye shall be saved, and if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last day?

And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God? And the king said: I know that the Amalekites say that there is a God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now thou sayest there is a God, behold I will believe.

- 8 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he fanongo 'e 'Ēlone ki he me'a ní, na'e kamata ke fiefia 'a hono lotó, pea na'á ne pehē ange: Vakai, hangē 'okú ke mo'uí, 'E tu'í, 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otuá.
- 9 Pea folofola ange 'e he tu'í: Ko e 'Otuá koā 'a e Laumālie Lahi ko ia 'a ia na'á ne 'omi 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá?
- 10 Pea pehē ange 'e 'Ēlone kiate ia: 'Io, ko ia ia 'a e Laumālie Lahi ko iá, pea na'á ne fakatupu 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'i he langí mo e māmaní fakatou'osi. 'Okú ke tui ki ai?
- 11 Pea na'á ne folofola: 'Io, 'oku ou tui na'e fakatupu 'e he Laumālie Lahí 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē, pea 'oku ou faka'amu ke ke fakamatala 'i mai kiate au 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'á ni kotoa, pea te u tui ki ho'o ngaahi leá.
- 12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'ilo'í 'e 'Ēlone 'e tui 'a e tu'í ki he'ene ngaahi leá, na'á ne kamata mei he fakatupu 'o 'Ātamá, 'o ne lau 'a e ngaahi folofolá ki he tu'í—'a e founga 'o hono fakatupu 'e he 'Otuá 'a e tangata 'i hono tataú, pea na'e tuku 'e he 'Otuá kiate ia ha ngaahi fekau, pea ko e me'a 'i he maumau-fonó, kuo hinga ai 'a e tangatá.
- 13 Pea na'e fakamatala 'i ange 'e 'Ēlone 'a e ngaahi folofolá kiate ia 'o kamata mei he ngaohi 'o 'Ātamá, 'o ne fakahā kiate ia 'a e hinga 'a e tangatá mo honau anga-fakakakano pea mo e palani foki 'o e huhu'í, 'a ia kuo teuteu talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní, tu'unga 'ia Kalaisi, ma'anautolu kotoa pē 'e tui ki hono huafá.
- 14 Pea ko e me'a 'i he hinga 'a e tangatá 'e 'ikai te ne lava ke ngāue 'i ha me'a 'iate ia pē; ka 'oku hanga 'e he ngaahi mamahi mo e pekia 'a Kalaisí 'o fakalelei 'a 'enau ngaahi angahalá, 'i he tuí mo e fakatomalá, mo e ala me'a peheé; pea 'okú ne motuhi 'a e ngaahi ha 'i 'o e maté, ko'e uhi ke 'oua na'a ikuna 'a e fa'itoká, pea ke folo hifo 'a e mamahi 'o e maté 'i he ngaahi 'amanaki ki he nāunau; pea na'e fakamatala 'i 'e 'Ēlone 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kátoa ki he tu'í.

And now when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God.

And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?

And Aaron said unto him: Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest thou this?

And he said: Yea, I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe thy words.

And it came to pass that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king—how God created man after his own image, and that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.

And Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.

And since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth; and that he breaketh the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory, and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory; and Aaron did expound all these things unto the king.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono fakamatala 'i 'e 'Ēlone 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate ia, na'e folofola ange 'e he tu'í: Ko e hā te u fai ke u ma'u ai 'a e mo'ui ta'engata ko ia kuó ke lea ki aí? 'Io, koe hā te u fai ke u fanau 'i 'i he 'Otuá, pea ta'aki fu'u 'a e laumālie fai angahala ko 'ení mei hoku lotó, 'o ma'u hono Laumālié, koe'uhí ke u fonu 'i he fiefia, kae 'ikai kapusi atu au 'i he 'aho faka'osí? Na'á ne pehē, Vakai, te u tukuange 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'a ia 'oku ou ma'ú, 'io, te u lí'aki hoku pule'angá, koe'uhi ke u lava 'o ma'u 'a e fu'u fiefia lahi ko 'ení.

16 Ka na'e pehē ange 'e 'Ēlone kiate ia: Kapau 'okú ke fie ma'u 'a e me'á ni, kapau te ke punou hifo 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, 'io, kapau te ke fakatomala mei ho'o ngaahi angahalá kotoa pē, 'o punou hifo 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, 'o ui ki hono huafá 'i he tui, 'o tui te ke ma'u, te ke toki ma'u 'a e 'amanaki lelei 'a ia 'okú ke fie ma'ú.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e lea 'aki 'e 'Ēlone 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e punou hifo 'a e tu'í 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, 'i hono ongo tui; 'io, na'á ne fakatōmapē 'e hifo ia ki he kelekelé, 'o ne kaila le'o-lahi, 'o pehē:

18 'E 'Otuá, kuo tala mai 'e 'Ēlone kiate au 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otuá; pea kapau 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otuá, pea kapau ko e 'Otuá koe, 'ofa mu'a 'o fakahā mai koe kiate au, pea te u lí'aki kotoa 'eku ngaahi angahalá koe'uhi ke u 'ilo 'i koe, pea ke fokotu'u hake au mei he maté, pea fakamo'ui au 'i he 'aho faka'osí. Pea ko 'ení 'i he hili 'a e folofola 'aki 'e he tu'í 'a e ngaahi folofola ní, na'á ne tō ki lalo 'o hangē kuó ne maté.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e felele 'i 'a 'ene kau tamaio'eikí 'o fakahā ki he kuiní 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa 'a ia kuo hoko ki he tu'í. Pea na'á ne hū mai ki he tu'í; pea 'i he 'ene sio ki he 'ene tokoto 'o hangē kuó ne maté, pea mo e tutu'u foki 'a 'Ēlone mo hono kāingá 'o hangē kuo tupu meiate kinautolu 'a 'ene toó, na'á ne tuptāmaki kiate kinautolu, 'o ne fekau ki he 'ene kau tamaio'eikí, pe ko e kau tamaio'eikí 'a e tu'í, ke nau puke 'a kinautolu 'o tāmāte 'i 'a kinautolu.

20 Pea ko 'ení kuo mamata 'a e kau tamaio'eikí ki he tupu'anga 'o e tō 'a e tu'í, ko ia na'a nau manavahē ke ala honau nimá kia 'Ēlone mo hono kāingá; pea na'a nau kole fakamātoato ki he kuiní 'o pehē ange: Ko e hā 'okú ke fekau ai ke mau tāmāte 'i 'a e kau tangata ko 'ení, he vakai 'oku mālohi ange honau toko tahá 'iate kinautolu kotoa pē? Ko ia kuo pau pē ke mau tō kotoa 'i honau 'aó.

And it came to pass that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which thou hast spoken? Yea, what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at the last day? Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.

But Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest.

And it came to pass that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; yea, even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:

O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.

Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren; and they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.

- 21 Ko 'eni 'i he vakai 'e he kuiní ki he ilifia 'a e kau tamaio'eikí na'e kamata ke ne fu'u ilifia lahi foki mo ia, telia na'a tō ha kovi kiate ia. Pea na'á ne fekau ki he'ene kau tamaio'eikí ke nau 'alu 'o ui 'a e kakaí, koe'uhí ke nau lava 'o tāmata'i 'a 'Ēlone mo hono kāingá.
- 22 Ko 'eni 'i he 'ilo'i 'e 'Ēlone 'a e fakapapau 'a e loto 'o e kuiní, pea 'i he'ene 'ilo'i foki 'a e fefeka 'o e loto 'o e kakaí, na'á ne manavahē telia na'a fakataha mai ha fu'u kakai tokolahi, pea 'e hoko ai ha fakakikihi lahi mo ha maveuveu 'iate kinautolu; ko ia na'e mafao atu hono nimá 'o fokotu'u hake 'a e tu'í mei he kelekele, 'o ne pehē kiate ia: Tu'u hake. Pea na'e tu'u hake ia 'i hono va'é, 'o ne toe ma'u hono iví.
- 23 Ko 'eni na'e fai 'eni 'i he 'ao 'o e kuiní mo e tokolahi 'o e kau tamaio'eikí. Pea 'i he'enu mamata ki aí na'a nau fu'u ofo lahi 'aupito, 'o kamata ke ilifia. Pea na'e tu'u atu ki mu'a 'a e tu'í, 'o kamata ke folofola kiate kinautolu, pea na'e tui ai 'o ului 'a hono falé kotoa ki he 'Eikí.
- 24 Ko 'eni kuo 'i ai ha fu'u kakai tokolahi kuo fakataha mai ko e me'a 'i he fekau 'a e kuiní, pea na'e kamata ke 'i ai ha ngaahi lāunga lahi 'iate kinautolu ko e me'a 'ia 'Ēlone mo hono kāingá.
- 25 Ka na'e tu'u atu ki mu'a 'a e tu'í 'i honau 'ao 'o ne akonaki kiate kinautolu. Pea na'a nau loto-fiemālie kia 'Ēlone mo kinautolu na'e 'iate iá.
- 26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'afio 'i 'e he tu'í kuo loto-fiemālie 'a e kakaí, na'á ne fekau ke tu'u 'a 'Ēlone mo hono kāingá 'i he lotolotonga 'o e fu'u kakaí, pea ke nau malanga 'aki 'a e folofolá kiate kinautolu.

Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.

Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.

Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.

Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.

But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.

And it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'oatu 'e he tu'í ha tohi fanongonongo 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá, ki hono kakai kotoa pē 'a ia na'e 'i hono fonuá kotoa, 'a ia na'e 'i he ngaahi potu takatakai kotoa pē, 'a ia na'e 'alu atu 'o a'u ki he tahi, 'i he hahaké mo e hihifó, pea kuo vahe 'i mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá 'e ha ki 'i kongá feitu'u maomaonganoa lausi'i, 'a ia na'e 'alu atu mei he tahi hahaké 'o a'u ki he tahi hihifó, pea takatakai 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e ngaahi matātahí, mo e ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e feitu'u maomaonganoa na'e 'i he tokelaú ofi ki he ve'e fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'o 'alu atu 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'o Manataí, 'o ofi ki he matavai 'o e vaitafe ko Saitoné, 'o 'alu atu mei he hahaké ki he hihifó—pea na'e pehē hono vahe 'i 'o e kau Leimaná mo e kau Nīfái.

28 Ko 'eni, na'e nofo 'a e kau Leimana fakapikopiko tahá 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'o nau nofo 'i ha ngaahi fale fehikitaki; pea na'a nau mafola 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoa 'i he hihifó, 'i he fonua ko Nīfái; 'io, pea 'i he fonua foki 'i he hihifó 'o e fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua ofi ki he matātahí, pea 'i he hihifó 'i he fonua ko Nīfái, 'i he potu 'o e 'uluaki tofi'a 'o 'enau ngaahi tamaí, pea na'e pehē 'ene tu'u 'o ofi ki he matātahí.

29 Pea na'e 'i ai foki ha kau Leimana tokolahi 'i he potu hahaké 'o ofi ki he matātahí, 'a ia kuo tuli 'e he kau Nīfái 'a kinautolu ki aí. Pea na'e pehē hono meimei takatakai 'a e kau Nīfái 'e he kau Leimaná; ka neongo iá kuo ma'u 'e he kau Nīfái 'a e ngaahi potu fakatokelau kotoa 'o e fonua 'a ia 'oku fehokotaki mo e feitu'u maomaonganoá 'i he matavai 'o e vaitafe ko Saitoné mei hahaké ki hihifó, 'o takatakai 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá; 'i he tokelaú, 'o fai atu 'o a'u ki he fonua 'a ia na'a nau ui ko Mahú.

30 Pea na'e a'u hono ngata'angá ki he fonua 'a ia na'a nau ui ko 'Auhá, pea na'e pehē hono mama 'o 'ene tu'u 'i he tokelaú na'e a'u ia ki he fonua na'e nofo 'i pea 'auha hono kakai, 'a ia ko honau ngaahi huí kuo tau lau ki ai, 'a ia na'e 'ilo 'e he kakai 'o Seilahemalá, pea ko e potu ia 'a ia na'a nau 'uluaki tū'uta mai aí.

And it came to pass that the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about, which was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west, and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla, through the borders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.

Now, the more idle part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west, in the land of Nephi; yea, and also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the seashore, and on the west in the land of Nephi, in the place of their fathers' first inheritance, and thus bordering along by the seashore.

And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful.

And it bordered upon the land which they called Desolation, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, it being the place of their first landing.

- 31 Pea na'a nau ha'u mei ai 'o a'u ki he feitu'u maomaonganoa 'i he tonga. Ko ia na'e ui 'a e fonua 'i he fakatokela'u ko 'Auha, pea na'e ui 'a e fonua 'i he fakatonga ko Mahu, 'a ia ko e feitu'u maomaonganoa ia na'e fonu 'i he fanga manu kaivao kehekehe 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pe, ko hanau ni'ihiki kuo ha'u mei he fonua 'i he fakatokela'u ke ma'u ha me'akai.
- 32 Pea ko 'eni, ko hono mama'ó ko e fononga fe'unga mo e 'aho 'e taha mo e kongaki ha tangata Nifai 'i he vaha'a 'o Mahu mo e fonua ko 'Auhá mei he tahi hahaké ki he tahi hihifó; pea na'e pehē hono meimei takatakai 'a e fonua ko Nifai mo e fonua ko Seilahemalá 'e he vai, pea 'oku 'i ai ha kavelemotu 'i he vaha'a 'o e fonua he fakatokela'u mo e fonua he fakatonga.
- 33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo nofo 'i 'e he kau Nifai 'a e fonua ko Mahu, 'o fai mei he tahi hahaké ki he tahi hihifó, pea kuo pehē hono kāpui 'e he kau Nifai 'i honau potó 'aki 'enau kau le'o mo 'enau ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Leimana 'i he potu tonga ke 'oua na'a nau toe ma'u ha fonua 'i he feitu'u tokela'u, ko'e uhi ke 'oua na'a nau fu'u mafola atu ki he fonua 'i he fakatokela'u.
- 34 Ko ia na'e 'ikai lava ke toe ma'u 'e he kau Leimana ha fonua kae ngata pe 'i he fonua ko Nifai pea mo e feitu'u maomaonganoa takatakai ki ai. Ko 'eni na'e ngali poto hono fai 'e he kau Nifai 'a e me'a ni—he ko ha fili 'a e kau Leimana kiate kinautolu, ko ia na'e 'ikai ai te nau fie kātaki 'enau ngaahi fakamamahí mei he tafa'aki kotoa pe, pea ko'e uhi ke nau ma'u foki ha fonua 'a ia te nau lava 'o hola ki ai, 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau ngaahi holí.
- 35 Pea ko 'eni, hili 'eku lea 'aki 'eni, 'oku ou toe foki ki he fakamatala kia 'Āmoni mo 'Ēlone mo 'Ominea mo Himinai pea mo honau kāinga.

And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called Desolation, and the land on the southward was called Bountiful, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land northward for food.

And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line Bountiful and the land Desolation, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of Nephi and the land of Zarahemla were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land Bountiful, even from the east unto the west sea, and thus the Nephites in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more possession on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of Nephi, and the wilderness round about. Now this was wisdom in the Nephites—as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would not suffer their afflictions on every hand, and also that they might have a country whither they might flee, according to their desires.

And now I, after having said this, return again to the account of Ammon and Aaron, Omner and Himni, and their brethren.

‘Alamā 23

- 1 Vakai, ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e ‘oatu ‘e he tu’i ‘o e kau Leimaná ha tohi fanongonongo ki hono kakaí kotoa, ke ‘oua te nau ala honau nimá kia ‘Āmoni, pe ‘Ēlone, pe ‘Ominea, pe Himinai, pe ko ha taha ‘o honau kāinga ‘a ia ‘e ‘alu atu ‘o malanga ‘aki ‘a e folofola ‘a e ‘Otuá, ‘i ha fetu’u pē te nau ‘i ai, ‘i ha potu ‘i honau fonuá.
- 2 ‘Io, na’á ne ‘oatu ha tu’utu’uni kiate kinautolu, ke ‘oua na’a nau ala honau nimá kiate kinautolu ke ha’i, pe lí ‘a kinautolu ki he fale fakapōpulá; pea ‘oua foki na’a nau ‘a’anu kiate kinautolu, pe taa’i ‘a kinautolu, pe kapusi ‘a kinautolu ki tu’a mei honau ngaahi fale lotú, pe tautea’i ‘a kinautolu; pea ‘oua foki na’a nau tolomaka’i ‘a kinautolu, ka ‘oku totonu ke nau tau’atāina ke nau hū atu ki honau ngaahi falé, kae ‘uma’á foki honau ngaahi temipalé mo honau ngaahi potu tapú.
- 3 Pea ko’e’uhí ke nau lava ‘o ‘alu atu ‘o malanga ‘aki ‘a e folofolá ‘o fakatatau ki honau lotó, he kuo ului ‘a e tu’í ki he ‘Eikí, mo hono falé kotoa; ko ia na’á ne ‘oatu ‘ene tohi fanongonongó ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e fonuá ki hono kakaí, ko’e’uhí ke ‘oua na’a ‘i ai ha me’a ‘e ta’ofi ‘a e folofola ‘a e ‘Otuá, ko’e’uhí ke mafola atu ia ki hono kotoa ‘o e fonuá, ko’e’uhí ke lava ‘o fakamahino ki hono kakaí ‘a e ngaahi talatukufakaholo kovi ‘a ‘enau ngaahi tamaí, pea ke lava ‘o fakamahino ‘i kiate kinautolu, ko e kāinga ‘a kinautolu kotoa pē, pea ‘oku ‘ikai totonu ke nau fakapō, pe vete koloa, pe kaiha’a, pe fai fe’auaki, pe fai ha fa’ahinga fai angahala ‘e taha.
- 4 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili ‘a e ‘oatu ‘e he tu’i ‘a e tohi fanongonongo ko ‘eni, na’e ‘alu atu ‘a ‘Ēlone mo hono kāingá mei he kolo ki he kolo, pea mei he fale ‘o e lotu ‘e taha ki he taha, ‘o fokotu’u ha ngaahi siasí, mo fakanofa ha kau taula’eiki mo ha kau akonaki ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e fonuá ‘i he kau Leimaná, ke malanga mo ako ‘aki ‘a e folofola ‘a e ‘Otuá ‘iate kinautolu; pea ko ia na’e kamata ke tupulaki lahi ‘a ‘enau ngāué.
- 5 Pea na’e fakahā ki he toko lau afe ‘a e ‘ilo ki he ‘Eikí, ‘io, na’e fakaloto’i ha toko lau afe ke nau tui ki he ngaahi talatukufakaholo ‘a e kau Nifá; pea na’e ako ‘i kiate kinautolu ‘a e ngaahi lekooti mo e ngaahi kikite ‘a ia na’e tukufakaholo ‘o ‘a’u mai ki he lolotonga ní.

Alma 23

Behold, now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their brethren who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place they should be, in any part of their land.

Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues, nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples, and their sanctuaries.

And thus they might go forth and preach the word according to their desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his household; therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers, and that they might be convinced that they were all brethren, and that they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

And now it came to pass that when the king had sent forth this proclamation, that Aaron and his brethren went forth from city to city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing churches, and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them; and thus they began to have great success.

And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea, thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites; and they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed down even to the present time.

6 Pea hangē 'oku mo 'ui 'a e 'Eikí, 'oku pehē ko kinautolu kotoa 'a ia na'e tui, pe ko kinautolu kotoa na'e fakamahino ki ai 'a e 'ilo ki he mo'oni, 'i he malanga 'a 'Āmoni mo hono kāingá, 'o fakatatau ki he laumālie 'o e fakahaá mo e kikité, pea mo e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá 'o fakahoko ai ha ngaahi mana 'iate kinautolú—'io, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, hangē 'oku mo 'ui 'a e 'Eikí, ko e tokolahi 'o e kau Leimana na'e tui ki he 'enau malangá, pea nau ului ki he 'Eikí, na'e 'ikai ke nau toe hē.

7 He na'a nau hoko ko ha kakai mā'oni'oni; na'a nau tuku hifo 'a e ngaahi mahafu na'a nau angatu'u 'akí, 'o 'ikai te nau toe tau 'i 'a e 'Otuá, pe ko ha taha 'o honau kāingá.

8 Ko 'eni ko e fa'ahinga 'eni 'a ia na'a nau ului ki he 'Eikí:

9 Ko e kakai 'o e kau Leimana 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua ko 'Isimelí;

10 Kae 'uma'ā foki mo e kakai 'o e kau Leimaná 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua ko Mitonaí;

11 Kae 'uma'ā foki mo e kakai 'o e kau Leimaná 'a ia na'e 'i he kolo ko Nīfaí;

12 Kae 'uma'ā foki mo e kakai 'o e kau Leimaná 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua ko Sailomé, mo kinautolu 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua ko Semeloní, pea 'i he kolo ko Lēmiuelá, pea 'i he kolo ko Siminilomí.

13 Pea ko e ngaahi hingoa 'eni 'o e ngaahi kolo 'o e kau Leimaná 'a ia na'e ului ki he 'Eikí; pea ko kinautolu 'eni na'a nau tuku hifo 'a e ngaahi mahafu tau 'a ia na'a nau angatu'u 'akí, 'io, 'a 'enau ngaahi mahafu tau kotoa; pea ko e kau Leimana 'a kinautolu kotoa pē.

14 Pea na'e 'ikai ke ului 'a e kau 'Amalekaí, tuku kehe ha toko taha pē; pea na'e 'ikai foki mo ha toko taha 'o e kau 'Amuloné; ka na'a nau fakafefeka honau lotó, pea mo e loto foki 'o e kau Leimana 'i he ngaahi potu kotoa ko ia 'o e fonuá 'a ia na'a nau nofo aí; 'io, pea mo honau ngaahi kolo íkí mo honau ngaahi kolo lalahí kotoa.

15 Ko ia, kuo tau lau ki he hingoa 'o e ngaahi kolo kotoa 'o e kau Leimaná 'a ia na'a nau fakatomala 'o ma'u 'a e 'ilo ki he mo'oni, pea nau ului.

And as sure as the Lord liveth, so sure as many as believed, or as many as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching of Ammon and his brethren, according to the spirit of revelation and of prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them—yea, I say unto you, as the Lord liveth, as many of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away.

For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither against any of their brethren.

Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Middoni;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the city of Nephi;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Shilom, and who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in the city of Shimnilom.

And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were converted unto the Lord; and these are they that laid down the weapons of their rebellion, yea, all their weapons of war; and they were all Lamanites.

And the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt, yea, and all their villages and all their cities.

Therefore, we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.

16 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e faka'amu 'a e tu'í mo kinautolu 'a ia na'e uluí ke nau ma'u ha hingoa, koe'uhi ke faka'ilonga'i 'aki kinautolu mei honau kāingá; ko ia na'e fealea'aki 'a e tu'í mo 'Ēlone mo e tokolahi 'o 'enau kau taula'eikí, 'o kau ki he hingoa te nau 'ai kiate kinautolu ke faka'ilonga'i 'aki 'a kinautolú.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau ui honau hingoá ko e kau 'Anitai-Nīfai-Līhai; pea na'e ui 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e hingoa ko 'ení, pea 'ikai toe ui 'a kinautolu ko e kau Leimana.

18 Pea na'a nau kamata ke hoko ko ha kakai fa'a ngāue lahi; 'io, pea na'a nau vā lelei mo e kau Nīfaí; ko ia, na'a nau kamata ke nofo vā lelei mo kinautolu, pea na'e 'ikai ke toe 'iate kinautolu 'a e fakamala'ia 'a e 'Otuá.

And now it came to pass that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren; therefore the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests, concerning the name that they should take upon them, that they might be distinguished.

And it came to pass that they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.

‘Alamā 24

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ko e kau ‘Amalekai mo e kau ‘Amulonē mo e kau Leimana ‘a ia na‘e ‘i he fonua ko ‘Amulonē, pea pehē foki ‘i he fonua ko Heilamí, pea ‘i he fonua ko Selūsalemá, pea ko hono fakakātoá, ko hono kotoa ‘o e ngaahi fonua ‘a ia na‘e takatakai ki ai, ‘a ia na‘e te‘eki ai ke nau uluí pea ‘ikai te nau ‘ai kiate kinautolu ‘a e hingoa ko e ‘Anitai-Nīfai-Līhaí, na‘e faka‘ai‘ai ‘a kinautolu ‘e he kau ‘Amalekaí mo e kau ‘Amulonē ke nau ‘ita ki honau kāingá.
- 2 Pea na‘e ‘āsili ‘o fu‘u mālohi ‘aupito ‘a ‘enau fehi‘a kiate kinautolú; ‘io ‘o a‘u ki he ‘enau kamata ke angatu‘u ki honau tu‘í, ‘o a‘u ki he ‘ikai te nau loto ke ne hoko ko honau tu‘i; ko ia ai, na‘a nau to‘o mahafu ke tau‘i ‘a e kakai ‘o ‘Anitai-Nīfai-Līhaí.
- 3 Ko ‘eni na‘e tuku ‘e he tu‘i ‘a e pulé ki hono ‘aló, pea na‘á ne ui hono huafá ko ‘Anitai-Nīfai-Līhai.
- 4 Pea na‘e hala ‘a e tu‘i ‘i he ta‘u pē ko iá, ‘a ia na‘e kamata ai ‘e he kau Leimaná ke fai ha ngaahi teuteu ke tau mo e kakai ‘o e ‘Otuá.
- 5 Ko ‘eni ‘i he mamata ‘a ‘Āmoni mo hono kāingá mo kinautolu kotoa pē kuo ha‘u mo iá ki he ngaahi teuteu ‘a e kau Leimaná ke faka‘auha honau kāingá, na‘a nau ha‘u mei ai ki he fonua ko Mitané, pea na‘e fetaulaki ai ‘a ‘Āmoni mo hono kāinga kotoa; pea na‘a nau omi mei ai ki he fonua ko ‘Isimelí ke nau fai ‘i ai ha‘anau alea mo Lamōnai kae ‘uma‘ā foki hono tokoua ko ‘Anitai-Nīfai-Līhaí, ki ha me‘a te nau fai ke malu‘i ‘a kinautolu mei he kau Leimaná.
- 6 Ko eni na‘e ‘ikai ha taha ‘i he kakai kotoa ‘a ia kuo ului ki he ‘Eiki‘ ‘e fie to‘o mahafu ke tau‘i honau kāingá; ‘io, na‘e ‘ikai te nau momo‘i fie fai ha teuteu ‘e taha ki he tau; ‘io, pea na‘e fekau foki kiate kinautolu ‘e honau tu‘í ke ‘oua te nau fai peheé.
- 7 Ko ‘eni, ko e ngaahi folofola ‘eni ‘a ia na‘á ne folofola ‘aki ki he kakai ‘o kau ki he me‘á: ‘Oku ou fakafeta‘i ki hoku ‘Otuá, ‘e hoku kakai ‘ofeina, ko e me‘a ‘i he ‘ofa ‘a hotau ‘Otuá Māfimafi ‘o fekau mai kiate kinautolu ‘a kinautolú ni ‘a hotau kāinga, ko e kau Nīfaí, ke malanga kiate kinautolu, mo fakamahino kiate kinautolu ‘o kau ki he ngaahi talatukufakaholo ‘a ‘etau ngaahi tamai angakoví.

Alma 24

And it came to pass that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of Amulon, and also in the land of Helam, and who were in the land of Jerusalem, and in fine, in all the land round about, who had not been converted and had not taken upon them the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were stirred up by the Amalekites and by the Amulonites to anger against their brethren.

And their hatred became exceedingly sore against them, even insomuch that they began to rebel against their king, insomuch that they would not that he should be their king; therefore, they took up arms against the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

Now the king conferred the kingdom upon his son, and he called his name Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God.

Now when Ammon and his brethren and all those who had come up with him saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren, they came forth to the land of Midian, and there Ammon met all his brethren; and from thence they came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war; yea, and also their king commanded them that they should not.

Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren, the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers.

- 8 Pea vakai, 'oku ou fakafeta'i ki hoku 'Otua Māfīmāfī koe'uhi ko 'Ene tuku mai kiate kitautolu ha tufakanga 'o hono Laumālié ke fakamolū 'aki hotau lotó, 'o tau kamata ai ke nofo vā lelei mo hotau kāingá ni, ko e kau Nifái.
- 9 Pea vakai, 'oku ou fakafeta'i foki ki hoku 'Otua, ko e me'a 'i he kamata 'o 'etau nofo vā lelei ni kuo fakamahino ai kiate kitautolu 'a 'etau ngaahi angahalá mo e ngaahi fakapō kuo tau faí.
- 10 Pea 'oku ou fakafeta'i foki ki hoku 'Otua, 'io, ko hoku 'Otua Māfīmāfī, ko e me'a 'i he'ene fakangofua kiate kitautolu ke tau fakatomala mei he ngaahi me'á ni, pea mo 'ene fakamolemole'i foki 'a kitautolu mei he'etau ngaahi angahala lahi mo e ngaahi fakapō lahi kuo tau faí, 'o to'o atu 'a e ongo'i halaiá mei hotau lotó, tu'unga 'i he ngaahi ngāue lelei 'a hono 'Aló.
- 11 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, koe'uhi ko e me'a pē ia te tau lava 'o fai (he ko kitautolu ko e kakai kuo hē lahi taha 'i he fá'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá) ke fakatomala mei he'etau ngaahi angahalá kotoa mo e ngaahi fakapō lahi na'a tau faí, pea kole ki he 'Otua ke to'o atu ia mei hotau lotó, he ko hono kotoa ia 'o e me'a te tau ala fai ke fakatomala 'o fe'unga 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otua koe'uhi ke ne to'o atu 'a hotau 'ulí—
- 12 Ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina taha, ko e me'a 'i hono to'o 'e he 'Otua 'a hotau ngaahi 'ulí, pea hoko 'o ngingila 'a 'etau ngaahi heletaá, tau 'ai ke 'oua na'a tau toe 'ulí 'i 'etau ngaahi heletaá 'aki 'a e toto 'o hotau kāingá.
- 13 Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai, ka tau tauhi 'etau ngaahi heletaá ke 'oua na'a 'ulí 'i ia 'aki 'a e toto 'o hotau kāingá; he kapau te tau toe 'ulí 'i 'etau ngaahi heletaá 'e 'ikai lava ke toe fufulu ia ke ma'a ekiaki 'i he ta'ata'a 'o e 'Alo 'o hotau 'Otua Māfīmāfī, 'a ia 'e lilingi koe'uhi ko e fakalelei 'o 'etau ngaahi angahalá.
- 14 Pea kuo 'alo'ofa mai kiate kitautolu 'a e 'Otua Māfīmāfī, 'o ne fakahā mai kiate kitautolu 'a e ngaahi me'á ni ke 'oua na'a tau 'auha; 'io, pea kuó ne tomu'a fakahā mai kiate kitautolu 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, ko e me'a 'i he'ene 'ofa'i hotau laumālié pea mo 'ene 'ofa'i foki 'etau fānaú; ko ia ai, 'i he'ene 'alo'ofá 'okú ne 'a'ahi mai kiate kitautolu 'i he'ene kau 'āngeló, koe'uhi ke fakahā mai kiate kitautolu 'a e palani 'o e fakamo'uí kae 'uma'ā ki he ngaahi to'u tangata 'amuí.

And behold, I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these brethren, the Nephites.

And behold, I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.

And I also thank my God, yea, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son.

And now behold, my brethren, since it has been all that we could do (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain—

Now, my best beloved brethren, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our brethren; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.

And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; yea, and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loveth our souls as well as he loveth our children; therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well as unto future generations.

15 'Oiauē, hono 'ikai 'alo'ofa 'a hotau 'Otuá! Pea ko 'eni vakai, koe'uhi ko hono ngata'anga ia 'o e me'a te tau lava 'o fai ke to'atu hotau ngaahi 'ulí meiate kitautolú, pea fakangingila 'etau ngaahi heletaá, ke tau fufuu'ia koe'uhí ke tauhi ia ke ngingila, ko ha fakamo'oni ki hotau 'Otuá 'i he 'aho faka'osí, pe ko e 'aho 'e taki mai ai 'a kitautolu ke tutu'ú 'i hono 'aó ke fakamāu'í, kuo 'ikai te tau 'ulí'í 'etau ngaahi heletaá 'i he toto 'o hotau kāingá talu 'ene tuku mai 'ene folofolá kiate kitautolu peá ne fakama'a ai 'a kitautolú.

16 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, kapau 'oku feinga 'e hotau kāingá ke faka'auha 'a kitautolu, vakai, te tau fufuu'í 'etau ngaahi heletaá, 'io, te tau tanu ia 'o loloto 'i he kelekelé ke tauhi ia ke ngingila ma'u pē, ko ha fakamo'oni kuo te 'eki ai ke tau ngāue 'aki ia, 'i he 'aho faka'osí; pea kapau 'e faka'auha 'a kitautolu 'e hotau kāingá, vakai, te tau 'alu ki hotau 'Otuá pea mo'ui.

17 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he faka'osi 'e he tu'í 'a e ngaahi folofolá ni, pea kuo fakataha mai 'a e kakai kotoa pē, na'a nau 'ave 'enau ngaahi heletaá mo e ngaahi mahafu tau kotoa 'a ia na'e ngāue 'aki 'i he lilingi 'o e toto 'o e tangatá, 'o nau tanu ia 'o loloto 'i he kelekelé.

18 Pea na'a nau fai 'eni, ko 'enau pehē ko ha fakamo'oni ki he 'Otuá, pea ki he tangatá foki, 'e 'ikai ai pē ke nau toe ngāue 'aki ha ngaahi mahafu tau ki hono lilingi 'a e toto 'o e tangatá; 'o nau fai 'eni, mo fakapapau mo fuakava mo e 'Otuá, 'e 'ikai te nau lilingi 'a e toto 'o honau kāingá ka te nau fie foaki 'enau mo'ui 'anautolú, pea 'e 'ikai te nau fie to'oha me'a mei hanau tokoua kae foaki pē kiate ia; pea 'e 'ikai te nau fie faka'aonga'í honau ngaahi 'ahó 'i he nofo noa, kae ngāue lahi 'aki honau nimá.

19 Pea ko ia, 'oku hā mai kiate kitautolu, 'i he ngaohi 'o e kau Leimaná ni ke tui mo 'ilo'í 'a e mo'oní, na'a nau tu'ú ma'u, pea 'e a'u ki ha'anau tuku ke tāmata'í 'a kinautolu kae 'ikai pē fai ha angahala; pea ko ia, 'oku hā mai na'a nau tanu 'enau ngaahi mahafu tau 'o e melinó, pe ko 'enau tanu 'a e ngaahi mahafu 'o e taú, koe'uhi ko e melinó.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fai 'e honau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná, 'a e ngaahi teuteu ki he tau, 'o nau ō mai ki he fonua ko Nifai'í ko e feinga ke faka'auha 'a e tu'í, mo fokotu'ú ha taha kehe ko hono fetongi, pea faka'auha foki 'a e kakai 'o 'Anitai-Nifai-Lihai'í mei he fonuá.

Oh, how merciful is our God! And now behold, since it has been as much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his word unto us and has made us clean thereby.

And now, my brethren, if our brethren seek to destroy us, behold, we will hide away our swords, yea, even we will bury them deep in the earth, that they may be kept bright, as a testimony that we have never used them, at the last day; and if our brethren destroy us, behold, we shall go to our God and shall be saved.

And now it came to pass that when the king had made an end of these sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

And this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood; and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God, that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up their own lives; and rather than take away from a brother they would give unto him; and rather than spend their days in idleness they would labor abundantly with their hands.

And thus we see that, when these Lamanites were brought to believe and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto death rather than commit sin; and thus we see that they buried their weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

And it came to pass that their brethren, the Lamanites, made preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of destroying the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi out of the land.

- 21 Ko 'eni 'i he mamata 'a e kakai 'oku nau ha'u ke tau 'i 'a kinautolu na'a nau 'alu atu ke fetaulaki mo kinautolu, 'o nau fakatōmape'e hifo 'a kinautolu ki he kekelelé 'i honau 'aó, 'o kamata ke ui ki he huafa 'o e 'Eiki; pea na'a nau lolotonga fai pehē 'i he kamata ke 'oho mai 'a e kau Leimaná kiate kinautolú, mo kamata ke tā 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e heletā.
- 22 Pea ko ia 'i he 'ikai ha taha 'e fakafepaki kiate kinautolu, na'a nau tāmāte 'i hanau toko taha afe mā nima; pea 'oku tau 'ilo kuo nau monū'ia, he kuo nau 'alu atu 'o nofo mo honau 'Otuá.
- 23 Ko 'eni 'i he mamata 'e he kau Leimaná 'oku 'ikai ke fie hola honau kāingá mei he heletaá, pea 'ikai foki te nau fie afe ki he to'omata 'ú pe to'ohemá, ka nau fie tokoto hifo pē 'o mate, mo fakafeta 'i ki he 'Otuá 'i he lolotonga pē 'enau mate 'i he heletaá—
- 24 Ko 'eni 'i he mamata 'a e kau Leimaná ki he me'a ní, na'a nau ta'ofi 'enau tāmāte 'i 'a kinautolú; pea na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi kuo mamahi lahi honau lotó koe'uhi ko e fa'ahinga 'o honau kāinga kuo tō 'i he heletaá, he kuo nau fakatomala mei he ngaahi me'a kuo nau faí.
- 25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau laku hifo 'enau ngaahi mahafu 'o e taú, 'o 'ikai te nau toe to'o hake, he kuo tautea honau lotó koe'uhi ko e ngaahi fakapō kuo nau faí; pea na'a nau fakatōmape'e hifo 'o hangē ko honau kāingá, 'o fakafalala ki he 'ofa 'a kinautolu kuo hiki hake 'enau ngaahi me'a taú ke tā 'a kinautolú.
- 26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kau mai ki he kakai 'o e 'Otuá 'i he 'aho ko iá 'a e tokolahi ange 'i he tokolahi kuo tāmāte 'i; pea ko kinautolu kuo tāmāte 'i ko e kakai mā'oní'oni 'a kinautolu, ko ia 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha 'uhinga ke tau veiveiua ai kuo fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu.
- 27 Pea na'e 'ikai ha tangata fai angahala ne tāmāte 'i mo kinautolu; ka na'e tokolahi ange 'i he toko taha afe 'a e fa'ahinga na'e fakamahino ki ai 'a e mo'oní; ko ia 'oku mahino mai kiate kitautolu, 'oku ngāue 'a e 'Eiki 'i he ngaahi founa lahi ke fakamo'ui hono kakai.
- 28 Ko 'eni ko e tokolahi taha 'o e kau Leimana ko ia na'a nau tāmāte 'i honau kāingá, ko e kau 'Amalekai mo e kau 'Amulone, 'a ia ko honau tokolahi na'e 'o e kautaha 'o e kau Nēhoá.

Now when the people saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord; and thus they were in this attitude when the Lamanites began to fall upon them, and began to slay them with the sword.

And thus without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.

Now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword—

Now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them; and there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done.

And it came to pass that they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed; and they came down even as their brethren, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them.

And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved.

And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people.

Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors.

29 Ko 'eni, na'e 'ikai ha toko taha na'e kau mai ki he kakai 'o e 'Eikí, mei he kau 'Amalekaí pe ko e kau 'Amuloné, pe na'e 'o e kautaha 'o Nēhoá, ka ko e kau hako mo'oni 'o Leimana mo Lēmiuela 'a kinautolu.

30 Pea ko ia 'oku mahino lelei mai kiate kinautolu, 'o ka hili hano fakamāma 'i tu' o taha ha kakai 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá, pea nau ma'u ha 'ilo lahi ki he ngaahi me'a 'oku kau ki he mā'oni'oni, pea nau toki tafoki ki he angahala mo e maumau-fonó, 'o nau hoko 'o loto-fefeka ange, 'oku hoko honau tu'ungá 'o kovi ange 'o hangē pē kuo te'eki ke nau 'ilo'í 'a e ngaahi me'a ní.

Now, among those who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.

‘Alamā 25

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni vakai, na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ‘āsili ‘a e ‘ita ‘a e kau Leimana ko iá koe‘uhi ko ‘enau tāmāte‘i honau kāingá; ko ia na‘a nau fuakava ke sāuni ki he kau Nīfai; pea na‘e ‘ikai te nau toe feinga ke tāmāte‘i ‘a e kakai ‘o ‘Anitai-Nīfai-Līhāi ‘i he taimi ko iá.
- 2 Ka na‘a nau ‘ave ‘enau ngaahi kongā taú ‘o nau ‘alu atu ki he ngaahi ngata‘anga ‘o e fonua ko Seilahemalá, ‘o nau ‘ohofi ‘a e kakai ‘a ia na‘e ‘i he fonua ko ‘Amonihā ‘o faka‘auha ‘a kinautolu.
- 3 Pea hili iá, na‘a nau fai ha ngaahi tau lahi mo e kau Nīfai, ‘a ia na‘e tuli ai mo tāmāte‘i ‘a kinautolu.
- 4 Pea na‘e kau ‘i he kau Leimana na‘e tāmāte‘i ‘a e meimei kotoa ‘o e hako ‘o ‘Amulone mo hono kāingá, ‘a ia ko e kau taula‘eiki ‘a Noá, pea na‘e tāmāte‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘i he nima ‘o e kau Nīfai;
- 5 Pea ko hono toé, hili ha‘anau hola ki he feitu‘u maomaonganoa ‘i he hahaké, ‘o nau fokotu‘u ke nau ma‘u ‘a e mālohi mo e mafai ki he kau Leimaná, pea na‘a nau tu‘utu‘uni ‘a e tokolahi ‘o e kau Leimana ke nau mate ‘i he afi koe‘uhi ko ‘enau tuí—
- 6 He na‘e ‘i ai ‘a e tokolahi ‘o kinautolu, ‘i he hili ha‘anau fu‘u mole lahi pea mo e ngaahi faingata‘a lahi, na‘e kamata ke langaki hake ‘a e manatu ki he ngaahi lea kuo malanga ‘aki ‘e ‘Ēlone mo hono kāingá kiate kinautolu ‘i honau fonuá; ko ia na‘e kamata ke nau ta‘etuui ki he ngaahi talatukufakaholo ‘a ‘enau ngaahi tamaí, pea tui ki he ‘Eiki, pea na‘á ne tuku ‘a e fu‘u mālohi lahi ki he kau Nīfai; ko ia na‘e fakaului ai hanau tokolahi ‘i he feitu‘u maomaonganoá.
- 7 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ko e kau pule ‘a ia na‘e toe ‘i he hako ‘o e fānau ‘a ‘Amuloné, na‘e nau tu‘utu‘uni ke tāmāte‘i ‘a kinautolu, ‘io, ‘a kinautolu kotoa ‘a ia na‘e tui ki he ngaahi me‘a ko iá.
- 8 Ko ‘eni na‘e langaki ‘e he fakapō ko ‘ení ‘a e ‘ita ‘a ha tokolahi ‘o honau kāingá; pea na‘e kamata ha fakakikihi ‘i he feitu‘u maomaonganoá; pea na‘e kamata ke ha‘ao ‘a e hako ‘o ‘Amuloné mo hono kāingá ‘e he kau Leimaná ‘o nau kamata ke tāmāte‘i ‘a kinautolu; pea na‘a nau hola ki he feitu‘u maomaonganoa ‘i he hahaké.

Alma 25

And behold, now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi at that time.

But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah and destroyed them.

And after that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.

And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;

And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness, and having usurped the power and authority over the Lamanites, caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief—

For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his brethren had preached to them in their land; therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers, and to believe in the Lord, and that he gave great power unto the Nephites; and thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed in these things.

Now this martyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; and there began to be contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness.

- 9 Pea vakai 'oku ha'ao 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Leimaná 'o a'u mai ki he 'ahó ni. Ko ia kuo fakahoko 'a e ngaahi lea 'a 'Apinetái, 'a ia na'á ne lea 'aki 'o kau ki he hako 'o e kau taula'eiki 'a ia na'a nau fekau ke fakamamahi'i ia 'aki 'a e mate 'i he afí.
- 10 He na'á ne pehē kiate kinautolu: Ko e me'a te mou fai kiate aú, 'e hoko ia ko ha sīpinga 'o e ngaahi me'a 'e hoko.
- 11 Pea ko 'eni ko 'Apinetai ko e 'uluaki ia na'e mate 'i he afi koe'uhi ko 'ene tui ki he 'Otuá; ko 'eni ko e 'uhinga 'eni 'o 'ene leá, 'e mate 'a e tokolahi 'i he afi, 'o hangē ko 'ene mamahi'ía.
- 12 Pea na'á ne pehē ki he kau taula'eiki 'a Noá 'e hanga 'e honau hakó 'o fakatupu hano tāmata'e 'i 'o e kakai tokolahi 'o hangē tofu pē ko 'ene maté, pea 'e fakamovetevete holo mo tāmata'e 'i 'a kinautolu 'o hangē 'oku tuli mo tāmata'e 'i 'e he fanga manu fekaí ha fanga sipi 'a ia 'oku 'ikai hanau tauhi; pea ko 'eni vakai, na'e fakamo'oni'i 'a e ngaahi lea ko iá; he na'e tuli 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Leimaná, pea na'e ha'ao mo tāmata'e 'i 'a kinautolu.
- 13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'ilo'i 'e he kau Leimaná 'oku 'ikai te nau lava 'o ikuna'i 'a e kau Nīfaí na'a nau toe foki atu ki honau fonua 'onauló; pea na'e o mai hanau tokolahi 'o nofo 'i he fonua ko 'Isimelí mo e fonua ko Nīfaí, pea nau ului ki he kakai 'o e 'Otuá, 'a ia ko e kakai 'o 'Anitai-Nīfai-Lihaí.
- 14 Pea na'a nau tanu foki mo 'enau ngaahi mahafu tau' 'o hangē ko ia kuo fai 'e honau kāingá, 'o nau faka'au ke hoko ko ha kakai mā'oni'oni; 'o nau 'a'eva 'i he ngaahi hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eiki, pea na'a nau tokanga ke tauhi 'ene ngaahi fekaú mo 'ene ngaahi tu'utu'uní.
- 15 'Io, pea na'a nau tauhi 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé; he na'e kei 'aonga ke nau tauhi 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé, koe'uhi kuo te'eki ai ke fakamo'oni'i hono kotoa. Ka neongo 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé, na'a nau sio pē ki he hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí, 'o lau 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé ko ha sīpinga 'o 'ene hā'ele maí, 'o nau tui 'oku totonu ke nau tauhi 'a e ngaahi ouau fakatu'asino ko iá kae 'oua ke hokosia 'a e taimi 'e fakahā mai ai ia kiate kinautolu.

And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.

For he said unto them: What ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.

And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites they returned again to their own land; and many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And they did also bury their weapons of war, according as their brethren had, and they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments and his statutes.

Yea, and they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled. But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them.

16 Ko 'eni na'e 'ikai ke nau pehē 'oku hoko mai 'a e fakamo'uí 'i he fono 'a Mōsesé; ka 'oku 'aonga pē 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé ke fakamālohi 'i 'enau tui kia Kalaisí; pea ko ia na'a nau tauhi ha 'amanaki 'i he tui, ki he fakamo'ui ta'engatá, 'o falala ki he laumālie 'o e kikité, 'a ia na'e lau ki he ngaahi me'a ko ia 'e hokó.

17 Pea ko 'eni vakai, na'e fu'u fiefia lahi 'aupito 'a 'Āmoni, mo 'Ēlone, mo 'Ominea, mo Himinai, mo honau kāingá, ko'e uhi ko e ngaahi ngāue kuo nau lava 'i he kau Leimaná, 'i he 'enau vakai kuo foaki kiate kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki 'o fakatatau mo 'enau ngaahi lotú, pea kuó ne fakamo'oni 'i foki kiate kinautolu 'ene folofolá 'o a'u ki hono kihí 'i kongá sí 'i kotoa pē.

Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things to come.

And now behold, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni, and their brethren did rejoice exceedingly, for the success which they had had among the Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had granted unto them according to their prayers, and that he had also verified his word unto them in every particular.

‘Alamā 26

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni, ko e ngaahi lea ‘eni ‘a ‘Āmoni ki hono kāinga, ‘a ia na‘a ne pehē: ‘E hoku ngaahi tokoua mo hoku kāinga, vakai ‘oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, hono ‘ikai lahi ‘a e ‘uhinga ke tau fiefia; he na‘a tau lava koā ke ‘amanaki ‘i he‘etau fononga mai mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá ‘e foaki mai kiate kitautolu ‘e he ‘Otuá ha ngaahi tāpuaki lahi pehē?
- 2 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘oku ou fehu‘i atu, ko e hā ha ngaahi tāpuaki lalahi kuó ne foaki mai kiate kitautolú? Te mou lava ‘o tala mai ia?
- 3 Vakai, ‘oku ou tali ma‘amoutolu; he ko hotau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná, na‘a nau nofo ‘i he fakapo‘ulí, ‘io, na‘a mo e vanu fakapo‘uli tahá, kae vakai, ko e toko fiha nai ‘o kinautolu kuo ‘omi ke nau mamata ki he maama fakaofo ‘o e ‘Otuá! Pea ko e tāpuaki ‘eni kuo foaki kiate kitautolú, kuo ngaohi kitautolu ke tau hoko ko e ngaahi me‘angāue ‘i he to‘ukupu ‘o e ‘Otuá ki hono fakahoko ‘o e ngāue ma‘ongo‘ongá ni.
- 4 Vakai, ‘oku fiefia honau ngaahi toko afe, pea kuo ‘omi ‘a kinautolu ki he loto‘ā sipi ‘o e ‘Otuá.
- 5 Vakai, na‘e motu‘a ‘a e ta‘ú, pea ‘oku monū‘ia ‘a kimoutolu, he na‘a mou ‘ai ‘a e hele tu‘usi, ‘o tu‘usi ‘aki homou tūkuingatá, ‘io, na‘a mou ngāue ‘i he ‘ahó kotoa; pea vakai ki hono lahi ‘o ho‘omou ngaahi ha‘ingá! Pea ‘e tānaki ia ki he feleokó ke ‘oua na‘a maumau.
- 6 ‘Io, ‘e ‘ikai ke holoki ia ‘e he afaá ‘i he ‘aho faka‘osí; ‘io, ‘e ‘ikai foki ke veteki ia ‘e he ngaahi ‘ahiohió; ka ‘o ka tō mai ‘a e afaá ‘e tānaki fakataha kinautolu ki honau potu ‘onautolú, ke ‘oua na‘a lava ke ‘asi ki ai ‘a e afaá; ‘io, pea ‘e ‘ikai foki ke ‘ave atu ia ‘i he ngaahi fu‘u matangi mālohí ki he potu ‘oku loto ‘a e filí ke ‘ave kinautolu ki aí.
- 7 Kae vakai, ‘oku nau ‘i he to‘ukupu ia ‘o e ‘Eiki ‘o e utu-ta‘ú, pea ‘oku ‘a‘ana ‘a kinautolu; pea te ne fokotu‘u hake ‘a kinautolu ‘i he ‘aho faka‘osí.
- 8 Fakafeta‘i pē ki he huafa ‘o hotau ‘Otuá; tau hiva ki hono fakalāngilangi‘í, ‘io, tau ‘oatu ‘a e fakafeta‘i ki hono huafa topupapú, he ‘okú ne fai ‘a e ngāue mā‘oní‘oní ‘o ta‘engata.

Alma 26

And now, these are the words of Ammon to his brethren, which say thus: My brothers and my brethren, behold I say unto you, how great reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such great blessings?

And now, I ask, what great blessings has he bestowed upon us? Can ye tell?

Behold, I answer for you; for our brethren, the Lamanites, were in darkness, yea, even in the darkest abyss, but behold, how many of them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God! And this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work.

Behold, thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the fold of God.

Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor; and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garners, that they are not wasted.

Yea, they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; yea, neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place, that the storm cannot penetrate to them; yea, neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them.

But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.

Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever.

- 9 He ka ne ta'e'oua 'etau ha'u mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá, ko hotau kāinga 'ofeiná ni, 'a ia 'oku nau 'ofeina lahi 'a kitautolu, kuo nau kei lili ai pē 'i he fehi'a kiate kitautolu, 'io, pea kuo nau kei hoko atu ai pē ko e kau sola ki he 'Otuá.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi hono lea 'aki 'e 'Āmoni 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e valoki'i ia 'e hono tokoua ko 'Ēloné, 'o ne pehē: 'E 'Āmoni, 'oku ou manavasi'i na'a kuo hanga 'e ho'ofiefiá 'o ngaohi koe ke ke pōlepole.
- 11 Ka na'e pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni kiate ia: 'Oku 'ikai te u pōlepole 'i hoku mālohi pē 'o'okú, pe 'i hoku poto 'o'okú; kae vakai, 'oku kakato 'a 'eku fiefiá, 'io, 'oku fonu mahuohua 'a hoku lotó 'i he fiefia, pea te u fiefia 'i hoku 'Otuá.
- 12 'Io, 'oku ou 'ilo'i ko e me'a noa pē au; pea ko e me'a ki hoku mālohi 'oku ou vaivai; ko ia 'e 'ikai te u pōlepole 'iate au, ka te u pōlepole pē 'i hoku 'Otuá, he te u lava ke fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'i hono māfima'í; 'io, vakai, kuo lahi ha ngaahi me'a mana lalahi kuo tau fai 'i he fonuá ni, 'a ia te tau fakafeta'i ai ki hono huafá 'o ta'engata.
- 13 Vakai, ko e toko lau afe nai 'e fiha 'o hotau kāingá 'a ia kuó ne vete ange mei he ngaahi mamahi 'o helí; pea kuo ngaohi ke nau hiva 'aki 'a e 'alo'ofa huhu'í, pea 'oku tupunga 'eni koe'uhi ko e mālohi 'o 'ene folofola 'a ia 'oku 'iate kitautolú, ko ia 'ikai 'oku fu'u lahi 'a 'etau 'uhinga ke fiefia aí?
- 14 'Io, 'oku 'i ai ha'atau 'uhinga ke fakalāngilangi'i ia 'o ta'engata, he ko e 'Otuá Fungani Mā'olunga tahá ia, pea kuó ne vete ange hotau kāingá mei he ngaahi sēini 'o helí.
- 15 'Io, na'e takatakai 'a kinautolu 'e he po'uli ta'engata mo e faka'auhá; kae vakai, kuó ne 'omi 'a kinautolu ki he'ene maama ta'engata, 'io, ki he fakamo'ui ta'engata; pea 'oku takatakai 'a kinautolu 'e he'ene 'alo'ofa lahi ta'e-hano-tataú; 'io, pea kuo tau hoko ko ha ngaahi me'angāue 'i hono to'ukupú ki hono fai 'o e ngāue ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofó ni.

For if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla, these our dearly beloved brethren, who have so dearly beloved us, would still have been racked with hatred against us, yea, and they would also have been strangers to God.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had said these words, his brother Aaron rebuked him, saying: Ammon, I fear that thy joy doth carry thee away unto boasting.

But Ammon said unto him: I do not boast in my own strength, nor in my own wisdom; but behold, my joy is full, yea, my heart is brim with joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

Yea, I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; yea, behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.

Behold, how many thousands of our brethren has he loosed from the pains of hell; and they are brought to sing redeeming love, and this because of the power of his word which is in us, therefore have we not great reason to rejoice?

Yea, we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High God, and has loosed our brethren from the chains of hell.

Yea, they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and destruction; but behold, he has brought them into his everlasting light, yea, into everlasting salvation; and they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love; yea, and we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great and marvelous work.

16 Ko ia, tau vīkiviki, 'io, te tau vīkiviki 'i he 'Eikí; 'io, te tau fiefia, he 'oku kakato 'etau fiefiá; 'io, te tau fakaongoongolesi 'i 'a hotau 'Otuá 'o ta'engata. Vakai, ko hai nai 'e lava 'o fu'u hulu fau 'ene vīkiviki 'i he 'Eikí? 'Io, ko hai nai 'e lava 'o fakamatala 'o fu'u hulu ki hono fu'u māfimaí, mo 'ene 'alo'ofá, pea mo 'ene fa'a kātaki fuoloa ki he fānau 'a e tangatá? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku 'ikai te u malava ke lea 'aki ha kihí 'i kongá si 'i 'o e me'a 'oku ou ongo'í.

17 Ko hai nai 'e lava 'o 'amanaki 'e 'alo'ofa lahi pehē fau 'a hotau 'Otuá 'o hamusi 'a kitautolu mei hotau tu'unga fakamanavahē mo angahala'ia mo 'ulí?

18 Vakai, na'a tau 'alu atu foki 'i he 'ita, mo lea fakamanamana lahi ke faka'auha hono siasí.

19 'Oiauē ko e hā nai, na'e 'ikai te ne tukuange ai 'a kitautolu ki ha faka'auha fakamanavaheé, 'io, ko e hā nai na'e 'ikai te ne tuku ai ke tō 'a e heletā 'o 'ene fakamaau totonú kiate kitautolu, pea tuku 'a kitautolu ki he lotomafasia ta'engatá?

20 'Oiauē, 'oku meimei hola hoku laumālié, 'i he fakakaukau ki aí. Vakai, na'e 'ikai te ne fai 'ene fakamaau totonú kiate kitautolu, ka 'i he'ene fu'u 'alo'ofa lahi kuó ne 'omi 'a kitautolu ke tau hao mei he vanu ta'engata 'o e mate mo e mamahí, ki he fakamo'ui 'o hotau laumālié.

21 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, ko hai ha tangata fakakakano 'okú ne 'ilo'í 'a e ngaahi me'á ni? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku 'ikai ha taha 'okú ne 'ilo'í 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, ka ko ia pē 'oku loto-fakatomalá.

22 'Io, 'ilonga ia 'okú ne fakatomala mo ngāue 'aki 'a e tuí, pea ne fai 'a e ngaahi ngāue leleí, mo lotu ma'u ai pē ta'etukú—'Oku tuku ki he fa'ahinga peheé ke 'ilo'í 'a e ngaahi me'a lilo 'a e 'Otuá; 'io, 'e tuku ki he fa'ahinga peheé ke fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo te'eki ai fakahā; 'io, pea 'e tuku ki he fa'ahinga peheé ke 'omi ha ngaahi laumālie 'e toko lau afe ke nau fakatomala, 'o hangē pē ko ia kuo tuku mai kiate kinautolu ke tau fakaloto'í 'a e fa'ahingá ni ko hotau kāingá ke nau fakatomalá.

23 Ko 'eni 'oku mou manatu 'i koā, 'e hoku kāinga, na'a tau pehē ki hotau kāinga 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'oku tau 'alu hake ki he fonua ko Nífaí, ke malanga ki hotau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná, pea na'a nau taukae ko e manuki kiate kitautolu?

Therefore, let us glory, yea, we will glory in the Lord; yea, we will rejoice, for our joy is full; yea, we will praise our God forever. Behold, who can glory too much in the Lord? Yea, who can say too much of his great power, and of his mercy, and of his long-suffering towards the children of men? Behold, I say unto you, I cannot say the smallest part which I feel.

Who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?

Behold, we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his church.

Oh then, why did he not consign us to an awful destruction, yea, why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us, and doom us to eternal despair?

Oh, my soul, almost as it were, fleeth at the thought. Behold, he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.

And now behold, my brethren, what natural man is there that knoweth these things? I say unto you, there is none that knoweth these things, save it be the penitent.

Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing—unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; yea, unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed; yea, and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.

Now do ye remember, my brethren, that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla, we go up to the land of Nephi, to preach unto our brethren, the Lamanites, and they laughed us to scorn?

- 24 He na‘a nau pehē mai kiate kitautolu: Ko ho‘omou mahalo koā te mou lava ‘o fakahā ki he kau Leimaná ‘a e mo‘oní? Ko ho‘omou mahalo koā te mou lava ‘o fakaloto‘i ‘a e kau Leimaná ke nau ‘ilo‘i hono ta‘etotonu ‘o e ngaahi talatukufakaholo ‘a ‘enau ngaahi tamaí, he ko ha kakai kia-kekeva ‘a kinautolu; pea ‘oku manako honau lotó ‘i he lilingi ‘o e totó; pea kuo nau fakamoleki honau ngaahi ‘ahó ‘i he fai ‘o e ngaahi angahala fakalielia tahá; pea ko ‘enau ngaahi tō‘ongá ko e ngaahi tō‘onga ia ‘a ha tokotaha maumau-fono talu mei he kamata‘angá? Ko ‘eni ‘e hoku kāinga, ‘oku mou manatu ko ‘enau ngaahi leá ‘eni.
- 25 Pea ko e tahá na‘a nau pehē mai foki: Tau to‘o mahafu ke tau‘i ‘a kinautolu, ke tau faka‘auha ‘a kinautolu mo ‘enau angahalá mei he fonuá, telia na‘a nau molomoloki hifo ‘a kitautolu mo faka‘auha ‘a kitautolu.
- 26 Kae vakai, ‘e hoku kāinga ‘ofeina, na‘e ‘ikai te tau ō mai ki he feitu‘u maomaonganoá mo e ‘amanaki ke faka‘auha hotau kāinga, ka ‘i he ‘amanaki ke tau lava ‘apē ‘o fakamo‘ui ‘a e laumālie ‘o hanau ní‘ihi.
- 27 Ko ia ‘i he mafasia ‘a hotau lotó, ‘o tau meimei foki, vakai, na‘e fakafiemālie ‘i ‘a kitautolu ‘e he ‘Eikí, ‘o ne folofola mai: ‘Alu atu ki homou kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná, pea kātaki‘i ‘i he fa‘a kātaki ‘a ho‘omou ngaahi mamahí, pea te u tuku ke mou lava‘i ‘a e ngāué.
- 28 Pea ko ‘eni vakai, kuo tau ha‘u, ki honau fonuá ‘iate kinautolu; pea kuo tau fa‘a kātaki ‘i hotau ngaahi mamahí, pea kuo tau kātaki‘i ‘a e faingata‘a kotoa pē; ‘io, kuo tau fononga mei he fale ki he fale, ‘o falala ki he ‘ofa ‘a e māmaní—kae ‘ikai ki he ngaahi ‘ofa ‘a e māmaní pē ka ki he ngaahi ‘alo‘ofa foki ‘a e ‘Otuá.
- 29 Pea kuo tau hū atu ki honau ngaahi falé ‘o ako‘i kinautolu, pea kuo tau ako‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘i honau ngaahi halá; ‘io, pea kuo tau ako‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘i honau ngaahi mo‘ungá; pea kuo tau hū foki ki honau ngaahi temipalé mo honau ngaahi fale lotú, ‘o akonaki ai kiate kinautolu; pea kuo kapusi ki tu‘a ‘a kitautolu, pea manukia, pea ‘anuhia, ‘o sipi‘i hotau kou‘ahé; pea kuo tolomaka‘i ‘a kitautolu, pea puke mo ha‘i ‘aki ha ngaahi afo mālohi, pea fakahū ki he fale fakapōpulá; pea ‘i he māfifafi mo e poto ‘o e ‘Otuá kuo fakahaofi ‘a kitautolu.

For they said unto us: Do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers, as stiff-necked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity; whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning? Now my brethren, ye remember that this was their language.

And moreover they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.

But behold, my beloved brethren, we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brethren, but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their souls.

Now when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst thy brethren, the Lamanites, and bear with patience thine afflictions, and I will give unto you success.

And now behold, we have come, and been forth amongst them; and we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation; yea, we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world—not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God.

And we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; yea, and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.

30 Pea kuo tau kātaki i 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e mamahi, pea kuo tau fai 'eni kotoa, ke tau lava nai 'o hoko ko ha founga ke fakahaofi ai ha laumalie; pea na'a tau 'amanaki 'e kakato 'etau fiefia 'o kapau te tau lava 'o hoko ko ha founga ke fakahaofi ai ha ni'ihii.

31 Ko 'eni vakai, 'oku tau lava 'o hanga atu 'o mamata ki he ngaahi fua 'o 'etau ngaahi ngāue; pea 'oku nau tokosi i koā? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai, ka 'oku nau tokolahi; 'io, pea 'oku tau lava 'o fakamo'oni ki he'enu fakamātoatō, koe'uhi ko 'enua 'ofa ki honau kāingá pea mo kitautolu foki.

32 He vakai, 'oku nau fie feilaulau i 'enua mo'ui kae 'ikai 'aupito te nau fie to'o 'a e mo'ui 'a honau fili; pea kuo nau tanu 'o loloto 'i he kelekelé 'enua ngaahi mahafu taú, koe'uhi ko 'enua 'ofa ki honau kāingá.

33 Pea ko 'eni vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo 'i ai koā ha fu'u 'ofa lahi pehē 'i he fonua hono kotoa? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai, kuo te'eki ke 'i ai, na'a mo e kau Nifai foki.

34 He vakai, na'a nau fie to'o mahafu ke tau i honau kāingá; ka na'e 'ikai te nau fie tuku ke tāmata 'i 'a kinautolu. Kae vakai ko e toko fiha nai 'o kinautolu ni kuo nau tuku hifo 'enua mo'ui; pea 'oku tau 'ilo i kuo nau 'alu atu ki honau 'Otuá, koe'uhi ko 'enua 'ofa pea mo 'enua fakalili 'a 'i he angahalá.

35 Ko 'eni 'ikai 'oku 'i ai ha'atau 'uhinga ke fiefia? 'Io, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo te'eki ke 'i ai ha kau tangata kuo nau ma'u ha fu'u 'uhinga lahi pehē ke fiefia, 'o hangē ko kitautolu talu mei he kamata'anga 'o māmani; 'io, pea kuo hanga 'e he'eku fiefia 'o ngaohi au, ke u pōlepole 'i hoku 'Otuá; he 'oku 'iate ia 'a e māfima fi kotoa, mo e poto kotoa, pea mo e 'ilo kotoa; 'okú ne 'afio 'i 'a e me'a kotoa pē, pea ko ha Tokotaha 'alo'ofa ia, 'io ki he fakamo'ui, kiate kinautolu 'e fakatomala mo tui ki hono huafá.

36 Ko 'eni kapau ko e pōlepolé 'eni, te u pōlepole pē; he ko 'eku mo'ui 'eni mo hoku māma, mo 'eku fiefia mo hoku fakamo'ui, mo hoku huhu 'i mei he mala'ia ta'engata. 'Io, 'oku monū'ia 'a e huafa 'o hoku 'Otuá, 'a ia kuó ne tokanga 'i 'a e kakai ni, 'a ia ko ha va'a 'o e 'akau 'o 'Isileli, pea kuo hē ia mei hono tefito ki ha fonua fo'ou; 'io, 'oku ou pehē, ke monū'ia 'a e huafa 'o hoku 'Otuá, 'a ia kuo tokanga 'i 'a kitautolu, ko e kau 'auhē 'i ha fonua fo'ou.

And we have suffered all manner of afflictions, and all this, that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some.

Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors; and are they few? I say unto you, Nay, they are many; yea, and we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren and also towards us.

For behold, they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy; and they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth, because of their love towards their brethren.

And now behold I say unto you, has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.

For behold, they would take up arms against their brethren; they would not suffer themselves to be slain. But behold how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know that they have gone to their God, because of their love and of their hatred to sin.

Now have we not reason to rejoice? Yea, I say unto you, there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began; yea, and my joy is carried away, even unto boasting in my God; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; he comprehendeth all things, and he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.

Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and has been lost from its body in a strange land; yea, I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has been mindful of us, wanderers in a strange land.

37 Ko 'eni 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku mahino mai kiate
kitautolu 'oku 'afio mai 'a e 'Otuā ki he kakai kotoa pē,
'o tatau ai pē pe ko e fonua fē 'oku nau 'i a'í; 'io, 'okú ne
lau 'a hono kakaí, pea 'oku tofuhia 'a māmani fulipē 'i
he'ene ngaahi ngāue 'alo'ofá. Ko 'eni, ko 'eku fiefiá 'eni,
pea mo 'eku fakafeta'í lahí; 'io, pea te u 'oatu 'a e
fakafeta'í ki hoku 'Otuá 'o ta'engata. 'Ēmeni.

Now my brethren, we see that God is mindful of ev-
ery people, whatsoever land they may be in; yea, he
numbereth his people, and his bowels of mercy are over
all the earth. Now this is my joy, and my great thanks-
giving; yea, and I will give thanks unto my God forever.
Amen.

‘Alamā 27

- 1 Ko ‘eni na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he ‘ilo‘i ‘e he kau Leimana ‘a ia na‘a nau ‘alu atu ke tau‘i ‘a e kau Nīfai, hili ha‘anau fai ha ngaahi feinga tu‘o lahi ke faka‘auha ‘a kinautolu, pea na‘e ta‘e‘aonga ‘a e feinga ke faka‘auha ‘a kinautolú, na‘a nau toe liu mai leva ki he fonua ko Nīfai.
- 2 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē, na‘e fu‘u ‘ita lahi ‘a e kau ‘Amalekaí, koe‘uhi ko e mole honau ni‘ihí. Pea ‘i he mahino kiate kinautolu na‘e ‘ikai te nau lava ‘o e sāuni ki he kau Nīfai, na‘a nau kamata ke faka‘ai‘ai ‘a e kakaí ke ‘ita ki honau kāinga, ko e kakai ‘o ‘Anitai-Nīfai-Līhai; ko ia na‘a nau toe kamata ke faka‘auha ‘a kinautolu.
- 3 Ko ‘eni na‘e toe fakafisi ‘a e kakaí ni ke to‘o ‘enu mahafu taú, ‘o nau tuku ke tāmata‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘i he fa‘iteliha ‘a honau ngaahi filí.
- 4 Pea ‘i he mamata ‘a ‘Āmoni mo hono kāingá ki he ngāue ko ia ‘o e faka‘auha ‘i he lotolotonga ‘o e fa‘ahinga ko ia ‘oku nau fu‘u ‘ofa lahi ki ai, mo e fa‘ahinga ko ia na‘e fu‘u ‘ofa lahi kiate kinautolú—he na‘e lau ‘a kinautolu ‘o hangē ko ha kau ‘āngelo kuo fekau mai mei he ‘Otuá ke fakahaofi ‘a kinautolu mei he faka‘auha ta‘engatá—ko ia, ‘i he mamata ‘a ‘Āmoni mo hono kāingá ki he fu‘u ngāue ‘o e faka‘auhá ni, na‘e ue‘i hake honau lotó ‘e he ‘ofa mamahi, ‘o nau pehē ange ki he tu‘í:
- 5 Tau tānaki fakataha ‘a e kakaí ni ‘o e ‘Eikí, pea tau ō hifo ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá ki hotau kāinga ko e kau Nīfai, pea hola mei he nima ‘o hotau ngaahi filí, koe‘uhi ke ‘oua na‘a tau ‘auha.
- 6 Ka na‘e folofola ange ‘e he tu‘i kiate kinautolu: Vakai, ‘e faka‘auha ‘a kinautolu ‘e he kau Nīfai, koe‘uhi ko e ngaahi fakapō mo e ngaahi angahala lahi kuo mau fai kiate kinautolú.
- 7 Pea pehē ange ‘e ‘Āmoni: Te u ‘alu ‘o fehu‘i ki he ‘Eikí, pea kapau te ne folofola mai kiate kinautolu, mou ō hifo ki hotau kāinga, te mou ‘alu?
- 8 Pea folofola ange ‘e he tu‘i kiate ia: ‘Io, kapau ‘e folofola mai ‘e he ‘Eikí kiate kinautolu ke mau ‘alu, te mau ō hifo ki hotau kāingá, pea te mau hoko ko ‘enu kau pōpula kae ‘oua ke mau totongi kiate kinautolu ‘o fe‘unga mo e ngaahi fakapō mo e ngaahi angahala ‘a ia kuo mau fai kiate kinautolú.

Alma 27

Now it came to pass that when those Lamanites who had gone to war against the Nephites had found, after their many struggles to destroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that the Amalekites, because of their loss, were exceedingly angry. And when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi; therefore they began again to destroy them.

Now this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.

Now when Ammon and his brethren saw this work of destruction among those whom they so dearly beloved, and among those who had so dearly beloved them—for they were treated as though they were angels sent from God to save them from everlasting destruction—therefore, when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:

Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and flee out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.

But the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.

And Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord, and if he say unto us, go down unto our brethren, will ye go?

And the king said unto him: Yea, if the Lord saith unto us go, we will go down unto our brethren, and we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders and sins which we have committed against them.

9 Ka na'e pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni kiate ia: 'Oku ta'ehoa ia mo e lao 'a hotau kāingá, 'a ia na'e fokotu'u 'e he'eku tamaí, ke 'i ai ha kau pōpula 'iate kinautolu; ko ia, tau ō hifo, mo falala pē ki he ngaahi 'ofa 'a hotau kāingá.

10 Ka na'e folofola ange 'e he tu'í kiate ia: Fehu'í ki he 'Eikí, pea kapau te ne folofola mai kiate kinautolu ke 'alu, te mau 'alu; ka 'ikai te mau 'auha pē 'i he fonuá ni.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu 'a 'Āmoni 'o fehu'í ki he 'Eikí, pea na'e folofola ange kiate ia 'a e 'Eikí:

12 'Ave 'a e kakaí ni mei he fonuá ni, ke 'oua na'a nau 'auha; he 'oku ma'u 'e Sētane 'a e mālohi lahi ki he loto 'o e kau 'Amalekaí, 'a ia 'oku nau faka'ai'ai 'a e kau Leimaná ke 'ita ki honau kāingá 'o tāmata'i 'a kinautolu; ko ia ke mou 'alu mei he fonuá ni; pea 'oku monū'ia 'a e kakaí ni 'i he to'u tangatá ni, he te u malu'i 'a kinautolu.

13 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu 'a 'Āmoni, 'o ne fakahā ki he tu'í 'a e ngaahi folofola kotoa pē kuo folofola 'aki 'e he 'Eikí kiate ia.

14 Pea na'a nau tñnaki fakataha 'a honau kakai kotoa pē, 'io, 'a e kakai kotoa pē 'o e 'Eikí, 'o nau tñnaki fakataha 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki kotoa pē mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí, 'o nau 'alu atu mei he fonuá, 'o omi ki he feitu'u maomaonganoa 'a ia na'e vahe'i 'a e fonua ko Nífaí mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea na'a nau ō mai 'o ofi ki he ngata'anga 'o e fonuá.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē ange 'e 'Āmoni kiate kinautolu: Vakai, te u 'alu atu mo hoku kāingá ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, ka mou nofo pē 'i heni kae 'oua ke mau foki mai; pea te mau vakai'i pe ko e hā 'a e loto 'o hotau kāingá, pe te nau loto ke mou omi ki honau fonuá.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga 'alu atu 'a 'Āmoni ki he fonuá, na'a nau fetaulaki mo hono kāingá pea mo 'Alamā, 'i he potu kuo lau ki aí; pea vakai, ko ha fetaulaki fakafiefia 'eni.

17 Ko 'eni na'e pehē fau hono lahi 'o e fiefia 'a 'Āmoni' he na'e fonu ia; 'io, na'e fu'u mo'ua hono lotó 'i he fiefia 'o hono 'Otuá, 'o a'u ki he 'osi hono iví; pea ne toe tō ki he kelekelé.

18 Ko 'eni 'ikai ko ha fu'u fiefia lahi 'eni? Vakai, ko e fiefia 'eni 'oku 'ikai ma'u 'e ha toko taha ka ko ia pē 'oku loto-fakatomala mo'oni mo ia 'oku fekumi 'i he loto fakatōkilalo ki he fiefiá.

But Ammon said unto him: It is against the law of our brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our brethren.

But the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him:

Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them; therefore get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them.

And now it came to pass that Ammon went and told the king all the words which the Lord had said unto him.

And they gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of Zarahemla, and ye shall remain here until we return; and we will try the hearts of our brethren, whether they will that ye shall come into their land.

And it came to pass that as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma, over in the place of which has been spoken; and behold, this was a joyful meeting.

Now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; yea, he was swallowed up in the joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength; and he fell again to the earth.

Now was not this exceeding joy? Behold, this is joy which none receiveth save it be the truly penitent and humble seeker of happiness.

19 Ko 'eni na'e hulu 'aupito 'a e fiefia 'a 'Alamā 'i he'ene fe'iloaki mo hono kāingá, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e fiefia 'a 'Ēlone, mo 'Ominea, mo Himinaí; kae vakai na'e 'ikai ke lahi ange 'enau fiefiá 'i honau iví.

20 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e taki atu 'e 'Alamā 'a hono kāingá ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá; 'io, ki hono fale 'o'oná. Pea na'a nau ō, 'o fakahā ki he fakamaau lahi 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuo hoko kiate kinautolu 'i he fonua ko Nīfai, 'i he lotolotonga 'o honau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'oatu 'e he fakamaau lahi ha tohi fanongonongo 'i he fonuá hono kotoa, 'o ne fie 'ilo 'a e loto 'o e kakai 'o kau ki hono fakangofua ke hū mai 'a honau kāinga, 'a ia ko e kau 'Anitai-Nīfai-Līhai.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'a'u mai 'a e loto 'o e kakai 'o pehē: Vakai, te mau tukuange 'a e fonua ko Selesoní, 'a ia 'oku 'i he potu hahaké 'o ofi ki he tahí, 'a ia 'oku fehokotaki mo e fonua ko Mahú, 'a ia 'oku tu'u 'i he potu tonga 'o e fonua ko Mahú; pea ko e fonua ko ia ko Selesoní ko e fonua ia te mau tuku ki hotau kāingá ko honau tofi'a.

23 Pea vakai, te tau tuku 'etau ngaahi kau taú 'i he vaha 'a 'o e fonua ko Selesoní mo e fonua ko Nīfai, koe'uhi ke tau malu 'i hotau kāinga 'i he fonua ko Selesoní; pea te tau fai 'eni ma'a hotau kāingá, koe'uhi ko 'enau manavahē ke to'o mahafu ke tau 'i honau kāingá telia na'a nau fai anghala ai; pea ko 'enau fu'u manavaheé ni na'e tupu ia mei he' enau fu'u fakatomala kuo nau fai ko e tupu mei he' enau ngaahi fakapō lahi mo 'enau fai anghala faka'uliá.

24 Pea ko 'eni vakai, te tau fai 'eni ma'a hotau kāingá ke nau lava 'o ma'u 'a e fonua ko Selesoní; pea te tau malu 'i 'a kinautolu mei honau ngaahi filí 'aki 'etau ngaahi kongá taú, 'o kapau pe te nau tuku mai ma'atautolu hano kongá 'o 'enau ngaahi me'akai ke tokoni kiate kinautolu ke tau lava 'o tauhi 'etau ngaahi kau taú.

25 Ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he fanongo 'a 'Āmoni ki he me'a ní, na'á ne foki atu ki he kakai 'o 'Anitai-Nīfai-Līhai, peá na ō foki mo 'Alamā ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'a ia kuo nau fokotu'u ai honau ngaahi fale fehikitaki, 'o na fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē. Pea na'e fakamatala foki kiate kinautolu 'e 'Alamā hono fakaului ia, fakataha mo 'Āmoni mo 'Ēlone, mo hono kāingá.

Now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great, and also the joy of Aaron, of Omner, and Himni; but behold their joy was not that to exceed their strength.

And now it came to pass that Alma conducted his brethren back to the land of Zarahemla; even to his own house. And they went and told the chief judge all the things that had happened unto them in the land of Nephi, among their brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the chief judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: Behold, we will give up the land of Jershon, which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land Bountiful, which is on the south of the land Bountiful; and this land Jershon is the land which we will give unto our brethren for an inheritance.

And behold, we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our brethren in the land Jershon; and this we do for our brethren, on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin; and this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.

And now behold, this will we do unto our brethren, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies.

Now, it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents, and made known unto them all these things. And Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his brethren.

26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e langaki ai ha fu'u fiefia lahi 'iate kinautolu. Pea na'a nau 'alu hifo ki he fonua ko Selesoní, 'o ma'u 'a e fonua ko Selesoní; pea na'e ui 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Nīfaí ko e kakai 'o 'Āmoni; ko ia na'e ui 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e hingoa ko iá 'o fai atu mei ai.

27 Pea na'a nau kau 'i he kakai 'o Nīfaí, 'o lau foki 'a kinautolu fakataha mo e kakai na'e 'o e siasi 'o e 'Otuá. Pea na'a nau ongoongoa foki 'i he 'enau loto-māfana ki he 'Otuá, kae 'uma'ā foki ki he tangatá; he na'a nau faitotonu mo angatonu 'aupito 'i he me'a kotoa pē; pea na'a nau tu'u ma'u 'i he tui kia Kalaisí, 'o a'u ki he ngata'angá.

28 Pea na'a nau sio ki he lilingi 'o e toto 'o honau kāingá 'i he fu'u fakalili'a lahi; pea na'e 'ikai pē lava ke fakaloto 'i 'a kinautolu ke to'o mahafu ke tau 'i honau kāingá; pea na'e 'ikai pē te nau sio 'i ha momo 'i manavahē ki he maté, koe'uhi ko 'enau 'amanaki mo 'enau fakakaukau kia Kalaisí mo e toetu'ú; ko ia na'e folo hifo 'a e mate ia kiate kinautolu 'i hono ikuna 'i ia 'e Kalaisí.

29 Ko ia, na'a nau loto ke kātaki 'i 'a e maté 'i he founda fakamamahi mo kovi taha 'e lava ke fai 'e honau kāingá, kae 'oua pē na'a nau to'o 'a e heletaá pe hele pikó ke taa 'i 'a kinautolu.

30 Pea ko ia ko ha kakai loto-māfana mo 'ofeina, ko ha kakai 'oku hōifua lahi ki ai 'a e 'Eikí.

And it came to pass that it did cause great joy among them. And they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon; and they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.

And they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the church of God. And they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things; and they were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end.

And they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with the greatest abhorrence; and they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren; and they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection; therefore, death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

Therefore, they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword or cimenter to smite them.

And thus they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.

‘Alamā 28

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili ‘a e fakanofonofa
‘o e kakai ‘o ‘Āmoni ‘i he fonua ko Selesoní, mo e
fokotu‘u foki ‘o ha siasi ‘i he fonua ko Selesoní, pea mo e
fokotu‘u ‘a e ngaahi kau tau ‘a e kau Nifái ‘o takatakai ‘i
he fonua ko Selesoní, ‘io, ‘i he ngaahi ngata‘anga fonua
kotoa ‘oku takatakai ‘i he fonua ko Seilahemalá; vakai
na’e muimui ‘a e ngaahi kau tau ‘a e kau Leimaná ‘i
honau kāingá ki he feitu‘u maomaonganoá.
- 2 Pea ko ia na’e ‘i ai ha fu‘u tau faka‘ulia; ‘io, na’a mo ha
tau ‘oku te‘eki ai ke hoko ‘i he kotoa ‘o e kakai ‘i he fonuá
talu mei he taimi na’e ‘alu ai ‘a Līhai mei Selūsalemá; ‘io,
pea na’e tāmata ‘i mo fakamovetevete ‘i holo ‘a e toko lau
mano ‘o e kau Leimaná.
- 3 ‘Io, pea na’e ‘i ai foki mo ha fu‘u tāmata lahi ‘i he kakai
‘o Nifái; ka neongo iá, na’e tuli mo fakamovetevete ‘i ‘a e
kau Leimaná, pea na’e toe liu mai ‘a e kakai ‘o Nifái ki
honau fonuá.
- 4 Pea ko ‘eni ko ha taimi ‘eni ‘a ia na’e ai ha fu‘u tangi
mo e tangilāulau lahi na’e ongo atu ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e
fonuá ‘i he kakai kotoa pē ‘o Nifái—
- 5 ‘Io, ‘a e tangi ‘a e kau uitoú koe‘uhi ko honau ngaahi
husepānití, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo e ngaahi tamai ‘oku
tengihia ‘a honau ngaahi foha, pea mo e ‘ofefiné koe‘uhi
ko honau tuonga‘ané, ‘io, ‘a e tokoua koe‘uhi ko e tamai;
pea ko ia na’e ongo atu ‘a e le‘o ‘o e tangi ‘iate kinautolu
kotoa pē, ko e tengihia ‘o honau kāinga kuo maté.
- 6 Pea ko ‘eni ko e mo‘oni ko ha ‘aho fakamamahi
mo‘oni ‘eni; ‘io, ko ha taimi faingata‘a, pea ko ha taimi ‘o
e ‘aukai mo e lotu lahi.
- 7 Pea na’e ‘osi pehē hono hongofulu mā nima ‘o e ta‘u
‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāu ki he kau Nifái;
- 8 Pea ko e fakamatala ‘eni kia ‘Āmoni mo hono kāingá,
ko ‘enau ngaahi fefononga‘aki ‘i he fonua ko Nifái, ko
‘enau ngaahi faingata‘a ‘ia ‘i he fonuá, ko ‘enau ngaahi
mamahí, pea mo honau ngaahi fakamamahí, mo ‘enau
fiefia ta‘e-hano-tataú, mo hono tali mo e nofo malu ‘a
honau kāingá ‘i he fonua ko Selesoní. Pea ko ‘eni, ‘ofa ke
tāpuaki ‘i honau laumālié ‘o ta‘engata, ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e
Huhu ‘i ‘o e kakai fulipē.

Alma 28

And now it came to pass that after the people of
Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and a
church also established in the land of Jershon, and the
armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of
Jershon, yea, in all the borders round about the land of
Zarahemla; behold the armies of the Lamanites had fol-
lowed their brethren into the wilderness.

And thus there was a tremendous battle; yea, even
such an one as never had been known among all the
people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem;
yea, and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain
and scattered abroad.

Yea, and also there was a tremendous slaughter
among the people of Nephi; nevertheless, the
Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of
Nephi returned again to their land.

And now this was a time that there was a great
mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the
land, among all the people of Nephi—

Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands,
and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the
daughter for the brother, yea, the brother for the father;
and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of
them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

And now surely this was a sorrowful day; yea, a time
of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayer.

And thus endeth the fifteenth year of the reign of the
judges over the people of Nephi;

And this is the account of Ammon and his brethren,
their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings
in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and
their incomprehensible joy, and the reception and
safety of the brethren in the land of Jershon. And now
may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls
forever.

9 Pea ko e fakamatala 'eni ki he ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi fakakikihi 'i he kau Nīfái, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e ngaahi tau 'i he vaha'a 'o e kau Nīfái mo e kau Leimaná; pea mo hono faka'osi 'o e ta'u hono hongofulu mā nima 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú.

10 Pea fai mei he 'uluaki ta'ú 'o a'u ki hono hongofulu mā nima na'e fakahoko ai 'a e faka'auha 'o e mo'ui 'a e toko lau afe; 'io, na'e fakahoko ai 'a e fu'u lilingi toto faka'ulia.

11 Pea ko e ngaahi 'anga'anga 'o e toko lau afe kuo tanu loloto 'i he kekelelé, ka ko e ngaahi 'anga'anga 'o e toko lau afe 'oku 'au'aunga 'i ha ngaahi fokotu'unga 'i he funga fonuá; 'io, pea 'oku tengihia 'e he toko lau afe koe'uhi ko e mole 'a honau kāingá, koe'uhi 'oku 'i ai ha'anau 'uhinga ke manavahē, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi folofola fakapapau 'a e 'Eikí, na'a kuo tuku 'a kinautolu ki ha tu'unga 'o e mamahi ta'etuku.

12 Neongo 'oku tengihia mo'oni 'e he toko lau afe kehe 'a e mole honau kāingá, ka 'oku nau fiefia mo vīkiviki 'i he 'amanaki, mo 'enau 'ilo foki, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi tala'ofa 'a e 'Eikí, 'oku fokotu'u hake 'a kinautolu ke nofo 'i he nima to'omata'u 'o e 'Otuá, 'i he nofo fiefia ta'e-hano ngata'anga.

13 Pea ko ia 'oku mahino mai kiate kinautolu 'a hono lahi 'o e tu'unga ta'etau 'o e tangatá ko e tupu mei he angahalá mo e maumau-fonó, pea mo e mālohi 'o e tēvoló, 'a ia 'oku tupu mei he ngaahi fakakaukau olopoto kuó ne fa'u ke tauhele'i 'aki 'a e loto 'o e tangatá.

14 Pea ko ia 'oku mahino mai kiate kinautolu hono fu'u 'aonga 'o e ui ke faivelenga 'a e tangatá 'i he ngāue 'i he ngaahi ngoue vaine 'a e 'Eikí; pea ko ia 'oku mahino mai kiate kinautolu hono fu'u 'uhinga lahi 'o e mamahí, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e fiefiá—ko e mamahi koe'uhi ko e maté mo e faka'auha 'i he tangatá, pea ko e fiefia koe'uhi ko e maama 'a Kalaisi 'a ia 'oku a'utaki ki he mo'uí.

And this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites; and the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended.

And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; yea, it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.

And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are moldering in heaps upon the face of the earth; yea, and many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless wo.

While many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice and exult in the hope, and even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.

And thus we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.

And thus we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord; and thus we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing—sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.

‘Alamā 29

- 1 Taumaiā ko e ‘āngelo au, peá u lava ‘o ma‘u ‘a e faka‘amu
‘a hoku lotó, ke u ‘alu atu ‘o lea ‘aki ‘a e talupite ‘a e
‘Otuá, ‘i ha le‘o ke lulululu ‘i ‘a e māmaní, pea kalanga
‘aki ‘a e fakatomalá ki he kakai fulipē!
- 2 ‘Io, te u fakahā ki he kakai fulipē, ‘o hangē ko e ‘u‘ulu
‘o ha maná, ‘a e fakatomalá mo e palani ‘o e huhu‘í,
koe‘uhi ke nau fakatomala pea ha‘u ki hotau ‘Otuá,
koe‘uhi ke ‘oua na‘a toe ‘i ai ha mamahi ‘i he funga ‘o e
māmaní kotoa.
- 3 Kae vakai, ko ha tangata pē au, peá u fai angahala ‘i
he‘eku faka‘amú; he ‘oku totonu ke u fiemālie ‘i he
ngaahi me‘a kuo tuku mai ‘e he ‘Eikí ma‘akú.
- 4 ‘Oku ‘ikai lelei ke u feinga ke liliu ‘i he‘eku ngaahi
faka‘amú ‘a e tu‘utu‘uni pau ‘a ha ‘Otuá angatonu, he
‘oku ou ‘ilo‘i ‘okú ne foaki ki he tangatá ‘o fakatatau mo
‘enau holí, pe ko e holi ki he mate pe ki he mo‘uí; ‘io,
‘oku ou ‘ilo‘i ‘okú ne tuku mai ki he tangatá, ‘io, ‘okú ne
tu‘utu‘uni pau kiate kinautolu ha ngaahi tu‘utu‘uni
‘oku ‘ikai lava ‘o toe liliu, ‘o fakatatau ki honau ngaahi
lotó, pe ko e loto ki he fakamo‘uí pe ki he faka‘auha.
- 5 ‘Io, pea ‘oku ou ‘ilo‘i kuo tuku mai ‘a e lelei mo e koví
ki he kakai kotoa pē; pea ‘ilonga ia ‘oku ‘ikai ‘ilo‘i ‘a e
lelei mei he koví ‘oku tonuhia ia; kae ‘ilonga ia ‘okú ne
‘ilo‘i ‘a e lelei mo e koví, ‘e tuku kiate ia ‘o fakatatau ki
he‘ene ngaahi holí, pe ‘okú ne holi ki he lelei pe koví, ki
he mo‘uí pe maté, ki he fiefiá pe ko e mamahi ‘a e
konisēnisí.
- 6 Ko ‘eni, ko e me‘a ‘i he‘eku ‘ilo‘i ‘a e ngaahi me‘a ní, ko
e ‘uma‘ā ha‘aku toe fie fai mo ha me‘a lahi hake ‘i he
ngāue kuo ui au ki aí?
- 7 Ko e ‘uma‘ā ‘eku faka‘amu ko ha ‘āngelo au, ke u lava
‘o lea ki he ngaahi ngata‘anga kotoa ‘o e māmaní?
- 8 He vakai, ‘oku foaki ‘e he ‘Eikí ki he ngaahi pule‘anga
kotoa pē, ‘i honau kakaí mo ‘enau leá, ke nau akonaki
‘aki ‘ene folofolá, ‘io, ‘i he fakapotopoto, ‘a e me‘a kotoa
pē ‘okú ne ‘afio‘i ‘oku ‘aonga ke nau ma‘ú; ko ia ‘oku
mahino kiate kitautolu ‘oku akonaki ‘e he ‘Eikí ‘i he
poto, ‘o fakatatau mo e me‘a ‘oku totonu mo mo‘oní.

Alma 29

O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine
heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of
God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance
unto every people!

Yea, I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice
of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption,
that they should repent and come unto our God, that
there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the
earth.

But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I
ought to be content with the things which the Lord
hath allotted unto me.

I ought not to harrow up in my desires the firm de-
cree of a just God, for I know that he granteth unto men
according to their desire, whether it be unto death or
unto life; yea, I know that he allotteth unto men, yea,
decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, ac-
cording to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or
unto destruction.

Yea, and I know that good and evil have come before
all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blame-
less; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is
given according to his desires, whether he desireth good
or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience.

Now, seeing that I know these things, why should I
desire more than to perform the work to which I have
been called?

Why should I desire that I were an angel, that I could
speak unto all the ends of the earth?

For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of
their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, yea, in
wisdom, all that he seeth fit that they should have;
therefore we see that the Lord doth counsel in wisdom,
according to that which is just and true.

- 9 'Oku ou 'ilo'i 'a e me'a kuo fekau 'e he 'Eiki kiate aú, pea 'oku ou vīkiviki ai. 'Oku 'ikai te u vīkiviki koe'uhi ko au pē, ka 'oku ou vīkiviki 'i he me'a kuo fekau 'e he 'Eiki kiate aú; 'io, pea ko hono 'uhinga 'eni 'o 'eku vīkiviki, ke u lava 'a pē 'o hoko ko ha me'angāue 'i he to'ukupu 'o e 'Otuá ke 'omi ha taha ki he fakatomalá; pea ko 'eku fiefiá 'eni.
- 10 Pea vakai, 'i he'eku sio ki he tokolahi 'o hoku kāingá 'oku loto-fakatomala mo'oni, pea nau ha'u ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, 'oku toki fonu ai hoku laumālié 'i he fiefia; pea 'oku ou toki manatu 'i 'a e me'a kuo fai 'e he 'Eiki ma'akú, 'io, kuó ne 'afio mai ki he'eku lotú; 'io, 'oku ou manatu ai ki hono to'ukupu 'alo'ofa 'a ia kuó ne hapai mai kiate aú.
- 11 'Io, pea 'oku ou manatu'i foki 'a e nofo pōpula 'a 'eku ngaahi tamaí; he 'oku ou 'ilo pau na'e fakahaofi 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki mei he pōpulá, 'o ne fokotu'u ai hono siasí; 'io, ko e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá, ko e 'Otua 'o 'Ēpalahame, ko e 'Otua 'o 'Aisaké, pea ko e 'Otua 'o Sēkopé, na'á ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá.
- 12 'Io, 'oku ou manatu'i ma'u ai pē 'a e nofo pōpula 'a 'eku ngaahi tamaí; pea ko e 'Otua pē ko iá na'á ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nima 'o e kau 'Isipité na'á ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he pōpulá.
- 13 'Io, pea ko e 'Otua pē ko iá na'á ne fokotu'u 'a hono siasí 'iate kinautolú; 'io, pea ko e 'Otua pē ko iá kuo ui au ki ha lakanga toputapu, ke u malanga 'aki 'a e folofolá ki he kakaí ni, pea kuó ne tuku kiate au ke tu'umālie 'eku ngaahi ngāue lahi, 'a ia 'oku kakato ai 'eku fiefiá.
- 14 Ka 'oku 'ikai te u fiefia koe'uhi ko e tu'umālie 'eku ngāue pe 'a'akú, ka 'oku kakato ange 'a 'eku fiefiá koe'uhi ko e tu'umālie 'a e ngāue 'a hoku kāingá, 'a ia kuo nau 'alu atu ki he fonua ko Nifái.
- 15 Vakai, kuo nau ngāue lahi 'aupito, pea nau ma'u ha ngaahi fua lahi; pea hono 'ikai ke lahi 'a 'enau totongí!
- 16 Ko 'eni, 'i he'eku fakakaukau ki he lavame'a 'o e ngāue 'a e fa'ahingá ni ko hoku kāingá, 'oku 'āvea 'a hoku laumālié, 'o hangē nai kuo mavahe ia mei hoku sinó, koe'uhi ko e fu'u lahi 'eku fiefiá.

I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it. I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me; yea, and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy.

And behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy; then do I remember what the Lord has done for me, yea, even that he hath heard my prayer; yea, then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me.

Yea, and I also remember the captivity of my fathers; for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage, and by this did establish his church; yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, and that same God did establish his church among them; yea, and that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the which my joy is full.

But I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full because of the success of my brethren, who have been up to the land of Nephi.

Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward!

Now, when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy.

17 Pea ko 'eni 'ofa ke tuku 'e he 'Otuá ki he fa'ahingá ni, ko hoku kāingá, ke nau nofo hifo 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá; 'io, pea mo kinautolu kotoa pē foki 'a ia ko e fua 'o 'enau ngaahi ngāu' ke 'oua te nau toe hū ki tu'a, kae kehe ke nau vīkiviki 'iate ia 'o ta'engata. Pea 'ofa ke tuku 'e he 'Otuá ke hoko 'o hangē ko 'eku ngaahi leá, 'o hangē ko e me'a kuó u lea'akí. 'Ēmeni.

And now may God grant unto these, my brethren, that they may sit down in the kingdom of God; yea, and also all those who are the fruit of their labors that they may go no more out, but that they may praise him forever. And may God grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken. Amen.

‘Alamā 30

- 1 Vakai, na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili hono fakanofonofa ‘o e kakai ‘o ‘Āmoní ‘i he fonua ko Selesoní, ‘io, pea hili foki hono teke ‘i ‘o e kau Leimaná mei he fonuá, pea tanu honau kakai maté ‘e he kakai ‘o e fonuá—
- 2 Ko ‘eni na‘e ‘ikai foki ke lau honau kau maté koe ‘uhi ko e fu‘u hulu honau tokolahí; pea ‘ikai foki lau mo e kau mate ‘o e kau Nífaí—ka na‘e hoko ‘o pehē kuo hili ‘enua tanu honau kakai maté, pea hili foki ‘a e ngaahi ‘aho ‘o e ‘aukai, mo e tangi, mo e lotu, (pea na‘e hoko ia ‘i hono hongofulu mā ono ‘o e ta‘u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai ‘o Nífaí), pea na‘e faka‘au ke ‘i ai ‘a e melino ma‘u ai pē ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e fonuá.
- 3 ‘Io, pea na‘e tokanga ‘a e kakaí ke tauhi ‘a e ngaahi fekau ‘a e ‘Eikí; pea na‘a nau fai pau ‘i he tauhi ‘o e ngaahi ouau ‘a e ‘Otuá, ‘o fakatatau ki he fono ‘a Mōsesé; he na‘e akonekina ‘a kinautolu ke tauhi ‘a e fono ‘a Mōsesé kae ‘oua ke fakakakato ia.
- 4 Pea ko ia na‘e ‘ikai ke ‘i he kakaí ha moveuveu ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e ta‘u hono hongofulu mā ono ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai ‘o Nífaí.
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he kamata‘anga hono hongofulu mā fitu ‘o e ta‘u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāu, na‘e ‘i ai ma‘u pē ‘a e melinó.
- 6 Ka na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he kongá ki mui ‘o hono hongofulu mā fitu ‘o e ta‘u, na‘e ha‘u ai ha tangata ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea ko e Fili ia ‘o Kalaisi, he na‘a ne kamata ke malanga ki he kakaí ‘o faka‘ikai ‘i ‘a e ngaahi kikite ‘a ia kuo lea ‘aki ‘e he kau palōfitá ‘o kau ki he hā‘ele mai ‘a Kalaisí.
- 7 Ko ‘eni na‘e ‘ikai foki ke ‘i ai ha lao ‘a ia ‘oku ta‘ofi ai ‘a e tui ‘a ha tangata; he na‘e ta‘ehoa ‘aupito mo e ngaahi fekau ‘a e ‘Otuá ke ‘i ai ha fono ‘e fokotu‘u ai ‘a e tangatá ‘i ha ngaahi tu‘unga ‘oku ta‘etatau.
- 8 He ‘oku pehē ‘i he folofolá: Mou fili he ‘ahó ni, ‘a ia te mou tauhí.
- 9 Ko ‘eni kapau na‘e loto ha tangata ke tauhi ‘a e ‘Otuá, ko hono faingamālie ia ‘o‘ona; kae kehe, kapau ‘okú ne tui ki he ‘Otuá, ko hono faingamālie ia ke tauhi kiate ia; ka ‘o kapau ‘oku ‘ikai te ne tui kiate ia na‘e ‘ikai ke ‘i ai ha lao ke tautea ‘i ai ia.

Alma 30

Behold, now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, yea, and also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land, and their dead were buried by the people of the land—

Now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers; neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered—but it came to pass after they had buried their dead, and also after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayer, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.

Yea, and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled.

And thus the people did have no disturbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace.

But it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year, there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.

Now there was no law against a man’s belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.

Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.

10 Ka 'o kapau na'á ne fakapō, na'e tautea ia ke mate; pea kapau na'á ne kaiha'a fakamālohi na'e tautea'i foki ia; pea kapau na'á ne tonono na'e tautea'i foki ia; 'io, na'e tautea'i 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko e ngaahi fai angahala kotoa ko 'eni.

11 He na'e 'i ai ha fono ke fakamāu'i 'a e tangata 'o fakatatau ki he'enua ngaahi hiá. Ka neongo iá, na'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha lao 'oku ta'ofi 'a e tui 'a ha tangata; ko ia, na'e tautea'i pē ha tangata koe'uhi ko e ngaahi hia kuó ne faí; ko ia na'e tu'unga tatau 'a e kakai kotoa pē.

12 Pea ko e fili 'o Kalaisi ko 'eni, 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko Kolihola, (pea na'e 'ikai ke lava 'e he laó 'o ma'u ha mafai kiate ia), na'á ne kamata ke malanga ki he kakai 'oku 'ikai totonu ke 'i ai ha Kalaisi. Pea ko e anga 'eni 'o 'ene malangá, 'o pehē:

13 'A kimoutolu 'oku mo'ua ki ha 'amanaki fakasesele mo ta'e'aonga, ko e hā 'oku mou fakamafasia 'i ai 'a kimoutolu 'i ha ngaahi me'a fakasesele pehē? Ko e hā 'oku mou kumi ai ki ha Kalaisi? He 'oku 'ikai ke lava 'e ha tangata 'o 'ilo'i ha me'a 'e hoko maí.

14 Vakai, ko e ngaahi me'a ko 'eni 'a ia 'oku mou ui ko e ngaahi kikité, 'a ia 'oku mou pehē kuo tukufakaholo maí 'e he kau palōfita mā'oni'oni, vakai, ko e ngaahi talatukufakaholo fakasesele ia 'a ho'omou ngaahi tamaí.

15 'Oku fēfē ho'omou 'ilo'i honau mo'oni? Vakai, 'oku 'ikai te mou lava 'o 'ilo'i ha ngaahi me'a 'oku 'ikai te mou mamata ki ai; ko ia 'oku 'ikai te mou lava 'o 'ilo'i 'e 'i ai ha Kalaisi.

16 'Oku mou vakai atu ki mu'a mo pehē 'oku mou sio ki ha fakamolemole 'i 'o ho'omou ngaahi angahalá. Kae vakai, ko e fua ia 'o ha fakakaukau vale; pea ko e anga mamio ko 'eni 'o ho'omou fakakaukau 'oku tupu ia mei he ngaahi talatukufakaholo 'a ho'omou ngaahi tamaí, 'a ia 'oku tohoaki'i atu 'a kimoutolu ki ha tui ki he ngaahi me'a 'oku 'ikai ke mo'oni.

But if he murdered he was punished unto death; and if he robbed he was also punished; and if he stole he was also punished; and if he committed adultery he was also punished; yea, for all this wickedness they were punished.

For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; therefore all men were on equal grounds.

And this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor, (and the law could have no hold upon him) began to preach unto the people that there should be no Christ. And after this manner did he preach, saying:

O ye that are bound down under a foolish and a vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things? Why do ye look for a Christ? For no man can know of anything which is to come.

Behold, these things which ye call prophecies, which ye say are handed down by holy prophets, behold, they are foolish traditions of your fathers.

How do ye know of their surety? Behold, ye cannot know of things which ye do not see; therefore ye cannot know that there shall be a Christ.

Ye look forward and say that ye see a remission of your sins. But behold, it is the effect of a frenzied mind; and this derangement of your minds comes because of the traditions of your fathers, which lead you away into a belief of things which are not so.

17 Pea na'e toe lahi mo e ngaahi me'a pehē na'á ne lea 'aki kiate kinautolu, 'o ne fakahā kiate kinautolu 'oku 'ikai lava ke 'i ai ha fakalelei 'e fai koe'uhi ko e ngaahi angahala 'a e tangatá; ka 'oku tu'u 'a e tangata 'i he mo'uí ni 'o fakatatau ki he anga 'o 'ene ngāue 'a'aná; ko ia 'oku tu'umālie 'a e tangata taki taha 'o fakatatau ki hono 'atamaí, pea 'oku ikuna 'e he tangata taki taha 'o fakatatau ki hono iví; pea 'ilonga ha me'a 'oku fai 'e ha tangata 'oku 'ikai ko e hia ia.

18 Pea na'e pehē 'ene malanga kiate kinautolú, 'o tohoaki'i atu 'a e loto 'o e tokolahi, 'o fakatupu 'a 'enau hiki hake honau 'ulú ke mā'olunga 'i he'enau fai angahalá, 'io, 'o takiaki'i atu 'a e kakai fefine tokolahi mo e kakai tangata foki ke nau fai 'a e ngaahi fe'auakí—pea tala ange kiate kinautolu 'o ka mate 'a e tangatá, ko hono ngata'angá pē ia.

19 Ko 'eni na'e 'alu atu 'a e tangatá ni ki he fonua ko Selesoní foki, ke malanga 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'i he kakai 'o 'Āmoní, 'a ia na'a nau hoko 'i ha taimi 'e taha ko e kau Leimana.

20 Kae vakai na'a nau poto ange 'i he tokolahi 'o e kau Nifái; he na'a nau puke ia, 'o ha'i, pea 'ave ia ki he 'ao 'o 'Āmoní, 'a ia ko ha taula'eiki lahi ki he kakai ko iá.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fekau ke 'ave ia mei he fonuá. Pea na'á ne ha'u ki he fonua ko Kitioné, 'o kamata ke malanga kiate kinautolu foki; pea na'e 'ikai ke loko tu'umālie 'i ai 'a 'ene ngāue, he na'e puke ia 'o ha'i 'o 'ave ki he 'ao 'o e taula'eiki lahi, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e fakamaau lahi 'o e fonuá.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē kiate ia 'e he taula'eiki lahí: Ko e hā 'okú ke 'alu holo ai 'o fakakoví 'i 'a e ngaahi hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eikí? Ko e hā 'okú ke ako ai ki he kakaí ni 'o pehē 'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha Kalaisí, 'o motuhi ai 'enau fiefiá? Ko e hā 'okú ke lea fakafetau ki he ngaahi kikite kotoa pē 'a e kau palōfita mā'oní'oní?

And many more such things did he say unto them, telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every man fared in this life according to the management of the creature; therefore every man prospered according to his genius, and that every man conquered according to his strength; and whatsoever a man did was no crime.

And thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many, causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness, yea, leading away many women, and also men, to commit whoredoms—telling them that when a man was dead, that was the end thereof.

Now this man went over to the land of Jershon also, to preach these things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the Lamanites.

But behold they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who was a high priest over that people.

And it came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the land. And he came over into the land of Gideon, and began to preach unto them also; and here he did not have much success, for he was taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief judge over the land.

And it came to pass that the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go about perverting the ways of the Lord? Why do ye teach this people that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings? Why do ye speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

23 Ko 'eni ko e hingoa 'o e taula'eiki lahi ko Kitiona. Pea na'e pehe 'e Kolihola kiate ia: Koe'uhi 'oku 'ikai te u akonaki 'aki 'a e ngaahi talatukufakaholo vale 'a ho'omou ngaahi tama'i, pea koe'uhi ko e 'ikai te u ako'i 'a e kaka'i ni ke nau ha'isia ki he ngaahi ouau mo e ngaahi ngaue vale 'a ia kuo fokotu'u 'e he kau taula'eiki 'i mu'a, ke nau ma'u 'a e malohi mo e mafai kiate kinautolu, ke tuku pe'a kinautolu 'i he ta'e'ilo, koe'uhi ke 'oua te nau hiki hake honau 'ulu, kae fakamo'ulaloa 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki ho'o ngaahi lea.

24 'Oku mou pehe ko ha kakai tau'ataina 'a e kaka'i ni. Vakai, 'oku ou pehe 'oku nau popula. 'Oku mou pehe 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi kikite ko ia 'i mu'a. Vakai, 'oku ou pehe 'oku 'ikai te mou 'ilo 'oku mo'oni ia.

25 'Oku mou pehe ko e kaka'i ni ko ha kakai halaia mo to ki lalo, ko e tupu mei he maumau-fono 'a ha matu'a. Vakai, 'oku ou pehe 'oku 'ikai ke halaia ha tamasi'i koe'uhi ko 'ene matu'a.

26 Pea 'oku mou pehe foki 'e ha'e mai 'a Kalaisi. Kae vakai, 'oku ou pehe 'oku 'ikai te mou 'ilo'i pe'e 'i ai ha Kalaisi. Pea mou pehe foki 'e tamate'i ia koe'uhi ko e ngaahi angahala 'a e manani—

27 Pea 'oku pehe ho'omou takiaki'i atu 'a e kaka'i ni ke muimui ki he ngaahi talatukufakaholo vale 'a ho'omou ngaahi tama'i, pea fakatatau mo ho'omou ngaahi holi; pea 'oku mou fakapopula 'i 'a kinautolu, 'o hangē nai 'oku nau nofo popula, koe'uhi ke mou fakafonu 'aki 'a kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi ngaue 'a honau nima, ke 'oua na'a nau lava 'o sio hake 'i he loto-to'a, pea ke 'oua na'a nau loto-to'a ke faka'aonga 'i 'a 'enau ngaahi totonu mo honau ngaahi faingamalié.

28 'Io, 'oku 'ikai te nau loto-to'a ke faka'aonga 'i 'a ia 'oku 'anautolu telia na'a nau faka'ita 'i 'a honau kau taula'eiki, 'a ia 'oku fakakavenga 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau mo 'enau ngaahi holi, pea kuo nau ngaohi 'a kinautolu ke tui, ko e me'a 'i he 'enau ngaahi talatukufakaholo mo 'enau ngaahi misi mo 'enau ngaahi mahaló mo 'enau ngaahi me'a-ha-mai mo 'enau ngaahi me'a lilo loi, pea ka 'ilo ange, kuo 'ikai te nau fai 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau ngaahi lea, 'oku nau fakatupu-houhau ai ki ha tokotaha ta'e'iloa, 'a ia 'oku nau pehe ko e 'Otuá—ko ha tokotaha kuo te'eki ai ke sio ai pe 'ilo'i, 'a ia kuo 'ikai ai pe ke 'i ai, pea e 'ikai ai pe ke 'i ai.

Now the high priest's name was Giddonah. And Korihor said unto him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down according to thy words.

Ye say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage. Ye say that those ancient prophecies are true. Behold, I say that ye do not know that they are true.

Ye say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents.

And ye also say that Christ shall come. But behold, I say that ye do not know that there shall be a Christ. And ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world—

And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.

Yea, they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God—a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be.

29 Ko 'eni 'i he vakai 'e he taula'eiki lahi mo e fakamaau lahi ki he fefeka 'o hono lotó, 'io, 'i he'ena 'ilo'i na'a mo e 'Otuá te ne kapekape ki ai, na'e 'ikai te na fie fai ha'ana tali ki he'ene ngaahi leá; ka na fekau ke ha'i ia; 'o na tukuange ia ki he nima 'o e kau pulé, 'o fekau ke 'ave ia ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, koe'uhi ke 'omi ia ki he 'ao 'o 'Alamaá, mo e tu'i fakamaau 'a ia 'oku kōvana ki hono kotoa 'o e fonuá.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono 'omi ia ki he 'ao 'o 'Alamā mo e fakamaau lahi, na'á ne fai atu pē 'i he founa tatau 'o hangē pē ko ia na'á ne fai 'i he fonua ko Kitoné; 'io, na'e hoko atu pē 'ene lea taukaé.

31 Pea na'á ne tu'u 'o fai 'a e ngaahi lea fielahi le'o-lahi 'i he 'ao 'o 'Alamaá, mo ne lau'ikovi'i 'a e kau taula'eiki mo e kau akonaki, 'o tukuaki'i 'a kinautolu ki he'enua tohoaki'i atu 'a e kakaí ke muimui 'i he ngaahi talatukufakaholo fakasesele 'a 'enua ngaahi tamaí, koe'uhi ke mou fakafonu 'aki 'a kinautolu 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a e kakaí.

32 Ko 'eni na'e pehē ange 'e 'Alamā kiate ia: 'Okú ke 'ilo'i 'oku 'ikai te mau fakafonu 'aki 'a kinautolu 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a e kakaí ni; he vakai kuó u ngāue talu 'a e kamata 'a e pule 'a e kau fakamāu 'o 'u mai ki he 'ahó ni, 'aki hoku ongo nima 'o 'okú ko hoku tauhi, neongo 'eku ngaahi fefononga'aki lahi 'i he fonuá ke fakahā 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá ki hoku kakaí.

33 Pea neongo 'a e ngaahi ngāue lahi kuó u fai 'i he siasí, ka kuo te'eki ai te u ma'u ha kihí'i momo'i sēnine koe'uhi ko 'eku ngāué; pea pehē mo hoku kāingá kotoa, kae ngata pe 'i he nofo'anga fakamāu; pea kuo mau ma'u 'i ai ki hono fuoloa 'o 'emau ngāue pē 'o fakatatau ki he lao ki homau taimí.

34 Pea ko 'eni, kapau leva 'oku 'ikai te mau ma'u ha me'a ki he'enua ngaahi ngāue 'i he siasí, ko e hā hano 'aonga kiate kinautolu ke ngāue 'i he siasí ka ko e malanga 'aki 'o e mo'oní, koe'uhi ke mau ma'u 'a e nēkeneka 'i he fiefia 'a homau kāingá?

35 Pea ko e hā 'okú ke pehē ai 'oku mau malanga ki he kakaí ni ke ma'u ha totongi, ka 'oku ke 'ilo'i, 'e koe, 'oku 'ikai te mau ma'u ha totongi? Pea ko 'eni, 'okú ke tui koá 'oku mau kākāa'i 'a e kakaí ni, 'a ia 'oku langaki ai 'a e fu'u fiefia pehē 'i honau lotó?

36 Pea na'e tali ange 'e Korihola kiate ia, 'Io.

Now when the high priest and the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart, yea, when they saw that he would revile even against God, they would not make any reply to his words; but they caused that he should be bound; and they delivered him up into the hands of the officers, and sent him to the land of Zarahemla, that he might be brought before Alma, and the chief judge who was governor over all the land.

And it came to pass that when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner as he did in the land of Gideon; yea, he went on to blaspheme.

And he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people.

Now Alma said unto him: Thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people; for behold I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with mine own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor; neither has any of my brethren, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.

And now, if we do not receive anything for our labors in the church, what doth it profit us to labor in the church save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our brethren?

Then why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain, when thou, of thyself, knowest that we receive no gain? And now, believest thou that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts?

And Korihor answered him, Yea.

37 Pea toki pehē ange 'e 'Alamā kiate ia: 'Okú ke tui koā 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otua?

38 Peá ne tala ange, 'Ikai.

39 Ko 'eni na'e pehē ange 'e 'Alamā kiate ia: Te ke toe faka'ikai'i koā 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otua, pea faka'ikai'i foki 'a e Kalaisi? He vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'oku ou 'ilo'i 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otua, kae 'uma'ā foki 'e hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisi.

40 Pea ko 'eni ko e hā ha fakamo'oni 'okú ke ma'u 'oku 'ikai ha 'Otua, pe 'e 'ikai hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisi? 'Oku ou pehē kiate koe 'oku 'ikai te ke ma'u ha me'a, tuku kehe pē ho'o leá.

41 Kae vakai, 'oku ou ma'u 'a e me'a kotoa pē ko ha fakamo'oni 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'á ni; pea 'okú ke ma'u foki 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē ko ha fakamo'oni kiate koe 'oku mo'oni ia; pea te ke faka'ikai'i ia? 'Okú ke tui koā 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'á ni?

42 Vakai, 'oku ou 'ilo'i 'okú ke tui, ka kuo uluisino 'iate koe ha laumālie kākā, pea kuó ke li'aki 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá ke 'oua na'a ma'u 'e ia ha nofo'anga 'iate koe; ka kuo pule'i koe 'e he tēvoló, pea 'okú ne taki holo koe, 'o ne fokotu'u 'a e ngaahi tauhele ke faka'auha 'a e fānau 'a e 'Otuá.

43 Pea ko 'eni na'e pehē ange 'e Kolihola kia 'Alamā: Kapau te ke fakahā mai kiate au ha faka'ilonga ke fakamahino kiate au 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otua, 'io, fakahā mai kiate au 'okú ne ma'u 'a e mālohi, pea te u toki tui 'oku mo'oni ho'o ngaahi leá.

44 Ka na'e pehē ange 'e 'Alamā kiate ia: Kuó ke ma'u ha ngaahi faka'ilonga fe'unga; te ke 'ahi'ahi'i ho 'Otuá? Te ke pehē koā, Fakahā mai kiate au ha faka'ilonga, ka kuó ke ma'u 'a e fakamo'oni 'a e fá'ahingá ni kotoa pē ko ho kāingá, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni kotoa pē? Kuo tuku 'a e ngaahi folofolá 'i ho 'aó, 'io, pea 'oku fakahā 'e he me'a kotoa pē 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otua; 'io, na'a mo e māmaní pea mo e ngaahi me'a kotoa 'oku 'i hono funga 'o iá, 'io, mo 'ene'alú, 'io, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e ngaahi palanite kotoa pē 'a ia 'oku nau 'alu 'i honau anga 'onautolú 'oku nau fakamo'oni 'oku 'i ai ha Tupu'anga Fungani Mā'olunga.

And then Alma said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, Nay.

Now Alma said unto him: Will ye deny again that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold, I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that Christ shall come.

And now what evidence have ye that there is no God, or that Christ cometh not? I say unto you that ye have none, save it be your word only.

But, behold, I have all things as a testimony that these things are true; and ye also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true; and will ye deny them? Believest thou that these things are true?

Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the Spirit of God that it may have no place in you; but the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you about, working devices that he may destroy the children of God.

And now Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words.

But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs enough; will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Show unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets? The scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator.

45 Ka neongo iá ka 'okú ke 'alu holo koā 'o tohoaki'i atu 'a e lotó 'o e kakaí ni, 'o fakamo'oni'i kiate kinautolu 'oku 'ikai ha 'Otua? Peá neongo iá ka te ke kei faka'ikai'i kotoa koā 'a e ngaahi fakamo'oni ni? Peá ne pehē ange: 'Io, te u faka'ikai pē, tuku kehe kapau te ke fakahā mai kiate au ha faka'ilonga.

46 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē ange 'e 'Alamā kiate ia: Vakai, 'oku ou lotó-mamahi koe'uhi ko e fefeka ho lotó, 'io, pea mo ho' o kei fakafepaki'i 'a e laumālie 'o e mo'oni, koe'uhi ke faka'auha nai ho laumālie.

47 Kae vakai, 'oku lelei ange ke mole ho laumālie 'i ho' o hoko ko e me'a ke 'ohifo ai 'a e laumālie 'o ha tokolahi ki he faka'auhá, 'i ho' o loí mo ho' o ngaahi lea fakaheheheké; ko ia kapau te ke toe faka'ikai, vakai 'e te'ia koe 'e he 'Otuá, koe'uhi ke ke noa, pea 'e 'ikai te ke toe lava 'o lea, ke 'oua na'a ke toe kākaa'i 'a e kakaí ni.

48 Ko 'eni na'e pehē ange 'e Kolihola kiate ia: 'Oku 'ikai te u faka'ikai'i 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otuá, ka 'oku 'ikai te u tui 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otua; pea na'á ku pehē foki, 'oku 'ikai te ke 'ilo pē 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otua; pea kapau 'e 'ikai te ke fakahā mai kiate au ha faka'ilonga, 'e 'ikai te u tui.

49 Ko 'eni na'e pehē ange 'e 'Alamā kiate ia: Tē u tuku pē 'eni kiate koe ko ha faka'ilonga, 'a ia ko ho te'ia ke ke noa, 'o fakatatau mo 'eku ngaahi leá; pea 'oku ou pehē, 'i he huafa 'o e 'Otuá, 'e te'ia koe ke ke noa, pea 'e 'ikai te ke toe lava 'o lea.

50 Ko 'eni 'i he hili 'a e lea 'aki 'e 'Alamā 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e te'ia 'a Kolihola 'o noa, 'o 'ikai te ne toe lava 'o lea, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a 'Alamaá.

51 Pea ko 'eni 'i he vakai 'e he fakamaau lahí ki he me'á ni, na'e mafao atu hono nimá 'o tohi kia Kolihola, 'o pehē: Kuó ke tui ki he māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá? Na'á ke lotó ke fakahā 'ia hai 'e 'Alamā 'ene faka'ilongá? Ko ho lotó koā ke ne fakamamahi'i ha ni'ihí kehe, ke fakahā kiate koe ha faka'ilonga? Vakai, kuó ne fakahā kiate koe ha faka'ilonga; pea ko 'eni te ke toe fakakikihí ni?

52 Pea na'e mafao atu 'e Kolihola 'a hono nimá 'o ne tohi, 'o pehē: 'Oku ou 'ilo'i 'oku ou noa, he 'oku 'ikai te u lava 'o lea; pea 'oku ou 'ilo'i 'oku 'ikai ha me'a ka ko e māfima'fi pē 'o e 'Otuá 'e lava ke 'omi 'eni kiate aú; 'io, pea na'á ku 'ilo'i ma'u pē foki 'oku 'i ai ha 'Otua.

And yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

And now it came to pass that Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, yea, that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth, that thy soul may be destroyed.

But behold, it is better that thy soul should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by thy lying and by thy flattering words; therefore if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb, that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more, that thou shalt not deceive this people any more.

Now Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also, that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall no more have utterance.

Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

And now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God? In whom did ye desire that Alma should show forth his sign? Would ye that he should afflict others, to show unto thee a sign? Behold, he has showed unto you a sign; and now will ye dispute more?

And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; yea, and I always knew that there was a God.

53 Kae vakai, kuo kākāa i au 'e he tēvoló; he na'á ne hā mai kiate au 'i he tatau 'o ha 'āngelo, 'o ne pehē mai kiate au: 'Alu 'o fakatafoki mai 'a e kakaí ni, he kuo nau hē kotoa pē 'o muimui ki ha 'Otua ta'e'iloa. Pea na'á ne pehē mai kiate au: 'Oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha 'Otua; 'io, pea na'á ne ako 'i au 'i he ngaahi me'a ke u lea 'akí. Pea kuó u ako 'aki 'ene ngaahi leá; pea na'á ku ako 'aki ia koe 'uhi 'oku mālie ia ki he 'atamai fakakakanó; peá u ako 'aki ia, kae 'oua kuo ola lahi 'eku ngāu'é, 'o a'u ki he'eku tui 'oku mo'oni ia; pea ko e me'a 'eni na'á ku teke 'i ai 'a e mo'oni 'o a'u ki he'eku 'ohifo 'a e fu'u fakamala'ia ni kiate au.

54 Ko 'eni 'i he hili 'ene lea 'aki 'eni, na'á ne kole kia 'Alamā ke ne lotu ki he 'Otua, koe 'uhi ke to'o meiate ia 'a e fakamala'ia.

55 Ka na'e pehē ange 'e 'Alamā kiate ia: Ka 'iloange 'e to'o meiate koe 'a e fakamala'ia ni te ke kei kākāa 'i pē 'a e loto 'o e kakaí ni; ko ia 'e hoko pē kiate koe 'o hangē ko e finangalo 'o e 'Eikí.

56 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ke to'o 'a e fakamala'ia meia Kolihola; ka na'e kapusi ki tu'a ia, 'o ne 'alu holo mei he fale ki he fale 'o kole ha'ane me'akai.

57 Ko 'eni na'e fanongonongo leva 'a e 'ilo ki he me'a kuo hoko kia Koliholá 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá; 'io, na'e 'oatu 'a e fanongonongo 'e he fakamaau lahí ki he kakai kotoa pē 'i he fonuá, 'o fakahā kiate kinautolu kuo tui ki he ngaahi lea 'a Koliholá 'oku totonu ke nau fakatomala fakavavevave, telia na'a tō 'a e ngaahi tautea pē ko ía kiate kinautolu.

58 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e mahino kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'a e fai angahala 'a Koliholá; ko ia na'a nau toe ului kotoa pē ki he 'Eikí; pea na'e fakangata 'e he me'á ni 'a e fai hiá 'o hangē ko Koliholá. Pea na'e 'alu holo 'a Kolihola mei he fale ki he fale 'o kole ha me'akai ke ne mo'ui ai.

59 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga 'ene 'alu holo 'i he kakaí, 'io, 'i ha kakai kuo nau fakamavahe 'i kinautolu mei he kau Nifai, pea ui 'a kinautolu ko e kau Sōlamí, pea ko honau takí ko ha tangata ko hono hingoá ko Sōlami—pea 'i he'ene 'alu atu 'i honau lotolotonga, vakai na'e 'ohofi ia 'o molomoloki hifo, kae 'oua kuó ne mate.

But behold, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say. And I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind; and I taught them, even until I had much success, inasmuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.

Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.

But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.

And it came to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for his food.

Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; yea, the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent, lest the same judgments would come unto them.

And it came to pass that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor; therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord; and this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor. And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.

And it came to pass that as he went forth among the people, yea, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram—and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.

60 Pea ko ia 'oku tau vakai ki hono iku'anga 'o e
tokotaha 'oku fakakovi'i 'a e ngaahi hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eiki;
pea ko ia 'oku hā mai kiate kitautolu 'e 'ikai ke malu'i 'e
he tēvoló 'a 'ene fānaú 'i he 'aho faka'osí, ka 'okú ne toho
fakavavevave hifo 'a kinautolu ki heli.

And thus we see the end of him who perverteth the
ways of the Lord; and thus we see that the devil will not
support his children at the last day, but doth speedily
drag them down to hell.

‘Alamā 3 I

- 1 Ko ‘eni na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili ‘a e mate ‘a Koliholá, pea ma‘u ‘e ‘Alamā ‘a e tala ‘oku fakakovi‘i ‘e he kau Sōlamí ‘a e ngaahi hā‘ele‘anga ‘o e ‘Eikí, pea ko Sōlami, ‘a ia ko honau takí, ‘okú ne takiaki‘i ‘a e loto ‘o e kakaí ke nau punou hifo ki ha ngaahi tamapua ‘oku noa, pea na‘e toe faka‘au ke mamahi lahi ‘a hono lotó koe‘uhi ko e fai angahala ‘a e kakaí.
- 2 He ko e tupu‘anga ia ‘o e fu‘u loto-mamahi lahi ‘a ‘Alamaá ko ‘ene ‘ilo‘i ‘oku ‘i ai ha fai angahala ‘i hono kakaí; ko ia na‘e fu‘u mamahi lahi ‘aupito hono lotó koe‘uhi ko e mavahe ‘a e kau Sōlamí mei he kau Nífaí.
- 3 Ko ‘eni na‘e fakataha mai ‘a e kau Sōlamí ki ha fonua na‘a nau ui ko ‘Aniteonumi, ‘a ia na‘e tu‘u ‘i he hahake ‘o e fonua ko Seilahemalá, ‘a ia na‘e meimei fehokotaki mo e matātahi, ‘a ia na‘e ‘i he tonga ‘o e fonua ko Selesoní, ‘a ia na‘e toe fehokotaki mo e feitu‘u maomaonganoa ‘i he tongá, ‘a ia ko e feitu‘u maomaonganoa na‘e fonu ‘i he kau Leimaná.
- 4 Ko ‘eni na‘e fu‘u manavahē ‘aupito ‘a e kau Nífaí telia na‘a fetu‘utaki vā lelei ‘a e kau Sōlamí mo e kau Leimaná, ‘o hoko ia ko ha fu‘u mole lahi ki he kau Nífaí.
- 5 Pea ko ‘eni, koe‘uhi kuo hoko hono malanga ‘aki ‘o e folofolá ko ha fu‘u me‘a ke takiaki‘i ai ‘a e kakaí ke fai ‘a ia ‘oku totonu—‘io, na‘e mālohi lahi ange ‘ene ngāuē ‘i he ‘fakakaukau ‘a e kakaí ‘i he heletā, pe ko ha toe me‘a kehe, ‘a ia kuo hoko kiate kinautolu—ko ia na‘e fakakaukau ai ‘a ‘Alamā ‘oku ‘aonga ke nau ‘ahí‘ahí‘i ‘a e ivi ‘o e folofola ‘a e ‘Otuá.
- 6 Ko ia na‘á ne ‘ave ai ‘a ‘Āmoni, mo ‘Ēlone, mo ‘Omínea; peá ne tuku ‘a Himinai ‘i he siasí ‘i Seilahemala; ka ko e toko tolu ko eé, na‘á ne ‘ave mo ia, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo ‘Amuleki mo Sisolome, ‘a ia na‘e ‘i Mīlekí; pea na‘á ne ‘ave foki mo e toko ua ‘o hono ngaahi fohá.
- 7 Ko ‘eni ko e lahi taha ‘i hono ngaahi fohá na‘e ‘ikai te ne ‘ave mo ia, pea ko hono hingoá ko Hilamani; ka ko e hingoa ‘o kinaua ‘a ia na‘á ne ‘ave mo iá ko Sipilone mo Kolianitoni; pea ko e hingoa ‘eni ‘o e fa‘ahinga na‘a nau ‘alu mo ia ki he kau Sōlamí, ke malanga ‘aki kiate kinautolu ‘a e folofolá.

Alma 3 I

Now it came to pass that after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people.

For it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people; therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites.

Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum, which was east of the land of Zarahemla, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of Jershon, which also bordered upon the wilderness south, which wilderness was full of the Lamanites.

Now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a correspondence with the Lamanites, and that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites.

And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just—yea, it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them—therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

Therefore he took Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner; and Himni he did leave in the church in Zarahemla; but the former three he took with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at Melek; and he also took two of his sons.

Now the eldest of his sons he took not with him, and his name was Helaman; but the names of those whom he took with him were Shiblón and Coriantón; and these are the names of those who went with him among the Zoramites, to preach unto them the word.

8 Ko 'eni ko e kau Sōlamí ko e kau tafoki mei he kau Nīfái; ko ia kuo tomu'a malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá kiate kinautolu.

9 Ka kuo nau tō ki he ngaahi hala lahi, 'āsílí he na'e 'ikai te nau tokanga ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, mo 'ene ngaahi tu'utu'uní, 'o fakatatau ki he fono 'a Mōsesé.

10 Pea na'e 'ikai foki te nau tauhi 'a e ngaahi ouau 'o e siasí, pea taukave 'i he lotu mo e kole tāuma'u ki he 'Otuá 'i he 'aho taki taha, ke 'oua te nau mo'ua ki he 'ahi'ahí.

11 'Io, ko hono mo'oní, na'a nau fakakehe 'i 'a e ngaahi hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eikí 'i ha ngaahi me'a lahi; ko ia, ko hono 'uhinga 'eni, na'e 'alu ai 'a 'Alamā mo hono kāingá ki he fonuá ke malanga 'aki 'a e folofolá kiate kinautolu.

12 Ko 'eni, 'i he 'enau a'u atu ki he fonuá, vakai, na'a nau ofo 'i he 'enau vakai kuo langa 'e he kau Sōlamí ha ngaahi fale lotu, 'o nau fakataha ki ai 'i he 'aho 'e taha 'o e uiké, 'a ia na'a nau ui ko e 'aho 'o e 'Eikí; pea na'a nau lotu 'i ha founga kuo te'eki ai ke sio ai 'a 'Alamā mo hono kāingá;

13 He na'a nau langa ha potu 'i he loto mālīe 'o honau fale lotú, 'a ia ko e feitu'u ke tu'u ai, 'a ia na'e mā'olunga hake ia 'i he 'ulú; pea ko hono fungá 'e fe'unga pē ke hao ai ha toko taha.

14 Ko ia, 'ilonga ia na'e fie lotú kuo pau ke ne 'alu hake 'o tu'u 'i hono funga 'o iá, pea hiki hake hono nimá ki he langí, 'o kalanga 'aki 'a e le'o-lahi, 'o pehē:

15 'E 'Otuá mā'oni'oni, mā'oni'oni; 'oku mau tui ko e 'Otuá koe, pea 'oku mau tui 'okú ke mā'oni'oni, pea na'á ke hoko ko ha laumālie, pea ko ha laumālie koe, pea te ke hoko ko ha laumālie 'o ta'engata.

16 'E 'Otuá mā'oni'oni, 'oku mau tui na'á ke fakamavahe 'i 'a kimautilu mei homau kāingá; pea 'oku 'ikai ke mau tui ki he talatukufakaholo 'a homau kāingá, 'a ia na'e tukufakaholo mai kiate kinautolu 'i he loto-fakatamasi 'i 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí; ka 'oku mau tui kuó ke fili 'a kimautilu ke hoko ko ho'o fānau mā'oni'oni; pea kuó ke fakahā mai foki kiate kimautilu 'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha Kalaisi.

Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses.

Neither would they observe the performances of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.

Yea, in fine, they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances; therefore, for this cause, Alma and his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto them.

Now, when they had come into the land, behold, to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built synagogues, and that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord; and they did worship after a manner which Alma and his brethren had never beheld;

For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head; and the top thereof would only admit one person.

Therefore, whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:

Holy, holy God; we believe that thou art God, and we believe that thou art holy, and that thou wast a spirit, and that thou art a spirit, and that thou wilt be a spirit forever.

Holy God, we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren; and we do not believe in the tradition of our brethren, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers; but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children; and also thou hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ.

17 Ka 'okú ke tatau 'i he 'aneafí, 'aho nī, pea ta'engata; pea kuó ke fili 'a kinautolu ke mau ma'u 'a e fakamo'uí, ka ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku takatakai 'iate kinautolu kuó ke tu'utu'uni ke kapusi hifo 'a kinautolu 'i ho houhaú ki heli; pea ko e mau mā'oni'oni ia, 'E 'Otuá, 'oku mau fakafeta'i ai kiate koe, pea 'oku mau toe fakafeta'i foki kiate koe koe'uhi kuó ke fili 'a kinautolu, ke 'oua na'a kākaa'i 'a kinautolu ke muimui ki he ngaahi talatukufakaholo fakasesele 'a homau kāingá, 'a ia 'oku fakamafasia' 'a kinautolu ki ha tui kia Kalaisi, 'a ia 'oku tākiaki'i honau lotó ke nau hē 'o mama'o meiate koe, ko homau 'Otuá.

18 Pea 'oku mau toe fakafeta'i kiate koe, 'E 'Otuá, koe'uhi ko ha kakai kuo fili mo ha kakai mā'oni'oni 'a kinautolu. 'Ēmeni.

19 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e fanongo 'a 'Alamā mo hono kāinga mo hono ngaahi foha ki he ngaahi lotu ko 'ení, na'e fakatumutumu lahi honau lotó 'o lahi hake 'i he me'a kotoa pē.

20 He vakai, na'e 'alu atu 'a e tangata taki taha 'o fai 'a e lotu tatau ko 'ení.

21 Ko 'eni na'a nau ui 'a e potu ko iá ko Lameiumitomi, 'a ia ko hono 'uhingá, ko e tu'unga toputapu.

22 Ko 'eni, na'e fai mei he tu'unga pē ko iá, 'e he tangata taki taha, 'a e lotu tatau pē ki he 'Otuá, 'o fakafeta'i ki honau 'Otuá koe'uhi kuó ne fili 'a kinautolu, pea kuo 'ikai te ne tatakai 'a kinautolu ke muimui ki he talatukufakaholo 'a honau kāingá, pea kuo 'ikai kākaa'i honau lotó ke nau tui ki ha ngaahi me'a 'e hokó, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai ke nau 'ilo ha me'a ki ai.

23 Ko 'eni, 'i he 'osi hono 'oatu kotoa 'e he kakai 'a e fakafeta'i 'i he founga pē ko iá, na'a nau foki atu ki honau ngaahi 'apí, 'o 'ikai te nau toe lau ki honau 'Otuá kae 'oua kuo nau toe fakataha mai ki he tu'unga toputapú ke 'oatu 'a e fakafeta'i 'o hangē ko 'enau foungó.

24 Ko 'eni 'i he sio 'a 'Alamā ki aí na'e mamahi hono lotó; he na'á ne vakai ko ha kakai fai angahala mo paongata 'a 'a kinautolu; 'io, na'á ne vakai kuo pīkitai honau lotó ki he koulá, mo e silivá, pea ki he ngaahi koloa lelei kehekehe kotoa pē.

25 'Io, pea na'á ne vakai foki kuo fielahi honau lotó 'i he fu'u pōlepole lahi, 'i he 'enau loto-hikisiá.

But thou art the same yesterday, today, and forever; and thou hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by thy wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee; and we also thank thee that thou hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God.

And again we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people. Amen.

Now it came to pass that after Alma and his brethren and his sons had heard these prayers, they were astonished beyond all measure.

For behold, every man did go forth and offer up these same prayers.

Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.

Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayer unto God, thanking their God that they were chosen of him, and that he did not lead them away after the tradition of their brethren, and that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come, which they knew nothing about.

Now, after the people had all offered up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner.

Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people; yea, he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.

Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride.

26 Pea na‘á ne hiki hake hono le‘ó ki he langí, ‘o kalanga, ‘o pehē: ‘Oiauē, ‘e fēfē hono fuoloa, ‘e ‘Eiki, ‘a ho‘o tuku ke nofo ho‘o kau tamaio‘eiki ‘i laló ni ‘i he kakanó, ‘o vakai ki he fai angahala fakalielia pehē ‘i he fānau ‘a e tangatá?

27 Vakai, ‘E ‘Otua, ‘oku nau tangi kiate koe, ka kuo mo‘ua honau lotó ‘i he‘enau loto-híkisiá. Vakai, ‘E ‘Otua, ‘oku nau tangi kiate koe ‘aki honau ngutú, ka kuo nau fakafuofuolahí, ‘o fu‘u lahi ‘aupito, ‘i he ngaahi me‘a laukau ‘o e māmaní.

28 Vakai, ‘E hoku ‘Otua, vakai ki honau ngaahi kofu mahu‘ingá, mo honau ngaahi mamá, mo honau ngaahi vesá, mo ‘enau ngaahi me‘a teuteu ‘o e koulá, pea mo ‘enau ngaahi me‘a mahu‘inga kotoa kuo teuteu ‘aki ‘a kinautolú; pea vakai, ‘oku píkitaí ki ai ‘a honau lotó, ka ‘oku nau tangi kiate koe mo pehē—‘Oku mau fakafeta‘i kiate koe, ‘E ‘Otua, koe‘uhi ko ha kakai ‘a kinautolu kuo fili mo‘ó u, ka ‘e ‘auha ‘a e kakai kehé.

29 ‘Io, pea ‘oku nau pehē kuó ke fakahā kiate kinautolu ‘e ‘ikai ke ‘i ai ha Kalaisi.

30 ‘E ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otua, ‘e fēfē hono fuoloa ‘o ho‘o tuku ke ‘i ai ‘a e fai angahala mo e ta‘etui pehē ‘i he kakaí ni? ‘E ‘Eiki, ‘ofa ke ke tuku mai ha ivi ke u fa‘a kātaki‘i ‘a hoku ngaahi vaivaí. He ‘oku ou vaivai, pea ‘oku hoko ‘a e fai angahala pehē ‘i he kakaí ni ko e fakamamahi ki hoku laumālié.

31 ‘E ‘Eiki, ‘oku fu‘u mamahi lahi hoku lotó; ‘ofa mu‘a ‘o fakafiemālié‘i hoku laumālié‘ia Kalaisi. ‘E ‘Eiki, ‘ofa mu‘a ‘o tuku mai kiate au ke u ma‘u ‘a e ivi, ke u kātaki‘i ‘i he fa‘a kātaki ‘a e ngaahi mamahí ni ‘a ia kuo pau ke hoko mai kiate aú, ko e me‘a ‘i he angahala ‘a e kakai ní.

32 ‘E ‘Eiki, ‘ofa mu‘a ‘o fakafiemālié‘i hoku laumālié, ‘o tuku mai kiate au ke ola lelei ‘eku ngāué, kae ‘uma‘ā foki hoku kaungā-ngāue ‘oku ‘iate aú—‘io, ko ‘Āmoni, mo ‘Ēlone, mo ‘Ominea, mo ‘Amuleki foki mo Sisolome, kae ‘uma‘ā foki hoku ongo fohá—‘io, ‘ofa mu‘a ‘o fakafiemālié‘i ‘a e fa‘ahingá ni kotoa pē, ‘E ‘Eiki. ‘Io, ‘ofa mu‘a ‘o fakafiemālié‘i honau laumālié‘ia Kalaisi.

33 ‘Ofa mu‘a ‘o tuku mai kiate kinautolu ke nau ma‘u ‘a e ivi, ke nau kātaki‘i ‘enau ngaahi mamahi ‘a ia kuo pau ke hoko kiate kinautolu ko e me‘a ‘i he ngaahi angahala ‘a e kakai ní.

And he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to behold such gross wickedness among the children of men?

Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.

Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, and yet they cry unto thee and say—We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish.

Yea, and they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.

O Lord God, how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.

O Lord, my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; wilt thou comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me—yea, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, and also my two sons—yea, even all these wilt thou comfort, O Lord. Yea, wilt thou comfort their souls in Christ.

Wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them because of the iniquities of this people.

- 34 'E 'Eiki, 'ofa mu'a 'o tuku mai kiate kimautilu ke mau lava 'o toe fakatafoki mai 'a kinautilu kiate koe 'ia Kalaisi.
- 35 Vakai, 'E 'Eiki, 'oku mahu'inga honau laumalié, pea ko honau tokolahi ko homau kaiinga; ko ia, 'ofa mu'a, 'E 'Eiki, 'o tuku mai kiate kimautilu 'a e malohi mo e potu ke mau lava 'o toe fakatafoki 'a e fa'ahinga ni, ko homau kaiinga, kiate koe.
- 36 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehe 'i he 'osi leva 'a hono lea 'aki 'e 'Alama 'a e ngaahi lea ni, na'a ne hilifaki hono ongo nimá kiate kinautilu kotoa pe na'e 'iate ia. Pea vakai, 'i he'ene hilifaki hono nimá kiate kinautilu, na'e fakafonu 'a kinautilu 'aki 'a e Laumalie Ma'oni'oni.
- 37 Pea hili ia na'a nau mavae 'o taki taha 'alu, 'o 'ikai te nau tokanga ma'anautolu pe ko e ha te nau kai, pe ko e ha te nau inu, pe ko e ha te nau kofu'aki.
- 38 Pea na'e tauhi 'e he 'Eiki 'a kinautilu ke 'oua na'a nau fiekaia, pe feinua; 'io, pea na'a ne tuku foki kiate kinautilu 'a e ivi ke 'oua na'a nau mamahi 'i ha fa'ahinga faingata 'a ia, ta'emole atu ia 'i he fiefia 'a Kalaisi. Na'e tatau 'eni foki mo e lotu 'a 'Alama; pea na'e hoko 'eni koe'uhi ko 'ene lotu 'i he tuí.

O Lord, wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.

Behold, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many of them are our brethren; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our brethren, again unto thee.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.

And after that they did separate themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on.

And the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst; yea, and he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ. Now this was according to the prayer of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.

‘Alamā 32

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘a nau ‘alu atu ‘o kamata ke malanga ‘aki ‘a e folofola ‘a e ‘Otuá ki he kakai, ‘o nau hū ki honau ngaahi fale lotú, pea ki honau ngaahi fale; ‘io, ‘o ‘a u ki he ‘enau malanga ‘aki ‘a e folofolá ‘i honau ngaahi halá.
- 2 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili ‘a ‘enau fai ‘a e ngāue lahi ‘iate kinautolu, na‘e kamata ke tu‘umālie ‘a ‘enau ngāué ‘i he fa‘ahinga kakai na‘e masivá; he vakai, na‘e kapusi ki tu‘a ‘a kinautolu mei he ngaahi fale lotú ko e me‘a ‘i he ta‘e-matamatalelei ‘o honau kofú—
- 3 Ko ia na‘e ‘ikai fakangofua ‘a kinautolu ke nau hū ki honau ngaahi fale lotú ke hū ki he ‘Otuá, he na‘e lau ‘a kinautolu ko e me‘a ‘uli; ko ia na‘a nau masiva; ‘io, na‘e lau ‘a kinautolu ‘e honau kāingá ko e me‘a ta‘e‘aonga; ko ia na‘a nau masiva ‘i he ngaahi me‘a ‘o e māmaní; pea na‘a nau angavaivai foki.
- 4 Ko ‘eni, ‘i he lolotonga ako ‘e ‘Alamā mo malanga ki he kakai ‘i he mo‘unga ko ‘Onaitá, na‘e ha‘u kiate ia ha kakai tokolahi ‘aupito, ‘a ia na‘e kau ki he fa‘ahinga kuo tau lau ki aí, ‘a ia na‘e loto-vaivai, koe‘uhi ko ‘enau masiva ‘i he ngaahi me‘a ‘o e māmaní.
- 5 Pea na‘a nau ō mai kia ‘Alamā; pea na‘e pehē ‘e he tokotaha na‘e tu‘u-ki-mu‘a ‘iate kinautolú kiate ia: Vakai, ko e hā ‘e fai ‘e he fa‘ahingá ni, ko hoku kāingá, he ‘oku fehi‘anekina ‘a kinautolu ‘e he kakai kotoa pē koe‘uhi ko ‘enau masivá, ‘io, kae tautautefito ki homau kau taula‘eikí; he kuo nau kapusi ki tu‘a ‘a kinautolu mei homau ngaahi fale lotu ‘a ia na‘a mau ngāue lahi ke langa ‘aki homau nima ‘omautolú; pea kuo nau kapusi ki tu‘a ‘a kinautolu koe‘uhi ko ‘emau fu‘u masiva lahí; pea ‘oku ‘ikai ha potu ke mau hū ai ki homau ‘Otuá; pea vakai, ko e hā te mau faí?
- 6 Pea ko ‘eni ‘i he fanongo ‘e ‘Alamā ki aí, na‘á ne tafoki ki mui, ‘o hanga tonu atu hono matá kiate ia, ‘o ne vakai ‘i he fu‘u fiefia lahi; he na‘á ne vakai kuo fakavaivai ‘i mo‘oni ‘a kinautolu ‘e he ‘enau ngaahi mamahí, pea kuo teuteu ‘i ‘a kinautolu ke fanongo ki he folofolá.
- 7 Ko ia na‘e ‘ikai te ne toe lea ‘aki ha me‘a ki he fu‘u kakai ‘e tahá; ka na‘á ne mafao atu hono nimá, ‘o kalanga kiate kinautolu, ‘a ia na‘á ne vakai ‘oku nau angavaivai mo‘oní, ‘o ne pehē ange kiate kinautolu:

Alma 32

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people, entering into their synagogues, and into their houses; yea, and even they did preach the word in their streets.

And it came to pass that after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people; for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel—

Therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness; therefore they were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.

Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah, there came a great multitude unto him, who were those of whom we have been speaking, of whom were poor in heart, because of their poverty as to the things of the world.

And they came unto Alma; and the one who was the foremost among them said unto him: Behold, what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all men because of their poverty, yea, and more especially by our priests; for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands; and they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty; and we have no place to worship our God; and behold, what shall we do?

And now when Alma heard this, he turned him about, his face immediately towards him, and he beheld with great joy; for he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them, and that they were in a preparation to hear the word.

Therefore he did say no more to the other multitude; but he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:

8 'Oku hā mai kiate au 'oku mou loto-fakatōkilalo; pea kapau 'oku pehē, 'oku monū'ia 'a kimoutolu.

9 Vakai kuo pehē mai 'e homou tokouá, Ko e hā te mau fai?—he kuo kapusi ki tu 'a 'a kimautilu mei homau ngaahi fale lotú, pea 'oku 'ikai te mau lava 'o hū ki homau 'Otuá.

10 Vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku mou mahalo koā 'oku 'ikai te mau lava 'o hū ki he 'Otuá, ka 'i homou ngaahi fale lotú pē?

11 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku ou fie fehu'í atu, pe 'oku mou mahalo 'oku 'ikai totonu ke mou hū ki he 'Otuá, kae tu 'o taha pē 'i he uike?

12 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku lelei homou kapusi ki tu 'a mei homou ngaahi fale lotú, koe'uhi ke mou loto-fakatōkilalo, pea ke mou 'ilo'í 'a e potó; he 'oku 'aonga ke mou 'ilo'í 'a e potó; he ko e me'a 'i hono kapusi ki tu 'a 'a kimoutolú, kuo fehi'anekina 'a kimoutolu 'e homou kāingá ko e me'a 'i ho'omou fu'u masiva lahí; kuo 'ohifo ai 'a kimoutolu ki he loto-fakatōkilalo mo'oni, he 'oku pau ai ke fakavaivai'í 'a kimoutolu.

13 Pea ko 'eni, ko e me'a 'i he fakamālohi'í 'a kimoutolu ke mou loto-fakatōkilaló kuo mou monū'ia ai; he 'oku fá'a feinga ha tangata 'i he taimi 'e ní'ihí, kapau 'e fakamālohi'í ia ke loto-fakatōkilalo, ke fekumi ki he fakatomalá, pea ko 'eni ko e mo'oni, 'ilonga ia 'e fakatomalá te ne ma'u 'a e 'alo'ofá; pea 'ilonga ia 'okú ne ma'u 'a e 'alo'ofá 'o kātaki ki he ngata'angá 'e fakamo'ui ia.

14 Pea ko 'eni, hangē ko 'eku lea kiate kimoutolú, ko e me'a 'i homou fakamālohi'í ke loto-fakatōkilaló kuo mou monū'ia, he 'ikai koā 'oku mou pehē 'oku monū'ia ange 'a kinautilu 'oku fakavaivai'í mo'oni 'a kinautilu koe'uhi ko e folofolá?

15 'Io, ko ia ia 'okú ne fakavaivai'í mo'oni ia, mo fakatomala mei he 'ene ngaahi angahalá, pea kātaki ki he ngata'angá, 'e tāpuaki'í ia—'io, 'o monū'ia ange 'iate kinautilu kuo fakamālohi'í ke loto-fakatōkilalo koe'uhi ko 'enau fu'u masiva lahí.

I behold that ye are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are ye.

Behold thy brother hath said, What shall we do?—for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship our God.

Behold I say unto you, do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only?

And moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week?

I say unto you, it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may learn wisdom; for it is necessary that ye should learn wisdom; for it is because that ye are cast out, that ye are despised of your brethren because of your exceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart; for ye are necessarily brought to be humble.

And now, because ye are compelled to be humble blessed are ye; for a man sometimes, if he is compelled to be humble, seeketh repentance; and now surely, whosoever repenteth shall find mercy; and he that findeth mercy and endureth to the end the same shall be saved.

And now, as I said unto you, that because ye were compelled to be humble ye were blessed, do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble themselves because of the word?

Yea, he that truly humbleth himself, and repenteth of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall be blessed—yea, much more blessed than they who are compelled to be humble because of their exceeding poverty.

16 Ko ia, 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku nau fakavaivai'i 'a kinautolu ta'e-fakamālohi'i ke nau loto-fakatōkilaló; pe ko hono fakalea 'e tahá, 'oku monū'ia ia 'okú ne tui ki he folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'o ne papitaiso ta'e-i ai-ha loto-fefeká, 'io, 'o ta'e-ngaohi 'a kinautolu ke 'ilo'i 'a e folofolá, pe fakamālohi'i 'a kinautolu ke 'ilo, ki mu'a pea nau toki tuí.

17 'Io, 'oku 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'a ia 'oku nau pehē: kapau te ke fakahā mai kiate kinautolu ha faka'ilonga mei he langí, te mau toki 'ilo fakapapau; pea te mau toki tui.

18 Ko 'eni 'oku ou fehu'i atu: Ko e tuí 'eni? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai; he kapau 'oku 'ilo ha me'a 'e ha tangata, 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha 'uhinga ke ne tui, he kuó ne 'ilo'i ia.

19 Pea ko 'eni, hono 'ikai ke mala'ia ange ia 'okú ne 'ilo'i 'a e finangalo 'o e 'Otuá kae 'ikai te ne fai ki aí, 'iate ia 'oku tui pē, pe 'oku 'i ai ha'ane 'uhinga ke tui, ka ne tō ki he maumau-fonó?

20 Ko 'eni kuo pau ke mou sivi 'a e me'á ni. Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko e me'a 'e taha 'oku hangē ko e me'a 'e taha; pea 'e hoko ki he tangata taki taha 'o fakatatau ki he'ene ngāué.

21 Pea ko 'eni hangē ko 'eku lau ki he tuí—'oku 'ikai ko e tuí 'a e ma'u ha 'ilo haohaoa ki he ngaahi me'a; ko ia kapau 'oku mou ma'u 'a e tuí 'oku mou 'amanaki lelei ki he ngaahi me'a 'oku 'ikai ke mamata ki ai, 'a ia 'oku mo'oni.

22 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, pea 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou manatu'i, 'oku 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Otuá kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku tui ki hono huafá; ko ia ko e 'uluaki me'a 'okú ne finangalo ki aí, ke mou tui, 'io, ki he'ene folofolá.

23 Pea ko 'eni, 'okú ne 'oatu 'ene folofolá 'i he kau 'āngelo ki he tangatá, 'io, 'o 'ikai ki he kakai tangatá pē, ka ki he kakai fefiné foki. Ko 'eni 'oku 'ikai ia ko ia pē; ka 'oku fa'a 'oatu ki he fānau íkí ha ngaahi lea 'i he taimi lahi 'a ia 'oku fakamaa'i ai 'a e kau potó mo e 'ilo'iló.

24 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, ko e me'a 'i ho'omou fie 'ilo meiate au pē ko e hā te mou fai koe'uhi ko hono fakamamahí'i mo kapusi ki tu'a 'a kimoutolú—ko 'eni 'oku 'ikai ko hoku lotó ke mou mahalo 'oku ou fie fakamāu'i 'a kimoutolu kae hoa pe mo e mo'oni—

Therefore, blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble; or rather, in other words, blessed is he that believeth in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart, yea, without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe.

Yea, there are many who do say: If thou wilt show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.

Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it.

And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression?

Now of this thing ye must judge. Behold, I say unto you, that it is on the one hand even as it is on the other; and it shall be unto every man according to his work.

And now as I said concerning faith—faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true.

And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that ye should remember, that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name; therefore he desireth, in the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on his word.

And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; little children do have words given unto them many times, which confound the wise and the learned.

And now, my beloved brethren, as ye have desired to know of me what ye shall do because ye are afflicted and cast out—now I do not desire that ye should suppose that I mean to judge you only according to that which is true—

25 He 'oku 'ikai ko 'eku pehē kuo fakamālohi 'i 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē ke loto-fakatōkilalo; he 'oku ou tui mo'oni 'oku 'i ai hamou ni'ihī te nau ngaohi 'a kinautolu ke loto-fakatōkilalo neongo pē ko e hā 'a e ngaahi tu'unga 'oku nau 'i aī.

26 Ko 'eni, hangē ko 'eku lau 'o kau ki he tuī—'oku 'ikai ko ha 'ilo haohaoa ia—'oku pehē pē foki mo 'eku ngaahi leá. 'Oku 'ikai te mou lava 'o tomu 'a 'ilo 'i fakapapau hono mo'oni, 'o haohaoa, 'o hangē tofu pē 'oku 'ikai ko ha 'ilo haohaoa 'a e tuī.

27 Kae vakai, kapau te mou 'ā hake 'o fakaake homou 'atamaí, 'o 'ahī'ahī 'i 'a 'eku ngaahi leá, pea ngāue 'aki ha kihī 'i kongā sī 'i 'o e tuī, 'io, kapau foki 'oku 'ikai te mou lava 'o fai ha me 'a lahi ange 'i he holi pē ke tuī, tuku 'a e holi ni ke ngāue 'iate kimoutolu, kae 'oua ke mou tui 'i he anga te mou lava ai 'o faka'atā ha potu ki ha kongā 'o 'eku ngaahi leá.

28 Ko 'eni, te tau fakatatau 'a e folofolá ki ha tenga 'i 'akau. Ko 'eni, kapau te mou faka'atā ha potu, ke tō ai ha tenga 'i homou lotó, vakai, kapau ko ha tenga mo'oni ia, pe ko ha tenga lelei, 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te mou li'aki ia 'i ho'omou ta'etuī, 'o mou ta'ofi 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí, vakai, 'e kamata ia ke pupula 'i homou lotó; pea 'o ka mou ka ongo 'i 'a e ngāue 'o e pupula ko iá, te mou kamata ke pehē 'i homou lotó—Kuo pau pē ko ha tenga lelei 'eni, pe 'oku lelei 'a e folofolá, he 'oku kamata ke langaki hake 'e ia 'a hoku laumālié; 'io, 'oku kamata 'e ia ke fakamaama hoku 'atamaí, 'io, 'oku faka'au ke melie ia kiate au.

29 Ko 'eni vakai, 'e 'ikai faka'āsili nai 'e he me'á ni 'a ho'omou tui? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Io; ka neongo iá kuo te'eki ai ke tupu hake ia 'o hoko ko ha 'ilo haohaoa.

30 Kae vakai, 'i he pupula 'a e tengá, 'o huli haké, 'o ne kamata ke tupú, 'oku pau ke mou toki pehē 'oku lelei 'a e tengá; he vakai 'okú ne pupula, 'o huli hake, mo kamata ke tupu. Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'e 'ikai te ne fakatupulekina nai ho'omou tui? 'Io, te ne fakatupulekina ho'omou tui: he te mou pehē 'oku ou 'ilo ko e tenga lelei 'eni; he vakai 'oku huli hake ia ia mo kamata ke tupu.

For I do not mean that ye all of you have been compelled to humble yourselves; for I verily believe that there are some among you who would humble themselves, let them be in whatsoever circumstances they might.

Now, as I said concerning faith—that it was not a perfect knowledge—even so it is with my words. Ye cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.

But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words.

Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief, that ye will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts; and when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say within yourselves—It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul; yea, it beginneth to enlighten my understanding, yea, it beginneth to be delicious to me.

Now behold, would not this increase your faith? I say unto you, Yea; nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.

But behold, as the seed swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good; for behold it swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow. And now, behold, will not this strengthen your faith? Yea, it will strengthen your faith: for ye will say I know that this is a good seed; for behold it sprouteth and beginneth to grow.

31 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku mou 'ilo'i fakapapau koā ko ha
tenga lelei 'eni? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Io; he
'oku fakatupu 'a e tenga kotoa pē 'o fakatatau ki hono
fā'ahinga 'o'oná.

32 Ko ia, kapau 'oku tupu ha tenga, 'oku lelei ia, ka
kapau 'oku 'ikai ke tupu ia, vakai 'oku 'ikai lelei ia, ko ia
'oku lí'aki ia.

33 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, ko e me'a 'i ho'omou fai 'a e
'ahi'ahi'i ní, 'o tō 'a e tengá, 'o pupula ia 'o huli hake, mo
kamata ke tupú, kuo pau ke mou 'ilo 'oku lelei 'a e tengá.

34 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'oku haohao koā 'a ho'omou 'iló?
'Io, 'oku haohao ho'omou 'iló 'i he me'a ko íá, ka 'oku
'ikai ngāue 'a ho'omou tuí?; pea 'oku peheé koe'uhi ko
ho'omou 'ilo, he 'oku mou 'ilo'i kuo langa'i hake 'e he
folofolá 'a homou laumalié, 'o mou 'ilo foki kuo huli
hake ia, pea 'oku faka'au ke maama ho'omou
fakakauká, 'o kamata ke matala 'a homou 'atamaí.

35 Pea ko ia, 'ikai ko e mo'oní 'eni? 'Oku ou pehē kiate
kimoutolu, 'Io, koe'uhi ko e maama ia; pea ko e me'a
kotoa pē 'oku fakamāmá, 'oku lelei ia, koe'uhi 'oku
mahinongofua ia, ko ia 'oku pau ke mou 'ilo 'oku lelei ia;
pea ko 'eni vakai, 'o ka hili ange 'a ho'omou 'ahi'ahi'i 'a e
maama ko 'eni 'oku haohao koā 'a ho'omou 'iló?

36 Vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai; pea 'oku
'ikai totonu foki ke mou tuku ho'omou tuí, he kuo mou
ngāue 'aki pe ho'omou tuí 'i he tō 'a e tenga ke mou
'ahi'ahi ai ke 'ilo'i pe 'oku lelei 'a e tengá.

37 Pea vakai, 'i he kamata ke tupu 'a e fu'u 'akaú, te mou
pehē: Tau tauhi fakalelei ia koe'uhi ke tupu hono aká,
koe'uhi ke tupu hake ia 'o fua 'aki ha fua ma'atautolu.
Pea ko 'eni vakai, kapau te mou tauhi ia 'i he fu'u
tokanga lahi, 'e tupu hono aká, 'o tupu hake, 'o fua mai.

38 Ka 'o kapau te mou ta'etokanga 'i 'a e fu'u 'akaú, 'o
'ikai tokanga ke tauhi ia, vakai he 'ikai ke tupu hano aka;
pea 'i he hoko mai 'a e vela 'o e la'áá 'e vela ai ia, 'e mae
koe'uhi 'oku 'ikai hano aka, pea te mou ta'aki ia 'o laku
ki tu'a.

39 Ko 'eni, 'oku 'ikai ke pehē ia koe'uhi 'oku 'ikai ke lelei
'a e tengá, pea 'oku 'ikai ke pehē koe'uhi 'oku 'ikai ke
lelei 'a hono fuá; ka 'oku peheé koe'uhi ko e kakā
ho'omou kekelelé, 'o 'ikai te mou fie tauhi 'a e 'akaú, ko
ia 'e 'ikai te mou lava ke ma'u 'a hono fuá.

And now, behold, are ye sure that this is a good seed?
I say unto you, Yea; for every seed bringeth forth unto
its own likeness.

Therefore, if a seed groweth it is good, but if it
groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast
away.

And now, behold, because ye have tried the experi-
ment, and planted the seed, and it swelleth and
sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, ye must needs know
that the seed is good.

And now, behold, is your knowledge perfect? Yea,
your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith
is dormant; and this because you know, for ye know
that the word hath swelled your souls, and ye also know
that it hath sprouted up, that your understanding doth
begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth begin to
expand.

O then, is not this real? I say unto you, Yea, because it
is light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is dis-
cernible, therefore ye must know that it is good; and
now behold, after ye have tasted this light is your
knowledge perfect?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must ye lay aside
your faith, for ye have only exercised your faith to plant
the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the
seed was good.

And behold, as the tree beginneth to grow, ye will
say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get
root, that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us.
And now behold, if ye nourish it with much care it will
get root, and grow up, and bring forth fruit.

But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its
nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when
the heat of the sun cometh and scorcheth it, because it
hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast
it out.

Now, this is not because the seed was not good, nei-
ther is it because the fruit thereof would not be desir-
able; but it is because your ground is barren, and ye will
not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit
thereof.

- 40 Pea ko ia, kapau 'e 'ikai te mou tauhi 'a e folofolá, 'o hanga atu ki mu'a 'i he mata 'o e tuí ki hono fua 'o iá, 'e 'ikai ai pē ke mou lava 'o toli 'a e fua 'o e 'akau 'o e mo'uí.
- 41 Ka 'o kapau te mou tauhi 'a e folofolá, 'io, tauhi 'a e fu'u 'akau 'i he'ene kamata ke tupú, 'i ho'omou tuí 'i he faivelenga lahi, pea mo e fa'a kātaki, 'o 'amanaki ki hono fuá, 'e tupu hono aká; pea vakai, 'e hoko ia ko ha fu'u 'akau 'oku tupu hake ki he mo'ui ta'engatá.
- 42 Pea ko e me'a 'i ho'omou faivelengá mo ho'omou tuí mo ho'omou kātaki 'i hono tauhi 'o e folofolá, koe'uhi ke tupu hono aká 'iate kimoutolu, vakai, 'e faifai pea mou toli hono fua 'o iá, 'a ia 'oku fungani mahu'inga taha, 'a ia 'oku melie hake 'i he me'a melie kotoa pē, pea hinehina ange 'i he me'a hinehina kotoa pē, 'io, pea ma'a ange 'i he me'a kotoa pē 'oku ma'á; pea te mou kai 'i he fua ko 'ení kae 'oua ke mou mākona, 'o 'ikai te mou toe fiekaia, pe toe feinua.
- 43 Ko ia, 'e hoku kāinga, te mou toki utu 'a e ngaahi totongi 'o ho'omou tuí, mo ho'omou faivelengá, mo e fa'a kātaki, mo e kātaki fuoloá, 'i ho'omou tatali ke fua 'aki 'e he fu'u 'akau ha fua mo'omoutolu.

And thus, if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.

But if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; and behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.

And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst.

Then, my brethren, ye shall reap the rewards of your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you.

‘Alamā 33

- 1 Ko ‘eni na ‘e hili hono lea ‘aki ‘e ‘Alamā ‘a e ngaahi lea ní, pea na ‘a nau ‘oatu ha fehu ‘i kiate ia ‘o fie ‘ilo pe ‘oku totonu ke nau tui ki ha ‘Otua pē taha, koe ‘uhi ke nau lava ‘o ma ‘u ‘a e fua ‘a ia kuó ne lau ki aí, pe ‘e fēfē ‘enau tō ‘a e tengá, pe ko e folofola kuó ne lau ki aí, ‘a ia na ‘á ne pehē kuo pau ke tō ‘i honau lotó; pe ko e founga fē ‘oku totonu ke nau kamata ke ngāue ‘aki ai ‘enau tuí.
- 2 Pea pehē ange ‘e ‘Alamā kiate kinautolu: Vakai, kuo mou pehē ‘oku ‘ikai te mou lava ‘o hū ki homou ‘Otuá koe ‘uhi kuo kapusi ki tu ‘a ‘a kimoutolu mei homou ngaahi fale lotú. Kae vakai, ‘oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau ‘oku mou pehē ‘oku ‘ikai te mou lava ‘o hū ki he ‘Otuá, ‘oku mou hala ‘aupito ai, pea ‘oku totonu ke mou fakatotolo ‘i he ngaahi folofolá; kapau ‘oku mou mahalo kuo ako ai kiate kimoutolu ‘a e me ‘á ni, ‘oku ‘ikai ke mahino ia kiate kimoutolu.
- 3 ‘Oku mou manatu koā ki ha ‘amou lau ‘o e me ‘a na ‘e lea ‘aki ‘e Seinosi, ko e palōfita ‘o e kuonga mu ‘á ‘o kau ki he lotú pe huú?
- 4 He na ‘á ne pehē: ‘Okú ke ‘alo ‘ofa, ‘E ‘Otua, he kuó ke ‘afio mai ki he ‘eku lotú, lolotonga ‘eku ‘i he feitu ‘u maomaonganoá; ‘io, na ‘á ke ‘alo ‘ofa ‘i he ‘eku lotu koe ‘uhi ko kinautolu ko hoku ngaahi filí, pea na ‘á ke fakatafoki mai ‘a kinautolu kiate au.
- 5 ‘Io, ‘E ‘Otua, pea na ‘á ke ‘alo ‘ofa mai kiate au ‘i he ‘eku tangi kiate koe ‘i he ‘eku ngoué; lolotonga ‘eku tangi kiate koe ‘i he ‘eku lotú, pea na ‘á ke ‘afio mai kiate au.
- 6 Pea ‘ikai ia ko ia, ‘E ‘Otua, ‘i he ‘eku foki mai ki hoku falé, na ‘á ke ‘afio mai kiate au ‘i he ‘eku lotú.
- 7 Pea ‘i he ‘eku afe ki hoku potu liló, ‘E ‘Eiki, peá u lotu kiate koé, na ‘á ke ‘afio ‘i au.
- 8 ‘Io, ‘okú ke ‘alo ‘ofa ki ho ‘o fānaú ‘i he ‘enau tangi kiate koe, koe ‘uhi ke ke ‘afio ki ai kae ‘ikai ‘e he tangatá, pea te ke ‘afio kiate kinautolu.
- 9 ‘Io, ‘E ‘Otua, kuó ke ‘alo ‘ofa mai kiate au, mo ‘afio ki he ‘eku ngaahi tangi ‘i he lolotonga ‘o ho ‘o ngaahi fakataha ‘angá.

Alma 33

Now after Alma had spoken these words, they sent forth unto him desiring to know whether they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith.

And Alma said unto them: Behold, ye have said that ye could not worship your God because ye are cast out of your synagogues. But behold, I say unto you, if ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, ye do greatly err, and ye ought to search the scriptures; if ye suppose that they have taught you this, ye do not understand them.

Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayer or worship?

For he said: Thou art merciful, O God, for thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness; yea, thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were mine enemies, and thou didst turn them to me.

Yea, O God, and thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.

And again, O God, when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer.

And when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me.

Yea, thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and thou wilt hear them.

Yea, O God, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations.

10 'Io, pea kuó ke toe 'afio mai foki kiate au 'i he kapusi au ki tu'a, pea mo e fehí'anequina'i au 'e hoku ngaahi filí; 'io, na'á ke 'afio'i 'eku ngaahi tangí, pea na'á ke houhau ki hoku ngaahi filí, pea na'á ke tautea'i 'a kinautolu 'i ho houhau kakahá 'aki 'a e faka'auha 'oku fakato'oto'o.

11 Pea na'á ke 'afio mai kiate au koe'uhi ko hoku ngaahi mamahí pea mo hoku loto-fakamo'omo'oní; pea koe'uhi ko ho 'Aló kuó ke 'alo'ofa pehē ai kiate au, ko ia te u tangi ai kiate koe 'i hoku ngaahi mamahi kotoa pē, he 'oku 'iate koe 'eku fiefiá; he kuó ke ta'ofi 'a ho'o ngaahi tauteá meiate au, koe'uhi ko ho 'Aló.

12 Pea ko 'eni na'e pehē 'e 'Alamā kiate kinautolu: 'Oku mou tui koā ki he ngaahi folofola kuo tohi 'e he kakai 'o e kuonga mu'á?

13 Vakai, kapau 'oku mou fai pehē, 'oku pau pē 'oku mou tui ki he ngaahi me'a na'e lea 'aki 'e Seinosi; he vakai na'á ne pehē: Kuó ke ta'ofi 'a ho'o ngaahi tauteá koe'uhi ko ho 'Aló.

14 Ko 'eni vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku ou fie fehu'i pē kuo mou lau 'a e ngaahi folofolá? Kapau kuo mou fai pehē, 'oku mou lava fēfē ke ta'etui ki he 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá?

15 He kuo 'ikai tohi ko Seinosi pē na'e lau 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'a ní, ka na'e lau foki mo Seinoki ki he ngaahi me'a ní—

16 He vakai, na'á ne pehē: 'Okú ke houhau, 'E 'Eiki, ki he kakai ní, koe'uhi 'oku 'ikai te nau 'ilo ki ho'o ngaahi 'alo'ofa 'a ia kuó ke foaki kiate kinautolu koe'uhi ko ho 'Aló.

17 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku mou vakai 'oku 'i ai ha palōfita 'e taha 'o e kuonga mu'a na'e fakamo'oni ki he 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, pea ko e me'a 'i he ta'emahino ki he kakai 'a 'ene ngaahi leá, na'a nau tolomaka'i ia ke mate.

18 Kae vakai, 'oku 'ikai ia ko ia pē; ka 'oku 'ikai ngata 'iate kinauá ni 'a e fa'ahinga kuo lea 'o kau ki he 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá.

19 Vakai, na'e lea 'o kau ki ai 'a Mōsese; 'io, pea vakai na'e fokotu'u ha sīpinga 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá ke 'ilonga ia 'e sio ki aí te ne mo'ui. Pea na'e sio ki ai 'a e tokolahi 'o nau mo'ui.

Yea, and thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have been despised by mine enemies; yea, thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies, and thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction.

And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son.

And now Alma said unto them: Do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?

Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said; for, behold he said: Thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son.

Now behold, my brethren, I would ask if ye have read the scriptures? If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God?

For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things—

For behold, he said: Thou art angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not understand thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them because of thy Son.

And now, my brethren, ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death.

But behold, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.

Behold, he was spoken of by Moses; yea, and behold a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live.

20 Ka na'e mahino ki he tokosi'i 'a e 'uhinga 'o e ngaahi me'á ni, pea na'e tupu ia 'i he fefeka 'o hona lotó u. Ka na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'a ia na'e lahi pehē fau 'a e fefeka 'o honau lotó na'e 'ikai ai te nau fie sio ki ai, ko ia na'a nau mate ai. Ko 'eni ko e 'uhinga 'o 'enau ta'e-fie-sio ki ai, ko e 'ikai te nau tui 'e fakamo'ui ai 'a kinautolu.

21 'Oiauē, 'e hoku kāinga, kapau na'e lava 'o mou mo'ui 'i ho'omou mamata holo pe 'aki homou matá ke mou lava 'o mo'ui ai, he 'ikai koā te mou mamata fakavavevave, pe te mou manako koā ke fakafefeka homou lotó 'i he ta'etui, pea fai fakapikopiko 'o 'ikai ai te mou mamata holo 'aki homou matá, pea mou mate ai?

22 Pea kapau 'oku pehē, 'e hoko mai kiate kimoutolu 'a e mala'ia; ka kapau 'oku 'ikai ke pehē, pea mou mamata holo 'aki homou matá, pea kamata ke tui ki he 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, pea mo 'ene hā'ele mai ke huhu'i 'a hono kakaí, mo 'ene mamahi'ia mo e pekia ke ne fai 'a e fakalelei ma'a 'enau ngaahi angahalá; pea te ne toe tu'u mei he pekia, 'a ia 'e fakahoko ai 'a e toetu'ú, ke tutu'u 'a e kakai kotoa pē 'i hono 'aó, ke fakamāu 'i 'i he 'aho faka'osí mo e 'aho fakamāu 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau ngaahi ngāuē.

23 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou tō 'a e folofolá ni 'i homou lotó, pea 'i he 'ene kamata ke tupu, mou tauhi ia 'aki ho'omou tuí. Pea vakai, 'e hoko ia ko ha fu'u 'akau, 'o tupu hake 'iate kimoutolu ki he mo'ui ta'engata. Pea 'ofa ke toki tuku kiate kimoutolu 'e he 'Otuá ke ma'ama'a ho'omou ngaahi kavengá, 'i he fiefia 'i hono 'Aló. Pea na'a mo 'eni kotoa pē, te mou lava ke fai ia 'o kapau te mou loto ki ai. 'Ēmeni.

But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them.

O my brethren, if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed, would ye not behold quickly, or would ye rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that ye would not cast about your eyes, that ye might perish?

If so, wo shall come upon you; but if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to redeem his people, and that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works.

And now, my brethren, I desire that ye shall plant this word in your hearts, and as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith. And behold, it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life. And then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son. And even all this can ye do if ye will. Amen.

‘Alamā 34

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e hili hono lea ‘aki ‘e ‘Alamā ‘a e ngaahi leá ni kiate kinautolú na ‘á ne nofo hifo ki he kelekelé, pea na’e tu’u hake ‘a ‘Amuleki ‘o ne kamata ke akonaki kiate kinautolu, ‘o pehē:
- 2 ‘E hoku kāinga, ‘oku ou pehē ‘oku ‘ikai lava ke mou ta’e‘ilo ki he ngaahi me’a kuo lea ‘aki ‘o kau ki he hā‘ele mai ‘a Kalaisí, ‘a ia ‘oku mau akonaki ‘aki ‘o pehē ko e ‘Alo ‘o e ‘Otuá; ‘io, ‘oku ou ‘ilo na’e fu’u hulu hono akonaki ‘aki kiate kimoutolu ‘a e ngaahi me’a ko ‘eni ki mu’a ‘i ho‘omou mavahe atu meiate kimautolú.
- 3 Pea hangē ko ho‘omou kole ki hoku tokoua ‘ofeina ke ne fakahā kiate kimoutolu ‘a e me’a ke mou faí, koe‘uhi ko homou ngaahi mamahí; pea kuó ne lea ‘aki ai kiate kimoutolu ha me’a ‘e ni‘ihi ke teuteu‘i ho‘omou fakakaukaú; ‘io, pea kuó ne enginaki kiate kimoutolu ke mou tui mo fa’a kātaki—
- 4 ‘Io, ‘o a‘u ki ho‘omou ma‘u ‘a e tui fe‘unga ke mou tō ‘a e folofolá ‘i homou lotó, koe‘uhi ke mou fai ai hono ‘ahi‘ahi‘i ia pe ‘oku lelei ia.
- 5 Pea kuo mahino kiate kimaau ko e fehu‘i lahi ‘oku ‘i ho‘omou fakakaukaú pe ‘oku ‘i he ‘Alo ‘o e ‘Otuá ‘a e folofolá, pe ‘e ‘i ai koā ha Kalaisi.
- 6 Pea na’a mou vakai foki kuo fakamo‘oni‘i ‘e hoku tokoua kiate kimoutolu, ‘i he ngaahi me’a lahi, ‘oku tu‘unga ‘ia Kalaisi ‘a e folofola ki he fakamo‘uí.
- 7 Kuo ngāue ‘aki ‘e hoku tokoua ‘a e ngaahi lea ‘a Seinosí, ‘oku fou ‘a e huhu‘i ‘i he ‘Alo ‘o e ‘Otuá, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo e ngaahi lea ‘a Seinoki; pea kuó ne lau foki kia Mōsese, ke fakamo‘oni‘i ‘oku mo‘oni ‘a e ngaahi me‘á ni.
- 8 Pea ko ‘eni, vakai, te u fakamo‘oni‘i kiate kimoutolu ‘e au ‘oku mo‘oni ‘a e ngaahi me‘á ni. Vakai, ‘oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ‘oku ou ‘ilo‘i ‘e hā‘ele mai ‘a Kalaisi ki he fānau ‘a e tangatá, ke to‘o kiate ia ‘a e ngaahi maumau-fono ‘a hono kakaí, pea te ne fai ‘a e fakalelei ki he ngaahi angahala ‘a e māmaní; he kuo folofola ‘aki ia ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá.

Alma 34

And now it came to pass that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground, and Amulek arose and began to teach them, saying:

My brethren, I think that it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God; yea, I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your dissension from among us.

And as ye have desired of my beloved brother that he should make known unto you what ye should do, because of your afflictions; and he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds; yea, and he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience—

Yea, even that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that ye may try the experiment of its goodness.

And we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God, or whether there shall be no Christ.

And ye also beheld that my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.

My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God, and also upon the words of Zenock; and also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true.

And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

- 9 He 'oku 'aonga ke fai ha fakalelei; he hangē ko e palani lahi 'a e 'Otua Ta'engata kuo pau ke fai ha fakalelei, pe 'e mala'ia 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangata; 'io, kuo fakafefeka kotoa honau lotó; 'io, kuo hinga mo mole 'a e kakai kotoa pē, pea kuo pau ke nau 'auha tuku kehe pē 'o kapau 'e fou 'i he fakalelei 'a ia 'oku 'aonga ke fai.
- 10 He 'oku 'aonga ke 'i ai ha fu'u feilaulau lahi mo faka'osi; 'io, kae 'ikai ko ha feilaulau 'aki ha tangata, pe ha manu, pe ha fa'ahinga manupuna 'e taha; koe'uhi 'e 'ikai hoko ia ko ha feilaulau 'oku fai 'e ha tangata; ka kuo pau ko ha feilaulau ta'e-fakangatangata mo ta'engata.
- 11 Ko 'eni 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha tangata te ne lava 'o feilaulau 'aki hono toto 'o'oná ko e fakalelei ki he ngaahi angahala 'a ha tokotaha kehe. Ko 'eni, ka fakapō ha tangata, vakai ko 'etau fonó, 'a ia 'oku totonú, 'e to' o koā 'e ia 'a e mo'ui 'a hono tokouá? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'ikai.
- 12 Ka 'oku tu'utu'uni 'e he fonó ke to' o 'a e mo'ui 'a e tokotaha na'e fai 'a e fakapoó; ko ia 'oku 'ikai lava ke 'i ai ha me'a 'e si'i hifo 'i ha fakalelei 'oku ta'e-fakangatangata 'a ia 'e fe'unga ki he ngaahi angahala 'a e māmaní.
- 13 Ko ia, 'oku 'aonga ke 'i ai ha fu'u feilaulau lahi mo faka'osi; pea 'e toki 'i ai, pe 'oku 'aonga ke 'i ai, hano fakangata 'o e lilingi 'o e totó; pea 'e toki kakato 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé; 'io, 'e fakakakato kotoa ia, 'a e momo'i me'a mo e kihí 'i kupu 'i mata'itohi si'i taki tahá, 'o 'ikai mole hano kongá.
- 14 Pea vakai, ko hono 'uhinga kotoa 'eni 'o e fonó, 'oku tuhu hono kihí 'i kongá si'i kotoa pē ki he fu'u feilaulau lahi mo faka'osi ko iá; pea ko e fu'u feilaulau lahi mo faka'osi ko iá ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otua; 'io, 'oku ta'e-fakangatangata mo ta'engata ia.
- 15 Pea ko ia te ne 'omi 'a e fakamo'uí kiate kinautolu fulipē 'e tui ki hono huafá; ko e me'a 'eni 'oku hanga ki ai 'a e feilaulau faka'osi ko iá, ke fakahoko 'a e finangalo 'alo'ofá, 'a ia 'okú ne ta'ofi 'a e fakamaau totonú, pea 'omi ai ha ngaahi founga ki he tangatá ke nau ma'u ai ha tui ke fakatomalá.

For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.

For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.

Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.

But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.

Therefore, it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice, and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a stop to the shedding of blood; then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled; yea, it shall be all fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.

And behold, this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that great and last sacrifice; and that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite and eternal.

And thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name; this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the bowels of mercy, which overpowereth justice, and bringeth about means unto men that they may have faith unto repentance.

16 Pea ko ia 'oku lava 'e he 'alo'ofá 'o totongi ki he ngaahi tu'utu'uni 'a e fakamaau totonú, pea 'ō'ōfaki 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e to'ukupu 'o e malu'í, ka ko ia ia 'oku 'ikai ke ne ngāue 'aki 'a e tui ke fakatomalá te ne tu'utāmaki ia 'i hono kotoa 'o e fono 'o e ngaahi tu'utu'uni 'a e fakamaau totonú; ko ia ko ia pē 'okú ne ma'u 'a e tui ki he fakatomalá 'oku 'aonga ki ai 'a e palani lahi mo ta'engata 'o e huhu'í.

17 Ko ia 'ofa ke tuku mai 'e he 'Otuá kiate kimoutolu, ko hoku kāinga, ke mou kamata ke ngāue 'aki ho'omou tuí ke fakatomala, ke mou kamata ai ke ui ki hono huafa mā'oní'oní, koe'uhi ke ne 'alo'ofa mai kiate kimoutolu.

18 'Io, tangi kiate ia ke ma'u 'a e 'alo'ofá; he 'oku māfimaifi ia ke fakamo'ui.

19 'Io, fakavaivai 'i 'a kimoutolu, 'o fai atu 'i he lotu kiate ia.

20 Tangi kiate ia 'i ho'omou ngaahi ngoué, 'io, koe'uhi ko ho'omou ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki kotoa pē.

21 Tangi kiate ia 'i homou ngaahi falé, 'io, koe'uhi ko homou falé kotoa pē, 'i he pongipongi, ho'ataá, mo e efiáfí.

22 'Io, tangi kiate ia ke ta'ofi 'a e mālohi 'o homou ngaahi filí.

23 'Io, tangi kiate ia koe'uhi ko e tēvoló, 'a ia ko e fili ki he mā'oní'oní kotoa pē.

24 Tangi kiate ia koe'uhi ko e fua kotoa pē 'o ho'omou ngaahi ngoué, koe'uhi ke mou tu'umālie ai.

25 Tangi koe'uhi ko e ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki 'i ho'omou ngaahi ngoué, ke nau tupu 'o tokolahi.

26 Ka 'oku 'ikai ko ia pē; ka 'oku totonu ke mou fakahā hake homou laumālié 'i homou ngaahi loki liló, mo homou ngaahi potu liló, pea 'i homou feitu'u maomaonganoá.

27 'Io, pea 'o ka 'ikai te mou tangi ki he 'Eikí, tuku ke fonu homou lotó, 'o 'unu'unu atu ma'u ai pē kiate ia 'i he lotu, koe'uhi ko ho'omou leleí, pea mo e lelei foki 'anautolu 'oku 'iate kimoutolú.

And thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.

Therefore may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that ye begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you;

Yea, cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.

Yea, humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him.

Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your flocks.

Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening.

Yea, cry unto him against the power of your enemies.

Yea, cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness.

Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper in them.

Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.

But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness.

Yea, and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you.

28 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oua na'a mou mahalo ko hono ngata'angá 'eni; he 'o ka 'osi ho'omou fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, kapau te mou teke'í 'a e masivá, mo e telefuá, 'o 'ikai 'a'ahi ki he mahakí mo e faingata'a'ía, pea foaki mei ho'omou koloá, 'o kapau 'oku mou ma'u, kiate kinautolu 'oku masivá—'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau 'oku 'ikai te mou fai ha me'a 'e taha 'i he ngaahi me'á ni, vakai, 'oku iku ta'e'aonga 'a ho'omou lotú, pea 'oku 'ikai hano 'aonga kiate kimoutolu, pea 'oku mou hangē ko e kau mālualoi 'a ia 'oku nau faka'ikai'í 'a e tuí.

29 Ko ia, ka pau 'oku 'ikai te mou manatu ke manava'ofa, 'oku mou tatau mo e toenga 'uli 'o e ukamea, 'a ia 'oku lí'aki 'e he kau tangata fakama'a ukameá, (he 'oku 'ikai 'aonga ia), pea 'oku molomoloki hifo ia 'i he lalo va'e 'o e kakai.

30 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku ou faka'amu, ko e me'a 'i ho'omou 'osi ma'u ha ngaahi fakamo'oni lahi pehē, pea kuo mou mamata ki hono fakamo'oni'í 'e he ngaahi folofolá ki he ngaahi me'á ni, ke mou ha'u pea fakatupu 'a e fua ki he fakatomalá.

31 'Io, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou ha'u 'o 'ikai toe fakafefeka homou lotó; he vakai, ko 'eni 'a e taimi mo e 'aho 'o homou fakamo'uí; pea ko ia, kapau te mou fakatomala 'o 'ikai fakafefeka homou lotó, 'e faka'aonga leva 'a e palani lahi 'o e huhu'í kiate kimoutolu.

32 He vakai, ko e mo'uí ni ko e taimi ia ki he tangatá ke teuteu ai ke fe'iloaki mo e 'Otua; 'io, vakai ko e 'aho 'o e mo'uí ni ko e 'aho ia ke fai ai 'e he kakai 'a 'enau ngaahi ngāue.

33 Pea ko 'eni, hangē ko 'eku pehē kiate kimoutolu 'i mu'á, ko e me'a 'i ho'omou ma'u ha ngaahi fakamo'oni lahi pehē, ko ia 'oku ou kole ai kiate kimoutolu ke 'oua na'a mou toloi 'a e 'aho 'o ho'omou fakatomalá 'o a'u ki he ngata'angá; he ka hili ange 'a e 'aho 'o e mo'uí ni, 'a ia kuo tuku mai kiate kitautolu ke teuteu ki he ta'engatá, vakai, kapau 'oku 'ikai te tau faka'aonga'i hotau ngaahi 'aho 'i he mo'uí ní, 'e toki hoko mai 'a e pō 'o e fakapo'uli, 'a ia 'e 'ikai lava ke fai ai ha ngāue.

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need—I say unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who do deny the faith.

Therefore, if ye do not remember to be charitable, ye are as dross, which the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden under foot of men.

And now, my brethren, I would that, after ye have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, ye come forth and bring fruit unto repentance.

Yea, I would that ye would come forth and harden not your hearts any longer; for behold, now is the time and the day of your salvation; and therefore, if ye will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you.

For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.

- 34 'E 'ikai te mou lava ke pehē, 'o ka 'omi 'a kimoutolu ki he taimi fakamanavahē ko iá, te u fakatomala, pea te u tafoki ki hoku 'Otuá. 'Ikai, 'e 'ikai te mou lava ke lea 'aki 'eni; he ko e laumālie pē ko ia 'okú ne pule 'i homou sinó 'i he taimi 'oku mou fononga atu ai mei he mo 'ui ní, 'e ma 'u ha mālohi ke pule 'i homou sinó 'e he laumālie pē ko iá 'i he maama ta 'engata ko iá.
- 35 He vakai, kapau kuo mou toloi 'a e 'aho 'o ho 'omou fakatomalá 'o a 'u ki he maté, vakai, kuo mou mo 'ulaloa ai ki he laumālie 'o e tēvoló, pea 'okú ne ma 'u a kimoutolu ma 'ana; ko ia, kuo 'alu ai 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí meiate kimoutolu, 'o 'ikai te ne ma 'u ha nofo 'anga 'iate kimoutolu; pea ma 'u 'e he tēvoló 'a e mālohi kotoa kiate kimoutolu; pea ko e tu 'unga faka 'osi 'eni 'o e kau fai angahalá.
- 36 Pea 'oku ou 'ilo 'eni, koe 'uhi kuo folofola 'e he 'Eikí 'oku 'ikai te ne 'afio 'i ha ngaahi temipale ta 'e-mā 'oní 'oní; ka 'okú ne 'afio pē 'i he loto 'o e kau mā 'oní 'oní; 'io, pea kuó ne folofola foki, 'e nofo hifo 'a e kau mā 'oní 'oní 'i hono pule 'angá, 'o 'ikai toe hū ki tu 'a; ka 'e fakahinehina 'i honau ngaahi kofú 'i he ta 'ata 'a 'o e Lamí.
- 37 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou faka 'amu ke mou manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi me 'á ni, pea ke mou ngāue 'i homou fakamo 'uí 'i he manavahē 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, pea ke 'oua na 'a mou toe faka 'ikai 'i 'a e hā 'ele mai 'a Kalaisí;
- 38 Ke 'oua na 'a mou toe fakafepaki ki he Laumālie Mā 'oní 'oní, ka mou tali ia, pea to 'o kiate kimoutolu 'a e huafa 'o Kalaisí; ke mou fakavaivai 'i 'a kimoutolu 'io ki he efú, pea hū ki he 'Otuá, 'i ha potu pē te mou 'i ai, 'i he laumālie pea 'i he mo 'oní; pe ke mou nofo 'i he fakafeta 'i faka 'aho koe 'uhi ko e ngaahi 'alo 'ofa mo e ngaahi tāpuaki lahi kuó ne foaki kiate kimoutolú.
- 39 'Io, pea 'oku ou na 'ina 'i foki kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga, ke mou tokanga ke lotu ma 'u ai pē koe 'uhi ke 'oua na 'a taki hala 'i 'a kimoutolu 'e he ngaahi 'ahi 'ahi 'a e tēvoló, koe 'uhi ke 'oua na 'á ne ikuna 'i 'a kimoutolu, pea 'oua na 'a mou hoko ko 'ene kau pōpula 'i he 'aho faka 'osí; he vakai, 'oku 'ikai te ne totongi 'a kimoutolu 'aki ha me 'a lelei 'e taha.

Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, ye cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

And this I know, because the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; yea, and he has also said that the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out; but their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

And now, my beloved brethren, I desire that ye should remember these things, and that ye should work out your salvation with fear before God, and that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ;

That ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but that ye receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ; that ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

Yea, and I also exhort you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto prayer continually, that ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he rewardeth you no good thing.

40 Pea ko 'eni 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou fie na'ina'i kiate kimoutolu ke mou fa'a kātaki, pea ke mou kātaki'i 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga faingata'a kotoa pē; ke 'oua na'a mou lea kovi kiate kinautolu 'oku kapusi ki tu'a'a kimoutolu ko'e uhi ko ho'omou fu'u masiva lahi, telia na'a mou hoko ai ko e kau angahala 'o tatau mo kinautolu;

41 Ka ke mou fa'a kātaki, pea kātaki'i 'a e ngaahi faingata'a ko ia, 'i he 'amanaki mālohi 'e 'i ai 'a e 'aho te mou mālōlō ai mei homou ngaahi faingata'a'ia kotoa pē.

And now my beloved brethren, I would exhort you to have patience, and that ye bear with all manner of afflictions; that ye do not revile against those who do cast you out because of your exceeding poverty, lest ye become sinners like unto them;

But that ye have patience, and bear with those afflictions, with a firm hope that ye shall one day rest from all your afflictions.

‘Alamā 35

- 1 Ko ‘eni, na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he faka‘osi ‘e ‘Amuleki ‘a e ngaahi lea ní, na’a nau ‘alu atu mei he fu‘u kakai ‘o nau ha‘u ki he fonua ko Selesoní.
- 2 ‘Io, pea hili hono malanga ‘aki ‘a e folofolá ki he kau Sōlami, ‘e hono toe ‘o e kāinga, na’a nau ha‘u foki ki he fonua ko Selesoní.
- 3 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili ‘a e fealea‘aki ‘a e kau Sōlami tu‘u-ki-mu‘a tahá ‘o kau ki he ngaahi lea kuo malanga ‘aki kiate kinautolú, na’a nau ‘ita koe‘uhi ko e folofolá, he na’e faka‘auha ‘e ia ‘a ‘enau ngāué; ko ia na’e ‘ikai te nau fie tokanga ki he ngaahi folofolá.
- 4 Pea na’a nau fekau atu ki hono kotoa ‘o e fonuá ke fakataha mai ‘a e kakai kotoa pē, ‘o nau fealea‘aki mo kinautolu ‘o kau ki he ngaahi lea kuo lea‘akí.
- 5 Ko ‘eni na’e ‘ikai ke tuku ‘e honau kau pulé, mo honau kau taulá‘eikí, mo honau kau akonakí ke ‘ilo ‘e he kakai ‘o kau ki he ‘enau ngaahi holí; ko ia na’a nau ‘eke fakafufū ke ‘ilo‘i ‘a e fakakaukau ‘a e kakai kotoa pē.
- 6 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili ‘enau ‘ilo‘i ‘a e fakakaukau ‘a e kakai kotoa pē, na’e kapusi ki tu‘a mei he fonuá ‘a e fá‘ahinga na’e loto-fiemālie ki he ngaahi lea kuo fai ‘e ‘Alamā mo hono kāingá; pea na’a nau tokolahi; pea na’a nau ha‘u foki ki he fonua ko Selesoní.
- 7 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e tokoni ‘a ‘Alamā mo hono kāingá kiate kinautolu.
- 8 Ko ‘eni na’e ‘ita ‘a e kakai ‘o e kau Sōlamí ki he kakai ‘o ‘Āmoní ‘a ia na’e ‘i Selesoní, pea ko e pule lahi ‘o e kau Sōlamí, koe‘uhi ko ha tangata angakovi ‘aupito ia, na‘á ne fekau atu ki he kakai ‘o ‘Āmoní ke nau kapusi ki tu‘a mei honau fonuá ‘a e fá‘ahinga kotoa pē kuo mavahe atu meiate kinautolu ki honau fonuá.
- 9 Pea na‘á ne fai atu ha ngaahi lea fakamanamana lahi kiate kinautolu. Pea ko ‘eni na’e ‘ikai manavahē ‘a e kakai ‘o ‘Āmoní ki he ‘enau ngaahi leá; ko ia na’e ‘ikai te nau kapusi ki tu‘a ‘a kinautolu, ka nau tali pē ‘a e kau masiva kotoa pē ‘o e kau Sōlamí ‘a ia na’e ha‘u kiate kinautolú; pea na’a nau fafanga ‘a kinautolu, mo fakakofu ‘a kinautolu, pea nau ‘oange kiate kinautolu ha ngaahi konga kekeleke ke hoko ko honau tofi‘a; pea na’a nau tokoni kiate kinautolu ‘o fakatau mo ‘enau ngaahi fiema‘ú.

Alma 35

Now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of these words, they withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over into the land of Jershon.

Yea, and the rest of the brethren, after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites, also came over into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that after the more popular part of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft; therefore they would not hearken unto the words.

And they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.

Now their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires; therefore they found out privily the minds of all the people.

And it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his brethren were cast out of the land; and they were many; and they came over also into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that Alma and his brethren did minister unto them.

Now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon who were in Jershon, and the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.

And he breathed out many threatenings against them. And now the people of Ammon did not fear their words; therefore they did not cast them out, but they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them; and they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance; and they did administer unto them according to their wants.

- 10 Ko 'eni na'e ue'i hake 'e he me'á ni 'a e kau Sōlamí ke nau 'ita ki he kakai 'o 'Āmoní, pea na'a nau kamata ke fetu'utaki mo e kau Leimaná, 'o nau ue'i hake mo kinautolu foki ke nau 'ita kiate kinautolu.
- 11 Pea ko ia na'e kamata ke fai 'e he kau Sōlamí mo e kau Leimaná ha ngaahi teuteu ki he tau mo e kakai 'o 'Āmoní, pea mo e kau Nīfai foki.
- 12 Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a e ta'u hono hongofulu mā fitu 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfai.
- 13 Pea na'e 'alu atu 'a e kakai 'o 'Āmoní mei he fonua ko Selesoní, 'o nau ha'u ki he fonua ko Mīlekí, 'o faka'ata'atā ha potu 'i he fonua ko Selesoní ki he ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Nīfai, koe'uhi ke nau tau mo e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná mo e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Sōlamí; pea na'e kamata pehē ha tau 'i he vaha 'a 'o e kau Leimaná mo e kau Nīfai 'i hono hongofulu mā valu 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú; pea 'e fai ha fakamatala ki he'enua ngaahi taú 'a mui.
- 14 Pea ko 'Alamā, mo 'Āmoni, mo hona kāingá, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e ongo foha 'o 'Alamaá na'a nau foki atu ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, hili 'enua hoko ko ha ngaahi me'angāue 'i he to'ukupu 'o e 'Otuá ke 'omi 'a e tokolahi 'o e kau Sōlamí ki he fakatomalá; pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'a ia na'e 'omi ki he fakatomalá, na'e kapusi ki tu 'a 'a kinautolu mei honau fonuá; ka 'oku nau ma'u ha ngaahi fonua ke hoko ko honau tofi 'a 'i he fonua ko Selesoní, pea kuo nau to'o mahafu ke malu 'i 'a kinautolu, mo honau ngaahi uaifí, mo 'enua fānaú, mo honau ngaahi fonuá.
- 15 Ko 'eni ko 'Alamā, na'á ne loto-mamahi lahi ko e tupu 'i he fai hia 'a hono kakai, 'io koe'uhi ko e ngaahi taú, mo e lilingi totó, mo e ngaahi fakakikihi 'a ia na'e 'iate kinautolú; pea koe'uhi ko 'ene 'alu ke malanga 'aki 'a e folofolá, pe ko hono fekau 'i atu ke malanga 'aki 'a e folofolá, 'i he kakai kotoa pē 'i he kolo kotoa pē; pea 'i he'ene vakai kuo faka'au ke fefeka 'a e loto 'o e kakai, pea na'a nau kamata ke 'ita koe'uhi ko e fefeka 'o e folofolá, ko ia na'e fu'u mamahi lahi ai 'a hono lotó.
- 16 Ko ia, na'á ne fekau ke fakataha mai 'a hono ngaahi fohá, koe'uhi ke ne tuku kiate kinautolu taki taha 'a 'ene enginakí, 'i he ngaahi me'a 'oku kau ki he mā'oní'oní. Pea 'oku mau ma'u ha fakamatala ki he'ene ngaahi fekaú, 'a ia na'á ne fai kiate kinautolu 'o fakatahu mo 'ene lekooti 'a'aná.

Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them.

And thus the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.

And thus ended the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon, and came over into the land of Melek, and gave place in the land of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with the armies of the Lamanites and the armies of the Zoramites; and thus commenced a war betwixt the Lamanites and the Nephites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges; and an account shall be given of their wars hereafter.

And Alma, and Ammon, and their brethren, and also the two sons of Alma returned to the land of Zarahemla, after having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance; and as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their land; but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon, and they have taken up arms to defend themselves, and their wives, and children, and their lands.

Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, yea for the wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were among them; and having been to declare the word, or sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

Therefore, he caused that his sons should be gathered together, that he might give unto them every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. And we have an account of his commandments, which he gave unto them according to his own record.

'Alamā 36

- 1 'E hoku foha, fanongo mai ki he'eku ngaahi leá; he 'oku ou fakapapau kiate koe, 'e fakatatau ki ho' o tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá 'a ho' o tu'umālie 'i he fonuá.
- 2 'Oku ou faka'amu ke ke fai 'o hangē ko me' a kuó u fáí, 'o manatu 'i 'a e pōpula 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí; he na' a nau nofo pōpula, pea na' e 'ikai ha taha 'e lava 'o fakahaofi 'a kinautolu, ka ko e 'Otua pē 'o 'Ēpalahamé, mo e 'Otua 'o 'Aisaké, mo e 'Otua 'o Sēkopé; pea ko e mo'oni na' á ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu 'i honau ngaahi faingata' a' iá.
- 3 Pea ko 'eni, 'E hoku foha ko Hilamani, vakai, 'okú ke kei si' i, pea ko ia, 'oku ou kole ai kiate koe ke ke fanongo mai ki he'eku ngaahi leá 'o ako meiate au; he 'oku ou 'ilo' i 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'e falala ki he 'Otuá 'e tokoni' i 'a kinautolu 'i honau ngaahi 'ahí' ahí' i, mo honau ngaahi tu'utāmaki, mo honau ngaahi mamahí, pea 'e hiki hake 'i he 'aho faka'osí.
- 4 Pea 'oku 'ikai ko hoku lotó ke ke pehē 'oku ou 'ilo' i 'iate au pē—'o 'ikai 'i he kakanó ka 'i he laumālié, 'o 'ikai 'i he 'atamai fakakakanó ka 'i he 'Otuá.
- 5 Ko 'eni, vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, kapau na' e 'ikai fanau 'i au 'i he 'Otuá na' e 'ikai totonu ke u 'ilo' i 'a e ngaahi me' á ni; ka kuo fakahā 'e he 'Otuá, 'i he ngutu 'o 'ene 'āngelo mā'oni' oní, 'a e ngaahi me' á ni kiate au, kae 'ikai koe' uhi ko ha' aku fé'unga 'iate au pē.
- 6 He na' á ku 'alu holo mo e ngaahi foha 'o Mōsaiá, 'o feinga ke faka'auha 'a e siasi 'o e 'Otuá; kae vakai, na' e fekau mai 'e he 'Otuá 'ene 'āngelo mā'oni' oní ke ta'ofi 'a kinautolu 'i he ve' e halá.
- 7 Pea vakai, na' á ne lea mai kiate kinautolu 'i he le' o 'o hangē ko e 'u'ulu 'o e maná, pea na' e ngalulu ai 'a e fonuá kotoa 'i homau lalo va'é; pea na' a mau tō kotoa ki he kekelelé, he na' e tō kiate kinautolu 'a e manavahē ki he 'Eikí.
- 8 Kae vakai, na' e pehē mai 'e he le' o kiate au: Tu' u hake. Peá u tu' u hake 'o tu' u ki 'olunga, peá u sio ki he 'āngeló.
- 9 Pea na' á ne pehē mai kiate au: Kapau ko ho' o feinga ke ke faka'auha koe 'iate koe pē, 'oua te ke toe feinga ke faka'auha 'a e siasi 'o e 'Otuá.

Alma 36

My son, give ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land.

I would that ye should do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our fathers; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.

And now, O my son Helaman, behold, thou art in thy youth, and therefore, I beseech of thee that thou wilt hear my words and learn of me; for I do know that whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be lifted up at the last day.

And I would not that ye think that I know of myself—not of the temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God.

Now, behold, I say unto you, if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things; but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself;

For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God; but behold, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.

And behold, he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.

But behold, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.

And he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku tō hifo ki he kelekelé; pea na'e fē'unga mo e 'aho 'e tolu mo e pō 'e tolu 'a e 'ikai te u toe lava 'o fakaava hoku ngutú, pea 'ikai foki te u toe lava 'o ngāue 'aki hoku nimá mo e va'é.

11 Pea na'e lea 'aki 'e he 'āngeló mo ha ngaahi me'a kehe kiate au, 'a ia na'e fanongo ki ai 'a hoku kāingá, ka na'e 'ikai te u ongo 'i ia; he 'i he 'eku fanongo ko ia ki he ngaahi lea—Kapau ko ho 'o feinga ke ke faka'auha koe 'iate koe pē, 'oua te ke toe feinga ke faka'auha 'a e siasi 'o e 'Otuá—na'e tō ai kiate au ha manavahē mo e 'ohovale lahi telia na'a faka'auha au, ko ia na'á ku tō hifo ai ki he kelekelé 'o 'ikai te u toe ongo 'i ha me'a.

12 Ka na'á ku mamahi'ia 'i he fakamamahi ta'engata, he na'e a'usia 'e hoku laumālié 'a e mamahi taupotu tahá peá u mamahi 'i he 'eku ngaahi angahala kotoa pē.

13 'Io, na'á ku manatu 'i 'eku ngaahi angahalá mo 'eku ngaahi hia kotoa pē, 'a ia na'e fakamamahi 'i ai au 'aki 'a e ngaahi mamahi 'o helí; 'io, na'e mahino kiate au kuó u angatu'u ki hoku 'Otuá, pea kuo 'ikai te u tauhi 'ene ngaahi fekau mā'oni'oni.

14 'Io, pea kuó u fakapoongi 'a e tokolahi 'o 'ene fānaú, pe kuó u tataki atu 'a kinautolu ki he faka'auhá; 'io, pea ko hono fakakātoá na'e pehē fau hono lahi 'o 'eku ngaahi hiá, na'e hanga 'e he 'eku fakakaukau pē ki ha'aku hū atu ki he 'ao 'o hoku 'Otuá 'o tautea hoku laumālié 'i he fu'u ilifia 'oku 'ikai fa'a fakamatala 'i.

15 'Oiaue, na'á ku fakakaukau, pehē ange mai ke lava 'o 'ave au 'o fakaheeki peá u 'osi 'osingamālie 'i hoku laumālié mo hoku sinó fakatou'osi, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a 'omi au ke u tu'u 'i he 'ao 'o hoku 'Otuá, ke fakamāu 'i au 'i he 'eku ngaahi ngāué.

16 Pea ko 'eni, na'e 'aho 'e tolu mo e pō 'e tolu hoku fakamamahi 'i, 'i he ngaahi mamahi 'o ha laumālie kuo fakamala'ia 'i.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē lolotonga hoku fakamamahi 'i pehe 'i 'i he mamahi lahi, 'i he tautea 'i au 'i he manatu ki he 'eku ngaahi angahala lahi, vakai, na'á ku manatu 'i foki 'eku fanongo ki ha kikite 'a 'eku tamaí ki he kakai 'o kau ki he hā'ele mai ha tokotaha 'a ia ko Sisū Kalaisi, ko ha 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, ke ne fai ha fakalelei ki he ngaahi angahala 'a e māmaní.

And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.

And the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words—If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God—I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.

But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.

Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.

Yea, and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.

And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.

And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

18 Ko 'eni, 'i he nofo 'i hoku 'atamaí 'a e fakakaukau ko 'eni, na 'á ku tangi 'i hoku lotó: 'E Sīsū, 'a koe ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, 'alo 'ofa mai kiate au, 'a ia 'oku ou 'i he 'ahu 'o e mamahí, pea kuo takatakai 'iate au 'a e ngaahi sēini ta'engata 'o e maté.

19 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'i he 'eku fakakaukau ki aí, na 'e 'ikai te u toe manatu 'i 'a hoku ngaahi mamahí; 'io, na 'e 'ikai ke toe tautea 'i hoku lotó 'i he 'eku manatu ki he 'eku ngaahi angahalá.

20 Pea 'oiaue, ko e fiefia, mo e maama fakaofo kuó u vakai ki aí; 'io, na 'e fonu hoku laumálié 'i he fu'u fiefia na 'e tatau hono lahí mo hoku mamahí!

21 'Io, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'e hoku foha, 'ikai lava ke hulu mo fakamamahi pehē fau ha me'a 'o tatau mo hoku ngaahi mamahí. 'Io, pea 'oku ou toe pehē kiate koe, 'e hoku foha, kae kehe, 'oku 'ikai ha me'a 'e faka'ofa'ofa mo lelei pehē 'o tatau mo 'eku fiefiá.

22 'Io, na 'á ku pehē na 'á ku mamata, 'o hangē ko e mamata 'a 'etau tamai ko Līhaí, ki he 'Otuá 'oku 'afio 'i hono 'afio'angá, 'oku takatakai 'iate ia ha ngaahi ha 'oha'onga ta'efa'alaua 'o e kau 'āngelo, 'oku hangē 'oku nau hiva mo fakafeta 'i ki honau 'Otuá; 'io, pea na 'e faka'amu 'a hoku laumálié ke u 'i ai mai.

23 Kae vakai, na 'e toe ma'u 'e hoku nimá mo hoku va'é 'a hono iví, peá u tu'u hake 'i hoku va'é, pea na 'á ku fakahā ki he kakaí kuó u fanau 'i 'i he 'Otuá.

24 'Io, pea talu mei he taimi ko iá 'o a'u mai ki he taimí ni, mo 'eku ngāue ta'etuku, ke u lava 'o fakatafoki mai ha kakai ki he fakatomalá; ke u 'omi 'a kinautolu ke nau 'ahi'ahi 'i 'a e fu'u fiefia lahi 'a ia na 'á ku 'ahi'ahi 'i 'e aú; koe'uhi ke nau fanau 'i 'i he 'Otuá foki, pea fonu 'i he Laumālie Mā'oni'oni.

25 'Io, pea ko 'eni vakai, 'e hoku foha, 'oku foaki kiate au 'e he 'Eikí 'a e fu'u fiefia lahi 'aupito 'i he fua 'o 'eku ngaahi ngāue;

26 Pea koe'uhi ko e folofola kuó ne foaki mai kiate aú, vakai, kuo fanau 'i 'i he 'Otuá 'a e tokolahi, pea kuo nau 'ahi'ahi 'i 'o hangē ko 'eku 'ahi'ahi 'i, pea kuo nau mamata tonu 'o hangē ko 'eku mamata tonú; ko ia 'oku nau 'ilo ki he ngaahi me'a ní kuó u lau ki aí, 'o hangē ko 'eku 'iló; pea 'oku mei he 'Otuá 'a e 'ilo 'oku ou ma'ú.

Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.

And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.

And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!

Yea, I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. Yea, and again I say unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy.

Yea, methought I saw, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there.

But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.

Yea, and from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

Yea, and now behold, O my son, the Lord doth give me exceedingly great joy in the fruit of my labors;

For because of the word which he has imparted unto me, behold, many have been born of God, and have tasted as I have tasted, and have seen eye to eye as I have seen; therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken, as I do know; and the knowledge which I have is of God.

27 Pea kuo tokoni i au i he ngaahi 'ahi'ahi mo e ngaahi tu'utāmaki i he fa'ahinga kotoa pē, 'io, pea i he ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē o e mamahi; 'io, kuo tukuange au e he 'Otuá mei he fale fakapōpulá, kae 'uma'ā mei he ngaahi ha'í, pea mo e mate; 'io, pea 'oku ou falala kiate ia, pea te ne kei fakahaofi au.

28 Pea 'oku ou 'ilo te ne hiki hake au i he 'aho faka'osi, ke nofo fakataha mo ia i he nāunau; 'io, pea te u fakafeta i kiate ia o ta'engata, he kuó ne 'omi 'etau ngaahi tamaí mei 'Isipite, pea kuó ne fakamelemo 'a e kau 'Isipité i he Tahi Kulokulá; pea na'á ne tataki 'a kinautolu i hono māfimaí ki he fonua o e tala'ofá; 'io, pea kuó ne toutou fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá mo e nofo ha'isiá mei he taimi ki he taimi.

29 'Io, pea kuó ne 'omi foki 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá; kae 'uma'ā foki, kuó ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu i hono māfimaí ta'engata, mei he nofo pōpulá mo e nofo ha'isiá, mei he taimi ki he taimi o a'u mai ki he 'ahó ni; pea kuó u manatu ma'u ai pē ki he'enua nofo ha'isiá; 'io, pea 'oku totonu foki ke ke manatu ma'u ai pē o hangē ko ia kuó u faí ki he'enua nofo ha'isiá.

30 Kae vakai, 'e hoku foha, 'oku 'ikai ia ko ia pē; ka 'oku totonu ke ke 'ilo' i o hangē ko 'eku 'iló, 'e fakatatau pē ki ho'o tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá 'a ho'o monū'ia i he fonuá; pea 'oku totonu foki ke ke 'ilo' i, kapau 'e 'ikai te ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá 'e motuhi atu koe mei hono 'aó. 'Oku fakatatau 'eni ki he'ene folofolá.

And I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, yea, and in all manner of afflictions; yea, God has delivered me from prison, and from bonds, and from death; yea, and I do put my trust in him, and he will still deliver me.

And I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him in glory; yea, and I will praise him forever, for he has brought our fathers out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea; and he led them by his power into the promised land; yea, and he has delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

Yea, and he has also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem; and he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day; and I have always retained in remembrance their captivity; yea, and ye also ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

But behold, my son, this is not all; for ye ought to know as I do know, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and ye ought to know also, that inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence. Now this is according to his word.

‘Alamā 37

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘e hoku foha ko Hilamani, ‘oku ou fekau kiate koe ke ke ‘ave ‘a e ngaahi lekooti ‘a ia kuo tuku kiate au ke u tauhi;
- 2 Pea ‘oku ou fekau foki kiate koe ke ke tauhi ha lekooti ‘o e kakaí ni ‘i he ngaahi peleti ‘a Nīfái, ‘o hangē ko ia kuó u faí, pea ke ke tauhi ke toputapu ‘a e ngaahi me‘á ni kotoa pē ‘a ia kuó u tauhi, ‘o hangē pē ko ‘eku tauhi íá; he ‘oku tauhi ia koé uhi ko ha taumu ‘a fakapotopoto.
- 3 Pea ko e ngaahi peleti ‘o e palasá ni, ‘a ia ‘oku ‘i ai ‘a e ngaahi tongitongí ni, ‘a ia ‘oku ‘i ai ‘a e ngaahi lekooti ‘o e ngaahi folofola toputapú, ‘a ia ‘oku ‘i ai ‘a e tohi hohoko ‘o ‘eta ngaahi tamaí, ‘io ‘o talu mei he kamata‘angá—
- 4 Vakai, kuo kikite ‘i ia ‘e he ‘eta ngaahi tamaí, ‘e tauhi ia mo tukufakaholo mai mei he to‘u tangata ‘e taha ki he to‘u tangata ‘e taha, pea ‘e tauhi mo malu ‘i ia ‘e he to‘ukupu ‘o e ‘Eikí kae ‘oua ke mafola atu ia ki he pulé‘anga, fa‘ahinga, lea, mo e kakai fulipē, koé uhi ke nau ‘ilo ‘i ‘a e ngaahi me‘a lilo ‘oku ‘i aí.
- 5 Pea ko ‘eni vakai, kapau ‘e tauhi ia, kuo pau ke nau tauhi ma‘u honau ngingilá; ‘io, pea te nau tauhi ma‘u honau ngingilá; ‘io, pea ‘e pehē pē foki mo hono kotoa ‘o e ngaahi peleti ‘a ia ‘oku tu‘u ai ‘a e ngaahi tohi toputapú.
- 6 Ko ‘eni te ke mahalo ‘apē ‘oku ou vale; kae vakai, ‘oku ou pehē kiate koe, ‘oku fakahoko ‘e he fanga kí ‘i me‘a iiki mo faingofuá ‘a e ngaahi fu‘u me‘a lalahi; pea ‘oku hanga ‘e he ngaahi me‘a íkí ‘i he taimi ‘e ní ‘ihi ‘o veuveuki ‘a e potó.
- 7 Pea ‘oku ngāue ‘a e ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá ‘i he ngaahi founa ke fakahoko ai ‘ene ngaahi taumu‘a ma‘ongo‘onga mo ta‘engatá; pea ‘oku fakafou ‘i he ngaahi me‘a íkí hono veuveuki ‘e he ‘Eikí ‘a e kau potó ‘o ne fakahoko ai ‘a e fakamo‘ui ‘o e kakai tokolahí.
- 8 Pea ko ‘eni, koé uhi ko e finangalo potó ‘o e ‘Otuá na‘e totonu ke fakatolonga mai ai ‘a e ngaahi me‘á ni; he vakai, kuo nau tokoni lahi ki he manatu ‘a e kakaí ni; ‘io, ‘o fakamahino ki he tokolahi hono ta‘etotonu ‘o ‘enau ngaahi angafaí; ‘o fakahā kiate kinautolu ‘a e ‘ilo ki honau ‘Otuá ki hono fakamo‘ui ‘o honau laumālié.

Alma 37

And now, my son Helaman, I command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept.

And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning—

Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

Now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but behold I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls.

And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, yea, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

- 9 'Io, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, kapau na'e 'ikai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'a ia 'oku tu'u 'i he ngaahi lekooti ní, 'a ia 'oku tu'u 'i he ngaahi peleti ko 'ení, pehē na'e 'ikai ke lava 'e 'Āmoni mo hono kāingá 'o fakamahino ki he fu'u toko lau afe pehē 'o e kau Leimaná ki hono ta'etotonu 'o e ngaahi talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí; 'io, na'e hanga 'e he ngaahi lekōtí ni mo 'enau ngaahi leá 'o fakaloto 'i 'a kinautolu ke fakatomala; 'a ia ko e pehē, na'a nau 'omi 'a kinautolu ki he 'ilo'í 'o e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, pea fiefia 'ia Sisū Kalaisi ko honau Huhu'í.
- 10 Pea ko hai 'okú ne 'ilo'í na'a faifai pea nau hoko ko ha founga ke 'omi ai ha lau afe lahi kehe, 'io, mo ha lau afe tokolahi foki 'o hotau kāinga kia-kekeva, ko e kau Nifai, 'a ia 'oku nau lolotonga fakafefeká ni honau lotó 'i he angahalá mo e ngaahi fai hiá, ki ha 'ilo ki honau Huhu'í.
- 11 Ko 'eni 'oku te'eki ai ke fakahā kakato mai kiate au hono kotoa 'o e ngaahi me'á liló ni; ko ia, 'e ngata ai 'eku fakamatalá.
- 12 Pea 'e fe'unga pe kapau te u pehē pē kuo malu'í 'a e ngaahi me'á ni koe'uhi ko ha taumu'a fakapotopoto, 'a ia ko ha taumu'a 'oku 'afio'í 'e he 'Otuá; he 'okú ne akonaki 'aki 'a e poto 'i he'ene ngaahi ngāue kotoa pē, pea 'oku hangatonu 'a hono ngaahi halá, pea 'oku tatau ai pē 'o ta'engata 'a hono halá.
- 13 'Oiauē manatu, manatu, 'e hoku foha ko Hilamani, hono 'ikai ke mamafa 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá. Pea na'e folofola 'e ia; Kapau te mou tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú, te mou monū'ia 'i he fonuá—ka kapau 'e 'ikai te mou tauhi 'ene ngaahi fekaú, 'e motuhi atu kimoutolu mei hono 'aó.
- 14 Pea ko 'eni manatu, 'e hoku foha, kuo tuku 'e he 'Otuá kiate koe 'a hono tauhi 'o e ngaahi me'á ni, 'a ia 'oku toputapu, 'a ia kuó ne tauhi ke toputapu, kae 'uma'ā foki ia te ne malu'í mo fakatolonga foki koe'uhi ko ha taumu'a 'oku fakapotopoto kiate ia, koe'uhi ke ne fakahā atu 'a hono māfima'í ki he ngaahi to'u tangata 'amuí.
- 15 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku ou tala kiate koe 'i he laumālie 'o e kikité, kapau te ke maumau'í 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, vakai, ko e ngaahi me'á ni 'a ia 'oku toputapú 'e 'ave meiate koe 'i he māfima'í 'o e 'Otuá, pea 'e tukuange koe kia Sētane ke ne fulifulihi koe 'o hangē ko e kafukafu 'i he matangi.

Yea, I say unto you, were it not for these things that these records do contain, which are on these plates, Ammon and his brethren could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers; yea, these records and their words brought them unto repentance; that is, they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer.

And who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, yea, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their Redeemer?

Now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me; therefore I shall forbear.

And it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round.

O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the commandments of God. And he said: If ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land—but if ye keep not his commandments ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him, that he may show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, I tell you by the spirit of prophecy, that if ye transgress the commandments of God, behold, these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God, and ye shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as chaff before the wind.

- 16 Ka 'o kapau te ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, mo fai ki he ngaahi me'a toputapú ni 'o fakatatau ki he me'a 'e fekau 'e he 'Eikí kiate koé, (he 'oku totonu ke ke kole mei he 'Eikí 'i he me'a kotoa pē 'a ia te ke fai ki aí) vakai, 'oku 'ikai ha mālohi 'o e māmaní pe 'o heli te ne lava 'o to'oa ia meiate koe, he 'oku māfima'fi 'a e 'Otuá ke fakahoko 'a 'ene ngaahi folofola kotoa pē.
- 17 He te ne fakahoko 'a 'ene ngaahi tala'ofa kotoa pē 'a ia te ne fai kiate koé, he kuó ne fakahoko 'a 'ene ngaahi tala'ofa kuó ne fai ki he 'eta ngaahi tamaí.
- 18 He na'á ne tala'ofa kiate kinautolu te ne fakatolonga 'a e ngaahi me'á ni koé uhi ko ha taumu 'a fakapotopoto kiate ia, koé uhi ke ne fakahā ai 'a hono māfima'fi ki he ngaahi to'u tangata 'amuí.
- 19 Pea ko 'eni vakai, ko e finangalo 'e taha kuó ne fakahoko, 'a ia ko e fakatafoki 'o e kau Leimana 'e lau afe tokolahi ki he 'ilo 'i 'o e mo'oní; pea kuó ne fakahā atu 'a hono māfima'fi 'i he ngaahi me'á ni, pea te ne kei fakahā atu 'a hono māfima'fi ki he ngaahi to'u tangata 'amuí; ko ia kuo pau ke malu 'i ia.
- 20 Ko ia, 'oku ou fekau kiate koe, 'e hoku foha ko Hilamani, ke ke ngāue faivelenga 'i he fakahoko 'o 'eku ngaahi lea kotoa pē, pea ke ke ngāue faivelenga 'i he tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá 'o hangē ko ia kuo tohí.
- 21 Pea ko 'eni, te u lea kiate koe 'o kau ki he ngaahi peleti ko 'ena 'e uofulu mā faá, ke ke tauhi ia, koé uhi ke lava ai 'a e ngaahi ngāue liló mo e ngaahi ngāue 'o e fakapo'ulí, mo 'enau ngaahi ngāue fufuú, pe ko e ngaahi ngāue fakafufū 'a e kakai ko ia kuo faka'auhá 'o fakae'a mai ki he kakaí ni; 'io, 'a 'enau ngaahi fakapō kotoa pē, mo e ngaahi kaiha 'a, mo 'enau vete koloa, mo 'enau ngaahi fai angahala kotoa pē, mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá; 'e lelei ke fakae'a ki he kakaí ni; 'io, pea ke ke malu 'i 'a e ongo maka liliu lea ko 'ení.
- 22 He vakai, na'e 'afio 'i 'e he 'Eikí na'e kamata ke ngāue 'a hono kakaí 'i he fakapo'ulí, 'io, ke fai 'a e ngaahi fakapō fufū mo e ngaahi me'a fakalielia; ko ia na'e folofola 'e he 'Eikí, kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala, 'e faka'auha 'a kinautolu mei he funga 'o e māmaní.

But if ye keep the commandments of God, and do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever ye must do with them) behold, no power of earth or hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words.

For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.

For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved.

Therefore I command you, my son Helaman, that ye be diligent in fulfilling all my words, and that ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, all their murders, and robbings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, and that ye preserve these interpreters.

For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

23 Pea na'e folofola 'a e 'Eiki: Te u ngaohi ma'a 'eku tamaio'eiki ko Kaselemi, ha maka, 'a ia 'e ulo atu 'i he fakapo'uli ke fakamaama, koe'uhi ke u fakahā ki hoku kakai 'a ia 'oku tauhi kiate aú, koe'uhi ke u fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a honau kāingá, 'io, 'a 'enau ngaahi ngāue fufuú, mo 'enau ngaahi ngāue 'o e fakapo'uli, mo 'enau fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá.

24 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, na'e teuteu 'a e ongo maka liliu leá ni koe'uhi ke fakahoko 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia na'á ne folofola 'aki, 'o pehē:

25 Te u 'omi mei he po'uli ki he māmá 'a 'enau ngaahi ngāue fufuú, mo 'enau ngaahi anga-fakalieliá; pea ka 'ikai te nau fakatomala, te u faka'auha 'a kinautolu mei he funga 'o e māmaní; pea te u 'omi ki he māmá 'a 'enau ngaahi me'a fufuú kotoa mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá, ki he kakai kotoa pē 'a ia 'e ma'u 'a e fonuá'amui.

26 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'okú tā vakai, na'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala; ko ia kuo faka'auha ai 'a kinautolu, pea kuo fakahoko ai pē 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'o a'u mai ki he 'ahó ni; 'io, kuo fakae'a mei he fu'u po'uli 'a 'enau ngaahi me'a fakalielia fufuú 'o fakahā ia kiate kitautolu.

27 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'oku ou fekau kiate koe ke ta'ofi 'a 'enau ngaahi lea fakapapaú, mo 'enau ngaahi fuakavá, mo 'enau ngaahi aleapau 'i he 'enau ngaahi ngāue fakalielia fufuú; 'io, ko 'enau ngaahi faka'ilonga kotoa pē mo 'enau ngaahi me'a fakaofó ke ke ta'ofi mei he kakai ni, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a nau 'ilo ki ai, telia na'a nau tō foki ki he fakapo'uli 'o 'auha ai.

28 He vakai, 'oku 'i ai ha mala'ia kuo tuku ki he fonuá ni hono kotoa, 'a ia 'e hoko mai 'a e faka'auha ki he kau ngāue kotoa pē 'o e fakapo'uli, 'o fakatatau ki he māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá, 'o ka kakato 'enau fai angahalá; ko ia 'oku ou faka'amu ke 'oua na'a faka'auha 'a e kakai ni.

29 Ko ia ke ke ta'ofi 'a e ngaahi alea fufū 'o 'enau ngaahi fakapapaú mo 'enau ngaahi fuakavá mei he kakai ni, pea 'e ngata pē 'i he 'enau ngaahi fai angahalá mo 'enau ngaahi anga-fakalieliá mo 'enau ngaahi fakapoó te ke fakahā kiate kinautolu; pea te ke akonaki 'i 'a kinautolu ke nau fehi'a ki he fai angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia mo e ngaahi fakapō peheé; pea ke ke akonaki foki kiate kinautolu na'e faka'auha 'a e kakai ni ko e tupu 'i he 'enau fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá mo 'enau ngaahi fakapoó.

And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations.

And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spake, saying:

I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and thus far the word of God has been fulfilled; yea, their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us.

And now, my son, I command you that ye retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their agreements in their secret abominations; yea, and all their signs and their wonders ye shall keep from this people, that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall into darkness also and be destroyed.

For behold, there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might not be destroyed.

Therefore ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their covenants from this people, and only their wickedness and their murders and their abominations shall ye make known unto them; and ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations and murders; and ye shall also teach them that these people were destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and their murders.

30 He vakai, na 'a nau fakapoongi kotoa 'a e kau palōfita 'a e 'Eikí 'a ia na 'a nau ha 'u ki honau lotolotonga ke fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a 'enau ngaahi fai hiá; pea ko e toto 'o kinautolu na 'a nau fakapōngí na 'e tangi ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá ke sāuni kiate kinautolu na 'e fakapoongi 'a kinautolú; ko ia na 'e hoko mai 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a e 'Otuá ki he kau ngāue ko ia 'o e fakapo'ulí mo e ngaahi kautaha fufuú.

31 'Io, pea ke mala 'ia 'a e fonuá 'o ta'engata pea ta'engata ki he kau ngāue ko ia 'o e fakapo'ulí mo e ngaahi kautaha fufuú, 'io 'o a 'u ki hono faka'auha, tuku kehe 'o kapau te nau fakatomala 'oku te'eki kakato 'enau fai angahalá.

32 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi lea kuó u lea 'aki kiate koé; 'oua na 'a 'oatu 'a e ngaahi alea fufū ko iá ki he kakaí ni, kae ako 'i 'a kinautolu ke nau fehi 'a ta'engata ki he angahalá mo e fai hiá.

33 Malanga 'aki atu kiate kinautolu 'a e fakatomalá, mo e tui ki he 'Eiki ko Sīsū Kalaisí; ako 'i 'a kinautolu ke nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu pea ke nau angamalū mo angavaivai; ako 'i 'a kinautolu ke nau lava 'i 'a e 'ahi'ahi kotoa pē 'a e tēvoló, 'aki 'enau tui ki he 'Eiki ko Sīsū Kalaisí.

34 Ako 'i 'a kinautolu ke 'oua na 'a nau teitei fiu 'i he ngaahi ngāue lelé, kae angamalū mo loto-fakatōkilalo; he 'e ma' u 'e he fa'ahinga peheé 'a e fiemālie ki honau laumālié.

35 'Oiauē, manatu, 'e hoku foha, 'o ako 'a e potó 'i ho' o kei sí 'i; 'io, ako 'i ho' o kei sí 'i ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá.

36 'Io, pea tangi ki he 'Otuá ke ma' u ho tauhi kotoa pē; 'io, fai ho' o ngaahi ngāue kotoa pē ki he 'Eiki, pea 'ilonga ha potu te ke 'alu ki ai ke fai ia 'i he 'Eikí; 'io, tuku ke hanga atu ho' o ngaahi fakakaukau kotoa pē ki he 'Eikí; 'io, tuku ke fai ki he 'Eikí 'a e 'ofa 'a ho lotó 'o ta'engata.

37 Fealea 'aki mo e 'Eiki 'i he mé 'a kotoa pē te ke fai, pea te ne fakahinohino 'i koe 'i he mé 'a 'oku lelé; 'io, 'o ka ke ka tokoto hifo 'i he po' ulí tokoto hifo ki he 'Eikí, koe' uhi ke ne tokanga 'i koe 'i ho' o mohé; pea 'o ka ke ka tu' u hake 'i he pongipongí tuku ke fonu ho lotó 'i he fakafeta 'i ki he 'Otuá; pea kapau te ke fai 'a e ngaahi mé 'a ni, 'e hiki hake koe 'i he 'aho faka'osí.

For behold, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and thus the judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations.

Yea, and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they repent before they are fully ripe.

And now, my son, remember the words which I have spoken unto you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity.

Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek and lowly in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls.

O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth; yea, learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God.

Yea, and cry unto God for all thy support; yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord; yea, let all thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord; yea, let the affections of thy heart be placed upon the Lord forever.

Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee for good; yea, when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God; and if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

38 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'oku 'i ai ha ngaahi me'a 'e ni'ihiki ke u lea 'o kau ki he me'a 'oku ui 'e he'etau ngaahi tama'i ko ha me'a fuopotopoto, pe ko ha me'a fakahinohino—pe na'e ui ia 'e he'etau ngaahi tama'i ko e Liahona, 'a ia ko hono 'uhingá, ko ha kápasá; pea ko e 'Eiki na'e teuteu'i iá.

39 Pea vakai, kuo 'ikai lava 'e ha tangatá 'o fai ha ngāue fakatufunga tatau mo faikehe pehē. Pea vakai, na'e ngaohi ia ke fakahā ki he'etau ngaahi tama'i 'a e hala ke nau fononga ai 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

40 Pea na'e ngāue ia ma'anautolu 'o fakatatau ki he'enua tui ki he 'Otuá; ko ia, kapau na'e fe'unga 'enua tu'i ke tui 'oku lava 'e he 'Otuá 'o ngaohi ke tuhu 'a e ongo hui ko iá ki he feitu'u ke nau fou a'i, vakai, na'e fai ia, ko ia na'e fai 'a e me'a maná ni, pea mo e ngaahi mana lahi kehe foki ma'anautolu 'i he māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá mei he 'aho ki he 'aho.

41 Ka neongo iá, ko e me'a 'i hono fai 'o e ngaahi mana ko iá 'i he ngaahi founa i'iki, ko ia na'e fakahā ai kiate kinautolu ha ngaahi ngāue fakaofu. Na'a nau fakapikopiko, 'o ngalo 'iate kinautolu ke ngāue 'aki 'enua tu'i mo e ngāue faivelengá, pea na'e ta'ofi leva 'a e ngaahi ngāue fakaofu ko iá, pea na'e 'ikai te nau lava 'o laka atu ki mu'a 'i he'enua fonongá;

42 Ko ia, na'a nau tatali 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, pe na'e 'ikai te nau fononga 'i ha hala hangatonu, pea na'e fakamamahi 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e fieka'iá mo e fieinuá, koe'uhi ko 'enua ngaahi maumau-fonó.

43 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mahino kiate koe ko e ngaahi me'a ni 'oku 'ikai ke ta'e 'i ai hano 'ata; he 'oku hangē na'e fakapikopiko 'a 'etau ngaahi tama'i ke tokanga ki he kápasá ni ('oku fakatu'asino foki 'a e ngaahi me'a ni) ko ia na'e 'ikai ai te nau monū'ia; 'oku pehē pē foki 'i he ngaahi me'a 'oku fakalaumalié.

44 He vakai, 'oku faingofua tatau pē 'a e tokanga ki he folofola 'a Kalaisí, 'a ia 'e fakahinohino 'i koe ki ha hala hangatonu ki he fiefia ta'engatá, pea mo e tokanga 'a 'etau ngaahi tama'i ki he kápasá ni, 'a ia na'e tuhu 'i kiate kinautolu ha hala hangatonu ki he fonua 'o e tala'ofá.

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.

Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;

Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.

And now, my son, I would that ye should understand that these things are not without a shadow; for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper; even so it is with things which are spiritual.

For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

45 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē, 'ikai 'oku 'i ai hano 'ata 'o e me'á ni? He 'oku hangē pē ko e mo'oni hono 'omi 'e he me'a fakahinohinó ni 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí, 'i he'enu muimui ki he'ene ngaahi fakahinohinó, ki he fonua 'o e tala'ofá, 'oku pehē pē 'a e hanga 'e he ngaahi folofola 'a Kalaisí, kapau te tau muimui ki he'ene fakahinohinó, 'o 'ave 'a kitautolu mei he tele'á ni 'o e mamahí ki ha fonua 'o e tala'ofa 'oku fu'u lelei ange 'aupito.

46 'Oiauē 'e hoku foha, 'oua te ta fakapikopiko koe'uhi ko hono faingofua 'o e halá; he na'e pehē pē mo 'eta ngaahi tamaí; he na'e pehē hono teuteu 'i ma'anautolu, pea kapau te nau sio ki ai te nau mo'ui; 'oku pehē pē kiate kitaua. Kuo teuteu 'a e halá, pea kapau te ta sio ki ai te ta lava 'o mo'ui 'o ta'engata.

47 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, tokanga ke ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi me'a toputapú ni, 'io, tokanga ke ke sio ki he 'Otuá pea mo'ui. 'Alu atu ki he kakaí ni 'o fakahā 'a e folofolá, pea ngāue fakamātoato. 'E hoku foha, nofo ā.

And now I say, is there not a type in this thing? For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise.

O my son, do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; for so was it with our fathers; for so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; even so it is with us. The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever.

And now, my son, see that ye take care of these sacred things, yea, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell.

'Alamā 38

- 1 'E hoku foha, fanongo ki he'eku ngaahi leá, he 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'o hangē ko 'eku pehē kia Hilamaní, te ke monū'ia 'i he fonuá 'o fakatatau ki ho' o tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá; pea 'i he 'ikai te ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá 'e motuhi atu koe mei hono 'aó.
- 2 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'oku ou tui te u ma'u ha fiefia lahi 'iate koe, koe'uhi ko ho' o tu'u ma'u mo ho' o faivelenga ki he 'Otuá; he ko e me'a 'i ho' o kamata 'i ho' o kei si'í ke tokanga ki he 'Eiki ko ho 'Otuá, 'oku pehē 'eku 'amanaki 'e fai pehē atu ho' o tauhi 'ene ngaahi fekau; he 'oku monū'ia ia 'okú ne kātaki ki he ngata'angá.
- 3 'Oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'e hoku foha, kuó u 'osí ma'u 'a e fu'u fiefia lahi 'iate koe, koe'uhi ko ho' o faivelenga mo ho' o tōtōiví, mo ho' o kātakí mo ho' o kātaki fuoloa 'i he kakai 'o e kau Sōlamí.
- 4 He 'oku ou 'ilo na'e ha'i koe; 'io, pea 'oku ou 'ilo 'i foki na'e tolongaki 'aki 'a e maka koe koe'uhi ko e folofolá; pea na'á ke kātaki 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a ko iá 'i he fa'a kātaki koe'uhi na'e 'iate koe 'a e 'Eikí; pea ko 'eni 'okú ke 'ilo 'i na'e fakahaofi koe 'e he 'Eikí.
- 5 Pea ko 'eni 'e hoku foha, ko Sipiloni, 'oku ou faka'amu ke ke manatu, 'e fakatatau ki ho' o falala ki he 'Otuá 'a hono fakahaofi koe mei ho ngaahi 'ahí'ahí'í, mo ho ngaahi faingata'a'íá, pea mo ho ngaahi fakamamahí'í, pea 'e hiki hake koe 'i he 'aho faka'osí.
- 6 Ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'oku 'ikai ko hoku lotó ke ke pehē 'oku ou 'ilo 'i 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'iate au pē, ka ko e Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá 'a ia 'oku 'iate aú 'a ia 'okú ne faka'ilo mai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate aú; he ka ne ta'e'oua hoku fanau 'i 'i he 'Otuá pehē kuo 'ikai te u 'ilo 'i 'a e ngaahi me'á ni.
- 7 Kae vakai, kuo fekau hifo 'e he 'Eikí 'i he'ene 'alo'ofa lahí 'a 'ene 'āngelo ke fakahā kiate au kuo pau ke u ta'ofi 'a e ngāue 'o e faka'aauhá 'i hono kakai; 'io, pea kuó u mamata ki ha 'āngelo ko e mata ki he mata, pea na'á ne lea mai kiate au, pea na'e hangē hono le'ó ko e maná, pea na'e ngalulululu ai 'a e fonuá kotoa.

Alma 38

My son, give ear to my words, for I say unto you, even as I said unto Helaman, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now, my son, I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God; for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments; for blessed is he that endureth to the end.

I say unto you, my son, that I have had great joy in thee already, because of thy faithfulness and thy diligence, and thy patience and thy long-suffering among the people of the Zoramites.

For I know that thou wast in bonds; yea, and I also know that thou wast stoned for the word's sake; and thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee; and now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee.

And now my son, Shiblon, I would that ye should remember, that as much as ye shall put your trust in God even so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Now, my son, I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself, but it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me; for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things.

But behold, the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people; yea, and I have seen an angel face to face, and he spake with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.

- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'aho 'e tolu mo e pō 'e tolu 'a 'eku 'i he fu'u faingata'a 'ia lahi mo e mamahi 'o e laumālié; 'o 'ikai ai, te u ma'u ha fakamolemole ki he 'eku ngaahi angahalá, kae 'oua kuó u tangi ki he 'Eiki ko Sīsū Kalaisi ke ne 'alo'ofa mai. Kae vakai, na'á ku tangi kiate ia pea na'á ku ma'u ha fiamālie ki hoku laumālié.
- 9 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, kuó u fakahā 'eni kiate koe ke ke ako 'a e potó, ke ke ako meiate au 'oku 'ikai mo ha toe hala kehe pe ha founga 'e lava ai 'o fakamo'ui 'a e tangatá, kae ngata pea founga pē 'ia Kalaisi. Vakai, ko ia 'a e mo'ui mo e maama 'o e māmaní. Vakai, ko e folofola ia 'o e mo'oní mo e mā'oní'oní.
- 10 Pea ko 'eni, ko e me'a 'i ho'o kamata ke ako 'i 'a e folofolá ko ia 'oku ou loto ai ke ke hoko atu ho'o ako 'i; pea 'oku ou faka'amu ke ke ngāue faivelenga pea fakama'uma'u 'i he me'a kotoa pē.
- 11 Tokanga ke 'oua na'á ke fielahí 'i he hikisiá; 'io, tokanga ke 'oua na'á ke pōlepole 'i ho poto 'o'ou pe ko ho fu'u ivi lahi.
- 12 Ngāue 'aki 'a e loto-to'á, kae 'ikai ko e fielahí; pea tokanga foki ke ke ta'ofi kotoa ho'o ngaahi holi fakakakanó, koe'uhi ke ke fonu 'i he 'ofá; tokanga ke ke faka'ehi'ehi mei he nofo noá.
- 13 'Oua na'á ke lotu 'o hangē ko e kau Sōlamí, he kuó ke vakai 'oku nau lotú koe'uhi ke fanongo ki ai 'a e kakai, pea ke fakamālō'ia 'a kinautolu 'i honau potó.
- 14 'Oua na'á ke pehē: 'E 'Otua, 'oku ou fakamālō kiate koe koe'uhi 'oku mau lelei ange 'i homau kāingá; ka ke pehē: 'E 'Eiki, fakamolemole 'i mu'a 'eku ta'efe'ungá, pea manatu 'i hoku kāingá 'aki 'a e 'alo'ofa—'io, fakamo'oni 'i ho'o ta'efe'ungá 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá 'i he taimi kotoa pē.
- 15 Pea 'ofa ke tāpuaki 'i 'e he 'Eiki 'a ho laumālié, pea ma'u koe 'i he 'aho faka'osí 'i hono pule'angá, koe'uhi ke ke nofo hifo 'i he melino. Ko 'eni ke ke 'alu, 'e hoku foha, pea ako 'i 'a e folofolá ki he kakai ni. Fai fakamātoato. 'E hoku foha, nofo ā.

And it came to pass that I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul; and never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins. But behold, I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.

And now, my son, I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness.

And now, as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye should continue to teach; and I would that ye would be diligent and temperate in all things.

See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.

Use boldness, but not overbearance; and also see that ye bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with love; see that ye refrain from idleness.

Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.

Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and remember my brethren in mercy—yea, acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times.

And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace. Now go, my son, and teach the word unto this people. Be sober. My son, farewell.

Ko e ngaahi fekau 'a 'Alamā ki hono foha ko Kolianitoni.

'Alamā 39

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'oku 'i ai mo e ngaahi me'a lahi ange 'oku ou fie lea 'aki kiate koe 'oku kehe mei he me'a na'á ku lea 'aki ki ho tokouá; he vakai, 'ikai koā kuó ke vakai ki he tu'u ma'u 'a ho tokouá, ko 'ene faivelenga, mo 'ene tōtōivi 'i he tauhi 'o e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá? Vakai, 'ikai koā kuó ne fokotu'u ha sīpinga lelei ma'au?
- 2 He na'e 'ikai te ke tokanga lahi ki he'eku ngaahi leá 'o hangē ko ho tokouá, 'i he lolotonga 'o e kakai 'o e kau Sōlamí. Ko 'eni, ko e me'a 'eni 'oku ou mamahi ai 'iate koé; na'á ke fai atu 'i he pōlepole 'i ho ivi mo ho potó.
- 3 Pea 'oku 'ikai ia ko ia pē, 'e hoku foha. Na'á ke fai 'a e me'a 'oku fakamamahi kiate au; he na'á ke li'aki 'a e ngāue fakafaifekau, kae 'alu ki he fonua ko Sailoní 'i he ngata'anga 'o e fonua 'o e kau Leimaná, 'o kumi ki he fai fe'auaki ko 'Isapelí.
- 4 'Io, na'á ne tohoaki 'i atu 'a e loto 'o e tokolahi; ka na'e 'ikai ko ha tu'unga 'eni ke ke fakatonuhia 'i ai koe, 'e hoku foha. Na'e totonu ke ke kei tokanga pē ki he ngāue fakafaifekau 'a ia na'e tuku kiate koé.
- 5 'Ikai 'okú ke 'ilo, 'e hoku foha, ko e me'a fakalielia 'a e ngaahi me'a ko 'eni 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí; 'io, 'o fakalielia ange 'i he ngaahi angahala kotoa pē tuku kehe pē 'a e lilingi 'o e toto ta'ehalaí, pe ko e faka'ikai 'i 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni?
- 6 He vakai, kapau te ke faka'ikai 'i 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni 'o ka hili ha'ane ma'u ha nofo'anga 'iate koe, pea 'okú ke 'ilo 'okú ke faka'ikai 'i ia, vakai, ko ha angahala 'eni 'oku 'ikai fa'a fakamolemoleá; 'io, pea ko ia ia 'e fakapō neongo 'a e maama mo e 'ilo 'o e 'Otuá, 'oku 'ikai faingofua kiate ia ke ne ma'u ha fakamolemole; 'io, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'e hoku foha, 'oku 'ikai faingofua kiate ia ke ne ma'u ha fakamolemole.
- 7 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'amusia ange 'e au ki he 'Otuá kuo 'ikai te ke halaia 'i ha fu'u hia lahi pehē. 'E 'ikai te u fie lea fuoloa ki ho 'o ngaahi hiá ke fakamamahi 'i ai ho laumālié, 'o kapau 'e 'ikai lelei ia kiate koe.

The commandments of Alma to his son Corianton.

Alma 39

And now, my son, I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I said unto thy brother; for behold, have ye not observed the steadiness of thy brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God? Behold, has he not set a good example for thee?

For thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother, among the people of the Zoramites. Now this is what I have against thee; thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength and thy wisdom.

And this is not all, my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

Yea, she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was no excuse for thee, my son. Thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted.

Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

For behold, if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; yea, and whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; yea, I say unto you, my son, that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness.

And now, my son, I would to God that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime. I would not dwell upon your crimes, to harrow up your soul, if it were not for your good.

8 Kae vakai, 'oku 'ikai te ke lava 'o fufuu 'i ho' o ngaahi hiá mei he 'Otuá; pea ka 'ikai te ke fakatomala, te nau tu'u ko ha fakamo'oni ke talatalaaki 'i koe 'i he 'aho faka'osí.

9 Ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'oku ou faka'amu ke ke fakatomala pea li'aki ho' o ngaahi angahalá, pea 'ikai toe muimui 'i he ngaahi holi 'a ho matá, kae fakafisi koe mei he ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē; he ka 'ikai te ke fai 'eni, 'e 'ikai te ke momo' i lava 'o ma'u 'a e pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá. 'Oiauē, manatu, pea to'o kiate koe, pea fakafisi koe mei he ngaahi me'a ko iá.

10 Pea 'oku ou fekau kiate koe ke ke fealea'aki mo ho ngaahi ta'oketé 'i he ngaahi me'a te ke faí; he vakai, 'okú ke kei si'i, pea 'oku 'aonga ke tokoni 'i koe 'e ho ngaahi tokouá. Pea tokanga ki he'enu akonakí.

11 'Oua na'á ke tuku ke fakahee 'i koe 'e ha me'a va'inga pe laulaunoa; 'oua na'á ke tuku ke toe fakahee 'i ho lotó 'e he tēvoló ke kumi ki he kau fai fe'auaki kovi ko iá. Vakai, 'E hoku foha, hono 'ikai lahi fau 'a e angahala na'á ke 'omi ki he kau Sōlamí; he 'i he'enu sio ki ho' o angafai na' e 'ikai te nau fie tui ki he'eku ngaahi leá.

12 Pea ko 'eni 'oku folofola 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí kiate au: Fekau ki ho' o fānaú ke failelei telia na'a nau fakahee 'i 'a e loto 'o e kakai tokolahi ki he 'auhá; ko ia 'oku ou fekau kiate koe, 'e hoku foha, ko e me'a 'i he manavahē ki he 'Otuá, ke ke tuku ho' o ngaahi fai hiá;

13 Ke ke tafoki ki he 'Eikí 'aki ho 'atamaí, iví, mo e mālohí kotoa; koe'uhi ke 'oua na'á ke toe fakahee 'i 'a e loto 'o ha ni'ihi ke fai angahala; kae kehe ke ke foki atu kiate kinautolu, 'o fakamo'oni 'i 'a ho' o ngaahi angahalá mo e me'a hala 'a ia kuó ke faí.

14 'Oua na'á ke kumi ki he ngaahi koloá, pe ko e ngaahi me'a va'inga 'o e māmani ko 'ení; he vakai, 'e 'ikai te ke lava 'o 'ave ia mo koe.

15 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'oku ou fie lea kiate koe 'o kau ki he hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí. Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, ko ia ia 'a e tokotaha kuo pau ke hā'ele mai ke to'o 'a e ngaahi angahala 'a e māmani; 'io, te ne hā'ele mai 'o fakahā 'a e ongoongo fakafiefia 'o e fakamo'uí ki hono kakai.

But behold, ye cannot hide your crimes from God; and except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

Now my son, I would that ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things.

And I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder brothers in your undertakings; for behold, thou art in thy youth, and ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers. And give heed to their counsel.

Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words.

And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from your iniquities;

That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; but rather return unto them, and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which ye have done.

Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you.

And now, my son, I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of Christ. Behold, I say unto you, that it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; yea, he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.

- 16 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, ko 'eni 'a e ngāue fakafaifekau na'e ui koe ki aí, ke fakahā 'a e ngaahi ongoongo fakafiefiá ni ki he kakaí ni, ke teuteu honau 'atamai; pe ke hoko mai 'a e fakamo'uí kiate kinautolu, koe'uhí ke nau teuteu 'a e 'atamai 'o 'enau fānaú ke fanongo ki he folofolá 'i he taimi 'o 'ene hā'ele maí.
- 17 Pea ko 'eni te u ki 'i fakafiemālie 'i ho' o fakakaukáu 'i he tefitó ni. Vakai, 'okú ke ofo 'i he 'uhinga kuo tomu'a 'ilo' i ai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'o fuoloa pehē ki mu'á. Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'ikai 'oku mahu'inga tatau ha laumālie ki he 'Otuá 'i he taimí ni 'o tatau mo e mahu'inga 'o ha laumālie 'i he taimi 'o 'ene hā'ele maí?
- 18 'Ikai 'oku 'aonga ke fakahā 'a e palani 'o e huhu'í ki he kakaí ni 'o tatau pē mo 'enau fānaú?
- 19 'Ikai 'oku faingofua tatau 'i he taimí ni ke fekau atu 'e he 'Eikí 'a 'ene 'āngelo ke fakahā mai 'a e ongoongo fakafiefiá ni kiate kinautolu pea ki he 'etau fānaú, pe 'i he hili 'a e taimi 'o 'ene hā'ele maí?

And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people, to prepare their minds; or rather that salvation might come unto them, that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming.

And now I will ease your mind somewhat on this subject. Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand. Behold, I say unto you, is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming?

Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming?

‘Alamā 40

- 1 Ko ‘eni hoku foha, ko ha ngaahi me‘a ‘eni ‘e ni‘ihi ‘oku ou fielea ‘aki kiate koe; he ‘oku ou ongo‘i ‘oku hoha‘a ho ‘atamaí‘o kau ki he toetu‘u ‘o e maté.
- 2 Vakai, ‘oku ou pehē kiate koe, ‘oku ‘ikai ke ‘i ai ha toetu‘u—pe, te u pehē, ko hono fakalea ‘e tahá, ‘oku ‘ikai ‘ai ‘e he sino fa‘a maté ni ‘a e anga ta‘e-fa‘a-mate, ‘oku ‘ikai ke ‘ai ‘e he sino ‘au‘auhá ni ‘a e anga ta‘e-fa‘a-‘au‘auhá—kae ‘oua kuo hili ange ‘a e há‘ele mai ‘a Kalaisí.
- 3 Vakai, ‘okú ne fakahoko ‘a e toetu‘u ‘o e maté. Kae vakai, ‘e hoku foha, ‘oku té‘eki ai ke hokosia ‘a e toetu‘ú. Ko ‘eni, ‘oku ou fakahā kiate koe ha me‘a lilo; ka neongo iá, ‘oku ‘i ai ha ngaahi me‘a lilo lahi kuo ta‘ofi, ke ‘oua na‘a ‘ilo ki ai ha taha ka ko e ‘Otuá pē. Ka ‘oku ou fakahā kiate koe ha me‘a ‘e taha ‘a ia kuó u ‘eke faivelenga ki he ‘Otuá koe‘uhi ke u ‘ilo‘i—‘a ia ko e me‘a ‘oku kau ki he toetu‘ú.
- 4 Vakai, ‘oku ‘i ai ha taimi kuo kotofa, ‘a ia ‘e tu‘u hake ai ‘a e kakai fuli pē mei he maté. Ko ‘eni ko e me‘a ki he taimi ‘e hoko ai iá ‘oku ‘ikai ke ‘ilo‘i ‘e ha taha; ka ‘oku ‘afio‘i ‘e he ‘Otuá ‘a e taimi kuo kotofá.
- 5 Ko ‘eni, ‘oku tatau ai pē pe ‘e ‘i ai ‘a e taimi pē taha, pe ko ha taimi hono ua, pe ko ha taimi hono tolu, ‘a ia ‘e tu‘u hake ai ‘a e kakai mei he maté; ‘oku tatau ai pē; he ‘oku ‘afio‘i ‘e he ‘Otuá ‘a e ngaahi me‘a ni kotoa pē; pea ‘oku fe‘unga pē kiate au ke u ‘ilo‘i ‘oku pehē ia—‘a ia ‘oku ‘i ai ha taimi kuo kotofa ke toe tu‘u ai ‘a e kakai fulipē mei he maté.
- 6 Ko ‘eni kuo pau ke ‘i ai ha taimi ‘i he vaha‘a ‘o e taimi ‘o e maté mo e taimi ‘o e toetu‘ú.
- 7 Pea ko ‘eni ‘oku ou fie fehu‘i pē ko e há ‘oku hoko ki he laumālie ‘o e tangatá he taimi ko ia ‘o e maté ‘o a‘u ki he taimi kuo kotofa ke hoko ai ‘a e toetu‘ú?
- 8 Ko ‘eni ‘oku tatau ai pē pe ‘oku lahi ‘i he tu‘o tahá ‘a e taimi kuo kotofa ke tu‘u hake ai ‘a e kakai; he ‘oku ‘ikai ke mate fakataha ‘a e kakai kotoa pē, pea ‘oku tatau ai pē ia; ‘oku tatau kotoa pē ia mo e ‘aho ‘e taha ki he ‘Otuá, pea ‘oku lau ‘a e taimi ma‘á e tangatá pē.

Alma 40

Now my son, here is somewhat more I would say unto thee; for I perceive that thy mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead.

Behold, I say unto you, that there is no resurrection—or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal does not put on immortality, this corruption does not put on incorruption—until after the coming of Christ.

Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet. Now, I unfold unto you a mystery; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept, that no one knoweth them save God himself. But I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know—that is concerning the resurrection.

Behold, there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.

Now, whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things; and it sufficeth me to know that this is the case—that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead.

Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

And now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

9 Ko ia, 'oku 'i ai ha taimi kuo kotofa ki he tangatá ke nau tu'u hake ai mei he maté; pea 'oku 'i ai ha taimi 'i he vaha'a 'o e maté mo e toetu'ú. Pea ko 'eni, ko e me'a ki he vaha'a taimi ko iá, mo e me'a 'oku hoko ki he laumālie 'o e tangatá ko e me'a ia kuó u fehu 'i faivelenga ki he 'Eikí ke 'ilo'i; pea ko 'eni pē 'a e me'a 'oku ou 'ilo'í.

10 Pea 'o ka hokosia 'a e taimi 'e tu'u hake ai 'a e kakai kotoa pē, te nau toki 'ilo'í 'oku 'afio'í 'e he 'Otuá 'a e ngaahi taimi kotoa pē 'a ia kuo kotofa ki he tangatá.

11 Ko 'eni, ko e me'a ki he tu'unga 'o e laumālie 'i he vaha'a 'o e maté mo e toetu'ú—Vakai, kuo faka'ilo mai kiate au 'e ha 'āngelo, 'oku fakafoki 'a e laumālie 'o e tangata kotoa pē, 'o ka hili ange 'a 'enau mavahe mei he sino fakamatelié ni, 'io, 'a e laumālie 'o e tangata kotoa pē 'o tatau ai pē pe 'oku nau angalelei pe angakovi, ki honau 'apí ki he 'Otua pē ko ia 'a ia na'e foaki 'a e mo'uí kiate kinautolú.

12 Pea 'e toki hoko 'o pehē, ko e ngaahi laumālie 'o e fa'ahinga 'oku mā'oni'oni 'e tali 'a kinautolu ki ha potu 'o e fiefia, 'a ia 'oku ui ko palataisi, ko ha potu 'o e mālōlō, ko ha potu 'o e melino, 'a ia te nau mālōlō ai mei he'enau ngaahi faingata'a'ia kotoa pē mo e hoha'a kotoa pē mo e mamahi.

13 Pea 'e toki hoko 'o pehē, ko e laumālie 'o e kau fai angahalá, 'io, 'a e fa'ahinga 'oku angakoví—he vakai, 'oku 'ikai ke nau ma'u hano konga pe tufakanga 'o e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí; he vakai, na'a nau fili 'a e ngaahi ngāue kovi kae 'ikai ko e lelei; ko ia na'e hū ai 'a e laumālie 'o e tēvoló kiate kinautolu, 'o ne nofo 'ia 'a honau sinó—pea 'e kapusi ki tu'a 'a e fa'ahingá ni ki he fakapo'uli 'oku 'i tu'á; 'e 'i ai 'a e tangi, mo e ngala, mo e fengai'itaki 'o e nifo, pea 'e hoko 'eni koe'uhi ko 'enau hia 'anautolu pē, he na'e taki fakapōpula 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he fa'iteliha 'a e tēvoló.

14 Ko 'eni ko e tu'unga 'eni 'e 'i ai 'a e laumālie 'o e kau fai angahalá, 'io, 'i he fakapo'ulí, pea 'i ha tu'unga fakamanavahē mo e ilifia 'i he 'amanakí, ki he tuputāmaki kakaha 'o e houhau 'o e 'Otuá kiate kinautolú; ko ia 'oku nau nofo 'i he tu'unga ko 'ení, 'o hangē ko e kau mā'oni'oni 'i palataisi, kae 'oua kuo a'u ki he taimi 'o 'enau toetu'ú.

Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection. And now, concerning this space of time, what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.

And when the time cometh when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man.

Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection—Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil—for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house—and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.

Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.

- 15 Ko 'eni, 'oku 'i ai ha ni'ihina 'a nau 'ilo' i ko e tu'unga 'o e fiefia ko 'eni mo e tu'unga ko 'eni 'o e mamahi 'o e laumalié, ki mu'a 'i he toetu'ú, ko e 'uluaki toetu'ú ia. 'To, 'oku ou pehē 'e lava 'o lau ia ko ha toetu'ú, 'a e tu'ú hake 'a e laumalié mo honau tu'utu'uni ki he fiefia pe mamahí, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea kuo lea'akí.
- 16 Kae vakai, kuo toe folofola 'aki foki, 'oku 'i ai ha 'uluaki toetu'ú, 'a ia ko ha toetu'ú 'anautolu kotoa pē kuo mo'ui, pe 'oku mo'ui, pe 'e mo'ui, 'o a'u mai ki he toetu'ú 'a Kalaisí mei he pekiá.
- 17 Ko 'eni, 'oku 'ikai foki te ta mahalo 'e ala hoko 'a e 'uluaki toetu'ú ni, 'a ia kuo pehē hono fakamatata'í, ko e toetu'ú 'o e laumalié mo honau tu'utu'uni ki he fiefia pe ko e mamahí. 'E 'ikai te ke lava ke pehē ko hono 'uhinga 'eni.
- 18 Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'Ikai; ka 'oku 'uhinga ia ki he toe fakataha 'i 'o e laumalié mo e sinó, 'o kinautolu talu mei he ngaahi 'aho 'o 'Ātamá 'o a'u mai ki he toetu'ú 'a Kalaisí.
- 19 Ko 'eni, 'oku 'ikai te u pehē, 'e fakataha 'a e laumalié mo e sino 'o kinautolu kotoa pē kuo lau ki aí 'i he taimi tatau pē, 'o tatau 'a e fai angahalá mo e mā'oni'oni; kae tuku mu'a ke fe'unga 'eku pehē te nau tu'ú hake kotoa pē; pe 'i hono fakalea 'e tahá, te nau toe tu'ú ki mu'a 'i he toetu'ú 'a kinautolu 'e mate hili 'a e toetu'ú 'a Kalaisí.
- 20 Ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'oku 'ikai te u pehē 'e hoko 'a 'enau toetu'ú 'i he toetu'ú 'a Kalaisí; kae vakai, 'oku ou fakahā ia 'i he fakakaukau pē 'a'aku, 'e fakataha 'i 'a e laumalié mo e sino 'o e kau mā'oni'oni, 'i he toetu'ú 'a Kalaisí, mo 'ene hā'ele hake ki he langí.
- 21 Ka 'oku 'ikai te u pehē pe 'e hoko ia 'i he'ene toetu'ú pē ki mui ai; ka 'oku ou pehē pē, 'oku 'i he vaha'a 'o e maté mo e toetu'ú 'o e sinó, ha tu'unga fiefia 'o e laumalié pe ko e mamahi kae 'oua ke hokosia 'a e taimi kuo kotofa 'e he 'Otuá ke 'alu atu 'a e maté, pea toe fakataha 'i, 'a e laumalié mo e sinó fakatou'osi, pea taki mai ke tu'ú 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, 'o fakamāu 'i 'o fakatau ki he'enua ngaahi ngāué.
- 22 'To, 'oku fakahoko 'i he me'á ni 'a e fakafoki 'o e ngaahi me'a kuo lea 'aki 'i he ngutu 'o e kau palōfitá.

Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. Yea, I admit it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignment to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.

And behold, again it hath been spoken, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead.

Now, we do not suppose that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignment to happiness or misery. Ye cannot suppose that this is what it meaneth.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but it meaneth the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ.

Now, whether the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say; let it suffice, that I say that they all come forth; or in other words, their resurrection cometh to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.

Now, my son, I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ; but behold, I give it as my opinion, that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.

But whether it be at his resurrection or after, I do not say; but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.

23 'E fakafoki 'a e laumālié ki he sinó, pea mo e sinó ki he laumālié; 'io, pea 'e fakafoki 'a e kupu kotoa mo e hokotanga hui kotoa pē ki hono sinó; 'io, na 'a mo ha tu'oni lou'ulu mei he 'ulú he 'ikai mole ia; ka 'e fakafoki 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē ki honau angatotonu mo haohaoá.

24 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, ko e fakafoki 'eni kuo lea ki ai 'i he ngutu 'o e kau palōfitá—

25 Pea 'e toki ulo atu 'a e kau mā'oni'oní 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá.

26 Kae vakai, 'e hoko mai ha mate fakamanavahē ki he kau fai angahalá; he 'oku nau mate 'i he ngaahi me'a 'oku kau ki he mā'oni'oní; he 'oku nau ta'ema'a, pea 'e 'ikai lava 'e ha me'a 'oku ta'ema'a 'o ma'u 'a e pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá; ka 'e kapusi ki tu'a 'a kinautolu, pea tu'utu'uni ke nau kai 'a e ngaahi fua 'o 'enau ngaahi ngāué, pe ko 'enau ngaahi angafai 'a ia kuo koví; pea te nau inu 'a e totoka 'o e ipu koná.

The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.

And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets—

And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.

But behold, an awful death cometh upon the wicked; for they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they are cast out, and consigned to partake of the fruits of their labors or their works, which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.

‘Alamā 41

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘e hoku foha, ‘oku fie lea si‘i ‘o kau ki he fakafoki kuo lau ki ai; he vakai, kuo hanga ‘e ha ni‘ihi ‘o faka‘uhinga‘i hala ‘a e ngaahi folofolá, ‘o nau fu‘u hē mama‘o ai koe‘uhi ko e me‘á ni. Pea ‘oku ou ‘ilo kuo hoha‘a foki ho ‘atamaí ‘i he me‘á ni. Kae vakai, te u fakamatala‘i ia kiate koe.
- 2 ‘Oku ou pehē kiate koe, ‘e hoku foha, ‘oku hoa ‘a e palani ‘o e fakafoki pea mo e fakamaau totonu ‘a e ‘Otuá; he ‘oku totonu ke fakafoki ‘a e ngaahi me‘a kotoa pē ki honau anga-totonú. Vakai, ‘oku ‘aonga mo totonu ia, ‘o fakatatau ki he māfima‘i mo e toetu‘u ‘a Kalaisí, ke fakafoki ‘a e laumālie ‘o e tangatá ki hono sinó, pea ke fakafoki ‘a e ngaahi kupu kotoa pē ‘o e sinó ki ai.
- 3 Pea ‘oku hoa mo e fakamaau totonu ‘a e ‘Otuá ke fakamāu‘i ‘a e tangatá ‘o fakatatau ki he‘enau ngaahi ngāuē; pea kapau na‘e lelei ‘enau ngaahi ngāuē ‘i he mo‘uí ni, pea na‘e lelei mo e ngaahi holi ‘a honau lotó, ke toe fakafoki ‘a kinautolu foki, ‘i he ‘aho faka‘osí, ki he me‘a ‘oku lelei.
- 4 Pea kapau kuo kovi ‘a ‘enau ngaahi ngāuē ‘e fakafoki kiate kinautolu ‘a e kovi. Ko ia, ‘e toe fakafoki ‘a e me‘a kotoa pē ki honau angatotonú, ko e me‘a kotoa pē ki hono anga-fakanatulá—‘e fokotu‘u hake ‘a e fa‘a-maté ki he ta‘e-fa‘a-mate, pea mo e fa‘a-‘au‘auha ki he ta‘e-fa‘a-‘au‘auha—‘o fokotu‘u hake ki he fiefia ta‘engata ke ma‘u ‘a e pule‘anga ‘o e ‘Otuá, pe ki he mamahi ta‘etuku ke ma‘u ‘a e pule‘anga ‘o e tēvoló, ko e taha ‘i he feitu‘u ‘e taha, pea ko e taha ‘i he feitu‘u ‘e taha—
- 5 Ko e taha kuo fokotu‘u hake ki he fiefia ‘o fakatatau mo ‘ene ngaahi holi ki he fiefiá, pe ko e lelei ‘o fakatatau mo ‘ene ngaahi holi ki he lelei; pea ko e tokotaha ki he kovi ‘o fakatatau mo ‘ene ngaahi holi ki he koví; he ko e me‘a ‘i he‘ene holi ke faikovi ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e ‘ahó ko ia te ne ma‘u ai ‘ene totongi ‘o e kovi ‘o ka hoko mai ‘a e poó.
- 6 Pea ‘oku pehē pe ‘i he feitu‘u ‘e tahá. Kapau kuó ne fakatomala mei he‘ene ngaahi angahalá, mo holi ki he mā‘oní‘oní, ‘o a‘u ki he ‘osi ‘a hono ngaahi ‘ahó, pehē ‘e totongi kiate ia koe‘uhi ko e mā‘oní‘oní.

Alma 41

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested the scriptures, and have gone far astray because of this thing. And I perceive that thy mind has been worried also concerning this thing. But behold, I will explain it unto thee.

I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored to itself.

And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last day, be restored unto that which is good.

And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil. Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, every thing to its natural frame—mortality raised to immortality, corruption to incorruption—raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one on one hand, the other on the other—

The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or good according to his desires of good; and the other to evil according to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh.

And so it is on the other hand. If he hath repented of his sins, and desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be rewarded unto righteousness.

7 Ko e fá'ahinga 'eni kuo huhu 'i 'e he 'Eikí; 'io, ko e fá'ahinga 'eni kuo to'ó atu, 'a ia kuo fakahaofi mei he po'uli ta'etuku 'o e fakapo'ulí; pea ko ia 'oku nau tu'u pe tō; he vakai, 'oku hoko ko e kau fakamaau kiate kinautolu pē, pe te nau failelei pe faikovi.

8 Ko 'eni, 'oku 'ikai lava ke liliu 'a e ngaahi tu'utu'uni 'a e 'Otuá; ko ia, kuo tofa 'a e halá ke 'ilonga ia 'e loto ki aí ke ne fononga atu ai 'o mo'ui.

9 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'e hoku foha, 'oua ná'á ke 'ahí'ahí 'i 'i ha toe angahala 'e taha ki ho 'Otuá 'i he ngaahi tefito 'i mo'oni ko ia 'o e tokäteliné, kuó ke 'ahí'ahí 'i ki mu'a ke fai angahala.

10 'Oua ná'á ke mahalo, koe'uhi kuo lau 'o kau ki he fakafokí, 'e fakafoki koe mei he angahalá ki he fiefia. Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, kuo te'eki ai hoko 'a e fai angahalá ko e fiefia.

11 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, ko e kakai kotoa pē 'oku 'i he tu'unga fakanatulá, pe ko 'eku pehē, 'i he tu'unga fakakakanó, 'oku nau mo'ua 'i he 'ahu 'o e mamahí pea mo e ngaahi ha'i 'o e fai hiá; 'oku 'ikai te nau ma'u 'a e 'Otuá 'i he māmaní, pea kuo nau hē mei he anga 'o e 'Otuá; ko ia, 'oku nau 'i he tu'unga 'oku faikehekehe mo e anga 'o e fiefiá.

12 Pea ko 'eni vakai, ko hono 'uhinga koā 'o e lea fakafokí ke 'ave ha me'a 'oku 'i hono tu'unga fakanatula 'o fokotu'u ia 'i he tu'unga 'oku 'ikai fakanatula, pe ke fokotu'u ia 'i he tu'unga 'oku fehangahangai mo hono natulá?

13 'Oiauē, 'e hoku foha, 'oku 'ikai ke pehē ia; ka ko hono 'uhinga 'o e lea fakafokí ko e toe fakafoki 'a e koví ki he kovi, pe ko e anga-fakakakanó ki he anga-fakakakano, pe ko e anga-fakatēvoló ki he anga-fakatēvolo—ko e lelei ki he me'a 'oku lelei; ko e mā'oni'oni ki he me'a 'oku mā'oni'oni; ko e angatonú ki he me'a 'oku angatonu; ko e anga'ofá ki he me'a 'oku anga'ofa.

14 Ko ia, 'e hoku foha, tokanga ke ke anga'ofa ki ho kāingá; faitotonu, fakamaau mā'oni'oni, pea failelei ma'u ai pē; pea 'o ka ke ka fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, te ke tokí ma'u ho'ó totongí; 'io, 'e toe fakafoki atu kiate koe 'a e 'alo'ofa; 'e toe fakafoki atu kiate koe 'a e angatonú; 'e toe fakafoki atu kiate koe ha fakamaau mā'oni'oni; pea 'e toe totongi atu kiate koe 'a e lelei.

These are they that are redeemed of the Lord; yea, these are they that are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness; and thus they stand or fall; for behold, they are their own judges, whether to do good or do evil.

Now, the decrees of God are unalterable; therefore, the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved.

And now behold, my son, do not risk one more offense against your God upon those points of doctrine, which ye have hitherto risked to commit sin.

Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.

And now, my son, all men that are in a state of nature, or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; they are without God in the world, and they have gone contrary to the nature of God; therefore, they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.

And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?

O, my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish—good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful.

Therefore, my son, see that you are merciful unto your brethren; deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually; and if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward; yea, ye shall have mercy restored unto you again; ye shall have justice restored unto you again; ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again; and ye shall have good rewarded unto you again.

15 He ko e me'a 'okú ke 'oatú 'e toe foki mai ia kiate koe, pea fakafoki mai ia; ko ia, 'oku hanga 'e he lea fakafokí 'o fakahalaia 'i lahi ange 'a e tokotaha angahalá, 'o 'ikai momo 'i fakatonuhia 'i ia.

For that which ye do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore, the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all.

‘Alamā 42

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘e hoku foha, ‘oku ou ‘ilo ‘oku toe ‘i ai mo ha me‘a ‘e ni‘ihi ‘oku hoha‘a ki ai ho ‘atamaí, ‘a ia ‘oku ‘ikai lava ke mahino kiate koe—‘a ia ‘oku kau ki he fakamaau totonu ‘a e ‘Otuá ‘i hono tautea‘i ‘o e tokotaha angahalá; he ‘okú ke feinga ke mahalo ‘oku ta‘etotonu ke tuku ‘a e tokotaha angahalá ki ha tu‘unga ‘o e mamahi.
- 2 Ko ‘eni vakai, ‘e hoku foha, te u fakamatala ‘a e me‘á ni kiate koe. He vakai, na‘e hili leva hono fekau atu ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá ‘a ‘etau ‘uluaki ongo mātu‘á mei he ngoue ‘o ‘Ītení, ke na ngoue‘i ‘a e kelekele, ‘a ia na‘e to‘o ‘a kinaua mei aí—‘io, na‘á ne kapusi ki tu‘a ‘a e tangatá, peá ne tuku ki he ngata‘anga ki he hahake ‘o e ngoue ‘o ‘Ītení, ha kau selupimi, mo ha heletā ulo ‘a ia na‘e foli fakatakamilo, ke le‘ohi ‘a e ‘akau ‘o e mo‘uí—
- 3 Ko ‘eni, ‘oku tau vakai kuo hoko ‘a e tangatá ‘o hangē ko e ‘Otuá, ‘o ‘ilo ‘a e leleí mo e koví; pea telia na‘á ne mafao atu hono nimá, ‘o toli foki mei he ‘akau ‘o e mo‘uí, ‘o kai pea mo‘uí ‘o ta‘engata, na‘e tuku ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá ha kau selupimi mo e heletā ulo, ke ‘oua na‘á ne kai mei he fuá—
- 4 Pea ko ia ‘oku tau ‘ilo‘i, na‘e tuku ha taimi ki he tangatá ke fakatomala ai, ‘io, ko ha taimi ‘ahí‘ahí‘anga, ko e taimi ke fakatomala, pea tauhi ki he ‘Otuá.
- 5 He vakai, kapau na‘e mafao atu leva ‘e ‘Ātama ‘a hono nimá, ‘o kai mei he ‘akau ‘o e mo‘uí, pehē kuó ne mo‘uí ‘o ta‘engata, ‘o hangē ko e folofola ‘a e ‘Otuá, ‘o ‘ikai ma‘u hano taimi ke fakatomala ai; ‘io, pea mei ta‘e‘aonga foki ai ‘a e folofola ‘a e ‘Otuá, pea ta‘ofi ai ‘a e palani lahi ‘o e fakamo‘uí.
- 6 Kae vakai, na‘e tu‘utu‘uni ki he tangatá ke mate—ko ia, koe‘uhi kuo motuhi atu ‘a kinautolu mei he ‘akau ‘o e mo‘uí na‘e totonu ke motuhi atu ai ‘a kinautolu mei he funga ‘o e māmaní—pea na‘e hoko ‘o mole ai ‘a e tangatá ‘o ta‘engata, ‘io, na‘a nau hoko ko e tangata kuo hinga.
- 7 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘oku ke vakai ‘i he me‘á ni na‘e motuhi atu ‘etau ‘uluaki ongo mātu‘á ‘i he anga-fakasinó mo e fakalaumālié fakatou‘osi mei he ‘ao ‘o e ‘Eiki; pea ko ia ‘oku ta vakai na‘á na mo‘ulaloa ai ke fai ki hona loto ‘onauá.
- 8 Ko ‘eni vakai, na‘e ‘ikai ‘aonga ke fakahaofi ‘a e tangatá mei he mate fakasino ko ‘ení, koe‘uhi ‘e maumau‘i ai ‘a e palani lahi ‘o e fiefiá.

Alma 42

And now, my son, I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind, which ye cannot understand—which is concerning the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner; for ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be consigned to a state of misery.

Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken—yea, he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life—

Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good and evil; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit—

And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance; yea, and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated.

But behold, it was appointed unto man to die—therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off from the face of the earth—and man became lost forever, yea, they became fallen man.

And now, ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord; and thus we see they became subjects to follow after their own will.

Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

- 9 Ko ia, koe'uhi 'e 'ikai ke teitei lava 'o mate 'a e laumālié, pea mo e fakahoko mai 'i he hingá ki he fá'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá ha mate fakalaumālie pea mo ha mate fakasino, 'a ia ko e pehē, na'e motuhi atu 'a kinautolu mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, ko ia na'e 'aonga ai ke fakahaofi 'a e fá'ahinga 'o e tangatá mei he mate fakaelaumālie ko iá.
- 10 Ko ia, ko e me'a 'i he'enu hoko 'o fakakakano, pea anga-fakakakano, mo anga-fakatēvolo, 'i honau natulá, ko ia na'e hoko ai 'a e tu'unga 'ahi'ahi'anga ko 'ení ko ha tu'unga mo'onautolu ke teuteu ai; na'e hoko ia ko ha tu'unga teuteu'anga.
- 11 Pea ko 'eni manatu, 'e hoku foha, ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e palani 'o e huhu'í (pe kuo lí'aki ia), pehē ko e hili pē 'enu maté 'e mamahi'ia honau laumālié, koe'uhi ko e motuhi atu 'a kinautolu mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí.
- 12 Pea ko 'eni, na'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha founa ke fakahaofi ai 'a e tangatá mei he tu'unga 'o e hinga ko iá, 'a ia kuo fakahoko 'e he tangatá kiate ia ko e tupu 'i he'ene talangata 'a pē 'a'aná;
- 13 Ko ia, fakatau ki he fakamaau totonú, 'e 'ikai lava 'o fakahoko 'a e palani 'o e huhu'í, tuku kehe 'o ka toki fakatomala 'a e tangatá 'i he tu'unga 'ahi'ahi'anga ko 'ení, 'io, 'a e tu'unga teuteu'angá ni; he kā ne 'ikai ke 'i ai 'a e ngaahi tu'ungá ni, he 'ikai ke 'i ai hano 'aonga 'o e 'alo'ofá ka te ne maumau 'i 'a e ngāue 'o e fakamaau totonú. Ko 'eni 'e 'ikai lava 'o faka'auha 'a e ngāue 'o e fakamaau totonú; ka ne pehē, he 'ikai toe 'Otuá 'a e 'Otuá ia.
- 14 Pea ko ia 'oku hā mai ai kuo hinga 'a e fá'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá, pea kuo nau mo'ua ki he fakamaau totonú; 'io, 'a e fakamaau totonu 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia na'e tu'utu'uni ai ke motuhi atu 'a kinautolu mei hono 'aó 'o ta'engata.
- 15 Pea ko 'eni, 'e 'ikai lava ke fakahoko 'a e palani 'o e 'alo'ofá ta'efai ha fakalelei; ko ia na'e fai 'e he 'Otuá tonu 'a e fakalelei ki he ngaahi angahala 'a e māmaní, ke fakahoko 'a e palani 'o e 'alo'ofá, ke fakalato ai 'a e ngaahi fiema'u 'a e fakamaau totonú, koe'uhi ke hoko 'a e 'Otuá ko ha 'Otuá haohaoa, mo angatonu, kae 'uma'ā ko ha 'Otuá 'alo'ofa foki.

Therefore, as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.

And now remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And now, there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;

Therefore, according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state; for except it were for these conditions, mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice. Now the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God.

And thus we see that all mankind were fallen, and they were in the grasp of justice; yea, the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.

And now, the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made; therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.

16 Ko 'eni, 'e 'ikai lava ke hoko mai 'a e fakatomalá ki he tangatá tuku kehe kapau na'e 'i ai ha tautea, 'a ia 'oku ta'engata foki mo ia 'o hangē pē ko e mo'uí 'a e laumālié, 'a ia kuo fokotu'ú 'o fehanga hangai ki he palani 'o e fiefiá, 'a ia 'oku ta'engata 'o hangē ko e mo'uí 'a e laumālié.

17 Ko 'eni, 'e lava fēfē ha tangata 'o fakatomala 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te ne fai angahala? Te ne lava fēfē 'o fai angahala 'o kapau 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha fono? 'E lava fēfē ke 'i ai ha fono ta'e-'i ai-ha tautea?

18 Ko 'eni, na'e 'i ai ha tautea na'e fokotu'ú, pea mo ha fono totonu kuo tuku mai, 'a ia na'e 'omai 'a e tautea 'o e konisēnisí ki he tangatá.

19 Ko 'eni, kapau na'e 'ikai ke foaki mai ha fono—kapau 'e fakapō 'e ha tangata 'oku totonu ke ne mate—te ne manavahē koā na'a mate 'o kapau te ne fakapō?

20 Pea ko e tahá foki, kapau na'e 'ikai ke foaki mai ha fono ke ta'ofi 'a e angahalá 'e 'ikai manavahē 'a e tangatá ke fai angahala.

21 Pea kapau na'e 'ikai ke foaki mai ha fono, kapau 'e fai angahala 'a e tangatá ko e hā ha me'a 'e lava ke fai 'e he fakamaau totonú, pe ko e 'alo'ofá, koe'uhi he 'ikai te na ma'ú ha mālohi ki he tokotaha ko iá?

22 Ka kuo foaki mai ha fono, pea fokotu'ú mo ha tautea, pea fakangofua ha fakatomala; 'a ia ko e fakatomala, 'oku ma'ú 'i he 'alo'ofá; ka 'ikai, pea 'e ma'ú 'e he fakamaau totonú 'a e tokotaha ko iá, 'o fakahoko 'a e fonó, pea 'e hilifaki 'a e tautea 'e he fonó; ka ne 'ikai ke pehē, 'e faka'auha 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a e fakamaau totonú, pea he 'ikai ke toe 'Otua 'a e 'Otuá.

23 Ka 'oku 'ikai ke tuku 'e he 'Otua 'a 'ene hoko ko e 'Otuá, pea 'oku ma'ú 'e he 'alo'ofá 'a e fa'ahinga 'oku loto-fakatomalá, pea 'oku hoko mai 'a e 'alo'ofá tu'unga 'i he fakalelei; pea 'oku fakahoko 'e he fakalelei 'a e toetu'ú 'o e maté; pea 'oku hanga 'e he toetu'ú 'o e maté 'o fakafoki atu 'a e tangatá ki he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá; ko ia 'oku fakafoki atu ai 'a kinautolu ki hono 'aó, ke fakamāu 'i 'o fakatatau ki he 'enua ngaahi ngāue, 'o fakatatau mo e fonó mo e fakamaau totonú.

Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.

Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment?

Now, there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

Now, if there was no law given—if a man murdered he should die—would he be afraid he would die if he should murder?

And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin.

And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?

But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance, mercy claimeth; otherwise, justice claimeth the creature and executeth the law, and the law inflicteth the punishment; if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God.

But God ceaseth not to be God, and mercy claimeth the penitent, and mercy cometh because of the atonement; and the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead; and the resurrection of the dead bringeth back men into the presence of God; and thus they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works, according to the law and justice.

24 He vakai, 'oku fai 'e he fakamaau totonú 'a 'ene ngaahi 'eke kotoa pē, pea 'oku kumi foki 'e he 'alo'ofá ke ma'u 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku 'a'aná; pea ko ia, 'oku 'ikai ha taha ka ko ia pē 'oku loto-fakatomala mo'oní 'oku fakamo'uí.

25 Ko e hā, 'okú ke mahalo koā 'oku to'o 'e he 'alo'ofá 'a e fakamaau totonú? 'Oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'Ikai; na'a mo ha momo'i me'a. Kapau 'e pehē, he 'ikai ke toe 'Otuá 'a e 'Otuá ia.

26 Pea ko ia 'oku fakahoko ai 'e he 'Otuá 'a 'ene ngaahi taumu'a ma'ongo'onga mo ta'engata, 'a ia na'e teuteu talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní. Pea ko ia 'oku hoko ai 'a e fakamo'uí mo e huhu'i 'o e tangatá, kae 'uma'ā foki honau faka'auhá mo e mamahí.

27 Ko ia, 'E hoku foha, 'ilonga ia 'e ha'ú tuku ke ne ha'u 'o inu ta'etotongi 'i he ngaahi vai 'o e mo'uí; pea 'ilonga ia 'oku 'ikai ha'ú 'oku 'ikai fakamālohi'i ia ke ha'u; ka 'i he 'aho faka'osí 'e fakafoki kiate ia 'o fakatatau ki he'ene ngaahi ngāué.

28 Kapau na'á ne holi ke faikovi, pea 'ikai te ne fakatomala 'i hono ngaahi 'ahó, vakai, 'e fai kiate ia 'a e kovi, 'o fakatatau mo e fakafoki 'a e 'Otuá.

29 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'oku ou loto ke 'oua na'a ke tuku ke toe fakahoha'asi koe 'e he ngaahi me'a ni, kae tuku pē ho'o ngaahi angahalá ke fakahoha'asi koe, 'aki 'a e hoha'a 'a ia 'e 'ohifo ai koe ki he fakatomalá.

30 'Oiaue 'e hoku foha, 'oku ou loto ke 'oua na'á ke toe faka'ikai'i 'a e fakamaau totonu 'a e 'Otuá. 'Oua na'á ke feinga ke fakatonuhia'i koe 'i ha kihi'i momo'i me'a 'e taha koe'uhi ko ho'o ngaahi angahalá, 'aki 'i hono faka'ikai'i 'o e fakamaau totonu 'a e 'Otuá; kae 'oua na'á ke tuku 'a e lotó fakamaau totonu 'a e 'Otuá, mo 'ene 'alo'ofá, mo 'ene fa'a kātaki fuoloá ke ne pule'i 'a ho lotó; pea tuku ke ne 'ohifo koe ki he efú 'i he loto-fakatōkilalo.

31 Pea ko 'eni, 'E hoku foha, kuo ui koe 'e he 'Otuá ke malanga 'aki 'a e folofolá ki he kakai ni. Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'alu 'i ho halá, fakahā 'a e folofolá 'i he mo'oni mo e loto-fakamātoato, koe'uhi ke ke lava 'o 'omi ha kakai ke fakatomala, koe'uhi ke ma'u 'e he palani ma'ongo'onga 'o e 'alo'ofá ha mālohi kiate kinautolu. Pea 'ofa ke foaki kiate koe 'e he 'Otuá 'o fakatatau mo 'eku ngaahi leá. 'Ēmeni.

For behold, justice exerciseth all his demands, and also mercy claimeth all which is her own; and thus, none but the truly penitent are saved.

What, do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God.

And thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world. And thus cometh about the salvation and the redemption of men, and also their destruction and misery.

Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds.

If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days, behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should let these things trouble you no more, and only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance.

O my son, I desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

And now, O my son, ye are called of God to preach the word unto this people. And now, my son, go thy way, declare the word with truth and soberness, that thou mayest bring souls unto repentance, that the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them. And may God grant unto you even according to my words. Amen.

‘Alamā 43

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e ‘alu atu ‘a e ngaahi foha ‘o ‘Alamaá ‘i he kakaí, ke malanga ‘aki ‘a e folofolá kiate kinautolu. Pea ko ‘Alamā tonu foki, na’e ‘ikai te ne mālōlō, ‘o ne ‘alu atu foki mo ia.
- 2 Ko ‘eni ‘e ‘ikai te tau toe fakamatala ‘o kau ki he ‘enau ngaahi malangá, tuku kehe pē ‘a ‘enau malanga ‘aki ‘a e folofolá, mo e mo‘oní, ‘o fakatatau ki he laumālie ‘o e kikitē mo e fakahaá; pea na‘a nau malanga ‘i he lakanga toputapu ‘o e ‘Otuá ‘a ia na’e ui ai ‘a kinautolú.
- 3 Pea ko ‘eni ‘oku ou toe foki ki ha fakamatala ‘o e ngaahi tau ‘i he vaha‘a ‘o e kau Nīfái mo e kau Leimaná, ‘i hono hongofulu mā valú ta‘u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāú.
- 4 He vakai, na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e hoko ‘a e kau Sōlamí ko e kau Leimana; ko ia, ‘i he kamata‘anga ‘o e ta‘u hono hongofulu mā valú na’e vakai ‘a e kau Nīfái ‘oku ‘oho mai ‘a e kau Leimaná kiate kinautolu; ko ia na‘a nau fai ha ngaahi teuteu ki he tau; ‘io, na‘a nau tānaki fakataha ‘enau ngaahi kau taú ki he fonua ko Selesoní.
- 5 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e ha‘u ‘a e kau Leimaná mo honau toko lau afe; pea na‘a nau hū mai ki he fonua ko ‘Aniteonumí, ‘a ia ko e fonua ‘o e kau Sōlamí; pea ko e tangata na’e hingoa ko Seilahemena ‘a honau takí.
- 6 Pea ko ‘eni, ko e me‘a ‘i he fai angahala mo lotofakapō lahi ange ‘a e kau ‘Amalekaí ‘i he kau Leimaná ‘iate kinautolu pē, ko ia, na’e fokotu‘u ‘e Seilahemena ha kau ‘eikitau lahi ki he kau Leimaná, pea ko kinautolu kotoa ko íá ko e kau ‘Amelikai mo e kau Sōlami.
- 7 Na‘á ne fai ‘eni foki ke ne pukepuke ‘aki ‘enau fehí‘a ki he kau Nīfái, koé‘uhí ke ne ngaohi ‘a kinautolu ke nau fakaongoongo kiate ia koé‘uhi ke lava ‘o fakahoko ‘ene ngaahi fakakaukáú.
- 8 He vakai, ko ‘ene ngaahi fakakaukáú ke ue‘i hake ‘a e kau Leimaná ke ‘ita ki he kau Nīfái; na‘á ne fai ‘eni ke ne ma‘u ha pule ta‘etotonu lahi kiate kinautolu, pea koé‘uhí ke ne ma‘u foki ‘a e mālohi ki he kau Nīfái ‘i hono ‘omi ‘a kinautolu ke nofo pōpula.

Alma 43

And now it came to pass that the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them. And Alma, also, himself, could not rest, and he also went forth.

Now we shall say no more concerning their preaching, except that they preached the word, and the truth, according to the spirit of prophecy and revelation; and they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges.

For behold, it came to pass that the Zoramites became Lamanites; therefore, in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw that the Lamanites were coming upon them; therefore they made preparations for war; yea, they gathered together their armies in the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came with their thousands; and they came into the land of Antionum, which is the land of the Zoramites; and a man by the name of Zerahemnah was their leader.

And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore, Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites, and they were all Amalekites and Zoramites.

Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.

For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.

- 9 Pea ko 'eni ko e fakakaukau 'a e kau Nīfai ke nau malu'i honau ngaahi fonuá, mo honau ngaahi falé, mo honau ngaahi uaifí, mo 'enau fānaú, koe'uhí ke nau lava 'o malu'i 'a kinautolu mei he nima 'o honau ngaahi filí; pea koe'uhí foki ke nau lava 'o malu'i mo 'enau ngaahi totonú mo honau ngaahi faingamālié, 'io, pea mo 'enau tau'atāina foki, koe'uhí ke nau lava 'o hū ki he 'Otuá 'o fakatatau ki honau lotó.
- 10 He na'a nau 'ilo'i kapau te nau tō ki he nima 'o e kau Leimaná, 'ilonga ia 'e hū ki he 'Otuá 'i he laumālie mo e mo'oní, 'a ia ko e 'Otuá mo'oni mo mo'uí, 'e faka'auha ia 'e he kau Leimaná.
- 11 'Io, pea na'a nau 'ilo'i foki 'a e fu'u fehí'a lahi 'aupito 'a e kau Leimaná ki honau kāinga, 'a ia ko e kakai 'o 'Āmoní—pea na'e 'ikai te nau fie to'o mahafu, 'io, na'a nau fai ha fuakava pea na'e 'ikai te nau fie maumau 'i ia—ko ia, kapau te nau tō ki he nima 'o e kau Leimaná 'e faka'auha 'a kinautolu.
- 12 Pea na'e 'ikai ke fie tuku 'e he kau Nīfai ke faka'auha 'a kinautolu; ko ia na'a nau foaki kiate kinautolu ha ngaahi potu fonua ke hoko ko honau tofi'a.
- 13 Pea na'e foaki 'e he kakai 'o 'Āmoní ki he kau Nīfai ha konga lahi 'o 'enau 'ū me'á ke tauhi 'aki 'enau ngaahi kau tau; pea ko ia na'e pau ai ke tu'u, taha pē, 'a e kau Nīfai ke tau'i 'a e kau Leimaná, 'a ia ko ha fetuiaki 'a e kau Leimaná mo e kau Lēmiuelá, mo e ngaahi foha 'o 'Isimelí, mo kinautolu kotoa pē na'e mavahe atu mei he kau Nīfai, 'a ia ko e kau 'Amalekai mo e kau Sōlamí, pea mo e ngaahi hako 'o e kau taula'eiki 'a Noá.
- 14 Ko 'eni ko e ngaahi hako ko iá na'a nau tokolahi, 'o meimei tatau, mo e tokolahi 'o e kau Nīfai; pea ko ia na'e pau ai ke tau 'a e kau Nīfai mo honau kāingá, 'o a'u ki he lilingi toto.
- 15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he fakataha mai 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he fonua ko 'Aniteonumí, vakai, kuo 'osi teuteu 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Nīfai ke fetaulaki mo kinautolu 'i he fonua ko Selesoní.
- 16 Ko 'eni, ko e taki 'o e kau Nīfai, pe ko e tangata kuo fili ke hoko ko e 'eikitau lahi ki he kau Nīfai—ko 'eni na'e pule 'a e 'eikitau lahi ki he ngaahi kau tau kotoa 'a e kau Nīfai—pea ko hono hingoá ko Molonai;

And now the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children, that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies; and also that they might preserve their rights and their privileges, yea, and also their liberty, that they might worship God according to their desires.

For they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy.

Yea, and they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, who were called the people of Ammon—and they would not take up arms, yea, they had entered into a covenant and they would not break it—therefore, if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed.

And the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed; therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance.

And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies; and thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites, who were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah.

Now those descendants were as numerous, nearly, as were the Nephites; and thus the Nephites were obliged to contend with their brethren, even unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum, behold, the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jershon.

Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites—now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites—and his name was Moroni;

17 Pea na'e ma'u 'e Molonai 'a e pule kotoa, mo e tu'utu'uni ki he'enau ngaahi tau. Pea na'a ne ta'u uofulu ma nima pe 'i hono fili ia ko e 'eikitau lahi ki he ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Nifai.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'a ne fetaulaki mo e kau Leimaná 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'o Selesoní, pea kuo fakamahafu hono kakai 'aki 'a e ngaahi heletā, mo e ngaahi hele piko, mo e fa'ahinga 'o e ngaahi mahafu tau kotoa pe.

19 Pea 'i he mamata 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná ki he kau Nifai, pe kuo hanga 'e Molonai 'o teuteu 'i 'a hono kakai 'aki 'a e ngaahi sifa-fatafata mo e ngaahi pa ki he uma, 'io, kae 'uma'a foki mo e ngaahi pa ke malu 'i 'aki honau 'ulu, pea kuo nau kofu 'aki foki 'a e kofu matolu—

20 Ko 'eni na'e 'ikai teuteu 'a e kau tau 'a Seilahemená 'aki ha me'a pehe; na'a nau ma'u pe 'enau ngaahi heleta mo 'enau ngaahi hele pikó, mo 'enau ngaahi kaufaná mo 'enau ngaahi ngahaú, ko 'enau ngaahi maká mo 'enau ngaahi maka-taá; pea na'a nau telefua, tuku kehe pe ha kili'imanu na'e nono 'o 'aki honau kongalotó; 'io, na'a nau telefua kotoa pe, tuku kehe pe 'a e kau Solamí mo e kau 'Amelikaí;

21 Ka na'e 'ikai malu 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki ha ngaahi sifa-fatafata, pe ngaahi pa—ko ia, na'a nau fu'u ilifia 'aupito ki he kau tau 'a e kau Nifai koe'uhi ko honau teunga tau, neongo na'e fu'u hulu ange 'a honau tokolahí 'i he tokolahi 'o e kau Nifai.

22 Vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehe foki na'e 'ikai te nau loto-to'a ke o mai ke tau 'i 'a e kau Nifai 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'o Selesoní; ko ia na'a nau 'alu mei he fonua ko 'Aniteonumi ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'o fai 'enau fononga 'o takatakai 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'o a'u ki he matavai 'o e vaitafe Saitoné, ke nau hu ai ki he fonua ko Manataí 'o ma'u 'a e fonua; he na'e 'ikai te nau amanaki 'e 'ilo'i 'e he ngaahi kau tau 'a Molonai pe kuo nau 'alu ki fe.

And Moroni took all the command, and the government of their wars. And he was only twenty and five years old when he was appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, and his people were armed with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war.

And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing—

Now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing; they had only their swords and their cimeters, their bows and their arrows, their stones and their slings; and they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins; yea, all were naked, save it were the Zoramites and the Amalekites;

But they were not armed with breastplates, nor shields—therefore, they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armor, notwithstanding their number being so much greater than the Nephites.

Behold, now it came to pass that they durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon; therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti and take possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone.

23 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē, 'i he hili pē 'enua 'alu atu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá na'e fekau atu 'e Molonai ha kau tangata mataki ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá ke fakaasiasi honau nofo'angá; pea ko Molonai, foki, 'i he'ene 'ilo 'i 'a e ngaahi kikite 'a 'Alamaá, na'á ne fekau atu ai ha kau tangata 'e ni'ihikiate ia, 'o kole kiate ia ke ne fehu'i ki he 'Eikí pe 'oku totonu ke 'alu ki fē 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Nífaí ke malu'i 'a kinautolu mei he kau Leimaná.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hoko mai 'a folofola 'a e 'Eikí kia 'Alamā, pea na'e fakahā 'e 'Alamā ki he kau talafekau 'a Molonai, 'oku lolotonga laka takai 'a e kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, koe'uhi ke nau hū mai ki he fonua ko Manataí, ke nau kamata hano 'ohofi 'o e kongá vaivai ange 'o e kakaí. Pea na'e 'alu 'a e kau talafekau ko iá 'o fakahā 'a e pōpoakí kia Molonai.

25 Ko 'eni ko Molonai, na'á ne tuku ha kongá 'o 'ene kau tau 'i he fonua ko Selesoní, telia na'a faifai pea ha'u hano kongá 'o e kau Leimaná ki he fonua ko iá 'o ma'u 'a e koló, ka ne 'ave hono toe 'o 'ene kau tau 'o nau laka atu ki he fonua ko Manataí.

26 Pea na'á ne fekau 'a e kakai kotoa pē 'i he kongá ko ia 'o e fonuá ke nau fakataha mai ke tau mo e kau Leimaná, ke malu'i honau ngaahi kekelelé mo honau fonuá, mo 'enua ngaahi totonu mo 'enua tau 'atāiná; ko ia na'a nau teuteu ki he taimi 'e ha'u ai 'a e kau Leimaná.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'e Molonai ki he'ene kau tau ke nau toitoi 'i he tele'a 'oku ofi ki he kauvai 'o e vaiatafe Saitoné, 'a ia na'e 'i he tafá'aki fakahihifo 'o e vaiatafe Saitone 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

28 Pea na'e fokotu'u takatakai 'e Molonai ha kau mataki, koe'uhi ke ne lava 'o 'ilo ki he ha'u 'a e kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná.

29 Pea ko 'eni, ko e me'a 'i he 'ilo 'i 'e Molonai 'a e fakakaukau 'a e kau Leimaná, pea ko 'enua fakakaukau ke faka'auha honau kāingá, pe ke ikuna 'i 'a kinautolu pea 'omi 'a kinautolu ke nofo pōpula koe'uhí ke nau lava ai 'o fokotu'u ha pule'anga mo'onautolu 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá;

But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went and delivered the message unto Moroni.

Now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land of Jershon, lest by any means a part of the Lamanites should come into that land and take possession of the city, took the remaining part of his army and marched over into the land of Manti.

And he caused that all the people in that quarter of the land should gather themselves together to battle against the Lamanites, to defend their lands and their country, their rights and their liberties; therefore they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his army should be secreted in the valley which was near the bank of the river Sidon, which was on the west of the river Sidon in the wilderness.

And Moroni placed spies round about, that he might know when the camp of the Lamanites should come.

And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it was their intention to destroy their brethren, or to subject them and bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land;

30 Pea 'i he'ene 'ilo' i foki ko e holi pē taha 'a e kau Nīfái ke malu' i honau ngaahi fonuá, mo 'enau tau' atāiná, mo honau siasí, ko ia na'á ne fakakaukau ai 'oku 'ikai ko ha angahala ke ne malu' i 'a kinautolu 'i ha tauhele; ko ia, na'á ne 'ilo' i mei he'ene kau matakí 'a e hala 'e fou ai 'a e kau Leimaná.

31 Ko ia, na'á ne vahevahe 'a 'ene kau tauí, 'o 'omi hano kongá ki he tele'á, 'o ne fufuu' i 'a kinautolu 'i he potu hahaké, pea mo e potu tonga 'o e mo'unga ko Līpilá;

32 Pea ko hono toé na'á ne fufuu' i 'i he tele'á fakahihifó, 'i he fakahihifo 'o e vaitafe Saitoné, 'o fai hifo ki he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'o Manataí.

33 Pea 'i he'ene fokotu'utu' u pehē 'ene kau tauí 'o fakatatau ki hono lotó, na'á ne mateuteu ai ke fetaulaki mo kinautolu.

34 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu hake 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he tafá'aki tokelau 'o e mo'ungá, 'a ia na'e toitoi ai ha kongá 'o e kau tau 'a Molonaí.

35 Pea ko e mé'a 'i he fakalaka mai 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he mo'unga ko Līpilá, 'o nau a'u hifo ki he tele'á, 'o kamata ke a'a 'i he vaitafe Saitoné, ko e kau tau ko ia na'a nau toitoi 'i he tonga 'o e mo'unga, 'a ia na'e taki 'e ha tangata 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko Līhai, ko ia na'á ne taki atu 'a 'ene kau tauí 'o kāpui 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he potu fakahahaké 'i mui 'iate kinautolu.

36 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e kau Leimaná, 'i he' enau mamata ki he kau Nīfái 'oku fe'ohofi mai kiate kinautolu mei muí, na'a nau tafoki ki mui 'o kamata ke tau mo e kau tau 'a Līhaí.

37 Pea na'e kamata 'a e tāmáté 'i he ongo fa'ahí fakatou'osi, ka na'e fakamanavahē ange ia 'i he fa'ahi 'a e kau Leimaná, he na'e ta'emalu' i honau sino telefuá mei he ngaahi tā mālohi na'e fai 'e he kau Nīfái 'aki 'enau ngaahi heletaá mo 'enau ngaahi hele pikó, 'a ia na'e fakahoko ha mate 'i he meimei tā kotoa pē.

38 Ka 'i he tafá'aki 'e tahá, na'e tātātaha 'a e tō ha tangata 'i he kau Nīfái, 'i he' enau ngaahi heletaá pea mo e mole 'o e toto, he na'e malu' i 'a kinautolu 'i he ngaahi kupu laveangofua taha 'o e sinó, pe na'e malu' i 'a e ngaahi kupu laveangofua ange 'o e sinó mei he tā 'a e kau Leimaná, 'aki 'enau ngaahi sifa-fatafatá mo 'enau ngaahi pā ki he nimá mo honau ngaahi tatā tauí; pea ko ia na'e fai atu 'e he kau Nīfái 'a e tāmáté 'i he kau Leimaná.

And he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their church, therefore he thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore, he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take.

Therefore, he divided his army and brought a part over into the valley, and concealed them on the east, and on the south of the hill Riplah;

And the remainder he concealed in the west valley, on the west of the river Sidon, and so down into the borders of the land Manti.

And thus having placed his army according to his desire, he was prepared to meet them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill, where a part of the army of Moroni was concealed.

And as the Lamanites had passed the hill Riplah, and came into the valley, and began to cross the river Sidon, the army which was concealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name was Lehi, and he led his army forth and encircled the Lamanites about on the east in their rear.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear, turned them about and began to contend with the army of Lehi.

And the work of death commenced on both sides, but it was more dreadful on the part of the Lamanites, for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords and their cimeters, which brought death almost at every stroke.

While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among the Nephites, by their swords and the loss of blood, they being shielded from the more vital parts of the body, or the more vital parts of the body being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breastplates, and their armshields, and their headplates; and thus the Nephites did carry on the work of death among the Lamanites.

39 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ilifia 'a e kau Leimaná, koe'uhi ko e fu'u faka'auha lahi 'iate kinautolú, 'o a'u ki he'enau kamata ke hola ki he vaitafe Saitoné.

40 Pea na'e tuli 'a kinautolu 'e Līhai mo 'ene kau tangatá; pea na'e teke'i atu 'a kinautolu 'e Līhai ki he ngaahi vai 'o Saitoné, pea na'a nau a'a atu 'i he ngaahi vai 'o Saitoné. Pea na'e ta'ofi 'e Līhai 'a 'ene kau taú 'i he kauvai 'o e vaitafe Saitoné ke 'oua 'e a'a atu ai.

41 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fetaulaki 'a Molonai mo 'ene kau taú mo e kau Leimaná 'i he tele'á, 'i he kauvai 'e taha 'o e vaitafe Saitoné, 'o nau kamata ke 'oho atu kiate kinautolu 'o tāmata 'i 'a kinautolu.

42 Pea na'e toe hola 'a e kau Leimaná meiate kinautolu, ki he fonua ko Manataí; pea na'e toe fakafetaulaki mai kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a Molonái.

43 Pea 'i he hoko 'ení na'e tau 'a e kau Leimaná 'o fu'u mālohi 'aupito, 'io, kuo te'eki ai ke hā 'a e tau 'aki 'e he kau Leimaná ha fu'u mālohi mo e loto-to'a lahi pehē, 'ikai, kuo te'eki ai talu mei he kamata'angá.

44 Pea na'e fakaloto'i 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Sōlamí mo e kau 'Amalekaí, 'a ia ko honau kau 'eikitau lalahí mo honau kau takí, kae 'uma'ā mo Seilahemena, 'a ia ko honau 'eikitau lahi, pe ko honau taki lahi mo honau pulé; 'io, na'a nau tau 'o hangē ko e fanga talākoné, pea na'e tō 'a e kau Nīfai tokolahi 'i honau nimá, 'io, na'a nau fahiua ha kongā lahi 'o honau ngaahi tatā taú, 'o nau tui'i 'a e kongā lahi 'o honau ngaahi sifa-fatafatá, 'o nau tu'usi 'a e lahi 'o honau ngaahi nimá; pea na'e pehē 'a e tau 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he'enau fu'u 'itá.

45 Ka neongo iá, na'e ue'i hake 'a e kau Nīfai ia 'e ha 'uhinga lelei ange, he na'e 'ikai te nau taú ke fokotu'u ha taha ko ha tu'i, pe ma'u ha mālohi ka na'a nau taú koe'uhi ko honau ngaahi 'apí mo 'enau tau'atāina, mo honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enau fānaú, pea mo 'enau ngaahi me'a kotoa pē, 'io, koe'uhi ko e ngaahi ouau 'o 'enau lotú mo honau siasí.

46 Pea na'a nau fai 'a e me'a na'a nau ongo'i ko honau fatongia 'a ia na'a nau mo'ua ai ki honau 'Otuá; he na'e folofola 'a e 'Eikí kiate kinautolu, kae 'uma'ā foki ki he'enau ngaahi tamaí; Kapau 'oku 'ikai te mou halaia 'i he 'uluaki fakatupu filí, pe ko hono uá, 'oua na'a mou tuku 'a kimoutolu ke tō 'i he nima 'o homou ngaahi filí.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened, because of the great destruction among them, even until they began to flee towards the river Sidon.

And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by Lehi into the waters of Sidon, and they crossed the waters of Sidon. And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river Sidon, and began to fall upon them and to slay them.

And the Lamanites did flee again before them, towards the land of Manti; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.

Now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly; yea, never had the Lamanites been known to fight with such exceedingly great strength and courage, no, not even from the beginning.

And they were inspired by the Zoramites and the Amalekites, who were their chief captains and leaders, and by Zerahemnah, who was their chief captain, or their chief leader and commander; yea, they did fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands, yea, for they did smite in two many of their head-plates, and they did pierce many of their breast-plates, and they did smite off many of their arms; and thus the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger.

Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and their children, and their all, yea, for their rites of worship and their church.

And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.

47 Pea ko e tahá, kuo folofola foki 'a e 'Eikí: Ke mou malu' i homou ngaahi fāmilí 'o a'u ki he lilingi 'o e toto. Ko ia ko e me'a 'eni na'e tau ai 'a e kau Nīfái mo e kau Leimaná, ke malu' i 'a kinautolu, mo honau ngaahi fāmilí, mo honau ngaahi kelekelé, mo honau fonuá, mo 'enau ngaahi totonú, mo 'enau lotú.

48 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he vakai 'e he kau tangata 'a Molonai ki he anga-fīta 'a pea mo e 'ita 'a e kau Leimaná, na'a nau meimei holomui 'o hola meiate kinautolu. Pea ko Molonai, 'i he'ene 'ilo' i 'a 'enau fakakaukáu, na'á ne fekau atu, 'o pou pou' i honau lotó 'aki 'a e ngaahi fakakaukáu ni—'io, 'a e ngaahi fakakaukau ki honau ngaahi kelekelé, mo 'enau tau'atāina, 'io, 'a 'enau tau'atāina mei he nofo pōpulá.

49 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau tafoki atu ki he kau Leimaná, 'o nau tangi 'i he le' o pē taha ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, koe'uhi ko 'enau tau'atāina mo 'enau tau'atāina mei he nofo pōpulá.

50 Pea na'a nau kamata ke fakafepaki' i 'a e kau Leimaná 'aki 'a e mālohi; pea 'i he feitu'ula 'ā pē ko ia na'a nau tangi ai ki he 'Eiki koe'uhi ko 'enau tau'atāina, na'e kamata ai ke hola 'a e kau Leimaná mei honau 'aó; 'o nau hola 'o a'u ki he ngaahi vai 'o Saitoné.

51 Ko 'eni, na'e tokolahi ange 'a e kau Leimaná, 'io, 'o tokolahi ange 'i hono liunga ua 'o e tokolahi 'o e kau Nīfái; ka neongo iá, na'e teke' i 'a kinautolu kae 'oua kuo nau kātoa fakataha 'i he feitu'u pē 'e taha 'i he tele'á 'i he vé'e vaitafe Saitoné.

52 Ko ia na'e 'ākilotoa 'a kinautolu 'e he ngaahi kau tau 'a Molonai, 'io, 'i he ongo kauvai fakatou'osi 'o e vaitafé, he vakai, na'e tu'u mai mei he hahaké 'a e kau tangata 'a Līhai.

53 Ko ia, 'i he vakai 'e Seilahemena ki he kau tangata 'a Līhai 'i he hahake 'o e vaitafe Saitoné, pea mo e kau tau 'a Molonai 'i he hihifo 'o e vaitafe Saitoné, pea kuo 'ākilotoa 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Nīfái, na'e tō ai kiate kinautolu 'a e fu'u ilifia lahi.

54 Ko 'eni ko Molonai, 'i he'ene vakai ki he' enau ilifía, na'á ne fekau ki he'ene kau tangatá ke nau tuku 'enau lilingi 'a honau totó.

And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion.

And it came to pass that when the men of Moroni saw the fierceness and the anger of the Lamanites, they were about to shrink and flee from them. And Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these thoughts—yea, the thoughts of their lands, their liberty, yea, their freedom from bondage.

And it came to pass that they turned upon the Lamanites, and they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage.

And they began to stand against the Lamanites with power; and in that selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom, the Lamanites began to flee before them; and they fled even to the waters of Sidon.

Now, the Lamanites were more numerous, yea, by more than double the number of the Nephites; nevertheless, they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the valley, upon the bank by the river Sidon.

Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.

Therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi on the east of the river Sidon, and the armies of Moroni on the west of the river Sidon, that they were encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck with terror.

Now Moroni, when he saw their terror, commanded his men that they should stop shedding their blood.

‘Alamā 44

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘a nau tu‘u ‘o nau holomui ‘o ki‘i mama‘o si‘i atu meiate kinautolu. Pea na‘e pehē ange ‘e Molonai kia Seilahemena: Vakai, ‘e Seilahemena, ‘oku ‘ikai te mau fie hoko ko e kau tangata ‘o e toto. ‘Oku ke ‘ilo‘i ‘oku mou ‘i homau nimá, ka ‘oku ‘ikai te mau lotu ke tāmata‘i ‘a kimoutolu.
- 2 Vakai, kuo ‘ikai te mau ha‘ú ke tau‘i ‘a kimoutolú koe‘uhi ke mau lilingi homou totó koe‘uhi ke mau ma‘u ‘a e mālohi; pea ‘oku ‘ikai foki te mau fie ‘omi ha taha ki he ha‘amonga ‘o e nofo pōpulá. Ka ko e ‘uhinga matematē ‘eni kuo mou ha‘u ai ke tau‘i ‘a kimautolú; ‘io, pea ‘oku mou ‘ita kiate kimautolú koe‘uhi ko ‘emau lotú.
- 3 Ka ko ‘eni, ‘oku mou vakai ‘oku ‘iate kimautolu ‘a e ‘Eikí; pea ‘oku mou vakai kuó ne tuku ‘a kimoutolu ki homau nimá. Pea ko ‘eni ‘oku ou faka‘amu ke mou ‘ilo‘i kuo fai ‘eni ma‘amoutolu koe‘uhi ko ‘emau lotú pea mo ‘emau tui kia Kalaisí. Pea ko ‘eni ‘oku mou vakai ‘e ‘ikai te mou lava ‘o faka‘auha ‘a ‘emau tui ko ‘ení.
- 4 Ko ‘eni ‘oku mou vakai ko e tui mo‘oni ‘eni ki he ‘Otuá; ‘io, ‘oku mou vakai ‘e poupou‘i, mo tauhi, mo malu‘i ‘a kimautolu ‘e he ‘Otuá, ‘o kapau te mau tui faivelenga ma‘u ai pē kiate ia, pea mo ‘emau tuí, mo ‘emau lotú; pea he ‘ikai pē tuku ‘e he ‘Eikí ke faka‘auha ‘a kimautolu kae ngata pē ‘i he ‘emau hinga ki he maumau-fonó mo faka‘ikai‘i ‘emau tuí.
- 5 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘e Seilahemena, ‘oku ou fekau kiate koe‘i he huafa ‘o e ‘Otuá fungani māfímafi ko iá, ‘a ia kuó ne fakamālohia homau nimá pea kuo mau ma‘u ai ‘a e mālohi kiate kimoutolu, ‘i he ‘emau tuí, ‘i he ‘emau lotú, pea ‘i he ‘emau ngaahi ouau fakalotú, pea ‘i homau siasí, pea ‘i he tauhi toputapu ‘oku mau fai ki homau ngaahi uaifí mo ‘emau fānaú, ‘i he tau‘atāina ko ia ‘a ia ‘oku ha‘i ai ‘a kimautolu ki homau ngaahi kekelé mo homau fonuá; ‘io, pea ‘i he tauhi foki ki he folofola toputapu ‘a e ‘Otuá, ‘a ia ‘oku mau ma‘u ai ‘emau fiefia kotoa; pea ‘i he me‘a kotoa pē ‘oku mahu‘inga taha kiate kimautolú—

Alma 44

And it came to pass that they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zerahemnah: Behold, Zerahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. Ye know that ye are in our hands, yet we do not desire to slay you.

Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage. But this is the very cause for which ye have come against us; yea, and ye are angry with us because of our religion.

But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands. And now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.

Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.

And now, Zerahemnah, I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us—

6 'Io, pea 'oku 'ikai ngata ai; ka 'oku ou fekau kiate kimoutolu 'i he ngaahi holi kotoa pē 'oku 'iate kimoutolu ke mo'uí, ke mou 'omi ho'omou ngaahi mahafu tau kotoa pē kiate kimaoutolu, pea 'e 'ikai te mau feinga ke lilingi homou totó, ka te mau fakamo'ui 'a kimoutolu, 'o kapau pe te mou 'alu 'o 'ikai toe ha'u ke tau 'i 'a kimaoutolu.

7 Pea ko 'eni, kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fai 'eni, vakai, 'oku mou 'i homau nimá, pea te u fekau ki he'eku kau tangatá ke nau 'oho atu kiate kimoutolu, 'o hoka'i homou ngaahi sinó 'aki 'a e ngaahi lavea fakamate, koe'uhi ke mou 'auha ai; pea te tau toki vakai pe ko hai 'e ma'u 'a e mālohi ki he kakai ní; 'io, te tau vakai pe ko hai 'e 'omi ki he nofo pōpulá.

8 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he fanongo 'e Seilahemena ki he ngaahi lea ní na'á ne ha'u 'o ne 'oatu 'ene heletaá mo 'ene hele pikó, mo 'ene kaufaná ki he nima 'o Molonai, pea ne pehē ange kiate ia: Vakai, ko 'eni 'a 'emau ngaahi mahafu taú; te mau 'omi ia kiate kimoutolu, ka 'e 'ikai te mau loto ke fai ha fuakava kiate kimoutolu, 'a ia 'oku mau 'ilo te mau maumau 'i, kae 'uma'ā foki mo 'emau fānaú foki; ka mou ma'u 'emau ngaahi mahafu taú, pea tuku ke mau 'alu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá; ka 'ikai pea te mau tauhi 'emau ngaahi heletaá, pea te mau mate pe ikuna.

9 Vakai, 'oku 'ikai te mau kau ki ho'omou tui, 'oku 'ikai te mau tui ko e 'Otuá ia na'á ne tuku 'a kimaoutolu ki homou nimá; ka 'oku mau tui ko homou poto he kākaá kuo fakahaofi ai 'a kimoutolu mei he'emau ngaahi heletaá. Vakai, ko ho'omou ngaahi sifa-fatafatá mo ho'omou ngaahi paá kuo nau malu 'i 'a kimoutolú.

10 Pea ko 'eni 'i he faka'osi 'e Seilahemena 'a 'ene lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e fakafoki 'e Molonai kia Seilahemena 'a e heletaá mo e ngaahi mahafu taú, 'a ia na'á ne ma'ú, 'o ne pehē ange: Vakai, te tau faka'osi 'a e taú.

11 Ko 'eni 'oku 'ikai te u lava 'o fakafoki 'a e lea kuó u lea'akí, ko ia 'oku hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eikí, pehē 'e 'ikai te mou 'alu kae 'oua kuo mou fai ha fuakava 'e 'ikai te mou toe foki mai ke tau 'i 'a kimaoutolu. Ko 'eni ko e me'a 'i ho'omou 'i homau nimá te mau lilingi homou totó ki he kekekelé, pe ko ho'omou tali 'a e ngaahi me'a kuó u fokotu'u atú.

Yea, and this is not all; I command you by all the desires which ye have for life, that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.

And now, if ye do not this, behold, ye are in our hands, and I will command my men that they shall fall upon you, and inflict the wounds of death in your bodies, that ye may become extinct; and then we will see who shall have power over this people; yea, we will see who shall be brought into bondage.

And now it came to pass that when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depart into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breastplates and your shields that have preserved you.

And now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words, Moroni returned the sword and the weapons of war, which he had received, unto Zerahemnah, saying: Behold, we will end the conflict.

Now I cannot recall the words which I have spoken, therefore as the Lord liveth, ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war. Now as ye are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground, or ye shall submit to the conditions which I have proposed.

- 12 Pea ko 'eni 'i he 'osi lea 'aki 'e Molonai 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e tauhi 'e Seilahemena 'a 'ene heletaá, pea na'á ne 'ita kia Molonai, pea ne 'oho atu ke ne tāmata'e 'i 'a Molonai; ka 'i he'ene hiki hake 'ene heletaá, vakai, na'e taa 'i ia 'e ha taha 'o e kau tau 'a Molonai 'o ne tō ki he kelekelé, pea na'e motu 'a e kau 'i heletaá; pea na'á ne taa 'i foki 'a Seilahemena 'o ne tu'usi ai 'a e kili 'o hono tumu'aki 'o tō ia ki he kelekelé. Pea na'e holomui 'a Seilahemena meiate kinautolu ki he lotolotonga 'o 'ene kau taú.
- 13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e tangata tau ko ia na'e tu'u 'i he tafa'akí, 'a ia na'á ne tu'usi 'a e kili 'o e tumu'aki 'o Seilahemena, na'e hiki hake 'e ia 'a e kili 'o e tumu'aki 'aki 'a e lou 'ulu, 'o ne 'ai ia ki he'ene mata 'i heletaá, 'o ne hiki hake ia ki 'olunga kiate kinautolu, 'o pehē ange kiate kinautolu 'i ha le'o-lahi:
- 14 Hangē kuo tō 'a e kili 'o e tumu'akí ni ki he kelekelé, 'a ia ko e kili 'o e tumu'aki 'o homou 'eikitaú, 'e pehē ho'omou tō ki he kelekelé 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te mou tuku ho'omou ngaahi mahafu taú pea 'alu hili ha fuakava 'o e melino.
- 15 Ko 'eni na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi, 'i he hili 'enau fanongo ki he ngaahi lea ní pea mamata ki he kili 'o e tumu'aki 'a ia na'e 'i he heletaá; na'e tō kiate kinautolu 'a e ilifia; pea na'e ō mai 'a e tokolahi 'o nau lī hifo 'enau ngaahi mahafu taú 'i he va'e 'o Molonai, pea nau fai ha fuakava 'o e melino. Pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē na'e fai ha fuakava na'a nau tuku ke nau 'alu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fu'u 'ita 'aupito 'a Seilahemena, 'o ne tafunaki 'i hono toe 'o 'ene kau taú 'a e 'ita, ke nau tau 'i mālohi ange 'a e kau Nifai.
- 17 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'ita 'a Molonai, koe'uhi ko e lotota'efieauna 'a e kau Leimaná; ko ia na'á ne fekau ki hono kakaf ke nau 'oho atu kiate kinautolu 'o tāmata'e 'i 'a kinautolu. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau kamata ke tāmata'e 'i 'a kinautolu; 'io, pea na'e tau 'aki 'e he kau Leimaná 'a 'enau ngaahi heletaá mo honau iví.

And now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers.

And it came to pass that the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

Now there were many, when they heard these words and saw the scalp which was upon the sword, that were struck with fear; and many came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and entered into a covenant of peace. And as many as entered into a covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that Zerahemnah was exceedingly wroth, and he did stir up the remainder of his soldiers to anger, to contend more powerfully against the Nephites.

And now Moroni was angry, because of the stubbornness of the Lamanites; therefore he commanded his people that they should fall upon them and slay them. And it came to pass that they began to slay them; yea, and the Lamanites did contend with their swords and their might.

18 Kae vakai, ko honau ngaahi sino tēlefuá mo honau
 ‘ulu ta’e-tataá na’e ‘ikai hano malu ‘i mei he ngaahi
 heletā māsila ‘a e kau Nīfai; ‘io, vakai na’e hoka ‘i mo te ‘ia
 ‘a kinautolu, ‘io, pea na’e vave ‘aupito ‘a ‘enau tō ‘i he
 ngaahi heletā ‘a e kau Nīfai; pea na’e kamata ke tā hifo ‘a
 honau tokolahi, ‘o hangē ko hono kikitē ‘i ‘e he tangata
 tau ‘a Molonai.

19 Ko ‘eni ko Seilahemena, ‘i he ‘ene mamata ‘oku ofi ke
 faka ‘auha kotoa ‘a kinautolú, na ‘á ne kaila le ‘o-lahi kia
 Molonai, ‘o ne fakapapau te ne fai ha fuakava kae ‘uma ‘ā
 foki hono kakaí mo kinautolu, ‘o kapau te nau
 fakamo ‘ui ‘a kinautolu ‘oku toé, ‘e ‘ikai pē te nau toe ō
 mai ke tau ‘i ‘a kinautolu.

20 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e fekau ‘e Molonai ke toe
 ta ‘ofi ‘a e tāmáté ‘i he kakaí. Pea na ‘á ne to ‘o ‘a e ngaahi
 mahafu taú mei he kau Leimaná; pea ‘i he hili ‘enau fai
 kiate ia ha fuakava ‘o e melinó, na’e tuku kiate kinautolu
 ke nau ‘alu ki he feitu ‘u maomaongoá.

21 Ko ‘eni na’e ‘ikai ke lau ‘a e tokolahi ‘o honau kakai
 maté koe ‘uhi ko e hulu ‘o honau tokolahi; ‘io, na’e fu ‘u
 hulu ‘aupito ‘a e tokolahi ‘o honau kakai maté,
 fakatou ‘osi ‘i he kau Nīfai mo e kau Leimaná.

22 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’a nau laku honau kakai maté
 ki he ngaahi vai ‘o Saitoné, pea kuo nau ‘auhia ai, pea
 kuo tanu ‘i he ngaahi potu loloto ‘o e tahí.

23 Pea na’e foki ‘a e kau tau ‘a e kau Nīfai, pe ko
 Molonai, ‘o nau foki mai ki honau ngaahi falé mo honau
 ngaahi kelekelé.

24 Pea na’e faka ‘osi pehē ‘a e ta ‘u hono hongofulu mā
 valu ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāú ki he kau Nīfai. Pea na’e
 ‘osi pehē ‘a e lekooti ‘a ‘Alamā, ‘a ia na’e tohi ki he ngaahi
 peleti ‘a Nīfai.

But behold, their naked skins and their bare heads
 were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites; yea,
 behold they were pierced and smitten, yea, and did fall
 exceedingly fast before the swords of the Nephites; and
 they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of
 Moroni had prophesied.

Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all
 about to be destroyed, cried mightily unto Moroni,
 promising that he would covenant and also his people
 with them, if they would spare the remainder of their
 lives, that they never would come to war again against
 them.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that the
 work of death should cease again among the people.
 And he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites;
 and after they had entered into a covenant with him of
 peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now the number of their dead was not numbered
 because of the greatness of the number; yea, the number
 of their dead was exceedingly great, both on the
 Nephites and on the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into
 the waters of Sidon, and they have gone forth and are
 buried in the depths of the sea.

And the armies of the Nephites, or of Moroni, re-
 turned and came to their houses and their lands.

And thus ended the eighteenth year of the reign of
 the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus ended
 the record of Alma, which was written upon the plates
 of Nephi.

Ko ha fakamatala ki he kakai 'o Nīfai, mo 'enau ngaahi tau' mo e ngaahi moveuveu, 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o Hilamanī, 'o fakatatau ki he lekooti 'a Hilamani, 'a ia na 'á ne tauhi 'i hono ngaahi 'abó.

‘Alamā 45

- 1 Vakai, ko 'eni na 'e hoko 'o pehē na 'e fu 'u fiefia 'aupito 'a e kakai 'o Nīfai, koe 'uhi ko hono toe fakahaofi 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki mei he nima 'o honau ngaahi fili; ko ia na 'a nau 'oatu 'a e fakafeta 'i ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá; 'io, na 'a nau 'aukai lahi mo lotu lahi, pea nau hū ki he 'Otuá 'i he fu 'u fiefia lahi.
- 2 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono hongofulu mā hiva 'o e ta 'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai 'o Nīfai, na 'e ha 'u 'a 'Alamā ki hono foha ko Hilamanī, 'o ne pehē kiate ia: 'Okú ke tui koā ki he ngaahi lea 'a ia na 'á ku lea 'aki kiate koe 'o kau ki he ngaahi lekooti kuo tauhi?
- 3 Pea pehē ange 'e Hilamani kiate ia: 'Io, 'oku ou tui.
- 4 Pea toe pehē ange 'e 'Alamā: 'Okú ke tui koā kia Sīsū Kalaisi, 'a ia 'e hā 'ele mai?
- 5 Pea ne pehē ange: 'Io, 'oku ou tui ki he ngaahi lea kotoa pē kuó ke lea 'akí.
- 6 Pea toe pehē ange 'e 'Alamā kiate ia: Te ke tauhi koā 'a 'eku ngaahi fekaú?
- 7 Pea ne pehē: 'Io, te u tauhi ho 'o ngaahi fekaú 'aki hoku lotó kotoa.
- 8 Pea toki pehē ange 'e 'Alamā kiate ia: 'Okú ke monū 'ia koe; pea 'e fakatu 'umālie 'i koe 'e he 'Eiki 'i he fonuá ni.
- 9 Kae vakai, 'oku 'i ai ha 'aku ngaahi me 'a 'e ni 'ihi ke u kikite 'aki kiate koe; ka ko e me 'a te u kikite 'aki kiate koé ke 'oua na 'á ke fakahā; 'io, ko e me 'a te u kikite 'aki kiate koé 'e 'ikai fakahā ia, kae 'oua ke fakahoko 'a e kikité; ko ia tohi pē 'a e ngaahi lea te u lea 'akí.
- 10 Pea ko e ngaahi leá 'eni: Vakai, 'oku ou 'ilo 'i ko e kakai ko 'eni, 'a ia ko e kau Nīfai, 'o fakatatau ki he laumālie 'o e fakahā 'oku 'iate au, 'e 'osi atu 'a e ta 'u 'e fāngeau hili 'a e taimi 'e fakahā ai 'e Sīsū Kalaisi ia kiate kinautolú, te nau faka 'au 'auhifo 'i he ta 'etui.
- 11 'Io, pea te nau toki mamata ki he ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi faka 'auha, 'io, ko e ngaahi hongē mo e lilingi 'o e toto, kae 'oua ke 'osi 'osingamālie 'a e kakai 'o Nīfai—

The account of the people of Nephi, and their wars and dissensions, in the days of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman, which he kept in his days.

Alma 45

Behold, now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies; therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceedingly great joy.

And it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma came unto his son Helaman and said unto him: Believest thou the words which I spake unto thee concerning those records which have been kept?

And Helaman said unto him: Yea, I believe.

And Alma said again: Believest thou in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

And he said: Yea, I believe all the words which thou hast spoken.

And Alma said unto him again: Will ye keep my commandments?

And he said: Yea, I will keep thy commandments with all my heart.

Then Alma said unto him: Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land.

But behold, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say.

And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct—

- 12 'Io, pea 'e hoko 'eni koe'uhi ko 'enau faka'au'auhifo 'i he ta'etu' pea hinga ki he ngaahi ngāue 'o e fakapo'ulí, mo e holi koví, mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga angahala kotoa pē; 'io, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, koe'uhi ko 'enau fai angahala ki he fu'u maama mo e 'ilo lahi pehē, 'io, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'e kamata mei he 'aho ko iá, 'io 'e 'ikai ke 'osi ange 'a e to'u tangata hono faá kuo hoko 'a e fu'u angahala lahí ni.
- 13 Pea 'o ka hokosia 'a e fu'u 'aho lahi ko iá, vakai, 'e vave mai 'a e taimi 'a ia 'e 'ikai toe lau fakataha mo e kakai 'o Nifai 'a e fa'ahinga ko ia 'oku nau lolotonga kau ki aí, pe ko e hako 'o e fa'ahinga 'oku lolotonga lau fakataha mo e kakai 'o Nifai.
- 14 Kae 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'e kei toe, 'a ia na'e 'ikai faka'auha 'i he fu'u 'aho lahi mo fakamanavahē ko iá, 'e lau 'a kinautolu fakataha mo e kau Leimaná, pea te nau hoko kotoa pē 'o tatau mo kinautolu, tuku kehe pē 'a e tokosi'i, 'a ia 'e ui ko e kau ākongā 'a e 'Eikí; pea 'e tuli holo 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Leimaná kae 'oua ke nau 'auha 'o 'osi'osingamālie. Pea ko 'eni, koe'uhi ko e angahalá 'e fakahoko ai 'a e kikité ni.
- 15 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e lea 'aki 'e 'Alamā 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kia Hilamaní, na'á ne tāpuakí 'i ia, kae 'uma'ā foki hono ngaahi foha kehé; pea ne tāpuakí 'i foki mo e fonuá koe'uhi ko e kau mā'oni'oni.
- 16 Peá ne pehē: 'Oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá—'E malá 'ia 'a e fonuá, 'io, 'a e fonuá ni, ki he pule'anga, fa'ahinga, lea, mo e kakai fulipē, ke nau 'auha, 'a ia 'oku fai angahalá, 'o ka kakato 'enau fai angahalá; pea hangē ko e me'a kuó u lea'akí kuo pau ke hoko ia; ko e fakamalá 'ia mo e tāpuakí 'eni 'a e 'Otuá ki he fonuá, he 'oku 'ikai lava 'e he 'Eikí ke 'afio ki he angahalá 'o momo 'i faka'atu 'i ia.
- 17 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he 'osi lea 'aki 'e 'Alamā 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'á ne tāpuakí 'i 'a e siasí, 'io, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'e tu'u ma'u 'i he tui 'o fai atu ai pē mei he taimi ko iá.
- 18 Pea 'i he 'osi fai 'eni 'e 'Alamaá na'á ne 'alu mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'o hangē ko ha'ane 'alu ki he fonua ko Mīlekí. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ke toe fanongo kiate ia; pea ko e me'a ki he'ene pekiá, pe ko hono tanú, 'oku 'ikai te mau 'ilo ki ai.

Yea, and this because they shall dwindle in unbelief and fall into the works of darkness, and lasciviousness, and all manner of iniquities; yea, I say unto you, that because they shall sin against so great light and knowledge, yea, I say unto you, that from that day, even the fourth generation shall not all pass away before this great iniquity shall come.

And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi.

But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy shall be fulfilled.

And now it came to pass that after Alma had said these things to Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed the earth for the righteous' sake.

And he said: Thus saith the Lord God—Cursed shall be the land, yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance.

And now, when Alma had said these words he blessed the church, yea, all those who should stand fast in the faith from that time henceforth.

And when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla, as if to go into the land of Melek. And it came to pass that he was never heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.

- 19 Vakai, ko e me'a 'eni 'oku mau 'ilo'i, ko ha tangata mā'oni'oni ia; pea na'e mafola atu 'a e talá 'i he siasí kuo 'ave ia 'e he Laumālié, pe kuo tanu ia 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí 'o hangē ko Mōsesé. Kae vakai, 'oku fakahā mai 'e he folofolá na'e 'ave 'e he 'Eikí 'a Mōsese kiate ia; pea 'oku mau mahalo kuó ne ma'u ma'ana foki mo 'Alamā 'i he laumālie; ko ia, ko hono 'uhinga 'eni 'oku 'ikai ai te mau 'ilo'i ha me'a 'o kau ki he'ene pekiá mo e telió.
- 20 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he kamata'anga 'o hono hongofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai 'o Nīfaí, na'e 'alu atu 'a Hilamani 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kakai 'o fakahā 'a e folofolá kiate kinautolu.
- 21 He vakai, ko e me'a 'i he'enua ngaahi tau mo e kau Leimaná pea mo e fanga ki'i fakakikihi mo e ngaahi maveuveu 'a ia kuo hoko 'i he vaha'a 'o e kakai, na'e hoko 'o 'aonga ai ke malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'iate kinautolu, 'io, pea ke kamata hano fokotu'u ha tu'utu'uni maau 'i hono kotoa 'o e siasí.
- 22 Ko ia, na'e 'alu atu 'a Hilamani mo hono kāingá ke toe fokotu'u 'a e siasí 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá, 'io, 'i he kolo kotoa pē 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá 'a ia na'e ma'u 'e he kakai 'o Nīfaí. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fakanofu ha kau taula'eiki mo ha kau akonaki 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá ki he ngaahi siasí kotoa pē.
- 23 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e fili 'e Hilamani mo hono kāingá ha kau taula'eiki mo e kau akonaki ki he ngaahi siasí na'e kamata ha feke'ike'í 'i hono vaha'á, pea na'e 'ikai te nau fie tokanga ki he ngaahi lea 'a Hilamani mo hono kāingá;
- 24 Ka na'a nau faka'au ke pōlepole, he kuo nau fielahi 'i hono lotó, koe'uhi ko 'enua ngaahi koloa lahi 'aupitó: ko ia na'a nau faka'au 'o koloa'ia 'i he'enua fakakaukáu, 'o 'ikai te nau fie tokanga ki he'enua ngaahi leá, ke 'a'eva angatonu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá.

Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. But behold, the scriptures saith the Lord took Moses unto himself; and we suppose that he has also received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we know nothing concerning his death and burial.

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.

For behold, because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them, yea, and that a regulation should be made throughout the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land, yea, in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi. And it came to pass that they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the churches.

And now it came to pass that after Helaman and his brethren had appointed priests and teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his brethren;

But they grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches; therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly before God.

‘Alamā 46

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ko kinautolu kotoa pē na‘e ‘ikai fie fanongo ki he ngaahi lea ‘a Hilamani mo hono kāingá na‘a nau fakataha ke fakafetau ki honau kāingá.
- 2 Pea ko ‘eni vakai, na‘a nau fu‘u ‘ita ‘aupito, ‘o a‘u ki he‘enau fakapapau ke tāmata‘i ‘a kinautolu.
- 3 Ko ‘eni, ko e taki ‘o e fa‘ahinga na‘e ‘ita ki honau kāingá ko ha tangata sino kaukau mo mālohi; pea ko hono hingoá ko ‘Amalekaia.
- 4 Pea na‘e fie hoko ‘a ‘Amalekaia ko ha tu‘í; pea ko e kakai ko ia na‘e ‘itá, na‘a nau fie ma‘u foki ia ke ne hoko ko honau tu‘í; pea ko honau tokolahi ange ‘o kinautolu ko e kau fakamaau mā‘ulalo ange ‘o e fonuá, pea na‘a nau kumi ke ma‘u ‘a e mālohí.
- 5 Pea kuo fakaloto‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘e he ngaahi lea fakahekeheke ‘a ‘Amalekaia, kapau te nau pou pou‘i ia mo fokotu‘u ia ko honau tu‘í te ne fakanofa ‘a kinautolu ko e kau pule ki he kakai.
- 6 Ko ia na‘e pehē hono fakaloto‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘e ‘Amalekaia ke nau moveuveú, neongo ‘a e ngaahi malanga ‘a Hilamani mo hono kāingá, ‘io, neongo ‘enau fu‘u tokanga lahi ki he siasí, he na‘a nau hoko ko e kau taula‘eiki lahi ki he siasí.
- 7 Pea na‘e ‘i ai ‘a e tokolahi ‘i he siasí na‘a nau tui ki he ngaahi lea fakahekeheke ‘a ‘Amalekaia, ko ia na‘a nau tafoki ai pea mei he siasí foki; pea na‘e pehē mo e ngaahi me‘a ‘a e kakai ‘o Nifai na‘e fu‘u faingata‘a mo fakatu‘utāmaki ‘aupito, neongo ‘enau fu‘u ikuna lahi ‘o e kau Leimaná, pea mo ‘enau ngaahi fu‘u fiefia lahi kuo nau ma‘u koe‘uhi ko honau fakahaofi ‘e he to‘ukupu ‘o e ‘Eiki.
- 8 Ko ia ‘oku tau vakai ki hono vave ‘o e fakangalo‘i ‘e he fānau ‘a e tangatá ‘a e ‘Eiki ko honau ‘Otuá, ‘io, ‘a e anga ‘o hono vave ‘o e angahalá, pea mo hono fakaloto‘i ‘e he tokotaha angakoví.
- 9 ‘Io, pea ‘oku tau vakai foki ki hono lahi ‘o e fai angahala ‘oku fa‘a fakatupu ‘e ha tangata fai angahala ‘aupito ‘e toko taha ‘i he fānau ‘a e tangatá.

Alma 46

And it came to pass that as many as would not hearken to the words of Helaman and his brethren were gathered together against their brethren.

And now behold, they were exceedingly wroth, inso-much that they were determined to slay them.

Now the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.

And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater part of them the lower judges of the land, and they were seeking for power.

And they had been led by the flatteries of Amalickiah, that if they would support him and establish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people.

Thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissensions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman and his brethren, yea, notwithstanding their exceedingly great care over the church, for they were high priests over the church.

And there were many in the church who believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah, therefore they dissented even from the church; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicings which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.

Thus we see how quick the children of men do forget the Lord their God, yea, how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.

Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the children of men.

10 'Io, 'oku tau vakai ko 'Amalekaia, koe'uhi ko ha tangata na'á ne ngāue 'aki 'a e ngaahi founga kākā pea ko ha tangata fa'a lea fakahekeheke lahi, ko ia na'á ne takiaki'i ai 'a e lotu 'o e kakai tokolahi ke fai angahala; 'io, pea feinga ke faka'auha 'a e siasi 'o e 'Otuá, pea faka'auha 'a e makatu'unga 'o e tau'atāina kuo foaki 'e he 'Otuá kiate kinautolú, pe ko e tāpuaki kuo tuku mai 'e he 'Otuá ki he funga 'o e fonuá koe'uhi ko e kau mā'oni'oni.

11 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he fanongo 'e Molonai, ko e 'eikitau pule ki he kau tau 'a e kau Nīfaí ki he ngaahi tafokí ni, na'á ne 'ita kia 'Amalekaia.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne hae'i hono kofú; 'o ne to'o hano kongá, 'o ne tohi ki ai—Ko e fakamanatu ki hotau 'Otuá, mo 'etau lotú, mo e tau'atāiná, mo 'etau melinó, ko hotau ngaahi uaifí, mo 'etau fānaú—'o ne fakama'u ia ki ha mui'i va'akau.

13 Pea na'á ne nono'o hono tatā taú mo hono sifa-fatafatá, mo 'ene ngaahi paá, peá ne nono'o hono teunga taú ki hono kongalotó; peá ne to'o 'a e va'akau, 'a ia 'oku nono'o ki hono mui'a e kongá 'o hono kofu kuo hae'í, (pea na'á ne ui ia ko e fuka 'o e tau'atāiná) pea na'á ne punou hifo ki he kekelelé, 'o ne lotu fakamātoato ki hono 'Otuá koe'uhi ko e ngaahi tāpuaki 'o e tau'atāiná ke 'i hono kāingá, lolotonga 'oku kei toe ha kau Kalisitiane ke ma'u 'a e fonuá—

14 He na'e ui pehē 'a kinautolu kotoa na'e tui mo'oni kia Kalaisí, pea na'a nau kau ki he siasi 'o e 'Otuá, 'e he fa'ahinga 'a ia na'e 'ikai kau ki he siasí.

15 Pea ko kinautolu 'a ia na'e kau ki he siasí na'a nau tui faivelengá; 'io, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē ko e kau tui mo'oni kia Kalaisí na'a nau 'ai kiate kinautolu, 'i he fiefia, 'a e huafa 'o Kalaisí, pe ko e kau Kalisitiane 'o hangē ko ia ko hono ui 'a kinautolú, koe'uhi ko 'enua tui kia Kalaisi 'a ia 'e hā'ele maí.

16 Pea ko ia, 'i he taimi ko 'ení, na'e lotu 'a Molonai koe'uhi ko e tali lelei 'a e feinga 'a e kau Kalisitiane, pea mo e tau'atāina 'o e fonuá ke tāpuekina.

Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning device and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous' sake.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni, who was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that he rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.

And he fastened on his head-plate, and his breast-plate, and his shields, and girded on his armor about his loins; and he took the pole, which had on the end thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty) and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land—

For thus were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the church of God, called by those who did not belong to the church.

And those who did belong to the church were faithful; yea, all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.

And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land might be favored.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'ene fakahā hake hono laumalié ki he 'Otuá, na'á ne fakahingoa 'a e fonua kotoa pē na'e 'i he tonga 'o e fonua ko 'Auhá, 'io, pea ko hono mo'oní, ko e fonua kotoa, 'i he tokelaú mo e tongá fakatou'osi—Ko ha fonua kuo fili, mo e fonua 'o e tau'atāina.

18 Pea na'á ne pehē: Ko e mo'oní 'e 'ikai tuku 'e he 'Otuá 'a kitautolu, 'a ia 'oku fehi'ane kina koe'uhi ko 'etau 'ai kiate kitautolu 'a e huafa 'o Kalaisí, ke molomoloki hifo mo faka'auha, kae 'oua ke tau fakatupu ia kiate kitautolú 'i he 'etau maumau-fono 'atautolu pē.

19 Pea hili 'a e lea 'aki 'e Molonai 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'á ne 'alu atu 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kakáí, 'o ta'alo 'aki 'a e kongá 'o hono kofu kuo hae'í 'i he 'ataá, koe'uhi ke mamata 'a e kakai kotoa pē ki he tohi kuó ne tohi ki he kongá kuo hae'í, pea ne kaila le'o-lahi, 'o pehē:

20 Vakai, ko ia ia 'e poupou'í 'a e fuká ni 'i he fonuá, tuku ke nau ha'u 'i he mālohi 'o e 'Eikí, pea fai ha fuakava ke nau malu'í 'enau ngaahi totonú, mo 'enau lotú, koe'uhi ke hanga 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'o tāpuaki'í 'a kinautolu.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e fakahā 'e Molonai 'a e ngaahi lea ní, vakai, na'e felelei mai 'a e kakáí mo honau teunga taú kuo nono'o ki honau kongalotó, 'o nau hae'í honau kofú ko ha faka'ilonga, pe ko ha fuakava, 'e 'ikai te nau lí'aki 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá; pē, ko hono fakalea 'e tahá, kapau te nau maumau'í 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, pe hinga ki he maumau-fonó, 'o mā ke to'o kiate kinautolu 'a e huafa 'o Kalaisí, 'e hanga 'e he 'Eiki 'o haehae 'a kinautolu 'o hangē ko 'enau hae'í honau kofú.

22 Ko 'eni ko e fuakava 'eni na'a nau faí, pea nau lí honau ngaahi kofú 'i he va'e 'o Molonai, 'o pehē: 'Oku mau fuakava ki homau 'Otuá, 'e faka'auha 'a kinautolu 'o hangē ko homau kāinga 'i he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú, 'o kapau te mau hinga ki he maumau-fonó; 'io, 'e lelei ke ne lí 'a kinautolu, ki he lalo va'e 'o homau ngaahi filí, 'o hangē ko 'emau lí homau ngaahi kofú ki ho lalo va'é ke molomoloki hifo 'i he lalo va'é, 'o kapau te mau hinga ki he maumau-fonó.

And it came to pass that when he had poured out his soul to God, he named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, yea, and in fine, all the land, both on the north and on the south—A chosen land, and the land of liberty.

And he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.

And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:

Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God; or, in other words, if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.

Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward, if we shall fall into transgression; yea, he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

23 Na'e pehē ange 'e Molonai kiate kinautolu: Vakai, ko e toenga 'a kinautolu 'o e hako 'o Sēkopé, 'io, ko e toenga 'a kinautolu 'o e hako 'o Siosefá, 'a ia na'e haehae 'e hono ngaahi tokouá 'a hono kofu tu'á 'o kongokonga iiki; 'io, pea ko 'eni vakai, tau manatu mu'á ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, pe 'e haehae 'i hotau ngaahi kofú 'e hotau kāingá, pea lí 'a kinautolu ki he fale fakapōpulá, pe fakatau atu, pe tāmata'e i.

24 'Io, tau malu 'i 'etau tau'atāina ko ha toenga 'o e hako 'o Siosefá; 'io, tau manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi lea 'a Sēkope, 'i he te'eki ke ne pekiá, he vakai, na'á ne vakai kuo fakatolonga ha kongá 'o e toenga 'o e kofu tu'á 'o Siosefá pea kuo 'ikai ke 'auha ia. Pea na'á ne pehē—Hangē ko hono fakatolonga 'a e kongá ko 'eni 'o e kofu tu'á 'o hoku fohá, 'e pehē hono fakatolonga 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Otuá ha toenga 'o e hako 'o hoku fohá, pea 'e ma'u ma'ana 'a kinautolu, ka 'e 'auha hono toe 'o e hako 'o Siosefá, 'o hangē ko e toenga 'o hono kofú.

25 Ko 'eni vakai, 'oku fakamamahi 'i hoku laumālié 'e he me'á ni; ka neongo iá, 'oku ma'u 'e hoku laumālié 'a e fiefia 'i hoku fohá, ko'e uhi ko e kongá ko ia 'o hono hakó 'a ia 'e 'ave ki he 'Otuá.

26 Ko 'eni vakai, ko e lea 'eni 'a Sēkopé.

27 Pea ko 'eni ko hai 'okú ne 'ilo 'i na'á 'iloange ko e toenga 'o e hako 'o Siosefá, 'a ia 'e 'auha 'o hangē ko hono kofú, ko kinautolu ia kuo mavahe meiate kinautolú? 'Io, pea na'á ko kinautolu ia 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te tau tu'u ma'u 'i he tui kia Kalaisí.

28 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi lea 'aki 'e Molonai 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'á ne 'alu atu, 'o ne 'oatu ha'ane fekau foki ki he ngaahi potu kotoa pē 'o e fonuá 'a ia na'e 'i ai ha ngaahi fakakikihí, 'o ne tānaki fakataha 'a e kakai kotoa pē 'a ia na'á nau loto ke tauhi ma'u 'enau tau'atāiná, ke tu'u 'o fakafepaki 'i 'a 'Amalekaia mo kinautolu ko ia kuo mavahe atú, 'a ia na'e ui ko e kau 'Amalekaia.

29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he vakai 'e 'Amalekaia na'e tokolahi ange 'a e kakai 'o Molonai 'i he kau 'Amalekaia—pea na'á ne vakai foki na'e lotolotoua 'a hono kakaí pe 'oku totonu 'a e me'a kuo nau kamata ke faí—ko ia, 'i he'ene manavahē na'á 'iloange kuo 'ikai ke ola 'ene feingá, na'á ne 'ave 'a e fa'ahinga 'o hono kakaí 'a ia na'e fie 'alú, 'o nau 'alu atu ki he fonua ko Nifai.

Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces; yea, and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.

Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea, let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said—Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.

Now behold, this giveth my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that part of his seed which shall be taken unto God.

Now behold, this was the language of Jacob.

And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites—and he also saw that his people were doubtful concerning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken—therefore, fearing that he should not gain the point, he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi.

30 Ko 'eni na'e pehē 'e Molonai 'oku 'ikai lelei ke toe ma'u 'e he kau Leimaná mo ha mālohi lahi ange; ko ia na'á ne pehē ke motuhi atu 'a e kakai 'o 'Amalekaia, pe ke puke mo fakafoki 'a kinautolu, pea tāmātē 'i 'a 'Amalekaia; 'io, he na'á ne 'ilo 'i te ne fakatupu 'a e kau Leimaná ke 'ita kiate kinautolu, 'o langaki ai ha'anau ha'u ke tau mo kinautolu; pea na'á ne 'ilo 'e fai 'eni 'e 'Amalekaia koe'uhi ke ne fakahoko ai 'ene ngaahi taumu'á.

31 Ko ia na'e pehē ai 'e Molonai 'oku 'aonga ke ne 'ave 'ene ngaahi kau tau, 'a ia na'a nau fakataha maí, 'o nau to'o mahafu, pea fai ha fuakava ke tauhi 'a e melinó—pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne 'ave 'ene kau tau 'o laka atu mo honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, ke ta'ofi 'a e fononga 'a 'Amalekaia ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fai 'o fakatatau ki he'ene ngaahi faka'amú, 'o laka atu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'o ta'ofi 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a 'Amalekaia.

33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hola 'a 'Amalekaia mo ha tokosi'i 'o 'ene kau tangatá, pea na'e tō hono toé ki he nima 'o Molonai, pea na'e fakafoki 'a kinautolu ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá.

34 Ko 'eni, ko Molonai ko ha tangata na'e fili 'e he kau fakamaau lahi mo e le'o 'o e kakaí, ko ia ai na'e 'iate ia 'a e mālohi ke fai 'o hangē ko hono lotó ki he ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Nīfaí, ke fokotu'u mo fai ha pule kiate kinautolu.

35 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'o e kau 'Amalekaia na'e 'ikai ke fie fai ha fuakava ke malu 'i 'a e tau'atāiná, koe'uhi ke nau lava ke tauhi ha pule'anga tau'atāiná, na'á ne fekau ke tāmātē 'i 'a kinautolu; pea na'e tokosi'i pē 'a e fa'ahinga na'a nau fakafisi ke fai 'a e fuakava 'o e tau'atāiná.

36 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē fokí, na'á ne fekau ke fusi hake 'a e fuka 'o e tau'atāiná 'i he taua kotoa pē na'e 'i he fonuá hono kotoa, 'a ia na'e ma'u 'e he kau Nīfaí; ko ia na'e pehē hono fokotu'u 'e Molonai 'a e fuka 'o e tau'atāiná 'i he kau Nīfaí.

Now Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah, or to take them and bring them back, and put Amalickiah to death; yea, for he knew that he would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them, and cause them to come to battle against them; and this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes.

Therefore Moroni thought it was expedient that he should take his armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves, and entered into a covenant to keep the peace—and it came to pass that he took his army and marched out with his tents into the wilderness, to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he did according to his desires, and marched forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni and were taken back into the land of Zarahemla.

Now, Moroni being a man who was appointed by the chief judges and the voice of the people, therefore he had power according to his will with the armies of the Nephites, to establish and to exercise authority over them.

And it came to pass that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death; and there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.

And it came to pass also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by the Nephites; and thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites.

37 Pea na'a nau toe kamata ke ma'u 'a e melino 'i he fonuá; pea ko ia na'a nau tauhi 'a e melinó 'i he fonuá 'o meimei a'u ki he 'osi hono hongofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú.

38 Pea na'e tauhi foki 'e Hilamani mo e kau taula'eiki lahi 'a e māú 'i he siasí; 'io, na'e a'u ki he ta'u 'e fā 'enau ma'u ha fu'u melino mo e fiefia lahi 'i he siasí.

39 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi na'e mate, lolotonga 'enau tui mo'oni kuo huhu 'i honau laumālié 'e he 'Eiki ko Sīsū Kalaisí; ko ia na'a nau fononga atu mei he māmaní 'i he fiefia.

40 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e ni'ihī na'e mate 'i he ngaahi mofi, 'a ia na'e fu'u hulu 'i he fonuá 'i he ngaahi fa'ahita'u 'e ni'ihī—kae 'ikai ke loko lahi 'i he ngaahi mofi, koe'uhi ko e 'aonga lahi 'o e ngaahi 'akau mo e ngaahi aka na'e teuteu 'e he 'Otuá ke to'o 'aki 'a e tupu'anga 'o e ngaahi mahakí, 'a ia na'e fa'a hoko ki he kakaí koe'uhi ko e anga 'o e 'eá—

41 Ka na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'a ia na'e mate 'i he ta'u motu'a; pea ko kinautolu na'e mate 'i he tui kia Kalaisí 'oku nau fiefia 'iate ia, 'o hangē ko ia 'oku tau 'amanaki ki aí.

And they began to have peace again in the land; and thus they did maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges.

And Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the church; yea, even for the space of four years did they have much peace and rejoicing in the church.

And it came to pass that there were many who died, firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; thus they went out of the world rejoicing.

And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land—but not so much so with fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which men were subject by the nature of the climate—

But there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him, as we must needs suppose.

‘Alamā 47

- 1 Ko ‘eni te tau foki ‘i he ‘etau lekōtī kia ‘Amalekaia pea mo kinautolu na ‘a nau hola mo ia ki he feitu ‘u maomaonganoá; he vakai, kuó ne ‘ave ‘a kinautolu ‘a ia na ‘a nau hola mo iá, ‘o nau ‘alu atu ki he fonua ko Nīfái ‘i he lotolotonga ‘o e kau Leimaná, ‘o nau ue ‘i hake ‘a e kau Leimaná ke nau ‘ita ki he kakai ‘o Nīfái, pea ‘u ki hono fai ‘e he tu ‘i ‘o e kau Leimaná ha fanongonongo ‘i hono fonuá kotoa, ki hono kakai kotoa pē, ke nau toe kātoa mai ke ‘alu hake ke tau ‘i ‘a e kau Nīfái.
- 2 Pea na ‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i hono ‘oatu ‘o e fanongonongó ‘iate kinautolú na ‘a nau fu ‘u manavahē lahi ‘aupito; ‘io, na ‘a nau manavahē ke fakatupu-houhau ki he tu ‘í, pea na ‘a nau toe ilifia foki ke ‘alu atu ‘o tau mo e kau Nīfái telia na ‘a mole ai ‘enau mo ‘uí. Pea na ‘e hoko ‘o pehē na ‘e ‘ikai te nau fie fai ia, pe ko e tokolahi ange ‘o kinautolu na ‘e ‘ikai, fie talangofua ki he ngaahi fekau ‘a e tu ‘í.
- 3 Pea ko ‘eni na ‘e hoko ‘o pehē na ‘e houhau ‘a e tu ‘í koe ‘uhi ko ‘enau talangata ‘á; ko ia na ‘á ne tuku ai kia ‘Amalekaia ‘a e pule ki he kongá ko ia ‘o ‘ene kau tau ‘a ia na ‘e talangofua ki he ‘ene ngaahi fekaú, pea ne fekau kiate ia ke ne ‘alu atu ‘o fakamālohi ‘i ‘a kinautolu ke to ‘o mahafu.
- 4 Ko ‘eni vakai, ko e me ‘a ‘eni na ‘e holi ki ai ‘a ‘Amalekaia; he ko e tangata olo poto ‘aupito ia ‘i he fai koví ko ia na ‘á ne fokotu ‘u ai ‘a e fakakaukau ‘i hono lotó ke fakahifo ‘a e tu ‘i ‘o e kau Leimaná mei hono taloní.
- 5 Pea ko ‘eni kuó ne ma ‘u ‘a e pule ki he ngaahi kongá ko ia ‘o e kau Leimaná ‘a ia na ‘a nau loto lelei ki he tu ‘í; pea na ‘á ne feinga ke ma ‘u ‘a e loto ‘o e fá ‘ahinga ‘a ia na ‘e ‘ikai ke talangofuá; ko ia na ‘á ne ‘alu atu ki he potu na ‘e ui ko ‘Onaitá, he kuo hola ki ai ‘a e kau Leimaná kotoa pē; he na ‘a nau ‘ilo ‘i ‘oku ha ‘u ‘a e kau taú, pea ‘i he mahalo ko ‘enau ha ‘ú ke faka ‘auha ‘a kinautolu, ko ia na ‘a nau hola ai ki ‘Onaita, ki he potu ‘o e ngaahi mahafu taú.
- 6 Pea kuo nau fili ha tangata ke hoko ko e tu ‘i mo e taki kiate kinautolu, ‘o fakapapau honau ‘atamaí ‘i he loto-mālohi he ‘ikai fakamālohi ‘i ‘a kinautolu ke nau ‘alu ke tau ‘i ‘a e kau Nīfái.

Alma 47

Now we will return in our record to Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness; for, behold, he had taken those who went with him, and went up in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceedingly afraid; yea, they feared to displease the king, and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives. And it came to pass that they would not, or the more part of them would not, obey the commandments of the king.

And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.

Now behold, this was the desire of Amalickiah; for he being a very subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites.

And now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites who were in favor of the king; and he sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called Onidah, for thither had all the Lamanites fled; for they discovered the army coming, and, supposing that they were coming to destroy them, therefore they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.

And they had appointed a man to be a king and a leader over them, being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites.

- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo nau kātoa fakataha mai ki he tumutumumu 'o e mo'unga 'a ia na'e ui ko 'Anitipasí, 'o teuteu ki he tau.
- 8 Ko 'eni na'e 'ikai ko e loto 'a 'Amalekaia ke tau 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakataha ki he ngaahi fekau 'a e tu'í; kae vakai, ko hono lotó ke fálala mai kiate ia 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'o e kau Leimaná, ko'e uhí ke ne lava 'o fokotu'u ia ko honau takimu'á pea fakahifo 'a e tu'í mei he taloní pea ma'u 'e ia 'a e pule'angá.
- 9 Pea vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne tu'utu'uni ke fokotu'u 'e he'ene kau tau'á honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'i he tele'a na'e ofi ki he mo'unga ko 'Anitipasí.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he'ene po'uli hifó na'á ne fekau atu ha kau talafekau fufū ki he mo'unga ko 'Anitipasí, 'o kole ki he taki 'o e fa'ahinga na'e 'i he mo'ungá, 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko Lehonitai, ke ne 'alu hifo ki he talalo mo'ungá, he na'á ne faka'amu ke talanoa mo ia.
- 11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ma'u 'e Lehonitai 'a e pōpoakí na'á ne manavahē ke 'alu hifo ki he talalo mo'ungá. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe fekau atu 'a 'Amalekaia ko hono tu'ó uá, 'o kole kiate ia ke ha'u. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai 'alu hifo 'a Lehonitai; pea ne fekau atu ko hono tu'ó tolú.
- 12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'ilo 'e 'Amalekaia he 'ikai te ne lava 'o fakaloto'i 'a Lehonitai ke 'alu hifo mei he mo'ungá, na'a ne 'alu hake ki he mo'ungá, 'o ofi ki he nofo'anga 'o Lehonitai; 'o ne fekau atu ko hono tu'ó fā ha'ane pōpoaki kia Lehonitai, 'o kole ke ne 'alu hifo, pea ke ne 'omi 'a 'ene kau le'ó mo ia.
- 13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'alu hifo 'a Lehonitai mo 'ene kau le'ó kia 'Amalekaia, na'e kole kiate ia 'e 'Amalekaia ke ne ha'u mo 'ene kau tau'á 'i he po'ulí, 'o 'ākilotoa 'a e kau tangata ko íá 'i honau ngaahi nofo'angá, kuo tuku kiate ia 'e he tu'í ke ne pule'í, pea te ne tukuange 'a kinautolu ki he nima 'o Lehonitai, 'o kapau te ne fakanofa ia (ko 'Amalekaia) ko e pule hono ua ki he kau tau kotoa pē.

And it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.

Now it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king; but behold, it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.

And behold, it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the valley which was near the mount Antipas.

And it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he durst not go down to the foot of the mount. And it came to pass that Amalickiah sent again the second time, desiring him to come down. And it came to pass that Lehonti would not; and he sent again the third time.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount, he went up into the mount, nearly to Lehonti's camp; and he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti, desiring that he would come down, and that he would bring his guards with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah, that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him (Amalickiah) a second leader over the whole army.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu hifo 'a Lehonitai mo 'ene kau tangatá 'o nau 'ākilotoa 'a e kau tangata 'a 'Amalekaiá, ko ia 'i he te'eki ai ke nau 'ā hake 'i he ma'a 'a e 'ahó kuo 'ākilotoa 'a kinautolu 'e he ngaahi kau tau 'a Lehonitai.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'enau vakai kuo 'ākilotoa 'a kinautolú, na'a nau kole kia 'Amalekaia ke ne fakangofua ke nau kau fakataha mo honau kāingá, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a faka'auha 'a kinautolu. Ko 'eni ko e me'a tofu pē 'eni na'e holi ki ai 'a 'Amalekaiá.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne tukuange 'ene kau tangatá, neongo 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e tu'í. Ko 'eni ko e me'a foki 'eni na'e fie ma'u 'e 'Amalekaiá, koe'uhi ke ne lava 'o fakahoko 'ene ngaahi fakakaukau ke fakahifo 'a e tu'í mei hono taloní.

17 Ko 'eni ko e anga foki 'o e kau Leimaná, kapau 'e tāmatae 'i 'a honau pule lahi, pea fili 'a e pule hono uá ke ne hoko ko honau pule lahi.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'e 'Amalekaia ki ha toko taha 'o 'ene kau tamaio'eiki ke ne 'oange fakasi'isi 'i 'a e me'a fakakona 'i he me'akai 'a Lehonitai ke ne mate ai.

19 Ko 'eni, 'i he mate 'a Lehonitai, na'e fili 'e he kau Leimaná 'a 'Amalekaia ke ne hoko ko honau taki mo honau 'eikitau lahi.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e laka atu 'a 'Amalekaia mo 'ene ngaahi kau tau (he kuó ne fakahoko 'a e ngaahi me'a na'á ne holi ki ai) ki he fonua ko Nīfai, ki he kolo ko Nīfai, 'a ia ko e kolo mahu'inga tahá.

21 Pea na'e hā'ele mai ki tu'a 'a e tu'í ke fakafetaulaki kiate ia mo 'ene kau le'ó, he na'á ne mahalo kuo fakahoko 'e 'Amalekaia 'a 'ene ngaahi fekau, pea kuo tānaki fakataha mai 'e 'Amalekaia 'a e fu'u kau tau tokolahi pehē ke 'alu 'o tau'í 'a e kau Nīfai.

22 Kae vakai, 'i he hā'ele mai ki tu'a 'a e tu'í ke fe'iloaki mo ía na'e fekau 'e 'Amalekai ke 'alu atu 'a 'ene kau tamaio'eiki 'o fakafetaulaki ki he tu'í. Pea nau o atu 'o punou hifo 'i he 'ao 'o e tu'í, 'o hangē ka faka'apa'apa kiate ia koe'uhi ko hono mā'olungá.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e mafao atu 'e he tu'í 'a hono to'ukupú ke fokotu'u hake 'a kinautolu, 'o hangē ko e anga 'o e kau Leimaná, ko ha faka'ilonga 'o e melino, 'a ia ko e anga kuo nau ma'u mei he kau Nīfai.

And it came to pass that Lehonti came down with his men and surrounded the men of Amalickiah, so that before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.

And it came to pass that when they saw that they were surrounded, they pled with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall in with their brethren, that they might not be destroyed. Now this was the very thing which Amalickiah desired.

And it came to pass that he delivered his men, contrary to the commands of the king. Now this was the thing that Amalickiah desired, that he might accomplish his designs in dethroning the king.

Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.

Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with his armies (for he had gained his desires) to the land of Nephi, to the city of Nephi, which was the chief city.

And the king came out to meet him with his guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands, and that Amalickiah had gathered together so great an army to go against the Nephites to battle.

But behold, as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king. And they went and bowed themselves before the king, as if to reverence him because of his greatness.

And it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he'ene fokotu'u hake 'a e
'uluaki tangatá mei he kekelelé, vakai na'á ne hoka'i 'a e
tu'í 'i hono mafú; 'o ne tō ki he kekelelé.

25 Ko 'eni na'e hola 'a e kau tamaio'eiki 'a e tu'í; pea na'e
hiki hake 'a e kalanga 'a e kau tamaio'eiki 'a 'Amalekaia,
'o pehē:

26 Vakai, ko e kau tamaio'eiki 'a e tu'í kuo nau hoka'i ia 'i
hono mafú, pea kuó ne tō, pea kuo nau hola; vakai, mou
omi 'o mamata.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'e 'Amalekaia ki
he'ene fu'u kau taú ke nau laka atu 'o mamata ki he me'a
kuo hoko ki he tu'í; pea 'i he'enua 'a'u atu ki he potu ko
iá, 'o 'ilo'i 'a e tu'í kuo tō 'i hono ta'ata'á, na'e 'ai 'e
'Amalekaia ke hangē 'okú ne 'itá, 'o ne pehē: 'Ilonga ia
na'e 'ofa ki he tu'í, tuku ke ne 'alu atu, 'o tuli 'ene kau
tamaio'eiki ke tāmata 'i 'a kinautolu.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko kinautolu kotoa pē na'e 'ofa
'i he tu'í, na'a nau 'alu atu, 'i he'enua fanongo ki he
ngaahi lea ní 'o nau tuli 'a e kau tamaio'eiki 'a e tu'í.

29 Ko 'eni, 'i he mamata 'a e kau tamaio'eiki 'a e tu'í 'oku
tuli 'a kinautolu 'e ha kau taú, na'a nau toe manavahē, 'o
nau hola ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'o 'alu atu ki he
fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'o fakataha mo e kakai 'o 'Āmoní.

30 Pea ko e kau tau na'a nau tuli 'a kinautolú na'a nau liu
mai, he na'e ta'e'aonga 'enua tuli 'a kinautolú; pea na'e
ma'u pehē 'e 'Amalekaia 'i he'ene kākāá 'a e loto 'o e
kakaí.

31 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'aho hono hokó, na'á ne hū
atu ki he kolo ko Nifái mo 'ene ngaahi kau taú, 'o ne
ma'u 'a e koló.

32 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e fanongo 'a e
kuiní, kuo feia 'a e tu'í—he kuo fekau atu 'e 'Amalekaia
ha talafekau ki he kuiní 'o fakahā kiate ia kuo
fakapoongi 'a e tu'í 'e he'ene kau tamaio'eiki, pea kuó ne
tuli 'a kinautolu 'aki 'ene ngaahi kau taú, ka na'e
ta'e'aonga, pea kuo nau hola 'o hao—

33 Ko ia, 'i he ma'u 'e he kuiní 'a e tala ní, na'á ne fekau
atu kia 'Amalekaia, 'o kole ke ne fakamo'ui 'a e kakai 'o e
koló; peá ne kole foki kiate ia ke ne ha'u kiate ia; peá ne
kole foki kiate ia ke ne 'omi mo ia ha kau fakamo'oni ke
fakamo'oni ki he pekia 'a e tu'í.

And it came to pass that when he had raised the first
from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to the
heart; and he fell to the earth.

Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants of
Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:

Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him to
the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; behold,
come and see.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded
that his armies should march forth and see what had
happened to the king; and when they had come to the
spot, and found the king lying in his gore, Amalickiah
pretended to be wroth, and said: Whosoever loved the
king, let him go forth, and pursue his servants that they
may be slain.

And it came to pass that all they who loved the king,
when they heard these words, came forth and pursued
after the servants of the king.

Now when the servants of the king saw an army pur-
suing after them, they were frightened again, and fled
into the wilderness, and came over into the land of
Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.

And the army which pursued after them returned,
having pursued after them in vain; and thus
Amalickiah, by his fraud, gained the hearts of the peo-
ple.

And it came to pass on the morrow he entered the
city Nephi with his armies, and took possession of the
city.

And now it came to pass that the queen, when she
had heard that the king was slain—for Amalickiah had
sent an embassy to the queen informing her that the
king had been slain by his servants, that he had pursued
them with his army, but it was in vain, and they had
made their escape—

Therefore, when the queen had received this message
she sent unto Amalickiah, desiring him that he would
spare the people of the city; and she also desired him
that he should come in unto her; and she also desired
him that he should bring witnesses with him to testify
concerning the death of the king.

34 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ave 'e 'Amalekaia 'a e tamaio'eiki pē ko ia na'á ne fakapoongi 'a e tu'í, mo kinautolu kotoa pē na'e 'iate iá, pea nau ō atu ki he kuiní, 'i he potu na'á ne me'a aí; pea na'a nau fakamo'oni 'i kotoa pē kiate ia, na'e feia 'a e tu'í 'e he'ene kau tamaio'eiki 'a'aná; pea na'a nau pehē foki: Kuo nau hola; he 'ikai koā 'oku fakamo'oni 'i ai 'enau koví? Pea ko ia, na'a nau fakafiemālie 'i 'a e kuiní 'o kau ki he pekia 'a e tu'í.

35 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e feinga 'a 'Amalekaia ke manako 'iate ia 'a e kuiní, peá ne ma'u ia kiate ia ko hono uaifi; pea ko ia 'i he'ene kākā, mo e tokoni 'a 'ene kau tamaio'eiki olopotó, na'á ne ma'u 'a e pule'angá; 'io, na'e fakahā ko e tu'í ia 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá, 'i he kakai kotoa pē 'o e kau Leimaná, 'a ia na'e kau ai 'a e kau Leimaná mo e kau Lēmiuelá mo e kau 'Isimelí, mo e fa'ahinga kotoa kuo angatu'u mei he kau Nīfái 'o fai mei he pule 'a Nīfái 'o a'u ki he taimi lolotonga.

36 Ko 'eni, 'i he ma'u 'e he kau angatu'u ko 'eni, 'a e fakahinohino tatau mo e fakamatala tatau mo e kau Nīfái, 'io, kuo akonekina 'a kinautolu 'i he 'ilo tatau 'o e 'Eiki, ka neongo iá, ko e me'a 'e ngali kehe ke fakahā, na'e 'ikai fuoloa mei he'enu mavahe atú kuo nau hoko 'o loto-fefeka ange pea 'ikai fie fakatomala, mo anga kaivao lahi ange, mo angakovi mo fekai ange 'i he kau Leimaná—'o nau tali lelei 'a e ngaahi talatukufakaholo 'a e kau Leimaná; pea na'a nau tuku kinautolu ki he fakapikopiko, mo e fa'ahinga holi kovi fakakakano kotoa pē; 'io, 'o ngalo 'aupito 'iate kinautolu 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all them who were with him, and went in unto the queen, unto the place where she sat; and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants; and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and thus by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom; yea, he was acknowledged king throughout all the land, among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time.

Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, yea, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites—drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; yea, entirely forgetting the Lord their God.

‘Alamā 48

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē, ‘i he ma’u pē ‘e ‘Amalekaia ‘a e pule ‘angá na’á ne kamata ke fakatupu ‘a e ‘ita ‘a e kau Leimaná ki he kakai ‘o Nīfái; ‘io, na’á ne fili ha kau tangata ke malanga ki he kau Leimaná mei honau ngaahi tauá, ‘o lau ‘ikovi ‘i ‘a e kau Nīfái.
- 2 Pea na’e pehē ‘ene ue ‘i hake honau lotó ke ‘ita ki he kau Nīfái, ‘o a’u ki he kongá ki mui ‘o e ta’u hongofulu mā hiva ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāú, kuó ne lava ‘o fakahoko ‘ene ngaahi fakakaukau kotoa pē, ‘io, kuo fakanofu ia ko e tu’i ki he kau Leimaná, na’á ne feinga foki ke pule ‘i kotoa ‘o e fonuá, ‘io, pea mo e kakai kotoa pē na’e ‘i he fonuá, ‘a e kau Nīfái pea mo e kau Leimaná foki.
- 3 Ko ia kuó ne lava ‘o fakahoko ‘ene fakakaukau, he kuó ne fakafefeka ‘a e lotó ‘o e kau Leimaná pea fakakuihi honau ‘atamaí, pea ue ‘i ‘a kinautolu ke ‘ita, ‘o a’u ki he ‘ene tānaki fakataha mai ‘a e fu’u kakai tokolahi ‘aupito ke nau ‘alu atu ke tau mo e kau Nīfái.
- 4 He kuo fakapapau hono lotó, koe ‘uhi ko e fu’u tokolahi ‘a hono kakaí, ke ikuna ‘i ‘a e kau Nīfái pea ke ‘omi ‘a kinautolu ke nofo pōpula.
- 5 Pea ko ia na’a ne fili ha kau ‘eikitau pule mei he kau Sōlamí, he na’a nau maheni taha mo e ivi ‘o e kau Nīfái, mo honau ngaahi potu hūfangá, mo e ngaahi potu vaivai taha ‘o honau ngaahi koló; ko ia na’á ne fili ‘a kinautolu ke hoko ko e kau ‘eikitau pule ki he ‘ene ngaahi kau tauá.
- 6 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’a nau hiki honau nofo ‘anga tauá, ‘o nau hiki atu ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá ‘i he feitu ‘u maomaonganoá.
- 7 Ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he lolotonga ‘a e feinga ‘i pehē ‘e ‘Amalekaia ke ne ma’u ‘a e mālohi ‘i he kākā mo e tauhelé, kae lolotonga ia, na’e teuteu ‘i foki ‘e Molonai ia ‘a e fakakaukau ‘a e kakaí ke tui faivelenga ki he ‘Eiki ko honau ‘Otuá.
- 8 ‘Io, na’á ne langa hake ke mālohi ‘a e kau tau ‘a e kau Nīfái, mo langa ha fanga ki ‘i kolotau iiki, pe ko e ngaahi potu hūfanga; ‘o nau keli hake ha ngaahi ‘ā kelekele ‘o takatakai ke ‘ā takai ‘i ‘aki ‘ene ngaahi kau tauá, pea nau langa foki ha ngaahi ‘ā maka ke ‘ā takai ‘i ‘a kinautolu, ‘o takatakai ‘i honau ngaahi koló mo e ngaahi ngata ‘anga ‘o honau ngaahi fonuá; ‘io, ‘o takatakai ‘i he fonuá katoa.

Alma 48

And now it came to pass that, as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi; yea, he did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers, against the Nephites.

And thus he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites, insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges, he having accomplished his designs thus far, yea, having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, yea, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites.

Therefore he had accomplished his design, for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred them up to anger, insomuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle against the Nephites.

For he was determined, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.

And thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites, and their places of resort, and the weakest parts of their cities; therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies.

And it came to pass that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.

Yea, he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.

9 Pea 'i honau ngaahi kolotau vaivai tahá na'á ne tuku ai 'a e kau tangata tokolahi ange; pea na'e pehē 'ene langa kolotau mo ngaohi ke mālohi 'a e fonua 'a ia na'e ma'u 'e he kau Nīfái.

10 Pea na'e pehē 'ene teuteu ke malu 'i 'enau tau'atāina, mo honau ngaahi kelekelé, mo honau ngaahi uaifí, mo 'enau fānaú, mo 'enau melinó, koe'uhí ke nau mo'ui ki honau 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, pea ke nau lava 'o fakatolonga 'a e me'a na'e ui 'e honau ngaahi filí ko e ngāue 'a e kau Kalisitiané.

11 Pea ko ha tangata sino mālohi mo kaukaua 'a Molonai; ko ha tangata ia na'á ne ma'u 'a e 'ilo haohaoa, 'io, ko ha tangata na'e 'ikai ke manako ki he lilingi totó; ko ha tangata na'e fiefia hono laumālié 'i he ta'eha'isia mo e tau'atāina 'a hono fonuá, mo hono kāinga mei he nofo pōpulá mo e nofo hopoaté;

12 'Io, ko ha tangata 'a ia na'e fonu hono lotó 'i he fakafeta 'i ki hono 'Otuá, koe'uhí ko e ngaahi faingamālie mo e ngaahi tāpuaki lahi kuó ne foaki ki hono kakaí; ko ha tangata 'a ia na'e fu'u ngāue lahi 'aupito koe'uhí ko e lelei mo e nofo malu 'a hono kakaí.

13 'Io, pea ko ha tangata ia 'a ia na'e tu'u ma'u 'i he tui kia Kalaisí, pea kuó ne fakapapau 'i ha fuakava ke malu 'i hono kakaí mo 'ene ngaahi totonú, mo hono fonuá, mo 'ene lotú, neongo 'e a'u ki ha mole ai hono totó.

14 Ko 'eni na'e akonekina 'a e kau Nīfái ke nau malu 'i 'a kinautolu mei honau ngaahi filí, 'o a'u ki he lilingi 'o e toto 'o kapau 'e fie ma'u; 'io, pea na'e akonekina foki 'a kinautolu ke 'oua na'a fai hala ki ha taha, 'io, pea ke 'oua na'a nau teitei hiki hake 'enau heletaá kae ngata pē 'i he tau mo hanau fili, tuku kehe 'o kapau ko e malu 'i 'enau mo'uí.

15 Pea ko e me'a 'eni na'a nau tui ki aí, pea 'i he 'enau fai peheé 'e tali lelei ai 'e he 'Otuá 'a kinautolu 'i he fonuá, pe ko hono fakalea 'e tahá, kapau te nau tui faivelenga 'i hono tauhi 'o e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá te ne tali lelei 'a kinautolu 'i he fonuá, 'io, te ne fakatokanga kiate kinautolu ke nau hola, pe teuteu ki he tau, 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau tu'utāmaki.

And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and thus he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And thus he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might live unto the Lord their God, and that they might maintain that which was called by their enemies the cause of Christians.

And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; yea, a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;

Yea, a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.

Yea, and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood.

Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; yea, and they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.

And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; yea, warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;

16 Pea ko e tahá foki, 'e fakahā 'e he 'Otuá kiate kinautolu 'a e feitu'u ke nau 'alu ki ai ke malu'i 'a kinautolu mei honau ngaahi filí, pea 'i he 'enau fai peheé, 'e fakahaofi 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eikí; pea ko e mé'a 'eni na'e tui ki ai 'a Molonái, pea na'e víkiviki ai 'a hono lotó; kae 'ikai 'i he lilingi 'o e totó ka 'i he fai lelei, 'i he malu'i hono kakaí, 'io, 'i he tauhi 'o e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, 'io, pea mo e ta'ofi 'a e angahalá.

17 'Io, ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou tala kiate kimoutolu, kapau kuo tatau, pe 'oku tatau, pe 'e tatau 'a e kakai kotoa pē mo Molonai, vakai, kuo lulu'i ai 'o ta'engata 'a e ngaahi mālohi 'o helí; 'io, kuo 'ikai ma'u 'e he tēvoló ha mālohi ki he loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá.

18 Vakai, ko e tangata ia na'e hangē ko 'Āmoni, ko e foha 'o Mōsaiá, 'io, pea mo e ngaahi foha kehe foki 'o Mōsaiá, 'io, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a 'Alamā mo hono ngaahi fohá, he ko e kau tangata kinautolu kotoa pē 'a e 'Otuá.

19 Ko 'eni vakai, na'e 'ikai ke sí'i hifo 'a e 'aonga 'o Hilamani mo hono kāingá ki he kakaí 'ia Molonai; he na'a nau malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, pea na'a nau papitaiso ki he fakatomalá 'a e kakai kotoa pē na'e fie tokanga ki he 'enau ngaahi leá.

20 Pea ko ia na'a nau 'alu atu, pea na'e fakavaivai 'i 'e he kakaí 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi leá, 'o a'u ki hono fu'u 'ofeina lahi ai 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eikí, pea ko ia na'a nau tau'atāina ai mei he ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi fakakikihi 'iate kinautolú, 'io, 'i he ta'u 'e fā.

21 Kae, hangē ko ia ko 'eku leá, 'i he kongá ki mui 'o e ta'u hono hongofulu mā hivá, 'io, neongo 'enau nofo melino 'iate kinautolú, na'e fa'a fakamālohi 'i kinautolu ke nau tau ta'eloto pē mo honau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná.

22 'Io, ko hono mo'óní, na'e 'ikai ngata 'enau ngaahi tau mo e kau Leimaná 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi, neongo hono lahi 'o 'enau ta'eloto ki aí.

23 Ko 'eni, na'a nau loto-mamahi ke to'o mahafu ke tau'i 'a e kau Leimaná, koe'uhi na'e 'ikai te nau manako 'i he lilingi 'o e totó; 'io, pea na'e 'ikai ko ia pē—ka na'a nau loto-mamahi ke hoko ko e 'uhinga ke fekau 'i atu ai ha fu'u tokolahi 'o honau kāingá mei he māmani ko 'ení ki ha maama ta'engata, 'oku te'eki ke nau teuteu ke fé'ilo'aki mo honau 'Otuá.

And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them; and this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it; not in the shedding of blood but in doing good, in preserving his people, yea, in keeping the commandments of God, yea, and resisting iniquity.

Yea, verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.

Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, yea, and even the other sons of Mosiah, yea, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God.

Now behold, Helaman and his brethren were no less serviceable unto the people than was Moroni; for they did preach the word of God, and they did baptize unto repentance all men whosoever would hearken unto their words.

And thus they went forth, and the people did humble themselves because of their words, insomuch that they were highly favored of the Lord, and thus they were free from wars and contentions among themselves, yea, even for the space of four years.

But, as I have said, in the latter end of the nineteenth year, yea, notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves, they were compelled reluctantly to contend with their brethren, the Lamanites.

Yea, and in fine, their wars never did cease for the space of many years with the Lamanites, notwithstanding their much reluctance.

Now, they were sorry to take up arms against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shedding of blood; yea, and this was not all—they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of this world into an eternal world, unprepared to meet their God.

24 Ka neongo iá, na'e 'ikai te nau fie tuku hifo 'enau mo'ui, kae tãmate'i honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enau fãnaú 'i he anga-kaivao 'a e fa'ahinga na'a nau hoko 'i mu'a ko honau kãingá, 'io, pea nau mavahe mei honau siasí, 'o nau lí'aki 'a kinautolu pea nau toe 'alu ke faka'auha 'a kinautolu 'i he'enau kau mo e kau Leimaná.

25 'Io, na'e 'ikai te nau fa'a kãtaki ke fiefia honau kãingá 'i he toto 'o e kau Nifáí, lolotonga 'oku kei 'i ai ha ní'ihi 'oku nau tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, he ko e tala'ofa 'a e 'Eikí, kapau te nau tauhi 'ene ngaahi fekaú te nau tu'umãlie 'i he fonuá.

Nevertheless, they could not suffer to lay down their lives, that their wives and their children should be massacred by the barbarous cruelty of those who were once their brethren, yea, and had dissented from their church, and had left them and had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites.

Yea, they could not bear that their brethren should rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as there were any who should keep the commandments of God, for the promise of the Lord was, if they should keep his commandments they should prosper in the land.

‘Alamā 49

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he māhina hono hongofulu mā taha ‘o e ta’u hono hongofulu mā hivá, ‘i hono hongofulu ‘o e ‘aho ‘o e māhiná, na’e tokanga ‘i ‘a e kau tau ‘a e kau Leimaná ‘oku nau fakaofiofi mai ki he fonua ko ‘Amonaihaá.
- 2 Pea vakai, kuo toe langa hake ‘a e koló, pea kuo tuku ‘e Molonai ‘a e kau tau ‘i he ngaahi ngata‘anga ‘o e koló, pea kuo nau keli hake ‘a e kekele ‘o takatakai ke malu ‘i ‘a kinautolu mei he ngaahi ngahau mo e ngaahi maka ‘a e kau Leimaná; he vakai, na’a nau tau ‘aki ‘a e ngaahi maka mo e ngaahi ngahau.
- 3 Vakai, na’á ku pehē kuo toe langa hake ‘a e kolo ko ‘Amonaihaá. ‘Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ‘io, na’e toe langa hake hano kongá; pea koe’uhi na’e faka’auha tu’o taha ia ‘e he kau Leimaná tu’unga ‘i he anghala ‘a e kakai, pea na’a nau mahalo ‘e toe hoko ia ko e me’a faingofua ke hamu.
- 4 Kae vakai, hono ‘ikai lahi ‘a ‘enau mamahí ‘i he tō noa ‘enau ‘amanakí; he vakai, kuo keli hake ‘e he kau Nifái ‘a e ‘ā kekele ‘o takatakai ‘iate kinautolu, ‘a ia na’e lahi pehē fau hono mā’olungá ‘o ‘ikai lava ai ke lisingi ‘e he kau Leimaná ‘a ‘enau ngaahi maká mo ‘enau ngaahi ngahau kiate kinautolu ‘o ‘aonga, pea na’e ‘ikai foki te nau lava ‘o ‘oho mai kiate kinautolu, ka ‘i honau feitu’u hū’angá pē.
- 5 Ko ‘eni na’e fu’u ofo lahi ‘aupito he taimi ko ‘ení ‘a e kau ‘eikitau pule ‘o e kau Leimaná, koe’uhi ko e poto ‘a e kau Nifái ‘i he teuteu ‘i honau ngaahi potu hūfangá.
- 6 Ko ‘eni na’e mahalo ‘e he kau taki ‘o e kau Leimaná, koe’uhi ko e hulu ‘o honau fu’u tokolahí, ‘io, na’a nau mahalo te nau faingamālie ke ‘oho mai kiate kinautolu ‘o hangē ko ia kuo nau fai ki mu’á; ‘io, pea na’a nau teuteu ‘i ‘a kinautolu foki ‘aki ‘a e ngaahi pā, pea mo e ngaahi sifa-fatafata; pea na’a nau teuteu ‘i ‘a kinautolu foki ‘aki ‘a e ngaahi kofu ‘o e kili ‘i manu, ‘io, ‘a e ngaahi kofu matolu ‘aupito ke ‘ufi’ufi ‘aki honau telefuá.
- 7 Pea ‘i he ‘enau teuteu peheé na’a nau mahalo ai ‘e faingofua ‘enau ikuna ‘i mo fakapōpula ‘i honau kāingá ‘i he ha’amonga ‘o e nofo pōpulá, pe tāmata ‘i pe fakapoongi fa’iteliha ‘a kinautolu.

Alma 49

And now it came to pass in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.

And behold, the city had been rebuilt, and Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city, and they had cast up dirt round about to shield them from the arrows and the stones of the Lamanites; for behold, they fought with stones and with arrows.

Behold, I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt. I say unto you, yea, that it was in part rebuilt; and because the Lamanites had destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people, they supposed that it would again become an easy prey for them.

But behold, how great was their disappointment; for behold, the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance.

Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

Now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, because of the greatness of their numbers, yea, they supposed that they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done; yea, and they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

And being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

8 Kae vakai, na'a nau fu'u ofo lahi 'aupito, he na'a nau mateuteu kiate kinautolu, 'i ha founga kuo te'eki ai ke 'iloa 'i he fanau 'a Lihai. Ko 'eni kuo nau mateuteu ki he kau Leimaná, ke tau 'o hangē ko e anga 'o e ngaahi fakahinohino 'a Molonai.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fu'u ofo lahi 'a e kau Leimaná, pe ko e kau 'Amalekaiá, 'i he anga 'o 'enau teuteu ki he tau.

10 Ko 'eni, kapau na'e ha'u 'a e tu'i ko 'Amalekaiá mei he fonua ko Nifai, 'o taki 'ene kau tau, pehē kuó ne fekau 'a e kau Leimaná ke 'oho atu ki he kau Nifai 'i he kolo ko 'Amonaihaá; he vakai, na'e 'ikai te ne mahu'inga 'ia 'i he toto 'o hono kakai.

11 Kae vakai, na'e 'ikai ha'u 'a 'Amalekaiá ia ki he tau. Pea vakai, na'e 'ikai loto-to'a 'a 'ene kau 'eikitau pulé ke tau 'i 'a e kau Nifai 'i he kolo ko 'Amonaihaá, he kuo liliu 'e Molonai 'a e pulé 'i 'o e ngaahi me'a 'a e kau Nifai, 'o a'u ki hono ta'ofi ai 'o e kau Leimaná 'i honau ngaahi potu hūfangá, 'o 'ikai te nau lava ke 'oho mai kiate kinautolu.

12 Ko ia na'a nau holomui ai ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'o hiki honau nofo'anga tau 'o laka atu ki he fonua ko Noá, 'o nau mahalo ko e potu lelei taha pē ia hono hoko ke nau tau 'i ai 'a e kau Nifai.

13 He na'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo kuo 'ākolo 'i 'e Molonai, pe kuó ne langa ha ngaahi kolotau malu 'i, 'i he kolo kotoa pē 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonua na'e ofi ai; ko ia, na'a nau laka atu ki he fonua ko Noá kuo fakapapau honau lotó; 'io, na'e o mai honau kau 'eikitau pulé 'o fai ha fuakava te nau faka'auha 'a e kakai 'o e kolo ko iá.

14 Kae vakai, na'a nau ofo 'aupito, he ko e kolo ko Noá, 'a ia na'e vaivai 'i mu'á, kuo hoko ia he taimi ni, 'o mālohi, 'i he ngaahi founga 'a Molonai, 'io, 'o lahi hake ia 'i he mālohi 'o e kolo ko 'Amonaihaá.

15 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, ko e potu 'eni 'o Molonai; he na'a ne mahalo te nau ilifia 'i he kolo ko 'Amonaihaá; pea koe'uhi ko e kolo ko Noá 'a e potu vaivai taha 'o e fonua 'i mu'á, ko ia te nau laka atu ki ai ke tau; pea na'e hoko 'o hangē ko 'ene faka'amú.

But behold, to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi. Now they were prepared for the Lamanites, to battle after the manner of the instructions of Moroni.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites, were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation for war.

Now, if king Amalickiah had come down out of the land of Nephi, at the head of his army, perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah; for behold, he did care not for the blood of his people.

But behold, Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle. And behold, his chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah, for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites, insomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat and they could not come upon them.

Therefore they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites.

For they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about; therefore, they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination; yea, their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.

But behold, to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong, yea, even to exceed the strength of the city Ammonihah.

And now, behold, this was wisdom in Moroni; for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah; and as the city of Noah had hitherto been the weakest part of the land, therefore they would march thither to battle; and thus it was according to his desires.

- 16 Pea vakai, kuo fakanofa 'a Līhai 'e Molonai ko e 'eikitau pule ki he kau tangata 'o e kolo ko iá; pea ko e Līhai tatau pē ia na'e tau mo e kau Leimaná 'i he tele'a 'i he hahake 'o e vaiatafe ko Saitoné.
- 17 Pea ko 'eni vakai na'e hoko 'o pehē, 'i he 'ilo 'e he kau Leimaná 'oku pule 'a Līhai ki he koló na'a nau toe lotomamahi, he na'a nau fu'u ilifia lahi kia Līhai; ka neongo iá, ka kuo fai 'e honau kau 'eikitau pulé 'a e fuakava ke tau 'i 'a e koló; ko ia, na'a nau 'omai 'enua kau taú.
- 18 Ko 'eni vakai, na'e 'ikai lava ke hū atu 'a e kau Leimaná ki honau ngaahi kolotau hūfangá 'i ha hala kehe ka 'i he hū'angá pē, ko'e uhi ko hono mā'olunga 'o e 'ā kelekele kuo fokotu'u haké, pea mo hono loloto 'o e luo kuo keli takatakai aí, kae ngata pē 'i he hū'angá.
- 19 Pea na'e pehē 'a e teuteu 'a e kau Nīfái ke faka'auha 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'e feinga ke kaka hake ke hū ki he kolotau 'i ha toe hala kehé, 'i hono lisingi hifo 'o e ngaahi maka mo e ngaahi ngahau kiate kinautolu.
- 20 Ko ia na'e pehē honau teuteu 'i, 'io, na'e 'i ai 'a e ní'ihī 'o 'enua kau tangata mālohi tahá, mo 'enua ngaahi heletaá mo 'enua ngaahi maka-taá ke tā hifo 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'e feinga ke hū ki honau potu hūfangá 'i he hū'angá; pea na'e pehē honau teuteu 'i ke malu 'i 'a kinautolu mei he kau Leimaná.
- 21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'omi 'e he kau 'eikitau 'o e kau Leimaná 'a 'enua kau taú ki he potu 'o e hū'angá, 'o kamata ke tau mo e kau Nīfái, ke nau hū ki honau potu hūfangá; kae vakai, na'e toutou teke 'i 'a kinautolu ki mui mei he taimi ki he taimi, 'o a'u ki hono tāmata 'i 'a kinautolu 'i ha fu'u faka'auha lahi faka'ulia.
- 22 Ko 'eni 'i he 'enua 'ilo 'oku 'ikai te nau lava ke ma'u ha mālohi ki he kau Nīfái 'i he hū'angá, na'a nau kamata ke keli hifo 'enua ngaahi 'ā kelekelé ke nau ma'u ai ha hala ki he 'enua kau taú, ko'e uhi ke nau ma'u ai ha faingamālie tatau ke tau; kae vakai, 'i he ngaahi feinga ko iá na'e teke 'i 'a kinautolu mei ai 'aki 'a e ngaahi maka mo e ngaahi ngahau, 'a ia na'e lisingi kiate kinautolú; pea na'e 'ikai te nau fakafonu 'a 'enua ngaahi luó 'aki 'enua holoki hifo 'a e ngaahi 'ā kelekelé, ka na'e meimei fakafonu ia 'aki honau ngaahi sino kuo mate mo kafó.

And behold, Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that city; and it was that same Lehi who fought with the Lamanites in the valley on the east of the river Sidon.

And now behold it came to pass, that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed, for they feared Lehi exceedingly; nevertheless their chief captains had sworn with an oath to attack the city; therefore, they brought up their armies.

Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.

And thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.

Thus they were prepared, yea, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of entrance; and thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security; but behold, they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.

Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight; but behold, in these attempts they were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.

23 Ko ia na'e ma'u 'e he kau Nīfai 'a e mālohi kotoa ki honau ngaahi filí; pea na'e feinga pehē 'a e kau Leimaná ke faka'auha 'a e kau Nīfai kae 'oua kuo tō kotoa honau kau 'eikitau pulé; 'io, pea na'e laka 'i he toko taha afé 'a e tokolahi 'o e kau Leimana na'e toó; ka 'i he fá'ahi 'e tahá na'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha toko taha 'o e kau Nīfai na'e tō.

24 Na'e 'i ai 'a e toko nimangofulu nai na'e kafo, 'a ia na'e 'atā ki he ngaahi ngahau 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he hū'angá, ka na'e malu 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he 'enau ngaahi paá, mo 'enau ngaahi sifa-fatafatá, mo 'enau ngaahi tatā taú, ko ia ko honau ngaahi kafó na'e 'i honau va'é pē, 'a ia na'e lalahi 'a e ni'ihī.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē, 'i he sio 'a e kau Leimaná kuo tō honau kau 'eikitau pulé kotoa na'a nau hola leva ki he feitu'u maomaongoa. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau foki ki he fonua ko Nīfai, ke fakahā ki honau tu'i, ko 'Amalekaia, 'a ia na'e tupu ko e tangata Nīfai, 'o kau ki hono lahi 'o e tō tau 'iate kinautolú.

26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fu'u houhau lahi ki hono kakai, koe'uhi kuo 'ikai te ne lava 'o fakahoko 'a e me'a na'á ne holi ke fai ki he kau Nīfai; kuo 'ikai te ne fakapōpula 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he ha'amonga 'o e nofo pōpula.

27 'Io, na'á ne fu'u houhau lahi, 'o ne lea kovi ki he 'Otuá, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a Molonai, 'o ne fakapapu 'i ha fuakava te ne inu hono totó; pea na'e hoko 'eni koe'uhi ko e tauhi 'e Molonai 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá 'i he teuteu ki he malu 'i 'a hono kakai.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē, 'i he fá'ahi 'e tahá na'e fakafeta 'i 'a e kakai Nīfai ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, koe'uhi ko hono māfima'fi ta'e-hano-tatau 'i he fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nima 'o honau ngaahi filí.

29 Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a hono hongofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai 'o Nīfai.

30 'Io, pea na'e nofo ma'u pē 'a e melinó 'iate kinautolu, pea na'e fu'u tu'umālie lahi 'aupito 'a e siasí koe'uhi ko 'enau tokanga mo e faivelenga ki he folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia na'e fakahā kiate kinautolu 'e Hilamani, mo Sipiloni, mo Kolianitoni, mo 'Āmoni mo hono kāingá, 'io, pea mo kinautolu kotoa pē kuo fakanofu 'i he lakanga toputapu 'o e 'Otuá, pea papitaiso 'a kinautolu ki he fakatomalá mo fekau ke 'alu atu 'o malanga ki he kakai.

Thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies; and thus the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain; yea, and more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain; while, on the other hand, there was not a single soul of the Nephites which was slain.

There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.

And it came to pass, that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness. And it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was a Nephite by birth, concerning their great loss.

And it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people, because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites; he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage.

Yea, he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood; and this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people.

And it came to pass, that on the other hand, the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their enemies.

And thus ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Yea, and there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great prosperity in the church because of their heed and diligence which they gave unto the word of God, which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shiblōn, and Corianton, and Ammon and his brethren, yea, and by all those who had been ordained by the holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach among the people.

‘Alamā 50

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e ‘ikai ke tuku ‘e Molonai ‘a e ngaahi teuteu ki he taú, pe ke malu ‘i ‘o hono kakaí mei he kau Leimaná; he na’á ne fekau ke kamata ‘e he’ene kau taú ‘i he kamata’anga ‘o e ta’u hono uofulu ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāú, ke nau kamata ke keli hake ha ngaahi fokotu’unga kekeleke ‘o takatakai ‘i he ngaahi kotoa pē ‘i he fonuá hono kotoa ‘a ia na’e ma’u ‘e he kau Nīfaí.
- 2 Pea na’á ne fekau ke fokotu’u hake ‘i he tumutumu ‘o e ngaahi fokotu’unga kekeleke ko ‘eni ha ngaahi sino ‘i ‘akau, ‘io, ‘a e ngaahi ‘ā ‘o e ngaahi ‘akau ‘o langa ke fe’unga mo hono mā’olunga ‘o ha tangata, ‘o takatakai ‘i he ngaahi koló.
- 3 Pea na’á ne fekau ke fokotu’u ‘i he funga ‘o e ngaahi ‘ā ‘akau ko iá ha ngaahi ‘akau kuo fakamata māsila; pea na’e mālohi ia mo mā’olunga.
- 4 Pea na’á ne fekau ke langa ha ngaahi taua na’e mā’olunga ange ‘i he ngaahi ‘ā ‘akau māsila ko iá, pea na’á ne tu’utu’uni ke langa ha ngaahi potu hūfanga ‘i he ngaahi funga taua ko iá, koe’uhi ke ‘oua na’a ‘i ai ha ngaahi maka mo e ngahau ‘a e kau Leimaná te nau lavea ai.
- 5 Pea na’a nau mateuteu ke nau lava ‘o laku ‘a e ngaahi maka mei ‘olunga mei ai, ‘o fakatatau mo ‘enau fa’itelihá mo honau iví, ‘o tāmata’i ia ‘e feinga ke ha’u ki he ngaahi ‘ā ‘o e koló.
- 6 Na’e pehē hono teuteu ‘i ‘e Molonai ‘a e ngaahi kolotau ki he ha’u honau ngaahi filí, ‘o takatakai ‘i he kotoa pē ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e fonuá.
- 7 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e fekau ‘e Molonai ke ‘alu atu ‘ene kau taú ki he feitu’u maomaonganoa ‘i he hahaké, ‘io, pea na’a nau ō atu ‘o tuli ‘a e kau Leimana kotoa pē na’e ‘i he feitu’u maomaonganoa ‘i he hahaké ki honau ngaahi fonua ‘onautolú, ‘a ia na’e ‘i he tonga ‘o e fonua ko Seilahemalá.
- 8 Pea na’e ‘alu hangatonu atu ‘a e fonua ko Nīfaí mei he tahi hahaké ki he hihifó.

Alma 50

And now it came to pass that Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the judges, that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

Thus Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; yea, and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness into their own lands, which were south of the land of Zarahemla.

And the land of Nephi did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono tuli atu 'e Molonai 'a e kau Leimaná kotoa mei he feitu'u maomaonganoa 'i he hahaké, 'a ia na'e 'i he tokelau 'o honau ngaahi fonuá 'onautolú, na'á ne fekau ke 'alu 'a e kakai 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá mo e fonua ofi ki aí, ki he feitu'u maomaonganoa 'i he hahaké, 'o a'u ki he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'oku ofi ki he matātahí, 'o ma'u 'a e fonuá.

10 Pea na'á ne tuku foki ha ngaahi kau tau 'i he tongá, 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'o honau ngaahi fonua 'onautolú, peá ne fekau ke nau langa ha ngaahi kolotau koe'uhi ke nau malu 'i 'enau ngaahi kau tau mo honau kakai mei he nima 'o honau ngaahi filí.

11 Pea ko ia na'á ne motuhi atu 'a e ngaahi kolotau kotoa pē 'o e kau Leimaná 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoa 'i he hahaké, 'io, kae 'uma'ā foki 'i he hihifó, 'o ne keli kolo 'i he ngata'anga fonua 'i he vaha'a 'o e kau Nifái mo e kau Leimaná, 'i he vaha'a 'o e fonua ko Seilahemalá mo e fonua ko Nifái, 'o fai mei he tahi hihifó, 'o 'alu atu 'i he tafa'aki 'o e matavai 'o e vaitafe ko Saitoné—pea ma'u 'e he kau Nifái 'a e fonua hono kotoa 'i he fakatokelau; 'io, na'a mo e fonua kotoa na'e 'i he fakatokelau 'o e fonua ko Mahú, 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau fa'itelihá.

12 Na'e pehē 'a e feinga 'a Molonai, mo 'ene ngaahi kau tau, he na'e faka'au 'o tokolahi ange 'i he 'aho taki taha koe'uhi ko e fakapapu 'i 'o e malu 'i 'a ia na'e fakahā ki ate kinautolu 'e he 'ene ngaahi ngāu'é, ke motuhi atu 'a e ivi mo e mālohi 'o e kau Leimaná mei honau ngaahi fonua 'onautolú ke 'oua na'a nau ma'u ha mālohi ki honau ngaahi fonua 'onautolú.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata 'e he kau Nifái 'a e tu'unga 'o ha kolo, 'o nau ui 'a e hingoa 'o e koló ko Molonai; pea na'e ofi ia ki he tahi hahaké; pea na'e 'i he potu tongá ia 'o ofi ki he ngata'anga 'o e ngaahi fonua 'o e kau Leimaná.

14 Pea na'a nau kamata foki ha tu'unga 'o ha kolo 'i he vaha'a 'o e kolo ko Molonai mo e kolo ko 'Ēloné, 'o fehokotaki 'a e ngaahi ngata'anga 'o 'Ēlone mo Molonai; pea nau ui 'a e hingoa 'o e koló, pe ko e fonuá, ko Nifaihā.

15 Pea na'a nau kamata foki 'i he ta'u pē ko iá ke langa ha ngaahi kolo lahi 'i he tokelau, ko e taha na'e kehe hono langá na'e ui ko Lihai, 'a ia na'e tu'u 'i he tokelau 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e matātahí.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Zarahemla and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.

And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.

And thus he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of Zarahemla and the land of Nephi, from the west sea, running by the head of the river Sidon—the Nephites possessing all the land northward, yea, even all the land which was northward of the land Bountiful, according to their pleasure.

Thus Moroni, with his armies, which did increase daily because of the assurance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them, did seek to cut off the strength and the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions, that they should have no power upon the lands of their possession.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began the foundation of a city, and they called the name of the city Moroni; and it was by the east sea; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.

And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of Moroni and the city of Aaron, joining the borders of Aaron and Moroni; and they called the name of the city, or the land, Nephiah.

And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

16 Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a hono uofulu 'o e ta'ú.

17 Pea ko e ngaahi tu'unga tu'umālie ia na'e 'i ai 'a e kau Nīfai 'i he kamata'anga 'o e ta'ú hono uofulu mā taha 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfai.

18 Pea na'a nau fu'u tu'umālie 'aupito, 'o nau faka'au 'o koloa'ia 'aupito; 'io, pea na'a nau fakatokolahi pea na'a nau faka'au 'o mālohi 'i he fonuá.

19 Pea ko ia 'oku tau vakai ki hono lahi 'o e 'alo'ofa mo e angatonu 'o e ngaahi ngāue kotoa pē 'a e 'Eiki, 'i hono fakahoko 'ene ngaahi folofola kotoa pē ki he fānau 'a e tangatá; 'io, 'oku tau lava 'o vakai kuo fakahoko 'a 'ene ngaahi folofolá, 'io 'i he taimí ni, 'a ia na'á ne folofola 'aki kia Lihai 'o pehē:

20 'Okú ke monū 'ia koe mo ho' o fānau; pea 'e tāpuaki 'i 'a kinautolu; kapau te nau tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú te nau tu'umālie 'i he fonuá. Kae manatu, kapau 'e 'ikai te nau tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú 'e motuhi atu 'a kinautolu mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eiki.

21 Pea 'oku tau vakai kuo fakamo'oni 'i 'a e ngaahi tala'ofá ni ki he kakai 'o Nīfai; he ko e me'a 'i he 'enau ngaahi fakakikihi mo 'enau ngaahi feke'ike'í, 'io, 'a 'enau ngaahi fakapoó, mo 'enau ngaahi vete koloá, mo 'enau tauhi 'otua loí, mo 'enau ngaahi fe'auakí, mo 'enau ngaahi anga-fakalielia, 'a ia na'e 'iate kinautolú, kuo fakahoko ai kiate kinautolu 'enau ngaahi taú mo honau ngaahi faka'auhá.

22 Pea ko kinautolu ko ia na'e tui faivelenga 'i hono tauhi 'o e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eiki na'e fakahaofi 'i he taimi kotoa pē, lolotonga iá ko e ngaahi toko lau afe 'o honau kāinga fai angahalá kuo tuku atu ki he nofo pōpulá, pe ke 'auha 'i he heletā, pe ke faka'au'auhifo 'i he ta'etui, 'o nau fetuiaki mo e kau Leimaná.

23 Kae vakai na'e te'eki ke 'i ai ha taimi fakafiefia ange 'i he kakai 'o Nīfai, talu mei he ngaahi 'aho 'o Nīfai, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi 'aho 'o Molonai, 'io, 'i he taimi ko 'ení, 'i hono uofulu mā taha 'o e ta'ú 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e faka'osi foki 'a e ta'ú hono uofulu mā ua 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú 'i he melino; 'io, kae 'uma'ā foki mo hono uofulu mā tolu 'o e ta'ú.

And thus ended the twentieth year.

And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly rich; yea, and they did multiply and wax strong in the land.

And thus we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men; yea, we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spake unto Lehi, saying:

Blessed art thou and thy children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land. But remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrelings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

And those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times, whilst thousands of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

But behold there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, yea, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that the twenty and second year of the reign of the judges also ended in peace; yea, and also the twenty and third year.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he kamata'anga 'o hono uofulu mā fā ta'u 'o e pule'a e kau fakamāú, na'e totonu foki ke 'i ai 'a e melino 'i he kakai 'o Nīfai ka ne ta'e'oua ha fakakikihi na'e hoko 'iate kinautolu 'o kau ki he fonua ko Līhai, pea mo e fonua ko Molianitoní, 'a ia na'e ofi ki he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'o Līhai; 'a ia na'e fakatou tu'u 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga ki he matātahi.

26 He vakai, na'e eke'i 'e he kakai 'a ia na'a nau ma'u 'a e fonua ko Molianitoní ha konga 'o e fonua ko Līhai, ko ia na'e kamata ke 'i ai 'a e fakakikihi lahi 'i honau vaha'á, 'o a'u ki he to'o hake 'e he kakai 'o Molianitoní ha ngaahi mahafu ke tau 'i honau kāingá, pea na'e fakapapau honau loto ke tāmata'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e heletā.

27 Kae vakai, na'e hola 'a e kakai na'a nau ma'u 'a e fonua ko Līhai ki he nofo'anga tau 'o Molonai, 'o nau kole kiate ia ke tokoni mai; he vakai ko kinautolu 'oku nau ma'u 'a e totonu ki ai.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'ilo 'e he kakai 'o Molianitoní, 'a ia na'e taki 'e ha tangata ko hono hingoá ko Molianitoní, kuo hola 'a e kakai 'o Līhai ki he nofo'anga tau 'o Molonai, na'a nau fu'u ilifia telia na'a ha'u kiate kinautolu 'a e kau tau 'a Molonai, 'o faka'auha 'a kinautolu.

29 Ko ia, na'e fakaloto'i 'a kinautolu 'e Molianitoní ke nau hola ki he fonua na'e tu'u 'i he fakatokelaú, 'a ia na'e 'ufi'ufi 'e he ngaahi anovai lalahi, 'o nau ma'u 'a e fonua na'e 'i he fakatokelaú.

30 Pea vakai, na'a nau meimei fakahoko 'a e fakakaukau ni, ('a ia ko ha me'a pango na'e mei tupu ai ha tangi lāulau), kae vakai, ko'e'uhi ko Molianitoní ko ha tangata loto-ita, ko ia na'a ne 'ita ki ha taha 'o 'ene kau kaunangá, 'o ne 'ohofi ia, 'o haha lahi ia.

31 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a ne hola, 'o ne 'alu atu ki he 'apitanga 'o Molonai, 'o ne fakahā kia Molonai 'a e me'a kotoa 'o kau ki he me'a ko iá, kae 'uma'ā foki mo 'enua ngaahi fakakaukau ke hola ki he fonua fakatokelaú.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi, and the land of Morianton, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

For behold, the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their brethren, and they were determined by the sword to slay them.

But behold, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni, and appealed unto him for assistance; for behold they were not in the wrong.

And it came to pass that when the people of Morianton, who were led by a man whose name was Morianton, found that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward.

And behold, they would have carried this plan into effect, (which would have been a cause to have been lamented) but behold, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.

And it came to pass that she fled, and came over to the camp of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to flee into the land northward.

32 Ko 'eni vakai, ko e kakai na'e 'i he fonua ko Mahú, pe ko Molonaí, na'a nau manavahē na'a 'iloange kuo nau tokanga ki he ngaahi lea 'a Molianitoní 'o fakataha mo hono kakaí, pea te ne ma'u 'a e ngaahi potu fonua ko íá, 'a ia 'e 'ai ai 'a e tu'unga ki ha ngaahi fakatu'utāmaki 'i he kakai 'o Nīfai, 'io, 'a ia ko e ngaahi me'a 'e langaki ai hano ikuna 'i 'o 'enau tau'atāiná.

33 Ko ia na'e fekau ai 'e Molonai ke 'alu ha kau tau mo honau 'apitangá ke fetaulaki mo e kakai 'o Molianitoní, 'o ta'ofi 'enau hola ki he fonua fakatokelaú.

34 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai te nau fetaulaki mo kinautolu kae 'oua kuo nau a'u ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonua ko 'Auhá; pea na'a nau fetaulaki ai mo kinautolu, 'o ofi ki he kavelemotu 'a ia na'e a'u atu ki he tahi 'i he fonua fakatokelaú, 'io, 'i he matātahi, 'i he hihifó mo e hahaké.

35 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e kau tau na'e fekau 'i atu 'e Molonaí, 'a ia na'e taki 'e he tangata ko hono hingoá ko Teanikumi, na'a nau fetaulaki mo e kakai 'o Molianitoní; pea na'e lahi fau 'a e loto-fefeka 'a e kakai 'o Molianitoní, (he na'e ue'i hake honau lotó 'e he'ene fai angahalá mo 'ene ngaahi lea fakahekeheké), ko ia na'e kamata ai ha tau 'i honau vaha'á, 'a ia na'e tāmata 'i ai 'a Molianitoní 'e Teanikumi, 'o ikuna 'i 'ene kau tau, mo ne puke pōpula 'a kinautolu, pea foki ki he 'apitanga 'o Molonaí. Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono uofulu mā fā 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfai.

36 Pea na'e anga pehē hono fakafoki mai 'o e kakai 'o Molianitoní. Pea 'i he'enu fuakava ke tauhi 'a e melinó na'e toe fakafoki 'a kinautolu ki he fonua ko Molianitoní, pea na'a nau fakataha ai mo e kakai 'o Līhái; pea na'e toe fakafoki 'a kinautolu ki honau ngaahi fonuá.

37 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u pē ko ia na'e toe fokotu'u ai 'a e melinó 'i he kakai 'o Nīfai, na'e pekia ai 'a Nīfaihā, ko e fakamaau lahi hono uá, pea kuó ne fakahoko 'a e lakanga 'o e fakamāú 'i he angatonu haohaoa 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá.

38 Ka neongo íá, na'á ne fakafisi ke tali 'a e kole 'e 'Alamā ke ne tauhi 'a e ngaahi lekooti mo e ngaahi me'a ko ia 'a ia na'e lau 'e 'Alamā mo 'ene ngaahi tamai 'oku toputapu tahá; ko ia na'e tuku 'e 'Alamā 'a e ngaahi me'a ko íá ki hono foa, ko Hilamaní.

Now behold, the people who were in the land Bountiful, or rather Moroni, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and thus he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi, yea, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty.

Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.

And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east.

And it came to pass that the army which was sent by Moroni, which was led by a man whose name was Teancum, did meet the people of Morianton; and so stubborn were the people of Morianton, (being inspired by his wickedness and his flattering words) that a battle commenced between them, in the which Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni. And thus ended the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands.

And it came to pass that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them, that Nephiah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

Nevertheless, he had refused Alma to take possession of those records and those things which were esteemed by Alma and his fathers to be most sacred; therefore Alma had conferred them upon his son, Helaman.

39 Vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fili 'a e foha 'o Nīfaihaá ki he nofo'anga fakamāú, 'o fetongi 'ene tamaí; 'io, na'e fili ia ko e fakamaau lahi mo e pule ki he kakaí, 'i ha fuakava mo e ouau toputapu ke fakamaau mā'oni'oni, pea tauhi 'a e melinó mo e tau'atāina 'a e kakaí, pea foaki kiate kinautolu 'a honau ngaahi faingamālie toputapu ke hū ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, 'io, ke pou pou 'i mo malu 'i 'a 'enau tui ki he 'Otuá 'i he kotoa hono ngaahi 'ahó, pea 'omi 'a e kau fai angahalá ki he fakamaau 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau hiá.

40 Ko 'eni vakai, ko hono hingoá ko Peiholani. Pea na'e nofo 'a Peiholani 'i he nofo'anga 'o 'ene tamaí, pea kamata 'i he ngata'anga 'o e ta'u hono uofulu mā faá, 'ene pule ki he kakaí 'o Nīfaí.

Behold, it came to pass that the son of Nephiah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; yea, he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God, yea, to support and maintain the cause of God all his days, and to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran did fill the seat of his father, and did commence his reign in the end of the twenty and fourth year, over the people of Nephi.

‘Alamā 5 I

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he kamata’anga ‘o hono uofulu mā nima ta’u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai ‘o Nīfaí, kuo nau fokotu’u ‘a e melinó ‘i he vaha’a ‘o e kakai ‘o Lihai mo e kakai ‘o Molianitoní ‘o kau ki honau ngaahi fonuá, pea kuo kamata hono uofulu mā nima ‘o e ta’ú ‘i he melino;
- 2 Ka neongo iá, na’e ‘ikai fuoloa ‘enau tauhi ma’u ‘a e melino kakato ‘i he fonuá, he na’e kamata ke ‘i ai ha fakakikihi ‘i he vaha’a ‘o e kakai ‘o kau ki he fakamaau lahi ko Peiholani; he vakai, na’e ‘i ai ha ni’ihi ‘o e kakai na’e loto ke liliu ‘a e ngaahi kupu ‘e ni’ihi ‘o e laó.
- 3 Kae vakai, na’e ‘ikai ke loto ‘a Peiholani ke liliu pe fakangofua hono liliu ‘o e laó; ko ia, na’e ‘ikai te ne tokanga kiate kinautolu na’e ‘omi honau lotó ‘i he ‘enau ngaahi tohi tangi ‘o kau ki he liliu ‘o e laó.
- 4 Ko ia, ko kinautolu na’a nau fie liliu ‘a e laó na’a nau ‘ita kiate ia, ‘o nau loto ke ‘oua na’a ne toe hoko atu ko e fakamaau lahi ki he fonuá; ko ia na’e tupu ai ha fu’u fakakikihi lahi ‘o fekau’aki mo ia, ka na’e ‘ikai iku ia ki he lilingi ‘o e toto.
- 5 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē ko e fa’ahinga na’e loto ke fakahifo ‘a Peiholani mei he nofo’anga fakamāu na’e ui kinautolu ko e kau tangata tu’í, he na’a nau loto ke liliu ‘a e laó ‘i ha founga ke veteki ai ‘a e pule’anga tau’atāina pea fokotu’u ha tu’i ki he fonuá kotoa.
- 6 Pea ko e fa’ahinga na’e loto ke hoko atu ‘a Peiholani ‘i he’ene hoko ko e fakamaau lahi ki he fonuá na’a nau ‘ai kiate kinautolu ‘a e hingoa ko e kau tangata tau’atāina; pea na’e pehē ‘a e mavahevahe ‘iate kinautolú, he kuo fakapapau pe fuakava ‘a e kau tangata tau’atāina ke tauhi ‘enau ngaahi totonu mo e ngaahi faingamālie ‘o ‘enau lotú ‘i ha pule’anga tau’atāina.
- 7 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e fakapapau ‘i ‘a e me’a na’a nau fakakikihi ki ai ‘i he le’o ‘o e kakai. Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e fakahā mai ‘a e le’o ‘o e kakai ‘o pou pou ‘i ‘a e kau tangata tau’atāina, pea na’e tauhi ai ‘e Peiholani ‘a e nofo’anga fakamāu, pea na’e langaki ai ha fu’u fiefia ‘i he kāinga ‘o Peiholani mo e tokolahi foki ‘o e kakai ‘o e tau’atāina, ‘a ia na’a nau ngaohi ‘a e kau tangata tu’í ke fakalongolongo ‘o ‘ikai te nau to’a ke fakafepaki, ka na’e pau ke nau pou pou ‘i ‘a e tu’unga ‘o e tau’atāina.

Alma 5 I

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, they having established peace between the people of Lehi and the people of Morianton concerning their lands, and having commenced the twenty and fifth year in peace;

Nevertheless, they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land, for there began to be a contention among the people concerning the chief judge Pahoran; for behold, there were a part of the people who desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered.

But behold, Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered; therefore, he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law.

Therefore, those who were desirous that the law should be altered were angry with him, and desired that he should no longer be chief judge over the land; therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter, but not unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.

And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and thus was the division among them, for the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and the privileges of their religion by a free government.

And it came to pass that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran and also many of the people of liberty, who also put the king-men to silence, that they durst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom.

8 Ko 'eni ko e fa'ahinga ko ia na'a nau fie ma'u ha ngaahi tu'i ko e fa'ahinga ia na'e tupu 'i he ha'a ma'olungá, pea na'a nau feinga ke hoko ko e ngaahi tu'i; pea na'e poupou'i kinautolu 'e he fa'ahinga ko ia na'e kumi ki he mālohi mo e mafai ki he kakai.

9 Kae vakai, ko e taimi fakatu'utāmaki 'eni ke 'i ai 'a e ngaahi fakakikihi pehē 'i he kakai 'o Nīfai; he vakai, na'e toe ue'i hake 'e 'Amalekaia 'a e loto 'o e kakai 'o e kau Leimaná ke 'ita ki he kakai 'o e kau Nīfai, pea na'a ne lolotonga tānaki fakataha ha kau tau mei he potu kotoa pē 'o hono fonuá, 'o ne fakamahafu 'a kinautolu, mo teuteu faivelenga lahi ki he tau; he kuó ne fuakava ke ne inu 'a e toto 'o Molonai.

10 Kae vakai, te tau vakai na'e ta'e-fakapotopoto 'ene palōmesi na'a ne fai, ka neongo iá, na'a ne teuteu ia mo 'ene kau tau ke o mai ke tau mo e kau Nīfai.

11 Ko 'eni na'e 'ikai ke tokolahi 'ene kau tau 'o hangē ko honau tokolahi 'i mu'á, ko e uhi ko e ngaahi toko lau afe kuo tāmata'i 'i he nima 'o e kau Nīfai; pea neongo 'a e mole lahi 'iate kinautolú, ka kuo tānaki fakataha 'e 'Amalekaia 'a e fu'u kau tau tokolahi faka'ulia, 'o 'ikai ai te ne manavahē ke o hifo ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá.

12 'Io, na'a mo 'Amalekaia na'a ne 'alu hifo mo ia, 'o taki 'a e kau Leimaná. Pea na'e hoko ia 'i hono uofulu mā nima 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu; pea ko e taimi ia 'a ia na'a nau kamata ai ke fakamelino 'a e ngaahi me'a 'o 'enau ngaahi fakakikihi 'a ia na'e kau ki he fakamaau lahi, ko Peiholaní.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he fanongo 'a e kau tangata na'e ui ko e kau tangata tu'i 'oku o mai 'a e kau Leimaná ke tau 'i 'a kinautolú, na'a nau fiefia 'i honau lotó; pea na'a nau fakafisi ke to'o mahafu, he na'e lahi fau 'enau 'ita ki he fakamaau lahi, kae 'uma'ā foki ki he kakai tau'atāiná, ko ia na'e 'ikai ai te nau loto ke to'o mahafu ke tau 'o malu 'i honau fonuá.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he vakai 'e Molonai ki he me'a ní, peá ne vakai foki ki he ha'u 'a e kau Leimaná ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonuá, na'a ne fu'u 'ita 'aupito ko e uhi ko e loto-fefeka 'a e kakai 'a ia kuó ne ngāue mālohi fau ke malu'i; 'io, na'a ne fu'u 'ita lahi 'aupito; na'e fonu hono laumalié 'i he 'ita kiate kinautolu.

Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings; and they were supported by those who sought power and authority over the people.

But behold, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; for behold, Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

But behold, we shall see that his promise which he made was rash; nevertheless, he did prepare himself and his armies to come to battle against the Nephites.

Now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been, because of the many thousands who had been slain by the hand of the Nephites; but notwithstanding their great loss, Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderfully great army, insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla.

Yea, even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites. And it was in the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges; and it was at the same time that they had begun to settle the affairs of their contentions concerning the chief judge, Pahoran.

And it came to pass that when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms, for they were so wroth with the chief judge, and also with the people of liberty, that they would not take up arms to defend their country.

And it came to pass that when Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people whom he had labored with so much diligence to preserve; yea, he was exceedingly wroth; his soul was filled with anger against them.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne 'oatu ha tohi tangi pea mo e le' 'o e kakai ki he kōvana 'o e fonuá, 'o kole ke ne lau ia, pea tuku mai kiate ia (ko Molonai) 'a e mālohi ke fakamālohi 'i 'a e kau angatu' u ko iá ke nau malu' i honau fonuá pe 'e tāmata' i 'a kinautolu.

16 He ko e 'uluaki me' a na'á ne tokanga ki aí ke ta'ofi 'a e ngaahi feke' ike' i peheé mo e ngaahi feke' ike' i 'i he kakai; he vakai, ko e tupu' anga 'eni 'o honau faka' auha 'i mu' á. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na' e fakangofua ia 'o fakatatau ki he le' o 'o e kakai.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na' e fekau 'e Molonai ke 'alu atu 'a 'ene kau tau' o tau' i 'a e kau tangata tu' i ko iá, ke holoki hifo 'enau laukaú mo 'enau fie 'eiki, mo tā hifo 'a kinautolu ki he kekelelé, pea ko e pau ke nau to' o mahafu 'o pou pou' i 'a e tu' unga 'o e tau' atāina.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na' e laka atu 'a e kau tau' ke tau' i 'a kinautolu; pea nau fakangata 'enau laukaú mo 'enau fie 'eiki, pea 'o ka nau ka hiki hake 'enau mahafu tau' ke tau mo e kau tangata 'a Molonai, na' e tā hifo 'a kinautolu 'o holoki ki he kekelelé.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na' e toko fā afe 'a e kau angatu' u ko iá 'a ia na' e tā hifo 'aki 'a e heletā; pea na' e 'ave 'o lí ki he fale fakapōpulá 'a kinautolu 'o honau kau taki ko ia na' e 'ikai ke tāmata' i 'i he tau, he na' e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha taimi ke fai hanau fakamāu' i 'i he vaha' ataimi ko iá.

20 Pea ko hono toe 'o e kau angatu' u, na' e 'ikai te nau fie tuku ke tā hifo 'a kinautolu ki he kekelelé 'i he heletaá, ka na' a nau tukulolo ki he fuka 'o e tau' atāina, pea na' e fakamālohi 'i 'a kinautolu ke fusi 'a e fuka 'o e tau' atāina 'i honau ngaahi tauá, pea 'i honau ngaahi koló, pea ke nau to' o mahafu ke malu' i honau fonuá.

21 Pea ko ia na' e ikuna' i 'e Molonai 'a e kau tangata tu' i ko iá, pea na' e 'ikai ke toe 'iloa ha toko taha 'i he hingoa ko e kau tangata tu' i; pea na' á ne fakangata pehē 'a e loto-fefeká mo e loto-hīkisia 'a e kakai ko ia 'a ia na' e lau ko e hako 'a kinautolu 'o e hou' eiki; ka na' e 'o hifo 'a kinautolu ke nau fakavaiva' i 'a kinautolu 'o tatau mo honau kāinga, pea ke nau tau loto-to' a koe' uhi ko 'enau tau' atāina mei he nofo pōpulá.

And it came to pass that he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him (Moroni) power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death.

For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction. And it came to pass that it was granted according to the voice of the people.

And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.

And it came to pass that the armies did march forth against them; and they did pull down their pride and their nobility, insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men of Moroni they were hewn down and leveled to the earth.

And it came to pass that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword; and those of their leaders who were not slain in battle were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.

And the remainder of those dissenters, rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty, and were compelled to hoist the title of liberty upon their towers, and in their cities, and to take up arms in defence of their country.

And thus Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and thus he put an end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.

- 22 Vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga ta'ofi pehe'i 'e Molonai 'a e ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi fakakikihi 'i hono kakai 'o'oná, pea fakamālohi'i 'a kinautolu ke nau nofo 'i he melino mo e sivilaisé, 'o ne fokotu'u 'a e ngaahi tu'utu'uni ke teuteu ki he tau mo e kau Leimaná, vakai, kuo hū mai 'a e kau Leimaná ki he fonua ko Molonai, 'a ia na'e 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua ofi ki he matātahí.
- 23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ke mālohi fe'unga 'a e kau Nifai 'i he kolo ko Molonai; ko ia na'e teke 'i 'a kinautolu 'e 'Amalekaia, 'o tāmāte'i 'a e tokolahi. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ma'u 'e 'Amalekaia 'a e koló, 'io, 'o ma'u honau kolotau kotoa.
- 24 Pea ko kinautolu na'a nau hola mei he kolo ko Molonai na'a nau ha'u ki he kolo ko Nifaihaá; pea na'e fakataha kotoa mai foki mo e kakai 'o e kolo ko Lihai, 'o fai 'a e ngaahi teuteu pea na'a nau mateuteu ke tali 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he tau.
- 25 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ke fie tuku 'e 'Amalekaia 'a e kau Leimaná ke nau ō ki he kolo ko Nifaihaá ke tau, ka na'a ne ta'ofi 'i he ve'e matātahí, 'o ne tuku 'a e kau tangata 'i he kolo kotoa pē ke tauhi mo malu 'i ia.
- 26 Pea ko ia na'á ne hoko atu, 'o ma'u 'a e ngaahi kolo lahi, 'a e kolo ko Nifaihaá, mo e kolo ko Lihai, mo e kolo ko Molianitoní, mo e kolo ko 'Omineá, mo e kolo ko Kití, mo e kolo ko Mūlekí, 'a ia na'e tu'u kotoa 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'i he hahaké 'o ofi ki he matātahí.
- 27 Pea na'e pehē hono ma'u 'e he kau Leimaná, 'i he olopoto 'a 'Amalekaia, 'a e ngaahi kolo lahi fau, koe'uhi ko honau fu'u tokolahi ta'efa'alauá, 'a ia kuo ngaohi kotoa pē ke mālohi 'aupito 'o hangē ko e anga 'o e ngaahi kolotau 'a Molonai; 'a ia na'a nau hoko kotoa pē ko e ngaahi kolotau mālohi mo'ó e kau Leimaná.
- 28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau laka atu ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonua ko Mahú, 'o teke 'i 'a e kau Nifai ki mu'a 'iate kinautolu mo tāmāte'i 'a e tokolahi.
- 29 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakafetaulaki kiate kinautolu 'a Teanikumi, 'a ia na'á ne tāmāte'i 'a Molianitoní, mo ta'ofi hono kakai 'i he'enau holá.

Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, and subjecting them to peace and civilization, and making regulations to prepare for war against the Lamanites, behold, the Lamanites had come into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many. And it came to pass that Amalickiah took possession of the city, yea, possession of all their fortifications.

And those who fled out of the city of Moroni came to the city of Nephiah; and also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together, and made preparations and were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle.

But it came to pass that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephiah to battle, but kept them down by the seashore, leaving men in every city to maintain and defend it.

And thus he went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of Nephiah, and the city of Lehi, and the city of Morianton, and the city of Omner, and the city of Gid, and the city of Mulek, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

And thus had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni; all of which afforded strongholds for the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many.

But it came to pass that they were met by Teancum, who had slain Morianton and had headed his people in his flight.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne ta'ofi foki mo 'Amalekaia, 'i he'ene laka atu mo 'ene kau tau tokolahí ke ne ma'u 'a e fonua ko Mahú, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e fonua fakatokelaú.

31 Kae vakai, na'á ne fepaki mo ha loto-mamahi 'i hono ta'ofi ia 'e Teanikumi mo 'ene kau tangatá, he ko e kau tangata tau mālohi 'a kinautolu; he ko e tangata tau kotoa pē 'a Teanikumí na'a nau mālohi mo poto ange 'i he taú 'i he kau Leimaná, 'o tupu ai 'enau ma'u ha faingamālie lahi ange 'i he kau Leimaná.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau toutou 'ohofi 'a kinautolu, 'o a'u ki he 'enau tāmata 'i 'a kinautolu 'o a'u ki he po'ulí. Pea na'e hoko 'o e pehē na'e fokotu'u 'e Teanikumi mo 'ene kau tangatá 'a honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonua ko Mahú; pea na'e fokotu'u 'e 'Amalekaia 'a hono ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'i he matātahí, pea na'e pehē 'a e anga 'o honau tulí.

33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he'ene po'uli hifó, na'e totolo fakafufū atu 'a Teanikumi mo 'ene tamaio'eiki 'o na ō atu 'i he po'ulí, pea na hū ki he nofo'anga tau 'o 'Amalekaia; pea vakai, kuo nau mohe ma'u ko'e uhi ko 'enau fu'u ongosia lahi 'aupito, 'a ia ko e tupu 'i he ngaahi ngāuē mo e vela 'o e 'ahó.

34 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e totolo fakafufū atu 'a Teanikumi ki he fale fehikitaki 'o e tu'í, 'o velo 'i ha tao ki hono mafú; pea na'á ne fakatupu ai 'a e pekia 'a e tu'í 'i he taimi pē ko iá pea 'ikai te ne faka'aaki 'ene kau tamaio'eikí.

35 Pea ne toe foki fakafufū mai ki hono 'apitanga 'o'oná, pea vakai, kuo mohe 'ene kau tangatá, 'o ne fafangu 'a kinautolu 'o fakahā ange kiate kinautolu 'a e me'a kotoa pē kuó ne faí.

36 Pea na'á ne fekau ke tu'u teuteu 'ene kau taú, na'a 'iloange kuo 'ā hake 'a e kau Leimaná 'o 'oho mai kiate kinautolu.

37 Pea na'e pehē 'a e 'osi 'a hono uofulu mā nima ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nifái; pea na'e pehē 'a e ngata 'a e ngaahi 'aho 'o 'Amalekaia.

And it came to pass that he headed Amalickiah also, as he was marching forth with his numerous army that he might take possession of the land Bountiful, and also the land northward.

But behold he met with a disappointment by being repulsed by Teancum and his men, for they were great warriors; for every man of Teancum did exceed the Lamanites in their strength and in their skill of war, in-
somuch that they did gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did harass them, in-
somuch that they did slay them even until it was dark. And it came to pass that Teancum and his men did pitch their tents in the borders of the land Bountiful; and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the borders on the beach by the seashore, and after this manner were they driven.

And it came to pass that when the night had come, Teancum and his servant stole forth and went out by night, and went into the camp of Amalickiah; and be-
hold, sleep had overpowered them because of their much fatigue, which was caused by the labors and heat of the day.

And it came to pass that Teancum stole privily into the tent of the king, and put a javelin to his heart; and he did cause the death of the king immediately that he did not awake his servants.

And he returned again privily to his own camp, and behold, his men were asleep, and he awoke them and told them all the things that he had done.

And he caused that his armies should stand in readi-
ness, lest the Lamanites had awakened and should come upon them.

And thus endeth the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus endeth the days of Amalickiah.

‘Alamā 52

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni, na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i hono uofulu mā ono ‘o ta‘u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai ‘o Nīfaí, vakai, ‘i he ‘ā hake ‘a e kau Leimaná ‘i he ‘uluaki pongipongi ‘o e ‘uluaki māhiná, vakai, na‘a nau ‘ilo ‘a ‘Amalekaia kuo mate ‘i hono fale fehikitaki ‘o‘oná; pea na‘a nau vakai foki kuo teuteu ‘a Teanikumi ke tau mo kinautolu ‘i he ‘aho ko iá.
- 2 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘i he mamata ki ai ‘a e kau Leimaná na‘a nau ilifia; pea nau lí‘aki ‘enau fakakaukau ke laka atu ki he fonua fakatokelaú, pea nau holomui mo ‘enau kau taú kotoa ki he kolo ko Mūlekí, ‘o kumi hūfanga ‘i honau kolotaú.
- 3 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e fili ‘a e tokoua ‘o ‘Amalekaiaí ko e tu‘i ki he kakaí; pea ko hono hingoá ko ‘Amolone; ko ia na‘e fili ‘a e tu‘i ko ‘Amoloné, ‘a ia ko e tokoua ‘o e tu‘i ko ‘Amalekaiaí, ke ne pule ‘o fetongi ia.
- 4 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ne fekau ke malu‘i ‘e hono kakaí ‘a e ngaahi kolo ko iá, ‘a ia kuo nau ma‘u ‘i he lilingi ‘o e toto; he na‘e ‘ikai te nau ma‘u ha kolo ‘e taha kā ‘i he mole ‘a e fu‘u toto lahi ‘iate kinautolu.
- 5 Pea ko ‘eni, na‘e vakai ‘a Teanikumi kuo fakapapau ‘a e loto ‘o e kau Leimaná ke malu‘i ‘a e ngaahi kolo ‘a ia kuo nau ma‘ú, mo e ngaahi konga ko ia ‘o e fonuá ‘a ia kuo nau ma‘ú; pea ‘i he‘ene mamata foki ki hono hulu fau ‘o honau tokolahí, na‘e fakakaukau ai ‘e Teanikumi ‘oku ‘ikai ‘aonga ke ne feinga ke ‘ohofi ‘a kinautolu ‘i honau ngaahi kolotaú.
- 6 Ka na‘á ne tauhi ‘ene kau tangatá ke nau takatakai ki ai, ‘o hangē ko ha‘anau teuteu ki he taú; ‘io, pea ko e mo‘oni na‘á ne lolotonga teuteu ke malu‘i ia meiate kinautolu, ‘i hono langa hake ‘a e ngaahi ‘ā takatakai mo teuteu‘i ‘a e ngaahi potu hūfanga.
- 7 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e fai atu ‘ene teuteu pehē ki he taú kae ‘oua kuo fekau mai ‘e Molonai ha kau tangata tokolahi ke tokoni‘i ‘ene kau taú.
- 8 Pea na‘e ‘oatu foki ‘e Molonai ha ngaahi tu‘utu‘uni kiate ia ke ne tauhi kotoa ‘a e kau pōpula na‘e tō ki hono nimá; he ko e me‘a ‘i he puke ‘e he kau Leimaná ‘a e kau pōpula tokolahí, ‘oku totonu ai ke ne tauhi kotoa ‘a e kau pōpula ‘o e kau Leimaná ke fakafetongi ‘aki ‘a e fá‘ahinga kuo puke ‘e he kau Leimaná.

Alma 52

And now, it came to pass in the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, behold, when the Lamanites awoke on the first morning of the first month, behold, they found Amalickiah was dead in his own tent; and they also saw that Teancum was ready to give them battle on that day.

And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; and they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward, and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek, and sought protection in their fortifications.

And it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king over the people; and his name was Ammoron; thus king Ammoron, the brother of king Amalickiah, was appointed to reign in his stead.

And it came to pass that he did command that his people should maintain those cities, which they had taken by the shedding of blood; for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood.

And now, Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken, and those parts of the land which they had obtained possession of; and also seeing the enormity of their number, Teancum thought it was not expedient that he should attempt to attack them in their forts.

But he kept his men round about, as if making preparations for war; yea, and truly he was preparing to defend himself against them, by casting up walls round about and preparing places of resort.

And it came to pass that he kept thus preparing for war until Moroni had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army.

And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.

9 Pea na'á ne toe 'oatu foki ha ngaahi tu'utu'uni kiate ia ke ne ngaohi ke mālohi ange 'a e fonua ko Mahú, pea le'ohi 'a e kavelemotu 'a ia 'oku a'u atu ai ki he fonua fakatokelaú, telia na'a ma'u 'e he kau Leimaná 'a e potu ko iá 'o nau ma'u ai 'a e mālohi ke nau toutou 'ohofi 'a kinautolu 'i he tafa'aki kotoa pē.

10 Pea na'e toe fekau atu foki 'e Molonai kiate ia, 'o kole kiate ia ke ne faivelenga 'i hono malu'i 'a e potu fonua ko iá, pea ke ne lamalama 'a e faingamālie kotoa pē ke tau'i 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he potu fonua ko iá, 'o fakatatau ki he me'a te ne lava 'o faí, na'a 'iloange kuó ne lava ke toe ma'u mai 'i ha tauhele pe ha toe founga kehe 'a e ngaahi kolo ko ia kuo fa'ao mei honau nimá; pea ke ne toe langa kolotau mo ngaohi ke fakamālohi 'a e ngaahi kolo takatakai ki aí, 'a ia kuo te'eki ai ke tō ki he nima 'o e kau Leimaná.

11 Pea na'á ne toe pehē foki kiate ia, 'oku ou fie 'alu atu kiate koe, kae vakai, kuo 'oho mai 'a e kau Leimaná kiate kinautolu 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonuá 'oku ofi ki he tahi hihifó; pea vakai, 'oku ou 'alu ke tau'i 'a kinautolu, ko ia 'oku 'ikai te u lava ai ke 'alu atu kiate koe.

12 Ko 'eni, kuo 'alu atu 'a e tu'i (ko 'Amoloné) mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea kuó ne fakahā ki he kuini 'a e pekia 'a hono tokouá, pea kuó ne tānaki fakataha ha kau tangata tokolahi, 'o nau laka atu ke tau'i 'a e kau Nifái 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua ofi ki he tahi hihifó.

13 Pea na'á ne lolotonga feinga pehē ke 'ohofi 'a e kau Nifái, pea tohoaki'i atu 'a e kongá 'o 'enau kau taú ki he potu ko ia 'o e fonuá, ka kuó ne fekau kiate kinautolu 'a ia kuó ne tuku ke nofo 'i he ngaahi kolo kuó ne fa'aó, ke nau 'ohofi foki 'a e kau Nifái 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'oku ofi ki he tahi hahaké, pea ke nau fa'ao honau ngaahi fonuá 'o fakatatau ki he me'a te nau lavá, 'o fakatatau ki he mālohi 'o 'enau ngaahi kau taú.

14 Pea ko ia na'e pehē 'a e fakatu'utāmaki 'a e tu'unga 'o e kau Nifái 'i he ngata'anga 'o e ta'u hono uofulu mā ono 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai 'o Nifái.

And he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land Bountiful, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land northward, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should have power to harass them on every side.

And Moroni also sent unto him, desiring him that he would be faithful in maintaining that quarter of the land, and that he would seek every opportunity to scourge the Lamanites in that quarter, as much as was in his power, that perhaps he might take again by stratagem or some other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands; and that he also would fortify and strengthen the cities round about, which had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he also said unto him, I would come unto you, but behold, the Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea; and behold, I go against them, therefore I cannot come unto you.

Now, the king (Ammoron) had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and had made known unto the queen concerning the death of his brother, and had gathered together a large number of men, and had marched forth against the Nephites on the borders by the west sea.

And thus he was endeavoring to harass the Nephites, and to draw away a part of their forces to that part of the land, while he had commanded those whom he had left to possess the cities which he had taken, that they should also harass the Nephites on the borders by the east sea, and should take possession of their lands as much as it was in their power, according to the power of their armies.

And thus were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the ending of the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

15 Kae vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono uofulu mā fitu 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu, ko Teanikumi, 'i he fekau 'a Molonai—'a ia kuó ne fokotu'u ha ngaahi kau tau ke malu 'i 'a e ngata'anga 'o e fonua 'i he tongá mo e hihifó, pea kuó ne kamata 'ene laka atu ki he fonua ko Mahú, koe'uhi ke ne lava ke tokoni kia Teanikumi mo 'ene kau tangatá 'i hono toe ma'u 'a e ngaahi kolo na'e mole meiate kinautolú—

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ma'u 'e Teanikumi 'a e ngaahi tu'utu'uni ke fai hano 'ohofi 'o e kolo ko Mūlekí, 'o toe ma'u ia 'o kapau 'e lava.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fai 'e Teanikumi 'a e ngaahi teuteu ke 'ohofi 'a e kolo ko Mūlekí, pea laka atu mo 'ene kau taú ke tau 'i 'a e kau Leimaná; ka na'á ne vakai 'e 'ikai te ne lava 'o ikuna 'a kinautolu lolotonga 'enau 'i honau ngaahi kolotaú; ko ia na'á ne tuku 'ene ngaahi fakakaukau' pea ne toe foki atu ki he kolo ko Mahú, 'o tali 'a e ha'u 'a Molonai, koe'uhi ke ne ma'u ha tokoni ki he'ene kau taú.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e a'u mai 'a Molonai mo 'ene kau taú ki he fonua ko Mahú, 'i he kongá ki mui 'o e ta'u hono uofulu mā fitu 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai 'o Nifái.

19 Pea 'i he kamata'anga 'o e ta'u hono uofulu mā valú, na'e fai 'e Molonai mo Teanikumi mo e tokolahi 'o e kau 'eikitau pulé ha alea tau—ko e hā 'a e me'a te nau fai ke ngaohi 'a e kau Leimaná ke nau ha'u ki tu'a ke tau mo kinautolu; pe lava nai 'i ha founga ke faka'ai'ai 'a kinautolu ke nau ha'u ki tu'a mei honau ngaahi kolotaú, koe'uhi ke nau ma'u 'a e mālohi kiate kinautolu, 'o toe ma'u 'a e kolo ko Mūlekí.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fekau atu ha kau talafekau ki he kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná, 'a ia na'e malu 'i 'a e kolo ko Mūlekí, ki honau takí, 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko Sēkope, 'o kole kiate ia ke ne ha'u ki tu'a mo 'ene kau taú ke tau mo kinautolu 'i he tokalelé 'i he vaha'a 'o e ongo koló. Kae vakai, na'e 'ikai ke fie ha'u 'a Sēkope, 'a ia ko e tangata Sōlami, ki tu'a mo 'ene kau taú ke tau mo kinautolu 'i he ngaahi potu tokalelei.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko Molonai, 'i he 'ikai ha'ane 'amanaki ki he tau mo kinautolu 'i he ngaahi tu'unga 'oku tataú, ko ia, na'á ne fakakaukau 'i ha founga ke ne tauhele 'i 'aki 'a e kau Leimaná ke nau hū mai ki tu'a mei honau ngaahi kolotaú.

But behold, it came to pass in the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, that Teancum, by the command of Moroni—who had established armies to protect the south and the west borders of the land, and had begun his march towards the land Bountiful, that he might assist Teancum with his men in retaking the cities which they had lost—

And it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and retake it if it were possible.

And it came to pass that Teancum made preparations to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and march forth with his army against the Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army.

And it came to pass that Moroni did arrive with his army at the land of Bountiful, in the latter end of the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war—what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again the city of Mulek.

And it came to pass they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites, which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was Jacob, desiring him that he would come out with his armies to meet them upon the plains between the two cities. But behold, Jacob, who was a Zoramite, would not come out with his army to meet them upon the plains.

And it came to pass that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them upon fair grounds, therefore, he resolved upon a plan that he might decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds.

22 Ko ia na'á ne fekau kia Teanikumi ke ne 'ave ha kau tangata tokosi'i 'o nau laka hifo 'o ofi ki he matātahi; pea ko Molonai mo 'ene kau taú, na'a nau laka 'i he po'ulí ki he feitu'u maomaonganoa 'i he hihifo 'o e kolo ko Mūlekí; pea ko ia, 'i he 'aho hono hokó 'i he 'ilo'i 'e he kau le'o 'a e kau Leimaná 'a Teanikumi, na'a nau felele'i 'o fakahā ia kia Sēkope, ko honau takí.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e laka atu 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná ke tau mo Teanikumi, 'i he 'enau mahalo 'i honau fu'u tokolahí te nau ikuna 'i 'a Teanikumi koe'uhi ko e tokosi'i 'o honau tokolahí. Pea 'i he mamata 'a Teanikumi ki he hū mai 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'o e kau Leimaná ke tau mo iá na'á ne kamata holoholomui 'o ofi hifo ki he matātahi, 'i he fakatokelau.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he vakai 'a e kau Leimaná 'oku kamata ke ne holá, na'e 'āsili ai 'enau loto-to'a 'o nau tuli mālohi atu kiate ia. Pea lolotonga 'a e tohoaki'itu 'e Teanikumi 'a e kau Leimana 'a ia na'e tuli ta'e'aonga kiate kinautolú, vakai, na'e fekau 'e Molonai ha kongá 'o 'ene kau tau 'a ia na'e 'iate iá ke laka atu ki he koló, 'o ma'u ia.

25 Pea na'a nau fai ia, 'o tāmata'i 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa kuo tuku ke malu'i 'a e koló, 'io, 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa pē na'e 'ikai fie tuku hifo 'enau ngaahi mahafu taú.

26 Pea na'e pehē hono ma'u 'e Molonai 'a e kolo ko Mūlekí 'aki ha kongá 'o 'ene kau taú, kae laka atu ia mo hono to'e ke fetaulaki mo e kau Leimaná 'i ha'anau foki mai mei he tuli 'o Teanikumí.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuli 'e he kau Leimaná 'a Teanikumi kae 'oua kuo nau ofi ki he kolo ko Mahú, pea na'e toki fakafetaulaki mai kiate kinautolu 'a Līhai mo ha kau tau tokosi'i, 'a ia kuo tuku ke malu'i 'a e kolo ko Mahú.

28 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'i he vakai 'e he kau 'eikitau pule 'o e kau Leimaná kia Līhai mo 'ene kau taú 'oku 'oho mai kiate kinautolú, na'a nau hola 'i he fu'u puputu'u lahi, telia na'a 'iloange kuo 'ikai te nau a'u ki he kolo ko Mūlekí 'oku te'eki ke ma'u 'a kinautolu 'e Līhai; he na'a nau hela'ia 'i he 'enau laká, ka na'e kei mālohi 'a e kau tangata 'a Līhai.

Therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched in the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and thus, on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a part of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.

And thus they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, yea, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.

And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city Mulek with a part of his army, while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the pursuit of Teancum.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city Bountiful, and then they were met by Lehi and a small army, which had been left to protect the city Bountiful.

And now behold, when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them, they fled in much confusion, lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtake them; for they were wearied because of their march, and the men of Lehi were fresh.

29 Ko 'eni na'e 'ikai 'ilo 'e he kau Leimaná kuo 'i mui 'iate kinautolu 'a Molonai mo 'ene kau taú; pea ko e me'a pē na'a nau manavahē ki aí ko Lihai mo 'ene kau taú.

30 Ko 'eni na'e 'ikai ke fie a'u atu 'a Lihai kiate kinautolu kae 'oua kuo nau fetaulaki mo Molonai mo 'ene kau taú.

31 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he te'eki holoholomui 'o mama'o 'a e kau Leimaná kuo kápui 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Nifái, 'e he kau tangata 'a Molonai 'i he tafa'aki 'e tahá, pea mo e kau tangata 'a Lihai 'i he tafa'aki 'e tahá, ko kinautolu kotoa na'e te'eki ke nau hela'ia, pea na'a nau fonu 'i he ivi; ka kuo hela'ia 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he'enua laka fuoloá.

32 Pea na'e fekau 'e Molonai ki he'ene kau tangatá ke nau 'ohofi 'a kinautolu kae 'oua kuo nau tuku hifo 'enua ngaahi mahafu taú.

33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē, ko Sēkope, ko honau takí, pea ko e tangata Sōlami foki, pea na'á ne loto-ta'efietō, ko ia na'á ne taki atu 'a e kau Leimaná ke tau mo Molonai 'i he fu'u 'ita lahi 'aupito.

34 Ko e me'a 'i he tu'u 'a Molonai 'i he hala 'oku nau laka mai aí, ko ia na'e fakapapau 'a Sēkope ke ne tāmata'i 'a kinautolu pea faka'atā hono hala ki he kolo ko Mūlekí. Kae vakai, na'e mālohi ange 'a Molonai mo 'ene kau tangatá; ko ia na'e 'ikai te nau holomui 'i he 'ao 'o e kau Leimaná.

35 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fetau'aki 'i he ongo fa'ahí 'i he fu'u 'ita lahi 'aupito; pea na'e tokolahi 'a e mate 'i he ongo fa'ahí fakatou'osi; 'io, pea na'e kafo 'a Molonai pea mate 'a Sēkope.

36 Pea na'e 'oho mai mei mui 'iate kinautolu 'a Lihai 'i he fu'u 'ita lahi mo 'ene kau tangata mālohí, na'e tuku hifo ai 'e he kau Leimana 'i muí 'a 'enua ngaahi mahafu taú; pea ko honau toé, na'a nau puputu'u lahi 'aupito, 'o 'ikai te nau 'ilo pe te nau hola pe tau.

37 Ko 'eni 'i he vakai 'a Molonai ki he'enua puputu'ú, na'á ne pehē kiate kinautolu: kapau te mou 'omi ho'omou ngaahi mahafu taú pea tuku mai ia, vakai, te mau ta'ofi 'a e lilingi 'o homou totó.

Now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army; and all they feared was Lehi and his men.

Now Lehi was not desirous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni and his army.

And it came to pass that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites, by the men of Moroni on one hand, and the men of Lehi on the other, all of whom were fresh and full of strength; but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march.

And Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them until they had given up their weapons of war.

And it came to pass that Jacob, being their leader, being also a Zoramite, and having an unconquerable spirit, he led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceeding fury against Moroni.

Moroni being in their course of march, therefore Jacob was determined to slay them and cut his way through to the city of Mulek. But behold, Moroni and his men were more powerful; therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they fought on both hands with exceeding fury; and there were many slain on both sides; yea, and Moroni was wounded and Jacob was killed.

And Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury with his strong men, that the Lamanites in the rear delivered up their weapons of war; and the remainder of them, being much confused, knew not whither to go or to strike.

Now Moroni seeing their confusion, he said unto them: If ye will bring forth your weapons of war and deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding your blood.

38 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he fanongo 'a e kau Leimaná ki he ngaahi lea ní, ko honau kau 'eikitau pule, 'a ia na'e 'ikai tāmāte'í, na'a nau ō mai 'o nau lī hifo 'enau ngaahi mahafu taú 'i he va'e 'o Molonaí, pea na'a nau fekau foki ki he 'enau kau tangatá ke nau fai 'a e me'a tatau.

39 Kae vakai, na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi na'e 'ikai te nau loto ki ai; pea ko e fa'ahinga 'a ia na'e 'ikai fie tuku 'enau ngaahi heletaá na'e puke 'a kinautolu 'o ha'i, pea na'e to'o meiate kinautolu 'enau ngaahi mahafu taú, pea na'e fakamālohi 'i 'a kinautolu ke nau laka atu mo honau kāingá ki he fonua ko Mahú.

40 Pea ko 'eni ko e tokolahi 'o e kau pōpula na'e puké na'e laka hake 'a e tokolahi ia 'i he tokolahi 'o e fa'ahinga kuo tāmāte'í, 'io, na'e tokolahi ange 'i he fa'ahinga kuo tāmāte'í 'i he ongo fa'ahí fakatou'osi.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had heard these words, their chief captains, all those who were not slain, came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and also commanded their men that they should do the same.

But behold, there were many that would not; and those who would not deliver up their swords were taken and bound, and their weapons of war were taken from them, and they were compelled to march with their brethren forth into the land Bountiful.

And now the number of prisoners who were taken exceeded more than the number of those who had been slain, yea, more than those who had been slain on both sides.

‘Alamā 53

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘a nau fokotu‘u ‘a e kau le‘o ki he kau pōpula Leimaná, ‘o fakamālohi‘i ‘a kinautolu ke nau ‘alu atu ‘o tanu honau kau pekiá, ‘io, pea mo e pekia foki ‘o e kau Nīfái ‘a ia na‘e toó; pea fokotu‘u ‘e Molonai ha kau tangata ke le‘ohi ‘a kinautolu lolotonga ‘enau fai ‘enau ngaahi ngāué.
- 2 Pea na‘e ‘alu ‘a Molonai ki he kolo ko Mūlekí mo Līhai, ‘o ma‘u ‘a e pule ki he koló pea tuku ia kia Līhai. Ko ‘eni vakai, ko e Līhai ko iá ko ha tangata ia ‘a ia kuo ‘ia Molonai ‘i he taimi lahi ‘o ‘ene ngaahi tau kotoa pē; pea ko e tangata ia na‘e hangē ko Molonai, pea na‘á na fiefa ‘i he ‘ena haó; ‘io, na‘á na fe‘ofa‘aki, pea na‘e ‘ofeina foki ‘a kinaua ‘e he kakai ‘o Nīfái kotoa pē.
- 3 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he ‘osi hono tanu ‘e he kau Leimaná ‘a honau kakai maté kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo e kakai mate ‘o e kau Nīfái, na‘e fekau ke nau laka ‘o foki atu ki he fonua ko Mahú; pea ko Teanikumi ‘i he tu‘utu‘uni ‘a Molonai, na‘á ne fekau ke nau kamata ke ngāue ‘i he keli ha luo ‘o takai ‘i he fonuá, pe ko e kolo, ko Mahú.
- 4 Pea na‘á ne fekau ke nau langa ha ‘ā ‘o e ngaahi ‘akau ‘i he tafa‘aki ki loto ‘o e luó; pea nau laku hake ‘a e kelekele mei he luó ‘o fa‘aki ki he ‘ā ‘akau; pea na‘e pehē ‘enau fekau ke ngāue ‘a e kau Leimaná kae ‘oua kuo nau ‘ā takai ‘i ‘a e kolo ko Mahú ‘aki ‘a e ‘ā ‘akau mālohi mo e kelekele, ‘o fu‘u mā‘olunga ‘aupito.
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘a e kolo ko ‘ení ko ha fu‘u kolo mālohi ‘aupito talu mei he taimi ko iá; pea na‘a nau le‘ohi ‘i he koló ni ‘a e kau pōpula Leimaná; ‘io, ‘i ha loto ‘ā na‘a nau fekau ke nau langa ‘aki honau nima ‘onautolú. Ko ‘eni na‘e pau ke fekau ‘e Molonai ke ngāue ‘a e kau Leimaná, koe‘uhi ko e faingofua hono le‘ohi ‘a kinautolu lolotonga ‘enau ngāué; pea na‘á ne fie ma‘u ‘ene kau tau kotoa ‘o ka ne ka fai hano ‘ohofi ‘o e kau Leimaná.
- 6 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘a e lava ‘e Molonai ‘o e ikuna ‘i ha taha ‘o e ngaahi kau tau tokolahi taha ‘o e kau Leimaná, ‘o ne ma‘u ‘a e kolo ko Mūlekí, ‘a ia ko e taha ‘o e ngaahi kolotau mālohi taha ‘o e kau Leimaná ‘i he fonua ko Nīfái; pea na‘e pehē ‘a ‘ene langa foki ‘a e kolotau ke tauhi ai ‘ene kau pōpulá.

Alma 53

And it came to pass that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites, and did compel them to go forth and bury their dead, yea, and also the dead of the Nephites who were slain; and Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labors.

And Moroni went to the city of Mulek with Lehi, and took command of the city and gave it unto Lehi. Now behold, this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more part of all his battles; and he was a man like unto Moroni, and they rejoiced in each other’s safety; yea, they were beloved by each other, and also beloved by all the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead and also the dead of the Nephites, they were marched back into the land Bountiful; and Teancum, by the orders of Moroni, caused that they should commence laboring in digging a ditch round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

And he caused that they should build a breastwork of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they cast up dirt out of the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and thus they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height.

And this city became an exceeding stronghold ever after; and in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites; yea, even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands. Now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was easy to guard them while at their labor; and he desired all his forces when he should make an attack upon the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni had thus gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, and had obtained possession of the city of Mulek, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the land of Nephi; and thus he had also built a stronghold to retain his prisoners.

7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai te ne toe feinga ke tau mo e kau Leimaná 'i he ta'u ko iá, ka na'á ne faka'aonga 'i 'ene kau tangatá 'i he teuteu ki he tau, 'io, pea mo e langa ha ngaahi kolotau ke malu 'i 'a kinautolu mei he kau Leimaná, 'io, pea mo e fakahaofi foki 'a honau kakai fefiné mo 'enau fānaú mei he hongē mo e mamahi pea mo e tokonaki 'o e me'akai ma'a 'enau ngaahi kau taú.

8 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná, 'i he tahi hihifó, mo e tongá, 'i he lolotonga 'a e mama 'o 'a Molonai koe'uhi ke ta'ofi ha ngaahi fa'ufa'u fufū 'i he kau Nīfaí, pea tupu ai 'a e ngaahi feke'ike 'i 'iate kinautolu, pea nau ma'u faingamālie ai ki he kau Nīfaí, 'io, 'o a'u ki he 'enau ma'u ai hanau ngaahi kolo lahi 'i he potu ko ia 'o e fonuá.

9 Pea ko ia koe'uhi ko e angahala 'iate kinautolú, 'io, koe'uhi ko e ngaahi feke'ike 'i mo e ngaahi fa'ufa'u fufū 'iate kinautolú na'e fokotu'u ai 'a kinautolu ki he ngaahi tu'unga fakatu'utāmaki 'aupito.

10 Pea ko 'eni, vakai 'oku 'i ai mo ha ngaahi me'a 'e ni'ihī ke u lea 'aki 'o 'oku kau ki he kakai 'o 'Āmoní, 'a ia ko e kau Leimana 'i he kamata'angá; ka koe'uhi ko 'Āmoni mo hono kāingá, pe 'i he māfima'fi mo e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, kuo ului 'a kinautolu ki he 'Eikí, pea kuo 'omi 'a kinautolu ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea talu mei ai mo e malu 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Nīfaí.

11 Pea ko e me'a 'i he 'enau fuakavá kuo ta'ofi ai 'a kinautolu mei he to'o mahafu ke tau mo honau kāingá; he kuo nau fai ha fuakava 'e 'ikai pē ke nau toe lilingi toto; pea fakata'u ki he 'enau fuakavá na'e pau nai ke nau 'auha; 'io, na'a nau mei tuku 'a kinautolu ke tō ki he nima 'o honau kāingá, ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e 'ofa mamahi mo e fu'u 'ofa lahi na'e ma'u 'e 'Āmoni mo hono kāingá kiate kinautolú.

12 Pea ko e 'uhinga 'eni na'e 'ohifo ai 'a kinautolu ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá; pea kuo malu 'i ma'u ai pē 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Nīfaí.

13 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'enau vakai ki he fakatu'utāmaki, mo e ngaahi mamahi mo e ngaahi faingata'a lahi 'a ia na'e fuesia ma'anautolu 'e he kau Nīfaí, na'e ue'i hake 'a kinautolu 'e he 'ofa mamahi pea na'a nau holi ke to'o mahafu 'o malu 'i 'a honau fonuá.

And it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year, but he did employ his men in preparing for war, yea, and in making fortifications to guard against the Lamanites, yea, and also delivering their women and their children from famine and affliction, and providing food for their armies.

And now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intrigue amongst the Nephites, which caused dissensions amongst them, had gained some ground over the Nephites, yea, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land.

And thus because of iniquity amongst themselves, yea, because of dissensions and intrigue amongst themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.

And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who, in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord; and they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla, and had ever since been protected by the Nephites.

And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren; for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more; and according to their oath they would have perished; yea, they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding love which Ammon and his brethren had had for them.

And for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla; and they ever had been protected by the Nephites.

But it came to pass that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defence of their country.

14 Kae vakai, 'i he 'enau 'amanaki to 'o 'enau ngaahi mahafu tau, na'e ta'ofi 'a kinautolu 'i he fakaloto 'i 'e Hilamani mo hono ngaahi tokoua, he na'a nau meimei maumau 'i 'a e fuakava na'a nau fai.

15 Pea na'e manavahē 'a Hilamani telia na'a nau fai ia pea mole ai honou laumalié; ko ia na'e pau ke mamata 'e he fa'ahinga kotoa kuo fai 'a e fuakava ko ia ki honou kainingá 'oku nau a'a atu 'i honou ngaahi mamahi, 'i honou ngaahi tu'unga fakatu'utamaki 'i he taimi ko 'eni.

16 Kae vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai hanau ngaahi foha tokolahi, 'a ia na'e 'ikai te nau fai ha fuakava 'e 'ikai te nau to 'o 'enau ngaahi mahafu tau ke malu 'i 'a kinautolu mei honou ngaahi fili; ko ia na'a nau fakataha mai 'i he taimi ko 'eni, 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa pē na'e lava 'o to 'o 'a e ngaahi mahafu tau, pea na'a nau ui 'a kinautolu ko e kau Nifai.

17 Pea na'a nau fai ha fuakava ke tau ma'a e tau'atāina 'a e kau Nifai, 'io, ke malu 'i 'a e fonua 'o a'u ki hono tuku hifo 'enau mo'ui; 'io, na'a nau fuakava foki 'e 'ikai pē te nau tukuange 'enau tau'atāina, ka te nau tau 'i he me'a kotoa pē ke malu 'i 'a e kau Nifai pea mo kinautolu mei he nofo pōpulá.

18 Ko 'eni vakai, na'e toko ua afe 'a e kau talavou ko ia, 'a ia na'a nau fai 'a e fuakava ni 'o to 'o 'enau ngaahi mahafu tau ke malu 'i honou fonua.

19 Pea ko 'eni vakai, ko e me'a 'i he 'ikai ha taimi te nau hoko ai ko ha kavenga ki he kau Nifai, kuo nau hoko ai 'i he vaha'ataimi ko 'eni ko ha fu'u tokoni lahi; he na'a nau to 'o 'enau ngaahi mahafu tau, 'o nau fie ma'u 'a Hilamani ke hoko ko honou taki.

20 Pea ko e kau talavou kotoa pē 'a kinautolu, pea nau fu'u loto-to'a, mo ngāue 'aki honou sino mālohí 'i he me'a kotoa pē; kae vakai, na'e 'ikai ia ko ia pē—ka ko e kau tangata 'a kinautolu na'a nau faivelenga 'i he me'a kotoa pē 'a ia na'e tuku ke nau fai.

21 'Io, ko e kau tangata 'a kinautolu na'e lea totonu mo anga-fakapotopoto, he kuo akonekina 'a kinautolu ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá mo 'a'eva angatonu 'i hono 'aó.

But behold, as they were about to take their weapons of war, they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his brethren, for they were about to break the oath which they had made.

And Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls; therefore all those who had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren wade through their afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time.

But behold, it came to pass they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves against their enemies; therefore they did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as were able to take up arms, and they called themselves Nephites.

And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites, yea, to protect the land unto the laying down of their lives; yea, even they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty, but they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites and themselves from bondage.

Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their country.

And now behold, as they never had hitherto been a disadvantage to the Nephites, they became now at this period of time also a great support; for they took their weapons of war, and they would that Helaman should be their leader.

And they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all—they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted.

Yea, they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him.

22 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e laka 'a Hilamani 'o taki 'ene kau talavou tau 'e toko ua afé, ke tokoni ki he kakai 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'i he feitu'u tonga 'o ofi ki he tahi hihifó.

23 Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a e ta'u hono uofulu mā valu 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfaí.

And now it came to pass that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling soldiers, to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

‘Alamā 54

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i kamata‘anga ‘o e ta‘u hono uofulu mā hiva ‘o e kau fakamāú, na‘e ‘oatu ‘e ‘Amolone ha pōpoaki kia Molonai ke na fai ha fakafetongi ‘o e kau pōpulá.
- 2 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ongo‘i ‘e Molonai ha fiefia lahi koe‘uhi ko e kole ko ‘ení, ‘āsílí he na‘á ne fie ma‘u ‘a e ngaahi me‘akai mo e nāunau ‘a ia na‘e ‘omai ke tauhi ‘aki ‘a e kau pōpula Leimaná ki hono tauhi ‘o hono kakai ‘o‘oná; pea na‘á ne fie ma‘u foki ‘a hono kakai ‘o‘oná ke fakamālohi‘i ‘aki ‘ene kau taú.
- 3 Ko ‘eni kuo puke ‘e he kau Leimaná ‘a e kakai fefine mo e fānau tokolahi, pea na‘e ‘ikai ha fefine pe ha fānau ‘i he kau pōpula kotoa ‘a Molonái, pe ko e kau pōpula ‘a ia kuo puke ‘e Molonái; ko ia na‘e fakakaukau‘i ‘e Molonai ha founga ke ma‘u ai mei he kau Leimaná ‘a e kau pōpula tokolahi taha ‘o e kau Nīfaí ‘o fakatau mo e me‘a ‘e lavá.
- 4 Ko ia na‘á ne fai ha tohi, ‘o ne ‘oatu ia ‘i he tamaio‘eiki ‘a ‘Amoloné, ‘a ia pē na‘á ne ‘omi ‘a e tohi kia Molonái. Ko ‘eni ko e ngaahi lea ‘eni ‘a ia na‘á ne tohi kia ‘Amoloné, ‘o pehē:
- 5 Vakai, ‘e ‘Amolone, kuó u tohi kiate koe ha me‘a ‘e ní‘ihi ‘a ia ‘oku kau ki he tau ko ‘eni, ‘a ia kuó ke fai ki hoku kakaí, kae kehe kuo fai ia ‘e ho tokouá kiate kinautolu, pea ‘oku kei fakapapau ‘a ho lotó ke hoko atu hili ‘ene pekiá.
- 6 Vakai, ‘oku ou fie fakahā kiate koe ha me‘a ‘e ní‘ihi ‘o kau ki he fakamaau totonu ‘a e ‘Otuá, mo e heletá ‘o ‘ene houhau māfímafi, ‘a ia ‘oku ofi ke tō kiate koe ‘o kapau ‘e ‘ikai te ke fakatomala pea ‘ave ho‘o ngaahi kau taú ki homou ngaahi fonua ‘omoutolú, pe ko e fonua ‘oku mou nofo aí, ‘a ia ko e fonua ko Nīfaí.
- 7 ‘Io, ‘oku ou fie fakahā kiate koe ‘a e ngaahi me‘á ni ‘o kapau na‘a ke lava nai ‘o tokanga ki ai; ‘io, ‘oku ou fie fakahā kiate koe ‘o kau ki he heli faka‘ulia ‘oku tatali mai ke tali ‘a e kau fakapoó ‘o hangē ko koe mo ho tokouá, tuku kehe ‘o ka ke ka fakatomala pea ta‘ofi ho‘o ngaahi fakakaukau fakapoó, pea foki atu mo ho‘o ngaahi kau taú ki homou fonua ‘omoutolú.
- 8 Ka ko e me‘a ‘i ho‘o lí‘aki ki mui ‘a e ngaahi me‘á ni, pea ke tau‘i ‘a e kakai ‘o e ‘Eikí, ko ia ‘oku ou ‘amanaki te ke toe fai pehē pē.

Alma 54

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Ammoron sent unto Moroni desiring that he would exchange prisoners.

And it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were imparted for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his own people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.

Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of Moroni, or the prisoners whom Moroni had taken; therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratagem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible.

Therefore he wrote an epistle, and sent it by the servant of Ammoron, the same who had brought an epistle to Moroni. Now these are the words which he wrote unto Ammoron, saying:

Behold, Ammoron, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which ye have waged against my people, or rather which thy brother hath waged against them, and which ye are still determined to carry on after his death.

Behold, I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, and the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except ye repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

Yea, I would tell you these things if ye were capable of hearkening unto them; yea, I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as thou and thy brother have been, except ye repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

But as ye have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

- 9 Pea ko 'eni vakai, kuo mau teuteu ke tali 'a kimoutolu; 'io, pea ka 'ikai te ke tuku ho'o ngaahi fakakaukau, vakai, te ke 'ohifo kiate kimoutolu 'a e houhau 'o e 'Otuá 'a ia kuo mou fakafisingá, 'io 'o a'u ki homou faka'auha 'aupito.
- 10 Kae hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eikí, 'e 'oho atu 'emau kau taú kiate kimoutolu 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te mou holomui, pea 'e vave hano tautea 'i 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e maté, he kuo pau ke mau fakafoki mai homau ngaahi koló mo homau ngaahi fonuá; 'io, pea te mau tauhi ma'u 'a 'emau lotú mo 'emau tui ki homau 'Otuá.
- 11 Kae vakai, 'oku ou mahalo ko 'eku lea kiate koe 'i he ngaahi me'á ni 'oku ta'e'aonga; kae kehe 'oku ou mahalo ko e fānau koe 'o heli; ko ia te u faka'osi 'eku tohí 'i he'eku pehē atu kiate koe 'e 'ikai te u fakafetongi 'a e kau pōpulá, tuku kehe pē 'o kapau te ke 'omai ha tangata mo hono uaifi mo 'ene fānau ke fetongi 'aki 'a e pōpula 'e toko taha; kapau te ke fai pehē, te u fakafetongi.
- 12 Pea vakai, kapau 'e 'ikai te ke fai 'eni, te u 'alu atu mo 'eku kau taú ke tau mo kimoutolu; 'io, pea te u fakamahafu mo 'eku kakai fefiné mo 'eku fānau, pea te u 'alu atu ke tau 'i 'a kimoutolu, pea te u muimui 'iate kimoutolu 'o a'u ki homou fonua 'omoutolú, 'a ia ko e fonua 'o homau 'uluaki tofi'á; 'io, pea 'e totongi 'a e toto 'aki 'a e toto, 'io, 'a e mo'ui 'aki 'a e mo'ui; pea te u tau mo kimoutolu kae 'oua ke faka'auha 'a kimoutolu mei he funga 'o e māmaní.
- 13 Vakai, 'oku ou 'ita 'aupito, pea pehē mo hoku kakai; kuo mou feinga ke fakapoongi 'a kimautolu, ka kuo mau feinga pē ke malu 'i 'a kimautolu. Kae vakai, kapau te mou kei feinga pē ke faka'auha 'a kimautolu te mau feinga leva ke faka'auha 'a kimoutolu; 'io, pea te mau feinga ke ma'u homau fonuá, 'a ia ko e fonua 'o homau 'uluaki tofi'á.
- 14 Ko 'eni 'oku ou faka'osi 'eku tohí. Ko au Molonai; ko ha taki au 'o e kakai 'o e kau Nifái.
- 15 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuputāmaki 'a 'Amolone, 'i he'ene ma'u 'a e tohi ní; peá ne toe fai mo ha tohi kehe kia Molonai, pea ko e ngaahi lea 'eni 'a ia na'á ne tohí, 'o pehē:

And now behold, we are prepared to receive you; yea, and except you withdraw your purposes, behold, ye will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

But, as the Lord liveth, our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw, and ye shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands; yea, and we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

But behold, it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain; or it supposeth me that thou art a child of hell; therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

And behold, if ye do not this, I will come against you with my armies; yea, even I will arm my women and my children, and I will come against you, and I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance; yea, and it shall be blood for blood, yea, life for life; and I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold, I am in my anger, and also my people; ye have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves. But behold, if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you; yea, and we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.

Now I close my epistle. I am Moroni; I am a leader of the people of the Nephites.

Now it came to pass that Ammoron, when he had received this epistle, was angry; and he wrote another epistle unto Moroni, and these are the words which he wrote, saying:

16 Ko au 'Amolone, ko e tu 'i 'o e kau Leimaná; ko e tokoua au 'o 'Amalekaia, 'a ia kuo mou fakapōngí. Vakai, te u sāuni hono totó kiate kimoutolu, 'io, pea te u 'alu atu mo 'eku kau taú kiate kimoutolu, he 'oku 'ikai te u manavahē ki ho 'o ngaahi fakamanamaná.

17 He vakai, na 'e fai hala 'a ho 'omou ngaahi tamaí ki honau ngaahi tokouá, 'o nau fa 'ao meiate kinautolu 'a 'enau totonu ki he pulé 'a ia na 'e totonu ke 'anautolú.

18 Pea ko 'eni vakai, kapau te mou tuku hifo ho 'omou ngaahi mahafú, pea tuku 'a kimoutolu ke pulé 'i 'e kinautolu 'oku 'anautolu 'a e totonu ke ma 'u 'a e pulé, pehē te u toki fekau ki hoku kakaí ke tuku hifo 'enau ngaahi mahafú 'o 'ikai toe fai ha tau.

19 Vakai, kuó ke lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea fakamanamana lahi kiate au mo hoku kakaí; kae vakai, 'oku 'ikai te mau manavahē ki ho 'o ngaahi fakamanamaná.

20 Ka neongo iá, te u fiefia ke fakangofua 'a e fakafetongi 'o e kau pōpulá 'o hangē ko ho 'o kolé, koe 'uhi ke u fakatolonga 'eku me 'akaí ki he 'eku kau tangata taú; pea te mau fai ha tau 'a ia 'e ta 'etuku kae 'oua ke fakamo 'ulaloa 'i 'a e kau Nifái ki honau mafaí, pe faka 'auha 'a kinautolu 'o ta 'engata.

21 Pea ko e me 'a ki he 'Otua ko ia 'okú ke pehē kuo mau fakafisingá, vakai, 'oku 'ikai te mau 'ilo ha tokotaha pehē; pea pehē mo kimoutolu; ka 'o kapau 'oku 'i ai ha taha pehē, 'oku 'ikai te mau 'ilo ki ai ka kuó ne ngaohi 'a kimautolu pea mo kimoutolu foki.

22 Pea kapau 'oku 'i ai ha tēvolo mo ha heli, vakai, he 'ikai koā te ne tuku atu 'a kimoutolu ke mou nofo fakataha ai mo hoku tokoua 'a ia kuó ke fakapōngí, 'a ia kuo mou pehē kuó ne 'alu ki ha potu pehē? Kae vakai, 'oku 'ikai mahu 'inga 'a e ngaahi me 'á ni ia.

23 Ko au 'Amolone, pea ko ha hako 'o Sōlami, 'a ia na 'e fakamālohi 'i 'e ho 'omou ngaahi tamaí 'o 'omi mei Selūsalemá.

24 Pea vakai ko 'eni, ko ha tangata Leimana to 'a au; vakai, kuo fai 'a e taú ni koe 'uhi ke sāuni honau ngaohikoviá, pea ke fakafoki mai mo tauhi ma 'u 'enau ngaahi totonu ki he pulé; pea 'oku ou faka 'osi 'eku tohi kia Moloná.

I am Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered. Behold, I will avenge his blood upon you, yea, and I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.

For behold, your fathers did wrong their brethren, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.

And now behold, if ye will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more.

Behold, ye have breathed out many threatenings against me and my people; but behold, we fear not your threatenings.

Nevertheless, I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war; and we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction.

And as concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being; neither do ye; but if it so be that there is such a being, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.

And if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom ye have murdered, whom ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place? But behold these things matter not.

I am Ammoron, and a descendant of Zoram, whom your fathers pressed and brought out of Jerusalem.

And behold now, I am a bold Lamanite; behold, this war hath been waged to avenge their wrongs, and to maintain and to obtain their rights to the government; and I close my epistle to Moroni.

‘Alamā 55

- 1 Ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he ma’u ‘e Molonai ‘a e tohi ní na’e ‘āsili ai ‘a ‘ene ‘itá, koe‘uhi he na‘á ne ‘ilo ‘oku ‘ilo‘i pau ‘e ‘Amolone ‘a ‘ene loí; ‘io, na‘á ne ‘ilo na’e ‘ilo ‘e ‘Amolone na’e ‘ikai ko ha ‘uhinga lelei na‘á ne tau‘i ai ‘a e kakai ‘o Nīfái.
- 2 Pea na‘á ne pehē: Vakai, ‘e ‘ikai te u fakafetongi ha kau pōpula mo ‘Amolone, tuku kehe ‘o kapau te ne ta‘ofi ‘ene fakakaukáu, ‘o hangē ko ia na‘á ku fakahā ‘i he‘eku tohí; koe‘uhí ‘e ‘ikai te u tuku kiate ia ke ne ma’u ha toe mālohi ‘o lahi ange ‘i he mālohi kuó ne ma‘ú.
- 3 Vakai, ‘oku ou ‘ilo‘i ‘a e feitu‘u ‘oku le‘ohi ai ‘e he kau Leimaná ‘a hoku kakai ‘a ia kuo nau puke pōpulá; pea ko e me‘a ‘i he ta‘etali ‘e ‘Amolone ‘a e me‘a na’e ‘i he‘eku tohí, vakai, te u fai kiate ia ‘o hangē ko ‘eku ngaahi leá; ‘io, te u feinga ke tāmata‘i ‘a kinautolu kae ‘oua ke nau kole ke fakamelino.
- 4 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he ‘osi lea ‘aki ‘e Molonai ‘a e ngaahi lea ní, na‘á ne fekau ke kumi ‘i he‘ene kau tangatá, koe‘uhi ke ne lava ‘a pē ‘o ‘ilo‘i ha tangata ko ha hako ‘o Leimana ‘iate kinautolu.
- 5 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na‘a nau ‘ilo‘i ha tokotaha, ‘a ia ko hono hingoá ko Leimana; pea ko e taha ia ‘o e kau tamaio‘eiki ‘a e tu‘i ‘a ia na’e fakapoongi ‘e ‘Amalekaiá.
- 6 Ko ‘eni na’e fekau ‘e Molonai ‘a Leimana mo ha tokosi‘i ‘o ‘ene kau tangatá ke nau ‘alu atu ki he kau le‘o ‘a ia na’e le‘ohi ‘a e kau Nīfái.
- 7 Ko ‘eni na’e le‘ohi ‘a e kau Nīfái ‘i he kolo ko Kití; ko ia na’e fili ‘e Molonai ‘a Leimana ‘o ne fekau ha kau tangata tokosi‘i ke nau ō mo ia.
- 8 Pea ‘i he‘ene efiāfi hifó na’e ‘alu atu ‘a Leimana ki he kau le‘o na‘a nau le‘ohi ‘a e kau Nīfái, pea vakai, na‘a nau mamata kiate ia ‘okú ne ha‘ú pea nau ui atu kiate ia; ka na‘a ne pehē atu kiate kinautolu: ‘oua ‘e manavahē; vakai, ko ha tangata Leimana au. Vakai, kuo mau hola mei he kau Nīfái, pea ‘oku nau mohe; pea vakai, kuo mau to‘o ‘enua uainé ‘o ‘omi ia mo kinautolu.
- 9 Ko ‘eni ‘i he fanongo ‘a e kau Leimaná ki he ngaahi lea ní na‘a nau tali ia ‘i he fiefia; pea nau pehē ange kiate ia: Tuku mai ma‘amautolu ho‘omou uainé, koe‘uhí ke mau inu; ‘oku mau fiefia ‘i ho‘omou ‘omi mo kimautolu ‘a e uainé, he ‘oku mau ongosia.

Alma 55

Now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle he was more angry, because he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud; yea, he knew that Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.

And he said: Behold, I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle; for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got.

Behold, I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people whom they have taken prisoners; and as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine epistle, behold, I will give unto him according to my words; yea, I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words, he caused that a search should be made among his men, that perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman among them.

And it came to pass that they found one, whose name was Laman; and he was one of the servants of the king who was murdered by Amalickiah.

Now Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.

Now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid; therefore Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go with him.

And when it was evening Laman went to the guards who were over the Nephites, and behold, they saw him coming and they hailed him; but he saith unto them: Fear not; behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have escaped from the Nephites, and they sleep; and behold we have taken of their wine and brought with us.

Now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy; and they said unto him: Give us of your wine, that we may drink; we are glad that ye have thus taken wine with you for we are weary.

10 Ka na'e pehē ange 'e Leimana kiate kinautolu: Tau tauhi 'etau uainé kae 'oua ke tau o' atu ke tau 'i 'a e kau Nīfái. Ka na'e tafunaki 'e he leá ni ke lahi ange 'a 'enau holi ke inu 'a e uainé;

11 He na'a nau pehē: 'Oku mau ongosia, ko ia tuku ke mau inu 'a e uainé, pea 'e vavé ni pē ha'atau ma'u ha uaine ko hatau 'inasi, 'a ia 'e fakamālohi 'a kinautolu ke 'alu atu ke tau mo e kau Nīfái.

12 Pea na'e pehē ange 'e Leimana kiate kinautolu: 'Oku lelei pē ke fai homou lotó.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau inu fa'iteliha mei he uainé; pea na'e ifo ia kiate kinautolu, ko ia na'e 'āsili ai 'enau inú; pea na'e mālohi ia, he na'e teuteu 'i ia ke mālohi.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau inu pea nau fiefia, pea na'e 'ikai fuoloa kuo nau konā kotoa.

15 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he mamata 'a Leimana mo 'ene kau tangatá kuo nau konā kotoa pē, pea kuo nau mohe ma'ú, na'a nau foki atu kia Molonai, 'o fakahā kiate ia 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuo hokó.

16 Pea ko 'eni na'e tatau 'eni mo e fakakaukau 'a Molonai. Pea kuo teuteu 'i 'e Molonai 'a 'ene kau tangatá 'aki 'a e ngaahi mahafu tau; pea na'a ne 'alu atu ki he kolo ko Kití, lolotonga 'oku kei konā mo mohe ma'u 'a e kau Leimaná, 'o nau laku ki loto ha ngaahi mahafu tau ki he kau pōpulá, kae 'oua kuo nau ma'u kotoa ha mahafu.

17 'Io, 'o a'u ki honau kakai fefiné pea mo 'enau fānaú kotoa, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'a ia na'e lava 'o ngāue 'aki ha mahafu tau, pea 'i he fakamahafu 'e Molonai 'a e kau pōpula kotoa ko iá; pea na'e fai 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa ko iá 'i he fakalongolongo 'aupito.

18 Ka kapau na'a nau fāfangu 'a e kau Leimaná, vakai kuo nau konā pea na'e mei lava 'e he kau Nīfái 'o tāmata 'i 'a kinautolu.

19 Kae vakai, na'e 'ikai ko e me'a 'eni na'e holi ki ai 'a Molonai; na'e 'ikai te ne manako 'i he fakapoó pe ko e lilingi totó, ka na'a ne fiefia 'i hono fakahaofi 'a hono kakai mei he faka'auhá; pea koe'uhi ko e 'uhinga ko 'eni ke 'oua 'e tukuaki 'i ia ki ha ngaahi ngāue ta'etotonu, ko ia na'e 'ikai ai te ne loto ke 'oho atu ki he kau Leimaná 'o faka'auha 'a kinautolu lolotonga 'enau konaá.

But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;

For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine, and by and by we shall receive wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites.

And Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.

And it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its strength.

And it came to pass they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.

And now when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.

And now this was according to the design of Moroni. And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, insomuch that they were all armed;

Yea, even to their women, and all those of their children, as many as were able to use a weapon of war, when Moroni had armed all those prisoners; and all those things were done in a profound silence.

But had they awakened the Lamanites, behold they were drunken and the Nephites could have slain them.

But behold, this was not the desire of Moroni; he did not delight in murder or bloodshed, but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction; and for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice, he would not fall upon the Lamanites and destroy them in their drunkenness.

20 Ka kuó ne lava 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a na'á ne fie ma'ú; he kuó ne fakamahafu 'a e kau pōpula Nīfai, 'a ia na'e 'i he loto 'ā 'o e koló, pea kuó ne tuku kiate kinautolu 'a e mālohi ke puke 'a e ngaahi potu 'a ia na'e 'i loto 'i he ngaahi 'aá.

21 Pea na'á ne fekau leva ki he kau tangata 'a ia na'e 'iate iá ke nau holomui 'o ki'i mama'o si'i atu meiate kinautolú, 'o kāpui 'a e kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná.

22 Ko 'eni vakai na'e fai 'eni 'i he taimi po'ulí, pea ko ia 'i he 'ā hake 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he pongipongi na'a nau vakai kuo kāpui 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Nīfai mei tu 'a 'ā, pea kuo fakamahafu 'enau kau pōpula 'i lotó.

23 Pea ko ia na'a nau vakai kuo ma'ú 'e he kau Nīfai 'a e mālohi kiate kinautolu; pea 'i he'ene pehe'e na'e mahino kiate kinautolu 'oku ta'e aonga ke nau tau mo e kau Nīfai; ko ia na'e fekau 'e honau kau 'eikitau pulé ke 'omai 'enau ngaahi mahafu taú, pea na'a nau 'omi ia 'o lí 'i he va'e 'o e kau Nīfai, 'o kole ke nau anga'ofa mai kiate kinautolu.

24 Ko 'eni vakai, ko e me'a 'eni na'e fie ma'ú 'e Molonái. Na'á ne puke 'a kinautolu ko e kau pōpula 'i he tau, 'o ne ma'ú 'a e koló, pea na'á ne fekau ke fakatau'atāina kotoa 'a e kau pōpulá, 'a ia ko e kau Nīfai; pea na'a nau kau ki he kau tau 'a Molonái, pea na'a nau hoko ko e fu'u mālohi lahi ki he'ene kau taú.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fekau 'a e kau Leimana, 'a ia kuó ne puke pōpulá, ke nau kamata ngāue ke ngaohi ke mālohi 'a e ngaahi kolotau 'a ia na'e takatakai 'i he kolo ko Kití.

26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi 'ene ngaohi ke mālohi 'a e kolo ko Kití, 'o hangē ko hono lotó, na'á ne fekau ke 'ave 'a 'ene kau pōpulá ki he kolo ko Mahú; pea na'á ne le'ohi foki 'a e kolo ko iá 'aki ha fu'u kau tau mālohi 'aupito.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau le'ohi ia, neongo 'a e ngaahi filio 'i kākā 'a e kau Leimaná, pea nau tauhi mo malu 'i 'a e kau pōpula kotoa kuo nau puké, pea na'a nau tauhi mo pule 'i foki 'a e fonua kotoa mo e faingamālie kuo nau toe ma'ú.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe kamata 'a e kau Nīfai ke ikuna, pea toe ma'ú 'enau ngaahi totonú mo honau ngaahi faingamālié.

But he had obtained his desires; for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephites who were within the wall of the city, and had given them power to gain possession of those parts which were within the walls.

And then he caused the men who were with him to withdraw a pace from them, and surround the armies of the Lamanites.

Now behold this was done in the night-time, so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without, and that their prisoners were armed within.

And thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them; and in these circumstances they found that it was not expedient that they should fight with the Nephites; therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war, and they brought them forth and cast them at the feet of the Nephites, pleading for mercy.

Now behold, this was the desire of Moroni. He took them prisoners of war, and took possession of the city, and caused that all the prisoners should be liberated, who were Nephites; and they did join the army of Moroni, and were a great strength to his army.

And it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.

And it came to pass that when he had fortified the city Gid, according to his desires, he caused that his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful; and he also guarded that city with an exceedingly strong force.

And it came to pass that they did, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the Lamanites, keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken, and also maintain all the ground and the advantage which they had re-taken.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.

29 Na'e tu'o lahi 'a e feinga 'a e kau Leimaná ke 'ātakai 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he po'ulí, ka 'i he 'enau ngaahi feinga ko iá na'e mole ai meiate kinautolu ha'anau kau pōpula tokolahi.

30 Pea na'e tu'o lahi 'enau feinga ke foaki ha'anau uaine ki he kau Nīfai, koe'uhí ke nau lava 'o faka'auha 'a kinautolu 'aki ha inu fakakona pē ko e konā.

31 Kae vakai, na'e 'ikai ke fai tuai 'a e kau Nīfai 'i hono manatu 'i 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá 'i he taimi ko 'eni 'o 'enau mamahí. Koloto ke lava ke ma'u 'a kinautolu 'i he 'enau ngaahi tauhelé; 'io, na'e 'ikai te nau inu 'enau uainé, ka 'i he 'enau tomu 'a 'oange ia ki ha ni'ihí 'o e kau pōpula Leimaná.

32 Pea na'a nau tokanga pehē ke 'oua na'a 'omi kiate kinautolu ha inu fakakona; he kapau 'e fakakonahi ha tangata Leimana 'e he 'enau uainé, 'e fakakonahi ai foki ha tangata Nīfai; pea na'a nau 'ahí'ahi 'i pehē 'a 'enau ngaahi me'a inu mālohi kotoa pē.

33 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'aonga ke teuteu 'a Molonai ke tau 'i 'a e kolo ko Molianitoní; he vakai, kuo hanga 'e he kau Leimaná, 'i he 'enau ngaahi ngāué, 'o ngaohi ke mālohi 'a e kolo ko Molianitoní kae 'oua kuo hoko ia ko ha fu'u kolotau mālohi.

34 Pea na'a nau 'omi ma'u pē 'a e kau tau fo'ou ki he kolo ko iá kae 'uma 'ā foki 'a e ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau fo'ou.

35 Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a hono uofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfai.

Many times did the Lamanites attempt to encircle them about by night, but in these attempts they did lose many prisoners.

And many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

But behold, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. They could not be taken in their snares; yea, they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners.

And they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.

And now it came to pass that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city Morianton; for behold, the Lamanites had, by their labors, fortified the city Morianton until it had become an exceeding stronghold.

And they were continually bringing new forces into that city, and also new supplies of provisions.

And thus ended the twenty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

‘Alamā 56

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he kamata’anga ‘o e ta’u hono tolungofulu ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāú, ‘i hono ua ‘o e ‘ahó ‘i he ‘uluaki māhiná, na’e ma’u ‘e Molonai ha tohi meia Hilamani, ‘o fakamatala ‘i mai ‘a e ngaahi me’a kuo hoko ki he kakai ‘i he potu ko ia ‘o e fonuá.
- 2 Pea ko e ngaahi lea ‘eni ‘a ia na’á ne tohí, ‘o pehē: ‘E hoku tokoua ‘ofeina, ko Molonai, ‘i he ‘Eikí pea ‘i he ngaahi faingata’a foki ‘o ‘etau tau; vakai, ‘e hoku tokoua ‘ofeina, ‘oku ‘i ai ha’aku me’a ‘e ni’ihi ke fakahā kiate koe ‘o kau ki he ‘emaui tau ‘i he potu ko ‘eni ‘o e fonuá.
- 3 Vakai, ko e toko ua afe ‘o e ngaahi foha ‘o e kau tangata ko ia na’e ‘ohifo ‘e ‘Āmoni mei he fonua ko Nifái—ko ‘eni ‘okú ke ‘ilo ko kinautolu ní ko e hako ‘o Leimana ‘a ia ko e foha lahi ‘o ‘etau tamaí ko Līhaí;
- 4 Ko ‘eni ‘oku ‘ikai ‘aonga ke u toe fakamanatu ‘i atu kiate koe ‘o kau ki he ‘enau ngaahi talatukufakaholó pe ko ‘enau ta’etuí, he ‘okú ke ‘ilo ki he ngaahi me’a kotoa ko ‘ení—
- 5 Ko ia ‘oku fe’unga pē kiate au ke u fakahā atu kiate koe kuo to’o ‘e he toko ua afe ‘o e kau talavou ko ‘ení ‘a ‘enau mahafu taú, pea nau lotu ke u hoko ko honau takí; pea kuo mau ō mai ke malu ‘i hotau fonuá.
- 6 Pea ko ‘eni ‘okú ke ‘ilo foki ki he fuakava ‘a ia na’e fai ‘e he ‘enau ngaahi tamaí, ‘e ‘ikai te nau to’o hake ‘enau ngaahi mahafu taú ke tau ‘i ‘aki honau kāingá ke lilingi toto.
- 7 Ka ‘i hono uofulu mā ono ‘o e ta’ú, ‘i he ‘enau vakai ki hotau ngaahi mamahí mo hotau ngaahi faingata’a ‘ia koe’uhi ko kinautolú, na’a nau meimei maumau ‘i ‘a e fuakava kuo nau faí ‘o to’o hake ‘enau ngaahi mahafu taú ke malu ‘i ‘a kinautolu.
- 8 Ka na’e ‘ikai te u fie tuku ke nau maumau ‘i ‘a e fuakavá ni ‘a ia kuo nau faí, ‘i he ‘eku tui ‘e pou pou ‘i ‘a kitautolu ‘e he ‘Otuá, ‘o a’u ki ha ‘ikai te tau toe faingata’a ‘ia lahi ange koe’uhi ko ‘enau tauhi ‘a e fuakava kuo nau faí.

Alma 56

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges, on the second day in the first month, Moroni received an epistle from Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quarter of the land.

And these are the words which he wrote, saying: My dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in the tribulations of our warfare; behold, my beloved brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our warfare in this part of the land.

Behold, two thousand of the sons of those men whom Ammon brought down out of the land of Nephi—now ye have known that these were descendants of Laman, who was the eldest son of our father Lehi;

Now I need not rehearse unto you concerning their traditions or their unbelief, for thou knowest concerning all these things—

Therefore it sufficeth me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men have taken their weapons of war, and would that I should be their leader; and we have come forth to defend our country.

And now ye also know concerning the covenant which their fathers made, that they would not take up their weapons of war against their brethren to shed blood.

But in the twenty and sixth year, when they saw our afflictions and our tribulations for them, they were about to break the covenant which they had made and take up their weapons of war in our defence.

But I would not suffer them that they should break this covenant which they had made, supposing that God would strengthen us, insomuch that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken.

- 9 Kae vakai, ko e me'a 'eni 'e taha 'a ia 'oku tau lava ke ma'u ai ha fiefia lahi. He vakai, 'i hono uofulu mā ono 'o e ta'ú, ko au Hilamani, na'á ku laka atu 'o taki 'a e kau tangata talavou ko 'eni 'e toko ua afé ki he kolo ko Siuteá, ke tokoni kia 'Anitipesi, 'a ia kuó ke fakanofu ko ha taki ki he kakai 'o e potu ko ia 'o e fonuá.
- 10 Peá u fakataha 'i 'a hoku ngaahi foha 'e toko ua afé, (he 'oku fe'unga ke ui 'a kinautolu ko e ngaahi foha) ki he kau tau 'a 'Anitipesi, 'a ia ko e mālohi na'e fiefia lahi ai 'a 'Anitipesi; he vakai, kuo fakatokotokosi 'i 'ene kau tau 'e he kau Leimaná he kuo hanga 'e he'enu kau tau 'o tāmata'i 'a e fu'u tokolahi fau 'o 'etau kau tangatá, 'a ia ko e me'a 'oku totonu ke tau tenghia.
- 11 Ka neongo iá, ko e me'a 'eni te tau lava 'o fiemālie ai, kuo nau mate 'i he mamahi 'i honau fonuá mo honau 'Otuá, 'io, pea 'oku nau fiefia.
- 12 Pea kuo tauhi foki 'e he kau Leimaná 'a e kau pōpula tokolahi, 'a ia ko e kau 'eikitau pule kātoa, he na'e 'ikai te nau fakamo'ui ha tokotaha kehe. Pea 'oku mau mahalo 'oku nau 'i he fonua ko Nīfai 'i he taimí ni; 'oku pehē 'o kapau kuo te'eki ai tāmata'i 'a kinautolu.
- 13 Pea ko 'eni ko e ngaahi kolo 'eni 'a ia kuo ma'u 'e he kau Leimaná 'i he lilingi 'o e toto 'o e fu'u tokolahi 'o 'etau kau tangata to'á:
- 14 Ko e fonua ko Manataí, pe ko e kolo ko Manataí, mo e kolo ko Sisolomé, mo e kolo ko Kumenaí, mo e kolo ko 'Anitipalá.
- 15 Pea ko e ngaahi kolo 'eni kuo nau ma'u 'i he'eku a'u mai ki he kolo ko Siuteá; peá u 'ilo'i 'a 'Anitipesi mo 'ene kau tangatá 'oku nau ngāue tūkuingata ke ngaohi 'a e koló ke mālohi.
- 16 'Io, pea na'a nau faingata 'a ia 'i he sino pea 'i he laumālie foki, he kuo nau tau loto-to'a 'i he 'ahó pea ngāue 'i he po'ulí ke malu 'i honau ngaahi koló; pea ko ia kuo nau kātekina 'a e ngaahi mamahi 'i he fa'ahinga kotoa pē.
- 17 Pea ko 'eni kuo nau fakapapau ke nau ikuna 'i he feitu'u ko 'eni pe mate; ko ia 'okú ke mahalo ne hanga 'e he ki'i kau tau tokosi'i ko ia ne ha'u mo aú, 'io, 'a e ngaahi foha ko ia 'o'okú, 'o foaki kiate kinautolu ha fu'u 'amanaki mo e fiefia lahi.

But behold, here is one thing in which we may have great joy. For behold, in the twenty and sixth year, I, Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the city of Judea, to assist Antipus, whom ye had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land.

And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus did rejoice exceedingly; for behold, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their forces had slain a vast number of our men, for which cause we have to mourn.

Nevertheless, we may console ourselves in this point, that they have died in the cause of their country and of their God, yea, and they are happy.

And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain.

And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:

The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, and the city of Zeezrom, and the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.

And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of Judea; and I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the city.

Yea, and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit, for they had fought valiantly by day and toiled by night to maintain their cities; and thus they had suffered great afflictions of every kind.

And now they were determined to conquer in this place or die; therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me, yea, those sons of mine, gave them great hopes and much joy.

18 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he vakai 'a e kau
Leimaná kuo ma'u 'e 'Anitipesi ha mālohi lahi ange ki
he'ene kau tau, na'e ta'ofi 'a kinautolu 'i he tu'utu'uni 'a
'Amolone ke 'oua na'a nau 'oho mai ki he kolo ko
Siuteá, pē ko kinautolu, ke tau.

19 Pea ko ia na'e tāpuekina 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eikí; he
kapau na'a nau 'oho mai kiate kinautolu 'i he'emaui
vaivai ko íá pehē kuo nau mei faka'auha 'a 'emaui kau tau
tokosi'í; ka na'e anga pehē 'a homau fakahaofí.

20 Na'e fekau kiate kinautolu 'e 'Amolone ke nau malu 'i
'a e ngaahi kolo 'a ia kuo nau fa'aó. Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a e
ta'u hono uofulu mā onó. Pea 'i he kamata'anga 'o hono
uofulu mā fitu 'o e ta'ú kuo mau 'osi teuteu 'i homau
koló mo kinautolu foki ki he malu 'i.

21 Ko 'eni na'a mau faka'amu ke 'oho mai 'a e kau
Leimaná kiate kinautolu; he na'e 'ikai te mau loto ke
'oho atu kiate kinautolu 'i honau ngaahi kolotaú.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau tuku 'a e kau tangata
matakí 'o takatakai, ke fakasiosio 'a e fe'alu'aki 'a e kau
Leimaná, koe'uhí ke 'oua te nau fakalaka 'iate
kinautolu 'i he po'ulí pe 'i he 'ahó ke fai hano 'ohofi
homau ngaahi kolo kehe 'a ia na'e tu'u 'i he fakatokelaú.

23 He na'a mau 'ilo 'i na'e te'eki ai ke mālohi fe'unga 'a e
ngaahi kolo ko íá ke fetaulaki mo kinautolu; ko ia na'a
mau faka'amu ai, 'o kapau te nau fakalaka atu 'iate
kinautolu, te mau 'oho atu 'i mui 'iate kinautolu, pea
ta'ofi pehē 'a kinautolu mei mui 'i he taimi tatau pē 'oku
tau 'i 'a kinautolu mei mu'a. Na'a mau 'amanaki te mau
lava 'o ikuna 'i 'a kinautolu; kae vakai, na'e tō noa 'emaui
'amanakí 'i he me'á ni 'a ia na'a mau holi ki aí.

24 Na'a nau manavahē ke fakalaka 'iate kinautolu mo
'enau kau tau kotoa, pea na'a nau manavahē foki he 'alu
mo hano kongá 'o 'enau kau tau, telia na'a 'iloange kuo
'ikai ke nau mālohi fe'unga pea ikuna 'i ai 'a kinautolu.

25 Pea na'a nau manavahē foki ke laka atu ki he kolo ko
Seilahemalá; pea na'a nau manavahē foki ke a'a 'i 'olunga
'i Saitone, ke 'alu ki he kolo ko Nifaihaá.

26 Pea ko ia, kuo nau fakapapu ke malu 'i 'aki 'enau kau
tau 'a e ngaahi kolo ko ia kuo nau ma'ú.

27 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono ua 'o e māhiná 'o
e ta'u pē ko íá, na'e 'omi kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi
me'akai mo e nāunau lahi mei he ngaahi tamai 'a hoku
ngaahi foha 'e toko ua afé.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites
saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his
army, they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron
to not come against the city of Judea, or against us, to
battle.

And thus were we favored of the Lord; for had they
come upon us in this our weakness they might have per-
haps destroyed our little army; but thus were we pre-
served.

They were commanded by Ammoron to maintain
those cities which they had taken. And thus ended the
twenty and sixth year. And in the commencement of
the twenty and seventh year we had prepared our city
and ourselves for defence.

Now we were desirous that the Lamanites should
come upon us; for we were not desirous to make an at-
tack upon them in their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we kept spies out round
about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that
they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an
attack upon our other cities which were on the north-
ward.

For we knew in those cities they were not sufficiently
strong to meet them; therefore we were desirous, if they
should pass by us, to fall upon them in their rear, and
thus bring them up in the rear at the same time they
were met in the front. We supposed that we could over-
power them; but behold, we were disappointed in this
our desire.

They durst not pass by us with their whole army, nei-
ther durst they with a part, lest they should not be suffi-
ciently strong and they should fall.

Neither durst they march down against the city of
Zarahemla; neither durst they cross the head of Sidon,
over to the city of Nephiah.

And thus, with their forces, they were determined to
maintain those cities which they had taken.

And now it came to pass in the second month of this
year, there was brought unto us many provisions from
the fathers of those my two thousand sons.

28 Pea na'e toe 'omai foki mo ha kau tangata 'e toko ua afe kiate kimautilu mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá. Pea ko ia na'a mau mateuteu ai mo e kau tangata 'e toko taha mano, mo e ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau ma'anautolu, kae 'uma ā foki honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enau fānaú foki.

29 Pea ko e kau Leimaná, 'i he 'enau vakai 'oku fakatokolahi 'i he 'aho taki taha 'a 'emau kau taú, pea 'oku 'omi 'a e ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau ke tauhi 'aki 'a kimautilú, na'e kamata ke nau manavahē, 'o nau kamata ke hū mai ki tu'a, koe'uhi ke lava nai ke ta'ofi 'emau ma'u 'a e ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunaú mo e tokoní.

30 Ko 'eni 'i he 'emau vakai 'oku faka'au ke hoha'a lahi 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he me'á ni, na'a mau faka'amu ke fai ha tauhele kiate kinautilu; ko ia, na'e fekau 'e 'Anitipesi ke u laka atu mo hoku ngaahi foha talavou kei íki ki ha kolo ofi mai, 'o hangē ko ha'amaui fetukutuku 'a e ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau ki ha kolo ofi mai.

31 Pea na'e fekau ke mau laka ofi atu ki he kolo ko 'Anitipalá, 'o hangē ko ha'amaui 'alu atu ki ha kolo hoko mai, 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonuá ofi ki he matātahí.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau laka atu, 'o hangē 'oku mau 'ave ha ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau, ke 'ave ki he kolo ko íá.

33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e laka atu 'a 'Anitipesi mo ha kongá 'o 'ene kau taú, kae tuku hono toé ke malu 'i 'a e koló. Ka na'e 'ikai te ne laka atu kae 'oua kuó u 'alu atu mo 'eku ki 'i kau taú, 'o ofi atu ki he kolo ko 'Anitipalá.

34 Pea ko 'eni, na'e nofo 'i he kolo ko 'Anitipalá 'a e kau tau mālohi taha 'a e kau Leimaná; 'io 'a e tokolahi tahá.

35 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he fakahā kiate kinautilu 'e he 'enau kau tangata matakí, na'a nau hū mai ki tu'a mo 'enau kau taú 'o laka mai ke tau 'i 'a kimautilu.

36 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau hola 'i mu'a 'iate kinautilu, ki he fakatokelaú. Pea na'e pehē 'a 'emau tohoaki 'i mama'o atu 'a e kau tau mālohi taha 'a e kau Leimaná;

And also there were sent two thousand men unto us from the land of Zarahemla. And thus we were prepared with ten thousand men, and provisions for them, and also for their wives and their children.

And the Lamanites, thus seeing our forces increase daily, and provisions arrive for our support, they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth, if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions and strength.

Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little sons to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring city.

And we were to march near the city of Antiparah, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did march forth, as if with our provisions, to go to that city.

And it came to pass that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army, leaving the remainder to maintain the city. But he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army, and came near the city Antiparah.

And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites; yea, the most numerous.

And it came to pass that when they had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.

And it came to pass that we did flee before them, northward. And thus we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites;

- 37 'Io, 'o fu'u mama 'o 'aupito, 'o a'u ki he 'enau mamata ki he kau tau 'a 'Anitipesi 'oku tuli mui 'iate kinautolu, 'aki honau tūkuingatá, na'e 'ikai te nau afe ki he to'omata'ú pe to'ohemá, ka na'a nau fai ange pē 'enau laka hangatonu mai kiate kimautolú; pea, hangē ko 'emau mahaló, ko 'enau taumu'á ke tāmata'i 'a kimautolu 'oku te'eki ai ke a'u mai 'a 'Anitipesi kiate kinautolu, pea nau fai 'eni ke 'oua 'e kāpui 'a kinautolu 'e homau kakaí.
- 38 Pea ko 'eni 'i he vakai 'e 'Anitipesi, ki he fakatu'utāmaki na'a mau 'i aí, na'á ne fakato'oto'o ange 'a e laka 'a 'ene kau taú. Kae vakai, na'e po'uli; ko ia na'e 'ikai te nau ma'u 'a kimautolu, pea na'e 'ikai foki ke ma'u 'a kinautolu 'e 'Anitipesi; ko ia, na'a mau mālōlō 'i he poó.
- 39 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he te'eki ke mafoa 'a e atá 'i he hengihengi haké, vakai, na'e tuli 'a kimautolu 'e he kau Leimaná. Ko 'eni na'e 'ikai te mau mālohi fe'unga ke fepaki mo kinautolu; 'io, na'e 'ikai te u fie tuku ke tō 'a hoku ngaahi foha kei ikí ki honau nimá; ko ia, na'a mau fai atu 'emau laká, 'o mau laka atu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.
- 40 Ko 'eni na'a nau manavahē ke afe ki he to'omata'ú pe ki he to'ohemá telia na'a kāpui 'a kinautolu; pea na'e 'ikai foki te u fie afe ki he to'omata'ú pe to'ohemá telia na'a nau ma'u au, pea na'e 'ikai te mau lava ke matu'uaki 'a kinautolu, he 'e tāmata'i ai 'a kimautolu, pea te nau hola ai 'o hao; pea ko ia na'a mau hola 'i hono kotoa 'o e 'aho ko iá ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'o a'u ki he'ene po'uli.
- 41 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē, 'i he toe mafoa mai 'a e ata 'o e pongipongi, na'a mau vakai atu 'oku 'oho mai 'a e kau Leimaná kiate kimautolu, pea na'a mau hola meiate kinautolu.
- 42 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai te nau tuli 'a kimautolu 'o loko mama'o pea na'a nau tu'u; pea na'e hoko ia 'i he pongipongi 'o hono tolu 'o e 'aho 'o e mähina hono fitú.
- 43 Pea ko 'eni, na'e 'ikai te mau 'ilo pe kuo ma'u 'a kinautolu 'e 'Anitipesi pe 'ikai, ka na'á ku pehē ange ki he'eku kau tangatá: Vakai, 'oku 'ikai te tau 'ilo'i pe kuo nau tu'ú koe'uhí ke tau foki ange 'o tau'i 'a kinautolu, koe'uhí ke nau ma'u 'a kitautolu 'i he'enu tauhelé;

Yea, even to a considerable distance, insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.

And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. But behold, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.

And it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning, behold, the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; yea, I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march, and we took our march into the wilderness.

Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, and we could not stand against them, but be slain, and they would make their escape; and thus we did flee all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.

And it came to pass that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.

But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day of the seventh month.

And now, whether they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them, that they might catch us in their snare;

44 Ko ia ko e hā ho'omou laú, 'e hoku ngaahi foha, te mou 'alu atu kiate kinautolu ke tau?

45 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'e hoku tokoua 'ofeina ko Molonai, kuo te'eki ai te u mamata 'i ha loto-to'a lahi pehē, 'ikai, kuo te'eki ai 'i hono kotoa 'o e kau Nifái.

46 He hangē ko 'eku ui ma'u ai pē 'a kinautolu ko hoku ngaahi fohá, (he na'a nau kei iiki kotoa pē), pea na'a nau pehē mai kiate au: 'E tamai, vakai 'oku 'iate kitautolu 'a hotau 'Otuá, pea 'e 'ikai te ne tuku ke mau tō; ko ia, tau ō atu; 'e 'ikai te tau tāmata'i 'a homau kāingá kapau na'a nau tuku noa pē 'a kitautolu; ko ia tau ō atu, telia na'a nau ikuna 'a e kau tau 'a 'Anitipesí.

47 Ko 'eni kuo te'eki ai ke nau tau, ka na'e 'ikai te nau manavahē 'i he maté; pea na'a nau tokanga lahi ange ki he tau'atāina 'a 'enau ngaahi tamai 'i he' enau tokanga ki he' enau mo'uí; 'io, kuo akonekina 'a kinautolu 'e he' enau ngaahi fa'éé, kapau 'e 'ikai te nau ta'etui, 'e fakahaofi 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Otuá.

48 Pea na'a nau fakamatala'i mai kiate au 'a e ngaahi lea 'a 'enau ngaahi fa'éé, 'o pehē: 'Oku 'ikai te mau ta'etui na'e 'ilo ia 'e he' emau ngaahi fa'éé.

49 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku foki atu mo 'eku toko ua afé ke tau mo e kau Leimana ko 'eni na'a nau tuli 'a kinautolú. Pea ko 'eni vakai, kuo ma'u 'a kinautolu 'e he kau tau 'a 'Anitipesí, pea kuo kamata 'a e fu'u tau lahi faka'ulia.

50 Ko e me'a 'i he ongosia 'a e kau tau 'a 'Anitipesí, koe' uhi ko 'enau laka mama'o 'i he kí'i taimi sí'i pehē, na'e ofi ke nau tō ki he nima 'o e kau Leimaná; pea ka ne ta'é'oua 'eku foki atu mo 'eku toko ua afé, pehē kuo nau ikuna 'i 'a e taú.

51 He kuo tō 'a 'Anitipesi 'i he heletā mo e tokolahi 'o 'ene kau takí, ko e tupu mei he' enau ongosía, 'a ia na'e tupu 'i hono vave 'o 'enau laká—ko ia na'e tupu 'i he puputu 'u 'a e kau tangata 'a 'Anitipesí koe' uhi ko e tō 'a honau takí, na'e kamata ke nau holomui mei he kau Leimaná.

Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against them to battle?

And now I say unto you, my beloved brother Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites.

For as I had ever called them my sons (for they were all of them very young) even so they said unto me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we would not slay our brethren if they would let us alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower the army of Antipus.

Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear death; and they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers than they did upon their lives; yea, they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, God would deliver them.

And they rehearsed unto me the words of their mothers, saying: We do not doubt our mothers knew it.

And it came to pass that I did return with my two thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had overtaken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.

The army of Antipus being weary, because of their long march in so short a space of time, were about to fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not returned with my two thousand they would have obtained their purpose.

For Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of his leaders, because of their weariness, which was occasioned by the speed of their march—therefore the men of Antipus, being confused because of the fall of their leaders, began to give way before the Lamanites.

52 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e loto-to'a ai 'a e kau Leimaná, 'o nau kamata ke tuli 'a kinautolu; pea na'e lolotonga tuli mālohi pehē 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Leimaná fē'unga mo e a'u mai 'a Hilamani mo 'ene toko ua afé 'i mui 'iate kinautolu, 'o nau kamata ke tāmāte 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito, ko ia na'e tu'u ai 'a e kau tau kotoa 'a e kau Leimaná, 'o nau tafoki hake kia Hilamani.

53 Ko 'eni 'i he vakai 'a e kakai 'o 'Anitipesí kuo tafoki ki mui 'a e kau Leimaná, na'a nau tānaki fakataha 'enau kau tangatá 'o nau toe 'oho fakataha atu 'i mui 'i he kau Leimaná.

54 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē ko kinautolu, ko e kakai 'o Nīfaí, ko e kakai 'o 'Anitipesí, mo au mo 'eku toko ua afé, na'a mau kāpui 'a e kau Leimaná, 'o mau tāmāte 'i 'a kinautolu; 'io, 'o a'u ki hono fakamālohi 'i 'a kinautolu ke tuku 'enau ngaahi mahafu taú pea mo kinautolu foki ko e kau pōpula 'o e tau.

55 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'enau tukulolo kiate kinautolú, vakai, na'á ku lau 'a e kau tangata talavou ko ia 'a ia na'a mau tau mo aú, 'i he'eku manavahē na'a kuo 'i ai hanau tokolahi kuo tāmāte 'i.

56 Kae vakai, na'á ku fu'u fiefia lahi, he na'e 'ikai ha toko taha 'iate kinautolu kuo tō ki he kekelelé; 'io, pea kuo nau tau 'o hangē kuo nau fai ia 'i he māfimaí 'o e 'Otuá; 'io, na'e te'eki ai ke 'ilo ha kau tangata kuo tau 'aki ha fu'u ivi fakaofu pehē; pea 'i he mālohi lahi pehē na'a nau 'oho atu ki he kau Leimaná, 'o nau fakamanavahee 'i ai 'a kinautolu; pea ko e 'uhinga 'eni na'e tuku ai 'e he kau Leimaná ke nau tukulolo 'o hoko ko e kau pōpula 'o e taú.

57 Pea ko e me'a 'i he 'ikai ha potu ke tauhi ai 'emau kau pōpulá, ke mau le'ohi ai 'a kinautolu ke ta'ofi 'a kinautolu mei he'enau hola ki he kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná, ko ia na'a mau fekau ke 'ave 'a kinautolu ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea ke 'alu mo kinautolu 'a e kongá 'o e kau tangata 'a 'Anitipesi 'a ia na'e 'ikai ke maté; peá u 'ave hono toé 'o fakataha 'i 'a kinautolu mo 'eku kau talavou 'Āmoní, pea mau laka 'o foki atu ki he kolo ko Siuteá.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites took courage, and began to pursue them; and thus were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.

Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.

And now it came to pass that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.

And now it came to pass that when they had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.

But behold, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; yea, and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.

And as we had no place for our prisoners, that we could guard them to keep them from the armies of the Lamanites, therefore we sent them to the land of Zarahemla, and a part of those men who were not slain of Antipus, with them; and the remainder I took and joined them to my stripling Ammonites, and took our march back to the city of Judea.

‘Alamā 57

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ku ma‘u ha tohi meia ‘Amolone, ko e tu‘í, ‘o pehē kapau te u tukuange ‘a e kau pōpula ‘o e ta u ‘a ia kuo mau puké te ne tuku mai kiate kimautolu ‘a e kolo ko ‘Anitipalá.
- 2 Ka na‘á ku ‘oatu ha tohi ki he tu‘í, ‘oku mau ‘ilo‘i fakapapau ‘oku fe‘unga ‘emau kau taú ke fa‘ao ‘a e kolo ko ‘Anitipalá ‘aki homau mālohí pē; pea kapau te mau tukuange ‘a e kau pōpula ke fetongi ‘aki ‘a e koló, te mau fai ta‘e-fakapotopoto ai, pea te mau toki tukuange pē ‘emau kau pōpula ‘i ha fakafetongi.
- 3 Pea na‘e ‘ikai tali ‘e ‘Amolone ‘a ‘eku tohí, he na‘e ‘ikai te ne fie fakafetongi ‘a e kau pōpula; ko ia na‘a mau kamata ke fai ha ngaahi teuteu ke ‘alu ke tau‘i ‘a e kolo ko ‘Anitipalá.
- 4 Ka na‘e ‘alu ‘a e kakai ‘o ‘Anitipalá mei he koló, ‘o nau hola ki honau ngaahi kolo kehe, ‘a ia na‘a nau ma‘ú, ke ngaohi ke mālohi ia; pea ko ia na‘e pehē ‘a e tō ‘a e kolo ko ‘Anitipalá ki homau nimá.
- 5 Pea na‘e ‘osi pehē ‘a hono uofulu mā valu ‘o e ta‘u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāú.
- 6 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he kamata‘anga hono uofulu mā hiva ‘o e ta‘ú, na‘a mau ma‘u ha ngaahi me‘akai mo e nāunau, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo ha fakatokolahi ki he‘emau kau taú, pea mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá, mo e fonua ofi ki aí, ‘a ia ko e kau tangata ‘e toko ono afē, tuku kehe ‘a e toko onongofulu ‘o e ngaahi foha ‘o e kau ‘Āmoní ‘a ia na‘a nau ha‘u ke kau fakataha mo honau ngaahi tokouá, ‘a ia ko ‘eku ki‘i kau tau ‘o e toko ua afé. Pea ko ‘eni vakai, na‘a mau mālohi, ‘io, na‘e lahi foki mo e ngaahi me‘akai mo e nāunau fe‘unga kiate kimautolu.
- 7 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ko homau lotó ke fai ha tau mo e kau tau ‘a ia na‘e tuku ke malu‘i ‘a e kolo ko Kumenaí.
- 8 Pea ko ‘eni vakai, te u fakahā kiate koe na‘e vave ‘emau fakahoko ‘emau faka‘amú; ‘io, na‘a mau kāpui ‘aki ‘emau kau tau mālohí, pe ko ha kongá ‘o ‘emau kau tau mālohí, ‘i he po‘ulí, ‘a e kolo ko Kumenaí, ‘o fuofuoloa sí‘i ki mu‘a pea nau ma‘u ha ngaahi me‘akai mo e nāunau.

Alma 57

And now it came to pass that I received an epistle from Ammoron, the king, stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war whom we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah unto us.

But I sent an epistle unto the king, that we were sure our forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force; and by delivering up the prisoners for that city we should suppose ourselves unwise, and that we would only deliver up our prisoners on exchange.

And Ammoron refused mine epistle, for he would not exchange prisoners; therefore we began to make preparations to go against the city of Antiparah.

But the people of Antiparah did leave the city, and fled to their other cities, which they had possession of, to fortify them; and thus the city of Antiparah fell into our hands.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year, we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their brethren, my little band of two thousand. And now behold, we were strong, yea, and we had also plenty of provisions brought unto us.

And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni.

And now behold, I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire; yea, with our strong force, or with a part of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions.

- 9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau nofo takatakai 'i he koló 'i he ngaahi pō lahi; ka na'a mau mohe mo 'emau ngaahi heletaá, mo fokotu'u 'a e kau le'o, ko'e uhi ke 'oua na'a lava 'e he kau Leimaná 'o 'ohofi 'a kimautilu 'i he po'ulí, pea tāmata'e 'i 'a kimautilu, he na'a nau feinga tu'o lahi ke fai pehē; ka 'i he'enu feinga kotoa pē ke fai peheé na'e lilingi ai honau totó.
- 10 Na'e faifai pea na'e a'u mai 'enu ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunaú, pea na'a nau teu ke hū ki he koló 'i he po'ulí. Pea ko kimautilu, na'e 'ikai ko e kau Leimana 'a kimautilu, ka ko e kau Nifai; ko ia na'a mau puke ai 'a kinautilu mo 'enu ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunaú.
- 11 Pea neongo kuo motuhi 'a e kau Leimaná mei he'enu tokoni 'i he founga ko 'ení, ka na'a nau kei lotofakapapau pē ke ma'u 'a e koló; ka na'e 'aonga ke mau to'o 'a e ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau ko iá pea 'ave ia ki Siutea, pea mo 'emau kau pōpula ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá.
- 12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e te'eki ai ke 'osi atu ha ngaahi 'aho lahi na'e kamata ke mole 'a e 'amanaki kotoa 'a e kau Leimaná ki ha tokoni; ko ia na'a nau tuku mai 'a e koló ki homau nimá; pea ko ia kuo mau lava 'i 'emau ngaahi fakakaukau ke ma'u 'a e kolo ko Kumenaí.
- 13 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fu'u tokolahi fau 'a 'emau kau pōpula, ko ia neongo homau tokolahi pehē fau, na'e 'aonga ai ke mau ngāue 'aki 'emau kau taú kotoa ke le'ohi 'o kinautilu, pe tāmata'e 'i 'a kinautilu.
- 14 He vakai, na'e fa'a feinga ke hola hanau tokolahi, 'o nau tau 'aki 'a e ngaahi maka, mo e ngaahi 'akau, pe ko ha fa'ahinga me'a pē te nau lava ke ala ma'u 'i honau nimá, 'o tu'unga ai ha'amau tāmata'e 'i hanau toko ua afe nai 'i he hili 'enu tukulolo 'o hoko ko e kau pōpula 'o e taú.
- 15 Ko ia na'e 'aonga ai kiate kimautilu, ke mau to'o 'enu mo'uí, pe le'ohi 'a kinautilu, 'aki 'a e heletā 'i homau nimá, 'o 'ave 'a kinautilu ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá; pea mo 'emau ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunaú foki na'e 'ikai ke fe'unga ki homau kakai 'omautolú, neongo 'a e me'a kuo mau fa'ao mei he kau Leimaná.

And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites; therefore, we did take them and their provisions.

And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after this manner, they were still determined to maintain the city; therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up the city unto our hands; and thus we had accomplished our designs in obtaining the city Cumeni.

But it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that, notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.

For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into their hands, insomuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla; and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.

- 16 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he ngaahi tu'unga fakatu'utāmaki ko iá, na'e hoko ia ko ha me'a mamafa hono fakakaukau'i 'o kau ki he kau pōpula 'o e tau ko iá; ka neongo iá, na'a mau pehē leva ke 'ave 'a kinautolu ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá; ko ia na'a mau fili ha kongá 'o 'emau kau tangatá, 'o fekau kiate kinautolu ke nau le'ohi 'a e kau pōpulá 'o 'ave ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá.
- 17 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he pongipongi haké, na'a nau foki mai. Pea ko 'eni vakai, na'e 'ikai te mau 'eke kiate kinautolu 'o kau ki he kau pōpulá; he vakai, na'e 'oho mai kiate kinautolu 'a e kau Leimaná, pea na'a nau foki mai 'i he taimi totonu ke fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he tō ki honau nimá. He vakai, kuo fekau 'e 'Amolone ke 'ave ha tokoni kiate kinautolu 'i he ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau fo'ou kae 'uma'ā foki mo e kau tau tokolahi.
- 18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e kau tangata ko ia 'a ia na'a mau fekau ke 'alu mo e kau pōpulá na'a nau a'u mai 'i he taimi totonu ke ta'ofi 'a kinautolu 'i he 'amanaki ke nau ikuna 'i 'a kinautolú.
- 19 Kae vakai, na'e tau 'o fu'u mālohi 'aupito 'a 'eku ki'i kau tau 'e toko ua afe onongofulú; 'io, na'a nau tu'u ma'u 'i he 'ao 'o e kau Leimaná, 'o nau tāmate'i 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'a ia na'e tau mo kinautolú.
- 20 Pea 'i he faka'au ke vaivai 'a hono toe 'o 'emau kau taú ki he kau Leimaná, vakai, na'e tu'u ma'u mo ta'e-manavahē 'a e toko ua afe onongofulu ko iá.
- 21 'Io, pea na'a nau talangofua mo tokanga ke fai pau matematē ki he fekau kotoa pē; 'io, pea na'e hoko kiate kinautolu 'o fakataua mo 'enau tuí; pea na'á ku manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia na'a nau fakahā mai kiate au kuo ako 'aki kiate kinautolu 'e he 'enau ngaahi fá'ée.
- 22 Pea ko 'eni vakai, ko hoku ngaahi foha ko 'ení, mo e kau tangata 'a ia na'e fili ke 'ave 'a e kau pōpulá, 'oku totonu ke mau fakamālō ki ai koe'uhi ko e fu'u ikuna lahí ni; he ko kinautolu ia na'a nau ikuna 'i 'a e kau Leimaná; ko ia na'e teke 'i fakaholomui 'a kinautolu ki he kolo ko Manataí.
- 23 Pea na'a mau kei ma'u pē homau kolo ko Kumenaí, pea na'e 'ikai ke faka'auha kotoa 'a kinautolu ke 'osi 'i he heletā; ka neongo iá, kuo mole homau tokolahi.

And now, in those critical circumstances, it became a very serious matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war; nevertheless, we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla; therefore we selected a part of our men, and gave them charge over our prisoners to go down to the land of Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that on the morrow they did return. And now behold, we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners; for behold, the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us from falling into their hands. For behold, Ammoron had sent to their support a new supply of provisions and also a numerous army of men.

And it came to pass that those men whom we sent with the prisoners did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

But behold, my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately; yea, they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.

And as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and undaunted.

Yea, and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness; yea, and even according to their faith it was done unto them; and I did remember the words which they said unto me that their mothers had taught them.

And now behold, it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites; therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti.

And we retained our city Cumeni, and were not all destroyed by the sword; nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.

- 24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e hola 'a e kau Leimaná, na'á ku fai leva ha ngaahi tu'utu'uni ke 'ave 'eku kau tangata kuo kafó mei he lotolotonga 'o e kau maté, pea fekau ke faito'o mo nono'o honau ngaahi kafó.
- 25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai 'a e toko uangeau mei he'eku toko ua afe onongofulú, 'a ia na'e pongia koe'uhi ko e mole 'a e totó; ka neongo iá, ko e me'a 'i he angalelei 'a e 'Otuá, na'a mau fu'u ofo lahi 'aupito, pea fiefia foki mo 'emau kau taú kotoa, na'e 'ikai hanau toko taha 'e mate, 'io, pea na'e 'ikai foki ke 'i ai hanau toko taha na'á ne ma'u ha ngaahi fu'u lavea lahi.
- 26 Pea ko 'eni, na'e fakaofu honau fakahaofi ki he'emau kau taú kotoa, 'io, ke fakahaofi 'a kinautolu ka na'e 'i ai 'a e toko afe 'o homau kāingá 'a ia na'e tō. Pea 'oku totonu 'emau pehē ko e tupu ia mei he māfimafi fakaofu 'o e 'Otuá, koe'uhi ko 'enau fu'u tui lahi 'a ia kuo akonekina ai 'a kinautolu ke tuí—'oku 'i ai ha 'Otua angatonu, pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku 'ikai ke ta'etuí, 'e fakahaofi 'a kinautolu 'i hono māfimafi fakaofó.
- 27 Ko 'eni ko e tui 'eni 'a e fa'ahingá ni 'a ia kuó u lau ki aí; 'oku nau kei talavou, pea 'oku 'ikai feliliuaki 'enau fakakaukáu, pea 'oku tuku 'enau falalá ki he 'Otuá ma'u ai pē.
- 28 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'emau tokanga pehē ki homau kau tangata na'e kafó, pea mau tanu homau kakai maté kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e kakai mate 'o e kau Leimaná, 'a ia na'a nau tokolahi, vakai, na'a mau 'eke kia Kiti 'o kau ki he kau pōpula 'a ia na'a nau kamata ke 'alu atu mo kinautolu ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá.
- 29 Ko 'eni ko Kiti ko e 'eikitau pule ki he kongá 'a ia na'e tu'utu'uni ke le'ohi mo 'ave hifo 'a kinautolu ki he fonuá.
- 30 Pea ko 'eni, ko e ngaahi lea 'eni 'a ia na'e lea 'aki 'e Kiti kiate aú; Vakai, na'a mau kamata ke 'alu hifo ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá mo 'emau kau pōpulá. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau fetaulaki mo e kau tangata mataki 'o 'etau kau taú 'a ia kuo fekau 'i atu ke nau fakaasiasi 'a e 'apitanga tau 'o e kau Leimaná.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had fled, I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.

And it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.

And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe—that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.

Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm, and they do put their trust in God continually.

And now it came to pass that after we had thus taken care of our wounded men, and had buried our dead and also the dead of the Lamanites, who were many, behold, we did inquire of Gid concerning the prisoners whom they had started to go down to the land of Zarahemla with.

Now Gid was the chief captain over the band who was appointed to guard them down to the land.

And now, these are the words which Gid said unto me: Behold, we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla with our prisoners. And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.

31 Pea na'a nau kaila mai kiате kimaуtоlу, 'о pеhē—
 Vakai, 'оkи lоlоtоngа lаkа mаi 'а е tаu 'а е kаu Lеimаná
 kи hе hоlо kо Kumеnаi; pеа vаkаi, tе nаu 'оhоfи 'а
 kиnаuтolу, 'iо, pеа fаkа'аuhа 'а hоtаu kаkаi.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'о pеhē nа'e fanоngо 'а е 'еmаu kаu
 pōpulá kи hе'еnаu kailá, 'а iа nа'e tаfunаkи 'еnаu lоtо-
 to'a; pеа nа'a nаu tu'u hаkе 'о аngаtu'u kиате kimaуtоlу.

33 Pea na'e hoko 'о pеhē kо е mе'a 'i hе'еnаu аngаtu'u kо
 iá, nа'a mаu tā аi 'а kиnаuтolу 'аkи 'еmаu ngааhи hеlеtаá.
 Pеа nа'e hоkо 'о pеhē nа'a nаu fеlеlе'i fаkаtаhа mаi kи
 hе'еmаu ngааhи hеlеtаá, pеа nа'e tupu аi 'а е mаtе hаnаu
 tokоlаhи 'аupitо, pеа nа'e hао hоnо tоé mеi hе kаu lе'ó
 'о hоlа mеiаtе kиmаuтolу.

34 Pea vakai, hili 'еnаu hоlá pеа 'ikаi tе mаu lаvа 'о mа'u
 'а kиnаuтolú, nа'a mаu lаkа fаkаvаvеvаvе mаi lеvа kи hе
 kоlо kо Kumеnаi; pеа vаkаi, nа'a mаu а'u mаi 'i hе tаimи
 tоtоnу 'о tokоnи kи hоmаu kāingá 'i hе fаkаhаоfи 'о е
 koló.

35 Pea vakai, nа'e tоe fаkаhаоfи 'а kиmаuтolу mеi hе
 nimа 'о hоmаu ngааhи filí. Pеа fаkаfеtа'i kи hе huаfа 'о
 hоtаu 'Otuá, hе vаkаi, kо iа iа nа'á nе fаkаhаоfи 'а
 kиmаuтolú; 'iо, kо iа iа kuó nе fаi 'а е fu'u mе'a lаhí nи
 mа'amаuтolú.

36 Kо 'еnи nа'e hоkо 'о pеhē kо аu, Hилаmаnи, 'i hе'еkи
 fanоngо kи hе ngааhи lеá nи 'а Kití, nа'e fonu hоkи lotó 'i
 hе fu'u fiefia lаhи, kоe'uhи kо е аngаlеi 'а е 'Otuá 'i
 hоnо fаkаhаоfи 'а kиmаuтolú; kе 'оuа tе mаu 'аuhа kоtоа
 pē; 'iо, pеа 'оkи оu tui kо е lаumālie 'о kиnаuтolу kоtоа
 pē kuo maté kuo nаu hū kи hе mālōlō'аngа 'о hоnаu
 'Otuá.

And they cried unto us, saying—Behold, the armies
 of the Lamanites are marching towards the city of
 Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them, yea, and
 will destroy our people.

And it came to pass that our prisoners did hear their
 cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did
 rise up in rebellion against us.

And it came to pass because of their rebellion we did
 cause that our swords should come upon them. And it
 came to pass that they did in a body run upon our
 swords, in the which, the greater number of them were
 slain; and the remainder of them broke through and
 fled from us.

And behold, when they had fled and we could not
 overtake them, we took our march with speed towards
 the city Cumeni; and behold, we did arrive in time that
 we might assist our brethren in preserving the city.

And behold, we are again delivered out of the hands
 of our enemies. And blessed is the name of our God; for
 behold, it is he that has delivered us; yea, that has done
 this great thing for us.

Now it came to pass that when I, Helaman, had
 heard these words of Gid, I was filled with exceeding joy
 because of the goodness of God in preserving us, that
 we might not all perish; yea, and I trust that the souls of
 them who have been slain have entered into the rest of
 their God.

‘Alamā 58

- 1 Pea vakai, ko ‘eni na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ko ‘emau taumu‘a hono hokó ke ma‘u ‘a e kolo ko Manataí; kae vakai, na‘e ‘ikai ha founa ke taki ai ‘a kinautolu ke hū mai ki tu‘a mei he koló ‘aki ‘emau ngaahi kau tau tokosi‘í. He vakai, na‘a nau manatu‘i ‘a e me‘a kuo mau fai ki mu‘á; ko ia na‘e ‘ikai te mau lava ‘o tauhele‘i ‘a kinautolu ke nau hū mai ki tu‘a mei honau ngaahi kolotaú.
- 2 Pea na‘a nau fu‘u tokolahi ange ‘aupito ‘i he‘emau kau tau ko ia na‘a mau manavahē ke ‘alu atu ‘o tau‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘i honau ngaahi kolotaú.
- 3 ‘Io, pea na‘e ‘aonga ke mau ngāue ‘aki ‘emau kau tangatá ke malu‘i ‘a e ngaahi konga ko ia ‘o e fonua ‘a ia kuo mau toe ma‘u maí; ko ia na‘e ‘aonga ke mau tatali, koe‘uhi ke mau ma‘u ha toe kau tokoni mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá mo ha ngaahi me‘akai mo e nāunau fo‘ou foki.
- 4 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ku fekau atu ai ha kau talafekau ki he kōvana ‘o homau fonuá, ke fakamatala kiate ia ‘o kau ki he ngaahi me‘a ‘a homau kakaí. Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘a mau tatali ke ma‘u ha ngaahi me‘akai mo e nāunau mo ha tokoni mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá.
- 5 Kae vakai, na‘e ‘aonga si‘i pē ‘eni kiate kimautilu; koe‘uhi na‘e lolotonga ma‘u foki ‘e he kau Leimaná ‘a e fu‘u kau tau tokolahi ‘i he ‘aho ki he ‘aho, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo ha ngaahi me‘akai mo e nāunau lahi; pea ko e ngaahi tu‘unga ‘eni ‘a ia na‘a mau ‘i ai ‘i he taimi ko ‘ení.
- 6 Pea na‘e toutou ‘oho mai ‘a e kau Leimaná kiate kimautilu mei he taimi ki he taimi, kuo nau fakapapau ‘i ha tauhele ke faka‘auha ‘a kimautilu; ka neongo iá na‘e ‘ikai te mau lava ke ‘alu atu ‘o tau mo kinautilu, koe‘uhi ko honau ngaahi hūfangá mo honau ngaahi kolotaú.
- 7 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘a mau tatali ‘i he ngaahi tu‘unga faingata‘a ko ‘eni ‘i he ngaahi māhina lahi, kae ‘oua kuo mau meimei mate ‘i he masiva me‘akai.

Alma 58

And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but behold, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.

And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.

Yea, and it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land which we had regained of our possessions; therefore it became expedient that we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.

And it came to pass that I thus did send an embassy to the governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. And it came to pass that we did wait to receive provisions and strength from the land of Zarahemla.

But behold, this did profit us but little; for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day, and also many provisions; and thus were our circumstances at this period of time.

And the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us; nevertheless we could not come to battle with them, because of their retreats and their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.

- 8 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau ma'u ha me'akai, 'a ia na'e le'ohi hono 'omi kiate kimautolú 'e ha kau tau 'e toko ua afe ke tokoni kiate kimautolu; pea ko hono kotoa 'eni 'o e tokoni na'a mau ma'u ke malu'i 'a kimautolu mo homau fonuá mei he tō ki he nima 'o homau ngaahi filí, 'io, ke tau mo ha fili 'a ia na'e ta'efa'alaua.
- 9 Pea ko 'eni ko e tupu'anga 'o e ngaahi me'a fakamaá ni kiate kimautolu, pe ko hono 'uhinga 'o e 'ikai te nau 'omi ai ha tokoni lahi ange kiate kimautolú, na'e 'ikai te mau 'ilo; ko ia na'a mau loto-mamahi ai pea mau fonu foki 'i he ilifia, telia na'a 'iloange kuo hoko mai 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a e 'Otuá ki homau fonuá, 'o fakatupu ai homau ikuna'i mo e faka'auha ke 'osi'osingamālie.
- 10 Ko ia na'a mau fakahā hake homau laumālié 'i he lotu ki he 'Otuá, ke ne fakamālohi'i 'a kimautolu mo fakahaofi 'a kimautolu mei he nima 'o homau ngaahi filí, 'io, pea tuku mai foki kiate kimautolu ha mālohi ke mau lava 'o tauhi ma'u homau ngaahi koló, mo homau ngaahi fonuá, mo 'emau ngaahi koloá, koe'uhi ke tauhi 'aki homau kakaí.
- 11 'Io, pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'a 'ahi mai 'a e 'Eiki ko homau 'Otuá kiate kimautolu 'aki 'a e ongo'i fakapapau te ne fakahaofi 'a kimautolu; 'io, 'o ne folofola ai 'aki 'a e fiemālie ki homau laumālié, 'o ne foaki mai kiate kimautolu 'a e tui lahi, 'o ne fakatupu 'emau 'amanaki lelei ki homau fakahaofi 'iate iá.
- 12 Pea na'a mau ma'u ha loto-to'a mo 'emau kau tau tokosi'i kuo mau ma'ú, pea na'a mau fakapapau ke ikuna'i homau ngaahi filí, pea malu'i homau ngaahi fonuá, mo 'emau ngaahi koloá, mo homau ngaahi uaifí, mo 'emau fānaú, mo 'emau tau'atāina.
- 13 Pea ko ia na'a mau 'alu atu 'aki homau tūkingatá ke tau'i 'a e kau Leimana, 'a ia na'e 'i he kolo ko Manataí; pea na'a mau fokotu'u homau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'i he tafa'aki ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'a ia na'e ofi ki he koló.
- 14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he pongipongi haké, 'i he mamata 'a e kau Leimaná 'oku mau 'i he tafa'aki 'o e ngaahi ngata'anga fonuá 'o ofi ki he feitu'u maomaonganoa 'a ia na'e ofi ki he koló, na'a nau fekau atu 'enau kau matakí ke 'alu takatakai 'iate kimautolu koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo 'a e tokolahi mo hono mālohi 'o 'emau kau taú.

But it came to pass that we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance; and this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies, yea, to contend with an enemy which was innumerable.

And now the cause of these our embarrassments, or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us, we knew not; therefore we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction.

Therefore we did pour out our souls in prayer to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, yea, and also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people.

Yea, and it came to pass that the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us; yea, inasmuch that he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him.

And we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty.

And thus we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, that when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city, that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number and the strength of our army.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'enau vakai 'oku 'ikai te mau mālohí, 'o fakatatau ki homau tokolahí, pea 'i he 'enau manavahē telia na'a mau motuhi 'a kinautolu mei honau tokoní tuku kehe kapau te nau hū mai ki tu'a ke tau mo kinautolu mo tāmāte 'i 'a kinautolú, pea 'i he 'enau mahalo foki 'e faingofua 'enau faka'auha pē 'a kinautolu 'aki 'enau fu'u kau tau tokolahi 'aupitó, ko ia na'a nau kamata ai ke fai ha ngaahi teuteu ke hū mai ki tu'a ke tau mo kinautolu.

16 Pea 'i he 'enau vakai 'oku nau fai ha ngaahi teuteu ke hū mai ki tu'a ke tau mo kinautolú, vakai, na'á ku fekau ke toitoi 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá 'a Kiti, mo ha kau tangata tokosí 'i, pea ke toitoi foki mo Teomena mo ha kau tangata tokosí 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

17 Ko 'eni na'e 'i he to'omata'ú 'a Kiti mo 'ene kau tangatá pea 'i he to'ohemá 'a e fa'ahinga 'e tahá; pea hili 'enau fufuu 'i pehē 'a kinautolú, vakai, na'á ku nofo, mo hono toe 'o 'eku kau taú, 'i he potu pē ko ia 'a ia na'a mau mu'aki fokotu'u ai homau ngaahi fale fehikitakí ke teuteu ki he taimi 'a ia 'e hū mai ai ki tu'a 'a e kau Leimaná ke tau.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hū mai ki tu'a 'a e kau Leimaná mo 'enau kau tau tokolahí ke tau 'i 'a kinautolu. Pea 'i he 'enau ha'u 'o teuteu ke 'oho mai kiate kinautolu mo e heletaá, na'á ku fekau ki he 'eku kau tangata, 'a ia na'e 'iate aú, ke mau hola ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e muimui 'a e kau Leimaná 'iate kinautolu 'o fu'u vave 'aupito, he na'a nau fu'u faka'amu lahi 'aupito ke ma'u 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ke nau tāmāte 'i 'a kinautolu; ko ia na'a nau muimui 'iate kinautolu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá; pea mau laka mai ai 'i he vaha 'a 'o Kiti mo Teomená, pea na'e 'ikai ke 'ilo 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Leimaná.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he fakalaka atu 'a e kau Leimaná, pe 'i he fakalaka atu 'a e kau taú, na'e tu'u hake 'a Kiti mo Teomena mei hona toitoi'angá, 'o nau ta'ofi 'a e kau matakí 'a e kau Leimaná ke 'oua te nau foki ki he koló.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'enau ta'ofi 'a kinautolú, na'a nau lele ki he koló, 'o fe'ohofi atu ki he kau le'o 'a ia kuo tuku ke malu 'i 'a e koló, ko ia na'a nau faka'auha ai 'a kinautolu 'o ma'u 'a e koló.

And it came to pass that when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.

And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.

Now Gid and his men were on the right and the others on the left; and when they had thus secreted themselves, behold, I remained, with the remainder of my army, in that same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us. And when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed, for they were exceedingly desirous to overtake us that they might slay us; therefore they did follow us into the wilderness; and we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, insomuch that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.

And it came to pass that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.

22 Ko 'eni na'e fai 'eni koe'uhi na'e tuku 'e he kau
Leimaná 'a 'enau kau tau kotoa, tuku kehe ha kau le'ó
tokosi'i pē, ke taki atu ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ma'u 'e Kiti mo Teomena 'i
he founga ko 'ení 'a honau ngaahi kolotaú. Pea na'e
hoko 'o pehē na'a mau 'alu atu, hili ha'amau fononga
fuoloa 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá, ki he fonua ko
Seilahemalá.

24 Pea 'i he vakai 'a e kau Leimaná 'oku nau laka atu ki he
fonua ko Seilahemalá, na'a nau fu'u manavahē lahi, telia
na'a kuo 'i ai ha fakakaukau kuo fokotu'u ke tauhele'i 'a
kinautolu ki he faka'auhá; ko ia na'a nau kamata ke
holomui ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'io, 'i he hala pē
ko ia 'a ia na'a nau ha'u aí.

25 Pea vakai, kuo hokosia 'a e po'ulí pea nau fokotu'u
honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí, he na'e mahalo 'e he kau
'eikitau pule 'o e kau Leimaná kuo ongosia 'a e kau Nífaí
koe'uhi ko 'enau laká; pea nau mahalo kuo nau tuli
'enau kau tau kotoa ko ia na'e 'ikai te nau fakakaukau ai
'o kau ki he kolo ko Manataí.

26 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hokosia 'a e po'ulí, na'a
ku fekau ke 'oua na'a mohe 'a 'eku kau tangatá, ka ke
nau laka atu 'i ha hala kehe ki he fonua ko Manataí.

27 Pea koe'uhi ko e me'a 'i he 'emau laka 'i he po'ulí,
vakai, 'i he 'aho hono hokó kuo mau mu'omu'a 'i he kau
Leimaná, pea mau a'u ai 'i mu'a 'iate kinautolu ki he
kolo ko Manataí.

28 Pea ko ia na'e hoko 'o pehē, na'a mau lava 'i he founga
ko 'ení 'o ma'u 'a e kolo ko Manataí ta'e-'i ai-ha-lilingi 'o
e toto.

29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he a'u mai 'a e kau tau 'a e kau
Leimaná 'o ofi ki he koló, pea nau vakai kuo mau
mateuteu ke fetaulaki mo kinautolú, na'a nau fu'u
'ohovale 'aupito pea na'e tō kiate kinautolu 'a e fu'u ilifia
lahi, pea tupu ai 'enau hola ki he feitu'u
maomaonganoá.

30 'Io, pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hola 'a e kau tau 'a e kau
Leimaná mei he potu ko ia kotoa 'o e fonuá. Kae vakai,
na'a nau 'ave mo kinautolu mei he fonuá 'a e kakai fefine
mo e fānau tokolahi.

Now this was done because the Lamanites did suffer
their whole army, save a few guards only, to be led away
into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that Gid and Teomner by this
means had obtained possession of their strongholds.
And it came to pass that we took our course, after hav-
ing traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of
Zarahemla.

And when the Lamanites saw that they were march-
ing towards the land of Zarahemla, they were exceed-
ingly afraid, lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to
destruction; therefore they began to retreat into the
wilderness again, yea, even back by the same way which
they had come.

And behold, it was night and they did pitch their
tents, for the chief captains of the Lamanites had sup-
posed that the Nephites were weary because of their
march; and supposing that they had driven their whole
army therefore they took no thought concerning the
city of Manti.

Now it came to pass that when it was night, I caused
that my men should not sleep, but that they should
march forward by another way towards the land of
Manti.

And because of this our march in the night-time, be-
hold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, in-
somuch that we did arrive before them at the city of
Manti.

And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we
did take possession of the city of Manti without the
shedding of blood.

And it came to pass that when the armies of the
Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were
prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceed-
ingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did
flee into the wilderness.

Yea, and it came to pass that the armies of the
Lamanites did flee out of all this quarter of the land.
But behold, they have carried with them many women
and children out of the land.

31 Pea ko e ngaahi kolo ko ia na'e fa'ao'e he kau
 Leimaná, 'oku mau lolotonga ma'u 'a e ngaahi kolo
 kotoa ko íá 'i he taimi ko 'ení, pea 'oku lolotonga foki
 mai 'a 'emau ngaahi tamaí, mo homau kakai fefiné, mo
 'emau fānaú kotoa pē ki honau ngaahi 'apí, tuku kehe
 pē 'a kinautolu kuo 'ave pōpula mo fetuku atu 'e he kau
 Leimaná.

32 Kae vakai, 'oku tokosi 'i 'emau ngaahi kau taú ke
 malu 'i ha ngaahi kolo lahi mo e ngaahi fonua lahi pehē.

33 Kae vakai, 'oku mau falala ki homau 'Otuá 'a ia kuó
 ne foaki kiate kimautilu 'a e ikuna ki he ngaahi fonua
 ko íá, 'o mau ma'u ai 'a e ngaahi kolo ko íá mo e ngaahi
 fonua ko íá, 'a ia na'e 'otautolú.

34 Ko 'eni, 'oku 'ikai te mau 'ilo 'a e 'uhinga 'oku 'ikai ai
 ke toe tuku mai kiate kimautilu 'e he pule'angá ha toe
 kau tau ke tokoni mai; pea 'oku 'ikai foki ke 'ilo 'i 'e he
 kau tangata ko ia 'a ia na'e o mai kiate kimautilu hono
 'uhinga 'oku te'eki ai ke mau ma'u ai mo ha toe kau taú.

35 Vakai, 'oku 'ikai te mau 'ilo na'a kuo 'ikai te mou
 ikuna, pea kuo mou 'ave 'a e kau taú ki he potu ko 'ena 'o
 e fonuá; kapau 'oku pehē, 'oku 'ikai te mau fie lāunga.

36 Pea kapau 'oku 'ikai ke pehē, vakai, 'oku mau
 manavahē na'a 'oku ai ha feke'ike 'i 'i he pule'angá, ko ia
 'oku 'ikai ai te nau 'omi mo ha kau tau ke tokoni 'i 'a
 kimautilu; he 'oku mau 'ilo 'oku nau tokolahi ange 'i he
 tokolahi 'a ia kuo nau 'omí.

37 Kae vakai, 'oku tatau ai pē—'oku mau tui 'e fakahaofi
 'a kimautilu 'e he 'Otuá, neongo 'a e vaivai 'a 'emau
 ngaahi kau taú, 'io, pea fakahaofi 'a kimautilu mei he
 nima 'o homau ngaahi filí.

38 Vakai, ko hono uofulu mā hiva 'eni 'o e ta'ú, 'i hono
 kongá ki muí, pea 'oku mau ma'u homau ngaahi fonuá;
 pea kuo hola 'a e kau Leimaná ki he fonua ko Nífaí.

39 Pea ko e ngaahi foha ko ia 'o e kakai 'o 'Āmoni, 'a ia
 kuo lahi pehē fau 'a 'eku vīkiviki 'i, 'oku nau 'iate au 'i he
 kolo ko Manataí; pea kuo poupou 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he
 'Eikí, 'io, 'o ne ta'ofi 'a kinautolu mei he tō 'i he heletá,
 'o 'a'u ki he 'ikai ke tō hanau toko taha.

And those cities which had been taken by the
 Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our
 possession; and our fathers and our women and our
 children are returning to their homes, all save it be those
 who have been taken prisoners and carried off by the
 Lamanites.

But behold, our armies are small to maintain so great
 a number of cities and so great possessions.

But behold, we trust in our God who has given us
 victory over those lands, insomuch that we have ob-
 tained those cities and those lands, which were our
 own.

Now we do not know the cause that the government
 does not grant us more strength; neither do those men
 who came up unto us know why we have not received
 greater strength.

Behold, we do not know but what ye are unsuccess-
 ful, and ye have drawn away the forces into that quarter
 of the land; if so, we do not desire to murmur.

And if it is not so, behold, we fear that there is some
 faction in the government, that they do not send more
 men to our assistance; for we know that they are more
 numerous than that which they have sent.

But, behold, it mattereth not—we trust God will de-
 liver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies,
 yea, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.

Behold, this is the twenty and ninth year, in the latter
 end, and we are in the possession of our lands; and the
 Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi.

And those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I
 have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti;
 and the Lord has supported them, yea, and kept them
 from falling by the sword, insomuch that even one soul
 has not been slain.

40 Kae vakai, kuo 'i ai hanau ngaahi kafo lahi; ka neongo ia, 'oku nau tu'u ma'u 'i he tau'atāina ko ia kuo fakatau'atāina 'i 'aki 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Otuá; pea 'oku nau fu'u tokanga lahi ke manatu 'i 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá mei he 'aho ki he 'aho; 'io, 'oku nau tokanga ke tauhi 'a 'ene ngaahi tu'utu'uní, mo hono ngaahi finangaló, mo 'ene ngaahi fekaú ma'u ai pē; pea 'oku mālohi 'enau tui ki he ngaahi kikite 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'a 'e hokó.

41 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku tokoua 'ofeina, ko Molonai, 'ofa ange ke hanga 'e he 'Eiki ko hota 'Otuá 'a ia na'á ne huhu 'i 'a kitaua mo fakatau'atāina 'i 'a kitauá, 'o tauhi koe ma'u ai pē 'i hono 'aó; 'io, pea 'ofa ange ke ne tāpuaki 'i 'a e kakaí ni, koe'uhi ke mou lava 'o ma'u 'a e mālohi ki he ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuo fa'ao 'e he kau Leimaná meiate kitautolú, 'a ia na'e 'aonga ke tauhi 'aki 'a kitautolú. Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'oku ou faka'osi 'eku tohí. Ko au Hilamani, ko e foha 'o 'Alamaá.

But behold, they have received many wounds; nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty wherewith God has made them free; and they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day; yea, they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually; and their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come.

And now, my beloved brother, Moroni, may the Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us free, keep you continually in his presence; yea, and may he favor this people, even that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all that which the Lamanites have taken from us, which was for our support. And now, behold, I close mine epistle. I am Helaman, the son of Alma.

‘Alamā 59

- 1 Ko ‘eni, na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i hono tolungofulu ‘o e ta‘u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai ‘o Nīfai, hili ‘a e ma‘u ‘e Molonai mo lau ‘a e tohi ‘a Hilamaní, na‘á ne fu‘u fiefia ‘aupito koe‘uhi ko e lelei, ‘io, ko e fu‘u lavame‘a lahi kuo ma‘u ‘e Hilamani ‘i he ma‘u ‘a e ngaahi fonua ko ia na‘e molé.
- 2 ‘Io, pea na‘á ne fakahā ia ki hono kakaí kotoa, ‘i he fonua kotoa ‘oku takatakai ki he potu ‘a ia na‘á ne ‘i aí, koe‘uhi ke nau fiefia foki mo kinautolu.
- 3 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ne ‘oatu leva ha tohi kia Peiholani, ‘o kole ke ne fekau ke tānaki ha kau tangata ke tokoni kia Hilamani, pe ko e ngaahi kau tau ‘a Hilamaní, koe‘uhi ke faingofua ‘ene malu ‘i ‘a e potu ko ia ‘o e fonuá ‘a ia kuo fakafo pehē fau ‘ene lava ‘o toe ma‘u maí.
- 4 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili hono ‘oatu ‘e Molonai ‘a e tohi ni ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, na‘á ne kamata ke fakakaukau ‘i ha founga ke ne lava ai ‘o ma‘u hono toe ‘o e ngaahi tofi ‘a mo e ngaahi kolo ‘a ia kuo fa‘ao ‘e he kau Leimaná meiate kinautolú.
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he lolotonga fai ‘e Molonai ‘a e ngaahi teuteu ke ‘alu atu ‘o tau mo e kau Leimaná, vakai, ko e kakai ‘o Nīfaihaá, ‘a ia na‘a nau kātoa mai mei he kolo ko Molonai mo e kolo ko Lihai mo e kolo ko Molianitoni, na‘e ‘ohofi ‘a kinautolu ‘e he kau Leimaná.
- 6 ‘Io, ‘a e fa‘ahinga ko ia kuo ngaohi ke hola mei he fonua ko Manataí mo e fonua takatakai ki aí, kuo nau ha‘u ‘o kau fakataha mo e kau Leimana ‘i he potu ko ia ‘o e fonuá.
- 7 Pea ko e me‘a ‘i he ‘enau fu‘u tokolahi peheé, ‘io, pea ‘i he ‘enau ma‘u ha tokoni mei he ‘aho ki he ‘ahó, na‘a nau ō mai ‘i he fekau ‘a ‘Amolone ke tau mo e kakai ‘o Nīfaihaá, pea na‘a nau kamata ke tāmata ‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘i ha fu‘u faka‘auha lahi.
- 8 Pea na‘e pehē fau hono tokolahi ‘o ‘enau ngaahi kau tau, na‘e pau ke hola ‘a hono toe ‘o e kakai ‘o Nīfaihaá meiate kinautolu; pea na‘a nau ha‘u ‘o fakataha mo e kau tau ‘a Molonai.

Alma 59

Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, after Moroni had received and had read Helaman’s epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare, yea, the exceeding success which Helaman had had, in obtaining those lands which were lost.

Yea, and he did make it known unto all his people, in all the land round about in that part where he was, that they might rejoice also.

And it came to pass that he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran, desiring that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen Helaman, or the armies of Helaman, insomuch that he might with ease maintain that part of the land which he had been so miraculously prospered in regaining.

And it came to pass when Moroni had sent this epistle to the land of Zarahemla, he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions and cities which the Lamanites had taken from them.

And it came to pass that while Moroni was thus making preparations to go against the Lamanites to battle, behold, the people of Nephiah, who were gathered together from the city of Moroni and the city of Lehi and the city of Morianton, were attacked by the Lamanites.

Yea, even those who had been compelled to flee from the land of Manti, and from the land round about, had come over and joined the Lamanites in this part of the land.

And thus being exceedingly numerous, yea, and receiving strength from day to day, by the command of Ammoron they came forth against the people of Nephiah, and they did begin to slay them with an exceedingly great slaughter.

And their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people of Nephiah were obliged to flee before them; and they came even and joined the army of Moroni.

9 Pea ko 'eni 'i he mahalo 'e Molonai 'oku totonu ke fekau ke 'alu ha kau tangata ki he kolo ko Nīfaihaá, ke tokoni ki he kakaí 'i hono malu 'i 'o e kolo ko iá, pea 'i he 'ene 'ilo 'i 'oku faingofua ange ke malu 'i 'a e koló mei ha 'ane tō ki he nima 'o e kau Leimaná 'i hano toe fa 'ao ia meiate kinautolu, ko ia na 'á ne mahalo ai 'e faingofua ke nau malu 'i 'a e kolo ko iá.

10 Ko ia na 'á ne tauhi 'a 'ene kau taú kotoa ke malu 'i 'a e ngaahi feitu 'u 'a ia kuó ne toe ma 'ú.

11 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he vakai 'a Molonai kuo mole 'a e kolo ko Nīfaihaá, na 'á ne fu 'u loto-mamahi 'aupito, 'o ne kamata ke veiveiua, tu 'unga 'i he fai angahala 'a e kakaí, pe 'oku 'ikai ke lelei ke nau tō ki he nima 'o honau kāingá.

12 Ko 'eni na 'e pehē mo 'ene kau 'eikitaupulé kotoa pē. Na 'a nau veiveiua pea nau ofo foki koe 'uhi ko e fai angahala 'a e kakaí, pea na 'e tupu ia 'i he fu 'u ikuna lahi 'a e kau Leimaná 'iate kinautolú.

13 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē na 'e 'ita 'a Molonai ki he pulé'angá, koe 'uhi ko 'enau ta 'etokanga ki he tau 'atāina 'o honau fonuá.

And now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city of Nephiah, to the assistance of the people to maintain that city, and knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

Therefore he retained all his force to maintain those places which he had recovered.

And now, when Moroni saw that the city of Nephiah was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren.

Now this was the case with all his chief captains. They doubted and marveled also because of the wickedness of the people, and this because of the success of the Lamanites over them.

And it came to pass that Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

‘Alamā 6o

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ne toe tohi ki he pule ‘o e fonuá, ‘a ia ko Peiholani, pea ko e ngaahi lea ‘eni ‘a ia na‘á ne tohi, ‘o pehē: Vakai, ‘oku ou fai ‘eku tohi kia Peiholani, ‘i he kolo ko Seilahemalá, ‘a ia ko e fakamaau lahi mo e pule ki he fonuá, pea kiate kinautolu kotoa pē foki kuo fili ‘e he kakaí ni ke pule ‘i mo angi ‘a e ngaahi me‘a ‘o e tau ko ‘ení.
- 2 He vakai, ‘oku ‘i ai ha‘aku ngaahi me‘a ‘e ni‘ihi ke lea ‘aki kiate kinautolu ‘i hano talatalaaki‘i; he vakai, ‘oku mou ‘ilo‘i ‘e kimoutolu kuo fili ‘a kimoutolu ke tãnaki fakataha ha kau tangata, pea fakamahafu ‘a kinautolu ‘aki ‘a e ngaahi heletã, mo e ngaahi hele piko, mo e ngaahi fa‘ahinga mahafu tau kehekehe kotoa pē, pea fekau‘i atu ‘a kinautolu ke tau mo e kau Leimaná, ‘i ha potu te nau hũ mai ai ki hotau fonuá.
- 3 Pea ko ‘eni vakai, ‘oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu ko au, mo ‘eku kau tangatá foki, mo Hilamani foki mo ‘ene kau tangatá, kuo mau fu‘u faingata‘a‘ia ‘i he ngaahi mamahi lahi fau; ‘io, na‘a mo e fiekaia, mo e fieinuá, mo e ongosia, pea mo e fa‘ahinga kotoa pē ‘o e ngaahi mamahi kehekehe.
- 4 Kae vakai, ka ne ko e ngaahi me‘a pē ‘eni kuo mau mamahi‘ia aí pehē kuo ‘ikai te mau lãunga pe hanu.
- 5 Kae vakai, kuo lahi ‘a e tãmaté ‘i hotau kakaí; ‘io, kuo tō ‘a e ngaahi toko afe ‘i he heletã, ka na‘e mei kehe ia ‘o kapau na‘a mou tuku mai ha kau tau fe‘unga ki he‘emau ngaahi kau tau pea mo e tokoni kiate kinautolu. ‘Io, kuo lahi ho‘omou ta‘etokanga kiate kimautolú.
- 6 Pea ko ‘eni vakai, ‘oku mau loto ke ‘ilo ki hono ‘uhinga ‘o e fu‘u ta‘etokanga lahi ko ‘ení; ‘io, ‘oku mau loto ke ‘ilo ki he ‘uhinga ‘o ho‘omou ta‘efaka‘atu‘i.
- 7 ‘Oku mou pehē koã te mou lava ‘o nofo ‘i homou ngaahi nofo‘anga faka‘ei‘eiki ‘i he fakakaukau ta‘etokanga, lolotonga ia ‘oku fakamafola ‘e homou ngaahi filí‘a e tãmaté, ‘o takatakai ‘iate kimoutolu? ‘Io, lolotonga ‘enau fakapoongi ‘a e ngaahi toko afe ‘o homou kãingá—

Alma 6o

And it came to pass that he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran, and these are the words which he wrote, saying: Behold, I direct mine epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

For behold, I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation; for behold, ye yourselves know that ye have been appointed to gather together men, and arm them with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war of every kind, and send forth against the Lamanites, in whatsoever parts they should come into our land.

And now behold, I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; yea, even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

But behold, were this all we had suffered we would not murmur nor complain.

But behold, great has been the slaughter among our people; yea, thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for them. Yea, great has been your neglect towards us.

And now behold, we desire to know the cause of this exceedingly great neglect; yea, we desire to know the cause of your thoughtless state.

Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you? Yea, while they are murdering thousands of your brethren—

8 'Io, na'a mo kinautolu na'a nau hanga hake kiate kimoutolu ke ma'u ha malu'i, 'io, na'a nau fili 'a kimoutolu ki ha tu'unga ke mou lava ai 'o tokoni kiate kinautolu, 'io, na'a mou mei lava ke 'oatu ha ngaahi kau tau kiate kinautolu, ke tokoni kiate kinautolu, pea fakahaofi ai hanau ngaahi toko afe mei he tō 'i he heletā.

9 Kae vakai, 'oku 'ikai ia ko ia pē—ka kuo mou ta'ofi ho'omou ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunaú meiate kinautolu, ko ia kuo 'i ai ha tokolahi kuo nau tau pea tafe honau totó 'o mole 'enau mo'uí koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi holi lahi na'a nau ma'u ke lelei 'a e kakaí ni; 'io, pea kuo nau fai 'eni 'i he' enau 'amanaki ke mate 'i he fiekaia, koe'uhi ko ho'omou fu'u ta'etokanga lahi kiate kinautolú.

10 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina—he 'oku totonu ke 'ofeina 'a kimoutolu; 'io, pea na'e totonu ke mou fakaake 'a kimoutolu ke tokanga 'o faivelenga ange ki he lelei mo e tau'atāina 'a e kakaí ni; kae vakai, kuo mou ta'etokanga kiate kinautolu pea 'e tō ai ki homou 'ulú 'i he sāuni 'a e toto 'o e ngaahi toko afe; 'io, he kuo 'afio 'i 'e he 'Otuá 'a 'enau ngaahi tangi kotoa pē mo 'enau ngaahi mamahí kotoa—

11 Vakai, te mou malava koā ke mahalo te mou lava 'o nofo 'i homou ngaahi nofo 'anga faka'eí'eikí, pea ko e me'a 'i he fu'u angalelei lahi 'a e 'Otuá 'e 'ikai te mou lava ai ke ta'efai ha me'a pea te ne fakahaofi pē 'a kimoutolu? Vakai, kapau kuo mou mahalo pehē, kuo ta'e'aonga ho'omou mahaló.

12 'Oku mou mahalo koā, koe'uhi ko e tāmata'e 'i 'o e fu'u tokolahi pehē 'o homou kāingá 'oku tupu ia 'i he' enau fai angahala? 'Oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau kuo mou mahalo pehē, kuo ta'e'aonga ho'omou mahaló; he 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku 'i ai 'a e tokolahi kuo tō 'i he heletā; pea vakai, 'oku hoko ia ko homou fakahalaia'i.

13 He 'oku tuku 'e he 'Eikí ke tāmata'e 'i 'a e kau mā'oni'oni koe'uhi ke fakahoko 'ene fakamaau totonú mo e tauteá ki he kau fai angahalá; ko ia 'oku 'ikai 'aonga ke mou mahalo kuo mole 'a e kau mā'oni'oni koe'uhi he kuo nau maté; kae vakai, 'oku nau hū ki he mālōlō'anga 'o e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá.

Yea, even they who have looked up to you for protection, yea, have placed you in a situation that ye might have succored them, yea, ye might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them, and have saved thousands of them from falling by the sword.

But behold, this is not all—ye have withheld your provisions from them, insomuch that many have fought and bled out their lives because of their great desires which they had for the welfare of this people; yea, and this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger, because of your exceedingly great neglect towards them.

And now, my beloved brethren—for ye ought to be beloved; yea, and ye ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the freedom of this people; but behold, ye have neglected them insomuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance; yea, for known unto God were all their cries, and all their sufferings—

Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain.

Do ye suppose that, because so many of your brethren have been killed it is because of their wickedness? I say unto you, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain; for I say unto you, there are many who have fallen by the sword; and behold it is to your condemnation;

For the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice and judgment may come upon the wicked; therefore ye need not suppose that the righteous are lost because they are slain; but behold, they do enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

- 14 Pea ko 'eni, vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku ou fu'u manavahē lahi 'aupito telia na'a hoko mai 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a e 'Otuá ki he kakai ni, koe'uhi ko 'enua fu'u fakapikopiko lahi, 'io, na'a mo e fakapikopiko 'a hotau pule'angá, mo 'enua fu'u ta'etokanga lahi ki honau kāingá, 'io, kiate kinautolu 'a ia kuo maté.
- 15 He ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e fai angahala 'a ia na'e mu'aki kamata 'i hotau kau takí, pehē kuo tau malava ke matu'uaki 'a hotau ngaahi filí ke 'oua te nau ma'u ha mālohi kiate kitautolu.
- 16 'Io, ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e tau, 'a ia na'e tupu 'iate kitautolú; 'io, ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e kau tangata tu'i, 'a ia na'e fakatupu 'a e fu'u lilingi toto lahi 'iate kitautolú; 'io, 'i he taimi 'a ia na'a tau fetau 'aki ai 'iate kitautolú, ka ne tau fakataha 'i hotau mālohí 'o hangē kuo tau fai ki mu'á; 'io, ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e fie ma'u 'a e mālohi mo e mafái 'e he kau tangata tu'i ko ía meiate kitautolu; ka ne nau mateaki 'i hono totonu 'o 'etau tau'atāiná, 'o kau fakataha mo kitautolu, mo 'alu atu ke tau mo hotau ngaahi filí, kae 'ikai to'o hake 'enua ngaahi heletaá ke tau 'i 'a kitautolu, 'a ia ko e tupu'anga 'o e lilingi 'o e fu'u toto lahi 'iate kitautolu; 'io, ka ne tau ō atu ke tau 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he māfima'í 'o e 'Eikí, pehē kuo tau fakamovetevete hotau ngaahi filí, pea ne mei hoko ia, 'o fakatatau ki hono fakamo'oni 'i 'o 'ene folofolá.
- 17 Kae vakai, 'oku 'oho mai 'eni 'a e kau Leimaná kiate kitautolu, 'o fa'ao hotau ngaahi fonuá, pea 'oku nau fakapoongi hotau kakai 'aki 'a e heletā, 'io, ko hotau kakai fefiné mo 'etau fānaú, pea nau 'ave pōpula foki 'a kinautolu, pea 'oku nau ngaohi 'a kinautolu ke mamahi 'i he ngaahi faingata 'a kehekehe kotoa pē, pea 'oku hoko 'eni koe'uhí ko e fu'u fai angahala lahi 'anautolu 'oku kumi ki he mālohi mo e mafái, 'io, 'a e kau tangata tu'i ko ía.
- 18 Ka ko e 'uma'ā ha'aku lea lahi ki he me'á ni? He 'oku 'ikai te mau 'ilo na'a 'oku mou feinga kimoutolu ke ma'u 'a e mafái. 'Oku 'ikai te mau 'ilo na'a ko e kau lavaki foki mo kimoutolu ki homou fonuá.
- 19 Pe ko ho'omou ta'etokanga 'i 'a kimautilu koe'uhi ko ho'omou nofo 'i he loto fonuá pea 'oku takatakai 'iate kimoutolu 'a e malú, pea 'oku 'ikai ai te mou fekau ke 'omi ha me'akai kiate kimautilu, kae 'uma'ā foki ha kau tangata ke tokoni ki he'emaui ngaahi kau tau?

And now behold, I say unto you, I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness, yea, even the slothfulness of our government, and their exceedingly great neglect towards their brethren, yea, towards those who have been slain.

For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us.

Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; yea, were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; yea, had it not been for the desire of power and authority which those king-men had over us; had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us, and gone forth against our enemies, instead of taking up their swords against us, which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word.

But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority, yea, even those king-men.

But why should I say much concerning this matter? For we know not but what ye yourselves are seeking for authority. We know not but what ye are also traitors to your country.

Or is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country and ye are surrounded by security, that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies?

20 Kuo ngalo koā 'iate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eiki ko homou 'Otuá? 'Io, kuo ngalo koā 'iate kimoutolu 'a e pōpula 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí? Kuo ngalo koā 'iate kimoutolu hono tu' o lahi 'a hono fakahaofi 'a kitautolu mei he nima 'o hotau ngaahi filí?

21 Pe 'oku mou mahalo koā 'e kei fakahaofi ai pē 'a kitautolu 'e he 'Eiki, lolotonga 'etau nofo 'i hotau ngaahi nofo 'a faka'eí'eiki' pea 'ikai faka'aonga 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo foaki 'e he 'Eiki ma'atautolú?

22 'Io, te mou nofo noa koā lolotonga hono takatakai 'a kimoutolu 'e he toko lau afe 'o kinautolu, 'io, mo e toko lau mano, 'a ia 'oku nofo noa foki, ka 'oku 'i ai 'a e toko lau afe 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonuá 'oku lolotonga tō 'i he heletā, 'io, 'o nau lavea pea tafe honau totó?

23 'Oku mou mahalo koā 'e lau 'e he 'Otuá 'oku mou ta'ehalaia lolotonga ho'omou nofo ma' u 'o mamata ki he ngaahi me'a ní? Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai. Ko 'eni 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou manatu kuo folofola 'e he 'Otuá kuo pau ke tomu'a fakama'a 'a e loto ipú, pea toki fakama'a 'a e tu'a ipú foki.

24 Pea ko 'eni, kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala mei he me'a kuo mou fai, pea kamata ke mou tu'u hake 'o fai ha me'a, pea 'omi ha kau tangata mo e me'akai kiate kimaotolu mo Hilamani foki, koe'uhi ke ne fakamālohi 'i 'a e ngaahi potu fonua 'a ia kuó ne toe ma'ú, pea ke mau toe ma'ú foki mo hono toe 'o homau ngaahi tofi 'a 'i he ngaahi potu fonua ko 'eni, vakai 'e 'ikai toe 'aonga leva ke mau tau mo e kau Leimaná kae 'oua kuo mau 'uluaki fakama'a 'a e loto ipú, 'io, 'a e kau taki 'o hotau pule'angá.

25 Pea kapau 'e 'ikai te mou tali 'a 'eku tohi ní, pea mou ō mai 'o fakahā mai kiate au 'a e laumālie totonu 'o e tau'atāinā, pea feinga ke tokoni mo fakamālohi 'i 'etau ngaahi kau tau, pea foaki kiate kinautolu 'a e me'akai ke tauhi 'aki 'a kinautolu, vakai te u tuku ha kongá 'o 'eku kau tangata tau'atāinā ke malu 'i 'a e potu ko 'eni 'o hotau fonuá, pea te u tuku 'a e mālohi mo e ngaahi tāpuaki 'a e 'Otuá kiate kinautolu, ke 'oua na'a lava ke ta'ofi 'a kinautolu 'e ha toe mālohi kehe—

26 Pea te u fai 'eni koe'uhi ko 'enau fu'u tui lahi, mo 'enau kātaki 'i honau ngaahi faingata'á—

Have ye forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God? Yea, have ye forgotten the captivity of our fathers? Have ye forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?

Or do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?

Yea, will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those, yea, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, yea, wounded and bleeding?

Do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still and behold these things? Behold I say unto you, Nay. Now I would that ye should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.

And now, except ye do repent of that which ye have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those parts of our country which he has regained, and that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, yea, even the great head of our government.

And except ye grant mine epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a part of my freemen to maintain this part of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them—

And this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience in their tribulations—

27 Pea te u 'alu atu kiate kimoutolu, pea kapau 'oku 'iate kimoutolu ha taha 'a ia 'oku ma'u ha holi ki he tau'atāina, 'io, kapau 'oku kei 'i ai ha kihī'i tau'atāina si'i, vakai, te u fakatupu ha ngaahi angatu'u kiate kimoutolu kae 'oua ke 'auha 'o 'osi'osingamālie 'a e fa'ahinga 'oku fie fa'ao 'a e mālohī mo e mafai.

28 'Io, vakai 'oku 'ikai te u manavahē ki homou mālohī pe ko homou mafai, ka ko hoku 'Otuá pē 'oku ou manavahē ki ai; pea ko e me'a 'i he'ene ngaahi fekaú 'oku ou to'o hake ai 'eku heletaá ke malu'i hoku fonuá, pea 'oku tupu 'i ho'omou angahalá 'a 'emau faingata'a 'ia 'i ha mole lahi pehē.

29 Vakai kuo hokosia 'a e taimí, 'io, 'oku ofi mai 'a e taimí, kapau 'e 'ikai te mou ngāue ki hono malu'i 'o homou fonuá mo ho'omou fānau ikí, 'e tō kiate kimoutolu 'a e heletā 'o e fakamaau totonú; 'io, pea 'e tō ia kiate kimoutolu 'o tautea 'a kimoutolu kae 'oua ke mou 'auha 'aupito.

30 Vakai, 'oku ou tatali ki he tokoni meiate kimoutolu; pea ka 'ikai te mou tokoni mai kiate kimaoutolu, vakai te u 'alu atu kiate kimoutolu 'o a'u ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea taa'i 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e heletā, 'o a'u ki he 'ikai te mou toe ma'u ha mālohi ke ta'ofi 'a e laka ki mu'a 'a e kakai ni 'i he tu'uaki 'o 'etau tau'atāina.

31 He vakai, 'e 'ikai tuku 'e he 'Eikí ke mou mo'ui pea faka'au 'o mālohi 'i ho'omou ngaahi angahalá 'o faka'auha ai 'a hono kakai mā'oni'oni.

32 Vakai, te mou lava koā 'o 'amanaki 'e fakahaofi 'a kimoutolu 'e he 'Eikí pea hā'ele mai ke tautea 'a e kau Leimaná, ka kuo tupunga 'i he ngaahi talatukufakaholo 'a 'enua ngaahi tamaí 'a 'enua fehi'á, 'io, pea kuo fakalahi ia 'o liunga ua 'e kinautolu kuo mavahe atu meiate kitautolú, ka ko e tupunga ho'omou angahalá 'i ho'omou manako ki he fakamālō mo e ngaahi me'a va'inga 'o māmaní?

33 'Oku mou 'ilo'i 'oku mou maumau'i 'a e ngaahi fonu 'a e 'Otuá, pea 'oku mou 'ilo 'oku mou molomoloki hifo ia 'i homou lalo va'é. Vakai, 'oku folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kiate au: Kapau 'e 'ikai fakatomala 'a kinautolu 'a ia kuo mou fili ko homou kau kōvaná mei he'enua ngaahi angahalá mo e ngaahi hiá, kuo pau ke mou ō hake ke tau'i 'a kinautolu.

And I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, yea, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct.

Yea, behold I do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my God whom I fear; and it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country, and it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.

Behold it is time, yea, the time is now at hand, that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you; yea, and it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.

Behold, I wait for assistance from you; and, except ye do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even in the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword, insomuch that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.

For behold, the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.

Behold, can you suppose that the Lord will spare you and come out in judgment against the Lamanites, when it is the tradition of their fathers that has caused their hatred, yea, and it has been redoubled by those who have dissented from us, while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory and the vain things of the world?

Ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God, and ye do know that ye do trample them under your feet. Behold, the Lord saith unto me: If those whom ye have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities, ye shall go up to battle against them.

34 Pea ko 'eni vakai, ko au, Molonai, kuo fekau 'i au, 'o fakatatau mo e fuakava kuó u fai ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a hoku 'Otuá; ko ia 'oku ou loto ke mou pikitai ki he folofola 'a e 'Otuá, pea 'omi fakavavevave kiate au 'a ho'omou ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunaú mo ho'omou kau tangatá, pea kia Hilamani foki.

35 Pea vakai, kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fai 'eni te u 'alu atu fakavavevave kiate kimoutolu; he vakai, 'e 'ikai tuku 'e he 'Otuá ke mau mate 'i he fiekaia; ko ia, te ne foaki mai kiate kimaoutolu mei ho'omou me'akai, neongo pē 'o kapau 'e pau ke hoko ia 'i he heletā. Ko 'eni tokanga ke mou fai 'a e folofola 'a e 'Eikí.

36 Vakai, ko au Molonai, ko homou 'eikitau pulé. 'Oku 'ikai te u kumi ki he mālohi, ka ke holoki hifo ia. 'Oku 'ikai te u kumi ki he fakamālō 'a e māmaní, ka ki he lāngilangi 'o hoku 'Otuá mo e tau'atāina mo e lelei 'a hoku fonuá. Pea ko ia 'oku ou faka'osi 'eku tohí.

And now behold, I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God; therefore I would that ye should adhere to the word of God, and send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.

And behold, if ye will not do this I come unto you speedily; for behold, God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger; therefore he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword. Now see that ye fulfil the word of God.

Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. And thus I close mine epistle.

‘Alamā 61

- 1 Vakai, na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e fuoloa si‘i hili ‘a e ‘oatu ‘e Molonai ‘a ‘ene tohi ki he pule lahi, na‘á ne ma‘u ha tohi meia Peiholani, ko e pule lahi. Pea ko e ngaahi lea ‘eni ‘a ia na‘á ne ma‘ú:
- 2 Ko au, Peiholani, ‘a ia ko e pule lahi ki he fonua ní, ‘oku ou ‘oatu ‘a e ngaahi leá ni kia Molonai, ko e ‘eikitau pule ki he kau taú. Vakai, ‘oku ou pehē kiate koe, ‘e Molonai, ‘oku ‘ikai te u fiefia ‘i homou ngaahi fu‘u faingata‘a‘iá, ‘io, ‘oku fakamamahi ia ki hoku laumālié.
- 3 Kae vakai, ‘oku ‘i ai ‘a e ní‘ihi ‘oku nau fiefia ‘i homou ngaahi faingata‘a‘iá, ‘io, ‘o a‘u ki he‘enau angatu‘u ai kiate au, kae ‘uma‘ā foki ‘a kinautolu ‘o hoku kakaí ‘a ia ko e kau tangata tau‘atāiná, ‘io, pea ko kinautolu ‘a ia kuo angatu‘ú ‘oku nau fu‘u tokolahi fau.
- 4 Pea ko e fa‘ahinga ia kuo nau feinga ke to‘o meiate au ‘a e nofo‘anga ‘o e fakamāú pea ko kinautolu ia ‘a ia kuo fakatupu ‘a e angahala lahi ni; he kuo nau ngāue ‘aki ‘a e lea fakahekeheke lahi, ‘o nau kākaa‘i ‘a e loto ‘o e kakai tokolahi, ‘a ia ‘e hoko ko e tupu‘anga ‘o e faingata‘a‘ia lahi ‘iate kinautolu; kuo nau ta‘ofi ‘a ‘emau ngaahi me‘akaí mo e nāunaú, pea kuo nau fakamanavahee‘i ‘emau kau tangata tau‘atāiná ko ia kuo ‘ikai ai te nau ō atu ai kiate kimoutolu.
- 5 Pea vakai, kuo nau kapusi au meiate kinautolu, pea kuó u hola ki he fonua ko Kitioné mo e kau tangata kotoa na‘á ku lava ‘o fakaloto‘í.
- 6 Pea vakai, kuó u ‘oatu ha tohi fanongonongo ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e potu fonua ko ‘ení; pea vakai, ‘oku nau ha‘u kiate kinautolu ‘i he ‘aho taki taha, mo ‘enau ngaahi mahafu taú, ke malu‘i honau fonuá mo ‘enau tau‘atāiná, pea sāuni homau ngaohikovi‘í.
- 7 Pea kuo nau ha‘u kiate kinautolu, ‘o a‘u ki hono ngaohi ‘o kinautolu kuo nau tu‘u hake ‘o angatu‘u kiate kinautolu ke nau malu‘i ‘a kinautolu, ‘io, ‘o a‘u ki he‘enau ilifia kiate kinautolu ‘o ‘ikai te nau loto-to‘a ke ō mai ke tau mo kinautolu.

Alma 61

Behold, now it came to pass that soon after Moroni had sent his epistle unto the chief governor, he received an epistle from Pahoran, the chief governor. And these are the words which he received:

I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send these words unto Moroni, the chief captain over the army. Behold, I say unto you, Moroni, that I do not joy in your great afflictions, yea, it grieves my soul.

But behold, there are those who do joy in your afflictions, yea, insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of my people who are freemen, yea, and those who have risen up are exceedingly numerous.

And it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they have used great flattery, and they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be the cause of sore affliction among us; they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you.

And behold, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get.

And behold, I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land; and behold, they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs.

And they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance, yea, insomuch that they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

8 Kuo nau pule'i 'a e fonua, pe ko e kolo ko Seilahemala; pea kuo nau fili ha tu'i kiate kinautolu, pea kuó ne fai ha tohi ki he tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná, 'a ia kuó ne fakapapau ai ha'ane kau fakataha mo ia; pea 'i he fakapapau ko ia kuó ne loto ai ke ne malu'i 'a e kolo ko Seilahemala, pea 'oku ne amanaki 'i he malu'i ko ia 'e malava ai 'e he kau Leimaná 'o ikuna 'a hono toe 'o e fonua, pea 'e fokotu'u ia ko e tu'i ki he kaka'i ni hili hono ikuna 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Leimaná.

9 Pea ko 'eni, kuó ke fakahala'i au 'i ho'o tohi, ka 'oku tatau ai pē; 'oku 'ikai te u 'ita, ka 'oku ou fiefia 'i he to'a 'a ho lotó. Ko au, Peiholani, 'oku 'ikai te u kumi ki he mālohi, kae ngata pē 'i he tauhi 'a hoku nofo'anga fakamāu koe'uhí ke u malu'i 'a e ngaahi totonu mo e tau'atāina 'a hoku kaka'i. 'Oku tu'u ma'u hoku laumālie 'i he tau'atāina ko ia 'a ia kuo fakatau'atāina'i ai 'a kitautolu 'e he 'Otuá.

10 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, te mau feinga ke ta'ofi 'a e fai angahalá 'o a'u ki he lilingi toto. 'E 'ikai te mau lilingi 'a e toto 'o e kau Leimaná 'o kapau te nau nofo 'i honau fonua 'onautolú.

11 'E 'ikai te mau lilingi 'a e toto 'o hotau kāingá 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te nau angatu'u, 'o to'o 'a e heletā ke tau'i 'a kimautolu.

12 Te mau loto-fiemālie ke mo'ulaloa ki he ha'amonga 'o e nofo pōpulá 'o kapau 'oku hoa ia mo e fakamaau totonu 'a e 'Otuá, pe kapau te ne fekau kiate kitautolu ke fai pehē.

13 Kae vakai kuo 'ikai te ne fekau kiate kimautolu ke mau fakavaivai'i kimautolu ki homau ngaahi filí, ka ke mau falala kiate ia, pea te ne fakahaofi 'a kimautolu.

14 Ko ia, 'e hoku tokoua 'ofeina, ko Molonai, tau ta'ofi 'a e kovi, pea ko e kovi kotoa pē 'oku 'ikai te tau lava 'o ta'ofi 'aki 'etau ngaahi leá, 'io, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi angatu'ú mo e ngaahi tafokí, tau ta'ofi ia 'aki 'etau ngaahi heletaá, koe'uhí ke tau lava 'o tauhi 'etau tau'atāina, pea tau lava ai 'o fiefia 'i he fu'u faingamālie lahi 'o hotau siasí, mo e ngāue 'a hotau Huhu'í mo hotau 'Otuá.

They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites.

And now, in your epistle you have censured me, but it mattereth not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart. I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people. My soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God hath made us free.

And now, behold, we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed. We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

We would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.

We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do.

But behold he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies, but that we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us.

Therefore, my beloved brother, Moroni, let us resist evil, and whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, yea, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords, that we may retain our freedom, that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.

15 Ko ia, ha'u fakavavevave kiate au mo ha ni'ihī 'o ho'o kau tangatá, pea tuku hono toé ke tokanga'i 'e Lihai mo Teanikumi; tuku kiate kināua 'a e mālohi ke angi 'a e tau' i he potu ko 'ena 'o e fonuá, 'o fakatatau mo e Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá, 'a ia ko e laumālie foki 'o e tau'atāina 'a ia 'oku 'iate kināua.

16 Vakai kuó u 'oatu ha ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau si'i kiate kinautolu ke 'oua na'a nau mate kae 'oua ke ke lava 'o ha'u kiate au.

17 Tānaki fakataha 'a e kau tau kotoa pē te ke lava 'i ho'o laka mai ki hení, pea te tau ō fakavavevave atu ki he kau angatu' u ko iá, 'i he māfima'fi 'o hotau 'Otuá 'o fakatatau ki he tui 'a ia 'oku 'iate kinautolú.

18 Pea te tau ma'u 'a e kolo ko Seilahemalá, koe'uhi ke tau ma'u mo ha toe me'akai ke 'ave atu kia Lihai mo Teanikumi; 'io, te tau 'alu atu ke tau' i 'a kinautolu 'i he māfima'fi 'o e 'Eikí, pea te tau fakangata 'a e fu'u angahala lahi ni.

19 Pea ko 'eni, 'e Molonai, 'oku ou fiefia 'i he ma'u ho'o tohi, he na'a ku ki'i hoha'a pē ko e hā te mau faí, pe 'e totonu kiate kinautolu ke mau 'alu atu 'o tau' i homau kāingá.

20 Ka kuó ke pehē, kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala kuo fekau' i koe 'e he 'Eikí ke ke 'alu atu 'o tau' i 'a kinautolu.

21 Tokanga ke fakamālohi' i 'a Lihai mo Teanikumi 'i he 'Eikí; tala kiate kināua ke 'oua te na manavahē, he 'e fakahaofi 'a kināua 'e he 'Otuá, 'io, kae 'uma'ā foki mo kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku tu'u ma'u 'i he tau'atāina 'a ia kuo fakatau'atāina 'aki 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Otuá. Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou faka'osi 'eku tohi ki hoku tokoua 'ofeina, ko Molonai.

Therefore, come unto me speedily with a few of your men, and leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi and Teancum; give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land, according to the Spirit of God, which is also the spirit of freedom which is in them.

Behold I have sent a few provisions unto them, that they may not perish until ye can come unto me.

Gather together whatsoever force ye can upon your march hither, and we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.

And we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla, that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum; yea, we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord, and we will put an end to this great iniquity.

And now, Moroni, I do joy in receiving your epistle, for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do, whether it should be just in us to go against our brethren.

But ye have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them.

See that ye strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell them to fear not, for God will deliver them, yea, and also all those who stand fast in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free. And now I close mine epistle to my beloved brother, Moroni.

‘Alamā 62

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he ma’u ‘e Molonai ‘a e tohi ní na’e ‘āsili ai ‘a e to’a ‘a hono lotó, pea na’e fonu ia ‘i he fu’u fiefia lahi koe’uhi ko e faivelenga ‘a Peiholaní, pea na’e ‘ikai foki ko ha lavaki ia ki he tau’atāina mo e lelei ‘o hono fonuá.
- 2 Ka na’á ne fu’u tangi lahi ‘aupito foki koe’uhi ko e anghala ‘anautolu kuo nau kapusi ki tu’a ‘a Peiholani mei he nofo’anga fakamāú, ‘io, kae lahi ange foki kiate kinautolu na’a nau angatu’u ki honau fonuá pea mo honau ‘Otuá foki.
- 3 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e ‘ave ‘e Molonai ha kau tangata tokosí ‘i, ‘o fakatatau ki he kole ‘a Peiholani, ka ne tuku kia Lihai mo Teanikumi ‘a e pule ki hono toe ‘o ‘ene kau taú, peá ne laka atu ki he fonua ko Kitioné.
- 4 Pea na’á ne fusi ‘a e fuka ‘o e tau’atāina ‘i he potu kotoa pē na’á ne ‘alu ki aí, pea na’á ne uki ‘a e kau tau kotoa pē ‘a ia na’á ne lava ‘o ma’u ‘i he ‘ene laka atu ki he fonua ko Kitioné.
- 5 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e fakataha mai ‘a e ngaahi toko afe ki he ‘ene fuká, pea na’a nau to’o hake ‘enau ngaahi heletaá ke malu ‘i ‘enau tau’atāina, koe’uhi ke ‘oua na’a nau tō ki he nofo pōpulá.
- 6 Pea ko ia, ‘i he ‘osi hono tānaki fakataha ‘e Molonai ‘a e kau tangata kotoa pē na’á ne lavá ‘i hono kotoa ‘o ‘ene fonongá, na’á ne a’u atu ki he fonua ko Kitioné; pea ‘i he ‘ene fakataha ‘i ‘ene kau taú mo e kau tau ‘a Peiholaní, na’a nau fu’u mālohi ‘aupito, ‘io, ‘o mālohi ange ‘i he kau tangata ‘a Peikesi, ‘a ia ko e tu’i ‘o e kau angatu’u ‘a ia kuo nau kapusi ‘a e kau tangata tau’atāina mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá pea nau ma’u ‘a e fonuá.
- 7 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e ‘alu hifo ‘a Molonai mo Peiholani mo ‘ena ngaahi kau taú ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, ‘o nau ‘alu atu ke tau’i ‘a e koló, pea na’a nau fetaulaki mo e kau tangata ‘a Peikesi, ko ia na’a nau kamata ai ke tau.
- 8 Pea vakai, na’e tāmata ‘i ‘a Peikesi, pea puke pōpula ‘a ‘ene kau tangatá, pea na’e toe fakafoki ‘a Peiholani ki he nofo’anga fakamāú.

Alma 62

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy because of the faithfulness of Pahoran, that he was not also a traitor to the freedom and cause of his country.

But he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat, yea, in fine because of those who had rebelled against their country and also their God.

And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men, according to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of Gideon.

And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter, and gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards the land of Gideon.

And it came to pass that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did take up their swords in the defence of their freedom, that they might not come into bondage.

And thus, when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march, he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had taken possession of the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

- 9 Pea na'e fakamāu 'i 'a e kau tangata 'a Peikesi, 'o fakatatau ki he laó, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e kau tangata tu 'i 'a ia kuo puke mo fakahū ki he fale fakapōpulá; pea na'e tāmāte 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau mo e laó; 'io, 'a e kau tangata 'a Peikesi mo e kau tangata tu 'i ko iá, 'a ia na'e 'ikai te nau fie to'o hake 'a e mahafú ke malu 'i honau fonuá, ka nau tau 'i iá, na'e tāmāte 'i 'a kinautolu.
- 10 Pea ko ia na'e 'aonga ke fai pau ki he lao ko 'ení ko'e uhi ko e malu 'a honau fonuá; 'io, pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'a ia na'e 'ilo 'i 'oku nau fakafisinga 'enau tau 'atāiná, na'e tāmāte 'i vave 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki he laó.
- 11 Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a hono tolungofulu 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai 'o Nifai; kuo toe fakafoki 'e Peiholani mo Molonai 'a e melinó ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'i hona kakai 'onauá, hili hono tāmāte 'i 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'a ia na'e 'ikai ke faitotonu 'i he tu'uaki 'o e tau 'atāiná.
- 12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he kamata 'a e ta'u hono tolungofulu mā taha 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai 'o Nifai, na'e fekau leva 'e Molonai ke 'ave ha ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau, kae 'uma'ā foki ha kau tau ko e kau tangata 'e toko ono afe ke 'ave kia Hilamani, ke tokoni kiate ia 'i he malu 'i 'a e feitu'u ko ia 'o e fonuá.
- 13 Pea na'á ne fekau foki ke 'ave ha kau tau 'o e kau tangata 'e toko ono afe, mo e me'akai lahi fe'unga, ki he ngaahi kau tau 'a Lihai mo Teanikumí. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fai 'eni ke ngaohi 'a e fonua ke mālohi ki he tau mo e kau Leimaná.
- 14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuku 'e Molonai mo Peiholani, ha kau tangata tokolahi 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá, ka nau laka atu mo ha kau tangata tokolahi ki he fonua ko Nifaihaá, he kuo nau fakapapu ke ikuna 'i 'a e kau Leimana 'i he kolo ko iá.
- 15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga 'enau laka atu ki he fonuá, na'a nau puke 'a e kau tangata tokolahi 'o e kau Leimaná, pea nau tāmāte 'i hanau tokolahi, pea puke 'enau ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau mo 'enau ngaahi mahafu tau.
- 16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'enau puke 'a kinautolú, na'a nau fekau 'a kinautolu ke nau fai ha fuakava 'e 'ikai te nau toe to'o mahafu tau ke tau mo e kau Nifai.

And the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and they were executed according to the law; yea, those men of Pachus and those king-men, whosoever would not take up arms in the defence of their country, but would fight against it, were put to death.

And thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; yea, and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.

And thus ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla, among their own people, having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.

And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephiah, being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city.

And it came to pass that as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.

And it came to pass after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.

- 17 Pea 'i he 'osi 'enau fai 'a e fuakava ko 'eni na 'a nau fekau ke nau 'alu 'o nofo mo e kakai 'o 'Āmoní, pea ko honau tokolahí 'a ia na 'e te 'eki ai ke nau tāmāte 'í ko e toko fā afe nai.
- 18 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi 'enau fekau atu 'a kinautolú na 'a nau fai atu 'enau laka ki he fonua ko Nīfaihaá. Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'enau a 'u atu ki he kolo ko Nīfaihaá, na 'a nau fokotu 'u honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'i he ngaahi potu tokalelei 'o Nīfaihaá, 'a ia 'oku ofi ki he kolo ko Nīfaihaá.
- 19 Ko 'eni na 'e faka 'amu 'a Molonai ke hū mai ki tu 'a 'a e kau Leimaná ke tau mo kinautolu, 'i he ngaahi potu tokalelei; ka 'i he 'ilo 'i 'e he kau Leimaná, 'a 'enau fu 'u loto-to 'a lahí, pea 'i he 'enau vakai ki honau fu 'u tokolahí, ko ia na 'e 'ikai te nau to 'a ai ke hū mai ki tu 'a ke tau mo kinautolu; ko ia na 'e 'ikai te nau ha 'u ke tau 'i he 'aho ko íá.
- 20 Pea 'i he 'ene po 'ulí hifó, na 'e 'alu atu 'a Molonai 'i he fakapo 'ulí 'o e poó, 'o ne kaka hake ki he funga 'aá ke fakasiosio pē ko e fē 'a e potu 'o e kolo na 'e nofo ai 'a e kau Leimaná mo 'enau kau tau.
- 21 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē na 'a nau 'i he potu hahaké, 'o ofi ki he hū 'anga ki he koló; pea na 'a nau mohe kotoa. Pea ko 'eni na 'e foki 'a Molonai ki he 'ene kau tau, 'o fekau ke nau teuteu fakato 'oto 'o ha ngaahi maea mālohi mo ha ngaahi tu 'unga, ke tukutuku hifo mei he funga 'aá ki loto 'i he 'aá.
- 22 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē na 'e fekau 'e Molonai ke laka atu 'a 'ene kau tangatá, 'o kaka hake ki he funga 'aá, pea tukutuku hifo 'a kinautolu ki he feitu 'u ko ia 'o e koló, 'io, 'i he potu hihifó, 'a ia na 'e 'ikai ke nofo ai 'a e kau Leimaná mo 'enau ngaahi kau tau.
- 23 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē na 'e tukutuku hifo kotoa 'a kinautolu ki he loto koló 'i he po 'ulí, 'aki 'enau ngaahi maea mālohí mo 'enau ngaahi tu 'ungá; ko ia 'i he a 'u ki he hengihengí kuo nau 'i loto kotoa pē 'i he ngaahi 'ā 'o e koló.
- 24 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he 'ā hake 'a e kau Leimaná 'o mamata ki he ngaahi kau tau 'a Molonai 'oku nau 'i loto 'i he ngaahi 'aá, na 'a nau fu 'u ilifia lahi, 'o nau hola ki tu 'a 'i he matapā 'o koló.

And when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.

And it came to pass that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land of Nephihah. And it came to pass that when they had come to the city of Nephihah, they did pitch their tents in the plains of Nephihah, which is near the city of Nephihah.

Now Moroni was desirous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them, upon the plains; but the Lamanites, knowing of their exceedingly great courage, and beholding the greatness of their numbers, therefore they durst not come out against them; therefore they did not come to battle in that day.

And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.

And it came to pass that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, yea, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.

And it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.

And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, insomuch that they did flee out by the pass.

25 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he mamata 'e Molonai 'oku nau hola meiate iá, na'á ne fekau ke laka atu 'a 'ene kau tangatá ke tau 'i 'a kinautolu, pea na'á nau tāmāte'i 'a e tokolahi, pea kāpui 'a e tokolahi kehe, 'o puke pōpula 'a kinautolu; kae fehōlaki honau toé ki he fonua ko Molonai, 'a ia na'e 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua ofi ki matātahí.

26 Na'e pehē hono ma'u 'e Molonai mo Peiholani 'a e kolo ko Nīfaihaá ta'emole ha toko taha; ka na'e tokolahi 'a e kau Leimana 'a ia kuo tāmāte'í.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e loto 'a e tokolahi 'o e kau Leimana 'a ia na'e puke pōpulá ke nau kau fakataha mo e kakai 'o 'Āmoní, 'o hoko ko ha kakai tau'atāina.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'a ia na'e loto ke fai peheé, na'e tuku kiate kinautolu 'o fakatahu ki honau lotó.

29 Ko ia, na'e kau fakataha 'a e kau pōpula Leimaná kotoa mo e kakai 'o 'Āmoní, 'o nau kamata ke ngāue mālohi 'aupito, 'o ngoue'i 'a e kelekelé, 'o fakatupu 'a e fá'ahinga tenga 'i 'akau kotoa pē, mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahi 'o e fá'ahinga kotoa pē; pea ko ia na'e faka'atá 'a e kau Nīfai mei ha fu'u kavenga lahi; 'io, na'e faka'atá ai 'a kinautolu mei he tauhi 'o e kau pōpula kotoa 'o e kau Leimaná.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko Molonai, 'i he hili 'ene ma'u 'a e kolo ko Nīfaihaá, 'o ne puke 'a e kau pōpula tokolahi, 'a ia na'e fu'u fakatokosi'i ai 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná, peá ne toe ma'u 'a e tokolahi 'o e kau Nīfai 'a ia kuo puke pōpulá, 'a ia na'e fu'u fakamālohi'i lahi ai 'a e kau tau 'a Molonai; ko ia na'e 'alu atu 'a Molonai mei he fonua ko Nīfaihaá ki he fonua ko Līhai.

31 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he vakai 'a e kau Leimaná 'oku ha'u 'a Molonai ke tau mo kinautolú, na'á nau toe manavahē 'o nau fehōlaki mei he kau tau 'a Molonai.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hanga 'e Molonai mo 'ene kau tau 'o tuli 'a kinautolu mei he kolo ki he kolo, kae 'oua kuo nau fetaulaki mo Līhai mo Teanikumi; pea na'e hola 'a e kau Leimaná meia Līhai mo Teanikumi, 'o a'u ki he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'i he matātahí, kae 'oua kuo nau a'u mai ki he fonua ko Molonai.

And now when Moroni saw that they were fleeing before him, he did cause that his men should march forth against them, and slew many, and surrounded many others, and took them prisoners; and the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

Thus had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of Nephiah without the loss of one soul; and there were many of the Lamanites who were slain.

Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.

And it came to pass that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.

Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; and thus were the Nephites relieved from a great burden; yea, insomuch that they were relieved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites.

Now it came to pass that Moroni, after he had obtained possession of the city of Nephiah, having taken many prisoners, which did reduce the armies of the Lamanites exceedingly, and having regained many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoners, which did strengthen the army of Moroni exceedingly; therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephiah to the land of Lehi.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was coming against them, they were again frightened and fled before the army of Moroni.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army did pursue them from city to city, until they were met by Lehi and Teancum; and the Lamanites fled from Lehi and Teancum, even down upon the borders by the seashore, until they came to the land of Moroni.

33 Pea na'e katoa fakataha 'a e kau tau kotoa pē 'a e kau Leimaná, 'o nau fakataha katoa ki ha feitu'u pē taha 'i he fonua ko Molonái. Ko 'eni, na'e 'iate kinautolu foki, 'a 'Amolone, ko e tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná.

34 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e nofo 'a Molonai mo Lihai mo Teanikumi mo 'enau ngaahi kau tau 'o takatakai 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonua ko Molonái, pea kápui ai 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'i he ve'e feitu'u maomaonganoa 'i he tongá, pea 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'i he ve'e feitu'u maomaonganoa 'i he hahaké.

35 Pea ko ia na'a nau nofo ai 'i he po'ulí. He vakai, kuo ongosia 'a e kau Nifái mo e kau Leimaná koe'uhi ko hono fuoloa 'o 'enau laká; ko ia na'e 'ikai te nau fakakaukau ke fai ha me'a 'i he po'ulí, tuku kehe pē 'a Teanikumi; 'āsílí he kuó ne fu'u 'ita 'aupito kia 'Amolone, 'o ne pehē ai na'e fakatupu 'e 'Amolone mo 'Amalekaia, ko hono tokouá, 'a e fu'u tau lahi mo fuolóni 'i honau vaha'a mo e kau Leimaná, 'a ia kuo tupunga ai ha fu'u tau mo e lilingi 'o e toto lahi, 'io, mo e fu'u honge lahi.

36 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu atu 'a Teanikumi 'i he'ene 'itá ki he 'apitanga tau 'o e kau Leimaná, 'o ne kaka hifo mei he ngaahi 'ā 'o e koló. Peá ne 'alu atu mo e kí'i afo, mei he potu ki he potu, kae 'oua kuó ne 'ilo'i 'a e tu'i; peá ne velo'i ia 'aki ha tao, 'a ia na'e hoka'i ia 'o ofi ki he mafú. Kae vakai, na'e fafangu 'e he tu'i 'a 'ene kau tamaio'eiki 'i he te'eki ai ke ne pekiá, ko ia na'a nau tuli 'a Teanikumi, 'o tāmata'i ia.

37 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'ilo'i 'e Lihai mo Molonai kuo mate 'a Teanikumí na'á na fu'u lotomamahi 'aupito; he vakai, ko e tangata ia kuo tau lototo'a ma'a hono fonuá, 'io, ko ha kaume'a mo'oni ia ki he tau'atāina; pea kuó ne 'ūkuma 'a e ngaahi fu'u faingata'a lahi 'aupito. Kae vakai, kuo mate ia, pea kuó ne fononga'ia 'a e hala 'o e māmaní kotoa pē.

38 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e laka atu 'a Molonai 'i he 'aho hono hokó, 'o 'ohofi 'a e kau Leimaná, 'o nau hanga ai 'o tāmata'i 'a kinautolu 'i ha fu'u faka'auha lahi; pea na'a nau teke'i atu 'a kinautolu mei he fonuá; pea na'a nau hola, 'o 'ikai te nau toe foki mai 'i he taimi ko iá ke tau mo e kau Nifái.

And the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni. Now Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites, was also with them.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Lehi and Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni, insomuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south, and in the borders by the wilderness on the east.

And thus they did encamp for the night. For behold, the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march; therefore they did not resolve upon any stratagem in the night-time, save it were Teancum; for he was exceedingly angry with Ammoron, insomuch that he considered that Ammoron, and Amalickiah his brother, had been the cause of this great and lasting war between them and the Lamanites, which had been the cause of so much war and bloodshed, yea, and so much famine.

And it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. And he went forth with a cord, from place to place, insomuch that he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. But behold, the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

Now it came to pass that when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful; for behold, he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country, yea, a true friend to liberty; and he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions. But behold, he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

Now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, insomuch that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and they did flee, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites.

39 Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a hono tolungofulu mā taha 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfaí; pea kuo ia kuo hoko kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi tau, mo e ngaahi lilingi toto, mo e hongē, mo e faingata'a, 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi.

40 Pea kuo hoko 'a e ngaahi fakapō, mo e ngaahi fakakikihi, mo e ngaahi angatu'u, mo e fa'ahinga angahala kotoa pē 'i he kakai 'o Nīfaí; ka neongo iá na'e fakahaofi 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko e kau mā'oni'oni, 'io, koe'uhi ko e ngaahi lotu 'a e kau mā'oni'oni.

41 Kae vakai, koe'uhi ko hono fuoloa fau 'o e tau 'i he vaha 'a 'o e kau Nīfaí mo e kau Leimaná kuo hoko ai 'o fu'u loto-fefēka 'aupito 'a e tokolahi, koe'uhi ko hono fuoloa fau 'o e taú; pea kuo fakamolū 'a e loto 'o e tokolahi koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi faingata'a'ia, 'o nau fakavaivai 'i ai 'a kinautolu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá 'i he fu'u anga-fakatōkilalo lahi.

42 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi langa fakamālohi 'i 'e Molonai 'a e ngaahi potu 'o e fonuá 'a ia na'e 'ohofingofua taha ki he kau Leimaná, kae 'oua kuo fē'unga honau mālohí, na'á ne foki leva ki he kolo ko Seilahemalá; pea na'e foki mo Hilamani ki he fonua 'o hono tofi'á; pea na'e toe fokotu'u 'a e melinó 'i he kakai 'o Nīfaí.

43 Pea na'e tuku 'e Molonai 'a e pule ki he'ene ngaahi kau taú ki he nima 'o hono fohá, 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko Molonaihā; pea na'á ne foki ki hono fale 'o'oná koe'uhi ke ne nofo melino 'i hono toe 'o hono ngaahi 'ahó.

44 Pea na'e foki 'a Peiholani ki hono nofo'anga fakamāú; pea na'e toe ma'u 'e Hilamani 'a e fatongia ki hono malanga 'aki 'o e folofola 'a e 'Otuá ki he kakai; he ko e tupu 'i hono lahi 'o e ngaahi taú mo e ngaahi fakakikihi, kuo hoko 'o 'aonga ai ke toe fakamā'opo'opo 'a e siasí.

45 Ko ia, na'e 'alu atu 'a Hilamani mo hono kāingá, 'o nau fakahā 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i he fu'u mālohi lahi, 'o fakamahino ki he tokolahi 'a 'enau fai angahalá, 'a ia na'e langaki ai 'enau fakatomala mei he'enau ngaahi angahalá 'o nau papitaiso ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá.

46 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau toe fokotu'u hake 'a e siasí 'o e 'Otuá 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá.

47 'Io, pea na'e fokotu'u 'a e ngaahi tu'utu'uni fo'ou 'o kau ki he laó. Pea na'e fili 'enau kau fakamāú mo 'enau kau fakamaau lahi.

And thus ended the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus they had had wars, and bloodsheds, and famine, and affliction, for the space of many years.

And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi; nevertheless for the righteous' sake, yea, because of the prayers of the righteous, they were spared.

But behold, because of the exceedingly great length of the war between the Nephites and the Lamanites many had become hardened, because of the exceedingly great length of the war; and many were softened because of their afflictions, insomuch that they did humble themselves before God, even in the depth of humility.

And it came to pass that after Moroni had fortified those parts of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites, until they were sufficiently strong, he returned to the city of Zarahemla; and also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance; and there was once more peace established among the people of Nephi.

And Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his son, whose name was Moronihah; and he retired to his own house that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace.

And Pahoran did return to his judgment-seat; and Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God; for because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that they did establish again the church of God, throughout all the land.

Yea, and regulations were made concerning the law. And their judges, and their chief judges were chosen.

48 Pea na'e faka'au 'a e kakai 'o Nīfai ke toe tu'umālie 'i he fonuá, 'o nau kamata ke fakatokolahi pea faka'au 'o fu'u mālohi 'i he fonuá. Pea na'e faka'au ke nau fu'u koloa'ia 'aupito.

49 Ka neongo 'enau ngaahi koloá, pe ko honau mālohí, pe ko 'enau tu'umālié, ka na'e 'ikai te nau fielahi 'i he hīkisia 'a honau matá; 'o 'ikai foki ke tuai 'enau manatu 'i 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá; ka na'a nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito 'i hono 'aó.

50 'Io, na'a nau manatu ki hono lahi 'o e ngaahi me'a kuo fai 'e he 'Eiki ma'anautolu, mo 'ene fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he maté, pea mei he pōpula' mo e ngaahi fale fakapōpula, pea mo e ngaahi faingata'a kehekehe kotoa pē, pea kuó ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nima 'o honau ngaahi filí.

51 Pea na'a nau lotu ma'u ai pē ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, pea na'e tāpuaki 'i ai 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki, 'o hangē ko 'ene folofolá, ko ia na'a nau tupulaki ai 'o mālohi 'o nau tu'umālie 'i he fonuá.

52 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hoko 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē. Pea na'e pekia 'a Hilamani 'i hono tolungofulu mā nima 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai 'o Nīfai.

And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceedingly rich.

But notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes; neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God; but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.

Yea, they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them, that he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from prisons, and from all manner of afflictions, and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.

And they did pray unto the Lord their God continually, insomuch that the Lord did bless them, according to his word, so that they did wax strong and prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that all these things were done. And Helaman died, in the thirty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

‘Alamā 63

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he kamata‘anga ‘o e ta‘u hono tolungofulu mā ono ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai ‘o Nīfaí, na‘e ma‘u ‘e Sipiloni ‘a e ngaahi me‘a toputapu ko ia kuo tuku kia Hilamani ‘e ‘Alamaá.
- 2 Pea ko ha tangata angatonu ia, pea na‘á ne ‘á‘eva angatonu ‘i he ‘ao ‘o e ‘Otuá; pea na‘e tokanga ia ke faillelei ma‘u ai pē, ke ne tauhi ‘a e ngaahi fekau ‘a e ‘Eiki ko hono ‘Otuá; pea na‘e fai pehē foki mo hono tokouá.
- 3 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e pekia mo Molonai foki. Pea na‘e ‘osi pehē ‘a hono tolungofulu mā ono ‘o e ta‘u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāú.
- 4 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i hono tolungofulu mā fitu ‘o e ta‘u ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāú, na‘e ‘i ai ha kakai tangata tokolahi, ‘io, ‘a e toko nima afe fāngeau pea mo honau ngaahi uai fī mo ‘enau fānaú, ‘a ia na‘a nau ‘alu atu mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá ki he fonua ‘a ia ‘oku ‘i he fakatokelaú.
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ko Heikoti, ko ha tangata tokanga ia, ko ia na‘á ne ‘alu atu ‘o fo‘u ma‘ana ha fu‘u vaka lahi ‘aupito, ‘i he ngata‘anga ‘o e fonua ko Mahú, ‘o ofi ki he fonua ko ‘Auhá, peá ne toho ia ki tahi ‘i he tahi hihifó, ‘o ofi ki he kavelemotu ‘a ia na‘e ‘alu atu ki he fonua fakatokelaú.
- 6 Pea vakai, na‘e ‘i ai ‘a e kau Nīfai tokolahi ‘a ia na‘e heka ki ai ‘o nau folau atu mo e ngaahi me‘akai mo e nāunau lahi, pea mo e kakai fefine mo e fānau tokolahi foki; pea na‘a nau folau fakatokelau. Pea na‘e ‘osi pehē hono tolungofulu mā fitu ‘o e ta‘ú.
- 7 Pea ‘i hono tolungofulu mā valu ‘o e ta‘ú, na‘e fo‘u ‘e he tangatá ni ha ngaahi vaka kehe. Pea na‘e foki mai foki ‘a e ‘uluaki vaká, pea na‘e fakaheka ki ai mo e kakai tokolahi kehe; pea na‘a nau ‘ave mo e ngaahi me‘akai mo e nāunau lahi, ‘o nau toe folau atu ki he fonua fakatokelaú.
- 8 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ‘ikai ha toe fānongo kiate kinautolu. Pea ‘oku mau mahalo kuo nau melema ‘i he loto moaná. Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e tuku folau atu mo ha vaka kehe ‘e taha; pea ‘oku ‘ikai te mau ‘ilo pē na‘e ‘alu ia ki fē.

Alma 63

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Shiblón took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.

And he was a just man, and he did walk uprightly before God; and he did observe to do good continually, to keep the commandments of the Lord his God; and also did his brother.

And it came to pass that Moroni died also. And thus ended the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.

And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land northward.

And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And thus ended the thirty and seventh year.

And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.

And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.

- 9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai 'a e kakai tokolahi 'a ia na'e 'alu atu ki he fonua fakatokelaú 'i he ta'u pē ko iá. Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a e ta'u hono tolungofulu mā valú.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u hono tolungofulu mā hiva 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú, na'e pekia foki mo Sipiloni, pea kuo 'alu atu 'a Kolianitoni ki he fonua fakatokelaú 'i ha vaka, ke ne 'ave ha ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunau ki he kakai kuo 'alu atu ki he fonua ko iá.
- 11 Ko ia na'e 'aonga ke hanga 'e Sipiloni 'o tuku 'a e ngaahi me'a toputapu ko iá 'i he te'eki ai ke ne pekia ki he foha 'o Hilamani, 'a ia na'e ui ko Hilamani, ko e tau hingoa ki he'ene tamaí.
- 12 Ko 'eni vakai, na'e hiki kotoa 'a e ngaahi tohi tongitongi 'a ia na'e ma'u 'e Hilamani pea na'e 'oatu ia ki he fānau 'a e tangatá 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá, tuku kehe pē 'a e ngaahi kongá ko ia 'a ia na'e fekau 'e 'Alamā ke 'oua 'e 'oatú.
- 13 Ka neongo iá, na'e totonu ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi me'a ko iá ke toputapu, pea tukufakaholo mei he to'u tangata 'e taha ki he to'u tangata 'e taha; ko ia, na'e tuku 'a e ngaahi me'a ko iá, 'i he ta'u ko 'ení kia Hilamani, 'i he te'eki ai ke pekia 'a Sipiloni.
- 14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē foki 'i he ta'u pē ko iá na'e 'i ai 'a e kau tafoki 'a ia kuo nau mavahe 'o 'alu atu ki he kau Leimaná; pea na'e toe fakatupu hake 'enau 'ita ki he kau Nifái.
- 15 Pea 'i he ta'u pē ko iá na'a nau ō mai foki mo e kau tau tokolahi ke tau mo e kakai 'o Molonaihaá, pe ko e kau tau 'a Molonaihaá, pea na'e ikuna ai 'a kinautolu pea toe teke 'i atu ki honau ngaahi fonua 'onautolú, pea na'e mole hanau tokolahi.
- 16 Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono tolungofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nifái.
- 17 Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a e fakamatala 'a 'Alamā mo Hilamani ko hono fohá, kae 'uma 'ā foki mo Sipiloni, 'a ia ko hono fohá.

And it came to pass that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And thus ended the thirty and eighth year.

And it came to pass in the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, Shiblōn died also, and Corianton had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land.

Therefore it became expedient for Shiblōn to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his father.

Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land, save it were those parts which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth.

Nevertheless, these things were to be kept sacred, and handed down from one generation to another; therefore, in this year, they had been conferred upon Helaman, before the death of Shiblōn.

And it came to pass also in this year that there were some dissenters who had gone forth unto the Lamanites; and they were stirred up again to anger against the Nephites.

And also in this same year they came down with a numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah, or against the army of Moronihah, in the which they were beaten and driven back again to their own lands, suffering great loss.

And thus ended the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended the account of Alma, and Helaman his son, and also Shiblōn, who was his son.

Ko e Tohi ‘a Hilamaní

Ko ha fakamatala ‘o e kau Nifái. Ko ‘enau ngaahi tauí mo e ngaahi fakakikihí, mo ‘enau ngaahi feke‘ike‘i. Kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo e ngaahi kikite ‘a e kau palōfita mā‘oni‘oni tokolahi, ki mu‘a ‘i he hā‘ele mai ‘a Kalaisí, ‘o fakatatau ki he ngaahi fakamatala ‘a Hilamaní, ‘a ia ko e foha ‘o Hilamaní, pea fakatatau foki mo e ngaahi fakamatala ‘a hono ongo fohá, pea a‘u mai ki he hā‘ele mai ‘a Kalaisí. Kae ‘uma‘ā foki hono fakaului ‘o e tokolahi ‘o e kau Leimaná. Ko ha fakamatala ki honau fakaului. Ko ha fakamatala ki he mā‘oni‘oni ‘a e kau Leimaná, mo e fai angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia ‘o e kau Nifái, ‘o fakatatau ki he lekooti ‘a Hilamaní mo hono ongo fohá, ‘o a‘u mai ki he hā‘ele mai ‘a Kalaisí, ‘a ia ‘oku ui ko e tohi ‘a Hilamaní, mo e ngaahi fakamatala kehe.

Hilamaní 1

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni vakai, na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he kamata‘anga ‘o e ta‘u hono fāngofulu ‘o e pule ‘a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai ‘o Nifái, na‘e kamata ke tupu ha fu‘u faingata‘a lahi ‘i he kakai ‘o e kau Nifái.
- 2 He vakai, kuo pekia ‘a Peiholani, ‘o fononga ‘i he hala ‘o e māmani kotoa pē; ko ia na‘e kamata ha fu‘u fakakikihi lahi pe ko hai ‘e hoko ki he nofo‘anga ‘o e fakamāú ‘i he ngaahi tokouá, ‘a ia ko e ngaahi foha ‘o Peiholani.
- 3 Ko ‘eni ko e ngaahi hingoa ‘eni ‘o kinautolu ‘a ia na‘e fakakikihi ke ma‘u ‘a e nofo‘anga fakamāú, ‘a ia na‘e langaki foki ai ‘a e kakai ke fakakikihi: Ko Peiholani, mo Peianikai, mo Peikumenai.
- 4 Ko ‘eni ‘oku ‘ikai ko hono kotoa ‘eni ‘o e ngaahi foha ‘o Peiholani, (he na‘á ne ma‘u ‘a e tokolahi), ka ko kinautolu pē ‘eni ‘a ia na‘e fakakikihi ke ma‘u ‘a e nofo‘anga fakamāú; ko ia, na‘a nau fakatupu ha fakafá‘ahi tolu ‘a e kakai.
- 5 Ka neongo iá, na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e fakanofa ‘a Peiholani ‘i he le‘o ‘o e kakai ke ne fakamaa lahi mo ha pule ki he kakai ‘o Nifái.

The Book of Helaman

An account of the Nephites. Their wars and contentions, and their dissensions. And also the prophecies of many holy prophets, before the coming of Christ, according to the records of Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, and also according to the records of his sons, even down to the coming of Christ. And also many of the Lamanites are converted. An account of their conversion. An account of the righteousness of the Lamanites, and the wickedness and abominations of the Nephites, according to the record of Helaman and his sons, even down to the coming of Christ, which is called the book of Helaman, and so forth.

Helaman 1

And now behold, it came to pass in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites.

For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

Now these are not all the sons of Pahoran (for he had many), but these are they who did contend for the judgment-seat; therefore, they did cause three divisions among the people.

Nevertheless, it came to pass that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi.

6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he vakai 'e Peikumenai, 'e 'ikai te ne lava 'o ma'u 'a e nofo'anga fakamāu, na'á ne loto leva ke tali 'a e loto 'o e kakaí.

7 Kae vakai, ko Peianikai mo e fa'ahi 'o e kakaí 'a ia na'a nau loto ke ne hoko ko honau pulé, na'a nau fu'u 'ita 'aupito; ko ia, na'á ne hanga ke fakahekeheke 'i 'a e kakaí ke nau angatu'u ki honau kāingá.

8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he'ene teu ke fai 'ení, vakai, na'e puke ia, pea na'e fakamāu 'i ia 'o fakatatau ki he le'o 'o e kakaí, pea na'e tu'utu'uni ke tāmata'e 'i ia; he kuó ne tu'u 'i he angatu'u mo feinga ke ne faka'auha 'a e tau'atāina 'a e kakaí.

9 Ko 'eni 'i he vakai 'a e kakaí 'a ia na'a nau loto ke ne hoko ko honau pulé kuo tu'utu'uni ke tāmata'e 'i iá, ko ia na'a nau 'ita, pea vakai, na'a nau fekau ke 'alu atu 'a e tokotaha, ko Kisikumeni, 'io ki he nofo'anga fakamaau 'o Peiholaní, 'o ne fakapoongi 'a Peiholani 'i he lolotonga 'ene nofo 'i he nofo'anga fakamāu.

10 Pea na'e tuli ia 'e he kau tamaio'eiki 'a Peiholaní; kae vakai, na'e pehē fau hono vave 'o e hola 'a Kisikumení na'e 'ikai lava ke ma'u ia 'e ha tangata 'e taha.

11 Pea na'á ne 'alu atu kiate kinautolu 'a ia na'e fekau 'i iá, pea na'a nau fai kotoa pē ha fuakava, 'io, 'o nau fuakava ki honau Tupu'anga ta'engata, 'e 'ikai te nau fakahā ki ha tangata 'e taha kuo fakapoongi 'e Kisikumeni 'a Peiholani.

12 Ko ia, na'e 'ikai ke 'ilo 'a Kisikumeni 'i he lolotonga 'o e kakaí Nīfaí, he na'á ne teunga fakapulipuli 'i he taimi na'á ne fakapoongi ai 'a Peiholaní. Pea ko Kisikumeni mo 'ene kautahá, 'a ia kuo nau fefuakava'aki mo iá, na'a nau fetuiaki mo e kakaí 'i ha founa na'e 'ikai ke fa'a 'ilo 'i ai 'a kinautolu; ka ko kinautolu kotoa pē na'e 'ilo 'i na'e fakamaaumatea.

13 Pea ko 'eni vakai foki, na'e fakanofa 'a Peikumenai, 'o fakatatau ki he le'o 'o e kakaí, ke ne hoko ko ha fakamaau lahi mo ha kōvana ki he kakaí, ke pule 'o fetongi 'a hono tokoua ko Peiholaní; pea na'e totonu ke ne ma'u ia. Pea na'e fai 'eni kotoa pē 'i hono fāngofulu 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu; pea na'e 'osi ia.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment-seat, he did unite with the voice of the people.

But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but behold, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

And now behold, Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be a chief judge and a governor over the people, to reign in the stead of his brother Pahoran; and it was according to his right. And all this was done in the fortieth year of the reign of the judges; and it had an end.

- 14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono fāngofulu mā taha 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú, kuo tānaki fakataha 'e he kau Leimaná ha kau tau 'o e kau tangata ta'efa'alaua, pea fakamahafu 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi heletā, mo e ngaahi hele piko, mo e ngaahi kaufana, mo e ngaahi ngahau, mo e ngaahi tatā tau, mo e ngaahi sifa-fatafata, pea mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga pā 'i he fa'ahinga kotoa pē.
- 15 Pea na'a nau toe 'alu hifo ke nau kamata ke tau mo e kau Nīfaí. Pea na'e taki 'a kinautolu 'e ha tangata 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko Kolianitomuli; pea ko ha hako ia 'o Seilahemala; pea ko e taha ia na'e tafoki mei he kau Nīfaí; pea ko ha tangata kaukaua mo mālohi lahi ia.
- 16 Ko ia, ko e tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná, 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko Tupalote, 'a ia ko e foha 'o 'Amolone, 'i he'ene mahalo 'e lava 'e Kolianitomuli, he ko ha tangata mālohi lahi ia, 'o matu'uaki 'a e kau Nīfaí, 'aki hono iví kae 'uma'ā foki hono poto lahi, pea 'i hono fekau atu iá te ne lava 'o ikuna 'a e kau Nīfaí—
- 17 Ko ia na'á ne ue'i hake 'a kinautolu ke nau 'ita, pea na'á ne tānaki fakataha 'ene ngaahi kau taú, 'o ne fakanofu 'a Kolianitomuli ke hoko ko honau taki, pea ne fekau ke nau laka hifo ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá ke tau mo e kau Nīfaí.
- 18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē koe'uhi ko e hulu 'o e feke'ike'í mo e lahi 'o e faingata 'a 'i he pule'angá, kuo 'ikai ai te nau tuku ha kau le' o fe'unga 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá; he kuo nau mahalo 'e 'ikai loto-lahi 'a e kau Leimaná ke hū mai ki loto 'i honau ngaahi fonuá ke 'ohofi 'a e fu'u kolo lahi ko Seilahemalá.
- 19 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e laka atu 'a Kolianitomuli 'o taki 'ene kau tau tokolahi 'aupitó, 'o nau 'ohofi 'a e kakai 'o e koló, pea koe'uhi ko hono fu'u vave fau 'o 'enau laká na'e 'ikai lava 'o ma'u 'e he kau Nīfaí ha taimi fe'unga ke tānaki fakataha 'enau ngaahi kau taú.
- 20 Ko ia na'e tāmata 'i 'e Kolianitomuli 'a e kau le'o 'i he hū'anga 'o e koló, 'o ne laka atu mo 'ene kau taú kotoa ki he loto koló, pea na'a nau tāmata 'i 'a e kakai kotoa pē na'e fakafepaki 'i 'a kinautolú, 'o nau ma'u ai 'a e koló kotoa.

And it came to pass in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breast-plates, and with all manner of shields of every kind.

And they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites. And they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr; and he was a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was a dissenter from among the Nephites; and he was a large and a mighty man.

Therefore, the king of the Lamanites, whose name was Tubaloth, who was the son of Ammoron, supposing that Coriantumr, being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites—

Therefore he did stir them up to anger, and he did gather together his armies, and he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader, and did cause that they should march down to the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city, and their march was with such exceedingly great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies.

Therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, and they did slay every one who did oppose them, insomuch that they did take possession of the whole city.

- 21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hola 'a Peikumenai, 'a ia ko e fakamaau lahi, mei he 'ao 'o Kolianitomulí, 'o a'u ki he ngaahi 'ā 'o e koló. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e taa'i ia 'e Kolianitomuli ki he 'aá, pea iku 'o ne mate ai. Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a e ngaahi 'aho 'o Peikumenai.
- 22 Pea ko 'eni 'i he vakai 'a Kolianitomuli kuó ne ma'u 'a e kolo ko Seilahemalá, 'o ne vakai kuo hola 'a e kau Nifai meiate kinautolú, pea kuo tō, mo puke, mo lī 'a kinautolu ki he fale fakapōpulá, pea kuó ne ma'u 'a e kolotau mālohi taha 'i he fonua kotoá, na'e to'a ange ai hono lotó 'o ne teuteu ke 'alu atu 'o tau 'i 'a e fonuá kotoa.
- 23 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'ikai te ne nofo 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá, ka na'á ne laka atu mo ha fu'u kau tau tokolahi ki he kolo ko Mahú; he na'á ne fakapapau ke ne 'alu atu 'o faka'ata'atā hono halá 'aki 'a e heletā, koe'uhi ke ne lava 'o ma'u 'a e ngaahi potu tokelau 'o e fonuá.
- 24 Pea, 'i he'ene mahalo ko honau feitu'u mālohi tahá ko e loto fonuá, ko ia na'á ne laka atu, 'o 'ikai te ne tuku kiate kinautolu ha taimi ke fakatahataha 'i 'a kinautolu 'i ha ngaahi falukungā kakai tokosi'i; pea 'i he founga ko ia na'a nau 'ohofi 'a kinautolu 'o tā hifo 'a kinautolu ki he kelekelé.
- 25 Kae vakai, na'e hanga 'e he laka ko 'eni 'a Kolianitomuli ki he loto fonuá 'o tuku kia Molonaihā ha fu'u faingamālie lahi kiate kinautolu, neongo 'a e fu'u tokolahi 'o e kau Nifai kuo tāmata'í.
- 26 He vakai, na'e mahalo 'a Molonaihā 'oku 'ikai lotolahi 'a e kau Leimaná ke hū ki he loto fonuá, ka te nau 'ohofi pē 'a e ngaahi kolo takatakai 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e fonuá 'o hangē kuo nau fai ki mu'á; ko ia na'e fekau 'e Molonaihā ke le'ohi 'e he'enua ngaahi kau tau mālohí 'a e ngaahi potu takatakai 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonuá.
- 27 Kae vakai, na'e 'ikai ke ilifia 'a e kau Leimaná 'o hangē ko hono lotó, ka kuo nau hū mai ki he loto fonuá, pea kuo nau kapa 'a e kolomu'á 'a ia ko e kolo ko Seilahemalá, pea na'a nau lolotonga laka atu 'i he ngaahi potu mahu'inga taha 'o e fonuá, 'o tāmata'í 'a e kakai 'i ha fu'u faka'auha lahi, 'a e kakai tangata, mo e kakai fefine fakatou'osi, mo e fānau, 'o nau puke 'a e ngaahi kolo lahi mo e ngaahi kolotau lahi.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Pacumeni.

And now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city of Zarahemla, and saw that the Nephites had fled before them, and were slain, and were taken, and were cast into prison, and that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go forth against all the land.

And now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of Bountiful; for it was his determination to go forth and cut his way through with the sword, that he might obtain the north parts of the land.

And, supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble themselves together save it were in small bodies; and in this manner they did fall upon them and cut them down to the earth.

But behold, this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave Moronihah great advantage over them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites who were slain.

For behold, Moronihah had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as they had hitherto done; therefore Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should maintain those parts round about by the borders.

But behold, the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the capital city which was the city of Zarahemla, and were marching through the most capital parts of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children, taking possession of many cities and of many strongholds.

28 Ka 'i he 'ilo 'i 'eni 'e Molonaihaá, na'á ne fekau 'i leva ke 'alu atu 'a Līhai mo ha kau tau ke 'alu takai 'o fakafetaulaki kiate kinautolu 'i he te'eki ai ke nau a'u ki he fonua ko Mahú.

29 Pea na'á ne fai pehē; pea na'á ne fakafetaulaki kiate kinautolu 'i he te'eki ai ke nau a'u ki he fonua ko Mahú, 'o ne tau 'i 'a kinautolu 'o a'u ki he 'enau kamata ke holomui ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakafetaulaki mai 'a Molonaihā 'i he 'enau holomuí, 'o ne tau 'i 'a kinautolu, pea na'e hoko ai ha tau na'e fu'u hulu ai 'a e lilingi totó; 'io, na'e tō 'a e fu'u tokolahi, pea na'e 'ilo 'i 'i he kakai kuo toó 'a Kolianitomuli.

31 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, na'e 'ikai lava 'a e kau Leimaná ke holomui ki ha feitu 'u 'e taha, pe ki he tokelaú, pe ki he tongá, pe ki he hahaké, pe ki he hihifó, he na'e 'ākilotoa 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Nīfái 'i he tafa'aki kotoa pē.

32 Pea kuo pehē hono 'ave fakavavevave 'e Kolianitomuli 'a e kau Leimaná ki he lotolotonga 'o e kau Nīfái, 'o nau mo'ulaloa ai ki he mālohi 'o e kau Nīfái, pea na'á ne tō ai mo ia, pea na'e tukulolo 'a e kau Leimaná ki he nima 'o e kau Nīfái.

33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe ma'u 'e Molonaihā 'a e kolo ko Seilahemalá, pea na'á ne fekau ki he kau Leimana 'a ia kuó ne puke pōpulá ke nau 'alu atu mei he fonuá 'i he melino.

34 Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a hono fāngofulu mā taha 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú.

But when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they should come to the land Bountiful.

And thus he did; and he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful, and gave unto them battle, insomuch that they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that Moronihah did head them in their retreat, and did give unto them battle, insomuch that it became an exceedingly bloody battle; yea, many were slain, and among the number who were slain Coriantumr was also found.

And now, behold, the Lamanites could not retreat either way, neither on the north, nor on the south, nor on the east, nor on the west, for they were surrounded on every hand by the Nephites.

And thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they were in the power of the Nephites, and he himself was slain, and the Lamanites did yield themselves into the hands of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Moronihah took possession of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that the Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land in peace.

And thus ended the forty and first year of the reign of the judges.

Hilamani 2

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono fāngofulu mā ua 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú, hili hono toe fokotu'u 'e Molonaihā 'a e melinó 'i he vaha'a 'o e kau Nīfaí mo e kau Leimaná, vakai na'e 'ikai ha taha ke ne ma'u 'a e nofo'anga fakamāú; ko ia na'e toe kamata ha fakakikihi 'i he vaha'a 'o e kakaí pe ko hai te ne ma'u 'a e nofo'anga fakamāú.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko Hilamani, 'a ia ko e foha 'o Hilamaní, na'e fili ke ne ma'u 'a e nofo'anga fakamāú 'i he le'o 'o e kakaí.
- 3 Kae vakai, ko Kisikumeni, 'a ia na'á ne fakapoongi 'a Peiholaní, na'á ne lamalama ke tāmata'i mo Hilamani foki; pea na'e pou pou 'i ia 'e he'ene kautahá, 'a ia kuo nau fai ha fuakava he 'ikai ke 'ilo'i 'e ha tokotaha 'a 'ene fai angahalá.
- 4 He na'e 'i ai 'a e tokotaha ko Katianetoni, 'a ia na'á ne fu'u poto 'i he ngaahi lea lahi, pea 'i hono faivá foki, 'a ia ko e fai 'o e ngāue fufū 'o e fakapō mo e kaiha'á; ko ia na'á ne hoko ko e taki 'o e kautaha 'a Kisikumení.
- 5 Ko ia na'á ne fakahekeheke 'i 'a kinautolu, pea mo Kisikumeni foki, kapau te nau fokotu'u ia ki he nofo'anga fakamāú, te ne tuku kiate kinautolu 'a ia 'oku kau ki he'ene kautahá ke nau ma'u 'a e mālohi mo e mafai ki he kakaí; ko ia na'e feinga 'a Kisikumeni ke faka'auha 'a Hilamani.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he'ene 'alu atu ki he nofo'anga fakamāú ke faka'auha 'a Hilamaní, vakai, na'e 'i ai ha taha 'o e kau tamaio'eiki 'a Hilamaní, 'a ia kuó ne 'alu po'uli atu, 'o ne ma'u ha 'ilo'i ha founga fufū, ki he ngaahi fakakaukau 'a ia kuo fai 'e he kautahá ni ke faka'auha 'a Hilamaní—
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fetaulaki mo Kisikumeni, pea na'á ne fai atu kiate ia ha faka'ilonga; ko ia na'e fakahā ange kiate ia 'e Kisikumeni 'a e me'a na'á ne feinga ke faí, 'o ne kole ke ne taki atu ia ki he nofo'anga fakamāú koe'uhí ke ne fakapoongi 'a Hilamani.

Helaman 2

And it came to pass in the forty and second year of the reign of the judges, after Moronihah had established again peace between the Nephites and the Lamanites, behold there was no one to fill the judgment-seat; therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the judgment-seat.

And it came to pass that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.

But behold, Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also; and he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.

For there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.

Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman.

And it came to pass as he went forth towards the judgment-seat to destroy Helaman, behold one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman—

And it came to pass that he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign; therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire, desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that he might murder Helaman.

- 8 Pea 'i he 'ilo 'i 'e he tamaio'eiki 'a Hilamani 'a e loto kotoa 'o Kisikumeni, mo e anga 'o 'ene taumu'a ke fakapoó, pea ko e taumu'a foki 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku kau ki he'ene kautahá ke nau fakapō, mo kaiha'a, pea to'o 'a e mālohí, (pea ko 'enau fakakaukau fufuú 'eni, mo 'enau aleá) na'e pehē ange 'e he tamaio'eiki 'a Hilamani kia Kisikumeni: Ta o atu ki he nofo'anga fakamāú.
- 9 Ko 'eni na'e fu'u fiefia lahi ai 'a Kisikumeni, he na'á ne 'amanaki te ne lava 'o fakahoko 'a 'ene fakakaukau; kae vakai, 'i he'ena 'alu atu ki he nofo'anga fakamāú, na'e tui 'i 'a Kisikumeni 'e he tamaio'eiki 'a Hilamani 'i hono mafú, pea na'á ne tō 'o mate, ta'e-'i ai-ha-to'e. Pea na'á ne lele, 'o tala kia Hilamani 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'a ia kuó ne mamata, mo fanongo ki ai, mo faí.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau atu 'e Hilamani ke puke 'a e kautaha 'o e kau kaiha'á mo e kau fakapō fufuú ni, koe'uhi ke tāmata 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki he laó.
- 11 Kae vakai, 'i he 'ilo 'e Katianetoni kuo 'ikai ke foki mai 'a Kisikumeni, na'á ne manavahē telia na'a faka'auha mo ia; ko ia na'á ne fekau ke muimui mai 'iate ia 'a 'ene kautahá. Pea nau hola mei he fonuá, 'i ha hala fakapulipuli; ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá; pea ko ia 'i he fekau atu 'e Hilamani ke puke 'a kinautolu na'e 'ikai ke 'iloa 'a kinautolu 'i ha feitu'u.
- 12 Pea 'e toe fakamatala 'o kau ki he Katianetoni ko 'ení 'amui ange. Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a hono fāngofulu mā ua 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfaí.
- 13 Pea vakai, 'i he ngata'anga 'o e tohí ni te mou 'ilo ai na'e hoko 'a e Katianetoni ko 'ení ko e 'auha'anga, 'io, 'a e meimei faka'auha 'o 'osí'osingamālie 'o e kakai Nīfaí.
- 14 Vakai 'oku 'ikai ko 'eku 'uhingá ki he ngata'anga 'o e tohi 'a Hilamani, ka ko 'eku 'uhingá ki he ngata'anga 'o e tohi 'a Nīfaí, 'a ia kuó u to'o mai mei ai 'a e fakamatala kotoa 'a ia kuó u tohí.

And when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder, and also that it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to murder, and to rob, and to gain power, (and this was their secret plan, and their combination) the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth unto the judgment-seat.

Now this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design; but behold, the servant of Helaman, as they were going forth unto the judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart, that he fell dead without a groan. And he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and heard, and done.

And it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

But behold, when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared lest that he should be destroyed; therefore he caused that his band should follow him. And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found.

And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And thus ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And behold, in the end of this book ye shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi.

Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

Hilamani 3

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u hono fāngofulu mā tolu 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú, na'e 'ikai ha feke'ike' 'i he kakai 'o Nifai kae ngata pē 'i ha ki' 'i loto-híkisia sí 'i 'a ia na'e 'i he siasí, 'a ia na'e fakatupu ai ha ngaahi feke'ike' iiki 'i he kakai, 'a ia ko ha ngaahi me'a na'e fakalelei 'i he ngata'anga 'o hono fāngofulu mā tolu 'o e ta'ú.
- 2 Pea na'e 'ikai ha feke'ike' 'i he kakai 'i hono fāngofulu mā fā 'o e ta'ú; pea na'e 'ikai foki ke loko lahi ha feke'ike' 'i he ta'u hono fāngofulu mā nimá.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono fāngofulu mā ono 'o e ta'ú, 'io, na'e lahi 'a e fakakikihí mo e ngaahi tafokí; 'a ia na'e tupu ai ha hiki ha fu'u tokolahi 'aupito mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'o nau ō atu ki he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú ke nofo 'i 'a e fonuá.
- 4 Pea na'a nau fononga ki ha feitu'u fu'u mama' 'o 'aupito, kae 'oua kuo nau a'u atu ki ha ngaahi fu'u anovai lalahi mo e ngaahi vaitafe lahi.
- 5 'Io, pea na'a nau mafola atu ki he ngaahi potu kotoa pē 'o e fonuá, ki he ngaahi potu kotoa pē kuo 'ikai ke lala pea 'ikai ke 'i ai ha 'akau, koe'uhi ko e fu'u kakai tokolahi kuo nau tomu'a nofo 'i 'a e fonuá.
- 6 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'ikai ha potu 'e taha 'o e fonuá 'e lala, ka ko e 'akau pē; ka koe'uhi ko hono lahi 'o e faka'auha 'a e kakai kuo nau mu'aki nofo 'i 'a e fonuá na'e ui ai ia ko 'auha.
- 7 Pea na'e sí'isi 'i 'a e 'akau 'i he funga 'o e fonuá, neongo iá na'e faka'au 'o fu'u potu 'a e kakai 'a ia na'e 'alu atú 'i hono ngāue 'aki 'o e simá; ko ia na'a nau langa 'a e ngaahi fale 'o e sima, 'a ia na'a nau nofo ai.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fakatokolahi pea mafola atu 'i he fonuá, pea na'a nau 'alu atu mei he fonua 'i he fakatongá ki he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú, pea na'a nau mafola atu 'o a'u ki he'enua 'ufi'ufi 'a e funga kotoa 'o e fonuá, 'o fai mei he tahi tongá ki he tahi tokelaú, pea mei he tahi hihifó ki he tahi hahaké.

Helaman 3

And now it came to pass in the forty and third year of the reign of the judges, there was no contention among the people of Nephi save it were a little pride which was in the church, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled in the ending of the forty and third year.

And there was no contention among the people in the forty and fourth year; neither was there much contention in the forty and fifth year.

And it came to pass in the forty and sixth, yea, there was much contention and many dissensions; in the which there were an exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land northward to inherit the land.

And they did travel to an exceedingly great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.

Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land.

And now no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate.

And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceedingly expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did dwell.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east.

9 Pea ko e kakai na'a nau 'i he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú na'a nau nofo 'i ha ngaahi fale fehikitaki, mo e ngaahi fale 'o e sima, pea na'a nau tuku 'a e 'akau kotoa pē 'a ia na'e tupu 'i he funga 'o e fonuá ke tupu hake, koe'uhi ke faifai pea 'i ai ha taimi te nau lava 'o ma'u ha 'akau ke langa 'aki honau ngaahi falé, 'io, 'a honau ngaahi koló, mo honau ngaahi temipalé, mo honau ngaahi fale lotu lahí, mo honau ngaahi potu topu tapú, pea mo honau ngaahi fa'ahinga fale kotoa pē.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e me'a 'i he fu'u si'i 'aupito 'a e 'akau 'i he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú, na'a nau fetuku lahi atu ia 'i he ngaahi vaka.

11 Pea na'e pehē 'enau tokoni'i 'a e kakai 'i he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú ke nau lava 'o langa 'a e ngaahi kolo lahi, 'aki 'a e 'akau mo e sima fakatou'osi.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'o e kakai 'o 'Āmoní, 'a ia na'e fanau 'i mai ko e kau Leimana, na'a nau 'alu atu foki ki he fonua ko iá.

13 Pea ko 'eni 'oku 'i ai ha ngaahi lekooti lahi na'e tauhi 'o e ngaahi ngāue 'a e kakaí ni, 'e he tokolahi 'o e kakaí ni, 'a ia 'oku fakamatala ai 'o kakato pea lalahi, 'o kau kiate kinautolu.

14 Kae vakai, ko hano vahe teau 'e taha 'o e ngaahi me'a kuo fai 'e he kakai ní, 'io, 'a e fakamatala 'o e kau Leimaná mo e kau Nifái, mo 'enau ngaahi taú, mo e ngaahi fakakikihí, mo e ngaahi angatu'ú, mo 'enau malangá, mo 'enau ngaahi kikité, mo 'enau fefolau'akí mo 'enau fo'u 'o e ngaahi vaká, mo 'enau langa 'o e ngaahi temipalé, mo e ngaahi fale lotu lahí, mo honau ngaahi potu topu tapú, mo 'enau ngaahi mā'oni'oni, mo 'enau fai angahalá, mo 'enau ngaahi fakapoó, mo 'enau ngaahi kaiha'á, mo 'enau vete koloá, mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga me'a fakalielia kotoa pē, mo e ngaahi fe'auakí, 'oku 'ikai fa'a hao ia 'i he tohí ni.

15 Kae vakai, 'oku 'i ai 'a e ngaahi tohi lahi mo e ngaahi lekooti lahi 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē, pea kuo meimei tauhi ia kotoa 'e he kau Nifái.

And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses, yea, their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.

And it came to pass as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

And thus they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.

And it came to pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.

And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.

But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robbings, and their plundering, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work.

But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

16 Pea kuo tauhi tukufakaholo mai ia mei he to'u tangata 'e taha ki he to'u tangata 'e taha 'e he kau Nifai, 'o a'u ki he enau hinga ki he fai angahala pea kuo fakapoongi, mo vetea, mo kumi, mo kapusi, mo tamate'i, mo fakamovetevete 'a kinautolu 'i he funga 'o e fonua, pea fetuiaki mo e kau Leimana, 'o a'u ki he 'ikai ke toe ui 'a kinautolu ko e kau Nifai, 'o nau hoko 'o fai angahala, mo kaivao, mo loto-fita'a, 'io, 'o hoko foki ko e kau Leimana.

17 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou toe foki ki he'eku fakamatala; ko ia, kuo 'osi hoko 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo u lau ki ai 'i he hili 'a e hoko 'a e ngaahi fu'u fakakikihi, mo e ngaahi moveuveu, mo e ngaahi tau, mo e ngaahi angatu'u 'i he kakai 'o Nifai.

18 Na'e 'osi 'a hono fangofulu ma ono 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakama'u;

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'e kei 'i ai 'a e fu'u feke'ike'i lahi 'i he fonua, 'io, 'i hono fangofulu ma fitu 'o e ta'u, pea 'i hono fangofulu ma valu foki 'o e ta'u.

20 Ka neongo ia na'e fua 'e Hilamani 'a e lakanga 'o e fakama'u 'i he faitotonu mo e ta'e-filifilimānako; 'io, na'á ne tokanga ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi lao, mo e ngaahi tu'utu'uni, mo e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá; pea na'á ne fai 'a e me'a 'oku totonu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá ma'u ai pē; pea na'á ne 'a'eva 'i he ngaahi hala 'o 'ene tama'i, 'o a'u ki he'ene tu'umalie ai 'i he fonua.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'á ne ma'u ha foha 'e toko ua. Na'á ne foaki kiate ia na'e lahi 'a e hinga ko Nifai, pea kiate ia na'e si'i 'a e hinga ko Lihai. Pea na'á na kamata ke tupu hake ki he 'Eiki.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'e faka'au ke si'isi'i ange 'a e ngaahi ta'u mo e ngaahi feke'ike'i, 'i he kakai 'o e kau Nifai, 'i he kongafaka'osi 'o e ta'u hono fangofulu ma valu 'o e pule 'a e kau fakama'u ki he kakai 'o Nifai.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe 'i hono fangofulu ma hiva 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakama'u, na'e fokotu'u ma'u 'a e melino 'i he fonua kotoa, tuku kehe pē 'a e ngaahi kautaha fufu kuo fokotu'u 'e Katianetoni ko e tangata kaiha'á 'i he ngaahi potu kakai'ia ange 'o e fonua, 'a ia na'e 'ikai 'ilo ki ai 'e kinautolu 'a ia na'e tauhi 'a e pule'anga 'i he taimi ko ia, ko ia na'e 'ikai ke faka'auha 'a kinautolu mei he fonua.

And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.

And now I return again to mine account; therefore, what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

The forty and sixth year of the reign of the judges ended;

And it came to pass that there was still great contention in the land, yea, even in the forty and seventh year, and also in the forty and eighth year.

Nevertheless Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God; and he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually; and he did walk after the ways of his father, insomuch that he did prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi. And they began to grow up unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites, in the latter end of the forty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianton the robber had established in the more settled parts of the land, which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u pē ko iá na'e 'i ai 'a e fu'u tu'umālie lahi 'i he siasí, 'o a'u ki he ului 'a e ngaahi toko lau afe ki he siasí 'o nau papitaiso ki he fakatomalá.

25 Pea na'e pehē fau hono lahi 'o e tu'umālie 'a e siasí, mo e ngaahi tāpuaki lahi 'a ia na'e lilingi hifo ki he kakaí, pea na'e fu'u ofo ai 'a e kau taula'eiki lahi mo e kau akonakí 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito.

26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tupulaki 'a e ngāue 'a e 'Eikí 'o a'u ki hono papitaiso mo ului ki he siasí 'o e 'Otuá, 'a e kakai tokolahi, 'io, 'a e ngaahi toko mano.

27 Ko ia 'oku tau lava 'o 'ilo 'i ai 'oku 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Eikí kiate kinautolu kotoa pē te nau ui ki hono huafa toputapú, 'i he mo'oni 'o honau lotó.

28 'Io, ko ia 'oku tau vakai ki hono fakaava mai 'o e matapā 'o e langí ki he kakai fulipē, 'io kiate kinautolu 'e tui ki he huafa 'o Sīsū Kalaisi, 'a ia ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá.

29 'Io, 'oku tau vakai ko ia ia 'e loto ki aí te ne puke 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia 'oku mo'ui mo mālohí, 'a ia 'e ta'ofi 'a e kākā olopoto kotoá mo e ngaahi tauhelé mo e fakakaukau kākā kotoa pē 'a e tēvoló, 'o tataki atu 'a e tangata 'a Kalaisí 'i he hala 'oku fāsí 'i mo lausí 'i ki he ngutungutu 'e taha 'o e vanu ta'engata 'o e mamahí 'a ia kuo teuteu ke folo hifo 'a e kau angahalá—

30 Pea a'utaki atu honau laumālié, 'io, 'a honau laumālie ta'e-fa'a-maté, ki he to'ukupu to'omata 'u 'o e 'Otuá 'i he pule'anga 'o e langí, ke nofo hifo mo 'Ēpalahame, mo 'Aisake, mo Sēkope, pea mo 'etau ngaahi tamai mā'oni'oni kotoa pē, 'o 'ikai toe hū ki tu'a.

31 Pea 'i he ta'u ko iá, na'e 'i ai ma'u ai pē 'a e fiefia 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea 'i he ngaahi potu fonua ofi ki aí, 'io, 'i he fonua hono kotoa na'e ma'u 'e he kau Nifái.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai 'a e melino mo e fu'u fiefia lahi 'aupito 'i hono toe 'o hono fāngofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'ú; 'io, pea na'e hokohoko ai pē foki 'a e melinó mo e fu'u fiefia lahi 'aupito 'i hono nimangofulu ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú.

33 Pea 'i hono nimangofulu mā taha ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú na'e 'i ai foki 'a e melinó, tuku kehe pē 'a e loto-híkisia 'a ia na'e kamata ke hū mai ki he siasí—kae 'ikai ki he siasí 'o e 'Otuá, ka ki he loto 'o e kakai 'a ia na'a nau pehē 'oku nau kau ki he siasí 'o e 'Otuá—

And it came to pass that in this same year there was exceedingly great prosperity in the church, insomuch that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church and were baptized unto repentance.

And so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure.

And it came to pass that the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting to the church of God, many souls, yea, even tens of thousands.

Thus we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all who will, in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon his holy name.

Yea, thus we see that the gate of heaven is open unto all, even to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.

Yea, we see that whosoever will may lay hold upon the word of God, which is quick and powerful, which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the snares and the wiles of the devil, and lead the man of Christ in a strait and narrow course across that everlasting gulf of misery which is prepared to engulf the wicked—

And land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out.

And in this year there was continual rejoicing in the land of Zarahemla, and in all the regions round about, even in all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that there was peace and exceedingly great joy in the remainder of the forty and ninth year; yea, and also there was continual peace and great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the judges.

And in the fifty and first year of the reign of the judges there was peace also, save it were the pride which began to enter into the church—not into the church of God, but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the church of God—

- 34 Pea na 'a nau fielahi 'i he hīkisia, 'o a 'u ki hono fakatanga 'i 'o e tokolahī 'o honau kāingá. Ko 'eni ko ha fu 'u kovi lahi 'eni, 'a ia na 'e fakatupu ai 'a e faingata 'a ia 'a e kakai loto-fakatōkilalo angé 'i he ngaahi fakatanga lahi, 'o kātaki 'i 'a e ngaahi fu 'u faingata 'a lahi.
- 35 Ka neongo iá na 'a nau fa 'a 'aukai mo lotu, pea nau faka 'au 'o mālohi ange ai pē 'i honau loto-fakatōkilaló, mo tu 'u mālohi ai pē 'i he tui kia Kalaisí, 'o a 'u ki hono fakafonu honau laumālié 'aki 'a e fiefia mo e fiemālie, 'io, 'o a 'u ki hono fakahaohaoa 'i mo fakamā 'oni 'oni 'i honau lotó, 'a ia ko ha fakamā 'oni 'oni 'i 'oku hoko tupu mei he 'enau fakavaivai 'i 'a honau lotó ki he 'Otuá.
- 36 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē na 'e 'osi foki hono nimangofulu mā ua 'o e ta 'ú 'i he melino, tuku kehe pē 'a e fu 'u hīkisia lahi 'aupito 'a ia kuo hū ki he loto 'o e kakai; pea na 'e tupu ia mei he 'enau ngaahi fu 'u koloa lahi 'aupitó mo 'enau tu 'umālie 'i he fonuá; pea na 'e tupu ia 'iate kinautolu mei he 'aho ki he 'aho.
- 37 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono nimangofulu mā tolu ta 'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú, na 'e pekia 'a Hilamani, pea na 'e kamata 'a hono foha lahi ko Nīfaí ke pule ko hono fetongi. Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē na 'á ne pule 'i he lakanga 'o e fakamāú 'i he faitotonu mo e ta 'e-filifilimānako; 'io, na 'á ne tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, pea ne 'a 'eva 'i he ngaahi hala 'o 'ene tamai.

And they were lifted up in pride, even to the persecution of many of their brethren. Now this was a great evil, which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade through much affliction.

Nevertheless they did fast and pray oft, and did wax stronger and stronger in their humility, and firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ, unto the filling their souls with joy and consolation, yea, even to the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts, which sanctification cometh because of their yielding their hearts unto God.

And it came to pass that the fifty and second year ended in peace also, save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people; and it was because of their exceedingly great riches and their prosperity in the land; and it did grow upon them from day to day.

And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead. And it came to pass that he did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did keep the commandments of God, and did walk in the ways of his father.

Hilamani 4

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u hono nimangofulu mā faá na'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi feke'ike' i lahi 'i he siasí, pea na'e 'i ai foki mo e fakakikihi 'i he kakaí, 'o tupu ai ha lilingi toto lahi.
- 2 Pea na'e tāmata'e 'i mo tuli mei he fonuá 'a e kongá 'o e kakai 'a ia na'e angatu'ú, pea na'a nau 'alu atu ki he tu' i 'o e kau Leimaná.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau feinga ke ue' i hake 'a e kau Leimaná ke nau tau' i 'a e kau Nīfai; kae vakai, na'e fu' u ilifia 'aupito 'a e kau Leimaná, pea na'e 'ikai ai te nau tokanga ki he ngaahi lea 'a e kau angatu' u ko iá.
- 4 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u hono nimangofulu mā ono 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú, na'e 'i ai 'a e kau angatu' u 'a ia na'e 'alu hake mei he kau Nīfai ki he kau Leimaná; pea na'a nau lava fakataha mo e kau angatu' u kehé 'o fakatupu 'enau 'ita ki he kau Nīfai; pea na'a nau teuteu ki he tau' i hono kotoa 'o e ta' u ko iá.
- 5 Pea 'i hono nimangofulu mā fitu 'o e ta' u na'a nau ō mai ki he kau Nīfai ke tau, pea na'a nau kamata ke tāmata'e 'i 'a e kakaí; 'io, 'o a' u ki hono nimangofulu mā valu 'o e ta' u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú kuo nau lava 'o ma' u 'a e fonua ko Seilahemalá; 'io, pea mo e ngaahi fonua kotoa pē, 'o a' u atu ki he fonua na'e ofi ki he fonua ko Mahú.
- 6 Pea na'e teke' i atu 'a e kau Nīfai mo e kau tau 'a Molonaihaá 'o a' u ki he fonua ko Mahú;
- 7 Pea na'a nau keli kolo ai ke ta' ofi 'a e kau Leimaná, mei he tahi hihifó, 'o a' u ki he hahaké; pea na'e fe' unga ia mo ha 'aho 'e taha 'o e fononga 'a ha Nīfai, 'i he 'otu kolotau 'a ia kuo nau keli mo tuku ki ai 'enau ngaahi kau tau' ke malu' i honau fonua he tokelaú.
- 8 Pea ko ia kuo ma' u 'e he kau angatu' u ko ia mei he kau Nīfai, 'i he tokoni mei he kau tau tokolahi 'a e kau Leimaná, 'a e tofi' a kotoa 'o e kau Nīfai 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua 'i he fakatongá. Pea na'e fai 'eni kotoa 'i hono nimangofulu mā valu mo hono nimangofulu mā hiva ta' u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú.

Helaman 4

And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.

And the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites; but behold, the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid, insomuch that they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.

But it came to pass in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; and they were all that year preparing for war.

And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; yea, insomuch that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful.

And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful;

And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country.

And thus those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward. And all this was done in the fifty and eighth and ninth years of the reign of the judges.

- 9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono onongofulu ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú, na'e lava 'e Molonaihā mo 'ene kau taú 'o puke 'a e ngaahi konga lahi 'o e fonuá; 'io, na'a nau toe ma'u 'a e ngaahi kolo lahi 'a ia kuo tō ki he nima 'o e kau Leimaná.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono onongofulu mā taha ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú na'a nau lava 'o toe ma'u hano vaeua 'o e kotoa honau ngaahi tofi'á.
- 11 Ko 'eni ko e fu'u mole lahi ko 'eni 'a e kau Nīfai, mo e fakapō lahi kuo hoko kiate kinautolú, kuo 'ikai mei hoko ia ka ne ta'e'oua 'enau fai angahalá mo 'enau anga-fakalielia 'iate kinautolú; 'io, pea na'e hoko ia 'iate kinautolu na'e lau 'oku nau kau ki he siasi 'o e 'Otuá.
- 12 Pea na'e hoko ia ko e tupu mei he hīkisia 'a honau lotó, koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi fu'u koloa lahí, 'io, na'e tupu ia 'i he 'enau ngaohikovi'i 'a e masivá, 'o ta'ofi 'enau me'akaí mei he fiekaíá, mo ta'ofi honau ngaahi kofú mei he telefuá, mo sipi'i honau kāinga mā'ulaló 'i he kou'ahé, mo manuki'i 'a e me'a 'oku toputapú, 'o faka'ikai'i 'a e laumālie 'o e kikité mo e fakahaá, mo fakapō, mo vete koloa, mo loi, mo kaiha'a, mo tonono, mo tutu'u hake 'i he ngaahi feke'ike'i lalahi, 'o feholaiki ki he fonua ko Nīfai, ki he lotolotonga 'o e kau Leimaná—
- 13 Pea ko e me'a 'i he 'enau fu'u fai angahala ní, mo 'enau ngaahi pōlepole 'i honau mālohi 'onautolú, na'e tuku ai 'a kinautolu 'i honau mālohi 'onautolú; ko ia na'e 'ikai te nau tu'umālie, ka na'e tautea'i mo taa'i, mo tuli 'a kinautolu 'i he 'ao 'o e kau Leimaná, kae 'oua kuo mole meiate kinautolu hono meimei kotoa 'o honau ngaahi fonuá.
- 14 Kae vakai, na'e malanga 'aki 'e Molonaihā 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi ki he kakai koe'uhi ko 'enau angahalá, kae 'uma'ā foki mo Nīfai mo Līhai, 'a ia ko e ongo foha 'o Hilamaní, na'á na malanga 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi ki he kakai, 'io, pea kikite 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi kiate kinautolu 'o kau ki he 'enau ngaahi angahalá, pea mo e ngaahi me'a 'e hoko kiate kinautolu 'o kapau na'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala mei he 'enau ngaahi angahalá.
- 15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fakatomala, pea na'e kamata ke nau tu'umālie 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau fakatomalá.

And it came to pass in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land; yea, they regained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions.

Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them; yea, and it was among those also who professed to belong to the church of God.

And it was because of the pride of their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, yea, it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked, and smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering, plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephí, among the Lamanites—

And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

But behold, Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity, and also Nephi and Lehi, who were the sons of Helaman, did preach many things unto the people, yea, and did prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniquities, and what should come unto them if they did not repent of their sins.

And it came to pass that they did repent, and inasmuch as they did repent they did begin to prosper.

16 Pea 'i he vakai 'e Molonaihā kuo nau fakatomalá na'á ne 'ahi'ahi ke tataki atu 'a kinautolu mei he feitu'u ki he feitu'u, pea mei he kolo ki he kolo, kae 'oua kuo nau toe ma'u hano vaeua 'o 'enau ngaahi koloá mo hono vaeua 'o honau ngaahi fonua kotoa pē.

17 Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono onongofulu mā taha ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono onongofulu mā ua ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú, na'e 'ikai toe lava 'e Molonaihā ke fá'ao ha toe fonua 'e taha mei he kau Leimaná.

19 Ko ia na'a nau tuku 'enau fakakaukau ke ma'u hono toe 'o honau ngaahi fonuá, he na'e pehē fau hono tokolahi 'o e kau Leimaná ko ia na'e 'ikai toe lava ai ke ma'u 'e he kau Nifái ha mālohi lahi ange kiate kinautolu; ko ia na'e ngāue 'aki 'e Molonaihā 'a 'ene ngaahi kau taú kotoa 'i he le'ohi 'o e ngaahi potu kuó ne ma'ú.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē, koe'uhi ko hono fu'u tokolahi 'o e kau Leimaná ko ia na'e fu'u ilifia lahi 'a e kau Nifái, telia na'a ikuna mo molomoloki hifo 'a kinautolu, pea tāmata'e i mo faka'auha.

21 'Io, na'a nau kamata ke manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi kikite 'a 'Alamá, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e ngaahi lea 'a Mōsaiá; pea na'e mahino kiate kinautolu kuo nau hoko ko ha kakai kia-kekeva, pea kuo nau ta'etoka 'i 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá;

22 Pea kuo nau liliu mo molomoloki 'i honau lalo va'é 'a e ngaahi lao 'a Mōsaiá, pe ko ia na'e fekau 'e he 'Eikí ke ne 'oatu ki he kakai; pea na'a nau vakai kuo fakakovi 'i 'enau ngaahi laó, pea kuo nau hoko ko ha kakai fai angahala, 'o a'u ki he 'enau fai angahala 'o tatau mo e kau Leimaná.

23 Pea koe'uhi ko 'enau angahalá kuo kamata ai ke faka'au'auhifo 'a e siasí; pea kamata ke nau ta'etui ki he laumālie 'o e kikitē pea ki he laumālie 'o e fakahaá; pea na'e hanga mai kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a e 'Otuá.

For when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place, and from city to city, even until they had regained the one-half of their property and the one-half of all their lands.

And thus ended the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass in the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges, that Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites.

Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain more power over them; therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.

And it came to pass, because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.

Yea, they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, and also the words of Mosiah; and they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, and that they had set at naught the commandments of God;

And that they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people; and they saw that their laws had become corrupted, and that they had become a wicked people, insomuch that they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.

And because of their iniquity the church had begun to dwindle; and they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation; and the judgments of God did stare them in the face.

24 Pea na 'a nau vakai kuo nau hoko 'o vaivai 'o hangē ko honau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná, pea kuo 'ikai toe malu 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí; 'io, kuo mahu 'i ia meiate kinautolu koe 'uhi 'oku 'ikai ke 'afio 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí 'i he ngaahi tempale 'oku ta 'e mā'oni'oni—

25 Ko ia kuo tuku 'e he 'Eikí 'a 'ene malu 'i 'a kinautolu 'i hono māfimaŋi fakaofa mo ta 'e-hano-tataú, he kuo nau hinga ki ha tu'unga 'o e ta'etui mo e angakovi fakamanavahē; pea na 'a nau vakai kuo fu'u tokolahi ange 'aupito 'a e kau Leimaná 'iate kinautolu, pea kapau 'e 'ikai te nau pikitai ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, kuo pau pē ke nau 'auha.

26 He vakai, na 'a nau vakai 'oku lahi tatau pē 'a e ivi 'o e kau Leimaná mo honau ivi, 'io ko e tangata ki he tangata. Pea ko ia kuo nau hinga ki he fu'u maumau-fonó ni; 'io, ko ia kuo nau hoko 'o vaivai, koe 'uhi ko 'enau maumau-fonó, 'i he ngaahi ta'u na 'e 'ikai lahi.

And they saw that they had become weak, like unto their brethren, the Lamanites, and that the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; yea, it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples—

Therefore the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief and awful wickedness; and they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God they must unavoidably perish.

For behold, they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength, even man for man. And thus had they fallen into this great transgression; yea, thus had they become weak, because of their transgression, in the space of not many years.

Hilamani 5

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u pē ko iá, vakai, na'e tuku 'e Nīfai 'a e nofo'anga fakamāú ki ha tangata 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko Sisolami.
- 2 He ko e me'a 'i he fokotu'u 'enau ngaahi laó mo honau ngaahi pule'angá 'i he le'o 'o e kakaí, pea ko kinautolu na'a nau fili 'a e koví na'a nau tokolahi ange 'iate kinautolu na'e fili 'a e leleí, ko ia na'a nau faka'au 'o tauu mo e faka'auhá, he kuo fakakovi'i 'a e ngaahi laó.
- 3 'Io, pea na'e 'ikai ke ngata ai; ka ko ha kakai kia-kekeva 'a kinautolu, ko ia na'e 'ikai fa'a pule'i ai 'a kinautolu 'e he laó pe fakamaau totonú, kae ngata pē 'i honau faka'auha.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo faka'au ke fiu 'a Nīfai koe'uhi ko 'enau angahalá; peá ne tukuange 'a e nofo'anga fakamāú, 'o ne kamata ke malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i hono kotoa 'o e toenga 'o hono ngaahi 'ahó, pea mo hono tokoua ko Līháí foki, 'i hono kotoa 'o e toenga 'o hono ngaahi 'ahó;
- 5 He na'á na manatu'i 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia na'e lea 'aki kiate kinaua 'e he'ena tamai ko Hilamaní. Pea ko e ngaahi lea 'eni na'á ne lea'akí:
- 6 Vakai, 'e hoku ongo foha, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mo manatu ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá; pea 'oku ou loto ke mo fakahā ki he kakaí 'a e ngaahi leá ni. Vakai, kuó u 'ai kiate kimoua 'a e ongo hingoa 'o 'etau 'uluaki mātu 'a 'a ia na'e há'u mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá; pea kuó u fai ia koe'uhí 'i ho'omo manatu'i homo hingoá ke mo manatu'i ai 'a kinaua; pea 'i ho'omo manatu'i 'a kinauá ke mo manatu'i ai 'a 'ena ngaahi ngāué; pea 'i ho'omo manatu'i 'ena ngaahi ngāué ke mo 'ilo ai kuo lau mo tohi na'e lelei ia.
- 7 Ko ia, 'e hoku ongo foha, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mo fai 'a e me'a ko ia 'oku leleí, koe'uhí ke lau 'o kau kiate kimoua, mo tohi foki, 'o hangē ko ia kuo lau mo tohi 'o kau kiate kinauá.

Helaman 5

And it came to pass that in this same year, behold, Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.

For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted.

Yea, and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction.

And it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days, and his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days;

For they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake unto them. And these are the words which he spake:

Behold, my sons, I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments of God; and I would that ye should declare unto the people these words. Behold, I have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I have done that when you remember your names ye may remember them; and when ye remember them ye may remember their works; and when ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said, and also written, that they were good.

Therefore, my sons, I would that ye should do that which is good, that it may be said of you, and also written, even as it has been said and written of them.

8 Pea ko 'eni 'e hoku ongo foha, vakai 'oku 'i ai mo ha ngaahi me'a 'e ni'ihii 'oku ou fie ma'u meiate kimoua, pea ko e me'a 'eni, ke 'oua na'a mo fai 'a e ngaahi me'a ni ke mo polepole ai, kae kehe ke mo fai 'a e ngaahi me'a ni ke mo tokonaki ai ma'amoua ha koloa 'i he langi, 'io, 'a ia 'oku ta'engata, pea 'oku 'ikai mole hono mahu'inga; 'io, koe'uhi ke mo ma'u 'a e me'a ofa mahu'inga 'o e mo'ui ta'engata, 'a ia 'oku 'i ai ha'atau 'uhinga ke mahalo kuo foaki ia ki he'etau ngaahi tama'i.

9 'Oiau'e manatu, manatu, 'e hoku ongo foha, ki he ngaahi lea 'a ia na'e folofola 'aki 'e he tu'i ko Penisiman'i ki hono kaka'i; 'io, manatu 'oku 'ikai mo ha toe hala kehe pe founga 'e lava 'o fakamo'ui ai 'a e tangata, ka 'i he ta'ata'a fakalelei pe 'o Sisu Kalaisi, 'a ia 'e ha'ele mai; 'io, manatu 'oku ne ha'ele mai ke huhu'i 'a e manani.

10 Pea manatu 'i foki 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia na'e lea 'aki 'e 'Amuleki kia Sisolome, 'i he kolo ko 'Amonihaa; he na'a ne tala kiate ia kuo pau ke ha'ele mai 'a e 'Eiki ke huhu'i 'a hono kaka'i, ka 'e 'ikai te ne ha'ele mai ke huhu'i 'a kinautolu 'i he'enua ngaahi angahala, kae huhu'i 'a kinautolu mei he'enua ngaahi angahala.

11 Pea kuo tuku kiate ia 'a e malohi 'e he Tama'i ke huhu'i 'a kinautolu mei he'enua ngaahi angahala koe'uhi ko e fakatomala; ko ia kuo ne fekau mai 'ene kau 'angel'o ke fakaha 'a e ngaahi ongoongo 'o e ngaahi tu'unga 'o e fakatomala, 'a ia 'oku ne 'omi kiate kinautolu 'a e malohi 'o e Huhu'i, ke fakamo'ui 'a honau laumali'e.

12 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku ongo foha, manatu, manatu 'oku makatu'unga 'i he maka 'o hotau Huhu'i, 'a ia ko Kalaisi, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otu'a, kuo pau ke mo langa ai homo makatu'unga; koe'uhi ka tuku atu 'e he tevolo 'a 'ene ngaahi matangi malohi, 'io, 'a 'ene ngaahi ngaha'u 'i he 'ahiohio, 'io, ka fa'aki kiate kimoua 'a hono kotoa 'o 'ene 'uha mak'a mo 'ene fu'u af'a lahi, 'e 'ikai ma'u 'e ia ha malohi kiate kimoua ke fusi hifo 'a kimoua ki he vanu 'o e mamahi mo e faingata 'a ia 'oku 'ikai hano ngata'anga, koe'uhi ko e maka kuo langa ai 'a kimoua, 'a ia ko e makatu'unga malohi, 'a ia ko ha makatu'unga kapau 'e langa ai 'a e tangata 'e 'ikai lava ke nau hinga.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe ko e ngaahi lea 'eni na'e akonaki 'aki 'e Hilamani ki hono ongo foha; 'io, na'a ne akonaki 'aki kiate kinoua 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi 'a ia kuo 'ikai ke tohi, kae 'uma'a mo e ngaahi me'a lahi foki 'a ia kuo tohi.

And now my sons, behold I have somewhat more to desire of you, which desire is, that ye may not do these things that ye may boast, but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in heaven, yea, which is eternal, and which fadeth not away; yea, that ye may have that precious gift of eternal life, which we have reason to suppose hath been given to our fathers.

O remember, remember, my sons, the words which king Benjamin spake unto his people; yea, remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, who shall come; yea, remember that he cometh to redeem the world.

And remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom, in the city of Ammonihah; for he said unto him that the Lord surely should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.

And he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.

And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, yea, his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fall.

And it came to pass that these were the words which Helaman taught to his sons; yea, he did teach them many things which are not written, and also many things which are written.

14 Pea na 'á na manatu 'i 'a 'ene ngaahi leá; pea ko ia na 'á na 'alu atu, 'o na tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, ke na akonaki 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i he kakai kotoa pē 'o Nīfaí, 'o kamata 'i he kolo ko Mahú;

15 Pea fai atu mei ai ki he kolo ko Kití; pea mei he kolo ko Kití ki he kolo ko Mūlekí;

16 Pea mei he kolo 'e taha ki he kolo 'e taha, kae 'oua kuó na 'u atu ki he kakai kotoa 'o Nīfaí, 'a ia na 'a nau nofo 'o he fonua 'i he fakatongá; pea fai atu mei ai ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'i he kau Leimaná.

17 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē na 'á na malanga 'i he fu 'u mālohi lahi, 'o 'a 'u ki he 'ena veuveuki 'a e tokolahi 'o e kau angatu 'u 'a ia kuo nau 'alu atu mei he kau Nīfaí, 'o 'a 'u ki he 'enau ō mai 'o vete 'enau ngaahi angahalá pea papitaiso ki he fakatomalá, pea nau foki leva ki he kau Nīfaí 'o feinga ke fakalelei 'i 'a e ngaahi hala kuo nau fai kiate kinautolú.

18 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē na 'e malanga 'a Nīfaí mo Līhai ki he kau Leimaná 'i he fu 'u mālohi mo e mafai lahi, he kuo foaki kiate kinua 'a e mālohi mo e mafai ke na malanga, pea na 'e fakahā foki kiate kinua 'a e me 'a ke na lea 'akí—

19 Ko ia na 'á na lea pea na 'e fu 'u ofo lahi ai 'a e kau Leimaná, 'o fakaloto 'i 'a kinautolu, ko ia na 'e ai 'a e tokovalu afe 'o e kau Leimaná 'a ia na 'e nofo 'i he fonua ko Seilahemalá mo e ngaahi potu ofi ki ai 'a na nau papitaiso ki he fakatomalá, pea na 'e fakamahino kiate kinautolu 'a e kovi 'o e ngaahi talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí.

20 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē na 'e hiki atu 'a Nīfaí mo Līhai 'o 'alu mei ai ki he fonua ko Nīfaí.

21 Pea na 'e hoko 'o pehē na 'e puke 'a kinua 'e ha kongatau 'a e kau Leimaná pea lī ki he fale fakapōpulá; 'io, ki he fale fakapōpula pē ko ia 'a ia na 'e lī ki ai 'a 'Āmoni mo hono ngaahi tokouá 'e he kau tamaio'eiki 'a Limihaí.

22 Pea hili 'a e hono lī kinua ki he fale fakapōpulá 'i ha ngaahi 'aho lahi ta 'e-ha-me 'akai, vakai, na 'a nau 'alu atu ki he fale fakapōpulá ke 'ave 'a kinua ke tāmata 'i.

And they did remember his words; and therefore they went forth, keeping the commandments of God, to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city Bountiful;

And from thenceforth to the city of Gid; and from the city of Gid to the city of Mulek;

And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of Zarahemla, among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites, insomuch that they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them—

Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did proceed from thence to go to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison; yea, even in that same prison in which Ammon and his brethren were cast by the servants of Limhi.

And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e takatakai 'ia Nīfai mo Līhai 'a e me'a na'e hangē ko e afi, 'io 'o 'ikai ai te nau loto-to'a ke puke 'a kinaua 'aki honau nimá 'i he 'enau manavahē telia na'a nau vela. Ka neongo iá, na'e 'ikai ke vela 'a Nīfai mo Līhai; pea na'e hangē 'okú na tu'u 'i he lotolotonga 'o e afi kae 'ikai te na vela.

24 Pea 'i he 'ena vakai 'oku takatakai 'iate kinaua ha pou afi, pea na'e 'ikai te na vela aí, na'e faka'au 'o to'a ai 'a hona lotó.

25 He na'á na vakai 'oku ilifia 'a e kau Leimaná ke ala kiate kinaua 'aki honau nimá; pea na'a nau ilifia foki ke ha'u 'o ofi kiate kinaua, ka nau tu'u 'o hangē kuo taa 'i 'a kinautolu 'o noa 'i he 'ohovalé.

26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tu'u atu 'a Nīfai mo Līhai 'o kamata ke lea kiate kinautolu, 'o pehē: 'Oua 'e manavahē, he vakai, ko e 'Otuá kuó ne fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e me'a fakaofó ni, 'a ia 'oku fakahā ai kiate kimoutolu 'oku 'ikai te mou lava ke ala 'aki homou nimá kiate kimaua ke tāmata 'i 'a kimaua.

27 Pea vakai, 'i he hili 'ena lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e fu'u ngalulululu lahi 'a e kelekelé, pea na'e ngalulululu mo e ngaahi holisi 'o e fale fakapōpulá 'o hangē ka holo ki he kelekelé; kae vakai, na'e 'ikai holo ia. Pea vakai, ko kinautolu na'e 'i he fale fakapōpulá ko e kau Leimana mo e kau Nīfai 'a ia na'e angatu'ú.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakamalumalu 'a kinautolu 'e ha 'ao fakapo'uli, pea na'e hoko kiate kinautolu ha fu'u ilifia lahi fakamanavahē.

29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ongo mai ha le'o 'o hangē 'oku ha'u ia mei 'olunga hake 'i he 'ao fakapo'ulí, 'o pehē: Mou fakatomala, mou fakatomala, pea 'oua 'e toe feinga ke faka'auha 'eku ongo tamaio'eiki 'a ia kuó u fekau atu kiate kimoutolu ke fakahā 'a e ngaahi ongoongo leleí.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'enau fanongo ki he le'ó ni, 'o nau 'ilo 'oku 'ikai ko ha le'o ia 'o e mana, pea na'e 'ikai foki ko ha le'o ia 'o e fu'u longoa'a lahi, kae vakai, ko ha kihí 'i le'o-si' 'oku fu'u vaivai 'aupito, 'o hangē ha fanafaná, pea na'e mahuhuhuhu ia 'o ongo ki he laumālié tonu—

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.

For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.

And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but behold, they did not fall. And behold, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters.

And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.

And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.

And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—

31 Pea neongo hono vaivai 'o e le'ó, vakai na'e ngalulululu 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito 'a e kelekelé, pea na'e toe ngalulululu mo e ngaahi holisi 'o e fale fakapōpulá, 'o hangē ka holo ia ki he kelekelé; pea vakai, ko e 'ao fakapo'uli, 'a ia kuo fakamalumu 'a kinautolú, na'e 'ikai ke mato'atu ia—

32 Pea vakai na'e toe ongo mai 'a e le'ó, 'o pehē: Mou fakatomala, mou fakatomala, he 'oku ofi mai 'a e pule'anga 'o e langí, pea 'oua 'e toe feinga ke faka'auha 'eku ongo tamaio'eikí. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe ngalulululu 'a e kelekelé, pea na'e ngalulululu mo e ngaahi holisi.

33 Pea na'e toe ongo mai 'a e le'ó ko hono tu'oto, 'o folofola 'aki kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi folofola faka'oua 'a ia 'oku 'ikai fa'a lava ke lea 'aki 'e ha tangata; pea na'e toe ngalulululu 'a e ngaahi holisi, pea na'e ngalulululu 'a e kelekelé 'o hangē ka mafahi ua íá.

34 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai lava ke fehólaki 'a e kau Leimaná koe'uhi ko e 'ao fakapo'uli 'a ia na'e fakamalumu 'a kinautolú; 'io, pea na'e 'ikai foki te nau lava 'o ngaue koe'uhi ko e ilifía kuo tō kiate kinautolú.

35 Ko 'eni na'e 'i ai ha toko taha 'iate kinautolu na'e fanau 'i ko e Nīfai, 'a ia na'á ne tomu'a kau ki he siasi 'o e 'Otuá ka kuó ne tafoki mei ai.

36 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne tafoki ki mui, pea vakai, na'á ne sio atu 'i he 'ao fakapo'uli ki he fofonga 'o Nīfai mo Līháí; pea vakai, na'e ulo ia 'o lahi 'aupito, 'o hangē nai ko e fofonga 'o e kau 'āngeló. Pea na'á ne mamata atu 'oku hanga hake hona fofongá ki he langí; pea na'e hangē 'okú na lea pe lea le'o-lahi ki ha tokotaha 'okú na mamata ki aí.

37 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kaila 'a e tangatá ni ki he fu'u kakaí, ke nau tafoki 'o mamata ki ai. Pea vakai, na'e tuku 'a e mālohi kiate kinautolu ke nau tafoki 'o mamata; pea na'a nau mamata ki he fofonga 'o Nīfai mo Līháí.

38 Pea na'a nau pehē ange ki he tangatá: Vakai, ko e hā hono 'uhinga 'o e ngaahi me'a kotoa ko 'eni, pea ko hai ia 'oku fetalanoa'aki mo e ongo tangata ní?

39 Ko 'eni ko e hinga 'o e tangatá ko 'Aminatapi. Pea na'e pehē ange kiate kinautolu 'e 'Aminatapi: 'Okú na fetalanoa'aki mo e kau 'āngeló 'a e 'Otuá.

And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—

And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.

And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.

Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.

And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.

And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.

And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?

Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

40 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē ange 'e he kau
Leimaná kiate ia: Ko e hā te mau faí, koe'uhi ke to'o atu
'a e 'ao fakapo'ulí ni mei he'ene fakamalumu 'a
kimautolú?

41 Pea na'e pehē ange 'e 'Aminatapi kiate kinautolu:
Kuo pau ke mou fakatomala, pea tangi ki he le'ó, kae
'oua ke mou ma'u 'a e tui kia Kalaisi, 'a ia na'e ako 'i kiate
kimoutolu 'e 'Alamá, mo 'Amuleki, mo Sisolomé; pea 'o
ka mou ka fai 'eni, 'e to'o atu 'a e 'ao fakapo'ulí mei
he'ene fakamalumu 'a kimoutolú.

42 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau kamata kotoa pē ke
tangi ki he le'ó 'o ia kuó ne lulululu 'i 'a e kelekelé; 'io,
na'a nau tangi kae 'oua kuo to'o atu 'a e 'ao fakapo'ulí.

43 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he'enu siosio holo honau
matá, pea mamata kuo to'o atu 'a e 'ao fakapo'ulí mei
he'ene fakamalumu 'a kinautolú, vakai, na'a nau
mamata kuo takatakai 'iate kinautolu, 'io 'a e tokotaha
kotoa pē, ha pou afi.

44 Pea kuo 'i honau lotolotonga 'a Nifai mo Lihai; 'io,
kuo takatakai 'i 'a kinautolu; 'io, na'e hangē 'oku nau 'i
he lotolotonga 'o ha afi 'oku uló, ka na'e 'ikai te nau vela
ai, pea na'e 'ikai ke vela ai mo e ngaahi holisi 'o e fale
fakapōpulá; pea na'e fakafonu 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e fiefia
ko ia 'oku 'ikai fa'a fakamatala 'i pea 'oku fonu 'i he
nāunau.

45 Pea vakai, na'e hā'ele hifo 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni 'o
e 'Otuá mei he langí, pea hū ia ki honau lotó, pea na'e
fakafonu 'a kinautolu 'aki ha me'a na'e hangē ko e afí,
pea na'a nau lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea fakafo.

46 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ongo mai ha le'o kiate
kinautolu, 'io, ko ha le'o mālie, 'o hangē ko ha fanafaná,
'o pehē:

47 Fiemālie, fiemālie pē 'a kimoutolu, koe'uhi ko
ho'omou tui ki hoku 'Ofa'angá, 'a ia kuo 'i ai talu mei
hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní.

48 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he'enu fanongo ki aí na'a nau hanga
hake honau matá 'o hangē ko ha'anau vakai pe ko e ha'u
mei fē 'a e le'ó; pea vakai, na'a nau mamata ki he
matangaki 'a e ngaahi langí; pea na'e 'alu hifo 'a e kau
'āngelo mei he langí 'o nau tauhi 'a kinautolu.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto
him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may
be removed from overshadowing us?

And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent,
and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in
Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and
Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the
cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadow-
ing you.

And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto
the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did
cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.

And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes
about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed
from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they
were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.

And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea,
they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the
midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm them not, neither
did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they
were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full
of glory.

And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down
from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they
were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth
marvelous words.

And it came to pass that there came a voice unto
them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, say-
ing:

Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my
Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the
world.

And now, when they heard this they cast up their
eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and be-
hold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down
out of heaven and ministered unto them.

49 Pea na'e toko tolungau nai 'a e kakai 'a ia na'a nau mamata mo fanongo ki he ngaahi me'a ní; pea na'e fekau ke nau 'alu atu pea 'oua te nau ofo, pea ke 'oua foki te nau ta'etui.

50 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'alu atu, 'o tauhi ki he kakaí, 'o nau fakahā 'i he ngaahi potu kotoa pē na'e ofi ki aí 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa 'a ia kuo nau fanongo mo mamata ki aí, 'o a'u ki he tui ki ai 'a e kongalahi 'o e kau Leimaná, koe'uhi ko hono lahi 'o e ngaahi fakamo'oni 'a ia kuo nau ma'ú.

51 Pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē na'e tuí na'a nau tuku hifo 'enau ngaahi mahafu taú, pea mo 'enau tāufehi'á mo e talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí.

52 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau tuku atu ki he kau Nifái 'a e ngaahi fonua 'o honau tofi'á.

And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen, insomuch that the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

And as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

Hilamani 6

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi ange hono onongofulu mā ua 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu, kuo hoko 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē pea kuo hoko 'a e kau Leimaná, 'a e tokolahi ange 'o kinautolu, ko ha kakai mā'oni'oni, 'o a'u ki he lahi ange 'enau mā'oni'oni 'i he kau Nīfai, koe'uhi ko 'enau fai mālohí mo 'enau tu'u ma'u 'i he tuí.
- 2 He vakai, na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'o e kau Nīfai kuo fakafefeka honau lotó pea 'ikai fie fakatomala, pea fu'u fai angahala lahi 'aupito, 'o a'u ki he 'enau lí'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá mo e ngaahi malanga mo e ngaahi kikite kotoa pē 'a ia na'e fai kiate kinautolú.
- 3 Ka neongo iá, na'e ma'u 'e he kakai 'o e Siasí 'a e fu'u fiefia lahi koe'uhi ko e fakaului 'o e kau Leimaná, 'io, koe'uhi ko e siasi 'o e 'Otuá, 'a ia kuo fokotu'u 'iate kinautolú. Pea na'a nau feohi lelei 'iate kinautolu, 'o nau fefiefa'aki 'iate kinautolu, pea nau ma'u 'a e fu'u fiefia lahi.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu hifo 'a e tokolahi 'o e kau Leimaná ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'o nau fakahā ki he kakai 'o e kau Nīfai 'a e anga 'o honau fakauluí, pea na'a nau na'ina 'i kiate kinautolu ke nau tui mo fakatomala.
- 5 'Io, pea na'e malanga 'a e tokolahi 'i he fu'u mālohi mo e mafai lahi, 'o nau fakatafoki ai ha tokolahi 'o kinautolu ki he fu'u loto-fakatōkilalo lahi, ke hoko ko e kau ākongā anga-fakatōkilalo 'a e 'Otuá mo e Lamí.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu atu 'a e kau Leimana tokolahi ki he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú; pea na'e 'alu foki mo Nīfai mo Lihai ki he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú, ke malanga ki he kakaí. Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono onongofulu mā tolu 'o e ta'ú.
- 7 Pea vakai, na'e 'i ai 'a e melino 'i he fonuá hono kotoa, 'o a'u ki he 'alu 'a e kau Nīfai ki he potu kotoa pē 'o e fonuá 'a ia na'a nau fie 'alu ki aí, 'o tatau ai pē pe 'i he kau Nīfai pe 'i he kau Leimaná.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu foki mo e kau Leimaná ki he potu kotoa pē 'a ia na'a nau fie 'alu ki aí, 'o tatau ai pē pe 'i he kau Leimaná pe 'i he kau Nīfai; pea ko ia na'a nau nofo mo mo'ui fa'itelihā 'i he 'enau feohí, pea fefakatau'aki, pea ke ma'u ha tupu, 'o fakatatau ki honau lotó.

Helaman 6

And it came to pass that when the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges had ended, all these things had happened and the Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people, insomuch that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites, because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.

For behold, there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened and impenitent and grossly wicked, insomuch that they did reject the word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them.

Nevertheless, the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites, yea, because of the church of God, which had been established among them. And they did fellowship one with another, and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion, and did exhort them to faith and repentance.

Yea, and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; and also Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people. And thus ended the sixty and third year.

And behold, there was peace in all the land, insomuch that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and thus they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.

- 9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau faka'au 'o fu'u koloa'ia 'aupito, 'a e kau Leimaná mo e kau Nīfaí fakatou'osi; pea na'a nau ma'u 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito 'a e koulá, mo e silivá, mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga ukamea mahu'inga kotoa pē, 'i he fonua 'i he tongá mo e fonua 'i he tokelaú fakatou'osi.
- 10 Ko 'eni na'e ui 'a e fonua 'i he tongá ko Līhai, pea na'e ui 'a e fonua 'i he tokelaú ko Mūleki, 'a ia ko e tauhingoa ki he foha 'o Setikiá; he na'e 'omi 'e he 'Eikí 'a Mūleki ki he fonua 'i he tokelaú, mo Līhai ki he fonua 'i he tongá.
- 11 Pea vakai, na'e 'i ai 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e koulá 'i he ongo fonua ni fakatou'osi, pea mo e silivá, mo e ngaahi ukamea mahu'inga 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē; pea na'e 'i ai foki mo e kau tangata tufunga poto 'aupito, 'a ia na'a nau ngāue 'aki 'a e ngaahi ukamea kehekehe kotoa pē mo nau fakama'a ia; pea ko ia na'a nau faka'au 'o koloa'ia.
- 12 Na'a nau tō 'a e kēlení 'o fu'u lahi, 'i he tokelaú mo e tongá fakatou'osi; pea na'a nau fu'u tu'umālie 'aupito, 'i he tokelaú mo e tongá fakatou'osi. Pea na'a nau fakatokolahi 'o faka'au 'o fu'u mālohi 'i he fonua. Pea na'a nau tauhi 'a e ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki tokolahi mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahi, 'io, 'a e fanga manu sisino tokolahi.
- 13 Vakai na'e ngāue honau kakai fefiné 'o filo, mo nau ngaohi 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga tupenu kotoa pē, 'o e līneni tu'ovalevale mo e fa'ahinga tupenu kotoa pē, ke fakakofu 'aki 'enau telefuá. Pea na'e 'osi pehē atu 'i he melino 'a hono onongofulu mā fā 'o e ta'ú.
- 14 Pea 'i hono onongofulu mā nima 'o e ta'ú na'a nau ma'u foki 'a e fu'u fiefia mo e melino lahi, 'io, 'a e ngaahi malanga mo e ngaahi kikite lahi na'e kau ki he ngaahi me'a 'e hoko. Pea na'e 'osi pehē atu hono onongofulu mā nima 'o e ta'ú.
- 15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono onongofulu mā ono 'o e ta'ú 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú, vakai na'e fakapoongi 'a Sisolami 'i he nima 'o ha tokotaha ta'e'iloa lolotonga 'ene nofo 'i he nofo'anga fakamaau'angá. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'ú pē ko iá, na'e fakapoongi foki mo hono foha, 'a ia kuo fili 'e he kakai ko hono fetongí. Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono onongofulu mā ono 'o e ta'ú.

And it came to pass that they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.

Now the land south was called Lehi, and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.

And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land. And they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.

Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. And thus the sixty and fourth year did pass away in peace.

And in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace, yea, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. And thus passed away the sixty and fifth year.

And it came to pass that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And it came to pass that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered. And thus ended the sixty and sixth year.

16 Pea 'i he kamata'anga 'o hono onongofulu mā fitu 'o e ta'ú na'e toe kamata 'a e kakaí ke fu'u fai angahala 'aupito.

17 He vakai, kuo hanga 'e he 'Eikí 'o tāpuaki'i 'a kinautolu 'o fuoloa 'aki 'a e ngaahi koloa 'o e māmaní kuo 'ikai ai ke ue'i hake 'a kinautolu ke 'ita, pe ki he ngaahi tau, pe ki he lilingi toto; ko ia na'e kamata ke tuku honau lotó ki he ngaahi koloá; 'io, na'a nau kamata ke feinga ke fakatupu pa'anga koe'uhi ke hiki hake 'a kinautolu ke mā'olunga ange 'i he taha kehé; ko ia na'a nau kamata ke fai 'a e ngaahi fakapō fufū, mo kaiha'a mo vete koloa, koe'uhi ke lava 'o ma'u ha tupu.

18 Pea ko 'eni vakai, ko e kau fakapō mo e kau kaiha'a ni ko e kautaha ia kuo fokotu'u 'e Kisikumeni mo Katianetoni. Pea ko 'eni kuo hoko 'o pehē na'e tokolahi, 'i he kau Nīfái, 'a e kau kaiha'a 'a Katianetoni. Kae vakai, na'a nau tokolahi ange 'i he konga angakovi taha 'o e kau Leimaná. Pea na'e ui 'a kinautolu ko e kau kaiha'a 'a Katianetoni mo e kau fakapō.

19 Pea ko kinautolu ia 'a ia na'a nau fakapoongi 'a e fakamaau lahi ko Sisolamí, mo hono fohá, lolotonga 'ena 'i he nofo'anga fakamāú; pea vakai, na'e 'ikai ke 'ilo'i 'a kinautolu.

20 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'ilo'i 'e he kau Leimaná 'oku 'iate kinautolu 'a e kau kaiha'a na'a nau fu'u loto-mamahi 'aupito; pea na'a nau fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'i honau mālohí ke faka'auha 'a kinautolu mei he funga 'o e māmaní.

21 Kae vakai, na'e ue'i hake 'e Sētane 'a e loto 'o e tokolahi 'o e kau Nīfái, 'o a'u ki he 'enau kau ki he ngaahi kautaha 'o e kau kaiha'a ko iá, 'o nau fai 'enau ngaahi fuakavá mo 'enau ngaahi fakapapaú, ke nau femalu'i'aki mo fefakahaofi'aki 'i he fakatu'utāmaki kotoa pē te nau 'i aí, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a tautea'i kinautolu koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi fakapoó, mo 'enau ngaahi vete koloá, mo 'enau ngaahi kaiha'a.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai 'enau ngaahi faka'ilonga, 'io, 'a 'enau ngaahi faka'ilonga fakapulipuli, mo 'enau ngaahi lea fakapulipuli; pea na'a nau fai 'eni koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo'i ai ha taha 'a ia kuó ne fai 'a e fuakavá, neongo pe ko e hā ha angahala 'e fai 'e hono tokouá ke 'oua 'e fai ha kovi kiate ia 'e hono tokouá, pe ko kinautolu 'oku kau ki he kautahá ni, 'a ia kuo nau fai 'a e fuakava ní.

And in the commencement of the sixty and seventh year the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.

For behold, the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to bloodshed; therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches; yea, they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another; therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder, that they might get gain.

And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton's band. But behold, they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton's robbers and murderers.

And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.

But behold, Satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers, and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings.

And it came to pass that they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

- 23 Pea ko ia na'a nau lava ai 'o fakapō, mo vete koloa, mo kaiha'a, mo fai fe'auaki mo fai 'a e fa'ahinga angahala kotoa pē, 'o fepaki mo e ngaahi lao 'o honau fonuá pea mo e ngaahi fono 'a honau 'Otuá.
- 24 Pea 'ilonga ha taha 'a ia na'e kau ki he'enu kautahá te ne fakahā ki he māmaní 'a 'enu fai angahalá mo 'enu ngaahi ngāue fakalieliá, 'e fakamāu'i ia, 'o 'ikai fakatatau ki he ngaahi lao 'a honau fonuá, kae fakatatau ki he ngaahi lao 'o 'enu fai angahalá, 'a ia kuo fokotu'u 'e Katianetoni mo Kisikumení.
- 25 Ko 'eni vakai, ko e ngaahi fuakava mo e ngaahi fakapapau fakapulipuli 'eni 'a ia na'e fekau 'e 'Alamā ki hono fohá ke 'oua na'a 'oatu ki he kakai 'o e māmaní, telia na'a hoko ia ko ha me'a ke 'ohifo ai 'a e kakaí ki he faka'auha.
- 26 Ko 'eni vakai, na'e 'ikai ke 'omi 'a e ngaahi fakapapau mo e ngaahi fuakava fakapulipuli ko iá kia Katianetoni mei he ngaahi lekooti 'a ia na'e tuku kia Hilamaní; kae vakai, na'e fakahū ia ki he loto 'o Katianetoni 'e he tokotaha pē ko ia 'a ia na'á ne fakatauele'i 'etau 'uluaki ongo mātu'á ke na kai 'a e fua tapú—
- 27 'Io, 'a e tokotaha pē ko ia 'a ia na'e alea fakafufū mo Keiní, kapau te ne fakapoongi 'a hono tokoua ko 'Ēpeli 'e 'ikai fakahā ia ki he māmaní. Pea na'á ne alea fakafufū mo Keini mo kinautolu na'e muimui 'iate iá 'o kamata mei he taimi ko iá.
- 28 Pea ko ia foki 'a e tokotaha tatau na'á ne fakahū ki he loto 'o e kakaí ke nau langa ha taua ke fe'unga hono mā'olungá ke nau lava ai 'o a'u ki he langí. Pea ko ia ia 'a e tokotaha tatau pē na'á ne tataki atu 'a e kakai 'a ia na'a nau ha'u mei he taua ko iá ki he fonua ní; 'a ia na'á ne fakamafola 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'o e fakapo'ulí mo e ngaahi me'a fakalieliá 'i he funga kotoa 'o e fonuá, kae 'oua kuó ne toho hifo 'a e kakaí ki ha faka'auha faka'aufuli, pea ki ha heli ta'engata.
- 29 'Io, ko e tokotaha tatau pē ia 'a ia na'e fakahū ki he loto 'o Katianetoni ke ne fai atu 'a e ngāue 'o e fakapo'ulí, mo e fakapō fufuú; peá ne fakatupu ia talu mei he kamata'anga 'o e tangatá 'o fai mai ki he taimi ko 'eni.

And thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God.

And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction.

Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but behold, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit—

Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

30 Pea vakai, ko ia ia 'a e tupu'anga 'o e angahala kotoa pē. Pea vakai, 'okú ne fai atu 'a 'ene ngaahi ngāue 'o e fakapo'ulí mo e fakapō fufuú, pea 'okú ne tukufakaholo mai 'enau ngaahi alea fakafufuú, mo 'enau ngaahi fakapapaú, mo 'enau ngaahi fuakavá, mo 'enau ngaahi fa'ufa'u 'o e fai angahala fakamanavaheé, mei he to'u tangata ki he to'u tangata 'o fakatatau mo 'ene lava ke ma'u 'a e loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá.

31 Pea ko 'eni vakai, kuó ne ma'u 'a e fu'u mālohi lahi ki he loto 'o e kau Nīfái; 'io, 'o a'u ki he 'enau hoko 'o fu'u fai angahala 'aupito; 'io, kuo afe hanau tokolahi mei he hala 'o e mā'oni'oni, 'o nau molomoloki hifo 'i honau lalo va'é 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, pea nau afe ki honau ngaahi hala 'onautolu pē, 'o nau fokotu'u ma'anautolu 'a e ngaahi tamapua 'aki 'enau koulá mo 'enau silivá.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hoko mai kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi angahalá ni 'i he vaha'ataimi 'o e ngaahi ta'u sí'i pē, 'o a'u ki he hoko ai kiate kinautolu hano kongalahi 'i hono onongofulu mā fitu ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfái.

33 Pea na'a nau tupulaki 'i he 'enau ngaahi angahalá 'i hono onongofulu mā valu 'o e ta'ú foki, 'o tupu ai 'a e fu'u loto-mamahi mo e tangilāulau 'a e kau mā'oni'oni.

34 Pea ko ia 'oku tau vakai na'e kamata ke faka'au'au hifo 'a e kau Nīfái 'i he ta'etui, 'o nau tupulaki 'i he fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá, ka na'e kamata ke tupulaki lahi 'aupito 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he 'ilo' 'o honau 'Otuá; 'io, na'a nau kamata ke tauhi 'ene ngaahi tu'utu'uní mo 'ene ngaahi fekau, 'o 'a'eva 'i he mo'oni mo e angatonu 'i hono 'aó.

35 Pea ko ia 'oku vakai na'e kamata ke mahu'i atu 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí mei he kau Nīfái, koe'uhi ko e angahala mo e fefeka 'o honau lotó.

36 Pea ko ia 'oku tau vakai na'e kamata ke lilingi hifo 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono Laumālié ki he kau Leimaná, koe'uhi ko 'enau loto-fakatōkilaló mo 'enau fie tui ki he 'ene ngaahi folofolá.

And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.

And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.

And it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, insomuch that a more part of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also, to the great sorrow and lamentation of the righteous.

And thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; yea, they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.

And thus we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.

And thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.

37 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuli holo 'e he kau Leimaná 'a e kau kaiha'a 'a Katianetoní; pea na'a nau malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'i he lotolotonga 'o kinautolu na'e fai angahala lahi ange 'iate kinautolú, 'o a'u ki hono faka'auha 'o 'osi'osingamālie 'o e kautaha 'o e kau kaiha'a ko 'ení mei he kau Leimaná.

38 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he fa'ahi 'e tahá, na'e langa hake mo poupou 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Nīfaí, 'o kamata 'i honau ní'ihī 'a ia na'e fai angahala angé, 'o a'u ki he'enua mafola atu 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonua 'o e kau Nīfaí, pea kuo nau fakatauele'i 'a e kongā lahi ange 'o e kau mā'oni'oni kae 'oua kuo nau kamata ke tui ki he'enua ngaahi ngāué pea mā'u 'enua ngaahi koloa veté, pea kau mo kinautolu 'i he'enua ngaahi fakapō fufuú mo e ngaahi kautaha fufuú.

39 Pea na'e pehē 'enua mā'u hono pule'i kotoa 'o e pule'angá, 'o a'u ki he'enua molomoloki hifo 'i honau lalo va'é mo taa'i mo hae mo fulitu'a ki he masivá mo e angamaluú mo e kau ākongā loto-fakatōkilalo 'a e 'Otuá.

40 Pea ko ia 'oku tau vakai na'a nau 'i ha tu'unga fakamanavahē, pea na'a nau faka'au ke taau mo e faka'auha ta'engata.

41 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'osi pehē hono onongofulu mā valū ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai 'o Nīfaí.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianton; and they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them, in-
somuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass on the other hand, that the Nephites did build them up and support them, begin-
ning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites, and had se-
duced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret mur-
ders and combinations.

And thus they did obtain the sole management of the government, insomuch that they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God.

And thus we see that they were in an awful state, and ripening for an everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that thus ended the sixty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

*KO E KIKITE 'A NĪFAI, KO E FOHA 'O HILAMANÍ—
'Oku folofola 'a e 'Otuá ki he kakai 'o Nīfai te ne 'a 'ahi
kiate kinautolu 'i hono houhaú, ke faka 'auba 'a
kinautolu ke 'osi 'osingamālie 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te nau
fakatomala mei he 'enau fai angahalá. 'Oku taa 'i 'e he
'Otuá 'a e kakai 'o Nīfai 'aki 'a e mahaki faka 'auba;
'oku nau fakatomala mo tafoki kiate ia. 'Oku kikite 'a
Samuela, ko ha tangata Leimana ki he kau Nīfai.*

Hilamani 7

- 1 Vakai, ko 'eni na 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono onongofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'ú 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfai, na 'e foki mai 'a Nīfai, ko e foha 'o Hilamaní, ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá mei he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú.
- 2 He kuó ne 'alu atu 'i he kakai 'a ia na 'a nau nofo 'i he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú, 'o ne malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá kiate kinautolu, mo kikite 'aki 'a e ngaahi me 'a lahi kiate kinautolu;
- 3 Pea na 'e 'ikai te nau tali 'ene ngaahi lea kotoa pē, 'o a'ú ki he 'ikai te ne lava 'o toe nofo 'iate kinautolu, ka na 'á ne toe foki mai ki he fonua 'o hono tupu 'angá.
- 4 Pea 'i he 'ene vakai ki he kakai 'oku nau 'i he tu'unga faka'ulia pehē 'o e fai angahalá, pea mo e ma'ú 'e he kau kaiha 'a 'a Katianetoní 'a e ngaahi nofo 'anga 'o e fakamāú—kuo nau fa'ao 'a e mālohi mo e mafai 'o e fonuá; 'o nau le 'ei ki he tafá 'aki 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, 'o 'ikai te nau momo 'i faitotonu 'i hono 'aó; pea 'oku 'ikai te nau fai ha me 'a totonu ki he fānau 'a e tangatá;
- 5 Na 'a nau fakahalaia 'i 'a e kau mā'oní'oní koe'uhi ko 'enau mā'oní'oní; 'o nau tukuange 'a e halaiá, mo e fai angahalá ke nau 'alu ta'e-tautea 'i koe'uhi ko 'enau pa'angá; pea 'ikai ia ko ia pē ka na 'a nau tuku ke nau ma'ú 'a e ngaahi lakanga mā'olunga 'o e pule 'angá, ke nau pule mo fai 'o hangē ko honau lotó, koe'uhi ke nau ma'ú ai ha tupu mo e fakamālō 'a e māmaní, pea, 'ikai ia ko ia pē, ka ke faingofua ai 'enau tonó, mo e kaiha'á, mo e fakapoó, pea fai 'o hangē ko honau loto 'onautolú—
- 6 Ko 'eni kuo hoko 'a e fu'ú angahalá ni ki he kau Nīfai, 'i he vaha'ataimi 'o e ngaahi ta'ú si'i pē; pea 'i he mamata ki ai 'a Nīfai, na 'e fonu 'a hono lotó 'i he mamahi; pea na 'á ne kaila 'i he mamahi 'a hono laumālié:

*THE PROPHECY OF NEPHI, THE SON OF
HELAMAN—God threatens the people of Nephi that he
will visit them in his anger, to their utter destruction ex-
cept they repent of their wickedness. God smiteth the peo-
ple of Nephi with pestilence; they repent and turn unto
him. Samuel, a Lamanite, prophesies unto the Nephites.*

Helaman 7

Behold, now it came to pass in the sixty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of the Nephites, that Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward.

For he had been forth among the people who were in the land northward, and did preach the word of God unto them, and did prophesy many things unto them;

And they did reject all his words, insomuch that he could not stay among them, but returned again unto the land of his nativity.

And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and those Gadianton robbers filling the judgment-seats—having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing no justice unto the children of men;

Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money; and moreover to be held in office at the head of government, to rule and do according to their wills, that they might get gain and glory of the world, and, moreover, that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills—

Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of not many years; and when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast; and he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:

7 Taumaiā, na'á ku lava 'o ma'u hoku ngaahi 'ahó 'i he ngaahi 'aho na'e fua ha'u ai 'a 'eku tamai ko Nífaí mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, ke u lava nai ke fiefia mo ia 'i he fonua 'o e tala'ofá; pea na'e ako'ingofua 'a hono kakai 'i he taimi ko iá, 'o nau fai mālohi 'i he tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, pea tuai ke tohoaki 'i atu ke fai angahala; pea na'a nau fai vave 'i he tokanga ki he ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Eiki—

8 'Io, ka na'á ku mo'ui 'i hoku ngaahi 'ahó 'i he ngaahi 'aho ko iá, pehē kuo ma'u 'e hoku laumālié 'a e fiefia 'i he mā'oni'oni 'a hoku kāingá.

9 Kae vakai, kuo tu'utu'uni ke u mo'ui 'i he ngaahi 'aho ko 'eni, pea fakafonu 'a hoku laumālié 'i he mamahi koe'uhi ko e fai angahalá ni 'a hoku kāingá.

10 Pea vakai, ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fai 'eni 'i ha taua, 'a ia na'e tu'u 'i he ngoue 'a Nífaí, 'a ia na'e 'i he ve'e hala lahi ki he māketi lahi taha na'e 'i he kolo ko Seilahemalá; ko ia, kuo punou hifo 'a Nífaí 'i he funga taua 'a ia na'e 'i he'ene ngoué, 'a ia ko e taua na'e ofi ki he matapā 'o e ngoué, 'a ia na'e 'alu atu ofi ai 'a e hala lahi.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai ha kau tangata 'a ia na'a nau 'alu ofi atu 'o nau mamata kia Nífaí 'i he'ene fakahā hake hono laumālié ki he 'Otuá 'i he funga tauá; pea na'a nau felele 'i 'o fakahā ki he kakai 'a e me'a kuo nau mamata ki ai, pea na'e lolofi mai 'a e kakai tokolahi 'aupito ke nau 'ilo'i 'a e 'uhinga 'o e fu'u tangi lahi pehē koe'uhi ko e fai angahala 'a e kakai.

12 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he tu'u hake 'a Nífaí na'á ne mamata ki he ngaahi ha'ofanga kakai tokolahi kuo nau fakataha mai.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fakaava hono ngutú 'o ne pehē kiate kinautolu: Vakai, ko e hā 'a e 'uhinga kuo mou fakataha mai ai 'a kimoutolú? Koe'uhí ke u fakahā nai kiate kimoutolu 'a ho'omou ngaahi angahalá?

14 'Io, koe'uhí ko 'eku 'alu hake ki hoku funga tauá ke u fakahā hoku laumālié ki hoku 'Otuá, koe'uhi ko e fu'u mamahi lahi 'a hoku lotó, 'a ia 'oku tupunga 'i ho'omou ngaahi angahalá!

Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my father Nephi first came out of the land of Jerusalem, that I could have joyed with him in the promised land; then were his people easy to be entreated, firm to keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity; and they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord—

Yea, if my days could have been in those days, then would my soul have had joy in the righteousness of my brethren.

But behold, I am consigned that these are my days, and that my soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my brethren.

And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, which was in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.

And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people.

And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

And it came to pass that he opened his mouth and said unto them: Behold, why have ye gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you of your iniquities?

Yea, because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is because of your iniquities!

15 Pea ko e me'a 'i he'eku tangi mo e tangilāulaú kuo mou katoa fakataha mai ai, pea 'oku mou ofo; 'io, pea 'oku 'aonga lahi ke mou ofo; 'io, 'oku totonu ke mou ofo koe'uhi kuo mou fakavaivai 'i 'a kimoutolu pea kuo ma'u 'e he tēvoló 'a e fu'u mālohi lahi ki homou lotó.

16 'Io, na'a mou lava fēfē ke tukulolo ki he fakatauele 'a e tokotaha 'okú ne feinga ke lī hifo homou laumālié ki he mamahi lauikuongá mo e mala'ia 'oku 'ikai hano ngata'angá?

17 'Oiauē mou fakatomala, mou fakatomala! Ko e hā ka mou ka fie mate ai? Mou tafoki, mou tafoki ki he 'Eiki ko homou 'Otuá. Ko e hā kuó ne lí'aki ai 'a kimoutolú?

18 'Oku tupu ia koe'uhi ko ho'omou fakafefeka homou lotó; 'io, 'oku 'ikai te mou fie tokanga ki he le'o 'o e tauhi-sipi leleí; 'io, kuo mou fakatupu 'ene houhau kiate kimoutolú.

19 Pea vakai, kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala, 'e 'ikai te ne tānaki 'a kimoutolu, kae vakai, te ne fakamovetevete 'a kimoutolu ke mou hoko ko e me'akai ki he fanga kulíí mo e fanga manu kaivaó.

20 'Oiauē, na'a mou lava fēfē 'o fakangalo'i homou 'Otuá 'i he 'aho pē ko ia 'a ia na'a ne fakahaofi ai 'a kimoutolú?

21 Kae vakai, ko hono 'uhingá ke ma'u ha tupu, pea fakamālō'ia 'e he kakaí, 'io, pea koe'uhí ke mou ma'u ai 'a e koula mo e siliva. Pea kuo mou loto 'aki 'a e ngaahi koloa mo e ngaahi me'a va'inga 'o e māmani ko 'ení, pea ko e me'a ke ma'u ai iá, kuo mou fai ai 'a e fakapoó, mo e vete koloá, mo e kaiha'á, mo fakamo'oni loi ke tukuakí'i homou kaungā'apí, mo fai 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga angahala kotoa pē.

22 Pea 'e hoko kiate kimoutolu 'a e mala'ia koe'uhi ko e me'á ni 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala. He ka 'ikai te mou fakatomala, vakai, ko e fu'u koló ni, pea mo e ngaahi kolo lalahi 'oku takatakai ki ai foki, 'a ia 'oku 'i he fonua 'o hotau tofí'á, 'e fá'ao pea 'e 'ikai te mou ma'u ha potu 'i ai; he vakai, 'e 'ikai tuku 'e he 'Eiki kiate kimoutolu 'a e ivi, 'o hangē ko 'ene fai ki mu'á, ke mou matu'uaki homou ngaahi filí.

And because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered yourselves together, and do marvel; yea, and ye have great need to marvel; yea, ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil has got so great hold upon your hearts.

Yea, how could you have given way to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?

O repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die? Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?

It is because you have hardened your hearts; yea, ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; yea, ye have provoked him to anger against you.

And behold, instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.

O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?

But behold, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, yea, and that ye might get gold and silver. And ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which ye do murder, and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.

And for this cause wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent. For if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies.

- 23 He vakai, 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki: 'E 'ikai te u fakahā ki he kau angahalá 'a hoku mālohí, pe ki ha toe kakai kehe, kae ngata pē kiate kinautolu 'oku nau fakatomala mei he 'enau ngaahi angahalá, mo tokanga ki he 'eku ngaahi leá. Ko ia ko 'eni, 'oku ou faka 'amu ke mou 'ilo 'i 'e hoku kāinga, 'e lelei ange 'a e kau Leimaná 'iate kimoutolu, 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala.
- 24 He vakai, 'oku nau mā'oni'oni lahi hake 'iate kimoutolu, he kuo 'ikai te nau angahala ki he fu' u 'ilo lahi ko ia kuo mou ma'ú; ko ia 'e 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Eiki kiate kinautolu; 'io, te ne fakalōloa 'i honau ngaahi 'ahó 'o fakatokolahi honau hakó, 'io 'o a' u ki ha hili hono faka'auha 'aupito 'o kimoutolú 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala.
- 25 'Io, 'e mala'ia 'a kimoutolu koe'uhi ko e fu' u fakalielia lahi 'a ia kuo tupu 'iate kimoutolú; pea kuo mou kau kotoa ki ai, 'io, ki he kautaha fufū 'a ia na'e fokotu' u 'e Katianetoní!
- 26 'Io, 'e hoko kiate kimoutolu 'a e mala'ia koe'uhi ko e hīkisia 'a ia kuo mou tuku ke hū ki homou lotó, 'a ia kuo hiki hake 'a kimoutolu 'o mā'olunga 'i he me'a 'oku lelei ko e tupu mei ho'omou ngaahi fu' u koloa lahi 'aupitó!
- 27 'Io, 'e mala'ia 'a kimoutolu koe'uhi ko ho'omou fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá!
- 28 Pea kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala te mou 'auha; 'io, 'e to'o homou ngaahi fonuá meiate kimoutolu, pea 'e faka'auha 'a kimoutolu mei he funga 'o e māmaní.
- 29 Vakai ko 'eni, 'oku 'ikai te u pehē 'iate au pē 'e hoko 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, he 'oku 'ikai te u 'ilo 'i 'iate au pē 'a e ngaahi me'á ni; kae vakai, 'oku ou 'ilo 'i 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'á ni koe'uhi kuo fakahā ia kiate au 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá, ko ia 'oku ou fakamo'oni ai 'e hoko ia.

For behold, thus saith the Lord: I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than the other, save it be unto those who repent of their sins, and hear-ken unto my words. Now therefore, I would that ye should behold, my brethren, that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye shall repent.

For behold, they are more righteous than you, for they have not sinned against that great knowledge which ye have received; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them; yea, he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent.

Yea, wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has come among you; and ye have united yourselves unto it, yea, to that secret band which was established by Gadianton!

Yea, wo shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!

Yea, wo be unto you because of your wickedness and abominations!

And except ye repent ye shall perish; yea, even your lands shall be taken from you, and ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold, I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be.

Hilamani 8

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili ange 'a e lea 'aki 'e Nīfai 'a e ngaahi lea ní, vakai, na'e 'i ai 'a e kau tangata 'a ia ko e kau fakamaau, na'a nau kau foki ki he kautaha fufū 'a Katianetoní, pea na'a nau 'ita, 'o kaila le' o-lahi 'o tukuaki' i ia, 'o nau pehē ki he kakaí: Ko e hā 'oku 'ikai te mou puke ai 'a e tangatá ni pea 'omai ia koe' uhi ke fakamāu' i ia 'o fakatatau mo e hia kuó ne fai?
- 2 Ko e hā 'oku mou mamata ai ki he tangatá ni, pea fanongo ki he' ene lau 'ikovi' i 'a e kakaí ni pea mo 'etau laó?
- 3 He vakai, kuo lea kiate kinautolu 'a Nīfai 'o kau ki hono kovi 'o 'enau laó; 'io, na'e lea 'aki 'e Nīfai 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi 'a ia 'oku 'ikai fa' a lava 'o tohi; pea na'e 'ikai te ne lea 'aki ha me'a 'a ia na'e fepaki mo e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá.
- 4 Pea na'e 'ita 'a e kau fakamaau ko iá kiate ia koe' uhi ko 'ene lea mahinongofua kiate kinautolu 'o kau ki he' enau ngaahi ngāue fufū 'o e fakapo' ulí; ka neongo iá, na'e 'ikai te nau loto-to' a ke puke ia 'aki honau nima 'onautolú, he na'a nau manavahē ki he kakaí telia na'a nau kaila 'o talatalaaki' i kinautolu.
- 5 Ko ia na'a nau kaila ki he kakaí, 'o pehē: Ko e hā 'oku mou tuku ai ke lau 'ikovi' i 'a kitautolu 'e he tangatá ni? He vakai 'okú ne fakamāu' i 'a e kakaí ni kotoa pē, ke nau 'auha; 'io, pea ko hotau ngaahi fu' u koló ni 'e to' o meiate kitautolu, koe' uhi ke 'oua te tau ma' u ha potu 'i ai.
- 6 Pea ko 'eni 'oku tau 'ilo' i 'oku 'ikai lava ke hoko 'eni, he vakai, 'oku tau mālohi, pea 'oku lalahi mo hotau ngaahi koló, ko ia 'e 'ikai lava ke ma' u 'e hotau ngaahi filí ha mālohi kiate kitautolu.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē 'enau faka' ita' i 'a e kakaí kia Nīfai, 'o nau fakalanga 'a e ngaahi fakakikihi 'iate kinautolu; he na'e 'i ai 'a e ni' ihi 'a ia na'e kalanga: Tuku ai pē 'a e tangatá ni, he ko ha tangata lelei ia pea kuo pau ke hoko 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuó ne lea 'akí 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te tau fakatomala;
- 8 'Io, vakai, 'e hoko 'a e ngaahi tautea kotoa pē 'a ia kuó ne fakamo' oni' i kiate kitautolú; he 'oku tau 'ilo kuo totonu 'ene fakamo' oni kiate kitautolu 'o kau ki he' etau ngaahi angahalá. Pea vakai 'oku lahi ia, pea 'okú ne 'ilo' i foki 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'e hoko kiate kitautolú 'o hangē ko 'ene 'ilo' i 'a 'etau ngaahi angahalá;

Helaman 8

And now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?

Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this people and against our law?

For behold, Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law; yea, many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written; and nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God.

And those judges were angry with him because he spake plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness; nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.

Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us? For behold he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction; yea, and also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.

And now we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great, therefore our enemies can have no power over us.

And it came to pass that thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them; for there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely come to pass except we repent;

Yea, behold, all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us; for we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities. And behold they are many, and he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities;

- 9 'Io, pea vakai, ka ne 'ikai ko ha palōfita ia, pehē kuo 'ikai te ne lava ke fakamo'oni ki he ngaahi me'a ko iá.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e kakai 'a ia na'e feinga ke faka'auha 'a Nifai na'e fakamālohi 'i 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko 'enua ilifá, ke 'oua te nau ala honau nimá kiate ia; ko ia na'á ne toe kamata ke lea kiate kinautolu, 'i he'ene vakai kuó ne ma'u 'a e loto 'o e ni'ihī, ko ia na'e a'u ki honau ni'ihī na'e to'e na'a nau manavahē ke fai ha me'a.
- 11 Ko ia na'e ue'i ia ke ne toe lea kiate kinautolu, 'o pehē: Vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, 'ikai kuo mou lau na'e tuku 'e he 'Otuá 'a e mālohi ki ha tangata 'e taha, 'a ia ko Mōsese, ke ne taa 'i 'a e ngaahi vai 'o e Tahī Kulokulá, pea na'a nau mavaeua ki hē mo ē, 'o lava ai 'a e kakai 'Isilelí, 'a ia ko 'etau ngaahi tamaí, ke nau fononga atu 'i he kelekele mōmoa, pea na'e toe 'oho mai 'a e ngaahi vai ki he ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau 'Isipité, 'o fakangalo hifo 'a kinautolu?
- 12 Pea ko 'eni vakai, kapau na'e tuku 'e he 'Otuá ki he tangatá ni ha mālohi pehē, ko e hā ka mou fefakakikihi 'aki ai 'iate kimoutolu, 'o pehē kuo 'ikai te ne tuku mai kiate au 'a e mālohi ke u 'ilo 'i ai 'a e ngaahi tautea 'e hoko kiate kimoutolu 'o ka 'ikai te mou fakatomala.
- 13 Kae vakai, 'oku 'ikai ngata 'i ho'omou faka'ikai 'i 'eku ngaahi leá, ka 'oku mou faka'ikai 'i foki mo e ngaahi lea kotoa 'a ia kuo lea 'aki 'e he 'etau ngaahi tamaí, kae 'uma 'ā foki mo e ngaahi lea 'a ia na'e lea 'aki 'e he tangata ko ia, 'a ia ko Mōsesé, 'a ia na'e tuku ki ai 'a e mālohi lahi pehē, 'io, 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia kuó ne lea 'aki 'o kau ki he hā'ele mai 'a e Mīsaía.
- 14 'Io, 'ikai na'á ne fakamo'oni 'i 'e hā'ele mai 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá? Pea hangē ko 'ene hiki hake 'a e ngata palasa 'i he feitu'u maomaongoa, 'e pehē pē hono hiki hake 'o ia 'e hā'ele mai.
- 15 Pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'e sio ki he ngata ko iá te nau mo'ui, 'e pehē mo kinautolu kotoa pē te nau sio ki he 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá 'i he tui, pea ma'u ha laumālie fakatomalá, te nau lava 'o mo'ui, 'io 'i he mo'ui ko ia 'oku ta'engatá.
- 16 Pea ko 'eni vakai, na'e 'ikai ke ngata hono fakamo'oni 'i 'e Mōsese 'a e ngaahi me'a ní, ka na'e pehē foki mo e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni kotoa pē, mei hono ngaahi 'ahó 'o a'u ki he ngaahi 'aho 'o 'Ēpalahamé.

Yea, and behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning those things.

And it came to pass that those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him; therefore he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.

Therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?

And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?

But, behold, ye not only deny my words, but ye also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers, and also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him, yea, the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah.

Yea, did he not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.

And as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.

And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

- 17 'Io, pea vakai, na'e mamata 'a 'Ēpalahame ki he'ene hā'ele maí, pea na'á ne fonu 'i he fiefia 'o ne nēkeneka.
- 18 'Io, pea vakai 'oku ou tala kiate kimoutolu, na'e 'ikai ko 'Ēpalahame pē na'e 'ilo ki he ngaahi me'a ní, ka na'e 'i ai mo e tokolahi ki mu'a 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o 'Ēpalahamé 'a ia na'e kau ki he lakanga 'o e 'Otuá; 'io, 'i he lakanga 'o hono 'Aló; pea na'e fai iá koe'uhi ke fakahā ki he kakaí, 'i he ngaahi ta'u 'e lau afe ki mu'a 'i he'ene hā'ele maí, 'e hoko mai foki kiate kinautolu 'a e huhu'í.
- 19 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou 'ilo'í, na'e talu foki mei he ngaahi 'aho 'o 'Ēpalahamé kuo 'i ai 'a e kau palōfita tokolahi kuo nau fakamo'oni ki he ngaahi me'á ni; 'io, vakai, na'e fakamo'oni'í loto-to'a ia 'e he palōfita ko Seinosí; pea ko e 'uhinga ia na'e tāmata'í ai iá.
- 20 Pea vakai, ko Seinoki foki, kae 'uma'ā foki mo 'Ēsaiasi, pea mo 'Īsaia foki, mo Selemaia, (ko Selemaia 'a e palōfita pē ko ia 'a ia na'e fakamo'oni ki he faka'auha 'o Selūsalemá) pea ko 'eni 'oku tau 'ilo'í na'e faka'auha 'a Selūsalema 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a Selemaia. Ko ia ko e hā 'e 'ikai ke hā'ele mai ai 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, 'o hangē ko 'ene kikité?
- 21 Pea ko 'eni te mou faka'ikai'í koā kuo faka'auha 'a Selūsalema? Te mou pehē koā na'e 'ikai ke tāmata'í 'a e ngaahi foha kotoa 'o Setikiá, tuku kehe pē 'a Mūleki? 'Io, pea 'ikai 'oku mou 'ilo'oku 'i ai 'a e hako 'o Setikia 'iate kinautolu, pea na'e kapusi 'a kinautolu mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá? Kae vakai, 'oku 'ikai ko ia pē—
- 22 Na'e kapusi 'a 'etau tamaí ko Liháí mei Selūsalema koe'uhi ko 'ene fakamo'oni ki he ngaahi me'a ko 'ení. Na'e fakamo'oni foki mo Nifai ki he ngaahi me'a ko 'ení, kae 'uma'ā foki mo 'etau ngaahi tamaí meimei kotoa pē, 'o fai mai ki he taimí ni; 'io, kuo nau fakamo'oni ki he hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí, pea nau 'amanaki atu, pea nau fiefia 'i he 'aho 'a ia te ne hā'ele mai aí.
- 23 Pea vakai, ko e 'Otuá ia, pea 'okú ne 'iate kinautolu, pea na'á ne fakahā ia 'e ia kiate kinautolu, pea na'e huhu'í 'a kinautolu 'e ia; pea na'a nau 'oatu kiate ia 'a e fakafeta'í, koe'uhi ko e me'a ko ia 'e hokó.

Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

And now I would that ye should know, that even since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things; yea, behold, the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.

And behold, also Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem) and now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah. O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?

And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? Yea, and do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem? But behold, this is not all—

Our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things. Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our fathers, even down to this time; yea, they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.

And behold, he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him; and they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.

24 Pea ko 'eni, ko e me'a 'i ho'omou 'ilo'i 'a e ngaahi me'á ni pea 'ikai te mou lava 'o faka'ikai'i ia tuku kehe 'i ha'amou loi pē, ko ia kuo mou fai angahala 'i he me'á ni, he kuo mou faka'ikai'i 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, neongo hono lahi fau 'o ngaahi fakamo'oni kuo mou ma'ú; 'io, kuo mou ma'u foki 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē, 'a e ngaahi me'a 'oku 'i he langí, pea mo e ngaahi me'a 'oku 'i he māmaní fakatou'osi, ko e fakamo'oni 'oku mo'oni ia.

25 Kae vakai, kuo mou faka'ikai'i 'a e mo'oní, pea angatu'u ki homou 'Otua mā'oni'oni; pea na'a mo e taimí ni, 'oku 'ikai te mou fokotu'u ma'amoutolu 'a e ngaahi koloa 'i he langí, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai faka'auha 'e ha me'a, pea 'e 'ikai fa'a hū ki ai ha me'a 'oku ta'ema'á, ka 'oku mou fakalahi mo'omoutolu 'a e houhau ki he 'aho 'o e fakamāú.

26 'Io, na'a mo e taimí ni 'oku mou lolotonga teuteu 'i 'a kimoutolu, koe'uhi ko ho'omou ngaahi fakapoó mo ho'omou fe'auakí mo e fai angahalá, ki he faka'auha lauikuongá; 'io, pea kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala 'e vave 'a 'ene hoko mai kiate kimoutolú.

27 'Io, vakai 'oku lolotonga tu'u ia 'i ho'omou ngaahi matapaá; 'io, mou hū atu ki he fakamaau'angá, 'o kumi; pea vakai, kuo fakapoongi homou fakamāú, pea 'okú ne tokoto 'i hono totó; pea kuo fakapoongi ia 'e hono tokouá, 'a ia 'oku feinga ke ne ma'u 'a e nofo'anga fakamāú.

28 Pea vakai, 'okú na kau fakatou'osi 'i ho'omou kautaha fufuú, 'a ia na'e fokotu'u 'e Katianetoni mo e tokotaha angakovi 'a ia 'okú ne feinga ke faka'auha 'a e laumālie 'o e fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá.

And now, seeing ye know these things and cannot deny them except ye shall lie, therefore in this ye have sinned, for ye have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received; yea, even ye have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

But behold, ye have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God; and even at this time, instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, ye are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.

Yea, even at this time ye are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication and wickedness, for everlasting destruction; yea, and except ye repent it will come unto you soon.

Yea, behold it is now even at your doors; yea, go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.

And behold, they both belong to your secret band, whose author is Gadianon and the evil one who seeketh to destroy the souls of men.

Hilamani 9

- 1 Vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lea 'aki 'e Nīfai 'a e ngaahi lea ní, na'e felele 'i atu ha kau tangata 'e ni'ihī 'a ia na'e 'iate kinautolu ki he fakamaau'angá; 'io, na'e 'i ai 'a e toko nima 'a ia na'a nau 'alú, 'o nau fepehē'aki 'iate kinautolu, 'i he'enua 'alú:
- 2 Vakai, te tau 'ilo pau heni pe ko ha palōfita 'a e tangatá ni pea kuo fekau 'i ia 'e he 'Otuá ke ne kikite 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a fakaofa pehē kiate kinautolu. Vakai, 'oku 'ikai te tau tui kuó ne fai ia; 'io, 'oku 'ikai te tau tui ko ha palōfita ia; ka neongo iá, kapau 'oku mo'oni 'a e me'á ni 'a ia kuó ne fakahā 'o kau ki he fakamaau lahi, kuo mate ia, te tau tui leva ko e ngaahi lea kehe 'a ia kuó ne lea'aki 'oku mo'oni.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau lele fakato'oto'o 'aki honau tūkingatá, 'o nau hū ki he fakamaau'angá; pea vakai, kuo tō 'a e fakamaau lahi ki he kekelelé, pea 'okú ne tokoto 'i hono totó.
- 4 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'i he'enua mamata ki aí na'a nau fu'u 'ohovale 'aupito, 'o nau tō ki he kekelelé; he na'e 'ikai te nau tui ki he ngaahi lea kuo lea 'aki 'e Nīfai 'o kau ki he fakamaau lahi.
- 5 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he'enua mamatá na'a nau tui, pea na'e hoko kiate kinautolu 'a e manavahē telia na'a tō 'a e ngaahi tautea kotoa kuo fakahā 'e Nīfai ki he kakaí; ko ia na'a nau tetetete, pea kuo nau tō ki he kekelelé.
- 6 Ko 'eni, 'i he hili pē hono fakapoongi 'o e fakamāú—he na'e hoka 'i ia 'e hono tokouá 'i ha fa'ufa'u fakapulipuli, pea ne hola, pea na'e felele 'i 'a e kau tamaio'eikí 'o fakahā ki he kakaí, 'o kalanga 'aki 'a e ongoongo 'o e fakapoó 'iate kinautolu;
- 7 Pea vakai na'e kátoa fakataha mai 'a e kakaí ki he potu 'o e fakamaau'angá—pea vakai, na'a nau fu'u ofo lahi 'i he'enua mamata ki he kau tangata 'e toko nima 'a ia kuo nau tō ki he kekelelé.
- 8 Pea ko 'eni vakai, na'e 'ikai 'ilo 'e he kakaí 'o kau ki he fu'u kakai tokolahi kuo nau fakataha ki he ngoue 'a Nīfai; ko ia na'a nau fepehē'aki 'iate kinautolu: Ko e kau tangata 'eni kuo nau fakapoongi 'a e fakamāú, pea kuo taa 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Otuá ke 'oua te nau lava 'o hola meiate kinautolu.

Helaman 9

Behold, now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat; yea, even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth.

Now, immediately when the judge had been murdered—he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;

And behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat—and behold, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.

And now behold, the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi; therefore they said among themselves: These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not flee from us.

- 9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau puke 'a kinautolu, 'o ha'i 'a kinautolu mo lī 'a kinautolu ki he fale fakapōpulá. Pea na'e fanongonongo holo 'a e tala kuo fakapoongi 'a e fakamāú, pea kuo puke 'a e kau fakapoó 'o lī ki he fale fakapōpulá.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he pongipongi haké na'e fakataha mai 'a e kakaí ke tengihia mo 'aukai, 'i he telio 'o e fakamaau lahi tu'u-ki-mu'a 'a ia kuo fakapōngí.
- 11 Pea ko ia ko e kau fakamaau kotoa foki na'a nau 'i he ngoue 'a Nīfaí, pea nau fanongo ki he'ene ngaahi leá, na'a nau fakataha kotoa mai foki ki he telió.
- 12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'eke ki he kakaí, 'o pehē: 'Oku 'i fē 'a e toko nima 'a ia na'e fekau ke nau 'alu ke 'eke 'o kau ki he fakamaau lahi pe kuó ne pekiá? Pea na'a nau tali 'o pehē: Ko e toko nima ko 'eni 'oku mou pehē kuo mou fekau atú, 'oku 'ikai te mau 'ilo ki ai; ka 'oku 'i ai 'a e toko nima 'a ia ko e kau fakapoó, kuo mau lī ki he fale fakapōpulá.
- 13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fie ma'u 'e he kau fakamāú ke 'omi 'a kinautolu, pea na'e 'omi 'a kinautolu, pea vakai ko kinautolu 'a e toko nima na'e fekau; pea vakai na'e 'eke kiate kinautolu 'e he kau fakamāú ke nau fakamatala ki he me'a na'e hokó, pea na'a nau fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'a ia kuo nau faí, 'o pehē:
- 14 Na'a mau lele 'o mau a'u atu ki he potu 'o e fakamaau'angá, pea 'i he'emaui mamata ki he ngaahi me'a kotoa 'o hangē pē ko ia na'e fakamo'oni 'i 'e Nīfaí, na'a mau ofo lahi 'o a'u ki he'emaui tō ki he kekelé; pea 'i he'emaui ake hake mei he'emaui ofó, vakai na'a nau lī 'a kinautolu ki he fale fakapōpulá.
- 15 Ko 'eni, ko e me'a ki he fakapoongi 'o e tangata ní, 'oku 'ikai te mau 'ilo pe ko hai kuó ne faí iá; pea ko e me'a pē ia 'oku mau 'iló, na'a mau lele 'o mau a'u ki ai 'o hangē ko ho'omou fekau, pea vakai kuo mate ia, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a Nīfaí.

And it came to pass that they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.

And thus also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.

And it came to pass that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning this five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.

And it came to pass that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, and behold they were the five who were sent; and behold the judges inquired of them to know concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:

We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished insomuch that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered from our astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and only this much we know, we ran and came according as ye desired, and behold he was dead, according to the words of Nephi.

16 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakamatala'i 'e he kau fakamāú 'a e me'á ki he kakaí, 'o nau tukuaki'i 'a Nifai, 'o pehē: Vakai, 'oku mau 'ilo'i kuo pau ne alea 'a e Nifai ni mo ha taha ke ne tāmata'e 'i 'a e fakamāú, pea ke ne toki fakahā ia kiate kītautolu, koe'uhi ke ne fakaului 'a kītautolu ki he'ene lotú, koe'uhi ke ne hakeaki'i ia ke hoko ko e tangata lahi, kuo fili 'e he 'Otuá, pea ko ha palōfita.

17 Pea ko 'eni vakai, te tau faka'ilo 'a e tangatá ni, pea te ne vete 'ene hiá, 'o fakahā mai kiate kītautolu 'a e tokotaha fakapō totonu 'o e fakamaau ko 'eni.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tukuange 'a e toko nimá 'i he 'aho 'o e telió. Ka neongo iá, na'a nau valoki'i 'a e kau fakamāú 'i he ngaahi lea kuo nau tukuaki'i 'aki 'a Nifai, 'o nau fakakikihi taha taha mo kinautolu, 'o a'u ki he'enu ta'ofi 'o ngaohi 'a kinautolu ke fakalongolongo.

19 Ka neongo iá, na'a nau fekau ke puke 'a Nifai 'o ha'i pea 'omi ki he 'ao 'o e kakaí, pea nau kamata ke fakafehu'i ia 'i he ngaahi founa kehekehe koe'uhi ke nau tauhele'i ia, ke nau lava 'o fakahala'i mo tāmata'e ia—

20 'O nau pehē ange kiate ia: 'Okú ke kaungā fai mo ha taha; ko hai 'a e tangata 'a ia kuó ne fai 'a e fakapō ko 'eni? Ko 'eni fakahā mai kiate kīmautolu, pea vete ho'ó hiá; 'o nau pehē, Vakai ko e pa'anga 'eni; pea te mau tuku foki ke ke mo'ui 'o kapau te ke tala mai kiate kīmautolu, 'o vete 'a e alea kuó ke fai mo iá.

21 Ka na'e pehē ange 'e Nifai kiate kinautolu: 'Oiauē 'a kimoutolu 'a e kau vale, 'a kimoutolu 'a e kau ta'ekamu 'i homou lotó, 'a kimoutolu 'a e kau kui, mo e kakai kia-kekeva, 'oku mou 'ilo koā hono fuoloa 'o e kātaki'i 'e he 'Eiki ko homou 'Otuá ke mou fai atu 'i homou ngaahi hala ko 'eni 'o e angahalá?

22 'Oiauē 'oku taau ke mou kamata ke ngala mo tangi, koe'uhi ko e fu'u faka'auha lahi 'a ia 'oku tatali mai 'i he taimí ni kiate kimoutolu, 'o ka 'ikai te mou fakatomala.

23 Vakai 'oku mou pehē kuó u alea mo ha tangata ke ne fakapoongi 'a Sisolami, ko hotau fakamaau lahi. Kae vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo mou fai 'eni koe'uhi ko 'eku fakamo'oni'i kiate kimoutolu ke mou 'ilo ki he me'á ni; 'io, ko ha fakamo'oni kiate kimoutolu, na'á ku 'ilo ki he fai angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia 'oku 'iate kimoutolú.

And now it came to pass that the judges did expound the matter unto the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and a prophet.

And now behold, we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault and make known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

And it came to pass that the five were liberated on the day of the burial. Nevertheless, they did rebuke the judges in the words which they had spoken against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one, inso-much that they did confound them.

Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death—

Saying unto him: Thou art confederate; who is this man that hath done this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge thy fault; saying, Behold here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him.

But Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised of heart, ye blind, and ye stiffnecked people, do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

O ye ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction which at this time doth await you, except ye shall repent.

Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Seezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the wickedness and abominations which are among you.

24 Pea ko e me'a 'i he'eku fai 'eni, kuo mou pehē ai kuó u
alea mo ha tangata ke ne fai 'a e me'a ni; 'io, koe'uhi ko
'eku fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e faka'ilonga ní 'oku mou
'ita ai kiate au, 'o feinga ke faka'auha 'eku mo'uí.

25 Pea ko 'eni vakai, te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu mo ha
faka'ilonga 'e taha, 'o vakai pe te mou feinga 'i he me'a ni
ke faka'auha au.

26 Vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu: Mou ō ki he fale
'o Seianitumi, ko e tokoua 'o Sisolamí, pea pehē kiate
ia—

27 Na'á ke alea koā mo Nīfai, ko e palōfita loi, 'a ia kuó
ne kikite 'aki 'a e kovi lahi pehē ki he kakaí ni, ke ke
fakapoongi 'a Sisolami, ko ho tokouá?

28 Pea vakai, te ne fakahā atu e kimoutolu, 'Ikai.

29 Pea ke mou pehē kiate ia: Na'á ke fakapoongi koā 'a
ho tokouá?

30 Pea te ne tu'u 'i he ilifia 'o 'ikai 'ilo pē ko e hā ha'ane
lea 'e faí. Pea vakai, te ne faka'ikai 'i kiate kimoutolu; pea
te ne fai 'o hangē 'okú ne 'ohovalé; ka neongo íá, te ne
fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'okú ne ta'ehalaia.

31 Kae vakai, ke mou sivi'i ia, pea te mou 'ilo'i 'a e toto 'i
he kapa 'o hono kofu tu'á.

32 Pea 'i ho'omou mamata ki aí, ke mou pehē ange: Na'e
ha'u mei fē 'a e toto ko 'eni? 'Ikai koā 'oku mau 'ilo'i ko e
toto ia 'o ho tokouá?

33 Pea te ne tetetete leva, pea 'e tea, 'o hangē kuó ne
maté.

34 Pea ke mou pehē ange leva: Ko e me'a 'i he ilifia ni mo
e lanu teá ni, 'a ia kuo hoko ki ho matá, vakai, 'oku mau
'ilo'i ai 'okú ke halaia.

35 Pea 'e hoko leva kiate ia 'a e manavahē lahi ange; pea te
ne toki vete leva kiate kimoutolu, pea 'ikai toe faka'ikai 'i
kuó ne fai 'a e fakapoó ni.

36 Pea te ne toki pehē leva kiate kimoutolu, ko au, Nīfai,
'oku 'ikai te u teitei 'ilo 'o kau ki he me'a ni ka 'i hono
fakahā ia kiate au 'i he māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá. Pea te mou
toki 'ilo'i ai tā ko e tangata faitotonu au, pea ko e fekau 'i
mai au kiate kimoutolu mei he 'Otuá.

And because I have done this, ye say that I have
agreed with a man that he should do this thing; yea, be-
cause I showed unto you this sign ye are angry with me,
and seek to destroy my life.

And now behold, I will show unto you another sign,
and see if ye will in this thing seek to destroy me.

Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum,
who is the brother of Seezoram, and say unto him—

Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth proph-
esy so much evil concerning this people, agreed with
thee, in the which ye have murdered Seezoram, who is
your brother?

And behold, he shall say unto you, Nay.

And ye shall say unto him: Have ye murdered your
brother?

And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to
say. And behold, he shall deny unto you; and he shall
make as if he were astonished; nevertheless, he shall de-
clare unto you that he is innocent.

But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find
blood upon the skirts of his cloak.

And when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From
whence cometh this blood? Do we not know that it is
the blood of your brother?

And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even
as if death had come upon him.

And then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this
paleness which has come upon your face, behold, we
know that thou art guilty.

And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then
shall he confess unto you, and deny no more that he has
done this murder.

And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know
nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto
me by the power of God. And then shall ye know that I
am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you from
God.

37 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'alu 'o fai, 'o hangē ko ia kuo tala kiate kinautolu 'e Nīfai. Pea vakai, na'e mo'oni 'a e ngaahi lea kuó ne lea'akí; he na'á ne faka'ika 'i 'o hangē ko e ngaahi leá; pea ne vete 'o hangē ko e ngaahi leá.

38 Pea na'e ngaohi ia ke ne fakahā ko ia 'a e tokotaha fakapō mo'oni, 'o tupu ai hono tukuange 'o e toko nimá, pea mo Nīfai foki.

39 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e kau Nīfai 'e ni'ihi na'a nau tui ki he ngaahi lea 'a Nīfai; pea na'e 'i ai mo e ni'ihi foki, na'a nau tui koe'uhi ko e fakamo'oni 'a e toko nimá, he kuo nau ului lolotonga 'enau 'i he fale fakapōpula.

40 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'i ai 'a e ni'ihi 'i he kakaí, na'a nau pehē ko ha palōfita 'a Nīfai.

41 Pea na'e toe 'i ai mo e ni'ihi na'a nau pehē: Vakai, ko ha 'otua ia, he ka ne 'ikai ko ha 'otua ia, pehē he 'ikai te ne fá'a 'ilo 'i 'a e me'a kotoa pē. He vakai, kuó ne fakahā mai kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi fakakaukau 'a hotau lotó, pea kuó ne fakahā mai foki kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a; pea kuó ne fakahā foki kiate kinautolu 'a e 'ilo ki he tokotaha fakapō totonu 'o hotau fakamaau lahi.

And it came to pass that they went and did, even according as Nephi had said unto them. And behold, the words which he had said were true; for according to the words he did deny; and also according to the words he did confess.

And he was brought to prove that he himself was the very murderer, insomuch that the five were set at liberty, and also was Nephi.

And there were some of the Nephites who believed on the words of Nephi; and there were some also, who believed because of the testimony of the five, for they had been converted while they were in prison.

And now there were some among the people, who said that Nephi was a prophet.

And there were others who said: Behold, he is a god, for except he was a god he could not know of all things. For behold, he has told us the thoughts of our hearts, and also has told us things; and even he has brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of our chief judge.

Hilamani 10

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tupu hake ha fakakikihi 'i he kakaí, 'o tupu ai ha'anau movetevete holo 'o taki taha 'alu 'i hono hala, 'o tuku toko taha pē 'a Nīfai, lolotonga 'ene tu'u 'i honau lotolotonga.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu atu 'a Nīfai 'i hono hala ki hono fale 'o'oná, 'o ne fakalaululoto ki he ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuo fakahā mai 'e he 'Eikí kiate iá.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga 'ene fifili peheē—na'e fu'u mafasia lahi hono lotó koe'uhi ko e fai angahala 'a e kakaí 'o e kau Nīfai, ko 'enau ngaahi ngāue fufū 'o e fakapo'ulí, mo 'enau ngaahi fakapoó, mo 'enau ngaahi vete koloá, mo e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e angahalá—pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga 'ene fifili pehē 'i hono lotó, vakai, na'e ongo mai ha le'o kiate ia 'o pehē:
- 4 'Okú ke monū'ia koe, 'e Nīfai, ko'e uhi ko e ngaahi me'a kuó ke fai; he kuó u vakai ki he anga ho'o vilitaki ta'etuku hono fakahā 'a e folofola, kuó u tuku kiate ko'e, ki he kakaí ni. Pea kuo 'ikai te ke manavahē kiate kinautolu, pea kuo 'ikai te ke kalofaki ho'o mo'ui 'a'áú, ka kuó ke feinga pe ke fai hoku lotó, pea tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú.
- 5 Pea ko 'eni, ko'e uhi ko ho'o fai 'eni 'i he vilitaki ta'etukú, vakai, te u tāpuaki 'i koe 'o ta'engata; pea te u ngaohi koe ke ke mālohi 'i ho'o ngaahi leá mo e ngaahi me'a te ke fai, 'i he tuí mo e ngaahi ngāué; 'io, pea 'e fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē kiate koe 'o fakatatau mo ho'o leá, ko'e uhi 'e 'ikai te ke kole ha me'a 'oku ta'ehoa mo hoku lotó.
- 6 Vakai, ko Nīfai koe, pea ko e 'Otuá au. Vakai, 'oku ou fakahā kiate koe 'i he 'ao 'o 'eku kau 'āngeló, te ke ma'u 'a e mālohi ki he kakaí ni, pea te ke taa'i 'a e fonuá 'aki 'a e hongē, mo e mahaki faka'auha, mo e faka'auha, 'o fakatatau mo e fai angahala 'a e kakaí ni.
- 7 Vakai, 'oku ou tuku kiate koe 'a e mālohi, ke 'ilonga 'a e me'a te ke fakama'u 'i māmaní, 'e fakama'u ia 'i he langí; pea 'ilonga 'a e me'a te ke veteki 'i he māmaní, 'e veteki ia 'i he langí; pea 'e pehē ho'o ma'u 'a e mālohi ki he kakai ní.
- 8 Pea ko ia, kapau te ke pehē ki he temipalé ni, 'e mafahi ua ia, 'e hoko ia.
- 9 Pea kapau te ke pehē ki he mo'ungá ni, Ke ke holo hifo, pea toka lelei, 'e hoko ia.

Helaman 10

And it came to pass that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.

And it came to pass as he was thus pondering—being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities—and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:

Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unwearyingness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.

And now, because thou hast done this with such unwearyingness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.

And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it shall be done.

And if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and become smooth, it shall be done.

- 10 Pea vakai, kapau te ke pehē 'e te'ia 'e he 'Otuá 'a e kakaí ni, 'e hoko ia.
- 11 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku ou fēkau kiate koe, ke ke 'alu 'o fakahā ki he kakaí ni, 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki koe 'Otuá, 'a ia ko e Māfimaŋi: Kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala, 'e te'ia 'a kimoutolu ke mou 'auha.
- 12 Pea vakai, ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e folofola 'aki 'e he 'Eiki kia Nīfai 'a e ngaahi folofola ní, na'á ne tu'u 'o 'ikai te ne hū ki hono fale 'o'oná, ka ne foki ki he ngaahi ha'ofanga kakai 'a ia kuo nau movetevete 'i he funga 'o e fonuá, 'o ne kamata fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e folofola 'a e 'Eiki 'a ia kuo folofola 'aki kiate ia, 'o kau ki honau faka'auhá 'o ka 'ikai te nau fakatomala.
- 13 Ko 'eni vakai, neongo 'a e mana lahi kuo fai 'e Nīfai 'i hono fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e me'a 'a ia na'e kau ki he pekia 'a e fakamaau lahí, na'a nau fakafefeka pē honau lotó 'o 'ikai te nau tokanga ki he ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Eiki.
- 14 Ko ia na'e fakahā 'e Nīfai kiate kinautolu 'a e folofola 'a e 'Eiki, 'o ne pehē: Kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eiki, 'e te'ia 'a kimoutolu ke mou 'auha.
- 15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono fakahā 'e Nīfai kiate kinautolu 'a e folofolá, vakai, na'a nau kei fakafefeka pē honau lotó 'o 'ikai te nau fie tokanga ki he'ene ngaahi leá; ko ia na'a nau lau'ikovi'ia, 'o nau feinga ke puke ia 'aki honau nimá ke nau lī ia ki he fale fakapōpulá.
- 16 Kae vakai, na'e 'iate ia 'a e māfimaŋi 'o e 'Otuá, pea na'e 'ikai te nau fa'a puke ia ke lī ki he fale fakapōpulá, he na'e 'ave ia 'e he Laumālié mei honau lotolotongá.
- 17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē 'ene 'alu atu 'i he Laumālié, mei he ha'ofanga kakai ki he ha'ofanga kakai, 'o ne fakahā 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, kae 'oua kuó ne fakahā ia kiate kinautolu kotoa, pe kuó ne 'oatu ia ki he kakai kotoa pē.
- 18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai te nau fie tokanga ki he'ene ngaahi leá; pea na'e kamata ke tupu 'a e ngaahi fakakikihi, 'o a'u ki he 'i ai ha mavahevahe 'iate kinautolu 'o kamata ke nau fetāmate'aki 'aki 'a e heletā.

And behold, if ye shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall come to pass.

And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

And behold, now it came to pass that when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own house, but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they did not repent.

Now behold, notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord.

Therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord, saying: Except ye repent, thus saith the Lord, ye shall be smitten even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison.

But behold, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.

And it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people.

And it came to pass that they would not hearken unto his words; and there began to be contentions, in-somuch that they were divided against themselves and began to slay one another with the sword.

19 Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono fitungofulu mā taha ta'u 'o e
pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfai.

And thus ended the seventy and first year of the reign
of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Hilamani 11

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono fitungofulu mā ua ta'ū 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú na'e 'āsili 'a e ngaahi fakakikihí, 'o a'ú ki he 'i ai 'a e ngaahi tau 'i he fonuá hono kotoa 'i he kakai kotoa pē 'o Nīfai.
- 2 Pea ko e kautaha fufū ko 'eni 'o e kau kaiha'a na'a nau fai 'a e ngāue ni 'o e faka'auhá mo e angahalá. Pea na'e fai atu 'a e taú ni 'i hono kotoa 'o e ta'ū ko iá; pea na'e fai atu ia foki 'i hono fitungofulu mā tolu 'o e ta'ú.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'ū ko 'eni na'e tangi 'a Nīfai ki he 'Eiki, 'o ne pehē:
- 4 'E 'Eiki, 'oua mu'a te ke tuku ke faka'auha 'a e kakaí ni 'i he heletaá; kae kehe 'e 'Eiki, tuku mu'a ke hoko ha hongē 'i he fonuá ke ue 'i hake 'a kinautolu ke nau manatu 'i 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, pea hei'ilo na'a nau fakatomala mo tafoki ai ki ate koe.
- 5 Pea ko ia na'e hoko ia, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a Nīfai. Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e fu'uhongē lahi 'i he funga 'o e fonuá, 'i he kakai kotoa pē 'o Nīfai. Pea ko ia na'e hoko atu 'a e hongé 'i hono fitungofulu mā fā 'o e ta'ú, pea na'e 'osi 'a e faka'auha 'i he heletaá ka na'e faka'au 'o lahi 'i he hongé.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko atu 'a e ngāue 'o e faka'auhá ni 'i hono fitungofulu mā nima 'o e ta'ú. He na'e taa 'i 'a e fonuá 'o pakupaku, pea na'e 'ikai tupu ai 'a e kēleni 'i he fá'ahita 'u 'o e kēleni; pea na'e taa 'i 'a e fonuá hono kotoa, 'o tatau 'i he kau Leimaná mo e kau Nīfai, ko ia na'e taa 'i 'a kinautolu pea mate honau lau afe 'i he ngaahi feitu'u fai angahala ange 'o e fonuá.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e vakai 'a e kakaí 'oku ofi ke nau 'auha 'i he hongé, pea na'e kamata ke nau manatu 'i 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá; pea nau kamata ke manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi lea 'a Nīfai.
- 8 Pea na'e kamata ke tangi 'a e kakaí ki he 'enau kau fakamaau lahí mo honau kau takí, ke nau lea kia Nīfai: Vakai, 'oku mau 'ilo 'i ko ha tangata koe 'a e 'Otuá, ko ia ke ke tangi ki he 'Eiki ko hotau 'Otuá ke ne to'o atu meiate kitautolu 'a e hongé ni, telia na'a hoko 'a e lea kotoa pē kuó ke lea 'aki 'o kau ki homau faka'auhá.

Helaman 11

And now it came to pass in the seventy and second year of the reign of the judges that the contentions did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.

And it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness. And this war did last all that year; and in the seventy and third year it did also last.

And it came to pass that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.

And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And thus in the seventy and fourth year the famine did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.

And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.

And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi.

And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.

- 9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e lea 'a e kau fakamāu kia Nīfai, 'o hangē ko e me'a na'e kole 'e he kakaí ke nau faí. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he vakai 'e Nīfai kuo fakatomala 'a e kakaí 'o nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he tauanga'a, na'á ne toe tangi ki he 'Eikí, 'o pehē:
- 10 'E 'Eiki, vakai 'oku fakatomala 'a e kakaí ni; pea kuo nau tafi 'i atu 'a e kautaha 'a Katianetoní meiate kinautolu 'o a'u ki he 'enau 'osi'osingamālie, pea kuo tanu fakataha mo kinautolu 'a 'enau ngaahi alea fufuú 'i he kelekelé.
- 11 Ko 'eni, 'E 'Eiki, 'ofa mu'a 'o lolou 'a ho houháu koe'uhi ko 'enau angavaivai ni, pea tuku ke lolou ho houháu 'i he faka'auha 'o e kakai angahala 'a ia kuo 'osi ho'o faka'auhá.
- 12 'E 'Eiki, 'ofa mu'a 'o lolou 'a ho houháu, 'io, 'a ho houhau kakahá, pea fakangata 'a e hongé ni 'i he fonuá ni.
- 13 'E 'Eiki, 'afio mai kiate au, 'o tuku ke fai 'o hangē ko 'eku ngaahi leá, pea tuku mai 'a e 'uha ki he funga 'o e fonuá, koe'uhi ke ne toe laku mai hono fuá, mo hono kēlení 'i he fa'ahita'u 'o e kēlení.
- 14 'E 'Eiki, na'á ke 'afio mai ki he 'eku ngaahi leá 'i he 'eku pehē, Tuku ke 'i ai ha hongé, koe'uhi ke 'osi 'a e mahaki faka'auha 'o e heletaá; pea 'oku ou 'ilo te ke hōifua, 'i he taimí ni, ki he 'eku ngaahi leá, ha na'á ke folofola: Kapau 'e fakatomala 'a e kakaí ni te u fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu.
- 15 'Io, 'E 'Eiki, pea 'okú ke 'afio 'i kuo nau fakatomala, koe'uhi ko e hongé mo e mahaki faka'auha pea mo e faka'auha 'a ia kuo hoko kiate kinautolú.
- 16 Pea ko 'eni, 'E 'Eiki, te ke lolou koā 'a ho houháu, pea tuku ke nau toe 'ahi'ahi pe te nau tauhi kiate koe? Pea kapau 'e pehē, 'E 'Eiki, te ke lava koā ke tāpuaki 'i 'a kinautolu 'o hangē ko ho'o ngaahi folofola kuó ke folofola'akí.
- 17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono fitungofulu mā ono 'o e ta'ú na'e lolou 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono houháu mei he kakaí, 'o ne tuku ke tō 'a e 'uha ki he kelekelé, 'o a'u ki he tupu ai 'a hono fuá 'i he fa'ahita'u 'o hono fuá. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tupu hono kēlení 'i he fa'ahita'u 'o hono kēlení.

And it came to pass that the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired. And it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, behold this people repenteth; and they have swept away the band of Gadianon from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.

Now, O Lord, because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger, and let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed.

O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.

O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain.

O Lord, thou didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famine, that the pestilence of the sword might cease; and I know that thou wilt, even at this time, hearken unto my words, for thou saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.

Yea, O Lord, and thou seest that they have repented, because of the famine and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.

And now, O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, and try again if they will serve thee? And if so, O Lord, thou canst bless them according to thy words which thou hast said.

And it came to pass that in the seventy and sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon the earth, insomuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit. And it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

18 Pea vakai, na'e fiefia 'a e kakai 'o nau 'oatu 'a e fakafeta 'i ki he 'Otuá, pea na'e fonu 'a e funga hono kotoa 'o e fonuá 'i he fiefia; pea na'e 'ikai te nau toe feinga ke tāmata 'i 'a Nīfai, ka na'a nau lau ia ko e palōfita lahi, pea ko ha tangata 'a e 'Otuá, kuo tuku kiate ia 'a e fu'u mālohi mo e mafai lahi 'e he 'Otuá.

19 Pea vakai, na'e 'ikai ke momo 'i si'i hifo 'a Līhai ko hono tokouá, ki mui 'iate iá 'i he ngaahi me'a 'oku kau ki he mā'oni'oni.

20 Pea ko ia na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e faka'au ke toe tu'umālie 'a e kakai 'o Nīfai 'i he fonuá, 'o nau kamata ke langa hake honau ngaahi feitu'u maumaú, mo kamata ke fakatokolahi mo mafola atu, 'o a'u ki he'enua 'ufi'ufi hono kotoa 'o e funga 'o e fonua, 'i he fakatokelau pea mo e fakatongá fakatou'osi, pea mei he tahi hihifó ki he tahi hahaké.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'osi hono fitungofulu mā ono 'o e ta'ú 'i he melino. Pea na'e kamata 'a e ta'u hono fitungofulu mā fitu 'i he melino; pea na'e mafola atu 'a e siasí 'i he funga kotoa 'o e fonuá; pea na'e kau ki he siasí 'a e kongā lahi ange 'o e kakai, 'o e kau Nīfai mo e kau Leimaná fakatou'osi; pea na'a nau ma'u 'a e fu'u melino lahi 'i he fonuá; pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a hono fitungofulu mā fitu 'o e ta'ú.

22 Pea na'e 'iate kinautolu foki 'a e melinó 'i hono fitungofulu mā valu 'o e ta'ú, tuku kehe pē ha ngaahi fakakikihi 'e ni'ihī na'e kau ki ha ngaahi tefito 'o e tokāteline 'a ia kuo tohi 'e he kau palōfitá.

23 Pea 'i hono fitungofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'ú na'e kamata ke 'i ai 'a e ngaahi fakakikihi lahi. Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ma'u 'e Nīfai mo Līhai, mo e tokolahi 'o hona kāingá 'a ia na'a nau 'ilo' 'a e ngaahi tefito mo'oni 'o e tokāteline, 'a e ngaahi fakahā lahi 'i he 'aho taki tahá, ko ia na'a nau malanga ki he kakai, pea na'a nau ta'ofi ai 'a 'enua fakakikihi 'i he ta'u pē ko iá.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono †valungofulu 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāu ki he kakai 'o Nīfai, na'e 'i ai ha ni'ihī 'o e kau tafoki mei he kakai 'o Nīfai, 'a ia kuo nau 'alu atu 'i he ngaahi ta'u 'e ni'ihī ki mu'á ki he kau Leimaná, 'o nau 'ai kiate kinautolu 'a e hingoa 'o e kau Leimaná, pea na'e 'i ai foki mo ha ni'ihī 'a ia ko e hako mo'oni 'o e kau Leimaná, na'e faka'ita'i 'e kinautolú ni, ko ia na'a nau kamata ha tau mo honau kāingá.

And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

And behold, Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness.

And thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east.

And it came to pass that the seventy and sixth year did end in peace. And the seventy and seventh year began in peace; and the church did spread throughout the face of all the land; and the more part of the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, did belong to the church; and they did have exceedingly great peace in the land; and thus ended the seventy and seventh year.

And also they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets.

And in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife. But it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year.

And it came to pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of Lamanites, and also a certain number who were real descendants of the Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their brethren.

25 Pea nau fai 'a e fakapō mo e vete koloa; pea nau toki hola ki he ngaahi mo'ungá, pea mo e feitu'u maomaonganoá mo e ngaahi potu fufuú, 'o nau toitoi ai ke 'oua na'a 'ilo'i 'a kinautolu, pea na'a nau ma'u 'i he 'aho kotoa pē hano fakalahi ki honau tokolahí, 'o fakatatau mo e 'alu atu kiate kinautolu 'a e kau tafokí.

26 Pea ko ia na'e 'osi atu ha taimi sí'i, 'io, ko ha ngaahi ta'u sí'i pē, na'a nau hoko ko e kautaha kaiha'a tokolahí; pea nau kamata 'a e ngaahi alea fufū kotoa pē 'a Katianetoni; pea ko ia na'a nau hoko ko e kau kaiha'a 'a Katianetoni.

27 Ko 'eni vakai, na'e hanga 'e he kau kaiha'á ni 'o fakatupu ha maumau lahi, 'io, ko ha fu'u maumau lahi 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kakai 'o Nīfaí, kae 'uma'ā foki 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kakai 'o e kau Leimaná.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'aonga ke fakangata 'a e ngāuē ni 'o e faka'auhá; ko ia na'a nau fekau atu ha kau tau 'o e kau tangata sino mālohi ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá mo e ngaahi mo'ungá ke kumi ki he kautahá ni 'o e kau kaiha'á, pea faka'auha 'a kinautolu.

29 Kae vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u pē ko iá na'e toe teke 'i fakafoki mai 'a kinautolu ki honau ngaahi fonua 'onautolú. Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono valungofulu 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfaí.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he kamata'anga 'o e ta'u hono valungofulu mā tahá na'a nau toe ō atu ke tau 'i 'a e kautaha ko 'eni 'o e kau kaiha'á, pea na'a nau faka'auha 'a e tokolahí; pea na'e 'i ai foki mo e tokolahí 'o kinautolu na'e faka'auha.

31 Pea na'e 'aonga ke nau toe foki mai mei he feitu'u maomaonganoá pea mei he ngaahi mo'ungá ki honau ngaahi fonua 'onautolú, koe'uhi ko e fu'u lahi fau 'o e tokolahí 'o e kau kaiha'a 'a ia na'a nau nofo 'i he ngaahi mo'ungá mo e feitu'u maomaonganoá.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'osi pehē 'a e ta'u ko iá. Pea na'e kei tupu 'o tokolahí ai pē 'a e kau kaiha'á 'o nau faka'au 'o mālohi, 'o a'u ki he'enu pole'i 'a e ngaahi kau tau kotoa 'a e kau Nīfaí, pea mo e ngaahi kau tau foki 'a e kau Leimaná; pea na'a nau fakatupu 'a e fu'u ilifia lahi 'i he kakai 'i hono kotoa 'o e funga 'o e fonuá.

And they did commit murder and plunder; and then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the wilderness and secret places, hiding themselves that they could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their numbers, inasmuch as there were dissenters that went forth unto them.

And thus in time, yea, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and thus they became robbers of Gadianton.

Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction; therefore they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and to destroy them.

But behold, it came to pass that in that same year they were driven back even into their own lands. And thus ended the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the eighty and first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many; and they were also visited with much destruction.

And they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the numbers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness.

And it came to pass that thus ended this year. And the robbers did still increase and wax strong, insomuch that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites; and they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land.

- 33 'Io, he na'a nau 'ohofi 'a e ngaahi potu lahi 'o e fonuá,
'o nau fai 'a e fu'u faka'auha lahi kiate kinautolu; 'io,
na'a nau tāmata'e 'i 'a e tokolahi, mo 'ave pōpula 'a e ni'ihī
ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, 'io, kae tautautefito ki
honau kakai fefiné mo 'enau fānaú.
- 34 Ko 'eni ko e fu'u koví ni, 'a ia na'e tō ki he kakai
koe'uhi ko 'enau angahalá, na'e toe ue'i hake ai 'a
kinautolu ke nau manatu 'i 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá.
- 35 Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono valungofulu mā taha 'o e ta'u
'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú.
- 36 Pea 'i hono valungofulu mā ua 'o e ta'ú na'a nau toe
kamata ke fakangalo 'i 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá. Pea 'i he
ta'u hono valungofulu mā tolú na'a nau kamata ke
tupulaki 'o mālohi 'i he fai angahalá. Pea 'i hono
valungofulu mā fā 'o e ta'ú na'e 'ikai te nau
fakatonutonu honau ngaahi hala koví.
- 37 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u hono valungofulu mā
nimá na'a nau faka'au 'o mālohi ange ai pē 'i he 'enau
loto-híkisia, mo 'enau angahalá; ko ia na'a nau toe
faka'au ai 'o taau mo e faka'auhá.
- 38 Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono valungofulu mā nima 'o e
ta'ú.

Yea, for they did visit many parts of the land, and did
do great destruction unto them; yea, did kill many, and
did carry away others captive into the wilderness, yea,
and more especially their women and their children.

Now this great evil, which came unto the people be-
cause of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remem-
brance of the Lord their God.

And thus ended the eighty and first year of the reign
of the judges.

And in the eighty and second year they began again
to forget the Lord their God. And in the eighty and
third year they began to wax strong in iniquity. And in
the eighty and fourth year they did not mend their
ways.

And it came to pass in the eighty and fifth year they
did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in
their wickedness; and thus they were ripening again for
destruction.

And thus ended the eighty and fifth year.

Hilamani 12

- 1 Pea ko ia 'oku tau lava 'o vakai ki he kākā, mo e ta'e-
angatonu 'a e loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá; 'io, 'oku tau
vakai ai ki he 'Eiki 'i he'ene fu'u angalelei ta'e-
fakangatangatá 'okú ne tāpuaki 'i mo ngaohi ke
tu'umālie 'a kinautolu 'oku nau falala kiate iá.
- 2 'Io, pea 'oku tau lava 'o 'ilo 'i he taimi pē ko ia 'okú ne
ngaohi ke tu'umālie 'a hono kakai, 'io, 'i hono
fakatusupulaki 'a e fua 'o 'enau ngoué, mo 'enau ngaahi
takanga monumanu ikí mo 'enau ngaahi takanga
monumanu lalahí, mo e koulá, mo e silivá, mo e ngaahi
me'a mahu'inga kehekehe kotoa pē 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa
pē mo e ngāue tufunga lelei kotoa pē; 'o ne fakahaofi
'enau mo'uí, 'o ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nima 'o
honau ngaahi filí; 'o ne fakamolū 'a e loto 'o honau
ngaahi filí koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a nau tala tau kiate
kinautolu; 'io, ko hono fakakātoá, 'o ne fai 'a e me'a
kotoa pē koe'uhi ko e tu'umālie mo e fiefia 'a hono
kakai; 'io, ko e taimi ia 'oku nau fakafefeka ai honau
lotó, 'o nau fakangalo 'i 'a e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, pea
nau molomoloki hifo 'i honau lalo va'é 'a e Tokotaha
Mā'oni'oni—'io, pea 'oku peheé koe'uhi ko e fiamālie
'enau mo'uí, mo 'enau fu'u tu'umālie lahi 'aupitó.
- 3 Pea ko ia 'oku tau 'ilo 'i kapau 'oku 'ikai ke tautea 'i 'e
he 'Eiki 'a hono kakai 'aki 'a e ngaahi mamahi lahi, 'io,
kapau 'oku 'ikai te ne tautea 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e mate
mo e ilifia, pea mo e hongē mo e fa'ahinga mahaki
faka'auha kotoa pē, he 'ikai te nau manatu 'i ia.
- 4 'Oiauē hono 'ikai ke vale, mo fielahe, mo kovi, mo
anga-fakatēvolo, mo vave ke fai angahala, pea hono 'ikai
fakatuotuai ke failelei 'a e fānau 'a e tangatá; 'io, hono
'ikai vave ke tokanga ki he ngaahi lea 'a e tokotaha
angakoví, pea tuku honau lotó ki he ngaahi me'a
ta'é aonga 'o e māmaní!
- 5 'Io, hono 'ikai vave ke fielahe 'i he hīkisiá; 'io, hono
'ikai vave ke pōlepele, pea fai 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e
me'a 'oku koví; pea hono 'ikai tuai ke nau manatu 'i 'a e
'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, 'o fakatokanga honau telingá ki
he'ene ngaahi akonakí, 'io, hono 'ikai tuai ke 'a'eva 'i he
ngaahi hala 'o e potó!

Helaman 12

And thus we can behold how false, and also the un-
steadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we
can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth
bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth
prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields,
their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver,
and in all manner of precious things of every kind and
art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the
hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their en-
emies that they should not declare wars against them;
yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and hap-
piness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do
harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God,
and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea,
and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly
great prosperity.

And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten
his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth
visit them with death and with terror, and with famine
and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remem-
ber him.

O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and dev-
ilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do
good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hear-
ken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their
hearts upon the vain things of the world!

Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how
quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniq-
uity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their
God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to
walk in wisdom's paths!

6 Vakai, 'oku 'ikai te nau loto ke hanga 'e he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otua, 'a ia kuó ne fakatupu 'a kinautolú, 'o angi mo pule 'i 'a kinautolu; neongo 'ene fu 'u angaleleí mo 'ene 'alo 'ofa kiate kinautolú, ka 'oku nau lau 'oku 'ikai mahu 'inga 'ene ngaahi akonakí, pea 'oku 'ikai te nau loto ke ne hoko ko honau fakahinohino.

7 'Oiauē hono 'ikai lahi 'a e ta 'é aonga 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá; 'io, 'oku nau sí 'i hifo foki 'a kinautolu 'i he efu 'o e kekelelé.

8 He vakai, 'oku hiki ki hē mo ē 'a e efu 'o e kekelelé, 'o a 'u ki hono vaeua, 'i he fēkau 'a hotau 'Otua lahi mo ta 'engatá.

9 'Io, vakai, 'oku tetetete mo ngalulululu 'a e ngaahi tafungofungá mo e ngaahi mo 'ungá 'i hono le 'ó.

10 Pea 'i he mālohi 'o hono le 'ó 'oku mafahifahi ia, 'o hoko 'o tokalelei, 'io, 'o hangē ko ha tele 'á.

11 'Io, 'i he māfimaí 'o hono le 'ó 'oku lulululu 'i 'a e māmaní kotoa;

12 'Io, 'i he māfimaí 'o hono le 'ó, 'oku ngaueue 'a e ngaahi maka tu 'ungá, 'o a 'u ki hono loto mālié.

13 'Io, pea kapau 'okú ne folofola ki he māmaní—Ke ke hiki atu—'oku hiki ia.

14 'Io, kapau 'okú ne folofola ki he māmaní—Ke ke holomui, ke fakalōloa 'a e 'ahó 'i he ngaahi houa lahi—'oku hoko ia;

15 Pea ko ia, 'oku holomui 'a e māmaní 'o hangē ko 'ene folofolá, pea 'oku hā ki he tangatá 'o hangē 'oku tu 'u ma 'u 'a e la 'aá; 'io, pea vakai, 'oku mo 'oni ia; he ko e mo 'oni ko e māmaní ia 'oku 'alu takai 'i he la 'aá, pea 'oku 'ikai ko e la 'aá.

16 Pea vakai, ko e tahá foki, kapau te ne folofola ki he ngaahi vai 'o e moana lolotó—Ke ke mōmoa—'oku hoko ia.

17 Vakai, kapau te ne folofola ki he mo 'ungá ni—Ke ke tu 'u hake, 'o ha 'u 'o holo hifo ki he kolo ko eé, ke 'ufi 'ufi ia—vakai 'oku hoko ia.

18 Pea vakai, kapau 'e fufuu 'i 'e ha tangata ha koloa 'i he kekelelé, pea 'e folofola 'a e 'Eikí—Tuku ke mala 'ia ia, koé uhi ko e angahala 'a e tokotaha kuó ne fufuu 'i iá—vakai, 'e mala 'ia ia.

Behold, they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his great goodness and his mercy towards them, they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he should be their guide.

O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; yea, even they are less than the dust of the earth.

For behold, the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.

Yea, behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.

And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.

Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;

Yea, by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.

Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.

Yea, if he say unto the earth—Thou shalt go back, that it lengthen out the day for many hours—it is done;

And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; yea, and behold, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun.

And behold, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep—Be thou dried up—it is done.

Behold, if he say unto this mountain—Be thou raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up—behold it is done.

And behold, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say—Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up—behold, it shall be accursed.

- 19 Pea kapau 'e folofola 'e he 'Eikí—Ke ke mala'ia, ke 'oua na'a 'ilo'i koe 'e ha tangata 'o fai atu mei he 'ahó ni 'o ta'engata—vakai 'e 'ikai ma'u ia 'e ha tangata 'o fai atu mei ai 'o ta'engata.
- 20 Pea vakai, kapau 'e folofola 'e he 'Eikí ki ha tangata—Ko e me'a 'i ho'o ngaahi angahalá, te ke mala'ia koe 'o ta'engata—'e fai ia.
- 21 Pea kapau 'e folofola 'a e 'Eikí—Ko e me'a 'i ho'o ngaahi angahalá 'e motuhi atu koe mei hoku 'aó—kuo pau te ne fakahoko ia.
- 22 Pea 'e mala'ia ia te ne folofola 'aki 'eni ki aí, he 'e hoko ia ki he tokotaha 'e fai angahalá, pea 'e 'ikai lava ke fakamo'ui ia; ko ia, ko hono 'uhinga 'eni kuo fakahā ai 'a e fakatomalá, koe'uhi ke lava 'o fakamo'ui 'a e tangatá.
- 23 Ko ia, 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu te nau fakatomala pea tokanga ki he le'o 'o e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá; he ko e fa'ahinga 'eni 'e fakamo'uí.
- 24 Pea 'ofa ke tuku 'e he 'Otuá, koe'uhi ko 'ene fu'u mā'oní'oní, ke fakatafoki 'a e tangatá ki he fakatomalá mo e ngaahi ngāue leleí, koe'uhi ke lava 'o fakafoki 'a kinautolu ki he 'alo'ofa koe'uhi ko e 'alo'ofa, 'o fakatatau mo 'enau ngaahi ngāué.
- 25 Pea 'oku ou faka'amu ke fakamo'ui 'a e kakai fulipē. Ka 'oku tau lau 'e 'i ai 'a e ní'ihí 'i he fu'u 'aho lahi mo faka'osí 'e kapusi ki tu'a, 'io, 'e kapusi atu mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí;
- 26 'Io, 'a ia 'e vahe'i ki he nofo'anga 'o e mamahi ta'engatá, ko hono fakahoko 'o e ngaahi folofola 'a ia 'oku pehē: Ko kinautolu kuo faileleí te nau ma'u 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá; pea ko kinautolu kuo faiková 'e ma'u 'a e mala'ia ta'engata. Pea 'oku pehē pē. 'Ēmeni.

And if the Lord shall say—Be thou accursed, that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth and forever—behold, no man getteth it henceforth and forever.

And behold, if the Lord shall say unto a man—Because of thine iniquities, thou shalt be accursed forever—it shall be done.

And if the Lord shall say—Because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cut off from my presence—he will cause that it shall be so.

And wo unto him to whom he shall say this, for it shall be unto him that will do iniquity, and he cannot be saved; therefore, for this cause, that men might be saved, hath repentance been declared.

Therefore, blessed are they who will repent and hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God; for these are they that shall be saved.

And may God grant, in his great fulness, that men might be brought unto repentance and good works, that they might be restored unto grace for grace, according to their works.

And I would that all men might be saved. But we read that in the great and last day there are some who shall be cast out, yea, who shall be cast off from the presence of the Lord;

Yea, who shall be consigned to a state of endless misery, fulfilling the words which say: They that have done good shall have everlasting life; and they that have done evil shall have everlasting damnation. And thus it is. Amen.

Ko e kikite 'a Samuela, ko e tangata Leimaná, ki he kau Nīfai.

Hilamani 13

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono valungofulu mā ono 'o e ta'ú, na'e kei nofo pē 'a e kau Nīfai 'i he fai angahalá, 'io, 'i he fu'ú fai angahala lahi, lolotonga ia na'e fu'ú tokanga lahi 'a e kau Leimaná ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, 'o fakatatau ki he fonó 'a Mōsesé.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u ko 'eni na'e 'i ai 'a e tokotaha ko Samuela, ko ha tangata Leimana, na'á ne ha'u ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, 'o ne kamata ke malanga ki he kakaí. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne malanga, 'i he ngaahi 'aho lahi, 'aki 'a e fakatomalá ki he kakaí, pea na'a nau kapusi ia ki tu'a, pea na'á ne mei foki ki hono fonua 'o'oná.
- 3 Kae vakai, na'e ongo mai kiate ia 'a e le'o 'o e 'Eikí, 'o fekau ke ne toe foki, 'o kikite ki he kakaí 'aki 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'e hā mai ki hono lotó.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai te nau fie tuku ke ne hū ki he koló; ko ia na'á ne 'alu 'o kaka hake ki he funga 'aá, pea mafao atu hono nimá 'o kaila 'aki ha le'o-lahi, pea kikite ki he kakaí 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē na'e fakahū 'e he 'Eikí ki hono lotó.
- 5 Pea na'á ne pehē kiate kinautolu: Vakai, ko au, Samuela, ko ha tangata Leimana, 'oku ou lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Eikí 'a ia 'okú ne fakahā ki hoku lotó; pea vakai kuó ne fakahā ki hoku lotó ke u pehē ki he kakaí ni, 'oku tu'unuku mai 'a e heletā 'o e fakamaau totonú ki he kakaí ni; pea 'e 'ikai 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e fāngeau ka kuo tō 'a e heletā 'o e fakamāú ki he kakaí ni.
- 6 'Io, 'oku tatali mai ha fu'ú faka'auha lahi ki he kakaí ni, pea kuo pau ke hoko ia ki he kakaí ni, pea 'oku 'ikai ha me'a te ne fa'a fakahaofi 'a e kakaí ni ka ko e fakatomalá mo e tui ki he 'Eiki ko Sīsū Kalaisí, 'a ia kuo pau 'e hā'ele mai ki he māmaní, pea te ne kātekina 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi pea 'e tāmata'i ia koe'uhi ko hono kakaí.

The prophecy of Samuel, the Lamanite, to the Nephites.

Helaman 13

And now it came to pass in the eighty and sixth year, the Nephites did still remain in wickedness, yea, in great wickedness, while the Lamanites did observe strictly to keep the commandments of God, according to the law of Moses.

And it came to pass that in this year there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people. And it came to pass that he did preach, many days, repentance unto the people, and they did cast him out, and he was about to return to his own land.

But behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, that he should return again, and prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should come into his heart.

And it came to pass that they would not suffer that he should enter into the city; therefore he went and got upon the wall thereof, and stretched forth his hand and cried with a loud voice, and prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart.

And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; and behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people.

Yea, heavy destruction awaiteth this people, and it surely cometh unto this people, and nothing can save this people save it be repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world, and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.

7 Pea vakai, kuo fakahā mai ia 'e ha 'āngelo 'a e 'Eikí kiate au, pea na'á ne 'omi 'a e ngaahi ongoongo fakafiefia ki hoku laumālié. Pea vakai, kuo fekau 'i mai au kiate kimoutolu ke fakahā ia kiate kimoutolu foki, koe'uhí ke mou ma'u 'a e ngaahi ongoongo fakafiefiá; kae vakai 'oku 'ikai te mou fie tali au.

8 Ko ia, 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí: Koe'uhí ko e fefeka 'a e loto 'o e kakai 'o e kau Nífaí, pea kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala te u to' 'oku folofolá meiate kinautolu, pea te u to' o hoku Laumālié meiate kinautolu, pea he 'ikai te u toe kātaki 'i 'a kinautolu, pea te u fakakovi 'i 'a e loto 'o honau kāingá kiate kinautolu.

9 Pea 'e 'ikai 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e fāngeau ki mu'a kuó u pule ke te 'ia 'a kinautolu; 'io, te u tautea 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e heletā mo e hongé mo e mahaki faka'auha.

10 'Io, te u tautea 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'eku 'ita kakahá, pea 'e 'i ai 'a e ní'ihí 'i he to'u tangata hono fā 'o homou ngaahi filí, 'a ia te nau kei mo'ui, ke vakai ki homou faka'auha ke 'osi'osingamālié; pea kuo pau ke hoko 'eni 'o ka 'ikai te mou fakatomala, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí; pea ko e fa'ahinga ko ia 'o e to'u tangata hono faá te nau fakahoko homou faka'auhá.

11 Ka kapau te mou fakatomala pea foki ki he 'Eiki ko homou 'Otuá te u ta'ofi 'a 'eku 'itá, 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí; 'io, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí, 'oku monū 'ia 'a kinautolu te nau fakatomala pea tafoki mai kiate aú, ka 'e mala 'ia ia 'oku 'ikai te ne fakatomalá.

12 'Io, 'e mala 'ia 'a e fu'u kolo lahí ni ko Seilahemalá; he vakai, 'oku tupu 'iate kinautolu 'oku mā'oní'oní 'a hono fakahaofi; 'io, 'e mala 'ia 'a e fu'u kolo lahí ni, he 'oku ou 'ilo'i, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí, 'oku 'i ai 'a e tokolahi, 'io, 'a e kongá lahí ange 'o e fu'u koló ni, 'a ia te nau fakafefeka honau lotó kiate au, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí.

13 Ka 'oku monū 'ia 'a kinautolu te nau fakatomalá, he teu fakahaofi 'a kinautolu. Kae vakai, ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e kau mā'oní'oní 'a ia 'oku nau 'i he fu'u kolo ní, vakai, te u fekau ke tō mai ha afi mei he langí 'o faka'auha ia.

And behold, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. And behold, I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that ye might have glad tidings; but behold ye would not receive me.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord: Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from them, and I will withdraw my Spirit from them, and I will suffer them no longer, and I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them.

And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; yea, I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with pestilence.

Yea, I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction; and this shall surely come except ye repent, saith the Lord; and those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction.

But if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger, saith the Lord; yea, thus saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me, but wo unto him that repenteth not.

Yea, wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved; yea, wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, yea, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

But blessed are they who will repent, for them will I spare. But behold, if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.

- 14 Kae vakai, 'oku fakahaofi ia koe'uhi ko e kau mā'oni'oni. Kae vakai, 'e hoko 'a e taimi 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki, 'o ka mou ka kapusi ki tu'a 'a e kau mā'oni'oni meiate kimoutolu, te mou toki taau mo e faka'auhá; 'io, 'e mala'ia 'a e fu'u kolo lahi ni, koe'uhi ko e fai angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia 'a ia 'oku 'i aí.
- 15 'Io, pea 'e hoko 'a e mala'ia ki he kolo ko Kitioné koe'uhi ko e fai angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia 'a ia 'oku 'i aí.
- 16 'Io, pea 'e hoko 'a e mala'ia ki he ngaahi kolo kotoa pē 'a ia 'oku 'i he fonua takatakaí, 'a ia 'oku ma'u 'e he kau Nifái, koe'uhi ko e fai angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalielia 'a ia 'oku 'i aí.
- 17 Pea vakai, 'e hoko ha mala'ia ki he fonuá, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, koe'uhi ko e kakai 'oku 'i he fonuá, 'io, koe'uhi ko 'enau fai angahalá mo 'enau ngaahi anga-fakalielia.
- 18 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, 'io, ko hotau 'Otua māfimafo mo mo'oni, ko ia ia 'e fufuu'i ha ngaahi koloa 'i he kekelelé 'e 'ikai te ne toe 'ilo ia, koe'uhi ko e fu'u mala'ia lahi 'o e fonuá, tuku kehe pē 'o kapau ko ha tangata mā'oni'oni ia, pea te ne fufuu'i hake ia ki he 'Eiki.
- 19 He 'oku ou loto, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki, ke nau fufuu'i hake 'enau ngaahi koloá kiate au; pea 'e mala'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku 'ikai te nau fufuu'i hake 'enau ngaahi koloá kiate aú; he 'oku 'ikai fufuu'i hake 'e ha taha 'a 'ene ngaahi koloá kiate au ka ko e kau mā'oni'oni pē; pea ko ia ia 'oku 'ikai te ne fufuu'i hake 'ene ngaahi koloá kiate aú, 'oku mala'ia ia, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e koloá, pea 'e 'ikai toe ma'u ia 'e ha taha koe'uhi ko e mala'ia 'o e fonuá.
- 20 Pea 'e hoko mai 'a e 'aho te nau fufuu'i hake ai 'a 'enau ngaahi koloá, koe'uhi kuo tuku honau lotó ki he ngaahi koloá; pea ko e me'a 'i he 'enau tuku honau loto ki he 'enau ngaahi koloá, pea te nau fufuu'i hake 'enau ngaahi koloá 'o ka nau ka fehola ki 'i he 'ao 'o honau ngaahi filí; koe'uhí 'e 'ikai te nau fufuu'i hake ia kiate au, 'e mala'ia 'a kinautolu mo 'enau ngaahi koloá foki; pea 'i he 'aho ko iá 'e te 'ia 'a kinautolu, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki.

But behold, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. But behold, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall ye be ripe for destruction; yea, wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.

And behold, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, yea, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.

For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me; and cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me; for none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous; and he that hideth not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.

And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; and in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.

21 Vakai mai, 'a kimoutolu 'a e kakai 'o e fu'u koló ni, pea tokanga ki he'eku ngaahi leá; 'io, tokanga ki he ngaahi folofola 'a ia 'oku folofola 'aki 'e he 'Eikí; he vakai, 'okú ne folofola 'oku fakamala'ia'i 'a kimoutolu koe'uhi ko ho'omou ngaahi koloá, pea 'oku fakamala'ia'i foki mo ho'omou ngaahi koloá koe'uhi ko e tuku homou lotó ki aí, pea kuo 'ikai te mou tokanga ki he ngaahi folofola 'a ia na'á ne foaki ia kiate kimoutolú.

22 'Oku 'ikai te mou manatu'i 'a e 'Eiki ko homou 'Otuá 'i he ngaahi me'a kuó ne tāpuaki'i 'aki 'a kimoutolú, ka 'oku mou manatu ma'u ai pē ki ho'omou ngaahi koloá, kae 'ikai fakafeta'i ai ki he 'Eiki ko homou 'Otuá koe'uhi ko ia; 'io, 'oku 'ikai tokanga homou lotó ki he 'Eikí, ka 'oku fakafuofuolahi ia 'i he hīkisia lahi, 'o a'u ki he pōlepole, mo e ngaahi lea fielahī, mo e ngaahi meheka, mo e ngaahi feke'ike'i, mo e tāufehi'a, mo e ngaahi fakatanga, mo e ngaahi fakapō, mo e ngaahi angahala kehekehe kotoa pē.

23 He ko hono 'uhinga 'eni kuo tuku ai 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá ke hoko 'a e mala'ia ki he fonuá, kae 'uma'ā foki mo ho'omou ngaahi koloá, pea kuó ne fai 'eni koe'uhi ko ho'omou ngaahi angahalá.

24 'Io, mala'ia ki he kaka'i ni, koe'uhi ko e taimi ko 'eni kuo hokó, 'a ia 'oku mou kapusi ai ki tu'a 'a e kau palōfitá, mo manuki'i 'a kinautolu, 'o tolomaka'i 'a kinautolu, mo tāmata'i 'a kinautolu, mo fai 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga angahala kovi kotoa pē kiate kinautolu, 'o hangē ko ia na'a nau fai 'i he kuonga mu'á.

25 Pea ko 'eni ko e taimi 'oku mou talanoa aí, 'oku mou pehē: Ka ne hoko 'a hotau ngaahi 'ahó 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o 'etau ngaahi tamai 'o e kuonga mu'á, pehē kuo 'ikai te mau tāmata'i 'a e kau palōfitá; kuo 'ikai te mau tolomaka'i 'a kinautolu, 'o kapusi 'a kinautolu ki tu'a.

26 Vakai 'oku mou kovi ange 'iate kinautolu; he hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eikí, 'o ka ha'u kiate kimoutolu ha palōfita pea fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e folofola 'a e 'Eikí, 'a ia 'oku fakamo'oni'i ho'omou ngaahi angahalá mo e ngaahi hiá, 'oku mou 'ita kiate ia, pea tuli ia ki tu'a mo feinga 'i he ngaahi founa kehekehe kotoa pē ke faka'auha ia; 'io, te mou pehē ko ha palōfita loi ia, pea ko e tangata fai angahala ia, pea 'oku 'o e tēvoló, koe'uhi 'okú ne fakamo'oni'i 'oku kovi ho'omou ngaahi ngāué.

Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them; yea, your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions, and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities.

Yea, wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

And now when ye talk, ye say: If our days had been in the days of our fathers of old, we would not have slain the prophets; we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

Behold ye are worse than they; for as the Lord liveth, if a prophet come among you and declareth unto you the word of the Lord, which testifieth of your sins and iniquities, ye are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him; yea, you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil.

27 Kae vakai, kapau 'e ha'u ha tangata kiate kimoutolu 'o pehē: Fai 'eni, pea 'oku 'ikai ha kovi; fai 'ena pea 'e 'ikai te mou faingata 'a 'ia; 'io, te ne pehē: 'A'eva 'i he hikisia 'o homou loto 'omoutolú; 'io, 'a'eva 'i he hikisia 'o homou matá, pea fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku holi ki ai homou lotó—pea kapau 'e ha'u ha tangata kiate kimoutolu 'o ne lea 'aki 'eni, te mou tali ia, 'o pehē ko ha palōfita ia.

28 'Io, te mou fakahikihiki 'i ia, pea te mou foaki kiate ia mei ho'omou koloá; te mou foaki kiate ia mei ho'omou koulá, pea mei ho'omou silivá, pea te mou fakakofu 'i ia 'aki 'a e ngaahi kofu mahu 'inga; pea ko e me'a 'i he'ene lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea fakahekeheke kiate kimoutolu, pea ne pehē 'oku lelei 'a e me'a kotoa pē, he 'ikai leva te mou fakaanga 'i ia.

29 'A kimoutolu 'e to'u tangata fai angahala mo paongata 'a; 'a kimoutolu 'a e kakai loto-fefeka mo kia-kekeva, 'e fēfē hono fuoloa 'o ho'omou mahalo 'e kātaki 'i 'a kimoutolu 'e he 'Eikí? 'Io, 'e fēfē hono fuoloa 'o ho'omou tuku ke tataki 'a kimoutolu 'e he kau fakahinohino 'oku vale mo kuí? 'Io, 'e fēfē hono fuoloa 'o ho'omou fili 'a e fakapo'ulí kae 'ikai ko e māmá?

30 'Io, vakai, kuo 'osi houhau 'a e 'Eikí kiate kimoutolu; vakai, kuó ne fakamala 'ia 'i 'a e fonuá koe'uhi ko ho'omou fai angahalá.

31 Pea vakai, 'e hoko mai 'a e taimi te ne fakamala 'ia 'i ai 'a ho'omou ngaahi koloá, ke hoko ia 'o homongofua, koe'uhi ke 'oua na 'a mou lava 'o puke ma'u ia; pea 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o ho'omou masivá 'e 'ikai te mou fa'a tauhi ia.

32 Pea 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o ho'omou masivá te mou tangi ki he 'Eikí; pea 'e ta'e aonga ho'omou tangí, he kuo hoko kiate kimoutolu 'a ho'omou tuēnoá, pea kuo fakapapau 'i homou faka'auhá; pea te mou toki tangi mo ngala 'i he 'aho ko íá, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú. Pea te mou toki tangilāulau, 'o pehē:

33 'Oiauē pehē ange mai na 'á ku fakatomala, 'o 'ikai tāmata 'i 'a e kau palōfitá, mo tolomaka 'i 'a kinautolu, mo kapusi 'a kinautolu ki tu'a. 'Io, 'i he 'aho ko íá te mou pehē: 'Oiauē pehē ange mai ne mau manatu 'i 'a e 'Eiki ko homau 'Otuá 'i he 'aho na 'á ne foaki ai kiate kimautilu 'a 'emau ngaahi koloá, pea pehē kuo 'ikai ke hoko ia 'o homongofua ke mole ia 'iate kimautilu; he vakai, kuo mole 'emau ngaahi koloá meiate kimautilu.

But behold, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer; yea, he will say: Walk after the pride of your own hearts; yea, walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth—and if a man shall come among you and say this, ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

Yea, ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance; ye will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and ye will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he speaketh flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then ye will not find fault with him.

O ye wicked and ye perverse generation; ye hardened and ye stiffnecked people, how long will ye suppose that the Lord will suffer you? Yea, how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind guides? Yea, how long will ye choose darkness rather than light?

Yea, behold, the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you; behold, he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.

And behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become slippery, that ye cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.

And in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord; and in vain shall ye cry, for your desolation is already come upon you, and your destruction is made sure; and then shall ye weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts. And then shall ye lament, and say:

O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out. Yea, in that day ye shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us.

- 34 Vakai, 'oku mau tuku ha me'angāue 'i heni pea 'i he 'apongipongí kuo mole ia; pea vakai, kuo 'ave 'emau ngaahi heletaá meiate kimautilu 'i he 'aho na'a mau kumi ki ai ki he taú.
- 35 'Io, kuo mau fufuu 'i hake 'emau ngaahi koloá pea kuo homo ia meiate kimautilu, koe'uhi ko e mala'ia 'o e fonuá.
- 36 'Oiauē pehe ange mai na'a mau fakatomala 'i he 'aho na'e hoko mai ai 'a e folofola 'a e 'Eikí kiate kimautilu; he vakai kuo fakamala 'ia 'i 'a e fonuá, pea kuo hoko 'o molengofua 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē, pea 'oku 'ikai te mau lava 'o puke ma'u ia.
- 37 Vakai, kuo 'atakai 'i 'a kimautilu 'e he ngaahi laumālie 'uli, 'io, 'oku takatakai 'a kimautilu 'e he kau 'āngelo 'a e tokotaha kuó ne feinga ke faka'auha homau laumālie. Vakai, 'oku lahi fau 'emau ngaahi angahalá. 'E 'Eiki, he 'ikai te ke lava nai 'o lolou 'a ho houhaú meiate kimautilu? Pea ko e lea 'eni te mou fai 'i he ngaahi 'aho ko ía.
- 38 Kae vakai, kuo hili ange 'a e ngaahi 'aho 'o homou 'ahi'ahi'i; kuo mou fakatoloi 'a e 'aho 'o ho'omou fakamo'uí kae 'oua kuo tōmui 'o ta'engata, pea kuo fakapapau 'i homou faka'auhá; 'io, he kuo mou feinga 'i he ngaahi 'aho kotoa pē 'o ho'omou mo'uí ke ma'u 'a ia 'oku 'ikai te mou fá'a ma'ú; pea kuo mou feinga ke ma'u 'a e fiefia 'i he fai angahalá, 'a ia ko ha me'a 'oku ta'ehoa mo e anga 'o e mā'oni'oni 'a ia 'oku 'i hotau Pule Ta'engata lahi.
- 39 'Oiauē 'a kimoutolu 'a e kakai 'o e fonuá, pehē ange 'oku mou fanongo ki he'eku ngaahi leá! Pea 'oku ou lotua ke 'ofa 'o lolou 'a e houhau 'o e 'Eikí meiate kimoutolu, pea ke mou fakatomala pea mo'ui.

Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.

Yea, we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.

O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us; for behold the land is cursed, and all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them.

Behold, we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls. Behold, our iniquities are great. O Lord, canst thou not turn away thine anger from us? And this shall be your language in those days.

But behold, your days of probation are past; ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late, and your destruction is made sure; yea, for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain; and ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head.

O ye people of the land, that ye would hear my words! And I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you, and that ye would repent and be saved.

Hilamani 14

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe kikite 'aki 'e Samuela, ko e tangata Leimaná, mo ha ngaahi me'a lahi ange 'aupito 'a ia 'oku 'ikai lava ke tohi.
- 2 Pea vakai, na'á ne pehē kiate kinautolu: Vakai, 'oku ou tuku kiate kimoutolu ha faka'ilonga; he 'oku toe 'a e ta'u 'e nima, pea vakai, 'e hā'ele mai leva 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá ke huhu'i 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'e tui ki hono huafá.
- 3 Pea vakai, te u tuku 'eni kiate kimoutolu ko ha faka'ilonga 'o e taimi 'o 'ene hā'ele maí; he vakai, 'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi fu'u maama lalahi 'i he langí, 'o a'u ki he 'ikai ke 'i ai ha fakapo'uli 'i he pō ki mu'a 'i he'ene hā'ele maí, 'o a'u ki he'ene hā ki he tangatá 'o hangē ko ha 'aho.
- 4 Ko ia, 'e 'i ai 'a e 'aho 'e taha mo ha pō pea mo ha 'aho, 'o hangē ko e 'aho pē taha ta'e-'i ai-ha-po'uli; pea 'e hoko 'eni kiate kimoutolu ko ha faka'ilonga; he te mou 'ilo'i 'a e hopo 'a e la'áa pea mo 'ene toó; ko ia te nau 'ilo'i pau 'oku 'i ai 'a e 'aho 'e ua mo ha pō 'e taha; ka neongo iá 'e 'ikai fakapo'uli 'a e poó; pea ko e pō ia ki mu'a pea toki 'alo'i ai iá.
- 5 Pea vakai, 'e hopo hake ha fetu'u fo'ou, 'a ia ko ha fetu'u kuo te'eki ai ke mou mamata ki ai; pea 'e hoko 'eni foki ko ha faka'ilonga kiate kimoutolu.
- 6 Pea vakai 'oku 'ikai ko hono kotoá 'eni, ka 'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi faka'ilonga lahi mo e ngaahi me'a fakaofa 'i he langí.
- 7 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē te mou 'ohovale kotoa pē, pea ofo, 'o a'u ki ho'omou tō ki he kekekelé.
- 8 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē ko ia ia 'e tui ki he 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, 'e ma'u 'e ia 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá.
- 9 Pea vakai, kuo pehē hono fekau'i au 'e he 'Eikí, 'i he'ene 'āngeló, ke u ha'u 'o fakahā 'a e me'á ni kiate kimoutolu; 'io, kuó ne fekau ke u kikite 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate kimoutolu; 'io, kuó ne folofola mai kiate au: Ke ke kalanga ki he kakaí ni, fakatomala, pea teuteu 'a e hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eikí.

Helaman 14

And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.

And behold, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.

And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.

Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.

And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life.

And behold, thus hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel, that I should come and tell this thing unto you; yea, he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you; yea, he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare the way of the Lord.

10 Pea ko 'eni, ko'e uhi ko ha tangata Leimana au, pea kuó u lea kiate kimoutolu 'i he ngaahi folofola kuo fekau kiate au 'e he 'Eikí, pea ko'e uhi 'oku fefeka ia kiate kimoutolu, 'oku mou 'ita ai kiate au 'o feinga ke faka'auha au, pea kuo mou kapusi au ki tu'a meiate kimoutolu.

11 Pea te mou fanongo ki he'eku ngaahi leá, ko'e uhi, he ko hono 'uhinga 'eni kuó u kaka hake ai ki he funga 'o e ngaahi 'ā 'o e kolo ní, ko'e uhi ke mou fanongo pea 'ilo 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a e 'Otuá 'a ia 'oku tatali kiate kimoutolu ko'e uhi ko ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, pea ko'e uhi foki ke mou 'ilo 'i 'a e ngaahi tu'unga 'o e fakatomalá;

12 Pea ko'e uhi foki ke mou 'ilo ki he hā'ele mai 'a Sīsū Kalaisi, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, ko e Tamai 'o e langí mo e māmaní, ko e Tupu'anga 'o e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē talu mei he kamata'angá; pea ko'e uhi ke mou 'ilo 'a e ngaahi faka'ilonga 'o 'ene hā'ele maí, 'i he 'amanaki te mou tui ai ki hono huafá.

13 Pea kapau 'oku mou tui ki hono huafá te mou fakatomala mei ho'omou ngaahi angahala kotoa pē, ko'e uhi ke mou ma'u ai ha fakamolemole tu'unga 'i he ngaahi ngāue lelei kuó ne faí.

14 Pea vakai, 'oku ou toe tuku kiate kimoutolu, mo ha toe faka'ilonga 'e taha, 'io, ko ha faka'ilonga 'o 'ene pekiá.

15 He vakai, kuo pau ke ne pekiá ko'e uhi ke hoko mai 'a e fakamo'uí; 'io, 'oku taau mo ia pea 'oku 'aonga ke ne pekia, ke fakahoko 'a e toetu'u 'o e maté, ko'e uhi ke lava ai ke 'omi 'a e tangatá ki he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí.

16 'Io, vakai, 'oku fakahoko 'e he pekiá ni 'a e toetu'ú, pea huhu'i 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá mei he 'uluaki maté—'a e mate fakalaumālie ko iá; ma'á e fa'ahinga kotoa 'o e tangatá, he na'e tu'unga 'i he hinga 'a 'Ātamá hono motuhi atu 'a kinautolu mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, pea 'oku lau 'a kinautolu 'o pehē kuo nau mate, 'i he ngaahi me'a fakamatelié pea mo e ngaahi me'a fakalaumālie fakatou'osi.

17 Kae vakai, 'oku hanga 'e he toetu'u 'a Kalaisi 'o huhu'i 'a e fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá, 'io, na'a mo e fa'ahinga 'o e tangatá kotoa pē, pea fakafoki mai 'a kinautolu ki he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí.

And now, because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath commanded me, and because it was hard against you, ye are angry with me and do seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you.

And ye shall hear my words, for, for this intent have I come up upon the walls of this city, that ye might hear and know of the judgments of God which do await you because of your iniquities, and also that ye might know the conditions of repentance;

And also that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and that ye might know of the signs of his coming, to the intent that ye might believe on his name.

And if ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins, that thereby ye may have a remission of them through his merits.

And behold, again, another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death.

For behold, he surely must die that salvation may come; yea, it behooveth him and becometh expedient that he dieth, to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord.

Yea, behold, this death bringeth to pass the resurrection, and redeemeth all mankind from the first death—that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things temporal and to things spiritual.

But behold, the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind, yea, even all mankind, and bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord.

- 18 'Io, pea 'okú ne fakahoko ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e fakatomalá, koe'uhí ko ia ia te ne fakatomalá 'e 'ikai tā hifo ia 'o laku ki he afí; ka ko ia ia 'e 'ikai fakatomalá 'e tā hifo ia 'o laku ki he afí; pea 'oku toe hoko kiate kinautolu ha mate fakalaumālie, 'io, ko ha mate 'anga ua, he 'oku toe motuhi atu 'a kinautolu 'i he ngaahi me'a 'oku kau ki he mā'oni'oni.
- 19 Ko ia mou fakatomala, mou fakatomala, telia na'a mou 'ilo'í 'a e ngaahi me'á ni pea 'ikai fai ki ai pea mou tuku 'a kimoutolu ke mou mo'ua ki he fakamala'ia, pea 'ohifo 'a kimoutolu ki he mate 'anga ua ko 'eni.
- 20 Kae vakai, 'oku hangē ko 'eku lea kiate kimoutolu 'o kau ki ha faka'ilonga 'e tahá, ko ha faka'ilonga 'o 'ene pekiá, vakai, 'i he 'aho ko ia te ne mamahi ai 'i he maté 'e fakapo'uli 'a e la'áa pea 'ikai fie tuku mai hono māmá kiate kimoutolu; kae 'uma'ā foki mo e māhiná mo e ngaahi fetu'ú; pea 'e 'ikai ha maama 'i he funga 'o e fonuá ni, 'o fai mei he taimi te ne mamahi ai 'o pekiá, 'o fe'unga mo e 'aho 'e tolu, kae 'oua kuo a'u ki he taimi te ne toe tu'u ai mei he pekiá.
- 21 'Io, 'i he taimi te ne tukuange ai hono laumālie 'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi mana mo e ngaahi 'uhila 'i ha ngaahi houa lahi, pe 'e ngalulululu mo tetetete 'a e fonuá; pea ko e ngaahi maka 'a ia 'oku 'i he funga 'o e fonuá ni, 'a ia 'oku 'i 'olunga 'i he kekelelé pea 'i laló foki, 'a ia 'oku mou 'ilo 'i he taimi ni 'oku mālohi, pe ko hono kongala hi 'o ia ko e fu'u me'a mālohi pē 'e tahá; 'e mafahifahi ia;
- 22 'Io, 'e mafahi ua ia, pea 'e talu mei ai 'e hā ia 'oku mafa'afa'a mo mafahifahi mo momoiiki 'i he funga 'o e fonuá kotoa, 'io, ki 'olunga 'i he kekelelé pea 'i lalo fakatou'osi.
- 23 Pea vakai, 'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi afā lahi, pea 'e holoki hifo 'a e ngaahi mo'unga lahi, 'o nau hangē ha tele'á, pea 'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi potu lahi 'a ia 'oku ui he taimi ni ko e ngaahi tele'á 'a ia 'e hoko ko e ngaahi mo'unga, 'a ia 'oku fu'u mā'olunga 'aupito.
- 24 Pea 'e maumau 'i 'a e ngaahi hala lahi, pea hoko 'a e ngaahi kolo lahi 'o lala.
- 25 Pea 'e mato'o 'a e ngaahi tanu'anga lahi, pea 'e tuku hake 'a e tokolahi 'o honau kakai maté; pea 'e hā mai 'a e kau mā'oni'oni tokolahi ki he kakai tokolahi.

Yea, and it bringeth to pass the condition of repentance, that whosoever repenteth the same is not hewn down and cast into the fire; but whosoever repenteth not is hewn down and cast into the fire; and there cometh upon them again a spiritual death, yea, a second death, for they are cut off again as to things pertaining to righteousness.

Therefore repent ye, repent ye, lest by knowing these things and not doing them ye shall suffer yourselves to come under condemnation, and ye are brought down unto this second death.

But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunders and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great.

And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

26 Pea vakai, kuo lea pehē ‘a e ‘āngeló kiate au; he na ‘á ne tala mai kiate au ‘e ‘i ai ‘a e ngaahi mana mo e ‘uhila ‘i he ngaahi houa lahi.

27 Pea na ‘á ne tala mai kiate au ‘i he lolotonga hokohoko atu ‘a e maná mo e ‘uhilá mo e afaá, ‘e hoko ‘a e ngaahi me ‘á ni, pea ‘e ‘ufi ‘ufi ‘e he fakapo ‘ulí ‘a e funga ‘o e fonuá hono kotoa ‘i he ‘aho ‘e tolu.

28 Pea na ‘e pehē mai ‘e he ‘āngeló kiate au ‘e ‘i ai ‘a e tokolahi te nau mamata ki ha ngaahi me ‘a ‘oku lalahi ange ‘i he ngaahi me ‘á ni, ko hono taumu ‘á ke nau tui ‘e hoko ‘a e ngaahi faka ‘ilonga ko ‘ení mo e ngaahi me ‘a fakaofó ni ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e funga ‘o e fonua ko ‘ení, ko hono taumu ‘á ke ‘oua na ‘a ‘i ai ha ‘uhinga ke ‘i ai ha ta ‘etui ‘i he fānau ‘a e tangatá—

29 Pea ko hono taumu ‘á kotoa ‘e fai ai ‘ení koe ‘uhi ko kinautolu kotoa pē ‘e tui ‘e lava ‘o fakamo ‘ui, pea ko ia ia ‘e ‘ikai tui, ke hoko ‘a e tautea ‘oku mā ‘oni ‘oni kiate kinautolu; kae ‘uma ‘ā foki kapau ‘e fakahalaia ‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘oku nau fakahoko kiate kinautolu ‘iate kinautolu pē ‘a honau fakahalaia ‘i.

30 Pea ko ‘eni manatu, manatu, ‘e hoku kāinga, ko ia ia ‘okú ne mala ‘iá, ‘okú ne mala ‘ia ‘iate ia pē; pea ko ia ia ‘okú ne fai angahala, ‘okú ne fai ia ‘iate ia pē; he vakai, ‘oku mou tau ‘atāina; ‘oku fakangofua ke mou ngāue ma ‘amoutolu pē; he vakai, kuo tuku kiate kimoutolu ‘e he ‘Otua ha ‘ilo pea kuó ne fakatau ‘atāina ‘i ‘a kimoutolu.

31 Kuó ne tuku kiate kimoutolu ke mou ‘ilo ‘i ‘a e lelei mei he koví, pea kuó ne tuku kiate kimoutolu ke mou fili ‘a e mo ‘uí pe maté; pea te mou lava ‘o failelei pea toe fakafoki ‘a kimoutolu ki he me ‘a ‘oku lelei, pe fakafoki kiate kimoutolu ‘a e me ‘a ‘oku lelei; pe te mou lava ‘o faikovi, pea toe fakafoki ‘a e me ‘a ‘oku kovi kiate kimoutolu.

And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours.

And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

And the angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these, to the intent that they might believe that these signs and these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this land, to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men—

And this to the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved, and that whosoever will not believe, a righteous judgment might come upon them; and also if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own condemnation.

And now remember, remember, my brethren, that whosoever perisheth, perisheth unto himself; and whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself; for behold, ye are free; ye are permitted to act for yourselves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowledge and he hath made you free.

He hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil, and he hath given unto you that ye might choose life or death; and ye can do good and be restored unto that which is good, or have that which is good restored unto you; or ye can do evil, and have that which is evil restored unto you.

Hilamani 15

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, vakai, 'oku ou fakahā kiate kimoutolu kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala 'e li'aki 'a homou ngaahi falé kiate kimoutolu ke lala.
- 2 'Io, kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala, 'e 'i ai 'a e fu'u 'uhinga lahi ke tangi 'a homou kakai fefiné 'i he 'aho te nau fakahuu aí; he te mou feinga ke hola ka 'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha potu hūfanga; 'io, pea 'e mala'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku feitamá, he te nau mamafa 'o 'ikai lava ke hola; ko ia, 'e molomoloki hifo 'a kinautolu pea li'aki ke nau mate.
- 3 'Io, 'e mala'ia 'a e kakaí ni 'a ia 'oku ui ko e kakai 'o Nifái 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala, 'o ka nau ka mamata ki he ngaahi faka'ilongá ni kotoa pē mo e ngaahi me'a fakaofa 'a ia 'e fakahā kiate kinautolú; he vakai, kuo nau hoko ko ha kakai fili 'o e 'Eikí; 'io, kuó ne 'ofa 'i 'a e kakai 'o Nifái, pea kuó ne tautea 'i foki 'a kinautolu; 'io, kuó ne tautea 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o 'enau fai angahalá koe'uhi he 'okú ne 'ofa 'iate kinautolu.
- 4 Kae vakai 'e hoku kāinga, kuó ne fehi 'a ki he kau Leimaná koe'uhi kuo kovi ma'u ai pē 'a 'enau ngaahi ngāue, pea 'oku tupu 'eni 'i hono kovi 'o e talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí. Kae vakai, kuo hoko kiate kinautolu 'a e fakamo'uí 'i he malanga 'a e kau Nifái; pea ko hono 'uhinga 'eni kuo fakalōloa ai 'e he 'Eikí 'a honau ngaahi 'ahó.
- 5 Pea 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou vakai ko e tokolahi ange 'o kinautolu 'oku nau 'a'eva 'i he hala 'o honau fatongiá, pea 'oku nau 'a'eva faka'ehi'ehi 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, pea 'oku nau tokanga ke tauhi 'ene ngaahi fekaú mo 'ene ngaahi tu'utu'uní mo 'ene ngaahi fakamāú 'o fakatatau mo e fono 'a Mōsesé.
- 6 'Io, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko e tokolahi ange 'o kinautolu 'oku nau fai 'eni, pea 'oku nau ngāue tūkuingata ta'etuku ke nau fakatafoki hono toe 'o honau kāingá ki he 'ilo 'i 'o e mo'oní; ko ia 'oku 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'oku kau mai kiate kinautolu 'i he 'aho kotoa pē.

Helaman 15

And now, my beloved brethren, behold, I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate.

Yea, except ye repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck; for ye shall attempt to flee and there shall be no place for refuge; yea, and wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and cannot flee; therefore, they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish.

Yea, wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and wonders which shall be showed unto them; for behold, they have been a chosen people of the Lord; yea, the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened them; yea, in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because he loveth them.

But behold my brethren, the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually, and this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers. But behold, salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days.

And I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in the path of their duty, and they do walk circumspectly before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

Yea, I say unto you, that the more part of them are doing this, and they are striving with unwearied diligence that they may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth; therefore there are many who do add to their numbers daily.

7 Pea vakai, 'oku mou 'ilo'i 'iate kimoutolu pē, he kuo mou fakamo'oni ki ai, 'ilonga 'a kinautolu kuo fakatafoki ki he 'ilo'i 'o e mo'oni, pea mahino kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi talatukufakaholo kovi mo fakalielia 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí, pea 'oku tākiekina ke nau tui ki he ngaahi folofola mā'oni'oni, 'io, 'a e ngaahi kikite 'a e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni, 'a ia kuo tohí, 'a ia 'oku tākiekina 'a kinautolu ki he tui ki he 'Eikí, pea ki he fakatomalá, 'a ia ko e tui mo e fakatomala 'okú ne fakatupu ha liliu 'i honau loto 'iate kinautolu—

8 Ko ia, 'ilonga 'a kinautolu kuo nau a'usia 'a e me'a ní, 'oku mou 'ilo'i 'e kimoutolu 'oku nau tu'u ma'u mo tu'u 'alí'aliaki 'i he tuí, pea 'i he me'a kuo fakatau 'atāina 'aki 'a kinautolú.

9 Pea 'oku mou 'ilo foki kuo nau tanu 'enau ngaahi mahafu taú, pea 'oku nau manavahē ke to'o hake ia telia na 'a 'ilo ange 'oku nau fai angahala ai; 'io, 'oku mou lava 'o 'ilo'i 'oku nau manavahē ke fai angahala—he vakai te nau tuku ke molomoloki hifo 'a kinautolu pea tāmata'e 'i 'e honau ngaahi filí, kae 'ikai te nau hiki hake 'enau ngaahi heletaá ke tau mo kinautolu, pea 'oku tupu 'eni koe'uhi ko 'enau tui kia Kalaisí.

10 Pea ko 'eni, koe'uhi ko 'enau tu'u ma'u 'i he 'enau tui ki he me'a 'a ia 'oku nau tui ki ai, he ko e me'a 'i he 'enau tu'u ma'u 'o ka hili hono fakamāma'i 'a kinautolú, vakai, 'e tāpuaki 'i ai 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eikí mo fakalōloa 'i honau ngaahi 'ahó, neongo 'enau angahalá—

11 'Io, neongo 'o kapau te nau faka'au'au hifo 'i he ta'etuí ka 'e fakalōloa 'i 'e he 'Eikí 'a honau ngaahi 'ahó, kae 'oua ke hokosia 'a e taimi kuo lea ki ai 'a 'etau ngaahi tamaí, pea mo e palōfita foki ko Seinosí, pea mo e kau palōfita tokolahi kehe, 'o kau ki hono toe fakafoki 'o hotau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná, ki he 'ilo'i 'o e mo'oni—

12 'Io, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'i he ngaahi kuonga faka'osí kuo fakaa'u atu 'a e ngaahi tala'ofa 'a e 'Eikí ki hotau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná; pea neongo 'a e ngaahi faingata 'a lahi 'e hoko kiate kinautolú, pea neongo 'e tulifano holo 'a kinautolu 'i he funga 'o e fonuá, pea ha'ao, pea te'ia mo fakamovetevete holo 'a kinautolu, 'o 'ikai te nau ma'u ha potu ke hūfanga ai, ka 'e 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Eikí kiate kinautolu.

And behold, ye do know of yourselves, for ye have witnessed it, that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth, and to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their fathers, and are led to believe the holy scriptures, yea, the prophecies of the holy prophets, which are written, which leadeth them to faith on the Lord, and unto repentance, which faith and repentance bringeth a change of heart unto them—

Therefore, as many as have come to this, ye know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free.

And ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin; yea, ye can see that they fear to sin—for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them, and this because of their faith in Christ.

And now, because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe, for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, behold, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days, notwithstanding their iniquity—

Yea, even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth—

Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

- 13 Pea 'oku fakatatau 'eni ki he kikite 'oku pehē, 'e toe 'omi 'a kinautolu ki he 'ilo mo'oni, 'a ia ko e 'ilo ki honau Huhu'í, mo honau tauhi-sipi lahi mo mo'oni, pea lau fakataha mo 'ene fanga sipí.
- 14 Ko ia 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e lelei ange kiate kinautolu 'iate kimoutolu 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala.
- 15 He vakai, ka ne fakahā 'a e ngaahi fu'u ngāue lalahí kiate kinautolu 'a ia kuo fakahā kiate kimoutolú, 'io, kiate kinautolu kuo nau faka'au'au hifo 'i he ta'etui koe'uhi ko e ngaahi talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí, pehē te mou lava ke vakai 'e kimoutolu kuo 'ikai te nau toe faka'au'au hifo 'i he ta'etui.
- 16 Ko ia, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí: 'E 'ikai te u faka'auha ke 'osí'osingamālie 'a kinautolu, ka te u pule ke nau toe foki mai kiate au 'i he 'aho 'oku ou pehē 'oku fakapotopoto aí, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí.
- 17 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí, 'o kau ki he kakai 'o e kau Nífaí: Kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala, pea tokanga ke fai hoku lotó, pehē te u faka'auha ke 'osí'osingamālie 'a kinautolu, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí, koe'uhi ko 'enau ta'etuí, neongo 'a e ngaahi fu'u ngāue lalahi kuó u fai 'i honau lototongá; pea ko e mo'oni hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eikí 'e hoko 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí.

And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is the knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent.

For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief.

Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord.

And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them; and as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things be, saith the Lord.

Hilamani 16

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi na'a nau fanongo ki he ngaahi lea 'a Samuelá, ko e tangata Leimaná, 'a ia na'á ne lea 'aki mei he funga 'o e ngaahi 'ā 'o e koló. Pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'a ia na'a nau tui ki he'ene ngaahi leá na'a nau 'alu atu 'o kumi kia Nifai; pea kuo nau omi 'o 'ilo 'i ia pea nau vete kiate ia 'enau ngaahi angahalá 'o 'ikai faka'ikai 'i ia, 'o nau kole ke papitaiso 'a kinautolu ki he 'Eikí.
- 2 Ka ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'a ia na'e 'ikai te nau tui ki he ngaahi lea 'a Samuelá na'a nau 'ita kiate ia; pea na'a nau tolongaki ia 'aki 'a e ngaahi maka 'i he funga 'aá, pea na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi na'a nau fana foki kiate ia 'aki 'a e ngaahi ngahau 'i he'ene tu'u 'i he funga 'aá; ka na'e 'iate ia 'a e Laumálie 'o e 'Eikí, 'o 'ikai ai lava ke tau 'iate ia 'a 'enau ngaahi maká pe ko 'enau ngaahi ngahaú.
- 3 Ko 'eni 'i he'enu 'ilo 'i 'oku 'ikai lava ke tau 'iate ia ha'anau me'á, na'e toe 'i ai mo e tokolahi ange na'a nau tui ki he'ene ngaahi leá, 'o nau 'alu ai kia Nifai ke papitaiso.
- 4 He vakai, na'e lolotonga fai papitaiso 'a Nifai, mo kikite, mo malanga, mo kalanga 'aki 'a e fakatomalá ki he kakaí, mo fakahā 'a e ngaahi faka'ilonga mo e ngaahi me'a fakaofu, 'o fai 'a e ngaahi me'a mana 'i he kakaí, ke nau 'ilo kuo pau ke vave 'a e 'alo 'i mai 'o Kalaisi—
- 5 Mo fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo pau ke vave 'ene hokó, koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo 'i pea manatu 'i 'i he taimi 'e hoko ai iá kuo tomu 'a fakahā ia kiate kinautolu, koe'uhi ke nau tui; ko ia 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'a ia na'a nau tui ki he ngaahi lea 'a Samuelá na'a nau 'alu atu kiate ia ke papitaiso, he na'a nau ha'u 'o fakatomala mo vete 'enau ngaahi angahalá.
- 6 Ka ko honau tokolahi ange na'e 'ikai ke tui ki he ngaahi lea 'a Samuelá; ko ia 'i he'enu vakai 'oku 'ikai lava ke tau 'iate ia 'a 'enau ngaahi maká mo 'enau ngaahi ngahaú, na'a nau kaila ki honau kau 'eikitaú, 'o pehē: Puke 'a e tangatá ni pea ha'i ia, he vakai 'oku 'iate ia ha tēvolo; pea koe'uhi ko e mālohi 'o e tēvolo 'a ia 'oku 'iate iá 'oku 'ikai fa'a lava ai ke tau 'iate ia 'etau ngaahi maká mo 'etau ngaahi ngahaú; ko ia puke ia pea ha'i, 'o 'ave ia ke mama'o.

Helaman 16

And now, it came to pass that there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spake upon the walls of the city. And as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for Nephi; and when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto him their sins and denied not, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord.

But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

Now when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many more who did believe on his words, insomuch that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized.

For behold, Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching, crying repentance unto the people, showing signs and wonders, working miracles among the people, that they might know that the Christ must shortly come—

Telling them of things which must shortly come, that they might know and remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the intent that they might believe; therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins.

But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him.

7 Pea 'i he 'enau 'alu atu ke puke ia 'aki honau nimá, vakai, na 'á ne hopo hifo mei he funga 'aá, 'o ne hola mei honau ngaahi fonuá, 'io, 'o a 'u ki hono fonua 'o 'oná, pea na 'á ne kamata ke malanga mo kikite 'i he lotolotonga 'o hono kakai 'o 'oná.

8 Pea vakai, na 'e 'ikai toe fanongo 'o kau kiate ia ha taha 'i he kau Nifái; pea na 'e pehē 'a e ngaahi me 'a 'a e kakaí.

9 Pea na 'e 'osi pehē hono valungofulu mā ono 'o e ta 'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nifái.

10 Pea na 'e 'osi pehē foki mo e ta 'u hono valungofulu mā fitu 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú, pea na 'e nofo 'a e kongalahi 'o e kakaí 'i he 'enau loto-híkisiá mo e fai angahalá, pea ko honau tokosi 'i pē na 'e 'a 'eva faka 'ehi 'ehi 'o lahi hake 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá.

11 Pea ko e ngaahi tu 'unga foki 'eni, 'o hono valungofulu mā valu 'o e ta 'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú.

12 Pea na 'e sí 'i pe ha liliu 'i he ngaahi me 'a 'a e kakaí, tuku kehe pē 'a e kamata ke 'āsili ange 'a e mahimango 'a e kakaí 'i he fai angahalá, pea na 'e fakautuutu ai pē 'a 'enau fai 'a e ngaahi me 'a 'a ia 'oku ta 'ehoa mo e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Otuá, 'i he hono valungofulu mā hiva 'o e ta 'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú.

13 Ka na 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono hivanogofulu 'o e ta 'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú, na 'e fakahā ha ngaahi faka 'ilonga lalahi ki he kakai, mo e ngaahi me 'a fakafo; pea na 'e kamata ke fakahoko 'a e ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfitá.

14 Pea na 'e hā mai 'a e kau 'āngelo ki he kau tangata, 'a ia ko e kau tangata poto, 'o fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi ongoongo fakafiefia 'o e fiefia lahi; ko ia 'i he ta 'u pē ko iá na 'e kamata ke fakahoko 'a e ngaahi folofolá.

15 Ka neongo iá, na 'e kamata 'e he kakaí ke fakafefeka honau lotó, tuku kehe pē honau ni 'ihi na 'e tui lahi taha, 'i he kau Nifái mo e kau Leimaná fakatou 'osi, 'o nau kamata ke falala ki honau ivi 'onautolú pea ki honau poto 'onautolú, 'o nau pehē:

16 'Oku 'i ai 'a e ngaahi me 'a 'e ni 'ihi na 'e totonu 'enau fakalavelavé, he na 'e lahi 'aupito; kae vakai, 'oku mau 'ilo 'i ko e ngaahi ngāue lalahi mo fakafo ko 'ení 'e 'ikai lava 'o hoko hono kotoa, 'a ia na 'a nau lea 'akí.

17 Pea na 'a nau kamata ke fakafekiki mo fekíhiaki 'iate kinautolu, 'o pehē:

And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and did flee out of their lands, yea, even unto his own country, and began to preach and to prophesy among his own people.

And behold, he was never heard of more among the Nephites; and thus were the affairs of the people.

And thus ended the eighty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended also the eighty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, the more part of the people remaining in their pride and wickedness, and the lesser part walking more circumspectly before God.

And these were the conditions also, in the eighty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And there was but little alteration in the affairs of the people, save it were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity, and do more and more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God, in the eighty and ninth year of the reign of the judges.

But it came to pass in the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people, and wonders; and the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled.

And angels did appear unto men, wise men, and did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; thus in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.

Nevertheless, the people began to harden their hearts, all save it were the most believing part of them, both of the Nephites and also of the Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own strength and upon their own wisdom, saying:

Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken.

And they began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:

18 'Oku 'ikai ha 'uhinga lelei ke 'i ai ha taha 'o hangē ko ha Kalaisi 'e hā'ele mai; kapau 'e pehē, pea ko e 'Alo ia 'o e 'Otuá, ko e Tamai 'o e langi mo e māmaní, 'o hangē ko ia kuo lea'akí, ko e hā 'oku 'ikai te ne fakahā ai ia 'e ia kiate kiate kitautolu 'o hangē ko kinautolu te nau 'i Selūsalemá?

19 'Io, ko e hā 'e 'ikai te ne fakahā ai ia 'e ia 'i he fonuá ni 'o hangē ko e fonua ko Selūsalemá?

20 Kae vakai, 'oku tau 'ilo ko e talatukufakaholo kovi 'eni, 'a ia kuo tukufakaholo mai kiate kiate kitautolu mei he'etau ngaahi tamaí, koe'uhí ke ngaohi kitautolu ke tau tui ki ha fu'u me'a ma'ongo'onga mo fakafofo 'a ia 'e hoko, kae 'ikai 'i hotau lotolotonga, ka 'i ha fonua 'oku mama 'o 'aupito, ko ha fonua 'oku 'ikai te tau 'ilo ki ai; ko ia 'oku nau lava ai 'o tuku 'a kitautolu 'i he ta'e'ilo, he 'oku 'ikai te tau fa'a mamata 'aki hotau mata 'otautolú pe 'oku mo'oni ia.

21 Pea te nau fokotu'u, 'i he olopoto mo e ngaahi faiva fufū 'o e tokotaha angakoví, ha fu'u me'a lilo lahi 'a ia 'oku 'ikai fa'a mahino kiate kitautolu, 'a ia 'e fakapōpula 'i 'a kitautolu ke hoko ko e kau tamaio'eiki ki he'enua ngaahi leá, pea mo e kau tamaio'eiki foki kiate kinautolu, he 'oku tau falala kiate kinautolu ke nau ako 'i 'a kitautolu 'i he folofolá; pea 'e pehē'enua ta'ofi 'a kitautolu 'i he ta'e'iló 'o kapau te tau fakavaivai 'i 'a kitautolu kiate kinautolu, 'i he ngaahi 'aho kotoa 'o 'etau mo'uí.

22 Pea na'e lahi mo e ngaahi me'a kehe na'e fakakaukau 'i 'e he kakai 'i honau lotó, 'a ia na'e laulaunoa mo ta'e'aonga; pea na'a nau fu'u hoha'a lahi, he na'e ue'i hake 'e Sētane 'a kinautolu ke nau fai angahala ma'u ai pē; 'io, na'a ne 'alu fano 'o fakamafola 'a e ngaahi ongoongo loi mo e ngaahi fakakikihi 'i he funga kotoa 'o e fonuá, koe'uhi ke ne fakafefeka 'a e loto 'o e kakai ki he me'a 'oku lelei pea ki he me'a 'a ia 'e hokó.

23 Pea neongo 'a e ngaahi faka'ilonga mo e ngaahi me'a fakafofo 'a ia na'e fai 'i he kakai 'o e 'Eikí, pea mo e ngaahi mana na'a nau faí, na'e kei ma'u 'e Sētane 'a e fu'u mālohi lahi ki he loto 'o e kakai 'i he funga hono kotoa 'o e fonuá.

24 Pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a hono hivangofulu 'o e ta'u 'o e pule 'a e kau fakamāú ki he kakai 'o Nīfaí.

That it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?

Yea, why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem?

But behold, we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our fathers, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should come to pass, but not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not; therefore they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true.

And they will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words, and also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word; and thus will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives.

And many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain; and they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually; yea, he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land, that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come.

And notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord, and the many miracles which they did, Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.

And thus ended the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

25 Pea na 'e ngata pehē 'a e tohi 'a Hilamaní, 'o fakatatau
ki he lekooti 'a Hilamani mo hono ongo fohá.

And thus ended the book of Helaman, according to
the record of Helaman and his sons.

Ko e Tohi Hono Tolu ‘a Nīfaí

Ko e Tohi ‘a Nīfai

ko e Foha ‘o Nīfai, ‘a ia ko e Foha ‘o Hilamaní

Pea ko Hilamani ko e foha ia ‘o Hilamani, ‘a ia ko e foha ‘o ‘Alamā, ‘a ia ko e foha ‘o ‘Alamā, ko ha bako ‘o Nīfai ‘a ia ko e foha ‘o Līhai, ‘a ia na’e ha ‘u mei Selūsalema ‘i he ‘uluaki ta ‘u ‘o e pule ‘a Setikia, ko e tu ‘i ‘o Siutá.

3 Nīfai 1

- 1 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē kuo ‘osi atu hono hivangofulu mā taha ‘o e ta ‘ú pea ko e ta ‘u ia hono onongeau talu mei he taimi na’e ha ‘u ai ‘a Līhai mei Selūsalemá; pea ko e ta ‘u ia na’e hoko ai ‘a Leikoneose ko e tu ‘i fakamaau lahi mo e kōvana ki he fonuá.
- 2 Pea ko Nīfai, ko e foha ‘o Hilamaní, kuo ‘alu ia mei he fonua ko Seilahemalá, kae tuku ‘a e fekau ki hono foha ko Nīfaí, ‘a ia ko hono foha lahi, ke tauhi ‘o e ngaahi peleti ‘o e palasá, pea mo e ngaahi lekooti kotoa kuo tohi, mo e ngaahi me ‘a kotoa pē ‘a ia kuo tauhi toputapu talu mei he ‘alu atu ‘a Līhai mei Selūsalemá.
- 3 Pea na’á ne ‘alu leva mei he fonuá, pea ko e fē ‘a e potu na’á ne ‘alu ki aí, ‘oku ‘ikai ‘ilo ‘e ha tangata; pea na’e tauhi ‘e hono foha ko Nīfaí ‘a e ngaahi lekōtí ‘o fetongi ia, ‘io, ‘a e ngaahi lekooti ‘o e kakai ko ‘ení.
- 4 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he kamata ‘anga ‘o hono hivangofulu mā ua ‘o e ta ‘ú, vakai, na’e kamata ke fakahoko ‘o kakato ange ‘a e ngaahi kikite ‘a e kau palōfitá; he na’e kamata ke lahi ange ‘a e ngaahi faka ‘ilongá mo e ngaahi me ‘a mana lalahi ange na’e hoko ‘i he lotolotonga ‘o e kakaí.
- 5 Ka na’e ‘i aí ‘a e ní ‘ihi na’a nau kamata ke pehē kuo ‘osi ‘a e taimi ‘oku totonu ke fakahoko ai ‘a e ngaahi lea, ‘a ia na’e lea ‘aki ‘e Samuela, ko e tangata Leimaná.
- 6 Pea na’e kamata ke nau fiefia koe ‘uhi ko honau kāingá, ‘o pehē: Vakai kuo ‘osi ‘a e taimí, pea kuo ‘ikai ke fakahoko ‘a e ngaahi lea ‘a Samuelá, ko ia, kuo hoko ho ‘omou fiefia mo ho ‘omou tui ki aí ‘o ta ‘e ‘aonga.

Third Nephi

The Book of Nephi

the Son of Nephi, Who Was the Son of Helaman

And Helaman was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was the son of Alma, being a descendant of Nephi who was the son of Lehi, who came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, the king of Judah.

3 Nephi 1

Now it came to pass that the ninety and first year had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem.

Then he departed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knoweth; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

But there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; therefore, your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fakalanga 'a e fu'u longoa'a lahi 'i he fonuá hono kotoa; pea na'e kamata 'a e kakai 'a ia na'e tui ke fu'u loto-mamahi 'aupito, telia na'a 'i ai ha fa'ahinga founga 'e 'ikai fakahoko 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuo lea'aki.
- 8 Kae vakai, na'a nau sio fakamama'u ki he 'aho ko iá mo e pō ko iá pea mo e 'aho 'a ia 'e hangē pē ko e 'aho pē 'e taha 'o hangē kuo 'ikai ke 'i ai ha poó, koe'uhí ke nau 'ilo kuo 'ikai ke ta'é aonga 'a 'enau tui.
- 9 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fokotu'u ha 'aho 'e he kau ta'etuí, ko e kakai kotoa pē kuo nau tui ki he ngaahi talatukufakaholó ni 'e tuku ke tāmata'i ai 'a kinautolu tuku kehe 'o ka toki hoko 'a e faka'ilonga, kuo fakahā 'e Samuela ko e palōfitá.
- 10 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he mamata 'a Nīfai, ko e foha 'o Nīfai, ki he fai angahala ko 'eni 'a hono kakai, na'e fu'u mamahi 'aupito 'a hono lotó.
- 11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a ne 'alu atu 'o ne punou hifo ki he kelekelé, peá ne fu'u tangi fakamātoato ki hono 'Otuá koe'uhi ko hono kakai, 'io, 'a kinautolu 'a ia na'e amanaki ke faka'auha koe'uhi ko 'enau tui ki he talatukufakaholo 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí.
- 12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a ne tangi fakamātoato ki he 'Eikí 'i he 'aho kotoa ko iá; pea vakai, na'e ongo mai kiate ia 'a e le'o 'o e 'Eikí, 'o pehē:
- 13 Hanga hake ho matá pea fiefia; he vakai, kuo hokosia 'a e taimí, pea 'i he pō ko 'eni 'e fakahā ai 'a e faka'ilongá, pea 'i he 'apongipongí te u ha'u ki māmani, ke fakahā ki he māmani te u fakahoko 'a e me'a kotoa pē kuó u fekau ke lea'aki 'i he ngutu 'o 'eku kau palōfita mā'oni'oni.
- 14 Vakai, 'oku ou ha'u ki hoku kakai 'o'okú, ke fakahoko 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuó u fakahā ki he fānau 'a e tangatá talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmani, pea ke fai 'a e finangalo, 'o e Tamaí pea mo e 'Aló fakatou'osi—'o e Tamaí koe'uhi ko au, pea mo e 'Aló koe'uhi ko hoku kakanó. Pea vakai, kuo hokosia 'a e taimí, pea 'e fakahā 'i he poó ni 'a e faka'ilongá.
- 15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakahoko 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a ia na'e ongo mai kia Nīfai, 'o fakatatau mo ia kuo folofola'aki; he vakai, 'i he tō hifo 'a e la'aá na'e 'ikai ha po'uli; pea na'e kamata ke ofo 'a e kakai koe'uhi ko e 'ikai ha po'uli 'i he hoko mai 'a e poó.

And it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land; and the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass.

But behold, they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain.

Now it came to pass that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.

Now it came to pass that when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

And it came to pass that he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people, yea, those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord all that day; and behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:

Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfil all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.

Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfil all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world, and to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son—of the Father because of me, and of the Son because of my flesh. And behold, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.

And it came to pass that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.

16 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi, na'e 'ikai ke nau tui ki he ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfitá, na'a nau tō ki he kelekelé 'o hangē kuo nau maté, he na'a nau 'ilo'i ko e fu'u palani lahi 'o e faka'auha 'a ia na'a nau teuteu ke fai kiate kinautolu 'a ia na'e tui ki he ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfitá kuo ta'e'aonga ia; he ko e faka'ilonga na'e fakahaá kuo lolotonga hoko ia.

17 Pea na'e kamata ke mahino kiate kinautolu kuo pau ke vave 'a e hā mai 'a e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá; 'io, ko hono fakakātoá, ko e kakai fulipē 'i he funga 'o e fonuá hono kotoa mei he hihifó ki he hahaké, 'i he fonua fakatou 'osi 'i he tokelaú pea mo e fonua 'i he tongá, na'a nau fu'u ofo lahi 'aupito 'o nau tō ki he kelekelé.

18 He na'a nau 'ilo kuo fakamo'oni 'a e kau palōfitá ki he ngaahi me'á ni 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi, pea ko e faka'ilonga kuo fakahaá kuo lolotonga hoko ia; pea na'a nau kamata ke ilifia koe'uhi ko 'enua ngahalá mo 'enua ta'etuí.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ha po'uli 'i hono kotoa 'o e pō ko iá, ka na'e maama ia 'o hangē ko e ho'atā mālie. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe hopo hake 'a e la'á 'i he pongipongí, 'o hangē ko hono anga-mahení; pea na'a nau 'ilo'i ko e 'aho ia 'e 'alo'i ai 'a e 'Eikí, koe'uhi ko e faka'ilonga 'a ia kuo fakahaá.

20 Pea na'e hoko pehē, 'io, 'a e kihí 'i momo'í me'a kotoa pē, 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfitá.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē foki na'e hā mai ha fetu'u fo'ou, 'o fakatatau ki he folofolá.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata mei he taimi ko iá hono fakamafola 'i he kakaí ha ngaahi loi, 'e Sētane, ke fakafefeka honau lotó, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a nau tui ki he ngaahi faka'ilonga mo e ngaahi me'a fakaofa ko ia kuo nau mamata ki aí; ka neongo 'a e ngaahi loi mo e ngaahi kākā ko iá, na'e tui 'a e konga tokolahi 'o e kakaí, na'a nau tui 'o ului ki he 'Eikí.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē foki na'e 'alu atu 'a Nifai 'i he kakaí, mo e tokolahi kehe foki, 'o papitaiso ki he fakatomalá, 'a ia na'e lahi ai 'a e fakamolemole 'o e ngaahi ngahalá. Pea ko ia na'e toe kamata ke ma'u 'e he kakaí 'a e melino 'i he fonuá.

And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the sign which had been given was already at hand.

And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; yea, in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

For they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years, and that the sign which had been given was already at hand; and they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.

And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was mid-day. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given.

And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets.

And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word.

And it came to pass that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. And thus the people began again to have peace in the land.

24 Pea na'e 'ikai ha ngaahi fakakikihi, kae ngata pē 'i ha tokosi'i 'a ia na'a nau kamata ke malanga, 'o feinga ke fakamo'oni'i mei he ngaahi folofolá, 'oku 'ikai toe 'aonga ke tauhi ki he fono 'a Mōsesé. Ka na'a nau hala 'i he me'a ko iá, he kuo 'ikai ke mahino kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi folofolá.

25 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e vave 'enau uluí, pea na'e mahino kiate kinautolu 'a 'enau halá, he na'e fakahā kiate kinautolu kuo te'eki ai fakahoko 'a e fonó, pea kuo pau ke fakahoko hono ki'i konga kotoa pē; 'io, na'e hoko mai 'a e folofolá kiate kinautolu kuo pau ke fakahoko ia; 'io, he 'ikai mole hano kiki'i konga si'i 'e taha kae 'oua ke fakahoko hono kotoa: ko ia na'e fakamahino kiate kinautolu 'i he ta'u pē ko iá 'a 'enau faihalá, pea nau vete 'enau ngaahi halá.

26 Pea ko ia na'e pehē 'a e 'osi atu hono hivanogofulu mā ua 'o e ta'ú, pea na'e 'omi ai 'a e ngaahi ongoongo fakafiefia ki he kakaí koe'uhi ko e ngaahi faka'ilonga 'a ia kuo hokó, 'o fakatatau mo e ngaahi lea 'o e kikite 'a e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni kotoa pē.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'osi atu foki mo hono hivanogofulu mā tolu 'o e ta'ú 'i he melino, tuku kehe pē 'a e kau kaiha 'a 'a Katianetoní, 'a ia na'a nau nofo 'i he ngaahi mo'ungá, pea na'a nau fu'u tokolahi 'i he fonuá; he na'e pehē fau hono mālohi 'o honau ngaahi kolotaú mo honau ngaahi toitoi'angá ko ia na'e 'ikai fa'a ikuna 'a kinautolu 'e he kakaí; ko ia na'a nau fai 'a e ngaahi fakapō lahi, pea nau fai 'a e ngaahi tāmata lahi 'i he kakaí.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono hivanogofulu mā fā 'o e ta'ú na'a nau kamata ke tupu 'o tokolahi 'aupito, ko e tupu mei he tokolahi 'o e kau angatu 'u 'i he kau Nifai 'a ia na'a nau hola mai kiate kinautolu, 'a ia na'e fakatupu ai 'a e fu'u mamahi lahi ki he kau Nifai 'a ia na'e kei nofo 'i he fonuá.

29 Pea na'e 'i ai foki mo ha 'uhinga lahi 'o e fu'u mamahi lahi 'i he kau Leimaná; he vakai, na'e tokolahi 'enau fānau 'a ia na'e tupu hake 'o nau faka'au ke lahi honau ta'ú, 'o nau fai 'enau fakakaukau 'anautolu pē, pea na'e tohoaki 'i atu 'a kinautolu 'e he ní'ihí na'e 'o e kau Sōlamí, 'aki 'enau ngaahi loí mo 'enau ngaahi lea fakaheheheké, ke nau kau ki he kau kaiha 'a ko ia 'a Katianetoní.

And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.

But it came to pass that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; yea, that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults.

And thus the ninety and second year did pass away, bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass, according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets.

And it came to pass that the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadianton robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them; therefore they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among the people.

And it came to pass that in the ninety and fourth year they began to increase in a great degree, because there were many dissenters of the Nephites who did flee unto them, which did cause much sorrow unto those Nephites who did remain in the land.

And there was also a cause of much sorrow among the Lamanites; for behold, they had many children who did grow up and began to wax strong in years, that they became for themselves, and were led away by some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and their flattering words, to join those Gadianton robbers.

30 Pea na'e pehē hono fakamamahi'i foki 'o e kau
Leimaná, pea na'e faka'au ke nau faka'au'au hifo 'i
he'enau tuí mo 'enau mā'oni'oni, ko e tupu 'i he fai
angahala 'a e to'u tangata tupu haké.

And thus were the Lamanites afflicted also, and be-
gan to decrease as to their faith and righteousness, be-
cause of the wickedness of the rising generation.

3 Nīfai 2

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'osi pehē atu mo hono hivanogofulu mā nima 'o e ta'ú foki, pea na'e kamata ke ngalo 'i he kakaí 'a e ngaahi faka'ilongá mo e ngaahi me'a fakaofó 'a ia kuo nau fanongo ki aí, pea na'e faka'au ke sí'isí'i 'enau ofo 'i ha faka'ilonga pe ha me'a fakaofó mei he langí, 'o tupu ai 'a e kamata ke fefeka 'a honau lotó, pea fakakuihi 'a honau 'atamaí, pea na'a nau kamata ke ta'etui ki he me'a kotoa pē kuo nau fanongo mo mamata ki aí—
- 2 'O nau fakakaukau ki ha ngaahi me'a laulaunoa 'i honau lotó, 'o pehē kuo fai ia 'e he kau tangata pea 'i he mālohi 'o e tēvoló, ke tohoaki'i atu mo kākaa'i 'a e lotó 'o e kakaí, pea na'e pehē 'a e toe ma'u 'e Sētane 'a e lotó 'o e kakaí, 'o ne fakakuihi ai honau matá mo ne kākaa'i 'a kinautolu ke nau tui ko e me'a launoa mo ta'e'aonga 'a e tokāteline 'o Kalaisí.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e faka'au 'o mālohi 'a e kakaí 'i he fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá; pea na'e 'ikai te nau tui 'e toe 'i ai ha ngaahi faka'ilonga pe ngaahi me'a fakaofó 'e fakahā mai; pea na'e 'alu fano 'a Sētane, 'o kākaa'i 'a e lotó 'o e kakaí, 'o 'ahi'ahi'i 'a kinautolu mo fakatupu 'enau fai 'a e fu'u fai angahala lahi 'i he fonuá.
- 4 Pea na'e 'osi pehē atu hono hivanogofulu mā ono 'o e ta'ú; pea pehē foki mo hono hivanogofulu mā fitu 'o e ta'ú; pea mo hono hivanogofulu mā valu 'o e ta'ú foki; pea mo hono hivanogofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'ú foki.
- 5 Pea kuo 'osi atu foki 'a e ta'u 'e teau mei he ngaahi 'aho 'o Mōsaiá, 'a ia na'á ne tu'i ki he kakai 'o e kau Nīfai.
- 6 Pea kuo 'osi 'a e ta'u 'e onongeau mā hiva talu mei he 'alu atu 'a Līhai mei Selūsalemá.
- 7 Pea kuo 'osi 'a e ta'u 'e hiva talu mei he taimi 'a ia na'e fakahā mai ai 'a e faka'ilonga, 'a ia na'e lea 'aki 'e he kau palōfitá, 'e hā'ele mai ai 'a Kalaisi ki he māmaní.
- 8 Ko 'eni na'e kamata 'e he kau Nīfai ke lau honau taimí mei he kuonga 'a ia na'e fakahā mai ai 'a e faka'ilongá, pe mei he hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí; ko ia, kuo 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e hiva.
- 9 Pea ko Nīfai, 'a ia ko e tamai 'a Nīfai, 'a ia na'á ne tauhi 'a e ngaahi lekōtí, na'e 'ikai ke toe foki mai ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá, pea na'e 'ikai fa'a 'ilo'i ia 'i ha potu 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá.

3 Nephi 2

And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also, and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen—

Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people; and thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

And it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given; and Satan did go about, leading away the hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land.

And thus did pass away the ninety and sixth year; and also the ninety and seventh year; and also the ninety and eighth year; and also the ninety and ninth year;

And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah, who was king over the people of the Nephites.

And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.

And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ; therefore, nine years had passed away.

And Nephi, who was the father of Nephi, who had the charge of the records, did not return to the land of Zarahemla, and could nowhere be found in all the land.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kei nofo ai pē 'a e kakai 'i he fai angahalá, neongo hono lahi 'o e malanga mo e kikite na'e fekau ke fai 'iate kinautolú; pea na'e 'osi pehē foki mo hono hongofulu 'o e ta'ú; pea na'e pehē mo e 'osi atu foki 'a hono hongofulu mā taha 'o e ta'ú 'i he fai angahala.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono hongofulu mā tolu 'o e ta'ú na'e kamata 'a e ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi fakakikihi 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá; he kuo faka'au ke tokolahi 'aupito 'a e kau kaiha 'a Katianetoní, pea nau tāmata 'i 'a e tokolahi 'o e kakai, pea nau faka'auha 'a e ngaahi kolo lahi, pea fakamafola lahi 'a e maté mo e faka'auhá 'i he fonuá kotoa, ko ia na'e 'aonga ai ke to'o mahafu 'a e kakai kotoa pē, 'a e kau Nifái mo e kau Leimana fakatou'osi, 'o tau 'i 'a kinautolu.

12 Ko ia, ko e kau Leimana kotoa pē 'a ia kuo nau ului ki he 'Eikí, na'a nau fakataha mo honau kāinga, ko e kau Nifái, pea na'e fakamālohi 'i 'a kinautolu, koe'uhi ke malu 'i 'enau mo'uí mo honau kakai fefiné mo 'enau fānaú, ko ia na'a nau to'o mahafu ke tau 'i 'a e kau kaiha 'a Katianetoní, 'io, pea tauhi ma'u foki 'a 'enau ngaahi totonú mo e ngaahi faingamālie 'o honau siasí mo 'enau lotú, mo 'enau tau'atāina mo 'enau nofo ta'eha'isiá.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he te'eki ai 'osi atu 'a e ta'u hono hongofulu mā tolu ko iá kuo tu'unuku mai ki he kau Nifái ha faka'auha faka'aufuli koe'uhi ko e tau ko 'ení, 'a ia kuo faka'au 'o fu'u fakamanavahē 'aupito.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e kau Leimana ko ia na'e fakataha mo e kau Nifái na'e lau kinautolu mo e kau Nifái;

15 Pea na'e to'o meiate kinautolu 'a honau mala'ia, pea na'e liliu 'o hinehina honau kilí 'o hangē ko e kau Nifái;

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o fu'u faka'ofa'ofa 'a 'enau kau talavou mo honau ngaahi 'ofefiné, pea na'e lau fakataha 'a kinautolu mo e kau Nifái, pea na'e ui 'a kinautolu ko e kau Nifai. Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono hongofulu mā tolu 'o e ta'ú.

And it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them; and thus passed away the tenth year also; and the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity.

And it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.

Therefore, all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren, the Nephites, and were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadianton robbers, yea, and also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their church and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.

And it came to pass that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;

And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;

And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. And thus ended the thirteenth year.

- 17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he kamata'anga 'o hono hongofulu mā fā 'o e ta'ú, na'e hoko atu 'a e tau 'i he vaha'a 'o e kau kaiha'á mo e kau Nīfaí pea na'e faka'au 'o fu'u fakamanavahē 'aupito; ka neongo iá, na'e faka'au 'o ki'i mālohi ange 'a e kau Nīfaí 'i he kau kaiha'á, 'o a'u ki he'enau teke'i 'a kinautolu mei honau ngaahi fonuá ki he ngaahi mo'ungá pea ki honau ngaahi toitoi'angá.
- 18 Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono hongofulu mā fā 'o e ta'ú. Pea 'i hono hongofulu mā nima 'o e ta'ú na'a nau ha'u ai ke tau'i 'a e kakai 'o Nīfaí; pea koe'uhi ko e fai angahala 'a e kakai 'o Nīfaí, pea mo 'enau ngaahi fakakikihí mo e ngaahi feke'ike'i lahi, ko ia na'e ma'u 'e he kau kaiha'a Katianetoní ha ngaahi faingamālie lahi kiate kinautolu.
- 19 Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono hongofulu mā nima 'o e ta'ú, pea ko ia na'e mo'ua 'a e kakai 'i he ngaahi faingata'a lahi; pea na'e tu'unuku mai kiate kinautolu 'a e heletā 'o e faka'auhá, pea na'e ofi ai ke tā hifo 'aki 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko 'enau angahalá.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fourteenth year, the war between the robbers and the people of Nephi did continue and did become exceedingly sore; nevertheless, the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers, insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains and into their secret places.

And thus ended the fourteenth year. And in the fifteenth year they did come forth against the people of Nephi; and because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi, and their many contentions and dissensions, the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them.

And thus ended the fifteenth year, and thus were the people in a state of many afflictions; and the sword of destruction did hang over them, insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it, and this because of their iniquity.

3 Nīfai 3

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono hongofulu mā ono 'o e ta'u hili 'a e hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí, na'e ma'u ha tohi 'e Leikoneose, ko e kōvana 'o e fonuá, mei he taki mo e kōvana 'o e kautahá ni 'o e kau kaiha'á; pea ko e ngaahi lea 'eni na'e tohi aí, 'o pehē:
- 2 'E Leikoneose, ko e kōvana pule mo tāfataha 'o e fonuá, vakai, 'oku ou fai atu 'a e tohí ni kiate koe, pea 'oku ou fakahikihiki 'i lahi 'aupito koe koe'uhi ko ho'otu'u ma'ú, pea mo e tu'u ma'ú foki 'a ho kakaí 'i he tauhi ma'u 'a e me'a 'oku mou lau ko ho'omou totonu mo e tau'atāiná; 'io, 'oku mou tu'u mālohi, 'o hangē kuo pou pou 'i 'a kimoutolu 'e he nima 'o ha 'otua, 'i he malu 'i ho'omou tau'atāiná, mo ho'omou koloá, pea mo homou fonuá, pe ko e ngaahi me'a 'oku mou ui peheé.
- 3 Pea 'oku ou pehē ko e me'a pango kiate au, 'e Leikoneose ko e 'eiki lahi, 'oku pehē fau ho'o valé mo e fie me'á 'i he mahalo te mou fa'a matu'uaki 'a e kau tangata to'a tokolahi pehē 'a ia 'oku ou pule'í, 'a ia kuo nau tu'u 'i he taimi ko 'eni mo 'enau ngaahi mahafu taú, pea 'oku nau tatali mo e fu'u loto tokanga lahi ki he fekau—Mou o hifo ki he kau Nīfai, 'o faka'auha 'a kinautolu.
- 4 Pea ko au, 'i he'eku 'ilo'i honau loto-mālohí, he kuo fakamo'oni 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he mala'e 'o e taú, pea 'i he'eku 'ilo'i 'enau fehi'a ta'etuku kiate kimoutolu koe'uhi ko hono lahi 'o e ngaahi hala kuo mou fai kiate kinautolú, ko ia kapau te nau o hifo ke tau 'i 'a kimoutolu, te nau 'alu atu kiate kimoutolu 'i he faka'auha ke 'osi'osingamālie.
- 5 Ko ia kuó u fai atu ai 'a e tohí ni, peá u fakama'u ia 'aki hoku nima 'o'okú, koe'uhi ko 'eku tokanga ki ho'omou leleí, koe'uhi ko ho'omou fai mālohi 'i he me'a 'oku mou tui 'oku totonú, pea mo ho'omou loto-to'a 'i he mala'e 'o e taú.
- 6 Ko ia 'oku ou tohi atu ai kiate koe, mo kole ke mou tukuange ki hoku kakaí ni 'a homou ngaahi koló, mo homou ngaahi fonuá, mo ho'omou ngaahi me'a kotoa pē, kae 'oua na'a nau 'alu atu kiate kimoutolu 'aki 'a e heletā, pea tō ai 'a e faka'auhá kiate kimoutolu.

3 Nephi 3

And now it came to pass that in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ, Lachoneus, the governor of the land, received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers; and these were the words which were written, saying:

Lachoneus, most noble and chief governor of the land, behold, I write this epistle unto you, and do give unto you exceedingly great praise because of your firmness, and also the firmness of your people, in maintaining that which ye suppose to be your right and liberty; yea, ye do stand well, as if ye were supported by the hand of a god, in the defence of your liberty, and your property, and your country, or that which ye do call so.

And it seemeth a pity unto me, most noble Lachoneus, that ye should be so foolish and vain as to suppose that ye can stand against so many brave men who are at my command, who do now at this time stand in their arms, and do await with great anxiety for the word—Go down upon the Nephites and destroy them.

And I, knowing of their unconquerable spirit, having proved them in the field of battle, and knowing of their everlasting hatred towards you because of the many wrongs which ye have done unto them, therefore if they should come down against you they would visit you with utter destruction.

Therefore I have written this epistle, sealing it with mine own hand, feeling for your welfare, because of your firmness in that which ye believe to be right, and your noble spirit in the field of battle.

Therefore I write unto you, desiring that ye would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions, rather than that they should visit you with the sword and that destruction should come upon you.

7 Pe ko hono 'ai 'e tahá, ke mou tukulolo kiate kimautolu, pea kau fakataha mo kimautolu pea mou ako 'emau ngaahi ngāue fufuú, pea hoko ko homau kāinga koe'uhi ke mou tatau mo kimautolu—'o 'ikai ko 'emau kau pōpula, ka ko homau kāinga mo e kaungā 'inasi 'i he'emau ngaahi me'a kotoa pē.

8 Pea vakai, 'oku ou fakapapau kiate koe, kapau te mou fai 'eni, 'i he fuakava, 'e 'ikai faka'auha 'a kimoutolu; ka 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fai 'eni, 'oku ou fakapapau kiate koe 'i he fuakava, 'i he māhina ka hoko maí, te u fekau ki he'eku ngaahi kau tau ke nau 'alu atu 'o tau 'i 'a kimoutolu, pea he 'ikai te nau ta'ofi honau nimá, pea 'ikai te nau fakamo'ui ha taha, ka te nau tāmata 'i 'a kimoutolu, pea taa 'i 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e heletā kae 'oua ke mou 'auha 'o 'osi'osingamālie.

9 Pea vakai, ko au ko Kitianehai; pea ko e kōvana au 'o e kautaha fufuú ni 'a Katianetoní; 'a ia ko e kautaha mo hono ngaahi ngāue 'oku ou 'ilo' 'i 'oku lelei; pea na'e kamata ia mei he kuonga mu'á pea kuo tukufakaholo mai ia kiate kimautolu.

10 Pea 'oku ou fai 'a e tohí ni kiate koe, 'e Leikoneose, pea 'oku ou 'amanaki pē te ke tuku mai homou ngaahi fonuá mo ho'omou ngaahi koloá, ta'e-'i ai-ha lilingi 'o e toto, koe'uhí ke toe ma'u 'e hoku kakaí ni 'a 'enau ngaahi totonú mo e pule, 'a ia kuo nau tafoki meiate kimoutolu koe'uhi ko ho'omou fai angahala 'i hono ta'ofi meiate kinautolu 'a 'enau ngaahi totonu ki he pulé, pea ka 'ikai te mou fai 'eni, te u sāuni honau ngaohikovi'í. Ko au Kitianehai.

11 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ma'u 'e Leikoneose 'a e tohi ní na'á ne fu'u ofo 'aupito, koe'uhi ko e lotofefeka 'a Kitianehai 'o fekau ke tukuange ke ne ma'u 'a e fonua 'o e kau Nifái, pea mo e fakamanamana 'i foki 'o e kakaí mo e sāuni 'o e ngaahi kovi kuo fai ki ha ní'ihí na'e 'ikai fai ha kovi ki aí, tuku kehe pē 'a 'enau faikovi kiate kinautolu 'iate kinautolu pē 'i he tafoki ki he kau kaiha 'a fai angahala mo fakalielia ko iá.

Or in other words, yield yourselves up unto us, and unite with us and become acquainted with our secret works, and become our brethren that ye may be like unto us—not our slaves, but our brethren and partners of all our substance.

And behold, I swear unto you, if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed; but if ye will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until ye shall become extinct.

And behold, I am Giddianhi; and I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianton; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us.

And I write this epistle unto you, Lachoneus, and I hope that ye will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government, and except ye do this, I will avenge their wrongs. I am Giddianhi.

And now it came to pass when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers.

- 12 Ko 'eni vakai, ko e Leikoneose ko 'eni, 'a ia ko e kōvaná, ko ha tangata angatonu ia, pea na'e 'ikai fakamanavahee 'i ia 'e he ngaahi fekau mo e ngaahi fakamanamana 'a ha kaiha'a; ko ia na'e 'ikai te ne tokanga ki he tohi 'a Kitianehai, ko e kōvana 'o e kau kaiha'á, ka na'á ne fekau ke tangi 'a hono kakaí ki he 'Eikí ke ma'u ha ivi 'o ka hokosia 'a e taimi 'e ha'u ai 'a e kau kaiha'á ke tau'i 'a kinautolú.
- 13 'Io, na'á ne 'oatu ha fanongonongo ki he kakai kotoa pē, ke nau tñnaki fakataha honau kakai fefiné, mo 'enau fñnauú, mo 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí mo 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí mo 'enau ngaahi me'a kotoa pē ki ha potu pē taha, tuku kehe pē honau kelekelé.
- 14 Pea na'á ne fekau ke langa ha ngaahi 'ā kolo 'o takatakai 'iate kinautolu, pea ke fu'u fefeka 'aupito 'a hono mālohí. Peá ne fekau ke fokotu'u takatakai 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Nífaí pea mo e kau Leimaná fakatou'osi, pe ko kinautolu kotoa pē na'e lau fakataha mo e kau Nífaí, ke nau le'ohi 'a kinautolu, mo malu'i 'a kinautolu mei he kau kaiha'á 'i he 'aho mo e pō.
- 15 'Io, na'á ne pehē kiate kinautolu: Hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eikí, kapau 'e 'ikai te mou fakatomala mei ho'omou ngaahi angahala kotoa pē, pea tangi ki he 'Eikí, he 'ikai teitei fakahaofi 'a kimoutolu mei he nima 'o e kau kaiha'a ko ia 'a Katianetoní.
- 16 Pea na'e pehē fau hono ma'ongo'onga mo hono fakafofo 'o e ngaahi lea mo e ngaahi kikite 'a Leikoneosé ko ia na'a nau fakatupu 'a e ilifia 'i he kakai kotoa pē; pea na'a nau feinga 'aki honau tūkuingatá ke fai ki he ngaahi lea 'a Leikoneosé.
- 17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakanofa 'e Leikoneose 'a e kau 'eikitau pule ki he ngaahi kau tau kotoa pē 'a e kau Nífaí, ke nau angi 'a kinautolu 'i he taimi 'e ō mai ai 'a e kau kaiha'á mei he feitu'u maomaonganoá ke tau'i 'a kinautolú.
- 18 Ko 'eni na'e fakanofa 'a e 'eikitau lahi 'o e kau 'eikitau pule kotoa pē mo e pule mā'olunga ki he kau tau kotoa pē 'a e kau Nífaí, pea ko hono hingoá ko Kitikitonai.

Now behold, this Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber; therefore he did not hearken to the epistle of Giddianhi, the governor of the robbers, but he did cause that his people should cry unto the Lord for strength against the time that the robbers should come down against them.

Yea, he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.

And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.

Yea, he said unto them: As the Lord liveth, except ye repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, ye will in nowise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers.

And so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus.

And it came to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites, to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them.

Now the chiefest among all the chief captains and the great commander of all the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.

- 19 Ko 'eni ko e anga maheni 'o e kau Nifai kotoa pē ke fakanofa ko honau kau 'eikitau pulé, (tuku kehe pē 'i honau ngaahi 'aho 'o e fai angahalá) ha taha 'oku 'iate ia 'a e laumalie 'o e fakahaá pea mo e kikité foki; ko ia, ko e Kitikitonai ko 'eni ko ha palōfita lahi ia 'iate kinautolu, pea toe tu 'i fakamaau lahi foki.
- 20 Ko 'eni na'e pehē 'e he kakaí kia Kitikitonai: Lotu ki he 'Eikí, pea tuku ke tau ō hake ki he ngaahi mo'ungá pea ki he feitu'u maomaonganoá, koe' uhi ke tau 'ohofi 'a e kau kaiha'á pea faka'auha 'a kinautolu 'i honau ngaahi fonua 'onautolú.
- 21 Ka na'e pehē ange 'e Kitikitonai kiate kinautolu: 'Oku ta'ofi ia 'e he 'Eikí; he kapau te tau ō hake ke tau 'i 'a kinautolu 'e tuku 'a kitautolu 'e he 'Eikí ki honau nimá; ko ia te tau teuteu 'i 'a kitautolu 'i loto 'i hotau ngaahi fonuá, pea te tau tñaki fakataha 'etau ngaahi kau tau kotoa pē, pea 'e 'ikai ke tau ō ke tau 'i 'a kinautolu, ka te tau tatali kae 'oua ke nau ha'u ke tau 'i 'a kitautolu; ko ia hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eikí, kapau te tau fai 'eni, te ne tuku 'a kinautolu ki hotau nimá.
- 22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono hongofulu mā fitu 'o e ta'ú, 'i he konga fakamuimui 'o e ta'ú, kuo fanongonongo atu 'a e tu'utu'uni 'a Leikoneosé 'i hono kotoa 'o e funga 'o e fonuá, pea kuo nau 'ave 'enau fanga hōsí, mo 'enau ngaahi salioté, mo 'enau fanga pulu, mo 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí, mo 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí, mo 'enau ngaahi tenga 'i 'akaú mo 'enau ngaahi me'a kotoa pē, pea nau laka atu, 'a e ngaahi toko afe mo e ngaahi toko mano, kae 'oua kuo nau ō atu kotoa pē ki he potu kuo tu'utu'uni ke nau fakataha ki ai, ke malu 'i 'a kinautolu mei honau ngaahi filí.
- 23 Pea ko e fonua kuo tu'utu'uni ko e fonua ko Seilahemalá, mo e fonua 'i he vaha'á 'o e fonua 'o Seilahemalá mo e fonua ko Mahú, 'io, 'o a'u atu ki he ngata'anga fonua 'i he vaha'á 'o e fonua ko Mahú mo e fonua ko 'Auhá.
- 24 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e kakai 'e toko lau afe lahi 'a ia na'e ui ko e kau Nifai, 'a ia na'a nau fakataha ki he fonuá ni. Pea na'e fekau 'e Leikoneose ke nau fakataha mai ki he fonua 'i he fakatongá, koe' uhi ko e fu'u mala'ia 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú.

Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.

Now the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.

But Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid; for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands; therefore we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we will gather all our armies together, and we will not go against them, but we will wait till they shall come against us; therefore as the Lord liveth, if we do this he will deliver them into our hands.

And it came to pass in the seventeenth year, in the latter end of the year, the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the face of the land, and they had taken their horses, and their chariots, and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain, and all their substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens of thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to defend themselves against their enemies.

And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla, and the land which was between the land Zarahemla and the land Bountiful, yea, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land Desolation.

And there were a great many thousand people who were called Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land. Now Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the land northward.

25 Pea na'a nau teuteu'i ai 'a kinautolu ke tau mo honau ngaahi filí; pea na'a nau nofo 'i he fonua pē taha, pea 'i he feitu'u pē taha, pea na'a nau manavahē ki he ngaahi lea kuo lea 'aki 'e Leikoneosé, 'o a'u ki he'enu fakatomala mei he'enu ngaahi angahala kotoa pē; pea nau fai 'enu ngaahi lotu ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, ke ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolu 'i he taimi 'e ha'u ai honau ngaahi filí ke tau'i 'a kinautolú.

26 Pea na'a nau fu'u loto-mamahi 'aupito koe'uhi ko honau ngaahi filí. Pea na'e fekau 'e Kitikitonai ke nau ngaohi 'a e ngaahi mahafu tau 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē, pea ke nau mālohi 'i honau teunga taú mo e ngaahi paá, mo e ngaahi pā fuopotopotó, 'o hangē ko e anga 'o 'ene tu'utu'uní.

And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did dwell in one land, and in one body, and they did fear the words which had been spoken by Lachoneus, insomuch that they did repent of all their sins; and they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God, that he would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle.

And they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies. And Gidgiddoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of every kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.

3 Nīfai 4

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he kongā fakamuimui 'o hono hongofulu mā valu 'o e ta'ū kuo teuteu 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau kaiha'a ko iá ke tau, 'o nau kamata ke 'alu hifo 'o fe'ohofi atu mei he ngaahi tafungofungá, mo e ngaahi mo'ungá, pea mo e feitu'u maomaonganoá, mo honau ngaahi kolotaú, mo honau ngaahi toitoi'angá, 'o nau kamata ke puke 'a e ngaahi fonuá, 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua 'i he tongá mo e fonua 'i he tokelaú fakatou'osi, 'o nau kamata ke puke 'a e ngaahi fonua kotoa pē kuo lí'aki 'e he kau Nīfai, mo e ngaahi kolo kuo lí'aki ke lalá.
- 2 Kae vakai, na'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha fanga manu fekai pe fanga manu kaivao 'i he ngaahi fonua 'a ia kuo lí'aki 'e he kau Nīfai, pea na'e 'ikai ha fanga manu kaivao mā'á e kau kaiha'a ka 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá pē.
- 3 Pea na'e 'ikai fá'a mo'ui 'a e kau kaiha'a ka 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá pē, koe'uhi ko e masiva me'akai; he kuo lí'aki 'e he kau Nīfai 'a honau ngaahi fonuá ke lala, pea kuo nau tānaki 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí mo 'enau ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí mo 'enau ngaahi me'a kotoa, pea kuo nau 'i he feitu'u pē taha.
- 4 Ko ia, na'e 'ikai ha faingamālie 'o e kau kaiha'a ke nau vete mo mā'u ha me'akai, kā 'i he 'alu hake pē ke tau mo e kau Nīfai; pea ko e me'a 'i he nofo fakataha 'a e kau Nīfai, pea mo honau fu'u tokolahí, pea 'i he'enu tokonaki mā'anautolu 'a e ngaahi me'akai mo e nāunaú, mo e fanga hoosi mo e fanga pulu, mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki 'o e fá'ahinga kotoa pē, ke nau mo'ui ai 'o fe'unga mo e ta'ū 'e fitu, 'a ia ko e taimi na'a nau 'amanaki ke faka'auha ai 'a e kau kaiha'a mei he funga 'o e fonuá; pea na'e 'osi pehē 'a hono hongofulu mā valu 'o e ta'ū.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono hongofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'ū na'e 'ilo'i 'e Kitianehai kuo pau ke ne 'alu hake ke tau mo e kau Nīfai, he na'e 'ikai ha founa ke nau mā'u ai ha'anau mo'ui ka 'i he vete mo e kaiha'a mo e fakapō.
- 6 Pea na'e 'ikai fie movetevete holo 'i he funga 'o e fonuá koe'uhi ke nau lava 'o ngoue 'i ha tenga 'i 'akau, telia na'a 'ohofi 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Nīfai 'o tāmāte'i 'a kinautolu; ko ia na'e fekau 'e Kitianehai ki he'ene ngaahi kau taú 'oku totonu ke nau 'alu atu 'i he ta'u ko iá ke tau mo e kau Nīfai.

3 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those armies of robbers had prepared for battle, and began to come down and to sally forth from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places, and began to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and which were in the land north, and began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which had been left desolate.

But behold, there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness.

And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.

Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land; and thus the eighteenth year did pass away.

And it came to pass that in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the Nephites, for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder and rob and murder.

And they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land insomuch that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites.

7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau ō mai ke tau; pea na'e fai 'eni 'i he māhina hono onó; pea vakai, na'e lahi mo fakamanavahē 'a e 'aho na'a nau ō hake ai ke tau; pea kuo nau teunga 'o hangē ko e anga 'o e kau kaiha'á; pea na'a nau nono 'o honau kongalotó 'aki 'a e kilí 'i lami, pea kuo nau vali 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e toto, pea kuo tekefua honau 'ulú, pea kuo 'i honau 'ulú 'a e ngaahi tatā tau; pea na'e lahi mo fakailifia 'a e anga 'o e fōtungā 'o e kau tau 'a Kitianeai, koe'uhi ko honau teunga tau pea koe'uhi kuo nau vali 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e totó.

8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Nīfai, 'i he'enau mamata ki he hā mai 'a e kau tau 'a Kitianeai, na'a nau tō kotoa ki he kekelelé, pea nau hiki hake 'enau tangi ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, ke ne fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu mo fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nima 'o honau ngaahi filí.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he mamata 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a Kitianeai ki ai na'a nau kamata ke kaila 'aki 'a e le'olahi, koe'uhi ko 'enau fiefiá, he na'a nau mahalo kuo tō 'a e kau Nīfai 'i he ilifia koe'uhi ko e fakailifia 'o 'enau ngaahi kau tau.

10 Ka na'e tō noa 'enau 'amanaki 'i he me'á ni, he na'e 'ikai ke manavahē 'a e kau Nīfai kiate kinautolu; ka na'a nau manavahē ki honau 'Otuá 'o nau lotu kiate ia ke ma'u ha malu'i; ko ia, 'i he fe'ohofi mai 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a Kitianeai kiate kinautolú na'a nau mateuteu ke fepaki mo kinautolu; 'io, na'a nau tali 'a kinautolu 'i he māfimafi 'o e 'Eiki.

11 Pea na'e kamata 'a e tau 'i he māhina ko 'eni hono onó, pea na'e lahi mo fakamanavahē 'a e tau ko iá, 'io, na'e lahi mo fakamanavahē 'a e tāmata ai, pea na'e pehē fau hono lahi kuo te'eki ai ke 'iloa ha fu'u tāmata lahi pehē 'i he kakai kotoa 'o Līhai talu 'ene 'alu mei Selūsalemá.

12 Pea neongo 'a e ngaahi lea fakamanamana mo e ngaahi fuakava kuo fai 'e Kitianeai, vakai, na'e ikuna 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Nīfai, 'o a'u ki he'enau holomui meiate kinautolu.

And it came to pass that they did come up to battle; and it was in the sixth month; and behold, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them; and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi, because of their armor, and because of their being dyed in blood.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice, because of their joy, for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies.

But in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not fear them; but they did fear their God and did supplicate him for protection; therefore, when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them; yea, in the strength of the Lord they did receive them.

And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, yea, great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.

And notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them, insomuch that they did fall back from before them.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'e Kitikitonai ki he'ene kau taú ke nau tuli 'a kinautolu 'o a'u ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e feitu'u maomaonganoá, pea ke 'oua na'a nau fakamo'ui ha taha 'e tō ki honau nimá 'i he halá; pea ko ia na'a nau tuli 'a kinautolu mo tāmata'e 'a kinautolu, 'o a'u ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e feitu'u maomaonganoá, kae 'oua kuo nau fakahoko 'a e tu'utu'uni 'a Kitikitonai.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko Kitianehai, 'a ia na'á ne tu'u 'o tau 'i he loto-to'á, na'e tuli ia 'i he'ene holá; pea ko e me'a 'i he'ene hela'ia 'i hono lahi 'o 'ene taú na'e ma'ua ia pea tāmata'e. Pea na'e pehē 'a e iku'anga 'o Kitianehai ko e kaiha'á.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe liu mai 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Nīfaí ki honau feitu'u malu'í. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'osi hono hongofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'u ko iá, pea na'e 'ikai toe ha'u 'a e kau kaiha'á ke tau; pea na'e 'ikai foki te nau toe ha'u 'i hono uofulu 'o e ta'ú.

16 Pea 'i hono uofulu mā taha 'o e ta'ú na'e 'ikai te nau ha'u ke tau, ka na'a nau ha'u ki he ngaahi ngata'anga fonuá kotoa ke 'ákoloi 'a e kakai 'o Nīfaí; he na'a nau mahalo kapau te nau lava 'o motuhi atu 'a e kakai 'o Nīfaí mei honau ngaahi fonuá, pea kāpui 'a kinautolu 'i he feitu'u kotoa pē, pea kapau te nau motuhi atu 'a kinautolu mei honau ngaahi faingamālie mei tu'á, te nau lava leva ke ngaohi 'a kinautolu ke tukulolo 'o fakatatau ki he'enua ngaahi fakakaukaú.

17 Ko 'eni kuo nau fili kiate kinautolu ha taki 'e taha, ko hono hingoá ko Semenilaihā; ko ia ko e Semenilaihā ia na'á ne fekau ke fai 'a e 'ákoloi 'i ni.

18 Kae vakai, ko ha faingamālie 'eni ia ki he kau Nīfaí; he na'e 'ikai lava 'e he kau kaiha'á 'o 'ákoloi 'o fuoloa fe'unga ke faingata'a'ia ai 'a e kau Nīfaí, koe'uhi ko hono lahi 'o 'enua me'akai kuo nau tokonakí.

19 Ko e me'a 'i he si'i 'o e me'akai 'a e kau kaiha'á; he vakai, na'e 'ikai te nau ma'u ha me'a ka ko e kakano'i manu pē ke nau mo'ui ai, 'a ia ko e kakano'i manu na'a nau ma'u 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá;

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e faka'au ke si'i 'a e fanga manu kaivao 'i he feitu'u maomaonganoá ko ia na'e ofi ke mate 'a e kau kaiha'á 'i he fiekaia.

And it came to pass that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way; and thus they did pursue them and did slay them, to the borders of the wilderness, even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni.

And it came to pass that Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain. And thus was the end of Giddianhi the robber.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security. And it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away, and the robbers did not come again to battle; neither did they come again in the twentieth year.

And in the twenty and first year they did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi; for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should hem them in on every side, and if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.

Now they had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnarihah; therefore it was Zemnarihah that did cause that this siege should take place.

But behold, this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,

And because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers; for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;

And it came to pass that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger.

21 Pea na'e toutou laka atu 'a e kau Nīfai 'i he 'aho mo e pō, 'o nau 'ohofi 'enau ngaahi konga taú, 'o tāmata'e i honau ngaahi toko afe mo e ngaahi toko mano.

22 Pea ko ia na'e hoko ko e faka'amu 'a e kakai 'o Semenilaihaá ke tuku 'enau fakakaukaú, koe'uhi ko e fu'u faka'auha 'a ia kuo hoko kiate kinautolu 'i he pō mo e 'aho.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'e Semenilaihā ki hono kakai ke nau tuku 'a e 'ākolo'í, pea nau laka atu ki he ngaahi potu mama'o taha 'o e fonua 'i he fakatokelaú.

24 Pea ko 'eni, 'i he mahino kia Kitikitonai 'a 'enau fakakaukaú, pea 'i he'ene 'ilo'í 'enau vaivai koe'uhi ko e ta'ema'u ha me'akaí, pea mo e fu'u tāmata lahi kuo fai kiate kinautolu, ko ia na'á ne fekau atu 'ene kau taú 'i he po'ulí, 'o ne tāpuni 'a e hala na'a nau hola aí, pea ne fokotu'u 'ene kau taú 'i he hala na'a nau hola aí.

25 Pea na'a nau fai 'eni 'i he po'ulí, 'o nau laka atu ai 'o fakalaka 'i he kau kaiha'á, ko ia 'i he 'aho na'e hokó, na'e fetaulaki mo kinautolu 'a e kau tau 'a e kau Nīfai mei mu'a 'iate kinautolu pea mei mui 'iate kinautolu.

26 Pea na'e ta'ofi foki 'a e kau kaiha'a 'a ia na'e 'i he feitu'u tongá 'i he ngaahi feitu'u na'a nau holomui ki aí. Pea na'e fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē 'i he fekau 'a Kitikitonai.

27 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e toko lau afe 'a ia na'a nau tuku ke puke pōpula 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Nīfai, pea ko kinautolu na'e toé na'e tāmata'e 'i 'a kinautolu.

28 Pea na'e puke honau takí, ko Semenilaihā, 'o tautau 'i ha fu'u 'akau, 'io, 'i hono tumutumú kae 'oua kuó ne mate. Pea hili 'enau tautau ia kae 'oua kuó ne maté na'a nau tā hifo leva 'a e fu'u 'akau ki he kekelelé, 'o nau kaila 'aki 'a e le'o-lahi, 'o pehē:

29 'Ofa ke malu 'i 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono kakai 'i he angatonu pea 'i he loto-mā'oni'oni, koe'uhí ke nau lava 'o tā hifo ki he kekelelé 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'e feinga ke tāmata'e 'i 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko e mālohi mo e ngaahi kautaha fufū, 'o hangē ko e tangatá ni kuo tā hifo ki he kekelelé.

And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.

And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnarihah to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.

And it came to pass that Zemnarihah did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthermost parts of the land northward.

And now, Gidgiddoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat, and did place his armies in the way of their retreat.

And this did they do in the night-time, and got on their march beyond the robbers, so that on the morrow, when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.

And the robbers who were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat. And all these things were done by command of Gidgiddoni.

And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.

And their leader, Zemnarihah, was taken and hanged upon a tree, yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:

May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth.

- 30 Pea na'a nau fiefia mo toe kaila 'i he le' o pē taha, 'o pehē: 'Ofa ke hanga 'e he 'Otua 'o 'Ēpalahamé, mo e 'Otua 'o 'Aisaké, mo e 'Otua 'o Sēkopé, 'o malu 'i 'a e kakai ni 'i he mā'oni'oni, 'i he lolotonga 'enau kei ui ki he huafa 'o honau 'Otuá ke ma'u ha malu 'i.
- 31 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau kamata fakataha, 'o hangē ko e tokotaha, 'i he hiva, mo e fakafeta 'i ki honau 'Otuá koe'uhi ko e fu'u me'a lahi kuó ne fai ma'anautolú, 'i hono malu 'i 'a kinautolu ke 'oua te nau tō ki he nima 'o honau ngaahi filí.
- 32 'Io, na'a nau kaila: Hosana ki he 'Otua fungani mā'olungá. Pea nau kaila: Ke monū'ia 'a e huafa 'o e 'Eiki ko e 'Otua Māfima'í, ko e 'Otua Fungani Mā'olunga Tahá.
- 33 Pea na'e fonu 'a honau lotó 'i he fiefia, pea tō 'a e ngaahi lo'imata lahi, koe'uhi ko e fu'u angalelei lahi 'a e 'Otuá 'i hono fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nima 'o honau ngaahi filí; pea na'a nau 'ilo kuo tupu 'i he 'enau fakatoma'á mo 'enau loto-fakatōkilaló kuo fakahaofi ai 'a kinautolu mei he faka'auha ta'engata.

And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

And it came to pass that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

Yea, they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God. And they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God.

And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of many tears, because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; and they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction.

3 Nīfai 5

- 1 Pea ko 'eni vakai, na'e 'ikai ha tokotaha mo'ui 'i he kakai kotoa pē 'o e kau Nīfai 'a ia na'e momo'i ta'etui ki he ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni kotoa pē 'a ia kuo leá; he na'a nau 'ilo'i kuo pau ke fakahoko ia.
- 2 Pea na'a nau 'ilo'i kuo pau pē ke hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisi, koe'uhi ko e ngaahi faka'ilonga lahi kuo fakahā maí, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfitá; pea ko e me'a 'i he ngaahi me'a kuo 'osi hokó ko ia na'a nau 'ilo'i ai kuo pau ke hoko 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi me'a kuo lea'akí.
- 3 Ko ia na'a nau lí'aki 'enau ngaahi angahala kotoa pē, mo 'enau ngaahi anga-fakalieliá, mo 'enau ngaahi fe'auakí, pea na'a nau tauhi ki he 'Otuá 'i he faivelenga kakato 'i he 'aho mo e pō.
- 4 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'enau puke pōpula 'a e kau kaiha 'a kotoa pē, pea na'e 'ikai hao ha taha na'e 'ikai ke tāmátē'i, na'a nau fakahū 'enau kau pōpulá ki he fale fakapōpulá, 'o nau fekau ke malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá kiate kinautolu; pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē na'e fakatomala mei he 'enau ngaahi angahalá mo nau fai ha fuakava 'e 'ikai te nau toe fakapoó na'e tukuange 'a kinautolu ke tau'atāina.
- 5 Ka ko kinautolu kotoa pē na'e 'ikai ke nau fai ha fuakava, ka nau kei fakakaukau pē ki he ngaahi fakapō fufuú 'i honau lotó, 'io, 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'a ia na'e 'ilo'i 'oku nau fai ha ngaahi lea fakamanamana ki honau kāingá na'e fakamāu'i mo tautea 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki he laó.
- 6 Pea na'e pehē 'enau fakangata 'a e ngaahi kautaha kovi, mo fufū, mo fakalielia ko ia, 'a ia na'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi fai angahala lahi fau, mo e ngaahi fakapō lahi pehē fau na'a nau fai.
- 7 Pea na'e 'osi pehē atu hono uofulu mā ua 'o e ta'ú, mo hono uofulu mā tolu 'o e ta'ú foki, pea mo hono uofulu mā faá, mo hono uofulu mā nimá; pea na'e 'osi pehē atu 'a e ta'u 'e uofulu mā nima.

3 Nephi 5

And now behold, there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken; for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled.

And they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets; and because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken.

Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

And now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

But as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, and who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts, yea, as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law.

And thus they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret, and abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.

And thus had the twenty and second year passed away, and the twenty and third year also, and the twenty and fourth, and the twenty and fifth; and thus had twenty and five years passed away.

8 Pea kuo hoko 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi, 'a ia na'e pehē 'i he fakakaukau 'a ha ni'ihī, 'e ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofu; ka neongo iá, 'oku 'ikai lava ke tohi ia hono kotoa 'i he tohi ni; 'io, 'oku 'ikai fa'a hao 'i he tohi ni hano vaheteau 'e taha 'o e ngaahi me'a na'e fai 'i he kakai tokolahi pehē fau 'i he vaha'a 'o e ta'u 'e uofulu mā nima;

9 Kae vakai 'oku 'i ai 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'oku tu'u ai 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'a ia na'e fai 'e he kakai ní; ka 'oku 'i ai ha fakamatala nounou ange ka 'oku totonu na'e fai 'e Nifai.

10 Ko ia kuó u hiki 'eku lekooti ki he ngaahi me'a ní 'o fakatatau ki he lekooti 'a Nifai, 'a ia na'e tongitongi ki he ngaahi peleti 'a ia na'e ui ko e ngaahi peleti 'a Nifai.

11 Pea vakai, 'oku ou hiki 'a e lekōtí 'i he ngaahi peleti 'a ia kuó u ngaohi 'aki hoku nima 'o'okú.

12 Pea vakai, 'oku ui au ko Molomona, ko e tauhingoa ki he fonua ko Molomoná, 'a e fonua 'a ia na'e fokotu'u ai 'e 'Alamā 'a e siasí 'i he kakaí, 'io, 'a e 'uluaki siasi 'a ia na'e fokotu'u 'iate kinautolu 'i he hili 'enau maumau-fonó.

13 Vakai, ko ha ākongā au 'a Sīsū Kalaisi, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá. Kuó ne ui au ke u malanga 'aki 'a 'ene folofolá 'i he lotolotonga 'o hono kakaí, koe'uhí ke nau ma'u 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá.

14 Pea kuo hoko 'o 'aonga kiate au ke u fai 'o fakatatau ki he finangalo 'o e 'Otuá, koe'uhí ke fakahoko 'a e ngaahi lotu 'a kinautolu 'a ia kuo fononga atú, 'a ia ko e kau mā'oni'oni, 'oku totonu ke fakahoko ia 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau tuí, ha lekooti 'o e ngaahi me'a ní 'a ia kuo fai—

15 'Io, ko ha fakamatala nounou ki he ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuo hoko talu mei he taimi na'e 'alu ai 'a Lihai mei Selūsalemá, 'o a'u mai ki he lolotonga ni.

16 Ko ia 'oku ou fa'u 'eku lekōtí mei he ngaahi fakamatala kuo fai 'e kinautolu na'e mo'ui 'i mu'a 'iate aú, 'o a'u mai ki he kamata'anga 'o hoku 'ahó;

17 Peá u toki fa'u ha lekooti ki he ngaahi me'a kuó u mamata ki ai 'aki hoku mata 'o'okú.

18 Pea 'oku ou 'ilo'i ko e lekooti 'oku ou fai ko e fakamatala totonu mo mo'oni ia; ka neongo iá 'oku 'i ai 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi, 'oku fakatatau ki he 'emau leá, 'oku 'ikai te mau fa'a lava 'o tohi.

19 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou faka'osi 'eku lea, 'a ia 'oku kau kiate aú, peá u hanga ke fai ha'aku fakamatala ki he ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuo hoko ki mu'a 'iate aú.

And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; yea, this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years;

But behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi.

Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraven on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi.

And behold, I do make the record on plates which I have made with mine own hands.

And behold, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the church among the people, yea, the first church which was established among them after their transgression.

Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life.

And it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayers of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done—

Yea, a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem, even down until the present time.

Therefore I do make my record from the accounts which have been given by those who were before me, until the commencement of my day;

And then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with mine own eyes.

And I know the record which I make to be a just and a true record; nevertheless there are many things which, according to our language, we are not able to write.

And now I make an end of my saying, which is of myself, and proceed to give my account of the things which have been before me.

20 Ko au Molomona, pea ko ha hako mo'oni au 'o Līhai. 'Oku 'i ai ha'aku 'uhinga ke u fakafeta'i ai ki hoku 'Otuá mo hoku Fakamo'ui ko Sīsū Kalaisí, koe'uhi ko 'ene 'omi 'emaui ngaahi tamaí mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, (pea ná'e 'ikai ha taha 'e 'ilo ki ai ka ko ia pē mo kinautolu ná'á ne 'omi mei he fonua ko íá) pea koe'uhi kuó ne foaki mai kiate au mo hoku kakaí 'a e fu'u 'ilo lahi fau ke fakamo'ui ai homau laumālié.

21 Ko e mo'oni kuó ne tāpuaki'i 'a e fale 'o Sēkopé, pea kuó ne 'alo'ofa ki he hako 'o Siosefá.

22 Pea ná'e fakatatau ki hono tauhi 'e he fānau 'a Līhai 'ene ngaahi fekau' 'a 'ene tāpuaki'i mo fakamonū'ia 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki he'ene folofolá.

23 'Io, pea ko e mo'oni te ne toe 'omi ha toenga 'o e hako 'o Siosefá ki he 'ilo 'o e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá.

24 Pea ko e mo'oni hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eiki, 'e pehē 'ene tānaki mai mei he vahe 'e fā 'o e māmaní 'a e toenga kotoa 'o e hako 'o Sēkopé, 'a ia kuo fakamovetevete holo 'i he funga kotoa 'o e māmaní.

25 Pea hangē ko 'ene fuakava mo e fale kotoa 'o Sēkopé, 'e pehē foki hono fakahoko 'o e fuakava 'a ia kuó ne fai mo e fale 'o Sēkopé 'i he taimi kuó ne finangalo ki ai, pea fakafoki ai 'a e fale kotoa 'o Sēkopé ki he 'ilo 'o e fuakava kuó ne fai mo kinautolú.

26 Pea te nau toki 'ilo' i honau Huhu'i, 'a ia ko Sīsū Kalaisi, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá; pea 'e toki tānaki mai 'a kinautolu mei he ngaahi vahe 'e fā 'o e māmaní ki honau ngaahi fonua 'onautolú, 'a ia kuo fakamovetevete 'a kinautolu mei aí; 'io, hangē 'oku mo'ui 'a e 'Eiki 'e pehē 'ene hokó. 'Ēmeni.

I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, (and no one knew it save it were himself and those whom he brought out of that land) and that he hath given me and my people so much knowledge unto the salvation of our souls.

Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph.

And insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept his commandments he hath blessed them and prospered them according to his word.

Yea, and surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their God.

And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.

And as he hath covenanted with all the house of Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his own due time, unto the restoring all the house of Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them.

And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be gathered in from the four quarters of the earth unto their own lands, from whence they have been dispersed; yea, as the Lord liveth so shall it be. Amen.

3 Nīfai 6

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e foki 'a e kakai 'o e kau Nīfai kotoa pē ki honau ngaahi fonua 'onautolú 'i hono uofulu mā ono 'o e ta'ú, ko e tangata taki taha, mo hono fāmili, mo 'ene ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí, 'a 'ene fanga hōsí mo 'ene fanga pulú, pea mo e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē na'e 'a'aná.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo 'ikai te nau kai 'o 'osi kotoa 'enau ngaahi me'akai; ko ia na'a nau 'ave mo kinautolu 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'a ia kuo 'ikai te nau kai, 'a 'enau ngaahi tenga 'i 'akau 'o e fa'ahinga kotoa pē, mo 'enau koulá, mo 'enau silivá, mo 'enau ngaahi me'a mahu'inga kotoa pē, pea nau foki ki honau ngaahi fonua 'onautolú mo honau ngaahi tofi'a, 'i he tokelaú pea mo e tongá fakatou'osi, 'i he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú pea mo e fonua 'i he fakatongá fakatou'osi.
- 3 Pea na'a nau tuku 'a e ngaahi konga fonua ki he kau kaiha'a ko ia kuo nau fai ha fuakava ke tauhi 'a e melino 'i he fonuá, 'a ia na'a nau fie hoko atu ko e kau Leimaná, 'o fakatatau mo honau tokolahí, koe'uhi ke nau ma'u, 'i he'enau ngaahi ngāué, ha me'a ke mo'ui'aki; pea ko ia na'a nau fokotu'u ai 'a e melinó 'i he fonuá hono kotoa.
- 4 Pea na'a nau toe kamata ke tu'umālie pea tupulaki 'o mālohi; pea na'e 'osi atu hono uofulu mā ono mo hono uofulu mā fitu 'o e ta'ú, pea na'e 'i ai 'a e fu'u maa lahi 'i he fonuá; pea kuo nau fokotu'u 'enau ngaahi lao 'o fakatatau ki he ta'e-filifilimānakó mo e faitotonú.
- 5 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'ikai ha me'a 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá ke ta'ofi 'a e kakai mei he'enau tu'umālie ma'u ai pē, tuku kehe pē ha'anau tō ki he maumau-fonó.
- 6 Pea ko 'eni ko Kitikitonai, mo e fakamaau, ko Leikoneosé, pea mo e fa'ahinga kuo fakanofu ko honau kau takí, na'a nau fokotu'u 'a e fu'u melino lahi ko 'eni 'i he fonuá.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e lahi 'a e ngaahi kolo 'a ia na'e langa fo'ou, pea na'e lahi 'a e ngaahi kolo motu'a 'a ia na'e toe fakalelei'i.
- 8 Pea na'e lahi 'a e ngaahi hala lalahi na'e tanu, pea lahi mo e ngaahi hala 'a ia na'e ngaohi, 'a ia na'e 'alu mei he kolo ki he kolo, pea mei he fonua ki he fonua, pea mei he feitu'u ki he feitu'u.

3 Nephi 6

And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year, every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them.

And it came to pass that they had not eaten up all their provisions; therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south, both on the land northward and on the land southward.

And they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land, who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers, that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon; and thus they did establish peace in all the land.

And they began again to prosper and to wax great; and the twenty and sixth and seventh years passed away, and there was great order in the land; and they had formed their laws according to equity and justice.

And now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.

And now it was Gidgiddoni, and the judge, Lachoneus, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.

And it came to pass that there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.

And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.

9 Pea na'e 'osi pehē atu hono uofulu mā valu 'o e ta'ú, pea na'e ma'u 'e he kakai 'a e melino ma'u ai pē.

10 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono uofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'ú na'e kamata ke tupu ha ngaahi fakakikihi 'e ni'ihī 'i he kakai; pea na'e 'i ai 'a e ni'ihī na'e fielahi 'i he loto-hīkisia lahi mo e ngaahi pōlepole koe'uhi ko 'enau fu'u ma'u koloa lahi 'aupitō, 'io, 'o a'u ki he ngaahi fu'u fakatanga lahi;

11 He na'e 'i ai 'a e kau fefakatau'aki koloa tokolahi 'i he fonuá, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e kau taukapo tokolahi, mo e kau 'ōfisa tokolahi.

12 Pea na'e kamata 'a e kakai ke vahevahe fakatu'unga, 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau ngaahi koloá mo honau ngaahi faingamālie ke akó; 'io, na'e 'i ai 'a e ni'ihī na'e ta'e'ilo, koe'uhi ko 'enau masivá, pea na'e ma'u 'e he ni'ihī 'a e fu'u poto lahi koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi koloá.

13 Na'e fielahi 'a e ni'ihī 'i he loto-hīkisiá, pea na'e fu'u loto-fakatōkilalo 'aupitō 'a e ni'ihī; na'e fetongi 'e he ni'ihī 'a e lau'ikovi 'aki 'a e lau'ikovi, kae tali 'e he ni'ihī 'a e lau'ikovi mo e fakatangá pea mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga fakamamahi kotoa pē, pea 'ikai ke nau tafoki 'o toe lea kovi ange, ka na'a nau loto-fakatōkilalo mo loto-fakatomala 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá.

14 Pea ko ia na'e tupu 'a e fu'u tu'unga kehekehe lahi 'i he fonuá hono kotoa, ko ia na'e kamata ke movetevete 'a e siasí; 'io, ko ia na'e a'u ki hono tolungofulu 'o e ta'ú kuo movetevete 'a e siasí 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá, tuku kehe pē 'i he ni'ihī tokosi 'i 'o e kau Leimaná 'a ia kuo ului ki he tui mo'oní; pea na'e 'ikai te nau fie tafoki mei ai, he na'a nau fai mālohi, mo tu'u ma'u, mo tu'u 'ali'aliaki, 'o loto-fiemālie ke faivelenga kakato ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi fekau 'a e 'Eikí.

15 Ko 'eni ko e tupu'anga 'eni 'o e angahalá ni 'i he kakai—kuo ma'u 'e Sētane 'a e fu'u mālohi lahi ke ue'i hake 'a e kakai ke nau fai 'a e fa'ahinga angahala kotoa pē, pea mo hono fakafonu 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e loto-hīkisiá, 'o 'ahi'ahi 'i 'a kinautolu ke kumi ki he mālohi, mo e mafai, mo e ngaahi koloa, pea mo e ngaahi me'a ta'e'aonga 'o e māmaní.

16 Pea na'e pehē hono tohoaki 'i atu 'e Sētane 'a e loto 'o e kakai ke nau fai 'a e fa'ahinga angahala kotoa pē; ko ia na'a nau fiefia 'i he melinó 'i ha ngaahi ta'u si'i pē.

And thus passed away the twenty and eighth year, and the people had continual peace.

But it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people; and some were lifted up unto pride and boastings because of their exceedingly great riches, yea, even unto great persecutions;

For there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.

And the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning; yea, some were ignorant because of their poverty, and others did receive great learning because of their riches.

Some were lifted up in pride, and others were exceedingly humble; some did return railing for railing, while others would receive railing and persecution and all manner of afflictions, and would not turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent before God.

And thus there became a great inequality in all the land, insomuch that the church began to be broken up; yea, insomuch that in the thirtieth year the church was broken up in all the land save it were among a few of the Lamanites who were converted unto the true faith; and they would not depart from it, for they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord.

Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was this—Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world.

And thus Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity; therefore they had enjoyed peace but a few years.

- 17 Pea ko ia, 'i he kamata'anga hono tolungofulu 'o e ta'ú—kuo li'aki 'a e kakaí 'i ha taimi fuoloa ke feliliaki holo 'e he ngaahi 'ahi'ahi 'a e tēvoló ki ha feitu'u pē na'á ne fie 'ave 'a kinautolu ki aí, pea ke fai 'a e fa'ahinga angahala kotoa pē 'okú ne loto ke nau fai—ko ia 'i he kamata 'o e ta'u ní, 'a ia ko hono tolungofulu 'o e ta'ú, kuo nau 'i ha tu'unga fakamamahi 'o e fai angahalá.
- 18 Ko 'eni na'e 'ikai te nau fai angahala ta'e'ilo, he na'a nau 'ilo'í 'a e finangalo 'o e 'Otuá 'o kau kiate kinautolú, he kuo ako 'i ia kiate kinautolu; ko ia na'a nau angatu'u ta'e-fakakouna 'i ai ki he 'Otuá.
- 19 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'eni 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o Leikoneose, ko e foha 'o Leikoneosé, he na'e ma'u 'e Leikoneose 'a e lakanga 'o 'ene tamaí 'o ne pule'í 'a e kakaí 'i he ta'u pē ko íá.
- 20 Pea na'e kamata ke 'i ai 'a e kau tangata kuo ue'i fakalaumālie mei langi mo fekau 'i atu, 'o nau tu'u 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kakaí 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá, 'o malanga mo fakamo'oni ta'e-manavahē ki he ngaahi angahala mo e ngaahi hia 'a e kakaí, pea nau fakamo'oni kiate kinautolu ki he huhu'í 'e fai 'e he 'Eikí ma'a hono kakaí, pe ko hono 'ai 'e tahá, ko e toetu'u 'a Kalaisí; pea na'a nau fakamo'oni ta'e-manavahē ki he'ene pekiá mo e ngaahi mamahí.
- 21 Ko 'eni na'e 'i ai foki 'a e tokolahi 'o e kakaí na'e fu'u 'ita lahi koe'uhi ko kinautolu 'a ia na'e fakamo'oni ki he ngaahi me'a ní; pea ko kinautolu 'a ia na'e 'itá na'e lahi ki he kau tu'í fakamaau lahi, mo kinautolu na'a nau hoko ko e kau taula'eiki lahi mo e kau taukapó; 'io, ko kinautolu kotoa pē ko e kau taukapó na'a nau 'ita kiate kinautolu 'a ia na'e fakamo'oni ki he ngaahi me'a ní.
- 22 Ko 'eni na'e 'ikai ha taukapo pe ha fakamaau pe ha taula'eiki lahi 'a ia na'e ma'u 'a e mālohi ke tu'utu'uni ha taha ke tāmata'e'í kae ngata pē 'i he fakamo'oni ki he tu'utu'uni ki honau tāmata'e'í 'a e kōvana 'o e fonuá.
- 23 Ko 'eni na'e 'i ai ha tokolahi 'o kinautolu 'a ia na'e fakamo'oni ki he ngaahi me'a 'a ia 'oku kau kia Kalaisí, na'a nau fakamo'oni ta'e-manavahē, pea na'e puke mo tāmata'e'í fakafufū 'e he kau fakamāú, pea na'e 'ikai 'ilo ki he'enau maté 'a e kōvana 'o e fonuá kae 'oua kuo hili 'enau maté.

And thus, in the commencement of the thirtieth year—the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil whithersoever he desired to carry them, and to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should—and thus in the commencement of this, the thirtieth year, they were in a state of awful wickedness.

Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God.

And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father and did govern the people that year.

And there began to be men inspired from heaven and sent forth, standing among the people in all the land, preaching and testifying boldly of the sins and iniquities of the people, and testifying unto them concerning the redemption which the Lord would make for his people, or in other words, the resurrection of Christ; and they did testify boldly of his death and sufferings.

Now there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry because of those who testified of these things; and those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges, and they who had been high priests and lawyers; yea, all those who were lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things.

Now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.

Now there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges, that the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.

- 24 Ko 'eni vakai, na'e 'ikai hoa 'eni mo e ngaahi lao 'o e fonuá, ke 'i ai ha tangata 'e tāmāte'i tuku kehe pē 'i he'enua mā'u 'a e mafai mei he kōvana 'o e fonuá—
- 25 Ko ia na'e 'omi ha lāunga ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá ki he kōvana 'o e fonuá, 'o talatalaaki 'i 'a e kau fakamaau ko ia 'a ia kuo nau tu'utu'uni ke tāmāte'i 'a e kau palōfita 'a e 'Eikí, kae 'ikai fakatatau ki he laó.
- 26 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e puke 'a kinautolu 'o 'omi ki he 'ao 'o e fakamāú, ke fakamāu 'i 'a kinautolu ki he hia kuo nau fai, 'o fakatatau ki he lao kuo fokotu 'u 'e he kakai.
- 27 Ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi kaume'a mo e kāinga tokolahi 'o e kau fakamaau ko iá; pea ko honau toé, 'io, 'a e meimei kotoa 'o e kau taukapo mo e kau taula'eiki lahi, na'a nau fakataha 'a kinautolu 'o nau kau mo e kāinga 'o e kau fakamaau 'e fakamāu 'i 'o fakatatau ki he laó.
- 28 Pea na'a nau fai ha fefuakava'aki 'iate kinautolu, 'io, 'a e fuakava ko ia na'e fai 'e kinautolu 'o e kuonga mu'á, 'a ia ko e fuakava na'e fokotu'u mo fakahoko 'e he tēvoló, ke kau fakataha 'i he tau 'i 'o e mā'oni'oni kotoa pē.
- 29 Ko ia na'a nau kau fakataha ke tau 'i 'a e kakai 'o e 'Eikí, pea nau fai ha fuakava ke faka'auha 'a kinautolu, pea faka'atā 'a e fā'ahinga kuo halaia 'i he fakapoó mei he mālohi 'o e fakamaau totonú, 'a ia na'e teuteu ke fai 'o fakatatau ki he laó.
- 30 Pea na'a nau fakafili ki he laó mo e ngaahi totonu 'a honau fonuá; pea na'a nau fefuakava'aki 'iate kinautolu ke nau faka'auha 'a e kōvaná, pea fokotu'u ha tu 'i ki he fonuá, koe'uhi ke 'oua 'e toe tau'atāina 'a e fonuá kae fakaongo pē ki he ngaahi tu'í.

Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land—

Therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.

Now it came to pass that they were taken and brought up before the judge, to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.

Now it came to pass that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.

And they did enter into a covenant one with another, yea, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

Therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord, and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice, which was about to be administered according to the law.

And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

3 Nīfai 7

- 1 Ko 'eni vakai, te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu na'e 'ikai te nau fokotu'u ha tu'i ki he fonuá; ka 'i he ta'u pē ko iá, 'io, 'i hono tolungofulu 'o e ta'ú, na'a nau faka'auha 'i he nofo'anga fakamāú, 'io, na'a nau fakapoongi 'a e tu'i fakamaau lahi 'o e fonuá.
- 2 Pea na'e fefakafilí'aki 'a e kakai 'iate kinautolu; pea nau mavahevahe ki he ngaahi fa'ahinga kakai, ko e tangata taki taha 'o fakatautu mo hono fāmili mo hono kāinga mo e ngaahi kaume'a; pea na'e pehē 'enau veteki 'a e pule'anga 'o e fonuá.
- 3 Pea na'e fili 'e he fa'ahinga kakai taki taha 'a e 'eiki pe taki ke pule'i 'a kinautolu; pea ko ia na'a nau hoko ko e ngaahi fa'ahinga kakai, mo e kau taki 'o e ngaahi fa'ahinga kakai.
- 4 Ko 'eni vakai, na'e 'ikai ha tangata 'iate kinautolu 'a ia na'e 'ikai te ne ma'u 'a e fāmili tokolahi mo e kāinga mo e ngaahi kaume'a tokolahi; ko ia na'e faka'au 'o fu'u tokolahi honau ngaahi fa'ahinga kakai.
- 5 Ko 'eni na'e fai 'eni kātōa, kae te'eki ai ha tau 'iate kinautolu; pea kuo hoko 'a e angahalá ni hono kotoa ki he kakai ko e tupu 'i he'enua tukulolo ki he mālohi 'o Sētané.
- 6 Pea na'e tāmata'i 'a e ngaahi tu'utu'uni 'o e pule'angá, ko'e uhi ko e kautaha fufū 'o e ngaahi kaume'a mo e kāinga 'o kinautolu kuo nau fakapoongi 'a e kau palōfitá.
- 7 Pea na'a nau fakatupu 'a e fu'u fakakikihi lahi 'i he fonuá, 'o tupu ai ha liliu hono meimei kotoa 'o e fa'ahinga 'i he kakai na'e mā'oni'oni angé 'o fai angahala; 'io, na'e tokosi'i pē 'a e kakai mā'oni'oni 'iate kinautolú.
- 8 Pea ko ia kuo te'eki 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e ono mei he tafoki 'a e kakai meimei kotoa pē mei he'enua mā'oni'oni, 'o hangē ko e kulií ki he'ene lua, pe hangē ko e puaka fefiné ki he'ene fetafokifoki'aki 'i he pelepelá.
- 9 Ko 'eni ko e kautaha fufuú ni, 'a ia kuo fakatupu 'a e fu'u angahala lahi pehē 'i he kakai, na'a nau fakataha kātōa 'o fili ke hoko ko honau pulé ha tangata 'a ia na'a nau ui ko Sēkope.

3 Nephi 7

Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment-seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land.

And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and thus they did destroy the government of the land.

And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes.

Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great.

Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan.

And the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets.

And they did cause a great contention in the land, inasmuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.

And thus six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire.

Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

10 Pea na'a nau ui ia ko honau tu'i; ko ia na'a ne hoko ko e tu'i ki he kautaha kov'i ni; pea ko e taha ia 'o e fa'ahinga na'e lahi taha 'enau hiki hake honau le'ó ke talatalaaki'i 'a e kau palófitá 'a ia kuo nau fakamo'oni'i 'a Sísuú.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ke nau tokolahi 'o hangē ko e ngaahi fa'ahinga 'o e kakai, 'a ia kuo nau kau fakatahá, ka na'e fokotu'u pē 'e honau kau takí taki taha 'a 'enau ngaahi lao, 'o fakatatau mo hono fa'ahinga kakai; ka neongo iá na'a nau fefakafilí'aki; neongo na'e 'ikai ko ha kakai mā'oni'oni 'a kinautolu, ka na'a nau kau fakatahá 'i he fehi'aki he fa'ahinga kuo nau fai 'a e fuakava ke faka'auha 'a e pule'angá.

12 Ko ia, 'i he vakai 'a Sēkope 'oku tokolahi ange honau ngaahi filí 'iate kinautolú, pea 'i he'ene hoko ko e tu'i 'o e kautahá, ko ia na'a ne fekau ai ki hono kakaí ke nau hola ki he potu tokelau mama'ó taha 'o e fonuá, pea fokotu'u ai mo'onautolu ha pule'anga, kae 'oua kuo ha'u kiате kinautolu ha kau tafoki, (he na'a ne fakahekeheke'i 'a kinautolu 'o pehē 'e tokolahi 'a e kakai 'e tafokí) pea nau faka'au 'o mālohi ke fe'unga mo e fetau'aki mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga 'o e kakai; pea na'a nau fai pehē.

13 Pea na'e pehē fau hono vave 'o 'enau laká na'e 'ikai fa'a ta'ofi ia kae 'oua kuo nau mama'ó 'o 'ikai toe ma'u 'e he kakaí. Pea na'e 'osi pehē hono tolungofulu 'o e ta'ú; pea na'e pehē 'a e anga 'o e ngaahi me'a 'a e kakai 'o Nifái.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono tolungofulu mā taha 'o e ta'ú kuo nau mavahevahe ki he ngaahi fa'ahinga kakai, ko e tangata taki taha 'o fakatatau mo hono fāmili, mo e kāinga mo e ngaahi kaume'a; ka neongo iá kuo nau aleapau ke 'oua te nau fetau'aki 'iate kinautolu; ka na'e 'ikai ke taha 'enau ngaahi laó, mo e anga 'o 'enau founa pulé, he na'e fokotu'u ia 'o fakatatau mo e fakakaukau 'a e fa'ahinga 'a ia ko honau 'eikí mo honau takí. Ka na'a nau fokotu'u 'a e ngaahi lao fefeka ke 'oua na'a faihala 'e ha fa'ahinga kakai 'e taha ki ha fa'ahinga kakai kehe, 'o nau ma'u ai 'a e melino 'i he me'a 'e ní'hi 'i he fonuá; ka neongo iá, na'e tafoki honau lotó mei he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, pea na'a nau tolomaka 'i 'a e kau palófitá mo nau kapusi 'a kinautolu meiate kinautolu.

And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; and he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus.

And it came to pass that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; nevertheless they were enemies; notwithstanding they were not a righteous people, yet they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government.

Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were joined by dissenters, (for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters) and they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people; and they did so.

And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. And thus ended the thirtieth year; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko Nīfai—kuo 'a'ahi kiate ia 'a e kau 'āngelo pea ongo mai kiate ia 'a e le' 'o e 'Eikí, ko ia 'i he'ene mamata ki he kau 'āngeló, pea mamata tonu ai, pea 'i he tuku kiate ia 'a e mālohi ke ne 'ilo ki he ngāue fakafaifekau 'a Kalaisí, kae 'uma'ā foki 'ene mamata tonu ki he'enu tafoki vave mei he mā'oni'oni ki he'enu fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá.

16 Ko ia, 'i he'ene loto mamahi koe'uhi ko e fefeka 'o honau lotó mo e fakakuihi 'o honau 'atamaí—na'á ne 'alu atu 'iate kinautolu 'i he ta'u pē ko iá, 'o ne kamata ke fakamo'oni ta'e-manavahē ki he fakatomalá mo e fakamolemole 'o e angahalá 'i he tui ki he 'Eiki ko Sīsū Kalaisí.

17 Pea na'á ne ako 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a lahi kiate kinautolu; pea 'oku 'ikai fa'a tohi ia kotoa, ka 'e 'ikai fe'unga hano konga, ko ia kuo 'ikai tohi ia 'i he tohí ni. Pea na'e malanga 'a Nīfai 'i he mālohi mo e fu'u mafai lahi.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'ita kiate ia, koe'uhi he na'e 'iate ia 'a e mālohi lahi ange 'iate kinautolu, he koloto ke nau malava ke ta'etui ki he'ene ngaahi leá, he na'e pehē fau hono lahi 'o 'ene tui ki he 'Eiki ko Sīsū Kalaisí, he na'e tauhi mai kiate ia 'e he kau 'āngelo 'i he 'aho kotoa pē.

19 Pea 'i he huafa 'o Sīsú na'á ne kapusi ki tu'a 'a e kau tēvolo mo e ngaahi laumālie 'uli; pea na'a mo hono tokouá, na'á ne fokotu'u hake ia mei he maté, 'i he hili hono tolomaka 'i ia 'e he kakaí 'o mate.

20 Pea na'e mamata ki ai 'a e kakaí, pea na'a nau fakamo'oni ki ai, pea na'a nau 'ita kiate ia koe'uhi ko hono mālohí; pea na'á ne fai foki mo ha ngaahi mana lahi kehe 'i he huafa 'o Sīsú, 'o mamata ki ai 'a e kakaí.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'osi atu hono tolungofulu mā taha 'o e ta'ú, pea na'e tokosi 'i pē 'a e fa'ahinga 'a ia na'e ului ki he 'Eikí; kae 'ilonga 'a kinautolu kotoa pē na'e uluí na'a nau matu'aki fakamo'oni 'i ki he kakaí kuo 'a'ahi kiate kinautolu 'a e māfimaí mo e Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá, 'a ia 'oku 'ia Sīsū Kalaisi, 'a ia 'oku nau tui ki ai.

And it came to pass that Nephi—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations;

Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds—went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily.

And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.

And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.

And it came to pass that the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few who were converted unto the Lord; but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed.

- 22 Pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu na'e kapusi ki tu'a mei ai 'a e kau tēvoló, mo fakamo'ui honau ngaahi mahakí mo honau ngaahi vaivai fakasinó, na'a nau matu'aki fakamo'oni'i ki he kakaí kuo ngāue 'iate kinautolu 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá, pea kuo fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu; pea nau fakahā atu mo e ngaahi faka'ilonga mo nau fai ha ngaahi mana 'e ni'ihī 'i he kakaí.
- 23 Na'e 'osi pehē atu foki mo hono tolungofulu mā ua 'o e ta'ú. Pea na'e kalanga 'a Nīfai ki he kakaí 'i he kamata'anga 'o hono tolungofulu mā tolu 'o e ta'ú; pea na'a ne malanga 'aki kiate kinautolu 'a e fakatomalá mo e fakamolemole 'o e ngaahi angahalá.
- 24 Pea 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou manatu foki, ko kinautolu kotoa pē na'e fakatafoki ki he fakatomalá, na'a nau papitaiso 'i he vai.
- 25 Ko ia, na'e fakanofu 'e Nīfai ha kau tangata ki he ngāue fakafaifekau ni, koe'uhi ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'e ha'u kiate kinautolú ke nau papitaiso 'aki 'a e vai, pea ko e faka'ilonga mo e fakamo'oni ia 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, mo e kakaí, kuo nau fakatomala pea ma'u ha fakamolemole ki he'enua ngaahi angahalá.
- 26 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'i he kamata'anga 'o e ta'u ko iá na'a nau papitaiso ki he fakatomalá; pea na'e 'osi pehē atu 'a e kongā lahi 'o e ta'ú.

And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.

Thus passed away the thirty and second year also. And Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty and third year; and he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins.

Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.

Therefore, there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, that all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water, and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins.

And there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance; and thus the more part of the year did pass away.

3 Nīfai 8

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'o hangē ko 'emau lekōtí, pea 'oku mau 'ilo 'oku mo'oni 'emau lekōtí, he vakai, ko e tangata angatonu na'á ne hiki 'a e lekōtí—he ko e mo'oni na'á ne fai 'a e ngaahi mana lahi 'i he huafa 'o Sīsuú; pea koloto ke 'i ai ha tangata 'e taha 'e lava 'o fai ha mana 'i he huafa 'o Sīsuú, kae ngata pē 'i he'ene fakama'a ia mei he'ene angahala kotoa pē—
- 2 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē, kapau na'e 'ikai ke hala 'a e tangatá ni 'i he lau homau taimí; kuo hili atu hono tolungofulu mā tolu 'o e ta'ú;
- 3 Pea na'e kamata ke fakasio fakamātoato 'a e kakaí ki he faka'ilonga kuo fakahā 'e he palōfita ko Samuela, ko e tangata Leimaná, 'io, ki he taimi 'a ia 'e 'i ai 'a e fakapo'uli 'o fe'unga mo e 'aho 'e tolu 'i he funga 'o e fonuá.
- 4 Pea na'e kamata ke 'i ai 'a fu'u tāla'a lahi mo e ngaahi fakakikihi 'i he vaha 'a 'o e kakaí, neongo hono lahi pehē fau 'o e ngaahi faka'ilonga kuo fakahaá.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono tolungofulu mā fā 'o e ta'ú, 'i he 'uluaki māhiná, 'i he 'aho hono fā 'o e māhiná, na'e tō 'a e fu'u matangi lahi, 'o hangē ko ia kuo te'eki ai ke 'iloa 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá.
- 6 Pea na'e 'i ai foki mo e fu'u afā lahi mo fakailifia; pea na'e 'i ai 'a e mana fakamanavahē, pea na'e lulululu 'i ai 'a e fonuá hono kotoa 'o hangē ka mafahi ua iá.
- 7 Pea na'e 'i ai mo e ngaahi tapa fu'u mālohi 'aupito 'a e 'uhilá, 'o hangē ko ia kuo te'eki ai ke 'iloa 'i he fonuá hono kotoa.
- 8 Pea na'e kamata ke vela 'a e kolo ko Seilahemalá.
- 9 Pea na'e ngalo hifo 'a e kolo ko Molonái 'i he ngaahi loloto 'o e tahí, pea na'e melemo hono kakaí.
- 10 Pea na'e 'ufi'ufi 'e he kelekelé 'a e kolo ko Molonaihaá, pea na'e hoko 'a e potu na'e tu'u ai 'a e koló ko e fu'u mo'unga.
- 11 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e fu'u faka'auha lahi mo faka'ulia 'i he fonua 'i he fakatongá.

3 Nephi 8

And now it came to pass that according to our record, and we know our record to be true, for behold, it was a just man who did keep the record—for he truly did many miracles in the name of Jesus; and there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity—

And now it came to pass, if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time, the thirty and third year had passed away;

And the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, yea, for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land.

And there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given.

And it came to pass in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land.

And there was also a great and terrible tempest; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder.

And there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land.

And the city of Zarahemla did take fire.

And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.

And the earth was carried up upon the city of Moronihah, that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.

And there was a great and terrible destruction in the land southward.

12 Kae vakai, na'e 'i ai 'a e fu'u faka'auha lahi mo faka'ulia ange 'i he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú; he vakai na'e liliu 'a e funga hono kotoa 'o e fonuá, koe'uhi ko e afaá mo e ngaahi 'ahiohió, mo e ngaahi maná mo e ngaahi 'uhilá, pea mo e fu'u ngalulululu lahi 'aupito 'a e fonuá hono kotoa;

13 Pea na'e mafahifahi 'a e ngaahi hala lalahí, pea na'e maumau 'i 'a e ngaahi hala tokaleleí, pea na'e hoko 'o tokatāmaki 'a e ngaahi potu tokalelei lahi.

14 Pea na'e lahi 'a e ngaahi kolo 'a ia na'e lalahi mo ongoongoa na'e ngalo hifo, pea na'e vela 'a e ngaahi kolo lahi, pea na'e lulululu 'i 'a e ngaahi kolo lahi kae 'oua kuo holo 'a e ngaahi fale 'i ai ki he kekelelé, pea mate hono kakaí, pea na'e li'aki 'o lala 'a e ngaahi potu ko iá.

15 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi kolo 'e ni'ihí 'a ia na'e kei tu'u; ka na'e fu'u lahi 'a e maumau 'i ai, pea na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'iate kinautolu na'e mate.

16 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e ni'ihí 'a ia na'e 'ave 'i he 'ahiohió; pea 'oku 'ikai ke 'ilo 'e ha tangata 'e taha pē na'a nau o ki fē, ka 'oku nau 'ilo pē na'e 'ave 'a kinautolu.

17 Pea ko ia na'e liliu 'o kehe 'a e funga 'o e fonuá hono kotoa, ko e ngāue 'a e ngaahi afaá, mo e ngaahi maná, mo e ngaahi 'uhilá, pea mo e ngalulululu 'a e fonuá.

18 Pea vakai, na'e mafahi ua 'a e ngaahi maká; na'e fakamomoiki ia 'i he funga 'o e fonuá hono kotoa, pea ko ia na'e movete ia ko e ngaahi kongá iiki, pea 'i he ngaahi kongá mafa'afa 'a mo mafahifahi 'i he funga hono kotoa 'o e fonuá.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi leva 'a e ngaahi maná, mo e ngaahi 'uhilá, mo e matangi, mo e afaá, mo e ngaahi ngalulululu 'a e fonuá—he vakai, na'e hokohoko ia 'o fe'unga mo e houa 'e tolu nai; pea na'e pehē 'e he ni'ihí na'e fuoloa ange ia; ka neongo iá na'e fai 'a e ngaahi me'a lalahi mo faka'ulíá ni 'i he houa 'e tolu nai—pea vakai, na'e hoko leva 'a e fakapo'uli ki he funga 'o e fonuá.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai 'a e 'ao 'o e fakapo'uli matolu 'i he funga hono kotoa 'o e fonuá, na'e pehē fau hono lahí na'e lava ke ongo 'i 'a e 'ao 'o e fakapo'ulí 'e hono kakai 'a ia kuo te'eki ai ke nau maté;

But behold, there was a more great and terrible destruction in the land northward; for behold, the whole face of the land was changed, because of the tempest and the whirlwinds, and the thunderings and the lightnings, and the exceedingly great quaking of the whole earth;

And the highways were broken up, and the level roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became rough.

And many great and notable cities were sunk, and many were burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate.

And there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there were many in them who were slain.

And there were some who were carried away in the whirlwind; and whither they went no man knoweth, save they know that they were carried away.

And thus the face of the whole earth became deformed, because of the tempests, and the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the quaking of the earth.

And behold, the rocks were rent in twain; they were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, insomuch that they were found in broken fragments, and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the land.

And it came to pass that when the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the storm, and the tempest, and the quakings of the earth did cease—for behold, they did last for about the space of three hours; and it was said by some that the time was greater; nevertheless, all these great and terrible things were done in about the space of three hours—and then behold, there was darkness upon the face of the land.

And it came to pass that there was thick darkness upon all the face of the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the vapor of darkness;

- 21 Pea na'e 'ikai lava ke 'i ai ha maama, koe'uhi ko e fakapo'ulí, pe ha te'elango, pe ha tūhulu; pea na'e 'ikai foki lava ke tutu ha afi 'aki 'enau fefie iiki mo fu'u mōmoa 'aupitó, ko ia na'e 'ikai lava ke 'i ai ha maama 'e taha;
- 22 Pea na'e 'ikai ha maama 'e taha 'e hā, pe ha afi, pe ha ki'i uló sí'i, pe ko e la'aá, pe ko e māhiná, pe ko e ngaahi fetu'ú, he na'e pehē fau hono lahi 'o e ngaahi 'ao fakapo'uli 'a ia na'e 'i he funga 'o e fonuá.
- 23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hokohoko ia 'o fe'unga mo e 'aho 'e tolu pea na'e 'ikai ha maama 'e hā; pea na'e hokohoko ai 'a e tangilāulau mo e 'oiaue mo e tangi 'i he kakai kotoa pē; 'io, na'e lahi 'a e to'e 'a e kakaí, koe'uhi ko e fakapo'ulí mo e fu'u faka'auha 'a ia kuo hoko kiate kinautolú.
- 24 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e potu 'e taha na'e ongona 'enau tangi, 'o pehē: Taumaiā na'a mau fakatomala 'i he te'eki ai hoko 'a e fu'u 'aho lahi mo fakamanavaheé ni, pea ka ne pehē kuo fakamo'ui hotau kāingá, pea kuo 'ikai ke nau vela 'i he fu'u kolo lahi ko Seilahemalá.
- 25 Pea na'e ongona 'i he potu 'e taha 'a 'enau tangi mo e tangilāulau, 'o nau pehē: Taumaiā na'a mau fakatomala 'i he te'eki ai hoko 'a fu'u 'aho lahi mo fakailifia ni, pea kuo 'ikai ke mau tāmata'i mo toloomaka'i 'a e kau palōfitá, mo kapusi 'a kinautolu ki tu'a; kapau na'e pehē, ne fakamo'ui 'emau ngaahi fa'éé, mo homau ngaahi 'ofefine hoihoifuá, pea mo 'emau fānaú, pea kuo 'ikai ke tanu 'a kinautolu 'i he fu'u kolo ko Molonaihaá. Pea na'e lahi mo fakailifia pehē 'a e ngaahi tangi 'a e kakaí.

And there could be no light, because of the darkness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;

And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which were upon the face of the land.

And it came to pass that it did last for the space of three days that there was no light seen; and there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all the people continually; yea, great were the groanings of the people, because of the darkness and the great destruction which had come upon them.

And in one place they were heard to cry, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and then would our brethren have been spared, and they would not have been burned in that great city Zarahemla.

And in another place they were heard to cry and mourn, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children have been spared, and not have been buried up in that great city Moronihah. And thus were the howlings of the people great and terrible.

3 Nīfai 9

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai ha le'o na'e onгона 'e he kakai kotoa 'o e māmaní, 'i he funga 'o e fonuá ni hono kotoa, 'oku kalanga:
- 2 Malá'ia, mala'ia, mala'ia ki he kakaí ni; mala'ia ki he kakai 'o e māmaní hono kotoa kae 'oua kuo nau fakatomala; he 'oku kata 'a e tēvoló, pea 'oku fiefia 'a 'ene kau 'āngeló, koe'uhi ko e mate 'a e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine hoihoifua 'o hoku kakaí; pea kuo tupu 'i he'enu angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá 'a 'enua maté!
- 3 Vakai, ko e fu'u kolo lahi ko Seilahemalá kuó u tutu 'aki 'a e afi, pea mo hono kakai 'o iá.
- 4 Pea vakai, ko e fu'u kolo lahi ko Molonai kuó u fakangalo hifo 'i he ngaahi loloto 'o e tahí, pea fakamelemo mo hono kakaí.
- 5 Pea vakai, ko e fu'u kolo lahi ko Molonaihaá kuó u 'ufi'ufi 'aki 'a e kelekelé, pea mo hono kakai 'o iá, ke fufuu 'i 'enua ngaahi angahalá mo 'enua ngaahi anga-fakalieliá mei hoku maté, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'á ku tautea 'i 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko e kau palōfita mo e kau mā'oni'oni 'a ia kuo nau tāmáté'í.
- 6 Pea vakai, ko e kolo ko Kilikalí kuó u ngaohi ke ngalo hifo, pea mo hono kakai 'o iá ke tanu hifo 'i he ngaahi loloto 'o e kelekelé;
- 7 'Io, pea mo e kolo ko 'Onaihaá mo hono kakai 'o iá, mo e kolo ko Moikumí mo hono kakai 'o iá, mo e kolo ko Selūsalemá mo hono kakai 'o iá; pea kuó u pule ke 'oho mai 'a e ngaahi vaí ki he ngaahi potu ne nau 'i ai, ke fufuu 'i 'enua ngaahi fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá mei hoku maté, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'á ku tautea 'i 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko e kau palōfita mo e kau mā'oni'oni 'a ia kuo nau tāmáté'í.
- 8 Pea vakai, ko e kolo ko Katianetaí, mo e kolo ko Katiomaná mo e kolo ko Sēkopé, mo e kolo ko Kimikimó, kuó u fakangalo hifo 'a e ngaahi koló ni kotoa, peá u ngaohi 'a e ngaahi mo'unga mo e ngaahi tele'a 'i he potu na'a nau 'i ai; pea kuó u tanu honau kakaí 'i he ngaahi loloto 'o e kelekelé, ke fufuu 'i 'enua fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá mei hoku maté, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'á ku tautea 'i 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko e kau palōfita mo e kau mā'oni'oni 'a ia kuo nau tāmáté'í.

3 Nephi 9

And it came to pass that there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth, upon all the face of this land, crying:

Wo, wo, wo unto this people; wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent; for the devil laugheth, and his angels rejoice, because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my people; and it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are fallen!

Behold, that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof.

And behold, that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned.

And behold, that great city Moronihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth;

Yea, and the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Mocum and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Jerusalem and the inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimgimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

9 Pea vakai, ko e fu'u kolo lahi ko ia ko Sēkopēkatī, 'a ia na'e nofo'i 'e he kakai 'o e tu'i ko Sēkopé, kuó u pule ke tutu ia 'aki 'a e afi koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi fai angahalá mo 'enau fai halá, 'a ia na'e lahi hake 'i he fai angahala 'a e māmani kotoa, koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi fakapō fufuú mo e ngaahi kautahá; he ko kinautolu na'a nau maumau'i 'a e melino 'a hoku kakaí mo e pule'anga 'o e fonuá; ko ia na'á ku pule ai ke tutu 'a kinautolu, ke faka'auha 'a kinautolu mei hoku matá, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'á ku tautea 'i 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko e kau palōfita mo e kau mā'oni'oni 'a ia kuo nau tāmata'í.

10 Pea vakai, ko e kolo ko Leimaná, mo e kolo ko Sesé, mo e kolo ko Katí, mo e kolo ko Kisikumení, kuó u pule ke tutu 'aki 'a e afi, mo honau kakaí, koe'uhi ko 'enau fai angahala 'i hono kapusi ki tu'a 'a e kau palōfitá, mo tolomaka'i 'a kinautolu 'a ia na'á ku fekau atu ke nau malanga kiate kinautolu 'i he'enau angahalá mo 'enau ngaahi anga-fakalieliá.

11 Pea koe'uhi ko 'enau kapusi 'a kinautolu kotoa ki tu'á, 'o a'u ki he 'ikai toe 'iate kinautolu ha taha 'oku mā'oni'oni, ko ia na'á ku fekau hifo 'a e afi 'o faka'auha 'a kinautolu, koe'uhi ke fufuu'i 'enau fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá mei hoku matá, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a tangi kiate au 'a e toto 'o e kau palōfitá mo e kau mā'oni'oni kuó u fekau'i atu kiate kinautolú mei he kelekelé 'o talatalaaki'i 'a kinautolu.

12 Pea kuo lahi ha ngaahi faka'auha lalahi kuó u pule ke hoko ki he fonuá ni, pea ki he kakaí ni, koe'uhi ko 'enau fai angahalá mo 'enau ngaahi anga-fakalieliá.

13 'A kimoutolu kotoa pē kuo fakahaofi koe'uhi kuo mou mā'oni'oni lahi hake 'iate kinautolú, he 'ikai koā te mou tafoki mai 'eni kiate au, pea fakatomala mei ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, 'o liliu, koe'uhi ke u fakamo'ui 'a kimoutolu?

14 'Io, ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau te mou ha'u kiate au te mou ma'u 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá. Vakai, 'oku mafao atu hoku nima 'o e 'alo'ofá kiate kimoutolu, pea ko ia ia 'e ha'ú, te u ma'u ia; pea 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu 'a ia 'oku ha'u kiate aú.

And behold, that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations; for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land; therefore I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them.

And behold, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.

And because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they, will ye not now return unto me, and repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you?

Yea, verily I say unto you, if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life. Behold, mine arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever will come, him will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me.

15 Vakai, ko au ko Sīsū Kalaisi ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá. Na 'á ku fakatupu 'a e ngaahi langí mo e māmaní, pea mo e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku 'i aí. Na 'á ku nofo mo e Tamaí talu mei he kamata'angá. 'Oku ou 'i he Tamaí, pea 'oku 'iate au 'a e Tamaí; pea kuo fakaongoongolei 'i 'iate au 'e he Tamaí 'a hono huafá.

16 Na 'á ku ha' u ki hoku kakaí, ka na 'e 'ikai tali au 'e hoku kakaí. Pea ko e ngaahi folofola 'oku kau ki he 'eku ha' u kuo fakahoko ia.

17 Pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē na 'a nau tali aú, kuó u tuku kiate kinautolu ke nau hoko ko e ngaahi foha 'o e 'Otuá; pea 'e pehē foki 'eku foaki 'a e totonu kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'a ia 'e tui ki hoku hingoá, he vakai, 'oku fou 'iate au 'a e huhu'í, pea 'oku 'iate au hono fakahoko 'o e fono 'a Mōsesé.

18 Ko au ko e maama pea mo e mo'ui 'o e māmaní. Ko au ko e 'Ālifá mo e 'Ōmeká, ko e kamata'angá mo e ngata'angá.

19 Pea 'e 'ikai te mou toe feilaulau 'aki kiate au ha toto kuo lilingi; 'io, 'e fakangata ho'omou ngaahi feilaulau mo ho'omou ngaahi feilaulau tutú, koe'uhi 'e 'ikai te u tali ha'amou ngaahi feilaulau pe ngaahi feilaulau tutu 'e taha.

20 Pea te mou 'oatu kiate au 'a e feilaulau ko e loto-mafesifesi mo e laumālie fakatomala. Pea ko ia ia 'e ha' u kiate au mo e loto-mafesifesi mo e laumālie fakatomalá, te u papitaiso ia 'aki 'a e afi mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'o hangē ko e kau Leimaná, koe'uhi ko 'enau tui kiate au 'i he taimi na 'e fakaului ai 'a kinautolú, na 'e papitaiso 'aki 'a e afi mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, ka na 'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo' i ia.

21 Vakai, kuó u ha' u ki he māmaní ke 'omi 'a e huhu'í ki he māmaní ke fakamo'ui 'a e māmaní mei he angahalá.

22 Ko ia, ko ia ia 'e fakatomala pea ha' u kiate au 'o hangē ko ha tamasi' i si'í, te u tali ia, he 'oku 'o e fá'ahinga peheé 'a e pulé'anga 'o e 'Otuá. Vakai, koe'uhi ko e fá'ahinga peheé kuó u tuku hifo 'a 'eku mo'uí; pea kuó u toe to' o hake ia; ko ia mou fakatomala, pea ha' u kiate au 'a kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e māmaní, pea mo'ui.

Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name.

I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.

And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.

I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.

And ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.

And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.

Behold, I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin.

Therefore, whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved.

3 Nīfai 10

- 1 Pea ko 'eni vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fanongo 'a e kakai kotoa pē 'o e fonuá ki he ngaahi folofolá ni, pea nau fakamo'oni ki ai. Pea hili 'a e ngaahi folofola ní na'e 'i ai 'a e fakalongolongo 'i he fonuá 'o fe'unga mo e ngaahi houa lahi.
- 2 He na'e pehē fau hono lahi 'o e 'ohovale 'a e kakai, ko ia na'a nau tuku 'enau tangi mo e tangilāulaú koe'uhi ko e mole 'a honau kāinga kuo maté; ko ia na'e 'i ai 'a e fakalongolongo 'i he fonuá kotoa 'o fe'unga mo e ngaahi houa lahi.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe ongo mai ha le'o ki he kakai, pea na'e fanongo 'a e kakai kotoa pē, 'o nau fakamo'oni ki ai, 'o ne folofola:
- 4 'Oiauē 'a kimoutolu 'a e kakai 'o e ngaahi fu'u kolo lalahi ni 'a ia kuo toó, 'a ia ko e hako 'o Sēkopé, 'io, 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, hono 'ikai ke tu'o lahi 'a 'eku tānaki fakataha 'a kimoutolu 'o hangē ko e tānaki fakataha 'e he motu'a moá 'a hono 'uhikí 'i hono lalo kapakaú, peá u fafanga 'a kimoutolu.
- 5 Pea 'oku ou toe pehē, hono 'ikai ke tu'o lahi 'a 'eku tānaki fakataha 'a kimoutolu 'o hangē ko e tānaki fakataha 'e he motu'a moá 'a hono 'uhikí 'i hono lalo kapakaú, 'io, 'A kimoutolu 'a e kakai 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, 'a ia kuo mou toó; 'io, 'A kimoutolu 'a e kakai 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, 'a kimoutolu 'oku nofo 'i Selūsalemá, 'o hangē foki ko kimoutolu kuo toó; 'io, hono 'ikai ke tu'o lahi 'a 'eku fie tānaki fakataha 'a kimoutolu 'o hangē ko e tānaki fakataha 'e he motu'a moá 'a hono 'uhikí, ka na'e 'ikai te mou loto ki ai.
- 6 'A kimoutolu 'e fale 'o 'Isileli 'a ia kuó u fakahaofí, ko e hā hano tu'o lahi 'o ha'aku tānaki fakataha 'a kimoutolu 'o hangē ko e tānaki fakataha 'e he motu'a moá 'a hono 'uhikí ki hono lalo kapakaú, 'o kapau te mou fakatomala pea tafoki kiate au 'i he loto-fakamātoato.
- 7 Ka 'ikai, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli, pea 'e hoko 'o lala 'a e ngaahi potu 'o homou ngaahi nofo'angá kae 'oua ke hokosia 'a e taimi 'o hono fakahoko 'o e ngaahi fuakava na'e fai ki ho'omou ngaahi tamaí.

3 Nephi 10

And now behold, it came to pass that all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it. And after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours;

For so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours.

And it came to pass that there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it, saying:

O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, yea, who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you.

And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, ye that dwell at Jerusalem, as ye that have fallen; yea, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not.

O ye house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if ye will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart.

But if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers.

- 8 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e fanongo 'a e kakai ki he ngaahi folofola ní, vakai, na'a nau kamata ke toe tangi mo ngala koe'uhi ko e mole 'o honau kāingá mo e ngaahi kaume'á.
- 9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'osi pehē atu 'a e 'aho 'e tolú. Pea kuo pongipongi, pea kuo mole atu 'a e fakapo'ulí mei he funga 'o e fonuá, pea na'e tuku 'a e ngalulululu 'a e fonuá, pea na'e 'osi 'a e mafahifahi 'a e ngaahi maká, pea na'e 'osi mo e ngaahi 'u'ulu fakailifia 'a e fonuá, pea na'e 'osi mo e ngaahi fu'u longoa'á.
- 10 Pea na'e toe fehokotaki fakataha 'a e fonuá, 'o tu'u ma'u; pea ko e tengihia, mo e tangi, mo e ngala 'a e kakai kuo fakamo'uí na'e 'osi ia; pea na'e liliu 'enau tengihia ko e fiefia, pea mo 'enau ngaahi tangilāulaú ko e fakamālō mo e fakafeta'i ki he 'Eiki ko Sīsū Kalaisi, ko honau Huhu'í.
- 11 Pea kuo fakahoko 'o a'u mai ki he 'aho ko iá 'a e ngaahi folofola kuo lea 'aki 'e he kau palōfitá.
- 12 Pea ko kinautolu na'e mā'oni'oni ange 'i he kakai na'e fakamo'uí, pea ko kinautolu ia na'a nau tali 'a e kau palōfitá kae 'ikai tolomaka 'i 'a kinautolú; pea ko kinautolu ia na'e 'ikai te nau lilingi 'a e toto 'o e kau mā'oni'oni, 'a ia na'e fakamo'uí—
- 13 Pea na'e fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu 'o 'ikai fakangalo hifo mo tanu 'i he kekekelé; pea na'e 'ikai fakamelemo 'i he ngaahi loloto 'o e tahí; pea na'e 'ikai tutu 'aki 'a e afí, pea na'e 'ikai tanu hifo 'o laiki ke maté; pea na'e 'ikai 'ave atu 'a kinautolu 'i he 'ahiohió; pea na'e 'ikai fulutāmakia 'i he mao 'o e 'ahú mo e fakapo'ulí.
- 14 Pea ko 'eni, ko ia ia 'okú ne lau 'ení, tuku ke mahino kiate ia; ko ia ia 'okú ne ma'u 'a e ngaahi folofolá, tuku ke ne fakatotolo ai, peá ne mamata mo vakai pe 'oku 'ikai 'i he ngaahi maté mo e ngaahi faka'auhá ni 'i he afí, mo e 'ahú, mo e ngaahi afaá, mo e ngaahi 'ahiohió, pea 'i he fakamanga hake 'a e kekekelé ke folo hifo 'a kinautolú, pea mo e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē 'a hono fakahoko 'o e ngaahi kikite 'a e tokolahi 'o e kau palōfita mā'oni'oni.
- 15 Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Io, kuo fakamo'oni 'a e tokolahi ki he ngaahi me'á ni 'i he hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí, pea na'e tāmata 'i 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko 'enau fakamo'oni ki he ngaahi me'a ní.

And now it came to pass that after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.

And it came to pass that thus did the three days pass away. And it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land, and the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.

And the earth did cleave together again, that it stood; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease; and their mourning was turned into joy, and their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

And thus far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.

And it was the more righteous part of the people who were saved, and it was they who received the prophets and stoned them not; and it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were spared—

And they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the earth; and they were not drowned in the depths of the sea; and they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and crushed to death; and they were not carried away in the whirlwind; neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of darkness.

And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.

Behold, I say unto you, Yea, many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and were slain because they testified of these things.

- 16 'Io, na'e fakamo'oni 'a e palōfita ko Seinosí 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'á ni, pea lea foki mo Seinoki ki he ngaahi me'á ni, koe'uhi 'oku nau fakamo'oni 'o tautefito kiate kimautolu, 'a ia ko e toenga 'o honau hakó.
- 17 Vakai, na'e fakamo'oni foki mo 'etau tamai ko Sēkopé 'o kau ki ha toenga 'o e hako 'o Siosefá. Pea vakai, 'oku 'ikai koā ko e toenga 'a kitautolu 'o e hako 'o Siosefá? Pea ko e ngaahi me'á ni 'oku fakamo'oni 'o kau kiate kitautolú, 'ikai koā kuo tohi 'i he ngaahi peleti 'o e palasa 'a ia na'e 'omi 'e he'emaui tamai ko Līhai mei Selūsalemá?
- 18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he kongā fakamuimui 'o hono tolungofulu mā fā 'o e ta'u, vakai, te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu ko e kakai ko ia 'o Nīfai na'e fakahaofí, kae 'uma'ā foki mo kinautolu na'e ui ko e kau Leimaná, 'a ia na'e fakahaofí, na'e fai kiate kinautolu ha ngaahi lelei lahi, pea lilingi hifo ha ngaahi tāpuaki lahi ki honau 'ulú, ko ia 'i he hili leva 'a e hā'ele hake 'a Kalaisi ki he langí, na'á ne fakahā mo'oni ia 'e ia kiate kinautolu—
- 19 'O ne fakahā hono sinó kiate kinautolu, mo akonaki kiate kinautolu; pea 'e fai ha fakamatala ki he'ene ngāué 'amui ange. Ko ia 'oku ou faka'osi 'i he taimí ni 'a 'eku ngaahi leá.

Yea, the prophet Zenos did testify of these things, and also Zenock spake concerning these things, because they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of their seed.

Behold, our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph. And behold, are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph? And these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem?

And it came to pass that in the ending of the thirty and fourth year, behold, I will show unto you that the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads, insomuch that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—

Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them; and an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter. Therefore for this time I make an end of my sayings.

Na'e fakahā 'e Sīsū Kalaisi ia ki he kakai 'o Nīfai, lolotonga 'a e fakataba mai 'a e fu'u kakai tokolahi 'i he fonua ko Mahú, 'o ne akonaki 'i 'a kinautolu; pea ko e 'ubinga 'eni 'o 'ene fakahā ia 'e ia kiate kinautolú.

3 Nīfai 11

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ai 'a e fu'u kakai tokolahi na'e fakataba mai, 'o e kakai Nīfai, 'o takatakai 'i he temipale 'a ia na'e 'i he fonua ko Mahú; pea na'a nau ofo mo fakatumutumu 'iate kinautolu, 'o nau fefakahā'aki 'iate kinautolu 'a e fu'u liliu ma'ongo'onga mo fakafo 'a ia kuo hokó.
- 2 Pea na'a nau lolotonga fetalanoa'aki foki 'o kau ki he Sīsū Kalaisi ko ia, 'a ia kuo fakahā 'a e faka'ilonga 'o 'ene pekiá.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga 'enau fetalanoa'aki pehē 'iate kinautolú, na'a nau fanongo ki ha le'ó 'a ia na'e hangē 'oku ha'u mei he loto langí; pea na'a nau siosio holo honau matá, he na'e 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu 'a e le'ó 'a ia na'a nau fanongo ki aí; pea na'e 'ikai ko ha le'ó-mālohi ia, pea 'ikai foki ko ha le'ó-lahi; ka neongo iá, neongo ko e kihí 'i le'ó-sí 'i ia, ka na'e mahuhuhuhu ai 'a e loto 'o kinautolu na'e fanongó pea ongo mo'oni ki honau lotó, pea na'e 'ikai ai ha kupu 'o honau sinó na'e 'ikai ke ta'e-tetetete; 'io, na'e mahuhuhuhu ai 'a honau laumālié, 'o fakamāfana 'i honau lotó.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau toe fanongo ki he le'ó, pea na'e 'ikai mahino ia kiate kinautolu.
- 5 Pea na'a nau toe fanongo ko hono tu'ó tolu ki he le'ó, 'o nau fakaava honau telingá ke ongo 'i ia; pea na'e hanga honau matá ki he feitu'u na'e ongo ia mei aí; 'o nau sio fakamama'u ki he langí, 'a ia na'e ha'u mei ai 'a le'ó.
- 6 Pea vakai, 'i he ongo mai ko hono tu'ó tolú na'e mahino kiate kinautolu 'a e le'ó na'a nau fanongo ki aí; pea na'e folofola ia kiate kinautolu:
- 7 Vakai ki hoku 'Alo 'Ofa'angá, 'a ia 'oku ou fiamālie lahi ai, 'a ia kuó u fakaongoongolei 'i ai 'a hoku hingoá—mou fanongo kiate ia.

Jesus Christ did show himself unto the people of Nephi, as the multitude were gathered together in the land Bountiful, and did minister unto them; and on this wise did he show himself unto them.

3 Nephi 11

And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous change which had taken place.

And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death.

And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; and they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice; nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake; yea, it did pierce them to the very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn.

And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood it not.

And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.

And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they heard; and it said unto them:

Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have glorified my name—hear ye him.

8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē, 'i he mahino kiate kinautolú na'a nau toe tangaki hake honau matá ki he langí; pea vakai, na'a nau mamata ki ha Tangata 'oku hā'ele hifo mei he loto langí; pea kuo kofu ia 'aki 'a e pulupulu hinehina; pea na'á ne hā'ele hifo 'o tu'u 'i honau ha'oha'ongá; pea na'e hanga 'a e mata 'o e kakai kotoa pē kiate ia, pea na'a nau ilifia ke fakaava honau ngutú, pe felea'aki 'iate kinautolu, pea na'e 'ikai mahino hono 'uhinga 'o e hā'ele maí ni kiate kinautolu, he na'a nau mahalo ko e 'āngelo ia 'oku hā mai kiate kinautolú.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a ne mafao atu hono to'ukupú 'o ne folofola ki he kakaí, 'o pehē:

10 Vakai, ko au ko Sīsū Kalaisi, 'a ia na'e fakamo'oni 'i 'e he kau palōfitá 'e ha'u ki he māmaní.

11 Pea vakai, ko au ko e maama mo e mo'ui 'a e māmaní; pea kuó u inu mei he ipu kona ko ia na'e tuku 'e he Tamaí kiate aú, pea kuó u fakaongoongolei 'i 'a e Tamaí 'i he'eku to'o kiate au 'a e ngaahi angahala 'a e māmaní, 'a ia kuó u fai ai 'a e me'a kotoa pē kuo finangalo 'a e Tamaí ke u fai talu mei he kamata'angá.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola ní na'e tōmape'e ki he kekelelé 'a e kakai kotoa pē; he na'a nau manatu kuo kikite 'i 'iate kinautolu 'e fakahā 'e Kalaisi ia 'e ia kiate kinautolu 'o ka hili 'ene hā'ele hake ki he langí.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e folofola 'a e 'Eikí kiate kinautolu 'o pehē:

14 Tu'u hake pea 'unu'unu mai kiate au, koe'uhí ke mou 'ai homou nimá ki hoku vakavaká, pea ke mou ala foki ki he mata 'i fa'o 'i hoku nimá mo hoku va'é, koe'uhí ke mou 'ilo'i ko au ko e 'Otua 'o 'Isilelí, pea ko e 'Otua 'o e māmaní kotoa pē, pea kuo tāmata 'i au koe'uhi ko e ngaahi angahala 'a e māmaní.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'alu atu 'a e fu'u kakaí, 'o nau 'ai honau nimá ki hono vakavaká, 'o nau ala ki he ngaahi mata 'i fa'o 'i hono nimá mo hono va'é; 'o nau fai 'eni, mo 'alu atu taki taha kae 'oua kuo 'alu atu kotoa pē, 'o nau mamata 'aki honau matá mo ala 'aki honau nimá, pea nau 'ilo'i pau mo fakamo'oni 'i, ko ia ia 'a ia kuo tohi 'e he kau palōfitá 'e hā'ele maí.

And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another, and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them.

And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:

Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.

And behold, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying:

Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.

16 Pea 'i he hili 'enau 'alu atu kotoa pē 'o mamata ma'anautolu peé, pea na'a nau kalanga fakataha, 'o pehē:

17 Hōsana! 'Oku monū'ia 'a e huafa 'o e 'Otua Fungani Mā'olunga Tahá! Pea na'a nau fakatōmāpe'e ki lalo 'i he va'e 'o Sīsuú, 'o hū kiate ia.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne folofola kia Nīfai (he na'e 'i he kakaí 'a Nīfai) 'o ne fekau kiate ia ke ha'u.

19 Pea na'e tu'u hake 'a Nīfai 'o 'alu atu, peá ne punou hifo 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí 'o ne 'uma ki hono va'é.

20 Pea na'e fekau kiate ia 'e he 'Eikí ke ne tu'u hake. Pea na'e tu'u hake ia 'o tu'u 'i mu'a 'iate ia.

21 Pea na'e folofola 'a e 'Eikí kiate ia: 'Oku ou tuku kiate koe 'a e mālohi ke ke papitaiso 'a e kakaí ni 'o ka hili 'eku toe 'alu hake ki langí.

22 Pea na'e toe ui 'e he 'Eikí ha ni'ihī kehe, 'o ne folofola 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a tatau pē kiate kinautolu; pea na'á ne tuku kiate kinautolu 'a e mālohi ke fai papitaiso. Pea na'á ne folofola kiate kinautolu: Ko e founga 'eni ke mou fai ai 'a e papitaisó; pea 'oua na'a 'i ai ha ngaahi fakakikihi 'iate kimoutolu.

23 Ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko ia ia 'oku fakatomala mei he'ene ngaahi angahalá koe'uhī ko ho'omou ngaahi leá, 'o ne kole ke papitaiso 'i hoku hingoá, ko e anga 'eni 'o ho'omou papitaiso 'a kinautolú —Vakai, te mou 'alu hifo pea tu'u 'i he loto vaí, pea te mou papitaiso 'a kinautolu 'i hoku hingoá.

24 Pea ko 'eni vakai, ko e ngaahi lea 'eni ke mou lea'akí, ke mou ui 'a kinautolu 'i honau hingoá, 'o pehē:

25 'I he mafai kuó u ma'u meia Sīsū Kalaisí, 'oku ou papitaiso koe 'i he huafa 'o e Tamaí, pea mo e 'Aló, pea mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oní. 'Ēmeni.

26 Pea te mou toki fakangalo hifo 'a kinautolu 'i he vaí, pea toe fokotu'u hake 'a kinautolu mei he vaí.

27 Pea ko e founga 'eni ke mou fai papitaiso ai 'i hoku hingoá; he vakai, ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku taha pē 'a e Tamaí, mo e 'Aló, mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oní; pea 'oku ou 'i he Tamaí, pea 'oku 'iate au 'a e Tamaí, 'oku taha pē 'a e Tamaí mo au.

And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:

Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and did worship him.

And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi (for Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded him that he should come forth.

And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed himself before the Lord and did kiss his feet.

And the Lord commanded him that he should arise. And he arose and stood before him.

And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven.

And again the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; and he gave unto them power to baptize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall ye baptize; and there shall be no disputations among you.

Verily I say unto you, that whoso repenteth of his sins through your words, and desireth to be baptized in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them—Behold, ye shall go down and stand in the water, and in my name shall ye baptize them.

And now behold, these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying:

Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

And then shall ye immerse them in the water, and come forth again out of the water.

And after this manner shall ye baptize in my name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one.

28 Pea 'i he founga ko ia kuó u fekau kiate kimoutolú 'e pehē ho'omou fai papitaisó. Pea 'oua na'a 'i ai ha ngaahi fakakikihi 'iate kimoutolu, 'o hangē ko ia kuo hoko 'i mu'á; pea 'oua na'a fai foki mo ha ngaahi fakakikihi 'iate kimoutolu 'i he ngaahi tefito 'o 'eku tokāteliné, 'o hangē ko ia kuo hoko 'i mu'á.

29 He ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko ia ia 'okú ne ma'u 'a e 'a e laumālie 'o e fakakikihi 'oku 'ikai 'a aku ia, ka 'oku 'o e tēvoló ia, 'a ia ko e tamai 'a e fakakikihi, pea 'okú ne ue'i hake 'a e loto 'o e kakaí ke fefakakikihi 'aki 'i he 'ita, 'iate kinautolu.

30 Vakai, 'oku 'ikai ko 'eku tokāteliné 'eni, ke ue'i 'a e loto 'o e kakaí ke fe'ite'itani; 'iate kinautolu; ka ko 'eku tokāteliné 'eni ke fakangata hono fai 'o e ngaahi me'a peheé.

31 Vakai, ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a 'eku tokāteliné.

32 Pea ko 'eku tokāteliné 'eni, pea ko e tokāteline ia 'a ia kuo tuku kiate au 'e he Tamaí; pea 'oku ou fakamo'oni 'i 'a e Tamaí, pea 'oku fakamo'oni 'i au 'e he Tamaí, pea 'oku fakamo'oni 'i 'e he Laumālie Mā'oni'oni 'a e Tamaí mo au; pea 'oku ou fakamo'oni 'i kuo fekau 'e he Tamaí ki he kakai fulipē, 'i he potu kotoa pē, ke nau fakatomala pea tui kiate au.

33 Pea ko ia ia 'okú ne tui kiate au, mo papitaisó, 'e fakamo'ui ia; pea ko kinautolu ia te nau ma'u 'a e pulé'anga 'o e 'Otuá.

34 Pea ko ia ia 'oku 'ikai tui kiate au, mo papitaisó, 'e mala'ia ia.

35 Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko 'eku tokāteliné 'eni, pea 'oku ou ha'u mei he Tamaí ke fakamo'oni ki ai; pea ko ia ia 'oku tui kiate au 'oku tui ki he Tamaí foki; pea 'e fakamo'oni 'i au kiate ia 'e he Tamaí, he te ne 'a'ahi kiate ia 'aki 'a e afi mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni.

36 Pea 'e pehē hono fakamo'oni 'i au 'e he Tamaí, pea 'e fakamo'oni 'i 'e he Laumālie Mā'oni'oni au pea mo e Tamaí kiate ia; he ko e Tamaí, mo Au, mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni 'oku mau taha pē.

And according as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptize. And there shall be no disputations among you, as there have hitherto been; neither shall there be disputations among you concerning the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto been.

For verily, verily I say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention, and he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.

Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.

And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me; and I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to repent and believe in me.

And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved; and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

And whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also; and unto him will the Father bear record of me, for he will visit him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

And thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the Father and me; for the Father, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one.

37 Pea 'oku ou toe pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo pau ke mou fakatomala, pea hoko 'o tatau mo ha tamasi'i si'i, pea papitaiso 'i hoku hingoá, pe 'oku 'ikai pē ha founa ke mou ma'u ai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni.

38 Pea 'oku ou toe pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo pau ke mou fakatomala, pea papitaiso 'i hoku hingoá, pea hoko 'o tatau mo ha ki'i tamasi'i si'i, pe 'e 'ikai te mou teitei ma'u 'a e pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá.

39 Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko 'eku tokāteliné 'eni, pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'oku langa ai 'oku nau langa ki he'eku maká, pea 'e 'ikai ikuna 'a kinautolu 'e he ngaahi matapā 'o helí.

40 Pea 'ilonga ia te ne fakahā 'o lahi ange pe si'i hifo 'i he me'a ní, pea fokotu'u ia ko 'eku tokāteliné, 'oku tupu ia mei he fai angahalá, pea kuo 'ikai langa ia 'i he'eku maká; ka 'oku langa ia ki ha tu'unga 'o e 'one'one, pea 'oku ava 'a e ngaahi matapā 'o helí ke ma'u 'a e kakai peheé 'o ka 'oho mai 'a e vaí pea fa'aki kiate ia 'a e ngaahi matangi.

41 Ko ia, 'alu atu ki he kakaí ni, pea fakahā 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia kuó u lea'akí, 'o a'u ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e māmaní.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.

And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock; but he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the earth.

3 Nīfai 12

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofolá ni kia Nīfai, mo kinautolu 'a ia kuo uí, (ko 'eni ko e tokolahi 'o kinautolu kuo ui, pea ma'u mo e mālohi mo e mafai ke fai papitaisó, na'e toko hongofulu mā ua) pea vakai, na'e mafao atu hono to'ukupú ki he fu'u kakaí, 'o kalanga kiate kinautolu, 'o pehē: 'Oku monū'ia 'a kimoutolu 'o kapau te mou tokanga ki he ngaahi lea 'a e toko hongofulu mā ua ko 'eni 'a ia kuo u fili meiate kimoutolu ke akonaki kiate kimoutolu, pea hoko ko ho'omou kau tamaio'eikí; pea kuó u tuku kiate kinautolu 'a e mālohi ke nau papitaiso 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e vai; pea 'o ka hili homou papitaiso 'aki 'a e vaí, vakai, te u papitaiso 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e afi pea mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni; ko ia 'oku monū'ia 'a kimoutolu 'o kapau te mou tui kiate au pea papitaiso, 'i he hili ho'omou mamata kiate au, pea 'ilo'i 'oku ou mo'uí.
- 2 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku monū'ia ange 'a kinautolu 'e tui ki ho'omou ngaahi leá ko'e uhi ko ho'omou fakamo'oni kuo mou mamata kiate aú, pea 'oku mou 'ilo'i 'oku ou mo'uí. 'Io, 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu 'e tui ki ho'omou ngaahi leá, mo fakavaivai mo'oni 'a kinautolu 'i he fu'u loto-fakatōkilalo lahi pea papitaisó, he 'e 'a'ahi kiate kinautolu 'aki 'a e afi mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, pea te nau ma'u ha fakamolemole 'o 'enau ngaahi angahalá.
- 3 'Io, 'oku monū'ia 'a e angavaivai 'a ia 'oku nau ha'u kiate aú, he 'oku 'onautolu 'a e pule'anga 'o e langí.
- 4 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu 'a ia 'oku tangí, he 'e fakafiemālie'i 'a kinautolu.
- 5 Pea 'oku monū'ia 'a e angamaluú, he te nau ma'u 'a e māmaní.
- 6 Pea 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku fiekaia mo feinua ki he mā'oni'oni, he 'e fakafonu 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni.
- 7 Pea 'oku monū'ia 'a e anga'ofá, he te nau ma'u 'a e 'alo'ofa.
- 8 Pea 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku lotoma'á, he te nau mamata ki he 'Otuá.
- 9 Pea 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku fá 'a fakalelé, he 'e ui 'a kinautolu ko e fānau 'a e 'Otuá.

3 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was twelve) and behold, he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them, saying: Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am.

And again, more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, and that ye know that I am. Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins.

Yea, blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

And again, blessed are all they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.

And blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

And blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

And blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

And blessed are all the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

And blessed are all the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

10 Pea 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu kotoa pē kuo fakatanga'i koe'uhi ko hoku hingoá, he 'oku 'onautolu 'a e pule'anga 'o e langí.

11 Pea 'oku monū'ia 'a kimoutolu 'o ka hanga 'e he kakaí 'o lau'ikovi'i mo fakatanga'i, mo lohiaki'i 'a kimoutolu 'i he me'a kovi kotoa pē, koe'uhi ko au;

12 He te mou ma'u 'a e fu'u fiefia lahi pea nēkeneka 'o lahi, koe'uhi 'e lahi ho'omou totongi 'i he langí; he na'e pehē 'enau fakatanga'i 'a e kau palōfita 'a ia na'e 'i mu'a 'iate kimoutolú.

13 Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku ou fekau kiate kimoutolu ke mou hoko ko e māsima 'o e māmaní; ka 'o kapau 'e mole 'i he māsímá 'a hono koná, 'e fakakona'i fēfee 'i 'a e māmaní? Ngata ai 'e 'ikai toe 'aonga 'a e māsímá, ka ke lí ki tu'a pea molomoloki ia 'i he lalo va'e 'o e kakaí.

14 Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku ou fekau kiate kimoutolu ke mou hoko ko e maama 'o e kakaí ni. Ko e kolo kuo fokotu'u 'i ha mo'unga 'oku 'ikai fa'a fakapuli ia.

15 Vakai, 'oku tutu koā 'e he tangatá ha te'elango pea tuku ia ki he lalo puha? 'Ikai, ka ki he tu'unga māmá, pea 'oku ulo ia kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku 'i he falé;

16 Ko ia tuku ke ulo pehē ho'omou māmá 'i he 'ao 'o e kakaí ni, koe'uhi ke nau mamata ki ho'omou ngaahi ngāue leléi pea tuku 'a e fakafeta'i ki ho'omou Tamai 'a ia 'oku 'i he langí.

17 'Oua na'a mou mahalo kuó u ha'ú ke fakata'e'aonga'i 'a e fonó, pe ko e kau palōfítá. 'Oku 'ikai ko 'eku ha'ú ke fakata'e'aonga'i ka ke fakakakato;

18 He ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo 'ikai mole ha kí'i kongá sí'i mei he fonó, ka kuo fakakakato ia 'iate au.

19 Pea vakai, kuó u tuku kiate kimoutolu 'a e fono mo e ngaahi fekau 'a 'eku Tamaí, koe'uhi ke mou tui kiate au, pea ke mou fakatomala mei ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, pea ha'u kiate au 'aki 'a e loto-mafesifesi mo e laumālie fakatomala. Vakai, 'oku mou ma'u 'a e ngaahi fekaú 'i homou 'aó, pea kuo fakakakato 'a e fonó.

And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name's sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

And blessed are ye when men shall revile you and persecute, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake;

For ye shall have great joy and be exceedingly glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor where-with shall the earth be salted? The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the light of this people. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.

Behold, do men light a candle and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it giveth light to all that are in the house;

Therefore let your light so shine before this people, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in heaven.

Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;

For verily I say unto you, one jot nor one tittle hath not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.

And behold, I have given you the law and the commandments of my Father, that ye shall believe in me, and that ye shall repent of your sins, and come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold, ye have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled.

20 Ko ia mou ha'u kiate au pea mou mo'ui; he ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau 'e 'ikai te mou tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekau, 'a ia kuó u tuku kiate kimoutolú 'i he taimi ko 'ení, 'e 'ikai te mou teitei fa'a hū ki he pule'anga 'o e langí.

21 Kuo mou fanongo na'e pehē 'e kinautolu 'o e kuonga mu'á, pea 'oku tohi foki 'i homou 'aó, ke 'oua na'a mou fakapō, pea ko ia ia 'e fakapoó, te ne tu'utāmaki 'i he tautea mei he 'Otuá.

22 Ka 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko ia ia 'e 'ita ki hono tokouá 'e tu'utāmaki ia ki he'ene fakamāú. Pea ko ia ia te ne pehē ki hono tokouá, ko e valé, 'e tu'utāmaki ia ki he tautea 'a e fakamāú; ka ko ia te ne pehē, Ko e faha koé, 'e tu'utāmaki ia ki he afi 'o helí.

23 Ko ia, kapau te ke ha'u kiate au, pe te ke fie ha'u kiate au, pea manatu 'oku kovi'ia ho tokouá 'iate koe—

24 'Alu koe ki ho tokouá, pea tomú'a fakalelei ki ho tokouá, pea toki ha'u kiate au 'i he loto-fakamātoato mo'oni, pea te u tali koe.

25 Fakalelei vave mo ho filí lolotonga ho'omo kei 'i he halá mo ia, koe'uhí ke 'oua na'a faifai pea 'i ai ha taimi te ne ma'u ai ha faingamālie kiate koe, pea 'e lī koe ki he fale fakapōpulá.

26 Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'e 'ikai 'aupito te ke teitei hao mei ai, kae 'oua kuó ke totongi 'a e sēnine kotoa pē. Pea lolotonga 'a ho'o 'i he fale fakapōpulá te ke lava koā ke totongi ha sēnine 'e taha? Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, 'Ikai.

27 Vakai, kuo tohi 'e kinautolu 'i he kuonga mu'á, 'oua na'a ke tono;

28 Ka 'oku ou tala kiate kimoutolu, ko ia 'okú ne fakasio ki ha fefine, ke holi ki aí, kuo 'osi tono ia 'i hono lotó.

29 Vakai, 'oku ou tuku kiate kimoutolu 'a e fekau, ke 'oua na'a mou tuku ke hū ha me'a 'e taha 'o e ngaahi fakakauká ni ki homou lotó;

30 He 'oku lelei ange ke mou fakafisi 'a kimoutolu mei he ngaahi me'á ni, 'o mou tauhi ai kiate au 'i hono fua homou kolosí, 'i hano lī 'a kimoutolu ki heli.

31 Kuo tohi 'o pehē, ko ia 'okú ne tukuange hono uaifí, ke ne 'oange kiate ia 'a e tohi vete.

Therefore come unto me and be ye saved; for verily I say unto you, that except ye shall keep my commandments, which I have commanded you at this time, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.

Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it is also written before you, that thou shalt not kill, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;

But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

Therefore, if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me, and rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee—

Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you.

Agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in the way with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and thou shalt be cast into prison.

Verily, verily, I say unto thee, thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid the uttermost sennine. And while ye are in prison can ye pay even one sennine? Verily, verily, I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, it is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery;

But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.

Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;

For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell.

It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement.

32 Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko ia ia 'e tukuange hono uaifí, tuku kehe ko e 'uhinga 'i ha'ane halaia 'i he fe'auaki, 'o tupu ai ha'ane tonono; pea ko ia ia 'e mali mo ia kuo vete 'okú ne halaia ai 'i he tonono.

33 Pea ko e tahá kuo tohi foki, 'oua na'á ke fuakava, kae fai ki he 'Eikí ho'omou ngaahi fuakavá;

34 Ka ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oua te mou fuakava 'i ha me'a 'e taha; pe ki he langí, he ko e 'afio'anga ia 'o e 'Otuá;

35 Pe ki he fonuá, he ko hono tu'unga-va'é ia;

36 Pea 'oua foki te mou fuakava ki he 'ulú, he 'oku 'ikai te mou fa'a ngaohi ha tu'oni lou'ulu ke 'uli'uli pe hinehina;

37 Ka ke mou lea pē 'Io, pe 'io; mo 'Ikai, pe 'ikai; he 'o ka mou ka lea 'aki ha me'a lahi ange heni 'oku kovi ia.

38 Pea vakai, kuo tohi, ke totongi 'aki 'a e mata 'a e mata, mo e nifo 'a e nifo;

39 Ka 'oku ou pehē atu kiate kimoutolu, ke 'oua na'a mou fetongi ha ngāue kovi, ka ko ia te ne sipi 'i ho kou'ahē to'omata'ú, fulihi atu kiate ia ho kou'ahē 'e tahá foki;

40 Pea kapau 'e faka'ilo koe 'e ha tangata 'i he fakamaau'angá pea to'o ho kofu tu'á, tuku ke ne ma'u mo ho pulupulú foki;

41 Pea kapau 'e fakamālohi 'i koe 'e ha taha ke ke 'alu 'i ha maile 'e taha, 'alu mo ia 'i ha maile 'e ua.

42 Foaki kiate ia 'oku kole kiate koé, pea ko ia 'oku fie nō meiate koé 'oua na'a fulitu'a kiate ia.

43 Pea vakai kuo tohi foki, ke ke 'ofa ki ho kaungā'apí pea fehi'a ki ho filí;

44 Kae vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'ofa ki homou ngaahi filí, tāpuaki 'i 'a kinautolu 'oku kape 'i 'a kimoutolú, failelei kiate kinautolu 'oku fehi'a kiate kimoutolú, pea hūfia 'a kinautolu 'oku ngaohikovia 'a kimoutolu mo fakatanga 'i 'a kimoutolú;

45 Fai 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ni koe'uhi ke mou hoko ko e fānau 'a ho'omou Tamai 'a ia 'oku 'i he langí; he 'okú ne pule ke hopo hake 'ene lá'aá ki he angakovi mo e angaleleí.

46 Ko ia ko e ngaahi me'a 'a ia na'e 'o e kuonga mu'á, 'a ia na'e 'i he fonono, kuo fakakakato kotoa ia 'iate au.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery.

And again it is written, thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths;

But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all; neither by heaven, for it is God's throne;

Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;

Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair black or white;

But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay; for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil.

And behold, it is written, an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth;

But I say unto you, that ye shall not resist evil, but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also;

And if any man will sue thee at the law and take away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also;

And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain.

Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn thou not away.

And behold it is written also, that thou shalt love thy neighbor and hate thine enemy;

But behold I say unto you, love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and persecute you;

That ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good.

Therefore those things which were of old time, which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.

47 Kuo fakangata 'a e ngaahi me'a motu'á, kae hoko 'o
fo'ou 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē.

48 Ko ia, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mou haohaoa 'o hangē pē
ko aú, pe hangē ko e haohaoa ho'omou Tamai 'a ia 'oku
'i he langí.

Old things are done away, and all things have become
new.

Therefore I would that ye should be perfect even as I,
or your Father who is in heaven is perfect.

3 Nīfai 13

- 1 Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē, 'oku ou lotu ke mou foaki ki he masivá; kae vakai ke 'oua na'a mou fai ho'omou foaki 'i he 'ao 'o e kakaí koe'uhí ke nau mamata ki ai; ka pehē 'e 'ikai te mou ma'u ha'amou totongi mei ho'omou Tamai 'a ia 'oku 'i he langí.
- 2 Ko ia, 'o ka mou ka fai ho'omou foaki 'oua na'a mou ifi ha me'a lea 'i homou 'aó, 'o hangē ko ia 'oku fai 'e he kau mālualoí 'i he ngaahi fale lotú mo e ngaahi halá, koe'uhi ke nau ma'u 'a e fakamālō 'a e kakaí. Ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo nau ma'u 'enau totongi.
- 3 Ka 'o ka mou ka fai ha foaki 'oua na'a tuku ke 'ilo 'e homou nima to'ohemá 'a e me'a 'oku fai 'e homou nima to'omata'ú;
- 4 Koe'uhi ke lilo ho'omou foaki; pea ko ho'omou Tamai 'oku 'afio'i 'i he liló, te ne totongi fakahā kiate kimoutolu.
- 5 Pea 'o ka mou ka lotu 'oua na'a mou fai 'o hangē ko e kau mālualoí, he 'oku nau manako ke lotu 'o tu'u 'i he ngaahi fale lotú mo e ngaahi tuliki 'o e ngaahi halá, koe'uhi ke mamata kiate kinautolu 'a e kakaí. Ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo nau ma'u 'enau totongi.
- 6 Ka ko kimoutolu, 'o ka mou ka lotu, hū ki homou potu liló, pea ka tāpuni homou matapaá, lotu ki ho'omou Tamai 'a ia 'oku 'i he liló; pea ko ho'omou Tamai, 'a ia 'okú ne 'afio'i 'i he liló, te ne totongi fakahā kiate kimoutolu.
- 7 Ka 'o ka mou ka lotu, 'oua na'a mou toutou lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a tatau ta'e'aonga ma'u pē, 'o hangē ko e hītení, he 'oku nau mahalo 'e ongo'i 'a kinautolu 'i he'enau ngaahi lea lahí.
- 8 Ko ia 'oua na'a mou tatau mo kinautolu, he 'oku 'afio'i 'e ho'omou Tamai 'a e ngaahi me'a 'oku mou masiva aí 'i he te'eki ai ke mou kole kiate iá.
- 9 Ko ia ke anga peheni 'a ho'omou lotú: Ko 'emau Tamai 'oku 'i he langi, ke tapuhā ho huafá.
- 10 Ke fai ho finangaló 'i māmani 'o hangē ko ia 'i he langí.

3 Nephi 13

Verily, verily, I say that I would that ye should do alms unto the poor; but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.

Therefore, when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth;

That thine alms may be in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.

And when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.

Be not ye therefore like unto them, for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him.

After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.

Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

11 Pea fakamolemole ‘emau ngaahi angahala, ‘o hangē ko ‘emau fakamolemole ‘i ‘a kinautolu kuo fai hala mai kiate kinautolú.

12 Pea ‘oua na ‘a tuku ‘a kinautolu ki he ‘ahi‘ahí, kae fakamo‘ui ‘a kinautolu mei he koví.

13 He ‘oku ‘o‘ou ‘a e pule‘angá, mo e mālohí, mo e nāunaú ‘o ta‘engata. ‘Ēmeni.

14 He kapau ‘oku mou fakamolemole ‘i ‘a e ngaahi angahala ‘a e kakaí, ‘e fakamolemole ‘i ‘a kimoutolu foki ‘e ho‘omou Tamai fakalangí.

15 Ka kapau ‘e ‘ikai te mou fakamolemole ‘i ‘a e ngaahi angahala ‘a e kakaí ‘e ‘ikai foki fakamolemole ‘i ‘e ho‘omou Tamai ‘a ho‘omou ngaahi angahala.

16 Pea ko e tahá, kapau te mou ‘aukai ‘oua na ‘a mou hangē ko e kau mālualoi, ‘o fakamatapeko, he ‘oku nau fakakehe honau matá koe‘uhi ke hā ki he kakaí ‘oku nau ‘aukai. Ko e mo‘oni ‘oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo nau ma‘u ‘enau totongí.

17 Ka ko kimoutolu, ‘o ka mou ka ‘aukai, pani homou ‘ulú, mo kaukau ‘i homou matá;

18 Koe‘uhi ke ‘oua na ‘a hā ki he kakaí ‘oku mou ‘aukai, kae hā ki ho‘omou Tamai, ‘a ia ‘oku ‘afio ‘i he liló; pea ko ho‘omou Tamai, ‘a ia ‘okú ne ‘afio ‘i ‘i he liló, te ne totongi fakahā kiate kimoutolu.

19 ‘Oua ‘e tokonaki ma‘amoutolu ‘a e koloa ‘i māmani, ‘a ia ‘oku kai ‘e he ané mo e ‘ume‘umeá, pea ‘oku hae‘i ‘e he kau kaiha‘á ‘o kaiha‘asi.

20 Kae tokonaki ma‘amoutolu ‘a e ngaahi koloa ‘i he langí, ‘a ia ‘oku ‘ikai kai ‘e he ané pe ‘ume‘umeá, pea ‘oku ‘ikai hae‘i ‘e he kau kaiha‘á ‘o kaiha‘así.

21 He ko e potu ‘oku ‘i ai ho‘omou koloá, ‘e ‘i ai foki mo homou lotó.

22 Ko e maama ‘o e sinó ko e matá; ko ia, kapau ‘oku lelei ho matá, ‘e fonu ho sinó kotoa ‘i he maama.

23 Ka kapau ‘oku kovi ho matá, ‘e fonu ‘a ho sino kotoa ‘i he fakapo‘uli. Ko ia, kapau kuo fakapo‘uli ‘a e maama ‘a ia ‘oku ‘iate koé, ‘e fēfē hono lahi ‘o e fakapo‘uli ko iá!

24 ‘Oku ‘ikai fa‘a tauhi ‘e ha tangata ‘a e ‘eiki ‘e toko ua; he te ne fehí‘a ki he toko taha kae ‘ofa ki he toko taha, pe te ne pīkitai ki he toko taha kae lí‘aki ‘a e toko taha. ‘E ‘ikai te mou fa‘a tauhi ‘a e ‘Otuá mo e Koloá.

And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil.

For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever. Amen.

For, if ye forgive men their trespasses your heavenly Father will also forgive you;

But if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

Moreover, when ye fast be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and wash thy face;

That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father, who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through and steal;

But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.

For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

The light of the body is the eye; if, therefore, thine eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light.

But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!

No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and Mammon.

25 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē hili 'a e folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola ní na'á ne 'afio ki he toko hongofulu mā ua 'a ia kuó ne filí, 'o ne folofola kiate kinautolu: Manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi lea 'a ia kuó u lea'akí. He vakai, ko kimoutolu 'a e fa'ahinga kuó u fili ke tauhi ki he kakai ní. Ko ia 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oua na'a mou tokanga ki ho'omou mo'uí, ki ha me'a ke mou kai, pe ha me'a ke mou inu; pe ki homou sinó, 'i ha me'a ke mou tuí. 'Ikai 'oku lahi hake 'a e mo'uí 'i he me'akai, mo e sinó 'i he kofu?

26 Vakai ki he fanga manupuna 'o e 'ataá, he 'oku 'ikai te nau tūtūu 'i, pea 'oku 'ikai te nau tu'usi pe tānaki ki ha feleoko; ka 'oku fafanga 'a kinautolu 'e ho'omou Tamai fakalangí. 'Ikai 'oku mou mahu'inga lahi hake 'iate kinautolu?

27 Ko hai 'iate kimoutolu te ne lava 'o fakalahi ki he lōloa 'o hono sinó 'aki ha ofa 'e taha 'i he'ene tokanga ki aí?

28 Pea ko e hā 'oku mou tokanga ai ki hamou kofú? Vakai ki he fisí 'i 'akau 'o e ngoué, mo e anga 'o 'enau tupú; 'oku 'ikai te nau ngāue, pea 'oku 'ikai te nau lālanga;

29 Ka 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, na'e 'ikai tatau 'a e teunga 'o Solomoné 'i hono nāunau kotoa pē, mo ha taha 'o kinautolú ni.

30 Ko ia, kapau 'oku fakakofu 'i pehē 'e he 'Otuá 'a e mohuku 'o e ngoué, 'a ia 'oku 'i ai he 'ahó ni, kae lí 'apongipongi ki he ngoto'umú, 'e pehē pē'ene fakakofu 'i 'a kimoutolú, 'o kapau 'oku 'ikai ke sí 'i ho'omou tuí.

31 Ko ia 'oua na'a mou tokanga, 'o pehē, Ko e hā ke tau kai? pe, Ko e hā ke tau inú? pe, Ke tau kofu 'aki 'a e hā?

32 He 'oku 'afio 'i 'e ho'omou Tamai fakalangí 'oku 'aonga kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē.

33 Ka mou fuofua kumí 'a e pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá mo 'ene mā'oní'oní, pea 'e foaki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē kiate kimoutolu.

34 Ko ia ke 'oua na'a mou tokanga ki he 'apongipongi, koe'uhi 'e tokanga 'a e 'apongipongi ki he'ene ngaahi me'a 'a'ana. 'Oku fé'unga 'a e ngaahi kovi 'o e 'aho taki taha.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he had chosen, and said unto them: Remember the words which I have spoken. For behold, ye are they whom I have chosen to minister unto this people. Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?

Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are ye not much better than they?

Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature?

And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin;

And yet I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like one of these.

Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, even so will he clothe you, if ye are not of little faith.

Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?

For your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things.

But seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.

Take therefore no thought for the morrow, for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof.

3 Nīfai 14

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē hili 'a e folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola nī na'á ne toe fofonga atu ki he fu'u kakai, 'o ne toe folofola atu kiate kinautolu, 'o pehē: Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Oua te mou fakamaau, pea 'e 'ikai fakamāu 'i 'a kimoutolu.
- 2 He ko e anga ko ia 'o ho'omou fakamāu, 'e fakamāu 'i ai 'a kimoutolu; pea ko e fua ko ia te mou fua 'aki 'a e kakai kehé, 'e toe fua 'aki ia 'a kimoutolu foki.
- 3 Pea ko e hā 'okú ke tokanga ai ki he malamala 'i 'akau 'oku 'i he mata 'o ho kāingá, ka 'oku 'ikai te ke tokanga ki he fu'u kongá 'akau 'oku 'i ho mata 'o'ou?
- 4 Pe 'e fēfē ha 'o pehē ki ho tokouá: Tuku ke u to 'o 'a e malamala 'i 'akau mei ho matá—kae vakai, 'oku 'i ai 'a e fu'u kongá 'akau 'i ho mata 'o'ou?
- 5 'E mālualoí, tomu 'a to 'o 'a e fu'u kongá 'akau mei ho mata 'o'ou; pea te ke toki lava 'o mamata lelei ke to 'o 'a e malamala 'i 'akau mei he mata 'o ho kāingá.
- 6 'Oua na 'a 'oatu 'a e me'a toputapú ki he fanga kulií, pe sī ho'omou mata 'i tofé ki he fanga puaká, telia na 'a nau malamalaki ia 'i honau lalo va'é, pea tafoki mai 'o keina 'a kimoutolu.
- 7 Kole, pea 'e foaki kiate kimoutolu; kumi, pea te mou 'ilo; tukituki, pea 'e to 'o kiate kimoutolu.
- 8 He ko ia kotoa pē 'oku kolé, 'okú ne ma'u; pea ko ia 'oku kumí, 'okú ne 'ilo; pea ko ia 'oku tukitukí, 'e to 'o kiate ia.
- 9 Pe ko hai ha tangata 'iate kimoutolu, kapau 'e kole mā 'e hono fohá, peá ne 'oange ki ai ha maka?
- 10 Pe kapau te ne kole ha ika, peá ne 'oange ki ai ha ngata?
- 11 Ko ia kapau ko kimoutolu, 'oku angakoví, 'oku mou 'ilo ke foaki 'a e ngaahi me'a lelei ki ho'omou fānaú, 'e fēfē hono lahi hake 'o e fie foaki 'e ho'omou Tamai 'oku 'i he langí 'a e ngaahi me'a lelei kiate kinautolu 'oku kole kiate iá?
- 12 Ko ia, ko e me'a kotoa pē 'oku mou loto ke fai 'e he kakai kiate kimoutolú, mou fai ia kiate kinautolu, he ko e fonó 'eni mo e kau palōfitá.

3 Nephi 14

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude, and did open his mouth unto them again, saying: Verily, verily, I say unto you, Judge not, that ye be not judged.

For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.

And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?

Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye—and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?

Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.

Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.

Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?

Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets.

13 Mou hū 'i he matapā fāsi'i; he 'oku fālahi 'a e matapaá, mo 'ata'atā 'a e halá, 'a ia 'oku fakatau ki he 'auhá, pea 'oku 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'oku hū ai;

14 He 'oku fāsi'i 'a e matapaá, mo lausi'i 'a e halá, 'oku fakatau ki he mo'uí, pea ko e tokosi'i pē 'oku nau 'ilo iá.

15 Tokanga telia 'a e kau palōfita loí, 'oku ha'u kiate kimoutolu 'i he kofu fakasipi, ka 'i lotó ko e fanga ulofi fekai 'a kinautolu.

16 Te mou 'ilo 'a kinautolu 'i honau ngaahi fuá. 'Oku toli 'e he kakaí 'a e ngaahi kālepí 'i he 'akau talatala, pe ko e fikí 'i he talatala'āmoa?

17 Ko ia 'oku tupu 'i he 'akau lelei kotoa pē 'a e fua lelei; kae tupu 'i he 'akau koví 'a e fua kovi.

18 'E 'ikai fa'a tupu 'i he 'akau lelei 'a e fua kovi, pe tupu 'i he 'akau koví 'a e fua lelei.

19 Ko e 'akau kotoa pē 'oku 'ikai tupu ai 'a e fua lelei 'oku tā hifo ia, pea laku ki he afí.

20 Ko ia, te mou 'ilo 'a kinautolu 'i honau ngaahi fuá.

21 'Oku 'ikai ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku pehē mai kiate au, 'Eiki, 'Eiki, te nau hū ki he pule'anga 'o e langí; ka ko ia 'okú ne fai 'a e finangalo 'o 'eku Tamai 'a ia 'oku 'i he langí.

22 'E pehē mai 'e he tokolahi kiate au 'i he 'aho ko iá: 'Eiki, 'Eiki, 'ikai kuo mau kikite 'i ho huafá, pea 'i ho huafá kuo mau kapusi ki tu'a 'a e kau tēvoló, pea 'i ho huafá kuo mau fai 'a e ngaahi me'a fakaofa lahi?

23 Pea te u toki fakahā kiate kinautolu: Na'e 'ikai 'aupito te u 'ilo 'a kimoutolu; 'alu 'iate au, 'a kimoutolu 'oku fai 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'o e angahalá.

24 Ko ia, ko ia ia 'oku fanongo ki he ngaahi leá ni 'a'aku pea fai ki aí, te u fakatatau ia ki ha tangata poto, 'a ia na'e langa hono falé 'i he funga maka—

25 Pea na'e tō 'a e 'uhá, pea 'oho mai 'a e vaí, pea hoko mo e havilí, 'o tō ki he fale ko iá; ka na'e 'ikai holo ia, he na'e langa ia 'i he funga maka.

26 Ka ko ia ia 'okú ne fanongo ki he 'eku ngaahi talá ni, pea 'ikai fai ki aí 'oku fakatatau ia ki ha tangata vale, 'a ia na'e langa hono falé 'i he 'one'one—

27 Pea na'e tō 'a e 'uhá, pea 'oho mai 'a e vaí, pea na'e angí 'a e matangí 'o fa'aki ki he fale ko iá; pea na'e holo ia, pea ko e me'a lahi 'a 'ene holó.

Enter ye in at the strait gate; for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction, and many there be who go in thereat;

Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.

Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?

Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.

Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

Wherefore, by their fruits ye shall know them.

Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.

Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name have cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works?

And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity.

Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock—

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.

And every one that heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand—

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

3 Nīfai 15

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he faka'osi 'e Sīsū 'ene ngaahi folofola ní, na'e 'afio holo hono fofongá ki he kakai, 'o folofola kiate kinautolu: Vakai, kuo mou fanongo ki he ngaahi me'a na'á ku ako 'aki 'i he te'eki ai ke u 'alu hake ki he'eku Tamaí; ko ia, 'ilonga ia 'e manatu 'i 'a 'eku ngaahi leá ni mo fai ki aí, te u hiki hake ia 'i he 'aho faka'osí.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola ní na'á ne 'afio 'i 'oku 'i ai 'a e ní'ihí 'iate kinautolu 'oku ofo, mo fifili pe ko e hā ha me'a te ne fai ki he fono 'a Mōsesé; he na'e 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu 'a e folofola kuo 'osi 'a e ngaahi me'a motu'á, pea kuo hoko 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'o fo'ou.
- 3 Pea na'á ne folofola kiate kinautolu: 'Oua te mou ofo 'i he'eku tala kiate kimoutolu kuo 'osi 'a e ngaahi me'a motu'á, pea kuo hoko 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'o fo'ou.
- 4 Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kuo fakakakato 'a e fono 'a ia na'e tuku kia Mōsesé.
- 5 Vakai, ko au ia na'á ne foaki 'a e fonó, pea ko au ia 'a ia na'á ne fuakava ki hoku kakai ko 'Isilelí; ko ia, kuo fakakakato 'iate au 'a e fonó, he kuó u ha'u ke fakakakato 'a e fonó; ko ia kuo ngata ia.
- 6 Vakai, 'oku 'ikai te u fakata'e'aonga'i 'a e kau palōfitá, he ko 'enau ngaahi lea kotoa pē 'oku te'eki ai ke fakahoko 'iate aú, ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e fakahoko ia kotoa pē.
- 7 Pea ko e me'a 'i he'eku tala kiate kimoutolu kuo 'osi 'a e ngaahi me'a motu'á, 'oku 'ikai te u fakata'e'aonga'i ai 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo lea 'aki 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'a 'e hokó.
- 8 He vakai, 'oku te'eki ai fakahoko hono kotoa 'o e fuakava 'a ia na'á ku fai mo hoku kakai; ka ko e fono 'a ia na'e foaki kia Mōsesé 'oku ngata ia 'iate au.
- 9 Vakai, ko au 'a e fonó, pea mo e māmá. Sio kiate au, pea kātaki ki he ngata'angá, pea te mou mo'ui; he ko ia ia 'okú ne kātaki ki he ngata'angá te u foaki kiate ia 'a e mo'ui ta'engatá.
- 10 Vakai, kuó u foaki kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi fekaú; ko ia tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekaú. Pea ko e fonó 'eni mo e me'a na'e tohi 'e he kau palōfitá, he ko e mo'oni na'a nau fakamo'oni kiate au.

3 Nephi 15

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them: Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to my Father; therefore, whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he perceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered what he would concerning the law of Moses; for they understood not the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses.

Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted with my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to fulfil the law; therefore it hath an end.

Behold, I do not destroy the prophets, for as many as have not been fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled.

And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are to come.

For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.

Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and ye shall live; for unto him that endureth to the end will I give eternal life.

Behold, I have given unto you the commandments; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me.

11 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola ní, na'á ne folofola ki he toko hongofulu mā ua 'a ia kuó ne filí:

12 Ko 'eku kau ākongā 'a kimoutolu; pea ko e maama 'a kimoutolu ki he kakaí ni, 'a ia ko e toenga 'o e fale 'o Siosefá.

13 Pea vakai, ko e fonua 'eni 'o homou tofi'á; pea kuo foaki ia 'e he Tamaí kiate kimoutolu.

14 Pea kuo te'eki ai ha taimi 'e fai kiate au 'e he Tamaí ha fekau ke u fakahā ia ki homou kāinga 'i Selūsalemá.

15 Pea kuo te'eki ai ha taimi 'e fai kiate au 'e he Tamaí ha fekau ke u fakahā kiate kinautolu ha me'a 'o kau ki he ngaahi fa'ahinga kehe 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, 'a ia kuo tataki atu 'e he Tamaí mei he fonuá.

16 Ko hono kotoa 'eni 'o e me'a na'e fekau kiate au 'e he Tamaí, ke u fakahā kiate kinautolú:

17 'Oku 'i ai mo 'eku fanga sipi kehe 'oku 'ikai kau 'i he loto'áá ni; 'oku totonu ke u 'omi mo kinautolu foki, pea te nau fanongo ki hoku le'ó; pea 'e 'i ai 'a e loto'ā pē taha, mo e tauhi pē taha.

18 Pea ko 'eni, ko e me'a 'i he kia-kekevá mo e ta'etuí na'e 'ikai ai ke mahino kiate kinautolu 'eku leá; ko ia na'e fekau au 'e he Tamaí ke 'oua na'á ku lea 'aki mo ha toe me'a kehe kiate kinautolu 'i he me'á ni.

19 Kā, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu kuo fekau au 'e he Tamaí, pea 'oku ou fakahā ia kiate kimoutolu, na'e fakamavahe 'a kimoutolu meiate kinautolú koe'uhi ko 'enau angahalá; ko ia koe'uhi ko 'enau angahalá 'oku 'ikai ai te nau 'ilo kiate kimoutolú.

20 Pea ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou toe pehē kiate kimoutolu 'oku 'i ai ha ngaahi fa'ahinga kehe kuo fakamavahe 'i 'e he Tamaí meiate kinautolu; pea koe'uhi ko 'enau angahalá 'oku 'ikai ai te nau 'ilo kiate kinautolú.

21 Pea ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko kimoutolu ia 'a e fa'ahinga 'a ia na'á ku lau ki ai 'o pehē: 'Oku ai mo 'eku fanga sipi kehe 'oku 'ikai 'i he loto'áá ni; te u 'omi mo kinautolu foki, pea te nau fanongo ki hoku le'ó; pea 'e 'i ai 'a e loto'ā pē taha, mo e tauhi pē taha.

22 Pea na'e ta'emahino kiate kinautolu 'a 'eku leá, he na'a nau mahalo ko e lau ia ki he kau Senitailé; he na'e 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu 'e fakaului 'a e kau Senitailé 'i he'enau malangá.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen:

Ye are my disciples; and ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.

And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it unto you.

And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.

Neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land.

This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:

That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them.

But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.

And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes hath the Father separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them.

And verily I say unto you, that ye are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching.

23 Pea na'e 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu 'eku pehē te nau fanongo ki hoku le'ó; pea na'e 'ikai mahino kiate kinautolu 'eku pehē 'e 'ikai fanongo 'a e kau Senitailé 'i ha taimi ki hoku le'ó—pea 'e 'ikai te u fakahā au kiate kinautolu ka 'i he Laumālie Mā'oni'oní pē.

24 Kae vakai, kuo mou fanongo ki hoku le'ó, mo mamata foki kiate au; pea ko 'eku fanga sipi 'a kimoutolu, pea 'oku lau 'a kimoutolu fakataha mo kinautolu kuo foaki kiate au 'e he Tamai.

And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice—that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.

But behold, ye have both heard my voice, and seen me; and ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered among those whom the Father hath given me.

3 Nīfai 16

- 1 Pea ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku 'i ai mo 'eku fanga sipi kehe, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai 'o e fonuá ni, pe ko e fonua ko Selūsalemá, pe 'i ha potu 'e taha 'o e fonua 'a ia 'oku takatakai 'i he ngaahi potu kuó u 'i ai ke malangá.
- 2 He ko e fa'ahinga 'oku ou lau ki aí ko kinautolu ia kuo te'eki ai fanongo ki hoku le'ó; pea kuo 'ikai 'i ai ha taimi te u fakahā au 'i ha taimi kiate kinautolu.
- 3 Ka kuó u ma'u ha fekau mei he Tamaí ke u 'alu atu kiate kinautolu, pea te nau fanongo ki hoku le'ó, pea lau fakataha 'a kinautolu mo 'eku fanga sipi, koe'uhí ke 'i ai 'a e loto'ā pē taha mo e tauhi pē taha; ko ia 'oku ou 'alu ai ke fakahā au kiate kinautolu.
- 4 Pea 'oku ou fekau kiate kimoutolu ke mou tohi 'a e ngaahi leá ni 'o ka hili 'eku 'alú, koe'uhí na'a 'iloange kuo 'ikai ke 'eke 'e hoku kakai 'i Selūsalemá, ki he Tamaí 'i hoku hingoá, 'a ia kuo nau mamata kiate au, pea nau 'iate au lolotonga 'eku ngāue fakafaifekaú, ke nau ma'u ha 'ilo kiate kimoutolu 'i he Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, kae 'uma'ā foki ki he ngaahi fa'ahinga kehe 'a ia 'oku 'ikai te nau 'ilo ki aí, koe'uhí ke tauhi 'a e ngaahi leá ni 'a ia te mou tohi pea fakahā ia ki he kau Senitailé, koe'uhí 'i he kakato 'o e kau Senitailé, pea ko e toenga 'o homou hakó, 'a ia kuo fakamovetevete 'i he funga 'o e māmaní tu'unga 'i he 'enau ta'etui, 'e fakafoki mai 'a kinautolu ki he loto'aá, pe te nau ma'u ha 'ilo kiate au, ko honau Huhu'í.
- 5 Pea te u toki tānaki fakataha mai 'a kinautolu mei he vahe 'e fā 'o māmaní; pea te u toki fakahoko 'a e fuakava, 'a ia kuo fai 'e he Tamaí ki he kakai kotoa pē 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.
- 6 Pea 'oku monū'ia 'a e kau Senitailé, koe'uhi ko 'enau tui kiate au, 'a ia 'oku tupu mei he Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'a ia 'okú ne fakamo'oni' i au pea mo e Tamaí kiate kinautolu.
- 7 Vakai, koe'uhi ko 'enau tui kiate au, 'oku folofola 'e he Tamaí, pea koe'uhi ko ho'omou ta'etui 'a kimoutolú, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli, 'e hoko mai 'i he ngaahi 'aho faka'osí 'a e mo'oni ki he kau Senitailé, koe'uhi ke fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a hono kakato 'o e ngaahi me'á ni.

3 Nephi 16

And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep, which are not of this land, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister.

For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.

But I have received a commandment of the Father that I shall go unto them, and that they shall hear my voice, and shall be numbered among my sheep, that there may be one fold and one shepherd; therefore I go to show myself unto them.

And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer.

And then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth; and then will I fulfil the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.

And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father.

Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.

8 Ka 'e mala'ia, 'oku folofola 'e he Tamaí, 'a e kau ta'etui 'o e kau Senitailé—he neongo 'enau ō mai ki he funga 'o e fonua ní, pea kuo nau fakamovetevete 'a hoku kakai 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí; pea kuo kapusi ki tu 'a meiate kinautolu 'a hoku kakai 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, pea kuo malamalaki hifo 'a kinautolu 'i honau lalo va'é;

9 Pea koe'uhi ko e ngaahi 'alo'ofa 'a e Tamaí ki he kau Senitailé, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a e Tamaí ki hoku kakai 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'o ka hili 'eni kotoa pē, pea hili 'eku pule ke te'ia 'a hoku kakai 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, pea ngaohikovia, mo tāmata'i, pea kapusi ki tu 'a meiate kinautolu, pea hoko 'o nau fehi'anekina 'e kinautolu, pea hoko ko e manuki'anga mo e luma'anga 'iate kinautolú—

10 Pea kuo fekau pehē 'e he Tamaí ke u pehē kiate kimoutolu: 'I he 'aho 'e fai angahala ai 'a e kau Senitailé ki he'eku ongoongolelé, pea nau li'aki hono kakato 'o 'eku ongoongolelé, pea nau fielahi 'i he hīkisia 'a honau lotó 'o lahi hake 'i he pule'anga kotoa pē, pea lahi hake 'i he kakai kotoa pē 'o e māmani fulipē, pea nau fonu 'i he ngaahi loi kehekehe kotoa pē, mo e ngaahi kākā, mo e ngaahi pau'u, mo e fa'ahinga mālualo kotoa pē, mo e ngaahi fakapō, mo e ngaahi ngāue fakataula'eiki kākā, mo e ngaahi fe'auaki, mo e ngaahi ngāue fakalielia fufū; pea ka nau ka fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, kae li'aki hono kakato 'o 'eku ongoongolelé, vakai, 'oku folofola 'e he Tamaí, te u 'ave hono kakato 'o 'eku ongoongolelé meiate kinautolu.

11 Pea te u toki manatu 'i 'a 'eku fuakava 'a ia kuó u fai ki hoku kakai, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli, pea te u 'omi 'eku ongoongolelé kiate kinautolu.

12 Pea te u fakahā kiate koe, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli, 'e 'ikai ma'u 'e he kau Senitailé ha mālohi kiate kimoutolu; ka te u manatu 'i 'eku fuakava kiate koé, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli, pea te mou ma'u 'a e 'ilo ki hono kakato 'o 'eku ongoongolelé.

13 Ka 'o ka fakatomala 'a e kau Senitailé pea tafoki mai kiate au, 'oku folofola 'e he Tamaí, vakai 'e lau fakataha 'a kinautolu mo hoku kakai, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli.

14 Pea 'e 'ikai te u tuku hoku kakai, 'a ia 'oku nau 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, ke nau 'alu atu 'iate kinautolu, pea molomoloki hifo 'a kinautolu, 'oku folofola 'e he Tamaí.

But wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;

And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them—

And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.

And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.

And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel.

And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father.

15 Ka 'o ka 'ikai te nau tafoki mai kiate au, pea tokanga ki hoku le'ó, te u tuku kinautolu, 'io, te u tuku 'a hoku kakaí, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli, ke nau 'alu atu 'iate kinautolu, pea molomoloki hifo 'a kinautolu, pea te nau hangē ko e māšima kuo mole mei ai hono koná, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai toe 'aonga, ka ke lī ki tu'a, pea molomoloki hifo 'i he lalo va'e 'o hoku kakaí, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli.

16 Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo fekau pehē 'e he Tamaí kiate au—ke u foaki ki he kakaí ni 'a e fonuá ni ke hoko ko honau tofi'a.

17 Pea 'e toki fakamo'oni 'i 'a e ngaahi lea 'a e palōfita ko 'Īsaiá, 'a ia 'oku pehē:

18 'E hiki hake 'e ho kau tangata le'ó 'a e le'o; pea 'i he le'o pē taha te nau hiva fakataha, he te nau loto-tatau 'o ka toe 'omi 'e he 'Eikí 'a Saione.

19 Ke pā mai 'i he fiefia, hiva fakataha, 'a kimoutolu 'e ngaahi potu maumau 'o Selūsalemá; he kuo fakafiemālie 'i 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono kakaí, kuó ne huhu 'i 'a Selūsalema.

20 Kuo fakahā 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono to'ukupu mā'oni'oni 'i he 'ao 'o e pule'anga kotoa pē; pea 'e mamata 'e he ngaahi ngata'anga kotoa pē 'o māmaní ki he fakamo'ui 'a e 'Otuá.

But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father commanded me—that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance.

And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled, which say:

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing, for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.

3 Nīfai 17

- 1 Vakai, ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola ní na'á ne toe 'afio holo ki he kakaí, 'o ne folofola atu kiate kinautolu: Vakai, kuo ofi hoku taimí.
- 2 'Oku hā mai kiate au 'oku mou vaivai, pea 'oku 'ikai fa'a mahino kiate kimoutolu 'a 'eku ngaahi lea kotoa pē 'a ia kuo fekau kiate au 'e he Tamaí ke u lea 'aki kiate kimoutolu he taimi ko 'ení.
- 3 Ko ia, mou foki atu ki homou ngaahi 'apí, pea fakalaulauloto ki he ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuó u lea'akí, pea kole ki he Tamaí, 'i hoku hingoá, koe'uhi ke mahino kiate kimoutolu, pea teuteu homou 'atamaí ki he 'apongipongí, pea te u toe ha'u kiate kimoutolu.
- 4 Ka ko 'eni 'oku ou 'alu ki he Tamaí, pea ke fakahā au foki ki he ngaahi fa'ahinga 'o 'Isileli kuo pulí, he 'oku 'ikai ke puli 'a kinautolu ki he Tamaí, he 'okú ne 'afio 'i 'a e potu kuó ne 'ave 'a kinautolu ki aí.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e folofola pehē 'e Sīsúú, na'e toe 'afio holo hono fofongá ki he kakaí, 'o ne 'afio 'i 'oku nau tangi, mo nau sio fakamama'u kiate ia 'o hangē 'oku nau fie kole kiate ia ke ne nofo 'o kí 'i fuofuoloa ange mo kinautolu.
- 6 Pea na'á ne folofola kiate kinautolu: Vakai, 'oku fonu hoku lotó 'i he 'ofa mamahi kiate kimoutolu.
- 7 'Oku 'i ai ha mou ní 'ihi 'oku puke 'iate kimoutolu? Mou 'omi 'a kinautolu ki heni. 'Oku 'i ai hamou ní 'ihi 'oku ketu, pe kui, pe heke, pe pipiki, pe kilia, pe mate ha kupu 'o honau sinó, pe tulí, pe puke 'i ha mahakí 'e taha? 'Omi 'a kinautolu ki heni pea te u fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu, he 'oku ou 'ofa mamahi kiate kimoutolu; 'oku fonu hoku lotó 'i he 'alo'ofa.
- 8 He 'oku ou 'ilo 'oku mou faka'amu ke u fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e me'a kuó u fai ki homou kāinga 'i Selūsalemá, he 'oku ou 'ilo 'i 'oku fé'unga ho'omou tuí ke u fakamo'ui 'a kimoutolu.
- 9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'ene folofola peheé, na'e ō mai fakataha 'a e fu'u kakaí kotoa pē, mo honau kakai mahakí, mo honau kakai faingata'a'íá, mo honau kakai ketú, mo honau kakai kuí, mo honau kakai noá, pea mo kinautolu kotoa pē na'a nau puke 'i ha fa'ahinga mahakí; pea na'á ne fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'i he 'omi 'a kinautolu kiate íá.

3 Nephi 17

Behold, now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude, and he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand.

I perceive that ye are weak, that ye cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you at this time.

Therefore, go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.

But now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he hath taken them.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus spoken, he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude, and beheld they were in tears, and did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.

And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.

Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leprous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.

For I perceive that ye desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem, for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.

And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.

- 10 Pea na'a nau punou hifo kotoa pē, 'a kinautolu kuo fakamo'uí pea mo kinautolu foki na'e mo'ui lelei, 'i hono lalo va'é, 'o nau hū kiate ia; pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē na'e lava ke o mai mei he fu'u kakaí na'a nau 'uma ki hono va'é, 'o nau fufulu ai hono va'é 'aki 'a honau lo'imatá.
- 11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fekau ke 'omi 'enau fānau íkí.
- 12 Ko ia na'a nau 'omi 'enau fānau íkí 'o tuku 'a kinautolu 'i he funga kekelelé 'o takatakai 'iate ia, pea na'e tu'u 'a Sīsū 'i honau lotolotongá; pea na'e tu'u 'atā 'a e kakaí kae 'oua kuo 'omi 'a kinautolu kotoa pē kiate ia.
- 13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono 'omi 'a kinautolu kotoa péé, pea tu'u 'a Sīsū 'i honau lotolotongá, na'á ne fekau ki he kakaí ke nau tū'ulutui hifo ki he kekelelé.
- 14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'enau tū'ulutui ki he kekelelé, na'e to'e 'a Sīsū 'i hono lotó, 'o pehē: 'E Tamaí, 'oku ou mamahi koe'uhi ko e fai angahala 'a e kakai 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.
- 15 Pea 'i he hili 'ene folofola 'aki 'a e ngaahi folofola ní, na'á ne tū'ulutui hifo mo ia ki he kekelelé; pea vakai na'á ne lotu ki he Tamaí, pea ko e ngaahi me'a na'á ne lotu 'akí 'oku 'ikai fá'a tohi, pea na'e fakamo'oni ki ai 'a e kakai 'a ia na'a nau fanongo kiate íá.
- 16 Pea ko e anga 'eni 'o 'enau fakamo'oni: 'Oku te'eki ai mamata 'e ha mata, pea te'eki ai fanongo 'e ha telinga, 'i mu'a, ki ha ngaahi fu'u me'a ma'ongo'onga mo fakafofo 'o hangē ko ia na'a mau mamata mo fanongo ki hono folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū ki he Tamaí;
- 17 Pea koloto ke fá'a lea 'aki 'e ha 'elelo, pea fá'a tohi 'e ha tangata, pea 'oku 'ikai fá'a mahino ki he loto 'o e tangatá ha ngaahi me'a ma'ongo'onga mo fakafofo 'o hangē ko e ngaahi me'a na'a mau mamata mo fanongo ki hono folofola 'aki 'e Sīsúú; pea koloto ke fá'a 'ilo'i 'e ha taha 'a e fiefia 'a ia na'e fakafonu 'aki homau laumālié 'i he taimi na'a mau fanongo ai ki he'ene hūfekina 'a kinautolu ki he Tamaí.
- 18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he faka'osi 'e Sīsū 'a 'ene lotu ki he Tamaí, na'á ne tu'u hake; ka na'e pehē fau hono lahi 'o e fiefia 'a e kakaí kuo vaivai honau lotó.
- 19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e folofola 'a Sīsū kiate kinautolu, 'o fekau ke nau tu'u hake.

And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.

And it came to pass that he commanded that their little children should be brought.

So they brought their little children and set them down upon the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst; and the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.

And it came to pass that when they had all been brought, and Jesus stood in the midst, he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground.

And it came to pass that when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within himself, and said: Father, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel.

And when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the earth; and behold he prayed unto the Father, and the things which he prayed cannot be written, and the multitude did bear record who heard him.

And after this manner do they bear record: The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so great and marvelous things as we saw and heard Jesus speak unto the Father;

And no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man, neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak; and no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the Father.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father, he arose; but so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.

And it came to pass that Jesus spake unto them, and bade them arise.

20 Pea na'a nau tu'u hake mei he kekelé, pea na'a ne folofola atu kiate kinautolu: 'Oku mou monū'ia koe'uhi ko ho'omou tuí. Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku kakato 'a 'eku fiefiá.

21 Pea 'i he 'osi 'ene folofola 'aki 'a e ngaahi folofola ní, na'a ne tangi, pea na'e fakamo'oni ki ai 'a e kakaí, pea na'a ne fua hake 'a 'enau fānau íkí, taki taha, 'o ne tāpuaki 'i 'a kinautolu, mo hūfaki 'i 'a kinautolu ki he Tamaí.

22 Pea hili 'ene fai 'ení na'a ne toe tangi;

23 Pea folofola ia ki he kakaí, 'o pehē ange kiate kinautolu: Vakai ki ho'omou fānau íkí.

24 Pea 'i he'enau hanga atu ke vakaí na'a nau tangaki hake honau matá ki he langí, 'o nau mamata ki he matangaki 'a e langí, pea na'a nau vakai ki he kau 'āngelo 'oku 'alu hifo mei he langí 'o hangē 'oku nau 'i he lotolotonga 'o e afi; pea nau 'alu hifo 'o takatakai 'a e fānau iiki ko íá, pea na'e takatakai 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e afi; pea na'e tauhi 'a kinautolu 'e he kau 'āngeló.

25 Pea na'e mamata mo fanongo mo fakamo'oni 'i 'e he kakaí; pea 'oku nau 'ilo 'oku mo'oni 'enau fakamo'oni he na'a nau mamata mo fanongo kotoa pē, ko e tangata taki taha ma'ana; pea ko honau tokolahí ko e toko ua afe nimangeau nai; pea na'e kau ai 'a e kakai tangata, kakai fefine, mo e fānau.

And they arose from the earth, and he said unto them: Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now behold, my joy is full.

And when he had said these words, he wept, and the multitude bare record of it, and he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, and prayed unto the Father for them.

And when he had done this he wept again;

And he spake unto the multitude, and said unto them: Behold your little ones.

And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the midst of fire; and they came down and encircled those little ones about, and they were encircled about with fire; and the angels did minister unto them.

And the multitude did see and hear and bear record; and they know that their record is true for they all of them did see and hear, every man for himself; and they were in number about two thousand and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men, women, and children.

3 Nīfai 18

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'e Sīsū ki he'ene kau ākongá ke nau 'omi ha mā mo e uaine kiate ia.
- 2 Pea 'i he lolotonga 'enau 'alu ke 'omi 'a e mā mo e uainé, na'á ne fekau ki he kakaí ke nau nofo hifo ki he kelekelé.
- 3 Pea 'i he ha'u 'a e kau ākongá mo e maá mo e uainé, na'á ne to'o 'a e maá 'o pakipaki mo tāpuaki'i ia; pea ne 'oatu ki he kau ākongá mo fekau ke nau kai.
- 4 Pea 'i he hili 'enau kai 'o mākoná, na'á ne fekau ke nau 'oatu ki he kakaí.
- 5 Pea 'i he hili 'a e kai 'a e kakaí 'o mākoná, na'á ne folofola ki he kau ākongá: Vakai, 'e fakanofa ha tokotaha 'iate kimoutolu, pea te u tuku kiate ia 'a e mālohi ke ne pakipaki 'a e maá mo tāpuaki'i ia pea 'oatu ki he kakaí 'o hoku siasí, kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'e tui mo papitaiso 'i hoku hingoa.
- 6 Pea ke mou manatu 'i ke fai 'eni ma'u ai pē, 'o hangē ko ia na'á ku fai, 'o hangē ko 'eku pakipaki 'a e maá mo tāpuaki'i ia, mo 'oatu kiate kimoutolú.
- 7 Pea te mou fai 'eni ko e fakamanatu ki hoku sinó, 'a ia kuó u fakahā kiate kimoutolú. Pea 'e hoko ia koe fakamo'oni ki he Tamaí 'oku mou manatu ma'u ai pē kiate au. Pea kapau 'oku mou manatu ma'u ai pē kiate au te mou ma'u 'a hoku Laumālié ke ne 'iate kimoutolu.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'ene folofola 'aki 'a e ngaahi folofola ní, na'á ne fekau ki he'ene kau ākongá ke nau to'o 'a e ipu 'o e uainé 'o inu ai, pea ke nau 'oatu foki ki he kakaí ke nau inu ai.
- 9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fai pehē, pea inu ai 'o nau fiu; pea nau 'oatu ki he kakaí, 'o nau inu ai, 'o nau fiu.
- 10 Pea 'i he hili hono fai 'eni 'e he kau ākongá, na'e folofola ange 'a Sīsū kiate kinautolu: 'Oku monū'ia 'a kimoutolu koe'uhi ko e me'a ko 'eni kuo mou fai, 'i ho'omou fai 'a e ngaahi me'a kuó u fekau kiate kimoutolú, pea 'oku fakamo'oni'i ai ki he Tamaí 'oku mou fie fai 'a e me'a 'a ia kuó u fekau kiate kimoutolú.

3 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.

And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.

And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.

And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.

And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.

And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.

And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.

And it came to pass that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.

And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

11 Pea te mou fai 'eni ma'u ai pē kiate kinautolu 'oku fakatomala mo papitaiso 'i hoku hingoá; pea te mou fai ia 'i he fakamanatu ki hoku toto, 'a ia kuó u lilingi koe'uhi ko kimoutolú, koe'uhi ke mou fakamo'oni'ki he Tamaí 'oku mou manatu ma'u ai pē kiate au. Pea kapau 'oku mou manatu ma'u ai pē kiate au te mou ma'u hoku Laumālié ke 'iate kimoutolu.

12 Pea 'oku ou tuku 'a e fekau kiate kimoutolu ke mou fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni. Pea kapau te mou fai ma'u ai pē 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'oku mou monū'ia, he kuo mou langa 'i he'eku maká.

13 Ka ko ia ia 'iate kimoutolu te ne fai 'o lahi hake pe si'i hifo 'i he ngaahi me'a ní, 'oku 'ikai ke langa ia 'i he'eku maká, ka 'oku langa ia 'i ha makatu'unga 'one'one; pea ka tō 'a e 'uhá, pea 'oho mai 'a e vaí, pea angi 'a e matangi 'o fá'aki ki ai, te nau hinga, pea 'oku ava 'a e ngaahi matapā 'o helí ke ma'u 'a kinautolu.

14 Ko ia 'oku monū'ia 'a kimoutolu 'o kapau te mou tauhi 'eku ngaahi fekau, 'a ia kuo fekau kiate au 'e he Tamaí ke u fai kiate kimoutolú.

15 Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo pau ke mou le'o mo lotu ma'u ai pē, telia na'a 'ahí'ahí' 'a kimoutolu 'e he tēvoló, peá ne taki pōpula atu 'a kimoutolu.

16 Pea hangē ko 'eku lotu 'iate kimoutolú ke pehē foki mo ho'omou lotu 'i hoku siasí, 'i hoku kakai 'a ia 'oku nau fakatomala mo papitaiso 'i hoku hingoá. Vakai ko au ko e māmá; kuó u fokotu'u ha sīpinga kiate kimoutolu.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofolá ni ki he'ene kau ākongá, na'á ne toe tafoki atu ki he kakai, 'o ne pehē ange kiate kinautolu:

18 Vakai, ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo pau ke mou le'o mo lotu ma'u ai pē telia na'a mou tō ki he 'ahí'ahí; he 'oku holi 'a Sētane ke ma'u 'a kimoutolu, koe'uhi ke ne sivi' 'a kimoutolu 'o hangē ko e uite.

19 Ko ia kuo pau ke mou lotu ma'u ai pē ki he Tamaí 'i hoku hingoá;

20 Pea 'ilonga ha me'a te mou kole ki he Tamaí 'i hoku hingoá, 'a ia 'oku totonu, 'o tui te mou ma'ú, vakai 'e foaki ia kiate kimoutolu.

And this shall ye always do to those who repent and are baptized in my name; and ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things. And if ye shall always do these things blessed are ye, for ye are built upon my rock.

But whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, but are built upon a sandy foundation; and when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell are ready open to receive them.

Therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments, which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him.

And as I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name. Behold I am the light; I have set an example for you.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude and said unto them:

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always lest ye enter into temptation; for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.

Therefore ye must always pray unto the Father in my name;

And whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.

21 Mou lotu 'i homou ngaahi fāmilí ki he Tamaí, ma'u ai pē 'i hoku hingoá, koe'uhi ke tāpuaki 'i 'a homou uaifí mo ho'omou fānaú.

22 Pea vakai, ke mou fa'a fakataha ke lahi; pea 'oua te mou ta'ofi ha tangata 'e ha'u kiate kimoutolu 'o ka mou ka fakataha, kae tuku ke nau ha'u kiate kimoutolu pea 'oua 'e ta'ofi 'a kinautolu.

23 Ka te mou hūfia 'a kinautolu, pea 'ikai kapusi 'a kinautolu ki tu'a; pea kapau 'oku nau toutou ha'u kiate kimoutolu pea ke mou hūfekina 'a kinautolu ki he Tamaí 'i hoku hingoá.

24 Ko ia, hiki hake ho'omou māamá ke ulu atu ki he māmaní. Vakai ko au 'a e maama ke mou hiki haké—mou fai 'a e me'a kuo mou mamata na'á ku fai. Vakai kuo mou mamata ki he'eku lotu ki he Tamaí, pea kuo mou fakamo'oni kotoa pē ki ai.

25 Pea 'oku mou 'ilo 'i kuó u fekau ke 'oua na'a 'alu hamou toko taha, ka kuó u fekau ke mou ha'u kiate au, koe'uhi ke mou ala mo mamata; ke pehē ho'omou fai ki he māmaní; pea ko ia ia 'okú ne maumau 'i 'a e fekau ní 'okú ne tuku ke taki atu ia ki he 'ahí'ahí.

26 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola ní, na'e toe hanga atu hono fofongá ki he kau ākongá kuó ne filí, 'o ne folofola kiate kinautolu:

27 Vakai ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku ou fai kiate kimoutolu ha fekau 'e taha, pea te u 'alu leva ki he'eku Tamaí koe'uhi ke u fakahoko 'a e ngaahi fekau kehe 'a ia kuó ne fai kiate aú.

28 Pea ko 'eni vakai, ko e fekau 'eni 'oku ou fai kiate kimoutolú, ke 'oua na'a mou tuku ke ma'u 'e ha taha 'oku mou 'ilo 'i 'a hoku kakanó mo hoku totó 'i he'ene ta'efe'ungá, 'o ka mou ka tāpuaki 'i mo tufaki ia.

29 He ko ia ia 'okú ne kai mo inu 'i hoku kakanó mo e totó 'i he'ene ta'efe'ungá, 'okú ne kai mo inu 'a e mala'ia ki hono laumālié; ko ia kapau 'oku mou 'ilo 'oku ta'efe'unga ha tangata ke kai mo inu 'i hoku kakanó mo e totó ke mou ta'ofi ia.

Pray in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.

And behold, ye shall meet together oft; and ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;

But ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father, in my name.

Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed.

And ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go away, but rather have commanded that ye should come unto me, that ye might feel and see; even so shall ye do unto the world; and whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be led into temptation.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen, and said unto them:

Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another commandment, and then I must go unto my Father that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.

And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;

For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him.

- 30 Ka neongo iá, 'oua na'a mou kapusi ia meiate kimoutolu, ka ke mou tokoni kiate ia, pea lotua ia ki he Tamaí, 'i hoku hingoá; pea kapau te ne fakatomala mo papitaiso 'i hoku hingoá, pea te mou toki tali ia, pea tāpuaki 'i mo tufaki kiate ia 'a hoku kakanó mo e totó.
- 31 Ka 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te ne fakatomala 'e 'ikai lau ia fakataha mo hoku kakaí, koe'uhí ke 'oua na'á ne faka'auha 'a hoku kakaí, he vakai 'oku ou 'ilo 'eku fanga sipí, pea kuo lau 'a kinautolu.
- 32 Ka neongo iá, 'oua na'a mou kapusi ia ki tu'a mei homou ngaahi fale lotú, pe ko homou ngaahi potu 'oku mou hū aí, he ko e fa'ahinga peheé te mou kei fai atu 'a e tokoní ki ai; he 'oku 'ikai te mou 'ilo na'a faifai pea nau tafoki mai 'o fakatomala, pea ha'u kiate au mo e loto-fakamātoato mo'oni, pea te u fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu; pea mou hoko ai ko e vaka 'o e fakamo'ui kiate kinautolu.
- 33 Ko ia, tauhi 'a e ngaahi leá ni 'a ia kuó u fekau 'aki kiate kimoutolú koe'uhí ke 'oua na'a hoko ai ha fakahalaia kiate kimoutolu; koe'uhí 'e mala'ia ia 'a ia 'oku fakahalaia 'i 'e he Tamaí.
- 34 Pea 'oku ou fai kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi fekaú ni koe'uhí ko e ngaahi fakakikihi kuo 'iate kimoutolú. Pea 'oku monū'ia 'a kimoutolu 'o kapau 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha ngaahi fakakikihi 'iate kimoutolu.
- 35 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou 'alu ki he Tamaí, koe'uhí he 'oku 'aonga ke u 'alu ki he Tamaí koe'uhí ko kimoutolu.
- 36 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili hono faka'osi 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola ní, na'á ne ala 'aki hono to'ukupú ki he kau ākongá kuó ne filí, taki taha, kae 'oua kuó ne ala kiate kinautolu kotoa pē, pea na'á ne folofola kiate kinautolu 'i he'ene ala kiate kinautolú.
- 37 Pea na'e 'ikai ke ongo'i 'e he kakaí 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a ia na'á ne folofola'akí, ko ia na'e 'ikai te nau fakamo'oni ki ai; ka na'e fakamo'oni 'e he kau ākongá na'á ne tuku kiate kinautolu 'a e mālohi ke foaki 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'óní. Pea te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'amui 'oku mo'oni 'a e fakamo'óní ni.
- 38 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e ala 'a Sīsū kiate kinautolu kotoa peé, na'e ha'u ha 'ao 'o fakamalumu 'a e fu'u kakaí 'o 'ikai te nau fa'a mamata kia Sīsū.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out from among you, but ye shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the Father, in my name; and if it so be that he repenteth and is baptized in my name, then shall ye receive him, and shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood.

But if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, that he may not destroy my people, for behold I know my sheep, and they are numbered.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; for ye know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.

Therefore, keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation; for wo unto him whom the Father condemneth.

And I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you. And blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you.

And now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spake unto them as he touched them.

And the multitude heard not the words which he spake, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. And I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.

39 Pea lolotonga hono fakamalumu 'a kinautolu na'á
ne 'alu meiate kinautolu, 'o ne hā'ele hake ki he langí.
Pea na'e mamata 'a e kau ākongá mo fakamo'oni'i na'á
ne toe hā'ele hake ki he langí.

And while they were overshadowed he departed
from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disciples
saw and did bear record that he ascended again into
heaven.

3 Nīfai 19

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hili 'a e hā'ele hake 'a Sīsū ki he langí, na'e movete 'a e fu'u kakaí, pea na'e 'ave 'e he tangata taki taha 'a hono uaifí mo 'ene fānaú 'o ne foki ki hono 'api 'o'oná.
- 2 Pea na'e talanoa 'i holo leva 'a e ongoongó 'i he kakaí, 'i he te'eki ai ke po'uli hifó, kuo mamata 'a e fu'u kakaí kia Sīsū, pea kuó ne tāpuaki 'i 'a kinautolu, pea te ne toe fakahā mai ia 'e ia 'apongipongi ki he kakaí.
- 3 'To, pea na'e talanoa 'i holo 'i he poó kotoa 'a e me'a na'e kau kia Sīsú; pea na'e pehē fau hono lahi 'o 'enu 'ave 'a e talanoá ki he kakaí, ko ia na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi, 'io, 'a e fu'u tokolahi 'aupito, na'a nau fu'u ngāue lahi 'aupito 'i he pō kotoa ko iá, ko'e uhi ke nau 'i he 'apongipongi 'i he potu ko ia 'a ia 'e fakahā mai ai 'e Sīsū ia ki he kakaí.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'i he 'aho na'e hokó, 'i he kātoa fakataha mai 'a e fu'u kakaí, vakai, na'e 'i ai 'a Nīfai mo hono tokoua 'a ia na'á ne fokotu'u hake mei he maté, 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko Tīmote, kae 'uma'ā foki hono fohá, 'a ia ko hono hingoá ko Sōnasi, kae 'uma'ā foki mo Matonai, mo Matonaihā, ko hono tokouá, pea mo Kumeni, mo Kumenonihai, mo Selemaia, mo Semenoni, mo Sōnasi, mo Setikia, mo 'Īsaia—ko ia ko e ngaahi hingoá 'eni 'o e kau ākongá 'a ia kuo fili 'e Sīsú—pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'alu atu 'o tu'u 'i he lotolotonga 'o e kakaí.
- 5 Pea vakai, na'e pehē fau hono tokolahi 'o e kakaí na'a nau fekau ai ke nau vahevahe ki he ha'ofanga kakai 'e hongofulu mā ua.
- 6 Pea na'e ako 'i 'e he toko hongofulu mā uá 'a e kakaí; pea vakai, na'a nau fekau ke tū'ulutui 'a e kakaí 'i he funga kekelelé, pea ke nau lotu ki he Tamaí 'i he huafa 'o Sīsú.
- 7 Pea na'e lotu foki mo e kau ākongá ki he Tamaí 'i he huafa 'o Sīsú. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau tu'u hake 'o tauhi ki he kakaí.
- 8 Pea 'i he hili 'enu malanga 'aki 'a e ngaahi folofola pē ko ia kuo folofola 'aki 'e Sīsú—'o 'ikai momo 'i liliu ha me'a 'e taha 'i he ngaahi folofola kuo folofola 'aki 'e Sīsú—vakai, na'a nau toe tū'ulutui hifo 'o lotu ki he Tamaí 'i he huafa 'o Sīsú.

3 Nephi 19

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.

And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.

Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night, that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

And behold, the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into twelve bodies.

And the twelve did teach the multitude; and behold, they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus.

And the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus. And it came to pass that they arose and ministered unto the people.

And when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken—nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken—behold, they knelt again and prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus.

9 Pea na'a nau lotua 'a e ngaahi me'a na'a nau holi lahi taha ki ai; pea na'a nau holi ke foaki 'a e Laumalie Mā'oni'oni kiate kinautolu.

10 Pea hili 'enau lotu pehe'e, na'a nau o hifo ki he ve'e vai, pea na'e muimui 'a e kaka'i iate kinautolu.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe 'i he hili honau papitaiso kotoa vai pea na'e papitaiso ia.

12 Pea na'e 'alu hake ia mei he vai 'o kamata ke fai papitaiso. Pea na'a ne papitaiso 'a kinautolu kotoa pe kuo fili 'e Sisu'u.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe 'i he hili honau papitaiso kotoa pe pea nau 'alu hake mei he vai, na'e to 'a e Laumalie Mā'oni'oni kiate kinautolu, pea na'e fakafonu 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e Laumalie Mā'oni'oni mo e afi.

14 Pea vakai, na'e takatakai 'iate kinautolu ha me'a na'e hangē ha afi; pea na'e 'alu hifo ia mei he langi, pea na'e mamata ki ai 'a e kaka'i, 'o nau fakamo'oni ki ai; pea na'e 'alu hifo 'a e kau 'angelo mei he langi, 'o nau tauhi kiate kinautolu.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe 'i he lolotonga tauhi 'a e kau 'angelō ki he kau ākongā, vakai, na'e hā'ele mai 'a Sisu, 'o tu'u 'i honau lolotongā, 'o ne folofola kiate kinautolu.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'a ne folofola ki he kaka'i, 'o fekau kiate kinautolu ke nau toe tū'ulutui hifo ki he kekelele, pea ke tū'ulutui hifo foki mo 'ene kau ākongā ki he kekelele.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe 'i he hili 'enau tū'ulutui hifo kotoa pe ki he kekelele, na'a ne fekau ki he 'ene kau ākongā ke nau lotu.

18 Pea vakai, na'a nau kamata ke lotu; pea na'a nau lotu kia Sisu, 'o ui ia ko honau 'Eiki mo honau 'Otua.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'e hā'ele atu 'a Sisu mei honau lolotongā, 'o ne hā'ele 'o ki 'i mama 'o si 'i atu meiate kinautolu 'o ne punou hifo ki he kekelele, 'o ne pehe:

20 'E Tamai, 'oku ou fakafeta 'i kiate koe koe uhi ko ho'o foaki 'a e Laumalie Mā'oni'oni kiate kinautolu ni ku'o u fili; pea koe uhi ko 'enau tui kiate au ku'o u fili ai 'a kinautolu mei he māmaní.

21 'E Tamai, 'oku ou kole kiate koe ke ke foaki 'a e Laumalie Mā'oni'oni kiate kinautolu kotoa pe 'e tui ki he 'enau ngaahi leá.

And they did pray for that which they most desired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them.

And when they had thus prayed they went down unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.

And it came to pass that while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them.

And it came to pass that he spake unto the multitude, and commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth, and also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth.

And it came to pass that when they had all knelt down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples that they should pray.

And behold, they began to pray; and they did pray unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God.

And it came to pass that Jesus departed out of the midst of them, and went a little way off from them and bowed himself to the earth, and he said:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is because of their belief in me that I have chosen them out of the world.

Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words.

- 22 'E Tamai, kuó ke foaki kiate kinautolu 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni koe'uhi ko 'enau tui kiate aú; pea 'okú ke 'afo'í 'oku nau tui kiate au koe'uhi he 'okú ke fanongo kiate kinautolu, pea 'oku nau lotu kiate au; pea 'oku nau lotu kiate aú koe'uhi he 'oku ou 'iate kinautolu.
- 23 Pea ko 'eni 'e Tamai, 'oku ou lotu kiate koe koe'uhi ko kinautolu, pea mo kinautolu kotoa pē foki 'e tui ki he' enau ngaahi leá, koe'uhi ke nau tui kiate au, koe'uhi ke u 'iate kinautolu 'o hangē 'okú ke 'iate aú, 'e Tamai, koe'uhi ke tau taha pē.
- 24 Pea ná'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e lotu pehē 'a Sīsū ki he Tamaí, ná'á ne foki mai ki he'ene kau ākongá, pea vakai, 'oku nau kei fai atu, ta'etuku, 'a 'enau lotu kiate iá; pea ná'e 'ikai te nau lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea tatau pē, he ná'e fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e me'a ke nau lotu'akí, pea ná'a nau fonu 'i he faka'amu.
- 25 Pea ná'e hoko 'o pehē ná'e tāpuaki'í 'a kinautolu 'e Sīsū lolotonga 'enau lotu kiate iá; pea ná'e malimali hono fofongá kiate kinautolu, pea ná'e ulo kiate kinautolu 'a e maama 'a hono fofongá, pea vakai ná'a nau hinehina 'o hangē ko e fofonga mo e ngaahi kofu 'o Sīsúú; pea vakai ná'e lahi hake honau hinehiná 'i he hinehina kotoa pē, 'io, koloto ke 'i māmani ha me'a 'oku hinehina 'o hangē ko honau hinehiná.
- 26 Pea folofola 'a Sīsū kiate kinautolu: Hoko atu ho'omou lotú; ka neongo iá ná'e 'ikai te nau tuku 'enau lotú.
- 27 Pea toe tafoki ia meiate kinautolu, 'o hā'ele ki'í mama' o si'í atu 'o punou hifo ia ki he kekelelé; pea ná'á ne toe lotu ki he Tamaí, 'o pehē:
- 28 'E Tamai, 'oku ou fakafeta'í kiate koe koe'uhi ko ho' o fakama'a 'a kinautolu kuó u filí, koe'uhi ko 'enau tuí, pea 'oku ou lotua 'a kinautolu, pea mo kinautolu foki 'e tui ki he' enau ngaahi leá, koe'uhi ke fakama'a 'a kinautolu 'iate au, tu'unga 'i he tui ki he' enau ngaahi leá, 'io 'o hangē ko hono fakama'a 'a kinautolu 'iate aú.
- 29 'E Tamai, 'oku 'ikai te u lotua 'a māmani, ka ko kinautolu kuó ke foaki kiate au mei he māmani, koe'uhi ko 'enau tuí, koe'uhi ke fakama'a 'a kinautolu 'iate au, koe'uhi ke u 'iate kinautolu 'o hangē 'okú ke 'iate aú, 'e Tamai, koe'uhi ke tau taha pē, pea ke fakaongoongolelei'í au 'iate kinautolu.

Father, thou hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me; and thou seest that they believe in me because thou hearest them, and they pray unto me; and they pray unto me because I am with them.

And now Father, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples, and behold, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.

And it came to pass that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; and his countenance did smile upon them, and the light of his countenance did shine upon them, and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof.

And Jesus said unto them: Pray on; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.

And he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth; and he prayed again unto the Father, saying:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast purified those whom I have chosen, because of their faith, and I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words, that they may be purified in me, through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me.

Father, I pray not for the world, but for those whom thou hast given me out of the world, because of their faith, that they may be purified in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them.

30 Pea hili 'a e folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola ní na'á ne toe liu mai ki he'ene kau ākongá; pea vakai na'a nau kei lotu mālohi, ta'etuku, pē kiate ia; pea na'á ne toe malimali kiate kinautolu; pea vakai na'a nau hinehina, 'io 'o hangē ko Sīsuú.

31 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne toe hā'ele 'o ki'i mama'o sī'i atu 'o ne lotu ki he Tamai;

32 Pea koloto ke lava 'o lea 'aki 'e ha 'elelo 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a ia na'á ne lotu'akí, pea 'oku 'ikai fa'a tohi foki 'e ha tangata 'a e ngaahi folofola na'á ne lotu'akí.

33 Pea na'e fanongo 'a e kakaí pea nau fakamo'oni ki ai; pea na'a nau fakaava honau lotó pea na'a nau 'ilo'i 'i honau lotó 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a ia na'á ne lotu'akí.

34 Ka neongo iá, na'e pehē fau hono ma'ongo'onga mo hono fakafofo 'o e ngaahi folofola 'a ia na'á ne lotu'akí ko ia na'e 'ikai fa'a tohi ia, pea 'oku 'ikai lava foki ke lea 'aki 'e ha tangata.

35 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he faka'osi 'e Sīsū 'a 'ene lotú na'á ne toe liu mai ki he kau ākongá, 'o folofola kiate kinautolu: Kuo te'eki ai ke u 'ilo'i ha tui lahi pehē fau 'i he kau Siu kotoa pē; ko ia na'e 'ikai te u lava 'o fakahā kiate kinautolu ha ngaahi mana lalahi pehē, koe'uhi ko 'enau ta'etuí.

36 Ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai hanau tokotaha kuo mamata ki ha ngaahi me'a lalahi pehē 'o hangē ko ia kuo mou mamata ki aí; pea kuo 'ikai foki ke nau fanongo ki ha ngaahi me'a lalahi pehē 'o hangē ko ia kuo mou fanongo ki aí.

And when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples; and behold they did pray steadfastly, without ceasing, unto him; and he did smile upon them again; and behold they were white, even as Jesus.

And it came to pass that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father;

And tongue cannot speak the words which he prayed, neither can be written by man the words which he prayed.

And the multitude did hear and do bear record; and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed.

Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written, neither can they be uttered by man.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples, and said unto them: So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.

Verily I say unto you, there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen; neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

3 Nīfai 20

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fekau ki he fu'u kakaí ke tuku 'enau lotú, kae 'uma'ā foki 'ene kau ākongá. Pea na'á ne fekau kiate kinautolu ke 'oua 'e tuku 'a 'enau lotu 'i honau lotó.
- 2 Pea na'á ne fekau kiate kinautolu ke nau tu'u hake pea tu'u 'i honau va'é. Pea na'a nau tu'u hake 'o tu'u 'i honau va'é.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne toe pakipaki 'a e mā 'o tāpuaki 'i ia, 'o 'oatu ki he kau ākongá ke nau kai.
- 4 Pea hili 'enau kaí na'á ne fekau kiate kinautolu ke nau pakipaki ha mā, pea 'oatu ia ki he kakaí.
- 5 Pea hili 'enau 'oatu ia ki he kakaí na'á ne 'oange kiate kinautolu ha uaine ke nau inu, 'o ne fekau kiate kinautolu ke nau 'oatu ia ki he kakaí.
- 6 Ko 'eni, kuo 'ikai ke 'omi ha mā, pe uaine, 'e he kau ākongá pe ko e kakaí;
- 7 Ka na'á ne foaki mo'oni 'a e mā ke nau kai, mo e uaine foki ke nau inu.
- 8 Pea na'á ne folofola kiate kinautolu: Ko ia ia 'okú ne kai 'a e mā ní 'okú ne kai 'i hoku sinó ki hono laumālié; pea ko ia ia 'okú ne inu 'i he uaine ní, 'okú ne inu 'i hoku totó ki hono laumālié; pea 'e 'ikai fiekaia pe fieinua hono laumālié 'o ta'engata, ka 'e mākona pē ia.
- 9 Ko 'eni, 'i he hili 'a e kai mo inu 'a e kakai kotoa pē, vakai, na'e fakafonu 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e Laumālié; pea na'a nau kalanga fakataha, mo tuku 'a e lāngilangi kia Sīsū, 'a ia na'a nau mamata mo fanongo ki aí.
- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'enau tuku kotoa pē 'a e lāngilangi kia Sīsuú, na'á ne folofola kiate kinautolu: Vakai, ko 'eni 'oku ou faka'osi 'a e fekau kuo tuku kiate au 'e he Tamai 'o kau ki he kakaí ni, 'a ia ko ha toenga 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.
- 11 'Oku mou manatu na'á ku lea kiate kimoutolu, 'o pehē 'o ka fakamo'oni 'i 'a e ngaahi lea 'a 'Īsaiá—vakai kuo tohi ia, 'oku mou ma'u ia 'iate kimoutolu, ko ia mou fakatotolo ai—
- 12 Pea ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'o ka fakamo'oni ia ko e toki fakahoko ia 'o e fuakava kuo fai 'e he Tamai ki hono kakaí, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli.

3 Nephi 20

And it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples. And he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts.

And he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet. And they arose up and stood upon their feet.

And it came to pass that he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.

And when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude.

And when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink, and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.

Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;

But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.

And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst, but shall be filled.

Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard.

And it came to pass that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them: Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.

Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled—behold they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them—

And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel.

13 Pea ko e ngaahi toenga, 'a ia kuo fakamovetevete holo 'i he funga 'o e māmani, 'e tānaki mai mei he hahaké pea mei he hihifó, pea mei he tongá pea mei he tokelaú; pea 'e 'omi 'a kinautolu ki he 'ilo 'o e 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá, 'a ia kuó ne huhu 'i 'a kinautolú.

14 Pea kuo fekau kiate au 'e he Tamaí ke u foaki kiate kimoutolu 'a e fonuá ni ke hoko ko homou tofi'a.

15 Pea 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kapau 'e 'ikai ke fakatomala 'a e kau Senitailé 'o ka hili 'a e tāpuaki te nau ma'ú, 'o ka hili 'enau fakamovetevete 'i 'a hoku kakaí—

16 Pea ko kimoutolu, 'a ia ko ha toenga 'o e fale 'o Sēkopé, te mou toki 'alu atu 'iate kinautolu; pea te mou 'i honau lotolotongá 'a ia 'e tokolahi; pea te mou 'iate kinautolu 'o hangē ko ha laione 'i he fanga manu 'o e vaó, pea hangē ko ha laione mui 'i he ngaahi takanga sipí, 'a ia, 'o ka ne ka 'alu atu 'okú ne molomoloki hifo mo haehae ke momoiiki, pea 'oku 'ikai fa'a fakahaofi 'e ha taha 'a kinautolu.

17 'E hiki hake ho nimá ki ho ngaahi filí, pea 'e motuhi atu 'a ho ngaahi filí kotoa pē.

18 Pea te u tānaki fakataha 'a hoku kakaí 'o hangē 'oku tānaki 'e ha tangata 'a 'ene ngaahi ha'inga uité ke tuku ki he haha'angá.

19 He te u ngaohi 'a hoku kakai 'a ia kuo fai 'e he Tamaí ha fuakava ki aí, 'io, te u ngaohi ho me'atui ko e ukamea, pea ko ho ngaahi nge'esi va'é ko e palasa. Pea te ke laiki ke momoiiki 'a e ngaahi kakai tokolahi; pea te u fakatapui ki he 'Eiki 'enau tupú, mo 'enau koloá ki he 'Eiki 'o e māmani kotoa pē. Pea vakai, ko au ia 'okú ne fai iá.

20 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē, 'oku folofola 'e he Tamaí, 'e tu'unuku mai 'a e heletā 'o 'eku fakamaau totonú kiate kinautolu 'i he 'aho ko iá; pea ka 'ikai te nau fakatomala 'e tō ia kiate kinautolu, 'oku folofola 'e he Tamaí, 'io, ki he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē 'o e kau Senitailé.

21 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē te u fokotu'u ma'u 'a hoku kakaí, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli.

And then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north; and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.

And the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance.

And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people—

Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.

And I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor.

For I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in pieces many people; and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. And behold, I am he who doeth it.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day; and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.

And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel.

- 22 Pea vakai, ko e kakaí ni te u fokotu‘u ma‘u ‘i he fonuá ni, ke fakahoko ai ‘a e fuakava ‘a ia na‘á ku fai mo ho‘omou tamai ko Sēkopé; pea ‘e hoko ia ko ha Selūsalema Fo‘ou. Pea ko e ngaahi mālohi ‘o e langí ‘e ‘i he lotolotonga ‘o e kakaí ni; ‘io, pea mo au foki te u ‘i homou lotolotonga.
- 23 Vakai, ko au ia ‘a ia na‘e lau ki ai ‘a Mōse, ‘o pehē: ‘E fokotu‘u ha palōfita ‘e he ‘Eiki ko ho ‘Otuá kiate koe ‘i ho kāingá, te ne tatau mo au; ke mou tokanga kiate ia ‘i he me‘a kotoa pē te ne lea ‘aki kiate kimoutolú. Pea ‘e hoko ‘o pehē ko e kakaí kotoa pē ‘e ‘ikai tokanga ki he palōfita ko iá ‘e motuhi atu ia mei he kakaí.
- 24 Ko e mo‘oni ‘oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ‘io, pea ko e kau palōfita kotoa pē ‘o fai meia Samuela mo kinautolu na‘e ki mui ‘iate iá, ko kinautolu kotoa pē kuo leá, kuo nau fakamo‘oni kiate au.
- 25 Pea vakai, ko e fānau ‘a kimoutolu ‘a e kau palōfitá; pea ‘oku mou ‘o e fale ‘o ‘Isilelí; pea ‘oku mou kau ‘i he fuakava na‘e fai ‘e he Tamaí mo ho‘omou ngaahi tamaí, ‘o ne folofola kia ‘Ēpalahame: Pea ‘e monū‘ia ‘i ho hakó ‘a e ngaahi fa‘ahinga kotoa pē ‘o e māmaní.
- 26 Kuo tomu‘a hiki hake au ‘e he Tamaí kiate kimoutolu, mo ne fekau ‘i au ke u tāpuaki ‘i ‘a kimoutolu ‘i he ‘eku fakatafoki ‘a kimoutolu kotoa pē mei ho‘omou ngaahi angahalá; pea kuó ne fekau ke u fai ‘eni koe‘uhi ko e fānau ‘a kimoutolu ‘o e fuakavá—
- 27 Pea ‘o ka hili homou tāpuaki ‘i peheé, ‘e toki fakahoko ‘e he Tamai ‘a e fuakava ‘a ia na‘á ne fai mo ‘Ēpalahame, ‘o pehē: ‘E monū‘ia ‘i ho hako ‘a e ngaahi fa‘ahinga kotoa pē ‘o e māmaní—‘i hono lilingi hifo ‘o e Laumālie Mā‘oní‘oní ‘iate au ki he kau Senitailé, ‘a ia ko ha tāpuaki ki he kau Senitailé ‘e fakamālohi ‘a kinautolu ke nau mālohi lahi hake ‘i he kakaí fulipē, ke nau fakamovetevete ‘a hoku kakaí, ‘E fale ‘o ‘Isileli.
- 28 Pea te nau hoko ko e fakamamahi ki he kakaí ‘o e fonuá ni. Ka neongo iá, ‘o ka nau ka ma‘u hono kakato ‘o ‘eku ongoongolelé, pea kapau te nau fakafefeka honau lotó kiate au te u ‘eke ‘i leva meiate kinautolu ‘enau ngaahi angahalá, ‘oku folofola ‘e he Tamaí.

And behold, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you.

Behold, I am he of whom Moses spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

Verily I say unto you, yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have testified of me.

And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

The Father having raised me up unto you first, and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities; and this because ye are the children of the covenant—

And after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.

And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the Father.

29 Pea te u manatu 'i 'a e fuakava 'a ia kuó u fai mo hoku kakaí; pea kuó u fuakava mo kinautolu te u tñnaki fakataha 'a kinautolu 'i he taimi 'oku ou loto ki aí, koe' uhi ke u toe foaki kiate kinautolu 'a e fonua 'o 'enua ngaahi tamaí ke hoko ko honau tofi 'a, 'a ia ko e fonua ko Selūsalemá, 'a ia ko e fonua 'o e tala' ofa kiate kinautolu 'o ta' engata, 'oku folofola 'e he Tamaí.

30 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e hokosia 'a e taimi, 'a ia 'e malanga 'aki ai hono kakato 'o 'eku ongoongolefi kiate kinautolu;

31 Pea te nau tui kiate au, 'o pehē ko Sīsū Kalaisi au, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, pea te nau lotu ki he Tamaí 'i hoku hingoá.

32 Pea 'e toki hiki hake 'e honau kau tangata le' ó 'a honau le' ó, pea te nau hiva 'aki 'a e le' o pē taha; he te nau mamata 'aki honau matá.

33 Pea 'e toe tñnaki fakataha leva 'e he Tamaí 'a kinautolu, 'o foaki kiate kinautolu 'a Selūsalema ke hoko ko e fonua 'o honau tofi 'á.

34 Pea te nau toki pā mai 'i he hiva fiefia—Hiva fakataha, 'a kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi potu lala 'o Selūsalemá; he kuo fakafiemālie 'i 'e he Tamaí 'a hono kakaí, kuó ne huhu 'i 'a Selūsalema.

35 Kuo fakahā 'e he Tamaí 'a hono to' ukupu mā' oní' oní 'i he 'ao 'o e ngaahi pulē' anga kotoa pē; pea 'e mamata 'e he ngaahi ngata' anga kotoa pē 'o māmaní ki he fakamo' ui 'a e Tamaí; pea ko au mo e Tamaí, 'okú ma taha pē.

36 Pea 'e toki fakahoko leva 'a e me' a 'a ia kuo tohí: 'Ā hake, toe 'ā hake, pea 'ai ho mālohí, 'E Saione; 'ai ho ngaahi kofu faka' ofo' ofá, 'E Selūsalema, ko e kolo mā' oní' oní, koe' uhi 'e kamata mei heni 'e 'ikai toe hū kiate koe 'a kinautolu 'oku ta' ekamú mo kinautolu 'oku ta' ema 'á.

37 Tupē 'i meiate koe 'a e efú; tu' u hake, nofo hifo, 'E Selūsalema; vete meiate koe 'a e ngaahi ha' i 'o ho kiá, 'E 'ofefine pōpula 'o Saione.

38 He 'oku folofola peheni 'e he 'Eikí: Kuo mou fakatau 'a kimoutolu ki ha me' a noa pē, pea 'e huhu 'i 'a kimoutolu ta' e-ha-pa' anga.

39 Ko e mo' oni, ko e mo' oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'e 'ilo 'e hoku kakaí 'a hoku hingoá; 'io, 'i he 'aho ko iá te nau 'ilo ko au ia 'oku leá.

And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time, that I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.

And it shall come to pass that the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;

And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name.

Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye.

Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.

Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are one.

And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

For thus saith the Lord: Ye have sold yourselves for naught, and ye shall be redeemed without money.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; yea, in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak.

40 Pea te nau toki pehē: Hono 'ikai faka'ofa'ofa 'i he ngaahi mo'ungá 'a e va'e 'o ia 'okú ne 'omi 'a e ongoongo lelei kiate kinautolú, 'a ia 'okú ne fakahā 'a e melinó; 'a ia 'okú ne 'omi 'a e ongoongo lelei kiate kinautolú, 'a ia 'oku ne fakahā 'a e fakamo'uí; 'a ia 'okú ne pehē ki Saione: 'Oku pule 'a ho 'Otuá!

41 Pea 'e toki ongo atu 'a e kaila: 'Alu 'a kimoutolu, 'alu 'a kimoutolu, mou 'alu mei ai, 'oua 'e ala ki he me'a 'oku ta'ema'á; mou ō mei hono lotolotongá; ke ma'á 'a kimoutolu 'oku fua 'a e ngaahi ipu 'a e 'Eikí.

42 Koe'uhí 'e 'ikai te mou 'alu atu fakavavevave pe 'i he hola mei homou ngaahi filí; he 'e mu'omu'a 'a e 'Eikí 'iate kimoutolu, pea ko e 'Otua 'o 'Isilelí te ne malu'i 'a kimoutolu mei mui.

43 Vakai, 'e fai fakapotopoto 'e he'eku tamaio'eikí; 'e hakeaki'i ia pea fakaongoongolelei'i pea te ne mā'olunga 'aupito.

44 'O hangē 'oku ofo 'a e tokolahí 'iate iá—na'e fakamele'i hono fofongá, 'o lahi hake 'i ha toe tangata, mo hono sinó 'o lahi hake 'i he ngaahi foha 'o e tangatá—

45 Ko ia te ne luluku 'a e ngaahi pule'anga lahi; 'e tāpuni 'a e ngutu 'o e ngaahi tu'í kiate ia, he ko e me'a kuo 'ikai ke fakahā kiate kinautolú te nau mamata ki ai; pea ko e me'a kuo 'ikai te nau fanongo ki aí 'e mahino kiate kinautolu.

46 Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, kuo pau ke hoko 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, 'o hangē kuo fekau kiate au 'e he Tamaí. Pea ko e fuakavá ni 'a ia kuo fai 'e he Tamaí mo hono kakaí 'e fakahoko ia; pea 'e toe nofo'i 'a Selūsalema 'e hoku kakaí, pea 'e hoko ia ko e fonua 'o honau tofi'á.

And then shall they say: How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings unto them of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And then shall a cry go forth: Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch not that which is unclean; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord.

For ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel shall be your rearward.

Behold, my servant shall deal prudently; he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high.

As many were astonished at thee—his visage was so marred, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men—

So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him, for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come, even as the Father hath commanded me. Then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people, and it shall be the land of their inheritance.

3 Nīfai 21

- 1 Pea ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku ou fakahā kiate kimoutolu ha faka'ilonga, koe'uhi ke mou 'ilo'i 'a e taimi 'oku ofi ke hoko ai 'a e ngaahi me'a ní—te u tānaki fakataha, 'a hoku kakaí, mei he'enu nofo movetevete fuoloá, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli, pea toe fokotu'u 'i honau lotolotongá 'a hoku Saioné;
- 2 Pea vakai, ko e me'a 'eni te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu ko ha faka'ilongá—he ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'o ka fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'a ni 'a ia 'oku ou fakahā kiate kimoutolú, pea te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'i he kaha'ú 'o kau kiate au, pea 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni 'a ia 'e foaki kiate kimoutolu mei he Tamaí, 'e fakahā ia ki he kau Senitailé koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo ki he kakaí ni 'a ia ko ha toenga 'o e fale 'o Sēkopé, pea kau ki hoku kakaí ni 'a ia 'e fakamovetevete 'i 'e kinautolú.
- 3 Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'o ka faka'ilo 'a e ngaahi me'a ni kiate kinautolu 'e he Tamaí, pea kuo 'alu atu ia 'i he Tamaí, meiate kinautolu kiate kimoutolu;
- 4 He 'oku 'i ai 'a e 'uhinga fakapotopoto 'a e Tamaí ke fokotu'u 'a kinautolu 'i he fonuá ni, pea ke fokotu'u 'a kinautolu ko e kakai tau'atāina 'i he māfima'fi 'o e Tamaí, koe'uhí ke 'alu atu 'a e ngaahi me'a ni meiate kinautolu ki he toenga 'o homou hakó, koe'uhi ke fakahoko 'a e fuakava 'a e Tamaí 'a ia kuó ne fai mo hono kakaí, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli;
- 5 Ko ia, 'o ka 'alu atu 'a e ngaahi me'a ni mo e ngaahi me'a 'a ia 'e fai 'iate kimoutolu 'amuí mei he kau Senitailé, ki homou hakó 'a ia 'e faka'au'auhifo 'i he ta'etui ko e tupu 'i he angahalá.
- 6 He ko e founga 'eni kuo finangalo 'a e Tamaí ke 'alu atu ia mei he kau Senitailé, ke ne lava 'o fakahā hono māfima'fi ki he kau Senitailé, pea ko hono 'uhingá 'eni koe'uhi ko e kau Senitailé, 'o kapau 'e 'ikai fakafefeka honau lotó, pea ke nau fakatomala pea ha'u kiate au mo papitaiso 'i hoku hingóá pea 'ilo'i 'a e ngaahi tefito mo'oni 'o 'eku tokāteliné, koe'uhi ke lau 'a kinautolu fakataha mo hoku kakaí, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli.

3 Nephi 21

And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion;

And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father, shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning this my people who shall be scattered by them;

Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known unto them of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them unto you;

For it is wisdom in the Father that they should be established in this land, and be set up as a free people by the power of the Father, that these things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted with his people, O house of Israel;

Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;

For thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among my people, O house of Israel;

7 Pea 'o ka hoko 'a e ngaahi me'á ni pea kamata ke 'ilo ai 'e homou hakó 'a e ngaahi me'á ni—'e hoko ia ko ha faka'ilonga kiate kinautolu, ke nau 'ilo 'i kuo 'osi kamata 'a e ngāue 'a e Tamai ke fakahoko 'a e fuakava, 'a ia kuó ne fai ki he kakai 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.

8 Pea 'o ka hoko 'a e 'aho ko iá, 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e tāpuni 'e he ngaahi tu'í 'a honau ngutu; he te nau mamata ki he me'a 'a ia kuo 'ikai ke fakahā kiate kinautolú; pea mahino kiate kinautolu 'a e me'a kuo 'ikai te nau fanongo ki aí.

9 He 'i he 'aho ko iá, 'e fai ma'á ku 'e he Tamai ha ngāue, 'a ia 'e hoko ko ha fu'u ngāue ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofu 'iate kinautolu; pea 'e 'i ai ha ni'ihí 'iate kinautolu 'e ta'etui ki ai, neongo 'e fakahā ia 'e ha tangata kiate kinautolu.

10 Kae vakai, ko e mo'ui 'a 'eku kau tamaio'eikí 'e 'i hoku nimá; ko ia 'e 'ikai te nau fakamamahi 'i ia, neongo te ne kafo koe'uhi ko kinautolu. Ka te u fakamo'ui ia, he te u fakahā kiate kinautolu 'oku lahi hake hoku potó 'i he olopoto 'a e tēvoló.

11 Ko ia 'e hoko 'o pehē 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'e ta'etui ki he'eku ngaahi leá, 'a ia ko au Sīsū Kalaisi, 'a ia 'e fekau ia 'e he Tamai ke ne fakahā ki he kau Senitailé, pea te ne tuku kiate ia 'a e mālohi ke ne fakahā ia ki he kau Senitailé, ('e fai 'o hangē ko ia na'e lea 'aki 'e Mōsesé) 'e motuhi atu 'a kinautolu mei hoku kakai 'a ia 'oku 'o e fuakavá.

12 Pea ko hoku kakai 'a ia ko ha kongá 'o e hako 'o Sēkopé te nau 'i he kau Senitailé, 'io, 'e 'i honau lotolotonga 'o hangē ko ha laione 'oku 'i he fanga manu 'o e vaó, pea hangē ko e laione mui 'i he ngaahi takanga sipí, 'a ia, 'o ka ne ka 'alu atu 'iate kinautolu 'okú ne molomoloki hifo mo haehae ke momoiki, pea 'oku 'ikai fá 'a fakahaofi 'e ha taha 'a kinautolu.

13 'E hiki hake honau nimá ki honau ngaahi filí, pea 'e motuhi atu 'a honau ngaahi filí kotoa pē.

14 'Io, 'e mala'ia 'a e kau Senitailé, 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala; koe'uhi 'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'aho ko iá, 'oku folofola 'e he Tamai, te u motuhi atu ho'o fanga hōsi mei ho lotolotonga, pea te u faka'auha ho'o ngaahi salioté;

15 Pea te u motuhi atu 'a e ngaahi kolo 'o ho fonuá, mo holoki hifo ho ngaahi kolo mālohi kotoa pē;

And when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the house of Israel.

And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them.

But behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.

Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant.

And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off.

Yea, wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent; for it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots;

And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strongholds;

16 Pea te u motuhi atu 'a e kau fie mana fakafa'ahikehé
mei ho fonuá, pea 'e 'ikai toe 'iate koe ha kau kikite loi;

17 Te u faka'auha foki mo ho'ongaahi tamapua kuo
tongí, mo ho'ongaahi tamapua 'oku tu'ú mei ho
lotolotonga, pea 'e 'ikai te ke toe hū ki he ngaahi ngāue
'a ho nimá;

18 Pea te u ta'aki mei ho lotolotonga 'a ho ngaahi vao
tapú; 'e pehē 'eku faka'auha ho ngaahi koló.

19 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē ko e ngaahi loi, mo e ngaahi ngāue
fakakākaá, mo e ngaahi meheká, mo e ngaahi feke'ike'í,
mo e ngaahi ngāue fakataula'eiki kākaá, mo e ngaahi
fe'auaki kotoa pē 'e fakangata ia.

20 He 'e hoko 'o pehē, 'oku folofola 'e he Tamaí, 'i he
'aho ko iá 'ilonga ia 'e 'ikai fakatomala, pea ha'u ki hoku
'Alo 'Ofa'angá, te u motuhi atu ia mei he lotolotonga 'o
hoku kakaí, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli;

21 Pea te u sāuni 'i hoku 'itá kiate kinautolu, 'io, 'o hangē
ko e fai ki he kau ta'etui 'Otuá, 'i ha founga 'oku te'eki te
nau fanongo ai.

22 Ka 'o kapau te nau fakatomala pea tokanga ki he'eku
ngaahi leá, 'o 'ikai fakafefeka honau lotó, te u fokotu'u
hoku siasí 'iate kinautolu, pea te nau kau ki he fuakavá
pea 'e lau 'a kinautolu fakataha mo e fa'ahingá ni ko e
toenga 'o e hako 'o Sēkopé, 'a ia kuó u foaki ki ai 'a e
fonuá ni ko honau tofi'á;

23 Pea te nau tokoni ki hoku kakaí, 'a e toenga 'o e hako
'o Sēkopé, kae 'uma'ā foki mo kinautolu kotoa pē 'o e
fale 'o 'Isilelí 'a ia 'e ha'ú, koe'uhi ke nau langa ha kolo, 'a
ia 'e ui ko e Selūsalema Fo'ou.

24 Pea te nau toki tokoni 'i 'a hoku kakaí koe'uhi ke nau
tānaki fakataha mai 'a kinautolu, 'a ia kuo
fakamovetevete 'i 'i he funga 'o e fonuá kotoa, ki he
Selūsalema Fo'ou.

25 Pea 'e toki 'alu hifo 'a e mālohi 'o e langí kiate
kinautolu; pea ko au foki te u 'i honau lotolotonga.

26 Pea 'e toki kamata leva 'i he 'aho ko iá 'a e ngāue 'a e
Tamaí, 'i he taimi 'e malanga 'aki ai 'a e ongoongolelé ni
ki he toenga 'o e kakaí ni. Ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē
kiate kimoutolu, 'e kamata 'i he 'aho ko iá 'a e ngāue 'a e
Tamaí 'i he fa'ahinga kotoa 'o hoku kakai kuo
fakamoveteveté, 'io, 'o a'u ki he ngaahi fa'ahinga na'e
pulí, 'a ia kuo tataki atu 'e he Tamaí mei Selūsalemá.

And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy land, and
thou shalt have no more soothsayers;

Thy graven images I will also cut off, and thy stand-
ing images out of the midst of thee, and thou shalt no
more worship the works of thy hands;

And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of
thee; so will I destroy thy cities.

And it shall come to pass that all lyings, and deceiv-
ings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts, and
whoredoms, shall be done away.

For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that
day whosoever will not repent and come unto my
Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people,
O house of Israel;

And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them,
even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.

But if they will repent and hearken unto my words,
and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church
among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant
and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob,
unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance;

And they shall assist my people, the remnant of
Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall
come, that they may build a city, which shall be called
the New Jerusalem.

And then shall they assist my people that they may be
gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the
land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

And then shall the power of heaven come down
among them; and I also will be in the midst.

And then shall the work of the Father commence at
that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among
the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that
day shall the work of the Father commence among all
the dispersed of my people, yea, even the tribes which
have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of
Jerusalem.

- 27 'Io, 'e kamata 'a e ngāu'é 'iate kinautolu kotoa pē 'o hoku kakai kuo fakamoveteveté, pea teuteu 'e he Tamaí 'a e hala ke nau lava 'o ha 'u ai kiate au, koe 'uhi ke nau ui ki he Tamaí 'i hoku hingoá.
- 28 'Io, pea 'e toki kamata leva 'a e ngāu'é, 'i he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē pea teuteu 'e he Tamaí 'a e hala ke lava ai 'o tānaki mai hono kakai ki 'api 'i he fonua 'o honau tofi'á.
- 29 Pea te nau 'alu atu mei he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē; pea 'e 'ikai te nau 'alu atu fakavavevave, pe 'alu 'i he hola mei honau ngaahi filí, he te u mu'omu'a 'iate kinautolu, 'oku folofola 'e he Tamaí, pea te u malu 'i 'a kinautolu mei mui.

Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.

Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.

And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

3 Nīfai 22

- 1 Pea 'e toki fakahoko 'a ia kuo tohí: Hiva, 'E fefine pa'a, 'a koe na'e 'ikai te ke fanaú; ke ke hiva, pea kalanga le'olahí, 'a koe na'e 'ikai te ke langā 'i ha tamasi'í; he 'oku tokolahi hake 'a e fānau 'a e lí'ekina 'i he fānau 'a e fefine malí, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí.
- 2 Fakalahi 'a e potu 'o ho fale fehikitakí, pea tuku ke nau to'o 'a e puipui 'o ho ngaahi nofo'angá; faka'aonga 'i 'a e potu kotoa pē, fakalōloa ho'o ngaahi afó, pea tukituki ke ma'u ho'o ngaahi 'akau tuki poupouú;
- 3 He te ke maumau 'i hono ngaahi tapa kotoa pē, pea 'e ma'u 'e ho hakó 'a honau fonuá mei he kau Senitailé, 'o fakakakai 'a e ngaahi kolo na'e lalá.
- 4 'Oua 'e manavahē, koe'uhi 'e 'ikai te ke mā; pea 'oua na'á ke puputu'u, koe'uhi 'e 'ikai fakamaa 'i koe; he te ke fakangalo 'i 'a e mā 'o ho'o kei si'í, pea 'e 'ikai te ke toe manatu ki he valoki 'o ho'o kei si'í, pea 'e 'ikai te ke manatu 'i hono fakamā 'o ho'o nofo uitoú.
- 5 He ko ho tupu'angá, 'a ho malu'í, ko e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú 'a hono huafá; mo ho Huhu'í, ko e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni 'o 'Isilelí—'e ui ia ko e 'Otua 'o e māmaní kotoa pē.
- 6 He kuo ui koe 'e he 'Eikí 'o hangē ko e fefine lí'ekina pea mamahi'ia 'i hono laumalié, pea hangē ko e uai'í 'i he'ene kei talavou, 'i he 'aho na'e lí'aki ai koé, 'oku folofola 'a ho 'Otuá.
- 7 'I he ki'í taimi si'í kuó u lí'aki koe, ka 'i he ngaahi 'alo'ofa lahi te u tānaki koe.
- 8 'I he 'ita si'í na'á ku fufū hoku fofongá meiate koe 'i ha ki'í taimi si'í, ka 'i he 'ofa ta'engata te u 'alo'ofa kiate koe, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki ko ho Huhu'í.
- 9 He 'oku tatau 'a 'eni, mo e ngaahi vai 'i he taimi 'o Noá kiate au, he 'oku hangē ko 'eku fuakava 'e 'ikai toe lōmakí 'i 'e he ngaahi vai 'o Noá 'a e māmaní, 'oku pehē 'eku fuakava 'e 'ikai te u 'ita kiate koé.
- 10 Koe'uhi 'e mole 'a e ngaahi mo'ungá pea hiki mo e ngaahi tafungofungá, ka ko 'eku 'ofá 'e 'ikai mahu 'i meiate koe, pea 'e 'ikai hiki 'a e fuakava 'o 'eku melinó, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí 'a ia 'oku 'alo'ofa kiate koé.

3 Nephi 22

And then shall that which is written come to pass: Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child; for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.

Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thy habitations; spare not, lengthen thy cords and strengthen thy stakes;

For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left, and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.

Fear not, for thou shalt not be ashamed; neither be thou confounded, for thou shalt not be put to shame; for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.

For thy maker, thy husband, the Lord of Hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel—the God of the whole earth shall he be called.

For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.

For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee.

In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment, but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer.

For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.

For the mountains shall depart and the hills be removed, but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.

- 11 'A koe ko e mamahi'ia, pea vilingia 'i he afaá, pea ta'efiemalié! Vakai, te u langa hake koe 'aki 'a e ngaahi maka siueli faka'ofó'ofa, pea ngaohi 'aki 'a e ngaahi maka sāfaiá ho ngaahi tu'ungá.
- 12 Pea te u ngaohi ho ngaahi matapā sio'atá 'aki 'a e ngaahi maka 'aketí, pea mo ho ngaahi matapaá 'aki 'a e ngaahi lupi, pea mo ho ngaahi ngata'angá 'aki 'a e ngaahi maka faka'ofó'ofa.
- 13 Pea 'e akonekina ho'ó fānau kotoa pē 'e he 'Eikí; pea 'e lahi 'a e melino 'e ma'u 'e ho'ó fānaú.
- 14 'E pule'í koe 'i he mā'oni'oni; te ke mama'ó mei he ngaohikovi'í koe'uhi 'e 'ikai te ke manavahē, pea mei he ilifíá koe'uhi 'e 'ikai ofi mai ia kiate koe.
- 15 Vakai, te nau tānaki fakataha mo'oni ke tau'í koe, kae 'ikai 'iate au; ko ia ia kotoa pē 'e fakataha ke tau'í koé te ne tō koe'uhi ko koe.
- 16 Vakai, kuó u fakatupu 'a e tufunga ukamea 'a ia 'okú ne tapili 'a e malala 'i he afí, pea 'okú ne fa'u 'a e me'a fakatufunga mei he'ene ngāué; pea kuó u fakatupu 'a e me'angāue ke fai faka'auhá.
- 17 'E 'ikai ha mahafu tau kuo ngaohi ke tau'í koe 'e tu'umālie; pea koe 'elelo kotoa pē 'e lea kovi kiate koe 'i he fakamāú te ke fakahalaia'i. Ko e tofi'a 'eni 'o e kau tamaio'eiki 'a e 'Eikí, pea 'oku meiate au 'a 'enau mā'oni'oni, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí.

O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted! Behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colors, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.

And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.

And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children.

In righteousness shalt thou be established; thou shalt be far from oppression for thou shalt not fear, and from terror for it shall not come near thee.

Behold, they shall surely gather together against thee, not by me; whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.

Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.

No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall revile against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.

3 Nīfai 23

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'oku totonu ke mou fakatotolo ki he ngaahi me'á ni. 'Io, 'oku ou fai kiate kimoutolu 'a e fekau ke mou fakatotolo faivelenga ki he ngaahi me'á ni; he 'oku mahu'inga 'a e ngaahi lea 'a 'Īsaiá.
- 2 He ko e mo'oni na'á ne lea ki he ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku kau ki hoku kakai 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí; ko ia kuo pau foki ke ne lea ki he kau Senitailé.
- 3 Pea ko e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē na'á ne lea'aki kuo hoko pe 'e hoko, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea na'á ne lea'aki.
- 4 Ko ia tokanga ki he'eku ngaahi leá; tohi 'a e ngaahi me'a kuó u tala kiate kimoutolú; pea fakatatau ki he taimi mo e finangalo 'o e Tamaí 'e 'alu atu ia ki he kau Senitailé.
- 5 Pea ko ia ia 'e tokanga ki he'eku ngaahi leá pea fakatomala mo papitaisó, ko ia ia 'e fakamo'uí. Fakatotolo ki he kau palōfitá, he 'oku 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'oku nau fakamo'oni ki he ngaahi me'á ni.
- 6 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola ní na'á ne toe folofola kiate kinautolu, 'i he hili 'ene fakamatala'i kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi folofola kotoa pē 'a ia kuo nau ma'ú, na'á ne folofola kiate kinautolu: Vakai, 'oku 'i ai mo e ngaahi folofola kehe 'oku ou loto ke mou tohi, 'a ia kuo te'eki ai ke mou tohi.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne folofola kia Nīfai: 'Omi ki heni 'a e lekooti 'a ia kuó ke tauhí.
- 8 Pea 'i he 'omi 'e Nīfai 'a e ngaahi lekōtí, 'o ne tuku ia 'i hono 'aó, na'e 'afio ki ai hono fofongá 'o ne folofola:
- 9 Ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, na'á ku fekau 'i 'eku tamaio'eiki ko Samuela, ko e tangata Leimaná, ke ne fakamo'oni ki he kakai ni, 'i he 'aho ko ia 'e fakaongoongolelé'i ai 'e he Tamaí 'a hono huafá 'iate aú 'e 'i ai 'a e kau mā'oni'oni tokolahi 'e tu'u hake mei he maté, pea hā mai ki he tokolahi, 'o tauhi kiate kinautolu. Pea na'á ne folofola kiate kinautolu: 'Ikai na'e hoko ia 'o hangē ko 'ene leá?
- 10 Pea na'e tali kiate ia 'e he'ene kau ākongá 'o pehē: 'Io, 'Eiki, na'e kikite 'a Samuela 'o hangē ko ho'o ngaahi folofolá, pea na'e hoko kotoa ia.

3 Nephi 23

And now, behold, I say unto you, that ye ought to search these things. Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah.

For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel; therefore it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles.

And all things that he spake have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spake.

Therefore give heed to my words; write the things which I have told you; and according to the time and the will of the Father they shall go forth unto the Gentiles.

And whosoever will hearken unto my words and repenteth and is baptized, the same shall be saved. Search the prophets, for many there be that testify of these things.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that ye should write, that ye have not.

And it came to pass that he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.

And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:

Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?

And his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.

11 Pea na'e folofola 'a Sīsū kiate kinautolu: Ko e hā kuo 'ikai ai te mou tohi 'a e ngaahi me'a ní, na'e 'i ai 'a e kau mā'oni'oni tokolahi na'a nau tu'u hake 'o hā ki he tokolahi mo tauhi kiate kinautolu.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e manatu 'i 'e Nīfai kuo 'ikai tohi 'a e me'á ni.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'e Sīsū ke tohi ia; ko ia na'e tohi ia 'o hangē ko 'ene fekaú.

14 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hili hono fakamatala 'i fakataha 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola, 'a ia kuo nau tohi, na'á ne fekau kiate kinautolu ke nau akonaki 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a kuó ne fakamatala 'i kiate kinautolú.

And Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?

And it came to pass that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one, which they had written, he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them.

3 Nīfai 24

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fekau kiate kinautolu ke nau tohi 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a ia kuo fakahā 'e he Tamai kia Malakái, 'a ia na'e totonu ke ne fakahā kiate kinautolú. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hili hono tohi 'o e ngaahi me'a ní na'á ne fakamatala'i ia. Pea ko e ngaahi folofola 'eni 'a ia na'á ne folofola 'aki kiate kinautolú, 'o pehē: Na'e folofola peheni 'a e Tamai kia Malakai —Vakai, te u fekau 'a 'eku talafekau, pea te ne teuteu 'a e hala 'i hoku 'aó, pea ko e 'Eiki 'a ia 'oku mou kumi ki aí te ne hā'ele fakafokifā mai ki hono temipalé, 'io 'a e talafekau 'o e fuakavá, 'a ia 'oku mou fiefia ke mamata ki aí; vakai, 'e hā'ele mai ia, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.
- 2 Ka ko hai 'okú ne lava ke kātaki'i 'a e 'aho 'o 'ene hā'ele maí, pea ko hai 'okú ne lava ke tu'u 'o ka ne hā maí? He 'okú ne hangē ko e afi 'a e tangata fakama'a ukameá, pea tatau mo e koa fakama'a 'a e kau foó.
- 3 Pea te ne nofo 'o hangē ko e tangata fakama'a mo fakahaohaoa'i 'o e silivá; pea te ne fakahaohaoa'i 'a e ngaahi foha 'o Livaí, mo fakama'a 'a kinautolu 'o hangē ko e koulá mo e silivá, koe'uhi ke nau 'oatu ki he 'Eiki ha feilaulau 'i he mā'oni'oni.
- 4 'E toki lelei 'a e feilaulau 'a Siuta mo Selūsalemá ki he 'Eiki, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi 'aho 'i mu'á, pea hangē ko e ngaahi ta'u 'i mu'á.
- 5 Pea te u 'unu'unu atu kiate kimoutolu ke fakamaau; pea te u talatalaaki'i vave 'a e kau fie maná, mo e kau fé'auaki, mo e kau fuakava loí, pea kiate kinautolu 'oku ngaohikovi'i 'a e tangata ngāué 'i he'ene totongí, mo e uitoú pea mo e tamai maté, pea mo kinautolu 'oku teke'i 'a e mulí, mo kinautolu 'oku 'ikai manavahē kiate aú, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.
- 6 He ko au ko e 'Eiki, 'oku 'ikai te u liliu; ko ia 'e 'ikai faka'auha 'a kimoutolu 'e ngaahi foha 'o Sēkopé.
- 7 'To kuo talu mei he ngaahi 'aho 'o ho'omou ngaahi tamai mo ho'omou hē mei he'eku ngaahi ouaú, pea 'ikai tauhi ki ai. Tafoki mai kiate au pea te u tafoki atu kiate kimoutolu, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú. Ka 'oku mou pehē: Ko e hā te mau fai ke mau tafoki atu aí?

3 Nephi 24

And it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them. And it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them. And these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: Thus said the Father unto Malachi —Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me, and the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in; behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But who may abide the day of his coming, and who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like fuller's soap.

And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.

Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger, and fear not me, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of Hosts. But ye say: Wherein shall we return?

8 'E kaiha'a ha tangata mei he 'Otuá? Ka kuo mou kaiha'a meiate au. Ka 'oku mou pehē: Kuo mau kaiha'a meiate koe 'i he hā? 'I he ngaahi vahehongofulú mo e ngaahi foakí.

9 'Oku fakamala'ia 'i 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e mala'ia, he kuo mou kaiha'a meiate au, 'io 'a e pule'angá ni kotoa.

10 Mou 'omi 'a e ngaahi vahehongofulu kotoa pē ki he fale tuku'anga koloá, koe'uhi ke 'i ai ha me'akai 'i hoku falé; pea 'ahi'ahi 'i au 'i he me'á ni, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, pe te u fakaava kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi matapā 'o e langí, mo lilingi hifo kiate kimoutolu ha tāpuaki 'e 'ikai ha potu 'e fa'a hao ia ki ai.

11 Pea te u valokí 'i 'a e fai faka'auhá koe'uhi ko kimoutolu, pea 'e 'ikai te ne faka'auha 'a e fua 'o homou kekelelé; pea 'e 'ikai foki laku mai 'e he vainé 'a hono fuá 'i he ngaahi ngoue 'oku te'eki ke motu'a, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.

12 Pea 'e ui 'a kimoutolu 'e he ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē ko e monū'ia, he te mou hoko ko e fonua faka'ofa'ofa ke nofo ai, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.

13 Kuo fielahi mai ho'omou ngaahi leá kiate au, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki. Ka 'oku mou pehē: Ko e hā 'emau lea kuo fai kiate koé?

14 Kuo mou pehē: 'Oku ta'é'aonga 'a e tauhi ki he 'Otuá, pea ko e hā hono 'aonga 'o 'etau tauhi 'ene ngaahi ouaú mo 'etau mamahi koe'uhi ko 'etau ngaahi angahalá 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú?

15 Pea ko 'eni 'oku tau ui 'a e pōlepolé ko e fiefia; 'io, ko kinautolu 'oku fai angahalá 'oku nau tu'umālie; 'io, ko kinautolu 'oku 'ahi'ahi kovi ki he 'Otuá 'oku fakahaofi 'a kinautolu.

16 Pea ko kinautolu na'e manavahē ki he 'Eiki na'a nau toutou fetalanoa'aki, pea na'e ongo'i 'e he 'Eiki mo ne fanongo ki ai; pea na'e tohi 'i hono 'aó ha tohi 'o e manatú ma'anautolu na'e manavahē ki he 'Eiki, mo faka'apa'apa ki hono huafá.

17 Pea te nau hoko ko hoku kakai 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, 'i he 'aho ko ia te u fili ai 'a e kakai ke hoko ko 'eku ngaahi siuelí; pea te u fakahaofi 'a kinautolu 'o hangē ko hono fakahaofi 'e ha tangata 'a hono foha 'o'ona 'a ia 'oku tauhi kiate iá.

Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say: Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.

Ye are cursed with a curse, for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.

Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house; and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of Hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the fields, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And all nations shall call you blessed, for ye shall be a delightful land, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Your words have been stout against me, saith the Lord. Yet ye say: What have we spoken against thee?

Ye have said: It is vain to serve God, and what doth it profit that we have kept his ordinances and that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of Hosts?

And now we call the proud happy; yea, they that work wickedness are set up; yea, they that tempt God are even delivered.

Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another, and the Lord hearkened and heard; and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name.

And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of Hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

18 Pea te mou tafoki mai pea 'ilo'i hono fai kehekehe 'o e mā'oni'oni mo e angahalá, mo ia 'oku tauhi ki he 'Otuá mo ia 'oku 'ikai tauhi kiate iá.

Then shall ye return and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.

3 Nīfai 25

- 1 He vakai, 'oku ha'u 'a e 'aho 'a ia 'e vela 'o hangē ko e ngoto'umú; pea ko e kau pōlepolé, 'io, mo kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku fai angahalá, te nau hangē ko e veve; pea 'oku ha'u 'a e 'aho 'e tutu 'o 'osi 'a kinautolu, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú, pea 'e 'ikai toe hanau aka pe va'a.
- 2 Ka ko kimoutolu 'e manavahē ki hoku hingoá, 'e hopo hake 'a e 'Alo 'o e Mā'oní'oní mo e fakamo'ui 'i hono kapakaú; pea te mou 'alu atu pea tupu hake 'o hangē ko e fanga 'uhiki 'i pulu 'i he fale fafanga.
- 3 Pea te mou molomoloki hifo 'a e kau angahalá; he te nau hoko ko e efuefu 'i homou lalo 'aofi va'é 'i he 'aho 'a ia te u fai ai 'a e me'a ní, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki 'o e Ngaahi Kau Taú.
- 4 Mou manatu 'i 'a e fono 'a Mōse, ko 'eku tamaio'eikí, 'a ia na'á ku fekau kiate ia 'i Hōlepi ma'a 'Isileli kotoa pē, mo e ngaahi fonó mo e ngaahi tauteá.
- 5 Vakai, te u fekau 'a 'Ilaisiā ko e palōfitá kiate kimoutolu 'i he te'eki ai hoko 'a e fu'u 'aho lahi mo fakamanavahē 'o e 'Eikí.
- 6 Pea te ne liliu 'a e loto 'o e ngaahi tamaí ki he fānaú, pea mo e loto 'o e fānaú ki he 'enau ngaahi tamaí, telia na'á ku ha'u 'o taa'i 'a e māmaní 'aki 'a e mala'ia.

3 Nephi 25

For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.

But unto you that fear my name, shall the Son of Righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth and grow up as calves in the stall.

And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Remember ye the law of Moses, my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.

Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord;

And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

3 Nīfai 26

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi me'a ní na'á ne fakamatala 'i ia ki he kakaí; pea ne fakamatala 'i 'a e me'a kotoa pē kiate kinautolu, 'a e ngaahi me'a lalahí mo e ngaahi me'a íkí fakatou 'osi.
- 2 Peá ne folofola: Ko e ngaahi folofola ko 'eni 'a ia na'e 'íkai te mou ma'ú, kuo fekau 'e he Tamái ke u foaki kiate kimoutolu, he na'á ne 'afio 'i 'oku lelei ke 'oatu ia ki he ngaahi to'u tangata 'amuí.
- 3 Pea na'á ne fakamatala 'i 'a e me'a kotoa pē, 'o fai mei he kamata'angá 'o a'u ki he taimi te ne hā'ele mai 'i hono nāunaú—'io, na'a mo e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'e hoko 'i he funga 'o e māmaní, 'o a'u ki he hoko 'o vaia 'a e ngaahi 'elemēnití 'i he fu'u vela lahi, pea 'e takai fakataha 'a e māmaní 'o hangē ha takainga tohi, pea 'e mole atu 'a e langí mo e māmaní;
- 4 Pea fai foki 'o a'u ki he fu'u 'aho lahi mo faka'osí, 'o ka tu'u 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá 'a e kakai kotoa pē, mo e ngaahi fá'ahinga, mo e ngaahi pule'anga kotoa pē, mo e ngaahi lea, ke fakamāu 'i 'i he 'enua ngaahi ngāu'é, pe kuo lelei pe kovi ia—
- 5 Kapau 'oku lelei, pea 'e kau ia 'i he toetu'u 'o e mo'ui ta'engatá; pea kapau 'oku kovi, pea 'e kau ia 'i he toetu'u 'o e mala'ía; pea 'oku fehangahangai 'a e ongo toetu'u ko iá, ko e taha 'i he founga 'e taha pea mo e taha 'i he founga 'e taha, 'o hoa mo e 'alo'ofá, mo e fakamaau totonú, pea mo e mā'oni'oni 'a ia 'oku 'ia Kalaisí, 'a ia na'e 'i mu'a 'i he kamata 'a māmaní.
- 6 Pea ko 'eni 'oku 'ikai fá'a tohi 'i he tohí ni hano vaheteau 'e taha 'o e ngaahi me'a na'e akonaki mo'oni 'aki 'e Sīsū ki he kakaí;
- 7 Kae vakai 'oku tu'u 'i he ngaahi peleti 'a Nīfai 'a e kongá lahi 'o e ngaahi me'a 'a ia na'á ne akonaki 'aki ki he kakaí.
- 8 Pea ko e ngaahi me'á ni kuó u tohí, 'a ia ko e kongá sí 'i 'o e ngaahi me'a na'á ne akonaki 'aki ki he kakaí; pea kuó u tohi ia 'i he 'uhinga ke toe 'omi ia ki he kakaí ni, mei he kau Senitailé, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi folofola kuo folofola 'aki 'e Sīsú.

3 Nephi 26

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude; and he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.

And he saith: These scriptures, which ye had not with you, the Father commanded that I should give unto you; for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory—yea, even all things which should come upon the face of the earth, even until the elements should melt with fervent heat, and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll, and the heavens and the earth should pass away;

And even unto the great and last day, when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation; being on a parallel, the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

But behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the people.

And these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

9 Pea 'o ka nau ka ma'u 'eni, 'a ia 'oku 'aonga ke nau tomu'a ma'u, ke sivi'i ai 'enau tui, pea kapau te nau tui ki he ngaahi me'a ni 'e toki fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a lalahi angé.

10 Pea kapau 'e 'ikai te nau tui ki he ngaahi me'a ni, 'e ta'ofi meiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi me'a lalahi angé, 'o nau mala'ia ai.

11 Vakai, na'á ku mei tohi ia, 'a ia kotoa pē na'e tongitongi ki he ngaahi peleti 'a Nīfaí, ka na'e ta'ofi ia 'e he 'Eikí, 'o ne folofola: Te u sivi'i 'a e tui 'a hoku kakaí.

12 Ko ia ko au, Molomona, 'oku ou tohi pē 'a e me'a kuo fekau kiate au 'e he 'Eikí. Pea ko 'eni ko au, Molomona, 'oku ou faka'osi 'eku ngaahi fakamatalá, peá u hanga atu ke tohi 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo tu'utu'uni kiate aú.

13 Ko ia, 'oku ou faka'amou ke mou 'ilo'i na'e akonaki mo'oni 'e he 'Eikí ki he kakaí, 'i he 'aho 'e tolu; pea hili ia na'á ne toutou fakahā ia kiate kinautolu, mo ne toutou pakipaki 'a e mā, 'o ne tāpuakí'i ia, peá ne 'oatu ia kiate kinautolu.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne ako'i mo tauhi ki he fānau 'a e kakai, 'a ia kuo lau ki aí, pea na'á ne vete ange honau 'eleló, pea na'a nau lea ki he 'enau ngaahi tamaí 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a ma'ongo'onga mo fakafo, 'io 'oku ma'ongo'onga ange 'i he ngaahi me'a kuó ne fakahā ki he kakaí; pea na'á ne foaki kiate kinautolu 'a e mālohi ke nau lea.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē hili 'ene hā'ele hake ki he langí—'i he 'ene fakahā ia ko hono tu'o ua kiate kinautolú, pea kuo hā'ele hake ia ki he Tamaí, 'i he hili 'ene fakamo'ui honau kakai mahaki kotoa pē, mo honau kakai pipikí, mo 'ene faka'ā 'a e mata 'o honau kakai kuí mo 'ene fakaava 'a e telinga 'o e kakai tulí, pea mo 'ene fai 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e ngaahi fakamo'ui 'iate kinautolu, 'o ne fokotu'u hake ha tangata mei he maté, mo fakahā atu hono māfimaí kiate kinautolu, pea hā'ele hake ki he Tamaí—

16 Vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he pongipongi haké na'e kātoa fakataha mai 'a e kakaí, pea na'a nau mamata mo fānongo ki he fānau ni; 'io, na'a mo e fānau valevalé na'a nau fakaava honau ngutú 'o nau lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a fakafo; pea ko e ngaahi me'a na'a nau lea 'aki na'e tapui hono tohi 'e ha tangata.

And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

Behold, I was about to write them, all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade it, saying: I will try the faith of my people.

Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I, Mormon, make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been commanded me.

Therefore, I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto them.

And it came to pass that he did teach and minister unto the children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken, and he did loose their tongues, and they did speak unto their fathers great and marvelous things, even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and he loosed their tongues that they could utter.

And it came to pass that after he had ascended into heaven—the second time that he showed himself unto them, and had gone unto the Father, after having healed all their sick, and their lame, and opened the eyes of their blind and unstopped the ears of the deaf, and even had done all manner of cures among them, and raised a man from the dead, and had shown forth his power unto them, and had ascended unto the Father—

Behold, it came to pass on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together, and they both saw and heard these children; yea, even babes did open their mouths and utter marvelous things; and the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should not any man write them.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata 'e he kau ākonga na'e fili 'e Sīsuú mei he taimi ko iá ke papitaiso mo ako'i 'a kinautolu kotoa pē na'e ha'u kiate kinautolú; pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'a ia na'e papitaiso 'i he huafa 'o Sīsuú na'e fakafonu 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oní.

18 Pea na'e mamata mo fanongo 'e honau tokolahi ki ha ngaahi me'a 'oku 'ikai fa'a lea'aki, 'a ia kuo 'ikai fakangofua ke tohi.

19 Pea nau feako'aki, mo fetauhi'aki 'iate kinautolu; pea na'a nau me'a taha pē 'i he 'enau ngaahi me'a kotoa pē, pea na'e fefaitotonu'aki 'a e kakai kotoa pē, 'iate kinautolu.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'o hangē ko ia kuo fekau 'e Sīsū kiate kinautolú.

21 Pea na'e ui 'a kinautolu na'e papitaiso 'i he huafa 'o Sīsuú ko e siasi 'o Kalaisí.

And it came to pass that the disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time forth to baptize and to teach as many as did come unto them; and as many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And many of them saw and heard unspeakable things, which are not lawful to be written.

And they taught, and did minister one to another; and they had all things common among them, every man dealing justly, one with another.

And it came to pass that they did do all things even as Jesus had commanded them.

And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus were called the church of Christ.

3 Nīfai 27

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he lolotonga 'a e fononga 'a e kau ākongā 'a Sīsuú mo nau malanga 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo nau fanongo mo mamata ki aí, pea nau fai papitaiso 'i he huafa 'o Sīsuú, na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo kātoa mai 'a e kau ākongá 'o nau kau fakataha 'i he lotu fakamātoato mo e 'aukai.
- 2 Pea na'e toe fakahā 'e Sīsū ia kiate kinautolu, he na'a nau lolotonga lotu ki he Tamaí 'i hono huafá; pea na'e hā'ele mai 'a Sīsū 'o ne tu'u 'i honau lotolotongá, 'o ne folofola kiate kinautolu: Ko e hā ha me'a 'oku mou loto ke u foaki kiate kimoutolú?
- 3 Pea na'a nau pehē kiate ia: 'E 'Eiki, 'oku mau loto ke ke fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a e huafa ke mau ui 'aki 'a e siasí ni; he 'oku 'i ai 'a e ngaahi fakakikihi 'i he kakaí 'o kau ki he me'á ni.
- 4 Pea folofola 'a e 'Eiki kiate kinautolu: Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko e hā hono 'uhinga 'oku felau'aki mo fefakakikihi'aki ai 'a e kakaí koe'uhi ko e me'á ní?
- 5 Kuo 'ikai te nau lau koā 'a e ngaahi folofolá, 'a ia 'oku pehē mai ai 'oku totonu ke mou 'ai kiate kimoutolu 'a e huafa 'o Kalaisí, 'a ia ko hoku hingoá? He ko e hingoa ia 'e ui 'aki 'a kimoutolu 'i he 'aho faka'osí;
- 6 Pea ko ia ia 'okú ne to'o kiate ia 'a hoku hingoá, pea kātaki ki he ngata'angá, 'e fakamo'ui ia 'i he 'aho faka'osí.
- 7 Ko ia, ko e me'a kotoa pē te mou faí, ke mou fai ia 'i hoku hingoá; ko ia ke mou ui 'a e siasí 'i hoku hingoá; pea ke mou ui ki he Tamaí 'i hoku hingoá ke ne tāpuaki 'i 'a e siasí koe'uhi ko au.
- 8 Pea 'oku fēfē 'ene hoko ko hoku siasi 'o kapau 'oku 'ikai ui ia 'i hoku hingoá? He kapau 'oku ui ha siasi 'i he hingoa 'o Mōsesé pea ko e siasi ia 'o Mōsesē; pe kapau 'oku ui ia 'i he hingoa 'o ha tangata pea ko e siasi ia 'o ha tangata; ka kapau 'oku ui ia 'i hoku hingoá pea ko hoku siasi ia, 'o kapau kuo langa 'a kinautolu 'i he'eku ongoongoleléi.
- 9 Ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kimoutolu, kuo langa 'a kimoutolu 'i he'eku ongoongoleléi; ko ia ke mou ui 'a e me'a kotoa pē te mou uí, 'i hoku hingoá; ko ia kapau te mou ui ki he Tamaí, koe'uhi ko e siasí, pea kapau te mou fai ia 'i hoku hingoá 'e 'afio 'i 'a kimoutolu 'e he Tamaí.

3 Nephi 27

And it came to pass that as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus, it came to pass that the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting.

And Jesus again showed himself unto them, for they were praying unto the Father in his name; and Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will ye that I shall give unto you?

And they said unto him: Lord, we will that thou wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this church; for there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.

And the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?

Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall ye be called at the last day;

And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.

Therefore, whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name; therefore ye shall call the church in my name; and ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake.

And how be it my church save it be called in my name? For if a church be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' church; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.

Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name; therefore if ye call upon the Father, for the church, if it be in my name the Father will hear you;

10 Pea kapau kuo langa 'a e siasí 'i he 'eku ongoongolelei 'e toki fakahā atu 'e he Tamaí 'a 'ene ngaahi ngāue 'a 'aná 'i ai.

11 Ka 'o kapau 'oku 'ikai langa ia 'i he 'eku ongoongolelei, ka kuo langa ia 'i he ngaahi ngāue 'a e tangatá, pe ko e ngaahi ngāue 'a e tēvoló, ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'oku nau ma'u 'a e fiefia 'i he 'enau ngaahi ngāue 'i ha taimi si'i, pea 'e faifai pē pea 'e hokosia 'a e ngata'angá, pea 'e tā hifo 'a kinautolu 'o laku ki he afi, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai fa'a foki mei aí.

12 He 'oku muimui 'enau ngaahi ngāue 'iate kinautolu, he koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi ngāue 'oku tā hifo ai 'a kinautolú; ko ia manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a kuó u tala kiate kimoutolú.

13 Vakai kuó u 'oatu kiate kimoutolu 'a 'eku ongoongolelei, pea ko e ongoongolelei 'eni 'a ia kuó u 'oatu kiate kimoutolú—kuó u ha'u ki he māmaní ke fai 'a e finangalo 'o 'eku Tamaí, koe'uhi na'e fekau 'i au 'e he 'eku Tamaí.

14 Pea na'e fekau 'i au 'e he 'eku Tamaí koe'uhi ke hiki hake au ki he kolosí; pea ka hili hono hiki hake au ki he kolosí, ke u tohoaki 'i 'a e kakai fulipē kiate au, pea hangē hono hiki hake au 'e he tangatá, ke pehē hono hiki hake 'a e tangatá 'e he Tamaí, ke nau tu'u 'i hoku 'aó, ke fakamāu 'i 'i he 'enau ngaahi ngāue, pe 'oku lelei ia pe kovi—

15 Pea ko hono 'uhinga 'eni kuo hiki hake ai aú; ko ia, 'i he māfifafi 'o e Tamaí te u tohoaki 'i 'a e kakai fulipē kiate au, koe'uhi ke fakamāu 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau ki he 'enau ngaahi ngāue.

16 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē, ko ia ia 'e fakatomala mo papitaiso 'i hoku hingoá 'e fakafonu ia; pea kapau te ne kātaki ki he ngata'angá, vakai, te u lau ia 'oku 'ikai ha'ane angahala 'i he 'ao 'o 'eku Tamaí 'i he 'aho 'a ia te u tu'u ai ke fakamāu 'i 'a e māmaní.

17 Pea ko ia ia 'oku 'ikai kātaki ki he ngata'angá, ko ia ia foki 'oku tā hifo 'o laku ki he afi, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai te nau fa'a foki mei ai, koe'uhi ko e fakamaau totonu 'a e Tamaí.

18 Pea ko e folofola 'eni 'a ia kuó ne fai ki he fānau 'a e tangatá. Pea 'i he me'á ni 'okú ne fakahoko ai 'a e ngaahi folofola kuó ne fai, pea 'oku 'ikai te ne loi, ka 'okú ne fakahoko 'a 'ene ngaahi folofola kotoa pē.

And if it so be that the church is built upon my gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it.

But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season, and by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return.

For their works do follow them, for it is because of their works that they are hewn down; therefore remember the things that I have told you.

Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you—that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.

And my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

And for this cause have I been lifted up; therefore, according to the power of the Father I will draw all men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.

And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled; and if he endureth to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world.

And he that endureth not unto the end, the same is he that is also hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no more return, because of the justice of the Father.

And this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men. And for this cause he fulfilleth the words which he hath given, and he lieth not, but fulfilleth all his words.

19 Pea 'oku 'ikai fa' a hū ha me'a 'oku ta'ema'a ki hono pule'angá; ko ia 'oku 'ikai hū ki hono mālōlō'angá ha taha ka ko kinautolu pē kuo fō honau kofú 'i hoku totó, koe'uhi ko 'enau tui, mo e fakatomala mei he' enau ngaahi angahala kotoa pē, pea mo 'enau tui faivelenga 'o 'au ki he ngata'angá.

20 Ko 'eni ko e fekaú 'eni: Fakatomala, 'a kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi ngata'anga kotoa pē 'o e māmaní, pea ha' u kiate au 'o papitaiso 'i hoku hingoá, koe'uhi ke fakamā'oni'oni' 'i 'a kimoutolu 'i he ma'u 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, koe'uhi ke mou tu'u ta'e-ha-mele 'i hoku 'aó 'i he 'aho faka'osí.

21 Ko e mo'oni, ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko 'eku ongoongoleleí 'eni; pea 'oku mou 'ilo' 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a 'oku totonu ke mou fai 'i hoku siasí; he ko e ngaahi ngāue 'a ia kuo mou mamata kuó u fai ke mou fai foki ia; he ko e me'a kuo mou mamata kuó u fai ke mou fai foki ia.

22 Ko ia, kapau 'oku mou fai 'a e ngaahi me'a ni 'oku mou monū'ia, he 'e hiki hake 'a kimoutolu 'i he 'aho faka'osí.

23 Tohi 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo mou mamata mo fanongo ki aí, tuku kehe pē 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo tapuí.

24 Tohi 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a e kakaí ni, 'a ia te nau faí, 'o hangē ko ia kuo tohi 'e he ni'ihí kehé, mo e ngaahi me'a 'i he kuohilí.

25 He vakai, 'e fai mei he ngaahi tohi kuo tohí, pea mo e ngaahi tohi 'e faí, 'a hono fakamāu 'i 'o e kakaí ni, he 'e 'ilo mei aí 'e he kakaí 'a 'enau ngaahi ngāue.

26 Pea vakai, ko e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuo tohi 'e he Tamaí; ko ia 'e fakamāu 'i 'a e māmaní mei he ngaahi tohi kuo tohí.

27 Pea ke mou 'ilo te mou hoko ko e kau fakamaau ki he kakaí ni, 'o fakatau mo e mafai ke fakamaau 'a kimoutolu, 'a ia 'e totonu. Ko ia, ko e hā 'a e anga 'oku tau mo kimoutolú? Ko e mo'oni, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ke mou hangē pē ko aú.

28 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou 'alu ki he Tamaí. Pea ko e mo'oni 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko e me'a kotoa pē te mou kole ki he Tamaí 'i hoku hingoá 'e foaki ia kiate kimoutolu.

And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end.

Now this is the commandment: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and ye know the things that ye must do in my church; for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do; for that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do;

Therefore, if ye do these things blessed are ye, for ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Write the things which ye have seen and heard, save it be those which are forbidden.

Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath been written, of that which hath been.

For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.

And behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged.

And know ye that ye shall be judges of this people, according to the judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just. Therefore, what manner of men ought ye to be? Verily I say unto you, even as I am.

And now I go unto the Father. And verily I say unto you, whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name shall be given unto you.

- 29 Ko ia, mou kole, pea te mou ma'u; tukituki, pea 'e to'o kiate kimoutolu; he ko ia ia 'okú ne kolé, 'okú ne ma'u; pea ko ia ia 'oku tukitukí, 'e to'o kiate ia.
- 30 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'oku hulu 'a 'eku fiefiá, 'io 'o a'u ki he'ene kakato, koe'uhi ko kimoutolu, kae 'uma'ā foki mo e to'u tangatá ni foki; 'io, pea 'oku fiefia 'a e Tamaí, pea mo e kau 'āngelo mā'oni'oni kotoa pē foki, koe'uhi ko kimoutolu pea mo e to'u tangatá ni; he kuo 'ikai ke mole hanau toko taha.
- 31 Vakai, 'oku ou faka'amu ke mahino kiate kimoutolu; he ko 'eku lea 'o kau kiate kinautolu 'oku lolotonga mo'ui 'i he to'u tangata ko 'ení; pea kuo 'ikai ke mole hanau toko taha; pea 'oku ou ma'u 'iate kinautolu 'a e fiefia kakató.
- 32 Kae vakai, 'oku fakamamahi kiate au koe'uhi ko e to'u tangata hono fā mei he to'u tangata ko 'ení, he 'e taki pōpula 'a kinautolu 'e ia 'o hangē foki na'e fai ki he foha 'o e mala'ía; he te nau fakatau 'aki au 'a e siliva mo e koula, pea mo e me'a 'oku kai 'e he ané pea 'oku fa'a hae'i 'e he kau kaiha'á 'o kaiha'así. Pea 'i he 'aho ko iá te u tautea'i 'a kinautolu, 'io 'o fakafoki 'enau ngaahi ngāue ki honau 'ulu 'onautolú.
- 33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he faka'osi 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola ní na'á ne folofola ki he'ene kau ākongá: Mou hū 'i he matapā fāsi'i; he 'oku fāsi'i 'a e matapaá mo lausi'i 'a e hala 'oku fakatau ki he mo'uí, pea 'oku 'ilo ia 'e he tokosi'i; ka 'oku fālahi 'a e matapaá mo 'ata'atā 'a e hala 'oku fakatau ki he maté, pea 'oku tokolahi 'oku 'alu ai, 'o a'u ki he'ene hokosia 'a e pō, 'a ia 'oku 'ikai fa'a fai ai 'e ha tangata ha ngāue 'e taha.

Therefore, ask, and ye shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asketh, receiveth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

And now, behold, my joy is great, even unto fulness, because of you, and also this generation; yea, and even the Father rejoiceth, and also all the holy angels, because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost.

Behold, I would that ye should understand; for I mean them who are now alive of this generation; and none of them are lost; and in them I have fulness of joy.

But behold, it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this generation, for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he said unto his disciples: Enter ye in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it; but wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh, wherein no man can work.

3 Nīfai 28

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola ní, na'á ne folofola taki taha ki he'ene kau ākongá, 'o pehē kiate kinautolu: Ko e hā 'a e me'a 'oku mou fie ma'u meiate au, 'o ka hili 'a 'eku 'alu ki he Tamaí?
- 2 Pea na'a nau lea kotoa pē, tuku kehe pē 'a e toko tolu, 'o nau pehē: 'Oku mau faka'amu 'o ka hili 'emau mo'ui 'o a'u ki he ta'u totonu 'o e tangatá, 'o ka 'osi 'emau ngāue fakafaifekau, 'a ia kuó ke ui 'a kimautilu ki aí, ke mau foki vave atu kiate koe 'i ho pule'angá.
- 3 Pea folofola ia kiate kinautolu: 'Oku mou monū'ia koe'uhi ko ho'omou fie ma'u 'a e me'á ni meiate aú; ko ia, 'o ka mou ka hoko ki homou fitungofulu mā ua 'o e ta'ú te mou ha'u kiate au 'i hoku pule'angá; pea te mou ma'u 'a e fiemālie 'iate au.
- 4 Pea hili 'ene folofola kiate kinautolú, pea 'afio atu ia ki he toko tolú, 'o ne folofola kiate kinautolu: Ko e hā 'a e me'a 'oku mou loto ke u fai ma'amoutolú, 'o ka hili 'eku 'alu ki he Tamaí?
- 5 Pea na'a nau mamahi 'i honau lotó, he na'a nau manavahē ke tala kiate ia 'a e me'a na'a nau fie ma'ú.
- 6 Pea folofola ia kiate kinautolu: Vakai, 'oku ou 'ilo'i ho'omou ngaahi fakakauká, pea 'oku mou fie ma'u 'a e me'a na'e fie ma'u meiate au 'e Sione, ko hoku 'ofa'angá, 'a ia na'á ne 'iate au 'i he'eku ngāue 'i he te'eki ai ke hiki hake au 'e he kau Siú.
- 7 Ko ia, 'oku monū'ia lahi ange 'a kimoutolu, he 'e 'ikai te mou teitei 'ilo 'a e maté, ka te mou mo'ui 'o mou mamata ki he ngaahi ngāue kotoa pē 'a e Tamaí ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'o a'u ki hono fakahoko 'o e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'o fakatatau mo e finangalo 'o e Tamaí, 'o kau ka ha'u 'i hoku nāunaú mo e ngaahi mālohi 'o e langí.
- 8 Pea 'e 'ikai te mou teitei kātaki'i 'a e ngaahi mamahi 'o e maté; ka 'o kau ka ha'u 'i hoku nāunaú te mou liliu 'i he kemo 'o e matá mei he fa'a-maté ni ki he ta'e-fa'a-maté; pea 'e toki tāpuaki'i 'a kimoutolu 'i he pule'anga 'o 'eku Tamaí.

3 Nephi 28

And it came to pass when Jesus had said these words, he spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father?

And they all spake, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom.

And he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me; therefore, after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?

And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the thing which they desired.

And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.

And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.

- 9 Pea ko e tahá, 'e 'ikai hoko kiate kimoutolu ha mamahi 'i he lolotonga ho'omou mo'ui 'i he kakanó, pe ha loto-mamahi tuku kehe pē 'a e mamahi koe'uhi ko e ngaahi angahala 'a e māmaní; pea te u fai 'eni kotoa pē koe'uhi ko e me'a kuo mou fie ma'u meiate aú, he kuo mou faka'amu ke 'omi 'a e ngaahi laumālie kiate au, lolotonga 'oku kei tu'u 'a e māmaní.
- 10 Pea 'i he me'á ni te mou ma'u 'a e kakato 'o e fiefiá; pea te mou nofo hifo 'i he pule'anga 'o 'eku Tamaí; 'io, 'e kakato ho'omou fiefiá, 'o hangē kuo foaki kiate au 'e he Tamaí 'a e fiefia kakató; pea te mou hangē pē ko aú, pea 'oku ou hangē ko e Tamaí; pea ko e Tamaí pea mo au 'okú ma taha pē;
- 11 Pea 'oku fakamo'oni 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'óní ki he Tamaí mo au; pea 'oku foaki 'e he Tamaí 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'óní ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, koe'uhi ko au.
- 12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e folofola 'aki 'e Sīsū 'a e ngaahi folofola ní, na'á ne ala 'aki hono louhi'i to'ukupú kiate kinautolu taki taha, tuku kehe pē 'a e toko tolu 'e tatalí, pea ne 'alu leva.
- 13 Pea vakai, na'e matangaki 'a e langí, pea na'e 'ave 'a kinautolu ki he langí, pea na'a nau mamata mo fanongo ki he ngaahi me'a 'oku 'ikai fá'a lea'aki.
- 14 Pea na'e tapui 'a kinautolu ke nau lea'aki; pea na'e 'ikai ke tuku kiate kinautolu 'a e mafai ke nau lea'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia na'a nau mamata mo fanongo ki aí;
- 15 Pea na'a nau 'i he sinó pe na'e 'ikai 'i he sinó, na'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo; he na'e hangē kiate kinautolu ko hanau liliú, 'o nau liliu mei he sinó ni 'o e kakanó ki ha tu'unga ta'e-fá'a-mate, koe'uhi ke nau fá'a mamata ki he ngaahi me'a 'a e 'Otuá.
- 16 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau toe ngāue 'i he funga 'o e māmani; ka neongo iá na'e 'ikai te nau malanga 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo nau fanongo mo mamata ki aí, koe'uhi ko e fekau 'a ia na'e fai kiate kinautolu 'i he langí.
- 17 Pea ko 'eni, na'a nau 'i he sino fakamatelié pe sino ta'e-fá'a-mate, hili 'a e 'aho 'o honau liliú, 'oku 'ikai te u 'ilo;

And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one;

And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.

And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.

And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.

But it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven.

And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;

18 Ka 'oku ou 'ilo 'eni, hangē ko e lekooti kuo tohí—
na'a nau 'alu atu 'i he funga 'o e fonuá, 'o nau malanga ki
he kakai kotoa pē pea fakaului mai 'a e tokolahi ki he
siasi 'a ia ne tui ki he 'enau ngaahi malangá; 'o papitaiso
'a kinautolu, pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē na'e papitaisó
na'a nau ma'u 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'óní.

19 Pea na'e lí 'a kinautolu ki he fale fakapōpulá 'e
kinautolu na'e 'ikai ke kau ki he siasí. Pea na'e 'ikai te
nau fa'a ta'ofi 'a kinautolu 'e he ngaahi fale fakapōpulá,
he na'e mafahi ua ia.

20 Pea na'e lí hifo 'a kinautolu ki he ngaahi luo 'i he
kelekelé; ka na'a nau taa 'i 'a e kelekelé 'aki 'a e folofola 'a
e 'Otuá, ka 'i hono māfima'í na'e fakahaofi 'a kinautolu
mei he loto kelekelé; ko ia na'e 'ikai te nau fa'a keli ai ha
ngaahi luo fe'unga ke fakapōpula 'i ai 'a kinautolu.

21 Pea na'e tu'ó tolu hono lí 'a kinautolu ki he loto afi
kakahá ka na'e 'ikai hoko kiate kinautolu ha kovi.

22 Pea na'e tu'ó ua hono lí 'a kinautolu ki he 'ana 'o e
fanga manu fekai; pea vakai na'a nau va'inga mo e fanga
manú 'o hangē ko e tamasi'i mo e lami 'oku huhu, pea
na'e 'ikai hoko kiate kinautolu ha kovi.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pehē 'enau 'alu atu 'i he
kakai kotoa pē 'o Nifái, 'o malanga 'aki 'a e
ongoongolelei 'a Kalaisí ki he kakai fulipē 'i he funga 'o e
fonuá; pea na'e fakaului 'a kinautolu ki he 'Eikí, pea nau
ului ki he siasi 'o Kalaisí, pea ko ia na'e pehē hono
tāpuaki 'i 'o e kakai 'o e to'u tangata ko iá, 'o fakatatau ki
he folofola 'a Sísuú.

24 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Molomona, 'oku ou tuku 'eku lau
ki he ngaahi me'a ní 'i ha ki'i taimi sí'i.

25 Vakai, na'á ku mei tohi 'a e ngaahi hingoa 'onautolu 'e
'ikai te nau a'usia 'a e maté, ka na'e ta'ofi 'e he 'Eikí; ko ia
'oku 'ikai te u tohi ia, he 'oku fufuu 'i ia mei he māmaní.

26 Kae vakai, kuó u mamata kiate kinautolu, pea kuo
nau tauhi kiate au.

27 Pea vakai te nau 'i he kau Senitailé, pea 'e 'ikai 'ilo 'i 'a
kinautolu 'e he kau Senitailé.

28 Te nau 'i he kau Siú foki, pea 'e 'ikai 'ilo 'a kinautolu 'e
he kau Siú.

But this much I know, according to the record which
hath been given—they did go forth upon the face of the
land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as
many to the church as would believe in their preaching;
baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did re-
ceive the Holy Ghost.

And they were cast into prison by them who did not
belong to the church. And the prisons could not hold
them, for they were rent in twain.

And they were cast down into the earth; but they did
smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by
his power they were delivered out of the depths of the
earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to
hold them.

And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received
no harm.

And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts;
and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with
a suckling lamb, and received no harm.

And it came to pass that thus they did go forth
among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the
gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the
land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were
united unto the church of Christ, and thus the people
of that generation were blessed, according to the word
of Jesus.

And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking con-
cerning these things for a time.

Behold, I was about to write the names of those who
were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade;
therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the
world.

But behold, I have seen them, and they have minis-
tered unto me.

And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and the
Gentiles shall know them not.

They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall
know them not.

29 Pea 'e hoko 'o pehē, 'o ka 'afio 'e he 'Eiki 'i hono potó 'oku lelei ke nau ngāue ki he ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa 'o 'Isileli kuo fakamoveteveté, pea ki he ngaahi pule'anga, mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga, mo e ngaahi lea mo e kakai fulipē, pea nau fakaului mei ai 'a e kakai tokolahi kia Sīsū, koe'uhi ke fakahoko 'enau faka'amú, pea koe'uhi foki ko e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá ke fakamo'oni 'oku 'iate kinautolú.

30 Pea 'oku nau hangē ko e kau 'āngelo 'a e 'Otuá, pea kapau te nau lotu ki he Tamaí 'i he huafa 'o Sīsúú 'oku nau lava 'o fakahā 'a kinautolu ki ha tangata pē 'oku nau fie fakahā ki aí.

31 Ko ia, 'e lahi ha ngaahi ngāue ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofo te nau fai, 'i he te'eki ai hoko 'a e fu'ú 'aho lahi 'oku ha'ú 'a ia kuo pau 'e tu'ú ai 'a e kakai fulipē 'i he nofo'anga fakamaau 'o Kalaisí;

32 'To 'e a'ú foki ki he kau Senitailé 'e fai ha ngāue ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofo 'e kinautolu, ki mu'a 'i he 'aho fakamaau ko íá.

33 Pea ka ne mou ma'ú 'a e ngaahi folofola kotoa pē 'oku fakamatala ki he ngaahi ngāue fakaofo kotoa pē 'a Kalaisí, te mou 'ilo'i, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi folofola 'a Kalaisí, kuo pau ke hoko mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'á ni.

34 Pea 'e mala'ia ia 'oku 'ikai fie tokanga ki he ngaahi folofola 'a Sīsúú, pea kiate kinautolu foki kuó ne fili mo fekau atu kiate kinautolú; he ko ia ia 'oku 'ikai te ne tali 'a e ngaahi folofola 'a Sīsúú mo e ngaahi lea 'a kinautolu kuó ne fekau atú 'oku 'ikai te ne tali íá; pea ko ia 'e 'ikai te ne ma'ú 'a kinautolu 'i he 'aho faka'osí.

35 Pea 'e lelei ange kiate kinautolu 'o kapau na'e 'ikai fanau 'i 'a kinautolu. He 'oku mou mahalo koā te mou fa'a hao mei he fakamaau totonu 'a ha 'Otuá 'oku houhau, 'a ia kuo molomoloki hifo 'e he kaká 'i honau lalo va'é, koe'uhi ke lava ke hoko ai 'a e fakamo'uí?.

36 Pea ko 'eni vakai, hangē ko 'eku lau 'o kau kiate kinautolu kuo fili 'e he 'Eikí, 'io, 'a e toko tolu 'a ia na'e 'ave ki he langí, na'e 'ikai te u 'ilo pe kuo liliu 'a kinautolu mei he fakamatelié ki he anga ta'e-fa'a-maté pe 'ikai—

37 Kae vakai, hili 'eku fai 'a e tohí, kuó u fehu 'i ki he 'Eikí, pea kuó ne fakahā kiate au 'oku totonu ke fakahoko ha liliu ki honau sinó, ka 'ikai pea kuo pau pe ke nau a'usia 'a e maté;

And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.

And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.

Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;

Yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day.

And if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, ye would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come.

And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;

And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come?

And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—

But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;

38 Ko ia, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a nau a'usia 'a e maté na'e fakahoko ai ha liliu ki honau sinó, koe'uhi ke 'oua te nau kátekina 'a e mamahí pe ha loto-mamahi kae ngata pē 'i he mamahi koe'uhi ko e ngaahi angahala 'a e māmaní.

39 Ko 'eni ko e liliu 'eni ia 'oku 'ikai tatau mo e liliu 'e hoko 'i he 'aho faka'osí; ka na'e fai ha liliu kiate kinautolu, ko ia na'e 'ikai fa'a lava 'e Sētane ke ma'u hano mālohi kiate kinautolu, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'á ne lava 'o 'ahí'ahí 'i 'a kinautolu; pea na'e fakamā'oni'oni 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he kakanó, koe'uhi ke nau mā'oni'oni, ke 'oua na'a lava 'e he ngaahi mālohi 'o e māmaní 'o ta'ofi 'a kinautolu.

40 Pea te nau 'i he tu'unga ko iá 'o a'u ki he 'aho fakamaau 'o Kalaisí; pea 'i he 'aho ko iá kuo pau ke hoko kiate kinautolu ha liliu lahi ange, pea tali 'a kinautolu 'i he pule'anga 'o e Tamaí 'o 'ikai toe hū ki tu'a, kae nofo fakataha mo e 'Otuá 'o ta'engata 'i he ngaahi langí.

Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.

Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.

And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens.

3 Nīfai 29

- 1 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'o ka 'afio 'i 'e he 'Eiki 'oku fe'unga 'i hono potō ke 'omi 'a e ngaahi folofolá ni ki he kau Senitailé 'o fakatatau ki he 'ene folofolá, te mou toki 'ilo ai kuo kamata hono fakahoko 'o e fuakava ko ia na'e fai 'e he Tamaí mo e fānau 'a 'Isilelí, 'o kau ki honau fakafoki ki he ngaahi fonua 'o honau tofi'á.
- 2 Pea te mou lava 'o 'ilo, 'e fakahoko 'a e ngaahi folofola kotoa pē 'a e 'Eiki, 'a ia kuo lea 'aki 'e he kau palōfita mā'oni'oni; pea 'oku ta'e'aonga ho'omou pehē 'oku fakatoloi 'e he 'Eiki 'a 'ene hā'ele mai ki he fānau 'a 'Isilelí.
- 3 Pea 'oku 'ikai fie ma'u ke mou mahalo 'i homou lotó 'oku ta'e'aonga 'a e ngaahi folofola kuo folofola'akí, he vakai, 'e manatu 'i 'e he 'Eiki 'a 'ene fuakava 'a ia kuó ne fai ki hono kakai 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.
- 4 Pea 'o ka mou ka vakai ki he 'alu atu 'a e ngaahi folofolá ni 'i homou lotolotonga, 'e 'ikai lava 'o fai atu ho'omou manuki'i 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a e 'Eiki, he 'oku 'i hono to'ukupu to'omata'ú 'a e heletā 'o 'ene fakamaau totonú; pea vakai, 'i he 'aho ko iá, kapau te mou manuki'i 'ene ngaahi ngāue te ne tu'utu'uni ke ne ikuna 'i 'a kimoutolu.
- 5 'E mala'ia ia 'okú ne manuki'i 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a e 'Eiki; 'io, 'e hoko 'a e mala'ia kiate ia te ne faka'ikai'i 'a e Kalaisí mo 'ene ngaahi ngāue!
- 6 'Io, 'e mala'ia ia te ne faka'ikai'i 'a e ngaahi fakahā 'a e 'Eiki, 'o pehē 'oku 'ikai toe ngāue 'aki 'e he 'Eiki 'a e ngaahi fakahaá, pe ha kikite, pe ha ngaahi mé'a-foaki, pe ha lea 'i he ngaahi lea kehekehé, pe ha fakamo'ui mahaki, pe ha mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni!
- 7 'Io, pea 'e mala'ia ia 'e pehē 'i he 'aho ko iá, ko'e uhi ke ne ma'u ai ha tupu, 'oku 'ikai fai ha mana 'ia Sīsū Kalaisi; he ko ia ia 'e fai pehe'e 'e tataua mo e foha 'o e mala'ia, 'a ia na'e 'ikai ha 'alo'ofa kiate ia, 'o hangē ko e folofola 'a Kalaisi!
- 8 'Io, pea 'oku 'ikai lelei ke mou toe lau'ikovi, pe manuki'i, pe luma 'i 'a e kau Siú, pe ha taha 'i he toenga 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí; he vakai, 'oku manatu 'i 'e he 'Eiki 'a 'ene fuakava kiate kinautolú, pea te ne fai kiate kinautolu 'o hangē ko ia kuó ne fuakava'akí.

3 Nephi 29

And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.

And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.

And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.

And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.

Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord; yea, wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!

Yea, wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, and wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ; for he that doeth this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ!

Yea, and ye need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.

9 Ko ia 'oku 'ikai 'aonga ke mou mahalo te mou fa'a fakatafoki 'a e to'ukupu to'omata'u 'o e 'Eiki ki he to'ohemá, koe'uhi ke 'oua te ne fai ha tautea ke fakahoko 'a e fuakava 'a ia kuó ne fai ki he fale 'o 'Isilelí.

Therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

3 Nīfai 30

- 1 Tokanga mai, 'a kimoutolu 'e kau Senitaile, pea fanongo ki he ngaahi folofola 'a Sīsū Kalaisi, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otua mo'uí, 'a ia kuó ne fēkau kiate au ke u lea 'o kau kiate kimoutolu, he, vakai, 'okú ne fēkau kiate au ke u tohi, 'o pehē:
- 2 Tafoki mai, 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē ko e kau Senitailé, mei ho'omou ngaahi angahalá; pea fakatomala mei ho'omou ngaahi ngāue koví, mo ho'omou ngaahi loí mo e ngaahi kākaá, mo ho'omou ngaahi fē'auakí, mo ho'omou ngaahi anga-fakalielia fufuú, mo ho'omou ngaahi tauhi tamapuá, mo ho'omou ngaahi fakapoó, mo ho'omou ngaahi ngāue fakataula'eiki kākaá, mo ho'omou meheká, mo ho'omou ngaahi feke'ike'í, pea mei ho'omou ngaahi fai angahala kotoa pē mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá, pea ha'u kiate au, 'o papitaiso 'i hoku hingoá, koe'uhi ke mou ma'u ha fakamolemole 'o ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, pea fonu 'i he Laumālie Mā'oní'oní, koe'uhi ke lau 'a kimoutolu fakataha mo hoku kakai, 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.

3 Nephi 30

Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commandeth me that I should write, saying:

Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that ye may receive a remission of your sins, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that ye may be numbered with my people who are of the house of Israel.

Ko e Tohi Fā Nīfaí

Ko e Tohi ‘a Nīfai

‘A ia ko e Foha ‘o Nīfai—ko e Taha ‘o e Kau Ākongā ‘a Sīsū Kalaisí

Ko ha fakamatala ‘o e kau Nīfaí, ‘o fakatatau ki he ‘ene lekōtí.

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē kuo ‘osi atu hono tolungofulu mā fā ‘o e ta‘ú, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo hono tolungofulu mā nimá, pea vakai kuo fokotu‘u ‘e he kau ākongā ‘a Sīsúú ha siasi ‘o Kalaisi ‘i he ngaahi fonua takatakai kotoa pē. Pea ‘ilonga ‘a kinautolu na‘e ha‘u kiate kinautolú, pea nau fakatomala mo‘oni mei he‘enau ngaahi angahalá, na‘e papitaiso ‘a kinautolu ‘i he huafa ‘o Sīsúú; pea na‘a nau ma‘u foki mo e Laumālie Mā‘oní‘oní.
- 2 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i hono tolungofulu mā ono ‘o e ta‘ú, kuo fakaului ‘a e kakai kotoa pē ki he ‘Eikí, ‘i he funga hono kotoa ‘o e fonuá, ‘a e kau Nīfaí mo e kau Leimaná fakatou‘osi, pea na‘e ‘ikai ha ngaahi feke‘ike‘i pe ngaahi fakakikihi ‘iate kinautolu, pea na‘e fefaitotonu‘aki ‘a e kakai kotoa pē ‘iate kinautolu.
- 3 Pea na‘a nau me‘a taha ‘aki ‘enau ngaahi me‘a kotoa pē; ko ia na‘e ‘ikai ha ma‘u me‘a mo e masiva, pe pōpula mo e tau‘atāina, ka na‘e fakatau‘atāina‘i ‘a kinautolu kotoa pē, ‘o nau ‘inasi ‘i he me‘a-foaki fakalangí.
- 4 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ‘osi atu mo hono tolungofulu mā fitu ‘o e ta‘ú foki, pea na‘e kei hoko atu ai pē ‘a e melinó ‘i he fonuá.
- 5 Pea na‘e fai ‘a e ngaahi fu‘u ngāue ma‘ongo‘onga mo fakafo‘e he kau ākongā ‘a Sīsúú, ‘o a‘u ki he‘enau fakamo‘ui ‘a e mahakí, mo fokotu‘u hake ‘a e maté, mo fekau ke ‘eve‘eva ‘a e pipikí, pea mo e kuí ke nau lava ‘o mamata, mo e tulí ke fanongo; pea nau fai ‘a e ngaahi fa‘ahinga mana kehekehe kotoa pē ‘i he fānau ‘a e tangatá; pea na‘e ‘ikai te nau fai ha ngaahi mana ‘i ha me‘a ka ‘i he huafa pē ‘o Sīsúú.

Fourth Nephi

The Book of Nephi

Who Is the Son of Nephi—One of the Disciples of Jesus Christ

An account of the people of Nephi, according to his record.

And it came to pass that the thirty and fourth year passed away, and also the thirty and fifth, and behold the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the lands round about. And as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus; and they did also receive the Holy Ghost.

And it came to pass in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another.

And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

And it came to pass that the thirty and seventh year passed away also, and there still continued to be peace in the land.

And there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples of Jesus, insomuch that they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and cause the lame to walk, and the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear; and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men; and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus.

- 6 Pea na'e pehē 'a e 'osi atu hono tolungofulu mā valu 'o e ta'ú, pea pehē foki mo hono tolungofulu mā hiva, mo hono fāngofulu mā tahá, mo hono fāngofulu mā uá, 'io, 'o a'u ki he 'osi atu hono fāngofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'ú, kae 'uma ā foki mo hono nimangofulu mā tahá, mo hono nimangofulu mā uá; 'io, 'o a'u ki he 'osi atu 'a hono nimangofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'ú.
- 7 Pea na'e ngaohi 'e he 'Eikí ke nau fu'u tu'umālie 'aupito 'i he fonuá; 'io, 'o a'u ki he 'enau toe langa hake ha ngaahi kolo 'i he ngaahi potu na'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi kolo kuo velá.
- 8 'Io, na'e a'u ki he fu'u kolo lahi ko Seilahemalá na'a nau toe langa hake.
- 9 Ka na'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi kolo lahi 'a ia kuo ngalo hifo, pea 'oho mai 'a e vaí ki honau potú; ko ia ko e ngaahi kolo ia na'e 'ikai lava ke toe langa fo'ou.
- 10 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e faka'au 'o mālohi 'a e kau Nīfaí, pea nau fakatokolahi 'o fu'u vave 'aupito, 'o nau hoko ko e kakai hinehina mo fu'u faka'ofa'ofa 'aupito.
- 11 Pea na'a nau femali'aki, mo foaki ke mali, pea na'e tāpuaki 'i 'a kinautolu 'o fakatatau mo hono lahi 'o e ngaahi tala'ofa lahi 'a ia kuo fai 'e he 'Eikí kiate kinautolú.
- 12 Pea na'e 'ikai te nau toe 'a'eva 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi tu'utu'uni mo e ngaahi ouau 'o e fono 'a Mōsesé; ka nau 'a'eva 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi fekau kuo nau ma'u mei honau 'Eiki mo honau 'Otuá, 'o nau fai atu 'i he 'aukai mo e lotu, pea 'i he 'enau fa'a fakataha ke lotu mo fanongi ki he folofola 'a e 'Eikí.
- 13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha fakakikihi 'i he kakai kotoa pē, 'i he fonuá hono kotoa; ka na'e 'i ai ha ngaahi fu'u mana lalahi na'e fakahoko 'i he kau ākongā 'a Sīsuú.

And thus did the thirty and eighth year pass away, and also the thirty and ninth, and forty and first, and the forty and second, yea, even until forty and nine years had passed away, and also the fifty and first, and the fifty and second; yea, and even until fifty and nine years had passed away.

And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; yea, insomuch that they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

Yea, even that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.

But there were many cities which had been sunk, and waters came up in the stead thereof; therefore these cities could not be renewed.

And now, behold, it came to pass that the people of Nephi did wax strong, and did multiply exceedingly fast, and became an exceedingly fair and delightsome people.

And they were married, and given in marriage, and were blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto them.

And they did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances of the law of Moses; but they did walk after the commandments which they had received from their Lord and their God, continuing in fasting and prayer, and in meeting together oft both to pray and to hear the word of the Lord.

And it came to pass that there was no contention among all the people, in all the land; but there were mighty miracles wrought among the disciples of Jesus.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'osi atu 'a hono fitungofulu mā taha 'o e ta'ú, kae 'uma'ā foki mo hono fitungofulu mā ua 'o e ta'ú, 'io, ko hono fakanounou, ne a'u mai ki he 'osi atu hono fitungofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'ú; 'io, kuo 'osi atu foki 'a e ta'u 'e teau, pea ko e kau ākongā 'a Sisū, 'a ia kuó ne filí, kuo nau fononga atu ki he palataisi 'o e 'Otuá, tuku kehe pē 'a e toko tolu 'a ia na'e pau ke nofó; pea na'e 'i ai ha kau ākongā kehe kuo fakanofu ke fetongi 'a kinautolu; kae 'uma'ā mo e tokolahi 'o e to'u tangata ko iá kuo nau pekia.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ha feke'ike'i 'i he fonuá, koe'uhi ko e 'ofa 'a e 'Otuá 'a ia na'e 'i he loto 'o e kakai.

16 Pea na'e 'ikai ha ngaahi femeheka'aki, pe ngaahi fetēleni, pe ngaahi maveuveu, pe ngaahi fé'auaki, pe ngaahi loi, pe ngaahi fakapō, pe ha fá'ahinga holi kovi 'e taha; pea ko e mo'oni 'oku 'ikai lava ke 'i ai ha kakai 'oku lahi hake 'enau fiefiá 'i he kakai kotoa pē kuo fakatupu 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Otuá.

17 Na'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha kau kaiha'a, pe kau fakapō, pea na'e 'ikai foki ke 'i ai ha kau Leimana, pe ha fá'ahinga kakai kehe 'e taha; ka na'a nau taha pē, ko e fānau 'a Kalaisi, pea ko e kau 'ea hoko ki he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá.

18 Pea hono 'ikai ke monū'ia 'a kinautolu! He na'e tāpuaki 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eiki 'i he'enau ngaahi ngāue kotoa pē; 'io, na'e tāpuaki 'i mo fakamonū'ia 'i 'a kinautolu 'o a'u ki he 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e teau mā hongofulu; pea kuo pekia 'a e 'uluaki to'u tangata meia Kalaisi, pea na'e 'ikai ha feke'ike'i 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pekia 'a Nīfai, 'a ia na'á ne hiki 'a e lekooti fakamuimui ko 'ení, (pea na'á ne hiki ia 'i he ngaahi peleti 'a Nīfai), pea na'e hiki ia 'e hono foha ko 'Āmosí 'o fetongi ia; pea na'á ne hiki ia 'i he ngaahi peleti 'a Nīfai foki.

20 Pea na'á ne tauhi ia 'i he ta'u 'e valungofulu mā fā, pea na'e kei 'i ai 'a e melino 'i he fonuá, tuku kehe ha tokosi 'i 'o e kakai 'a ia kuo nau tafoki mei he siasí pea 'ai kiate kinautolu 'a e hingoa ko e kau Leimaná; ko ia na'e kamata ke toe 'i ai 'a e kau Leimana 'i he fonuá.

And it came to pass that the seventy and first year passed away, and also the seventy and second year, yea, and in fine, till the seventy and ninth year had passed away; yea, even an hundred years had passed away, and the disciples of Jesus, whom he had chosen, had all gone to the paradise of God, save it were the three who should tarry; and there were other disciples ordained in their stead; and also many of that generation had passed away.

And it came to pass that there was no contention in the land, because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people.

And there were no envyings, nor strifes, nor tumults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness; and surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God.

There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of -ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God.

And how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings; yea, even they were blessed and prospered until an hundred and ten years had passed away; and the first generation from Christ had passed away, and there was no contention in all the land.

And it came to pass that Nephi, he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead; and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.

And he kept it eighty and four years, and there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pekia mo 'Āmosi foki, (pea ko e ta'u ia hono teau hivangofulu mā fā mei he hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí) pea na'e tauhi 'e hono foha ko 'Āmosí 'a e lekōtí 'o fetongi ia; pea na'á ne hiki ia foki 'i he ngaahi peleti 'a Nífaí; pea na'e tohi ia foki 'i he tohi 'a Nífaí, 'a ia ko e tohi ko 'ení.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e uangeau; pea kuo pekia 'a e to'u tangata hono uá tuku kehe ha tokosi'i pē.

23 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Molomona, 'oku ou loto ke mou 'ilo'i kuo fakatokolahi 'a e kakaí, pea kuo nau mafola ki hono kotoa 'o e funga 'o e fonuá, pea kuo nau faka'au 'o fu'u koloa'ia 'aupito, ko e tupu mei he'enua monū'ia 'ia Kalaisí.

24 Pea ko 'eni, na'e kamata 'i he ta'u hono uangeau mā taha ko iá ke 'i ai 'a e ní'ihí 'iate kinautolu 'a ia na'a nau fielahi 'i he hīkisiá, 'o hangē ko e kofu 'aki 'o e ngaahi kofu fakataungata'a, mo e ngaahi fá'ahinga mata'i tofe lelei kotoa pē, mo e ngaahi me'a lelei 'o e māmaní.

25 Pea na'e fai atu mei he taimi ko iá 'a e 'ikai te nau toe me'a taha 'aki 'enua ngaahi me'á mo 'enua ngaahi koloa 'iate kinautolú.

26 Pea na'a nau kamata ke mavahevahe fakafa'ahinga; pea nau kamata ke fokotu'u ha ngaahi siasi ma'anautolu ke fakatupu ha koloa, pea nau kamata ke faka'ikai'i 'a e siasi mo'oni 'o Kalaisí.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi 'a e ta'u 'e uangeau mā hongofulú na'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi siasi lahi 'i he fonuá; 'io, na'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi siasi lahi 'a ia na'a nau pehē 'oku nau 'ilo'i 'a Kalaisi, ka na'a nau faka'ikai'i 'a e ngaahi konga lahi 'o 'ene ongoongoleléi, 'o tupu ai 'enua tali 'a e fá'ahinga fai angahala kotoa pē, 'o nau 'oatu 'a e me'a 'oku toputapú kiate ia kuo tapui hono 'oatu ki ai koe'uhi ko 'ene ta'efe'ungá.

28 Pea na'e tupu 'o fu'u tokolahi 'aupito 'a e siasi ko iá ko e tupu mei he angahalá, pea koe'uhi ko e mālohi 'o Sētané, 'a ia na'á ne ma'u 'a e mālohi ki honau lotó.

29 Pea ko e tahá, na'e 'i ai mo e siasi 'e taha 'a ia na'e faka'ikai'i 'a e Kalaisí; pea na'a nau fakatanga 'i 'a e siasi mo'oni 'o Kalaisí, koe'uhi ko 'enua loto-fakatōkilaló mo 'enua tui kia Kalaisí; pea na'a nau fehi'a kiate kinautolu koe'uhi ko e ngaahi mana lahi 'a ia na'e fai 'iate kinautolú.

And it came to pass that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.

And it came to pass that two hundred years had passed away; and the second generation had all passed away save it were a few.

And now I, Mormon, would that ye should know that the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the land, and that they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity in Christ.

And now, in this two hundred and first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.

And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.

And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true church of Christ.

And it came to pass that when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were many churches in the land; yea, there were many churches which professed to know the Christ, and yet they did deny the more parts of his gospel, insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness.

And this church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity, and because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their hearts.

And again, there was another church which denied the Christ; and they did persecute the true church of Christ, because of their humility and their belief in Christ; and they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them.

30 Ko ia, na'a nau pule 'i he fakamālohi mo e mafai ki he kau ākongā 'a Sīsū, 'a ia na'e nofo 'iate kinautolú, pea na'a nau lí 'a kinautolu ki he fale fakapōpulá; ka koe'uhi ko e mālohi 'o e folofola 'a e 'Otuá, 'a ia na'e 'iate kinautolú, na'e mafahi ua 'a e ngaahi fale fakapōpulá, pea na'a nau 'alu atu 'o fai 'a e ngaahi mana lalahi 'iate kinautolu.

31 Kae kehe, neongo 'a e ngaahi maná ni hono kotoa, na'e kei fakafefeka pē 'e he kakai 'a honau lotó, pea na'a nau kumi ke tāmata'e 'i 'a kinautolu, 'o hangē ko e feinga 'a e kau Siu 'i Selūsalemá ke tāmata'e 'i 'a Sīsū, 'o hangē ko 'ene folofolá.

32 Pea na'a nau lí 'a kinautolu ki he ngaahi fu'u afi kakaha, pea na'a nau ha'u mei ai ta'ehoko ha kovi kiate kinautolu.

33 Pea na'a nau lí 'a kinautolu foki ki he ngaahi 'ana 'o e fanga manu fekai, pea na'a nau va'inga mo e fanga manu fekai 'o hangē ko ha va'inga 'a ha tamasi'i mo e lami; pea na'a nau ha'u mei ai, ta'ehoko ha kovi kiate kinautolu.

34 Ka neongo iá, na'e kei fakafefeka pē 'e he kakai 'a honau lotó, he na'e fakaloto'i 'a kinautolu 'e he kau taula'eiki tokolahi mo e kau palōfita loi ke langa hake 'a e ngaahi siasi lahi, pea ke fai 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga angahala kotoa pē. Pea na'a nau taa'i 'a e kakai 'o Sīsúú; ka na'e 'ikai toe taa'i 'a kinautolu 'e he kakai 'o Sīsúú. Pea na'e pehē 'a 'enau faka'au'auhifo 'i he ta'etuí mo e fai angahalá, mei he ta'u ki he ta'u, 'o a'u ki he 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e uangeau mā tolungofulu.

35 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u ko iá, 'io, 'i hono uangeau tolungofulu mā taha 'o e ta'ú, na'e 'i ai 'a e fu'u mavahevahe lahi 'i he kakai.

36 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u ko iá, na'e tupu hake ha kakai na'e ui ko e kau Nīfái, pea ko e kau tui mo'oni 'a kinautolu kia Kalaisi; pea na'e 'iate kinautolu 'a e ni'ihī 'a ia na'e ui 'e he kau Leimaná—ko e kau Sēkopé, mo e kau Siosefá, mo e kau Sōlamí;

37 Ko ia, ko e kau tui mo'oni kia Kalaisi mo e kau lotu mo'oni kia Kalaisi, ('a ia na'e kau ai 'a e kau ākongā 'e toko tolu 'a Sīsū, 'a ia na'e pau ke nofó) na'e ui ko e kau Nīfái, mo e kau Sēkopé, mo e kau Siosefá, mo e kau Sōlamí.

Therefore they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.

Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.

And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

And they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.

Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity. And they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again. And thus they did dwindle in unbelief and wickedness, from year to year, even until two hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And now it came to pass in this year, yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people.

And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites—Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites;

Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites.

38 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko kinautolu na'e 'ikai te nau tali 'a e ongoongolei' na'e ui 'a kinautolu ko e kau Leimaná, mo e kau Lēmiuelá, mo e kau 'Isimelí; pea na'e 'ikai te nau faka'au'auhifo 'i he ta'etuí, ka na'a nau angatu' u fakahāhā ki he ongoongolei 'a Kalaisí; pea na'a nau ako'i 'a 'enau fānau ke 'oua na'a nau tui, 'o hangē foki ko 'enau ngaahi tamaí, 'o talu mei he kamata'angá, mo 'enau faka'au'au hifo.

39 Pea na'e tupu ia koe'uhi ko e fai angahala mo e anga-fakalielia 'o 'enau ngaahi tamaí, 'o hangē ko ia na'e hoko 'i he kamata'angá. Pea na'e ako'i 'a kinautolu ke nau fehi'a ki he fānau 'a e 'Otuá, 'o hangē foki ko hono ako'i 'o e kau Leimaná ke fehi'a ki he fānau 'a Nifái talu mei he kamata'angá.

40 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e uangeau fāngofulu mā fā, pea na'e pehē 'a e anga 'o e ngaahi me'a 'a e kakaí. Pea ko e kakai na'e angakovi angé na'e faka'au ke nau mālohi ange, pea faka'au ke nau fu'u tokolahi ange 'aupito 'i he kakai 'o e 'Otuá.

41 Pea na'a nau kei fai atu pē 'enau langa hake ha ngaahi siasi mo'onautolu, mo nau teuteu'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e fá'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e ngaahi me'a mahu'ingá. Pea na'e 'osi pehē atu hono uangeau nimangofulu 'o e ta'ú, mo hono uangeau onongofulu foki 'o e ta'ú.

42 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe kamata 'e he konga angakovi ange 'o e kakaí ke fokotu'u 'a e ngaahi fuakava mo e ngaahi kautaha fufū 'a Katianetoní.

43 Pea ko e kakai foki na'e ui ko e kakai 'o Nifái na'e kamata ke nau pōlepole 'i honau lotó, koe'uhi ko 'enau ngaahi koloa lahi 'aupitó, 'o nau faka'au 'o hīkisia 'o hangē ko honau kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná.

44 Pea na'e kamata mei he taimi ko iá mo e kamata ke mamahi 'a e kau ākongá koe'uhi ko e ngaahi angahala 'a māmaní.

45 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e tolungeau, kuo faka'au 'a e kakai fakatou'osi 'o Nifái mo e kau Leimaná 'o fu'u fai angahala 'aupito 'o 'ikai te nau faikehekehe.

And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle.

And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.

And it came to pass that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and thus were the affairs of the people. And the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God.

And they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And thus did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years.

And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.

And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.

And from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.

46 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e mafola atu 'a e kau kaiha'a 'a Katianetoni' i he funga hono kotoa 'o e fonuá; pea na'e 'ikai ha taha na'e mā'oni'oni ka ko e kau ākongā pē 'a Sisuú. Pea na'a nau tokonaki 'a e koula mo e siliva 'o lahi 'aupito, pea nau fefakatau'aki 'i he ngaahi fa'ahinga koloa kehekehe kotoa pē.

47 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e tolungeau mā nima, (pea na'e kei nofo mā'u pē 'a e kakai 'i he fai angahalá) na'e pekia 'a 'Āmosi; pea na'e hoko atu 'e hono tokoua, ko 'Emaloni, 'o ne hiki 'a e lekōtí 'o fetongi ia.

48 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'alu atu 'a e ta'u 'e tolungeau mā uofulu, ko 'Emaloni, 'i hano ue'i ia 'e he Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, na'á ne fufuu 'i 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'a ia na'e toputapú—'io, 'a e ngaahi lekooti toputapu kotoa pē 'a ia kuo tukufakaholo mai mei he to'u tangata ki he to'u tangata—'o a'u mai foki ki hono tolungeau mā uofulu 'o e ta'u hili 'a e hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí.

49 Pea na'á ne fufuu 'i ia ki he 'Eikí, koe'uhi ke lava 'o toe 'omai ia ki he toenga 'o e hako 'o e fale 'o Sēkopé, 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi kikite mo e ngaahi tala'ofa 'a e 'Eikí. Pea ko e ngata'anga ia 'o e lekooti 'a 'Emaloni.

And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.

And it came to pass that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.

And it came to pass that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred—yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred—even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ.

And he did hide them up unto the Lord, that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob, according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron.

Ko e Tohi 'a Molomoná

Molomona 1

- 1 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Molomona, 'oku ou hiki ha lekooti 'o e ngaahi me'a kuó u mamata mo fanongo ki aí, peá u ui ia ko e Tohi 'a Molomoná.
- 2 Pea 'i he taimi na'e fufuu 'i ai 'e 'Emaloni 'a e ngaahi lekōtí ki he 'Eikí, na'á ne ha 'u kiate au, (na'á ku ta'u 'e hongofulu nai hoku ta'u motu'á, peá u faka'au ke poto 'i ha me'a 'e ni'ihí 'i he 'ilo 'a hoku kakáí) pea na'e pehē mai 'e 'Emaloni kiate au: 'Oku ou fakatokanga 'i ko e tamasi' i koe 'oku anga-fakamotu'a, pea 'okú ke mata poto;
- 3 Ko ia, ko e taimi te ke ta'u 'e uofulu mā fā ai ho ta'u motu'á, 'oku ou kole ke ke manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuó ke mamata ki ai 'o kau ki he kakai ko 'ení; pea 'i ho ta'u motu'a ko iá, 'alu ki he fonua ko 'Anetumí, ki he mo'unga 'a ia 'e ui ko Simi; pea kuó u tuku ki ai ki he 'Eikí 'a e ngaahi tohi kuo tongitongi toputapu kotoa pē 'oku kau ki he kakai ko 'ení.
- 4 Pea vakai, ke ke 'ave 'a e ngaahi peleti 'a Nifái ma'au, pea ko hono toé ke ke tuku 'i he potu 'a ia 'oku nau 'i aí; pea ke ke tongitongi ki he ngaahi peleti 'a Nifái 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuó ke mamata ki ai 'o kau ki he kakai ko 'ení.
- 5 Pea ko au, Molomona, 'a ia ko e hako au 'o Nifai (pea ko e hingoa 'o 'eku tamaí ko Molomona) na'á ku manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia na'e fekau 'e 'Emaloni kiate aú.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hoku, ta'u hongofulu mā tahá, na'e 'ave au 'e he'eku tamaí ki he fonua 'i he fakatongá, ki he fonua ko Seilahemalá.
- 7 Kuo 'ufi'ufi 'a hono kotoa 'o e funga fonuá 'e he ngaahi fale, pea na'e tokolahi 'a e kakáí 'o meimei tatau mo hono lahi 'o e 'one'one 'o e tahí.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u ko iá na'e kamata ha tau 'i he vaha 'a 'o e kau Nifái, 'a ia na'e kau ki ai 'a e kau Nifái mo e kau Sēkopé mo e kau Siosefá mo e kau Sōlamí; pea ko e tau 'eni 'i he vaha 'a 'o e kau Nifái, mo e kau Leimaná mo e kau Lēmiuelá mo e kau 'Isimelí.
- 9 Ko 'eni na'e ui 'a e kau Leimaná mo e kau Lēmiuelá mo e kau 'Isimelí ko e kau Leimana; pea ko e ongo fa'ahí ko e kau Nifái mo e kau Leimaná.

The Book of Mormon

Mormon 1

And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon.

And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, (I being about ten years of age, and I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my people) and Ammaron said unto me: I perceive that thou art a sober child, and art quick to observe;

Therefore, when ye are about twenty and four years old I would that ye should remember the things that ye have observed concerning this people; and when ye are of that age go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my father's name was Mormon) I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me.

And it came to pass that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my father into the land southward, even to the land of Zarahemla.

The whole face of the land had become covered with buildings, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two parties were Nephites and Lamanites.

- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata 'a e tau 'i honau vaha'á 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'o Seilahemalá, 'o ofi ki he ngaahi vai 'o Saitoné.
- 11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo hanga 'e he kau Nifái 'o tānaki fakataha ha kau tangata tokolahi 'aupito, 'a ia na'a nau tokolahi ange 'i he toko tolu manó. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fai 'i he ta'u ko iá 'a e ngaahi tau lahi, 'a ia na'e ikuna ai 'e he kau Nifái 'a e kau Leimaná 'o nau tāmata 'i ha tokolahi 'o kinautolu.
- 12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuku 'e he kau Leimaná 'a 'enau taumu'a ke taú, pea na'e fokotu'u 'a e melinó 'i he fonuá; pea na'e tolonga 'a e melinó 'i he ta'u 'e fā nai, pea 'ikai 'i ai ha lilingi toto.
- 13 Ka na'e kei mafola pē 'a e fai angahalá 'i he funga 'o e fonuá hono kotoa, pea ko ia na'e 'ave ai 'e he 'Eikí 'a 'ene kau ākongá 'ofeiná, pea na'e ngata hono fai 'o e ngaahi maná mo e fakamo'ui mahakí koe'uhi ko e fai angahala 'a e kakaí.
- 14 Pea na'e 'ikai ha ngaahi me'a-foaki mei he 'Eikí, pea na'e 'ikai ke toe tō 'a e Laumālie Mā'oní'oni ki ha taha, koe'uhi ko e fai angahalá mo e ta'etuí.
- 15 Pea ko au, na'á ku ta'u hongofulu mā nima peá u anga-fakamotu'a, ko ia na'e 'a'ahi mai kiate au 'a e 'Eiki, peá u ma'u mo 'ilo 'i 'a e angalelei 'a Sīsuú.
- 16 Pea na'á ku feinga ke malanga ki he kakaí ni, ka na'e tāpuni 'i hoku ngutú, pea na'e ta'ofi au ke 'oua na'á ku malanga kiate kinautolu; he vakai kuo nau angatu'u fakahāhā ki honau 'Otuá; pea kuo 'ave 'a e kau ākongá 'ofeiná mei he fonuá, koe'uhi ko 'enau angahalá.
- 17 Ka na'á ku nofo 'iate kinautolu, ka na'e ta'ofi au ke 'oua na'á ku malanga kiate kinautolu, koe'uhi ko e fefeka 'o honau lotó; pea ko e me'a 'i he fefeka 'o honau lotó kuo fakamala'ia 'i ai 'a e fonuá koe'uhi ko kinautolu.
- 18 Pea ko e kau kaiha'á ni 'a Katianetoni, 'a ia na'a nau 'i he kau Leimaná, na'a nau fakamamahi 'i 'a e fonuá, ko ia na'e kamata ai 'e he kakai 'o e fonuá ke fufuu 'i 'enau ngaahi koloá 'i he kelekelé; pea na'e kamata ke homongofua ia, koe'uhi he kuo fakamala'ia 'i 'e he 'Eikí 'a e fonuá, ke 'oua na'a nau fa'a tauhi ia, pe toe 'ilo 'i ia.

And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And it came to pass that they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed.

But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.

And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief.

And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus.

And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; for behold they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.

But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.

And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi ngāue fakalou'akau, mo e ngaahi ngāue fakafā'ahikehe, mo e ngaahi fie mana; pea na'e ngāue 'aki 'a e mālohi 'o e tokotaha angakoví 'i hono kotoa 'o e funga 'o e fonuá, 'io 'o a 'u ki hono fakamo'oni 'i 'o e ngaahi lea kotoa pē 'a 'Apinetaí kae 'uma'ā foki 'a Samuela ko e tangata Leimaná.

And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and also Samuel the Lamanite.

Molomona 2

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u pē ko iá na'e toe kamata ai ha tau 'i he vaha'a 'o e kau Nífaí mo e kau Leimaná. Pea neongo na'á ku kei sí'i, ka na'á ku sino lahi; ko ia na'e fakanofu au 'e he kau Nífaí ke u hoko ko honau taki, pe ko e taki 'o 'enau ngaahi kau taú.
- 2 Ko ia na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hoku ta'u hono hongofulu mā onó na'á ku 'alu atu 'o taki ha kau tau 'o e kau Nífaí, ke tau 'i 'a e kau Leimaná; ko ia kuo 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e tolungeau uofulu mā ono.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono tolungeau uofulu mā fitu 'o e ta'ú na'e 'oho mai kiate kimautolu 'a e kau Leimaná 'i he fu'u mālohi lahi 'aupito, pea na'a nau fakamanavahe'e 'i ai 'eku ngaahi kau tau; ko ia na'e 'ikai te nau fie tau, pea nau kamata holomui ki he ngaahi fonua 'i he tokelaú.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau a'u mai ki he kolo ko 'Anikolá, pea na'a mau ma'u 'a e koló, 'o fai 'emau ngaahi teuteu ke malu 'i 'a kimautolu mei he kau Leimaná. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau keli mo langa fakamālohi 'i 'a e koló 'aki homau tūkingatá; pea neongo 'emau ngaahi langa fakamālohi kotoa pē na'e kei 'oho mai pē 'a e kau Leimaná kiate kimautolu pea na'a nau teke 'i 'a kimautolu mei he koló.
- 5 Pea na'a nau teke 'i foki 'a kimautolu mei he fonua ko Tēvitá.
- 6 Pea mau laka atu 'o mau a'u atu ki he fonua ko Sōsiuá, 'a ia na'e tu'u 'i he ngata'anga fonua ki he hihifó 'o ofi ki he matātahí.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau tānaki mai homau kakaí 'i he vave taha 'o fakatatau ki he me'a na'a mau lavá, ke mau fakataha 'a kinautolu ki ha feitu'u pē 'e taha.
- 8 Kae vakai, na'e fonu 'a e fonuá 'i he kau kaiha'á pea mo e kau Leimaná; pea neongo 'a e fu'u faka'auha lahi 'a ia na'e tu'unuku mai ki hoku kakaí, na'e 'ikai pē te nau fakatomala mei he 'enau ngaahi ngāue koví; ko ia na'e mafola 'a e lilingi totó mo e faka'auhá 'i hono kotoa 'o e funga 'o e fonuá, fakatou 'osi 'i he kau Nífaí kae 'uma'ā foki mo e kau Leimaná; pea ko ha moveuveu ia ne mafola 'i hono kotoa 'o e funga fonuá.

Mormon 2

And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.

Therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

And it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city with our might; but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.

And we marched forth and came to the land of Joshua, which was in the borders west by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did gather in our people as fast as it were possible, that we might get them together in one body.

But behold, the land was filled with robbers and with Lamanites; and notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings; therefore there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, both on the part of the Nephites and also on the part of the Lamanites; and it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.

9 Pea ko 'eni, na'e 'i ai ha tu 'i 'o e kau Leimaná, pea ko hono hingoá ko 'Ēlone; pea na'á ne ha'u ke tau 'i 'a kimautilu mo e kau tau 'o e toko fā mano fā afe. Pea vakai, na'á ku matu'uaki ia 'aki 'a e toko fā mano ua afe. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku ikuna ia 'aki 'eku kau tau 'o ne hola meiate au. Pea vakai, na'e fai 'eni kotoa pē, pea kuo 'alu atu hono tolungeau mā tolungofulu 'o e ta'ú.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata 'a e kau Nifái ke fakatomala mei he'enu angahalá, 'o nau kamata ke tangi 'o hangē ko ia na'e kikite 'i 'e Samuela ko e palōfitá; he vakai na'e 'ikai lava 'e ha tangata ke fa'a tauhi 'a e me'a na'e 'a'aná, koe'uhi ko e kau kaihá'á, mo e kau fa'ao fakamālohí, mo e kau fakapoó, mo e fie fai maná, mo e ngāue fakafa'ahikehe 'a ia na'e 'i he fonuá.

11 Ko ia na'e kamata ke 'i ai 'a e tangi mo e tangilāulau 'i he fonuá hono kotoa koe'uhi ko e ngaahi me'á ni, kae lahi ange 'i he kau Nifái.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Molomona, 'i he'eku sio ki he'enu tangilāulau mo 'enu tangi mo 'enu mamahí 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, na'e kamata ke fiefia 'a hoku lotó 'iate au, 'i he'eku 'ilo 'i 'a e ngaahi 'alo'ofa mo e kātaki fuoloa 'a e 'Eikí, ko ia na'á ku mahalo te ne 'alo'ofa kiate kinautilu ke nau toe hoko ko ha kakai mā'oni'oni.

13 Kae vakai na'e tō noa 'eku fiefiá ni, he na'e 'ikai tupu 'enu loto-mamahí ki he fakatomala, koe'uhi ko e angalelei 'a e 'Otuá; ka ko e loto-mamahi ia 'a e kau malá'ia, koe'uhi 'e 'ikai tuku ma'u pē 'e he 'Eikí ke nau fiefia 'i he fai angahalá.

14 Pea na'e 'ikai te nau ha'u kia Sisū mo e loto-mafesifesi mo e laumālie fakatomala, ka na'a nau lea kovi ki he 'Otuá mo faka'amu ke nau mate. Ka neongo iá na'a nau tau 'aki 'enu heletaá ke malu 'i 'enu mo'uí.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe foki mai 'eku loto-mamahí kiate au, peá u 'ilo 'i kuo 'osi 'a honau 'aho 'o e 'alo'ofa kiate kinautilu, 'i he me'a fakasino mo fakalaumālie fakatou'osi; he ne u mamata ki ha lau afe 'o kinautilu 'oku tā hifo 'i he angatu'u fakahāhā ki honau 'Otuá, pea fokotu'utu 'u 'a honau sinó 'o hangē ha vevé 'i he funga 'o e fonuá. Pea na'e pehē 'a e 'alu atu hono tolungeau fāngofulu mā fā 'o e ta'ú.

And now, the Lamanites had a king, and his name was Aaron; and he came against us with an army of forty and four thousand. And behold, I withstood him with forty and two thousand. And it came to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me. And behold, all this was done, and three hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet; for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land.

Thus there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that when I, Mormon, saw their lamentation and their mourning and their sorrow before the Lord, my heart did begin to rejoice within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous people.

But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin.

And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives.

And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land. And thus three hundred and forty and four years had passed away.

- 16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono tolungeau fāngofulu mā nima 'o e ta'ú na'e kamata ke hola 'a e kau Nīfái mei he kau Leimaná; pea na'e tuli 'a kinautolu kae 'oua kuo nau a'u atu ki he fonua ko Seisoní, 'oku te'eki ai te u lava 'o ta'ofi 'a kinautolu 'i he'enu holomuí.
- 17 Pea ko 'eni, ko e kolo ko Seisoní na'e ofi ia ki he fonua kuo tuku ai 'e 'Emaloni 'a e ngaahi lekōtí ki he 'Eikí, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a nau 'auhá. Pea vakai, kuó u 'alu 'o hangē koe lea 'a 'Emaloni, peá u to' 'a e ngaahi peleti 'a Nīfái, 'o u hiki ki ai ha lekooti 'o hangē ko e ngaahi lea 'a 'Emaloni.
- 18 Pea na'á ku tohi 'i he ngaahi peleti 'a Nīfái ha fakamatala kakato 'o e ngaahi fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá; ka 'i he ngaahi peleti ko 'ení na'e 'ikai te u fai ha fakamatala kakato 'o 'enu ngaahi fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá, he vakai, kuo hā ma'u ai pē 'a e ngaahi fai angahalá mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá ki hoku matá talu pē mei he 'aho na'á ku motu 'a fe'unga ai ke u mamata ki he ngaahi angafai 'a e tangatá.
- 19 Pea 'oku ou mamahi lahi koe'uhi ko 'enu fai angahalá; he kuo fonu hoku lotó 'i he mamahi koe'uhi ko 'enu fai angahalá, 'i hoku ngaahi 'ahó kotoa pē; ka neongo iá, 'oku ou 'ilo' 'e hiki hake au 'i he 'aho faka'osí.
- 20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u pē ko iá na'e toe há'ao mo tuli holo 'a e kau Nīfái. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e teke 'i 'a kinautolu kae 'oua kuo mau a'u atu ki he fonua 'i he fakatokelaú 'a ia na'e ui ko Semi.
- 21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau langa fakamālohi 'i 'a e kolo ko Semí, pea na'a mau tānaki mai homau kakai 'o fakatatau ki he me'a ne mau lavá, koe'uhi ke mau lava nai 'o fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he faka'auhá.
- 22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono tolungeau fāngofulu mā ono 'o e ta'ú na'a nau kamata ke toe 'oho mai kiate kinautolu.
- 23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku lea ki hoku kakaí, peá u na'ina 'i kiate kinautolu 'i he fu'u ivi lahi, ke nau tu'u loto-to'a 'i he 'ao 'o e kau Leimaná pea tau koe'uhi ko honau uaifí, mo 'enu fānaú, mo honau ngaahi falé, mo honau ngaahi 'apí.
- 24 Pea na'e ue'í sí 'i hake 'a kinautolu 'e he'eku ngaahi leá ke loto-mālohi ange, ko ia na'e 'ikai te nau hola ai mei he kau Leimaná, ka na'a nau tu'u loto-to'a ke tau mo kinautolu.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was possible to stop them in their retreat.

And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed. And behold I had gone according to the word of Ammaron, and taken the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of Ammaron.

And upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness and abominations; but upon these plates I did forbear to make a full account of their wickedness and abominations, for behold, a continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man.

And wo is me because of their wickedness; for my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days; nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day.

And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.

And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of Shem, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them from destruction.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and forty and sixth year they began to come upon us again.

And it came to pass that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes.

And my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor, insomuch that they did not flee from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.

- 25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau tau 'i 'aki 'a e kau tau 'e toko tolu mano 'a e kau tau 'e toko nima mano. Pea na'e pehē fau hono mālohi 'o 'emau matu 'uaki 'a kinautolu na'a nau hola ai meiate kinautolu.
- 26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'enau fehōlakī na'a mau tuli 'a kinautolu 'aki 'emau kau tau, 'o mau toe fetaulaki mo kinautolu, pea mau ikuna 'a kinautolu; ka neongo iā na'e 'ikai ke 'iate kinautolu 'a e mālohi 'o e 'Eikī; 'io, na'e tuku kinautolu ta'e-ha-tokoni, pea na'e 'ikai nofo 'ia 'a kinautolu 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Eikī; ko ia kuo mau hoko ai 'o vaivai 'o hangē ko homau kāingá.
- 27 Pea na'e mamahi hoku lotó koe'uhi ko e fu'u faingata 'a ia lahi ni 'a hoku kakaí, koe'uhi ko 'enau fai angahalá mo 'enau ngaahi me'a fakalieliá. Kae vakai, na'a mau 'alu atu ke tau 'i 'a e kau Leimaná mo e kau kaiha 'a 'a Katianetoní, kae 'oua kuo mau toe ma'u 'a e ngaahi fonua 'o homau tofi'á.
- 28 Pea kuo 'alu atu mo hono *tolungeau fāngofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'ú. Pea 'i hono tolungeau mā nimangofulu 'o e ta'ú na'a mau fai ha alepau melino mo e kau Leimaná mo e kau kaiha 'a 'a Katianetoní, 'a ia na'a mau vahevahe ai 'a e ngaahi fonua 'o homau tofi'á.
- 29 Pea na'e tuku mai 'e he kau Leimaná mo 'omautolu 'a e fonua 'i he fakatokelaú, 'io, 'o a'u ki he kavelemotu lausi'i, 'a ia na'e fakatau ki he fonua 'i he fakatongá. Pea na'a mau tuku mo 'ó e kau Leimaná 'a e fonua kotoa 'i he fakatongá.

And it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand. And it came to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did flee from before us.

And it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them; nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us; yea, we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us; therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren.

And my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people, because of their wickedness and their abominations. But behold, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.

And the three hundred and forty and ninth year had passed away. And in the three hundred and fiftieth year we made a treaty with the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, in which we did get the lands of our inheritance divided.

And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward.

Molomona 3

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ke toe ō mai 'a e kau Leimaná ke tau kae 'oua kuo hili 'a e ta'u 'e hongofulu. Pea vakai, kuó u fakangāue 'i 'a hoku kakai, ko e kau Nīfái, 'i he teuteu 'i honau ngaahi fonuá mo 'enua ngaahi mahafú ki he taimi 'o e taú.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kiate au: Kalanga ki he kakaí ni—Mou fakatomala, pea ha'u kiate au, pea mou papitaiso mo toe langa hake hoku siasí, pea 'e fakahaofi 'a kimoutolu.
- 3 Pea na'á ku kalanga ki he kakaí ni, ka na'e ta'e'aonga; pea na'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo 'i ko e 'Eikí kuó ne fakahaofi 'a kinautolú, mo ne tuku kiate kinautolu 'a e faingamālie ke fakatomalá. Pea vakai na'a nau fakafefeka honau lotó ki he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hili leva 'a e 'alu atu 'a e ta'u 'e hongofulu ko 'ení, 'a ia, ko hono lau fakatahá ko e ta'u 'e tolungeau mā onongofulu hili 'a e hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí, na'e fai mai 'e he tu 'i 'o e kau Leimaná ha tohi kiate au, 'a ia na'e fakahā mai ai kiate au 'oku nau teuteu ke toe ō mai ke tau 'i 'a kimautolu.
- 5 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku fekau ki hoku kakaí ke nau fakataha mai ki he fonua ko 'Auhá, ki ha kolo 'a ia na'e 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonuá, 'o ofi ki he kavelemotú, 'a ia na'e fakatau atu ki he fonua 'i he fakatongá.
- 6 Pea na'a mau fokotu'u ai 'emau ngaahi kau taú, ke mau ta'ofi 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná, ke 'oua te nau ma'u ha taha 'o homau ngaahi fonuá; ko ia na'a mau teuteu ke tau mo kinautolu 'aki 'emau ngaahi kau taú kotoa.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono tolungeau onongofulu mā taha 'o e ta'ú na'e ō mai 'a e kau Leimaná ki he kolo ko 'Auha ke tau 'i 'a kimautolu; pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u ko iá na'a mau ikuna 'i 'a kinautolu, pea na'a nau toe foki atu ai ki honau ngaahi fonua 'onautolú.
- 8 Pea 'i hono tolungeau onongofulu mā ua 'o e ta'ú na'a nau toe ō mai ke tau. Pea na'a mau toe ikuna 'i 'a kinautolu, 'o mau tāmāte 'i hanau tokolahi 'aupito, pea na'e laku honau kakai maté ki he tahí.

Mormon 3

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until ten years more had passed away. And behold, I had employed my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.

And it came to pass that the Lord did say unto me: Cry unto this people—Repent ye, and come unto me, and be ye baptized, and build up again my church, and ye shall be spared.

And I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain; and they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them, and granted unto them a chance for repentance. And behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that after this tenth year had passed away, making, in the whole, three hundred and sixty years from the coming of Christ, the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us.

And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into the land southward.

And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites, that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle against us; and it came to pass that in that year we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own lands again.

And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea.

9 Pea ko 'eni, ko'e uhi ko e fu'u me'a ni, 'a ia kuo fai 'e hoku kakai, ko e kau Nīfai, ko ia na'a nau kamata ke pōlepole 'i honau ivi 'onautolú, pea na'a nau kamata ke fuakava ki he langí te nau sāuni 'a e toto 'o honau kāinga 'a ia kuo tāmata 'i 'e honau ngaahi filí.

10 Pea na'a nau fuakava ki he langí, kae 'uma'ā foki ki he 'afio'anga 'o e 'Otuá, ke nau 'alu atu ke tau 'i honau ngaahi filí, pea faka'auha 'a kinautolu mei he funga 'o e fonuá.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko au, Molomona, na'á ku fakafisi 'aupito 'o fai atu mei he taimi ko iá ke u hoko ko e pule pe takimu 'a ki he kakai ni, ko'e uhi ko 'enau fai angahalá mo e anga-fakalieliá.

12 Vakai, kuó u taki 'a kinautolu, neongo 'enau fai angahalá, kuó u taki 'a kinautolu 'o tu'ó lahi ki he tau, pea u 'ofa kiate kinautolu, 'o fakatatau mo e 'ofa 'a e 'Otuá 'a ia na'e 'iate aú; 'aki hoku lotó kotoa; pea kuo fakahā hake hoku laumālié 'i he lotu ki hoku 'Otuá 'i he 'aho kotoa ko'e uhi ko kinautolu; ka neongo iá, na'e 'ikai te u tui te nau fakatomala, ko'e uhi ko e fefeka 'a honau lotó.

13 Pea kuo tu'ó tolu 'eku fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei he nima 'o honau ngaahi filí, pea kuo 'ikai te nau fakatomala mei he 'enau ngaahi angahalá.

14 Pea 'i he 'enau fuakava ki he me'a kotoa pē kuo tapui kiate kinautolu 'e hotau 'Eiki mo e Fakamo'ui ko Sīsū Kalaisí, te nau 'alu atu ki honau ngaahi filí ke tau, pea sāuni 'a e toto 'o honau kāingá, vakai na'e ongo mai 'a e le'ó 'o e 'Eiki kiate au, 'o folofola:

15 'Oku 'a 'aku 'a e tauteá, pea te u totongi; pea ko e me'a 'i he 'ikai fakatomala 'a e kakai ní hili 'eku fakahaofi 'a kinautolú, vakai, 'e motuhi atu 'a kinautolu mei he funga 'o e māmaní.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku fakafisi 'aupito ke u 'alu atu ke tau 'i hoku ngaahi filí; pea na'á ku fai 'o fakatatau mo e me'a kuo fekau 'e he 'Eiki kiate aú; pea na'á ku tu'u 'o mamata noa pē ke fakahā ki he māmaní 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia na'á ku mamata mo fanongo ki aí, 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi fakahā 'a e Laumālié 'a ia kuo fakamo'oni ki he ngaahi me'a 'e hokó.

And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain by their enemies.

And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land.

And it came to pass that I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from this time forth to be a commander and a leader of this people, because of their wickedness and abomination.

Behold, I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness I had led them many times to battle, and had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me, with all my heart; and my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them; nevertheless, it was without faith, because of the hardness of their hearts.

And thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and they have repented not of their sins.

And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying:

Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.

And it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies; and I did even as the Lord had commanded me; and I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations of the Spirit which had testified of things to come.

17 Ko ia 'oku ou tohi kiate kimoutolu, 'e kau Senitaile, pea kiate kimoutolu foki, 'e fale 'o 'Isileli, 'o ka kamata 'a e ngāuē, 'oku 'amanaki ke mou teuteu ke foki ki he fonua 'o homou tofi'á;

18 'Io, vakai, 'oku ou tohi ki he ngaahi ngata'anga kotoa pē 'o e māmaní; 'io, kiate kimoutolu, 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga 'e hongofulu mā ua 'o 'Isilelí, 'a ia 'e fakamāu 'i 'o fakatatau ki ho'omou ngaahi ngāuē 'e he toko hongofulu mā ua 'a ia na'e fili 'e Kalaisi ke hoko ko 'ene kau ākongā 'i he fonua ko Selūsalemá.

19 Pea 'oku ou tohi foki ki he toenga 'o e kakai ní, 'a ia 'e fakamāu 'i foki 'e he toko hongofulu mā ua 'a ia na'e fili 'e Sīsū 'i he fonua ní; pea 'e fakamāu 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he toko hongofulu mā ua kehe 'a ia na'e fili 'e Kalaisi 'i he fonua ko Selūsalemá.

20 Pea ko e ngaahi me'a 'eni 'oku fakahā mai 'e he Laumālié kiate au; ko ia 'oku ou tohi kiate kimoutolu kotoa pē. Pea ko hono 'uhinga 'eni 'oku ou tohi ai kiate kimoutolú, ke mou 'ilo 'i kuo pau ke mou tu'u kotoa pē 'i he nofo'anga fakamaau 'o Kalaisí, 'io, 'a e tokotaha kotoa pē 'a ia 'oku kau 'i he fāmili kotoa 'o e fa'ahinga 'o e tangata 'o 'Ātamá; pea kuo pau ke mou tu'u ke fakamāu 'i 'i ho'omou ngaahi ngāuē, pe 'oku lelei pe kovi ia;

21 Pea koe'uhí ke mou tui foki ki he ongoongolelei 'a Sīsū Kalaisí, 'a ia te mou ma'u 'iate kimoutolú; kae 'uma'ā foki mo e Siú, 'a ia ko e kakai 'o e fuakava 'o e 'Eikí, pea mo ha toe ngaahi fakamo'oni kehe meiate ia, 'a ia na'a nau mamata mo fanongo ki ai, ko Sīsū, 'a ia na'a nau tāmāté'í, ko e Kalaisi mo'oní mo e 'Otua mo'oní ia.

22 Pea 'oku ou faka'amu ke u lava 'o fakaloto 'i 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē 'e ngaahi ngata'anga kotoa pē 'o e māmaní ke mou fakatomala pea teuteu ke tu'u 'i he 'ao 'o e nofo'anga fakamaau 'o Kalaisí.

Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;

Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem.

And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;

And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.

Molomona 4

- 1 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono tolungeau onongofulu mā tolu 'o e ta'ú na'e 'alu atu 'a e kau Nīfaí mo 'enau kau taú ke tau mo e kau Leimaná, mei he fonua ko 'Auhá.
- 2 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe teke 'i fakaholomui 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Nīfaí ki he fonua ko 'Auhá. Pea lolotonga 'enau kei hela'ia, na'e 'i ai ha kau tau kei mālohi 'a e kau Leimaná na'e 'oho mai kiate kinautolu; pea na'a nau fai ha fu'u tau lahi, pea na'e ma'u ai 'e he kau Leimaná 'a e kolo ko 'Auhá, 'o nau tāmāte 'i 'a e tokolahi 'o e kau Nīfaí, pea nau puke pōpula 'a e tokolahi.
- 3 Pea na'e hola hono toé 'o fakataha mo e kakai 'o e kolo ko Teanikumí. Ko 'eni na'e tu'u 'a e kolo ko Teanikumí 'i he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua 'i he matātahi; pea na'e ofi foki ki he kolo ko 'Auhá.
- 4 Pea ko'e uhi ko e 'alu atu 'a e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Nīfaí ke 'ohofi 'a e kau Leimaná ko ia na'e tupu ai honau faka'auhá; he ka ne ta'e'oua 'a e me'á ni, pehē kuo 'ikai ma'u 'e he kau Leimaná ha mālohi kiate kinautolu.
- 5 Kae, vakai, 'e tō 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a e 'Otuá ki he kau angahalá; pea 'oku fou 'i he kau angahalá hono tautea 'i 'o e kau angahalá; he koe kau angahalá, 'oku nau ue'i hake 'a e loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangatá ke lilingi totó.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e teuteu 'a e kau Leimaná ke 'oho mai ki he kolo ko Teanikumí.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono tolungeau onongofulu mā fā 'o e ta'ú na'e ō mai 'a e kau Leimaná ke tau mo e kolo ko Teanikumí, ke nau puke mo e kolo ko Teanikumí foki.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e teke 'i mo tuli fakaholomui 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Nīfaí. Pea 'i he sio 'a e kau Nīfaí kuo nau teke 'i 'a e kau Leimaná, na'a nau toe pōlepole 'i honau ivi; pea na'a nau ō atu 'i honau ivi 'onautolú 'o toe puke 'a e kolo ko 'Auhá.
- 9 Pea ko 'eni kuo fai kotoa 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, pea kuo 'i ai 'a e toko lau afe kuo tāmāte 'i 'i he ongo fa'ahí fakatou'osi, 'i he kau Nīfaí mo e kau Leimaná fakatou'osi.

Mormon 4

And now it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and third year the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land Desolation.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, inso-much that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.

And the remainder did flee and join the inhabitants of the city Teancum. Now the city Teancum lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city Desolation.

And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them.

But, behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did make preparations to come against the city Teancum.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and sixty and fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum, that they might take possession of the city Teancum also.

And it came to pass that they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites. And when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength; and they went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

And now all these things had been done, and there had been thousands slain on both sides, both the Nephites and the Lamanites.

- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo 'osi atu hono tolungeau onongofulu mā ono 'o e ta'ú, pea na'e toe o mai 'a e kau Leimaná ki he kau Nīfái ke tau; ka na'e 'ikai ke fakatomala 'a e kau Nīfái 'i he kovi kuo nau faí, ka na'a nau vilitaki ai pē 'i he 'enau fai angahalá.
- 11 Pea koloto ke fa'a fakamatala 'e ha 'elelo, pe tohi 'e ha tangata ha fakamatala kakato 'o e fakalielia 'o e lilingi toto mo e faka'auha na'e 'i he kakai, 'a ia ko e kau Nīfái mo e kau Leimaná fakatou'osi; pea na'e fakafefeka 'a e loto kotoa pē, ko ia na'a nau manako 'i he lilingi totó ma'u ai pē.
- 12 Pea kuo te'eki ai ha fu'u fai angahala lahi pehē fau 'i he fānau kotoa pē 'a Līhái, pe 'i he fale kotoa 'o 'Isilelí, 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Eikí, 'o hangē ko ia na'e 'i he kakai ní.
- 13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e puke 'e he kau Leimaná 'a e kolo ko 'Auhá, pea na'e tupu 'eni 'i he 'enau tokolahi ange 'i he tokolahi 'o e kau Nīfái.
- 14 Pea na'a nau laka atu foki ke tau 'i 'a e kolo ko Teanikumí, pea nau teke 'i atu 'a e kakai 'o e koló mei ai, 'o nau puke 'a e tokolahi 'o e kakai fefiné mo e fānaú fakatou'osi, pea na'a nau feilaulau 'aki 'a kinautolu ko e feilaulau ki honau ngaahi 'otua tamapuá.
- 15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono tolungeau onongofulu mā fitu 'o e ta'ú, kuo 'ita 'a e kau Nīfái koe'uhi ko e feilaulau 'aki 'e he kau Leimaná 'a honau kakai fefiné mo 'enau fānaú, ko ia na'a nau o atu ai ke tau mo e kau Leimaná 'i he fu'u 'ita lahi, ko ia na'a nau toe ikuna ai 'a e kau Leimaná, pea teke 'i 'a kinautolu mei honau ngaahi fonuá.
- 16 Pea na'e 'ikai ke toe ha'u 'a e kau Leimaná ke tau mo e kau Nīfái 'o a'u ki hono tolungeau fitungofulu mā nima 'o e ta'ú.
- 17 Pea 'i he ta'u ko iá na'a nau 'oho mai ke tau mo e kau Nīfái 'aki honau mālohi kotoa pē; pea na'e 'ikai ke lau 'a kinautolu koe'uhi ko hono lahi fau 'o honau tokolahí.
- 18 Pea kamata mei he taimi ko iá mo e 'ikai ma'u 'e he kau Nīfái ha mālohi ki he kau Leimaná, ka na'e kamata ke tafi 'i atu 'a kinautolu 'e kinautolu 'o hangē ko e hahau 'i he la'áá.

And it came to pass that the three hundred and sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; and yet the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually.

And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and this because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.

And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and seventh year, the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children, that they did go against the Lamanites with exceedingly great anger, insomuch that they did beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands.

And the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hundred and seventy and fifth year.

And in this year they did come down against the Nephites with all their powers; and they were not numbered because of the greatness of their number.

And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'oho mai 'a e kau Leimaná ke tau'i 'a e kolo ko 'Auhá; pea na'e 'i ai ha fu'u fepaki lahi na'e fai 'i he fonua ko 'Auhá, 'a ia na'a nau ikuna ai 'a e kau Nīfái.

20 Pea na'a nau toe hola meiate kinautolu, pea nau 'alu atu ki he kolo ko Pōasí; pea na'a nau tu'u ai 'o tau mo e kau Leimaná 'i he fu'u loto-to'a lahi, pea na'e 'ikai ke ikuna 'e he kau Leimaná 'a kinautolu kae 'oua kuo nau toe o mai ko hono tu'o uá.

21 Pea kuo nau o mai ko hono tu'o uá, pea na'e teke'i mo faka'auha 'a e kau Nīfái 'i he fu'u faka'auha lahi; na'e toe feilaulau 'aki honau kakai fefiné mo e fānaú ki ha ngaahi tamapuá.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe hola 'a e kau Nīfái meiate kinautolu, 'o nau 'ave 'a e kakaí kotoa mo kinautolu, 'i he ngaahi kolo lalahí mo e fanga kí'i kolo íkí.

23 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Molomona, 'i he'eku vakai 'oku faka'au ke ikuna 'e he kau Leimaná 'a e fonuá, ko ia na'a ku 'alu ki he mo'unga ko Simí, peá u to'o 'a e ngaahi lekōtí kotoa, 'a ia kuo fufuu 'i 'e 'Emaloni ki he 'Eikí.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come down against the city Desolation; and there was an exceedingly sore battle fought in the land Desolation, in the which they did beat the Nephites.

And they fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, insomuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.

And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an exceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages.

And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.

Molomona 5

- 1 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku 'alu atu 'i he kau Nīfái, pea na'á ku fakatomala mei he fuakava kuó u fai 'e 'ikai te u toe tokoni kiate kinautolú; pea na'a nau toe tuku mai kiate au 'a e pule ki he 'enau ngaahi kau taú, he na'a nau sio kiate au 'o hangē te u lava 'o fakahaofi 'a kinautolu mei honau ngaahi faingata'á.
- 2 Kae vakai, na'e 'ikai ha'aku 'amanaki, he na'á ku 'ilo 'a e ngaahi tautea 'a e 'Eikí 'a ia 'e tō kiate kinautolú; he na'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala mei he 'enau ngaahi angahalá, ka nau feinga ke malu 'i 'enau mo'uí kae 'ikai ui ki he Tokotaha 'a ia na'á ne fakatupu 'a kinautolú.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'oho mai 'a e kau Leimaná kiate kinautolu 'i he 'emau hola ki he kolo ko Soataní; kae vakai, na'e teke 'i fakaholomui 'a kinautolu 'o 'ikai ai te nau puke 'a e koló 'i he taimi ko íá.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau toe 'oho mai ke tau mo kinautolu, ka na'a mau malu 'i 'a e koló. Pea na'e 'i ai mo e ngaahi kolo kehe 'a ia na'e malu 'i 'e he kau Nīfái, 'a ia ko ha ngaahi kolotau na'e ta'ofi 'a kinautolu 'o 'ikai te nau fá'a hū mai ki he fonua na'e tu'u ki mu'a 'iate kinautolú, ke nau faka'auha 'a e kakai 'o homau fonuá.
- 5 Ka na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e ngaahi fonua kotoa pē kuo mau tuku ki muí, pea kuo 'ikai ke tānaki mai mo honau kakaí, na'e faka'auha 'e he kau Leimaná, pea ko honau ngaahi koló, mo e ngaahi kolo íkí, mo e ngaahi kolo lalahí, na'e tutu 'aki 'a e afi; pea na'e pehē 'a e 'osi atu hono tolungeau fitungofulu mā hiva 'o e ta'ú.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i hono tolungeau valungofulu 'o e ta'ú na'e toe ō mai ai 'a e kau Leimaná ke tau 'i 'a kinautolu, pea na'a mau tau mo kinautolu 'i he loto-to'a; ka na'e ta'e aonga pē ia, he na'e pehē fau honau tokolahí na'a nau molomoloki 'a e kakai 'o e kau Nīfái 'i honau lalo va'é.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau toe hola, pea ko kinautolu na'e vave ange 'enau holá 'i he kau Leimaná, na'a nau hao, pea ko kinautolu na'e 'ikai ke vave ange 'i he kau Leimaná na'e tā hifo mo faka'auha.

Mormon 5

And it came to pass that I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath which I had made that I would no more assist them; and they gave me command again of their armies, for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions.

But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan; but behold, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.

And it came to pass that they came against us again, and we did maintain the city. And there were also other cities which were maintained by the Nephites, which strongholds did cut them off that they could not get into the country which lay before us, to destroy the inhabitants of our land.

But it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the Lamanites, and their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with fire; and thus three hundred and seventy and nine years passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and eightieth year the Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.

And it came to pass that we did again take to flight, and those whose flight was swifter than the Lamanites' did escape, and those whose flight did not exceed the Lamanites' were swept down and destroyed.

8 Pea ko 'eni vakai, ko au, Molomona, 'oku 'ikai te u fie fakamamahi 'i 'a e loto 'o e kakai 'i he fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a hono fakamanavahē 'o e totó mo e faka'auhá 'o hangē ko ia na'á ku mamata ki ai 'aki hoku matá; ka ko au, 'i he'eku 'ilo 'i kuo pau ke fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, pea ko e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kuo fufuu 'i kuo pau ke fakahā ia 'i he ngaahi funga falé—

9 Pea ko e tahá kuo pau ke ma'u 'a e 'ilo ki he ngaahi me'á ni 'e he toenga 'o e kakai ní, pea mo e kau Senitailé foki, 'a ia kuo folofola 'e he 'Eiki te nau fakamovetevete 'a e kakai ní, pea 'e lau 'a e kakai ni ko e me'a noa pe 'i honau 'aó—ko ia 'oku ou hiki hano ki 'i fakanounou 'i, ka 'oku ou manavahē ke fai hano fakamatala 'i kakato 'o e ngaahi me'a kuó u mamata ki aí, koe'uhi ko e fekau kuó u ma'ú, kae 'uma'ā foki ke 'oua 'e fu'u lahi ho'omou mamahi koe'uhi ko e fai angahala 'a e kakai ní.

10 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'oku ou lea 'aki 'eni ki honau hakó, kae 'uma'ā mo e kau Senitaille 'a ia 'oku tokanga ki he fale 'o 'Isilelí, 'a ia 'oku mahino ki ai mo 'ilo 'i 'oku há'u mei fē honau ngaahi tāpuakí.

11 He 'oku ou 'ilo 'e mamahi 'a e fa'ahinga peheé koe'uhi ko e tu'utāmaki 'a e fale 'o 'Isilelí; 'io, te nau loto-mamahi koe'uhi ko e faka'auha 'o e kakai ní; te nau loto-mamahi koe'uhi ko e 'ikai fakatomala 'a e kakai ni ke lava ai ke hapai 'a kinautolu 'i he ongo to'ukupu 'o Sīsuú.

12 Ko 'eni 'oku tohi 'a e ngaahi me'á ni ki he toenga 'o e fale 'o Sēkopé; pea ko e anga 'eni honau tohi, koe'uhi 'oku 'afio 'i 'e he 'Otuá 'e 'ikai fakahā mai ia kiate kinautolu 'e he fai angahalá; pea 'e fufuu 'i ia ki he 'Eiki koe'uhi ke hā mai ia 'i he taimi 'okú ne 'afio 'i 'oku lelei.

13 Pea ko e fekau 'eni kuó u ma'ú; pea vakai te nau hā mai 'o fakatatau mo e fekau 'a e 'Eiki, 'o ka ne ka 'afio 'i 'oku lelei, 'i hono finangalo potó.

And now behold, I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage as was laid before mine eyes; but I, knowing that these things must surely be made known, and that all things which are hid must be revealed upon the house-tops—

And also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant of these people, and also unto the Gentiles, who the Lord hath said should scatter this people, and this people should be counted as naught among them—therefore I write a small abridgment, daring not to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the commandment which I have received, and also that ye might not have too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.

And now behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from whence their blessings come.

For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel; yea, they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.

Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob; and they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time.

And this is the commandment which I have received; and behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.

14 Pea vakai, te nau 'alu atu ki he kau Siu 'oku ta'etuí; pea ko hono 'uhinga 'eni te nau 'alu atu aí—koe'uhi ke fakaloto 'i 'a kinautolu ke nau tui ko Sísū ko e Kalaisí, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otua mo'ui; koe'uhi ke lava 'o fakahoko 'e he Tamaí, 'i hono 'Ofa'angá, 'a 'ene taumu 'a ma'ongo'onga mo ta'engata, 'i he fakafoki 'o e kau Siú, pe ko e fale kotoa 'o 'Isilelí, ki he fonua 'o honau tofi'á, 'a ia kuo tuku 'e he 'Eiki ko honau 'Otuá kiate kinautolu, ko hono fakahoko 'o 'ene fuakavá;

15 Pea koe'uhi foki ko e hako 'o hono kakai ní ke nau tui lahi ange ki he 'ene ongoongoleí, 'a ia 'e 'alu atu kiate kinautolu mei he kau Senitailé; koe'uhi 'e fakamovetevete 'i 'a e kakai ní, pea te nau hoko ko ha kakai lanu fakapo'upo'uli, mo 'uli, mo fakalielia, 'o laka hake 'i he kau Leimana kuo tau mamata ki ai pea nofo mo kitautolú, pea 'e hoko 'eni koe'uhi ko 'enau ta'etuí mo e tauhi tamapuá.

16 He vakai, kuo tuku 'e he Laumálie 'o e 'Eikí 'a 'ene feinga ke ue'í 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí; pea 'oku 'ikai te nau ma'u 'a Kalaisi mo e 'Otuá 'i he māmaní; pea 'oku nau vilingia holo 'o hangē ko e kafukafu 'i he matangí.

17 Na'a nau hoko 'i ai ha taimi ko ha kakai faka'ofa'ofa, pea na'a nau ma'u 'a Kalaisi ko honau tauhi; 'io, na'e taki foki 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Otua ko e Tamaí.

18 Ka ko 'eni, vakai, 'oku tākiekina holo 'a kinautolu 'e Sētane, 'o hangē ko e vilingia holo 'a e kafukafu 'i he matangí, pe hangē ko e fetēkeekina holo ha vaka 'i he ngaahi peaú, ta'e-hano-lā pe taulá, pe ta'e 'i ai ha me'a ke faka'uli 'aki ia; pea 'oku tatau ia, mo kinautolu.

19 Pea vakai, kuo tuku 'e he 'Eiki 'a honau ngaahi tāpuaki, 'a ia na'a nau mei ma'u 'i he fonuá, mo'ó e kau Senitaille te nau ma'u 'a e fonuá.

20 Kae vakai, 'e hoko 'o pehē 'e tuli mo fakamovetevete 'i 'a kinautolu 'e he kau Senitailé; pea hili honau tuli mo fakamovetevete 'i 'e he kau Senitailé, vakai, 'e manatu 'i leva 'e he 'Eikí 'a e fuakava kuó ne fai kia 'Ēpalahamé pea ki he fale kotoa 'o 'Isilelí.

21 Pea 'e manatu 'i foki 'e he 'Eikí 'a e ngaahi lotu 'a e mā'oní'oní, 'a ia kuo fai kiate ia koe'uhi ko kinautolú.

22 Pea ko ia, 'A kimoutolu 'e kakai Senitaille, 'e fēfē ha'amou lava 'o tu'u 'i he 'ao 'o e māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá, ta'e te mou fakatomala, pea tafoki mei homou ngaahi hala kovi?

And behold, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant;

And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.

They were once a delightsome people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father.

But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.

And behold, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land.

But behold, it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; and after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel.

And also the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.

And then, O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn from your evil ways?

23 'Ikai 'oku mou 'ilo 'i 'oku mou 'i he to'ukupu 'o e
'Otuá? 'Ikai 'oku mou 'ilo 'i 'oku 'iate ia 'a e māfimaŋi
kotoa pē, 'o ka ne ka folofola pē 'e takatakai fakataha 'a
māmani 'o hangē ha takainga tohí?

24 Ko ia, mou fakatomala, pea fakavaivai 'i 'a kimoutolu
'i hono 'aó, telia na 'á ne hā 'ele mai ke fakamāu 'i 'a
kimoutolu—telia na 'a 'alu atu ha toenga 'o e hako 'o
Sēkopé 'iate kimoutolu 'o hangē ko e laione, pea haehae
momomomo-iiki 'a kimoutolu, pea 'oku 'ikai ha taha 'e
fakahaofi 'a kimoutolu.

Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God? Know
ye not that he hath all power, and at his great command
the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll?

Therefore, repent ye, and humble yourselves before
him, lest he shall come out in justice against you—lest a
remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you
as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to de-
liver.

Molomona 6

- 1 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou faka'osi 'eku lekooti 'o kau ki hono faka'auha 'o hoku kakai, ko e kau Nīfaí. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau laka atu ki mu'a 'i he kau Leimaná.
- 2 Pea ko au, Molomona, na'á ku fai ha tohi ki he tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná, pea na'á ku kole kiate ia ke ne tuku mai ke mau tānaki fakataha homau kakai ki he fonua ko Komolá, 'i he ve'e mo'unga na'e ui ko Komolá, pea te mau tau 'i ai mo kinautolu.
- 3 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuku mai 'e he tu'i 'o e kau Leimaná kiate au 'a e me'a na'á ku fie ma'u.
- 4 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a mau laka atu ki he fonua ko Komolá, pea na'a mau fokotu'u homau ngaahi fale fehikitaki 'o takatakai 'i he mo'unga ko Komolá; pea ko e fonua ia 'o e ngaahi anovai lahi, mo e ngaahi vaitafe, mo e ngaahi matavai; pea na'a mau 'amanaki ke ikuna 'i 'i ai 'a e kau Leimaná.
- 5 Pea kuo 'osi atu hono tolungeau valungofulu mā fā 'o e ta'ú, pea kuo mau tānaki mai 'a e toenga hono kotoa 'o homau kakai ki he fonua ko Komolá.
- 6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē kuo mau tānaki fakataha mai 'a homau kakai kotoa ki he fonua ko Komolá, pea vakai ko au, Molomona, ne u faka'au 'o motu'a; pea 'i he'eku 'ilo'i koe tau faka'osi 'eni 'a hoku kakai, pea ko e me'a 'i he fekau'i au 'e he 'Eiki ke 'oua na'á ku tuku ke tō ki he nima 'o e kau Leimaná 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'a ia kuo tukufakaholo mai mei he'emaui ngaahi tamaí, 'a ia 'oku toputapu, (he 'e faka'auha ia 'e he kau Leimaná) ko ia na'á ku hiki 'a e lekōtī ni mei he ngaahi peleti 'a Nīfaí, pea u fufuu'i 'i he mo'unga ko Komolá 'a e ngaahi lekooti kotoa kuo tuku ke u tauhi 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eiki, tuku kehe pē 'a e ngaahi peleti si'i ko 'eni 'a ia na'á ku tuku ki hoku foha ko Molonaí.
- 7 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko hoku kakai, mo honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enau fānaú, na'a nau sio he taimí ni ki he ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná 'oku nau laka mai kiate kinautolu; pea na'a nau tatali ke tali 'a kinautolu 'i he fu'u ilifia faka'ulia ki he mate ko ia 'oku fakafonu 'a e loto 'o e kau fai angahala kotoa pē.
- 8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau ō mai ke tau'i 'a kimautolu, pea na'e fonu 'a e kakai kotoa pē 'i he ilifia koe'uhi ko hono lahi fau 'o honau tokolahí.

Mormon 6

And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites.

And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.

And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah.

And it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them.

And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'ohofi 'a hoku kakai
 'aki 'a e heletā, mo e kaufana, mo e ngahau, mo e toki,
 pea mo e fa'ahinga mahafu tau kotoa pē.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tā hifo 'a 'eku kau tangatá,
 'io, 'a 'eku toko mano 'a ia na'a nau 'iate aú, peá u lavea 'o
 tō 'i honau lotolotongá; pea na'a nau laka 'iate au 'o 'ikai
 te nau faka'osi 'a 'eku mo'uí.

11 Pea kuo nau 'alu atu 'o tā hifo 'a hoku kakai kotoa
 tuku kehe pē hamau toko uofulu mā fā, ('a ia na'e kau ai
 'a hoku foha ko Molonái) pea 'i he'emaui hao mei he
 mate 'a homau kakai, na'a mau vakai 'i he pongipongi
 haké, 'i he hili 'a e foki atu 'a e kau Leimaná ki honau
 ngaahi 'apitangá, mei he tumutumumu 'o e mo'unga ko
 Komolá, ki he toko mano 'o hoku kakai 'a ia kuo tā hifo,
 'a ia na'a ku mu'omu'a 'o taki 'a kinautolú.

12 Pea na'a mau vakai foki ki he toko mano 'o hoku
 kakai 'a ia na'e taki 'e hoku foha ko Molonái.

13 Pea vakai, kuo tō 'a e toko mano 'a Kitikitioná, pea
 kuó ne tō foki mo ia 'i honau lotolotongá.

14 Pea kuo tō 'a Lema mo 'ene toko manó; pea kuo tō 'a
 Kilikali mo 'ene toko manó; pea kuo tō 'a Limihā mo
 'ene toko manó; pea kuo tō 'a Seoneami mo 'ene toko
 manó; pea kuo tō 'a Kameninaihā, mo Molonaihā, mo
 'Aniteonumi, mo Sipiloni, mo Semi, mo Sose, mo 'enau
 toko mano taki taha.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai mo e toko hongofulu
 kehe na'a nau tō 'i he heletā mo 'enau toko mano taki
 taha; 'io, kuo tō 'a hoku kakai kotoa pē, tuku kehe pē 'a e
 toko uofulu mā fā 'a ia na'a nau 'iate aú, pea mo e ní'ihí
 tokosi'i foki kuo hao ki he ngaahi fonua 'i he tongá, mo e
 ní'ihí tokosi'i kuo tafoki ki he kau Leimaná; pea na'e
 fokotu'u 'a honau 'anga'angá, mo e ngaahi huí, mo e
 totó 'i he funga kelekelé, kuo tuku ia 'e he nima 'o e
 fa'ahinga kuo nau tā 'a kinautolú ke 'auha 'i he funga
 fonuá, pea popo mo foki atu ki honau tupu'anga ko e
 kelekelé.

16 Pea na'e mamahi lahi 'a hoku laumalié, koe'uhi ko e
 tō 'a hoku kakai, pea u kaila:

17 'A kimoutolu 'e kakai faka'ofó'ofa, kuo fēfē nai 'a
 ho'omou afē mei he ngaahi hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eiki! 'A
 kimoutolu, 'e kakai faka'ofó'ofa, kuo fēfē nai 'a
 ho'omou lí'aki 'a e Sīsū ko ia, 'a ia na'a ne tu'u mo e ongo
 to'ukupu 'oku mafao mai ke tali 'a kimoutolú!

And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people
 with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow,
 and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war.

And it came to pass that my men were hewn down,
 yea, even my ten thousand who were with me, and I fell
 wounded in the midst; and they passed by me that they
 did not put an end to my life.

And when they had gone through and hewn down
 all my people save it were twenty and four of us, (among
 whom was my son Moroni) and we having survived the
 dead of our people, did behold on the morrow, when
 the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the
 top of the hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people
 who were hewn down, being led in the front by me.

And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people
 who were led by my son Moroni.

And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had
 fallen, and he also in the midst.

And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and
 Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah
 had fallen with his ten thousand; and Jeneum had fallen
 with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and
 Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem,
 and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each.

And it came to pass that there were ten more who did
 fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; yea,
 even all my people, save it were those twenty and four
 who were with me, and also a few who had escaped into
 the south countries, and a few who had deserted over
 unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and
 bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth, being
 left by the hands of those who slew them to molder
 upon the land, and to crumble and to return to their
 mother earth.

And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the
 slain of my people, and I cried:

O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the
 ways of the Lord! O ye fair ones, how could ye have re-
 jected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive
 you!

18 Vakai, kapau na 'e 'ikai te mou fai 'eni, 'e 'ikai te mou tō. Kae vakai, kuo mou tō, pea 'oku ou tengihia 'a ho'omou molé.

19 'Oiauē 'a e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine faka'ofa'ofa, 'a kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi tamaí mo e ngaahi fa'éé, 'a kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi husepānití mo e ngaahi uaifí, 'a kimoutolu 'a e kakai faka'ofa'ofa, kuo fēfē ho'omou lava nai 'o toó!

20 Kae vakai, kuo mou mole atu, pea 'e 'ikai lava 'e he'eku loto-mamahí 'o fakafoki mai 'a kimoutolu.

21 Pea 'oku vave mai 'a e 'aho kuo pau ke 'ai ai 'e homou sino fa'amaté 'a e ta'e-fa'a-maté, pea ko e ngaahi sínó ni 'a ia 'oku 'au'auhá kuo pau ke nau hoko ko e ngaahi sino ta'e-fa'a-'au'auha; pea 'oku pau ke mou tu'u 'i he 'ao 'o e nofo'anga fakamaau 'o Kalaisí, ke fakamāu 'i 'o fakatatau ki ho'omou ngaahi ngāué; pea kapau leva 'oku mou mā'oni'oni, pea 'e tāpuaki 'i 'a kimoutolu fakataha mo ho'omou ngaahi tamaí 'a ia kuo nau mu'omu'ate kimoutolú.

22 Taumaiā ne mou fakatomala 'i he te'eki ai tō 'a e fu'u faka'auhá ni kiate kimoutolú. Kae vakai, kuo mou mole atu, pea ko e Tamaí, 'io, 'a e Tamaí Ta'engata 'o e langí, 'okú ne 'afio 'i 'a homou tu'ungá; pea 'okú ne fai kiate kimoutolu 'o fakatatau mo 'ene fakamaau totonú mo e 'alo'ofá.

Behold, if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen. But behold, ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss.

O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it that ye could have fallen!

But behold, ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.

And the day soon cometh that your mortal must put on immortality, and these bodies which are now mouldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies; and then ye must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, to be judged according to your works; and if it so be that ye are righteous, then are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone before you.

O that ye had repented before this great destruction had come upon you. But behold, ye are gone, and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven, knoweth your state; and he doeth with you according to his justice and mercy.

Molomona 7

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'oku ou fie lea si'i ki he toenga 'o e kaka'i ni 'a ia kuo fakahaofi, 'o kapau 'e tuku 'e he 'Otuá kiate kinautolu 'a 'eku ngaahi leá, koe'uhi ke nau 'ilo ki he ngaahi me'a 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí; 'io, 'oku ou lea kiate kimoutolu, 'a kimoutolu ko e toenga 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí; pea ko e ngaahi lea 'eni 'oku ou lea 'akí:
- 2 'Oku mou 'ilo 'i koā, 'oku mou 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.
- 3 'Oku mou 'ilo 'i koā kuo pau ke mou ha'u 'o fakatomala, pe 'e 'ikai lava 'o fakamo'ui 'a kimoutolu.
- 4 'Oku mou 'ilo 'i koā kuo pau ke mou tuku hifo ho'omou ngaahi mahafu 'o e taú, pea 'ikai toe fiefia 'i he lilingi totó, pea 'oua 'e toe to'o hake ia, tuku kehe 'o kapau 'e fekau 'e he 'Otuá kiate kimoutolu.
- 5 'Oku mou 'ilo 'i koā kuo pau ke mou ma'u 'a e 'ilo ki ho'omou ngaahi tamaí, pea fakatomala mei ho'omou ngaahi angahala mo e ngaahi hia kotoa pē, pea tui kia Sīsū Kalaisi, ko e 'Alo ia 'o e 'Otuá, pea na'e tāmata'e 'i ia 'e he kau Siú, pea 'i he māfima'fi 'o e Tamaí kuó ne toe tu'u, 'a ia kuó ne ikuna ai 'a e fa'itoká; pea 'iate ia foki kuo folo hifo ai 'a e mamahi 'o e maté.
- 6 Pea 'okú ne fakahoko 'a e toetu'u 'a e maté, 'a ia kuo pau ke fokotu'u hake ai 'a e tangatá ke tu'u 'i he 'ao 'o hono nofo'anga fakamāú.
- 7 Pea kuó ne fakahoko 'a e huhu'i 'o e māmaní, koe'uhí ko ia ia 'e 'ilo 'i 'oku ta'ehalaia 'i hono 'aó 'i he 'aho fakamāú 'e tuku ke ne nofo 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá 'i hono pule'angá, ke hiva 'aki 'a e fakafeta 'i ta'etuku fakataha mo e kau hiva 'i 'olunga, ki he Tamaí, pea ki he 'Aló, pea ki he Laumālie Mā'oní'oní, 'a ia ko e 'Otuá pē 'e taha, 'i ha tu'unga 'o e fiefia 'a ia 'oku 'ikai hano ngata'anga.
- 8 Ko ia mou fakatomala, pea papitaiso 'i he huafa 'o Sīsūú, pea puke ma'u 'a e ongoongolelei 'a Kalaisi, 'a ia 'e tuku 'i homou 'aó, kae 'ikai 'i he lekōtí ni pē kā 'i he lekooti foki 'a ia 'e 'omai ki he kau Senitailé mei he kau Siú, 'a ia ko e lekooti 'e 'omai mei he kau Senitailé kiate kimoutolu.
- 9 He vakai, kuo tohi 'eni koe'uhí ke mou tui ki ai; pea kapau 'oku mou tui ki ai te mou tui ki he me'á ni foki; pea kapau 'oku mou tui ki he me'á ni te mou 'ilo ki ho'omou ngaahi tamaí kae 'uma'ā foki mo e ngaahi ngāue fakafo 'a ia kuo fakahoko 'i he māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá 'iate kinautolú.

Mormon 7

And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who are spared, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their fathers; yea, I speak unto you, ye remnant of the house of Israel; and these are the words which I speak:

Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel.

Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved.

Know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood, and take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.

Know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your fathers, and repent of all your sins and iniquities, and believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God, and that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the Father he hath risen again, whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up.

And he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.

And he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.

Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.

For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; and if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.

10 Pea te mou 'ilo foki ko ha toenga 'a kimoutolu 'o e hako 'o Sēkopé; ko ia 'oku lau 'a kimoutolu fakataha mo e kakai 'o e 'uluaki fuakavá; pea kapau leva te mou tui kia Kalaisi, pea mou papitaiso, 'uluaki 'i he vaí, pea toki 'i he afi mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'o muimui ki he sīpinga 'a hotau Fakamo'uí, 'o fakatatau mo e me'a kuó ne fekau kiate kitautolú, 'e lelei ia kiate kimoutolu 'i he 'aho 'o e fakamāú. 'Ēmeni.

And ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; therefore ye are numbered among the people of the first covenant; and if it so be that ye believe in Christ, and are baptized, first with water, then with fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the example of our Savior, according to that which he hath commanded us, it shall be well with you in the day of judgment. Amen.

Molomona 8

- 1 Vakai, ko au Molonai, 'oku ou faka'osi 'a e lekooti 'a 'eku tamaí, ko Molomoná. Vakai, 'oku si'i 'a e ngaahi me'a ke u tohi, 'a ia ko e ngaahi me'a kuo fekau kiate au 'e he'eku tamaí.
- 2 Pea ko 'eni na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili leva 'a e fu'u tau lahi mo faka'ulia 'i Komolá, vakai, ko e kau Nifai 'a ia kuo nau hola ki he fonua 'i he fakatonga na'e ha'ao 'e he kau Leimaná, kae 'oua kuo faka'auha 'a kinautolu kotoa pē.
- 3 Pea ko 'eku tamaí foki na'e tāmata'e 'i e kinautolu, pea 'oku ou toe toko taha pē ke tohi 'a e talanoa fakamamahi 'o e faka'auha 'o hoku kakaí. Kae vakai, kuo nau 'alu, pea 'oku ou fakahoko 'a e fekau 'a 'eku tamaí. Pea 'oku 'ikai te u 'ilo pe te nau tāmata'e 'i au pe 'ikai.
- 4 Ko ia te u hiki pea fufuu 'i 'a e ngaahi lekōtí 'i he kelekelé; pea neongo te u 'alú ki fē 'oku tatau ai pē.
- 5 Vakai, na'e hiki 'e he'eku tamaí 'a e lekōtí ni, pea kuó ne tohi hono 'uhinga 'o 'ene hiki iá. Pea vakai, te u hiki ia foki 'o kapau na'á ku ma'u ha konga 'ata'atā 'i he ngaahi peletí, ka 'oku 'ikai te u ma'u; pea 'oku 'ikai ha'aku ukamea, he 'oku ou toko taha pē. Kuo tāmata'e 'i 'a 'eku tamaí 'i he tau, mo hoku kāingá kotoa pē, pea 'oku 'ikai haku ngaahi kaume'a pe potu ke u 'alu ki ai; pea 'oku 'ikai te u 'ilo 'i pe 'e fēfē hono fuoloa 'o e tuku 'e he 'Eikí ke u mo'uí.
- 6 Vakai, kuo 'osi 'a e ta'u 'e fāngeau talu 'a e hā'ele mai 'a hotau 'Eikí mo e Fakamo'uí.
- 7 Pea vakai, kuo ha'ao 'e he kau Leimaná 'a hoku kakai, ko e kau Nifai, mei he kolo ki he kolo, pea mei he feitu'u ki he feitu'u, kae 'oua kuo nau mate kotoa pē; pea kuo fu'u lahi faka'ulia 'a 'enau toó; 'io, kuo ma'ongo'onga mo faka'oua 'a e faka'auha 'o hoku kakai, ko e kau Nifai.
- 8 Pea vakai, ko e to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí kuó ne fai iá. Pea vakai foki, 'oku fetau'aki 'a e kau Leimaná 'iate kinautolu; pea 'oku hokohoko atu ai pē 'i he funga 'o e fonuá ni 'a e fakapoó mo e lilingi totó; pea 'oku 'ikai 'ilo 'i 'e ha taha hono ngata'anga 'o e taú.
- 9 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, 'oku 'ikai te u toe lea 'o kau kiate kinautolu, he 'oku 'ikai ha taha ka ko e kau Leimaná mo e kau kaiha'á pē 'oku mo'ui 'i he funga 'o e fonuá.

Mormon 8

Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.

And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

And my father also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not.

Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.

Behold, my father hath made this record, and he hath written the intent thereof. And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.

Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior.

And behold, the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down from city to city and from place to place, even until they are no more; and great has been their fall; yea, great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And behold, it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it. And behold also, the Lamanites are at war one with another; and the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed; and no one knoweth the end of the war.

And now, behold, I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land.

10 Pea 'oku 'ikai ha taha 'okú ne 'ilo'í 'a e 'Otuá mo'óni ka ko e kau ākongā pē 'a Sīsū, 'a ia na'a nau nofo 'i he fonuá kae 'oua kuo pehē fau hono lahi 'o e fai angahala 'a e kakaí pea 'ikai finangalo ai 'a e 'Eikí ke tuku ke nau kei nofo mo e kakaí; pea 'oku 'ikai 'ilo'í 'e ha tangata 'e taha pe 'oku nau 'i he funga 'o e fonuá pe 'ikai.

11 Kae vakai, kuo mamata 'a 'eku tamaí mo au kiate kinautolu, pea na'a nau tauhi 'a kimaua.

12 Pea ko ia te ne ma'u 'a e lekōtí ni, pea 'ikai fakaanga'í ia koe'uhi ko e ngaahi fehalaaki 'oku 'i aí, 'e 'ilo'í 'e ia 'a e ngaahi fu'u me'a lalahi ange 'i he ngaahi me'á ni. Vakai, ko au Molonai; pea ka na'e lava, pehē te u fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē kiate kimoutolu.

13 Vakai, 'oku ou faka'osi 'eku lea 'o kau ki he kakai ní. Ko e foha au 'o Molomona, pea ko 'eku tamaí ko ha hako 'o Nifai.

14 Pea ko au ia 'okú ne fufuu'í 'a e lekōtí ni ki he 'Eikí; ko e ngaahi peleti 'o iá 'oku 'ikai hano 'aonga, koe'uhi ko e fekau 'a e 'Eikí. He na'á ne folofola mo'oni 'e 'ikai ma'u ia 'e ha taha ke ma'u koloa ai; ka ko e lekooti 'oku 'i aí 'oku fu'u mahu'inga 'aupito; pea ko ia ia te ne 'omi ia ki he māmá, 'e tāpuakí'í ia 'e he 'Eikí.

15 He 'oku 'ikai fa'a ma'u 'e ha taha 'a e mālohi ke 'omi ia ki he māmá 'o kapau 'oku 'ikai tuku ia kiate ia 'e he 'Otuá; he 'oku finangalo 'a e 'Otuá ke fai ia 'aki 'a e mata 'oku hanga taha pē ki hono fakalāngilangi'í, pe ko e lelei 'a e kakai 'i mu'a mo e kakai 'o e fuakava 'o e 'Eikí kuo fakamovetevete fuoloa.

16 Pea 'e monū'ia ia te ne 'omi 'a e me'á ni ki he māmá; he 'e 'omi ia mei he fakapo'ulí ki he māmá, 'o hangē ko e folofola 'a e 'Otuá; 'io, 'e 'o hake ia mei he kekelelé, pea 'e ulo atu ia mei he fakapo'ulí, pea 'e ma'u 'a e 'ilo ki ai 'e he kakaí; pea 'e fai ia 'i he māfima'í 'o e 'Otuá.

17 Pea kapau 'oku 'i ai ha ngaahi hala, ko e ngaahi hala pē ia 'a ha tangata. Kae vakai, 'oku 'ikai te mau 'ilo'í ha me'a 'oku hala; ka neongo iá 'oku 'afio'í 'e he 'Otuá 'a e me'a kotoa pē; ko ia, 'ilonga ia 'okú ne fakaanga'í, tuku ke ne tokanga telia na'á ne tu'utāmaki 'i he afi 'o helí.

18 Pea ko ia ia 'okú ne pehē: Fakahā mai kiate au, pe 'e taa'í koe—tuku ke ne tokanga telia na'a kuó ne fekau ha me'a kuo tapui 'e he 'Eikí.

And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.

But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.

And whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

Behold, I make an end of speaking concerning this people. I am the son of Mormon, and my father was a descendant of Nephi.

And I am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.

For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.

And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; yea, it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the power of God.

And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knoweth all things; therefore, he that condemneth, let him be aware lest he shall be in danger of hell fire.

And he that saith: Show unto me, or ye shall be smitten—let him beware lest he commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord.

- 19 He vakai, ko ia ia 'oku fakamāu i fakavavevavé, 'e toe fakamāu i fakavavevave ia; he 'e fakatatau ki he 'ene ngaahi ngāue 'a 'ene totongí; ko ia, 'ilonga ia 'okú ne taa 'i 'e toe taa 'i ia, 'e he 'Eikí.
- 20 Vakai ki he lau 'a e folofolá—'oua na 'a taa 'i 'e ha tangata, pea 'oua te ne fakamaau; he 'oku 'a 'aku 'a e fakamāu, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eikí, pea 'oku 'a 'aku 'a e sāuní foki, pea te u totongi fakafoki.
- 21 Pea 'ilonga ia 'e lea 'ita mo e fakafepaki ki he ngāue 'a e 'Eikí, mo e kakai 'o e fuakava 'o e 'Eikí 'a ia 'oku 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí, 'o ne pehē: Te mau faka'auha 'a e ngāue 'a e 'Eikí, pea 'e 'ikai manatu 'i 'e he 'Eikí 'a 'ene fuakava kuó ne fai ki he fale 'o 'Isilelí—'oku tu 'utāmaki 'a e tokotaha ko iá na 'a tā hifó mo laku ki he afí;
- 22 He 'e teka atu ma 'u ai pē 'a e ngaahi taumu 'a ta 'engata 'o e 'Eikí, kae 'oua ke fakahoko 'a 'ene ngaahi tala 'ofa kotoa pē.
- 23 Fakatotolo 'i he ngaahi kikite 'a 'Īsaia. Vakai, 'oku 'ikai te u fa 'a tohi ia. 'Io, vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko e kau mā'oni'oni 'a ia kuo mu'omu 'a 'iate aú, 'a ia kuo nau ma 'u 'a e fonua ní, te nau tangi ki he 'Eikí, 'io, mei he efú; pea hangē 'oku mo 'ui 'a e 'Eikí kuo pau ke ne manatu 'i 'a e fuakava kuó ne fai mo kinautolú.
- 24 Pea 'okú ne 'afio 'i 'a 'enau ngaahi lotú, pea na 'e fai ia koe'uhi ko honau kāingá. Pea 'okú ne 'afio 'i 'a 'enau tuí, pea 'i hono huafá na 'a nau lava 'o hiki 'a e ngaahi mo'ungá; pea 'i hono huafá na 'a nau lava 'o fekau ke ngalulululu 'a e māmaní; pea 'i he mālohi 'o 'ene folofolá na 'a nau fekau ke holo 'a e ngaahi fale fakapōpulá ki he kekekelé; 'io, na 'a mo e afi kakahá na 'e 'ikai lava ke fai ha kovi kiate kinautolu, pe ko e fanga manu fekaí pe fanga ngata koná, koe'uhi ko e mālohi 'o 'ene folofolá.
- 25 Pea vakai, na 'e fai foki 'enau ngaahi lotú koe'uhi ko ia 'a ia 'e tuku ki ai 'e he 'Eikí ke ne 'omi 'a e ngaahi me 'a ní.
- 26 Pea 'oku 'ikai fie ma 'u ke pehē 'e ha taha 'e 'ikai 'omi ia, he kuo pau ke 'omi ia, he kuo folofola 'aki ia 'e he 'Eikí; he 'e 'o hake ia mei he kekekelé, 'e he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí, pea 'e 'ikai fa 'a ta'ofi ia 'e ha taha; pea 'e 'omi ia 'i ha 'aho 'a ia 'e pehē ai kuo fakangata 'a e ngaahi maná; pea 'e hā mai ia 'o hangē ko ha taha 'oku lea mei he maté.

For behold, the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord.

Behold what the scripture says—man shall not smite, neither shall he judge; for judgment is mine, saith the Lord, and vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.

And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled.

Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

And he knoweth their prayers, that they were in behalf of their brethren. And he knoweth their faith, for in his name could they remove mountains; and in his name could they cause the earth to shake; and by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to the earth; yea, even the fiery furnace could not harm them, neither wild beasts nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word.

And behold, their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

27 Pea 'e hoko mai ia 'i he 'aho 'a ia 'e tangi ki he 'Eiki 'a e toto 'o e kau mā'oni'oni, koe'uhi ko e ngaahi kautaha fufuú mo e ngaahi ngāue 'o e fakapo'ulí.

28 'Io, 'e hoko mai ia 'i he 'aho 'a ia 'e faka'ikai' ai 'a e māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá, pea 'e 'ulí' ai 'a e ngaahi siasí pea fiela'hi 'i he hīkisia 'a honau lotó; 'io, 'i ha 'aho 'a ia 'e tu'u hake ai 'a e kau taki 'o e ngaahi siasí mo e kau akonakí 'i he hīkisia 'a honau lotó, 'o a'u ki he 'enau meheka kiate kinautolu 'oku kau ki honau ngaahi siasí.

29 'Io, 'e hoko mai ia 'i ha 'aho 'a ia 'e fanongo ai ki he ngaahi afí, mo e ngaahi afaá, mo e ngaahi kohu 'o e afi 'i he ngaahi fonua mulí;

30 Pea 'e fanongo ai foki ki ha ngaahi tau, mo e ngaahi ongoongo 'o e ngaahi tau, mo e ngaahi mofu'ike 'i he ngaahi feitu'u kehekehe.

31 'Io, 'e hoko mai ia 'i ha 'aho 'a ia 'e lahi ai 'a e ngaahi me'a fakalieliá 'i he funga 'o e māmaní; 'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi fakapō, mo e kaiha'a, mo e loi, mo e ngaahi ngāue kākā, mo e ngaahi fe'auaki, pea mo e fa'ahinga anga-fakalielia kotoa pē; 'i he taimi 'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi te nau pehē, Fai 'eni, pe fai 'ena, pea 'oku tatau ai pē, he 'e fakahaofi 'a e fa'ahinga peheé 'e he 'Eiki 'i he 'aho faka'osí. Ka 'e mala'ia 'a e fa'ahinga peheé, he 'oku nau mo'ua 'i he 'ahu 'o e mamahí mo e ngaahi ha'i 'o e angahalá.

32 'Io, 'e hoko mai ia 'i ha 'aho 'a ia 'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi siasi 'oku fokotu'u hake te nau pehē: Ha'u kiate au, pea koe'uhi ko ho'omou pa'angá 'e fakamolemole' i ho'omou ngaahi angahalá.

33 'Oiauē 'a kimoutolu 'a e kakai fai angahala mo paongata 'a mo kia-kekeva, ko e hā kuo mou fokotu'u ai 'a e ngaahi siasi mo'omoutolu ke ma'u ai ha koloá? Ko e hā kuo mou liliu ai 'a e folofola mā'oni'oni 'a e 'Otuá ke mou 'omi ai 'a e mala'ia ki homou laumālié? Vakai, mou sio ki he ngaahi fakahā 'a e 'Otuá; he vakai, 'oku ha'u 'a e taimi 'i he 'aho ko iá 'a ia kuo pau ke fakahoko ai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē.

34 Vakai, kuo fakahā mai 'e he 'Eiki kiate au 'a e ngaahi me'a ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofo 'o kau ki he me'a kuo pau ke vavé ni 'ene hokó, 'i he 'aho ko ia 'e hoko mai ai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'iate kimoutolú.

And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

Yea, it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and churches become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; yea, even in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands;

And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day. But wo unto such, for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain? Why have ye transfigured the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look ye unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled.

Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

35 Vakai, 'oku ou lea kiate kimoutolu 'o hangē 'oku mou 'i hení, ka 'oku 'ikai. Kae vakai, kuo fakahā 'a kimoutolu kiate au 'e Sīsū Kalaisi, pea 'oku ou 'ilo 'i ho'omou ngaahi ngāué.

36 Pea 'oku ou 'ilo 'i 'oku mou 'a 'eva 'i he hīkisia 'a homou lotó; pea 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha taha, ka ko ha tokosi 'i pē 'oku 'ikai ke nau hakeaki 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he hīkisia 'a honau lotó, 'o kofu 'aki 'a e kofu 'oku fu'u matamatalelei, 'o tupu ai 'a e femeheka 'akí mo e ngaahi feke'ike'í, mo e tāufehi'á, mo e ngaahi fakatangá, mo ngaahi fa'ahinga fai hia kotoa pē; pea ko homou ngaahi siasí, 'io, 'a e siasi kotoa pē, kuo faka'uli 'i koe'uhi ko e hīkisia 'a homou lotó.

37 He vakai, 'oku mou 'ofa 'i he pa'angá, mo ho'omou koloá, mo homou ngaahi kofu matamatalelei, mo e fakasanisani 'i 'o homou ngaahi fale lotú, 'o lahi hake 'i ho'omou 'ofa ki he masivá mo e paeá, mo e mahakí, mo e faingata 'a 'iá.

38 'Oiauē 'a kimoutolu 'a e kau anga'ulí, 'a kimoutolu 'a e kau mālualoí, 'a kimoutolu 'a e kau akonaki, 'a ia 'oku mou fakatau 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a 'e 'auhá, ko e hā kuo mou faka'uli 'i ai 'a e siasi mā'oni'oni 'o e 'Otuá? Ko e hā 'oku mou mā ai ke 'ai kiate kimoutolu 'a e huafa 'o Kalaisi? Ko e hā 'oku 'ikai te mou pehē ai 'oku lahi hake hono mahu'inga 'o e fiefia 'oku 'ikai ngatá 'i he mamahi ko ia 'oku 'ikai toe tukú—koe'uhi ko e fakamālō 'a e māmaní?

39 Ko e hā 'oku mou teu 'i ai 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e me'a 'oku 'ikai mo'uí, ka 'oku mou tuku 'a e fiekaíá, mo e masivá, mo e telefuá, mo e mahakí, mo e faingata 'a 'iá ke 'alu 'iate kimoutolu, pea 'ikai tokanga 'i 'a kinautolú?

40 'To, ko e hā 'oku mou langa hake ai ho'omou ngaahi fakalielia fufuú ke ma'u ha koloa, pea fakatupu 'a e tangi 'a e kau uitoú 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e kau tamai mo fa'ē maté ke nau tangi 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, kae 'uma'ā foki 'a e toto 'o 'enau ngaahi tamai mo honau ngaahi husepāniti ke tangi ki he 'Eikí mei he kelekelé, ke sāuni ki homou 'ulú?

41 Vakai, 'oku tu'unuku mai 'a e heletā 'o e sāuni kiate kimoutolu; pea 'oku vave mai 'a e taimi te ne sāuni ai kiate kimoutolu 'a e toto 'o e kau mā'oni'oni, he 'e 'ikai te ne tuku ke nau tangi ai pē.

Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing.

And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.

For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.

O ye pollutions, ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who sell yourselves for that which will canker, why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies—because of the praise of the world?

Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?

Yea, why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord, and also the blood of their fathers and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads?

Behold, the sword of vengeance hangeth over you; and the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their cries any longer.

Molomona 9

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, 'oku ou lea foki 'o kau kiate kinautolu 'oku ta'etui kia Kalaisí.
- 2 Vakai, te mou tui koā 'i he 'aho 'o homou tauteá —vakai, 'o ka hā'ele mai 'a e 'Eikí, 'io, 'a e fu'u 'aho lahi ko ia 'e takai fakataha ai 'a e māmaní 'o hangē ko ha takainga tohí, pea 'e hoko 'o vaia 'a e ngaahi 'elemēnití 'i he fu'u vela lahi, 'io, 'i he fu'u 'aho lahi ko ia 'e 'omi ai 'a kimoutolu ke tu'u 'i he 'ao 'o e Lami 'a e 'Otuá—pea te mou toki pehē koā 'oku 'ikai ha 'Otua?
- 3 Pea te mou kei faka'ikai 'i koā 'a e Kalaisí, pe te mou lava koā 'o mamata ki he Lami 'a e 'Otuá? 'Oku mou mahalo koā te mou fa'a nofo mo ia lolotonga ho'omou 'ilo'i 'a ho'omou angahalá? 'Oku mou mahalo koā te mou fiefia ke nofo fakataha mo e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oni ko iá, ka 'oku lolotonga mamahi'ia homou laumalié 'i he 'ilo'i kuo mou maumau 'i ma'u ai pē 'ene ngaahi fonó?
- 4 Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu te mou mamahi lahi ange ke nofo fakataha mo ha 'Otua mā'oni'oni mo faitotonu, lolotonga ho'omou 'ilo'i ho'omou 'ulí 'i hono 'aó, 'i ha'amou nofo fakataha mo e ngaahi laumalie mala'ia 'i helí.
- 5 He vakai, 'o ka 'omi 'a kimoutolu ke mou sio ki ho'omou telefuá 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, pea mo e nāunau foki 'o e 'Otuá, mo e mā'oni'oni 'a Sīsū Kalaisí, 'e tutu ai ha ulo 'o e afi ta'e-fa'a-mate 'iate kimoutolu.
- 6 'Oiauē 'a kimoutolu 'a e kau ta'etui, mou tafoki ki he 'Eikí; tangi fakamātoato ki he Tamaí 'i he huafa 'o Sīsuú, na'a lava ke 'ilo'i 'oku mou ta'e-ha-'ila, haohaoa, faka'ofa'ofa, mo hinehina, kuo fakama'a 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e ta'ata'a 'o e Lami, 'i he fu'u 'aho lahi mo faka'osi ko iá.
- 7 Pea 'oku ou toe lea kiate kimoutolu 'oku faka'ikai 'i 'a e ngaahi fakahā 'a e 'Otuá, 'o pehē kuo ngata iá, pea 'oku 'ikai ke toe 'i ai ha ngaahi fakahā, pe ha ngaahi kikite, pe ha ngaahi me'a-foaki, pe ha fakamo'ui mahaki, pe ha lea 'i he ngaahi lea kehekehé, mo e fakamatala 'i 'o e ngaahi leá;
- 8 Vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, ko ia ia 'okú ne faka'ikai 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a ní 'oku 'ikai te ne 'ilo'i 'a e ongoongolelei 'a Kalaisí; 'io, kuo 'ikai te ne lau 'a e ngaahi folofolá; kapau kuó ne fai ia, 'oku 'ikai mahino ia kiate ia.

Mormon 9

And now, I speak also concerning those who do not believe in Christ.

Behold, will ye believe in the day of your visitation—behold, when the Lord shall come, yea, even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, yea, in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God—then will ye say that there is no God?

Then will ye longer deny the Christ, or can ye behold the Lamb of God? Do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt? Do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that ye have ever abused his laws?

Behold, I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.

For behold, when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you.

O then ye unbelieving, turn ye unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day.

And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;

Behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.

- 9 He 'oku 'ikai koā 'oku tau lau 'oku tatau 'a e 'Otuá 'i he 'aneafí, 'aho ní, pea ta'engata, pea 'oku 'ikai 'iate ia ha feto'oaki pe ha 'ata 'o e feliliu'aki?
- 10 Pea ko 'eni, kapau kuo mou fokotu'u mo'omoutolu 'i ho'omou fakakaukaú ha 'Otuá 'oku feto'oaki, pea 'oku 'iate ia ha 'ata 'o e feliliu'aki, pehē kuo mou fokotu'u mo'omoutolu 'i ho'omou fakakaukaú ha 'otuá 'a ia 'oku 'ikai ko ha 'Otuá 'o e ngaahi mana.
- 11 Kae vakai, te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu ha 'Otuá 'o e ngaahi mana, 'a ia ko e 'Otuá 'o 'Ēpalahamé, mo e 'Otuá 'o 'Aisaké, mo e 'Otuá 'o Sēkopé; pea ko e 'Otuá pē ia na'á ne fakatupu 'a e ngaahi langí mo e māmaní, pea mo e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku 'i aí.
- 12 Vakai, na'á ne fakatupu 'a 'Ātama, pea na'e fou 'ia 'Ātama 'a e hinga 'a e tangatá. Pea koe'uhi ko e hinga 'a e tangatá na'e 'alo'i mai ai 'a Sīsū Kalaisi, 'a ia ko e Tamaí mo e 'Aló; pea koe'uhi ko Sīsū Kalaisi na'e hoko ai 'a e huhu'i 'o e tangatá.
- 13 Pea tu'unga 'i hono huhu'i 'o e tangatá, 'a ia na'e fou mai 'ia Sīsū Kalaisi, 'oku toe 'omi ai 'a kinautolu ki he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, 'io, 'oku huhu'i ai 'a e kakai kotoa pē, he 'oku fakahoko 'e he pekia 'a Kalaisi 'a e toetu'ú, 'a ia 'oku fakahoko ai 'a e huhu'i mei he mohe ta'etuku, 'a ia ko e mohe 'e fafangu mei ai 'a e kakai fulipē 'e he māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá 'o ka ifi'i 'a e talupité; pea te nau 'alu atu, 'a e iiki mo e lalahi fakatou'osi, pea tu'u kotoa pē 'i he 'ao 'o hono nofo'anga fakamāu, kuo huhu'i mo vete ange 'a kinautolu mei he ha'i ta'engata ko 'eni 'o e maté, 'a ia ko e mate ia ko ha mate fakasino pē.
- 14 Pea 'oku hoko mai leva kiate kinautolu 'a e fakamaau 'a e Tokotaha Mā'oni'oní; pea 'oku toki hoko mai 'a e taimi, 'a ia 'e kei 'uli ai pē 'a e tokotaha 'oku 'ulí; pea ko ia ia 'oku mā'oni'oní te ne mā'oni'oni ai pē; ko ia ia 'oku fiefiá te ne fiefia ai pē; pea ko ia ia 'oku mamahi te ne mamahi ai pē.
- 15 Pea ko 'eni, 'A kimoutolu kotoa pē kuo fokotu'u mo'omoutolu 'i ho'omou fakakaukaú ha 'otuá 'a ia 'oku 'ikai te ne fa'a fai ha ngaahi maná, 'oku ou fie fehu'i kiate kimoutolu, kuo hoko koā 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē, 'a ia kuó u lau ki aí? Kuo hokosia koā 'a e ngata'angá? Vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai; pea kuo te'eki ai ke tuku 'e he 'Otuá 'a 'ene hoko ko e 'Otuá 'o e ngaahi maná.

For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variableness neither shadow of changing?

And now, if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not a God of miracles.

But behold, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

Behold, he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.

And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord; yea, this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.

And then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them; and then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still; and he that is righteous shall be righteous still; he that is happy shall be happy still; and he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still.

And now, O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.

16 Vakai, 'ikai 'oku fakafofo 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo fai 'e he 'Otuá 'i hotau 'aó? 'Io, pea ko hai 'okú ne fa'a 'ilo'í 'a e ngaahi ngāue fakafofo 'a e 'Otuá?

17 Ko hai te ne pehē na'e 'ikai ko ha mana 'a e hoko 'a e langí mo e māmaní 'i he'ene folofolá; pea 'i he mālohi 'o 'ene folofolá na'e fakatupu 'a e tangatá mei he efu 'o e kelekele; pea 'i he mālohi 'o 'ene folofolá kuo fai ai 'a e ngaahi maná?

18 Pea ko hai te ne pehē na'e 'ikai ke fai 'e Sīsū Kalaisi ha ngaahi fu'u mana lalahi? Pea na'e 'i ai mo e ngaahi fu'u mana lalahi 'a ia na'e fai 'i he nima 'o e kau 'aposetoló.

19 Pea kapau na'e fai 'a e ngaahi mana 'i he kuonga ko iá, ko e hā kuo tuku ai 'e he 'Otuá 'a 'ene hoko ko e 'Otuá 'o e ngaahi maná pea kei hoko pē ko ha Tokotaha 'oku 'ikai feliliuakí? Pea vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'oku 'ikai te ne liliu; ka pehē 'e 'ikai te ne kei hoko ko e 'Otuá; ka 'oku 'ikai tuku 'ene hoko ko e 'Otuá, pea ko e 'Otuá ia 'o e ngaahi mana.

20 Pea ko e 'uhinga kuó ne tuku ai 'ene fai 'a e ngaahi mana 'i he fānau 'a e tangatá koe'uhi ko 'enau faka'au'auhifo 'i he ta'etui, mo e hē mei he hala totonú, 'o 'ikai 'ilo'í 'a e 'Otuá 'oku totonu ke nau fálala ki aí.

21 Vakai, 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu ko ia ia 'oku tui kia Kalaisi, 'o 'ikai fakata'eta'etui 'i ha me'a 'e tahá, ko e me'a kotoa pē te ne kole ki he Tamá 'i he huafa 'o Kalaisi 'e foaki ia kiate ia; pea ko e tala'ofa 'eni ki he kakai fulipē, 'io ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e māmaní.

22 He vakai, kuo folofola peheni 'a Sīsū Kalaisi, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá, ki he'ene kau ākongá 'a ia 'e tatalí, 'io, kae 'uma'ā foki ki he'ene kau ākongá kotoa, pea fanongo ki ai mo e fu'u kakai: Mou 'alu ki he māmaní kotoa pē, 'o malanga 'aki 'a e ongoongolelé ki he kakai fulipē;

23 Pea ko ia ia 'e tui mo papitaisó 'e mo'ui, ka ko ia ia 'e 'ikai tuí 'e mala'ia;

24 Pea ko e ngaahi faka'ilonga 'eni 'e hoko kiate kinautolu 'oku tuí—te nau kapusi ki tu'a 'a e kau tēvoló 'i hoku hingoá; te nau lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea fo'ou; te nau to'o hake 'a e fanga ngata kona; pea kapau te nau inu ha me'a fakamate 'e 'ikai kovi ia kiate kinautolu; te nau hilifaki honau nimá ki he mahakí pea te nau mo'ui;

Behold, are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes? Yea, and who can comprehend the marvelous works of God?

Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heaven and the earth should be; and by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the earth; and by the power of his word have miracles been wrought?

And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not do many mighty miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changeth not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.

And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.

Behold, I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.

For behold, thus said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry, yea, and also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude: Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;

And he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, but he that believeth not shall be damned;

And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;

25 Pea ko ia ia 'e tui ki hoku hingoá, 'o 'ikai fakata'eta'etui 'i ha me'a 'e taha, te u fakamo'oni kiate ia 'a 'eku ngaahi lea kotoa pē, 'o 'a'u ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e māmaní.

26 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, ko hai 'okú ne fa'a ta'ofi 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'a e 'Eikí? Ko hai te ne lava 'o faka'ikai'i 'ene ngaahi folofolá? Ko hai te ne fa'a tu'u hake 'o angatu'u ki he māfima'fi lahi 'o e 'Eikí? Ko hai te ne fehi'a ki he ngaahi ngāue 'a e 'Eikí? Ko hai te ne fehi'a ki he fānau 'a Kalaisí? Vakai, 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē 'oku fehi'a ki he ngaahi ngāue 'a e 'Eikí, te mou ofo pea mala'ia.

27 Ko ia 'oua 'e fehi'a, pea 'oua 'e ofo, kae tokanga ki he ngaahi folofola 'a e 'Eikí, pea kole ki he Tamaí 'i he huafa 'o Sísuú koe'uhi ko e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē te mou masíva aí. 'Oua 'e ta'etui, kae tui pē, pea kamata 'o hangē ko e fai 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'i mu'á, pea ha'u ki he 'Eikí 'aki homou lotó kotoa, pea ngāue 'i homou fakamo'ui 'omoutolu 'i he manavahē mo e tetetete 'i hono 'aó.

28 Fai fakapotopoto 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o homou 'ahi'ahi'í; to'o meiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi me'a ta'ema'a kotoa pē; 'oua na'a kole, ke mou faka'osi ia 'i ho'omou ngaahi holí, kae kole 'i he tui 'oku 'ikai faka'alo'alongaua, ke 'oua na'a mou fakavaivai ki ha 'ahi'ahi, ka ke mou tauhi ki he 'Otua mo'oni mo mo'uí.

29 Tokanga ke 'oua na'a mou papitaiso ta'efe'unga; tokanga ke 'oua te mou ma'u 'a e sākalamēniti 'oku mou ta'efe'unga; ka mou tokanga ke fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'i he anga 'oku fe'unga, pea fai ia 'i he huafa 'o Sísū Kalaisi, ko e 'Alo 'o e 'Otua mo'uí; pea kapau te mou fai 'eni, 'o kātaki ki he ngata'angá, 'e 'ikai teitei kapusi ki tu'a 'a kimoutolu.

30 Vakai, 'oku ou lea kiate kimoutolu 'o hangē ko 'eku lea mei he maté; he 'oku ou 'ilo'i te mou ma'u 'eku ngaahi leá.

31 'Oua 'e fakahala 'i au koe'uhi ko 'eku ngaahi halá, pe ko 'eku tamaí, koe'uhi ko 'ene ngaahi fehalākí, pe ko kinautolu kuo tohi ki mu'a 'iate íá; ka mou 'oatu 'a e fakafeta 'i ki he 'Otuá koe'uhi ko 'ene fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a 'emau ngaahi fehalākí, koe'uhi ke mou ako ai pea mou poto ange ai 'iate kimautilu.

And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.

And now, behold, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish.

O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness; ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation, but that ye will serve the true and living God.

See that ye are not baptized unworthily; see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that ye do all things in worthiness, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; and if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast out.

Behold, I speak unto you as though I spake from the dead; for I know that ye shall have my words.

Condemn me not because of mine imperfection, neither my father, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been.

- 32 Pea ko 'eni, vakai, kuo mau tohi 'a e lekōtí ni 'o fakatatau ki he'emaui 'iló, 'i he ngaahi mata'itohi 'oku mau ui ko e lea faka-'Isipite fo'ou, pea kuo mau tukufakaholo mai mo liliu 'e kimautilu, 'o fakatatau mo e anga 'o 'emaui leá.
- 33 Pea kapau na'e fe'unga hono lahi 'o 'emaui ngaahi peletí, pehē te mau tohi 'i he lea faka-Hepeluú; ka kuo liliu mo e lea faka-Hepeluú 'e kimautilu foki; pea ka ne mau lava 'o tohi 'i he lea faka-Hepeluú, vakai, kuo 'ikai te mou ma'u ha hala 'e taha 'i he'emaui lekōtí.
- 34 Ka 'oku 'afio 'i 'e he 'Eiki 'a e ngaahi me'a kuo mau tohi, pea ko e tahá 'oku 'ikai foki mo ha kakai kehe 'oku nau 'ilo 'i 'emaui leá; pea koe'uhi 'oku 'ikai mo ha kakai kehe 'oku nau 'ilo 'i 'emaui leá; ko ia kuó ne teuteu 'i ai 'a e ngaahi founa ki hono liliu iá.
- 35 Pea kuo tohi 'a e ngaahi me'á ni koe'uhí ke mau lava 'o fakama'a homau ngaahi kofú mei he toto 'o homau kāinga, 'a ia kuo nau faka'au'au hifo 'i he ta'etuí.
- 36 Pea vakai, ko e ngaahi me'á ni 'a ia kuo mau faka'amu ki ai koe'uhi ko homau kāingá, 'io, na'a mo honau toe fakatafoki ki he 'ilo 'i 'o Kalaisí, 'oku fakatatau ia mo e ngaahi lotu 'a e kau mā'oni'oni kotoa pē kuo nofo 'i he fonuá.
- 37 Pea 'ofa ke tuku 'e he 'Eiki ko Sīsū Kalaisí ke tali 'enau ngaahi lotu 'o fakatatau mo 'enau tuí; pea 'ofa ke manatu 'i 'e he 'Otua ko e Tamaí 'a e fuakava kuó ne fai mo e fale 'o 'Isilelí; pea 'ofa ke ne tāpuaki 'i 'a kinautolu 'o ta'engata, 'i he tui ki he huafa 'o Sīsū Kalaisí. 'Ēmeni.

And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.

And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, ye would have had no imperfection in our record.

But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language; and because that none other people knoweth our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof.

And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren, who have dwindled in unbelief.

And behold, these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.

And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith; and may God the Father remember the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel; and may he bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

Ko e Tohi ‘a ‘Etá

Ko e lekooti ‘o e kau Sēletí, ‘a ia na ‘e to ‘o mei he ngaahi peleti ‘e uofulu mā fā ‘a ia na ‘e ‘ilo ‘i ‘e he kakai ‘o Limihai ‘i he ngaahi ‘aho ‘o e tu ‘i ko Mōsaiá.

‘Eta 1

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni ko au, Molonai, ‘oku ou hanga ke fai ha fakamatala ‘o e kakai ‘i mu ‘a ‘a ia na ‘e faka ‘auha ‘i he to ‘ukupu ‘o e ‘Eiki ‘i he funga ‘o e fonua tokelaú ni.
- 2 Pea ‘oku ou to ‘o ‘eku fakamatalá mei he ngaahi peleti ‘e uofulu mā fā ‘a ia na ‘e ‘ilo ‘i ‘e he kakai ‘o Limihai, ‘a ia ‘oku ui ko e Tohi ‘a ‘Etá.
- 3 Pea ko e me ‘a ‘i he ‘eku mahalo ko e ‘uluaki kongá ‘o e lekōtí ni, ‘a ia ‘oku lau ‘o kau ki he fakatupu ‘o e māmaní, kae ‘uma ‘ā foki mo ‘Ātama, mo ha fakamatala mei he taimi ko iá ‘o a ‘u mai ki he fu ‘u taua lahi, pea mo e ngaahi me ‘a kotoa pē na ‘e hoko ‘i he fānau ‘a e tangatá ‘o a ‘u mai ki he taimi ko iá, ‘oku ma ‘u ia e he kau Siú—
- 4 Ko ia ‘oku ‘ikai te u tohi ‘a e ngaahi me ‘a ko ia na ‘e hoko mei he ngaahi ‘aho ‘o ‘Ātamá ‘o a ‘u mai ki he taimi ko iá; ka ‘oku tu ‘u ia ‘i he ngaahi peleti; pea ko ia ia te ne ‘ilo ‘i iá, ‘e ma ‘u ‘e ia ‘a e mālohi ke ne lava ‘o ma ‘u ‘a e fakamatala kakató.
- 5 Kae vakai, ‘oku ‘ikai te u fai ‘a e fakamatala kakató, ka ko ha kongá pē ‘o e fakamatala ‘oku ou fai, mei he tauá ‘o a ‘u mai ki honau faka ‘auhá.
- 6 Pea ko hono anga ‘eni ‘o ‘eku fai ‘a e fakamatalá. Ko ia ia na ‘á ne hiki ‘a e lekooti ní ko ‘Eta, pea ko ha hako ia ‘o Kolianitoa.
- 7 Ko Kolianitoá ko e foha ia ‘o Moloni.
- 8 Pea ko Moloní ko e foha ia ‘o ‘Eitemi.
- 9 Pea ko ‘Eitemí ko e foha ia ‘o ‘Eiha.
- 10 Pea ko ‘Eihá ko e foha ia ‘o Seti.
- 11 Pea ko Setí ko e foha ia ‘o Sipiloni.
- 12 Pea ko Sipiloní ko e foha ia ‘o Komu.
- 13 Pea ko Komú ko e foha ia ‘o Kolianitumu.
- 14 Pea ko Kolianitumú ko e foha ia ‘o ‘Aminikata.
- 15 Pea ko ‘Aminikatá ko e foha ia ‘o ‘Ēlone.
- 16 Pea ko ‘Ēloné ko ha hako ia ‘o Heti, ‘a ia ko e foha ‘o Heiatomi.

The Book of Ether

The record of the Jaredites, taken from the twenty-four plates found by the people of Limhi in the days of King Mosiah.

Ether 1

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country.

And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether.

And as I suppose that the first part of this record, which speaks concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among the Jews—

Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.

But behold, I give not the full account, but a part of the account I give, from the tower down until they were destroyed.

And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was Ether, and he was a descendant of Coriantor.

Coriantor was the son of Moron.

And Moron was the son of Ethem.

And Ethem was the son of Ahah.

And Ahah was the son of Seth.

And Seth was the son of Shiblón.

And Shiblón was the son of Com.

And Com was the son of Coriantum.

And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.

And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.

And Aaron was a descendant of Heth, who was the son of Hearthom.

17 Pea ko Heiatomí ko e foha ia 'o Lipi.
 18 Pea ko Lipí ko e foha ia 'o Kisi.
 19 Pea ko Kisí ko e foha ia 'o Kolome.
 20 Pea ko Kolomé ko e foha ia 'o Lívai.
 21 Pea ko Līvaí ko e foha ia 'o Kimi.
 22 Pea ko Kimí ko e foha ia 'o Molianitoni.
 23 Pea ko Molianitoní ko ha hako ia 'o Lipileikisi.
 24 Pea ko Lipileikisí ko e foha ia 'o Sesi.
 25 Pea ko Sesí ko e foha ia 'o Heti.
 26 Pea ko Hetí ko e foha ia 'o Komu.
 27 Pea ko Komú ko e foha ia 'o Kolianitumu.
 28 Pea ko Kolianitumú ko e foha ia 'o 'Ima.
 29 Pea ko 'Imá ko e foha 'o 'Oma.
 30 Pea ko 'Omá ko e foha ia 'o Sulu.
 31 Pea ko Sulú ko e foha ia 'o Kipi.
 32 Pea ko Kipí ko e foha 'o 'Olaihā, 'a ia ko e foha 'o Sēleti.

33 'A ia ko e Sēleti na'e 'alu atu fakataha mo hono tokouá mo hona fāmilí, mo ha ní'ihī kehe mo honau fāmilí, mei he tauá mā'olungá, 'i he taimi 'a ia na'e veuveuki ai 'e he 'Eikí 'a e lea 'a e kakaí, pea ne fuakava 'i hono houhaú 'e fakamovetevete holo 'a kinautolu 'i he funga 'o e māmaní kotoa; pea fakatatau ki he folofola 'a e 'Eikí na'e fakamovetevete 'i 'a e kakaí;

34 Pea ko e tokoua 'o Sēletí ko ha tangata kaukaua mo lahi, pea ko e tangata na'e 'ofeina lahi 'e he 'Eikí, ko ia ko Sēleti, ko hono tokouá, na'e lea kiate ia: tangi ki he 'Eikí, ke 'oua te ne veuveuki 'eta leá koe'uhi ke 'oua na'á ta ta'e-fe'ilongaki 'i he 'eta ngaahi leá.

35 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tangi 'a e tokoua 'o Sēletí ki he 'Eikí, pea na'e 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Eikí kia Sēleti; na'e 'ikai te ne veuveuki 'a e lea 'a Sēletí; pea ko ia na'e 'ikai ke veuveuki 'a e lea 'a Sēletí mo hono tokouá.

36 Pea na'e pehē 'e Sēleti ki hono tokouá: Toe tangi ki he 'Eikí, hei'ilo na'á ne ta'ofi 'a hono houhaú meiate kinautolu ko hota ngaahi kaume'á, ke 'oua te ne veuveuki 'a 'enau leá.

37 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tangi 'a e tokoua 'o Sēletí ki he 'Eikí, pea na'e 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Eikí ki hona ngaahi kaume'á pea mo honau ngaahi fāmilí foki, pea na'e 'ikai ke veuveuki 'a 'enau leá.

And Hearthom was the son of Lib.

And Lib was the son of Kish.

And Kish was the son of Corom.

And Corom was the son of Levi.

And Levi was the son of Kim.

And Kim was the son of Morianton.

And Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish.

And Riplakish was the son of Shez.

And Shez was the son of Heth.

And Heth was the son of Com.

And Com was the son of Coriantum.

And Coriantum was the son of Emer.

And Emer was the son of Omer.

And Omer was the son of Shule.

And Shule was the son of Kib.

And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son of Jared;

Which Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, and swore in his wrath that they should be scattered upon all the face of the earth; and according to the word of the Lord the people were scattered.

And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared, his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the language of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not confounded.

Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his anger from them who are our friends, that he confound not their language.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.

38 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe lea 'a Sēleti ki hono tokuá, 'o pehē: 'Alu, 'o fēhu'í ki he 'Eikí pe te ne kapusi atu 'a kitautolu mei he fonuá, pea kapau te ne kapusi 'a kitautolu mei he fonuá, fēhu'í kiate ia pe te tau 'alú ki fē. Pea hei'ilo na'a 'ave 'a kitautolu 'e he 'Eikí ki ha fonua 'a ia 'oku mahu'inga taha 'i he māmaní kotoa? Pea kapau 'e pehē, tuku ke tau faitotonu ki he 'Eikí, koe'uhi ke tau ma'u ia ko hotau tofi'a.

39 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tangi 'a e tokoua 'o Sēletí ki he 'Eikí 'o fakatatau ki he me'a kuo lea 'aki 'i he ngutu 'o Sēletí.

40 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'afio 'a e 'Eikí ki he tokoua 'o Sēletí, 'o ne 'alo'ofa kiate ia, 'o ne folofola kiate ia:

41 'Alu pea tānaki fakataha ho'o ngaahi takanga monumanu íkí, 'a e tangata mo e fefine fakatou'osi, 'o e fá'ahinga kotoa pē; kae 'uma'ā foki mo e tenga'í 'akau 'o e fonuá 'i he fá'ahinga kotoa pē; mo ho ngaahi fāmilí; kae 'uma'ā foki mo Sēleti ko ho tokouá, mo hono fāmilí; pea mo ho ngaahi kaume'á foki mo honau ngaahi fāmilí, mo e ngaahi kaume'a 'o Sēletí mo honau ngaahi fāmilí.

42 Pea 'o ka hili ha'o fai 'ení te ke 'alu 'o taki 'a kinautolu ki he tele'a 'a ia 'oku tu'u 'i he fakatokelaú. Pea te u fetaulaki ai mo koe, pea te u mu'omu'a 'iate koe ki ha fonua 'oku mahu'inga lahi hake 'i he ngaahi fonua kotoa pē 'o e māmaní.

43 Pea te u tāpuaki'í koe 'i ai mo ho hakó, pea te u fokotu'u hake kiate au mei ho hakó, mo e hako 'o ho tokouá, mo kinautolu 'e 'alu mo koé, ha fu'u pule'anga lahi. Pea 'e 'ikai ke 'i ai ha pule'anga 'e lahi hake 'i he pule'anga te u fakatupu hake kiate au mei ho hako 'i he funga kotoa 'o e māmaní. Pea te u fai pehē kiate koe koe'uhi ko e fuoloa taimi 'o ho' o tangi kiate aú.

And it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother, saying: Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land, and if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go. And who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth? And if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared.

And it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him, and said unto him:

Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; and thy families; and also Jared thy brother and his family; and also thy friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.

And when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth.

And there will I bless thee and thy seed, and raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth. And thus I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.

‘Eta 2

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ‘alu hifo ‘a Sēletí mo hono tokouá, mo hona fāmilí, mo e ngaahi kaume‘a ‘o Sēletí mo hono tokouá mo honau ngaahi fāmilí, ki he tele‘a ‘a ia na‘e tu‘u ‘i he fakatokelaú, (pea ko e hingoa ‘o e tele‘á ko Nimilote, ‘a ia ko e tauhingoa ki he tangata tuli manu mālohi ko iá), mo ‘enua ngaahi takanga monumanu iiki ‘a ia kuo nau tānaki fakatahá, ‘a e tangata mo e fefine, ‘o e fa‘ahinga kotoa pē.
- 2 Pea na‘a nau tau foki ‘a e ngaahi tauhele ‘o ma‘u ‘a e fanga manupuna ‘o e ‘ataá; pea na‘a nau teuteu foki ha vaka, ‘a ia na‘a nau ‘ave ai mo kinautolu ‘a e fanga ika ‘o e ngaahi vai.
- 3 Pea na‘a nau ‘ave foki mo kinautolu ‘a e teseletí, ‘a ia, ko hono ‘uhingá, ko e hone; pea ko ia na‘a nau ‘ave mo kinautolu ‘a e ngaahi taunga hone, pea mo e fa‘ahinga me‘a kotoa pē ‘a ia na‘e ‘i he funga ‘o e fonuá, mo e ngaahi tenga ‘i ‘akau ‘o e fa‘ahinga kotoa pē.
- 4 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he‘enua a‘u hifo ki he tele‘a ko Nimiloté na‘e hā‘ele hifo ‘a e ‘Eikí ‘o fefolofolai mo e tokoua ‘o Sēletí; pea na‘á ne ‘afio mei ha loto ‘ao, pea na‘e ‘ikai mamata ‘a e tokoua ‘o Sēletí kiate ia.
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e fekau ‘e he ‘Eikí kiate kinautolu ke nau ‘alu atu ki he maomaonganoá, ‘io, ki he potu ko ia kuo te‘eki a‘u ki ai ha tangata. Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e mu‘omu‘a ‘a e ‘Eikí ‘iate kinautolu, ‘o ne fefolofolai mo kinautolu lolotonga ‘ene ‘afio mei ha ‘ao, ‘o ne fakahinohino ‘i ‘a e feitu‘u ke nau fononga ki aí.
- 6 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘a nau fononga ‘i he maomaonganoá, ‘o nau fo‘u ha ngaahi vaka lafalafa, ‘a ia na‘a nau folau atu ai ‘i he ngaahi vai lahi, pea na‘e fakahinohino ‘i ‘a kinautolu ma‘u ai pē ‘e he to‘ukupu ‘o e ‘Eikí.
- 7 Pea na‘e ‘ikai finangalo ‘a e ‘Eikí ke tuku ke nau nofo ‘i he potu ki kō atu mei tahi ‘i he maomaonganoá, kae finangalo ke nau ‘alu atu ‘o a‘u ki he fonua ‘o e tala‘ofá, ‘a ia na‘e mahu‘inga lahi hake ‘i he ngaahi fonua kehe kotoa pē, ‘a ia kuo tauhi ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá mo‘o ha kakai mā‘oní‘oni.

Ether 2

And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.

And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters.

And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.

And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.

And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

And the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people.

8 Pea kuó ne fuakava 'i hono houháú ki he tokoua 'o Sēletí, 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'e ma'u 'a e fonua ko 'eni 'o e tala'ofá, 'o fai atu mei he taimi ko iá 'o ta'engatá, 'oku totonu ke nau tauhi ia, 'a ia ko e 'Otua mo'oni pē tahá, pe 'e tafi'i atu 'a kinautolu, 'o ka tō kiate kinautolu 'a hono kakato 'o hono houháú.

9 Pea ko 'eni, te tau lava 'o vakai ki he ngaahi tu'utu'uni 'a e 'Otua 'o kau ki he fonuá ni, ko ha fonua ia 'o e tala'ofá; pea 'ilonga ha pule'anga 'e ma'u iá kuo pau ke nau tauhi 'a e 'Otua, pe 'e tafi'i atu 'a kinautolu 'o ka tō mai kiate kinautolu 'a hono kakato 'o hono houháú. Pea 'e tō kiate kinautolu 'a hono kakato 'o hono houháú 'o ka kakato 'enau angahalá.

10 He vakai, ko ha fonua 'eni 'oku mahu'inga lahi hake 'i he ngaahi fonua kehe kotoa pē; ko ia ko ia ia 'e ma'u iá kuo pau te ne tauhi 'a e 'Otua pe 'e tafi'i atu ia; he ko e tu'utu'uni ta'engata ia 'a e 'Otua. Pea 'o ka toki kakato 'a e angahalá 'i he fānau 'o e fonuá, 'e toki tafi'i atu 'a kinautolu.

11 Pea 'e hoko 'eni kiate kimoutolu, 'E kau Senitaile, koe'uhi ke mou 'ilo'i 'a e ngaahi tu'utu'uni 'a e 'Otua— koe'uhi ke mou fakatomala, kae 'ikai fai atu 'i ho'omou ngaahi angahalá kae 'oua ke kakató, koe'uhi ke 'oua na'a mou 'ohifo hono kakato 'o e houhau 'o e 'Otua kiate kimoutolu 'o hangē ko ia kuo fai 'e he kakai 'o e fonuá ki mu'á.

12 Vakai, ko ha fonua mahu'inga 'eni, pea ko e pule'anga ke ne ma'u iá 'e tau'atāina mei he nofo pōpulá, pea mei he puke pōpulá, pea mei he ngaahi pule'anga kehe kotoa pē 'i he lalo langí, 'o kapau pē te nau tauhi ki he 'Otua 'o e fonuá, 'a ia ko Sīsū Kalaisi, 'a ia kuo fakahā mai 'i he ngaahi me'a kuo mau tohí.

13 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou hoko atu 'a 'eku lekōtí; he vakai, na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'omi 'e he 'Eikí 'a Sēletí mo hono kāingá 'o a'u atu ki he fu'u tahi lahi ko ia 'okú ne vahevahe 'a e ngaahi fonuá. Pea 'i he'enau a'u atu ki he tahí na'a nau fokotu'u honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí; pea nau ui 'a e potú ko iá ko Molianikumea; pea nau nofo 'i he ngaahi fale fehikitaki, pea nau nofo 'i he ngaahi fale fehikitaki 'i he matātahí 'o fe'unga mo e ta'u 'e fā.

And he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity.

For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

And this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God—that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by the things which we have written.

And now I proceed with my record; for behold, it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi 'a e ta'u 'e faá na'e toe hā'ele hifo 'a e 'Eikí ki he tokoua 'o Sēletí, 'o 'afio mei ha loto 'ao, 'o fefolofolai mo ia. Pea na'e fefolofolai 'a e 'Eikí mo e tokoua 'o Sēletí 'i he houa 'e tolu, pea valokí 'i ia koe'uhi ko e 'ikai te ne manatu ke ui ki he huafa 'o e 'Eikí.

15 Pea na'e fakatomala 'a e tokoua 'o Sēletí mei he kovi kuó ne faí, peá ne ui ki he huafa 'o e 'Eikí koe'uhi ko hono kāinga na'e 'iate iá. Pea na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kiate ia: Te u fakamolemole 'i koe mo ho kāingá 'i he 'enau ngaahi angahalá; kae 'oua na'á ke toe fai angahala, he kuo pau ke mou manatu 'i 'e 'ikai fāinga ma'u ai pē 'a hoku Laumālié mo e tangatá; ko ia, kapau te mou fai angahala 'o a'u ki hono kakato 'o ho'omou angahalá, 'e motuhi 'a kimoutolu mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí. Pea ko hoku lotó 'eni ki he fonua te u foaki mo'omoutolu ke hoko ko homou tofi'á; he 'e hoko ia ko e fonua 'oku mahu'inga lahi hake 'i he ngaahi fonua kehe kotoa pē.

16 Pea na'e folofola 'a e 'Eikí: 'Alu pea ngāue, pea fo'u, ha ngaahi vaka lafalafa 'o fakatatau ki he sīpinga 'o e ngaahi vaka 'a ia kuo mou fa'u ki mu'a atú. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata ke ngāue 'a e tokoua 'o Sēletí, kae 'uma'ā hono kāingá, 'o nau fo'u ha ngaahi vaka lafalafa 'o fakatatau ki he sīpinga kuo nau fa'u'akí, 'o hangē ko e ngaahi fakahinohino 'a e 'Eikí. Pea na'a nau iiki mo ma'ama'a 'i he fukahi vai, 'io, 'o hangē ko hono ma'ama'a 'o ha manupuna 'i he fukahi vai.

17 Pea na'e fo'u ia 'i ha sīpinga na'e malu 'aupito, 'io 'o nau lava ke ta'ofi 'a e hū ki ai ha vai 'o hangē ko ha ipú; pea na'e malu 'a hono takelé 'o hangē ko e malu ha ipú; pea na'e malu 'a e ngaahi kaokaó 'o hangē ko ha ipú; pea na'e tōtao 'a e ongo mui vaká; pea na'e malu hono funga vaká 'o hangē ko ha ipú; pea ko hono lōloá ko e lōloa ia 'o ha fu'u 'akau; pea ko hono matapaá, 'o ka tāpuni 'i ia, na'e malu ia 'o hangē ko ha ipú.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tangi 'a e tokoua 'o Sēletí ki he 'Eikí, 'o ne pehē: 'E 'Eiki, kuó u fai 'a e ngāue kuó ke fēkau kiate aú, pea kuó u fo'u 'a e ngaahi vaká lafalafa 'o fakatatau ki ho' o ngaahi fakahinohino kiate aú.

19 Pea vakai, 'E 'Eiki, 'oku 'ikai 'i loto 'iate kinautolu ha maama; te mau faka'ulí ki fē? Pea ko e tahá te mau mate foki, he 'oku 'ikai te mau fa'a mānava, he ko e 'eá pē ia 'oku 'i loto aí; ko ia te mau mate.

And it came to pass at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him. And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord.

And the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, and did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren who were with him. And the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and thy brethren of their sins; but thou shalt not sin any more, for ye shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore, if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And these are my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance; for it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.

And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, I have performed the work which thou hast commanded me, and I have made the barges according as thou hast directed me.

And behold, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish.

20 Pea na'e folofola 'a e 'Eiki ki he tokoua 'o Sēletí: Vakai, ke ke ngaohi ha ava 'i he funga vaká, pea mo e takelé foki; pea 'o ka mou ka fulutāmakia ke mou fakaava 'a e avá 'o ma'u ai ha 'ea. Pea kapau leva 'e 'oho mai 'a e vai ki loto kiate kimoutolu, vakai, ke mou tāpuni 'i 'a e avá, ke 'oua na'a mou mate 'i he 'oho mai 'a e vai.

21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fai ia 'e he tokoua 'o Sēletí, 'o hangē ko e fekau 'a e 'Eiki.

22 Pea na'á ne toe tangi ki he 'Eiki 'o pehē: 'E 'Eiki, vakai, kuó u fai 'o hangē ko ho' o fekau kiate aú; peá u teuteu 'a e ngaahi vaká mo' o hoku kakaí, pea vakai 'oku 'ikai ha maama 'i loto 'iate kinautolu. Vakai, 'E 'Eiki, te ke tuku koā ke mau folau atu 'i he fu'u vai lahí ni 'i he fakapo'uli?

23 Pea na'e folofola 'a e 'Eiki ki he tokoua 'o Sēletí: Ko e hā 'a e me'a 'okú ke loto ke u fai ke mou ma'u ai ha maama 'i homou ngaahi vaká? He vakai, 'e 'ikai te mou lava 'o ma'u 'a e ngaahi kātupa, he 'e laiki ia 'o movetevete; pea he 'ikai ke mou 'ave ha afi mo kimoutolu, he 'e 'ikai ke mou folau 'i he maama 'o e afi.

24 He vakai, te mou hangē ko ha tofua 'a 'i he loto tahí; he 'e fasi 'a e ngaahi fu'u peau lalahi 'iate kimoutolu. Ka neongo íá, te u toe 'ohake 'a kimoutolu mei he ngaahi loloto 'o e tahí; he kuo 'alu atu 'a e ngaahi matangi mei hoku ngutú, pehē foki ki he ngaahi 'uhá mo e ngaahi fu'u vai kuó u fekau 'i.

25 Pea vakai, 'oku ou teuteu 'i 'a kimoutolu ki he ngaahi me'á ni; he 'e 'ikai te mou fá'a folau atu 'i he fu'u moana ko 'ení, kapau 'e 'ikai te u teuteu 'i 'a kimoutolu ki he ngaahi peau 'o e tahí, mo e ngaahi matangi kuo 'alu atú, pea mo e ngaahi fu'u vai 'a ia 'e 'oho maí. Ko ia ko e hā 'okú ke loto ke u teuteu ma'amoutolu ke mou ma'u ai ha maama ki he taimi 'e folo hifo ai 'a kimoutolu 'i he ngaahi loloto 'o e tahí?

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and receive air. And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had commanded.

And he cried again unto the Lord saying: O Lord, behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me; and I have prepared the vessels for my people, and behold there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness?

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels? For behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire.

For behold, ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.

And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. Therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

‘Eta 3

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ‘alu atu ‘a e tokoua ‘o Sēletí (ko ‘eni ko e lahi ‘o e ngaahi vaka na‘e teuteú ko e vaka ‘e valu) ki he mo‘unga, ‘a ia na‘a nau ui ko e mo‘unga ko Seilemi, koe‘uhi ko ‘ene fu‘u mā‘olunga ‘aupitó, pea na‘á ne tutu ‘o ngaohi mei he maká ha ngaahi fo‘i maka iiki ‘e hongofulu mā ono; pea na‘a nau hinehina mo ‘asinisini, ‘io ‘o hangē ko e sio‘ata ma‘a; pea na‘á ne to‘o ia ‘i hono nimá ki he tumutumumu ‘o e mo‘ungá, ‘o ne toe tangi ki he ‘Eikí, ‘o pehē:
- 2 ‘E ‘Eiki, kuó ke folofola kuo pau ke ngalo hifo ‘a kimautolu ‘i he ngaahi vai. Ko ‘eni vakai, ‘E ‘Eiki, pea ‘oua na‘á ke houhau ki ho‘o tamaio‘eikí koe‘uhi ko hono vaivai ‘i ho‘aó; he ‘oku mau ‘ilo ‘okú ke mā‘oni‘oni pea ‘okú ke ‘afio ‘i he ngaahi langí, pea ‘oku mau ta‘efe‘unga ‘i ho‘aó; pea koe‘uhí ko e hingá kuo kovi ma‘u ai pē ‘a homau ngaahi ‘ulungāngá; ka neongo iá, ‘E ‘Eiki, kuó ke fai kiate kimautolu ‘a e fekau kuo pau ke mau ui kiate koe, koe‘uhí ke mau ma‘u meiate koe ‘o fakatatau mo ‘emau ngaahi faka‘amú.
- 3 Vakai, ‘E ‘Eiki, kuó ke taa‘i ‘a kimautolu koe‘uhi ko ‘emau angahalá, pea kuó ke kapusi atu ‘a kimautolu, pea kuó ke fekau‘i atu ‘a kimautolu ‘i he ngaahi ta‘u lahi ni kuo mau nofo ‘i he maomaonganoá; ka kuó ke ‘alo‘ofa mai kiate kimautolu. ‘E ‘Eiki, ‘afio mai kiate au ‘i he ‘alo‘ofa, ‘o ta‘ofi ‘a ho houhau mei ho kakaí ni, pea ‘oua ‘e tuku ke nau folau atu ‘i he moana fakamanavaheé ni ‘i he fakapo‘uli; ka ke ‘afio mai ki he ngaahi me‘á ni, ‘a ia kuó u ngaohi ‘i hono tutu mei he maká.
- 4 Pea ‘oku ou ‘ilo‘i, ‘E ‘Eiki, ‘okú ke ma‘u ‘a e māfimaifi kotoa pē, pea ‘okú ke fa‘a fai ‘a e me‘a kotoa pē ‘okú ke finangalo ki ai koe‘uhi ke ‘aonga ki he tangatá; ko ia ke ke ala ki he ngaahi fo‘i maká ni, ‘E ‘Eiki, ‘aki ho louhi‘i to‘ukupú, ‘o teuteu ia ke ulo atu ‘i he fakapo‘ulí; pea ‘e ulo atu ia kiate kimautolu ‘i he ngaahi vaka ‘a ia kuo mau teuteú, koe‘uhí ke ‘i ai ha‘amau maama lolotonga ‘a ‘emau folau atu ‘i he tahí.
- 5 Vakai, ‘E ‘Eiki, ‘okú ke fa‘a fai ‘eni. ‘Okú mau ‘ilo‘i ‘okú ke fa‘a fakahā atu ha fu‘u māfimaifi lahi, ‘a ia ‘oku ngali si‘isi‘i ‘i he anga ‘o e fakakaukau ‘a e tangatá.

Ether 3

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared, (now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass; and he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, and cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods. Now behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee; for we know that thou art holy and dwellest in the heavens, and that we are unworthy before thee; because of the fall our natures have become evil continually; nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee, that from thee we may receive according to our desires.

Behold, O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity, and hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in the wilderness; nevertheless, thou hast been merciful unto us. O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away thine anger from this thy people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but behold these things which I have molten out of the rock.

And I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man; therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

Behold, O Lord, thou canst do this. We know that thou art able to show forth great power, which looks small unto the understanding of men.

6 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'osi lea 'aki 'e he tokoua 'o Sēletí 'a e ngaahi lea ní, vakai, na'e mafafo mai 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono to'ukupú 'o ala ki he ngaahi fo'i maká taki taha 'aki hono louhi 'i to'ukupú. Pea na'e mato'o 'a e veíl mei he ongo mata 'o e tokoua 'o Sēletí, 'o ne mamata ki he louhi 'i to'ukupú 'o e 'Eikí; pea na'e hangē ia ko e louhi 'i nima 'o ha tangata, 'o hangē ko e kakanó mo e totó; pea na'e fakatōmape'e hifo 'a e tokoua 'o Sēletí 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, he na'e tō kiate ia 'a e manavahē.

7 Pea na'e 'afio 'a e 'Eikí kuo tō 'a e tokoua 'o Sēletí ki he kelekelé; pea folofola 'a e 'Eikí kiate ia: Tu'u hake, ko e hā kuó ke tō hifo aí?

8 Pea na'á ne pehē ange ki he 'Eikí: Na'á ku mamata ki he louhi 'i to'ukupú 'o e 'Eikí, peá u manavahē telia na'á ne taa 'i au; he na'e 'ikai te u 'ilo kuo ma'u 'e he 'Eikí 'a e kakano mo e toto.

9 Pea na'e folofola 'a e 'Eikí kiate ia: Ko e me'a 'i ho'o tui, kuó ke vakai ai te u to'o kiate au 'a e kakano mo e toto; pea kuo te'eki ai hū ha tangata ki hoku 'aó 'i he fu'u tui lahi pehē 'o hangē ko ia 'okú ke ma'ú; he kapau na'e 'ikai ke pehē he 'ikai te ke fá'a mamata ki hoku louhi 'i nimá. Na'á ke mamata koā ki ha toe me'a kehe?

10 Peá ne tali ange: 'Ikai; 'Eiki, fakahā mai koe kiate au:

11 Pea folofola 'a e 'Eikí kiate ia: 'Okú ke tui ki he ngaahi lea 'a ia te u lea'aki?

12 Peá ne tali ange: 'Io, 'Eiki, 'oku ou 'ilo 'okú ke folofola 'aki 'a e mo'oní, he ko e 'Otua koe 'o e mo'oní, pea 'oku 'ikai te ke loi.

13 Pea 'i he 'osi 'ene lea 'aki 'a e ngaahi lea ní, vakai, na'e fakahā 'e he 'Eikí ia kiate ia, 'o ne folofola: Koe'uhí ko ho'o 'ilo 'a e ngaahi me'a ní, ko ia kuo huhu 'i ai koe mei he hingá; ko ia kuo fakafoki mai koe ki hoku 'aó; ko ia 'oku ou fakahā ai au kiate koé.

14 Vakai, ko au ia 'a ia na'e teuteu talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní ke huhu 'i 'a hoku kakaí. Vakai, ko au Sīsū Kalaisi. Ko au ko e Tamaí pea mo e 'Aló. 'E ma'u 'iate au 'e he fá'ahinga 'o e tangatá kotoa pē 'a e mo'uí, pea ma'u ia 'o ta'engata, 'io 'a kinautolu 'e tui ki hoku hingoá; pea te nau hoko ko hoku ngaahi foha mo hoku ngaahi 'ofefine.

And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.

And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?

And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.

And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?

And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.

And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?

And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.

And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.

Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters.

- 15 Pea kuo te'eki ai te u fakahā au ki ha tangata 'a ia kuó u fakatupu, he kuo te'eki ai tui ha tangata kiate au 'o hangē ko koé. 'Ikai kuó ke vakai na'e fakatupu koe 'i hoku tatau 'o'okú? 'Io, na'a mo e tangata kotoa pē na'e fakatupu 'i he kamata'angá 'i hoku tatau 'o'okú.
- 16 Vakai, ko e sínó ní, 'a ia 'okú ke mamata 'eni ki aí, ko e sino ia 'o hoku laumālié; pea kuó u fakatupu 'a e tangatá 'i he tatau 'o e sino 'o hoku laumālié; pea hangē ko hono anga 'o 'eku hā kiate koe 'i he laumālié te u hā pehē ki hoku kaká 'i he kakanó.
- 17 Pea ko 'eni, ko au, Molonai, hangē ko 'eku pehē, 'e 'ikai te u fá 'a fai ha fakamatala kakato ki he ngaahi me'á ní 'a ia kuó tohí, ko ia 'oku fe'unga kiate au ke u pehē na'e fakahā 'e Sīsū ia ki he tangatá ní 'i he laumālié, 'io 'o fakatatau mo e anga pea 'i he tatau 'o e sino pē ko íá 'o hangē ko 'ene fakahā ia ki he kau Nifái.
- 18 Pea na'á ne tauhi kiate ia 'o hangē ko 'ene tauhi ki he kau Nifái; pea na'á ne fai 'eni kotoa, koe'uhi ke 'ilo'i 'e he tangatá ní ko e 'Otua ia, koe'uhi ko e ngaahi fu'u ngāue mahu'inga lahi 'a ia kuo fakahā 'e he 'Eikí kiate íá.
- 19 Pea koe'uhi ko e 'ilo 'a e tangata ní kuo 'ikai ta'ofi ia 'e he veilí; pea na'á ne mamata ki he louhi'i to'ukupu 'o Sīsúú, 'a ia, na'á ne mamata ki ai, pea na'á ne fakatōmape'e hifo 'i he manavahē; he na'á ne 'ilo ko e louhi'i to'ukupu ia 'o e 'Eikí; pea na'e 'ikai ke toe 'iate ia 'a e tuí, he na'á ne 'ilo'i, pea 'ikai ke toe 'i ai ha faka'alo'alongau.
- 20 Ko ia, 'i he'ene ma'u 'a e 'ilo haohaoá ní ki he 'Otuá, na'e 'ikai fá 'a ta'ofi ia 'e he veilí; ko ia na'á ne mamata kia Sīsū; pea na'á ne tauhi kiate ia.
- 21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e folofola 'a e 'Eikí ki he tokoua 'o Sēletí: Vakai, 'oua na'á ke tuku 'a e ngaahi me'á ní 'a ia kuó ke mamata mo fanongo ki aí ke mafola atu ki he māmaní, kae 'oua kuo hokosia 'a e taimi 'a ia te u fakaongoongolei'i ai hoku hingoá 'i he kakanó; ko ia, ke ke mata'ikoloa'aki 'a e ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuó ke mamata mo fanongo ki aí, pea 'oua na'a fakahā ia ki ha taha.
- 22 Pea vakai, 'o ka ke ka ha'u kiate au, ke ke tohi mo fakama'u 'a e ngaahi me'á ní, ke 'oua na'a lava 'e ha taha 'o liliu ia; he te ke tohi ia 'i ha lea 'e 'ikai te nau lava 'o lau.

And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image.

Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.

And now, as I, Moroni, said I could not make a full account of these things which are written, therefore it sufficeth me to say that Jesus showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and in the likeness of the same body even as he showed himself unto the Nephites.

And he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites; and all this, that this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works which the Lord had showed unto him.

And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.

Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; wherefore, ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.

And behold, when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.

23 Pea vakai, te u tuku 'a e ongo maká ni kiate koe, pea te ke fakama'u fakataha foki ia mo e ngaahi me'a te ke tohi.

24 He vakai, ko e lea 'a ia te ke tohi 'aki kuó u veuveuki ia; ko ia te u tuku 'i he taimi 'oku ou loto ki aí ke fakamahino 'e he ongo maká ni ki he mata 'o e tangatá 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'a ia te ke tohi.

25 Pea 'i he hili 'a e folofola 'aki 'e he 'Eiki' 'a e ngaahi folofola ní, na'á ne fakahā ki he tokoua 'o Sēletí 'a e kakai kotoa pē 'o e māmaní 'a ia kuo 'i ai, pea mo kinautolu kotoa pē 'e 'i aí; pea na'e 'ikai te ne ta'ofi 'a kinautolu mei hono fofongá, 'io 'o a' u ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e māmaní.

26 He kuo ne folofola 'aki kiate ia 'i he ngaahi taimi 'i mu'á, kapau te ne tui kiate ia te ne lava 'o fakahā kiate ia 'a e me'a kotoa pē—'oku totonu ke fakahā ia kiate ia; ko ia na'e 'ikai fa'a ta'ofi 'e he 'Eiki' ha me'a 'e taha meiate ia, he na'á ne 'ilo'i 'oku lava 'e he 'Eiki' 'o fakahā kiate ia 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē.

27 Pea na'e folofola 'a e 'Eiki' kiate ia: Tohi 'a e ngaahi me'á ni pea fakama'u ia; pea te u fakahā ia 'i he taimi 'oku ou loto ki aí ki he fānau 'a e tangatá.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fekau 'e he 'Eiki' kiate ia ke ne fakama'u 'a e ongo maka 'a ia kuó ne ma'ú, pea 'oua 'e fakahā ia ki ha taha, kae 'oua ke fakahā ia 'e he 'Eiki' ki he fānau 'a e tangatá.

And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.

For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write.

And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.

For he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things—it should be shown unto him; therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.

And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men.

‘Eta 4

- 1 Pea na‘e fekau ‘e he ‘Eikí ki he tokoua ‘o Sēletí ke ne ‘alu hifo mei he mo‘ungá mei he ‘ao ‘o e ‘Eikí, pea tohi ‘a e ngaahi me‘a kuó ne mamata ki aí; pea na‘e tapui hono ‘omi ia ki he fānau ‘a e tangatá kae ‘oua ke hili hono hiki hake ia ki he kolosí; pea ko hono ‘uhinga ia na‘e tauhi ai ia ‘e he tu‘i ko Mōsaiá, koe‘uhi ke ‘oua na‘a ‘omi ia ki he māmaní kae ‘oua ke fakahā ‘e Kalaisi ia ki hono kakaí.
- 2 Pea hili ‘a e fakahā mo‘oni ‘e Kalaisi ia ki hono kakaí, na‘á ne fekau ‘oku totonu ke fakahā ia.
- 3 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘i he hili iá, kuo nau faka‘au‘au hifo kotoa pē ‘i he ta‘etuú; pea ‘oku ‘ikai toe ha taha ka ko e kau Leimaná pē, pea kuo nau lí‘aki ‘a e ongoongolelei ‘a Kalaisí; ko ia kuo fekau‘i au ke u toe fufuu‘i ia ‘i he kelekelé.
- 4 Vakai, kuó u tohi ‘i he ngaahi peletí ni ‘a e ngaahi me‘a pē ko ia na‘e mamata ki ai ‘a e tokoua ‘o Sēletí; pea ‘oku te‘eki ai fakahā ha ngaahi me‘a ‘oku ma‘ongo‘onga ‘i he ngaahi me‘a ‘a ia na‘e fakahā ki he tokoua ‘o Sēletí.
- 5 Ko ia kuo fekau‘i au ‘e he ‘Eikí ke u tohi ia; pea kuó u tohi ia. Pea na‘á ne fekau kiate au ke u fakama‘u ia; pea kuó ne fekau foki ke u fakama‘u hono me‘a liliú; ko ia kuó u fakama‘u ‘a e ongo maka liliu leá, ‘o fakatatau ki he fekau ‘a e ‘Eikí.
- 6 He na‘e folofola mai ‘a e ‘Eikí kiate au: ‘E ‘ikai ‘alu atu ia ki he kau Senitailé kae ‘oua kuo hokosia ‘a e ‘aho te nau fakatomala ai mei he‘enau angahalá, pea hoko ‘o ma‘a ‘i he ‘ao ‘o e ‘Eikí.
- 7 Pea ‘i he ‘aho ko iá te nau ngāue ‘aki ‘a e tui kiate au, ‘oku folofola ‘e he ‘Eikí, ‘io ‘o hangē ko ia na‘e fai ‘e he tokoua ‘o Sēletí, koe‘uhí ke lava ‘o fakamā‘oní‘oní‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘iate au, pea te u toki fakahā leva kiate kinautolu ‘a e ngaahi me‘a na‘e mamata ki ai ‘a e tokoua ‘o Sēletí, ‘o a‘u ki hono fofola mai kiate kinautolu ‘a ‘eku ngaahi fakahā kotoa pē, ‘oku folofola ‘e Sisū Kalaisi, ko e ‘Alo ‘o e ‘Otuá, ko e Tamai ‘o e ngaahi langí mo e māmaní, mo e ngaahi me‘a kotoa pē ‘oku ‘i aí.

Ether 4

And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people.

And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest.

And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared.

Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord.

For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are.

- 8 Pea ko ia ia te ne fakafepaki ki he folofola 'a e 'Eikí, tuku ke mala'ia pē ia; pea ko ia ia te ne faka'ikai'i 'a e ngaahi me'a ní, tuku ke mala'ia pē ia; he 'e 'ikai te u fakahā kiate kinautolu ha me'a 'oku ma'ongo'onga angé, 'oku folofola 'e Sīsū Kalaisi; he ko au ia 'oku leá.
- 9 Pea 'i he'eku fekaú 'oku fakaava ai mo tāpuni 'a e ngaahi langí; pea 'i he'eku leá 'e ngalulululu 'a e māmaní; pea 'i he'eku fekaú 'e mole atu 'a hono kakaí, 'o hangē ko hano fai 'i he afí.
- 10 Pea ko ia ia 'oku 'ikai te ne tui ki he'eku ngaahi leá 'oku 'ikai te ne tui ki he'eku kau ākongá; pea kapau leva 'oku 'ikai te u lea, pea mou fakamaau; he te mou 'ilo ko au ia 'oku lea, 'i he 'aho faka'osí.
- 11 Ka ko ia ia 'okú ne tui ki he ngaahi me'á ni 'a ia kuó u lea'akí, te u 'a'ahi kiate ia 'aki 'a e ngaahi fakahā 'a hoku Laumālié, pea te ne 'ilo 'i mo fakamo'oni'ia. He koe'uhi ko hoku Laumālié te ne 'ilo 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'á ni; he 'okú ne fakaloto'i 'a e tangatá ke failelei.
- 12 Pea 'ilonga ha me'a 'okú ne fakaloto'i 'a e tangatá ke failelei 'oku tupu ia meiate au; he 'oku 'ikai tupu 'a e lelei mei ha taha ka ko au pē. Ko au ia 'a ia 'oku tākiekina 'a e tangatá ki he me'a lelei kotoa pē; 'ilonga ia 'e 'ikai te ne tui ki he'eku ngaahi leá 'e 'ikai te ne tui kiate au—'oku ou mo'ui; pea ko ia ia 'oku 'ikai tui kiate aú 'e 'ikai te ne tui ki he Tamaí 'a ia na'á ne fekau'i aú. He vakai, ko au ko e Tamaí, ko au ko e maama, pea mo e mo'ui, pea mo e mo'oni 'o e māmaní.
- 13 Ha'u kiate au, 'A kimoutolu 'e kau Senitaile, pea te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e ngaahi me'a ma'ongo'onga angé, 'a e 'ilo kuo fufuu'i koe'uhi ko e ta'etuí.
- 14 Ha'u kiate au, 'A kimoutolu 'e fale 'o 'Isileli, pea 'e fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a hono ma'ongo'onga 'o e ngaahi me'a kuo tokonaki 'e he Tamaí ma'amoutolu, talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní; pea kuo te'eki ai ke hoko mai ia kiate kimoutolu, koe'uhi ko e ta'etuí.

And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh.

And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire.

And he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye; for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day.

But he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good.

And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world.

Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.

Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.

15 Vakai, 'o ka mou ka tatala 'a e veili ko ia 'o e ta'etui 'a ia 'oku tupunga ai ho'omou nofo 'i homou tu'unga faka'ulia 'o e fai angahalá, mo e loto-fefeká, pea mo e fakapo'uli 'o e 'atamaí, pea ko e ngaahi me'a ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofa 'a ia kuo fufuu 'i talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní meiate kimoutolú— 'io, 'o ka mou ka ui ki he Tamaí 'i hoku hingoá, 'i he loto-mafesifesi mo e laumālie fakatomala, te mou toki 'ilo' i ai kuo manatu 'i 'e he Tamaí 'a e fuakava kuó ne fai ki ho'omou ngaahi tamaí, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli.

16 Pea ko 'eku ngaahi fakahā kuó u fekau ke hiki 'e he'eku tamaio'eiki ko Sioné 'e toki fakahā ia ke mamata ki ai 'a e kakai fulipē. Manatu, 'o ka mou ka mamata ki he ngaahi me'á ni, te mou 'ilo' i 'oku vave mai 'a e taimi 'e fakahoko mo'oni ai iá.

17 Ko ia, 'i he taimi te mou ma'u ai 'a e lekōtí ni te mou lava ke 'ilo ai kuo kamata 'a e ngāue 'a e Tamaí 'i he funga hono kotoa 'o e fonuá.

18 Ko ia, mou fakatomala 'a kimoutolu kotoa pē 'a e ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e māmaní, pea ha'u kiate au, 'o tui ki he'eku ongoongoleléi, pea papitaiso 'i hoku hingoá; he ko ia ia 'oku tui mo papitaiso 'e fakamo'ui ia; ka ko ia ia 'oku 'ikai tuí 'e malá'ia ia; pea 'e hoko 'a e ngaahi faka'ilonga kiate kinautolu 'e tui ki hoku hingoá.

19 Pea 'oku monū'ia ia 'a ia 'e 'ilo' i 'okú ne faitotonu ki hoku hingoá 'i he 'aho faka'osí, he 'e hiki hake ia ke ne nofo 'i he pule'anga kuo teuteu mo'ona talu mei hono 'ai 'a e tu'unga 'o e māmaní. Pea vakai ko au ia kuó u lea 'aki iá. 'Ēmeni.

Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed.

Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

Therefore, repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and believe in my gospel, and be baptized in my name; for he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned; and signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the foundation of the world. And behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen.

‘Eta 5

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni ko au, Molonai, kuó u hiki ‘a e ngaahi lea na‘e fekau kiate aú, ‘o fakatatau ki he‘eku manatú; pea kuó u fakahā kiate koe ‘a e ngaahi me‘a ‘a ia kuó u fakama‘ú; ko ia ‘oua na‘á ke ala ki ai, koe‘uhi ke ke liliu ia; he kuo tapui ‘a e me‘a ko ia kiate koe, tuku kehe pē ‘o kapau ‘e toki ‘afio‘i ‘e he finangalo poto ‘o e ‘Otuá ‘oku lelei.
- 2 Pea vakai, mahalo na‘á ke faingamālie ke fakahā ‘a e ngaahi peletí kiate kinautolu te nau tokoni ke fakahoko ‘a e ngāu‘é ni.
- 3 Pea ‘e fakahā ia ki ha toko tolu ‘i he māfimafi ‘o e ‘Otuá; ko ia te nau ‘ilo pau ‘oku mo‘oni ‘a e ngaahi me‘á ni.
- 4 Pea ‘i he ngutu ‘o e kau fakamo‘oni ‘e toko tolu ‘e fakamo‘oni‘i ‘a e ngaahi me‘á ni kotoa pē; pea ko e fakamo‘oni ‘a e toko tolú, mo e tohi ní, ‘a ia ‘e fakahā ai ‘a e māfimafi ‘o e ‘Otuá pea mo ‘ene folofolá foki, ‘a ia ‘oku fakamo‘oni ki ai ‘a e Tamaí, mo e ‘Aló, pea mo e Laumālie Mā‘oni‘oní—pea ko e ngaahi me‘á ni kotoa pē ‘e tu‘u ia ko ha fakamo‘oni ke talatalaaki‘i ‘aki ‘a e māmaní ‘i he ‘aho faka‘osí.
- 5 Pea kapau leva te nau fakatomala pea ha‘u ki he Tamaí ‘i he huafa ‘o Sīsuú, ‘e tali ‘a kinautolu ‘i he pule‘anga ‘o e ‘Otuá.
- 6 Pea ko ‘eni, kapau ‘oku ‘ikai te u ma‘u ha mafai ki he ngaahi me‘á ni, mou fakamaau; he te mou ‘ilo‘i ‘oku ou ma‘u ‘a e mafai ‘o ka mou ka mamata kiate au, pea te tau tu‘u ‘i he ‘ao ‘o e ‘Otuá ‘i he ‘aho faka‘osí. ‘Ēmeni.

Ether 5

And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded me, according to my memory; and I have told you the things which I have sealed up; therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate; for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in God.

And behold, ye may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto those who shall assist to bring forth this work;

And unto three shall they be shown by the power of God; wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established; and the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be shown forth the power of God and also his word, of which the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record—and all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last day.

And if it so be that they repent and come unto the Father in the name of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God.

And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge ye; for ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and we shall stand before God at the last day. Amen.

‘Eta 6

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni ko au, Molonai, ‘oku ou hoko atu ke ‘oatu ‘a lekooti ‘o Sēleti mo hono tokouá.
- 2 He na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili hono teuteu ‘e he ‘Eikí ‘a e ngaahi fo‘i maka na‘e ‘alu hake mo e tokoua ‘o Sēletí ki he mo‘ungá, na‘e ‘alu hifo ‘a e tokoua ‘o Sēletí mei he mo‘ungá, ‘o ne tuku ‘a e ngaahi fo‘i maká ‘i loto ‘i he ngaahi vaka ‘a ia kuo teuteú, ko e fo‘i maka ‘e taha ‘i he mui‘i vaka taki taha; pea vakai, na‘a nau fakamaama ‘a e ngaahi vaká.
- 3 Pea na‘e pehē hono fakaulo ‘e he ‘Eikí ‘a e ngaahi maká ‘i he fakapo‘ulí ke ulo ki he kakai tangata, mo e kakai fefine, pea mo e fānaú, koe‘uhi ke ‘oua na‘a nau folau atu ‘i he ngaahi vai ‘i he fakapo‘uli.
- 4 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili ‘enau teuteu ‘a e fa‘ahinga ‘o e me‘akai kotoa pē, koe‘uhi ke nau mo‘ui ai ‘i he funga vai, pea mo e me‘akai foki ma‘a ‘enau ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí, mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí, mo e fa‘ahinga manu ve‘e fā kotoa pē pe monumanu pe manupuna ‘a ia te nau ‘ave mo kinautolú—pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili ‘enau fai ‘a e ngaahi me‘á ni kotoa pē na‘a nau heka leva ki honau ngaahi vaká pe lafalafá, ‘o tuku folau atu ki tahi, ‘o tuku atu ‘a ‘enau mo‘uí ki he ‘Eiki ko honau ‘Otuá.
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e tuku ‘e he ‘Eiki ko e ‘Otuá, ke angi mai ha fu‘u matangi fakamanavahē ‘i he funga ‘o e ngaahi vai, ki he feitu‘u ‘o e fonua ‘o e tala‘ofá; ko ia na‘e feteke‘aki ‘a kinautolu ‘i he ngaahi peau ‘o e tahí ‘e he matangi.
- 6 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e tu‘o lahi ‘enau ngalo hifo ‘i he ngaahi loloto ‘o e tahí, koe‘uhi ko e ngaahi fu‘u peau lalahi na‘e lōmakí ‘i ‘a kinautolú, pea mo e ngaahi fu‘u afā lalahi mo fakamanavahē ‘a ia na‘e fakatupu ‘e hono fu‘u mālohi ‘o e matangi.
- 7 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he ‘enau ngalo hifo ‘i he moaná na‘e ‘ikai ha vai ‘e fa‘a maumau ‘i ‘a kinautolu, he na‘e malu ‘a honau ngaahi vaká ‘o hangē ko ha ipú, pea na‘e malu foki ia ‘o hangē ko e ‘a‘ake ‘o Noá; ko ia ‘i he lōmekina ‘a kinautolu ‘e he ngaahi vai lahi na‘a nau tangi ki he ‘Eikí, pea ne toe ‘ohake ‘a kinautolu ki ‘olunga ‘i he ngaahi vai.

Ether 6

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them—and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

8 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai tuku 'a e angī 'a e matangī ki he feitu'u 'o e fonua 'o e tala'ofā lolotonga 'enau 'i he funga 'o e ngaahi vaí; pea na'e pehē 'a hono teke'i atu 'a kinautolu 'e he matangī.

9 Pea na'a nau hiva 'aki 'a e ngaahi fakafeta'i ki he 'Eikí; 'io, na'e hiva 'a e tokoua 'o Sēletí 'aki 'a e ngaahi fakafeta'i ki he 'Eikí, peá ne fakamālō mo fakafeta'i ki he 'Eikí 'i hono kotoa 'o e 'ahó; pea 'i he hokosia 'a e po'ulí, na'e 'ikai tuku 'enau fakafeta'i ki he 'Eikí.

10 Pea ko ia na'e pehē hono teke'i atu 'a kinautolú; pea na'e 'ikai ha fu'u manu 'o e tahí te ne fá 'a laiki 'a kinautolu, pe ha tofua 'a te ne fá 'a maumau 'i 'a kinautolu; pea na'a nau ma'u ha maama ma'u ai pē, 'o tatau ai pē pe na'e 'i he fukahi vaí pe 'i he loto vaí.

11 Pea ko ia na'e teke'i atu 'a kinautolu, 'i he 'aho 'e tolungeau fāngofulu mā fá 'i he funga vaí.

12 Pea na'a nau tū'uta ki he matātahi 'o e fonua 'o e tala'ofā. Pea 'i he tu'u leva honau va'é ki he matātahi 'o e fonua 'o e tala'ofā na'a nau punou hifo ki he funga 'o e fonuá, 'o nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, pea nau tangi 'a lo'imata 'i he 'enau fiefiá 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, koe'uhi ko hono lahi 'o 'ene ngaahi 'alo'ofa ongongofua kiate kinautolú.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau 'alu atu ki he funga 'o e fonuá, 'o kamata ke ngoue 'i 'a e kekekelé.

14 Pea na'e toko fá 'a e ngaahi foha 'o Sēletí; pea na'e ui 'a kinautolu ko Sēkomi, mo Kilikā, mo Meihā, pea mo 'Olaihā.

15 Pea na'e fanau 'i 'e he tokoua 'o Sēletí foki ha ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine.

16 Pea ko e ngaahi kaume'a 'o Sēletí mo hono tokouá na'e toko uofulu mā ua nai; pea na'a nau fanau 'i foki 'a e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine 'i he te'eki ai ke nau a'u ki he fonua 'o e tala'ofā; pea ko ia na'a nau faka'au 'o tokolahi.

17 Pea na'e akonekina 'a kinautolu ke 'a'eva 'i he loto-fakatōkilalo 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí; pea na'e akonekina foki 'a kinautolu mei he langí.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau kamata ke mafola atu 'i he funga 'o e fonuá, pea fakatokolahi mo ngoue 'i 'a e kekekelé; pea na'a nau faka'au 'o mālohi 'i he fonuá.

And it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and thus they were driven forth before the wind.

And they did sing praises unto the Lord; yea, the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long; and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whether it was above the water or under the water.

And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.

And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.

And Jared had four sons; and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.

And the brother of Jared also begat sons and daughters.

And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many.

And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high.

And it came to pass that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.

- 19 Pea na'e faka'au 'o motu'a 'a e tokoua 'o Sēletí, 'o ne 'ilo'i kuo pau ke vave 'ene 'alu hifo ki he fa'itoká; ko ia na'á ne lea kia Sēleti: Tuku ke ta tñnaki fakataha 'a hota kakaí ke ta lau honau tokolahí, koe'uhi ke ta 'ilo meiate kinautolu pe ko e hā 'a e me'a 'oku nau fie ma'u meiate kitauá 'i he te'eki ai ke ta 'alu hifo ki hota fa'itoká.
- 20 Pea ko ia na'e tñnaki fakataha 'a e kakaí. Ko 'eni ko e tokolahi 'o e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o e tokoua 'o Sēletí ko e toko uofulu mā ua; pea ko e tokolahi 'o e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o Sēleti ko e toko hongofulu mā ua, peá ne ma'u 'a e ngaahi foha 'e toko fā.
- 21 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á na lau 'a e tokolahi 'o hona kakaí; pea hili 'ena lau 'a kinautolú, na'á na fehu'i kiate kinautolu pē ko e hā 'a e ngaahi me'a 'oku nau fie ma'u ke na fai 'i he te'eki ai ke na 'alu hifo ki hona fa'itoká.
- 22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e loto 'a e kakaí ke na pani hataha 'i hona ngaahi fohá ke hoko ko ha tu'i kiate kinautolu.
- 23 Pea ko 'eni vakai, na'e fakamamahi 'a e me'á ni kiate kinaua. Pea na'e pehē 'e he tokoua 'o Sēletí kiate kinautolu: Ko e mo'oni 'e fakatupu 'e he me'á ni 'a e pōpula.
- 24 Ka na'e pehē 'e Sēleti ki hono tokouá: Tuku ke nau ma'u ha tu'i. Pea ko ia na'á ne pehē kiate kinautolu: Mou fili mei homa ngaahi fohá ha tu'i, 'a e tokotaha te mou loto ki aí.
- 25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fili 'a e 'uluaki foha 'o e tokoua 'o Sēletí; pea ko hono hingoá ko Peikaki. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fakafisi, 'o 'ikai te ne loto ke hoko ko honau tu'i. Pea na'e loto 'a e kakaí ke hanga 'e he'ene tamaí 'o fekau 'i fakamālohi kiate ia, ka na'e 'ikai loto ki ai 'a 'ene tamaí; 'o ne fekau kiate kinautolu ke 'oua te nau fekau 'i fakamālohi ha tangata 'e taha ke ne hoko ko honau tu'í.
- 26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fili 'a e ngaahi tokoua kotoa 'o Peikakí, kae na'e 'ikai te nau loto ki ai.
- 27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai foki loto ki ai mo e ngaahi foha 'o Sēletí, na'a mo kinautolu kotoa pē, tuku kehe pē 'a e toko taha; pea na'e pani 'a 'Olaihā ko e tu'i ki he kakaí.

And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.

And accordingly the people were gathered together. Now the number of the sons and the daughters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two souls; and the number of sons and daughters of Jared were twelve, he having four sons.

And it came to pass that they did number their people; and after that they had numbered them, they did desire of them the things which they would that they should do before they went down to their graves.

And it came to pass that the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them.

And now behold, this was grievous unto them. And the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this thing leadeth into captivity.

But Jared said unto his brother: Suffer them that they may have a king. And therefore he said unto them: Choose ye out from among our sons a king, even whom ye will.

And it came to pass that they chose even the firstborn of the brother of Jared; and his name was Pagag. And it came to pass that he refused and would not be their king. And the people would that his father should constrain him, but his father would not; and he commanded them that they should constrain no man to be their king.

And it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag, and they would not.

And it came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared, even all save it were one; and Orihah was anointed to be king over the people.

28 Pea na'á ne kamata ke pule, pea na'e kamata ke tu'umālie 'a e kakaí; 'o nau faka'au 'o fu'u koloa'ia 'aupito.

29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pekia 'a Sēleti, pea mo hono tokouá foki.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'a'eva 'i he loto-fakatōkilalo 'a 'Olaihā 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí, 'o ne manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a ma'ongo'onga kuo fai 'e he 'Eikí ma'a 'ene tamaí, 'o ne ako 'i foki ki hono kakaí 'a e ngaahi me'a ma'ongo'onga kuo fai 'e he 'Eikí ma'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí.

And he began to reign, and the people began to prosper; and they became exceedingly rich.

And it came to pass that Jared died, and his brother also.

And it came to pass that Orihah did walk humbly before the Lord, and did remember how great things the Lord had done for his father, and also taught his people how great things the Lord had done for their fathers.

‘Eta 7

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e fai ‘e ‘Olaihā ‘a e fakamāú ‘i he mā‘oní‘oní ‘i he fonuá ‘i hono kotoa hono ngaahi ‘ahó, pea ko hono ngaahi ‘ahó na‘e fuoloa ‘aupito.
- 2 Pea na‘á ne fanau ‘i ‘a e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi ‘ofefine; ‘io, na‘á ne fanau ‘i ‘a e toko tolungofulu mā taha, pea na‘e kau ‘iate kinautolu ‘a e ngaahi foha ‘e toko uofulu mā tolu.
- 3 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ne fanau ‘i foki mo Kipi ‘i he‘ene toulekeleká. Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e pule ‘a Kipi ko hono fetongi; pea na‘e fanau ‘i ‘e Kipi ‘a Kolihoa.
- 4 Pea ‘i he ta‘u tolungofulu mā ua ‘a e motu ‘a ‘o Kolihoá na‘á ne angatu ‘u ki he‘ene tamaí, ‘o ne ‘alu atu ‘o nofo ‘i he fonua ko Nēhoá; pea na‘á ne fanau ‘i ‘a e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi ‘ofefine, ‘o nau hoko ‘o fu‘u hoihoifua ‘aupito; ko ia na‘e hanga ai ‘e Kolihoa ‘o fusiaki ‘i atu ‘a e kakai tokolahi ‘aupito ‘o nau muimui ‘iate ia.
- 5 Pea ‘i he hili ‘ene tānaki fakataha ha kau tau na‘á ne ‘alu hake leva ki he fonua ko Moloní ‘a ia na‘e ‘afio ai ‘a e tu‘í, ‘o ne puke pōpula ia, ‘a ia na‘e fakahoko ai ‘a e lea ‘a e tokoua ‘o Sēleti ‘e ‘omi ai ‘a kinautolu ki he pōpula.
- 6 Ko ‘eni na‘e ofi ‘a e fonua ko Moloni, ‘a ia na‘e ‘afio ai ‘a e tu‘í, ki he fonua ‘oku ui ko ‘Auha ‘e he kau Nifái.
- 7 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ‘afio ‘a Kipi ‘i he pōpula, mo hono kakai kia Kolihoa ko hono fohá, kae ‘oua kuó ne faka‘au ‘o fu‘u toulekeleka ‘aupito; ka neongo iá na‘e fanau ‘i ‘e Kipi ‘a Sule ‘i he‘ene toulekeleká, pea lolotonga ‘ene nofo pōpulá.
- 8 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e tuputāmaki ‘a Sule ki hono tokouá; pea na‘e faka‘au ‘a Sule ‘o mālohi, pea ivi lahi ‘i he mālohi fakaetangatá; pea na‘a ne fu‘u fakakaukau lelei ‘aupito foki.
- 9 Ko ia, na‘a ne ha‘u ki he mo‘unga ko ‘Ifalemí, ‘o ne haka ha ngaahi maka mei he mo‘ungá, ‘o ne ngaohi ha ngaahi heletā mei he ukamea sitila ma‘anautolu ‘a ia kuó ne takiaki ‘i ke muimui kiate iá; pea hili ‘ene fakamahafu ‘a kinautolu ‘aki ‘a e ngaahi heletā, na‘á ne foki atu ki he kolo ko Nēhoá, ‘o ne tau ‘i ‘a hono tokoua ko Kolihoá, pea ‘i he founga ko iá na‘á ne ma‘u ai ‘a e pule‘angá ‘o ne toe foaki ia ki he‘ene tamaí ko Kipí.

Ether 7

And it came to pass that Orihah did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days, whose days were exceedingly many.

And he begat sons and daughters; yea, he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons.

And it came to pass that he also begat Kib in his old age. And it came to pass that Kib reigned in his stead; and Kib begat Corihor.

And when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his father, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor; and he begat sons and daughters, and they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.

And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt, and took him captive, which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity.

Now the land of Moron, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.

And it came to pass that Shule was angry with his brother; and Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.

Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor, and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father Kib.

10 Pea ko 'eni koe' uhi ko e me'a kuo fai 'e Sule, na'e tuku 'e he'ene tama'i kiate ia 'a e pule'anga; ko ia na'á ne kamata ke pule ko e fetongi 'ene tama'i.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ne fai 'a e fakamāu 'i he mā'oni'oni; pea na'á ne fakamafola atu 'a hono pule'anga ki he funga kotoa 'o e fonuá, he kuo faka'au 'o fu'u tokolahi 'aupito 'a e kaka'i.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fanau 'i foki 'e Sule mo e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine tokolahi.

13 Pea na'e fakatomala 'a Kolihoa mei he ngaahi me'a kovi lahi kuó ne fai; ko ia na'e tuku kiate ia 'e Sule 'a e mafai 'i hono pule'anga.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ma'u 'e Kolihoa 'a e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine tokolahi. Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e toko taha 'i he ngaahi foha 'o Kolihoá pea ko hono hingo ko Noa.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e angatu'u 'a Noa kia Sule, ko e tu'í, pea mo 'ene tama'i foki ko Kolihoá, 'o ne fusi atu mo Kohoa ko hono tokoua, pea mo hono ngaahi tokouá kotoa mo e tokolahi 'o e kaka'i.

16 Pea na'á ne tau 'i 'a Sule, ko e tu'í, 'o ne ma'u ai 'a e fonua 'o honau 'uluaki tofi'á; pea ne hoko ko ha tu'í ki he potu ko ia 'o e fonuá.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne toe tau 'i 'a Sule, ko e tu'í; pea ne puke 'a Sule, ko e tu'í, 'o 'ave pōpula ia ki Moloni.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'amanaki ke ne tāmata'e 'i íá, na'e totolo atu 'a e ngaahi foha 'o Sule ki he fale 'o Noá 'i he po'ulí 'o nau tāmata'e 'i ía, pea hae 'i 'a e matapā 'o e fale fakapōpulá 'o 'omi ki tu'á 'a 'enau tama'i, 'o fokotu'u ia ki hono nofo'anga fakatu'í 'i hono pule'anga 'o oná.

19 Ko ia, na'e langa hake 'e he foha 'o Noá 'a hono pule'anga ko hono fetongi; ka neongo íá na'e 'ikai te nau toe ma'u ha mālohi kia Sule ko e tu'í, pea ko e kakai 'a ia na'e pule ki ai 'a Sule ko e tu'í na'á nau tu'umālie 'aupito pea faka'au 'o fu'u mālohi.

20 Pea na'e vaeua 'a e fonuá; pea na'e 'i ai 'a e pule'anga 'e ua, ko e pule'anga 'o Sule pea mo e pule'anga 'o Kohoa, ko e foha 'o Noá.

21 Pea na'e fekau 'e Kohoa, ko e foha 'o Noá, ke tau 'i 'e hono kaka'i 'a Sule, pea na'e ikuna ai 'a kinautolu 'e Sule 'o ne tāmata'e 'i 'a Kohoa.

And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his father.

And it came to pass that he did execute judgment in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceedingly numerous.

And it came to pass that Shule also begat many sons and daughters.

And Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom.

And it came to pass that Corihor had many sons and daughters. And among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.

And it came to pass that Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his brethren and many of the people.

And he gave battle unto Shule, the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that part of the land.

And it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Moron.

And it came to pass as he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and broke down the door of the prison and brought out their father, and placed him upon his throne in his own kingdom.

Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule the king, and the people who were under the reign of Shule the king did prosper exceedingly and wax great.

And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.

And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay Cohor.

22 Pea ko 'eni na'e 'i ai 'a e foha 'o Kohoa 'a ia na'e ui ko Nihilote; pea na'e tuku 'e Nihilote 'a e pule'anga 'o Kohoa' kia Sule, pea na'e 'ofeina ia 'i he 'ao 'o Sulé; ko ia na'e tuku 'e Sule kiate ia 'a e ngaahi fu'u faingamālie lalahi, 'o ne fa'itelihā 'i he pule'anga 'o Sulé 'o fakatatau ki hono lotó.

23 Pea 'i he lolotonga 'a e pule foki 'a Sulé na'e ha'u 'a e kau palōfita 'i he kakaí, 'a ia na'e fekau mai mei he 'Eikí, 'o nau kikite 'i 'oku hanga 'e he fai angahalá mo e tauhi tamapua 'a e kakaí 'o 'omi ha mala'ia ki he fonuá, pea 'e faka'auha 'a kinautolu kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e lea kovi 'a e kakaí ki he kau palōfita, 'o nau manukí 'i 'a kinautolu. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tautea 'i 'e he tu 'i ko Sulé 'a kinautolu kotoa pē na'e lea kovi ki he kau palōfita.

25 Pea na'á ne fokotu'u ha lao 'i he fonuá hono kotoa, 'a ia na'e tuku ai 'a e mafai ki he kau palōfita ke nau 'alu ki ha feitu'u pē 'oku nau loto ki aí; pea na'e tupunga 'i he me'á ni hono fakatafoki 'o e kakaí ki he fakatomalá.

26 Pea koe'uhi ko e fakatomala 'a e kakaí mei he'enua ngaahi angahalá mo e ngaahi tauhi tamapua' ko ia na'e fakahaofi ai 'a kinautolu 'e he 'Eikí, pea na'a nau kamata ke toe tu'umālie 'i he fonuá. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fanau 'i 'e Sule ha ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine 'i he'ene toulekeleká.

27 Pea na'e 'ikai ke toe hoko ha ngaahi tau 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o Sulé; pea na'á ne manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi me'a ma'ongo'onga kuo fai 'e he 'Eikí ma'a 'ene ngaahi tamaí 'i hono 'omi 'a kinautolu ke folau mai 'i he fu'u moana lahi ki he fonua 'o e tala'ofá; ko ia na'á ne fakamaau 'i he mā'oni'oni 'i he kotoa hono ngaahi 'ahó.

And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule; wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires.

And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And it came to pass that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.

And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.

And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And it came to pass that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.

And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

‘Eta 8

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ne fanau‘i ‘a ‘Omea, pea na‘e pule ‘a ‘Omea ko hono fetongi. Pea na‘e fanau‘i ‘e ‘Omea ‘a Sēleti; pea na‘e fanau‘i ‘e Sēleti ha ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi ‘ofefine.
- 2 Pea na‘e angatu‘u ‘a Sēleti ki he‘ene tamaí, peá ne ‘alu ‘o nofo ‘i he fonua ko Hetí. Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ne fakahekeheke‘i ‘a e kakai tokolahi, koe‘uhi ko ‘ene ngaahi lea fakaoolooló, kae ‘oua kuó ne ma‘u ‘a hono vaeua ‘o e pule‘angá.
- 3 Pea ‘i he hili ‘ene ma‘u ‘a hono vaeua ‘o e pule‘angá na‘á ne tau‘i ‘a ‘ene tamaí, ‘o ne ‘ave ‘a ‘ene tamaí ki he pōpula, pea na‘á ne tu‘utu‘uni ke ne tauhi kiate ia ‘i he pōpula;
- 4 Pea ko ‘eni, ‘i he ngaahi ‘aho ‘o e pule ‘a ‘Omeá, na‘á ne nofo pōpula ‘i hono vaeua ‘o hono ngaahi ‘ahó. Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ne fanau‘i ha ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi ‘ofefine, ‘a ia na‘e kau ai ‘a ‘Esilome mo Kolianitomuli.
- 5 Pea na‘á na fu‘u tuputāmaki ‘aupito koe‘uhi ko e ngaahi ngāue ‘a Sēleti ko honau tokouá, ko ia na‘á na tānaki ha kau tau, ‘o tau‘i ‘a Sēleti. Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á na tau‘i ia ‘i he po‘ulí.
- 6 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he hili ‘enau faka‘auha ‘a e kau tau ‘a Sēletí pea na‘e ‘amanaki ke nau tāmata‘i mo ia foki; pea na‘á ne kole kiate kinautolu ke ‘oua te nau tāmata‘i iá, ka te ne tuku ‘a e pule‘angá ki he‘ene tamaí. Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘a nau fakamo‘ui ia.
- 7 Pea ko ‘eni na‘e kamata ke fu‘u loto-mamahi lahi ‘a Sēleti, koe‘uhi ko e mole ‘a e pule‘angá, he kuó ne holi ke ma‘u ‘a e pule‘angá pea mo e ngaahi faka‘apa‘apa ‘a e māmaní.
- 8 Ko ‘eni ko e ‘ofefine ‘o Sēletí na‘e fu‘u olopoto lahi, pea ‘i he‘ene mamata ki he loto-mamahi ‘a ‘ene tamaí, na‘á ne fakakaukau ke filio‘i ha founga ke ne toe ma‘u ai ‘a e pule‘angá ma‘a ‘ene tamaí.

Ether 8

And it came to pass that he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead. And Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.

And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.

And when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;

And now, in the days of the reign of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days. And it came to pass that he begat sons and daughters, among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;

And they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother, insomuch that they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared. And it came to pass that they did give battle unto him by night.

And it came to pass that when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also; and he pled with them that they would not slay him, and he would give up the kingdom unto his father. And it came to pass that they did grant unto him his life.

And now Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom, for he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.

Now the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father, thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.

9 Ko 'eni na'e fu'u hoihoifua 'aupito 'a e 'ofefine 'o Sēleti. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne talanoa mo 'ene tamaí, 'o ne pehē ange kiate ia: Ko e hā 'a e me'a 'oku loto-mamahi lahi ai 'a 'eku tamaí? 'Ikai koā kuó ne lau 'a e lekooti na'e 'omi 'e he'etau ngaahi tamaí mei he kauvai 'e taha 'o e fu'u moaná? Vakai, 'ikai 'oku 'i ai ha fakamatala 'o kau ki he kakai 'i mu'á, na'a nau ma'u 'i he'enu ngaahi fakakaukau fufuú 'a e ngaahi pule'anga mo e fu'u faka'apa'apa lahi?

10 Pea ko 'eni, ko ia tuku ke fekau 'e he'eku tamaí ke ha'u 'a 'Eikisi, ko e foha 'o Kiminoá; pea vakai, 'oku ou hoihoifua, pea te u me'e 'i hono 'aó, pea te u fakafiefia 'i ia, pea te ne fie ma'u ke ma'u au ko hono uaifi; ko ia kapau te ne kole kiate koe ke ke foaki au kiate ia ke hoko ko hono uaifi, ke ke pehē ange leva: Te u foaki ia kiate koe, 'o kapau te ke 'omi kiate au 'a e 'ulu 'o 'eku tamaí, ko e tu'í.

11 Pea ko 'eni, ko 'Omeá ko e kaume'a 'o 'Eikisi, ko ia 'i he fekau atu 'e Sēleti ke ha'u 'a 'Eikisi, na'e me'e 'i hono 'aó 'a e 'ofefine 'o Sēleti 'o ne fakafiefia 'i ia, ko ia na'á ne fie ma'u ia ke hoko ko hono uaifi. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne pehē ange kia Sēleti: Foaki ia kiate au ke u ma'u ko hoku uaifi.

12 Pea na'e pehē ange kiate ia 'e Sēleti: Te u foaki ia kiate koe, 'o kapau te ke 'omi kiate au 'a e 'ulu 'o 'eku tamaí, ko e tu'í.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tānaki 'e 'Eikisi ki he fale 'o Sēleti 'a hono kāingá kotoa pē, 'o ne pehē kiate kinautolu: Te mou fuakava kiate au ke mou faivelenga kiate au 'i he me'a te u kole kiate kimoutolú?

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fuakava kotoa pē kiate ia ki he 'Otua 'o e langí, pea 'i he ngaahi langí foki pea 'i he māmaní foki, pea ki honau 'ulú, 'ilonga ha taha 'e fai kehe mei he tokoni 'a ia na'e fie ma'u 'e 'Eikisi 'e tu'usi hono 'ulú; pea 'ilonga ha taha te ne fakahā 'a e me'a 'a ia na'e fakahā kiate kinautolu 'e 'Eikisi, 'e mole 'a e mo'ui 'a e tokotaha ko iá.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau loto taha mo 'Eikisi. Pea na'e fakafuakava 'i 'a kinautolu 'e 'Eikisi 'aki 'a e ngaahi fuakava na'e fai 'e kinautolu 'i mu'a 'a ia na'a nau feinga foki ke ma'u 'a e mafái, 'a ia kuo tukufakaholo mai meia Keini, 'a ia ko e fakapō talu 'a e kamata'angá.

Now the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair. And it came to pass that she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

And now, therefore, let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimnor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And it came to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.

And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?

And it came to pass that they all sware unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life.

And it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.

16 Pea na'e langaki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'e he mālohi 'o e tēvoló ke fakafuakava 'i 'aki 'a e ngaahi fuakavá ni 'a e kakai, ke ta'ofi 'a kinautolu 'i he fakapo'ulí, ke tokoni 'i 'a e fa'ahinga 'oku kumi ki he mafai ke ma'u 'a e mafai, pea ke fakapō, pea ke vete koloa, pea ke loi, pea ke fai 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e fai angahala mo e ngaahi fe'auaki.

17 Pea ko e 'ofefine 'o Sēleti 'a ia na'á ne fakahū ki hono lotó ke kumi ki he ngaahi me'a ni mei mu'á; pea na'e fakahū ia 'e Sēleti ki he loto 'o 'Eikisi; ko ia, na'e fai ia 'e 'Eikisi ki hono kāingá mo e ngaahi kaume'á, 'o ne kākaa 'i 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e ngaahi tala'ofa ongo lelei ke nau fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'okú ne loto ki aí.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fokotu'u ha kautaha fufū, 'io 'o tatau mo ia 'i mu'á; 'a ia ko e kautaha 'oku fakalielia mo kovi taha 'i he ngaahi kautaha kotoa pē, 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá.

19 He 'oku 'ikai ke ngāue 'a e 'Eiki 'i he ngaahi kautaha fufū, pea 'oku 'ikai foki te ne finangalo ke lilingi 'e he tangatá ha toto, kā kuó ne tapui ia 'i he me'a kotoa pē, talu mei he kamata'anga 'o e tangatá.

20 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Molonai, 'oku 'ikai te u tohi 'a e anga 'o 'enau ngaahi fuakavá mo e ngaahi kautahá, he kuo fakahā kiate au kuo ma'u ia 'e he kakai kotoa pē, pea 'oku ma'u ia 'e he kau Leimaná.

21 Pea kuo nau fakatupu hono faka'auha 'o e kakai ni 'a ia 'oku ou lolotonga talanoa ki aí, pea mo e faka'auha 'o e kau Nifai.

22 Pea 'ilonga ha pulé'anga 'e pou pou ki he ngaahi kautaha fufū peheé, ke ma'u ha mālohi mo e koloa, kae 'oua kuo nau mafola 'i he pulé'angá, vakai, 'e faka'auha 'a kinautolu; koe'uhi 'e 'ikai tuku 'e he 'Eiki 'a e toto 'o 'ene kau mā'oni'oni, 'a ia 'e lilingi 'e kinautolú, ke tangi ma'u ai pē kiate ia mei he kekelelé ke sāuni kiate kinautolu ka 'oku 'ikai te ne sāuni kiate kinautolu.

And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness, to help such as sought power to gain power, and to murder, and to plunder, and to lie, and to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms.

And it was the daughter of Jared who put it into his heart to search up these things of old; and Jared put it into the heart of Akish; wherefore, Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.

And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;

For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

And now I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had among the Lamanites.

And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi.

And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.

23 Ko ia, 'A kimoutolu 'e kau Senitaile, ko e finangalo poto 'o e 'Otua ke fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kiate kimoutolu, koe'uhi ke mou fakatomala ai mei ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, pea 'ikai tuku ke mālohi 'a e ngaahi kautaha fakapoó ni kiate kimoutolu, 'a ia kuo fokotu' u hake koe'uhi ke ma'u ha mālohi mo e koloa—pea ko e ngāue, 'io, 'a e ngāue 'o e faka'auhá 'e hoko mai kiate kimoutolú, 'io, 'e tō 'a e heletā 'o e fakamaau 'a e 'Otua Ta'engatá kiate kimoutolu, ke ikuna'i mo faka'auha 'a kimoutolu 'o kapau te mou tuku ke hoko 'a e ngaahi me'á ni.

24 Ko ia, 'oku fekau kiate kimoutolu 'e he 'Eikí, 'o ka mou ka mamata ki he ha'u 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'iate kimoutolu ke mou 'ā hake 'o 'ilo ki ho'omou tu'utāmaki fakamanavahē 'oku tupu mei he kautaha fufū ko 'eni 'a ia 'e 'iate kimoutolú; pe 'e hoko ki ai 'a e mala'ia, koe'uhi ko e toto 'o kinautolu 'a ia kuo tāmata'í; he 'oku nau tangi mei he efú ke sāuni ki ai, pea kiate kinautolu foki 'a ia na'e langa hake iá.

25 He 'e hoko 'o pehē ko ia ia 'okú ne fokotu'u iá 'okú ne feinga ke faka'auha 'a e tau'atāina 'a e ngaahi fonua kotoa pē mo e ngaahi kakai, pea mo e ngaahi pule'anga pea 'okú fakatupu 'a e faka'auha 'o e kakai fulipē, he kuo fokotu'u ia 'e he tēvoló, 'a ia ko e tamai 'a e ngaahi loi kotoa pē; 'a e tangata loi ko ia na'e kākaa'i 'etau 'uluaki ongo mātu'á, 'io, 'a e tangata loi pē ko ia 'a ia kuó ne ue'i 'a e tangatá ke fai 'a e fakapō talu mei he kamata'angá; 'a ia kuó ne fakafefeka 'a e loto 'o e tangatá ko ia na'a nau fakapoongi ai 'a e kau palōfitá, mo tolomaka'i 'a kinautolu, mo kapusi 'a kinautolu ki tu'a talu mei he kamata'angá.

26 Ko ia, ko au, Molonai, na'e fekau'i au ke hiki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni koe'uhi ke fakangata 'a e angahalá, koe'uhi ke hoko mai 'a e taimi 'a ia 'e 'ikai ke ma'u ai 'e Sētane ha mālohi ki he loto 'o e fānau 'a e tangata, kae kehe ke lava 'o fakaloto'i 'a kinautolu ke failelei ma'u ai pē, ke nau ha'u ki he matavai 'o e mā'oni'oni kotoa pē pea mo'ui.

Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain—and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.

Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you; or wo be unto it, because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who built it up.

For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; even that same liar who beguiled our first parents, yea, even that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning; who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.

Wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away, and that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually, that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and be saved.

‘Eta 9

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni ko au, Molonai, ‘oku ou hoko atu ‘eku lekōtí. Ko ia, vakai, na‘e hoko ‘o pehē koe‘uhi ko e ngaahi kautaha fufū ‘a ‘Eikisi mo hono ngaahi kaume‘á, vakai, na‘a nau ikuna ai ‘a e pule‘anga ‘o ‘Omeá.
- 2 Ka neongo iá, na‘e ‘alo‘ofa ‘a e ‘Eikí kia ‘Omea, pea ki hono ngaahi fohá foki mo hono ngaahi ‘ofefine ‘a ia na‘e ‘ikai te nau feinga ke faka‘auha iá.
- 3 Pea na‘e fakatokanga ‘e he ‘Eikí kia ‘Omea ‘i ha misi ke ne ‘alu mei he fonuá; ko ia na‘e ‘alu atu ‘a ‘Omea mei he fonuá mo hono fāmilí, ‘o fononga ‘i he ngaahi ‘aho lahi, ‘o ha‘u ‘o ofi ki he mo‘unga ko Simí, pea ‘alu atu ‘o ofi ki he potu ‘a ia na‘e faka‘auha ai ‘a e kau Nifái, pea mei ai ki he feitu‘u fakahahaké, ‘o ha‘u ki ha potu na‘e ui ko ‘Apelomi, ‘oku ofi ki matātahí; pea na‘á ne fokotu‘u ai ‘a hono fale fehikitakí, kae ‘uma‘á foki hono ngaahi fohá mo hono ngaahi ‘ofefiné, mo hono falé kotoa, tuku kehe pē ‘a Sēleti mo hono fāmilí.
- 4 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e pani ‘a Sēleti ko e tu‘i ki he kakai ‘e he nima ‘o e fai angahalá; pea na‘á ne foaki kia ‘Eikisi ‘a hono ‘ofefiné ke hoko ko hono uafí.
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e kumi ‘e ‘Eikisi ki he mo‘ui ‘a ‘ene tamai ‘i he fonó; pea na‘á ne kole kiate kinautolu kuó ne fakafuakava‘i ‘i he fuakava ‘o e kakai ‘i mu‘á, pea nau ‘omi ‘a e ‘ulu ‘o ‘ene tamai ‘i he fonó lolotonga ‘ene nofo ‘i hono nofo‘anga fakatu‘í ‘o alea mo hono kakai.
- 6 He kuo lahi pehē fau ‘a e mafola atu ‘a e kautaha kovi mo fufū ní kuó ne liliu ‘o kovi ‘a e loto ‘o e kakai kotoa pē; ko ia na‘e fakapoongi ‘a Sēleti ‘i hono nofo‘anga fakatu‘í, pea na‘e pule ‘a ‘Eikisi, ko hono fetongi.
- 7 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e kamata ke meheka ‘a ‘Eikisi ‘i hono fohá, ko ia na‘á ne fakahū ia ki he fale fakapōpulá, ‘o ne tauhi ia ‘aki ‘a e ki‘i me‘akai si‘i pe ‘ikai ha me‘akai, kae ‘oua kuó ne mate.
- 8 Pea ko ‘eni, ko e tokoua ‘o e tokotaha na‘e maté (pea ko hono hingoá ko Nimila) na‘e ‘ita ki he‘ene tamai, koe‘uhi ko e me‘a ‘a ‘ene tamai kuo fai ki hono tokouá.
- 9 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e tānaki fakataha ‘e Nimila ha kau tangata tokosi‘i, ‘o nau hola mei he fonuá, ‘o ‘alu atu ‘o nofo fakataha mo ‘Omea.

Ether 9

And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record. Therefore, behold, it came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.

Nevertheless, the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons and to his daughters who did not seek his destruction.

And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family, and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim, and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called Ablom, by the seashore, and there he pitched his tent, and also his sons and his daughters, and all his household, save it were Jared and his family.

And it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people, by the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.

And it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father-in-law; and he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients, and they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon his throne, giving audience to his people.

For so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people; therefore Jared was murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he had suffered death.

And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had done unto his brother.

And it came to pass that Nimrah gathered together a small number of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fanau 'i 'e 'Eikisi ha ngaahi foha kehe, pea na'a nau ma'u 'a e loto 'o e kakaí, neongo kuo nau fuakava kiate ia ke nau fai 'a e fa'ahinga hia kotoa pē 'o fakatatau mo e me'a 'okú ne loto ki aí.

11 Ko 'eni na'e holi 'a e kakai 'o 'Eikisi ke ma'u ha koloa, 'o hangē foki ko e holi 'a 'Eikisi ke ma'u 'a e mālohí; ko ia, na'e foaki 'e he ngaahi foha 'o 'Eikisi kiate kinautolu 'a e pa'anga, 'a ia ko e founga na'a nau fusi atu ai 'a e konga lahi ange 'o e kakaí ke muimui 'iate kinautolu.

12 Pea na'e kamata ke tupu ha tau 'i he vaha'a 'o e ngaahi foha 'o 'Eikisi mo 'Eikisi, 'a ia na'e fai ia 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi, 'io, 'o faka'auha ai 'a e meimei kotoa 'a e kakai 'o e pule'angá, 'io, 'a e kakai kotoa pē, tuku kehe pē 'a e kakai 'e toko tolungofulu, pea mo kinautolu na'a nau hola fakataha mo e fale 'o 'Omeá.

13 Ko ia, na'e toe fakafoki 'a 'Omea ki he fonua 'o hono tofi'á.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e faka'au 'o motu'a 'a 'Omea; ka neongo iá, na'á ne fanau 'i 'a 'Imeila 'i he'ene toulekeleká, pea na'á ne pani 'a 'Imeila ko e tu'i ke pule ko hono fetongi.

15 Pea hili 'ene pani 'a 'Imeila ke ne tu'í na'á ne mamata ki he melino 'i he fonuá 'i he ta'u 'e ua, pea ne pekia, kuó ne mamata ki he ngaahi 'aho lahi, 'a ia na'e fonu 'i he loto-mamahi. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pule 'a 'Imeila ko hono fetongi, pea na'á ne molomolo-muiva'e 'i he'ene tamaí.

16 Pea na'e toe kamata ke to'o 'e he 'Eiki 'a e mala'ia mei he fonuá, pea na'e tu'umālie 'aupito 'a e fale 'o 'Imeila 'i he lolotonga 'a e pule 'a 'Imeila; pea 'i he vaha'ataimi 'o e ta'u 'e onongofulu mā ua na'a nau faka'au 'o fu'u mālohi 'aupito 'o a'u ki he'enau hoko 'o fu'u koloa'ia 'aupito—

17 'O nau ma'u 'a e fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e fua'i 'akau, mo e kēleni, mo e ngaahi silika, mo e līneni tu'ovalevale, mo e koula, mo e siliva, pea mo e ngaahi me'a mahu'inga;

18 Kae 'uma'ā foki mo e fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e fanga pulu, 'a e fanga pulu fefine, mo e fanga sipi, mo e fanga puaka, mo e fanga kosi, pea mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga kehekehe foki 'o e fanga monumanu 'a ia 'oku 'aonga ki he kai 'a e tangatá.

And it came to pass that Akish begat other sons, and they won the hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.

Now the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish was desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.

And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.

Wherefore, Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.

And it came to pass that Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat Emer; and he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.

And after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died, having seen exceedingly many days, which were full of sorrow. And it came to pass that Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his father.

And the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land, and the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer; and in the space of sixty and two years they had become exceedingly strong, inso-much that they became exceedingly rich—

Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;

And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.

19 Pea nau ma'u foki mo e fanga hoosi, mo e fanga 'asi, pea na'e 'i ai mo e fanga 'elifanite mo e fanga kulelomi mo e fanga kumomi; 'a ia na'e 'aonga kotoa pe ki he tangata, kae tautautefito ki he fanga 'elifanite mo e fanga kulelomi mo e fanga kumomi.

20 Pea ko ia na'e hua 'i hifo 'e he 'Eiki 'a 'ene ngaahi tapuaki ki he fonua ni, 'a ia na'e mahu 'inga lahi hake 'i he ngaahi fonua kehe kotoa pe; pea ne fekau ke 'ilonga 'a kinautolu 'e ma'u 'a e fonua, 'oku totonu ke nau ma'u ia ma'a 'e Eiki, pe 'e faka'auha 'a kinautolu 'o ka kakato 'enau angahala; he te u hua 'i hifo ki he kakai pehee 'a hono kotoa 'o 'eku 'ita, 'oku folofola 'e he 'Eiki.

21 Pea na'e fai 'e 'Imeila 'a e fakama'u 'i he ma'oni'oni 'i hono ngaahi 'ahó kotoa, pea ne fanau 'i ha ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine tokolahi; pea ne fanau 'i 'a Kolianitumu, 'o ne pani 'a Kolianitumu ke pule ko hono fetongi.

22 Pea hili 'ene pani 'a Kolianitumu ke pule ko hono fetongi, na'a ne mo'ui 'i he ta'u 'e fa, 'o ne mamata ki he melino 'i he fonua; 'io, pea na'a ne mamata foki ki he 'Alo 'o e Ma'oni'oni, 'o ne fiefia mo vikiviki 'i hono 'ahó; pea na'a ne pekia 'i he melino.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'e molomolo-muiva'e 'a Kolianitumu 'i he'ene tamaí, 'o ne langa 'a e ngaahi fu'u kolo malo, pea ne akonaki 'aki 'a e me'a 'oku lelei ki hono kakai 'i hono ngaahi 'ahó kotoa. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'e 'ikai te ne ma'u ha fanau kae 'oua kuó ne fu'u toulekeleka 'aupito.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'e pekia 'a hono uaifí, kuó ne ta'u 'e teau ma'ua. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'e mali 'a Kolianitumu, kuó ne motu'a, mo ha finemui, 'o ne fanau 'i 'a e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine; ko ia na'a ne mo'ui 'o a'u ki hono ta'u teau fangofulu ma'ua.

25 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehe na'a ne fanau 'i 'a Komu, pea na'e pule 'a Komu ko hono fetongi; pea na'a ne pule 'i he ta'u 'e fangofulu ma'hiva, pea ne fanau 'i 'a Heti; pea ne fanau 'i foki mo e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine kehe.

26 Pea kuo toe mafola atu 'a e kakai ki he funga 'o e fonua hono kotoa, pea na'e toe kamata ke 'i ai 'a e fu'u fai angahala lahi 'aupito 'i he funga 'o e fonua, pea na'e kamata ke tali 'e Heti 'a e ngaahi fakakaukau fufu 'o e kuonga mu'a, ke faka'auha 'a 'ene tamaí.

And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms.

And thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands; and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity; for upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my wrath.

And Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days, and he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum, and he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.

And after he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead he lived four years, and he saw peace in the land; yea, and he even saw the Son of Righteousness, and did rejoice and glory in his day; and he died in peace.

And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days. And it came to pass that he had no children even until he was exceedingly old.

And it came to pass that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old.

And it came to pass that he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead; and he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Heth; and he also begat other sons and daughters.

And the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness upon the face of the land, and Heth began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to destroy his father.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fakahifo 'a 'ene tamaí mei he nofo'anga fakatu'í, he na'á ne tāmāte'i ia 'aki 'a 'ene heletā 'a 'aná; peá ne pule 'o fetongi ia.

28 Pea na'e toe ha'u 'a e kau palōfita 'i he fonuá, 'o kalanga 'aki 'a e fakatomalá kiate kinautolu—kuo pau ke nau teuteu 'a e hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eikí pe 'e hoko ha mala'ia ki he funga 'o e fonuá; 'io, 'e 'i ai ha fu'u hongehahi, 'a ia 'e faka'auha ai 'a kinautolu 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala.

29 Ka na'e 'ikai tui 'a e kakaí ki he ngaahi lea 'a e kau palōfitá, ka na'a nau kapusi 'a kinautolu ki tu'a; pea na'e 'i ai honau ní'ihina 'a nau lí ki he ngaahi luo 'o tuku ai 'a kinautolu ke mate. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau fai 'a e ngaahi me'á ni kotoa pē 'o fakatatau ki he fekau 'a e tu'i, ko Hetí.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata ke 'i ai ha fu'u hongehahi 'i he fonuá, pea na'e kamata ke 'auha vave 'aupito 'a e kakaí ko e tupu 'i he hongehahi, he na'e 'ikai ha 'uha 'i he funga 'o e fonuá.

31 Pea na'e ō mai 'a e fanga ngata kona foki ki he funga 'o e fonuá, 'o nau fakakonahi 'a e kakai tokolahi. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata ke hola 'a 'enau fanga monumanu íkí mei he fanga ngata koná ki he fonua 'i he fakatongá, 'a ia na'e ui 'e he kau Nífaí ko Seilahemala.

32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai hanau tokolahi 'a ia na'e mate 'i he halá; ka neongo iá, na'e 'i ai 'a e ní'ihina 'a ia na'e hola ki he fonua 'i he fakatongá.

33 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pule 'e he 'Eikí ke 'oua 'e toe tuli 'a kinautolu 'e he fanga ngatá, ka ke nau tāpuni'i 'a e halá ke 'oua 'e lava 'o laka atu 'a e kakaí, koe'uhi ko ia ia te ne feinga ke 'alu atu aí 'e tāmāte'i ia 'e he fanga ngata koná.

34 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e muimui 'a e kakaí 'i he hala 'o e fanga manú, pea na'a nau keina 'a e 'anga'anga 'o kinautolu 'a ia na'e mate 'i he halá, kae 'oua kuo nau kai ia kotoa pē. Ko 'eni 'i he vakai 'e he kakaí kuo pau ke nau maté, na'a nau kamata ke fakatomala mei he'enau ngaahi angahalá, 'o nau tangi ki he 'Eikí.

And it came to pass that he did dethrone his father, for he slew him with his own sword; and he did reign in his stead.

And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them—that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come a curse upon the face of the land; yea, even there should be a great famine, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

But the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out; and some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish. And it came to pass that they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Heth.

And it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.

And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.

And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.

And it came to pass that the people did follow the course of the beasts, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all. Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.

35 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'enau fakavaivai 'i 'a
kinautolu 'o fē'unga 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí na'á ne fekau mai
'a e 'uha ki he funga 'o e fonuá; pea na'e kamata ke toe
ake hake 'a e kakai, pea na'e kamata ke 'i ai 'a e fua 'i 'akau
'i he ngaahi fonua 'i he tokelaú, pea 'i he ngaahi fonua
takatakai kotoa pē. Pea na'e fakahā atu 'e he 'Eikí 'a
hono māfima'fi kiate kinautolu 'i he fakamo'ui 'a
kinautolu mei he hongé.

And it came to pass that when they had humbled
themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain
upon the face of the earth; and the people began to re-
vive again, and there began to be fruit in the north
countries, and in all the countries round about. And
the Lord did show forth his power unto them in pre-
serving them from famine.

‘Eta 10

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē, ko Sesi, ‘a ia ko ha hako ‘o Heti—
he kuo mate ‘a Heti ‘i he hongé, pea mo e kotoa hono
falé tuku kehe pē ‘a Sesi—ko ia, na‘e kamata ‘a Sesi ke
toe langa hake ha kakai kuo fakavaivai‘i.
- 2 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e manatu‘i ‘e Sesi ‘a e
faka‘auha ‘o ‘ene ngaahi tamaí, pea na‘á ne langa hake ha
pule‘anga mā‘oni‘oni; he na‘á ne manatu‘i ‘a e me‘a kuo
fai ‘e he ‘Eikí ‘i hono ‘omi ‘a Sēleti mo hono tokouá ‘o
folau mai ‘i he fu‘u moaná; pea na‘á ne ‘a‘eva ‘i he ngaahi
hā‘ele‘anga ‘o e ‘Eikí; pea na‘á ne fanau ‘i ‘a e ngaahi foha
mo e ngaahi ‘ofefine.
- 3 Pea ko hono foha lahi tahá, ‘a ia ko hono hingoá ko
Sesi, na‘e angatu‘u kiate ia; ka neongo íá, na‘e taa‘i ‘a Sesi
‘i he nima ‘o ha tangata kaiha‘a, koe‘uhi ko e lahi fau ‘ene
ngaahi koloá, ‘a ia na‘e toe ‘omi ai ‘a e melinó ki he‘ene
tamaí.
- 4 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e hanga ‘e he‘ene tamaí ‘o
langa hake ‘a e ngaahi kolo lahi ‘i he funga ‘o e fonuá, pea
na‘e kamata ke toe mafola atu ‘a e kakai ki hono kotoa ‘o
e funga fonuá. Pea na‘e mo‘ui ‘a Sesi ‘o a‘u ki he‘ene fu‘u
ta‘u motu‘a ‘aupito; pea na‘á ne fanau ‘i ‘a Lipileikisi. Pea
na‘á ne pekia, pea na‘e pule ‘a Lipileikisi ko hono
fetongi.
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ‘ikai ke fai ‘e Lipileikisi ‘a e
me‘a ‘a ia na‘e totonu ‘i he ‘ao ‘o e ‘Eikí, he na‘á ne ma‘u
‘a e ngaahi uaifi pea mo e ngaahi sinifu tokolahi, pea na‘á
ne hilifaki ki he uma ‘o e kakai ‘a ia na‘e faingata‘a hono
fuesiá; ‘io, na‘á ne tukuhau‘i ‘a kinautolu ‘aki ‘a e ngaahi
tukuhau mamafa; pea na‘á ne langa ‘aki ‘a e ngaahi
tukuhau ‘a e ngaahi fu‘u fale lalahi.
- 6 Pea na‘á ne langa ma‘ana ha nofo‘anga fakatu‘i
faka‘ofo‘ofa ‘aupito; pea na‘á ne langa mo e ngaahi fale
fakapōpula lahi, pea ‘ilonga ‘a kinautolu na‘e ‘ikai te nau
fie totongi ‘a e tukuhau; na‘á ne lī ki he fale fakapōpulá,
pea ko kinautolu ‘a ia na‘e ‘ikai lava ke totongi ‘a e
tukuhau na‘á ne lī ki he fale fakapōpulá, pea na‘á ne
fekau ke nau ngāue ta‘etuku ke tauhi ‘a kinautolu; pea
‘ilonga ‘a kinautolu na‘e fakafisi ke ngāue na‘á ne fekau
ke tāmata‘i.

Ether 10

And it came to pass that Shez, who was a descendant of
Heth—for Heth had perished by the famine, and all his
household save it were Shez—wherefore, Shez began to
build up again a broken people.

And it came to pass that Shez did remember the de-
struction of his fathers, and he did build up a righteous
kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done
in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep; and
he did walk in the ways of the Lord; and he begat sons
and daughters.

And his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel
against him; nevertheless, Shez was smitten by the hand
of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which
brought peace again unto his father.

And it came to pass that his father did build up many
cities upon the face of the land, and the people began
again to spread over all the face of the land. And Shez
did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat
Riplakish. And he died, and Riplakish reigned in his
stead.

And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that
which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have
many wives and concubines, and did lay that upon
men’s shoulders which was grievous to be borne; yea, he
did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did
build many spacious buildings.

And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful
throne; and he did build many prisons, and whoso
would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison;
and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into
prison; and he did cause that they should labor continu-
ally for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did
cause to be put to death.

7 Ko ia, na'á ne fai 'a 'ene ngāue fakatufunga faka'ofo'ofá, 'io, na'a mo 'ene koula lelei na'á ne fekau ke ngaohi 'i he fale fakapōpulá; pea ko e fa'ahinga ngāue fakatufunga lelei kotoa pē na'á ne fekau ke fai 'i he fale fakapōpulá. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne fakamamahi 'i 'a e kakaí 'aki 'a 'ene ngaahi fe'auakí mo e ngaahi fakalieliá.

8 Pea 'i he hili 'ene pule 'i he ta'u 'e fāngofulu mā ua na'e tu'u hake 'a e kakaí 'i he angatu'u kiate ia; pea na'e toe kamata ha tau 'i he fonuá, pea na'e tāmata 'i ai 'a Lipileikisi, pea na'e kapusi 'a hono hakó mei he fonuá.

9 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e ngaahi ta'u lahi, na'e tānaki fakataha 'e Molianitoni ('a ia ko ha hako 'o Lipileikisi) ha kau tau 'o e kakai kuo kapusi, pea nau 'alu atu 'o tau 'i 'a e kakaí; pea na'á ne ma'u 'a e mālohi ki he ngaahi kolo lahi; pea na'e faka'au 'o fu'u lahi 'aupito 'a e taú, pea na'e hokohoko atu ia 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi; pea na'á ne ikuna 'a e fonuá hono kotoa, pea na'á ne fokotu'u ia ko e tu 'i ki he fonuá hono kotoa.

10 Pea hili 'ene fokotu'u ia ko e tu 'i na'á ne fakama'ama'a 'a e kavenga 'a e kakaí, 'a ia na'á ne ma'u ai 'a e loto 'o e kakaí, pea na'a nau pani ia ke ne hoko ko honau tu 'i.

11 Pea na'á ne faitotonu ki he kakaí, kae 'ikai kiate ia, koe'uhi ko 'ene ngaahi fe'auaki lahi; ko ia na'e motuhi ai ia mei he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e langa hake 'e Molianitoni 'a e ngaahi kolo lahi, pea na'e faka'au 'a e kakaí 'o fu'u koloa 'ia 'aupito lolotonga 'ene pulé, fakatou'osi 'i he ngaahi fale pea 'i he koula mo e siliva, pea 'i hono ngoue 'i 'a e kēlení mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu ikí, mo e ngaahi takanga monumanu lalahí, mo e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'a ia kuo fakafoki kiate kinautolú.

13 Pea na'e mo'ui 'a Molianitoni 'o a'u ki he 'ene fu'u motu'a 'aupito, pea na'á ne toki fanau 'i 'a Kimi; pea na'e pule 'a Kimi ko e fetongi 'o 'ene tamaí; pea na'á ne pule 'i he ta'u 'e valu, pea na'e pekia 'a 'ene tamaí. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai ke pule 'a Kimi 'i he mā'oni'oni, ko ia na'e 'ikai ke 'ofeina ia 'e he 'Eikí.

Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison; and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. And it came to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

And when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to be war again in the land, inso-much that Riplakish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of the land.

And it came to pass after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a descendant of Riplakish) gathered together an army of outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people; and he gained power over many cities; and the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years; and he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

And after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

And he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms; wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

And Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim; and Kim did reign in the stead of his father; and he did reign eight years, and his father died. And it came to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

14 Pea na'e tu'u hake 'a hono tokouá 'i he angatu'u kiate ia, 'o ne hanga 'o puke fakapōpula ai ia; pea na'á ne nofo pōpula 'i he kotoa hono ngaahi 'ahó; pea na'á ne fanau 'i 'a e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine 'i he pōpula, pea 'i hono ta'u motu'á na'á ne fanau 'i 'a Līvai, peá ne pekia.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ngāue 'a Līvai 'i he pōpula hili 'a e pekia 'a 'ene tamaí, 'i he ta'u 'e fāngofulu mā ua. Pea na'á ne tau 'i 'a e tu 'i 'o e fonuá, 'a ia na'á ne ma'u ai ma'ana 'a e pule'angá.

16 Pea hili 'ene ma'u ma'ana 'a e pule'angá, na'á ne fai 'a e me'a na'e totonu 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí; pea na'e tu'umālie 'a e kakai 'i he fonuá; pea na'á ne mo'ui 'o a'u ki he 'ene ta'u motu'a 'aupito, pea na'á ne fanau 'i 'a e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine; pea na'á ne fanau 'i foki mo Kolome, 'a ia na'á ne pani ko e tu 'i 'o fetongi ia.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fai 'e Kolome 'a ia na'e lelei 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí 'i he kotoa hono ngaahi 'ahó; pea na'á ne fanau 'i 'a e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine tokolahi; pea hili 'ene mamata ki he ngaahi 'aho lahi na'á ne pekia 'o hangē ko hono toe 'o e māmaní; pea na'e pule 'a Kisi 'o fetongi ia.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pekia foki mo Kisi, pea na'e pule 'a Lipi 'o fetongi ia.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fai foki 'e Lipi mo e me'a na'e lelei 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eikí. Pea 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o Lipi na'e faka'auha 'a e fanga ngata koná. Ko ia na'a nau 'alu atu ki he fonua 'i he fakatongá, ke kumi ha me'akai ma'á e kakai 'o e fonuá, he na'e 'ufi'ufi 'a e fonuá 'e he fanga manu 'o e vaotaá. Pea na'e hoko foki 'a Lipi ko e tangata tuli manu ongoonga.

20 Pea na'a nau langa ha fu'u kolo 'o ofi ki he kavelemotú, 'o ofi ki he potu 'oku vahe 'i ai 'e he tahí 'a e fonuá.

21 Pea na'a nau fakatolonga 'a e fonua 'i he fakatongá ke hoko ko e vao, ke ma'u ai 'a e fanga manu kaivaó. Pea na'e 'ufi'ufi 'a e funga kotoa 'o e fonua 'i he fakatokelaú 'e he kakai.

22 Pea na'a nau fá'a ngāue 'aupito, pea nau fakatau mai mo fakatau atu mo fefakatau'aki 'iate kinautolu koe'uhi ke nau ma'u ai ha koloa.

And his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity; and he did remain in captivity all his days; and he begat sons and daughters in captivity, and in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

And it came to pass that Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his father, for the space of forty and two years. And he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.

And after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord; and the people did prosper in the land; and he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.

And it came to pass that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days; and he begat many sons and daughters; and after he had seen many days he did pass away, even like unto the rest of the earth; and Kish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Kish passed away also, and Lib reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.

And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.

And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants.

And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.

23 Pea na'a nau ngāue 'i he fa'ahinga kotoa pē 'o e ukamea, 'o nau ngaohi 'a e koula, mo e siliva, mo e ukamea, mo e palasa, pea mo e fa'ahinga 'o e ngaahi ukamea kotoa pē; pea na'a nau keli ia mei he kekelelé; ko ia, na'a nau fokotu' ai 'a e ngaahi fu'u fokotu'unga kekelele lalahi ke ma'u 'a e maka 'oku fiofio, mo e koula, mo e siliva, mo e ukamea, pea mo e kopa. Pea na'a nau fai 'a e fa'ahinga ngāue fakatufunga lelei kotoa pē.

24 Pea na'a nau ma'u 'a e ngaahi silika, mo e līneni tu'ovalevale; pea na'a nau ngāue 'i he fa'ahinga tupenu kotoa pē, ke nau lava 'o fakakofu' i 'a honau telefuá.

25 Pea na'a nau ngaohi 'a e fa'ahinga me'angāue kotoa pē ke ngoue' i 'a e kekelelé, ke keli mo tūtuu' i 'aki, mo utu mo huo, pea mo haha'aki.

26 Pea na'a nau ngaohi 'a e fa'ahinga me'angāue kotoa pē, 'a ia na'a nau ngāue' i ai 'enua fanga monumanú.

27 Pea na'a nau ngaohi 'a e fa'ahinga mahafu 'o e tau kotoa pē. Pea na'a nau ngāue 'i he ngaahi fa'ahinga ngāue fakatufunga na'e fu'u faikehe 'aupito.

28 Pea koloto ke 'i ai ha kakai 'e tāpuekina 'o lahi ange 'iate kinautolu, pea fakatu'umālie 'o lahi hake 'i he to'ukupu 'o e 'Eikí. Pea na'a nau 'i ha fonua 'a ia 'oku mahu'inga lahi hake 'i he ngaahi fonua kotoa pē, he kuo folofola 'aki ia 'e he 'Eikí.

29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e mo'ui 'a Lipi 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi, 'o ne fanau' i 'a e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine; pea na'á ne fanau' i foki mo Heiatomi.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pule 'a Heiatomi ko e fetongi 'o 'ene tamaí. Pea hili 'a e pule 'a Heiatomi 'i he ta'u 'e uofulu mā fā, vakai na'e to' o meiate ia 'a e pule'angá. Pea na'á ne ngāue 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi 'i he pōpula, 'io, 'i hono toe 'o hono ngaahi 'ahó.

31 Pea na'á ne fanau' i 'a Heti, pea na'e nofo 'a Heti 'i he pōpula 'i hono ngaahi 'ahó. Pea na'e fanau' i 'e Heti 'a 'Ēlone, pea na'e nofo 'a 'Ēlone 'i he pōpula 'i he kotoa hono ngaahi 'ahó; pea na'á ne fanau' i 'a 'Aminikata, pea na'e nofo foki mo 'Aminikata 'i he pōpula 'i he kotoa hono ngaahi 'ahó; pea na'á ne fanau' i 'a Kolianitumu, pea na'e nofo 'a Kolianitumu 'i he pōpula 'i he kotoa hono ngaahi 'ahó; pea na'á ne fanau' i 'a Komu.

And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore, they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.

And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.

And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.

And they did make all manner of weapons of war. And they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.

And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.

And it came to pass that Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Hearthom.

And it came to pass that Hearthom reigned in the stead of his father. And when Hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him. And he served many years in captivity, yea, even all the remainder of his days.

And he begat Heth, and Heth lived in captivity all his days. And Heth begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Com.

- 32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tohoaki'i atu 'e Komu hono vaeua 'o e pule'angá. Pea na'á ne pule ki hono vaeua 'o e pule'angá 'i he ta'u 'e fāngofulu mā ua; peá ne 'alu atu ke tau'i 'a e tu'i ko 'Emikití, pea na'á na tau 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi, pea 'i he taimi ko iá na'e ikuna ai 'e Komu 'a 'Emikiti, 'o ne ma'u 'a e mālohi ki hono toe 'o e pule'angá.
- 33 Pea 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o Komú na'e kamata ke 'i ai 'a e kau kaiha'a 'i he fonuá; pea na'a nau ngāue 'aki 'a e ngaahi fakakaukau motu'á, 'o fai 'a e ngaahi fuakava 'o hangē ko e sīpinga 'o e kakai 'i mu'á, 'o toe feinga ke faka'auha 'a e pule'angá.
- 34 Pea na'e lahi hono tau'i 'a kinautolu 'e Komú; ka na'e 'ikai ke ne ikuna 'i 'a kinautolu.

And it came to pass that Com drew away the half of the kingdom. And he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years; and he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.

And in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land; and they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom.

Now Com did fight against them much; nevertheless, he did not prevail against them.

‘Eta 11

- 1 Pea na‘e ha‘u foki ‘i he ngaahi ‘aho ‘o Komú‘a e kau palōfita tokolahi, ‘o nau kikite‘i ‘a e faka‘auha ‘o e fu‘u kakai lahi ko iá ‘o ka ‘ikai te nau fakatomala, pea tafoki ki he ‘Eikí, ‘o lí‘aki ‘a ‘enau ngaahi fakapoó mo e fai angahalá.
- 2 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ‘ikai talí ‘a e kau palōfita ‘e he kakaí, pea na‘a nau hola kia Komu ke ma‘u ha malu‘i, he na‘e feinga ‘a e kakaí ke tāmata‘i ‘a kinautolu.
- 3 Pea na‘a nau kikite‘i kia Komu ha ngaahi me‘a lahi; pea na‘e tāpuaki‘i ia ‘i he kotoa hono toe ‘o hono ngaahi ‘ahó.
- 4 Pea na‘á ne mo‘ui ‘o a‘u ki he‘ene fu‘u ta‘u motu‘a ‘aupito, pea na‘á ne fanau‘i ‘a Sipilomi; pea na‘e pule‘a Sipilomi ko hono fetongi. Pea na‘e angatu‘u ‘a e tokoua ‘o Sipilomí kiate ia, pea na‘e kamata ke ‘i ai ha fu‘u tau lahi ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e fonuá
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e fekau ‘e he tokoua ‘o Sipilomí ko e kau palōfita kotoa pē ‘a ia na‘a nau kikite ‘o kau ki hono faka‘auha ‘o e kakaí ‘oku totonu ke tāmata‘i;
- 6 Pea na‘e ‘i ai ‘a e fu‘u tu‘utāmaki lahi ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e fonuá, he na‘a nau fakamo‘oni ‘e hoko ‘a e fu‘u mala‘ia lahi ki he fonuá, pea ki he kakaí foki, pea ‘e ‘i ai ha fu‘u faka‘auha lahi ‘iate kinautolu, ‘o hangē ko ia kuo te‘eki ai ke hoko hano tatau ‘i he funga ‘o e māmaní, pea ‘e tatau honau ngaahi huí mo e ngaahi fokotu‘unga kekekele ‘i he funga ‘o e fonuá, ‘o ka ‘ikai te nau fakatomala mei he‘enau fai angahalá.
- 7 Pea na‘e ‘ikai te nau tokanga ki he le‘o ‘o e ‘Eikí, koé‘uhi ko ‘enau ngaahi kautaha koví; ko ia, na‘e kamata ke ‘i ai ‘a e ngaahi tau mo e ngaahi feke‘ike‘i ‘i he fonuá kotoa, kae ‘uma‘ā foki mo e ngaahi hongē lahi, mo e ngaahi mahaki faka‘auha, ‘o a‘u ki he ‘i ai ‘a e fu‘u faka‘auha lahi, ‘o hangē ko ia kuo te‘eki ai ke hā ‘i he funga ‘o e māmaní; pea na‘e hoko ‘eni hono kotoa ‘i he ngaahi ‘aho ‘o Sipilomí.
- 8 Pea na‘e kamata ke fakatomala ‘a e kakaí mei he‘enau ngaahi angahalá; pea ‘i he‘enau fai peheé na‘e ‘alo‘ofa ‘a e ‘Eikí kiate kinautolu.
- 9 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e tāmata‘i ‘a Sipilomi, pea na‘e puke ‘a Seti ‘i he pōpula, ‘o ne nofo pōpula ‘i he kotoa hono ngaahi ‘ahó.

Ether 11

And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

And it came to pass that the prophets were rejected by the people, and they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to destroy them.

And they prophesied unto Com many things; and he was blessed in all the remainder of his days.

And he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom; and Shiblom reigned in his stead. And the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;

And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famines and pestilences, insomuch that there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.

And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.

And it came to pass that Shiblom was slain, and Seth was brought into captivity, and did dwell in captivity all his days.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē, ko 'Eiha, ko hono fohá, na'á ne ma'u 'a e pule'angá; pea na'á ne pule ki he kakaí 'i he kotoa hono ngaahi 'ahó. Pea na'á ne fai 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga angahala kotoa pē 'i hono ngaahi 'ahó, 'a ia na'á ne fakatupu ai 'a e fu'u lilingi toto lahi; pea na'e fuonounou 'a hono ngaahi 'ahó.

11 Pea ko 'Eitemi, ko'e uhi ko ha hako 'o 'Eiha, na'á ne ma'u 'a e pule'angá; pea na'á ne fai foki 'a e me'a 'oku kovi 'i hono ngaahi 'ahó.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o 'Eitemi, na'e ha'u ha kau palōfita tokolahi, 'o nau toe kikite 'i he kakaí; 'io, na'á nau kikite 'i e hanga 'e he 'Eiki 'o faka'auha 'aupito 'a kinautolu mei he funga 'o e māmaní 'o ka 'ikai te nau fakatomala mei he'enau ngaahi angahalá.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fakafefeka 'e he kakaí 'a honau lotó, pea na'e 'ikai te nau tokanga ki he'enau ngaahi leá; pea na'e mamahi 'a e kau palōfitá pea nau 'alu mei he kakaí.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fai 'e 'Eitemi 'a e fakamaau ta'etotonu 'i he kotoa hono ngaahi 'ahó; pea ne fanau 'i 'a Moloni. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e pule 'a Moloni 'o fetongi ia; pea na'e fai 'e Moloni 'a e me'a 'oku kovi 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Eiki.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tupu hake ha angatu'u 'i he kakaí, ko'e uhi ko e kautaha fufū ko ia kuo fokotu'u ke ma'u 'a e mālohi mo e koloá; pea na'e tupu hake ha tangata mālohi 'i he fai hiá 'iate kinautolu, 'o ne tau 'i 'a Moloni, pea na'á ne ikuna ai 'a hono vaeua 'o e pule'angá; pea na'á ne tauhi 'a hono vaeua 'o e pule'angá 'i he ngaahi ta'u lahi.

16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ikuna 'i ia 'e Moloni, 'o ne toe ma'u 'a e pule'angá.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tupu hake ha tangata mālohi 'e taha; pea ko e hako ia 'o e tokoua 'o Sēletí.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne ikuna 'i 'a Moloni, 'o ne ma'u 'a e pule'angá; ko ia, na'e nofo 'a Moloni 'i he pōpula 'i he kotoa 'o hono toe 'o hono ngaahi 'ahó; pea na'á ne fanau 'i 'a Kolianitoa.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e nofo 'a Kolianitoa 'i he pōpula 'i he kotoa 'o hono ngaahi 'ahó.

And it came to pass that Ahah, his son, did obtain the kingdom; and he did reign over the people all his days. And he did do all manner of iniquity in his days, by which he did cause the shedding of much blood; and few were his days.

And Ethem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain the kingdom; and he also did do that which was wicked in his days.

And it came to pass that in the days of Ethem there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

And it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the people.

And it came to pass that Ethem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days; and he begat Moron. And it came to pass that Moron did reign in his stead; and Moron did that which was wicked before the Lord.

And it came to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that secret combination which was built up to get power and gain; and there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.

And it came to pass that Moron did overthrow him, and did obtain the kingdom again.

And it came to pass that there arose another mighty man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.

And it came to pass that he did overthrow Moron and obtain the kingdom; wherefore, Moron dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat Coriantor.

And it came to pass that Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his days.

20 Pea 'i he ngaahi 'aho 'o Kolianitoá na'e ha'u foki ai 'a e kau palōfita tokolahi, 'o nau kikite'i 'a e ngaahi fu'u me'a ma'ongo'onga mo fakaofa, pea nau kalanga 'aki 'a e fakatomalá ki he kakaí, pea 'o ka 'ikai te nau fakatomala 'e fai 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a e tautea kiate kinautolu 'o a'u ki honau faka'auha ke 'osi'osingamālie.

21 Pea 'e hanga 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'o fekau pe 'omi ha kakai kehe ke nau ma'u 'a e fonuá, 'i hono māfima'fí 'o hangē ko e founa na'á ne 'omi ai 'a 'enau ngaahi tamaí.

22 Pea na'a nau lí'aki 'a e ngaahi lea kotoa pē 'a e kau palōfitá, koe'uhi ko 'enau kautaha fufuú mo e ngaahi me'a fakalieliá.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fanau 'i 'e Kolianitoa 'a 'Eta, pea na'á ne pekia, hili 'ene nofo pōpula 'i he kotoa hono ngaahi 'ahó.

And in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things, and cried repentance unto the people, and except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction;

And that the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their fathers.

And they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.

And it came to pass that Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days.

‘Eta 12

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e hoko ‘a e ngaahi ‘aho ‘o ‘Etá ‘i he ngaahi ‘aho ‘o Kolianitomulí; pea na‘e tu‘i ‘a Kolianitomuli ki hono kotoa ‘o e fonuá.
- 2 Pea ko ‘Etá ko ha palōfita ia ‘a e ‘Eikí; ko ia na‘e ha‘u ‘a ‘Eta ‘i he ngaahi ‘aho ‘o Kolianitomulí, ‘o ne kamata ke kikite ki he kakaí, he na‘e ‘ikai fa‘a ta‘ofi ia koe‘uhi ko e Laumālie ‘o e ‘Eikí ‘a ia na‘e ‘iate íá.
- 3 He na‘á ne kalanga mei he pongipongí, ‘o a‘u ki he tō hifo ‘a e la‘aá, ‘o na‘ina‘i ki he kakaí ke nau tui ki he ‘Otuá pea fakatomala telia na‘a faka‘auha ‘a kinautolu, ‘o ne pehē kiate kinautolu ‘oku fakahoko ‘a e me‘a kotoa pē ‘i he tuí—
- 4 Ko ia, ‘ilonga ia ‘oku tui ki he ‘Otuá kuo pau ke ne fa‘a ‘amanaki fakapapau ki ha maama ‘oku lelei ange, ‘io, ki ha nofo‘anga ‘i he to‘ukupu to‘omata‘u ‘o e ‘Otuá, pea ko e ‘amanaki lelei ia ‘oku tupu mei he tuí, ‘o hoko ko ha taula ki he laumālie ‘o e tangatá, ‘a ia ‘e ngaohi ai ‘a kinautolu ke nau fai mālohi pea tu‘u ma‘u, pea fonu ma‘u ai pē ‘i he ngaahi ngāue lelei, ‘o langaki ‘enau fakalāngilangi‘i ‘a e ‘Otuá.
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e kikite ‘aki ‘e ‘Eta ‘a e ngaahi me‘a ma‘ongo‘onga mo fakaofa ki he kakaí, ‘a ia na‘e ‘ikai te nau tui ki ai, koe‘uhi na‘e ‘ikai te nau mamata ki ai.
- 6 Pea ko ‘eni, ko au, Molonai, ‘oku ou fie lea sí‘i ki he ngaahi me‘á ní; ‘oku ou fie fakahā ki he māmaní ko e tuí ko e ngaahi me‘a ia ‘oku ‘amanaki ki ai kae ‘ikai mamata ki ai; ko ia, ‘oua te mou fakakikihi‘i ha me‘a koe‘uhi ko e ‘ikai te mou mamata ki ai, he ‘oku ‘ikai te mou ma‘u ha fakamo‘oni kae ‘oua kuo hili hono ‘ahí‘ahí‘i ‘o ho‘omou tuí.
- 7 He ko e me‘a ‘i he tuí na‘e fakahā ai ‘e Kalaisi ia ki he ‘etau ngaahi tamaí, ‘i he hili ‘a ‘ene toe tu‘u mei he maté; pea na‘e ‘ikai te ne fakahā ia kiate kinautolu kae ‘oua kuo nau ma‘u ‘a e tui kiate íá; ko ia, kuo pau ke ‘i ai ‘a e ní‘ihi na‘e tui kiate ia, he na‘e ‘ikai te ne fakahā ia ki he māmaní.

Ether 12

And it came to pass that the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr; and Coriantumr was king over all the land.

And Ether was a prophet of the Lord; wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people, for he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him.

For he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed, saying unto them that by faith all things are fulfilled—

Wherefore, whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God.

And it came to pass that Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not.

And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because ye see not, for ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith.

For it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers, after he had risen from the dead; and he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him; wherefore, it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world.

8 Ka ko e me'a 'i he tui 'a e tangatá ko ia kuó ne fakahā ai ia ki he māmaní, 'o fakaongoongolelei 'i 'a e huafa 'o e Tamaí, mo teuteu 'a e hala 'a ia 'e lava ai ha ní'ihí kehe 'o ma'u 'a e me'a-foaki fakalangí, koe'uhí ke nau 'amanaki ki he ngaahi me'a 'oku te'eki ai te nau mamata ki aí.

9 Ko ia, te mou lava foki 'o ma'u 'a e 'amanakí, pea ma'u 'a e me'a-foakí, 'o kapau te mou ma'u pē 'a e tuí.

10 Vakai, ko e me'a 'i he tuí na'e ui ai 'a kinautolu 'i he kuonga mu'á 'i he lakanga toputapu 'o e 'Otuá.

11 Ko ia, na'e tupu 'i he tui hono foaki mai 'a e fono 'a Mōsesé. Ka 'i he foaki mai 'o hono 'Aló kuo hanga ai 'e he 'Otuá 'o teuteu 'a e founga lelei ange; pea ko e me'a 'i he tuí kuo fakahoko ai ia.

12 He kapau 'oku 'ikai ha tui 'i he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'oku 'ikai lava 'e he 'Otuá 'o fai ha mana 'iate kinautolu; ko ia, na'e 'ikai te ne fakahā ia ka 'i he hili pē 'enau tuí.

13 Vakai, ko e tui 'a 'Alamā mo 'Amulekí na'e ngaohi ai 'a e fale fakapōpulá ke holo hifo ki he kelekele.

14 Vakai, ko e tui 'a Nīfai mo Līhai na'e fakahoko ai 'a e liliu 'i he kau Leimaná, pea na'e papitaiso 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e afi mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni.

15 Vakai, ko e tui 'a 'Āmoni mo hono kāingá na'e fakahoko ai ha fu'u mana lahi pehē 'i he kau Leimaná.

16 'Io, pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē kuo nau fai ha ngaahi maná, na'a nau fai ia 'i he tuí, na'a mo kinautolu na'e 'i mu'á 'ia Kalaisí pea mo kinautolu foki ne mo'ui ki muí.

17 Pea ko e me'a 'i he tuí na'e ma'u ai 'e he kau ākongá 'e toko tolú 'a e tala'ofa 'e 'ikai te nau 'ilo 'a e maté; pea na'e 'ikai te nau ma'u 'a e tala'ofá kae 'i he hili pē 'enau tuí.

18 Pea kuo te'eki ai foki ke 'i ai ha taimi kuo fai ai 'e he taha ha mana ka 'i he hili pē 'enau tuí; ko ia, na'a nau tomu'a tui ki he 'Alo 'o e 'Otuá.

19 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'a ia na'e fu'u mālohi lahi 'enau tuí, ki mu'a 'oku te'eki hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí, na'e 'ikai fa'a ta'ofi 'a kinautolu 'i he loto veilí, ka na'a nau mamata mo'oni 'aki honau matá ki he ngaahi me'a 'a ia kuo nau sio ki ai 'aki 'a e mata 'o e tuí, pea na'a nau fiefia.

But because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world, and glorified the name of the Father, and prepared a way that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen.

Wherefore, ye may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if ye will but have faith.

Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.

Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.

For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith.

Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.

Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.

Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.

And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.

And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.

And there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.

- 20 Pea vakai, kuo tau vakai 'i he lekōtí ni, ko e taha 'i he fá'ahinga ko iá ko e tokoua 'o Sēletí; he na'e pehē fau hono lahi 'o 'ene tui ki he 'Otuá, ko ia 'i he mafao atu 'e he 'Otuá 'a hono louhi 'i to'ukupú na'e 'ikai te ne fá'a fufuu 'i ia mei he mata 'o e tokoua 'o Sēletí, koe'uhi ko 'ene folofola kuó ne folofola 'aki kiate iá, 'a ia ko e folofola kuó ne ma'u 'i he tuí.
- 21 Pea 'i he hili 'a e mamata 'a e tokoua 'o Sēletí ki he louhi 'i to'ukupú 'o e 'Eikí, koe'uhi ko e tala'ofa na'e ma'u 'e he tokoua 'o Sēletí 'i he tuí, na'e 'ikai fá'a ta'ofi 'e he 'Eikí ha me'a mei hono matá, ko ia na'e fakahā kiate ia 'a e me'a kotoa pē, he na'e 'ikai fá'a ta'ofi ia 'i tu'a 'i he veilí.
- 22 Pea ko e me'a 'i he tuí kuo ma'u ai 'e he'eku ngaahi tamaí 'a e tala'ofa 'e 'omi 'a e ngaahi me'á ni ki honau kāingá 'o fou mai 'i he kau Senitailé; ko ia kuo fekau 'i au 'e he 'Eiki, 'io, ko Sīsū Kalaisí.
- 23 Pea na'á ku pehē kiate ia: 'E 'Eiki, 'e manuki 'a e kau Senitailé ki he ngaahi me'á ni, koe'uhi ko homau vaivai 'i he faitohí: ko ia 'e 'Eiki he kuó ke ngaohi 'a kimautilu ke mau mālohi 'i he lea pea 'i he tui, ka kuo 'ikai te ke ngaohi 'a kimautilu ke mau mālohi 'i he faitohí; he kuó ke ngaohi 'a e kakaí ni kotoa pē ke nau lava 'o lea lahi, koe'uhi ko e Laumālie Mā'oní'oni 'a ia kuó ke foaki kiate kinautolú;
- 24 Pea kuó ke ngaohi 'a kimautilu ke mau lava 'o faitohi 'o si'isi 'i pē, koe'uhi ko e vale 'a homau ngaahi nimá. Vakai, kuo 'ikai te ke fakavi'i 'a kimautilu 'i he faitohí 'o hangē ko e tokoua 'o Sēletí, he na'á ke fakavi'i 'i ia koe'uhi ko e ngaahi me'a na'á tohi 'o hangē ko koé, 'o a'u ki hono fakavaivai 'i 'o e tangatá 'i he'ene lau iá.
- 25 Kuó ke ngaohi foki ke mālohi mo ma'ongo'onga 'a 'emau ngaahi leá, 'o a'u ki he 'ikai ai te mau fá'a lava 'o tohi ia; ko ia, 'o ka mau ka tohi 'oku mau ongo 'i homau vaivai, pea mau puputu 'u ko e me'a 'i he fakahokohoko 'o 'emau ngaahi leá; pea 'oku ou manavasi 'i telia na'a manuki 'a e kau Senitailé ki he'emau ngaahi leá.
- 26 Pea hili 'eku lea 'aki 'ení, na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kiate au, 'o pehē: 'Oku manuki 'a e kau valé, ka te nau tangi; pea 'oku fé'unga 'eku 'alo'ofa ki he angamaluú, pea 'e 'ikai te nau fakaanga 'i homou vaivai;

And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.

And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil.

And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.

And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; for thou hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them;

And thou hast made us that we could write but little, because of the awkwardness of our hands. Behold, thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared, for thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as thou art, unto the overpowering of man to read them.

Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.

And when I had said this, the Lord spake unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn; and my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;

27 Pea kapau 'e ha'u kiate au 'a e tangatá te u fakahā kiate kinautolu 'a honau vaivaí. 'Oku ou foaki ki he tangatá 'a e vaivaí koe'uhi ke nau loto-fakatōkilalo; pea 'oku fē'unga 'a 'eku 'ofá ki he tangata kotoa pē 'oku nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu 'i hoku 'ao, he kapau te nau fakavaivai 'i 'a kinautolu 'i hoku 'ao, pea tui kiate au, te u liliu 'a e ngaahi me'a vaivaí ko e mālohi kiate kinautolu.

28 Vakai, te u fakahā ki he kau Senitailé 'a honau vaivaí, pea te u fakahā kiate kinautolu 'oku hanga 'e he tuí, 'amanaki lelei mo e manava'ofá 'o takiaki 'i mai kiate au—ko e matavai 'o e mā'oni'oni kotoa pē.

29 Pea ko au, Molonai, hili 'eku fanongo ki he ngaahi folofola ní, na'e fakafiemālie 'i au, peá u pehē: 'E 'Eiki, ke fai pē ho finangalo mā'oni'oni, he 'oku ou 'ilo' 'i 'okú ke fai ki he fānau 'a e tangatá 'o fakatatau mo 'enau tuí;

30 He na'e pehē 'e he tokoua 'o Sēletí ki he mo'unga ko Seilini, Ke hiki—pea na'e hiki ia. Pea kapau na'e 'ikai ha'ane tui pehē na'e 'ikai ke hiki ia; ko ia 'okú ke ngāue 'i he hili 'a e mā'u 'e he tangatá 'a e tuí.

31 He na'e pehē 'a ho'o fakahā koe ki ho'o kau ākongá; he na'e hili 'enau mā'u 'a e tuí, mo lea 'i ho huafá, na'á ke toki fakahā koe kiate kinautolu 'i he fu'u māfima'fi lahi.

32 Pea 'oku ou manatu 'i foki na'á ke folofola kuó ke teuteu ha fale mo'ó e tangatá, 'io, 'i he lotolotonga 'o e ngaahi nofo'anga 'o ho'o Tamaí, 'a ia 'e lava ai 'e he tangatá 'o mā'u ai ha 'amanaki 'oku lelei angé; ko ia kuo pau ke 'amanaki lelei 'a e tangatá, pe 'e 'ikai te ne mā'u ha tofi'a 'i he potu kuó ke teuteú.

33 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku ou manatu 'i na'á ke folofola kuó ke 'ofá ki māmani, 'o a'u ki ho'o tuku hifo ho'o mo'uí mā'á e māmani, koe'uhí ke ke lava 'o toe mā'u ia ke teuteu ha potu mo'ó e fānau 'a e tangatá.

34 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou 'ilo' 'i ko e 'ofa 'a ia kuó ke mā'u ki he fānau 'a e tangatá ko e manava'ofá ia; ko ia, kapau 'oku 'ikai mā'u 'e he tangatá 'a e manava'ofá, 'e 'ikai te nau fá'a mā'u 'a e potu 'a ia kuó ke teuteu 'i he ngaahi nofo'anga 'o ho'o Tamaí.

35 Ko ia, 'oku ou 'ilo' 'i he me'á ni 'a ia kuó ke folofola'akí, kapau 'oku 'ikai mā'u 'e he kau Senitailé 'a e manava'ofá, koe'uhi ko homau vaivaí, te ke 'ahí'ahí 'i 'a kinautolu, pea to'o meiate kinautolu 'a honau talēnití, 'io, na'a mo ia kuo nau mā'ú, pea foaki kiate kinautolu 'a ia te nau mā'u 'o lahi angé.

And if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness. I give unto men weakness that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I make weak things become strong unto them.

Behold, I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness, and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto me—the fountain of all righteousness.

And I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted, and said: O Lord, thy righteous will be done, for I know that thou workest unto the children of men according to their faith;

For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove—and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore thou workest after men have faith.

For thus didst thou manifest thyself unto thy disciples; for after they had faith, and did speak in thy name, thou didst show thyself unto them in great power.

And I also remember that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a house for man, yea, even among the mansions of thy Father, in which man might have a more excellent hope; wherefore man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which thou hast prepared.

And again, I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world, even unto the laying down of thy life for the world, that thou mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men.

And now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity; wherefore, except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father.

Wherefore, I know by this thing which thou hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity, because of our weakness, that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent, yea, even that which they have received, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly.

36 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ku lotu ki he 'Eikí ke ne foaki ki he kau Senitailé 'a e 'ofá, koe'uhi ke nau ma'u 'a e manava'ofá.

37 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e folofola mai 'a e 'Eikí kiate au: Kapau 'oku 'ikai te nau ma'u 'a e manava'ofá 'oku tatau ai pē kiate koe, kuó ke tui faivelenga; ko ia, 'e fakama'a ho ngaahi kofú. Pea ko e me'a 'i ho'o 'ilo'i ho vaivaí, ko ia 'e ngaohi koe ke ke mālohi, 'o a'u ki ho'o nofo hifo 'i he potu kuó u teuteu 'i he ngaahi nofo'anga 'o 'eku Tamaí.

38 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Molonai, 'oku ou lea māvae ki he kau Senitailé, 'io, kae 'uma'ā foki mo hoku kāinga 'a ia 'oku ou 'ofa aí, kae 'oua ke tau fe'iloaki 'i he 'ao 'o e fakamaau'anga 'o Kalaisí, 'a ia 'e 'ilo ai 'e he kakai fulipē 'oku 'ikai 'uli'i hoku ngaahi kofú 'i homou totó.

39 Pea te mou toki 'ilo'i kuó u mamata kia Sīsū, pea kuó ne fefolofolai mo au ko e mata ki he mata, pea na'á ne folofola mai kiate au 'i he anga-fakatōkilalo mo'oni, 'o hangē 'oku lea ha tangata ki ha taha kehé, 'i he'eku lea 'a'akú, 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'á ni.

40 Pea ko ha ngaahi me'a si'i pē kuó u tohi koe'uhi ko 'eku vaivai 'i he faitohí.

41 Pea ko 'eni, 'oku ou fie na'ina'i kiate kimoutolu ke mou fekumi ki he Sīsū ko ia 'a ia kuo tohi ki ai 'a e kau palōfitá mo e kau 'apostoló, koe'uhi ke 'iate kimoutolu 'a e 'ofa 'a e 'Otua ko e Tamaí, pea mo e 'Eiki ko Sīsū Kalaisí, mo e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'a ia 'oku fakamo'oni kiate kinaua mo nofo'ia 'iate kimoutolu 'o ta'engatá. Ēmeni.

And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have charity.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faithful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father.

And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ, where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood.

And then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things;

And only a few have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

And now, I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written, that the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of them, may be and abide in you forever. Amen.

‘Eta 13

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni ko au, Molonai, ‘oku ou hoko atu ke faka‘osi ‘eku lekooti ‘o kau ki he faka‘auha ‘o e kakai ‘a ia ‘oku tefito ki ai ‘a ‘eku tohi.
- 2 He vakai, na‘a nau li‘aki ‘a e ngaahi lea kotoa pē ‘a ‘Etá; na‘á ne tala mo‘oni kiate kinautolu ‘a e me‘a kotoa pē, talu mei he kamata‘anga ‘o e tangatá; pea ‘i he hili ‘a e matuku atu ‘a e ngaahi vai mei he funga ‘o e fonua ní na‘e hoko ia ko ha fonua mahu‘inga ange ‘i he ngaahi fonua kehe kotoa pē, ko ha fonua kuo fili ‘e he ‘Eikí; ko ia ‘oku finangalo ‘a e ‘Eiki ke tauhi kiate ia ‘a e tangata kotoa pē ‘oku nofo ‘i hono funga ‘o iá;
- 3 Pea ko e potu ia ‘o e Selūsalema Fo‘ou, ‘a ia ‘e ‘alu hifo mei langi, pea ko e potu toputapu mā‘oni‘oni ‘o e ‘Eikí.
- 4 Vakai, na‘e mamata ‘a ‘Eta ki he ngaahi ‘aho ‘o Kalaisí, pea na‘á ne lea ‘o kau ki ha Selūsalema Fo‘ou ‘i he fonuá ni.
- 5 Pea na‘á ne lea foki ‘o kau ki he fale ‘o ‘Isilelí, pea mo e Selūsalema ‘a ia ‘e ha‘u mei ai ‘a Līhaí—‘o ka hili hono faka‘auhá ‘e toe langa hake ia, ko ha kolo mā‘oni‘oni ki he ‘Eikí; ko ia, ‘e ‘ikai lava ke hoko ia ko ha Selūsalema Fo‘ou, he kuo tu‘u ia ‘i he kuonga mu‘á; ka ‘e toe langa hake ia ‘o hoko ko ha kolo mā‘oni‘oni ‘o e ‘Eikí; pea ‘e langa ia mo‘ó e fale ‘o ‘Isilelí.
- 6 Pea ‘e langa foki ha Selūsalema Fo‘ou ‘i he fonuá ni, mo‘ó e toenga ‘o e hako ‘o Siosefá, ‘a ia ko ha ngaahi me‘a kuo ‘i ai hano sipingá.
- 7 He hangē ko hono ‘omi ‘e Siosefa ‘a ‘ene tamaí ki he fonua ko ‘Isipité, pea neongo na‘á ne pekia ‘i ai; ko ia, na‘e ‘omi ‘e he ‘Eikí ha toenga ‘o e hako ‘o Siosefá mei he fonua ko Selūsalemá, koe‘uhi ke ne ‘alo‘ofa ki he hako ‘o Siosefá ke ‘oua te nau ‘auha, ‘o hangē tofu pē ko ‘ene ‘alo‘ofa ki he tamai ‘a Siosefá ke ‘oua te ne ‘auhá.
- 8 Ko ia, ko e toenga ‘o e fale ‘o Siosefá ‘e toe langa hake ‘i he fonuá ni; pea ‘e hoko ia ko e fonua ‘o honau tofi‘á; pea te nau langa hake ha kolo mā‘oni‘oni ki he ‘Eikí, ‘o tatau mo e Selūsalema ‘i mu‘á; pea ‘e ‘ikai toe veuveuki ‘a kinautolu, kae ‘oua ke hokosia ‘a e ngata‘angá pea mole atu ‘a e māmaní.

Ether 13

And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing.

For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;

And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.

Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land.

And he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come—after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel—

And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.

For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

- 9 Pea 'e 'i ai ha langi fo'ou mo ha māmani fo'ou; pea te na tatau mo e ngaahi me'a 'i mu'á kae kehe kuo mole atu 'a e me'a 'i mu'á, pea kuo hoko 'o fo'ou 'a e me'a kotoa pē.
- 10 Pea 'e toki hoko mai 'a e Selūsalema Fo'ou; pea 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu 'oku nofo aí, he ko kinautolu ia 'oku hinehina honau ngaahi kofú 'i he ta'ata'a 'o e Lamí; pea ko kinautolu ia 'oku lau fakataha mo e toenga 'o e hako 'o Siosefá, 'a ia na'e 'o e fale 'o 'Isilelí.
- 11 Pea 'e toki hoko mai foki mo e Selūsalema motu'á; pea ko hono kakaí, 'oku monū'ia 'a kinautolu, he kuo fufulu 'a kinautolu 'i he ta'ata'a 'o e Lamí; pea ko kinautolu ia 'a ia na'e fakamovetevete 'i pea tānaki mai mei he ngaahi vahe 'e fā 'o e māmaní, pea mei he ngaahi fonua 'i he tokelaú, pea kuo nau kau 'i hono fakahoko 'o e fuakava 'a ia na'e fai 'e he 'Otuá mo 'enau tamai, ko 'Ēpalahamé.
- 12 Pea 'o ka hoko mai 'a e ngaahi me'a ní, 'e fakahoko ai 'a e folofolá 'a ia 'oku pehē, ko kinautolu na'e mu'omu'á, te nau muimui; pea ko kinautolu na'e muimui, te nau mu'omu'a.
- 13 Pea na'á ku mei hiki mo ha toe me'a kehe, ka kuo ta'ofi au; ka na'e ma'ongo'onga mo fakafo 'a e ngaahi kikite 'a 'Etá; ka na'a nau lau ia ko e me'a noa pē, 'o kapusi ia ki tu'a; pea na'á ne toitoi 'i he 'ana 'o ha maka 'i he 'ahó, pea na'á ne 'alu atu 'i he po'ulí 'o mamata ki he ngaahi me'a 'a ia 'e hoko ki he kakaí.
- 14 Pea lolotonga 'ene nofo 'i he 'ana 'o ha maká na'á ne hiki hono toe 'o e lekōtí ni, 'o mamata ki he ngaahi faka'auha 'a ia na'e hoko ki he kakaí, 'i he po'ulí.
- 15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he ta'u pē ko ia 'a ia na'e kapusi ki tu'a ia mei he kakaí na'e kamata ke 'i ai ha fu'u tau lahi 'i he kakaí, he na'e 'i ai 'a e tokolahi 'a ia na'e angatu'u, 'a ia ko ha kau tangata mālohi, 'o nau feinga ke faka'auha 'a Kolianitomulí 'aki 'enau ngaahi fakakaukau fufū 'o e fai angahala, 'a ia kuo lau ki aí.
- 16 Pea ko 'eni ko Kolianitomuli, kuó ne ako 'i ia, 'i he ngaahi faiva 'o e tau' pea mo e olopoto kotoa 'o e māmaní, ko ia na'á ne tau 'i 'a kinautolu na'e feinga ke faka'auha iá.

And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new.

And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.

And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.

And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out; and he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people.

And as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of this record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.

And it came to pass that in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people, for there were many who rose up, who were mighty men, and sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which hath been spoken.

And now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.

17 Ka na'e 'ikai te ne fakatomala, pe ko hono ngaahi foha pe ngaahi 'ofefine hoihoifuá; pe ko e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine hoihoifua 'o Kohoá; pe ko e ngaahi foha mo e ngaahi 'ofefine hoihoifua 'o Kolihoá; pea ko hono fakakātoá, na'e 'ikai ha taha 'o e ngaahi foha, mo e ngaahi 'ofefine hoihoifua kotoa pē 'i he funga 'o e māmaní kotoa na'a nau fakatomala mei he' enau ngaahi angahalá.

18 Ko ia, na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'uluaki ta'u 'a ia na'e nofo ai 'a 'Eta 'i he 'ana 'o ha maká, na'e 'i ai 'a e kakai tokolahi 'a ia na'e tāmāte 'i 'i he heletā 'a e ngaahi kautaha fufū ko iá, 'a ia na'e tau 'i 'a Kolianitomuli ke nau lava 'o ma'u 'a e pule'angá.

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē ko e ngaahi foha 'o Kolianitomulí na'e lahi 'enau taú pea mo e mole honau totó.

20 Pea 'i hono ua 'o e ta'ú na'e hoko mai 'a e folofola 'a e 'Eikí kia 'Eta, 'oku totonu ke ne 'alu pea kikite kia Kolianitomuli, kapau te ne fakatomala, pea mo e kotoa 'o hono falé, 'e tuku kiate ia 'e he 'Eikí 'a hono pule'angá pea fakamo'ui 'a hono kakaí.

21 Kapau 'e 'ikai 'e faka'auha 'a kinautolu, pea mo hono falé kotoa tuku kehe pē ia. Pea te ne mo'ui pē ke mamata ki hono fakamo'oni 'i 'o e ngaahi kikite kuo lea 'aki 'o kau ki he ma'u 'e ha kakai kehe 'a e fonuá ko honau tofi'a; pea te nau tanu 'a Kolianitomuli; pea 'e faka'auha 'a e kakai kotoa pē tuku kehe pē 'a Kolianitomuli.

22 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'ikai fakatomala 'a Kolianitomuli, pe ko hono falé, pe ko e kakaí; pea na'e 'ikai ke tuku 'a e taú; pea na'a nau feinga ke tāmāte 'i 'a 'Eta, ka na'á ne hola meiate kinautolu 'o ne toe toitoi 'i he 'ana 'i maka.

23 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e hopo hake 'a Seileti, pea na'á ne tau 'i foki 'a Kolianitomuli; pea na'á ne ikuna ia, ko ia 'i hono tolu 'o e ta'ú na'á ne puke pōpula ai ia.

24 Pea na'e hanga 'e he ngaahi foha 'o Kolianitomulí, 'i hono fā 'o e ta'ú, 'o ikuna 'a Seileti, 'o nau ma'u 'a e pule'angá 'o fakafoki ki he' enau tamaí.

25 Ko 'eni na'e kamata 'a e tau 'i he funga kotoa 'o e fonuá, ko e tangata taki taha mo 'ene fa'ahi na'e tau ke ma'u 'a e me'a na'á ne holi ki aí.

But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters of Corihor; and in fine, there were none of the fair sons and daughters upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

Wherefore, it came to pass that in the first year that Ether dwelt in the cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they might obtain the kingdom.

And it came to pass that the sons of Coriantumr fought much and bled much.

And in the second year the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare the people—

Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them; and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr repented not, neither his household, neither the people; and the wars ceased not; and they sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the cavity of the rock.

And it came to pass that there arose up Shared, and he also gave battle unto Coriantumr; and he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year he did bring him into captivity.

And the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shared, and did obtain the kingdom again unto their father.

Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man with his band fighting for that which he desired.

26 Pea na'e 'i ai 'a e kau kaiha'a, pea ko hono fakakātoá, na'e 'i ai 'a e fa'ahinga fai angahala kotoa pē 'i he funga kotoa 'o e fonuá.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fu'u 'ita 'aupito 'a Kolianitomuli kia Seileti, pea na'á ne 'alu atu kiate ia mo 'ene kau tau ke tau 'i ia; pea na'a nau fepaki 'i he fu'u 'ita lahi, pea na'a nau fetaulaki 'i he tele'a 'o Kilikalí; pea na'e faka'au 'o fu'u fakamanavahē lahi 'a e tau.

28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tau 'i ia 'e Seileti 'i he 'aho 'e tolu. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e ikuna 'i ia 'e Kolianitomuli, 'o ne tuli ia kae 'oua kuó ne a'u atu ki he ngaahi potu tokalelei 'o Hesiloní.

29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe tau 'i ia 'e Seileti 'i he ngaahi potu tokalelei; pea vakai, na'á ne ikuna 'i 'a Kolianitomuli, 'o ne teke 'i fakaholomui ia ki he tele'a 'o Kilikalí.

30 Pea na'e toe tau 'i 'e Kolianitomuli 'a Seileti 'i he tele'a 'o Kilikalí, 'a ia na'á ne ikuna 'i ai 'a Seileti 'o tāmata'e 'i ia.

31 Pea na'e hoka 'i 'e Seileti 'a Kolianitomuli 'i hono alangá, ko ia na'e 'ikai te ne toe 'alu ai ki he tau 'i he ta'u 'e ua, pea 'i he taimi ko iá ko e kakai kotoa pē 'i he funga 'o e fonuá na'a nau fai 'a e lilingi toto, pea na'e 'ikai ha taha ke ta'ofi 'a kinautolu.

And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days. And it came to pass that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.

And it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; and behold, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.

And Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat Shared and slew him.

And Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.

‘Eta 14

- 1 Pea ko ‘eni na’e kamata ke ‘i ai ha fu‘u mala‘ia lahi ‘i hono kotoa ‘o e fonuá koe‘uhi ko e fai hia ‘a e kakaí, ‘a ia kapau, ‘e tuku ‘e ha tangata ha‘ane me‘angāué pe ko ‘ene heletaá ki he‘ene tuku‘anga me‘á, pe ki he potu ‘okú ne fa‘a tauhi ai iá, vakai, ‘i he pongipongi, he ‘ikai te ne ‘ilo ia, he na’e hulu pehē ‘a e mala‘iá ‘i he fonuá.
- 2 Ko ia, na’e pikitai ‘a e tangata taki taha ki he me‘a ‘a ia na’e ‘a‘aná, ‘aki hono nimá, pea na’e ‘ikai te ne fie kole pe ‘oatu ha me‘a; pea na’e puke ma‘u ‘e he tangata kotoa pē ‘a e kau ‘o ‘ene heletaá ‘aki hono nima to‘omata‘ú, ke malu‘i ‘ene koloá mo ‘ene mo‘ui ‘a‘aná mo hono malí mo e fānaú.
- 3 Pea ko ‘eni, hili ‘a e ta‘u ‘e ua, pea hili ‘a e pekia ‘a Sēletí, vakai, na’e hopo hake ‘a e tokoua ‘o Seiletí ‘o ne tau‘i ‘a Kolianitomuli, pea na’e ikuna‘i ai ia ‘e Kolianitomuli, peá ne tuli ia ki he maomaonganoa ‘o ‘Eikisí.
- 4 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e toe tau‘i ‘e he tokoua ‘o Seiletí ia ‘i he maomaonganoa ‘o ‘Eikisí; pea na’e faka‘au ‘o fu‘u fakamanavahē lahi ‘a e taú, pea na’e tō ‘a e lau afe ‘i he heletaá.
- 5 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e ‘ākolo‘i ‘e Kolianitomuli ‘a e maomaonganoa; pea na’e laka atu ‘a e tokoua ‘o Seiletí mei he maomaonganoá ‘i he po‘uli ‘o ne tāmata‘i ha kongá ‘o e kau tau ‘a Kolianitomulí, lolotonga ‘enau konaá.
- 6 Pea na‘á ne ‘alu atu ki he fonua ko Moloní, ‘o ne fokotu‘u ia ‘i he nofo‘anga fakatu‘i ‘o Kolianitomulí.
- 7 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e nofo ‘a Kolianitomuli mo ‘ene kau taú ‘i he maomaonganoá ‘i he ta‘u ‘e ua, pea na‘á ne ma‘u ai ‘a e fu‘u ivi lahi ki he‘ene kau taú.
- 8 Pea ko ‘eni ko e tokoua ‘o Seiletí, ‘a ia ko hono hingoá ko Kiliate, na‘á ne ma‘u foki ‘a e fu‘u ivi lahi ki he‘ene kau taú, koe‘uhi ko e ngaahi kautaha fufuú.
- 9 Pea na’e hoko ‘o pehē na’e hanga ‘e he‘ene taula‘eiki lahí ‘o fakapoongi ia lolotonga ‘ene nofo ‘i hono nofo‘anga fakatu‘í.

Ether 14

And now there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.

Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.

And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish; and the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew a part of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.

And he came forth to the land of Moron, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.

Now the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.

And it came to pass that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.

10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e 'i ai ha taha 'o e ngaahi kautaha fufuú na'á ne fakapoongi ia 'i ha hala fufū, 'o ne to'o ma'ana 'a e pule'angá; pea ko hono hingoá ko Lipi; pea ko Lipi ko ha tangata sino kaukau lahi ia, 'o lahi hake 'i ha toe tangata kehe 'i hono kotoa 'o e kakai.

11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he 'uluaki ta'u 'o Lipi, na'e 'alu hake 'a Kolianitomuli ki he fonua ko Moloní, 'o ne tau'i 'a Lipi.

12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'á ne tau mo Lipi, pea na'e taa'i 'e Lipi 'a hono umá 'o ne lavea ai; ka neongo iá, na'e 'oho atu 'a e kau tau 'a Kolianitomulí kia Lipi, 'o ne hola ai ki he ngaahi ngata'anga fonua ki he matātahí.

13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuli ia 'e Kolianitomuli; pea na'e tau'i ia 'e Lipi 'i he matātahí.

14 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tā hifo 'e Lipi 'a e kau tau 'a Kolianitomulí, pea na'a nau toe hola ai ki he maomaonganoa 'o 'Eikisi.

15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuli ia 'e Lipi kae 'oua kuó ne a'u atu ki he ngaahi potu tokalelei 'o 'Ākisi. Pea kuo 'ave 'e Kolianitomuli 'a e kakai kotoa pē mo ia 'i he'ene hola meia Lipi ki he potu ko ia 'o e fonua 'a ia na'á ne hola ki aí.

16 Pea 'i he'ene a'u atu ki he ngaahi potu tokalelei 'o 'Ākisi na'a ne tau'i ai 'a Lipi, pea na'á ne taa'i ia kae 'oua kuó ne mate; ka neongo iá, na'e 'oho mai 'a e tokoua 'o Lipi kia Kolianitomuli 'o fetongi ia, pea na'e faka'au 'o fu'u fakamanavahē lahi 'aupito 'a e taú, pea na'e toe hola ai 'a Kolianitomuli mei he kau tau 'a e tokoua 'o Lipi.

17 Ko 'eni ko e hingoa 'o e tokoua 'o Lipi ko Sise. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuli 'e Sise 'a Kolianitomuli, pea na'á ne ikuna 'i 'a e ngaahi kolo lahi, pea na'á ne tāmata'i 'a e kakai fefine pea mo e fānau fakatou'osi, pea na'á ne tutu 'a e ngaahi koló.

18 Pea na'e mafola 'a e manavahē kia Sise 'i he fonuá kotoa; 'io, na'e ongo atu 'a e tangi 'i hono kotoa 'o e fonuá—Ko hai te ne fá'a tu'u hake ki he kau tau 'a Sisé? Vakai, 'okú ne tafi 'i 'a e fonuá 'i hono 'aó!

19 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e kamata ke fakatahataha 'a e kakai ki ha ngaahi kau tau, 'i hono kotoa 'o e funga 'o e fonuá.

20 Pea na'a nau mavahevahe; pea na'e 'i ai hanau ní'ihina'á nau hola ki he kau tau 'a Sisé, ka ko honau ní'ihina'á nau hola ki he kau tau 'a Kolianitomulí.

And it came to pass that one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom; and his name was Lib; and Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.

And it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron, and gave battle unto Lib.

And it came to pass that he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded; nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.

And when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib, and he smote upon him until he died; nevertheless, the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof, and the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.

Now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz. And it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.

And there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land; yea, a cry went forth throughout the land—Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him!

And it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.

And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.

21 Pea na'e pehē fau hono lahi mo hono fuoloa 'o e taú, pea pehē fau mo hono fuoloa 'o e lilingi totó mo e faka'auhá, kuo 'uffi'ufi ai 'a e funga kotoa 'o e fonuá 'e he ngaahi 'anga'anga 'o e kakai maté.

22 Pea na'e pehē fau hono vave mo e fakato'oto'o 'o e taú na'e 'ikai ke toe 'i ai ha taha ke tanu 'a e maté, ka na'a nau laka atu mei he lilingi 'o e toto ki he lilingi 'o e toto, kae tuku pē 'a e ngaahi 'anga'anga fakatou'osi 'o e kakai tangatá, mo e kakai fefiné, pea mo e fānaú ke movetevete 'i he funga 'o e fonuá, ke keina 'e he 'uanga 'o e kakanó.

23 Pea na'e mafola atu 'a hono nanamú 'i he funga 'o e fonuá, 'io 'a hono kotoa 'o e funga 'o e fonuá; ko ia na'e faingata'a'ia 'a e kakai 'i he 'aho mo e pō, koe'uhi ko hono nanamú.

24 Ka neongo iá, na'e 'ikai tuku 'e Sise 'a 'ene tuli 'a Kolianitomulí; he kuó ne fuakava ke ne sāuni kia Kolianitomuli 'a e toto 'o hono tokoua, 'a ia kuo maté, pea mo e folofola 'a e 'Eiki 'a ia kuo hoko mai kia 'Eta 'e 'ikai ke tō 'a Kolianitomuli 'i he heletā.

25 Pea ko ia 'oku tau vakai na'e 'a'ahi 'a e 'Eiki kiate kinautolu 'aki 'a e kakato 'a hono houhaú, pea kuo hanga 'e he'enu fai angahala mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá 'o tofa ha hala ki honau faka'auha ta'engatá.

26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tuli 'e Sise 'a Kolianitomuli ki he feitu'u fakahahaké, 'o a'u ki he ngaahi ngata'anga 'o e matātahí, pea na'á ne tau ai mo Sise 'i he 'aho 'e tolu.

27 Pea na'e pehē fau hono fakamanavahē 'o e faka'auha 'i he kau tau 'a Sisé na'e kamata ke 'a e kakai ke manavahē, 'o nau kamata ke hola mei he kau tau 'a Kolianitomulí; pea na'a nau hola ki he fonua ko Kolihoá, 'o nau tafi'i atu 'a e kakai 'o e fonuá 'i honau 'aó, 'a kinautolu kotoa pē na'e 'ikai ke fie kau mo kinautolú.

28 Pea na'a nau fokotu'u honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'i he tele'a 'o Kolihoá; pea na'e fokotu'u 'e Kolianitomuli 'a hono ngaahi fale fehikitakí 'i he tele'a 'o Suá. Ko 'eni na'e ofi 'a e tele'a 'o Suá ki he mo'unga ko Kaminoá, ko ia, na'e tānaki fakataha 'e Kolianitomuli 'a 'ene kau taú ki he mo'unga ko Kaminoá, 'o ne ifi ha talupite ki he kau tau 'a Sisé ke ui kiate kinautolu ke nau ō mai ke tau.

And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewn upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.

Nevertheless, Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.

And thus we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, and their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.

And so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.

And they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr. Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

29 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau ō mai, ka na'e toe teke'i 'a kinautolu; pea na'a nau toe ō mai ko hono tu'o uá, ka na'e toe teke'i 'a kinautolu ko hono tu'o ua. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau toe ō mai ko hono tu'o tolu, pea na'e faka'au 'a e tau' o fu' u fakamanavahē lahi.

30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e taa'i 'e Sise 'a Kolianitomuli 'o ne hoka'i ia 'o tu'o lahi 'aki 'a e ngaahi fu'u lavea loloto; pea ko Kolianitomuli, koe'uhi ko e mole lahi 'o hono totó, na'á ne pongia, pea na'e fata atu ia 'o hangē kuó ne maté.

31 Ko 'eni na'e lahi fau 'a e tō 'a e kakai tangatá mo e kakai fefiné mo e fānau 'i he ongo fa'ahí fakatou'osi, na'e fekau ai 'e Sise ki hono kakaí ke 'oua te nau tuli 'a e kau tau 'a Kolianitomulí; ko ia, na'a nau foki ai ki honau 'apitanga.

And it came to pass that they came forth, but were driven again; and they came the second time, and they were driven again the second time. And it came to pass that they came again the third time, and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shiz smote upon Coriantumr that he gave him many deep wounds; and Coriantumr, having lost his blood, fainted, and was carried away as though he were dead.

Now the loss of men, women and children on both sides was so great that Shiz commanded his people that they should not pursue the armies of Coriantumr; wherefore, they returned to their camp.

‘Eta 15

- 1 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he toe mo‘ui ‘a Kolianitomuli mei hono ngaahi laveá, na‘e kamata ke ne manatu ki he ngaahi lea kuo lea ‘aki ‘e ‘Eta kiate iá.
- 2 Na‘á ne vakai kuo ‘osi tō ‘i he heletā ‘a e meimei toko ua miliona nai ‘o hono kakaí, pea na‘e kamata ke mamahi ‘i hono lotó; ‘io, kuo mate ‘a e toko ua miliona ‘o e kau tangata mālohi pea mo honau ngaahi malí mo ‘enau fānaú.
- 3 Na‘e kamata ke ne fakatomala mei he kovi kuó ne faí; na‘e kamata ke ne manatu ki he ngaahi lea kuo lea ‘aki ‘i he ngutu ‘o e kau palōfita kotoa pē, pea na‘á ne vakai kuo fakamo‘oní‘i kotoa ia ‘o a‘u mai ki ai, ‘i he me‘a kotoa pē; pea na‘e tangi ‘a hono laumālié ‘o ‘ikai loto ke fakafiemālié‘i.
- 4 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ne fai ha tohi kia Sise, ‘o kole kiate ia ke ne fakamo‘ui ‘a e kakaí, pea te ne tukuange ‘a e pule‘angá koe‘uhi kae mo‘ui ‘a e kakaí.
- 5 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē ‘i he ma‘u ‘e Sise ‘a ‘ene tohí na‘á ne fai ha tohi kia Kolianitomuli, ‘o pehē kapau te ne tukuange ia ke ne tāmātē‘i ‘aki ‘ene heletā ‘a‘aná, te ne fakamo‘ui ‘a e kakaí.
- 6 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘e ‘ikai fakatomala ‘a e kakaí mei he‘enau anghalá; pea ko e kakai ‘o Kolianitomulí na‘e ue‘i hake ke ‘ita ki he kakai ‘o Sisé; pea ko e kakai ‘o Sisé na‘e ue‘i hake ke ‘ita ki he kakai ‘o Kolianitomulí; ko ia, na‘e tau‘i ‘e he kakai ‘o Sisé ‘a e kakai ‘o Kolianitomulí.
- 7 Pea ‘i he vakai ‘e Kolianitomuli kuo ofi ke ikuna‘i iá na‘á ne toe hola mei he kakai ‘o Sisé.
- 8 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘á ne a‘u atu ki he vai ‘o Lipilianikumé, ‘a ia, ko hono ‘uhingá, ko e lahi, pe lahi hake ‘i he me‘a kotoa pē; ko ia, ‘i he‘enau a‘u ki he ngaahi vai ko ‘ení, na‘a nau fokotu‘u honau ngaahi fale fehikitakí; pea na‘e fokotu‘u foki ‘e Sise ‘a hono ngaahi fale fehikitakí ‘o ofi kiate kinautolu; pea ko ia ‘i he pongipongi haké na‘a nau ō mai ke tau.
- 9 Pea na‘e hoko ‘o pehē na‘a nau fai ha fu‘u tau fakamanavahē lahi faka‘ulía, ‘a ia na‘e toe lavea ai ‘a Kolianitomuli, pea na‘á ne pongia koe‘uhi ko e mole ‘a e totó.

Ether 15

And it came to pass when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.

He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart; yea, there had been slain two millions of mighty men, and also their wives and their children.

He began to repent of the evil which he had done; he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets, and he saw them that they were fulfilled thus far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.

And it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that the people repented not of their iniquity; and the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz; and the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumr; wherefore, the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr.

And when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.

And it came to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.

- 10 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fe'ohofi atu 'a e kau tau 'a Kolianitomulí ki he kau tau 'a Sisé, pea na'a nau ikuna 'a kinautolu, 'o nau ngaohi 'a kinautolu ke hola meiate kinautolu; pea nau hola ki he feitu'u fakatonga, pea na'a nau fokotu'u honau ngaahi fale fehikitaki 'i ha potu 'a ia na'e ui ko 'Okati.
- 11 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e fokotu'u 'e he kau tau 'a Kolianitomulí 'a honau ngaahi fale fehikitaki 'i he tafa'aki 'o e ki'i mo'unga ko Leimá; pea ko e mo'unga ia 'a ia na'e hanga 'e he'eku tamai ko Molomoná 'o fufuu'i ai 'a e ngaahi lekooti 'a ia 'oku toputapú ki he 'Eiki.
- 12 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau tñaki fakataha 'a e kakai fulipē 'i he funga kotoa 'o e fonuá, 'a ia kuo te'eki ai ke tñmate'í, tuku kehe pē 'a 'Eta.
- 13 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e mamata 'a 'Eta ki he me'a kotoa pē na'e fai 'e he kakai; pea na'a ne vakai ko e kakai na'e loto kia Kolianitomulí na'a nau fakatahataha hake ki he kau tau 'a Kolianitomulí; pea ko e kakai na'e loto kia Sisé na'a nau fakatahataha hake ki he kau tau 'a Sisé.
- 14 Ko ia, na'e fe'unga mo e ta'u 'e fā 'a 'enau tñaki fakataha mai 'a e kakai, koe'uhi ke nau ma'u 'a e kakai kotoa pē na'e 'i he funga 'o e fonuá, pea koe'uhi ke nau ma'u 'a e tokoni kotoa te nau ala ma'ú.
- 15 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'enau fakataha kotoa maí, ko e tangata taki taha ki he kau tau 'a ia na'a ne loto ki ai, mo honau ngaahi uaifí mo 'enau fñanu— fakatou'osi 'a e kakai tangata, mo e kakai fefine pea mo e fñanu kuo fakamahafu 'aki 'a e ngaahi mahafu 'o e tau, 'o nau ma'u 'a e ngaahi pā, pea mo e ngaahi sifa-fatafata, mo e ngaahi tatā tau, pea kuo kofu 'i he founa 'o e taú—na'e laka atu 'a e ongo fa'ahí taki taha ke tau, 'o nau tau 'i he 'aho ko iá 'o 'osi, pea na'e 'ikai ha ikuna.
- 16 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he'ene hokosia 'a e po'ulí na'a nau hela'ia, 'o nau foki ki honau ngaahi 'apitangá; pea hili 'enau foki ki honau ngaahi 'apitangá na'a nau kamata ke ngala mo tangilāulau koe'uhi ko e mole 'o e kau tō tau 'i honau kakai; pea na'e lahi pehē fau 'a 'enau tangí, mo 'enau ngalá mo 'enau ngaahi tangilāulaú, na'e fu'u longoa 'a ia 'a e 'ataá.

And it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.

And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred.

And it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.

And it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; and he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.

Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.

And it came to pass that when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men, women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and head-plates, and being clothed after the manner of war—they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.

And it came to pass that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.

17 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he pongipongi haké, na'a nau toe 'alu atu ke tau, pea na'e lahi mo fakamanavahē 'a e 'aho ko iá; ka neongo iá, na'e 'ikai ha ikuna, pea 'i he toe hokosia 'a e po'ulí na'a nau ngaohi ke longoa'a'ia 'a e 'ataá 'i he'enu ngaahi tangí, mo 'enu ngalá, mo 'enu ngaahi tengihia, koe'uhi ko e mole 'o e kau tō tau 'i honau kakai.

18 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e toe fai 'e Kolianitomuli ha tohi kia Sise, 'o ne kole ke 'oua te ne toe ha'u ke tau, ka ke ne ma'u 'a e pule'angá, pea fakamo'ui 'a e kakai.

19 Kae vakai, kuo tuku 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Eiki' 'a 'ene fāinga mo kinautolú, pea na'e ma'u 'e Sētane 'a e mālohi kakato ki he loto 'o e kakai; he kuo tuku 'a kinautolu ki he fefeka 'o honau lotó, mo e fakapo'uli 'o honau 'atamaí koe'uhi ke faka'auha 'a kinautolu; ko ia na'a nau toe 'alu atu ke tau.

20 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau tau 'i he 'aho kotoa ko iá, pea 'i he hokosia ki he po'ulí, na'a nau mohe pē mo 'olunga ki he'enu ngaahi heletaá.

21 Pea 'i he pongipongi haké na'a nau toe tau 'o a'u ki he hoko 'a e po'ulí.

22 Pea 'i he hokosia 'a e po'ulí na'a nau konā 'i he 'ita, 'o hangē ko ha tangata 'oku konā 'i he uaine; pea na'a nau toe mohe pē mo 'olunga ki he'enu ngaahi heletaá.

23 Pea 'i he pongipongi haké na'a nau toe tau; pea 'i he hoko 'a e po'ulí kuo nau tō kotoa pē 'i he heletā tuku kehe pē 'a e toko nimangofulu mā ua 'o e kakai 'o Kolianitomulí, mo e toko onongofulu mā hiva 'o e kakai 'o Sisé.

24 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau mohe pē mo 'olunga ki he'enu ngaahi heletaá 'i he pō ko iá, pea 'i he pongipongi haké na'a nau toe tau, 'o nau tau 'aki honau tūkuingatá 'aki 'enu ngaahi heletaá mo 'enu ngaahi paá, 'i he 'aho kotoa ko iá.

25 Pea 'i he hokosia 'a e poó, na'e toko tolungofulu mā ua 'a e kakai 'o Sisé, pea toko uofulu mā fitu 'a e kakai 'o Kolianitomulí.

26 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau kai mo mohe, mo teuteu ke mate 'i he pongipongi. Pea ko e kau tangata lalahi mo mālohi 'a kinautolu 'i he mālohi fakaetangatá.

27 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'a nau tau 'i he houa 'e tolu, pea na'a nau pongia 'i he mole 'a e totó.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not, and when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.

But behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle.

And it came to pass that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.

And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again, and they contended in their might with their swords and with their shields, all that day.

And when the night came there were thirty and two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of the people of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that they ate and slept, and prepared for death on the morrow. And they were large and mighty men as to the strength of men.

And it came to pass that they fought for the space of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of blood.

- 28 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e toe ma'u 'e he kau tangata 'a Kolianitomulí ha ivi fe'unga ke nau fa'a 'alú, na'a nau teu ke hola ke fakahaofi 'enau mo'uí; kae vakai, na'e tu'u hake 'a Sise, mo 'ene kau tangatá foki, peá ne fuakava 'i he'ene 'itá te ne tāmatae 'i 'a Kolianitomuli, pe mate 'i he heletā.
- 29 Ko ia, na'á ne tuli 'a kinautolu, pea 'i he pongipongi haké na'á ne ma'u 'a kinautolu; pea nau toe tau 'aki 'a e heletā. Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he'enua tō kotoa 'i he heletā, tuku kehe pē 'a Kolianitomuli mo Sise, vakai, na'e pongia 'a Sise koe'uhi ko e mole 'a e totó.
- 30 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'a e falala 'a Kolianitomuli 'i he'ene heletaá, na'á ne mālōlō sí'i, pea na'á ne tu'usi 'a e 'ulu 'o Sisé.
- 31 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē 'i he hili 'ene tu'usi 'a e 'ulu 'o Sisé, na'e mālanga hake 'a Sise 'i hono nimá peá ne tō; pea hili 'ene feinga ke mānavá, na'á ne mate.
- 32 Pea na'e hoko 'o pehē na'e tō 'a Kolianitomuli ki he kelekelé, 'o ne hoko 'o hangē kuo 'ikai ha mo'ui 'iate iá.
- 33 Pea na'e folofola 'a e 'Eikí kia 'Eta, 'o ne pehē kiate ia, 'Alu atu. Pea na'á ne 'alu atu, 'o ne vakai ko e ngaahi folofola kotoa pē 'a e 'Eikí kuo fakahoko; pea na'á ne faka'osi 'ene lekōtí; (ko e vahe teau 'e taha kuo 'ikai te u tohi) pea na'á ne fufuu 'i ia 'i he founga na'e 'ilo ai ia 'e he kakai 'o Limihaí.
- 34 Ko 'eni ko e ngaahi lea faka'osi 'eni kuo tohi 'e 'Etá: Kapau ko e finangalo 'o e 'Eikí ke u liliu, pe te u kātekina 'a e finangalo 'o e 'Eikí 'i he kakanó, 'oku tatau ai pē, kae kehe pē ke fakamo'ui au 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá. 'Ēmeni.

And it came to pass that when the men of Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that they could walk, they were about to flee for their lives; but behold, Shiz arose, and also his men, and he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword.

Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the morrow he did overtake them; and they fought again with the sword. And it came to pass that when they had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he smote off the head of Shiz.

And it came to pass that after he had smitten off the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised up on his hands and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath, he died.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the earth, and became as if he had no life.

And the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he finished his record; (and the hundredth part I have not written) and he hid them in a manner that the people of Limhi did find them.

Now the last words which are written by Ether are these: Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mattereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom of God. Amen.

Ko e Tohi ‘a Molonai

Molonai 1

- 1 Ko ‘eni ko au, Molonai, hili ‘eku faka‘osi ‘a e hiki fakanounou ‘o e fakamatala ‘o e kakai ‘o Sēletí, na‘á ku mahalo ‘e ‘ikai te u tohi mo ha toe me‘a kehe, ka ‘oku te‘eki ai te u mate; pea ‘oku ‘ikai te u fakahā au ki he kau Leimaná telia na‘a nau faka‘auha au.
- 2 He vakai, ko ‘enau ngaahi fetau‘akí ‘oku fu‘u fakamanavahē ‘aupito ‘iate kinautolu; pea koe‘uhi ko ‘enau tāufehi‘á ‘oku nau tāmata‘i ai ‘a e Nīfai kotoa pē ‘e ‘ikai te ne faka‘ikai‘i ‘a Kalaisí.
- 3 Pea ko au, Molonai, ‘e ‘ikai te u faka‘ikai‘i ‘a e Kalaisí; ko ia, ‘oku ou hē hē holo ki ha potu pē ‘oku ou fa‘a ‘alu ki aí ke malu‘i ‘a ‘eku mo‘ui ‘a‘akú.
- 4 Ko ia, ‘oku ou tohi mo ha ngaahi me‘a si‘i ‘e ni‘ihi, ‘o kehe mei he me‘a ‘a ia na‘e totonu ke u faí; he na‘á ku ‘amanaki ‘e ‘ikai te u tohi mo ha toe me‘a kehe; ka ‘oku ou tohi mo ha ngaahi me‘a si‘i ‘e ni‘ihi, hei‘ilo na‘a ‘aonga ‘apē ia ki hoku kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná, ‘i ha ‘aho ‘amui, ‘o fakatatau mo e finangalo ‘o e ‘Eikí.

The Book of Moroni

Moroni 1

Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared, I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet perished; and I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ.

And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander whithersoever I can for the safety of mine own life.

Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written any more; but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to the will of the Lord.

Molonai 2

- 1 Ko e ngaahi folofola 'a Kalaisi, 'a ia na'á ne folofola 'aki ki he'ene kau ākongá, 'a e toko hongofulu mā ua 'a ia na'á ne filí, 'i he'ene hilifaki hono to'ukupú kiate kinautolú—
- 2 Pea na'á ne ui 'a kinautolu 'i honau hingoá, 'o pehē: Ke mou ui ki he Tamai 'i hoku hingoá, 'i he fu'u lotu lahi; pea ka hili ho'omou fai 'ení te mou ma'u 'a e mālohi ko'e uhi ko ia te mou hilifaki ki ai homou nimá, te mou foaki ki ai 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni; pea 'i hoku hingoá te mou foaki ia, he 'oku fai pehē 'e he'eku kau 'aposetoló.
- 3 Ko 'eni na'e folofola 'aki 'e Kalaisi 'a e ngaahi folofolá ni kiate kinautolu 'i he'ene 'uluaki hā maí; pea na'e 'ikai fanongo ki ai 'a e fu'u kakaí, ka na'e fanongo ki ai 'a e kau ākongá; pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē 'a ia na'a nau hilifaki ki ai honau ngaahi nimá, na'e tō ki ai 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni.

Moroni 2

The words of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them—

And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles.

Now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing; and the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it; and on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.

Molonai 3

- 1 Ko e founga na'e ngāue 'aki 'e he kau ākongá, 'a ia na'e ui ko e kaumātu 'a 'o e Siasí, ke fakanofu 'a e kau taula'eikí mo e kau akonakí—
- 2 Hili 'enau lotu ki he Tamaí 'i he huafa 'o Kalaisí, na'a nau hilifaki honau nimá kiate kinautolu, 'o pehē:
- 3 'I he huafa 'o Sīsū Kalaisí 'oku ou fakanofu koe ke ke hoko ko ha taula'eikí (pea kapau ko ha akonaki ia, 'oku ou fakanofu koe ke ke hoko ko ha akonaki) ke malanga 'aki 'a e fakatomalá mo e fakamolemole 'o e ngaahi angahalá 'ia Sīsū Kalaisí, 'i he kātaki 'i he tui ki hono huafá 'o a'u ki he ngata'angá. 'Ēmeni.
- 4 Pea ko e founga 'eni na'a nau fakanofu ai 'a e kau taula'eikí mo e kau akonakí, 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi me'a-foaki mo e ngaahi ui 'a e 'Otuá ki he tangatá; pea na'a nau fakanofu 'a kinautolu 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'a ia na'e 'iate kinautolú.

Moroni 3

The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers—

After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:

In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest (or if he be a teacher, I ordain you to be a teacher) to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen.

And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.

Molonai 4

- 1 Ko e founga 'o e hanga 'e he'enau kaumātu'á mo e kau taula'eikí 'o tāpuaki'i 'a e sino mo e ta'ata'a 'o Kalaisí ki he siasí; pea na'a nau tāpuaki'i ia 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi fekau 'a Kalaisí; ko ia 'oku mau 'ilo 'oku totonu 'a e founga; pea na'e tāpuaki'i ia 'e he kaumātu'á pe taula'eikí—
- 2 Pea na'a nau tū'ulutui hifo fakataha mo e siasí, 'o lotu ki he Tamai 'i he huafa 'o Kalaisí, 'o pehē:
- 3 'E 'Otua, ko e Tamai Ta'engatá, 'oku mau kole ki ho'o 'afió 'i he huafa 'o ho 'Alo ko Sīsū Kalaisí, ke tāpuaki'i mo fakatapui 'a e maá ni ki he ngaahi laumālie 'o kinautolu kotoa pē 'e 'ilo aí; ke nau 'ilo 'i he fakamanatu ki he sino 'o ho 'Aló, 'o fakamo'oni 'i ai ki ho'o 'afió, 'e 'Otua, ko e Tamai Ta'engatá, 'oku nau loto-fiemālie ke to'o kiate kinautolu 'a e huafa 'o ho 'Aló, pea manatu ma'u ai pē kiate ia, mo tauhi 'ene ngaahi fekau 'a ia kuó ne tuku kiate kinautolú, koe'uhí ke 'iate kinautolu ma'u ai pē 'a hono Laumālié. 'Ēmeni.

Moroni 4

The manner of their elders and priests administering the flesh and blood of Christ unto the church; and they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; wherefore we know the manner to be true; and the elder or priest did minister it—

And they did kneel down with the church, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

Molonai 5

- 1 Ko e founga 'o hono tāpuaki'i 'o e uainé—Vakai, na'a nau to'o 'a e ipú, 'o pehē:
- 2 'E 'Otua, ko e Tamai Ta'engatá, 'oku mau kole ki ho'o 'afió, 'i he huafa 'o ho 'Alo ko Sisū Kalaisí, ke tāpuaki'i mo fakatapui 'a e uainé ni ki he ngaahi laumālie 'o kinautolu kotoa pē 'e inu aí, ke nau fai ia 'i he fakamanatu ki he ta'ata'a 'o ho 'Aló, 'a ia na'e lilingi ko'e uhi ko kinautolu; ke nau fakamo'oni'i ai ki ho'o 'afió, 'e 'Otua, ko e Tamai Ta'engatá, 'oku nau manatu ma'u ai pē kiate ia, ko'e uhi ke 'iate kinautolu 'a hono Laumālié. 'Ēmeni.

Moroni 5

The manner of administering the wine—Behold, they took the cup, and said:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son, which was shed for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

Molonai 6

- 1 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou lea 'o kau ki he papitaisó. Vakai, na'e papitaiso 'a e kaumātu'á, kau taula'eikí, mo e kau akonakí; pea na'e 'ikai papitaiso 'a kinautolu kā 'i he'enu fakahā 'a e fua 'oku fe'unga 'a ia 'oku nau taau ai mo iá.
- 2 Pea na'e 'ikai te nau tali ha taha ke papitaiso kā 'i he'enu ha'u mo e loto-mafesifesi mo e laumālie fakatomala, 'o fakamo'oni'í ki he siasí kuo nau fakatomala mo'oni mei he'enu ngaahi angahala kotoa pē.
- 3 Pea na'e 'ikai tali ha taha ke papitaiso kā 'i he'enu to'o kiate kinautolu 'a e huafa 'o Kalaisí, pea fakapapau ke tauhi kiate ia 'o a'u ki he ngata'angá.
- 4 Pea ka hili hono tali 'a kinautolu ki he papitaisó, pea kuo nau ma'u pea ngāue mo fakama'a 'a kinautolu 'e he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, na'e lau 'a kinautolu ki he kakai 'o e siasí 'o Kalaisí; pea na'e tohi honau ngaahi hingoá, ko'e'uhí ke manatu'í mo fafanga 'a kinautolu 'aki 'a e folofola lelei 'a e 'Otuá, ke tauhi 'a kinautolu 'i he hala totonú, mo tokoni'í 'a kinautolu ke tokanga ma'u ai pē ki he lotu, 'o falala taha pē ki he ngaahi lelei 'a Kalaisí, 'a ia ko e tupu'anga mo e fakahaohaoa'anga 'o 'enua tuí.
- 5 Pea na'e fa'a fakataha 'a e siasí, ke 'aukai mo lotu, pea ke fetalanoa'aki 'iate kinautolu 'o kau ki he lelei 'o honau laumālié.
- 6 Pea na'a nau fa'a fakataha ke ma'u 'a e maá mo e uainé, ko e fakamanatu ki he 'Eiki ko Sīsuú.
- 7 Pea na'a nau fu'u tokanga lahi ke 'oua na'a 'i ai ha angahala 'iate kinautolu; pea 'ilonga 'a kinautolu na'e 'ilo'í 'oku nau angahalá, pea na'e 'i ai ha kau fakamo'oni 'e toko tolu mei he siasí na'a nau talatalaaki'í 'a kinautolu 'i he 'ao 'o e kaumātu'á, pea kapau na'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala, mo vete iá, na'e tāmata'e'í honau ngaahi hingoá, pea na'e 'ikai lau 'a kinautolu 'i he kakai 'o Kalaisí.
- 8 Ka 'i he'enua fa'a fakatomala mo kole ha fakamolemole, 'i he loto-mo'oni, na'e fakamolemole'í 'a kinautolu.

Moroni 6

And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.

Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins.

And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.

And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way, to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone upon the merits of Christ, who was the author and the finisher of their faith.

And the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls.

And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.

And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ.

But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven.

9 Pea ko 'enau ngaahi fakatahá na'e tataki ia 'e he siasí 'o fakatatau ki he anga 'o e ngaahi fakahinohino 'a e Laumālié, pea 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni; pea 'i hono fakahinohino 'i 'e he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni 'a kinautolu ke malanga, pe enginaki, pe lotu, pe tautapa, pe hiva, pe ha me'a pē na'e fai ia.

And their meetings were conducted by the church after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.

Molonai 7

- 1 Pea ko 'eni, ko au Molonai, 'oku ou tohi 'a e ni'ihii 'o e ngaahi lea 'a 'eku tamai ko Molomoná, 'a ia na'á ne lea 'aki 'o kau ki he tuí, 'amanaki lelei, mo e manava'ofá; he ko e anga 'eni 'o 'ene lea ki he kakaí, 'i he'ene akonaki kiate kinautolu 'i he fale lotu lahi 'a ia kuo nau langa ko e potu ke lotu aí.
- 2 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Molomona, 'oku ou lea kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina; pea ko e me'a 'i he 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Otuá ko e Tamaí, mo hotau 'Eiki ko Sisū Kalaisí, mo hono finangalo toputapú, koe'uhi ko e me'a-foaki 'o 'ene ui kiate aú, ko ia 'oku fakangofua ai au ke u lea kiate kimoutolu 'i he taimi ko 'ení.
- 3 Ko ia, 'oku ou fie lea kiate kimoutolu 'a ia 'oku 'i he siasí, 'a ia ko e kau muimui anga-fakamelino 'o Kalaisí, 'a ia kuo ma'u ha 'amanaki fe'unga 'a ia te mou lava ai 'o hū ki he mālōlō'anga 'o e 'Eiki, 'o fai atu mei he taimi ni kae 'oua ke mou mālōlō fakataha mo ia 'i langi.
- 4 Pea ko 'eni 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku ou pehē 'oku hanga 'e he me'á ni 'o fakamahino 'i homou tu'ungá 'i ho'omou 'a'eva 'i he melino mo e fānau 'a e tangatá.
- 5 He 'oku ou manatu 'i 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'a ia 'oku pehē te mou 'ilo 'a kinautolu 'i he'enu ngaahi ngāué; he kapau 'oku lelei 'enu ngaahi ngāué, 'oku nau lelei mo kinautolu foki.
- 6 He vakai, kuo folofola 'a e 'Otuá kapau 'oku angakovi ha tangata 'e 'ikai te ne fa'a fai ha me'a 'oku lelei; he kapau 'oku ne foaki ha me'a'ofa, pe lotu ki he 'Otuá, ka 'o kapau 'oku 'ikai te ne fai ia 'i he loto-mo'oni 'oku ta'e'aonga ia kiate ia.
- 7 He vakai, 'oku 'ikai lau ia kiate ia ko e mā'oni'oni.
- 8 He vakai, kapau 'oku foaki 'e ha tangata 'oku angakovi ha me'a'ofa, 'oku ne fai ia 'i he fakahōhōloto pē; ko ia 'oku lau ia kiate ia 'o hangē ko ha'ane ta'ofi 'a e me'a'ofá; ko ia 'oku lau ia ko e angahala 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá.
- 9 Pea 'oku pehē hono lau ia ko e angahala ki ha tangata, 'o kapau te ne lotu kae 'ikai 'i he loto-mo'oni; 'io, pea 'oku ta'e'aonga ia kiate ia, he 'oku 'ikai tali 'e he 'Otuá ha taha pehē.

Moroni 7

And now I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my father Mormon, which he spake concerning faith, hope, and charity; for after this manner did he speak unto the people, as he taught them in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.

And now I, Mormon, speak unto you, my beloved brethren; and it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time.

Wherefore, I would speak unto you that are of the church, that are the peaceable followers of Christ, and that have obtained a sufficient hope by which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord, from this time henceforth until ye shall rest with him in heaven.

And now my brethren, I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men.

For I remember the word of God which saith by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.

For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profiteth him nothing.

For behold, it is not counted unto him for righteousness.

For behold, if a man being evil giveth a gift, he doeth it grudgingly; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God.

And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.

- 10 Ko ia, ko e tangata 'oku angakovi' 'oku 'ikai te ne fa'a fai ha me'a 'a ia 'oku lelei; pea 'e 'ikai foki te ne foaki ha me'a 'ofa 'oku lelei.
- 11 He vakai, 'oku 'ikai fa'a tupu 'i ha matavai 'oku koná 'a e vai 'oku lelei; pea 'oku 'ikai foki fa'a tupu 'i ha matavai 'oku lelei 'a e vai 'oku kona; ko ia, ko e tangata ko ia 'oku hoko ko e tamaio'eiki 'a e tēvoló 'oku 'ikai lava ia 'o muimui kia Kalaisi; pea kapau 'okú ne muimui kia Kalaisi 'oku 'ikai te ne lava 'o hoko ko ha tamaio'eiki 'a e tēvoló.
- 12 Ko ia, ko e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku lelei 'oku tupu ia mei he 'Otuá; pea ko e me'a 'oku kovi 'oku tupu ia mei he tēvoló; he ko e tēvoló ko ha fili ia ki he 'Otuá, pea 'oku ne fakafili kiate ia ma'u ai pē, pea 'okú ne fakaafe'i mo fakatauele'i ke fai angahala, pea ke fai 'a e me'a ko ia 'oku kovi ma'u pē.
- 13 Kae vakai, ko e me'a ko ia 'oku tupu mei he 'Otuá 'oku fakaafe'i mo poupou'i ke failelei ma'u ai pē; ko ia, ko e me'a kotoa pē 'oku fakaafe'i mo poupou'i ke failelei, mo 'ofa ki he 'Otuá, pea tauhi kiate iá, 'oku ue'i hake ia 'e he 'Otuá.
- 14 Ko ia, mou tokanga, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, ke 'oua na'a mou fakamāu'i 'a e me'a 'oku kovi ko e tupu ia mei he 'Otuá, pe ko e me'a 'oku lelei pea mei he 'Otuá 'oku mei he tēvoló ia.
- 15 He vakai, 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku tuku kiate kimoutolu ke mou fakamāu'i, koe'uhi ke mou 'ilo'i 'a e lelei mei he kovi; pea ko e founga ke fakamāu'i 'oku mahinongofua, koe'uhi ke mou 'ilo ai 'i ha 'ilo haohaoa, 'o hangē 'oku faikehekehe 'a e 'ahó mei he pō fakapo'ulí.
- 16 He vakai, 'oku foaki 'a e Laumālie 'o Kalaisi ki he tangata kotoa pē, koe'uhi ke ne 'ilo'i 'a e lelei mei he kovi; ko ia, 'oku ou fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e founga ke fakamāu'i; he ko e me'a kotoa pē 'oku fakaafe'i ke failelei, pea 'oku fakaloto'i ke tui kia Kalaisi, 'oku 'omai ia 'i he mālohi mo e foaki 'a Kalaisi; ko ia te mou fa'a 'ilo'i ai 'i ha 'ilo haohaoa 'oku tupu ia mei he 'Otuá.

Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift.

For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.

Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.

But behold, that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good continually; wherefore, every thing which inviteth and enticeth to do good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

Wherefore, take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

For behold, my brethren, it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night.

For behold, the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil; wherefore, I show unto you the way to judge; for every thing which inviteth to do good, and to persuade to believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ; wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God.

17 Ka ko e me'a kotoa pē 'oku fakaloto'i 'a e tangatá ke faiková, 'o 'ikai tui kia Kalaisí, pea faka'ikai'i iá, pea 'ikai tauhi ki he 'Otuá, 'oku mou fa'a 'ilo'i ai 'i ha 'ilo haohaoa 'oku tupu ia mei he tēvoló; he ko hono anga 'eni 'o e ngāue 'a e tēvoló, he 'oku 'ikai te ne fakaloto'i ha tangata 'e taha ke failelei, 'ikai, 'oku 'ikai ha taha; pea 'oku 'ikai foki ke fai pehē mo 'ene kau 'āngeló; pea 'oku 'ikai ke fai pehē mo kinautolu 'oku fakavaivai'i 'a kinautolu kiate iá.

18 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, ko e me'a 'i ho'omou 'ilo'i 'a e maama 'a ia te mou fa'a fakamāu'i 'akí, pea ko e maama ko iá 'a e maama 'a Kalaisí, tokanga ke 'oua na'a mou fakamaau ta'etotonu; he ko e anga ko ia 'oku mou fakamaau 'akí 'e fakamāu'i ai foki mo kimoutolu.

19 Ko ia, 'oku ou kole kiate kimoutolu, 'e kāinga, ke mou kumi faivelenga 'i he maama 'a Kalaisí ke mou 'ilo'i 'a e lelei mei he koví; pea kapau te mou puke ma'u 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku lelei, pea 'ikai fakaanga'i ia, kuo pau ke mou hoko mo'oni ko ha fānau 'a Kalaisi.

20 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga, 'oku mou lava fēfē ke puke ma'u 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku lelei?

21 Pea 'oku ou a'u mai 'eni ki he tui ko ia, 'a ia na'á ku pehē te u lea ki aí; pea te u fakahā kiate kimoutolu 'a e founa te mou lava ai 'o puke 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku lelei.

22 He vakai, 'i he 'afio'i 'e he 'Otuá 'a e me'a kotoa pē, mo 'ene 'i he ta'engatá ki he ta'engatá, vakai, na'á ne fekau mai 'a e kau 'āngelo ke tauhi ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, ke fakapapau'i 'oku nau 'ilo ki he hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí; pea 'e 'ia Kalaisi 'a e hoko mai 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku lelei.

23 Pea na'e fakahā foki 'e he 'Otuá ki he kau palōfitá, mei hono fofongá tonu, 'e hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisi.

24 Pea vakai, na'e 'i ai 'a e ngaahi founa kehekehe na'á ne fakahā ai 'a e ngaahi me'a ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'a ia na'e lelei; pea ko e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē 'oku lelei 'oku tupu meia Kalaisi; ka 'ikai 'e kei nofo 'a e tangatá 'i he tu'unga tō ki laló, pea 'e 'ikai hoko mai ha me'a 'oku lelei kiate kinautolu.

But whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do evil, and believe not in Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil; for after this manner doth the devil work, for he persuadeth no man to do good, no, not one; neither do his angels; neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

And now, my brethren, seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge, which light is the light of Christ, see that ye do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged.

Wherefore, I beseech of you, brethren, that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from evil; and if ye will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not, ye certainly will be a child of Christ.

And now, my brethren, how is it possible that ye can lay hold upon every good thing?

And now I come to that faith, of which I said I would speak; and I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good thing.

For behold, God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting, behold, he sent angels to minister unto the children of men, to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ; and in Christ there should come every good thing.

And God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ should come.

And behold, there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men, which were good; and all things which are good cometh of Christ; otherwise men were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.

25 Ko ia, ko e me'a 'i he tauhi mai 'a e kau 'āngeló, pea mo e folofola kotoa pē na'e 'alu atu 'i he fofonga 'o e 'Otuá, na'e kamata 'e he tangatá ke ngāue 'aki 'a e tui kia Kalaisí; pea ko ia 'i he tuí, na'a nau puke ma'u 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku lelei; pea na'e pehē ia 'o a'u ki he hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisí.

26 Pea hili 'ene hā'ele maí na'e fakamo'ui foki 'a e tangatá 'i he tui ki hono huafá; pea 'i he tuí, 'oku nau hoko ko e ngaahi foha 'o e 'Otuá. Pea hangē kuo pau 'oku mo'ui 'a Kalaisí na'á ne folofola 'aki 'a e ngaahi folofola ko 'ení ki he 'etau ngaahi tamaí, 'o pehē: 'Ilonga ha me'a te mou kole ki he Tamaí 'i hoku hingoá, 'a ia 'oku lelei, 'i he tui pea 'amanaki te mou ma'u iá, vakai, 'e fai ia kiate kimoutolu.

27 Ko ia, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, kuo ngata koā 'a e ngaahi maná koe'uhi ko e hā'ele hake 'a Kalaisi ki he langí, peá ne 'afio hifo 'i he nima to'omata'u 'o e 'Otuá, ke 'ekea mei he Tamaí 'a 'ene ngaahi totonu ki he 'alo'ofá 'a ia 'okú ne ma'u ki he fānau 'a e tangatá?

28 He kuó ne totongi 'a e ngaahi tu'utu'uni 'a e fonó, pea 'okú ne 'ekea 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku ma'u 'a e tui kiate iá; pea ko kinautolu 'oku ma'u 'a e tui kiate iá te nau piki ki he me'a lelei kotoa pē; ko ia 'okú ne taukapo'i ai 'a e fānau 'a e tangatá; pea 'okú ne 'afio 'o ta'engata 'i he ngaahi langí.

29 Pea koe'uhi kuó ne fai 'ení, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, kuo ngata koā 'a e ngaahi maná? Vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai; pea kuo 'ikai foki ngata 'a e tauhi mai 'a e kau 'āngeló ki he fānau 'a e tangatá.

30 He vakai, 'oku nau fakaongoongo kiate ia, ke ngāue 'o fakatatau ki he folofola 'o 'ene fekaú, 'o fakahā 'a kinautolu ki he fá'ahinga 'oku ma'u 'a e tui mālohí pea fakapapau honau 'atamaí ki he anga faka-'Otua kotoa pē.

31 Pea ko e lakanga 'o 'enau ngāué ke ui 'a e kakaí ki he fakatomalá, pea fakahoko mo fai 'a e ngāue 'o e ngaahi fuakava 'a e Tamaí, 'a ia kuó ne fai ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, ke teuteu 'a e hala 'i he fānau 'a e tangatá, 'i hono malanga 'aki 'a e folofola 'a Kalaisí kiate kinautolu 'a ia kuo fili 'e he 'Eikí, koe'uhí ke nau fakamo'oni kiate iá.

Wherefore, by the ministering of angels, and by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God, men began to exercise faith in Christ; and thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing; and thus it was until the coming of Christ.

And after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God. And as surely as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers, saying: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is good, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be done unto you.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?

For he hath answered the ends of the law, and he claimeth all those who have faith in him; and they who have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing; wherefore he advocateth the cause of the children of men; and he dwelleth eternally in the heavens.

And because he hath done this, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men.

For behold, they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of his command, showing themselves unto them of strong faith and a firm mind in every form of godliness.

And the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance, and to fulfil and to do the work of the covenants of the Father, which he hath made unto the children of men, to prepare the way among the children of men, by declaring the word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord, that they may bear testimony of him.

- 32 Pea 'i he'ene fai peheé, 'oku teuteu 'i ai 'e he 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá 'a e hala ke lava ai 'e hono toe 'o e fá'ahinga 'o e tangatá 'o ma'u 'a e tui kia Kalaisi, koe'uhi ke ma'u 'e he Laumálie Mā'oni'oni ha nofo'anga 'i honau lotó, 'o fakatatau mo hono mālohí; pea 'i he founzá ni 'oku fakahoko ai 'e he Tamaí, 'a e ngaahi fuakava kuó ne fai mo e fānau 'a e tangatá.
- 33 Pea kuo folofola 'a Kalaisi: Kapau te mou tui kiate au te mou ma'u 'a e mālohi ke fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku totonu ke fai 'iate aú.
- 34 Pea kuó ne folofola: Fakatomala 'e ngaahi ngata'anga kotoa pē 'o e māmaní, pea ha'u kiate au, 'o papitaiso 'i hoku hingoá, pea ma'u 'a e tui kiate aú, koe'uhí ke fakamo'ui 'a kimoutolu.
- 35 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, kapau 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'a ia kuó u lea 'aki kiate kimoutolú, pea 'e fakahā ia 'e he 'Otuá kiate kimoutolu, 'i he mālohi mo e fu'u nāunau lahi 'i he 'aho faka'osí, 'oku mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, pea kapau 'oku mo'oni ia kuo ngata koā 'a e 'aho 'o e ngaahi maná?
- 36 Pe kuo tuku koā 'e he kau 'āngeló 'a 'enau hā mai ki he fānau 'a e tangatá? Pe kuó ne ta'ofi koā 'a e mālohi 'o e Laumálie Mā'oni'oni meiate kinautolu? Pe te ne ta'ofi ia koā, 'i he kei laka 'a e taimí, pe kei tu'u 'a e māmaní, pe 'i he kei 'i ai ha tangata 'e toko taha 'i hono funga 'o'oná ke fakamo'ui?
- 37 Vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu, 'Ikai; he 'oku tupu 'i he tuí hono fai 'o e ngaahi maná; pea ko e me'a 'i he tuí 'oku hā mai ai 'a e kau 'āngeló mo tauhi ki he tangatá; ko ia, kapau kuo ngata 'a e ngaahi me'á ni 'e mala'ia 'a e fānau 'a e tangatá, he 'oku tupu ia 'i he ta'etuí, pea 'oku ta'e'aonga 'a e me'a kotoa pē.
- 38 He 'oku 'ikai lava 'o fakamo'ui ha tangata, 'o fakatatau ki he ngaahi folofola 'a Kalaisí, kapau 'oku 'ikai te nau tui ki hono huafá, ko ia, kapau kuo ngata 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, pea kuo ngata mo e tuí foki; pea 'oku fakamanavahē 'a e tu'unga 'oku 'i ai 'a e tangatá, he 'oku nau hangē kuo 'ikai ke fai ha huhu'í.

And by so doing, the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue of men may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may have place in their hearts, according to the power thereof; and after this manner bringeth to pass the Father, the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men.

And Christ hath said: If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me.

And he hath said: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that ye may be saved.

And now, my beloved brethren, if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you, and God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true, and if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

Or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men? Or has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought; and it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men; wherefore, if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief, and all is vain.

For no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name; wherefore, if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the state of man, for they are as though there had been no redemption made.

39 Kae vakai, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou 'ilo'i 'oku mou lelei ange ai, he 'oku ou 'ilo'i 'oku mou ma'u 'a e tui kia Kalaisi koe'uhi ko ho'omou angamaluú; he kapau 'oku 'ikai ke mou ma'u ha tui kiate ia tā 'oku 'ikai te mou fe'unga ke lau 'a kimoutolu fakataha mo e kakai 'o hono siasí.

40 Pea ko e tahá, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, 'oku ou fie lea kiate kimoutolu 'o kau ki he 'amanaki lelei. 'E lava fēfē ke mou ma'u 'a e tui, kapau 'oku 'ikai te mou ma'u 'a e 'amanaki lelei?

41 Pea ko e hā 'a e me'a ke mou 'amanaki lelei ki aí? Vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu te mou ma'u 'a e 'amanaki lelei 'i he fakalelei 'a Kalaisi pea mo e mālohi 'o 'ene toetu'ú, ke fokotu'u hake ki he mo'ui ta'engatá, pea 'e fai 'eni koe'uhi ko ho'omou tui kiate ia 'o fakatatau mo e tala'ofá.

42 Ko ia, kapau 'oku ma'u 'e ha tangata 'a e tui kuo pau ke ne ma'u mo e 'amanaki lelei; he kapau 'oku 'ikai ke 'i ai ha 'amanaki 'e 'ikai lava ke 'i ai ha tui.

43 Pea ko e tahá, vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate kimoutolu 'e 'ikai te ne ma'u 'a e tui mo e 'amanaki, kapau 'oku 'ikai te ne angamalū mo loto-fakatōkilalo.

44 Ka pehē, 'oku ta'e'aonga 'ene tui mo e 'amanaki lelei, he 'oku 'ikai ha taha 'oku hōifua ki ai 'a e 'Otuá, ka ko e angamaluú mo e loto-fakatōkilaló; pea kapau 'oku angamalū mo loto-fakatōkilalo ha tangata, 'o ne fakamo'oni'i 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni ko Sīsū 'a e Kalaisí, kuo pau ke ne ma'u 'a e manava'ofá; he kapau 'oku 'ikai te ne ma'u 'a e manava'ofá ko e me'a noa pē ia; ko ia kuo pau ke ne ma'u 'a e manava'ofá.

45 Pea 'oku kātaki fuoloa 'a e manava'ofá, pea 'oku 'ofa ia, pea 'oku 'ikai meheka, pea 'oku 'ikai fakafuofuolahí, 'oku 'ikai kumi 'ene me'a 'a'ana, 'oku 'ikai 'itangofua, 'oku 'ikai fakakaukau kovi, pea 'oku 'ikai fiefia 'i he angahalá ka 'oku fiefia 'i he mo'oni, 'okú ne kātaki 'i he me'a kotoa pē, 'oku tui ki he me'a kotoa pē, 'oku 'amanaki ki he me'a kotoa pē, 'oku kātekina 'a e me'a kotoa pē.

But behold, my beloved brethren, I judge better things of you, for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness; for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his church.

And again, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope?

And what is it that ye shall hope for? Behold I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal, and this because of your faith in him according to the promise.

Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for without faith there cannot be any hope.

And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart.

If so, his faith and hope is vain, for none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly in heart; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs have charity.

And charity suffereth long, and is kind, and envieth not, and is not puffed up, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil, and rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth, beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.

46 Ko ia, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, kapau 'oku 'ikai te mou ma'u 'a e manava'ofá, ko e mé'a noa pē 'a kimoutolu, he 'oku 'ikai faka'au 'o ngata 'a e manava'ofá. Ko ia, mou nofo ma'u 'i he manava'ofá, 'a ia 'oku mahu'inga taha 'i he mé'a kotoa pē, he kuo pau ke ngata 'a e mé'a kotoa pē—

47 Ka ko e manava'ofá 'a e 'ofa haohaoa 'a Kalaisí, pea 'oku tolonga ia 'o ta'engata; pea ko ia ia 'e 'ilo' 'i 'okú ne ma'u ia 'i he 'aho faka'osí, 'e lelei ia kiate ia.

48 Ko ia, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, lotu ki he Tamaí 'aki 'a e ivi kotoa 'o e lotó, koe'uhi ke fakafonu 'a kimoutolu 'aki 'a e 'ofá ni, 'a ia kuó ne foaki kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku muimui mo'oni 'i hono 'Alo ko Sísū Kalaisí; koe'uhi ke mou hoko ko e ngaahi foha 'o e 'Otuá; koe'uhi ka hoko 'a e taimi te ne hā mai á te tau tatau mo ia, he te tau mamata kiate ia 'i hono anga totonú; koe'uhi ke tau ma'u 'a e 'amanaki leleí ni; koe'uhi ke fakahaohaoa 'i 'a kitautolu 'o hangē ko 'ene haohaoá. 'Ēmeni.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, if ye have not charity, ye are nothing, for charity never faileth. Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail—

But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart, that ye may be filled with this love, which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ; that ye may become the sons of God; that when he shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is; that we may have this hope; that we may be purified even as he is pure. Amen.

Molonai 8

- 1 Ko ha tohi na'e fai 'e he'eku tamai ko Molomoná, kiate au, Molonai; pea na'e fai mai ia kiate au 'i he hili si'i hono ui au ki he ngāue fakafaifekaú. Pea ko e me'a 'eni na'á ne tohi mai kiate aú, 'o pehē:
- 2 'E hoku foha 'ofeina, ko Molonai, 'oku ou fu'u fiefia 'aupito 'i he tokanga 'i koe 'e ho 'Eiki ko Sīsū Kalaisí, pea kuó ne ui koe ki he'ene ngāue fakafaifekaú, pea ki he'ene ngāue toputapú.
- 3 'Oku ou manatu 'i koe ma'u ai pē 'i he'eku ngaahi lotú, peá u lotu ma'u ai pē ki he 'Otua ko e Tamai, 'i he huafa 'o hono 'Alo Toputapu, ko Sīsú, ke ne tauhi koe, 'i he'ene angalelé mo e 'alo'ofa ta'engata, 'i he tui taau ma'u ki hono huafá 'o a'u ki he ngata'angá.
- 4 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'oku ou lea kiate koe 'o kau ki ha me'a 'okú ne fu'u fakamamahi 'i 'aupito au; he 'oku mamahi hoku lotó koe'uhi ko e tupu hake 'a e ngaahi fakakikihi 'iate kimoutolú.
- 5 He kapau, kuó u 'ilo 'i 'a e mo'oní, kuo 'i ai 'a e ngaahi fakakikihi 'iate kimoutolu 'o kau ki he papitaiso 'o ho'omou fānau íkí.
- 6 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'oku ou faka'amu ke ke ngāue faivelenga, ke to'o atu 'a e fu'u hala lahi ni meiate kimoutolu; he ko hono 'uhinga ia 'o 'eku fai atu 'a e tohi ni.
- 7 He na'e hili pē 'eku 'ilo 'i 'a e ngaahi me'á ni meiate koé na'á ku fehu 'i ki he 'Eiki 'o kau ki he me'a ko íá. Pea na'e hoko mai 'a e folofola 'a e 'Eiki kiate au 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oní'oní, 'o pehē:
- 8 Fanongo ki he ngaahi folofola 'a Kalaisi, ko ho Huhu'í, ko ho 'Eiki mo ho 'Otuá. Vakai na'e 'ikai te u ha'u ki he māmani ke ui 'a e kau mā'oní'oní ka ko e kau angahalá ke fakatomala; 'oku 'ikai fie ma'u 'e he kakai mo'ui lelé 'a e tangata faito'ó, ka ko kinautolu 'oku mahakí; ko ia, 'oku 'ikai ha angahala 'a e fānau íkí, he 'oku 'ikai te nau fá 'a lava 'o fai angahala; ko ia, kuo to'o 'a e mala'ia 'o 'Ātamá meiate kinautolu 'iate au, pea 'oku 'ikai hano mālohi kiate kinautolu, pea ko e fono 'o e kamú 'oku fakangata ia 'iate au.
- 9 Pea ko e founga 'eni na'e fakahā ai 'e he Laumālie Mā'oní'oní 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá kiate aú; ko ia, 'e hoku foha 'ofeina, 'oku ou 'ilo 'i ko e manuki mamafa 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, ke mou papitaiso 'a e fānau íkí.

Moroni 8

An epistle of my father Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry. And on this wise did he write unto me, saying:

My beloved son, Moroni, I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his holy work.

I am mindful of you always in my prayers, continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace, will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the end.

And now, my son, I speak unto you concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly; for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you.

For, if I have learned the truth, there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should labor diligently, that this gross error should be removed from among you; for, for this intent I have written this epistle.

For immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost, saying:

Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.

And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children.

- 10 Vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate koe ko e me'a 'eni ke ke ako'i—ko e fakatomalá mo e papitaisó kiate kinautolu 'oku ala 'eke'i meiate kinautolu 'a e ngaahi ngāue 'oku nau faí pea 'oku nau lava 'o fai ha angahalá; 'io, ako ki he mātu'á kuo pau ke nau fakatomala pea papitaiso, pea fakavaivai'i 'a kinautolu 'o hangē ko 'enau fānau ikí, pea 'e fakamo'ui kotoa 'a kinautolu fakataha mo 'enau fānau ikí.
- 11 Pea 'oku 'ikai fie ma'u 'e he 'enau fānau ikí ke fakatomala, pe papitaiso. Vakai, ko e papitaisó ki he fakatomalá 'o fakahoko ai 'a e fekaú ke fakamolemole'i 'a e ngaahi angahalá.
- 12 Ka 'oku mo'ui 'a e fānau ikí 'ia Kalaisi, talu mei he fokotu'u 'o e māmaní; pea kapau 'oku 'ikai pehē, pea ko e 'Otua ta'etotonu 'a e 'Otuá, pea ko e 'Otua 'oku feliliu'aki, pea 'oku filifilimānako 'i he kakaí; he ko e toko fiha nai 'o e fānau iiki kuo mate te'eki papitaiso!
- 13 Ko ia, kapau 'e 'ikai lava 'o fakamo'ui 'a e fānau ikí ta'ekau ai 'a e papitaisó, 'oku pau pē kuo 'alu 'a e fa'ahingá ni ki ha heli ta'engata.
- 14 Vakai 'oku ou pehē kiate koe, ko ia ia 'okú ne mahalo 'oku 'aonga 'a e papitaisó ki he fānau ikí 'okú ne mo'ua 'i he 'ahu 'o e mamahí pea mo e ngaahi ha 'i 'o e angahalá; he 'oku 'ikai ke ne ma'u 'a e tuí, 'amanaki leleí, pe ko e manava'ofá; ko ia, kapau 'e motuhi atu ia lolotonga 'ene fakakaukau peheé, kuo pau ke ne 'alu hifo ki heli.
- 15 He 'oku fakamanavahē 'a e fai angahala ke mahalo 'oku fakamo'ui 'e he 'Otuá ha tamasi'i sí'i 'e taha koe'uhi ko e papitaisó, pea ko e taha kehé kuo pau ke mala'ia koe'uhi ko e 'ikai te ne papitaisó.
- 16 'E mala'ia 'a kinautolu 'e fakakovi'i 'a e ngaahi hā'ele'anga 'o e 'Eikí 'i he founga ko 'ení, he kuo pau ke nau mala'ia 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala. Vakai, 'oku ou lea 'i he loto-to'a, pea u ma'u 'a e mafai mei he 'Otuá; pea 'oku 'ikai te u manavahē ki ha me'a 'e fai 'e he tangatá; he 'oku hanga 'e he 'ofa haohaoá 'o teke'i ki tu'a 'a e ilifia kotoa pē.
- 17 Pea 'oku ou fonu 'i he manava'ofá, 'a ia ko e 'ofa 'oku lauikuongá; ko ia, 'oku tatau 'a e fānau ikí kotoa pē kiate au; ko ia, 'oku ou 'ofa 'i he fānau ikí 'aki ha 'ofa haohaoa; pea 'oku nau tatau kotoa pē pea nau ma'u 'a e fakamo'uí.

Behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach—repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; yea, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and humble themselves as their little children, and they shall all be saved with their little children.

And their little children need no repentance, neither baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins.

But little children are alive in Christ, even from the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial God, and also a changeable God, and a respecter to persons; for how many little children have died without baptism!

Wherefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must have gone to an endless hell.

Behold I say unto you, that he that supposeth that little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; for he hath neither faith, hope, nor charity; wherefore, should he be cut off while in the thought, he must go down to hell.

For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.

Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner, for they shall perish except they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having authority from God; and I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casteth out all fear.

And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they are all alike and partakers of salvation.

18 He 'oku ou 'ilo'i 'oku 'ikai ko ha 'Otuá filifilimānako 'a e 'Otuá, pe ko ha tokotaha 'oku feliliu'aki; ka 'okú ne ta'e-fa'a-liliu ia mei he ta'engatá ki he ta'engatá kotoa pē.

19 'Oku 'ikai lava 'a e fānau ikí 'o fakatomala; ko ia, ko e fai angahala faka'ulia ke ta'ofi 'a e ngaahi 'alo'ofa haohaoa 'a e 'Otuá meiate kinautolu, he 'oku nau mo'ui kotoa pē 'iate ia ko'e uhi ko 'ene 'alo'ofá.

20 Pea ko ia ia 'okú ne pehē 'oku fie ma'u 'e he fānau ikí 'a e papitaisó 'okú ne faka'ikai'i 'a e ngaahi 'alo'ofa 'a Kalaisí, pea ne fakata'e'aonga i 'a 'ene fakalelei mo e mālohi 'o 'ene huhu'í.

21 'E mala'ia 'a e fa'ahinga peheé, he 'oku nau tu'utāmaki ki he maté, mo heli, mo e fakamamahi ta'engata. 'Oku ou lea 'aki ia 'i he loto-to'a; kuo fekau'i au 'e he 'Otuá. Fanongo ki ai pea tokanga, pe 'e tu'u ia ke talatalaaki'i 'a kimoutolu 'i he nofo'anga fakamaau 'o Kalaisí.

22 He vakai 'oku mo'ui 'a e fānau iiki kotoa pē 'ia Kalaisi, kae 'uma'ā 'a kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku 'ikai ma'u 'a e fonó. He 'oku hoko mai 'a e mālohi 'o e huhu'í kiate kinautolu kotoa pē 'oku 'ikai ma'u ha fonó; ko ia, ko ia ia 'oku 'ikai fakahalaia'í, pea ko ia ia 'oku 'ikai mo'ua ki ha fakamāú, 'oku 'ikai te ne lava 'o fakatomala; pea ko e fa'ahinga peheé 'oku ta'e'aonga ki ai 'a e papitaisó—

23 Ka ko e manuki ia 'i he 'ao 'o e 'Otuá, pea 'okú ne ta'ofi 'a e ngaahi 'alo'ofa 'a Kalaisí, mo e mālohi 'o hono Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, pea falala ki he ngaahi ngāue mate.

24 Vakai, 'e hoku foha, 'oku 'ikai totonu ke hoko 'a e me'á ni; he ko e fakatomalá 'oku ma'anautolu pē 'oku mo'ua ki he fakamāú mo e fakamala'ia 'o e fono kuo maumau'í.

25 Pea ko e ngaahi 'uluaki fua 'o e fakatomalá ko e papitaisó; pea 'oku tupu 'a e papitaisó 'i he tui ki hono fakahoko 'o e ngaahi fekau; pea 'oku hanga 'e hono fakahoko 'o e ngaahi fekau 'o fakatupu hono fakamolemole 'i 'o e ngaahi angahalá.

For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.

Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.

And he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.

Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.

For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law. For the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing—

But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.

Behold, my son, this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law.

And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;

26 Pea 'oku hanga 'e he fakamolemole 'o e ngaahi angahalá 'o fakatupu 'a e angamaluú mo e loto-fakatōkilaló; pea ko e me'a 'i he angamaluú mo e loto-fakatōkilaló 'oku tupunga ai 'a e 'a'ahi mai 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni, 'a ia ko e Fakafiemālie 'okú ne fakafonu ha taha 'aki 'a e 'amanaki leleí mo e 'ofa haohaoá, 'a ia ko e 'ofa 'oku tolonga 'i he faivelenga 'i he lotu, kae 'oua ke hokosia 'a e ngata'angá, pea nofo 'a e kau mā'oni'oni kotoa pē mo e 'Otuá.

27 Vakai, 'e hoku foha, te u toe tohi atu kiate koe 'o kapau 'e 'ikai ke vave ha'aku 'alu atu ke tau 'i 'a e kau Leimaná. Vakai, ko e loto-hīkisia 'a e pule'angá ni, pe ko e kakai 'o e kau Nifái, 'oku tupunga ai honau faka'auhá 'o kapau 'e 'ikai te nau fakatomala.

28 Lotua 'a kinautolu, 'e hoku foha, koe'uhi ke hoko kiate kinautolu 'a e fakatomalá. Kae vakai, 'oku ou manavahē telia na'a kuo tuku 'e he Laumālié 'a 'ene fāinga mo kinautolú; pea 'i he potu fonuá ni 'oku nau feinga foki ke ta'ofi 'a e mālohi mo e mafai kotoa pē 'oku tupu mei he 'Otuá; pea 'oku nau faka'ikai 'i 'a e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni.

29 Pea 'i he hili 'enau faka'ikai 'i ha fu'u 'ilo lahi pehē, 'e hoku foha, kuo pau ke nau 'auha vave, pea fakamo'oni 'i ai 'a e ngaahi kikite na'e lea 'aki 'e he kau palōfitá, kae 'uma'ā mo e ngaahi folofola 'a hotau Fakamo'uí.

30 Nofo ā, 'e hoku foha, kae 'oua ke u toe tohi atu kiate koe, pe ko ha'aku toe fe'iloaki mo koe. 'Ēmeni.

And the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love, which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.

Behold, my son, I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites. Behold, the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent.

Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them. But behold, I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them; and in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which cometh from God; and they are denying the Holy Ghost.

And after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son, they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as well as the words of our Savior himself.

Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or shall meet you again. Amen.

Molonai 9

- 1 'E hoku foha 'ofeina, 'oku ou toe tohi atu kiate koe ke ke 'ilo'i 'oku ou kei mo'ui pē; ka 'oku ou tohi atu 'o kau ki ha ngaahi me'a 'oku fakamamahi.
- 2 He vakai, kuó u fai ha fu'u tau fakamanavahē mo e kau Leimaná, 'a ia na'e 'ikai te mau ikuna; pea kuo tō 'a 'Alekanetusi 'i he heletā, pea pehē foki mo Lulame mo 'Imeloni; 'io, pea kuo mole 'a e tokolahi 'o 'emau kau tangata lelei tahá.
- 3 Pea ko 'eni vakai, 'e hoku foha, 'oku ou manavahē telia na'a hanga 'e he kau Leimaná 'o faka'auha 'a e kakai ni; he 'oku 'ikai te nau fakatomala, pea 'oku hanga 'e Sētane 'o ue'i 'a kinautolu ma'u ai pē ke nau fē'ite'itani 'iate kinautolu.
- 4 Vakai, 'oku ou feinga ke ngāue mo kinautolu ma'u ai pē; pea 'o kau ka lea mālohi 'aki 'a e folofola 'a e 'Otuá 'oku nau teketekeleli mo 'ita kiate au; pea 'o ka 'ikai te u lea māsila kiate kinautolu 'oku nau fakafefeka honau lotó ki ai; ko ia, 'oku ou manavahē ai telia na'a kuo tuku 'e he Laumālie 'o e 'Eikí 'a 'ene fāinga mo kinautolú.
- 5 He 'oku pehē fau hono lahi 'o 'ene 'itá 'oku ngalingali kiate au 'oku 'ikai ke 'iate kinautolu ha manavahē ki he maté; pea kuo mole meiate kinautolu 'a 'enau fē'ofa'aki, 'iate kinautolú; pea 'oku nau holi ke lilingi toto mo fai ha sāuni ma'u ai pē.
- 6 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha 'ofeina, neongo 'enau lotofefeká, 'ai ke ta ngāue faivelenga; he kapau te ta tuku 'a e ngāue; 'e 'omi 'a kitaua ki he fakahalaiá; he 'oku 'i ai ha ngāue ke ta fai lolotonga 'okú ta 'i he sinó ni 'o e kelekelé, ke ta ikuna 'a e fili 'o e mā'oni'oni kotoa pē, pea fakafiemālie'i hota laumālié 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá.
- 7 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou tohi ha me'a 'e ní'ihí 'o kau ki he ngaahi mamahi 'a e kakai ní. He hangē ko e tala kuó u ma'u meia 'Amoloní, vakai, kuo ma'u 'e he kau Leimaná 'a e kau pōpula tokolahi, 'a ia na'a nau 'ave mei he taua 'o Seilaisá; pea na'e 'i ai 'a e kakai tangata, kakai fefine, mo e fānau.

Moroni 9

My beloved son, I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive; but I write somewhat of that which is grievous.

For behold, I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer; and Archeantus has fallen by the sword, and also Luram and Emron; yea, and we have lost a great number of our choice men.

And now behold, my son, I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent, and Satan stirreth them up continually to anger one with another.

Behold, I am laboring with them continually; and when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and anger against me; and when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it; wherefore, I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them.

For so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have no fear of death; and they have lost their love, one towards another; and they thirst after blood and revenge continually.

And now, my beloved son, notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.

And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from Amoron, behold, the Lamanites have many prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherrizah; and there were men, women, and children.

8 Pea ko e ngaahi husepāniti mo e ngaahi tamai 'o e kakai fefine mo e fānau ko iá kuo nau tāmāte'i; pea kuo nau fafanga 'a e kakai fefine 'aki 'a e kakano 'o honau ngaahi husepāniti, pea mo e fānaú 'aki 'a e kakano 'o 'enau ngaahi tamai; pea 'oku 'ikai te nau 'oange ha vai, ka koe ki'i vai sí'i pē kiate kinautolu.

9 Pea neongo 'a e fu'u ngāue fakalieliá ni 'a e kau Leimaná, ka 'oku 'ikai ke lahi hake ia 'i he ngāue 'a hota kakai 'i Molianitumú. He vakai, ko e tokolahi 'o e ngaahi 'ofefine 'o e kau Leimaná kuo nau puke pōpula; pea kuo nau to'o meiate kinautolu 'a e me'a 'oku mahu'inga mo lelei taha 'i he me'a kotoa pē, 'a ia ko e angama'á mo e anga-mā'oni'oni—

10 Pea hili 'enau fai 'a e me'a ní, na'a nau fakapoongi 'a kinautolu 'i ha founga fakamamahi 'aupito, 'o nau fakamamahi 'i honau sino 'o a'u ki he 'enau mate; pea hili 'enau fai 'eni, 'oku nau kai honau kakanó 'o hangē ko e fanga manu fekai, koe'uhi ko e fefeka 'o honau lotó; pea nau fai ia ko ha faka'ilonga 'o 'enau to'á.

11 'Oiauē 'e hoku foha 'ofeina, 'oku lava fēfē nai 'e ha kakai hangē ko 'eni, 'o anga ta'e-fakasivilaise pehē—

12 (Pea ko e hili ange pē 'eni 'a e ngaahi ta'u sí'i, ka na'a nau hoko ko ha kakai angalelei mo fiefia.)

13 Kae 'oiauē 'e hoku foha, 'oku lava fēfē ha kakai hangē ko 'eni, 'a ia 'oku nau fiefia ki he fu'u fakalielia pehē—

14 Te ta lava 'o 'amanaki fēfē 'e ta'ofi 'e he 'Otuá 'a hono to'ukupú mei hono tautea 'i kitautolú?

15 Vakai, 'oku tangi hoku lotó: Mala'ia ki he kakaí ni. Hā'ele mai 'i he fakamaau, 'E 'Otua, pea fufuu 'i 'enau ngaahi angahalá, mo e ngaahi fai angahalá, mo e ngaahi anga-fakalieliá mei ho fofongá!

16 Pea ko e tahá, 'e hoku foha, 'oku tokolahi 'a e kau uitou mo honau ngaahi 'ofefine 'oku kei nofo 'i Seilaisa; pea ko e kongá 'o e ngaahi me'akai 'a ia na'e 'ikai ke fetuku atu 'e he kau Leimaná, vakai, kuo 'ave ia 'e he kau tau 'a Senefai, 'o lí'aki 'a kinautolu ke nau hē hē holo ki ha potu pē 'a ia te nau lava 'o ma'u ai ha me'akai; pea 'oku tokolahi 'a e kau finemātu 'a 'oku pongia 'i he halá 'o mate.

And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them.

And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

(And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightful people)

But O my son, how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much abomination—

How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment against us?

Behold, my heart cries: Wo unto this people. Come out in judgment, O God, and hide their sins, and wickedness, and abominations from before thy face!

And again, my son, there are many widows and their daughters who remain in Sherrizah; and that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away, and left them to wander whithersoever they can for food; and many old women do faint by the way and die.

17 Pea ko e kau tau 'oku 'iate aú 'oku vaivai; pea ko e ngaahi kau tau 'a e kau Leimaná 'oku nau 'i hoku vaha'a mo Seilaisá; pea ko kinautolu kotoa pē kuo hola ki he kau tau 'a 'Ēloné, kuo nau mo'ua ki he'enu anga-fīta'a faka'uliá.

18 'Oiauē 'a hono fakamasiva 'i 'a hoku kakaí! 'Oku nau nofo ta'e-mā'opo'opo pea 'ikai ma'u ha 'alo'ofa. Vakai, ko ha tangata pē au, pea 'oku ou ma'u 'a e ivi pē 'o ha tangata, pea 'oku 'ikai te u toe malava 'o fakamālohi 'i 'a 'eku ngaahi fekaú.

19 Pea kuo nau faka'au 'o mālohi 'i he'enu ngaahi paongata'á; pea nau anga-fīta'a tatau pē, 'o 'ikai fakamo'ui ha taha, pe ko e motu'a pe ko e talavou; pea 'oku nau fiefia 'i he me'a kotoa pē tuku kehe pē 'a e me'a 'oku leleí; pea ko e faingata'a'ia 'a homau kakai fefiné mo 'emau fānau 'i he funga hono kotoa 'o e fonuá ni 'oku lahi hake ia 'i he me'a kotoa pē; 'io, 'oku 'ikai fa'a fakamatala 'e ha 'elelo, pea 'oku 'ikai fa'a tohi ia.

20 Pea ko 'eni, 'e hoku foha, 'oku 'ikai te u toe lea ki he me'a fakamamahí ni. Vakai, 'okú ke 'ilo'í 'a e fai angahala 'a e kakai ní; 'okú ke 'ilo'í 'oku 'ikai ke 'iate kinautolu ha'anau ngaahi tefito'í mo'oni, pea 'oku 'ikai te nau toe ma'u ha 'ofa; pea 'oku lahi ange 'enu fai angahalá 'i he fai angahala 'a e kau Leimaná.

21 Vakai, 'e hoku foha, 'oku 'ikai te u lava ke fakaongoongolei'í 'a kinautolu ki he 'Otuá telia na'á ne taa'í au.

22 Kae vakai, 'e hoku foha, 'oku ou fakaongoongolei'í koe ki he 'Otuá, pea 'oku ou falala kia Kalaisi 'e fakamo'ui koe; pea 'oku ou kole ki he 'Otuá ke ne fakahaofi ho'o mo'uí, ke ke mamata ki he foki 'a hono kakai kiate íá, pe ko honau faka'auha 'o 'osi'osingamālié; he 'oku ou 'ilo kuo pau ke nau 'auha 'o ka 'ikai te nau fakatomala pea tafoki kiate ia.

23 Pea kapau te nau 'auha 'e tatau ia mo e kau Sēletí, ko e tupu mei he paongata'a 'a honau lotó, 'i he feinga ke lilingi toto mo e sāuní.

And the army which is with me is weak; and the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah and me; and as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful brutality.

O the depravity of my people! They are without order and without mercy. Behold, I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man, and I cannot any longer enforce my commands.

And they have become strong in their perversion; and they are alike brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young; and they delight in everything save that which is good; and the suffering of our women and our children upon all the face of this land doth exceed everything; yea, tongue cannot tell, neither can it be written.

And now, my son, I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene. Behold, thou knowest the wickedness of this people; thou knowest that they are without principle, and past feeling; and their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites.

Behold, my son, I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me.

But behold, my son, I recommend thee unto God, and I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved; and I pray unto God that he will spare thy life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction; for I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him.

And if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.

24 Pea kapau te nau 'auha, 'okú ta 'ilo 'i 'oku 'i ai hota káinga tokolahi kuo nau tafoki ki he kau Leimaná, pea 'e 'i ai mo e tokolahi kehe 'e tafoki kiate kinautolu; ko ia, ke ke tohi ha ngaahi me'a 'e ní'ihí, 'o kapau te ke mo'ui, pea u mate au 'o 'ikai toe fé'iloaki mo koe; kae 'ofa ke vave 'eku fé'iloaki mo koé; he 'oku 'iate au 'a e ngaahi lekooti toputapu 'a ia 'oku ou fie tuku kiate koe.

25 'E hoku foha, tui faivelenga kia Kalaisi; pea 'ofa ke 'oua ná'a hanga 'e he ngaahi me'a kuó u tohí 'o fakamamahi 'i koe, ke fakamafasia 'i koe 'o a'u ki he mate; kae 'ofa he hiki hake koe 'e Kalaisi, pea 'ofa ke nofo ma'u ai pē 'i ho' o fakakaukau 'o ta'engata 'a 'ene ngaahi mamahí mo e pekiá, pea mo e fakahā 'o hono sinó ki he'etau ngaahi tamaí, mo 'ene 'alo'ofá mo e kātaki fuoloá, pea mo e 'amanaki lelei ki hono nāunaú mo e mo'ui ta'engatá, 'i homou 'atamaí.

26 Pea 'ofa ke 'iate koe 'a e 'alo'ofá 'a e 'Otua ko e Tamaí, 'a ia 'oku mā'olunga 'a hono 'afio'angá 'i he ngaahi langí, pea mo hotau 'Eiki ko Sīsū Kalaisí, 'a ia 'oku 'afio 'i he to'ukupu to'omata'u 'o hono māfimaí, kae 'oua ke mo'ulaloa kiate ia 'a e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē, pea nofo 'iate koe 'o ta'engata. 'Ēmeni.

And if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our brethren have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them; wherefore, write somewhat a few things, if thou art spared and I shall perish and not see thee; but I trust that I may see thee soon; for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee.

My son, be faithful in Christ; and may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death; but may Christ lift thee up, and may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our fathers, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.

And may the grace of God the Father, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever. Amen.

Molonai 10

- 1 Pea ko 'eni ko au, Molonai, 'oku ou tohi 'a e me'a 'e ni'ihī 'a ia 'oku ou pehē 'oku lelei; peá u tohi ki hoku kāinga, ko e kau Leimaná; pea 'oku ou faka'amu ke nau 'ilo'i kuo 'osi atu 'a e ta'u 'e fāngeau uofulu tupu talu mei he fakahā mai 'o e faka'ilonga 'o e hā'ele mai 'a Kalaisi.
- 2 Pea 'oku ou fakama'u 'a e ngaahi lekōtī ni, hili ha'aku lea 'aki ha ngaahi lea 'e ni'ihī 'i he na'ina'i kiate kimoutolu.
- 3 Vakai, 'oku ou fie na'ina'i kiate kimoutolu, 'o ka mou ka lau 'a e ngaahi me'á ni, kapau ko e finangalo poto 'o e 'Otuá 'oku totonu ke mou lau ia, ke mou manatu 'i hono lahi 'o e 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Eiki ki he fānau 'a e tangatá, talu mei he fakatupu 'o 'Ātamá 'o a'u mai ki he taimi te mou ma'u ai 'a e ngaahi me'a ní, pea mou fakalaululoto ki ai 'i homou lotó.
- 4 Pea 'i ho'omou ma'u 'a e ngaahi me'a ní, 'oku ou fie na'ina'i kiate kimoutolu ke mou kole ki he 'Otuá, ko e Tamai Ta'engatá, 'i he huafa 'o Kalaisi, pe 'oku 'ikai ke mo'oni 'a e ngaahi me'á ni; pea kapau te mou kole 'i he loto-fakamātoato, mo e loto-mo'oni, 'o ma'u 'a tui kia Kalaisi, te ne fakahā 'a hono mo'oni kiate kimoutolu, 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni.
- 5 Pea 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni te mou lava ai ke 'ilo'i hono mo'oni 'o e ngaahi me'a kotoa pē.
- 6 Pea 'ilonga ha me'a 'oku lelei 'oku totonu mo mo'oni ia; ko ia, 'oku 'ikai ha me'a 'oku lelei 'e faka'ikai'i 'a Kalaisi, ka 'oku fakahā 'okú ne 'i ai.
- 7 Pea te mou lava ke 'ilo'i 'okú ne 'i ai, 'i he mālohi 'o e Laumālie Mā'oni'oni; ko ia 'oku ou fie na'ina'i kiate kimoutolu ke 'oua na'a mou faka'ikai'i 'a e mālohi 'o e 'Otuá; he 'okú ne ngāue 'i he mālohi, 'o fakatatau ki he tui 'a e fānau 'a e tangatá, 'o tatau 'i he 'ahó ni, mo e 'apongipongi, pea ta'engata.
- 8 Pea ko e tahá, 'oku ou na'ina'i kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga, ke 'oua na'a mou faka'ikai'i 'a e ngaahi me'a-foaki 'a e 'Otuá, he 'oku nau lahi; pea 'oku nau tupu mei he 'Otuá tatau pē. Pea 'oku 'i ai 'a e ngaahi founga kehekehe 'oku foaki mai ai 'a e ngaahi me'a-foaki ni; ka ko e 'Otuá tatau pē 'okú ne foaki 'a e ngaahi me'a-foaki kotoa pē ki he kakai fulipē; pea 'oku foaki mai ia 'i he ngaahi fakahā 'a e Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá ki he kakai, ke 'aonga kiate kinautolu.

Moroni 10

Now I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemeth me good; and I write unto my brethren, the Lamanites; and I would that they should know that more than four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ.

And I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

Behold, I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down until the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.

And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost.

And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.

And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is.

And ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today and tomorrow, and forever.

And again, I exhort you, my brethren, that ye deny not the gifts of God, for they are many; and they come from the same God. And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worketh all in all; and they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.

9 He vakai, 'oku foaki ki he taha 'i he Laumālie 'o e 'Otuá, ke ne akonaki 'aki 'a e lea 'o e potó;

10 Pea ki he taha, ke ne akonaki 'aki 'a e lea 'o e 'iló 'i he Laumālie pē ko íá;

11 Pea ki he taha, 'a e fu'u tui lahi; pea ki he taha, 'a e ngaahi me'a-foaki 'o e fakamo'uí 'i he Laumālie pē ko íá;

12 Pea ko e tahá, ki he taha, ke ne fai 'a e ngaahi fu'u mana lalahi;

13 Pea ko e tahá, ki he taha, ke ne kikite 'o kau ki he ngaahi me'a kotoa pē;

14 Pea ko e tahá, ki he taha, ke ne mamata ki he kau 'āngelo, mo e ngaahi laumālie talafekau;

15 Pea ko e taha, ki he taha, 'a e ngaahi fa'ahinga lea kehekehe kotoa pē;

16 Pea ko e tahá, ki he taha, hono fakamatala 'i 'o e ngaahi leá mo e ngaahi fa'ahinga lea kehekehé.

17 Pea 'oku 'omai 'a e ngaahi me'a-foaki ni kotoa 'i he Laumālie 'o Kalaisí; pea 'oku ma'u 'e he tangata taki taha ha me'a-foaki kehekehe, 'o fakatatau ki hono finangaló.

18 Pea 'oku ou fie na'ina'i kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, ke mou manatu 'i 'oku tupu meia Kalaisi 'a e me'a-foaki lelei kotoa pē;

19 Pea 'oku ou fie na'ina'i kiate kimoutolu, 'e hoku kāinga 'ofeina, ke mou manatu 'i 'okú ne tatau 'i he 'aneafí, 'ahó ni, pea ta'engatá, pea ko e ngaahi me'a-foaki kotoa pē kuó u lau ki aí, 'a ia 'oku fakalaumālié, 'e 'ikai ai pe toe 'ave ia, lolotonga 'a e kei tu'u 'a e māmaní, ka 'e fakatatau pē mo e ta'etui 'a e fānau 'a e tangatá.

20 Ko ia, kuo pau ke 'i ai 'a e tuí; pea kapau 'oku pau ke 'i ai 'a e tuí 'oku pau ke 'i ai foki mo e 'amanakí; pea kapau 'oku pau ke 'i ai 'a e 'amanakí 'oku pau ke 'i ai foki mo e manava'ofá.

21 Pea kapau 'e 'ikai te mou ma'u 'a e manava'ofá 'e 'ikai teitei fa'a fakamo'ui 'a kimoutolu 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá; pea 'e 'ikai foki fa'a fakamo'ui 'a kimoutolu 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá kapau 'oku 'ikai te mou ma'u 'a e tuí; pe 'oku 'ikai foki ke fa'a fakamo'ui 'a kimoutolu kapau 'oku 'ikai te mou ma'u 'a e 'amanakí.

22 Pea kapau 'oku 'ikai te mou ma'u 'a e 'amanakí kuo pau ke mou loto-fo'i; pea 'oku tupu 'a e loto-fo'í koe'uhi ko e angahalá.

For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;

And to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;

And to another, exceedingly great faith; and to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;

And again, to another, that he may work mighty miracles;

And again, to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things;

And again, to another, the beholding of angels and ministering spirits;

And again, to another, all kinds of tongues;

And again, to another, the interpretation of languages and of divers kinds of tongues.

And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and they come unto every man severally, according as he will.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that he is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and that all these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even as long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men.

Wherefore, there must be faith; and if there must be faith there must also be hope; and if there must be hope there must also be charity.

And except ye have charity ye can in nowise be saved in the kingdom of God; neither can ye be saved in the kingdom of God if ye have not faith; neither can ye if ye have no hope.

And if ye have no hope ye must needs be in despair; and despair cometh because of iniquity.

23 Pea na'e folofola mo'oni 'a Kalaisi ki he'etau ngaahi tama'i: Kapau 'oku mou ma'u 'a e tu'i te mou lava 'o fai 'a e me'a kotoa pē 'oku totonu 'iate aú.

24 Pea ko 'eni 'oku ou lea ki he ngaahi ngata'anga kotoa pē 'o e māmaní—kapau 'e hoko 'a e 'aho 'e to'o atu ai 'a e mālohi mo e ngaahi me'a-foaki 'a e 'Otuá meiate kimoutolu, 'e hoko ia koe'uhi ko e ta'etuí.

25 Pea 'e mala'ia 'a e fānau 'a e tangatá 'o ka hoko 'eni; he 'e 'ikai ke 'i ai hamou tokotaha 'oku failelei 'iate kimoutolu; 'e 'ikai ha taha. He kapau 'oku 'i ai ha taha 'iate kimoutolu 'oku failelei, te ne ngāue 'aki 'a e mālohi mo e ngaahi me'a-foaki 'a e 'Otuá.

26 Pea 'e mala'ia 'a kinautolu te nau lí'aki 'a e ngaahi me'á ni pea nau maté, he 'oku nau mate 'i he'enua ngaahi angahalá, pea 'e 'ikai fa'a fakamo'ui 'a kinautolu 'i he pule'anga 'o e 'Otuá; pea 'oku ou lea 'aki ia 'o fakatatau mo e ngaahi folofola 'a Kalaisi; pea 'oku 'ikai te u loi.

27 Pea 'oku ou na'ina 'i kiate kimoutolu ke mou manatu 'i 'a e ngaahi me'á ni; he 'oku vave mai 'a e taimi te mou 'ilo 'i ai 'oku 'ikai te u loi, he te mou mamata kiate au 'i he nofo'anga fakamaau 'o e 'Otuá; pea 'e folofola atu 'a e 'Eiki ko e 'Otuá kiate kimoutolu: 'I kai na'á ku fakahā 'a 'eku ngaahi leá kiate kimoutolu, 'a ia na'e tohi 'e he tangata ko 'ení, 'o hangē ko ha taha 'oku kalanga mei he maté, 'io, 'o hangē ko ha taha 'oku lea mei he efú?

28 'Oku ou fakahā 'a e ngaahi me'á ni koe'uhí ke fakamo'oni 'i 'a e ngaahi kikité. Pea vakai, 'e 'alu atu ia mei he fofonga 'o e 'Otuá lauikuongá; pea 'e 'alu atu 'i he mālohi 'a 'ene folofolá mei he to'u tangata ki he to'u tangata.

29 Pea 'e fakahā 'e he 'Otuá kiate kimoutolu, ko e me'a kuó u tohi 'oku mo'oni ia.

30 Pea 'oku ou toe fie na'ina 'i kiate kimoutolu ke mou ha'u kia Kalaisi, pea piki ma'u ki he me'a-foaki lelei kotoa pē, pea 'ikai ala ki he me'a-foaki 'oku koví, pe ko e me'a 'oku ta'ema'á.

And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me.

And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth—that if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief.

And wo be unto the children of men if this be the case; for there shall be none that doeth good among you, no not one. For if there be one among you that doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of God.

And wo unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins, and they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God; and I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.

And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust?

I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies. And behold, they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God; and his word shall hiss forth from generation to generation.

And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.

And again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing.

31 Pea 'ā hake, pea tu'ū hake mei he efú, 'E Selūsalema; 'io, pea 'ai ho ngaahi kofu matamatalelé, 'E 'ofefine 'o Saione; pea fakamālohi'i ho ngaahi tuki poupou' pea fakalahi ho ngaahi ngata'angá 'o ta'engata, koe'uhi ke 'oua ná'a toe veuveuki koe, pea ko e ngaahi fuakava kuo fai 'e he Tamai Ta'engata mo koé, 'E fale 'o 'Isileli, ke fakamo'oni'i ia.

32 'Io, ha'u kia Kalaisi, pea hoko 'o haohaoa 'iate ia, pea fakafisi 'a kimoutolu mei he anga ta'e-mā'oni'oni kotoa pē; pea kapau te mou fakafisi 'a kimoutolu mei he anga ta'e-mā'oni'oni kotoa pē, pea 'ofa ki he 'Otuá 'aki homou iví, 'atamaí, mo e mālohí kotoa pē, pea 'e toki fé'unga 'a 'ene 'alo'ofá kiate kimoutolu, koe'uhi ke tupu 'i he'ene 'alo'ofá 'a ho'omou haohaoa 'ia Kalaisí; pea kapau 'oku tupu 'i he 'alo'ofa 'a e 'Otuá 'a ho'omou haohaoa 'ia Kalaisí, 'oku 'ikai te mou teitei lava ke faka'ikai'i 'a e māfima'fi 'o e 'Otuá.

33 Pea ko e tahá, kapau 'oku tupu 'i he 'ofa 'a e 'Otuá 'a ho'omou haohaoa 'ia Kalaisí, 'o 'ikai faka'ikai'i hono mālohi, 'oku toki fakamā'oni'oni 'i 'a kimoutolu 'ia Kalaisí 'i he 'ofa 'a e 'Otuá, 'i he lilingi 'o e ta'ata'a 'o Kalaisí, 'a ia 'oku 'i he fuakava 'a e Tamai ke fakamolemole 'i ho'omou ngaahi angahalá, ke mou hoko 'o mā'oni'oni, ta'e-ha-'ila.

34 Pea ko 'eni, 'oku ou lea māvae ki he kakai fulipē. 'Oku vave ke u 'alu 'o mālōlō 'i he palataisi 'o e 'Otuá, kae 'oua ke toe fakataha 'a hoku laumālié mo e sinó, pea 'omi au kuó u ikuna 'i he 'ataá, ke fetaulaki mo kimoutolu 'i he 'ao 'o e fakamaau lelei 'o Sihova māfima'fi, ko e Fakamaau Ta'engata 'o e mo'uí mo e maté fakatou'osi. 'Ēmeni.

Ko e Ngata'angá

And awake, and arise from the dust, O Jerusalem; yea, and put on thy beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion; and strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders forever, that thou mayest no more be confounded, that the covenants of the Eternal Father which he hath made unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled.

Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in nowise deny the power of God.

And again, if ye by the grace of God are perfect in Christ, and deny not his power, then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God, through the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins, that ye become holy, without spot.

And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead. Amen.

The End